PILGRIMES.

IN FIVE BOOKES.

The fixth, Contayning Nauigations, Voyages, and Land-Discoueries, with other Historicall Relations of MFRICM.

The feuenth, Nauigations, Voyages, and Discoueries of the Sea-Coasts and In-land Regions of Africa, which is generally called Arthropia: by English men, and others,

The eighth, Peregrinations and Trauels by land in Palestina, Natolia, Syria, and other parts of SIA.

The ninth, Peregrinations, and Discourries by Land, of Assyria, Armenia, Persia, india, Arabia, and other in land Countries of Asia, by Englishmen and others; Moderne and Ancient.

Thetenth, Prateritorum, or Discoueries of the World, specially such
as in the other Bookes are omitted.

The Second Part.

Unus Deus , Una Veritas.



LONDON

LONDON
Prated by William Stanish for Henrie Fetherstone, and are to be fold at his shop in
Pauls Church-yard at the signe of the Rose.



PILORIM

was base to beeing the highest

ดี เรียบไป () อุดนี้ มีหลังที่สำหรับของ ทั้ง อุดีสสัส (คีรี) () วิธีสาร์สาส สิตโดย (เลโมลี (ครั้ง) เป็น (



TOTHE HIGH

PRINCE,

GEORGE,

Duke, Marquesse, and Earle of B.V.C.K.I.N.G.B.A.M., Viscount VILLIFERS, Baron of WHADDON, Lord High Admired of ENGRAPD, Justice in Eyre of all his MAJESTIES Forests, Parkes, and Chiese beyond Treet;

MASTIR of His MAIESTIES Horfe, KNIGHT of the mct Noble O adea of the Garter, and One of His Maiesties most Honorable Prince



Auing presented to the Princes Highnesse a World of Histories composed into a Historie of the World, F durst not set saile with so great a Fleet of Sea-voyages (a principall part thereof) before F became humble Sutor to Your Grace for license from the Admiraltie. Pardon this

presumpton, which Your Greatnesse requireth, Your Goodnesse inuiteth and the nature of the Worke exacteth. His Maie-slie, the reath of our nosthrils, the Life and Rule of our actions, but by many graces otherwise, and by exemplarie dedication, tasht Others Bookes there to seeke delightsome shaddow, where is gaue so glorious light.

Neber may any Name stand so neere That of His Highnesse, occially in a Booke of Sea and Land Trauels, as His who bath beene so late and faithfull a Traneller with Him by Sea and Land; Nor the Kings bonor (here aymed at) bee more welcome to any then the Kings Friend, whom the King will honour; Nor can acts of Nauigation bee any where more fatable then to a Noble mind, now fring bis best and bleft thoughts on discouring a neeter passage to the semoter World, and under whose Charge the Naue Royall more flourisheth theneuer. By some of Yours also the Author was encouraged to undertake this great worke, which now therefore returneth to your Grace, as that Sea whence the Springs first flowed. May it please your Graces taste (more from such employments cannot be expected) to incite inferior appetites: and I hope that to such spectnesse of Nature, this Historic of Nature will not be altogether distast full. God Almightie blesse and pro-Sper your Grace, and all your Loyall services to His Maiestie, with increase of Dinine, Royall, and Princely fauour.

Your Graces

SAMVEL VRCHAS



NAVIGATIONS, VOYA GES, AND LAND-DISCO.

VERIES, WITH OTHER HI-

STORICALL RELATIONS

OF AFRIKE.

THE SIXTH BOOKE.

CHAP. L.

Observations of Africa, taken out of IOHN LEO bis nine Bookes, translated by Master * Pory, and the most remarkable things hither transcribed.

* In divers places the tranflation is amended

Collections out of the first Booke of IOHN LEO, touching the People, Tribes, Languages, Sealons, Vertues, Vices, and other more generall considerations of Atrica.



RICA is called in the Arabian Tongue Iphrichia, of the Whythis part word Faraca, which fignifieth in the faid Language, to divide: of the World but why it should be so called, there are two opinions; the first was so named is this : namely, because this part of the World is diuded from Iban Les, lib. r. Europa by the Mediterran Sea, and from Asia * by the River * Others diot Nilus. Others are of opinion, that this name of Africa mideit from was derived from one Ifricus the King of Arabia Falix, who is Alia by the fa'd to have beene the first that ever inhabited these parts. Red Sea. This Ifricus waging waragainst the King of Asspria, & being As there was at length by him driven out of his Kingdome, passed with his da, so likewise whole Armie ouer Nilm, and fo conducting his troupes well. Africa was the

winder Armie ouer vium, and to conducting his troupes welt- great was one wind to the Region light of about Carthage. Hence it is that the Arabians doe imagine the Countrey about Carthage onely; a pocal part of the countrey about Carthage onely; a pocal part. and the Regions lying West ward thereof, to comprehend all Africa. Africa (if we may give credit vnto the Writers of that Nation, being men of Learning, and amongst the most skilfull Cosmographers) beginneth Southward at certaine Rivers iffuing forth of a Lake Ancients, to in the Defart of Gaoga. East-ward it bordereth vpon the River Nilus. It extendeth North- larent with 60 ward to that part of Egipt, where Nilus at feuen mouthes dischargeth his streames into the the Aliesa

2999 3

The division of Afria. Wey adly cal which lyoth herwarne the Red. Indian. Atlantike, and Scas:joyned of Land to A-

" Non.

Our Authours affirme, that Africa is divided into foure parts, that is to fay, Barbaria, Numidis, Libra, and the Land of Negros. Barbaria taketh beginning from the Hill called Meier, which is the extreme part of all the Mountaines of Ailas, beeing distant from Alexandria almost three hundred miles, It is bounded on the North-side with the Mediterran Sea, stretching thence to Mount-Meier aforetaid, and from Mount-Meier extending it felfe to the Streights of Gibralter. West-ward it is limited with the faid Streights, from whence wind no it selle out of the Mediterran Sea into the mayn Ocean, it is inclosed with the most Westerly point of At-Mediterran las: namely, at that Westerne Cape which is next vnto the Towne called Mesa. And Southward it is bounded with that fide of Atlas which lyeth towards the Mediterran Sea. This is the most not le and worthy Region of all Africa, the Inhabitants whereof are of a browne or 10 tawny colour, being a civill people, and preferibe whollome Lawes and Conflitutions vnto themselves.

The second part of Africa is called of the Latines Numidia, but of the Arabians Biledulgerid: this Region bringeth forth Dates in great abundance. It beginneth East-ward at the Citie of Eloacat, which is an hundred miles diffant from Egypt, and extendeth West as far as the Towne of Nun, flanding youn the Ocean Sea. North-ward it is inclosed with the South-fide of Atlas. And the South part thereof bordereth upon the fandy Defarts of Libia. All the Arabians doe viually call it the Land of Dates: because this onely Region of Africa beareth Dates.

The third pare called of the Latines Libya, and of the Arabians Sarra, (which word fignifieth a Defart) beginneth Eastward at that part of Nilus which is next vinto the Citie of Eloacat, 20 and from thence runneth West-ward as farre as the Ocean Sea, North-ward it is bounded with Numidia, South-ward it abutteth upon the Land of Negros, East-ward it taketh beginning at the Kingdome of Gaoga, and fireteneth Weil-ward even to the Land of Gualata, which borde-

Kingdome of Gaoga, from whence it extendeth West as faire as Gualata. The North part there-

The fourth part of Africa which is called the Land of Negros, beginneth East-ward at the

of is inclosed with the Defart of Libra, and the South part, which is vnknowne vnto vs. with the Ocean Sea: howbeit the Merchants which daily come from thence to the Kingdome of Tombuto, have sufficiently described the situation of that Countrey vnto vs. This Land of Negros hath a mightie River, which taking his name of the Region, is called Niver: this River ta- 30 keth his originall from the East out of a certaine Defart called by the fore-laid Negros, Sew. Others will have this River to fpring out of a certaine Lake, and to to runne Weft ward till it exonerateth it felfe into the Ocean Sea. Our Colmographers affirme, that the faid River of Niger is derived out of Nilm, which they imagine for fome certaine space to bee swallowed up of the Earth, and yet at last to burst forth into such a Lake as is before mentioned. Some others are of opinion, that this River beginneth West-ward to frring out of a certaine Mountaine, and so running East, to make at length a huge Lake : which verily is not like to be true; for they viually faile West-ward from Tombuto to the Kingdome of Ginea, yea, and to the Land of Mellialio; both which in respect of Tombuto are situate to the West: neither hath the said Land of Negros any Kingdomes comparable, for heautifull and pleasant toyle, voto those which adjoyne vnto the bankes of Niger. And here it is to be noted, that (according to the opinion of our Cosmographers) * that Land of Negros by which Nilus is faid to runne (namely, that part of the World

which firetcheth East-ward even to the Indian Sea, some Northerly parcell whereof abutteth

vpon the Red Sea, to wit, the Countrey which lyeth without the Gulfe of Arabia) is not to

bee called any member or portion of Africa; and that for many reasons, which are to bee

found in the processe of this Historie set downe more at large : The said Countrey is called by

the Latines Ethiopia. From thence come certaine religious Triers seared or branded on the face

with an not Iron, who are to be feene almost over all Exrepe, and specially at Rome. These peo-

ple haue an Emperour, which they call Prete Gianni, the greater part of that Land being inha-

bited with Christians. Howbeit, there is also a certaine Mahametane among them, which is

A division of

of Africa.

* Habat. · thank.

faid to possesse a great Dominion. Barbarie is dittinguished into foure Kingdomes : the first whereof is the Kingdome of Marothe foure force co; which is likewife divided into feuen Regions or Provinces; namely, Hea, Sus, Guzula, the named parts territorre of Maroco, Ducoala, Hazeora, and Tedles. The second Kingdome of Barbarie called Fez, comprehendeth in like fort feuen Regions within the bounds thereof; to wit, Temefre, the Territory of Fez, Azgara, * Elabat, Errif, Garet, and * Elcanz. The third Kingdome is called * Telensin, and hath three Regions under it, namely, the Mountaines, Tenez, and Algezir. The fourth Kingdom of Barbarie is named Tunis; under which are comprized foure Regions, that is to fay, Bugia, Constantina, Tripolis in Barbarie, and Ezzaba, which is a good part of Numidia. Burgia hath alwayes beene turmoyled with continual warres; because sometimes it was subject 60 voto the King of Tunis, and sometimes againe voto the King of Tremizen. Certaine it is that euen vatill thefe our dayes, this Bugia was a Kingdome of it felfe, and so continued, till the principall Citie of that Region was at the commandement of Ferdinando the King of Castile, taken by one Peter of Nauarre.

CHAP. I. S. J.

This is the baselt part of all Africa; neither will our Cosmographers vouchfase it the name The diussion of a Kingdome, by reason that the Inhabitants thereof are so farred diltart a funder; which you of Nazidia. or a Linguoine, by reason that which followeth. Teffer a City of Numidia, containeth about Teffer. fourchundred families, and is in regard of the Liby an Defart, feuered from all places of habitarion almost three hundred miles; wherefore this second part is thought by divers not to bee worthy the name of a Kingdome. Howbeit we will make some relation of the habitable parts of Numidia; some whereof may not vnfitly bee compared with other Regions of Africa, as for example, that of Segelmess, which territorie of Numidia lyeth ouer against Barbarie; likewrite Zeb, which is fituate against Bugin, and the figniorie of Biledulgerid, which extendeth vn-10 to the Kingdome of Tunis. Referring therefore many particulars for the fecond part of this Historie, we will make our entrie and beginning at those places, which lie vpon the West of Numidia : the names whereof be thefe; Teffet, Guaden, Ifren, Hacca, Dare, Tabelbelt, Todga, Fercale, Segelmess, Benigumi, Fighig, Tegna, Tsabit, Tegorarin, Mesab, Tegort and Guarghela. The

The Description of Africa.

Region of Zeb containeth five townes, to wit, Pefcara, Elborb, Nesta, Taolac and Deufin: 10 many Cities likewise hath the territories of Biledulgerid; namely, Teozar, Capbesa, Nefreos, Elebamid and Chalbis : and from hence Eastward are found the Illes of Gerbe , Garion, Mesellata, Mestram, Teoirraga, Gademis, Fizza, Ausela, Birdeoa and Eloacat. These are the names of the most famous places of all Numidia, being bounded (as is faid before) Westward upon the Ocean Sea, and Eastward with the River of Nilm.

These Defarts have not as yet any certaine name amongst vs, albeit they be divided into five A discription These Defarts have not as yet any certaine name amongst vs, as lett they be durated into hue a consuporation of parts, and receive all their denomination from the inhabitants which dwell whom them, that is the Linguist and the control of the Linguist and the li Deters, which to fay, from the Numidians, who are in like fort themselves divided into five parts also, to wit, liebetween the People or Tribes called Zanega, Ganziga, Terga, Leuta and Berdesa. There bee likewile Numidiand certaine places, which take some proper and particular rame from the goodnesse and badnesse of the Land of the foile; as namely, the Defart of Azaolad, to called for the drought and vnfruitfulnelle of that Negar. place: likewife Hair, albeit a Defart, yet so called for the goodnesse and temperature of

Moreover, the land of Negros is divided into many Kingdomes: whereof albeit a great part A division of be vnknowne vnto vs, and remooued farre out of our trade; wee will not with landing make the land of Nobe vnknowne vnto vs, and remodued rarreduct of our traded, week with now retinating make grain of euertation of those places, where wee our felues haue about and which by long experience are rallkingdoms. growne very familiar vnto vs : as likewife of fome other places, from whence Merchants vied 30 to travell vnto the same Cities wherein my selfe was then resident; from whom I learned right well the state of their Countries. I " my selfe faw fifteene Kingdomes of the Negros : how- " loin Les trabeit there are many more, which although I faw not with mine owne eies, yet are they by the welled our beit there are many more, which although I law how with mile work cash, you are they by the fifteene King.

Negror fufficiently knowne and frequented. Their names therefore (beginning from the Welt, domes of the and so proceeding Eastward and Southward) are these following : Gualata, Ghinea, Melli, T.m- land of Negrabuto, Gago, Guber, Agadez, Cano, Cafena, Zegzeg, Zanfara, Guangara, Burno, Gaoga, Nube. Their interne Kingdomes are for the molt partitivate you the River Niger, through the which Merchatres visually travell from Gualata to the City of "Aleat" in Egyp. The iourney in "Care. deede is very long, but yet fecure and voyd of danger. All the faid Kingdomes adioyne one von another; ten whereof are separated either by the River Niger, or by some fandie defart :

40 and in times past each one of the fifteene had a feuerall King, but now at this prefent, they About the are all in a manner subiect vnto three Kings onely : namely, to the King of Tombuto, who is yette 1526. Lord of the greatest part; to the King of Borno, who governeth the least part, and the reiklue is in fubication vnto the King of Gaoga: howbeit, he that possesseth the Kingdome of Ducala hatha very small traine attending vpon him. Likewise these Kingdomes haue many other Kingdomes bordering vpon the South frontiers of them: to wit, Bito, Temium, Danma Medra, and Gorban; the Gouernors and Inhabitants whereof, are most rich and industrious people, great louers of Iustice and equitie, albeit some leade a brutish kind of life.

Our Cosmographers and Historiographers affirme, that in times past Africa was altogether Of the habitadifinhabited, except that part which is now called the Land of Negros: and most certaine it is, tions of Africa, amnnabited, except that part which is not called the band of linhabitants. The tawnie people and of the gas that Barbarie and Numidia were for many ages defitute of linhabitants. The tawnie people nifection of of the said Region were called by the name of Barbar, being derived of the Verbe Barbara, this word which in their tongue fignifieth to murmure : because the African tongue foundeth in the eares Barbar.

of the Arabians, no otherwise then the voyce of Beasts, which vtter their founds without any accents. Others will have Barbar to be one word twice repeated, for somuch as Bar in the Arabian tongue fignifieth a Delart. For (fay they) when King Iphricus being by the Affrians or Athiopians driven out of his owne Kingdome, travelled towards Agypt, and leeing himfelfe to oppressed with his enemies, that he knew not what should become or him and his followers, he asked his people how or which way it was possible to escape, who answered him Bar-Bar, 6c that is, to the Defart, to the Defart : giving him to vnderstand by this speech, that he could have

no fater refuge, then to croffe ouer Nilus, and to flee vnto the Delatt of Africa. And this reason feemeth to agree with them, which affirme the Africans to bee descended from the people of Arabia falix.

The tayone Moores are duided into fue fenerall People or Tribes : to wit , the Tribes call d Zanhari, Mufmud, Zoneti, Hacari and Gumeri. The Tribe of Mufmudi inhabit the Weiterne ewell woon the South part of the faid Mountaine, and upon all the inward plaines of that Re-Terretorie of Morecco. The Tribe of Gumers peffeffe certaine Mountaines of Barbarie, dwelli gon the fides of those Mountaines which lie our agair fi the Mediterran Sea : as ble wofe they are Lords of all the River called in their language Ref. This River bath his Fountaine neare part all the forefaid people had their habitations and tents in the plaine fields; enery one of which fauoured their owne faction, and exercifed all labours necessary for mans life, as common among them. The Gouernours of the Country attended their droves and flocks; and the Citizens applyed themselves vatofome manuall Art, or to husbandry. The faid people are divided into five hundred feverall families, as appeareth by the Genealogies of the Africans . Author

The arreeme: or vari ti of t cdrcn lang age. signed smarig. Africas ion-A abile.

Sanga.

G ber Nuotan.

A thite bro-

B boles

Of the Arabithe Citic of Africa. Humen.

Tanis. · Carreen.

Language.

of Generale. O the Arabiers watch dwel

frace Tribes part of Mount Allas, from the Province of Hea, to the River of Sernan. Likewile they . Candarah. gion. Thele Mufmude have foure Provinces under them : namely, Hea, Sus, Guzula, and the unto the fire gits of Gibraltar, and thence runneth Eali wards to the Kingdome of Tremizen. Ide by ne a called by the Latines Cafaria. Thefe two tr. besor people have feuerall habitations by themcient Coting felius: the other three are dispersed conjusted your all Africa: how beit, they are like strain. gra; her 6-14- gers, unformed one from another by certaine properties or tokens, maintaining continuall warre 74, or 152-761 among themselves especially they of Numedia. Out of all which it is euclent, that in times then Farty an whereof is one thin Rachu whom I have oftentimes read and perufed. Some writers are of opi-Attican Hills- nion, that the King of Tombuto, the King of Melle, and the King of Agadez fetch their origi- 20 nail from the people of Zanaga, to wit, from them which inhabite the Defart. The for faid fine families or people, being duided into hundreds of progenies, and having

innumerable habitations, doe not with flancing yfe all one kind of lancuage, called by them A. quel Amaria, that is, the noble tongue : the Arabians which impabit Africa, call it a barbarous tongue; and this is the true and naturall language of the Africans. Howbeit it is altogether different from other languages, although it hath divers words common with the Arabian tongue, Yea, all the Gumeri ma manner and most of the Hacars speake Arabian, though corruptly; which (I fuppose) came first here pon to passe, for that the faid people have had long acq anitance and convertation with the Arabians. The Negros have divers languages among the reclus, among which they call one Sungai, and the tame is current in many Regions; as namely, in Gualata, Tombuto Gomea, Melle and Gago. Another language there is among the Negros, which they call Guber; and this is rife among the people of Guber, of Cano, of Calena, Buzolinguage, of Perzegreg, and of Guangra. Likewife the Kingdome of Borno hath a peculiar kind of speech. altogether like vnto that, which is vied in Gaoga. And the Kingdome of Nube hath a language of great affinitie with the Caldean, Arabian and Agyptian tongues. But all the Sea-townes of Africa, from the Mediterran Sea to the Mountaines of Atlas , Speake broken Arabian. Excent the Kingdome and Towns of Maroco, and the in-land Namidians border ng vpon Maro-62. Fez and Tremizen: all which, yie the Barbarian tongue. Howbert, they which dwell over against Tunis and Tripoli, speake indeeds the Arabian language; albeit most corruptly.

Of that Army which was fent by Califa * Otmen the third , in the fourth undred yeere of as in some the Hegina, there came into Africa tourelcore thouland Gentlemen and others, who having subdued fundry Prouisces, at length arrived in Africa: and there the Generall of the whole Ar by called ' Hucha Hiban Nafich remained. This man built that great City which is called of vs . Alexir. For he itood in feare of the people of Tunis, left they should betray him, mifdoubting also that they would procure aide out of Sierly, and so give him the incounter. Wherefore with all his treature which he had got, he translled to the Delast and firme ground, diffant from Carthing about one hundred and twenty miles, and there is he faid to have built the City of * Aleair. The remnant of his Souldiers he commanded to keepe those places, which were most secure and fit for their defence, and willed them to build where no rocke not fortification was. Which being done, the Arabiane began to inhabit Africa, and to differ themselves among the Africans, who, because they had beene for certaine yeeres subject vnto the Romans or Comprison of Italians, vied to speake their language; and hence it is, that the naturall and mo hir-tongue of the Arabians, which hath great affinitie with the African tongue, grew by little and little to be corrupted; and fo they report that thefe two Nations at length conjoyned themselves in * The Morrer one. Howbert the Arabians vfually doe blaze their Pedigree in daily and trivial Songs, which coffeme as vet is common both to "vs, and to the people of Barbarie alfo. For no man there is, be he netter to bate, which will not to his owne name, adde the name of his Nation; as for exin on s and ample, A a'in, Barbarian, or face like.

The Mahametan Prices alwayes forbad the Arabians to palle ouer Nilus with their Armies htto afting.

A Meanner mitted to to doe by a certaint fection and i humate all a Califie; because one of his Nobleshad mitted to to doe by a certaint fection and i humate all be overtell part of Barbarie. After and Tents. Howbeit in the foure hundred yeere of the Hegera we reade, that they were per- 60 100 Pattivich. rebelled against him, viurping the City of Carragan, and the greatest part of Barbarie. After the death of which Rebell, that Kingdome remained for fome yeares vinto his policricie and fa-Legemile 3, mily; whole inrifdiction (as the African Chronicles report) grew to large and firong in the

CHAP. 1. S. 1. Gehoar a flane by condition. Cairo built by Gehoar.

time of Eleain (the Mahumetan Califa and Patriarch of Arabia) that hee lent vinto them one Ghara flue Gehear, whom of a flaue he had made his Counfellor, with an huge Armie. This Gehear condu-Geboar, whom of a flate he had made his Counterior, with an nuge Armie. Inis Geboar conductor by condition thing me his Armie Westward, recoursed all Numidia and Barbare. Insoruch that hee pierced conquered all vato the Region of Sus, and there claymed most ample Tribute : all which being done, he retur- Ex barie. Naned backe vnto his Califa, and most faithfully surrendred vnto him what sever hee had gained midia, Egit, from the Enemy. The Califa feeing his prosperous successe, beganne to aspire vnto greater Ex- and syrae ploits. And Gehoar most firmely promited, that as hee had recourred the Westerne Dominion vnto his Lord, so would he likewise by force of Warre most certainly restore vnto him the Countries of the East, to wit, Egypt, Syria, and all Arabia; and protested moreover that with to the greatest hazard of his life, he would bee avenged of all the inveries offered by the Family of Labhus vnto his Lords Predecessors, and would reuest him in the Royall Seate of his most famous Grand-fathers, great-grand-fathers, and Progenitors. The Califa liking well his audacious promife, cauted an Armie of fourescore thousand Souldiers, with an infinite fumme of mo- Carrobuilt.cafney and other things necessary for the Warres, to bee delivered vnto him. And so this valiant led Akbair. ney and other things necessary for the warres, to be denucted from him. And to this thin the before the first and stout Chieftaine being prouided for warfare, conducted his Troupes through the Defarts of founder of and thus constants on possible to flight the Vice-Califa of Egypt (who fled vato EL care all and early with electric and hauing first put to flight the Vice-Califa of Egypt (who fled vato EL care all all with the Califa of Egypt and Sydrath Action the Califa of Egypt and Sydrath Action (Califa of Egypt and Sydrath Action). ria. Howbeit he could not as yet hold himselte secure; tearing least the Califa of Bardet would cle, o the Exaffayle him with an Army out of Afia, and leaft the Garrisons which he had left to keepe Bar- oticke termibarie, should be constrayned to forfake those conquered Provinces. Wherefore he built a Citie, and caused it to be walled round about. In which Citie he left one of his most truthe Captaines, with a great part of the Army; and this Citie hee called by the name of Alebair, which after-

ward by others was named Cairo. This Alchair is faid daily fo to have increased, that no Citie of the World for buildings and Inhabitants was any way comparable thereunto.

Moreouer, Califa Elcain arriving at Alchar, and beeing most honourably entertained by his Sergant Geboar, (who had written for him to come) began to thinke voon great affaires, and hauing gathered an huge Armie , resolued to wage battell against the Califa of Bagdet. In the meane leafon he that was appointed Vice-Roy of Barbarie, compacting with the Califa of Bagdet, veelded himselfe and all Barbarie into his hands. Which the Calife most kindly accepted. and ordayned him King over all Africa. But Califa Eleain hearing this newes at Alchair was wonderfully afflicted in minde. Howbeit there was one of his fecree Counsellors a very lear-30 ned and wittie man, who feeing his Lord fo fad and penfine; I affure you, faid he, if you please to take mine aduife, that I will forth-with procure you fuch an Armie, as shall give you great ftore of money, and yet notwithstanding shall doe you good service also. The Califa beeing fome-what emboldened at these speeches, asked his Counsellout how this might possibly bee brought to effect : My Lord (layth his Countellor) certaine it is, that the Arabians are now growne fo populous, and to fo great a number, that all Arabia cannot contayne them , feated will the yearely increase of the ground suffice to feed their Droues, and you see with what great famine they are afflicted, and how they are destitute not onely of habitations, but even of vicituals and fustenance. Wherefore if you had heretofore given them leave, they wouldlong ere this have invaded Africa. And if you will now licence them fo to do, doubt you not, but that you shall receive of them an huge Masse of Gold. This counsell could not altogether satisfie the Califa his minde: for he knew right well that the Arabians would so waste all Africa, as it should neither be profitable for himselfe, nor for his Enemies. Notwithstanding, seeing that his Kingdome was altogether endangered, he thought it better to accept those summes of money which his Counfellour promifed, and to to be reuenged of his Enemie, then to tole both his Kingdome and Gold all at once. Wherefore he permitted all Arabians, which would pay him Duckats apiece, freely to enter Africa; conditionally that they would flew themfelies most deadly Enemies vnto the treacherous Ling of Barbarie. Which libertie being granted vifto them, it is reported that ten Tribes or Families of Arabians, being halfe the people of Arabia Deferta, came immediately into Africa; vnto whom certaine Inhabitants of Arabia Fielix 50 ioyned themselves, insomuch that there were found amongst them about fitte thousand perfors able to beare Armes : their women , children, and cattell were almost innumerable ? the Scorie whereof Ibna Racha, the most diligent Chronicler of African Affaires (whom wee haue before

mentioned) fetteth downe at large. These Arabians having traversed the Delart betweene Legypt and Barbanie, first laid fiege vnto Tripolis 2 Citie of Barbarie, which being ouercome, they flue a great part of the Citizens, the refidue escaping by flight. Next of all they encountred the Towne of Caper, which wis by them taken and vanquished. At length they belieged Cairaoan alfo; howbeit the Citizens being fufficiently prouided of victuals, are laid to have indured the fiege for eight monethes: which

6C being expired, they were conftrayned to yeeld : at what time there was nothing in Cairaonh und Africa. but wofull flaughters, hideous out-cryes, and prefent death. This Land the Afabians divided Ibnu Rache a among themselves, and began to people and inhabit the same; requiring in the meane frace samous Haftlarge Tributes of the Townes and Proninces subject vnto them. And so they possested all Afre- riographet.

753

The turnie Moores are duided into fue interall People or Tribes : to wit , the Tribes call d

rian.

The arreemes or vari ti of t c d cc n lang age. equel imariz. Africas ion-A abile.

SHACA.

G-ber. Nubun.

A thike broken.

B couries. Of the Arabi-

the Citie of Hu men. * Hacha. Carragan.

Tunis. · Carresn.

Language.

* The Moores of Granada. O the Arabiars waich dwel in tens, and tileir coming un Africa. A Mahame-

Zanbaci, Mulmuds, Zeneti, Hacari and Gumeri. The Ir be of Mulmuds inhabit the Westerne from Tables over your terms of the faid Mount and plaines of the faid Mountaine, and you all the inward plaines of that Re-* Ganarabh. gi m. Their Mefmude haue foure Promoces under them mamely, Hea, Sus, Guzula, and the Territorie of Morocco. The Tribe of Gumers pelicile certaine Mountaines of Barbarie, dwelhig on the sides of these Mountaines which he care against the Mediterran Sea : as like wife they are Lords of all the River called in their linguage Rif. This River bath his Fountaine neere Tremiser cal. unto the fire glits of Gibraliar , and thence runneth East wards to the Kingdome of Tremisen, Trenger called by the Latines Cafaria. Thefe two tribes or people haue feuerall habitations by themcient Cotto felirs : the other three are disperfed consultady over all Africa : howbrit, they are like firangra; her 6.14- gers, oil erned one from another by certaine properties or tokens, maintaining continuall warre ma, or Market among themselves especially they of Numedia. Out of all which it is evident, that in times pate all the forefaid people had their habitations and tents in the plaine fields : enery one of winch favoured their owne faction, and exercifed all labours necessary for mans life, as common among them. The Gouernours of the Countrey attended their droves and flocks; and the Citizens applyed them felues victofome manuall Art, or to husbandry. The faid people are divided into five hundred foverall families, as appeareth by the Genealogies of the Africans . Author That Rach on whereof is one Ibon Rachn, whom I have oftentimes read and perufed. Some writers are of opi-African Hills- nion, that the King of Tombuto, the King of Mells, and the King of Agadez fetch their origing nail from the people of Zanaga, to wit, from them which inhabite the Defart. The forefald fine families or people, being divided into hundreds of progenies, and having innumerable habitations, doe not withflanding vie all one kind of language, called by them A.

quel Amaria, that is, the noble tongue : the Arabians which inhabit Africa, call it a barbarous toning; and this is the true and naturall language of the Africans. Howbeit it is altogether di lerent from other languages, although it hath diners words common with the Arabian tong.e. Ya, all the Gumeri in a manner and most of the Hacars Speake Arabian , though corruptly; which (Huppoie) came fifthere pon to palle, for that the faid people haue had long acq ai stance and convertation with the Arabians. The Negros have divers languages among the refelues, among which they call one Sungai, and the same is current in many Regions ; as namely, in Gualata, Tombuto Gomea, Melle and Gago. Another language there is among the Negros, which they call Guber; and this is rife among the people of Guber, of Cano, of Cafena, Borrolanguage, of Perzegreg, and of Guangra. Likewile the Kingdome of Borno hath a peculiar kind of speech, altogether like vnto that, which is vied in Gaoga. And the Kingdome of Nube hatha language of great affinitie with the Caldean, Arabian and Agretian tongues. But all the Sea-townes of Africa, from the Mediterran Sea to the Mountaines of Atlas, speake broken Arabian. Except the Kingdome and Towne of Maroco, and the in-land Numidians bordering vpon Maroco, Fiz and Tremizen; all which, we the Barbarian tongue. Howbert, they which dwell ouer against Tunis and Tripoli, peake indeeds the Arabian language; albeit most corruptly. Of that Army which was fent by Califa . Otmen the third, in the four hundred yeere of

ers in a breing the Hegeira, there came into Africa tourestore thousand Gentlemen and others, who having subdued fundry Prouinces, at length arrived in Africa : and there the Generall of the whole At my called Ancha Hiban Nafich remained. This man built that great City which is called of vs . Alcair. For he itood in teare of the people of Tunis, left they should betray him, mifdoubting also that they would procure aide out of Siesly, and fo give him the incounter. Wherefore with all his treasure which he had got, he tranelled to the Defart and firme ground, distant from Carthage about one handred and twenty miles, and there is he faid to have built the City of " Aleair. The remnant of his Souldiers he commanded to keepe those places, which were most secure and fit for their defence, and willed them to build where no rocke not fortification was. Which being done, the Arabians began to inhabit Africa, and to disperse themselves among the Africans, who, because they had beene for certaine yeeres subject vinto the Romans or Corregion of Italians, wied to speake their language; and hence it is, that the natural and mother-tongue of the Arabians, which hath great affinitie with the African tongue, grew by little and little to be corrupted; and fo they report that thefe two Nations at length conjoyned themselves in one. Howbert the Arabians visually doe blaze their Pedigree in daily and tratiali Songs, which custome as vet is common both to 'vs, and to the people of Barbarie alto. For no man there is, be he never to bate, which will not to his owne name, adde the name of his Nation; as for example, A a' i.in, Barbarian, or fuch like.

The Mahametan Pricel's alwayes forbad the Arabians to passe ouer Nilus with their Armies and Tents. Howheit in the four hundred yeere of the Hegerra we reade, that they were per- 60 mitted to to doe by a certaint factious and I hilmaticall * Califa: because one of his Nobles had or the Code rebelled against him, whorping the City of Carraoan, and the greatest part of Barbarie. After the death of which Rebell, that Kingdome remained for some yeares vinto his pottericle and tamily; whose jurisdiction (as the African Chronicles report) grew so large and strong in the

time of Eleain (the Mahumetan Califa and Patriarch of Arabia) that hee lent vnto them one Gehear, whom of a flaue he had made his Counfellor, with an huge Armie. This Gehear condu-Geboar, whom of a flate he had made his Counterfor, with an inage Armie. This Geboar Conductor by condition the his Armie Westward, recovered all Numidia and Barbarie. Informeth that hee pierced conquered all vato the Region of Sm, and there claymed most ample Tribute : all which being done, he returnedbacke vnto his Califu, and most faithfully surrendred vnto him what soeuer hee had gained midia, Epita from the Enemy. The Califa feeing his profperous successe, beganne to aspire vnto greater Ex. and Syrae ploits. And Gehoar most firmely promited, that as hee had recovered the Westerne Dominion vnto his Lord, fo would he likewife by force of Warre most certainly reffere vnto him the Countries of the East, to wit, Egypt, Syria, and all Arabia; and protested moreover that with to the greatest hazard of his life, he would bee avenged of all the invaries offered by the Family of Labbus vnto his Lords Predecesfors, and would reuest him in the Royall Seate of his most famous Grand-fathers, great-grand-fathers, and Progenitors. The Califa liking well his audacious promife, caufed an Armie of fourelcore thouland Souldiers, with an infinite fumme of mo- care built.calney and other things necessary for the Warres, to bee delivered vnto him. And so this valiant led Akbair and flout Chieftaine being prouided for warfare, conducted his Troupes through the Defarts of Gibbarthe first Egypt and Barbarie; and having first put to flight the Vice-Califa of Egypt (who fled vnto El- caro: all iethe mir the Califa of Bagdet) in (hort time lie subdued very easily all the Provinces of Beppr and Sy- Arabeck Arciria. Howbeit he could not as yet hold himfelfe fecure; tearing least the Califa of Border would cle, o the Exaffayle him with an Army out of Min, and leat the Garrifons which he had left to keepe Ber- office tembers, should be confirmed to forfake those conquered Prounces. Wherefore he built a Citie, nation, and caused it to be walled round about. In which Citie he left one of his most trustic Captaines, with a great part of the Army; and this Citie hee called by the pame of Alchair, which aftersyard by others was named Cairo. This Alchair is faid daily to to have increased, that no Citie

of the World for buildings and Inhabitants was any way comparable thereunto.

Moreover, Califa Eleain arriving at Alchan, and beeing most honourably entertained by his Sernint Geboar, (who had written for him to come) began to thinke vpon great affaires, and hauing gathered an huge Armie, refolued to wage battell against the Califa of Bazder. In the meane leason he that was appointed Vice-Roy of Barbarie, compacting with the Califa of Bagdet, veelded himselfe and all Barbarie into his hands. Which the Calife moft kindly accepted. and ordayned him King ouer all Africa. But Califa Eleain hearing this newes at Alchair was wonderfully afflicted in minde. Howbeit there was one of his fecret Counfellors a very lear-30 ned and wittie man, who feeing his Lord fo fad and penfine; I affure you, faid he, if you pleafe to take mine aduife, that I will forth-with procure you fuch an Armie, as shall give you great ftore of money, and yet notwithstanding shall doe you good service also. The Califa beeing fome-what emboldened at these speeches, asked his Counsellour how this might possibly bee brought to effect : My Lord (layth his Counfellor) certaine it is, that the Arabians are now growne fo populous, and to io great a number, that all Arabia cannot contayne them, fearcely will the veerely increase of the ground suffice to feed their Droues, and you see with what great famine they are afflicted, and how they are destitute not onely of habitations, but even of vicituals and fustenance. Wherefore if you had heretofore given them leave, they would long ere this have invaded Africa. And if you will now licence them fo to do, doubt you not, but that you shall receive of them an huge Masse of Gold. This counsell could not altogether satisfie the Califa his minde : for he knew right well that the Arabians would so waste all Africa, as it should neither be profitable for himselfe, nor for his Enemies. Notwithstanding, seeing that his Kingdome was altogether endangered, he thought it better to accept those summes of money which his Counsellour promised, and to to be reuenged of his Enemie, then to lose both his Kingdome and Gold all at once. Wherefore he permitted all Arabians, which would pay him Duckats apiece, freely to enter Africa; conditionally that they would shew themselves most deadly Enemies vnto the treacherous King of Barbarie. Which libertie being granted vnto them, it is reported that ten Tribes or Families of Arabians, being halfe the people of Arabia Deferta, came immediately into Africa; vnto whom certaine Inhabitants of Arabia Fully 50 ioyned themselves, infomuch that there were found amongst them about fiftie thousand perfons able to beare Armes: their women, children, and cattell were almost innumerable the Storie whereof Ibna Rachn, the most diligent Chronicler of African Affaires (whom wee haut before

mentioned) fetteth downe at large. These Arabians having traversed the Defart betweene Agree and Barbarie, first laid fiege vnto Tripolis a Citie of Barbarie, which being ouercome, they flue a great part of the Citizens, the refidue escaping by flight. Next of all they encountred the Towne of Capes, which wish them taken and vanquished. At length they belieged Cairaoan alfo; howbeit the Citizens being fufficiently prouided of victuals, are faid to have indured the fiege for eight monethes : which 60 being expired, they were confrayned to yeeld : at what time there was nothing in Carraonh wad Africa. but worfull flaughters, hideous out-cryes, and present death. This Land the Afabians divided Ibnu Rache a among themselves, and began to people and inhabit the same; requiring in the meane space samous Hasto large Tributes of the Townes and Provinces Subject vnto them. And so they posselled all Afric riographet.

King tofe; b.

Manfer.

ca, whill fuch time as one lofep the fonne of leffin attayned to the Kingdome of Marocco.

This lofep was the first King of Marocco, who endeasoured by all meanes to advance the friends and kindredo? the late decarful King of Africa vito the Kingdome, in third did her create with he had expelled all the Arabors out of Cairaoan. Howher the Arabors possible the legions thereabout, gaung themfelbes wholy to spoiles and robberies: and the friends of the legions thereabout, gaung themfelbes wholy to spoiles and robberies and the friends of the fail doctocaled king cooled bear rule but in certaine places only. Afterward increded in the Kingdome of Marocco one Marofor, who was the fourth King and Prelate of that Mahometon Sect which was called Marabofam. This man, able it his Grand-lathers and great Grand-fathers shall always fauoured the Posterite and friends of the forestial decarded African King, and had lad always fauoured the Posterite and friends of the forestial decarded African King, and had nad lower and the first ancient displice desired alregates with them, we reade, and to signs all their authorities. Wherefore making a syncel league with them, we reade,

Sect which was called Manchedom. This man, albeit his Grand-tathers and great Grand-tathers lad always facuoured the Poltertie and friends of the foreign did decaded African Ning, and had reflored them to their annean dignities deutied alregether how to oppose himselfe against them, and to store all their authorities. Wherefore making a syntal league with them, were an inchession of the proceedings of the Arabana against them, and fo very easily ouercame them. Afterward that he prouched the Arabana against them, and fo very easily ouercame them. Afterward to the best for the whom he gave the Habitation of Duccade and Assara, and vinto the barrout the best for of whom he gave the Habitation of Duccade and Assara, and vinto the barrout the polten of the Osmaida. But in proceed or time hee commanded for remnant he bequeathed the polten on Osmaida. But in proceed or time hee commanded for remnant hee begins of the Arabana Assara, and the Arabana Assara, an

Aratina Soa 9 Joann State State of Atlas, which were then peffelfedby the Barbarian, hinder to the Delarts; but the Mountaines of Atlas, which were then planted of the Barbarian vere there planted. Wherefore their pride being abated, they applyed themselues annot Husbandry, hauing no where to repose themselues, but onely in Villages, Cottages, and Tents. And their miliene was 6 much the greater, in that they were confrayaned yearely to disburfe wato the King of Mareco most imple Tribute. Those which inhabited Duccasa, because they were an lung multitude, easily treed themselues from all Tribute and Impositive and Arates and they were an lung multitude, easily treed themselues from all tribute and Impositive and Impos

A great part of the artenuar remaying initial plane, the design of the first of the

The Archivary which inhabit Africa, are divided into three pars one part whereof are called Cachin, the fecond Hiele, and the third Machil. The Cachin are divided into three Nations of Tibles; to wit, the Trives of Elbey, Somani, and Sahi, Morecour, Ethog is divided into three Sanihes that is to key, the Family or Delley Elmuntefig, and Sahar: and thele are disperted into, many Regions. Hiele are derived into four Generations; to wit, the people of Temborns, or Rich, of Sufien, and of Chufain. The Family of Bescheme, is divided into the Mahmer, or Rich, of Sufien, and of Chufain. The Family of Bescheme, is divided into the Linages of Huscame, Husbran and Maffilm. The Tible of Kiele, and chirched into the Kindreds called Doneds Sunds, Afgeg, Eldyrich, Enedri, and Garfom; which Kindreds poffice many Dominions. Machil Inus three Tribes vides them: 100 with Affilm, Humen, and Huffing, Adhilynars divided into Roken, and Selmi Humen into Elhafiand Chinagi and Huffing into Desablefig, Deumanfor, and Deubschalatiolis. Deubsche is dittinguished into the Kindreds called Dudra, Berbon, Vaden, Remea and Humans, Deubsche in the Humen Membels, Huffing, and Albisbeform and lattly, Deubschalatiolis, into Govag, Hedeg, Teleb, and Geoan. All their doe in a manner possible insumerable Regions; infomuch that to recken them yet large, were a mater to got onely distingle to a land timpottined.

The Trib

Mibeg. Sumait. The moting poles and famous Arabians were they of the Family of Etheg, vnto whom Almanfar grue the Begins of Deceds and of Tedes to inhabit. These Arabians event till our times have beene pure to great chitrelle and hazard, partly by the Persugal King, and partly by the King 60 defec. They shuet all opertunities, if need should require, a hundred thousand Souldiers fit to beare Arases, agreat part whereof are Horiemen. The Arabians called Samans, entry that part of the Libran Delars which lyeth quer against the Delars of Tripols. These make often massions into Barbians, for they have no places allotted them therein, but they and their Camels deeperCHAP.I.S.I. The Tribes Casts or Kindreds, inhabiting the African Defarts. 755

petuilly remaine in the Defacts. They are able to leuie fourefoore thousand fouldiers, the greatest partitioning footmen. Likewise the Tribe of Sabad doe inhabite the Defact of Lebys: and Sabid, these has alwaiss great lengue and familiaritie with the King of Gangada. They have such these has alwaiss great lengue and familiaritie with the King of Gangada. They have such abundance of catellithat they due plentitually supply all the Cities of that region with flesh, and that especially in Sammer, time, for all the Winter they throne out of the Defacts. Their number is introduced to about a hundred and rifter thousand hasing on many Horimone among them. Defacts in the Company of the Company

10 country of Acies, when the berders of Mauritania, and vpon some part of mount Asias, being shibseft with the King of Fee. The people of Elmintess are seated in the Province of Azgar, Elmintess and are cilidally the later writers Electable. The cial to pay certaine yearely tribute vinto the King of Fee, being able to furnish about eight thousand Horsemen to the warres. The Kinders of Fee, being able to furnish about eight thousand Horsemen to the warres. The Kinders of the King of Termizen, and are said to enjoy a great part of Namidia. They have more or lesse, three thousand most warlake Horsemen. They possess file likewise great abundance of Camels; for which cause they about 40 Winters in the Defarts. The remains of them occupieth the Plaine which lacts between Salas and Maures. These have huge droves of Cartell, and exercise themselves in Husbandrie, being constrained to pay some yearsy tribute vinto ties King of Fee. They laue Horsemen, who, as a man may sty, are naturally framed to the warres, about four en thousand

20 in number.
Hille, which are also called Beathamir, dwel vpen the frontiers of the Kingdome of Tremizen. Of the resoluted and Oran. Their range vp and downe the D. fare of Tegranus, being in pay vinher the King of the Tremizen, and of great reches and power; in informed that they have a all times in a readingle for the warres fixe thoughout the first the warres fixe thoughout the first the warres fixe thoughout the property of the

hundred Hortemen. The 1 rice of rainer inhabit the region 15 mg between 0 ran and 18 usin- theory, gainer, their exercited Husbanders, paying yearly tribute vito the King of Termizen, and being fairer cable to make one hundred Hortemen.

The people called Maifron, profiled those Defarts of Massia, which extend vinto the Kingdome Massia.

of Busia. Thele likewise are given onely to theft and robberie; they take tribute both of their owne reople, and of other regions adjoyning vinto them. The Tribe of Riceb inhabit those defarts Riceb. of Libys, which border upon Confluctions. Their have most ample Dominions in Numidia, being now durided into fixe parts. This right tamous and warlike Nation receiveth Hipend from the King of Twis, having fue thousand Horsemen at command. The people of Suaid enjoy that De- suaid, fart, which is extended vnto the Signiorie of Tenez. These have very large possessions, receiving 40 thrend from the King of Tremizer, being men of notable dexteritie, as well in the warres, as in all other convertation of life. The Kindred of Azgeg dwell not altogether in one place; for part Azge, of them inhabit the region of Givet, among the people called Hemram; and the relidie pollette that part of Diccala, which lieth neere vinto Azaphi. The Tribe of Eleberit dwell you that Eleberit portion of Helin which is fituate in the Plaine of Sahidim, having the people of Heab iributarie vinto them, and being a very vincinill and barbarous people. The people called Enedriare feated in Enedrit the Plaine of Heath; but the whole region of Heath maintaineth almost foure thousand Horsemen, which not withflanding are unfit for the warres. The people of Garfa have fundry Manti- Garfa ons: neither have they any King or Governour. They are dispersed among other Generations, and especially among the Kindreds of Manebbi and Hemram. These convay Dates from Segel-50 meffs to the Kingdome of Fez, and carry backe againe from thence fuch things as are necessarie

The people called Ruche, who are thought to be defeended from Mailar, doe poffielf; that de-Othe Tribe fart, which heth next wino Deder and Fareala. They have very finall dominions, for which caule of Mailar, they are accounted no white rich phowbeit, they are most valiant fooddiers, and exceeding four they are accounted no white rich phowbeit, they are most valiant fooddiers, and exceeding four the offorce informed the tribe properties and the properties of the properties of the properties of the control of the properties of th

The

Chinan.

Denibeffen.

Rurham.

The Tribe of Elhasis dwelleth upon the sea-coast, neere unto Messa. They doe arme about five hundred Horsemen, and are a Nation altogether rude, and vnacquainted in the warres. Some part of them inhabiteth Azgara. Those which dwell about Meffa, are free from the yoke of superioritie; but the others which remaine in Azgar, are fubicet to the King of Fez. The Kindred of Chinan are dispersed among them, which before were called Elealurb, and these also are subsect vnto the King of Fez. Very warlike people they are, and are able to fet forth two thousand Horlemen. The people of Denibesen are divided into the Kindreds of Dule m. Binbun, Vode, Dewiman for, and Deuthabaidulla. Duleimare convertant in the Delarts of Libja with the African people, called Zanhaga. They have neither dominion, nor yet any stipend; wherefore they are very poore, and given to robberie: they travell vnto Dara, and exchange Cattell for Dates with 10 the inhabitants there. All brauerie and comlinesse of appariell they veterly neglect; and their number of fighting men is ten thouland, foure thouland being Horlemen, and the refidue Footemen. The people called Burban, posselle that part of the Libyan Defart which adiovned vnto Sus: They are a huge multitude, neither have they any riches befides Camels. Vnto them is fubiest the Citie of Tellet, which scarce suffeeth them for the maintenance of their Horses, being but a few. The people of Vode enjoyeth that Defart, which is fituate betweene Guaden and Gualata. They beare tule over the Guadennes, and of the Duke of Gualata they receive yearely tribute, and their number is growne almost infinite: for by report, they are of abilitie to bring into the field almost threescore thousand most skilfull fouldiers; notwithstanding, they have great want of Horses. The Tribe of Racmen occupie that Delart which is next vnto Hacha: they have verie 20 large possessions, and doe in the Spring-time visally travell voto Tesses; for then alwaies they have formwhat to do with the inhabitants there. Their people fit for Armes are to the number of

twelve thousand, albeit they have very few Horsemen. The Nation of Hamus inhabit the De-

farts of Tazanost, exacting some tribute of the inhabitants there, and with daily incursions like-

habit the Defart ouer against Segelmest, who continually wander by the Libyan Defarts as farre

as Ighid. They have cributarie vnto them the people of Segelmeffe, of Todgaran, of Tebelbelt, and

of Dara. Their foile yeeldeth fuch abundance of Dates, that the yearely increase thereof is suf-

other Nations, being able to turnish for the warres about three thousand Hor emen. There dwell

likewise among these certaine other Arabians of more base condition, called in their language

Garfa Efgeb; which notwithstanding hauegreat abundance of Horses, and of all other Cat-

tell. The people of Menebbe doe almost inhabite the very same Desart, having two Provinces

of Numidia vn ler them ; to wit, Margara, and Retebbe. These also are a most valiant Nation.

being in pay under the Prouince of Segelme 15, and being able to make about two thousand Hors-

men. The Kindred of Husein, which are thought to be descended of Desimanfor, are feated vpon

the Mountaines of Atlas. They have in the faid Mountaines a large jurifdiction, namely, divers

Cattles every where, and many most rich and flourithing Cities; all which, they thinke, were gi-

Kingdome, the Kindred of Hulein aftoorded them great aide and feruice. Their dominion is now

fabrect vnto the Kings of Fez and of Segelmess. They have a Captaine, which for the most part

resideth at the Citie, commonly called Garselum. Likewise they are alwaies in a manner, tra-

uer ing of that Defart, which in their language is called Eddara. They are taken to be a most rich and honest people, being of abilitie to furnish for the warres about fixe thousand Horsemen. A-

uen them in old time by the Vice-royes of the Marini: for as soone as they had wonne that 40

ficient to maintaine the malthough they had nothing elie to live on. They are of great fame in 30

The Generation of Dehemrum, which are faid to derive their pedigree from Dewimanfor, in-

wife moletting the people of Nan. Their number of fouldiers is almost eight thousand.

The people descended of Deumanior. Debemrum.

Menebbe.

Hufein,

Abulbufein.

The of-fpring o Denibubat. Gharrag.

Bedeg.

" A'zer. Alzouthe neit of Sca-Hornets, a cage of vn. elean : Birds, and place of

mong thefe, you shall oftentimes find many Arabians of another fort, whom they vie onely to be their fernants. The Tribe of Abulbufein doe inhabit part of the forefaid Defart of Eddara, howbeit a very finall part; the greatest number of whom are brought vnto such extreme milery, that they have not in those their wild tents sufficient sustenance to live vpon. One Generation of the people of Denihubaidulla are those which are named Gharrag: these 50 enioy the Defarts of Benigoms and Fighig, having very large possessions in Numina. They are stipendaries vnto the King of Tremizen, who diligently endeuoureth to bring them to peace and tranquillitie of life; for they are wholly given to theft and robberie. In Summer-time they vfually repaire vnto Tremizen, where they are thought for that featon of the yeare to fettle their abode : their Horlemen are to the number of foure thousand, all which are most noble warriours. The Kindred of Hedez possesse a certaine Defort necre vinto Tremizen, called in their owne language Hangad. Thele have no stipend from any Prince, nor yet any jurisdiction at all, topine and stealth is onely delightfull vnto them; they prouide onely for their family and themselves, and are able to let forth about fine hundred Horlemen. The Tribe of Theleb inhabite the Plaine of * Algezer; these have often vagaries over the Defarts vnto the Province of Tedgear. Vnto 60 them were subject in times past, the most famous Cities of Algezer and Tedelles : howbeit in these our dayes they were reconcred agains from them by Eurbaroffa the Turke; which leste could not but greatly grieue and moleit their King. It is reported moreover, that at the fame time, the principall of the faid people of Theleb were cut off. For thrength and cumning in chi-

value they were inferiour to no other Nation; their Horsemen were about three thousand. The Tribe of Geboan inhabite not all in one place : for part of them you may find among the people of Guarag, and the residue amongst the people of Hedeg; and they are vinto them no other- Gdozz. wife then their feruants, which condition they notivith finnding most patiently and willingly wife then their lerdants, which contains is to bee noted by the way; to wit, that the two forenamed people called Schachin and Hilel, are originally Arabians of Arabia Defarta, and think called Cerbie themselves to be descensed from Ismael, the sonne of Abraham. And those which we called Ma- and Hille and chil, came first forth of Arabia Falix, and derive their pedigree from Saba. Before whom the ic aded from Mahumetans preferre the former, which of Ifmael are called Ifmaelites. And because there hath Ifmae the bafe 10 alwaies been great controuerse among them, which part should bee of greater Nobilitie, they some of have written on both fides many Dialogues and Epigrams, whereby each man is wont to blaze The diabiant the Renowne, the Vertues, Manners, and laudable Cuitomes of his owne Nation. The ancient cilled Machie, Arabians, which were before the times of the Ismaelnes, were called by the African Historiogra- descended of phers Arabi-Araba; as if a mar should fay, Arabians of Arabia. But those which came of Saba, Ilmael, they call Arabi Mus-Araba; as if they thould fay, Arabians ingrafted into the land of Arabia, or Arabians accidentally, because they were not originally bred and borne in Arabia. And them which afterward came into Africa, they name in their language Muftehgeme, that is, Barbarous Arabians; and that because they joyned themselnes vnto strangers, infomuch that not onely their speech, but their manners also are most corrupt and barbarous. These are (friend-20 ly Reader) the particulars, which for thefe ten yeeres my memorie could referue, as touching the originals and diverlities of the Africans and Arabians; in all which time I remember not, that euer Iread, or faw any Historie of that Nation. He that will know more, let him haue recourse

CHAP. I.S.I. Manners and customes of the Africans. Their attire. &c.

unto Hibra Racha the Hilloriographer before named.

Those time kinds of people before rehearted, to wit, the people of Zenega of Ganfiga, of Terga, The manners of Leura, and of Bardeon, are called of the Latins, Numida : and they live all after one manner, that and customes is to fay, without all law and civilitie. Their garment is a narrow and bafe piece of cloth, wherewith fearce halfe their body is coursed. Some of them wrap their heads in a kind of black cloth, The people of as it were with a fearfe, such as the Turkes vie, which is commonly called a Turbant. Such as will Numidia. be differred from the common fort, for Gentlemen weare a lacket made of blew Cotton with Their active. 30 wide fleeues. And Cotton-cloth is brought vnto them by certaine Merchants from the land of

Negros. They have no beads fit to ride vpon, except their Camels; vnto whom Nature, be- Camels tweene the bunch standing youn the hinder part of their backes and their necks, hath allotted a place, which may fitly ferue to ride vpon, in itead of a faddle. Their manner of riding is most ridiculous. For fometimes they lay their leggs acrosse vpon the Camels necke; and sometimes againe (hauing no knowledge nor regard of stirrops) they rest their feete vpon a rope, which is Riding. cast over his shoulders. In stead of spurres, they vie a truncheon of a cubites length, having at the one end thereof a Goade, wherewith they pricke onely the shoulders of their Camels. Those Camels which they vie to ride upon have a hole bored through the griffles of their note, in the which a ring of leather is faftened, whereby as with a bit, they are more eatily curbed and ma-40 fired; after which manner I have feene bufilles vied in Italie. For beds, they lie vpon mats made of fedge and bulruftes. Their tents are covered for the most part with course chamlet, or Beds and with a harsh kind of Wooll, which commonly groweth vpon the boughes of their Date- tents.

As for their manner of living, it would feeme to any man incredible what hunger and fearer- Woollgrowtie this Nation will indure. Bread they have none at all, neither vie they any leething or ro- ing vpon the thing; their foode is Camels milke onely, and they define no other dainties. For their break-fast Miscrable diet. they drinke off a great cup of Camels milke: for supper they have certaine dried fiesh steeped in butter and milke, whereof each man taking his share, eateth it out of his fift. And that this their meate may not flay long vindigefled in their flomacks, they fup off the forefaid broth wherein 50 their fielh was fleeped : for which purpole they vie the palmes of their hands as a most fit in-

ftrument framed by nature to the fame end. After that, each one drinks his cup of milke, and fo Naturalldift, their supper hath an end. These Numidians, while they have any store of milke, regard water nothing at all, which for the most part hapneth in the Spring of the yeare, all which time you shall find some among them that will neither wash their hands nor their faces. Which feemeth not altogether to be vulikely; for (as we faid before) while their milke lafteth, they frequent Slouens. not those places where water is common : yea, and their Camels, to long as they may feede vpon graffe, will drinke no water at all. They fpend their whole dayes in hunting and theening : Oc. main. for all their indeauour and exercife is to drive away the Camels of their enemies; neither will they remaine about three dayes in one place, by reason that they have not passure any longer

60 for the full enance of their Camels. And albeit (as is aforefaid) they have no civilitie at all, nor Policyany Lawes preferibed vnto them; yet have they a certaine Governour or Prince placed over them, vnto whom they render obedience and due honour, as vnto their King. They are not only ignorant of all good learning and liberall Sciences; but are likewife altogether careleffe and defittute of vertue: infomuch that you shall find fearce one amongst them all, which is a man of

758 indgement or counfell. And if any injuried partie will goe to the Law with his adverfarie, hee must rid; continually fine or fixe daies before he can come to the speech of any sudge. This Na-Inde s. tion hash all learning and good disciplines in such contempt, that they will not once vouchtare to goe out of their deferts for the study and attaining thereof : neither, if any learned man shall Learning. chance to come among them, can they loue his company and connertation, in regard of their most rule and deteffable behaniour. Howbeit, if they can find any judge, which can frame himlelfe to live and continue among them, to him they give most large yearely also wance. Some allow their Iudge a thousand ducates yearely, some more, and some lesse, according as themselves thinke good. They that will feeme to be accounted of the better fort, court their heads (as I faid before) with a piece of blacke cloth, part whereof. like a vizard or maske, reacheth downe ouer their 10 faces, covering all their countenance except their eyes; and this is their daily kind of attire. And to often as they put meate into their mouthes, they remove the faid maske; which being Manner of done, they forthwith couer their mouthes againe, alleaging this fond reaton : for (fay they) as it is volcemely for a man, after he hath received meate into his stomacke, to vomit it out of his mouth againe, and to cast it upon the earth; even so it is an undecent part to eate meate with a mans mouth vncouered. The women of this Nation be groffe, corpuler; and of a swart complexion. They are fattest vpon their breft and paps, but flender about the girdle-flead. Very civill they are, after their manner, both in speech and gestures : sometimes they will accept of a kisse; but who so tempteth them farther, putteth his owne life in hazard. For by reaton of iealouse, you may see them 20 tealoulie. daily one to be the death and destruction of another, and that in such sauage and brutish manner, that in this case they will shew no compassion at all. And they seeme to bee more wase in this behalfe then divers of our people, for they will by no meanes match themselves vnto an harlot. The liberalitie of this people hath at all times been exceeding great. And when any trauellers may palle through their drie and defart Territories, they will never repaire vnto their tents, neither will they themselves travell upon the common high way. And if any Caravan, or multitude of Merchants will palle thole Delarts, they are bound to pay certaine Cultome vnto the Prince Merchants. of the fail people, namely, for every Camels load, a piece of cloth worth a Ducat. Vpon a time I remember, that trauelling in the companie of certaine Merchants ouer the De-The Authours fart, called by them Araoan, it was our chance there to meete with the Prince of Zanaga , who, 20 after he had received his due custome, inuited the said companie of Merchants, for their recreation, to goe and abide with him in his tents foure or fine dayes. Howbeit, because his tents were too farre out of our way, and for that wee should have wand; ed farther then we thought good, esteeming it more convenient for vs to hold on our direct course, we refused his gentle offer, and for his courtelle gaue him great thankes. But not being fatisfied therewith, he commanded that our Camels should proceede on forward, but the Merchantshe carried along with him, and game Camels and them very fumptuous entertainement at his place of abode. Where we were no fooner arrived, Offriches vied but this good Prince caused Camels of all kinds and Offriches, which he had hunted and taken for victuals. by the way, to bee killed for his houshold promition. Howbert, wee requested him not to make fuch daily flaughters of his Camels; affirming moreouer, that we never vied to eate the flesh of Princelyfare, a gelt Camell, but when all other v. ctuals failed vs. Whereunto hee answered, that he should 40 deale vacually, if he welcommed to worthy and to feldome-feene ghefts with the killing of smal Cattell onely. Wherefore hee wished vs to fall to such provision as was set before vs. Heere might you have feene great plenty of rofted and fodden flesh : their rofted Offriches were brought to the Table in wicker platters, being featoned with fundry kinds of Herbes and Spices. Their bread made of Mill and Panicke was of a most fauorie and pleasant taste: and alwaies at Breadof the end of dinner or supper we had plentie of Dates, and great store of Milke serued in. Yea, this Millet. bountifull and noble Prince, that he might fufficiently flew how welcome were write him, would together with his Nebilitie alwaies beare vs company : howbert, we ever direct and supped apart by our felues. Moreouer, hee caused certaine religious and most learned men to come Religious vnto our banquet; who, all the time wee remained with the faid Prince, vfed not to e teany men. bread at all, but fed onely upon flesh and milke. Whereat we being somewhat amazed, the good Prince gently told vs, that they all were borne in such places, whereas no kind of graine would grow : howbeit, that himfelfe for the enter an ement of strangers, had great plentie of Corne laid up in flore. Wherefore he bade us to be of good cheere, taying, That he would eate onely of Places without fuch things as his owne natine foyle affoorded : airrming moreoner, that bread was vet in vie graine. among them at their feaft of Paffeouer, and at other feafts also, whereupon they yied to offer facrifice. And thus we remained with him for the space of two dayes; all which time, what wonderfull and magnificent cheare we had made vs, would feeme incredible to report. But the third day, being defirous to take our leaue, the Prince accompanied vs to that place where wee 60 ouertooke our Camels and companie tent before. And this I dare most deepely take mine cath on, that we ipent the faid Prince ten times more, then our Custome which he received came to. We thought it not amisse here to set downe this Historie, to declare in some fort the courteste and liberalitie of the faid Nation. Neither could the Prince aforefaid understand our language,

ner we his ; but all our speech to and fro was made by an interpreter. And this which we have here recorded as touching this nation, is likewise to bee understood of the other foure Nations aboue mentioned, which are dispersed ouer the relicine of the Numidian Delarts.

CHAP. I. S. I.

The Arabansas they have sundrie mantions and places of abode, to doe they live after a di-The manners The Arabans, as they have fund re mannons and places of above, to the trey flue after a under manner. These which is habite between e Namidia and Libya leade a most mile or the draitest rable and diffrested lite, dislering much in this regard from those Africans, whom we all rmed to which inhabit dwell in Libra. How best, they are farre more valuant then the faid Africans, and vie common- Aira. ly to exchange Cameis in the land of Negras: they have likewife great frore of Horfes, which in Arabayalour, ly to exchange Camels in the land of Negros: they have made the wine great free of Flories, which in Whire de Forone they call Hories of Barbarie. They take wonderfull delight in hunting and puriting of Barbarie Hories 10 Deare, of will Alles, of Offiches, and fuch like. Neither is here to be omitted, that the greater les are first. part of Arabians which inhabite Numidia, are very witty and concerted in penning of verfes; Arabian Poems wherein each man will decypher his loue, his hunting, his combates, and other his worthy acts: and Verfee, and this is done for the most part in rime, after the Italian manner. And albeit they are most liberally minded, yet dare they not by bountifull giving make any thew of wealth; for they are daily oppressed with manifold inconveniences. They are apporelled after the Numidians taili- Apparelle on, faving that their women differ fomewhat from the women of Numidia. Those Defarts which they doe now entry, were wont to be posselled by Africans: but the Arabians with their Armie inuading that part of Africa, draue out the naturali Numidians, and referred the

Defarts adjoyning upon the Land of Dates, unto themselves: but the Namidians began to in- Bileda's crid. 20 hapite those Delarts which border upon the land of Negros. The Arabians which ewell betweene Mount Atlas and the Mediterran fea, are farre wealthier then these which weenow fixake of both for coftlineffe of apparrell, for good horse-meate, and for the flatelineffe and beautie of their tents. Their Hories also are of hetter shape, and more corpulent, but not so switt as the Hories of the Numidian Delire. They exercife Husbandry, and have great increase of corne. Their droues and flockes of Cattell be innumerable, infomuch that they cannot inhabit one by another for want of parture. They are fomewhat more vile and barbarous then those which inhabit the Delarts, and yet they are not altogether delititute of liberalitie: part of them which divel in the territory of Fez are fubicet vnto the King of Fez. Those which remaine in Marocco and Duccala have continued this long time free from all exaction and tribute; but so toone as 20 the King of Portugal began to beare rule over Azafi and Azamor, there began also among them Portugale alig

the King of Portugual began to there the being affailed by the King of Portugual on the one fide, and by in Afra, the the King of Fez on the other, and being oppressed also with extreme famine and scarcitic of that The dr burse yeare, they were brought vnto fuch milery, that they freely offered themselves as slaves vnto offer themthe Portugals, Submitting themselves to any man, that was willing to relieve their intolerable solves shares hunger: and by this meanes fcarce one of them was left in all Duccala.

Moreover, those which possesse the Defarts bordering vpon the Kingdomes of Tremizen and would release Twis, may all of them (in regard of the reft) be called Noblemen, and Gentlemen: For their Go- hanger, nernours receiving enery years great renenues from the King of Tunis, druide the fame afterward among their people, to the call they may alloide all differd; and by this meanes all differt on is

40 eichewed, and peace is kept firme and inniolable among them. They have notable dexteritie and cunning both in making of Tents, and in bringing up and keeping of Horses. In Summertime they vilially come neere unto Timis, to the end that each man may prouide himfelf of bread, armour, and other necessaries; all which they carrie with them into the Defarts, remaining there the whole Winter. In the Spring of the years they apply themselves vinto hunting, infomuch that no beaft can escape their pursuite. My selfe (I remember) was once at their tents, to Their huamy no little danger and inconvenience, where I faw greater quantitie of Cloth, Braile, Yron, and ting Copper, then a man shall oftentimes find in the most rich ware-houses of some Cities. Howbeit no traft is to be given voto them; for if occasion ferue, they will play the thieues most flily and cunningly; notwithstanding, they seeme to carrie some shew of cunlitie. They take great de- Honeity. 50 light in Poetrie, and will pen most excellent verses, their lang age being very pure and el. gant. Poetry. Irany worthy Poet he found among them, he is accepted by their Gouernours with great honor and liberalitie; neither would any man cafily believe what wit and decencie is in their ver-

Their women (according to the guife of that countrie) goe very gorgeoutly attired: they Women weare linnen Gownes and blacke, with exceeding wide fleeties, over which fometimes they care a Mande of the fame colour, or of blew, the corners of which Mantle are very artificially fatiened about their shoulders with a rine fluor chipe. Likewife they have rings hanging at their eares, which for the mell part are made of filter; they weare many rings allo ypon their fingers Moreour, they visally we are about their thighes and ankles certaine scarfes and rings, after the 60 fashion of the Africair. They court their faces with certains maskes, having onely two licks for their eyes to people one at. If any man chance to meete with them, they prefer by hise

their face sparing by him with the nortex, opening forme of their Allies or Kinstolks; for visco them the fall value of a puterful of the squeether is there any vie of the faid maske to long as they be in prefence. These And has a contact tracellary journey (as they ortentimes dow) this

750

fit their women upon certaine laddles made handfomely of wicker for the fame purpose, and failned to their Camels backes, neither be they any thing too wide, but fit onely for a woman to it in. When they goe to the wars, each man carries his wife with him, to the end that she may cheare up her good man, and give him encouragement. Their Damiels which are unmarried do vitally paint their faces, brefts, armes, hands, and fingers with a kind of counterfeit colour which is accounte in most decent custome amongst them. But this fashion was first brought in by thole Arabians, which before we called Africans, what time they began first of all to inhabite that region; for before then, they never yied any false or glozing colours. The women of Barbarie vie not this fond kind of painting, but contenting themselves onely with their naturall hiew, they regard not fuch fained ornaments: howbeit fometimes they will temper a certaine Io colour with henf-dung and fafron, wherewithall they paint a little round foot on the bals of their cheekes about the bredth of a French Crowne. Likewise betweene their eye-browes they make a triangle, and paint upon their chinnes a patch like unto an cline leafe. Some of them alto doe paint their eye-browes : and this cultome is very highly effected of by the Arabian Poers, and by the Gentlemen of that countrie. Howbeit, they will not vie thele fantaiticall ornaments aboue two or three dayes together: all which time they will not bee seene to any of their friends, except it be to their husbands and children : for these painting seeme to be great allurements vnto luft, whereby the faid women thinke themselves more trim and beauti-

The life of the Arabians in the Defarts betweene Barbarie and Egypt is full of miferie and ca- 20

The Arabians

of Bercalay

pawne vnto

in the Defacts lamitie! for the places where they inhabite, are barren and unpleatant. They have fome neere Eggs. Rere of Camels and other Cattell: howbeit, their fedder is fo fearee, that they cannot well furfaine them. Neither shall you find over all the whole region any place fit to beare corne. And if in that Defart there be any villages at all, which vie to husband and manure their ground; vet reape they small commoditie thereby, except it bee for plentifull increase of Dates. Their Camelsand other of their Cattell, they exchange for Dates and Corne; and fo the poore Hufbandmen of the forefaid villages have some small recompence for their labours: notwithstanding, how can all this fatisfie the hunger of fuch a multitude ? For you shall daily fee in Sicilia great numbers of their fonnes laid to pawne; because when they have not wherewithall to paw for the Corne which they there buy, they are conftrained to leave their fonnes behind them, as pledges of future payment. But the Sicilians, if their money bee not paid them at the time aptheir fonnes te pointed, will chalenge the Arabians formes to be their flaues. Which day being once paft, if any father will redeeme his child, hee must disbutte thrice or foure times fo much as the due debt Cruell famine, amounteth vnto : for which cause they are the mod notable thicues in the whole world. If any strangerfall into their hands, depriving him of all that he hath, they prefently carry him to Siedr, and there either fell or exchange him for Come, And I think, that no Merchants durit at any time within thefe hundred yeares arrive for traffeks take vpon any part of their coalt. For when they are to passe by with merchandize, or about any other weightie affaires, they eschew that resign hur hundred miles at the leaft. Once I remember, that I my felfe, for my better fecuritie, and to a lotde the danger of those mischieuous people, went in companie with certaine Merchants, who in three flups failed along their coaft. Wee were no focuer cipied of them, but forthwith they came running to the flicre, making figures that they would traffiq to with vs to our great advantage. Howbeit, because we durk not repose any trust in them, none of our companie would depart the ship, before they had delinered certaine pledges vinto vs. Which being done, we bought certaine Eunuchs, or gelded men and good fore of Funter of them. And fo immeliately weighing our ankers, we betooke vs to flight, fearing left wee should have been met withall by the Sicilian and Rhodian Pirates, and been spoiled not onely of our goods, but of our liberties allo. To be short, the faid Arabians are very rude, forierne, beggstiy, lease, and hangerflarued people having God (no doubt) alwaies diff leafed against the maby whose vengeance they

Miferable

daily faftaine tuch grieuous calamities.

You thall find many among the Africans which line altogether a shepheards or drouers life, 50 inhabiting upon the beginning of mount Allar, and being catperfes here and there over the fame Mountaine. They are constrained alwaies to pay tribute ender to the King of the fame region where they dwell, or elfe to the Arabians, except those onely which inhabite Timefra, who are free from all forren superioritie, and are of great power. They speake the same kind of language that other Africans doe, except fome tew or them which connecte with the inhabitants of the Citie called Vrbs (which is neere vato Tenis) who speake the Arabian tongue. Moreover, there is a certaine people inhabiting that region, which duideth Numidia from Tunis. There oftentimes wage warre against the King of Timis bimifelte, which they put in practice not many yeares fince, when as the faid King his forme marching towards 60 them from Conflationa with an Armie, for the demanding of fuch tribute as was due vinto him, fought a verie vinfortuna e battell. For no fooner were they adultified of the Kings fonne his approach, but forthwith they went to meete him with two thouland Hollemen, and at length vanquithed and flew him as vnawares, carrying home with them all the furniture, bag,

The ouers threw and death of the and bassage, which he had brought forth. And this was done in the yeare of Mahamets Hegerra 915. From that time their Fame hath beene spred abroad in all places. Yea, many of the King of Tunis his Subjects revolted from their King vato them; infomuch that the Prince of this People is growne fo puffant, that fearcely is his equal! to be found in all Africa. The ancient Africans were much addicted to Idolatrie, even as certaine of the Perfuns are at The Fairh and

this day fome of whom worthing the Sunne, and others the Fire, for their gods. For the faul Religion of the Africans had in times pail magnificent and most stately Temples built, and dedicated as well ancient Afrito the honour of the Sunne as of the Fire. In these Temples day and night they kept Fire kind. led, giving diligent keed that it might not at any time be extinguished, even as we reade of the Fire worthin. to Roman Vestall Virgins : all which you may reade more fully and at large in the Persian and Afri- ped.

can Chronicles. Those Africans which inhabited Libya and Numidia, would each of them worthip fome certaine Planet, vinto whom likewise they offered Sacrifices and Prayers. Some others of the Land of Negros worthip Guighimo, that is to fay, The Lord of Heaven. And this found point of Religion was not delivered vnto them by any Prophet or Teacher , but was infpired, as it were, from God himfelfe. After that, they embraced the Icrifb Law, wherein they are faid to have continued many yeeres. Afterward they professed the Christian Religion, and continued Christians, vntill such time as the Mahametan Superstition prevailed; which came to palle in the years of the Hegeira 208. About which time certains of Mahumets diffiples to be witched them with eloquene and deceivable speeches, that they allured their weake 20 minds to confent vinto their opinion; infomuch that all the Kingdomes of the Negroes adjoy-

ning vnto Libya received the Mihumetan Law. Neither is there any Region in all the Negros No Childian Land, which hath in it are this day any Christians at all. At the same time such as were found to among the No. be leves, Christians, croft be African Religion, were slame curry man or them. Howbeit those year Weemay this has been been been as a care all of them your could be laise. which dwell neere vnto the Ocean Sea, are all of them very grode Idolaters. Howbeit af nihment of terward, civill diffensions arring among them, neglecting the Law of Mahumet, they slew God for their all the Priefts and Governours of this Region. Which turnult when it came to the eares many siddle all the Priests and Go remours or one region, which are fail Rebels of Barbarie, to which Monwit, those which were revolted from the Califa of Bagdet , and severely punished their misse- flers Africa

Those Writers which record the Histories of the Arabians doings are all jointly of opinion, well as of the that the Africans were wont to vie onely the Latine letters. The Arabians have no Historie * of natural Done. African matters, which was not first written in Latine. They have certaine ancient Authors, tills, circume, ti who writ partly in the times of the Arrians, and partly before their times, the names of all their (which which are cleane forgotten. But when as those which rebelled against the Califa of Bagder (as had this good is afor faid) got the upper hand in Africa, they burnt all the Africans bookes. For they were to yeeld vithe of opinion, that the Africans, to long as they had any knowledge of Naturall Pullotophie, or learned labors of opinion, that the Africant, to long as they had any kindwieuge of anathran Emissiopine, of cfs. Aug.) of other good Arts and Sciences, would energy day more and more arrogantly contemne the The Arismat. Law of Mahimet. Contrariwile, tome Historiographers there are which affirme, that the Afrit ter pressibed. can had a kind of letters peculiar vnto themselnes; which notwithstanding, from the time the Vandals 40 wherein the Italians began first to inhabite Barbarie, and wherein the Christians fleeing out of making way Habe from the Gothes, began to Libdue those Provinces of Africa, were vetterly abulified and to Mahamit.

The letters taken away. For it is likely that a People vanquished should follow the customes and the let- and chrastics ters allo of their Conquerours. And did not the fame thing happen to the Persians, while the of the Athans. Arabians Empire flood! For certaine it is, that the Persians at the same time lost those letters The Assessment which were peculiar vnto their Nation; and that all their bookes, by the commandement of vied in times the Mahametan Prelates, were burnt; least their knowledge in naturall Philosophie, or their patt none of the kind of or their idelatrons Religion might module them to contemne the precepts of Makumet. The letters but the like ailo (as we thewed before) befell the Barbarians, when as the Italians and the Gothes viur Romankiters. ped their Dominions in Barbarie; which may here (I hope) faffice the gentle Reader. Howher * Perhaps he 50 it this is out of doubt, that all the Sea-Cities and Inland-Cities of Barbarie doe vie Latine let meanth the ters onely, whenever r they will commit any Epitaphs, or any other Veries or Profe vnto po- Salah, Treati-Herrie. The consideration of all which former particulars hath made me to be of opinion, that white, and othe Africane in times past had their owne proper and peculiar letters, wherein they described that their doings and emplaits. For it is likely that the Romans, when they first fubdued these Pro- Sciencequile time; s as C r querours vitally doe) viterly fpoiled and tooke away all their letters and memorie, and effal lifted their owne letters in the flead thereof; to the end that the fame and he - line storage caunear of the Roman P. ople might there onely be continued. And who knoweth not that the 1, 148 the very lame attempt was practited by the Gother upon the flately buildings of the Romans, and beaucrofthe

by the Arabi magain, the Monaments of the Persans. Concerning those nine hundred by p. P. man to be Ce wherein the African with the Litters of the Arabians, Ibina Rachich, a more deligent Write 1 of bound. Africa, oth in 1% Clr, nicle moth largely dispute; whether the Africans cutr had any pending kind or writing or no. Aid at lait he concludeth the affirmatine part; that they lad the (fayt the) who he ier coveth this, may as well draye, that they had a Language precibin vino themfelies. For it cannot be that any Poor le floodd hate a proper hand or Speech, and Rrrr 3

The Monn-

exceeding

All the Region of Barbare, and the Mountaines contained therein, are subject more to cold All the Region of Date on the Annual Property of the robest For Feldome Commething gale of wind which bringeth not fome Snow therwith, pheesin 4764 In all the Ind Monntaines there grow abundance of Fruits, but not fo great plentie of Corne. The Inhabitants of these Mountaines live for the greatest part of the yeere vpon Barley Bread. The Springs and Rivers iffling forth of the faid Mountaines, representing the qualitie and tafte of their native foyle, are formewhat mu die and impure, especially upon the confines of Manritania. These Mountaines likewise are replenished with Woods and loftie Trees, and are greatly flored with Beafts of all kinds. But the little Hills and Valleys lying between the forefaid 10 Mountaines and Mount Atlas are farre more commodious, and abounding with Corne. For they are montened with Rivers springing out of Atlas, and from thence holding on their course to the Mediterran Sea. And albeit Woods are somewhat more scarce upon these Plaines, yet are they much more fruitfull, then be the plaine Countreys fituate betweene Arlas and the Ocran Sea, as namely, the Regions of Maroco, of Duccala, of Tedles, of Temesna, of Azgara, and the Country lying towards the Straights of Gibraltar. The Mountaines of Atlas are exceeding coll and barren, and bring forth but small store of Corne, being woody on all sides, and engendring almost all the Rivers of Africa. The Fountaines of Aslas are even in the midst of Summer extremely cold; to that if a man dippeth his hand therein for any long space, he is in great danger of loing the fame. Howbeit the faid Mountaines are not to cold in all places: 20 for some parts thereof are of such mille temperature, that they may be right commodiously inhabited : yea , and fundry places thereof are well flored with inhabitants; as in the iccond part of this present discourse we will declare more at large. Those places which are destitute of Inhabitants be either extremely cold, as namely, the same which lie ouer against Mauritamia: or very rough and unpleasant, to wit, those which are directly opposite to the Region of Temefra, Where notwithuan ing in Summer time they may feed their great and small Cattell, but not in Winter by any meanes. For then the North wind fo furiously rageth, bringing with it such abundance of Snow; that all the Cattell which till then remaine upon the faid Mountaines and a great part of the People alfo are forced to lofe their lines in regard thereof : wherefore who foeder nath any occasion to trauale that way in Winter time, chuseth rather to take 20 his Iouthay betweene Mauritania and Numidia. Those Merchants which bring Dates out of Mod wonder - Names for the vie and fernice of other Nations, fet forth visally upon their lourney about the solut October: and yet they are oftentimes fo oppressed and ouertaken with a sodaine fall of Show, that harvely one man among them all escapeth the danger of the tempest. For when it

f ... 186 '5" 'a ble honers as bout October and Nouemo.

beginned to inow over night, before the next morning not onely Carts and Men, but even the very Trees are to drowned and ouerwhelmed therein, that it is not possible to finde any mention of them. Howbeit the dead Carkaffes are then found, when the Sunne hath melted

The extreme danger of Snow which Ichn Leo himfelfe efcaped.

I my felfe alfo, by the goodnesse of Almightie GoD, twice escaped the most dreadfull danger of the forelaid Snow; whereof, if it may not be tedious to the Reader, I will here in few words make relation. Vpon a certaine day of the forefaid moneth of Ochober, trauelling with a 40 great companie of Merchants towards Atlas, wee were there about the Sunne going downe weather-beaten with a most cold and fnowy kind of Hayle. Here we found eleuen or twelue Horre-men (Arabians to our thinking) who perfuading vs to leane our Carts and to goe with them, promited vs a good and fecure place to lodge in. For mine owne part, that I night not feeme altogether vncuuil, I thought it not meet to refuse their good offer; albeit I stood in doubt left they went about to practife some mischiefe. Wherefore I bethought my selfe to hide up a certaine fumme of gold which I had as then about me. But all being readie to rice, I had no leafure to hide away my Coyne from them; whereupon I fained that I would goe eafe my felfe. And to departing a while their companie, and getting me vindera certaine Tree, whereof I tooke diligent notice, I buried my money betweene certaine flones and the roote of the faid Tree. And then we rode on quietly till about mid-night. What time one of them thinking that he had flaved long enough for his Prey, began to vtter that in words which fecretly he had conceined in his mind. For he asked whether I had any money about me or no? To whom I answered, that I had left my money behind with one of them which attended the Carts, and that I had then none at all about me. Howbeit they being no whit fatisfied with this answer, commanded me, for all the cold weather, to strip my selfe out of mine apparell. At length when they could find no money at all, they faid in lefting and icoffing wife, that they did this for no other purpose, but onely to see how strong and hardy I was, and how I could endure the cold and tempeltuous feafon. Well, on we rode, feeking our way as well as wee could that darke 60 and diffinall night; and anone we heard the bleating of Sheepe, coniecturing thereby, that wee were not faire diffant from some habitation of people. Wherefore out of hand we directed our course thatherwards : being constrained to leade our Horles thorow thicke Woods , and ouer steepe and craggie Rockes, to the great hazard and perill of our lines. And at length after many

CHAP.I.S.I. Danger by thirst. A deare price for a cup of water.

Jabours, wee found Shephear Is in a certaine Caue: who, having with much paines brought their Cartell in there, had kindled a luftle fire for themselves, which they were constrained , by reafon of the extreme cold, daily to fit by. Who understanding our companie to be Arabians, feared at the first that we would doe them some mischiefe: but afterward being perswaded that we were driven thither by extremitie of cold, and being more secure of vs, they gaue vs most friendly entertainment. For they fet bread, fielh, and cheefe before vs, wherewith having ended our Suppers, we laid vs along each man to fleep before the fire. All of vs were as yet exceeding cold, but especially my silte, who before with great horrour and trembling was stripped starke niked. And so we continued with the laid shepheards for the space of two dayes : all which To time we could not fet forth, by reason of continual Snow. But the third day, so foone as they Community faw it leave inowing, with great labour they began to removue that Snow which lay before Snow. the doore of their Caue. Which done, they brought vs to our Horses, which wee found well prouided of Hay in another Caue, Being all mounted, the shepheards accompanied vs some part of our way, shewing vs where the Snow was of least depth, and yet euen there it touched our Horse bellies. This day was so cleere, that the Sunne tooke away all the cold of the two

At length entring into a certaine Village neere vnto Fez, wee vnderstood, that our Carts dayes going before. which palled by, were ouer-whelmed with the Snow. Then the Arabians leeing no hope of re- Vakind kindcompense for all the paines they had taken (for they had defended our Carts from Theeues) neffe. carryed a certaine less of our Companie with them as their Captine, (who had loft a great 20 quantitic of Dates, by reason of the Snow aforefaid) to the end that he might remayne as their Prisoner, till he had satisfied for all the residue. From my selfe they tooke my Horse, and com-

mitted me vnto the wide World and to Fortune. From whence, riding vpon a Mule, within three daies I arrived at Fez, where I heard dolefull newes of our Merchants and Wares, that they were call away in the Snow. Yea, they thought that I had beene destroyed with the rest; but it feemed that God would have it otherwise. Now, having finished the Historie of mine owne misfortunes, let vs returne vnto that Dif-

courle where we left. Beyond Atlas there are certaine hot and dry places moystened with very few Rivers, but those which flow out of Atlas it selfe: some of which Rivers running into the Rivers dived Libyan Defarts are dryed up with the Sands, but others do ingender Lakes. Neither shall you find up by sands. in these Countreyes any places apt to bring forth Corne, notwithstanding they have Dates in

30 abandance. There are also certains other Trees bearing fruit, but in so small quantitie, that no increase nor gaine is to be reaped by them. You may fee likewise in those parts of Numidia which border vpon Libya, certaine barren hils destitute of Trees, vpon the lower parts whereof grow nothing but vnprofitable thornes and flrubs. Among it thefe Mountaines you shall find no Rivers nor Springs, nor yet any waters at all, except it be in certaine Pits and Welsalmost vnknowne vinto the Inhabitants of that Region. Moreouer, in fixe or feuen dayes journey they have not one drop of water, but fuch as is brought vinto them by certaine Merchants vpon Camels backs. And that especially in those places which lye upon the mayne Road from Fez to Tombute or from Tremzen to * Agad. That ioanney likewife is very dangerous which is of late found * Agade.

40 our by the Merchants of our dayes from Fex to Alcair ouer the Defatts of Libya, were it not for an huge Lake in the way, vponthe bankes whereof the Sintes and the Goranites doe inhabit. But in the way which leadeth from Fez to Tombuto are certaine Pits enuironed either with the hides or bones of Camels. Neither doe the Merchants in Sommer time paffe that way without Danger by great danger of their lines: for oftentimes it falleth out, when the South-wind bloweth, that all thirff. those Pits are stopped up with sand. And so the Merchants when they can find neither those Pits, nor any mention thereof, must needs perith for extreame thirst: whose carkastes are afterward found lying feattered here and there, and feorched with the heat of the Sunne. One reward found lying fattered here and there, and forened with the neat or the sunne. One re-medie they have in this case, which is very strange : for when they are so grieuously oppressed medie vieldby with thirlt, they kill for the with some one of their Camels, out of whose bowels they wring the African

30 and expresse some quantitie of water, which water they drinke and carrie about with them, till Merchant to they have either found iome Pit of water, or till they pine away for think. In the Defart which queach their they call Azaoad, there are as yet extant two Monuments built of Marble, vpon which Mar-thirft, ble is an Epitaph engrauen, fignifying that one of the faid Monuments represented a most rich Merchant, and the other a Carrier or transporter of Wares. Which wealthfull Mer- AMerchant chant bough: of the Carrier a cup of water for ten thousand Ducats, and yet this precious confirayned cann bought or the Cartot them; for both were confirmed with thirth. This Defire likewife by externe water could duffice neither of them; for both were confirmed with thirth. This Defire likewife by externe contayneth fundry kinds of beafts, which in the fourth part of this Difcourfe concerning Libya, which in the fourth part of this Difcourfe concerning Libya, 66 and in our Trestile of the beatls of Africa, we will discourse of more at large.

of in our Treatne or the plants of Africa, we will uncourse of more at stage.

The Land of Negrosis extreame hot, having fome flore of moysture also, by reason of the Rich of water. ues of Nigerranning through the midit thereof. All places adiovning vpon Niger doe mighti- Thenium cle ly abound both with Cattelland Corne. No Trees I law there but only certaine great ones, 1:4 00.04 bearing a kind of bitter fruit like vnto a Cheshnut, which in their Language is called Goron.

Corns Cucumbers. Onions.

and what ef-

fects enfue

thet upon.

Cheries ripe in A prill,

Likewife in the fame Regions grow Cocos, Cocumbers, Onions, and fuch kinde of herbs and fruits in great abundance.

There are no Mountaines at all either in Libya or in the Land of Negros : howevet divers Fennes and Lakes there are; which (as men report) the mundation of Niger hath left behind it. Neither are the woods of the faid Regions altogether deflitute of Elephants and other ffrance

bealts; whereof we will make relation in their due place. \$1th consumal!

Throughout the greatest part of Barbarie stormie and cold weather begin commonly about impressions & the midst of October. But in December and Ianuary the cold groweth some-what more sharpe motions the in all places : howeit this happeneth in the morning onely, but fo gently and remiffely, that no i. ubject vito; man careth greatly to warme himlelfe by the fire. February feme-wl at mitigateth the cold of to Winter, but that to inconstantly, that the weather changesh sometime fine and sometime fixe times in one day. In March the North and West winds viually blow, which cause the Trees to be adorned with bloffomes. In April all fruits attaine to their proper forme and fhape, infomuch that The leatons of Cherries are commonly ripe about the end of of Aprill and the beginning of May. In the midth of May they gather their bes : and in mid-June their Grapes are ripe in many places. Likewife their Peares, their fweete Quances, and their Damafeens attayne vnto fufficient ripenelle in the monethes of June and July. Their Figs of Autumne may be gathered in Aug. It howbest they neuer haue fo great plentie of Figs and Peaches, as in S. prember. By the midd of Aug. ift they viually begin to dry their Grapes in the Sunne, whereof they make Rafins. Which is they can-

not finish in September, by reason of unleasonable weather, of the r Grapes as then ungathered 20 they vie to make Wine and Must, especially in the Province of Rife, as wee will in our place The Oliucs of fignific more at large. In the midft of October they take in their Honey, and gather their Pomgranates and Quinces. In November they gather their Olives, not climing vp with La iders nor rlucking them with their hands, according to the cultome of Europe; for the Trees of Manritaria and Cafarea are to tall, that no Ladder is long enough to reach vinto the fruit. And therefore their Olives being full ripe, they climbe the Tiecs, heating them off the boughes with certaine long Poles, albeit they know this kind of beating to be most hirifull vinto the faid Trees. Sometimes they have great plentie of Olives in Africa, and sometimes as great starcicie. Certaine great Olius-trees there are, the Oliuss whereof are eaten ripe by the Inhabitants because Pleasant fring they are not lo fit for Ovle. No years i Is out to be so vascasonal le, but that they have three 30 monethes in the fpring alwayes temperate.

Raine fignify-

They begin their fpring upon the hiteenth day of February, accounting the eighteenth of ing plenue or May, for the end thereof : all which time they have most pleasant weather. But if from the five and twentieth of Aprill, to the fifth of May they have no raine fall, they take it as a figne of ill lucke. And the raine-water which falleth all the time aforefaid they call Naifan, that is, mater bleffed of God. Some flore it up in Veffels, most religiously keeping it, as an holy thing. Their Summer latteth till the fixteenth of August; all which time they have most hot and cleere weather. Except perhaps some showres of raine fall in July and August, which doe so infect the Aire, that great plague and most pestilent Feners ensue thereupon; with which plague whosoeuer is infected, molt hardly escapeth death. Their Autumne they reckon from the feuenteenth 40 of August to the fixteenth of November; having commonly in the monethes of August and September not fuch extreme heate as before. Howbert all the time betweene the fifteenth of August and the fitteenth of September is called by them the furnace of the whole yeare, for that it bringeth Figs Quinces, and such kind of fruits to their full maturitie. From the fifteenth of Nonember they beginne their winter-leafon, continuing the fame till the fourteenth day of February. So bone as Winter commeth, they begin to till their ground which lyeth in the Forty diyes of Plaines : but upon the Mountaines they goe to plough in October. The Africans are most cer-

and forty of

extreme heate tainly performed that every years contayneth fortie extreme hot dayes, beginning upon the twelfth of Iune; and againe to many cayes extreme cold, beginning from the twelfth of December. Their Aguinottia are upon the fixteenth of March, and the fixteenth of September, 50 For their Solititta they account the fixteenth of June and the fixteenth of December. Thefe rules they doe most strictly observe, as well Husbandrie and Naugation, as in fearthing out the houses and true places of the Planets : and these mitructions, with other such I ke they teach their young children first of all.

The Pealants Aftrologie.

Many Countrey-people and Husbandmen there be in Africa, who knowing (as they fav) nrand volume de uera Letter of the Booke, will not with standing most learnedly dispute of Astrologie, and al-Jeags most profound reasons and arguments for themselves. But w. attoeuer skill they have in the Art of Aftrologie, they first learned the same of the Latines: yea, they give those very names vnto their Moneths which the Lities doe.

Moreouur, they have extant among them a certaine great Booke divided into three Volumes, which they call, The Treasurie or Store house of Hu, bandry. This Booke was then translated out of Latine into their Tongue, when Manfor was Lord of Granada. In the faid Treasurie are all things contayined which may feeme in any wife to concerne Husbandry; as namely, the changes and varietie of times, the manner of fowing, with a number of fulch like particulars, which (I thinke) at this day the Latie Tongue it fells, whereout thefe things were first translated, Joth not contayne. Whatfoe aer either the Africans or the Mahumetans have, which feemeth to appertaine in any write to their Law or Religion, they make their computation thereof altogether according to the courfs of the Moone.

trogeries accuraing to the country and the four dayes for voto fix. Monethes they al. The vere of 1+ thirtie daves, and vito the other fixe but rime and twentie, all which beeing added into one the distance & Lemme doe produce the number aforefaid : wherefore their yeare differeth elemen daies from the decome.

yeare of the Latines. They have at divers times Festivall Dayes and Facts.

About the en' of Autumne, for all Winter, and a great part of the Spring they are troubled Windes. with boyllerous winds, with Haile, with terrible Thunder and Lightening i yea then it moweth much in some places of Barbarie. The Easterne, Southerne, and South-easterne winds blowing in May and June, doe very much burt there: for they spoyle the Corne, and hinder the fruit from comming to then fle. Their Cornel kewife is greatly appayred by Snow, especial- The yeares difruit from comming to then file. Their Gorne I kewife is greatly appayred by subsequently above. You the Bouncapies of the late of the lat Aprill; and from Aprill to O Sieber they account it Summer: neither is there any day through- Manusints of out the whole years, wherein the tops of those Mountaines are not coursed with Snow. In No. 2000. midia, the yeare runner haway very fwiftly : for they respe their Corne in May, and in Octo-

20 berthey gither their Dates : Lat from the midft of September , they have Wifiter till the beginning of Januarie. But it September falleth out to be raynie, they are like to lose most part

of their Dates.

All the fields of Numidia require watering from the Rivers; but if the Mountaynes of Atlas have no raine fall upon them, the Namidian Rivers waxe dry, and fo the fields are defitute of watering. October being destitute of raine, the Husbandman hath no hope to cast his feed into the ground; and he delpayreth likewife, if it raine not in Aprill. But their Dates profper more without raine, what reof the Numidians have greater plentie then of Corne. For albeit they haue fome flore of Corne, yet can it fearcely fuffice them for halfe the yeere. Howbeir, if they haue good increase of Dates, they cannot want abundance of Corne, which is sold vnto them

30 by the Arabians for Dates. If in the Libran Delarts there fall out change of weather about the midit of October; and if it continue rayning there all December, Lanuary, and some part of Februry, it is wonderfull what abundance of graffe and milke it bringeth forth. Then may you find diners Lakes in all piaces, and many Fennes throughout Libya; wherefore this is the meetest time for the Barbarie Merchants to travell to the Land of Negros. Heere all kind of fruits grow fooner ripe, if they have moderate showers about the end of July. Moreover, the Land of Negros receiveth by raine neither any benefit, nor yet any dammage at all. For the River Niger together with the water which falleth from certaine Mountaynes doch fo moyflen their grounds, that no places can be demied to be more fruitfull; for that which Nilm is to Egopt, the fame is Niger to the Land of Negros : for it increaseth like Nilm from the fifteenth of Tune the The increase

40 space of fortie dayes after, and for io many againe it decreafeth. And so at the increase of Ni- of the Ruer ger when all places are over-flowne with water, a man may in a Barke paffe over all the Land of o. Niger and Negros, albeit not without great perill of drowning; as in the fift part of this Treatife we will N.liss.

declare more at large.

All the people of Barbaric by vs before mentioned line vnto fixtie fee or feventie yeares of The length age, and few or none exceed that number. Howbeit in the ferefaid Mountaynes I faw some and the tracife which had lived an hundred yeares, and others which affirmed themselues to bee older, whose lines. age was most healthfull and lattic. Yea, some you shall find heere of four-feere yeares of age, who are fuffic ently firong and able to exercise Husbandy, to dresse Vines, and to sende in the Teeth some Warres; infomuch that yong men are oftentimes inferiour vnto them. In Narndie, that is to loft and byes

10 fay, in the Landot Dates, they live a long time : howbeit they lase their Teeth very soone, and decayed, their Eyes waxe wonderfull drame. Which infirmities are likely to be incident vinto them first because they continually feed upon Dates, the sweetnesse and naturall qualitie whereof doth by little and little pull out their Teeth; and fecondly, the dust and sand, which is toffed vp and downe the Ayre with Eafterne windes entring into their Eyes, doth at last milerally weaken and spoile their eye-light. The Inhabitants of Libra are of a shorter life; but those which are most ftrong and healthfull among them like oftentimes till they come to threeftore yeares; albeit they are flender and leane of bodie.

The Negros commonly live the theriest time of all the rest thowbest they are alwayes Grong. What kirds of and luftie, having their Teeth found even till their dying day ; yet is there no Nation vinder Hotal Diff ales, be and futte, having their Teeth found even till their dying day i yet is there no issue in their fine are to uen more prone to Veneryivato which vice alto the Libyans and Numidians are too too much all fubect viso.

dicted. To be thort, t e Barbarians are the weakest prople of them all.

The children, and sometimes the ancient women of this Region are shiest with ballings or unnaturall theoding of haire; which difeafe they can hardly be cured of. They are likewife oftentimes troubled with the head-ache, which viually affifeteth them without any ague seyned

ground, and neuer weare any shooes vpon their feet. Their chiefe Gentlemen and Noblemen proue gowtie oftentimes with immoderate drinking of Wine and eating of daintie meates. Some with eating of Oliues, Nuts, and fuch course fare, are for the most part infected with the

Those which are of a fanguine complexion are greatly troubled with the cough, because that in the Sprin-feafon they fit too much vpon the ground. And vpon Fridayes I had no fmall fport and recreation to goe and see them. For vpon this day the people flocke to Church in great numbers to heare their Mahumetan Sermons. Now if any one in the Sermon-time f. Is a neezing, all the whole multitude will neeze with him for company, and fo they make fuch a noife, that they never leane, till the Sermon be quite done; fo that a man shall reape but little know-

ledge by any of their Sermons.

The French Difeafe.

was brought

Hernia, or the

into Africa.

If any of Barbarie be infected with the Difease commonly called the French Poxe, they dye thereof for the most part, and are seldome cured. This Disease beginneth with a kinde of anguish and swelling, and at length breaketh out into Sores. Ouer the Mountaines of Atlas, and 20 throughout all Namidia and Libya they scarcely know this Difease. Insomuch that oftentimes the parties intected travell forth-with into Numidia or the land of Negros, in which places the Aire is so temperate, that onely by remayning there they recouer their perfect health, and returne home found into their owne Countrey : which I faw many doe with mine owne eyes: who without the helpe of any Phylician or Medicine, except the foresaid hollome aire, were reftered to their former health. Not io much as the name of this malady was ever known vnto the Africans, before Ferdinand the King of Callile expelled all Iemes out of Spaine; after the returne When and by of which lewes into Africa, certaine vnhappie and lewd people lay with their Wines; and fo at what meanes length the Difease spread from one to another, ouer the whole Region : infomuch that scarce any one Family was free from the fame. Howbeit, this they were most certainly perswaded of, 20 that the same Dilease came first from Spaine; wherefore they (for want of a better name) doe call it. The Spanish Poxe. Notwithstanding at Tunis and ouer all Italy, it is called the French Difeafe. It is to called likewise in Agpt and Spria: for there it is vied as a common Prouerbe Difenie called of Carfing ; The French Poxe take you. Amongst the Barbarians the Difense called in Latine Hernia is not fo common; but in Agypt the people are much troubled therewith. For some of the Egyptians have their Cods oftentimes fo twollen, as it is incredible to report. Which infirmitie is thought to be to common among them, because they eate so much Gumme, and Salt Cheefe. Some of their children are fubicat vnto the falling ficknesse; but when they grow to any stature, they are free from that Disease. This falling ficknesse hkewise possesser the women of Barbarie, and of the Land of Negros; who, to excuse it, say that they are taken with a Spirit. 40 In Barbarie the Plague is rife every tenth, fifteenth, or twentieth yeare, whereby great numbers of people are confumed; for they have no cure for the same, but onely to run the Plague-fore with certaine Ointments made of Armenian Earth.

Earth of Armenia. Plague rare in thereunto.

Numida: The commen-

In Numidia they are in ected with the Plague scarce once in an hundred yeares. And in the Land of Negros they know not the name of this Difeale : because they never were subject Those Arabians which inhabit in Barbarie or upon the Coast of the Mediterran Sea , are

greatly addicted vinto the fludie of good Arts and Sciences : and those things which concerne and vertues of their Law and Religion are effeemed by them in the first place. Moreover, they have beene the Africant. heretofore most studious of the Mathematikes, of Philosophie, and of Astrologie : but these to Mathematikes Arts (as it is aforefaid) were foure hundred yeares agoe, veterly destroyed and taken away by Priestshonou- the chiefe Professor of their Law. The Inhabitants of Cities doe most religiously observe and reuerence those things which appertaine vnto their Religion : yea, they honour those Doctors Superflitions, and Priefts, of whom they learne their Law, as if they were pettie gods. Their Churches they frequent very diligently, to the end they may repeat certaine prefer pt and formall Praires; most fuperititionally periwading themselves that the same day wherein they make their praiers, it is not lawfull for them to wash certaine of their members, when as at other times they will wash

Moreover those which inhabit Barbarie, are of great cunning and dexteritie for building and for Mathematicall Inuentions, which a man may eatily coniecture by their artificiall Workes. 60 Most honest people they are, and destitute of all fraud and guile; not onely imbracing all, mplicitie and truth, but also practifing the fame throughout the whole course of their lines; albeit certaine Latine Authors, which have written of the fame Regions, are farre otherwise of opinion. Likewife they are most strong and valiant people, especially those which dwell upon the

CHAP.I.S.I. Moores, a people of great sidelisie. Their grauisie, modestie. 767

Mountaines. They keepe their cournant most fasthfully; insomuch that they had rasher dije then The Mose a

rester promise.

No Nation in the World is 6 fabric wrone. So define a they are of Ruber and House. Install, all aloufs. put up any difgrace in the behalfe of their women. So define as they are of Riches and Honour, put vp any ungrace in the country of them. They trauel in a manner over the whole World that therein no other people can go beyond them. They trauel in a manner over the whole World Merchandife: to exercise Traffike, For they are continually to be seene in Agpt, in Athopia, in Arabia, Porsia,

Indea, and Trekie: and wintherforuer they goe, they are most honourably effected of : for none of them will professe any Art, villesse hee lath attained vinto great exactnesse and perfection therein. They have alwayes beene much delighted with all kind of civilizie and modelt behau-10 our : and it is accounted harnous among them for any man to vtter in companie, any Bandae or Granifie our and the second and second and the second as the periour. If any youth in presence of his Father , his Vnele , orany other of his Kindred, doth

ing or talke ought of loue matters, he is deemed to be worthy of gricuous punishment. What seeuer Lad or Youth there lighteth by chance into any companie which discourseth of Loue, no fooner heareth nor understandeth what their talke tendeth unto, but immediately he withdraw-

eth himfelte from among them.

Those Arabians which dwell in Tents, that is to fay, which bring vp Cattell, are of a more The Arabians liberal and civil different rowit, they are in their kind as deuout, valiant, patient, courtes and their verous, hospitall, and as honest in life and convertation as any other people. They be most faithfull wes. observers of their word and promise: insomuch that the people, which before we said to dwell 20 in the Mountaines, are greatly stirred up with emulation of their Vertues. Howbeit the faid Mountainers, both for Learning, for Vertue, and for Religion, are thought much inferiour to the Numidiants, albeit they have little or no knowledge at all in naturall Philosophie. They are reported likewise to be most skilfull Warriours, to be valiant, and exceeding louers and practifers of all lumanitie. Allo, the Moores and Arabians inhabiting Libya are somewhat civil of behaviour, being plaine dealers, void of diffimulation, favourable to Strangers, and louers of

Those which we before named white, or tawnie Moores, are most fledfast in friendship: as likewife they indifferently and favourably effeeme of other Nations: and wholy indeauour themselves in this one thing, namely, that they may leade a most pleasant and iocund life. More-30 in this Patrick. Market they may tead a most president and social life. More-ting the Patrick. Market they may be a fact that they may be a fact the men as are most demon-tational market the market they are market. in their Religion. Neither is there any people in all Africa that lead a more happie and honou-

hle life. Neuer was there any people or Nation 10 perfectly endued with vertue, but that they had foreiaid dire. their contrary faults and blemithes : now therefore let vs confider, whether the vices of the A cans are fubfricars doe surpalle their vertues and good parts. Those which we named the Inhabitants of the ied varoa Cities of Barbarie, are somewhat needie and conetous being also very proud and high-minded, and wonderfully addicted vinto wrath; infomuch that (according to the Prouerbe) they will deeply engraue in Marble any injurie be it neuer fo small, and will in no wife blot it out of their membrance. So tulticall they are and void of good manners, that fearcely can any stranger ob- Vindicative, taine their familiaritie and friendship. Their wits are but meane, and they are so credulous, Rude, 40 that they will beleeue matters impossible, which are told them. So ignorant are they of nature Gredulous, rall Philosophic, that they imagine all the effects and operations of nature to be extraordinarie

They observe no certains order of living nor of Lawes. Abounding exceedingly with cho-Cholericke & ler, they feeake alwayes with an angry and lowd voice. Neither shall you walke in the day- quartelomes time in any of their streets, but you shall see commonly two or three of them together by the eares. By nature they are a vile and base people, being no better accounted of by their Gouernours then if they were Dogges. They have neither Indges nor Lawyers, by whose wildome and counfell they ought to be directed. They are veterly Ynskilfull in Trades of Merchandize, being destitute of Bankers Money-changers: wherefore a Merchant can doe nothing among 50 them in his ablence, but is himselfe constrayned to goe in person, whither locuer his Wares are

carrved. No people vnder Heauen are more addicted vnto couetife then this Nation : neither is Couetom there (I thinke) to be found among them one of an hundred, who for courtefie, humanitie, or denotions fake, will vouchiafe any entertainment vpon a stranger. Mindfull they have alwayes beene of injuries, but mottorgetfull of benefits. Their mindes are perpetually polleffed with Ingratefull. vexation and Brite, to that they will feldome or neuer thew themselves tractable to any man; the caute whereof is Supposed to be; for that they are so greedily addicted vnto their fifthy lucre, that they neuer could at ayne vntoany kind of civilitie or good behaviour.

60 The Shepheards of that Region line a milerable, t. ylicme, wretched and beggerly life : they Shepheards, are a rude people, and (as a man may fay) borne an abred to heft, deceit, andbrutish manners. Their young men may goe a wooing to divers Mandes, thi fach time as they have speed of a wife. Yea, the father of the Maide moil friendl welcommeth ber Suiter; fo that I thinke fearce any Mariages. Noble or Gentleman among them carrefule a Virgine ror his Spoule; albeit, fo foone as any

Irraligion.

woman is married, the is quite for faken of all her Suiters; who then feeke out other new Paramours for their liking. Concerning their Religion, the greater part of these people are neither Muhumetans, Jewes, nor Christians; and hardly shall you find so much as a sparke of Pietie in any of them. They have no Churches at all, nor any kind of Prayers, but being vtterly estranged from all on lly denotion, they leade a fanage and beaftly life; and if any man chanceth to bee of a better disposition (because they have no Law-givers nor Teachers among them) hee is constrained to follow the example of other mens lives and manners.

Robberie.

All the Numidians being most ignorant of Naturall , Domesticall , and Common-wealth matters, are principally addicted vnto Treaton, Trecherie, Murther, Theft and Robberie. This Nation, because it is most flanish, will right gladly accept of any service among the Barbarians, To be it never fo vile or contemptible. For some will take vpon them to be Dung-farmers, others to be Scullions, some others to be Oftlers, and such like feruile Occupations, Likewise the Inhabitants of Libya line a brutish kind of life; who neglecting all kinds of good Arts and Sciences, doe wholy apply their minds vnto theft and violence. Neuer as yet had they any Religion, any Lawes, or any good forme of living; but alwaies had, and ever will have a most miterable and diffrested life. There cannot any trechery or villanie be invented fo damnable, which for lucres fake they dare not attempt. They fpend all their dayes either in most lewd practices, or in hunting, or elfe in warfare; neither weare they any shooes nor garments. The Negros likewife leade a beafily kind of life, being veterly deflitute of the vie of reason, of dexteritie of wit, and of all Arts. Yea, they to behave themselves, as if they had continually lived in a For- 20 rest among wild beasts. They have great swarmes of Harlots among them; whereupona man may eafily conjecture their manner of liming; except their convertation perhaps bee formerwhat more tolerable, who dwell in the principall Townes and Cities : for it is like that they are fomewhat more addicted to Civilitie.

Collections of things most remarkable in IOHR LEO bis second Booke of the Historie of Africa.

The Map of the Kingdome of Marocco, or Maruccos.



CHAP.1.S.2. Entertainment of Strangers. Temples and Hofpitals.

Eginning at the Welt part of Africa, we will in this our Geographicall Historie pro-

ted Eatward, the We Conse of Marger is bounded Westward and Northward. The Region of with the maine Ocean, Southward with the Mountaines of Atlas, and Eastward. He slying vpwith the River which they call Essado. This River springeth out of the foresaid Mountaine, on the Wea dicharging it felre at length into the River of Tenfft, and dunding Hea from the Province next, part of Africa.

The Region of Hes is an vneuen and rough foile, full of rockie Mountaines, shadie Woods, and Christall Streames in all places; being wonderfully rich, and well stored with Inhabitants.

10 They have in the faid Region great abundance of Goats and Affes, but not fuch plentie of Sheep, Oxen, and Horles. All kind of Fruits are very scarce among them.

oven, and Horles. All kind of Fruits are very tearce among them.
This People for the most part eateth Barly-bread valeaurned, which is like rather vnto a Their Pood. Cake, then to a Loafe : this Bread is baked in a kind of earthen Baking-pan. are, then to a Louis : the press of the farment made of Wooll after the man- Than Arther The greatest part of them are clad in a kind of cloth Garment made of Wooll after the man-

Ine greatest part or unem set that in a time of the anti-term makes by the active property of a Courtlet, called in their Language, Elebig, and not valide with other Courtlets or, an Ellarkets which the Indian lay you their Beds. In these kind of Mantles they were them. felues; and then are they girt with a woollen girdle, not about their waste, but about their hips. You may eafily discerne which of them is married, and who is not: for an youngarried, man must alwayes keepe his Beard shauen, which, after hee bee once married, hee suffereth to 20 grow at length. The laid Region bringeth forth no great plentie of Horfes, but those that it. Horfes and o doth bring forth, are fo nimble and full of mettall, that they will climbe like Cats ouer the steep, ther Beatle, and craggie Mountaines. These Horses are alwayes vnshod: and the People of this Region vie to till their ground with no other Cattell , but onely with Hories and Affes. You hall here find great flore of Deere, of wild Goats, and of Hares. No good learning nor liberall Arts are here to be found; except it be a little skill in the Lawes, which fome few challenge vnto themfeliues : otherwise you shall find not so much as any shadow of vertue among them. They have Camering neither Physician nor Surgeon of any learning or account. But if a disease or infirmitie befall any of them, they presently seare or cauterize the ficks partie with red hot Irons, guen as the lialises vie their Horfes. Howbeit fome Chynurgians there are among them, whole dutie, and

30 occupation confifteth onely in circumcifing of their male Children. Whologier will travell into a forraine Countrey must take either a Harlot, or a Wife, or a religious man of the contrary part, to beare him companie. They have no regard at all of Iuftice. part, to beare nun companie. Ancy name no regana at an or mine.

The ancient Cine of Tederit was built by the Africage upon a most beginning and large redestorante.

Plaine, which they insuroned with a loftic Wall, built of Bricke and Line. In this Citie there, the Cives at

are no Innes, Stoues, nor Wine-tauernes : fo that Whatfoeuer Merchant goes thither, mult ceke, Hea out some of his acquaintance to remaine withall: but if hee hath no friends nor acquaintance in the Towne, then the principall Inhabitants there cafflots who should entertaine the strange Merchant: infomuch that no Stranger, be he never fo meane, shall want friendly entertainment, Their manner but is alwaies sumptuoully and honourably accepted of. But wholocaer is received as a Guest, of enternat-40 must at his departure bestow some gift vpon his Host in token of thankfulnesse, to the end hee may be more welcome at his next returne. Howbeit if the faid Stranger be no Merchant, hee may chuse what great mans house he will to lodge in, being bound at his departure to no recom-

pence nor gift. To be short, if any Beggar or poore Pilgrim passe the same way, he hath some fuffenance prouided for him in a certaine Hospitall, which was founded onely for the reliefe of poore people, and is maintained at the common charge of the Citie. In the middeff of the Citie Their Temple itands an ancient Temple, being most sumptuously built, and of an huge bignesse, which was thought to be founded at the very fame time when as the King of Maroco bare rule in those places. This Temple hath a great Cifterne standing in the midst thereof, and it hath many Priests and fach kind of People which give attendance thereunto, and store it with things necessarie. In this Citie likewise are divers other Temples, which, albeit they are but little, yet be they moft cleanly and decently kept. There are in this Citie about an hundred Families of Ienes. My lefte Tednell forfafaw this Citie veterly ruined and defaced, the Wal's thereof being laid even with the ground, the Fortugals. the Houses being destitute of Inhabitants, and nothing at that time to be there seeine, but onely

the nefts of Rauens and of other Birds. All this I faw in the 920, yeere of the Hegeira. Vpon the foot of an hill eighteene miles Eastward from Tednest, stands a Towne called by Tecneth a the Africans Teculests, and containing about one thousand Housholds. Here also is to be seene Towncos His a most stately and beautifull Temple; as likewise foure Hospitals, and a Monasterie of Religious persons. The Inhabitants of this Towne are faire wealthier then they of Tednest: for they haue a most famous Port vpon the Ocean Sea, commonly called by Merchants, Goz. They have

60 likewife great abundance of Corne and Pulfe, which grow in the fruitfull fields adiacent. It was destroyed by the Portugals, 1514-The Citie of Hadecchie being fituate vpon a Plaine, flandeth eight miles Southward of Tecu- Hadecchie a

letb: it contains th feuen hundred Families: and the Walls, Churches, and Houses throughout Towns of Hea, this whole Citie are all built of Free-stone. They have certaine yearely Faires or Marts, wher-

This

unto the Nation's adiovning doe viually refort. Here is to bee fold great flore of Cattell of Butter, Oyle, Iron, and Cloth; and their faid Mart lafteth fifteene dayes. Their Women are very beautifull, white of colour, fat, comely, and trim. But the Men beare a most faunce mind. being to extremely polleffed with lealoufie, that whomfoeuer they find but talking with their Wines, they prefently got about to murther them. They have no ludges nor learned men a. mone there her any which can affigne voto the Citizens any Functions and Magistracies according to their worthingie: So that he rules like a King that excelleth the refidue in wealth. For matters of Religion, they have certaine Mahumetan Priests. Who neither pay Tribute nor yeerely Cuftome, euen as threy whom we last before mentioned. Here I was entertained by a certaine courteous and liberall minded Priest, who was exceedingly delighted with Arabian Io Hadetchis fac- Poetrie, From hence I travelled vnto Maroco. And afterward I heard that this Towne alfo, in ked by the Parthe veere of the Heseira 922, was facked by the Portugals; and that the Inhabitants were all fled into the next Mountaines.

Barbari me.

llasignter a This Towne is fituate with the top of a certaine high Mountaine which is diffant eight Towne of Hes. miles to the South of Hadegebia: it consistent of about two hundred Families. They are at contimuall war with their neighbours, which is performed with fuch monffrous bloud-thed and manflaughter, that they deferre rather the name of Beafts then of Men. They have neither Indges, Priests; nor Lawyers, to prescribe any forme of living among them, or to governe their Common-wealth : wherefore fuffice and honestie is quite banished out of their habitations. These Mountaines are alrogether destitute of Fruits: howbeit they abound greatly with Honie, 20 which ferrieth the Inhabitants both for Food, and for Merchandize to iell in the neighbour-Wax caft away Countries. And because they know not what fervice to put their Waxe vnto, they cast it forth, together with the other excrements of Honie. No People under Heaten can be more wicked.

treacherous, or lewdly addicted, then this People is. The Towne Tefegdelt being lituate upon the top of a certaine high Mountaine, and natural-Towne of Hes. ly enuirened with an high Rocke in flead of a Wall, containerh more then eight hundred Fami-Teyent defired. lies, It is diffant from Teyent Southward about twelve miles, and it hath a River running by it, ed by the Per- the name whereof I haut forgotten. About this Towne of Tefegdels are most pleasant Gardens togals, 1513. and Orchards, replenished with all kind of Trees, and especially with Walnut-trees. The Inhabitants are wealthie, haning great abundance of Horles, neither are they conftrained to pay 30 off linguagen. habitants are wealthie, halling great abundance of Hories, heliter are they contrained to pay The curtege of any Tribute vnto the Arabians. There are continuall Warres between the Arabians and them, the Citizens and that with great bloud-field and manifilaughter on both parts. The Villages lying neere vnof referdelt to to Telegdelt doe vivally carrie all their Grame thicher, left they should be deprived thereof by wasis State. the Enemie, who maketh daily inrodes and invalious vpon them. The Inhabitants of the forefaid Towne are much addicted vnto curtefie and ciu litie; and for liberalitie and bountie vnto Strangers, they will fuffer themselves to be inferiour to none other. At every Gate of Tefegdelt fland certaine Watch-men or Warders, which doe most louingly receive all In-commers, enquiring of them, whether they hade any friends and acquaintance in the Towne, or no! If they haue none, then are they conducted to one of the best Innes of the Towne, and having had entertainment there, according to their degree and place, they are friendly difmified : and whattoeuer his expences come to, the Stranger payes nought at all, but his charges are defrayed out of the common Purfe. This People of Telegdels are subject also vnto jealouse: howbeit they are most faithfull keepers of their promise. In the very midt of the Towne stands a most beautifull and stately Temple, whereunto belong a certaine number of Mahumetan Priests.

The most ancient Citie of Tagtes is built round , and standeth upon the top of an Hill : on

the fides whereof are certaine winding steps hewen out of the hard Rocke. It is about fourteene

miles diftant from Tefegdelt. By the foot of the faid Hill runnes a River, whereout the Women

of Tagtes draw their water, neither have the Citizens any other drinke : and although this Riuer be almost sixe miles from Tagtess , yet a man would thinke , looking downe from the Citie

out of the Rocke, in forme of a paire of Staires, is very narrow. While I was in that Country,

there came fuch a swarme of Locusts, that they denoured the greatest part of their Cornes which

were as then ripe: infomuch that all the vpper part of the ground was couered with Locusts.

vpon it, that it were but halfe a mile diffant. The way leading vnto the faid River being cut 50

Tagtefs.

Locufts.

The Towne of Eitdenet.

Which was in the yeere of the Hegera 919, that is, in the yeere of our Lord 1510.

Fifteene miles Southward from Tagtesi stands another Towne called Endener. In the said Towns are level of all Occupations : and some there are which aftirme, that the first Inhabitants of this Towne came by naturall descent from King Danid: but so soone as the Mahumetan Religion had infected that place, their owne Law and Religion ceased. Here are great flore of most cunning Lawyers, which are perfectly well seene in the Lawes and constitutions Learned Men. of that Nation : for, I my felfe faw a very aged man, who could most readily repeat a whole Volume written in their Language, called by them Elmudevnana, that is to fay, the Bodie of the 60 whole Law. The faid Volume is divided into three Tomes, wherein all difficult questions are diffolned: together with certaine Counfels or Commentaries of a famous Author, which they

CHAP.I.S.2. An Apostata and pestiferous Mahumetan Preacher.

This Culerbat Elmaridus is a Castle built vpon the top of a certaine high Mountaine, having Cules at Elround about it duters other Mountaines of a like heighth, which are entitoned with craggic mobiles that round about it duers other Mountaines of a like neggin, which are enumoned with cragge sometimes of the Rocks and luge Woods. There is no pailage vinto this Cattle, but onely a certaine narrow path of Displace. vpon one tale of the Mountaine. By the one fide thereof funds a Rocke, and vpon the otherfide the Mountaine of Tefegdelt is within halfe a mile, and it is diffant from Endeuer almost eighteene miles. This Cattle was built even in our time by a certaine Apostata, or renowncer of the Mahametenreligion called by them Homan Soyof; who being first a Mahameten Prescher the granament in granament with a great number of Disciples and Sectaries, whom her had preacher.

drawn to be of his opinion, certain new points of religion. This fellow feeing that he preuailed to 10 with his Disciples, that they ellermed him for some petty-god, became of a falle Preacher a most cruell typent, and his government lasted for twelve yeares. Hee was the chiefe cause of the defruction and raine of the whole Province. At length he was flaine by his owne wife, because he had vnlawfully lien with her daughter which the had by her former husband. And then was his peruerfe and lewed dealing laid open vnto all men: for hee is reported to haue been vtterly ignorant of the lawes, and of all good knowledge. Wherefore not long after his deceate, all the inhabitants of the region gathering their forces together, flew enery one of his Difciples and falle Secturies. Howbeit, the Nephew of the faid Apoltata was left aline; who afterward in the fame Castle endured a whole yeares siege of his aduersaries, and repelled them, infomuch that they were constrained to depart. Yea, even untill this day he molesteth the people of Hea, and those which inhabite neere vnto him, with continuall warre, liuing upon robberse and spoile; 20 for which purpole he hath certaine Horlemen, which are appointed to watch and to pur use trauellers, sometimes taking Cattell, and sometimes men captimes. He hath likewise certaine Gun-

ners, who, although trauellers be a good diffance off (for the common high-way standeth almost a mile from the Cattle) will put them in great feare. Howbeit, all people doe to deadly hate Cattle, suffering him to be adered of his people, as if he were a God. Passing by that way upon a here omitted

certaine time, I escaped their very bullets narrowly. The greatest part of the people of Hea dwelleth upon mountaines, some whereof being cal- The landsiled Idenacal (for io are they named) inhabite vponthat part of Aslas, which firetchethit felie tans of the from the Ocean Sea Eastward, as tarre as Igilmgigil; and this ridge of mountaines dundeth Hea in Hea, 30 from Sus. The breadth of this mountaine is three dayes journey. It is replenished with inhabitants and country Villages. Their ordinarie food is Barly, Goates-flesh, and Hony. Shirts they weare none at all, nor yet any other garments which are fowne together; for there is no man Needles not among them which knoweth how to viethe needle : but such apparell as they haue, hangeth vied. by a knot upon their fnoulders. Their women weare filter rings upon their eares, some three, and Rings and fome more. They have filter buttons of fo great a feartling, that each one weigheth an ounce, wherewith they fasten their apparell upon their shoulders, to the end it may not fall off. The nobler and richer fort of people among them weare filter rings vpon their fingers and leggs: but fuch as are poore, weaterings only of iron or of copper. There are likewise certaine Horses in this Region, being to final of flature and to swift, as it is wonderfull. Here may you find great plencie 40 of wild Goats, Hares, & Deere, and yet none of the people are delighted in hunting. Many fountaines are here to be found, and great abundance of trees, but especially of Walnut-trees. The greater part of this people liveth after the Arabians manner, often changing their places of habitation. A kind of Daggers they vie, which are broad and crooked like a wood-knife; and their Swords are as thicke as Sithes, wherewith they mow Hay. When they goe to the warres, they carrie three or four hunting Toyles with them. In all the faid mountaine are neither Iudges, Prietls, or Temples to be found. So ignorant they are of learning, that not one among them elther loueth, or embraceth the same. They are all most lewd and wicked people, and apply their minds vito all kind of villanie. It was told the Seriffo in my prefence, that the foresaid moun-

taine was able to affoord twentie thousand fouldiers for a neede. 50 This mountaine allo is a part of Atlas, beginning from the mountaine last before mentioned, The Mountaine and extending it felie Eastward for the space of about liftie miles, as farre as the mountaine of D. meniera. Niff, in the Territorie of Maroco; and it divide tha good part of Heat from the Region of Sus befor named. It aboundeth with inhabitants, which are of a most barbarous and lauage dispostion. Horsesthey have great plentie: they goe to warre oftentimes with the Arabians which border upon them; neither will they permit any of the faid Arabians to come within their Dominions. There are no Townes nor Cattles upon all this mountaine: howbert, they have certaine Villages and Cottages, wherein the better fort doe hide their heads. Great flore of Nobie-60 men er Gouernoars they have in all places, vnto whom the refidue are very obedient. Their ground yeeldeth Barly and Mill in abundance. They have everie where many foottaines, which

being dispersed over the whole Province, doe at length issue into that Ruer, which is called in their language Soffus. Their appared is somewhat decent: also they possessed a quantitie of Plenty of teach Iron, which is from thence transported into other places; and these people are well guento

thrift and good busbandrie. Great numbers of Jewes remaine in this Region, which line as file pendarie fouldiers under divers Princes, and are continually in Armes; and they are reputed and called by other Iemes in Africa, Carranm; that is to fay, Heretikes. They have flore of Boxe. Corrason that of Mattick, and of high Walnut-trees. Vnto their Argans (for fo they call a kind of Olines is Scripturemen; for they which they have) they put nuts; out of which two timples they expresse very bitter Oyle. admitted not ving it for a fance to fome of their meates, and powring it into their lampes. I heard duers of the traditions their principall men auouch, that they were able to bring into the field five and twenty thoufand most expert fouldiers.

This mountaine is not to be accounted any part of Atlas: for it beginneth Northward from taine of Iran, the Ocean, and Southward it extendeth to the River of Tenfift, and divideth Heafrom Duccala commonly and Maroco. The inhabitants are called Regraga. Vpon this hill are waste Defarts, cleare Fountaines, and abundance of hony, and of Oyle Arganick, but of Corne and Pulse great scarcitie, vnleffe they make prouision thereof out of Duccala. Few rich men are here to bee found, but they are all most deposit and religious after their manner. Voon the top of this mountaine are many Hermites, which line onely upon the fruites of certaine trees, and drinke water. They are a most faithfull and peaceable Nation. Whofoeuer among them is apprehended for theft or any other crime, is forthwith banished the countrey for certaine yeares. So great is their simplicitie, that what foeuer they fee the Hermites doe, they efteeme it as a miracle. They are much oppreffed with the often invations of their neighbours the Arabians; wherefore this quiet Nation choose rather to pay yearely tribute, then to maintaine warre.

Now comes the Region of Sm to be confidered of, being fituate beyond Aslas, over against the Territorie of Hea, that is to fay, in the extreme part of Africa. Westward it beginneth from the Ocean Sea, and Southward from the Sandie Defarts: on the North it is bounded with the vemost Towns of Hes; and on the East with that mightie River whereof the whole Region is named. Wherefore beginning from the West, we will describe all those Cities and places which shall seeme to be worthy of memorie.

Of the Towne

Dates which

one yeare.

Holy Temple,

Great ftors

of Whales.

Superstitious

Three finall Townes were built by the ancient Africans vpon the Sea shoare (each being a mile distant from other) in that very place where Allas takes his beginning: all which three are called by one onely name, to wit, Meffa; and are inuironed with a wall built of white stones. Through these three runneth a certaine great River, called Sm, in their language : this River in 20 Summer is so destitute of water that a man may easily without perill passe ouer it on foote; but it is not fo in the Winter-time. They have then certaine small barkes, which are not meete to faile upon this River. The place where the forefaid three Townes are fituate, aboundeth greatly with Palme trees neither have they in a manner any other wealth; and yet their Dates are but of fmall worth because they will not last about one years. All the inhabitants exercise husbandry, especially in the moneths of September and Aprill, what time their River encreaseth. And in May their Corne groweth to ripenesse. But if in the two foresaid moneths the River encreafeth not according to the wonted manner, their harueft is then nothing worth. Cattell are very scarce among them. Not farre from the sea-side they have a Temple, which they greatly efteeme and honour. Our of which, Historiographers fay, that the same Prophet, of whom their great Mahamet foretold, should proceed. Yea, some there are which sticke not to affirme, 40 that the Prophet Ionas was call forth by the Whale vpon the shoare of Mele, when he was fent to preach vnto the Ninimites. The rafters and beames of the faid Temple are of Whales bone. And it is a vivall thing amonest them, to see Whales of an huge and monstrous bignesse cast vp dead upon their sheare, which by reason of their hugenesse and strange deformitie, may terrifie and aftonish the beholders. The common people imagine, that, by reason of a certaine secret power and vertue infused from heaven by God vpon the said temple, each Whale which would Iwim paft it can by no meanes escape death. Which opinion had almost perswaded me, especially when at my being there, I my felfe faw a mighty Whale cast vp, vnlesse a certaine Iew had told me, that it was no such strange matter : for (quoth he) there lie certaine rockes two miles so into the Sea on either fide, and as the Sea moues, fo the Whales moue also; and if they chance to light upon a rocke, they are easily wounded to death, and so are cast upon the next shoare. This reason more prevailed with me, then the opinion of the people. My selfe (I remember) being in this Region at the same time when my Lord the Seriffo bare rule ouer it, was inuited by a cer-A Whales Rib taine Gentleman, and was by him conducted into a Garden, where he shewed me a Whales rib of fo great a fize, that lying wpon the ground with the conuexe or bowing fide vpward, in manner of an arch, it refembled a gate, the hollow or inward part whereof aloft we could not touch with our heads, as we rode your Oamels backs: this rib (he faid) had laine there aboue an hundred yeares and was kept as a miracle. Here may you find vpon the fea-shore great store of Amber, which the Portugal and Fellan Merchants fetch from thence for a verie meane price : for they scarcely pay a Duckat for a whole ounce of most choise and excellent Amber. Amber (as 60 fome thinke) is made of Whales dung, and (as others suppose) of their Sperma or Seede, which being confolidate and hardned by the Sea, is cast vpon the next shoare.

greatneffe.

Anber.

Trijent containeth foure thousand families, and standeth not farre from the River of Sus. The

foyle adjacent is most fruitfull for graine, for Barly, and for all kind of Pulse. They have here likewife a good quantitie of Sugar growing; howbert, because they know not how to press, boyle, Store of Suand trim it they cannot have it but blacke and vulavorie: wherefore fo much as they can spare, gar. they fell vnto the Merchants of Maroce, of Fez, and of the land of Negros. Of Dates likewife they have plentie; neither vie they any mony besides the Gold which is digged out of their own native foile. The women weare vpon their heads a piece of cloth worth a duckat. Silver they have none, but fuch as their women adorne themselves with. The least Iron-coine vied amongst Iron Coyne.

CHAP.I.S.2. The situation and estate of the Region of Maroco.

them, weigheth almost an ounce. No fruites take plentifully upon their foilebut onely Figos. Grapes, Peaches, and Dates. Here is that excellent Leather dreffed, which is called Leatner of Cordonan Grapes, Peaches and Dates. Here is that excellent beather dience, which is cancer beather of 10 Maroco; twelve hides whereof are here fold for fixe Duckats, and at Fex for eight. That maroco. part of this Region which lieth toward Atlas hath many Villages, Townes, and Hamlets; but the South part thereof is vtterly destitute of inhabitants, and subject to the Arabians, which border vpon it. In the must of this Citie standeth a faire and stately Temple, ATemple which they call The greatest, and The chiefest, through the verie midst whereof they have caused through which a part of the foretaid Ruser to runne. The inhabitants are flerneand victually, being fo continuation

ally exercifed in warres, that they have not one day of quiet. Each part of the Citie hath a feuerall Captaine and Gouernour, who all of them together doe rule the Common-wealth: but

their authoritie continueth neuer aboue three moneths, which being expired, three other are The Towne of Tarodant built by the ancient Africans, containeth about three thousand hous- Tarodans, a holds. For when the Family of Marin governed at Fez., part of them also inhabited Sus, and in Towne of Sus. those dayes Sus was the seate of the King of Fez his Vice-roy. All authoritie is committed vinto

their Noble, or principall men, who governe foure by foure, fixe moneths onely. Tedsi being a very great Towne, and built many yeares agoe in a most pleasant and fertile Tedsia Towne place by the Africans, containeth moe then foure thousand samilies; it is diffant from Tarodant of Suc. Eiftward thirtie miles, from the Ocean fea fixtie miles, and from Allas twentie. Here groweth great abundance of Corne, of Sugar, and of wilu Woad. You shall find in this Citie many Store of Sugar Merchants, which come out of the land of Negros for trafficks fake. The Citizens are great lo_ and of Wood,

uers of peace, and of all civilitie: and they have a flourishing Common-wealth. The whole Ci-30 tie is gouerned by fixe Magistrates which are chosen by lots : howbeit, their gouernment lasteth for fixteene moneths onely. The River of Sm is diffant three miles from hence, Here dwell many Iewes, which are most cunning Gold-smuths, Corpenters, and such like Arcificers. They haue a very stately Temple, and many Priests and D Ctors of the Law, which are maintained at the publike charge. Every Mundy great numbers of Arabians both of the Plaines, and of the Mountaines come hither to Market.

In all Sm there is no Citie comparable vnto that which is commonly called Taganost, for it The Citie of containeth aboue eight thouland housholds; the wall thereof is built of rough stones. From the Tagenoft. Ocean it is distant about three fore miles, and about fiftie miles Southward of Atlas : and the report is, that the Africans built this Civie. About ten miles from this place lieth the River of

40 Sus : here are great store of Artificers and of shops, and the people of Taganoft are divided into three parts. They have concinual curil warres among themselves, and one part have the Arabians alwaies on their fide; who for tet, er pay will take part fometime with one fide, and fometime with the contrarie. Of C. rne and Cat.ellhere is great abundance; but their Wooll is exceeding course. In this Citie are made certaine kinds of apparell, which are viually carried for merchandize once a yeere to Tombuto, to Gualata, and to other places in the land of Negros. Their Market is twice every weeke : their attire is fomewhat decent and comely : their women are beautifull: but their men are of a tawnie and fwart colour, by reason they are descended of blacke fathers, and white mothers.

The Mountaine Hanchifa beginneth Westward from Allas, and from thence stretcheth al- The Moun-50 most fortie mile as Eastward. The inhabitants of this Mountaine are such valiant foot-men, that taine of Hanone of them will encounter two Horsemen. The foile will yeeld no Corne at all but Barly; this. howbest hony there is in great abundance. With snow they are almost at all times troubled:but how patiently and strongly they can endure the cold, a man may easily gheste, for that the whole yeare throughout they weare one fingle garment onely.

The Mountaine Ilalem beginneth Westward from the Mountaine aforesaid; on the East it The Mounabutteth vpon the region of Guzula, and Southward vpon the Planes of Sus. The inhabitants lem. are valiant, having great store of Horses. They are at continuall warre among themselves for certaine Siluer mines; fo that those which have the better hand, digge as much Siluer as they Mines of Silver as they can, and distribute to every man his portion, yntill such time as they bee restrained from digging 60 by others.

The region of Maroco beginneth Westward from the Mountaine of Nessa, stretching East- The situation ward to the Mountaine of Hadmer, and Northward even to that place where the most tamous and estate of Risers of Tenfift and Assimual meete together, that is to say, when the East-border of Hea. This the Region of region is in a manner three square, being a most pleasant Country, and abounding with many

crouss and flocks of Cattell: it is greene every where, and most fertile of all things, which ferns for foode, or which delight the fences of fmelling or feeing. It is altogether a pl. me country.

Vpon a certaine hill of Ailas named Ghedram standeth a rowne, which was built (as some report) by the ancient Africane, and called by the name of Teneffa, being a most fireig and defemilie place, and being diffant about eight miles Eastward from the riner of Affinnall. At the foot of the fad hill lietn a most excellent plaine, which, were it not for the lew a theensh Arabans, would verld an incomparable crop. And because the inhabitants of Tenessare deprined of this notable commodity, they till onely that ground which is vpon the i.de of the mountaine. and which lieth betweene the towns and the river. Neither doe they enjoy that grates ; for they yearely pay unto the Arabians for tribute the third part of their corne.

The new

Imizmizi.

Vyon the top of a certaine high mountaine was built in our time a most large and impregnable Fort, being inturoned on all fides with divers other mountaines, and called by the inhabitants New Deleumuha. Beneath the faid mountaine springeth Assimuall, which word signifieth the African tongue, the River of Rumor, because that breaking foorth by the fide of the hill with a monstrous noile, it maketh a most deepe gulte, much like vnto that, which the Italians call Inferro di Truoli. The faid Fort containeth almost a thousand families. They have alwayes beene great louers of civility, and have worne neat and decent apparell; neither shall you find any corner in the whole towne which is not well peopled. In this towne are plentic of Artificers, for it is but fiftie miles from the City of Maroco.

The Citie of

V pon a certaine part of Ailas frandeth a Citie colled Imazmizi. Westward it is distant from 20 new Delgunuha about fourteene miles : and this citie the Araham are reported to have built. Neere vato this Citte lieth the common high way to Guzuiz over the mountaines of Atlas, being commonly called Burris, that is, A way frewed with feathers : because inow falls often therevpon, which a man would thinke rather to be feathers then fnow. Not farre from this towne likewite there is a very faire and large plaine, which extendeth for the fpace of thirtie miles. euen to the territory of Maroco. This most fertile plaine weeldeth fuch excellent come, as (to my remembrance) I neuer faw the like. Saving that the Arabians and fouldiers of Maroco doe fo much molest the laid plane countrey, that the greater part thereof is destitute of the inha-

A moft exact der of Marore.

Margoin

rimes or 7

contained to

hour 100000.

This noble City of Maroco in Africa is accounted to be one of the greatest cities in the world. 20 description of It is built upon a most large field, being about fourteene miles diffant from Aslas. One lofoth the fonne of Tesfin, and king of the tribe or people called Luntuna, is reported to have beene the tamous City of Marco, asit founder of this Citie, at that very time when he conducted his troupes into the region of Marco 0: 34.500, 45 11 wis 100 years co, and fetled himselfe not farre from the common high-way, which stretcheth from Agmes oper the mountaines of salas, to these defarts where the forelaid tribe or people doe vivally inagoe, uer the mountaines of 22.166, to those density whose the first boil-fable. Heere may you behold most stately and wonderfull workmanship : for all their boildings are focunningly and arcificially contribed, that a man cannot eatily describe the same. This buge & mighty City, at fuch time as it was governed by Hali the fon of King Iofeph, contained me then one hundred thousand families. It had four and twenty gates belonging therto, an i a wail of great flyingth and thicknes, which was built of white flone and lime. From this City the river of Tenfifi lieth about fixe miles diffant. Heere may you behold great abundance 40 lacrames be- of Temples of Colledges, of Bath-floues, and of Innes, all framed after the fallion and cultome of that region. Some were built by the King of the tribe of Luntuna, and others by Elmnachidin could broyles, his successors but the most curious and magnificent Temple of all, is that in the midst of the City which was built by Hali the rift King of Maroco, and the fonne of Lefeph storefaid, being commonly called the Temple of Hali ben Isfeph. Howbert one Abdul-Mumen which succeeded him, to the end he might vtterly abolish the name of Hali, and might make himselve onely famous with pofferity, caused this stately Temple of Marzeo to be razed, and to be reedified formwhat more sumptuously then before. Howbert he lost not onely his expences. but failed of his purpose also : for the common people even till this day doe call the said Temple by the first and ancienteft name.

it is likely to hane seene much treater one plague is fail cohau: c infilmed 700000. per-Foolish emu-Manfor the

* O'Keurum.

Likewife in this City not farre from a certaine rocke was built a Temple by him that was the fecond vsurper over the kingdome of Maroco: after whose death his nephew Marfor enlarged king of Maroco, the faid Templ. fiftie cubits on all fides and adorned the fame with many pillars, which he commanded to be brought out of Spaine for that purpote. Vnder this Temple he made a Citlerne Affixely Tem- or va. It as bigge as the Temple it felfe: the roofe of the faid Temple he couered with lead; and at every corner he made leaden pipes to concay raine water into the Cifferne vinderneath the Temple. The tarret or fleeple is built of most hard and well framed flone, like vinte Veftafian his Amphirheatrum at Rome, containing in compaffe moe then an hundreth elles, and in height exceeding the Steeple of Bonoma. The staires of the faid turret or steeple are each of them moe 60 handfuls in breadth, the vemott fide of the wall is ten, and * the thicknes of the turet is her The faid turret hat a feuen lofts, vnto which the staires ascending are very lightions : for there are great itore of windowes, which to the end they may give more light, are made breads within then without. Vpon the top of this turret is built a certaine foire or pinnacle rifing

CHAP.I.S.2. Causes of the decay of Maroco, Elmaheli a factious preacher. 775 tharps in forme of a fugar-leafe, and containing fine and twenty elles in compate, but in height

being not much more then two (peares length); the faid (pure hath three lofts one about another, vinto every of which they afcend with wooden ladders. Likewife on the top of this foire flandeth a golden halfe moone, vpon a barre of Iron, with three spheares of gold vnder it; which golden fisheares are fo fastened vinto the said iron ber that the greatest is lowest, and the least higheit, it woul i make a man giddie to looke downe from the top of the turret ; for men walking on the ground, be they neuer fo tall, feeme no bigger then a child of one yeere old. From hence likewife may you plainely elerie the promontery of Azaphi, which notwithflanding is an hundreth and thirtie miles diffant. But mountaines (you will fay) by reason of their huge bignesse 10 may cathy be feene a farre off : howbest from this turret a man may in cleere weather most easily fee fittie miles into the plaine countreys. The inner part of the faid Temple is not very beautifull. But the roofe is most cunningly and artificially vaulted, the timbers being framed and let together with fingular workmanship, to that I have not feene many fairer Temples in all Italr. And albeit you shall hardly find any Temple in the whole world greater then this, yet it is very meanly frequented; for the people doe neuer affemble there but onely vpon fridayes. Yea a great part of this City, especially about the aforesaid Temple lieth so desolate & void of inhabitants. that a man cannot without great difficulty palle, by reason of the ruines of many houses lying in the way. Ynder the porch of this Temple it is reported that in old time there were almost an Great flore of the way. Vinder the porch of this Temple it is reported that in our time there were amore an bookes mode hundreth floors of lale-bookes, and as many on the other fide over against them; but at this time to be fold time to be fold I thinke there is not one Book-feller in all the whole City to be found. And fearcely is the third in Maroco.

20 part of this City inhabited.

Within the wals of Maroco are Vines Palme-trees, great Gardens, and most fruitfull Corne- State of it fields : for without their wals they can till no ground, by reason of the Arabians often mrodes. 1526. Know ye this for a certainty, that the faid City is growen to vntimely decay and old age : for fearcely flue hundreth and fixe yeeres are past, fince the first building thereof, foratmuch as the foundations thereof were laid in the time of Tofeph the sonne of Tesfin, that is to fay, in the foure hundreth twentie and fourth yeere of the Hegeira. Which decay I can impute to none other Causes of the cause, but to the injurie of continuall warres, and to the often alterations of Magistrates and of decay of Mathe common-wealth. After King lofeph succeeded his sonne Hali, and the sonne of Hali was ordained gouernour after his fathers decease. In whose time forung vp a factious crue, by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan Preacher named Elmaheli, being a man both borne and brought Elmaheli a fa-

wp in the mountaines. The faid Elmaheli having levied a great army, waged warre against A- cher. braham his foueraigne Lord, Whereupon King Abraham conducting another armie against him, had marueilous ill successe : and after the battell ended, his passage into the City of Maroco was follopped and reftrained, that he was forced with a few fouldiers, which remained yet alive, to thee Eathward to the mountaines of Atlas. But Elmaheli not being fatisfied with expelling his true Soueraigne out of his owne Kingdome, commanded one of the Captaines called Abdul Mumen, with the one halfe of his armie to purfue the distressed King, while himself with the other halfe laide fiege to Maroco. The king with his followers came at length vnto Oran, hoping there to have renewed his forces. But Abdul Minnen and his great armie pursued the faid King fo narrowly, that the Citizens of Oran told him in plaine termes, that they would not hazard themselves for him. Wherefore this vnhappie King being vtterly driven to ditpaire, fet his Queene on horle-backe behind him, and so in the night time road foorth of the Citie. But per- The miserable ceining that hee was discried and knowen by his enemies , he field foorthwith vnto a certaine death of Abrarocke fanding upon the fea-fit are : where, feeting fours to his horse-fide, he cast himselfe, his Marces and of most detre spouse, and his horse downe headlong, and was within a while after found slaine his Queene. among the rockes and flones, by certaine which dwelt neere vnto the place. Wherefore Abdul Mumen having gotten the victorie, returned in triumphant manner toward Maroco, where the forefaid Elmabeli was deceated before his commning, in whole place Abdat was chosen King and Mahmmetan Prelate over the fortie disciples, and tooke ten perions to be of his priny coun- New S. &.

cell, which was a new invention in the law of Mahumet. This Abdul Mumen having belieged 50 the Citie of Maroco for the space of an whole yeere, at last ouercame it : and killing Ifaac the onely fonnest King Abraham with his owne hand, he commanded all the fouldiers, and a good part of the Civizens to be flaine. This mans posteritie raigned from the fine hundred fixteenth, to the fixe hundred fixtue eight vecre of the Hegeira, and at length they were dispositesfed of the Kingdome ty a certaine King of the Tribe called Marin. The family of Marin after the faid Kings deceate bare rule till the yeere of the Hegeira, feuen hundreth eightie and fine. The principall court of this family was holden for the most part at Fez ; but ouer Maroco were ap- Infarct yeers. pointed Vice-roves and D-puties : infomuch that Fez was continually the head and Metropoli- Maroco reco-

60 tan Citie of all Mauritonia, and of all the Wester re dominion.

n Citie of ail Mauritonia, and of all the Wetterne dominion.

In the faid City of Maroco is a most impregnable Castle, which, if you consider the bignes, the gremacy.

A stronge walls, the towres, and the gates built all of perfect marble, you may well thinke it to be a City C. file. rather then a Cathe. Wit on this Caffle there is a flately Temple, having a most loftie and high A flarely rem fleeple, on the top whereof itan leth an halfe moone, and under the halfe moone are three golden ple

Three golden

Spheares one bigger then another, which all of them together weigh one hundreth and thirty thousand ducates. Some Kings there were, who being allured with the value, went about to take downe the faid golden ipheares : but they had alwayes some great misfortune or other. which hindred their attempt: Likewife the faid Castle containeth a noble Colledge, which hath thirtie Hals belonging thereunto. In the midft whereof is one Hall of a maruellous greatnesse. wherein publike Lectures were most solemnely read, while the studie of Learning sourched among them. Such as were admitted into this Colledge had their victuals and apparell freely eimen them. Of their Professours some were yearely allowed an hundred, and some two hundred Dickats, according to the qualitie of their profession : neither would they admit any to heare them read, but fuch as perfectly understood what belonged to these Arts which they professed. To The wals of this beautifull Hall are most flately adorned with painting and carving, especially of that Hall where Lectures were woont publikely to be read. All their Porches and vaulted Roofes are made of painted and glittering fiones, called in their Language Ezzullein . fuch as are vet yed in Spaine. In the midit of the faid building is a most pleasant and cleare Fountaine, the wall whereof is of white and polished Marble, albeit low built, as in Africa for the most part fuch wals are. I have heard that in old time here was great abundance of Students, but at my being there I found but five in all: and they have now a most fenfelesse Professour, and one that is quite void of all humanitie.

Moreover, the forefaid Cattle (as I remember) hath twelve Courts most curiously and artificially built by one Manfor. In the first lodged about five hundred Christians, which carryed 2G Croile-bowes before the King whither joeuer he went. Not farre from thence is the lodging of the Lord Chancellour and of the Kings Prime Countell, which House is called by them, The House of Affaires. The third is called, The Court of Victorie; wherein all the Armour and Munition of the Citie is layed vp. The fourth, belongeth to the great Master of the Kings Horfe, Vpon this Court three Stables adioyne, each one of which Stables will contain two hundred Horses. Likewise there are two other Oftleries, whereof one is for Mules, and the other for an hundred of the Kings Hories onely. Next vnto the Stables were two Barnes or Garners adiopning in two feuerall places, in the lower of which Barnes was layed Straw, and Barley in the other. There is 'lio another most large place to lay vp Corne in, every Roome whereof will containe more then three hundred Bulhels. The couer of the faid Roome hath a cercainehole whereunto they afcend by staires made of stone. Whither the beasts laden with Corn e being come, they powre the faid Corne into the hole. And so when they would take any Corne from thence, they doe but open certaine holes below, fuffering fo much Corne to come forth as may serue their turnes, and that without any labour at all. There is likewise a certaine other Hall, where the Kings Sonne and the Sonnes of Noblemen are instructed in Learning. Then may you behold a certaine foure-square building, containing diners Galleries with faire Ghille Windowes, in which Galleries are many Hiltories most curiously painted : heere likewife the glittering and gilt Armour is to be feene. Next vnto this building is another, wherein certaine of the Kings Guardare lodged : then followes that wherein State-matters are discusfed : whereunto adioyneth also another, which is appointed for Ambassadors to conferre with the Kings Printe Counfell in. Likewife the Kings Concubines and other Ladies of Honour haue a most convenient place assigned them : next vnto which standeth the Lodging of the Kings Sonnes. Not farre from the Caille wall, on that fide which is next vato the fields, may you behold a most pleasant and large Garden, contayining almost all kind of Trees that can bee na-

mous Phytici-an dedicated

Moreover, there is a fumptuous and stately Porch built of most excellent square Marble: in the midk whereof standeth a Piller with a Lion very artificially made of Marble, out of the mouth of which Lion issueth most cleere and Christall water, falling into a Cisterne within the Porch : at each corner of the faid Porch flandeth the Image of a Leopard framed of white Marble, which is naturally adorned with certaine blacke spots : this kind of parti-coloured Marble is no where to be found but onely in a certaine place of Atlas, which is about an hundred and fiftie miles diftant from Maroco. Not farre from the Garden stands a certaine Wood or Parke walled round about : And here I thinke no kind of wild beatts are wanting : for heere you may behold Elephants, Lions, Stagges, Roes, and fuch like: howbeit the Lions are separated in a certaine place from other beafts, which place even to this day is called The Leons Den. Wherefore fuch Monuments of Antiquitie as are yet extant in Maroco, albeit they are but few, doe This King cal notwith Handing fufficiently argue, what a Noble Citie it was in the time of Manfor.

At this prefent all the Courts and Lodgings before described lye veterly voyd and desolate : he water whom he weept perhaps some of the Kings Offlery which tends its Mules and Horses do lye in that Court, which we faid euen now was to lodge Archers and Crosse-bow-men : all the residue are left for 60 the Fowles of the Aire to neitle in. That Garden which you might have named a Paradife in old time, is now become a place where the filth and dung of the whole Citie is call forth. Where the faire and stately Librarie was of old, at this pretent there is nothing else to be found, but Hens, Doues, and other such like Fowles, which build their Nests there. Certaine it is, that

the foreskid Manfor, whom we have so often mentioned, was a most pullfant and mighty Prince: for it is well knowne that his Dominion stretched from the Towne of Messa to the Kingdome of Tripolis in Barbarie, which is the most excellent Region of Africa, and to large, that a man The hoge Deof Tripolis in Barbarie, which is the more extending Region of 13 from the breadth in fifteene. This minio s of can hardly trauell the length thereof in four efforce and ten dayes, or the breadth in fifteene. This King Manfer. Manfor likewife was in times past Lord of all the Kingdome of Granada in Spaine, Yea, his Dominion in Spaine extended from Tariffa to Aragon, and over a great part of Castilia and of Portwall. Neither did this lacob, furnamed Manfor, only possesse the forestaid Dominions, but also his Grand-tather Abdul Mumen, his father Ioseph, and his Sonne Mahumet Enastr, who beeing vanguished in the Kingdome of Valentia, lost threefcore thousand Souldiers, Horsemen and The Christians To Footmen: howheit himselfe escaped and returned to Maroca. The Christians being encouraged happic succession with this victorie, refrayned not from Warre, till, within thirtie yeares space, they had wonne against the all the Townes following, to wit, Valentia, Denia, Alcauro, Murcia, Cartagera, Cordona, Smil-Monres, lia, Iaen, and Vbeds. After which vnhappie warre succeeded the decay of Maroco. The faid Mabumet deceating, left behind him ten Sonnes of a full and perfect age, who contended much about the Kingdome. Hereupon it came to passe, while the Brethren were at discord, and assayled each other with mutuall warres, that the people of Fez called Marini, and the Inhabitants of other Regions adjacent; began to viurpe the Gouernment. The people called Habduluad

enjoyed Tremizen, expelling the King of Tunis, and ordayning fome other, whom they pleased, in his flead. Now have you heard the end of Manfor his Progenie and Successors. The King-20 dome therefore was translated vnto one Iacob the Sonne of Habdulach, who was the first King of the Family called Marin. And at length the famous Citie of Maroco it felfe, by reason of the Arabians continual out-rages, fell into most extreme calamitie : so great is the inconstancie of all earthly things. That which we have here reported as touching Maroco, partly wee faw with our owne eyes, partly we reade in the Historie of one Ibnu Abdul Malich, a most exact Ibnu Abdulan Chronicler of the Atlaires of Maroco.

The Towne of Agmet built of old by the Africans vpon the top of a certaine hill which be. The Towne of ginneth almost from Atlas, is distant from Maroco about foure and twentie miles. In times agust, paft, when Muchidin was Prince thereof, it contayned more then fixe thousand Families: at what time the people were very civill, and had fuch plentie and magnificence of all things, that 20 many would not flicke to compare this Towne with the Citie of Maroce. It had on all fides most pleafant Gardens, and great ftore of Vines, whereof tome grew vpon the Mountaine it felfe. and others on the Valley. By the foot of this Hill runneth a faire River, which fpringing forth of Atlas falleth at length into Tenfift. The field which lyeth neere vnto this River is faid to be fo fruitfull, that it yeeldeth every yeere fiftie fold increase. The water of this River looketh al-

Howbeit the Citie of Agmet, which I have now described vnto, hath at this day no other Thedesolation Inhabitants but Woolues, Foxes, Deere, and fuch other wilde beafts. Except onely at my be- Hermite. ing there I found a certaine Hermite, who was attended vpon by an hundred persons of his owne Sect : all of them were well-horied, and did their best endeuour to become Gouernours and 40 Commanders, but their forces were infufficient. With this Hermite I staied (as I remember) for the fpace of ten dayes, and found one amongst his followers, with whom I had old acquaintance, and familiaritie : for we were certaine fellow-ftudents together at Fez, where beeing of one tom ten fee standing and senioritie, we heard that Booke of the Mahumetan Religion expounded which is depray Fer.

commonly called the Epiftle of Nenfest.

Having before described all the Cities and Townes of Maraco, it now remayneth that wee The Mounbriefly declare the fituation and qualitie of the Mountaines there. Wherefore wee will beginne taine of Niffe. with the Mountaine of Nififa, from whence the Region of Maroco it felfe beginneth Westward, and is thereby divided from the Province of Hea. The faid Mountaine hath great store of Inhabitants; and albeit the tops thereof are continually couered with Snow; yet doth it 50 yearely affoord maruellous increase and abundance of Barley. The rude people there are so deflitute of all humanitie and civill behaviour, that they doe admire not onely all Strangers, but also doe euen gaze and wonder at their apparell. I my felfe remayned two dayes among them, in which space all the people of the Towne came flocking about mee, greatly wondring at the white Garment which I wore (being fuch as the learned men of our Countrey are viually clad in) so that every one being delirous to handle and view this Garment of mine, in two dayes it Learned men

was turned from white to blacke, and became all greafie and filthy. At the bounds of Nififa, a certaine other Mountaine called by the Inhabitants Semede, taketh whitehis original : and thefe two Mountaines are separated by the River of Sefiana. Semede extendeth East-ward almost twentie miles, the Inhabitants whereof are most bale and witlesse peo-60 ple. Great flore of Springs and Fountaines are here to be found; the Snow is perpetuall; all good Lawes, Civilitie and honeitie are quite banished from hence, except perhaps the people be mooned thereunto by the aduice of fome stranger, whom they find to be of a modest and scher disposition. Here being entertayned by a certaine religious man of the same place (who was had in great reputation by the people) I was confirmyned to eate of fuch groffe meats as the faid

people are accustomed vinto, to wit, of Bailey meale mingled with water, and of Geatt-field. which was extremely tough and hard by reason of the stalenesse and long continuance. After Supper we had no other Bed but the bare ground to lye vpon.

The next morning being readie to take Hoise, and desirous to depart, fiftie of the people came about me, laying open each man their Caufes and Suites vnto me, as our people vie to do before a Judge. Vnto whom I answered, that I had never in all my life either knowne or heard of the manners and customes of that Region, Forth-with comes one of the chiefe men among it them, affirming that it was their custome neuer to difmisse any Stranger, till hee had both heard and throughly decided all the Quarrels and Controugriles of the Inhabitants. Which words he had fleayand to no found vettered, but immediately my Horfe was taken from me. Wherefer I was confirmed play the loages, and for mine dayes, and fo many nights, longer to abide the penuric and materie of that Region.

Moreover, my trouble was the greater, for that, in fuch abundance of Suites and Affaires, there was not one man prefent, which could fet downe fo much as a word in writing; wherefore I my felie was fayne to play both the ludge and the Notarie. Vpon the eight day they all of them promifed to bestow some great Reward vpon mee.

Wherefore the night following feemed vnto me a yeare long : for I was in good hope, the next morrow to have received a maffe of Gold from my Clients. So foone as the next day began to dawne, they placed me in a certaine Church-porch : whither, after an vivall and short Praver ended, each man full reuerently prefented his gift vnto me. Here some offered me a Cocke, othere brought me Nuts and Onions, and some others bestowed a handfull of Garlicke vpon me. 20 The principall and head-men amongst them presented mee with a Goat; and so by reason that there was no money in all the faid Mountayne, they proffered mee not one farthing for my paines : wherefore all the faid gifts I bequeathed vnto mine Hoaft for his worthy entertayning of me. And this was all the notable reward which I reaped in regard of fo great and intollerable paines. All things being thus difpatched, they fent fittle Horfemen to accompany and guard me from Theeues in that dangerous way.

This Mountaine of Senfana taketh his beginning where Semede endeth, out of which springcalled Sugara; eth a certaine River, having one name with the faid Mountaine from whence it proceedeth. Neuer were the tops of this Mountaine seene destitute of Snow. The Inhabitants leade a brutish and fauage life, waging continuall warre with their next Neighbours : for which purpose they yfe neither Swords, Iauelins, nor any other Warlike Instruments, but onely certaine Slings, out of which they discharge stones after a strange and wonderfull manner. Their victuals consist of Barley, Honey, and Goates fleih. In the lame Mountaine great multitudes of Iemes exercifing Handie-crafts, doe inhabit : likewise they make Sope, Iron-hookes, and Horse-shoces. Diuers Masons are here to be found also. They build their wals of no other matter but onely of rough flone and lime, and the roofes of their houses they wie to couer with thatch : neither have they any other kind of lime or brickes. They have among them also abundance of learned men and of skilfull Lawyers, whose counsell they vicat all times. Among whom I found some, who had heretofore beene my tellow-students at Fez, and for our old acquaintance fake, gaue me Time (1) and most courteous entertaynment; and, to the end I might escape the danger of Theeurs, they G amenareo- conducted me a good part of my way.

The Moun-Hanteta.

Neuer did I iee (to my remembrance) an higher Mountayne, then that which the Africans

Many Ieres exercifing divers Handie-crafts doe here inhabit, and doe yearely pay unto the Governour of this Mountayne great fummes of money. As concerning Religion, they follow them especially which are called Carrain. The top of this Mountayne is continually covered with Snow. When I first beheld this Motntayne, I thought it had beene Cloudes, so great is the height thereof. The fides of this Mountayne being altogether deflitute of Herbs and Trees, are in many places flored with excellent white Marble, which the people might digge, and make a good commoditie thereof, were they not fo fluggish and so ignorant in hewing and polifhing of the same. In this place are many Pillars and Arches which were most artificially and 50 fimptuoully built by those mightie Princes whom were have often before made mention of : which Pillars they would have vied for the building of Water-conduits, had they not beene hindered by the violence of warres.

GHZZH'A.

This Region is exceeding populous: Westward it abutteth upon Ilds a Mountayne of Sus; Northward it ionneth vnto Ailas, and Eastward it stretcheth vnto the Region of Hez. It is inhabited with fauage and herce people, being most needle of money, and yet abounding great-Iron and Cop- ly in Cattell. Great flore of Copper and Iron is here digged out of Mines. Great Villages they haue, which contains many of them, more then a thouland Families a piece. They have neyther King nor Gourmour to prescribe any Lawes unto them : but enery one is his own. Cap- 60 taine and Commander; whereupon they are at continuall warres among themselves, mether wars in Got- haue they any truce at all, but three dayes onely eutry weeke; during which time enery man may fately and freely bargaine with his Enemie, and may trauell whomer hee luteth. But thefe Weekly Traces dayes of Trace being path, the wretched people of this Region dee continually commit most

horrible flaughters. The forefaid dayes of truce a certaine Hermite appointed vnto them, whom they honoured and reuerenced like a god. This Hermite with one eye, Imy felfe faw, and found him to be a trufty, fincere, courteous, and most liberall person. Once every yeere they have a Venerable him to be a trutty, incere, courteous, and mon north period. One court fette they rate a Hermite.

Faire of two months long: all which time (though the number of Merchants be neuer fo great)

Free enterthey give free entertainment vinto all fuch as either bring wares with them, or come thither to tainement for fetch away their wares. When the time of their Faire approcheth, they foorthwith make Merchants. truce, and each faction appointeth a Captaine ouer an hundred fouldiers, to the end they may keepe themselves in safety, and may defend their said Faire from the inuasion and injury of all lewd persons. If any offence be committed, the Captaines immediately giue sentence vpon the To guilty person : and whoseeuer be connicted of theft, is foorthwith slaine like a brute beast, and Cruellexehis theenes carkalle is throwne out to bee denoured of dogges, wilde beafts, and rauenous cutions,

CHAP.I. S.2. Hermite honorable. Sodomie punished, Great grapes.

Azari was built by the Africans, and standeth vpon the shore of the Ocean sea, containing Of the Region foure thousand families: inhabitants there are great store, being for the most part very vacinill of Ducala, in, and barbarous. In times past there dwelt many Tewes in this Towne, which exercised divers which is traff and barbarous. In times past there dwelt many rewes in this 10 whe, which extend duties and the reft Handi-crafts. Their foyle is exceeding fertile; but so grade is their owne vnskilfulnesse and neg-following: it ligence, that they know neither how to till their ground, to fow their Corne, or to plant Vine-

The Towne Centumputes is built vpon a rocke of excellent marble: in the Suburbes whereof A.H.920, by 20 are certaine caues, wherein the inhabitants vie to by up their Corne: which is there fo wonder - realon of civil fully preserved, that it will continue an hundreth yeares without any ill saudur or corruption. Of the number of which cauer, refembling pits or wels, the Towne it felt is called Centum pute: fisme the king The inhabitants are of small reckoning or account, having no artificers dwelling among them but being at a Ser-

Azamur, a Towne of Duccala, was built by the Africans vpon that part of the Ocean fea- Church. The thore, where the River of Ommirabih dilemboqueth, being distant from Elmadma Southward, 4- this time bout thirtie miles. Very large it is, and well inhabited, and containeth to the number of fine brought ant thousand families. Here doe the Portugall Merchants continually reside. The inhabitants are face on the very civil, and decently apparelled. And albeit they are divided into two parts, yet have they Townes of 30 continual peace among themselues. Pulse and Corne they have great plentie, though their these parts as Gardens and Orchards bring forth nought else but figs. They have such plentie of fishes, that Leshimselse. they receive yearely for them sometime fixe thousand, and sometime seven thousand duckats. And their time of fifhing dureth from October to the end of Aprill. They vie to frie fifhes in a contum putel.

and their three by the gather an incredible quantitie of trane : neither yee they corneprefer-erraine pan with oyle, whereby they gather an incredible quantitie of trane : neither yee they corneprefer-any other oyle to put into their lampes. The lewes compounded with the King of Portugall, to decide that yeeld the Citie to him, on condition, that they should sustaine no iniurie) with a generall con- *Or Merbes. fent opened the Gates vnto them: and fo the Christians obtained the Citie, and the people went Traine Oyle to dwell part of them to Sala, and part to Fez. Neither doe I thinke that God for any other Azamu wenne cause brought this calamitie vpon them, but onely for the horrible vice of Sodomie, whereunto by the Porthe greatest part of the Citizens were for notoriously addicted, that they could scarce see any Sodomies young stripling, who escaped their lust.

The Greene Mountaine is of an exceeding height, beginning Eastward from the River of Om- raine. mirabib, and extending Westward to the Hills, called in their language Hasara; and it divideth The fruit cal-Duccala from some part of Tedles. Likewise this Mountaine is very rough and full of Woods, led by the I affoording great flore of Acornes and Pine-apples, and a certaine kind of red fruit which the Africano. Italians commonly call Africano. Many Hermites also doe inhabite vpon this Mountaine, li- Religious uing with no other kind of victuals, but fuch as the Woods yeeld vnto them: for they are aboue Hermis, five and twenty miles distant from all Townes and Cities. Here are great store of fountaines and of Altars built after the Mahumetan fashion, and many ancient houses also erected by the

Tagodast is built upon the top of a certaine high Mountaine, having foure other high Moun- Tagodast. taines round about it. Betweene which foure Mountaines and the faid Towne, are divers most large and beautiful Gardens replenished with all kind of fruits: Quinces here are of an incredible bigneffe. Their Vines dispersing themselves upon the boughes of trees, doe make most pleasant Grapes of Bowers and Walkes; the Grapes whereof being red, are for their bigneffe called in the language maruellous of that people, Hennes egs. They have here great abundance of Oyle, and most excellent Hony; Whitehoney fome of their Hony being white, and some yellow. This Towne hath many fountaines about it, which ioyning into one streame, doe serue for many Water-mils thereabouts. Here are likewife great flore of Artizans, who exercise themselves onely about things necessary. The inha-60 bitants are somewhat civill, their women are most beautifull, being most gorgeously decked with

filter Iewels. Their Oyle they carry vnto the next Cities Southward of them on this fide At-Las: but they fend their Leather vnto Fez and Mecnafa. Their Plaine is almost fixe miles long, the foyle being most fruitful for Corne in regard whereof, the Townesmen pay certaine yearely tribute vnto the Arabians. This Towne hath Judges, Priefts, and a great number of Gentlemen.

Hale hauing

780 Elgiumaha.

Neere vnto the forefaid Towne, within fine miles, flandeth Elgiuniuba. It was in our time built upon the top of an high Mountaine, and containeth to the number of five hundred families. besides somany families comprised in the Villages of that Mountaine. Here are innumerable Springs and Fountaines, and most pleasant and fruitfull Garders in all places. Here are likewise Walnut-trees huge and tall. The little Hills enuironing this Mountaine, doe yeeld Barly and Oliges in great abundance. In the faid Towne are great numbers of Artizans, as Smiths, Leatherdreffers, and fuch like. And because they have here notable Yron-mines, they make plentie of Horfe-shooes.

In the Mountaine of Tenuenes, being but fixteene yeares old, I trauelled with mine Vncle. Ambaffadour from the King of Fez to the King of Tombuto; and the Prince here gaue mee in recompence of Arabia Veries wherewith I presented him, fiftie duckats, and a good Horle. Tefza, the chiefe Towne of all Tedles, was built by the Africans vpon the tide of Mount At-

Tofga, Marbie Wals.

las, fome five miles from the Plaine. The Towne-walls are built of most excellent Marble, which is called in their language Tofas, and hereupon the Towne was so called likewise. Heere doe refide most rich Merchants of all forts : of Jewes here are two hundred families, who exercise Merchandise and divers other trades. And heere you shall finde many Outlandish Merchants which buy from hence certaine blacke Mantles with hoods, commonly called Ilbernus of these there are great numbers both in Italy and Spaine. They have Golden Coine without any Image or superscription: cheir apparell is decent; and their women are beautifull and of good behauiour. In this towne are divers Mahametan Temples, and many Priests and Indges. The King recei- 20 ueth from that City, euen at this present twenty thousand Ducats for yearely tribute.

His Captaine extorted B4000, Ducats of the Citizens & more from one Iew. The Mountain called Magran.

These people line like the Tartari.

Somewhat beyond the foresaid Mountaine of Seggheme Standerh Mount Magran. Southward it bordereth vpon the Region of Farcali, necre vnto the Lybian delart : Weitward it beginneth at Seg gheme, and extendeth Eastward to the foot of Mount Dedes. It is continually covered with thow. The inhabitants have fuch abundance of fmall & great cattell that they cannot long remaine in one place together. They build their houses of the Barke of certaine trees, the rooffe whereof dependeth on flender sparres, fashioned like vnto the hoopes inuironing the lids of such Chefts or Trunks, as the women of Isaly, when they trauell, carry vpon their Mules. So likewife these people transport their whole houses vp and downe by the arength of Mules, till they have found a fit place of aboad; where, fo foone as they arrive, they plant their fayd houses, remaining there with their wholefamilies, so long as they have graffe sufficient to feede their cattell. Howbeit all the fpring time they fettle themselues in one place, making certaine low Stables or Cottages, and couering them with the boughs of trees, which ferue for their cattell to lie in a nights : and to the end that the cold may not pinch them ouermuch , they kindle certaine huge fires neere vnto their faid Stables, whereupon fometimes the wind so violently drineth the fire, that vnleffe the cattell escape by flight, they are in great danger to be confirmed: and as their houses are destitute of walls, so are their Stables. They are continually molested and haunted with Lions and Woolues. In their apparell and customes they wholly agree with the foresaid people of Seggheme, saying that these have houses of Barke and Wood, and the other of Stone. I my felfe, in the nine hundreth and seuenteenth yeere of the Hegeira, was in this Mountaine, as I trauelled from Dara to Fez. The high and cold Mountaine of Dedes greatly aboundeth with Fountaines and Woods.

Westward it beginneth at Mount Magran, extending thence almost as far as the Mountaine of

A description of Mount

Adefor; and Southward it bordereth vpon the plaines of Todga. The length thereof is almost fourescore miles. Vpon the very top of this Mountaine there was a City built in ancient time, whereof a few ruinous Monuments are to be seene at this present; namely, certaine walles of white Stone, wherein are divers letters and words graven, which the inhabitants themselves Soife Escali doe not understand. Many are of opinion, that this City was built long agee by the Romanes: howbeit I my felfe could neuer finde fo much affirmed by an African writer, nor yet the City it felfe mentioned. Sauing that Seriffo Esfacalli in a certaine Story of his maketh mention of Tadf., which he aith is near with Seglandf, and Data: but the declareth now whether it be 50 built vpon Mount Delac on to. Howbett for mine owne part I thinke it to be the very fame: for there is no other City in the whole Region. The inhabitants of Dedes are in very deed most base people; of whom the greater part dwell in Caues vnder the ground; their food is Barly and Or Sale-pe- Elbafid, that is to fay, Barly meale fodden with water and falt, which we mentioned before in our description of Hea: For heere is nothing but Barly to be had. Goates and Asses they have in great baundance. The Caues wherein their cattell lodge are exceedingly full of * Nitre: so that I verily thinke if this Mountaine were neere vnto Italy, the faid Nitre would yeerely be worth fine and twenty thousand Ducats. But such is their negligence and viskilfulnesse, that they are truely ignorant to what purposes Nitte ferueth. Their garments are forude, that 60 they scarce couer halfe their nakednesse. Their houses are so loathsome, being annoyed with the flinking fmell of their Goats. In all this Mountaine you shall finde neither Castle nor walled Towne: when they build an house, they pile one stone vpon another without any morter at all, the roofe whereof they make of certaine subbifh, like as they doe in some places of Stfa and FabCHAP.I.S.3. Trecherous, Theenift, Slauish and Slutsish people.

briano : the refidue (as we have faid) doe inhabite in Caues, neither faw I euer, to my remembrance, greater swarmes of fleas then among those people. Moreouer, they are trecherous and frong theeues, so given to flealing and quarrelling, that for one wakind word they will not on-Iv contend, but feeke also the destruction one of another. They have neither Judge, Priest, nor any honelt Gouernour among them. No Merchants refort vnto them : for being given to continual lulenesse, and not exercising any trades or handie-crafts, they have nothing meete for Merchants to buy. If any Merchant bring any wares into their Region, vnletle he be fafe conducted by their Captaine, he is in danger to be robbed of altogether. And if the wares ferue not for their owne necessary vies, they will exact one fourth part of them for custome. Their wo-10 men are most forlorne and fluttish, going more beggerly apparelled then the men. So continuall and flauish are the toiles of these women, that for milery, the life of Asses is not comparable to theirs. And, to be briefe, neuer was I so weary of any place in all Africa, as I was of this : howbeit in the yeere of the Hegeira, nine hundred and eighteene, being commanded by one, to whom I was in duety bound, to travell vnto Segelmeffe, I could not choose but come this way.

> Collections of things most remarkable in IOHN LEO bis third Booke of the Historie of Africa.



He kingdome of Fez, beginneth Westward at the famous river Ommirabib, and exten- A most exact deth eastward to the river Mulsia; Northward it is enclosed partly with the Ocean, defraption of deth eathward to the riner or mines, worthward as buttoned party with did into feuen and party with the Mediterran less. The faid Kingdome of Fees, S duiled into feuen of fees, and of fee * Elchauz : euery of which Prouinces had in old time a feuerall Gouernour : neither indeed hath * Change. the City of Fez alwayes beene the Kings Royall Scate, but being built by a certaine Mahumetan Cheuz, Apostara, was gouerned by his posteritie almost an hundred and sittle yeeres. After which time

the familie of Marm got the upper hand, who here fetling their aboad, were the first that ever called Fez by the name of a Kingdome.

Of Templie one or the Prounces of

Wellward it beginneth at the River Ommirabib, and firetcheth to the River Buragrag Eaffward; the South Frontire thereof bordereth vpon Atlas, and the North vpon the Ocean Sea. It is all ouer a plaine Countrey, contaying in length from the West to East almost fourescore

miles, and in breadth from Ailas to the Ocean Sea about threefcore. This Province hath ever almost beene the principall of the feuen before named : for it contained to the number of forty great Townes, befides three hundred Cafiles, all which were inhabited by Barbarian Africana In the three hundred three & twentieth yeer of the Hegeira, this Prouince was by a certaine heretike against the Mahumetan Religion, called Chemin the some of Mennall, treed from paying 10 of tribute. This bad fellow perswaded the people of Fez to yeeld no tribute nor honour vnto their Prince, and himfelte he professed to be a Prophet : but a while after he dealt not onely in matters of Religion, but in common-wealth affaires also. At length waging warre against the King of Fez (who was himfelfe then warring with the people of Zenete) it to befell, that a league was concluded betweene them, conditionally that Chemin should enjoy Temeline, and that the King should contain himselfe within his Signiciae of Fez, so that from thencefoorth neither should molest other. The faid Chemim governed the Province of Temelne about fine and thirtie yeeres and his fucceffours enjoyed it almost an hundred yeeres after his decease. But King Iofeph haung built Maroco, went about to bring this Province under his subjection. Wher-Differences in upon he fent fundry Mahumetan Doctors; and Priefts to reclaime the governour thereof from his Religion and herefie, and to perswade him, if it were possible, to yeeld vnto the King by faire meanes. Whereof the inhabitants being aduertised, they consulted with a certaine kinsman of the fore-

The horrible defolation of Temefac.

faid Gouernour, in the Citie called Anfa, to murther the King of Maroco his Ambaffadours : and so they did. Soone after leuying an army of fifty thousand men, he marched towards Maroco, incending to expell thence the family of Luntuna, and lofe; b their King. King lofeth hear ring of this newes, was driven into wonderfull perplexity of mind. Wherefore preparing an huge and mighty army, he flayed not the comming of his enemies : but on the fudden within three dayes, having conducted his forces over the River of Ommirabib, he entred Temefne, when as the foresaid fifty thousand men were so dismayed at the Kings army, that they all passed the River Burggrag, and to fled into Fez. But the King fo dispeopled and wasted Temefre, that 30 without all remorfe he put both man, woman, and child to the fword. This army remayned in the Region eight dayes, in which space they so razed and demolished all the Townes and Cities thereof, that there scarce remains any fragments of them at this time. But the King of Fez on the other fide hearing that the people of Temefre were come into his Dominions, made a truce with the Tribe of Zenete, and bent his great army against the said Temesnites. And at length having found them halfe familhed neere vnto the River of Buragrag, he to stopped their passages on all fides, that they were constrained to run up the craggie mountaines and thickets. At last being enuironed with the Kings forces, some of them were drowned in the River , others were throwne downe headlong from the rockes, and the refidue were miferably flaine by their enemies. And for the space of ten moneths there was fach hauocke made among the Temesnites, 40 that a filly remnant of them was left aline. But King Joseph Prince of the Luntunes returned foorthwith to Maraco for the repayring of his forces, to the end he might bid the King of Fez a battell. Howbeit Temefre being bereft of her people, was left to be inhabited of wilde bealts. Neither had that Prouince any new Colony, or supply of inhabitants, till that about one hundreth and fifty yeeres after, King Manfor returning from Tunis, brought thence certaine ofrabians with him, vnto whom he gaue the possession of Temesne. And these Arabians enjoyed the faid Province for fifty yeeres, till such time as King Manfor himselfe was expelled out of his Kingdom: & then were they also expelled by the Luntunes, & were brought into extreme miferie. Afterward the Kings of the family of Marin bestowed the faid Province vpon the people of Zenete and Haoara. Hence it came to passe that the faid people of Zentete & Haoara, were al- 59 wayes great friends vnto the Marin family, and were thought to have defended them from the fury of the King of Maroco. From which time they have peaceably enjoyed Maroco, and now they are grown in leffe then an hundred yeers fo mighty, that they fland not in feare of the King of Fez. For they are able to bring threefcore thousand horsemen into the field, & have two himdred Caltles at their commaund. My felfe had great familiarity and acquaintance with them, and therefore I will not slicke to record all memorable things which I saw among them. This famous Towne was built by the Romanes vpon the Ocean Sea shoare, Northward of

And a Towne

Atlas lixtie, Eastward of Azamur fixty, and Westward Rebat forty miles. The Citizens thereof were most civill and wealthy people : the fields thereto adioyning are exceeding fruitfull for all kind of graine : neither doe I thinke, that any Towne in all Africa is for pleasant fituation comparable thereto. The plaine round about it (except it be to the Sea Northward) is almost 60 fourescore miles ouer. In old time it was fraught with stately Temples, rich ware-houses and shops, and beautifull palaces: which the monuments as yet remayning doe sufficiently toffishe. They had also most large and faire gardens, out of which they gather great abundance of fruit,

especially of Melons, & Pome-citrons even at this day : all which are perfectly ripe by mid-Aprill. So that the inhabitants viually carry their fruits vnto Fez, by reason that the fruits of Fez are not fo foone ripe. Their attire is trim and decent, and they have alwayes had great traffique are not to none type. Then are the same with the Portugals and the English training them. But English training them. But English training them. is now defolate and destroyed by Portugals.

This great and famous Towne was built not many yeers ago by Manfor the King & Mahu-daffeddroyed metan Patriak of Maroco, vpon the Ocean Sea shoare, By the East part therof runneth the River Burarray before-named, and there dischargeth it selfe into the maine Sea. The rocke whereon Addictivition this Towne is founded, standeth neere the mouth of the faid River, having the River on the one of Rebat.

10 fide thereof, and the Sea on the other. In building it much refembleth Maroco, which Manfor willed to be a patterne thereof : fauing that it is a great deale leffe then Maroco. Some lay that the reason why it was built in this place was, for that King Mansor possessing the Kingdome Why King of Granada, and a great part of Spaine befides, and confidering that Maroco was fo farred diltant, Monfor built that if any warres should happen, he could not in due time send new forces against the Christi- the Towne of that it any warres mount mappen, at count it has been shoure, where he and his army might re- Sea shoure, ans, determined to built some Towne vpon the Sea shoure, maineall fummer time. Some perswaded him to lie with his army at Centa a Towne vpon the ftreights of Giblaltar : but Marifer feeing that by reason of the barrennes of the soile he could not maintain an army Royall for three or foure moneths in the Town of Centa, he caused this Town of Rebat in fhort space to be erected, & to be exceedingly beautified with Temples, Colledges, Palaces, Shops, Stoues, Holpitals, and other fuch buildings. Moreouer, on the South fide without

20 the wals he cauled a certaine high Tower like the Tower of Maroco to be built, fauing that the winding flaires were somewhat larger, insomuch that three horses a-breast might well ascend vp: from the top whereof they might elery ships an huge way into the Sea. So exceeding is the height thereof, that I thinke there is no where the like building to be found. And to the end that greater store of Artificers and Merchants might hither from all places make resort, he appointed, that every man according to his trade and occupation should be allowed a yearely flipend, whereupon it came to passe that within few moneths, this Towne was better stored with all kind of Artificers and Merchants, then in any Towne in all Africa besides, and that because they reaped a double gaine. Heere vsed Mansor with his Troupes to remaine from the beginning of Aprill, till the month of September. And whereas there was no water about the Conduits of Town meet to be drunke (for the Sea runneth ten miles vp into the River, and the wels likewise fresh water 12) 30 yeeld falt-water) Manfor cauled fresh water to be conucied to the Towne by certaine Pipes miles, and Channels, from a fountaine twelue miles diffant. And the Conduits hee made arch-wife, like vnto the Conduits of Italy in many places, and specially at Rome. So soone as the said water-conduit was derived vinto the Towne, he caused it to be divided and fent into fundry pla-

ces, as namely, some pipes thereof to the Temples, some to the Colledges, others to the Kings Palace, and the rest into the common Cisternes, throughout all the City. Howbeit after King Manfors death this Towne grew into fuch decay, that scarce the tenth part thereof now remaineth. The faid notable water-conduit was vtterly fordone in the warre betweene the Marin

familie and the fuccessors of Mansor.

Alfo King Manfor caused Sella to be walled round about, and built therein a faire Hospitall, Sella. & aftately Palace, into which his fouldiers might at their pleasure retire themselues. Here likewife he erected a most beautifull Temple, wherein he caused a goodly Hall or Chappell to be set Where King wife he erected a most beautiful Temple, wherein he caused a goodly start of Chappen to be the Massor was yp, which was curiously carued, and had many fairs windows about it and in this Hall (when he buried. perceiued death to feaze vpon him) he commanded his fubiects to burie his corps. Which being done, they laid one Marble-stone ouer his head, and another ouer his feete, whereon fundry Epitaphes were engrauen. After him likewise all the honourable personages of his family and blood, choose to be interred in the same Hall. And so did the Kings of the Marin family, to long as their Common-wealth prospered. My selfe on a time entring the same Hall , beheld there thirty Monuments of noble and great perforages, and diligently wrote out all their Epitaphes:

this I did in the yeere of the Hegera nine hundred and fifteene. In Thagia is visited the Sepulchre of one accounted for a most holy man, who is reported in Sepulchrevithe time of Habdulmumen, to have wrought many miracles against the furie of Lions : where- fited for sexe upon he was reputed by many as a great Prophet. I remember that I read in a certaine writer of of Lions. that Nation commonly called Etdedle, a whole Catalogue of the faid holy mans miracles: which whether he wrought by Arte-magicke, or by some wonderfull secret of nature, it is altogether vaccertaine. Howbeit his great fame and honourable reputation is the cause why this Towne is fo well fraught with inhabitants. The people of Fez having folemnized their Easter, do yeere- Pilgrimage ly frequent this Towne to visite the said Sepulchre, and that in such huge numbers, that you farre and tree

60 would efteemet hem to be an whole armie; for every principall man carries his Tent and other necessaries with him : and so you shall see sometime an hundred Tents, and sometimes more in that company. Fifteene dayes they are in performing of that Pilgrimage; for Thagia standeth from Fex almost an hundred and twenty miles. My selfebeing a child, went thither on Pilgrimage oftentimes with my Father; as likewife being growen vp to mans estate, I repai-

The Territory of Tex.

red thither as often, making supplication to bee deduced from the danger of Lions.

Weitwards beginneth at the Ruser of Burgerge, and streetcheth Eastward to the ruser called formers: which two Rusers are lamof a hundres miles distinct assumer. Northward it bondereth upon the Riser 'Subu, and Southward upon the foote of Assa. The folle both for abundance of Crime, First, and Carell fementh to be interiour to none other.

Sella.

The buildings of Sella carry a thew of Antiquity on them, being Artificially carred and flately imported with Marble pillars. Their Templ.s are most beautiful, and their are shops built valled large Porches. And at the end of euror row of thops is an Arch, which (as they say) is to duide one occupation from another. And (to say all in a word) here is nothing wanting, which may be required either in a mott honourable City, or a flourishing Common-wealth. Microsome thicker retor all kind of Merchants, both Christians and others. Here the Genoways, Unstitute, say, English and low Dutch vied to traif que. The grounds adioyning vpon this Towne are sandy; neither are they fit for Come, but for Cotten-wooll in diuers places very profitable. The inhabitants, diuers of them doe weaue most excellent Cotten. Heere likewise are made very since Combes, which are sold in all the King shome of Fez., for the Region thereabout yeeldeth great plenty of Boxe, & of other wood fit for the lame purpose. Their government is very orderly and discrete even variall this day: for they have most learned Indges, Vimpires, and deciders of doubtfull cales in Law. This Towne is frequenced by many rich Merchants of Genoa, whom the King lath alwayes had in great regard; because he gameth mush, verefly by their traifique.

In the time of Abulaad the latk King of the Marva tamisty, his Cousin, called Sabul, was taken by 20.

Theocalion

Habdilla the King of Granada; whereupon by letters he requested his Cousin the King of Fez to warres mound fund him a certaine fumme of money, required by the King of Granada for his ransome. Which when the Fessan King refused to yeeld voto, Habdilla restored his prisoner to libertie, and sent by Sabid. him towards Fez to destroy both the City and the King. Afterward Sabid, with the helpe of The City of certaine wilde Arabians belieged Fez for feuen yeeres together ; in which space most of the Fex belieged Townes, Villages, and Hamlets throughout the whole Kingdome were destroyed. But at length for feuen yeers fuch a Pethilence inuaded Sabids forces, that himfelfe, with a great part of his army, in the "nine hundred and eighteenth veere of the Hegeira, died therof. Howbeit those desolate Towns neuer received from thenceforth any new inhabitants, especially Fanzara, which was given to certaine Arabias Captaines, that came to affit Sabid, Whatdoouer commodity arificit out of Easibid redounded to the Priests of the principal Mahameten Temple in Fee, and it amounted hamoit foould rather yeerely to twenty thousand Dukats. Heere also in times past were most large, pleasant, and freitfull Gardens, as appeareth by the Monuments and reliques thereof, howbest, they were like other places, laid waste by the warre of Sabid. The Towne it selfe remaineth destitute of inha-

Fez the principall City of all Barbare, and of the founders

Idra the first founder of to doc.

Free was built in the time of one Aron a Mahamatan Patriarke, in the yeere of the Hegeira one hundreth eighty and five, and in the yeere of our Lord feuen hundred eightie fixe, by a
certaine hereticke against the Religion of Mahamat. Bit why it should so be called, some are of
opinion, because when the first foundations therefor were digged, there was found some quantity of Gold, with mettall in the Arabian language is called Fee.

bitants an hundred and ten yeeres ; but as the King of Fez returned home from Duccala, he com-

manded part of his people to inhabite the fame : albeit their incimilitie made them loth fo

The Founder of this City was one Idris, being the foresaid Aron his neere kinsman. This Ideis oughtrather to haue beene an Mahumetan Patriarke, because he was nephew vnto Hali the Coulin-german of Mahamet, who married Falerna, Mahamets owne daughter, to that Idris both by Father and Mother was of Mahamets Linage : but Aron being nephew vnto one Habbus the Vncle of Mahamet, was of kinred onely by the Fathers fide. Howbeit both of them were excluded from the faid Patriarkship for certaine causes mentioned in the African Chronicles, although Aron vsurped the same by deceit. For Arons Vncle being a most cunning and crafty man, and faining himselfe to beare greatest fauour vnto the family of Hali, and to be most delirous, that the Patriarkship should light thereon, sent his Ambasadours almost throughout the whole world. Whereupon the dignity was translated from Vmeue to Habdulla Seffec the first Patriarke. Which, Umene being informed of, waged warre against the family of Hale, and so prevailed, that some of them he chased into Asia, and some into India. Howbeit, an ancient Religious man of the same family remained still aliue at Elmadina, who being very old no whit regarded the dignity. But this ancient fire left behind him two fonnes, who when they were come to mans cltate, grew into fo great fauour with the people of Elmadun, that they were chafed thence by their enemies; the one being taken and hanged; and the other (whose name was Idris) escaping into Mauritania. This Idris dwelling upon Mount Zaron, about thirtie miles from Fez, gouernul not onely the Common-wealth, but matters of Religion also; and all the 60 Region adiacent paid him tribute. At length Idris deceasing without lawfull issue, left one of his maydes big with child, which had beene turned from the Gothes Religion to the Moores. Being delinered of her fonne, they called him after his Fathers name, Idris. This child the inhabitants couling for their Prince, caused him to be most carefully brought vp : and as he grew in

yeares, to the end they might trayne him vp in feates of Chiualrie, they appointed one Rafid a most valiant and skilfull Captaine to infitude him. Infomuch, that while hee was but fifteen the years of age, he grew famous for his valiant Acts and Stratagens, and begame wonderfully to valour a his rolarge his Dominions. Wherefore his Troupes and Family increating enery day mere and more, teeneyers of he fee his minde vpon building of a Citic, and changing of his habitation. And to hee fent for age, and he feet first strates when the feet of the converted all places in the Region, at laft made choice of that where the Citie of Fee now thandthe. For herer they found great fore made choice of that where the Citie of Fee now thandthe from here of found most and a faire Ruet, which springing footh of a plaine not farre off, runneth please of Foundaines, and a faire Ruet, which springing fourth of a plaine not farre off, number plaines of the strategy of the strategy of the plant of the pla

of Fourtaines, and a faire Riuer, which ipringing forth of a plaint in the fair to the fair of another family almost eight miles amidd the little Hills, till at length it caffeth it felie vpon another family almost eight miles amidd the hirtle Hills, till at length it caffeth it felie vpon another louise. Southweard of the place they found a wood, which they knew would be right commoditions for the Towne. Here therefore you not Earlb tanke of the fair River, they built a Towne donated the fundand Families: neither omitted they ought at all which might be required in a flourishing Common-wealth. After the decade of fairs, his Sonne erected another rowned in the fair of t

At length Infeph King of Marses of the Lantine Family, conducting an huge Armie against 20 both these Princes, tooke them Princers, carryed them home vanto his Dominions, and put them to a most cruell death. And he for wanquished the Citizens, that there were slaine of them thirrie thousand. Then determined King Infeph to reduce those two Townes into sime vnitie and concord: for which castle, making a bridge over the Ruier, and beating downer the walled either Town right against it, he vnited both into one, which afterward he diuded into twelve Regions or Wards. Now let vs make report of all such memorable things as are thereto bee seeme "a ct his day."

freme "at this day.

A World it is to fee, how large, how populous, how well fortified and walled this Citie is. A soil sade
The most part thereof flandeth yoon great and little Hills : neither is there any plaine ground
but onely in the mulflo of the Citie. The Riune entreth the Towne in two places, for its disuFee.

30 ded into a double branch, one whereof runneth by new Fez, that is, by the South-fide of the Towne, and another commeth in at the West-fide. And so almost infinitely dispersing it selfe into the Citie, it is derived by certaine conduits and chanels vnto every Temple, Colledge, Inne, Hospitall, and almost to every private house. Vnto the Temples are certaine square conduits adjoyned, having Cels and Receptacles round about them; each one of which hath a Cock. whereby water is conneyed through the wall into a Trough of Marble. From whence flowing into the Sinkes and Gutters, it carryeth away all the filth of the Citie into the River. In the midft of each square conduit standeth a low Cisterne, beeing three Cubits in depth, foure in breadth, and twelue in length : and the water is conneyed by certaine Pipes into the forefaid fquare conduits, which are almost an hundred and fiftie in number. The most part of the hou-40 fes are built of fine brickes and flones curioufly painted. Likewife their bay-windowes and portals are made of partie-coloured bricke, like vinto the stones of Maiorica. The Roofes of their Houses they adorne with Gold, Azure, and other excellent Colours, which Rooses are made of wood, and plaine on the top, to the end that in Summer-time Carpets may be fored vpon them, for here they vie to lodge by reason of the exceeding heate of that Countrey. Some houses are of two and some of three Stories high, whereunto they make fine staires, by which they passe from one roome to another under the same roofe : for the middle part of the house is alwayes open or vincouered, having some Chambers built on the one side, and some on the other. The Chamber doores are very high and wide: which in rich mens houses are framed of excellent and carued wood. Each Chamber hath a Preffe curioufly painted and varnished belonging thereunto, being as long as the Chamber it felfe is broad : fome will haue it very high, and others but fixe handfuls in height, that they may fet it on the Tester of a Bed. All the portals of their houses are supported with bricke Pillars finely playstered ouer, except some which stand vpon Pillars of Marble. The Beames and Transomes vpholding their Chambers are most curiously painted and carued. To some houses likewise belong certaine square Cisternes, contayning in breadth fixe or seuen Cubits, in length ten or twelue, and in height but fixe or seuen handfuls; being all vncouered, and built of brickes trimly playstered ouer. Along the sides of these Cisternes are certaine Cockes, which conuay the water into Marble Troughs, as I have seene in many places of Europe. When the forefaid Conduits are full of water, that which floweth ouer, runneth by certaine secret pipes and conveyances into the Cisternes: and that which over-60 floweth the Ciffernes, is carryed likewife by other paffages into the common Sinkes and Gut-

ters, and so into the River. The said Cisternes are alwayes kept sweete and cleane, neyther are they covered but onely in Summer-time, when Men, Women, and Children bathe themselves therein. Moreover, on the tops of their houses they vivally build a Turret with many pleasant roomes

Tttt 3

thereid, whither the women for recreations lake, when they are wearle of working, return themfeldes; from whence they may fee wel-nighall the Citie cuer.

The number

Or Mahameran Temples and Oratories there are almost feven bundred in this Towne, fiftie me num er and first inche whereof are most stately and simptuously built, lauring their Conducts made of Marble and oof the Mira ther excellent thoses viknowne to the Italians; and the Chapiters of their Philars be arrificialmeasTemples Iv adorned with painting and carning. The tops of their Temples, after the falmon of Christian Churches in Europe, are made of Ioyles and Plankes; but the patement is coursed with Mars which are fo cunningly fowed together that a man cannot fee the breadth of a finger vincouered. The wals like wife on the inner fide are lined a mans height with figh Mars. Moreouer, each Temple hath a Turret or Steeple, from whence certaine are appointed with a lowd 10 voice to call the people at their fet-time of Praver. Every Temple lath one onely Priest to say Service therein; who hath the bestowing of all Revenues belonging to his owne Temple, as occallon requireth : for thereby are maintayned Lampes to burne in the night, and Purters to k. epe the doores are paid their wages out of it, and so likewife are they that call the people to ordinarie Prayers in their ght leafon : for those which cry from the faid Towres in the day time have no wages, but are onely released from all Tributes and Exactions.

The chiefe Mahumetan Temple in this Towne is called Carmen, beeing of so incredible a Temple of Fet biggeffe, that the circuit thereof and of the buildings longing voto it, is a good mile and a hilfe about. This Temple hath one and thirtie gates or portals of a wonderfull greatnifle and height. The Roofe of this Temple is in length one hundred and fiftie, and in breadth about four excre 22 Florenine Cubits. The Turret or Steeple, from whence they are amayne to aften ble the people together, is exceedingly high; the breadth whereof is topported with twer tie, and the length with thirtie Pillars. On the East, West, and North-sides, it hath certaine Walkes or Gallenes, forcie Cubits in length, and thirtie in breadth. Viccer which Gallenes there is a Cell or Storehouse, wherein Oale, Canales, Mats, and other such necessaries for the Temple are lavel up. Every night in this Temple are burnt nine hundred Lights; for every arch hath a feuerall Lampe, especially those which extend through the mid-quire. Some Arches there are that haueene hundred and twentie Canales a piece : there are likewife certaine Braffe Canaleftickes fo great and with fo many Sockets, as they will hold each one fifteene hundred Candles : and these Candieflickes are reported to have beene made of Bels, which the King of Fez in times past tooke 20

Puls:sand

About the wals of the faid Temple are divers Pulpits, out of which those that are learned in the Mahametan Law initruct the people. Their Winter Lectures beginne present vafter Sunrife, and continue the space of an houre. But their Summer Lectures hold on from the Sunne going downe, till an houre and a halfe within night. And here they teach as well Morall Pri-Iclophie as the Law of Mehamer. The Summer Lectures are performed by certaine primate and obloure persons; but in Winter such onely are admitted to read, as bee reputed their greatest Clerkes. All which Readers and Profesicurs are yearely allowed most liberall Stipends. The Prieft of this great Temple is entoyned onely to read Prayers, and faithfully to diff bute almes among the poore. Every Festivall day he bestoweth all such Corne and Money as he have in his cultodie, to all poore people according to their need.

The Treaturor or Collector of the Reuenues or this Church bath enery day a Duckat for his pay. Likewise he hath eight Notaries or Clerkes under him; every one of which gavnething Duckats a moneta : and other fixe Clerkes who receive the rent of houses, shors, and other such places as belong to the Temple, having for their wages the twentieth part of all such Rents and

Duties as they gather. Moreover, there belong to this Temple twentie Factors or Baylies of Husbandry , that without the Citie wals have an eve to the Labourers, Ploughmen, V ne-r lanters, and Gardeners, and that provide them things necessarie; there gaine is three Duckats a monetin. Not faire from the Citie are about twentie Lime-kils, and as many Bricke-kils, furning for the reparation of their Temple, and of all houses thereto belonging.

The Renemnts of the great Temple, and how they are

The Resences of the faid Temple daily received, are two hundred Duckars a dant the better halfe whereof is lavd out your the particulars aforefaid. Also if there bee any Temples in the Citie defirture of living, they must all be mayntayned at the charges of this great Temple : and then that which remayneth after all expenses, is bestowed for the behoote of the Commonwealth; for the people receine no Recenues at all. In our time the King commanded the Priest of the faid Temple to lend him an buge fumme of money, which he never repared against

Moreover, in the Citie of Fex are two most stately Colledges, of which divers roomes are adorned with curious painting; all their beames are carried, their wals conlifting both or Marble and Freestone. Some Colledges heere are which contayne an honored truckes, fome more, 60 and some fewer, all which were built by divers Kings of the Marie Family. One there is among the rest most beautifull and admirable to beheld, which was erected by a certain- King called Habn Henon. Here is to be feene an excellent Fountaine of Marbie, the Citierne whereof contavneth two Pipes. Through this Colledge runneth a little treame in a most chere and

pleafant chanell, the primmes and edges whereof are workmanly framed of Marble, and stones of Majorica. Likewise heere are three Cloysters to walke in, most curiously and artificially made, with certaine eight square Pillars of divers colours to support them. And betweene Pillar and Pillar the arches are beautifully ouer-cast with Gold, Azure, and divers other Colours; and the Roofe is very artificially built of wood. The fides of these Cloysters are so close. that they which are without cannot fee fuch as walke within. The wals round about as high as a man can reach, are adorned with Play ter-worke of Matorica. In many places you may find certaine Verles, which declare what yeare the Colledge was built in, together with many Epigrams in the Founders commendation. The Letters of which Verses are very great and black,

10 fo that they may be read a farre off. This Colledge gates are of Braffe most curiously carried, and foare the doores artificially made of wood. In the Chappell of this Colledge standeth a certaine Pulpit mounted nine stayres high, which staires are of Iuorie and Ebonie. Some affirme, that the King having built this Colledge, was defined to know how much money hee had fpent in building it; but after he had perufed a leafe or two of his Account-booke, finding the fumme of fortie thousand Duckats, he rent it as under, and threw it into the foresaid little River, adding this Sentence out of a certaine Arabian Writer: Each precious and amiable thing, though it A Coiledge coffeth deare, yet if it be beautifull, it cannot choose but bee good cheape : neither is any thing of too cost 480000 high aprice, which pleaseth amans affection. Howbeit a certaine Treaturer of the Kings, making Duckass the a particular account of all the fail expenses, found that this excellent building flood his Mafter in foure hundred and eightie thousand Duckars. The other Colledges of Fez are somewhat like 20 vnto this, having every one Readers and Professors, some of which read in the forenoone, and

fome in the afternoone.

In times path the Students of these Colledges had their apparell and victuals allowed them for feuen yeares, but now they have nothing gratis but their Chamber.

For the warre of Sahid destroyed many possessions, whereby Learning was maintayned; so The supposes that now the greatest Colledge of all hath yeerely but two hundred, and the second but an on of Learhundred Duckats for the maintenance of their Professors, And this perhaps may bee one rea- ning and learfon, among many, why the gouernment not onely of Foz, but of all the Cities in Africa, is fo ned men, a

Now these Colledges are furnished with no Schollers but such as are strangers, and line of the Citie Almes: and if any Citizens dwell there, they are not aboue two or three at the most. The unmment 30 Professor being readie for his Lecture, some of his Auditors readeth a Text, whereupon the faid Proteffor dilateth, and explayneth obscure and difficult places. Sometimes also the Schollers difpute before their Profesior.

Many Hospitals there are in Fez, no whit inferiour, either for building or beautie, vnto the A description foresaid Colledges. For in them whatsoeuer strangers came to the Citie were entertayned at of the Hospiforefaid Colledges. For in them whatloeuer strangers came to the Citie were entertayined at tals and Bathes the common charge for three dayes together. There are likewise as faire and as stately Hospitin the Cities of the Citi tals in the Suburbes. In times past their wealth was maruellous great; but in the time of Sabids Fee. warre, the King flanding in need of a great summe of money, was counfelled by some of his greelie Courtiers to fell the Liuings of the faid Hospitals. Which when the people would in Liuings beno cale yeeld vnto, the Kings Oratour or Speaker, perswaded them that all those Lenings were longing to

40 guen by his Maieties Predeceffours, and therefore (because when the warres were ended, they Hospitals should soone recouer all againe) that it were farre better for them by that meanes to pleasure their Soueraigne, then to let his Kingly Estate fall into fo great danger. Whereupon all the faid Livings being fold, the King was prevented by vntimely and fudden death before he could bring his purpole to effect : and so these famous Hospitals were deprived of all their mainte-

The poore indeed and impotent people of the Citie are at this day relieued; but no strangers are entertayned, faue only learned men or Gentlemen. Howbeit there is another Hospitall for the reliefe of ficke and difeased strangers, who have their dyet onely allowed them, but no Physician or Medicine : certaine women there are which attend upon them, till they recouer

50 their former health, or dye. In this Hospitall likewise there is a place for frantike or distracted persons, where they are bound in strong Iron Chaines; whereof the part next vnto their walkes is strengthened with mightie beames of Wood and Iron. The Gouernour of these distracted persons, when he bringeth them any sustenance, hath a Whip of purpose to chastile those that offer to bite, ftrike, or play any mad part.

Likewife this Holpitall hath many Roomes for the Purueyors, Notaries, Cookes, and other Officers belonging to the ficke perions; who each of them have fome small yeerely stipend. Iohn Leo inhis Being a young man, I my felie was Notarie heere for two yeeres, which Office is worth three youth a Nota-

60 Duckats a moneth. In this Citie are moe then an hundred Bath-floues very artificially and flately built; which years togethough they bee not of equall bignesse, yet are they all of one fashion. Each Stone hath four ther. Halls, without which are certaine Galleries in an higher place, with fine or fixe staires to ascend Their Buthes vinto them: here men put off their apparell, and hence they goe naked into the Bath. In the and bathing.

themselves, must passe through a cold Hall, where they vie to temper hot water and cold toge-

Womens

ther then they goe into a roome fomewhat hotter, where the fernants clenfe and wash them; and last of all, they proceede into a third Hot-house, where they sweate as much as they thinke good. The hre that heateth their water is made of nought elfe but beafts dung : for which purpose many boyes are set on worke to run vp and downe to Stables, and thence to carrie all the dung, and to lay it on heapes without the Towne-walles ; which being parched in the Sunne for two or three moneths together, they vie for fuell. Likewife, the women have their Stoues apart from the men. And yet some Hot-houses serue both for men and women, but at fundrie times, namely, for men from the third to the fourteenth houre of the day, and the refidue for IQ women. While women are bathing themselves, they hang out a rope at the first entrance of the house, which is a figne for men, that they may then proceede no farther. Neither may hus bands here be permitted to speake with their owne wines; so great a regard they have of their honeflie. Here men and women both, after they have done bathing, vie to banquet and make merrie with pleasant Musicke and singing. Young Striplings enter the Bath starke naked without any fhame, but men couer their prinities with a linnen cloth. The richer fort will not enter the common Bath, but that which is adorned and finely fet forth, and which ferueth for Noble-men and Gentle-men. When any one is to be bathed they lay him along vpon the ground, anointing him with a certaine ovntment, and with certaine instruments doing away his filth. The richer fort haue a Carpet to lie on, their head lying on a woodden Cushion, couered with the same Carpet. Likewife, here are many Barbers and Chyrurgions which attend to doe their office. The most part of these Baths pertaine to the Temples and Colledges, yeelding vnto them a great fumme of money for yearely rent: for some give an hundred, some an hundred and fiftie Duckats a yeare. Neither must I here omit the Festivall-day which the Servants and Officers of the Bathes celebrate; who with Trumpets and Pipes calling their friends together, goe forth of the Towns, and there gather a wild Onion, putting it in a certaine brazen veffell, and couering the fame with a linnen cloth wet in Lee: afterward with a great noise of Trumpets and Pipes, they

folemnely bring the faid Onion wato the Hot-house doore, and there they hang it wp in the lit-

in times past, when they were destitute of Lawes and civilitie, to offer, and that the same custom

hath remained till this very day. The like is to be seene even among Christians, who celebrate

many Feafts, wherof they can yeeld no reason. Likewise, every African towne had their peculiar

Feast, which, when the Christians once enjoyed Africa, were veterly abolished and done away.

tle brazen veffell or Lauer, faying, That this is a most happy boading, or figne of good luck vnto their Stoue. Howbeit, I suppose it to be some such Sacrifice, as the ancient Moeres were wont

The Innes

In this Citie are almost two hundred Innes, the greatest whereof are in the principall part of the Citie neere vnto the chiefe Temple. Euery of these Innes are three stories high, and containe an hundred and twenty or moe Chambers apiece. Likewife, each one bath a Fountaine. together with Sinks and Water-pipes, which make avoidance of all the filth. Never, to my remembrace, did I fee greater building, except it were the Spanifb Colledge at Bologna, or the Pallace of the Cardinall di San Giorgio at Rome; of which Innes all the Chamber-doores have 40 Walkes or Galleries before them. And albeit the Innes of this Citie are very faire and large. yet they affoord most beggerly entertainement to strangers; for there are neither Beds nor Couches for a man to lie vpon, vnlesse it be a course Blanket and a Mat. And if you will have any victuals, you must goe to the Shambles your selfe, and buy such meate for your Host to dreffe.as your ftomack stands-to. In these Innes certaine poore Widdowes of Fez, which have neither wealth nor friends to fuccour them, are relieved : fometimes one, and fometimes two of them together are allowed a Chamber; for which courtefie they play both the Chamberlaines and Cookes of the Inne. The Inne-keepers of Fez being all of one Family, called Elcheus, goe apparelled like Women, and shaue their Beards, and are so delighted to immitate Women, that they will not onely counterfeite their speech, but will sometimes also fit downe so and fpin. Each one of these hath his Concubine, whom hee accompanieth as if she were his owne lawfull Wife; albeit the faid Concubines are not onely ill-fauoured in countetenance, but notorious for their bad life and behauior. They buy and fell wine fo freely, that no man controles them for it. None refort hither but most lewd and wicked people, to the end they may more boldly commit vilany. The very company of these Inne-keepers is so odious, and deteltable in the fight of all honeit men, learned men, and Merchants, that they will in no wife vouchfafe to speake vnto them. And they are firmely enjoyined not to enter into the Temple, into the Burle, nor into any Bath. Neither yet are they permitted to refort vnto those Innes which are next vinto the great Temple, and wherein Merchants are vitally entertained.

The Mills Like vato our Horfe-mills. a description of the Occupations, the

In this Citie are Mills in foure hundred places at least. And every of these places containeth fue or fixe Mills; fo that there are some thousands of Mills in the whole City. Every Mill Han. 60 deth in a large roome vpon some strong piller or post, whereunto many Country-people vse to refort. All the faid Mills pertaine either to the Temples or Colledges.

Each trade or occupation hath a peculiar place allotted thereto, the principall whereof are

CHAP.I.S.2. A description of the Occupations, Shops, and Markets in Fez.

next vnto the great Temple : for there first you may behold to the number of furescore Notaries or Scriueners theps, whereof fome toyne vpon the Temple, and the refidue fland ouer against Striueners. them : every of which Shops hath alwaies two Notaries. Then Westward there are about thirthe Stationers or Booke-fellers. The Shoo-merchants which buy Shooes and Buskins of the Bookfellers. Shoo-makers, and fell them agains to the Citizens, inhabite on the Southfide of the Temple: and Shoo-merext vato them, fuch as make Shooes for children onely, their Shops being about fiftie. On the chans. East-fide dwell those that sell vessels, and other commodities made of braile. Ouer against the Brassers. great Gate of the faid Temple flands the Fruit-market, containing fiftie Shops, where no kind Fruiterers. of fruit is wanting. Next vnto them stand the Waxe-merchants, very ingenious and cumning 10 workmen, and much to be admired. Here are Merchants factors likewise, though they bee but few. Then followes the Herbe-market, wherein the Pome-citrons, and divers kinds of greene Herb-women. Boughes and Herbes doe represent the sweete and flourishing Spring, and in this Market are ahout twenty Tauernes: for they which drinke Wine, will shrowd themselues vnder the shadie and pleafant Boughes. Next vnto them stand the Milke-sellers: I thinke there passeth Milk-seller. fearce one day ouer their heads, wherein they otter not fine and twentie tunnes of Milke. Next wnto these are such as sell Cotton, and they have about thirtie shops: then follow those that sell Cotton. who thele are inch as set Cotton, and trey make about unite impays; mentioned that the first Hempe, Ropes Halters, and fach other hempe normodities. Then come you to the Girdlers, Rope-feller, and fuch as make Pantonles, and Leather-bridles embrodered with filke; next their floops additional forms and fuch as make Pantonles, and Leather-bridles embrodered with filke; next their floops additional forms and fuch as make Pantonles, and Leather-bridles embrodered with filke; next their floops additional forms and fuch as make Pantonles, and Leather-bridles embrodered with filke; next their floops and forms and forms are formed to the filled the forms and forms and forms and forms and forms are formed to the forms and forms and forms are formed to the forms and forms and forms are formed to the filled to the forms and forms are formed to the form and forms are formed to the forms and forms are formed to the form and formed to the forms are formed to the formed to the form and formed to the form ioynethat make Sword-scabberds and Caparisons for Horses. Immediately after dwell those Salters 20 that fell Salt and Lime; and voon them border an hundred Shops of Potters, who frame alkind Potters.

that fell Salt and Lime; and you them border an numerous mops or potters, with our case and salters of earthen veiles adorned with district colours colours. Then come you to the Salters Shops: and next salters of all to the freeder of Potters, who (as I suppose) are about three hundred; these Potters have a The Potters of of all to the freeder of Potters, who (as I suppose) are about three hundred; the freeder by the salters of the freeder of the freed Confull or Gouernour, who enery weeke allotteth vnto part of them some set businesse. The gaine which redounded thereof, they put into a Coffer, dividing it at the weekes end among them, which have wrought the time weeke. Strange it is to confider how exceedingly these Porters loue one another: for when any of them decealeth, the whole company maintaineth his widow and fatherlesse children at their common charge, till either she die, or marrieth a new Husband. The children they carefully bring vp, till they have attained to some good Art or occupation. Next vnto the Porters companie dwell the chiefe Cookes and Victuallers. Here also Cookes

30 ftands a certaine square house couered with Reed, wherein Pease and Turnep-rootes are to bee fold, which are fo greatly efteemed of in Fez, that none may buy them of the country people at the first hand, but such as are appointed, who are bound to pay tole & tribute vnto the Customers; and fearcely one day passeth, wherein moe then five hundred facks of Pease and Turneps Pease and are not fold. On the North-fide of the Temple is a place whither all kind of Hearbs are brought Turneps. to make Sallets withall : for which purpose there is fortie Shops appointed. Next whereunto Sallet shops: is the place of Smoke, so called, by reason of continual smoke : here are certaine Fritters or Fritteress. Cakes fried in Oyle, like vnto fuch as are called at Rome, Pan Melato. They rofte their flesh not vpon a fpit, but in an Ouen: for making two Ouens one ouer another for the same purpose, in Rofting in the lower they kindle a fire, putting the flesh into the vpper Ouen when it is well het ; you Ouens,

40 would not beleeve how finely their meat is thus rosted; for it cannot be spoiled either by smoke or too much heate : for they are all night rolling it by a gentle fire, and in the morning they fet it to fale. The foresaid Steakes and Fritters they fell vnto the Citizens in so great abundance, that they daily take for them moe then two hundred Ducats; for there are fifteene Shops which fell nothing elfe. Likewife, here are fold certaine Fishes and flesh fried, and a kind of excellent sauorie bread, tailting somewhat like a Fritter; which being baked with Butter, they neuer eate but with Butter and Honie. Here alloare the feete of certaine beafts fodden, wherewith the Tripe-wines. Husbandmen betimes in the morning breake their fast, and then hie them to their labour. Next vnto thefe are fuch as fell Oyle, Salt, Butter, Cheefe, Olines, Pome-citrons and Capers: their Vidualers, Shops are full of fine earthen vessels, which are of much greater value then the things contained on them. Then follow the Shambles, confifting of about forty Shops, wherein the Butchers cut Shambles

their flesh a pieces, and sell it by weight. They kill no beasts within the Shambles, for there is a place allotted for this purpose neere vnto the River, where having once dressed their flesh, they fend it to the Shambles by certaine feruants appointed for that end. But before any Butcher dare fell his flesh vnto the Citizens, he must carrie it to the Gouernour of the Shambles, who so foone The Governor as he feeth the fielh, he lets downe in a piece of paper the price thereof, which they flow togs of the Shamther with their meate vinto the 'people; neither may they in any case exceed the faid price. Courtesloth Next vnto the Shambles standeth the Market where course cloathes are fold, which containeth at leaft an hundred Shops: the faid cloth is delinered vnto certaine Criers (which are about threescore in number) who carrying the cloth from Shop to Shop, tell the price thereof. Then 60 follow their Shops that feowre and fell Armour, Swords, Jauelings, and fuch like warlike infline Armorers.

ments. Next vnto them fland the Fidhmongers, who fell most excellent and great Fish. Next belianous ers. vnto the Fishmongers dwel such as make of a certaine hard Reed, Coopes and Cages for Fowless their Shops being about fortie in number : for each of the Citizens vieth to bring up great flore of Hennes and Capons. And that their houses may not be defiled with Hennes-dung, they keepe Cart-meter ,

Sopers. Mea'emen.

them continually in Coopes and Cages. Then follow their Shops that fell liquide Sope, Next of all are certaine of their Shops that fell Meale, albeit they are diversly disperied throughout the whole Citie. Next vnto them are such as fell Seede-graine and Seede-pulse. Then are there tenne Shops of them that fell Straw. Next them is the Market where Thread and Hemne is to be fold, and where Hempe vieth to bee kempt : which place is built after the fashion of great Houses, with foure Galleries, or spare-roomes round about it : in the first whereof they fell Line nen-cloth, and weigh Hempe : in two other fit a great many women, having abundance of falethread which is there fold by the Criers.

Tankartets. Taylors.

Landerers.

Let vs now come to the West part, which stretcheth from the Temple to that Gate that leadeth to Mechafe. Next vnto the Smokie place before mentioned, their habitations directly to fland that make Leather-tankards to draw water out of Wells, of whom there are some foureteene Shops. Vnto these adioyne such as make Wicker-vessels, and other, to lay vp Meale and Corne in : and these enion about thirty Shops. Next them are one hundred and fifty Shops of Taylors. And next the Taylors are those that make Leather-shields, such as I have often seene brought into Europe. Then follow twenty Shops of Landreffes or Washers, being people of a base condition; to whom the Citizens that have not Maids of their owne, carry their Shires and other foule linnen, which after few dayes are restored vnto them so cleane and white, as it is wonderfull. These Landresses have divers Shops adjoyning together in the same place: but here and there throughout the Citie are about two hundred Families of fuch persons. Next ynto the Landresses are those that make Trees for Saddles; who dwell likewise in great numbers 20 Eastward right in the way to the Colledge founded by King Abubinan. Vpon these adioyne about forcie shops of fuch as worke Stirrops, Spurres, and Bridles, so artificially, as I thinke the like are not to be feene in Europe. Next Handeth their ffreete, that first rudely make the faid Stirrops, Bridles and Spurres. From thence you may goe into the streete of Sadlers, which couer the Saddles before mentioned threefold with most excellent Leather; the best Leather they lay vppermost, and the worst beneath, and that with notable Workmanship, as may bee

feene in most places of Italy: and of them there are moe then an hundred Shops. Then follow

their long Shops that make Pikes and Launces. Next standeth a Rocke or Mount, having two

Walkes thereupon; the one whereof leadeth to the East-gate, and the other to one of the Kings

the way to be roted, that all the foresaid Shops, or Market, begin at the great Temple.

Palaces, where the Kings Sifters, or some other of his Kindred are visually kept. But this is by 20

Of the Station or Burfe of Merchants

The Burse you may well call a Citie, which being walled round about, hath twelue Gates, and before every Gate an Iron-chaine, to keepe Horles and Carts from comming in. The faid Burie is divided into twelve fenerall Wards or parts : two whereof are allotted vnto fuch Shoomakers as make Shooes onely for Noblemen and Gentlemen, and two also to Silke-merchants, or Haberdashers, that fell Ribands, Garters, Scarfes, and fuch other like ornaments; and of these there are about fiftie Shops. Others there are that fell Silke onely for the embrodering of Shirts, Cushions, and other such furniture made of Cloth, possessing almost as many Shops as the former. Then follow those that make Womens Girdles of course Wooll (which some make of Silke) but very groffely, for I thinke they are moe then two fingers thicke, fo that they may ferue almost for Cables to a Ship. Next vnto these Girdlers are such as fell Woollen and Linnen-cloth 40 brought out of Europe: which have also Silke-stuffes, Caps, and other like commodities to sell. Hauing paffed thefe, you come to them that fell Mats, Mattraffes, Cushions, and other things made of Leather. Next adioyneth the Customers Office; for their Cloth is sent about by certaine Criers to be fold, who before they can paffe, must goe to the Customers to have the faid Cloth fealed, and to pay Toll vnto the Customers. Criers here are to the number of fixtic, which for the crying of eucly Cloth have one * Liardo allowed them. Next of all dwell the Taylors, and that in three feuerall streetes. Then come you to the Linnen-drapers, which fell Smocks and other apparell for women : and these are accounted the richest Merchants in all Fez, for their wares are the most gainefull of all others. Next vnto these are certaine Woollen garments to be fold, made of fuch Cloth as is brought thither out of Europe. Euery after-noone Cloth is fold in this place by the Criers, which is lawfull for any man to doe, when necessary occasion vegeth him. Last of all is that place where they vie to fell wrought Shirts, Towels, and other embrodered works; as also where Carpets, Beds, and Blankets are to be fold.

Next vnto the said Burse, on the Northside, in a streight lane, stand an hundred and fifty Grocers and Apothecaries Shops, which are fortified on both fides with two firing Gates. These other Tradef. Shops are garded in the night-feafon by certaine hired and armed Watchmen, which keep their men and Ar- flation with Lanthornes and Mastines. The said Apothecaries can make neither Sirrups, Ovntments, nor Electuaries : but fuch things are made at home by the Physicians, and are of them to be bought. The Physicians houses adioyne for the most part vnto the Apothecaries : howbeit, 60 very few of the people know either the Phytician, or the vie of his Phytick. The Shops here are fo artificially built and adorned, that the like (I thinke) are no where elfe to be found. Being in 10 m Leo was at Tauris, a Citie of Perfia, I remember that I faw divers flately Shops curiously built under certaine Tausin Peffa. Galleries, but very darke, fo that (in my indgement) they be far interiour vnto the Sheps of Fez.

Next the Apothecaries are certaine Artificers that makes Combes of Boxe and other wood. Comb makers Eastward of the Apothecaries dwell the Needle-makers, possessing to the number of fifty shops Then follow those that turne Iuory, and such other matter, who (because their craft is practised Turners. by fome other Artizans) are but few in number. Vnto the Turners adioyne certaine that fell Meale Sope, and Broomes: who dwelling next vnto the Thread-market before mentioned, are fearce twenty (hops in all : for the relidue are dispersed in other places of the City, as we will Voholsters. hereafter declare. Among it the Cotten-merchants are certaine that fell ornaments for Tents and Beds. Next of all stand the Fowlers, who, though they be but few, yet are they stored with Poulters. all kind of choice and dainty Fowles: whereupon the place is called the Fowlers market. Then

Io come you to their shops that fell Cords and Ropes of Hempe : and then to such as make high Coorke-lippers for Noblemen and Gentlemen to walk the freets in, when it is foule weather: Corkflippers, these Corke-flippers are finely trimmed with much filke, and most excellent vpper leathers, so that the cheapest will cost a Ducat, yea some there are of ten Ducats, & some of hie and twenty Ducats price. Such thippers as are accounted most fine and costly are made of blacke and white Mulberie-tree, of blacke Walnut-tree, and of the Jujuba tree, albeit the Corke-flippers are the most durable and strong. Vnto these adioyne ten shops of Spanish Moores, which make Crosse- Crosse-bowes bowes : as also those that make Broomes of a certaine wilde Palme-tree, such as are dayly brought out of Sicile to Rome. These Broomes they carry about the City in a great basket, ei. Broome-men. ther felling them, or exchanging them for Bran, Ashes, or old Shooes : the Bran they fell agains

20 to Shepheards, the Ashes to such as white Thread, and old Sheoes to Coblers. Next vito them are Smithes that make Nailes; & Coopers which make certain great vessels in forme of a bucket. Smithes. hauing Corne-measures to sell alto: which measures, when the Officer, appointed for the same Coopers. purpole, hath made triall of, he is to receive a farthing a prece for his fee. Then follow the Woolmen. Wooll-chapmen, who having bought wooll of the Butchers, put it foorth vnto others to be fcowred and washed : the Sheepe-skinnes they themselves drelle : but as for Oxe-hides they belong to another occupation, and are tanned in another place. Vnto these adiovne such as make certaine Langols or Withs, which the Africans put vpon their horses feet. Next of all are the Brasiers; then such as make Weights and Measures; and those likewise that make in- Weights and firements to carde Wooll or Flaxe. At length you descend into a long street, where men of di- Measures. 30 uers occupations dwell together, some of which doe polish and enamell Stirops, Spurres, and Enamellers.

other fuch commodities, as they receive from the Smithes roughly and rudely hammered. Next Fabric whom dwell certaine Cart-wrights, Plow-wrights, Mill-wrights, and of other like occunations. Diers have their about by the Rivers fide, and have each of them a most cleere Foun-Diers taine or Cifterne to wash their Silke-stuffes in. Ouer against the Diers dwell makers of Bulwarkes or Trenches, in a very large place, which being planted with shady Mulberrie-trees is Farriers, exceeding pleafant in the Summer time. Next them are a company of Farriers, that shooe Mules and Horses; and then those that make the Iron-worke of Crosse-bowes. Then follow Smithes that make Horfe-shooes; and last of all, those that where Linnen-cloth : and here the west part Whitsers. of the City endeth, which in times past (as is afore faid) was a City by it selfe, and was built af-

ter the City on the East fide of the River. The second part of Fez situate Eastward, is beautified with most stately Palaces, Temples, A Description

Houses, and Colledges; albeit there are not so many trades and occupations as in the part before of the record described. For here are neither Merchants, Taylors, Shoo makers, &c. but of the meaner fort. part of Fez. Heere are notwithstanding thirty shops of Grocers. Neere vnto the wa'les dwell certaine Grocers. Bricke-burners and Potters: and not farre from thence is a great Market of white Earthen Vel- Farthen velfels, Platters, Cups, and D.fhes. Next of all flands the Corne-market, wherein are divers Gra- fels. naries to lay vp Corne. Ouer against the great Temple there is a broad street paued with Brick, Commarket round about which divers handi-crafts and occupations are exercifed. There are I kewife many other trades divertly dispersed over this East part of the City. The Drapers and Grocers have Drapers. certaine peculiar places allotted vnto them. In the East part of Fez likewife there are fine hun-

dred and twenty Weauers houses, very stately and sumptuously built : having in each of them Weauers. many worke-houses and Loomes, which yeeld great rent vnto the owners. Weauers there are (by report) in this City twenty thousand, and as many Millers. Moreover, in this part of Fez Millers. are an hundred thops for the whiting of thread; the principall whereof being fituate voon the River, are exceedingly well furnished with Kettles, Cauldrons, and other fuch vessels : here are likewife many great housesto fawe wood in, which worke is performed by Christian captives, Sawyers. and whatfoeuer wages they earne, redoundeth unto their Lords and Mafters. Thefe Christian Chaptan Capa captiues are not fuffered to reit from their labours, but onely vpon Fridayes, and vpon eight feue- mer flauty. rall dayes of the veere befides, wheron the Moores feaths are folemnized. Heere also are the

60 common stewes for Harlots, which are fauoured by great men, and sometime by the chiefe Geuernours of the City. Likewise there are certaine Vintners, who are freely permitted to keepe Harlots, and to take filthie hire for them. Heere are also moe then fixe hundred cleere Four- Srewes. taines walled round about and most charily kept, every one of which is severally conveyed by Vintness, certaine pipes vnto each Houle, Temple, Colledge, and Hospitall : and this Fountaine water is Fountaine

accoun- 600,

Risers dried accounted the bests for that which commeth out of the River is in Summer oftentimes dried vos spin Summer, as likewife when the Conduits are to be clenfed, the course of the River must of necessitie bee turned out of the City. Wherefore every family vieth to fetch water out of the faid Fountaines. and albeit in Summer-time the chiefe Gentlemen vie River-water, yet they will often call for Fountaine-water, because it is more cooleand pleafant in taste. But in the Spring-time it is nothing fo. These Fountaines have their Originall for the most part from the West and South, for the North part is all full of Mountaines and Marble Rockes, containing certaine Caues or Cels, wherein Corne may be kept for many yeeres; of which Caues some are so large, that they will hold two hundred bushels of Corne. The Citizens dwelling neere those Caues, and such as posfelle them, do fufficiently maintaine themselves in taking yeerely every hundred bushell for rent. 10 The South part of East Fez is almost halfe destitute of Inhabitants; howbeit the gardens abound with Fruits and Flowres of all forts. Euery Garden hath an house belonging thereunto, and a Christall-fountaine enuironed with Rofes and other odoriferous Flowres and Herbes; fo that in the Spring-time a man may both fatisfie his eyes, and folace his mind in vifiting this part of

Gardens.

the City : and well it may be called a Paradife, fithence the Noblemen doe here refide from the Aince Palaces, moneth of Aprill till the end of September. Westward, that is, toward the Kings Palace, standeth a Calle built by a King of the Luntune Familie, refembling in bignesse an whole towne: wherein the Kings of Fez, before the faid Palace was built, kept their Royall residence. But after new Fez began to be built by the Marin Kings, the faid Caltle was left onely to the Gouernor of the City, Within this Caffle flands a flately Temple built (as aforefaid) what time it was 20 inhabited by Princes and Nobles, many places being afterward defaced and turned into Gardens : howheit certaine houses were lest vnto the Gouernour, partly to dwell in, aud partly for the deciding of controuerlies. Heere is likewife a certaine Prison for captines supported with many pillars, and being to large, that it will hold (as divers are of opinion) three thousand men. Neither are there any feuerall roomes in this prifon : for at Fez one prifon ferueth for all. By this Castle runneth a certaine River very commodious for the Governour.

l'rifon. Of the Magi-

In the City of Fez are certaine particular Judges and Magistrates : and there is a Governour that defineth civill controverties, and giveth fentence against Malefactors. Likewise there is a minifiration Indge of the Canon Law, who hath to doe with all matters concerning the Wahametan Reliof luftice, and large of the la ther miltake themselues, or doe ground their sentence vpon the authoritie of some inferiour Doctor. The Gouernour gaineth a great lumme of money by condemning of parties at feuerall times. Their manner of proceeding against a Malefactor is this : hauing given him an hundred or two hundred stripes before the Gouernour, the Executioner putteth an Ironfattors in Fez. chaine about his necke, and to leadeth him flarke-naked (his prinities onely excepted) through all parts of the City : after the Executioner followes a Serieant, declaring vnto all the people what fact the guilty person hath committed, till at length having put on his apparell agame, they carry him backe to prison. Sometimes it falleth out that many offenders chained together are led about the Citie : and the Gouernour for each Malefactor thus punished, receiveth one Ducat and one fourth part; and likewise at their first entrance into the Gaole, he demands of each one a certaine ducty, which is paid particularly vnto him by divers Merchants and Artificers appointed of purpose. And amongst his other linings, he gathered out of a certaine Mountaine seuen thousand Ducats of yeerely Reuenue : so that when occasion serueth , he is at his proper costes to finde the King of Fez three hundred horses, and to give them their

Those which follow the Canon law have neither stipend nor reward allowed them : for it

is forbiddenby the Law of Mahamet, that the Iudges of his Religion thould reape any com-

and veterly voyd of all good learning. There is a place also in Fez whereinto the Judges vie to

catt the Citizens for debt, or for some light offence. In all this City are foure Officers or Ser-

No Officer by moditie or Fees by their Office; but that they should line onely by reading of Lectures, and by M. homes Law their Prieffhood. In this faculty are many Aduocates and Proctors, which are extreme idiots. 50 Valcarned dy Knaues.

icants onely; who from midnight till two a clocke in the morning doc walke about all parts of ieants in Feg. the Citie; neither have they any flipend, but a certaine Fee of fuch Malefactors as they lead and those bau- about in chaines, according to the qualitie of euery mans crime; moreouer, they are freely permitted to fell Wine, and to keepe Harlots. The faid Gouernour hath neither Scribes nor Notaries, but pronouncethall fentences by word of mouth. One onely there is that gathereth Customes and Tributes over all the City, who daily payeth to the Kings wie thirty Ducats. This Tribute, Sear- man appointeth certaine substitutes to watch at every Gate, where nothing, be it of neuer so 60 chers & excise, finall value, can palle before some Tribute be paid. Yea, sometime they goe foorth of the City to meet with the Carriers & Muliters upon the high wayes, to the end they may not conceale nor closely conucy any merchandize into the City. And if they be taken in any deceit, they pay double. The let order or proportion of their Cultome is this, namely, to pay two Ducats for the

worth of an hundred: for Onix-stones, which are brought hither in great plentie, they pay one worth of annunated to Mood, Corne, Oxen, & Hens, they give nothing at all. The fad Governor of rouren part; our to work the Shambles hath alwaies twelue men wayting vpon him, and oftentimes heerid, the about the Citie to examine the weight of bread, and finding any bread to faile of the cuewaight, he caufeth the Baker to be beaten with cadgels, and to beeled in contempt vp and downe the Citie.

The Citizens of Fez goe very civilly and decently attyred, in the Spring time wearing Garments made of out-landish cloth : over their Shirts they weare a lacket or Cassock beeing nar- Their appared row and halfe-fleued, whereupon they weare a certayne wide Garment, close before on the breft. Their Caps are thinne and fingle, like vnto the Night-caps vied in Italie, fauing that they 10 couer not their eares : the fe Caps are couered with a certaine Skarfe, which beeing twice wire-

thed about their head and beard, hangeth by a knot. They weare neither Hole nor Breeches, but in the Spring time when they ride a lourney, they put on Boots: mary, the poorer fort have one-In the opting time when that called, * Barneffi, and a most course Cap. The Doctors * Or Ilberting and ancient Gentlemen weare a certayne Garment with wide fleeues, somewhat like to the Gentlemen of Venice. The common fort of people are for the most part clad in a kind of course white cloth. The women are not altogether vnseemely apparelled, but in Summer time they weare nothing fane their Smockes onely. In Winter they weare fuch a wide ficened Garment, being close at the breft, as that of the men before mentioned. When they goe abroad, they put on certaine long Breeches, wherewith their legges are all conered, having al-20 fo, after the fashion of Syria, a Veile langing downe from their heads, which couereth their while bodies. On their faces likewife they wearea Maske with two little holes, onely for their

eyes to peepe out at. Their eares they adorne with golden Eare-rings, and with most precious Iewels: the meaner fort weare Eare-rings of Siluer and gilt only. Vpon their armes the Ladies and Gentlewomen were golden Bracelets, and the residue Siluer, as likewise Gold or Siluerrings upon their legs, according to each ones estate and abilitie.

ngs voon then tegs, accounting their victuals and manner of eating. The common fort let Their manner on the por with fresh meate twice enery weeke : but the Gentlemen and richer fort enery day, of eating and and as often as they lift. They take three meales a day : their Break-fast confistent of certaine drinking. Fruits and Bread, or elfe of a kind of liquid Pap made like vnto Frumentie: in Winter they 30 fup off the Broth of falt flesh thickned with courfe meale. To dinner they have Flesh, Sallets, Cheefe, and Olives : but in Summer they have greater cheere. Their Supper is easie of digefti-

Cheet, and Omes out in summet use place general state of a supper is case or origination, confilling of Bread, Melons, Grapes, or Milke: but in Winter they had folden field; together with a kind of meate called Cufoss, which being made of a lumpe of Dow is fer first vpon the fire in certaine Veffels full of holes, and afterward is tempered with Butter and Pottage. called Cufunga Some also vie often to have Roste-meat. And thus you see after what fort both the Gentlemen and common people lead their lines : albeit the Noblemen fare somewhat more daintily : but if you compare them with the Noblemen and Gentlemen of Europe, they may feeme to be milerable and base fellowes; not for any want or scarcitie of victuals, but for want of good manners and cleanlinefle. The Table whereat they fit is low, vncouered, and filthy : feates they have 40 none but the bare ground, neyther Knines or Spoones but only their ten Talons. The faid Cufcufu is let before them all in one only Platter, whereout as well Gentlemen as others take it not

with Spoones, but with their Clawes fine. The meate and pottage is put all in one Dish; out of which every one raketh with his grease fits what hee thinkes good : you shall never see Knife vpon the Table, but they teare and greedily denoure their meate like hungry Dogges. Neyther dots any of them defire to drinke before he hath well stuffed his panch; and then will he jup off a cup of cold water as bigge as a Milke-bowle. The Doctors indeed are somewhat more orderly at meales: but, to tell you the very truth, in all Italie there is no Gentleman fo meane, which for fine Dyet and stately Furniture excelleth not the greatest Potentates and Lords of all Africa.

As touching their Marriages, they observe these courses following. So some as the Maydes Themanner of Farher hath elpouled her vnto her Louer, they goe forth-with like Bride and Bridegroome to folemnizing Church, accompanyed with their Parents and Kinsfolkes, and call likewife two Notaries with Marriages. them, to make record before all that are present of the Couenants and Dowrie. The meaner fort of people viually give for their Daughters Dowrie thirtie Duckats and a woman-flave of fifteen Dickats price; as likewise a parti-coloured Garment embroydered with Silke and certaine cther Silke Skarfes, or lags, to were vpon her head in stead of a Hood or Veile; then a paire Portion and of fine Shooes, and two excellent paire of Startups; and laftly, many prettie Knackes curioufly made of Siluer and other Metals, as namely, Combes, Perfuming-pans, Bellowes, and fuch other Trinkets as Women haue in estimation. Which beeing done, all the Ghests present

66 are muted to a Banquet, whereunto for great Dainties is brought a kind of Bread fryed and tempered with Honey, which we have before described; then they bring Rost-meat to the boord, all this being at the Bridegroomes coft : afterward the Brides Father maketh a Banquet in like firt. Who if he bestow on his Daughter some apparell besides her Dowrie, it is accounted a point of liberalitie. And albeit the Father promifeth but thirtie Duckats onely for a Dowrie, yet will be lometimes bellow, in apparell and other Ornaments belonging to Wo-Vuuu

men, ewo hundred, yea fometimes three hundred Duckats befides. But they fildome give an House, a Vineyard, or a field for a Dowrie. Moreouer vpon the Bride they bestow three Gownes made of coffly cloth; and three others of Silke Chamlet, or of some other excellent Stuffe. They give her Smockes likewife curiously wrought, with fine Veiles, and other embroydered Vefures ; as alio Pillowes and Cushions of the best fort. And besides all the former gifts, they bellow eight Carpets or Couerlets on the Bride, foure whereof are onely for feemelineffe to foread youn their Prefles and Cupboords : two of the courfer they vie for their Beds and the other two of Leather to lay vpon the floore of their Bed-chambers. Also they have certaine Rugs of about twentie els compafe or length; as likewise three Quits beeing made of Linnen and Woollen on the one fide, and stuffed with flocks on the other fide, which they vie in the night 10 in manner following. With the one halfethey couer themselves, and the other halfe they lay under them : which they may eafily doe, when as they are both waies about ten ells long. Unto the former they adde as many Couerlets of Silke very curiously embroydered on the vpper-side. and beneath lined double with Linnen and Cotton. They bestow likewise white Coursets to vie in Summer-time onely; and laftly, they bellow a Woollen hanging divided into many parts. and finely wrought, as namely, with certaine pieces of gilt Leather; whereupon they fowe lags of partie-coloured Silke, and upon every lagge a little Ball or Button of Silke, whereby the faid hanging may for Ornaments fake bee fastened vnto a wall.

Ital'ans mifta-Petching home the

Here you fee what be the Appurtenances of their Dowries; wherein forme doe ftriue fo much to excell others, that oftentimes many Gentlemen haue brought themselves voto Pouerty 20 thereby. Some Italians thinke that the Husband bestowes a Dowrie vpon his Wife; but they altogether mistake the matter.

The Bridegroome being readie to carry home his Bride, caufeth her to be placed in a woodden Cage or Cabinet eight square couered with Silke, in which shee is carryed by Porters, her Parents and Kinstolkes following, with a great noyfe of Trumpets, Pipes, and Drummes, and with a number of Torches; the Bridegroomes Kinfmen goe before with Torches, and the Brides Kinsfolkes follow after: and fo they goe vnto the great Market place, and having passed by the Temple, the Bridegroome takes his leane of his Father-in-law and the rest, hying him home with all freed, and in his Chamber expecting the presence of his Spouse. The Father, Brother, and Vicle of the Bride leade her vinto the Chamber-doore, and there deliver her with 20 one content vnto the Mother of the Bridegroome : who, as soone as she is entred, toucheth her foot with his, and forth-with they depart into a feuerall roome by themselves. In the meane feafon the Banquet is comming forth : and a certaine woman standeth before the Bride chamber doore, expecting till the Bridegroome having defloured his Bride, reacheth hera Napkin flavned with blood, which Napkin the carryeth incontinent and theweth to the Ghefts , proclayming with a lowd voyce, that the Bride was ever til that time an vnfported & pure Virgine. This woman together with other women her Companions, first the Parents of the Bridegroom, and then of the Bride, doe honourably entertayne. But if the Bride be found not to be a Virgine, the Marriage is made frustrate, and shee with great disgrace is turned home to her Parents.

But so soone as the new marryed man goeth forth of the house (which is for the most part on the seuenth day after the Marriage) hee buyeth great plenty of sishes, which hee causeth his Mother or some other woman to cast upon his Wives feet; and this they, from an ancient Superfitious custome take for a good boding. The morrow after a company of women goe to dreffe the Bride, to combe her Lockes. and

Custome of

to paint her Cheekes with Vermillion; her hands and her feet they dye blacke, but all this Minstrelse and Painting presently loseth the fresh bue; and this day they have another Banquet. The Bride they place in the highest Roome that she may be seene of all. The same night, which was spent in dancing, there are prefent at the Bridal-house certayne Minstrels and Singers, which by turnes fometimes vietheir Instruments and sometimes Voyce-musick : they dance alwayes one by one. and at the end of each Galliard they bestow a Largesse vpon the Musicians. If any one will The Marriage honour the Dancer, he bids him kneele downe before him, and having fastened pieces of money of Widdowes, all ouer his face, the Musicians presently take it off for their fee. The women dance alone without any men, at the noyfe of their owne Musicians. All these things wie to bee performed when the Bride is a Mayde. But the Marriages of Widowes are concluded with leffe adoe. Their cheere is boyled Beefe and Mutton, and stewed Hens, with divers iuncating Dishes among. In flead of Trenchers, the Ghefts being ten or twelve in number, have so many great round Platters of wood fet before them. And this is the common custom of Gentlemen and Merchants. The meaner fort present their Ghests with certaine sops or bruesle of Bread like vnto a Pancake, which being dipped in flesh-pottage, they eat out of a great Platter not with Spoones but with their fingers onely : and round about each great Platter stand to the number of ten ort welue persons. 60

The Circum.

Likewise they make a solemne Feast at the Circumcision of their male children, which is cision of their wpon the seventh day after their birth; and at this Feast the Circumcifor, together with all their Friends and Kinsfolkes is prefent : which being done, each one, according to his abilitie, befloweth a Gift vpon the Circumcilor in manner following. Euery man layes his money vpon a Lads face which the Circumcifor brought with him. Whereupon the Lad calling enery one by his name, giueth them thankes in particular; and then the Infant beeing circumcifed, they from that day with as great iollity as a day of Marriage. But at the birth of a Daughter they

CHAP. 1. 8.3.

Among the people of Fex there have remayned certaine Relikes of Festivall Dayes instituted Of their Rices Among the people of Fee there have remaying certains ceremonies which themselves vider oblemed pon of old by the Ch illians, whereupon they vie certains ceremonies which themselves vider oblemed pon Festivalidates. of one by the Christmas even they eate a Sallet made of divers Hearbs: they feeth likewife and their manthat night all kind of Pulfe, which they feede vpon for great dainties. Vpon New-yeeresday ner of mourthe children goe with Maskes and Vizards on their faces to the houses of Gentlemen and Mer-nine for the chants, and have Fruites given them for linging certaine Carols or Songs. When as the Feath dead. chants, and have Fruites given them for inging certaine carous or songs. When as the relative sof songs is the followed among Christians, you shall here see all about great flore of Relayers of Ornstians Cefires made with Straw. And when their childrens teeth begin to grow, they make another feast remonics obcalled according to the Latines, Dentilla. They have also many other Rites and Customes of Distruct among uning, or Southfaying, the like whereof I have feene at Rome, and in other Cities of Italy: As the Moster: uning, or Southlaying, the like whereor I name seene at Assessant in other Cities of American Jones of which touching their Feaths prescribed by the Mahumetan Law; they are at large set downe in that seeme also to

briefe Treatife which we have written concerning the same Law. The women having by death loft their husbands, fathers, or any other of their deare friends, from the Heaaffemble forth-with a great multitude of their owne Sexe together, who ftripping themselues then. out of their owne attire, put on most vile fack-cloth, and defile their faces with much durt: then S.Nikbelle. call they certaine men clad in womens attire, bringing great foure-square Drums with them, at Abooke loft. Abooks loft, the noyle of which Drums the women-mourners sing a Funerall-long, tending as much as may Their funerals. be, to the commendation of the partie deceased; and at the end of enery Verse, the faid women

vtter most hadeous shrikes and out-cries, tearing their haire, and with much lamentation beating their cheekes and brefts, till they be all-imbrued with bloud; and fo thefe Heathenish superstitione continue for feuen whole dayes together. At which feuen daies end they furcease their mourning for the space of forty daies, and then they begin anew to torment themselves for three daies together in manner aforelaid : howbeit, these kinds of Obsequies are observed only by the baser people, but the Gentlemen and better fort behave themselves more modestly. At this time all the widowes friends come about her to comfort her, and fend divers kinds of meats vnto her: for in the mourning-houle they may dreffe no meate at all, till the dead corps bee carried forth. 20 The woman her selfe that looseth her husband, father, or brother, neuer goeth forth with the funerall. But how they wash and buriethe dead corps, and what superatitions they vie there-

about, you shall find recorded in my little Treatife about mentioned. The Citizens vie most of all to play at Chesse, and that from ancient times. Other Games Their manner

there are also, but very rude, and vied onely by the common people. here are alto, but very rude, and vied one by the common people.

In Fez. there are divers most excellent Poets, which make Verses in their owne Mother- Chesse-play.

tongue: most of their Poems and Songs intreate of Loue. Euery yeare they pen certaine Ver- Or the African fes in the commendation of Mahumet, especially vpon his Birth-day: for then betimes in the Poets morning they resort vnto the Palace of the chiefe Ludge or Gouernour, ascending his Tribunall Mahumett. feate and from thence reading their Verses to a great audience of people : and he whole Verses Rewards for 40 are most elegant and pithy, is that yeare proclaimed Prince of the Poets, But when as the Kings Poets II. Fez. of the Marin Family prospered, they vied to inuite all the learned men of the Citie vnto Honer all erich their Palace; and honourably entertaining them, they commanded each man in their hearing to omne four in recite their Verles to the commendation of Mahumet : and hee that was in all mens opinions cenduntur ad esteemed the best Poet, was rewarded by the King with an hundred Duckats, with an excellent Horse, with a Woman-slaue, and with the Kings owne Robes wherewith hee was then apparelled : all the rest had fifty Duckats apiece given them, so that none departed without the Kings liberalitie : but an hundred and thirtie yeares are expired fince this custome, together with the

Majettie of the Fezzas Kingdome decayed. Of Schooles in Fez for the instructing of Children, there are almost two hundred, every one Adescription of which is in fashion like a great Hall. The Schoole-masters teach their Children to write, and of the Granof which is in fashion like a great Hall. The Schoole-masters teach their Children to write, and mar schooles reade not out of a Booke, but out of a certaine great Table. Every day they expound one sentence in Fee. of the Alcoran: and having read quite through, they begin it againe, repeating it fo often, till Two hundred they have most firmely committed the fame to memorie: which they doe right well in the Schooles. space of seuen yeeres. Then reade they vnto their Scholers some part of Orthography : how- The Alcoran beit both this and the other parts of Grammar are farre more exactly taught in the Colledges, heart, then in these triniall Schooles. The said Schoole-masters are allowed a very small stipend; but when their Boyes haue learned some part of the Alcoran, they present certaine gifts vnto their Matter, according to each ones abilitie. Afterward fo toone as any Boy hath perfectly learned the whole Alcoran, his Father muiteth all his fonnes Schoole-fellowes vn-

to a great Banquet: and his fonne in costly apparell rides through the streete vpon a gallant Horse, which Horse and apparell the Gouernour of the Royall Citadell is bound to lend him. The rest of his Schoole-fellowes beeing mounted likewife on Horse-backe accompany him to the Banqueting-house, singing divers Songs to the praise of God, and of Maburnet. Then are they brought to a most sumptuous Banquet, whereat all the Kinsfelks of the for faid

796

Torches on

birth-day.

forefaid Boyes Father are vitally prefent : euery one of whom bestoweth on the Schoole-mafter some small gift, and the Boyes Father gives him a new suite of apparell. The said Scholers likewise vie to celebrate a Feast vpon the birth-day of Mahumet, and then their Fathers are bound to fend each man a Torch vnto the Schoole : whereupon euery Boy carrieth a Torch in his hand, some of which weigh thirtie pound. These Torches are most curiously made, being adorned round about with divers fruits of Waxe, which being lighted betimes in the morning. doe burne till Sun-rife ; in the meane while certaine Singers refound the prayles of Mahumet . and fo foone as the Sunne is vp, all their folemnitie ceaseth: this day vieth to be very gainefull vnto the Schoole-mafters, for they fell the remnant of the Waxe vpon the Torches for an hundred Duckats, and sometimes for more. None of them payes any rent for his Schoole: for all their Schooles were built many yeeres agoe, and were freely bestowed for the training vo of youth. Both in these common Schooles, and also in the Colledges they have two dayes of recreation every weeke, wherein they neither teach nor studie.

The Fortune tel'ers: Dininers

Now let vs speake of the Fortune-tellers and Dininers, of whom there is a great number, and three kinds. For one fort vieth certaine Geomanticall figures. Others powring a drop of Ovle into a viall or glaffe of water, make the faid water to be transparent and bright, wherein, as it were in a mirror, they affirme that they fee huge fwarmes of Deuils that refemble an whole Armie some whereof are trauelling, some are passing ouer a River, and others fighting a Land-battell, whom when the Dininer feeth in quiet, he demandeth fuch questions of them as he is defirous to be refolued of; and the Deuils gue them answere with beckning, or with some gesture 20 of their hands or eyes; so inconsiderate and damnable is their credulitie in this behalfe. The forefaid Glaffe-viall they will deliuer into childrens hands fearce of eight yeeres old, of whom they will aske whether they fee this or that Deuill. Many of the Citie are so besotted with these vanities, that shey fpend great fums upon them. The third kind of Diuiners are Women-witches, which are affirmed to have familiaritie with Deuils : some Deuils they call red, some white and fome blacke Deuils: and when they will tell any mans fortune, they perfume themselues with certaine Odours, faying, That then they poffesse themselves with that Deuill which they called for :afterward changing their voyce, they faine the Deuill to speake within them : then they which come to enquire, ought with great feare and trembling aske these vill and abominable Witches such questions as they meane to propound; and lastly, offering some fee vnto the De- 30 uill, they depart. But the wifer and honefter fort of people call these women Sahacat, which in Latin fignifieth Fricatrices, because they have a damnal le custome to commit valawfull Venerie among themselves, which I cannot expresse in any modester termes. If faire women come vnto them at any time, these abominable Witches will purne in lust towards them, no otherwise then luftie Younkers doe towards young Maides, and will in the Deuils behalfe demand for a reward. that they may lie with them : and to by this meanes it often falleth out, that thinking thereby to fulfill the Deuils command they he with the Witches. Yea, fome there are, which being allured with the delight of this abominable vice, will defire the company of these Wiches, and faining themselues to be ficke, will either call one of the Witches home to them, or wil send their husbands for the same purpose : and so the Witches perceiuing how the matter stands, will say, That the Womanis policifed with a Deutl, and that she can no way be cured, vales she be admitted into their fociety. With these words her filly husband being perswaded, doth not only permit her fo to do, but makes also a sumptuous banquet vnto the damned crew of Witches : which being done, they vie to dance very strangely at the noyse of Drums; and so the poore man commits his false wife to their filthy disposition. Howbeit, some there are that will soone conjure the Deuill with a good cudgell out of their wives; others faining themselves to be possessed with a Deuill, will deceiue the faid Witches, as their wines have been deceined by them.

good Coain lasin Fez.

Fricatrices.

Cabaliffs.

In Fez likewise there are a kind of Juglers, or Conjurers called Muhazzimin, who of all others Ofthe Coniue are reported to be most speedie casters out of Diuels. And because their Negromancie sometimes taketh effect, it is a wonder to fee into what reputation they grow thereby: but when they cannot cast forth a Deuill, they say, It is an Airie Spirit. Their manner of adjuring Deuils, is this: First, they draw certaine Characters and Circles vpon an ash-heape, or some other place; then describe they certaine fignes you the hands and fore-head of the partie possessed, and perfume him after a strange kind of manner. Afterward they make their Inchantment or Conjuration, enquiring of the Deuill, which way, or by what meanes he entred the party, as likewife what he is and by what name he is called; and laftly charging him to come forth. Others there are that worke by a certaine Cabalifticall rule, called Zaragia: this rule is contained in many Writings, for it is thought tobe Naturall Magique : neither are there any other Negromancers in all Fez, that will more certainely and truly resolue a doubtfull question : howbest, their Art is exceeding difficult, for the Students thereof must have as great skill in Astrologie, as in Cabala. 60 My felfe in times past having attained to some knowledge in this facultie, continued (I remember)an whole day in describing one figure onely : which kind of figures are described in manner following. First, they draw many circles within the compasse of a great circle: in the first circle they make a croffe, at the foure extremities whereof, they let downe the foure quarters of the

CHAP.I.\$.3. World, to wit, East, West, North and South: at each end of one of the faid crosse lines they note either Pole : likewife about the circumference of the first circle, they paint the foure Elements: then divide they the fame circle and the circle following intofoure parts, and every fourth part they divide into other feven, each one being diltinguished with certaine great Arabian Characters, io that every Element containeth eight and twenty Characters. In the third circle they let downe the feuen Planets : in the fourth, the twelve Signes of the Zodiack : in the fifth, the twelue Latine names of the moneths: in the fixth, the eight and twentie Houses of the Moone: in the seventh, the three hundred fixty five dayes of the yeare; and about the connexitie thereof, the foure Cardinall or principall Windes. Then take they To one onely letter of the question propounded, multiplying the same by all the particulars aforenamed, and the product or immme totall they divide after a certaine manner, placing it in some roome, according to the quality of the character, and as the Element requireth

wherein the faid Character is found without a figure. All which being done, they marke that figure which feemeth to agree with the forelaid number, or fumme produced, wherewith they proceed as they did with the former, til they have found eight and twenty Characters, whereof they make one word, and of this word the speech is made that resolueth the question demanded: this speech is alwaies turned into a verse of the first kind, which the Arabians call Ethanil, confifting of eight Stipites, and twelue Chordi, according to the Meeter of the Arabum Tongue, miting or eight signes, and the last part of our Arabian Grammer. And the Verse consisting An Arabian whereof we have intreated in the last part of our Arabian Grammer with of those Characters, comprehendeth alwaies a true and infallible answer vnto the question pro-20 pounded, retoluing first that which is demanded, and then expounding the sense of the question Les.

it felfe. These Practitioners are neuer found to erre, which causeth their Art of Cabala to bee had in great admiration : which although it bee accounted Naturall, yet neuer faw I any thing that hath more affinitie with supernaturall and Diuine knowledge. I remember that I saw in a certaine open place of King Abulusan his Colledge in Fez, vpon a floore paued with excellent fmoothe Marble, the description of a figure. Each ide of this floore or court was fifty ells long, and yet two third parts thereof were occupied about the figure, and about the things pertaining thereto; three there were that made the description, every one attending his appointed place, and they were an whole day in fetting it downe, Another fuch figure I faw at Tunis, drawne by one that was maruelous cunning in the Art, whose father had written two volumes of Commentaries or expositions upon the precepts of the same Art, wherin who sever hath exact skill, 30 is most highly esteemed of by all men. I my selfe neuer faw but three of this Profession, namely,

one at Tunis, and two other at Fez: likewife I have feene two Expolitions vpon the precepts Bookes of that of the faid Arte, together with a Commentarie of one Margian, father vnto the forefaid Cabalift Art. which I faw at Tunis: and another written by Ibnu Caldim the Historigrapher. And if any were defirous to fee the Precepts and Commentaries of that Art, he might doe it with the expence of fiftie Duckats : for layling to Tanis, a Towne neere vnto Italy, hee might have a fight or all the particulars aforesaid. I my selfe had fit oportunitie of time, and a Teacher that offered Diginstion of all the particulars aforelaid. I my lette had no oportunitie or time, and a Teacher time onered and Southlay to infirite time gratis in the same Art: howbeit, I thought good not to accept his offer, because ing forbidden the faid Art is forbidden and accounted hereticall by the Law of Mahumet: for Mahumet: Law by the Law of affirmeth all kind of Diminations to be vaine, and that God onely knoweth fecrets, and things to Mahomet. 40 come : wherefore fometimes the laid Cabalifts are imprisoned by the Mahumetan Inquisitors,

who cease not to persecute the Professors of that Art.

Here also you may find certaine learned men, which will have themselues called Wizards, and Ofcertaine Morall Philosophers. They obserue certaine Rules which Mahumet neuer prescribed. By some Rules and in-Morall Philotophers. They ordered certains rates which are amount near presented, by folice perfections ob-they are accounted Catholique, or true Mahumetans, and by others they are holden for here-ierued in the tiks: howbeit, the greatest part of the common people reverence them as if they were Gods, notwithstanding they commitmany things volumfull and forbidden by the Mahumetan Law; as Law. namely, whereas the faid Law forbiddeth any loue-matters to be expressed in any musicall Dit. Divers Mahuties, or Songs, these Moralists affrme the contrary. In the foretaid Mahumetan Religion are a metan sects. great number of Rules or Sects, every of which hath most learned Patrons and Protectors. The

so forefaid Sect fprang vp fourelcore yeares after Mahumet, the first Author thereof being called Elbefen Ibnu Abilhafen, and being borne in the Towne of Bafora: this man taught his Disciples and followers certaine Precepts, but Writings hee left none behind him. About an hundred yeares after there came another notable Doctor of that Sect from Bagaded, called Elbari Ibnu Eled, who left volumes of Writings vnto his Disciples. Afterward those that were found to be his followers, were all condemned by the Mahumetan Patriarkes and Lawyers. Howbeit, fourelcore yeares after, that Sect began to reniue againe vnder a certaine famous Professor, who drew after him many Disciples, vnto whom he published his Doctrine. This man at length, and 60 all his followers, were by the Pattiarke and Lawyers condemned to die. Which he vnderstanding, wrote forthwith vnto the Patriarke, requesting that he might be licenced to dispute with the Lawyers, as touching his Doctrine, of whom if he were conunced, he would most willingly fuffer death ; otherwise that it would be against al equity, that so many innocents should perish ypon an vniust acculation. The Patriarke thinking his demand to be reasonable, condescended

Vuuu 3

wholly thereunto. But when the matter came to disputation, the partie condemned, soone put all the Lawyers to filence. Which when the Patriarke perceived, he reuoked the fentence as vniust, and caused many Colledges and Monasteries to be erected for the said partie and his followers. After which time this Sect continued about an hundred yeeres, till the Emperour Ma. liefach of the Twiff race came thither out of Afia the greater, and destroyed all the maintainers thereof. Whereupon fome of them fled vnto Cairo, and the rest into Arabia, being dispersed here and there for the space of twenty yeares, till the reigne of Cafelfah, Nephew vnto Maliesach, Nidam Elmule, one of his Counfellers, and a man of an high forrit, being addicted vnto the faid Sect, io reftored, erected, and confirmed the same, that by the helpe of one Elgazzuli, a most learned man (who had written of the fame argument a notable Worke, divided into feven parts) he reconciled the Lawyers with the Disciples of this Sect, conditionally, that the Lawyers should be called Conferuers of the Prophet Mahamer his Lawes, and the Sectaries Reformers of the Barder facked fame, This concord lasted betweene them, till Bagaded was facked by the Tartars; which beby the Tartart. fell in the yeare of the Hegeira 756 at what time those Sectaries fo increased, that they swarmed almoit ouer all Africa and Afia. Neither would they admit any into their focietie, but fuch as were very learned, and trained vp in all kind of liberall Sciences; to the end they might the better defend their owne opinions, and confute their aduerlaries: but now adayes they admit allkind of rude and ignorant persons, affirming all sorts of learning to be needlesse; for the holy spirit (say they) rewealeth the knowledge of the truth vnto such as are of a cleane heart; and they alleage many reasons for the confirmation of this their opinion, though not very forcible. Wherefore despising their ancestors Rites, and the strict observations of the Law, they addiet themselues to nought else but delights and pleasures, feasting often, and singing lascinious Songs. Sometimes they will rend their garments, either alluding thereby to the Veries that they fine, or being mooued thereunto by their corrupt and vile disposition, faying fallely. That they are then rausshed with a fit of dinine loue : but rather impute it to their abundance of meat, and gluttony. For each one of them will denoure as much meate, as may well fuffice three. Or (which is more likely) they otter those passionate clamours and out-cries, because they are inflamed with valawfull and filthy luft. For sometimes it happeneth that some one of the principal of them, with all his Scholers and Disciples, is inuited to the marriage of some Gentleman, and at the beginning of the banket they will rehearfe their denout Orizons and Songs, but so soone as they are rifen from the Table, the elder of the companie being about to dance, teare their garments : and if any one in the middeft of their dancing, that hath drunke immoderately, chanceth to fall downe, he is taken up forthwith by one of the Scholers, and too too lafciniously kissed.

Ofdiuers other Rules

Whereupon this Prouerbe grew among the people of Fez, The Hermits banquet. Which they vie in reproch of those Matters, that make their Scholers their Minions. Amongst these Sects there are some, that have not onely a divers Law, but also a different beliefe from the relidue; whereupon by fome others they are called Heretikes. Some there are also which hold, that a man by good Works, by Fasting, and Abstinence, may attaine vnto tious credulity the nature of an Angell, which good Works, Fastings, &c. doe (fay they) so purge and free the mind from all contagion of cuill, that by no meanes it can finne any more, though it would neuer to fo faine. Howbeit, they thinke themselues not capable of this felicitie, before they ascended thereunto by the degrees of fiftie Disciplines or Sciences: and although they fall into sinne before they be come to the fittieth degree, yet they fay that God wil not impute that finne vnto them. These fellowes indeed in the beginning led a most strict life, and do even macerate and consume themselves with fasting : but afterward they give themselves to all licentious nesseand pleasure. They have also a most severe forme of living set downe in foure Bookes, by a certaine learned man of their faction, called Essebrauar de Sebrauard, and borne in the Citie of Corasan. Likewise there was another Authour called Ibnul Farid, that described all their Religion in witty Verses, which being fraught with Allegories, feemed to intreate of nought but Loue : wherefore one Elforani expounded the faid Verfes with a Commentarie, and thereout gathered the Canons and Orders of the Sect, and shewed the degrees to the attainment of selicitie. Moreouer, the faid Verses are so sweet and elegant, that the maintainers of this Sect will sing and repeate none other in their Banquets : for these three hundred yeeres no Author hath so adorned their language as the faid Ibnul. These Sectaries take the Heauens, the Elements, the Planets, and the fixed Starres to be one God, and that no Law nor Religion is erronious: for every man(lay they) may lawfully worthip that which his mind is most addicted to worthip. They thinke that all the knowledge of God was infused into one man, whom shey call in the language Elcorb; this man, they say, was elect by God, and was made equall in knowledge to him. Forty there are among them called all by the name of Elasted, which fignifieth in our language, a block, or flock of a tree:out of this number, when their Elcoth deceafeth, they create another in his roome, 60 namely, seventy persons that have the authority of election committed vnto them. There are likewise seuen hundred fixty fiue others (whole names I doe not well remember) who are chosen into the faid electors roomes, when any of them decease. These seuen hundred fix tie fine being bound thereunto by a certaine Canon or Rule of their Order, are confirmined alwaies to goe

vnknowne, and they range almost all the world ouer in a most vile and beggerly habite, so that a man would take them for mad men, and estranged from all sense of humanitie: for these lewde miltreants under pretence of their religion, run like rogues naked and fauage throughout all Africa, having so little regard of honestie or shame, that they will like brute beasts rawish women in publike places; and yet for footh the grosse common people reuerence them as men of wonderfull holineile. Great swarmes of these filthie Vagabonds you may see in Tunis, but many more in Egipt, and especially at Alcair, where as in the Market called Bain Eleafrain, I saw one of these Egypt, and especially at Antary, where as in the prefence of much people, defloure a most beautifull wo-horrible blad-horrible bladman as the was comming forth of the Bath: which being done, the fond people came flocking neffe. 10 about the faid woman, ftriuing to touch her garment as a most holy thing, saying, That the Adulterer was a man of great fanctitie, and that he did not commit the fin, but onely feemed to commit it : which when the filly cuckold her husband underflood, he shewed himselie thankefull to his falle God with a folemne Banquet, and with liberall gining of Almes. The Magistrates of the Citie would have punished the Adulterer, but they were in hazard to be flaine of the people for their labours, who (as is before laid) adore these Varlets for Saints, and men of singular holineffe. Other more vilanous acts I iaw committed by them, which I am ashamed to report.

ffs. Other more vilanous acts Haw committed by them, which Ham anamed to report.

Of the CabilLikewife there is another fort of men, which wee may firly call Cabalifts. These fish most lists and cerftricity, neither doe they eate the flesh of any living creature, but have certaine meates and garments allotted vnto them: they rehearfe like wife certaine fet-prayers appointed for enery houre Sess. 20 of the day and for the night, according to the varietie of dayes and moneths, and they vie to car- Pylhagrenses. rie about certaine square Tables with characters and numbers engraven therein. They faine of Bunian, themselues to have daily conference with the Angels, of whom they learne (they say) the knowledge of all things. They had once a famous Doctor of their Sect, called Boni, who was Author Bani, of their Canons, Prayers, and Square Tables. Which when I saw, mee thought their Profession had more affinitie with Magique then with Cabala. Their Art was divided into eight parts, whereof the first was called Elumba Enormita, that is, the demonstration of light, the which contained Prayers and Faltings. The second called Semful Meharif, that is, the Sunne of Sciences, contained the forefaid fquare Tables, together with their vie and profit. The third part they call Sirru Lalmei Eichusne; this part contained a catalogue of those ninetie nine Vertues, which 30 (they lay) are contained in the names of God, which I remember I faw at Rome in the custodie of a certaine Venetian Iew. They have also a certaine other Rule, called Savach, that is, the Rule

have they any other food, but such as those wild Defarts will affoord: the convertation of these Heremites no man is able exactly to describe, because they are estranged from all humane societie. But if I should take vpon me to describe the varietie of Mahumetan Sects, I should digresse too farre from my present purpose. He that desireth to know more of this matter, let him reade ouer the booke of Elefacni, who discourseth at large of the Sects belonging to the Makumetan Seuenty two ouer the booke of Elefacii, who discourse that large of the Sects belonging to the Maisimetan principal section, the principal whereof are seven the section of which defend their opinions to in the religion in the religion betrue and good, and such as a man may attaine sahuation by. At this day you shall find but two of Mahamet. 40 principall Sects onely, the one of Lesbari being dispersed over all Africa, Egypt, Syria, Arabia, and Turkie: the other of Imamia, which is authorized throughout the whole Kingdome of Persia, and

of Hermites : the Professors and followers whereof inhabit Woods, and solitarie places; neither

in certaine Townes of Corafan; and this Sect the great Sophi of Perfia maintaineth, infomuch that all Afia had like to been destroyed thereabour. For whereas before they followed the fect of Lesbari, the great Sophi by force of Armes established his owne of Imamia: and yet one onely

Scot firetcheth over all the Mahanetans Dominions.

Moreover, in the Citie of Fez there are certaine men called Eleanefin, who supposin gto finde Offuchas treasure under the foundations of old houses, doe perpetually search and delue. These grosse fel- search ser treature vnder the foundations of old nonles, doe perpetually learn and detue. There grow treatures lowes when to refort vnto certaine dennes and caues without the Citie-walles, certainely per in Fee. fwading themselues, that when the Romans were chased out of Africa, and driven into Basica or

50 Granada in Spaine, they hid great abundance of treasure in the bowels of the earth, which they could not carry with them, and so enchanted the same by Art-Magique, that it can by no meanes be attained vnto but by the same Art ; wherefore they seeke vnto Inchanters to teach them the Art of digging up the faid treasures. Some of them there are that will stedfastly affirme, that they faw Gold in this or that Caue: others, that they faw Silver, but could not digge it out, by reason that they were destitute of Persumes and Enchantments sit for the purpose; so that being feduced with this vaine opinion, and deeply deluing into the earth, they turne volide-downe the foundations of Houses and Sepulchers, and sometimes they proceede in this manner tenne or twelve dayes journey from Fez: yea, so fond they are, and so beforted, that they esteeme those Bookes that professe the Art of digging of Gold, as divine Oracles. Before my departure from 60 Fez, these fantasticall people had chosen them a Confull and getting licence of certaine owners to digge their grounds, when they had digged as much as they thought good, they paid the faid

owners for all dammages committed. In this Citie likewise there are great flore of Alchymists, which are mightily addicted to that Of the Alchyvaine practice: they are most hate fellowes, and contaminate themselves with the steame of miss of re-Sulphur,

Sulphun, & other flinking finels. In the evening they wie to allemble them felues at the great Temple, where they dispute of their falle opinions. They have of their Arte of Alchymie many Bookes written by learned men, amongst which one Geber is of principall account, who lived an ober an all chymic witter, hundred yeeres after Mahamer, and being a Greeke borne, is faid to have renounced his cowne Religion. This Geber his workes and all his precepts are full of Allegories or darke borrowed specches. Likewile they have another Author, that wrote an huge Volume of the fame Arte, intituled by the name of Attogrebi: this man was fecretary vnto the Soldan of Bagaded, of whom A Booke write we have written in the lives of the Arabian Philosophers. Also the Songs or Articles of the faid ten by : & z.c. Science were written by one Mugaribi of Granada, whereupon a most learned Mamuluch of Damasco wrote a Commentary : yet so, that a man may much more easily understand the Text 10 then the exposition thereof. Of Alchymists here are two forts; whereof the one seeke for the Eliffer, that is, the matter which coloureth braffe and other Metals ; and the other are converfant about multiplication of the quantities of Metals, whereby they may conueniently temper the lame. But their chiefest drift is to coine counterfeit money .: for which cause you shall see most of them in Fez with their hands cut off.

Philofo hers.

In this City likewise the: e is a great swarme of base people, such as there Italians commonly Inchanters of call Ciss materi: thefe fing toolish Songs & Rimes in all the streets of the City. & broching meere trifles with the Musicke of Drums, Harpes, and Citterns, they sell vnto the rude people certaine scrowles or briefe Charmes in stead of preservatives. Vnto these you may adde another kinde of reffule people of one Family and disposition with the former, who carry dauncing 20 Apes vp and downe, and haue their Neckes and Armes all entwined with crawling Snakes. These also proteste Geomancy, and perswade women that they can foretell them their fortune. Likewise they carry stone horses about with them, which for a certaine Fee, they will let others haue to couer their Mares. Their Gentlemen are very flately and high minded, and will haue little or no familiarity at all with the Citizens : so likewife the Doctors and Iudges of principall account will admit but few vnto their acquaintance. This City it felfe is most beautiful and right commodioully lituate; where albeit in winter time the freets are lo mirie, that you cannot walke in them without startups, yet they let passe such abundance of water out of their Conduits, that all the filth is washed cleane away. Where Conduits are wanting, they carry all the durt in Carts vnto the next part of the River.

forefaid City

Without the wals of this City Westward standeth a Suburbe containing almost five hunof the Suburbs dreth Families, the houses whereof are but meane, and the Inhabitants base, as namely, divers of Camels, Water-bearers, and Cleauers of Wood for the Kings Palace. Yet heere you may finde disers shops, and all kinds of Artificers. Heere likewise dwell all the Charmers and Roguish Minstrels before named; as also great swarmes of sluttish and nithie harlots. In the principall freet of this Suburbe, you shall find certaine Caues most Artificially hewen out of excellent Marble, wherein the Noble men of Fez were wont to lay up their Corne; for the least of them will containe more then a thouland Measures of Corne, there being aboue an hundreth and fifty of them in all, but now they lie waste and open, infomuch that divers fall into them at vnawares, for which cause their brims are inurroned with wals. Heere every one may play the Vixturer and the Bawd 3 so that this Suburbe may infly be called the sinke of Fez. From the 40 twentieth houre you shall fee none at all in their shops: for then every man runs to the Tauerne to disport, to spend riotously, and to be drunken. Another Suburbe there is allotted vnto the Lepers of whom there are two hundreth Families: their leprous persons have a Governour, which gathereth certaine yeerely Reuenues from the Noble men, and taketh fuch care of the faid Lepers, that they want no necessary thing. He is bound by his Office to discharge the City of all leprous persons, and to compellall such as hee understands to be infected with that dilease, to depart into the forefaid Suburbs. If any Leper chanceth to die wishout iffue, part of his goods are imployed to the common benefite of the Lepers, and part fall to the Gouernours share : but if he hath children, they inioy his goods. Many fields there are without the City, which have beene given by certaine Noblemen for

The habitation of Lepers in Tex and their Gouernour,

A Descrip on

the buriall of the dead. Vpon their Sepulchers for the most part they lay a long three-square mon place of ftone. When any Noble man or any principall Citizen deceafeth, they lay one ftone ouer his buriall without head, and another ouer his feet, whereon vied to be engrauen some Epitaph, with the day and veere when the party deceafed. I my felfe bestowed much labour in gathering of Epitaphs, which I faw both about Fez and in other places of Barbary; all which being fet downe in a Booke, I gaue vnto the Kings Brother. The manner of their Epitaphs is divers, fome tending to confolation, and others to forrow. Northward of the City vpon a certaine high Hill flands a Palace, wherein are the Monu-

The Sepul-Kings of Fex. New Fez.

ments of divers Marin Kings, being most Artificially hewen out of Marble with Epitaphs vp- 60 on them, so that I cannot condignely expresse the Maisstie and Beauty thereof. King Iacob the Founder divided New Fez into three parts, whereof the first contained his Royall Palace, and divers Noblemens houses, vnto every one of which he allotted a most pleafant Garden. Not farre from his Palace he built a most stately and sumptuous Temple. In another part of this Citie hee built a large and faire Stable for the Kings Horses to stand in. Then alio he caused other Palaces to be creeted for his Captaines and principall Courtiers. From the West gate to the East he appointed the Market place, the distance betweene which Gates is a mile and an halfe, and on both sides he placed Artificers and Merchants shops.

In Fee, neither Ring nor any other lewell or Commoditie can bee made of Siluer or Gold, Gold-mithe, before the Metall be sealed, for the Offenders are most severely punished. And the Metall being sealed, whatsoener is made thereof is weighed as if it were money. The greatest part of Gold-smiths dwelling in new Fex are lewes, who carry their Vessels of Gold and Siluer vnto a certaine place of old Fez, nesre vnto the Grocers shops, and there fell them. For in olde Fez 10 neither Gold nor Siluer is coyned, nor any Mahametans are suffered to bee Gold-smiths, because they have Viurers among them, which will fell any piece of wrought Siluer or Gold dearer then the waight requireth; albeit the same priviledge is by the Governours of the Citiegranted vnto the lewes. Some there are also that onely make Plate for the Citizens, who are payed hire 10wes. onely for their worke. That part of the Citie which the Kings Attendantsor Guard once polfessed, is now inhabited by lewes : for now a dayes the Kings vie no such Guard.

The lewes indeed first dwelt in old Fee, but vpon the death of a certaine King they were all robbed by the Moores: whereupon King Abufabid caused them to remoone into new Fez, and Their conby that meanes doubled their yearely Tribute. They therefore even till this day doe occupie a timpt. long street in the faid new Citie, wherein they have their Shoppes and Synagogues, and their 20 number is maruellously increased ever fince they were driven out of Spaine. These lewes are had in great contempt by all men, neyther are any of them permitted to weare shooes, but they make them certaine Sockes of Sea-rushes. On their heads they weare a blacke * Dulipan, and if any will goe in a Cap, he must fasten a Red cloth thereunto. They pay vnto the King of Fee monethly foure hundred Duckats.

At length, within the space of an hundred and forty yeares this new Citie was enuironed with most impregnable wals, and adorned with Temples, Colledges, Palaces, and other such building as serue to beautifie a Citie, so that I thinke there was more bestowed in garnishing of Engine for the the Citie, then in building of the wals. Without the Citie-wals are built many huge Wheeles conunyance of or Engins, for the conuaying of River-water over the faid wals into Cifternes, from whence it water.

30 is conuayed in certayne Channels and Pipes vnto the Temples, Gardens, and Palaces. The faid Wheeles were built not fully an hundred yeares paft, before which time water was brought unto the Citie by a certayne Conduit, from a Fountayne ten miles diftant. Of which artificiall Conduit a certaine Genouses, being then in great fauour with the King, is reported to have beene the Author: but the Wheeles (they fay) were invented by a Spaniard: and in them there is maruellous cunning Workmanship: for to the convayance of so huge a quantitie of water, each Wheele is turned about but foure and twentie times onely in a day and a night. To conclude, here are but few Gentlemen in this Citie, except fuch as attend vpon the Court, for the refidue are base and Mechanicall people; but such as carry any shew of honestie, doe so hate and disdayne the Kings Courtiers and Gentlemen, that they will by no meanes vouchiafe to marrie

40 their Daughters vnto them. Among it all the Princes of Africa, I neuer read of any that was created by the common iuf- The fathions frages and consent of the people vnto his Kingdome or Princedome, or that was called from a- and customes ny strange Prouince or Citie to beare rule. Also by the Law of Mahamat no man may beare viedin the ny strange Prouince of Citie to beare rule. All by the Law of Pransmet in Mali may beate Kings Court. any Secular Authoritie, which may be called lawfull, faue onely the Mahametan Patriarkes No Elective and Prelates: howbest the faid Patriarkes Authoritie decreasing daily more and more, the Ring-Princes in 4leaders of fuch people as ranged vp and downe the Defarts, began to inuade places inhabited frica; chosen by and civilized, and by force of Armes, against Mabamets Law, and maugre his Prelates, to or- the peopledayne lundry Princes : As for example in the East, whereas the Turkes, Cordians, and Tartars, No Rulett Mahaue vsurped dominion ouer such as were not able to repell them. So likewise in West parts relates. so frit the Families of Zeneta and Luntuna, then the feditious Mahumetan Preachers, and afterward the Family of Marin got the vpper hand. Howbeit, the Family of Luntuna is reported to have ayded the Westerne Regions, and to have released them from the furie of the seditions

vnto Gouernment by Hereditarie Succession or by Election of the people, or of the Nobilitie. But the Prince himfelfe when he feeles death feazing upon him, calleth about him all his Peeres and Nobles, and bindeth them by Oath, to effablish his Sonne, Brother, or any other whom he most fauoureth, in his Kingdome. But they after the Princes decease neglecting their This was be-Outh, will choose any other whom they lift. And this is ordinarily the Election of the King of fore the Xousse Fez who, fo foone as he is proclaymed King, chooseth forth-with some one of his Nobles to be Family prehis Chiefe Counsellour, and on him he bestoweth the third part of all his Kingly Revenues. Then usyled. choelethanother to be his Secretarie, Treasuror, and High Steward of his Houshold. Then is Themanner of created the Captains of the Horfama, appointed for the Kings Guard, and these Horfama with their Horses line most commonly in the fields their Hories live most commonly in the fields.

Heretikes, wherein they shewed themselves Friends and not Enemies : but afterward their ty-

ranny began to show it selfe. And this is the reason why they doe not now a dayes attayne

Laftly,

Loviv, he appointed a new Governour over every Cute, vinto whom all the Tributes and Renames of the lame place redound, with condition that as often as any warres betwee, hee thall maintavine a certayne company of Horles to the Kings femice. After a while also hee placeth ectavior Departes and Commissioners over his people inhabiting the Mountaynes, and over the Arabitan labeet with him. The Governours of Cities diversly administer Iustice, according to the custome of the place. Some there are also appointed by the King to collect all the Tributes and Kenennes of his Kingdome, and daly to pay the fame vinto him. Likewife there are others cirolen, whom they call in their Language, Keepers or Guardians, and vnto enery one of these the King greeth force Cartle or Village, whereby hee may procure his owne mayntenance, and bee abl: to firse the King in time of warre.

Moreover, the King of Fex mayntayneth a Trouge of Light Horfemen, who folong as they ferue the King in his Campe, have their Dyet allowed them out of the Kings Proution : but in tions of peace, he findeth them Corne, Butter, and pouldered fieth for the whole years, but money they have very feldome. Once a yeare they are apparelled at the Kings coft; neither doe they promise for their Horles either within the Citie or without, for the King furnisheth them with all necessaries. Those that give attendance to their Horses are Christian Canines, which go thackled in great Chaines and Fetters. But when the Armie remooueth any whither, the faid Christians are carryed upon Camels backes. Another Officer there is that giveth attendance onely to the Camels, aligning certaine Pattures vnto the Heardsmen, and dividing fields among them, and making such promison for the Kings Camels, as himselfe shall thinke expedient. Each Carrel driver nath two Camels, which are laden with the Kings Furniture, according to the appointment of the Governour. Likewise the King hath a certaine Purveyor or Steward, whose oftice is to provide, keepe, and diffribute Corne both to the Kings Houshold and to his Army. This man in time of warre hath ten or twelve Tents to lay vp Corne in , and every day with change of Camels he lendeth for new Corne, least the Army should be unprouided of victuals : he hath

also Cookes at his command.

Moreover, there is a Governour, or Master Groome of the Stables , who provideth for the Kings Horfes, Mules, and Camels, and is furnified with all necessaries by the Steward. There is another also appointed, Ouer-feer of the Corne, whole dutie it is to prouide Barley and other Prouender for the beafts; and this man hath his Scribes and Notaries about him, who diligently 30 fet downe all particular expenses, for they must give vp a perfect account vnto the chiefe Steward. They have also a certaine Captaine over fiftie Horsemen, which Horsemen may well bee called Par (ninants, for they are fent by the Secretarie in the Kings name to doe his bulineffe. Likewife the Fezzan King hath another Captaine of great name, being as it were, Governour of bis Guard, who in the Kings name, may compell the Judges to doe Justice, and to put their fentences in execution. This mans authoritie is fo great, that fometimes he may commit principall Noblemen to Ward, and may feuerely punish them, according to the Kings commandement.

Moreoner, the faid King hath a most trusty Chancelor, who keepeth the great Seale, and writeth and figneth the Kings Letters. He hath also a great number of Footmen, the Gouernour of whom accepteth and difmiffeth whom hee thinkes good, and giveth to every one wages accor-40 ding to his agilitie and defert. And whenfoeuer the King commeth in place of Judgement, the faid Gouernour alwayes attendeth voon him, and is in a manner his High Chamberlaine. Also there is another that taketh charge of the Carriages and Baggage of the Armie, and causeth the Tents of the Light Horlemen to be carryed up and downe on Mules, and the Tents of the other Souldiers on Camels. There are likewise a Company of Ensigne-bearers, who in marching on a Journey carry their Colours wrapped up : but he that goeth before the Armie hath his Banner difplayed, and of a great height. And every one of the faid Standard-bearers knoweth mo't exactly alwayes, fords of Rivers, and paffages thorow Woods, wherefore they are for the most part appointed to guide the Army.

The Drummers (of whom there are great flore in the Kings Hoft) play vpon certaine Drums 50 of Braffe as bigge as a great Kettle, the lower part whereof is narrow, and the upper bread, being courred with a skinne. These Drummers ride on Horseback, having alwayes on the one side of their Hories a great waight hanging downe, to counterpoize the heavineffe of their Drums on the other fide. They are allowed most swift Horses , because the Moores account it a great disgrace to loofe a Drumme. The faid Drummes make such a loude and horrible novse, that they are not onely heard a farre off, but also strike exceeding terrour both ypon men and Horses, and they are beaten onely with a Buil-pizzle. The Musicians are not maintayned at the Kings charge, for the Cities are bound at their coils to fend a certaine number of them to the warres, who, according to their demeanour in the warres, are admitted or not admitted vnto the Kings Table. This King hath alio a certaine Mafter of Ceremonies , tho fitteth at his feet in the Senate House, and commandeth each man to sit downe, and to speake according to his dignitie. 60

All the Mayde feruants in the Kings Family are Negro-flaues, which are partly Chamberlaines, and partly Wayting Maydes. And yet his Queene is alwayes of a white skinne. Likewife in the King of Fez his Court are certaine Christian Captiues, being partly Spanish, and partly Pertugali women, who are most circumspeedly kept by certaine Euniches, that are Ne-

CHAP.I.S. 3. The Revenues, Progresse, and Warfare of the King of Fcz.

The King of Fex hash very large Dominions, but his Reuenues are finall, to wit, caree three The King of gro llaues. hundreth thouland Duckats, the hit part whereof redoundeth not to the King : for the remain. For his Reusder is divided into fundry portions, as wee have before fignified. Yea, the greater part of the nucs than imal faid Reuenues is payer in Corne, Cattle, Oyle and Butter, all which yeeld but small store of money. In some place they pay a Duckat and one fourth part, Tribute for every Acre, but in other places a whole Family payeth but formuch. In some other Regions each man aboue fifto teeme yeares of age payeth as much Tribute alfo. Neither are the people of this great Citie more vexed with any thing then with paying of their Tributes and Impolitions. Heere also is to be noted, that the Mahametan Gouernours (the Priests onely excepted) may not exact grea. Tribute how ter Revenuer then those that Mabiener hath allotted vinto them, namely, of every of their fubiects which possesset an hundred Duckats in ready money, they are to haue two Duckats and

an halte for yeerely Tribute. halte for yeerely Pribute.

Euery husbandman likewife is bound to pay for Tribute the tenth part of all his Corne. And Mahametan all the fird Tributes he appointed to be paid vnto the Patriarke, who should be flow that which Princes bewas funerfluous for the Prince to haue, vpon common vies; namely, for the releeuing of poore canie they impotent people and widowes, and for maintaining of warres against the enemie. But fince the were Pricits Patriarkes began to decay, the Princes (as we have before-faid) exercifed tyrauny. For it was and by his law 20 not fufficient for them to exact all the forenamed Tributes, and riotoully to confirme the noncother. fame, but alfo to vrze people vnto greater contributions; fo that all the Inhabitants of Africa are so oppressed with daily exactions, that they have scarcely wherewithall to feed and apparell themselves : for which cause there is almost no mean of learning or honesty, that will seeke any ac. Note: quaintance with Courtiers, or will insuite them to his Table or accept any gifts (bee they never so pretiom) at their hands : thinking that what former goods they have, are gotten by theft and bribers.

The King of Fez continually maintaineth fixe thousand Horsemen, fine hundreth Crosse- The King of The King of Fee. Continuous manufactural transfer and transfer in a manager to Free lower and as many Harquebulers, being at all allayes prepared for the warres, who in time of Free in Guard peace, when the King goeth on Progretie, lie within a mile of his person: for being at home in peace, when the King goeth on Progretie, he within a mue or insperion: For being a some in the King Free, he needed not fo ftrong a Guard. When he wageth ware against the Arbabasa that better when King Free, he needed not for the grant of the control of the Arbabasa of experience of experience of the control of the Cont 30 his Subjects, who at their owne cofts find him a great army of men better trained to the wars,

then his owne Souldiers before-mentioned. The pompe and Ceremonies of this King are but meane, neither doth he willingly viethem, but onely vpon Festivall dayes, and when meere necessitit requireth. When the King is to ride foorth, the master of Ceremonies signifieth (o much vnto certaine Herbengers or Poltes, whereupon the Herbengers give notice thereof vnto the Kings * Parents, vnto his Nobilitie, his Senators, Captaines, Guardians, and *Orkinfolke Gentlemen, who presently arrange themselves before the Palace gate. At the Kings comming foorth of the Palace, the Herbengers appoint vnto each man his place and order of riding, First and fore-most go the Standard-bearers, next the Drummers, then followeth the chiefe Groome of the Scable with his feruants and family ; after him comes the Kings penfioners , his Guard, 40 his mafter of Ceremonies, his Secretaries, his Treasurer, and last of all his chiefe ludge and his

Captaine Generall, at length comes the King accompanied with his principall Counfeller, or with some other great Peere. Before the King also ride certaine Officers belonging to his perfon, whereof one carries his Sword-royall, another his Shield, and the third his Croffe-bow. On each fide of him march his Foot-men, one carrying a payre of Stirups, another the Kings Partizan, the third a courring for his Saddle, and the fourth a halter for his horfe. And so soone as the King is dilmounted, they foorthwith couer the Saddle, and put the forefuld halter vpon his Horse-head. Likewise there is another footman that carrieth the Kings Pantofles most Artificially wrought. After the King followeth the Captaine of the footmen, then the Eunuches, the Kings Family, the light Hortemen, and last of all the Crosse-bowes and Harquebusiers. The

50 apparell of the King is then very moderate and plaine : infomuch that a man knew him not , he would thinke him to be absent : for the attendants be farre more sumptuously attired. Moreo- No Mahameter uer no Mahumetan King or Prince may weare a Crowne, Diademne, or any fuch like ornament crowned. vpon his head, for that is forbidden by the law of Mahamet. When the King lyeth with his The King of army in the fields, first his owne great tent is pitched in a foure-square forme like vnto a Cafile, Fechismanner each fide of the faid square being fifty elles in length. At every of the foure corners standeth a little sharpe Turret made of Cloth, and a gallant Spheare on the top which glistereth like gold. This Royall Paulion hath foure gates, enery one of which is kept by Eunuches. Within the 60 faid Paulion are contained divers other tents, among which is the Kings lodging, being framed

in lich wife, that it may eatily bee remound from place to place. Next virto it stand the Tenes of the Noblemen, and of such as are most in the Kings fauour; then the lodgings of the principall Guard being made of Goats-skinnes, after the Arabian fashion ; and in the midit of all stands the Kings Kitchin and his Pantry. Not farre from hence the light Horsemen have their

ahode, who all of them are victualled out of the Kings Store-house, notwithstanding their artire he very bale. Next of all are the Stables, wherein their Horses are maruelous well tended. Without this circuit keepe such as carry the Tents and the Kings Furniture from place to place. Here are also Butchers, Victualers, and such like, All Merchants and Artificers that refort his ther, take up their abode next vito the Tent-carriers: fo that the Kings Pauillion is pitched like a itrong City, for it is so enuironed with the lodgings of the Guard, and with other Tents adiovning; that there is very difficult passage to the King. Round about the said Royall Pauillion, there are certaine appointed to watch and ward all night long, howbeit, they are base and vnarmed people. In like fort there is a watch kept about the Stables, but sometime so negligently . that not onely fome Horles have beene folne, but there have beene found enemies in the Kings owne 10 Pauillion, that came to murther him. The King liueth the greatest part of the yeere in the fields.

ftome of that place, and are adorned with many filter Rings and Bracelets. The men of this

In a large field, there are certaine little Cels made, being so high, that a man may stand

the doores being thut againe, he waxeth more furious then before; then bring they foorth a Bull 30

Lyon, that dayes foort is at an end; but if the Lyon get the victory, then all the armed men,

being ordinarily twelve, leape foorth of their Cels, and invade the Lyon : each one of them has

uing a lauelin with a pike of a cubite and a halfe long. And if these armed men seeme to be too

hard for the Lyon, the King caufeth their number to be diminished : but perceiuing them too

weake, the King with his company from a certaine high place, where he standeth to behold

the sport, kill the Lyon with their Crosse-bowes. And oftentimes it falleth out, that before the

Lyon be flaine, some one of the men dies for it, the residue being fore wounded. The reward of

those that encounter the Lyon is ten Ducats apeece, and a new garment: neither are any ad-

mitted vato this combat but men of redoubted valour, and fuch as come from Mount Zelagi: but 40

both for the lafegard of his Kingdome, and also that he may keepe his Arabian subjects in obedience and fometimes he recreateth himselfe with hunting, and sometime with playing at xiriffe to peep Cheffe. Iknow right well how tedious I have beene in the description of this Citie: but because it is the Metropolitan not onely of Barbarie, but of Africa, I thought good most particuforth which after obtained

larly to decypher enery parcell and member thereof. This Mountaine beginneth from the Plaine of Efais lying ten miles distant from the Cirie Fezand Mare co, c. and of Fez : Weilward it extendeth thirty miles, and is almost ten miles broad. This Mountaine

Al roce the is all courted with wafte and Defirt woods, being otherwife ftill flored with Oliues. In this 20 Mountaine there are of Sheepe-folds and Caffles, to the number of fiftie, and the InhabiprincipallCitants are very wealthy, for it standeth betweene two flourishing Cities, that is to lay, Fez on the East, and Mecnase on the West, The women weaue Woollen cloth, according to the cu-

Mountaine are most valiant, and are much given to pursue and take Lyons, whereof they fend great flore wnto the King of Fee. And the King hunteth the faid Lyons in manner following : Hunring of Lyons vied by which in them : each one of these Cells is shut fast with a little door; and contains within the King of every of them an armed man, who opening the doore prefents himfelfe to the view of the Lvon : then the Lyon feeing the doores open, comes running toward them with great furie, but

Fightbetwixt to combate with the Lyon, who enter a fierce and bloody conflict, wherein if the Bull kill the

Gualilia Town those that take the Lyons first are inhabitants of Mount Zarhon. This Towne when the Scismatike Idris came into this Region, he began to repaire Gualili, and to replant it to with Inhabitants, that within short time it grew very populous : howbeit after his decease it was neglected by his sonne, being wholy addicted (as is before said) vnto the building of Fez. And yet Idris lieth buried in this Towne, whose Sepulchre is vilited with great reverence almost by all the people of Barbary, for he is as highly effected as if he had been

The Towne colled Pietra ReTa_ortha Red Sea. Tame Loons. The Cattle of

some Patriarke, because he was of the linage of Mahumet. Pietra Roffa, is a small Towne built by the Romanes vpon the fide of the foresaid Mountaine, beeing so neere the Forrest, that the Lyons will come daily into the Towne and gather vp bones in the streets, yea, they are so tame and familiar, that neither women nor children are a- 50

Shame is an ancient Castle built at the foot of the said Mountaine neere vnto the high way from Fez to Mecnafe: and it was called by this name, because the Inhabitants are most shame. fully addicted to couetife, like vnto all the people thereabouts. In old time it is reported that a certaine King pailed by, whom the Inhabitants of the Caltle invited to dinner, requesting him to change the ignominious name of the place : which when the King had condescended vinto, they canfed, according to their custome, a company of Rams to be slaine, and certaine bladders and velfels to be filled with milke, to ferue for the Kings breakfast the morrow after. But because the said vessels were very large, they consulted together to put in halfe milke and halfe water, hoping that the King should never perceive it. The day following, albeit the King was not very halfy of his breakfast, yet, his feruants orging him thereunto, he perceived the milke to be 60 halfe water, whereat imiling, he faid Friends, that which nature hath given, no man can take away.

Natioram expel-Las furca licet,

About Agla keepe great ftore of Lyons, but they are by nature to tearefull, that they will flee of a prouerbe, at the voyce of a child : hence commeth the Prouerbe fo rife in Fez, A Lyon of Agia, which they apply vnto fuch a one as maketh great bragges, and is but a meere Dastard. The great Citie of Arzilla called by the Africans Azella, was built by the Romanes vpon A description

the Ocean Sea shoure, about feuentie miles from the Streights of Gibraltar, and an hundred and of the Cincest fortie miles from Fez. It was in times past subject vnto the Prince of Septa or Centa, who was drille. tributary to the Romanes, and was afterward taken by the Gothes, who established the said Prince in his former Gouernment : but the Mahametans wanne it in the yeere of the Hegeira 94. and held the same for two hundred and twenty yeeres, till such time as the English at the periwation of the Gother befreged it with an huge Armie; and albeit the Gother were Enemies to the English, because themselves were Christians, and the English worshippers of Idols, yet 10 the Gother perswaded them to this attempt, hoping by that meanes to draw the Mahumetons out of Europe. The English having good faccette tooke the Citie, and fo wasted it with fire and The taking of out of Europe. The Engage maning good interior companies almost thirtie yeeres would of InhaArtika by the fword, that fearce one Citizen escaped, so that it remayned almost thirtie yeeres would of InhaEnglish.

But afterward when the Mahametan Patriarkes of Cordona were Lords of Mauritania, it Danes which was againe re-edified, and by all meanes augmented, enriched and fortified. The Inhabitants infefted Engwere rich, learned, and valiant. The fields adjacent yeeld Graine and Pulfe of all forts in great lead, Gormont, were rich, learned, and valuant. The helds adjacent yeels Graine and Fune or at fores ingreat abundance, but because the Towne standerhalmost ten miles from the Mountaynes, it fullaylie inthost neth great want of wood; howbeit, they have coles brought them from Haraie, as is aforefaid. immest and In the yeere of the Hegeira \$82. this Citie was fixldenly surprized and taken by the Portugals, comming from In the yeere or the riggers so a time durewas undertain and make the control of the state of the from him, went and dwelt at Arzilla, the very fame time, when Eserif a great Citizen of Fez, English. having flaine Habdulac the last King of the Marin Family, was by the favour of the people ad- A villa taken hauing thane Habelete the last King or the Marin Famiry, was by one ration or the people and by the Fermi named wroth the Feet Kingdom Afterward, one Sair Abrehing pricked forward with ambit by the Fermi now, were about to conquer the Citie of Feet, and to make himselfite King; howbeit, Esseri by the feet into more than the confidence of the confidence tion, well associated Countellor of his, being Coulin vnto Seie, vanquilhed and pur to flight 148 king of the the faid Suic to his great difgrace. Moreouer, while Efferif had fent his faid Counfellor to Temefna, to pacifie the people of that

30 Prouince being about to rebell, Sale returned, and having for one whole yeere belieged new Fez with eight thousand men, at length by Treason of the Townelmen hee easily wanne it, and compelled Efferif with all his Family , to flye vnto the Kingdome of Tunis. The fame time therefore that Saic befieged Fez, the King of Portugall (as is aforefaid) fending a Fleet into Afries, took Arzilla, and then was the King of Fez that now is with his yong Sifter, carryed captine into Portugall, where he remayned seuen yeeres, in which space hee learned the Portugall Language most exactly. At length, with a great summe of money his Father ransomed him out of Portugall, who afterward being advanced to the Kingdome, was by reason of his long continuance in Portugall, called King Mahumet the Portugall. This King afterward attempted very often to be auenged of the Portugals, and to recouer Arzilla. Wherefore suddenly encountring 40 the faid Citie, he beate downe a great part of the wall, and entring the breach, fet all the captiue Moores at libertie. The Christians retyred into the Castle, promising within two dayes to Reade Of arise yeeld vnto the King, But Pedro de Nauarro comming in the mean feafon with a great Fleet, they lib. 5. deresus compelled the King with continual discharging of their Ordnance, not onely to relinquish the gestis, Eman. Citie, but also to depart quite away with his whole Armie; afterward it was so fortified on all fides by the Portugals, that the faid King attempting often the recourse thereof, had alwayes Iohn Lto Grued the repulle. I my felfe feruing the King in the forefaid expedition could find but five hundred the King of Fet of our company flaine. But the warre against Arzilla continued from the yeere of the Hegeira in his warresa-014. to the yeere 921.

The great and ancient Citie of Tangia, called by the Portugals, Tangiara, according to the fond the Citie of pinion of some Historiographers, was founded by one Sedded the some of Had, who (as they Tangiara) fay) was Emperour over the whole World. This man (fay they) determined to build a Citie,

which for besutie might match the Earthly Paradife. Wherefore, hee compafied the fame with wals of Braffe, and the Roofe of the Houses hee couered with Gold and Silver, for the bulding whereof he exacted great Tributes of all the Cities in the World. But the Classical and appround Authours affirme, that it was built by the Romanes vpon the Ocean Sea shoare, at the same time when they subdued the Kingdome of * Granada.

Septa, called by the Latines, Civitas, and by the Portugals, Scupta, was (according to our most Thegreat Ciapprooued Authors) built by the Romanes upon the Streights of Gibraltar, beeing in olde time tie of Signature. the head Citie of all Mauritania; wherefore the Romanes made great account thereof, infomuch 60 that it became very civill, and was throughly inhabited. Afterward it was women by the

Gothes, who appointed a Gouernour there, and it continued in their possession, till the Mahumetans invading Massitania surprized italio. The occasion whereof was one Iulian Earle of The entrance Septa; who being greatly insuried by Roderigo King of the Gother and of Spaine, ioyned with of the Moore: the Infidels, conducted them into Granada, and caufed Roderigo to lofe both his life and his King- into Granada $X \times X \times$ dome.

Marin Family.

* Or Citia.

swelue miles

Without the Citie are divers faire Villages and Granges, especially in that place which for the abundance of Vines is called, The Vineyards : howbeit, the fields are very barren and fruitles. for which cause their Corne is exceeding deere. Both without and within the Citie there is a pleasant and beautifull prospect to the shoare of Granada upon the Streights of Gibraltar, from whence you may differne huing creatures, the diffance being but twelue miles. Howbert this from Septabut famous Citie not many yeeres fince was greatly afflicted by Habdulmumen the King and Patriarke : who having surprized it, razed the buildings , and banished the principall Inhabitants thereof. And not long after it sustayned as great damage by the King of Granada, who (befides the foresaid harmes) carryed the Nobles & chiefe Citizens Captines into Granada, And lastly, in the vecre of Mahumet his Hegeira 818. being taken by a Portugall Armada', all the Citizens an did abandonit. Abu Sahid being then King of Fez, and a man of no valour, neglected the rethe Formagais.
Abu Sahid King couerie thereof: but in the midft of his dancing and disport being advertised that it was lost he of Fex and his would not so much as interrupt his vaine pastime : wherefore by Gods inst judgement, both himselfe and his fixe Sonne were all flaine in one night by his Secretarie, in whom hee reposed fingular truft, because he would have defloured the faid Secretaries Wife. These things came to palle in the veere of the Hegeira 824.

Seem taken by fixe Sunnes flaine all in one night.

Afterward, the Kingdome of Fez being eight yeeres destitute of a King, a Sonne of the murthered King whom he begot of a Christian woman, and who the same night that his Father was flaine fled vnto Tunis, fucceeded in the Government : this was Habdulac, the last King of the Marin Family, who likewife (as is aforefaid) was flaine by the people.

Three core

Morres flaine.

Vpon the Monntaine Quadres, was borne one called by them Hellul: this Hellul atchieued 30 many worthy exploits against the Spaniards; the History whereof is fet downe partly in verse and partly in profe, and is as rife in Africa and Granada, as is the Storie of Orlando in Italie. But at length in the Spanish warre (wherein Ioseph Enesir King and Patriarke of Maroco was vanquished) this Hellul was slaine in a Castle of Catalonia, called by the Moores, The Castle of the Eagle. In the same battell were flaine threescore thousand Moores, so that none of them escaped faue the King and a few of his Nobles. This was done in the yeere of the Herena 600. which was in the yeere of our Lord 1160. From thenceforth the Spaniards had alwayes 200d fuccesse in their warres, so that they recoursed all those Cities which the Moores had before ta-

This ancient Towne built upon the Mediterran Sea shoare, and called by the Spaniards, Velles wife called Vel- de Gumera, contayneth about fixe hundred Families. Heere is also a very stately Temple to bee let de Gumera. feene. Water for drinke is exceeding scarce among them, for they are all constrayned to refort vnto one Pit or Well, being in the Suburbes, neere vnto the Sepulchre of a certayne man, that was in times past very famous among them. Howheit in the night it is dangerous to fetch water from thence, because it is so full of Bloud-suckers or Horse-leeches. They have such abundance of fifh, that one man alone is not able to draw vp a Net; wherefore wholoeuer will affift the Fishermen in that businesse, are rewarded with good store of fishes for their labour : yea, fometimes they will freely bellow fishes vpon such as passe by. They falt the foresaid Sardelle, and fend them to the Mountaines to be fold. In this Towne there is a long ifreet inhabited with Iewes, wherein dwell fundry Vintners that fell excellent Wines. So that in calme euenings the Citizens vie to carry Wine aboord their Barkes in the Sea, and to ipend their time in

> Ferdinando King of Spaine taking a certaine Iland within a mile of the Towne, built a Fort thereon, and so planted it with Ordnance and Souldiers, that neyther their Temples nor themfelues walking in the ilreets were free there from, but were daily flaine. Wherefore the Gouernour of the Towne was confrayned to crave aide from the King of Fez, who fent out a great Armie against the Christians; but they were partly taken, and partly slaine, so that very few escaped backe vnto Fez. The Christians kept this lie almost two yeeres and then it was betrayed by a false trecherous Spaniard (who flue the Gouernour of the Ile, because hee had taken 60 his Wife from him) into the Moores possession, and all the Christians were slaine : not a man of them escared, faue onely the Spanish Traytor, who in regard of his Treason was greatly rewarded, both by the Gouernour of Bedis, and also by the King of Fez. Being at Naples I heard the whole relation of this matter from a certaine man that was prefent at all the former

A Caue or bole that continually casteth up fire. CHAP.I.\$.3.

Exploits, who faid, that they were done about the yeere of our Lord 1 5 20. Exploits, who late, that they were done about a feet to be a Lord 15.20.

In Mount Benyastenal, there is a certain Towne indifferently well people, and furnished A caucorbole with all kind of Artificers, whereunto the fields belonging manuellously abound with Grapes, that people with all kind of Artificers, whereunto the fields belonging manuellously abound with Grapes, that people are the fields belonging manuellously abound with Grapes, that people are the fields belonging manuellously abound with Grapes, that people are the fields belonging to the f Onnes, and Pome-citrons, all which are fold at Fez: heere are likewife great flore of Linnen Ivealithty Weauers, and many Judges and Lawyers. They have also a good Market, whereunto the Inha- fire bitants of the Neighbour Mountaynes refort. Vpon the top of this Mountayne there is a certaine Caue or hole that perpetually caffeth vp fire. Some wondring greatly at the matter, have caft in wood, which was fuddenly confumed to ashes : I my felfe neuer faw the l.ke Miracle in any other place, fo that a great many thinke it to be hel-mouth.

In Mount Beni Mescalda are many Doctors of the Mahametan Law, and divers inferiour Students: who put the Inhabitants to great damage. Themselves for footh, will drinke wine, and yet they perfined the people that it is valuefull for them to drinke it, albeit fome doe give them little credit. The Inhabitants of this Mountayne pay in respect of others no great Tribute, and that perhaps, because they maintagne the foresaid Doctors and Students.

In my time the King of Spaine lent a great Armie against Melela in Garet : before the arrivall whereof, the Townesmen sent vnto the King of Fez for ayde, who making warre as then against the people of Temesna, could send but small sorces to succour them. Which the Townesmen being aduertiled of, and fearing least their small forces would proue too weake for the Spaminds great Armada, they tooke all the bagge and baggage that they could carrie, and fled vnto the Mountaynes of Buthna. Howbert, the Captaine of the Fessan Souldiers, both to bee reven-20 ged vpon the Townesmens cowardize, and also to leave nothing for the Spaniards to enjoy, burnt downe all the Houses, Temples, and Buildings. This was done in the yeare of the He-

geira 896. which was in the yeere of our Lord 1487. But the Spaniards, for all they found the Citie lo walted, would not depart thereupon, but first built a strong Castle, and afterward by Melldaenioied Little in waiten, would not a form wals, and by that meanes have kept possession thereof even by the Spinitill this day. They tooke also Chasasa.

The Prouince of Garet is divided into three parts: the first whereof contayneth the Cities The extreme and Townes, the fecond the forefaid Mountaynes, (the Inhabitants whereof are called Bottoia) parcoi the and townes, the recondend the Defarts, which beginning Northward at the Mediterran Sea, ret. and extending South to the Defart of Chanz, are bounded Westward with the foresaid Mountaynes, and Eastward with the River of Muluis. The length of these Desarts is fixtie miles, 30 and the breadth thirtie. They are empleasant and dry, having no water but that of the River

Muluia, There are many kinds of beafts in this Defart, fuch as are in the Lybian Defart next vinto Numidia. In Summer time many Arabians take vp their abode neere vinto the River Mulsite; and so doe another kind of sierce people called Batalifa, who possesse great abundance of Horfes, Camels, and other Cattell, and maintayne continuall warre against the Arabians that

The Towne of Dubdu was in possession of one Mahumet who beautified it exceedingly with flore of faire houses and buildings: likewise, he greatly all ered and reformed the gouernment of this Towne; and shewed such extraordinary courteste vnto all Strangers, that hee grew very

Moreover, the faid Mahumet confulted how to get Tezza from the King of Fez, and offered The great Moreover, the laid Mahumet consulted how to get Tezza from the King or Fez, and onered courtefied oreat matters to the performance of his intent: and that he might the califier attayne his pur- Mahumet topole, he determined to goe to the Market of Tezza in a simple habite, and to to make an assault ward strangers vpon the Captaine of the Towne: for he hoped that a great part of the Townesmen, whom heeknew to bee his friends, would affilt him in that enterprize. Howbeit this practice was at length discovered vnto the King of Fez (which King was called Saich, and was the first of the Family of Quattas, and Father vnto the King that * now reigneth) who prefently affembled * 1526, an huge Arme, and marched of purpose against Dubdu, vtterly to destroy it: and so comming vnto the foot of the Mountayne hee there encamped. The people of the Mountayne having gathered an Armie of fixe thousand men, hid themselves craftily behind the Rockes, suffering

50 their Enemies to ascend by certayne difficult and strait passages, from whence they were sure they could hardly escape, and so at length they brake forth on the sodaine and encountred their faid Enemies being weary of afcending; and because the way was very troublesome and narrow, the King of Fez his Souldiers could not endure their affaults, but beeing conftrayned to give backe, were moe then a thouland of them throwne downe head-long and flaine. In this skirmish were slaine in all to the number of three thousand Fessas Souldiers : and yet the King not being difinayed with fo great an ouer shrow, prepared forth-with a band of fine hundred Croffebowes, and three hundred Harquebuziers , and determined to make a new affault upon the 60 Towne. But Mahumet feeing that he could no longer withfland the King, resolued to go himselfe victo him, that he might, if it were possible, obtains peace, & to release his Country from the fury c) the Enemy, Wherefore putting on the habit of an Ambaffador, he went & delivered a Letter with his own hand vnto the King. Which the King hauing perufed, asked him what he thought

concerning the Gouvener of Dubdus Mary I think (quoth Mahumet) he is not well in his wits, in XXXX 2

that he goeth about to refift your Maieffie. Then faid the King, if I had conquered him, (as I hope to do within thele few daies) I would cause him to be dismembred and torne in peeces. But what if he should come hither (faith Mahamer) to submit himselfe, and to acknowledge his offence: might it then please the King to admit him into fauour? Then the King answered : I sweare vnto thee by this my head, that if he will come and acknowledge his fault in manner as thou hast faid, I will not onely receive him into favour, but will espoule my daughters vnto his fonnes, and will bestow most ample and Princely dowries vpon them. But I am sure, being diftracted of his wits (as thou haft faid) that he will by no meanes come and fubmit himfelfe. Then faid Mahamet: he would foone come (I affure you) if it pleafed the King to proteft this for a certaintie vnto the Nobles. I thinke (faid the King) it hath beene fufficiently protefled IO and affirmed, fithence I have bound it with a folemne oath in the prefence of these foure; for here fland my chiefe Secretary, the Generall of my Forces, my Father in-law, and the chiefe Iudee and Patriarke of Fez; the testimony of which foure may well satisfie you. Whereupon Maburnet humbly falling at the Kingsfeete : loe, heere the man (quoth he) that fubmiffely acknowledgeth his fault, and craneth the King gracious pardon. With that the King himselfe lifted him from the ground, embraced him, and faluted him with friendly speeches. Then caused he both his daughters to be called, which he bestowed vpon Mahamets founcs : all which being done, he removued his armie from that Mountaine, and returned conquerour vnto Fez. This was done in the yeere of the Hegeira 904, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1495. And in the veere of the Hegeina 921. I my felte was at the City of Dubdu, where I was most curteously entertained by the forefaid Mahumet.

Tezza was built by the Africans, fine miles from Mount Aslas, being distant from Fez fiftie, Tegs or Teggs from the Oceanan hundred and thirty, and from the Mediterran Sea feuen miles, and standing in the way from Garet to Chafafan. It contained in times past about five thousand families: the buildings of this Towneare not very stately, except Noblemens Palaces, Colledges, and Temples , which are somewhat beautifull. Out of Atlas springeth a little River which runneth chrough the chiefe Temple of this Citie ; and fometimes it falleth out, that certaine people bordering youn the Citie: vpon some quarrel with the Citizens will cut off this River from the Citie, and turne the course thereof some other way, which breedeth great inconveniences vnto the Citizens : for then they can neither build houses, nor get any water to drinke, but onely 30 corrupt water which they take out of certaine Ciffernes, for which cause they are often conftrained to make a league with those borderers. This Citie both for wealth, civilitie, and abun-Huge Temple. dance of people, is the third Citie of all the Kingdome, and hath a greater Temple then that of Fez : heere are likewise three Colledges, with divers Bath-stones , and a great number of Hospitals, Each trade and occupation hath a feuerall place in this Citie, like as they have in Fez: the Inhabitants are of a more valiant and liberall disposition, then they of Fez : here are also great

tie walls are very large Plaines, and many pleasant streames, that serue to water their Gardens which are replenished with all kind of fruits : here are abundance of Vines also yeelding very fweet Grapes, whereof the Iewes (being fine hundreth Families) make excellent wine, fuch as 40 I thinke all Africa scarce affoorleth better. Imy felle was acquainted in this Citie with a certaine aged fire, whom the Townesmen adored as if he had beene a god : he was merueilouer ich both in Fruits, Grounds, and other Commodities, which the people bestowed vpon him in great abundance. The Citizens of Fez vied to come fiftie miles (for to farre is Fez diffant) onely to vilite the faid old man. My felfe conceived some great opinion of this aged fire : but after I had feene him, I could find no fuch fuperexcellency in him, faue onely that he deluded the fond people with strange deuises. The Mountaine of Beni Iessenten is subject vnto the Gouernour of Dubdu, being inhabited

ftore of learned and rich men; and the fields adjacent are exceeding fruitfull. Without the Ci-

Mount Beri Ieffeten.

with most base and beggerly people. Their houses are made of Sea-rushes, and so likewise are their thoses made of fuch rufhes when they trauell any Iourney, where by a man may conie- 50 Cture the miserable estate of this people. The Mountaine yeedeth nought but panicke, whereof they make bread and other victuals: but at the foot thereof are certaine Gardens replenished with Grapes, Dates, and Peaches. Their Peaches they cut into foure quarters, and casting away the Nuts or Stones, they dry them in the Sunne, and keepe them an whole yeere, which they elleeme for great dainties. Vpon this Mountaine are Iron-mines : and they frame their Iron in manner of horse-shooes, which serueth them sometimes in stead of money, whereof they haue great want in this Mountainervnleffe the Smithes by their Arte keepe this money in store: who, besides horse-shooes, make certaine daggers with blunt points. Their women weare Iron-rings upon their fingers and eares for a great brauery, but they are more basely apparelled then the men, and remaine continually in the woods, both to keepe Goats, and to gather tewell. They have neither civilitie nor learning, but live after a brutish manner without all discretion 60

This woodie Mountaine is full of Pine-trees and Fountaines. Their houses are not made of flone, but of Sea-rushes, so that they may easily be remooued from place to place, which is very commodious to the Inhabitants, for every firing they leave the Mountaine and defeend into the Vallies from whence about the end of May they are expelled by the Arabins, which inhabite the Defarts: who by reason of their abundance of Goats and other Cattell, for faking the hid Defarts, feeke vnto the Fountaines and month places; but in winter, because their Camels the Detarts, tesse vine the rolling and the woods, and warme Regions. In this Mountaine Lyons Lec-Tyons Lee are great fore of Lyons, Leopards, and Apes. And from the faid Mountaine runneth a certaine parts, and ftreame of water with fuch violence, that I have seene a stone of an hundred pound weight car- Apes. ried with the force thereof : and here Subu taketh his beginning, which is the greatest River of

an araumania.

10 The Inhabitants of Mount Beni Lafga are rich, and civill people: it flandeth so neere the Mount Beni Mountaine Seleige, that they are onely reparated with the forefaul River: and to the end they large may easilier passe from one Mountaine to another, they have made a certaine strange bridge in A wenderfull the midft, and that in manner following : on either fide fland certaine Posts, through the bialge, which runneth a rope vpon a truckle or pulley, vnto which rope is faftened a great basket, that will containe ten persons, and that in such fort, that so often as they will passe ouer to the opposite Mountaine, they enter into the basket, and drawing the rope whereon it hangeth, they are easily carried aloft in the aire ouer the River by the helpe of the foresaid pulleyes, but sometimes with great hazard of their lines, especially if the basket or the rope be worne in any places yea, and the distance of place is often an occasion of great terrour. In this Mountaine there is 20 great flore of cattell, but little wood. It abounderh likewife with most excellent fine wooll, whereof their women make cloth comparable vnto filke, which is fold at Foz for a great price.

There is no memorable thing in all Sofres Towne, faue onely a certaine Temple, through the Here also is great plenty of oyle. midst whereof runneth a large River; and at the doores standeth a Fountaine of most pure

In the Forrests about this Towne, as also about Mezdaga, are marneilous store of Lyons, being Tame Lyons, not very hurtfull, for any man may drive them away with a little flicke.

At the same time while the Africans were as yet Idolaters, they had a Temple standing The Towne neere vato Ham Liftuan, whither at certaine times of the yeere, reforted in the night great mult liftuan titudes of people both men and women: where having ended their facrifices, they yied to put out their lights, and every man to commit adultery with that woman which he first touched. Sacrimas facts. But the women which were prefent at this abominable fport, were forbidden to lie with any

man for a yeere after : and the children begotten in the faid adultery, were kept and brought vp

by the Priest of the Temple, as being dedicated to facred vies. Vpon Mount Centopozzi are great flore of most ancient buildings, neere vnto the which there Mount Cento. is a hole or drie pit of fo great a depth, that the bottome thereof can in no wife be feene. Into this President pit some mad fellowes will have themtelues let downe by ropes, carrying a Candle or Torch in their hands: and beneath, they fay, it is divided into many roomes, and as it were, chambers;

and last of all, they come to a most large place hewen out of the Rocke with Instruments, and 40 compaffed about as it were with a wall, in which wall are fouredoores, which lead to other more narrow places, where, they say, that Fountaines of Springing water are. And sometimes it falleth out that some miserably end their lives here : for it their lights chance to be blowen out with any fudden blaft of wind, they can by no meanes find the place where the rope hangeth, but are there constrained to die for extreame famine. It was told me by a certaine Nobleman of Fez, that there were ten persons, who being desirous to see the wonders of this pit, and being prepared for the same purpose, went first three of them downe, who when they were come to the foresaid foure doors, two of them went one way, & the third went alone another way. And being thus divided, after they had proceeded almost a quarter of a mile, there came great swarmes, of Bats flying about their lights, infomuch that one light was put out ; at length; being come to the fpringing fountaines, they found there certaine white bones of men, and flue or fixe Candles, whereof some were new, and others were old and worne with long lying there : but ha-

uing found nothing but water in the faid Fountaines, they returned backe agains the fame way that they came : and they had scarce gone halfe way, but their owne light also was blowen out with a sudden blast. Afterward seeking earnestly vp and downe, and being weary of many falles that they caught among the Rockes, they found that there was no hope of returne: wherefore in this desperate case committing themselves with teares into the hands of God, they vowed, if they once escaped this danger, neuer to aduenture any more. They that stood at the Caues mouth being ignorant of their companions milhap, expected their returne, and hauing staid over long, at length they let downe themselves by the rope, and began with lights to fecke their fellowes, making a great noise, and at length found them heavy and sad. But the

third, who was wandring up and downe those darke places, they could by no meanes finde, wherefore leaving him, they returned foorth of the Cauc. And he that was left behind heard at length a noyfe like the barking of little dogges, and shaping his course toward them, he found immediatly foure strange, and (as it should seeme) new-borne beasts, after which followed the

XXXX 3

* The beaft called Dababa

* Damme, being not much valike to a shee-wolfe, saving that she was bigger: wherefore hee beoan exceedingly to feare; howbeit, there was no danger, for being about to flee, the beaft came towards him, tawning gently vpon him with her taile. And fo at length, after long feeking. he found the holes mouth with great joy, and escaped the danger : for within a while he faid that he began to fee fome glimmering of light, as they doe which have long been in the darke. But after a certaine time this Caue was filled with water vp to the top.

The Mounraine of Rauens called Gunaigell Gherben.

Cunaisel Gherben, standeth very neere the former, and is full of Woods and Lions. Here is no Citie, nor any other place of habitation, perhaps by reason of the extreme coldnesse of the place. From this Mountaine runneth a certaine little River: and here is a Rocke of an exceeding height, whereupon keepe infinite Iwarmes of Crowes and Rauens, which some thinke to haue 10 been the occasion of the name of this Mountaine. Sometime the terrible Northerly winds bring fuch abundance of Snow vpon this Mountaine, that fuch as travell from Numidia towards Fex. loofe their lives thereby, as hath been fignified in the first Booke. Every Summer, the Arabians next inhabiting, being called Beni Effen, viually refort vnto this Mountaine, in regard of the coole water and pleasant shadowes, notwithstanding they know it to bee haunted with great ftore of Lions and Leopards.

There lyeth a way neere the towne of Vmen Giunaibe, which a man may not passe without dancing and leaping, vnleffe he will fall into an Ague: the certainty whereof I have heard many

Dancing way. Of Mount Ziz.

Dome@icall and tame Serpents. The like is re-

The Inhabitants are a most lewde and villanous generation, being wholly addicted to thest 20 and robberie. They are at continuall diffention with the Arabians, and practife daily mischiefes and inconveniences against them, and to the end they may provoke them to greater furie, they will fometimes throw their Camels downe headlong from the top of some high Mountaine. In these Mountaines there happeneth a certain strange and incredible matter, for there are Serpents fo familiar with men, that at dinner-time they wil come like Dogs and Cats, and gather up the crums under the Table, neither will they hurt any body, valeffe they bee offered fome injurie.

d. IIII.

The most remarkable things of IOHRLEO, in his fourth Booke of the Historie of Africa.

A description dome of Telen His Kingdome beginneth Westward from the Rivers of Zha and Muluia: East. ward it bordereth vpon the great River, Southward vpon the Defart of Numidia. and Northward voon the Mediterran Sea. This Region was called by the Romans, Cefaria, and was by them inhibited : howbeit, after the Romans were expel-

led, it was fully possessed by the ancient Governours thereof, called Bien Habdulouad, and being a generation of the Family of M grana. And it remained vnto them and their fucceffors three hundred yeeres, vntill fuch time as a certaine mighty man, called Ghampa- 40 zen, the fonne of Zeijen, tooke possession thereof. His posteritie changing at length their ancient name, were called Bem Zegen, that is, the Sons of Zegen : and they enjoyed this Kingdome for the space almost of three hundred and eighty yeares. At length the Kings of Fez of the Marin Family greatly molested them, so that those ten Kings which succeeded Zeijen were some of them vnfortunate in battell, some slaine, some taken Captine, and others expelled their Kingdome and chafed to the next Mountaines. Neither were they free from vexation of the Kings of Tunis : howbeit, the Kingdome of Telensin remained still to this Familie, and they continued in peace for almost an hundred and twenty yeares, being endamaged by no ferren power : fauing that one Abu Feris King of Tunis, and his sonne Humen, made them to pay tribute for certaine yeares vnto Tuns, till the decease of the faid Hutmen. This Kingdome itretcheth in length co from East to West three hundred and eighty miles; but in breadth from North to South, that is, from the Mediterran lea, to the Defarts of Numidia not about five and twenty miles: which is the occasion that it is so often oppressed by the Arabians inhabiting the Numidian Defarts. The Kings of Telenfin have alwaies enneuoured by great gifts to gaine the good will and friendship of the Numidians, but they could never fatishe their infatiable couetice. A man shall feldome travell fafely through this Kingdome : howbeit, here are great flore of Merchants, perhaps either because it adjoyneth to Namidia, or else for that the way to the land of Negros lieth through it. It hath two most famous and frequented Hauen-townes, the one called " Horam, and the other " Mar la Eleabir, whither vie to refort great flore of Genoue les, and Venetians. But afterward both these Townes were taken by Don Ferdinando the Catholike King to the great inconvenience of 60 all this Kingdome: for which cause the King then reigning, called Abuchemmen, was expelled his Kingdome and put to flight by his owne fubicets: afterward Abuzeijen was reflered to the Kingdome, who had for certaine yeares been imprisoned by his Nephew Abuchemmen : howbeit, he enjoyed the Kingdome but a very fhort space : for he was at length miserably staine by

Numidions conetife.

Or Gree Or Merfal-

CHAP.I.S.3. Abuchemmeu restored to bis Kingdome, by Charles the fifth. Gti

Barbaroffathe Turke, who conquered the Kingdome of Tremizen by force of warre. Whereof Abuchemmen, that was expelled by his owne fubicats, having intelligence, fent to crave aide of 400 the Emperour Charles the hith, whereby he hoped to recouer his Kingdome. Which request be- King or the Emperour Charles the hith, whereby he noped to recoure rise a myodine. Which requested in granted, he leuied a puissant Armie, and made warre against B arbaroffa, and having drunen him his Kingdome. inggrane out, he recovered his Kingdome, and feuerely punished them that had conspired his banishment. by the Empe-And then he gaue the Spanish fouldiers their pay, sent the Captaines home with great rewards, ror Caula and allowed Charles the Emperour a large yearely reuenue fo long as he lived. After his decease the fifth, fucceeded his brother Habdulla, who neglecting the league made before betweene the Emperor and his brother, and relying upon Solyman the great Turke, refused to pay any more tribute unto

10 the Emperour Charles, and hath kept possession of the Kingdome, till this present. The greater 1 526. part of this Region is untilled, drie, and barren, especially towards the South. Howbert, the sea coast is somewhat more sertill. The territorie adiacent to the Citie of Telensin is full of woods, fauing that the Westerne part towards the Sea is mountainous. Likewise, the Regions of Tenez. and Alger containe Mountaines abounding with all kind of commodities. In this part are but few Cities and Castles; howbeit, it is a most fruitfull and bleffed place as we will hereafter de-

This barren,dry, and vntilled Defart, being vtterly destitute of Water and Wood, is situate The Defart of This barren, dry, and vittiled Delait, being trein, and extendeth in length fourescore, Angel, vion the Westerne frontier of the Kingdome of Telensin, and extendeth in length fourescore, Great store of

and in breadth almost liftie miles. Here are great store of Roes, Deere, and Ostriches. This ancient Towne built by the Romans, while they were Lords of Africa, standeth vpon a The Citical 20 large Plaine, almost two miles from a certaine Mountaine, and about tweline miles from the Me- led Ned Rama.

diterran Sea, and neere vnto it runneth a little River. The Historiographers of those times report, that this Towne was in all respects built after the fashion of Rome, whereupon they say, it borrowed the name : for Ned in the Arabian tongue fignifieth , like. The Wall of this Towne is as yet to be seene: but all the ancient buildings of the Romans are so destroyed, that now there fearcely remaine any ruines thereof. It began in fome places to be repaired and reedified anew, but nothing comparable to the former buildings. The fields adjacent are exceeding fruitfull, and containe many Gardens replenished with such trees as beare Carobs (being a fruite like vnto Caffia Fiftula) which in the Suburbs they vie for food. This Towne is indifferently well inhabited, especially with Weauers, who make great store of Cotton-cloth, and are free from all tri-

Tlenfin, is a great Citie, and the Royall seate of the King; and then it was an honou- The great Cia Tlenfin, is a great Citie, and the Adyan leate of the Angle and the Art and ticoTrelenfin, rable and well-gouerned Citie: howbeit, Iofeph King of Fee continually molefted it, and otherwise calwith an huge Armie belieged it for feuen yeares together. This lofeth having built a Fore upon led Trempes. the East fide of the Towne, put the besieged Citizens to such distresse, that they could no longer endure the extreme famine : wherefore with one accord they all went vnto their King, befeeching him to haue compassion upon their want. The King, to make them acquainted with his daintie fare, which he had to supper, shewed them a dish of sodden Horse-flesh and Barly. And then they well perceived, how little the Kings effate was better then the effate of the meanest Citizen of them all. Soone after the King having procured an aftembly, perswaded his people that it was much more honourable to die in battell for the defence of their Countrie, then to live so miserable a life. Which words of the King so inflamed all their minds to the battell, that the day following they refolued to encounter the enemie, and valiantly to fight it out. But it fell out farre better for them then they expected; for the same night King Joseph was shaine by

one of his owne people : which newes being brought vnto the Citizens, with greater courage they marched all out of the Towne, eafily vanquishing and killing the confused multistude of their enemies; after which vnexpected victorie, they found victuals sufficient in the enemies Campe to relieue their long and tedious famine. About fortie yeares after, the fourth King of Fez of the Marin Familie, called Abulbesen, built a Towne within two miles Westward of the Citie of Telensin. Then hee besieged Telensin for thirty moneths together, making daily and fierce affaults against it, and every night erecting some new Fort, so that at length the Fezzan 50 forces next vnto Telensin eatily entred the Citie, and having conquered it, carried home the King thereof Captine vnto Fez, where he was by the King of Fez beheaded, and his carkafe was caft forth among the filth of the Citie: and this was the second and the greater damage that Te-

lenin fuffained. After the decay of the Marin Familie Telenin began in many places to bee re-paired, and replenished with new inhabitants. information because the state of t paired, and replenished with new inhabitants, infomuch that it increased to twelve thousand Families. Here each Trade and Occupation hath a peculiar place, after the manner of Fez. (auing that the buildings of Fez are somewhat more stately. Here are also many, and beautifull Temples, hauing their Mahumetan Priests and Preachers. Likewise here are fine Colledges most Temples and Temptuously built, some by the King of Telensin, and some by the King of Fez. Here also are Colledges.

ftore of goodly Bathes and Hot-houles, albeit they have not such plentie of water as is at Fex. Also here are very many Innes built after the manner of Africa: vnto two of which Innes the Merchants of Genoa and Venice doe vitally refort.

Agreat part of this Citie is inhabited with Iewes, who were in times past all of them excee-

but in the yeare of the Hegeira 923, vpon the death of King Abuhabdilla, they were all fo robbed

and hoyled, that they are now brought almost vnto beggerie. Moreouer, in this Citie there

are many Conduits, the Fountaines whereof are not farre from the Citie walles, so that they

812 *Or Turbant, ding rich : vpon their heads they weare a * Dulipan, to diftinguish them from other Citizens :

may easily be stopped by any forren Enemie. The Citie wall is very high and impregnable. having fine great Gates upon it, at everie one of which there is placed a guard of Souldiers, and certaine Receivers of the Kings Custome. On the South-lide of the Citie standeth the Kings Palace, enuironed with most high Walls, and containing many other Palaces within it, which are none of them deflitute of their Fountaines and pleasant Gardens: This Royall Palace hath two Gates, one leading into the Fields, and the other into the Citie, and at this Gate flandeth Io the Captaine of the Guard. The Territorie of Telensin containeth most pleasant habitations, whither the Citizens in Summer-time vie to retire themselues: for besides the beautifull Pa-Pleasant place, flures and cleare Fountaines, there is such abundance of all kind of fruits to delight both the eves and taile, that to my remembrance I neuer faw a more pleafant place; their Figges they yfe to drie in the Sunne, and to keepe vntill Winter: and as for Almonds, Peaches, Melons, and Pome-citrons, they grow here in great plentie. Three miles Eastward of this Citie are diners Mills upon the River of Seffif; and some other there are also not far from the Citie upon the Mountaine of Elealha. The South part of the Citie is inhabited by Ienes, Lawyers, and Notaries: here are also very many Students, and Professor of divers Arts, which have maintenance allowed them out of the five forenamed Colledges. The Citizens are of foure forts, to wit, some 20 Artificers, some Merchants, other Schollers and Doctors, and all the refidue Souldiers. The Merchants are men most just, trustie, liberall, and most zealous of the common good, who for the most part exercise traffique with the Negros. The Artificers line a secure, quiet, and merrie life. The Kings Souldiers being all of a comely personage, and of great valour, receive verie large and liberall pay, for they are monthly allowed three pieces of the Gold-coyne of Telenfin, which are worth three Italian Duckats, and one fecond part. All Students before they attaine to the degree of a Doctor, live a bare and miferable life : but having attained thereunto, they are made either Professor, or Notaries, or Priefts. The Citizens and Merchants of this Citie

are soneate & curious in their apparel, that somtimes they excel the Citizens of Fez in brauerie-The cultomes AWonder it is to fee how fixedly and magnificently the King of Telensin behaueth himselfler and nites company for no man may feehim, nor be admitted to parle with him, but onely the principall Nubles of his Court, each one of whom are affigned to beare Offices according to their place and dignitie. In this Court are fundry Offices and dignities, and the Kings Lieutenant being principall Officer, allotteth vnto each one fuch places of dignitie, as may bee correspondent to their honour : and this Lieutenant leuieth the Kings Armies, and sometime conducteth them against the Enemie. The second, Officer is the Kings chiefe Secretarie, who writeth and recordeth all things pertaiming to the King. The third, is the High Treasurer, who is bound by his Office to receive Tributes and Cultomes, The fourth, is the Kings Diffensator or Almoner, who bestoweth such liberalitie as the King vouchsafeth. The fifth, is the Captaine of the Kings Guard, who so often as any Nobles are admitted to the Kings presence, conducteth the guarde vnto the Palace Gate. Then are there other meaner Officers, as namely, the Mafter of the Kings Stable, the Oner-feer of his Saddles and Stirrops, and his Chiefe Chamberlaine, who giveth attendance onely at fuch times as any Courtiers are admitted vnto the Kings audience. For atother times the Kings Wines. with certaine Christian Captiues, and Eunuches doe performe that dutie. The King sometimes in sumptuous and costly apparell rideth vpon a stately Steed richly trapped and farnished. In riding hee observeth not much pompe nor many ceremonies; neither indeed doth hee carrie so great a traine; for you shall scarcely see a thousand Horsemen in his company, except perhaps in time of Warre, when as the Arabians and other people give attendance. His dominions are but slenderly inhabited : howbeit, because the way from Europe to Athiopia lieth through his Kingdome, he reapeth much benefit by the wares that passe by, especially since the time that Orer was furprifed by the Christians.

A paffage from Eurere to £thiopia through the Kingdome of Tremizen. Hubbed.

Batha, A famous

Hubbed containeth store of Inhabitants, who are for the most part Dyers of Cloath. In this Towne was buried one Sidi Bu Median, being reputed a man of fingular holineffe, whom they adore like a God ascending up to his Monument by certaine steps. Here is likewise a stately Colledge, and a faire Hospitall to entertaine strangers in ; both which were built by a King of Fez. of the Marm Family, as I find recorded upon a certaine Marble stone.

The Plaine of Baha was veterly destitute of Inhabitants, till a certaine Hermite with his followers, whom they reuerenced as a man of fingular holinesse, repaired thither. This Hermite in (hort time grew fo rich in Oxen, Horfes, and other Cattell, that no man almost throughout the whole Region was comparable vnto him. Neither he nor his followers pay any tribute at all, 60 when as notwithstanding (as I heard of his Disciples) he reapeth yearely eight thousand bushels of Corne, and at this time possesseth five hundred Horses, tenne thousand small Cattell, and two thousand Oxen; and besides all the former hath yearely sent vnto him from divers parts of the world foure or fine thousand Duckats : so greatly hath the fame of his falle holines

foread ouer all Africa and Afra. Disciples he hath to the number of fine hundred, whom hee maintaineth at his owne cost : neither imployeth he them to ought elfe, but daily to read a few prayers: for which cause many refort vnto him, desiring to be of the number of his Disciples, Prayers to tribate infiructed in certaine Ceremonies, he lendeth them thither from whence whom after me man about an hundreth Tents pitched, whereof fome are for strangers. others for Shepheards, and the refidue for his owne Family. This holy Heremite hath foure wives, and a great many women-flaves, wearing most sumptuous apparell. His sonnes likewise have their wives and Families : infomuch that the whole Familie of this Heremite and of his formes containeth five hundred perfons. He is greatly honoured by all the Arabians, and by the

To King of Telenfin himfelfe. My felfe was once delirous to trie what manner of man this Heremite was ; and for three dayes I was entertained by him in the most secret places of his habitation, was: and to the things, he flowed me ocrain Bookes intreating of Art-Magique, and of Alchymie: and hee endenoured by all meanes to perfuvade me, that Magique was a most true. and yndoubted Arte, whereby I perceived that himselfe was a Magician, albeit he neuer vied nor regarded the Arte, except it were in inuocating of God by certaine names.

Oran containing about fixe thousand Families, and built many yeeres agoe by the Africans The Towne of vpon the Mediterran Sea shoare, is distant from Telensin an hundreth and fortie miles. Heere Oran.

may you fee great store of stately buildings, as namely of Temples, Colledges, Hospitals, Bath-floues, and Innes. The Towne is compaffed with most high and impregnable walles, 20 having on the one fide a faire plaine, and on the other fide divers Mountaines. The greatest part of the Inhabitants were Weauers, and the refidue lived of their yeerely Revenues. The Territorie of this Towne yeeldeth but small store of Corne, so that the Townelmen make all their bread of Barley: howbeit, they are most courteous and friendly to all strangers. This Towne was greatly frequented with Merchants of Catalonia, and of Genoa: and one threet thereof is at this prefent called, the freete of the Genousfes. They were at perpetuall enmittee with the King of Telephon, neither would they euer accept of any Gouernour, but one which received the Kings Tribute. But the Townsmen chose one of their chiefe Burgo-mafters to judge of Cases Civil and Criminall. The Merchants of the Towne, maintained at their owne costs, certaine Foists and Brigandines of warre, which committed many Piracies vpon the coast of Catalonia, Genila, 30 Maiorica, and Minorica, infomuch, that Oran was full of Christian Captines. Afterward, Don Ferdinando King of Spaine encountring Oran with a great Armada, determined to release the

faid Christians out of Captinitie : but he had very hard successe. Howbeit, within a few moneths after being ayded by the Bifcaines and the Cardinall of Spaine, he tooke Oran. For the Oran taken by Moores issuing foorth with great furie vpon the Christians armie, left the Towne vtterly de- the Spaniarie ftitute of Souldiers, which the Spaniards perceiting, began to affayle the Towne on the other fide ; where being refifted by none but by women, they had easte entrance. Whereupon the Moores seeing the Christians Banners advanced vpon their wals, they returned backe into the Towne, and were there put to so great a slaughter, that few of them escaped. Thus was Oran taken by the Spaniards in the yeere of Mahumet his Hegeira 916.

Merfalcabir in the Morres language fignifieth, a great or large Hauen; for I thinke there is not The Towne of the like Hauen to be found in the whole world beides: fo that here infinite numbers of Ships Merfalcabir, and Gallies may finde most fafe harbour in any tempestuous weather. Hither the Venetians ships Merfeltatir made often refort, when they perceived any tempelt to approach : and from hence they would forprised by cause all their wares to be transported to Oran in other vessels. This Towne also was at length the Spaniards. taken by the Spaniards as well as Oran.

Breich flandeth many miles diffant from Mufluganin. It containeth great flore of Inhabi- Breich. tants, which are many of them Weauers. The people of this Towne vie to paint a blacke crosse vpon their cheeke, and two other blacke croffes vpon the Palmes of their hands: and the like Blacke roffes cultome is observed by all the Inhabitants of the Mountaines of Alger, and Bugia: the occa-50 fion whereof is thought to be this, namely, that the Gothes when they first began to invade

thefe Regions, released all those from paying of Tribute(as our African Historiographers affirme) that would imbrace the Christian Religion. But so often as any Tribute was demaunded, every man to eschew the payment thereof, would not sticke to professe himselfe a Christian : wherefore it was then determined, that fisch as were Christians indeed, should be diftinguished from others by the foresaid croffes. At length the Gother being expelled, they all revolted vnto the Mahnmetan Religion; howbeit, this cultome of painting croffes remained kill among them neither doe they know the reason thereof. Likewise the meaner sort of people in Mauritania vie to make fuch croffes vpon their faces, as we fee vied by some people of Europe.

Serfell, built by the Romanes voon the Mediterran Sea, was afterward taken by the Gothes; The Towne of 60 and lattly by the Mahametans. The wall of this Towne is exceeding high, strong, and stately serfell. built , and containeth about eight miles in circuit. In that part of the Towne next vnto the Sevely Tam-Mediterran Sea, standeth a most beautifull and magnificent Tempie built by the Romanes, the inward part whereof confifteth of Marble.

Gezeir, in the Moores language fignifieth an Hand, which name is thought to have beene gi- wite called Al-

Grizer, other-

uen voto this Citie, because it lyeth neere voto the Iles of Maiorica, Minorica, and Ieuiza. howheit, the Spaniards call it Alger. It was founded by the Africans of the Family of Melgana, wherefore in old time it was called by the name of Melgana. It is a large Towne. containing Families to the number of foure thouland, and is enuironed with most stately and impregnable walles. The buildings thereof are very Artificiall and fumptuous : and euery trade and occupation hath heere a fenerall place. Innes, Bath-stones, and Temples heere are very beautifull; but the stateliest Temple of all standeth vpon the Sea-shoare. Next vnto the Sea there is a most pleasant walke upon that part of the Towne wall, which the waves of the Sea beat upon. In the Suburbs are many Gardens replenished with all kind of Fruits. On the East fide of the Towne runneth a certaine River having many mills thereupon : and out of this River 10 they draw water fit for drinke, and for the feruices of the Kitchin. It hath most beautifull Plaines adioyning upon it, and especially one called Metteggia, which extendeth forty fine miles in length, and almost thirty miles in breadth, and aboundeth mightily with all kinds of Graine. This Towne for many yeeres was subject vnto the Kingdome of Telensin: but hearing that Bugie was also gouerned by a King, and being neerer thereunto, they submitted themselves vnto the King of Bugia. For they law that the King of Telensin could not sufficiently defend them against their enemies, and also that the King of Bugia might doe them great damage, wherefore they offered vnto him a yeerly Tribute of their own accord, and yet remained almost free from all exaction. But certaine yeeres after, the inhabitants of this Citie building for themselves Alger become Gallies, began to play the Pirats, and greatly to moleft the foresaid Ilands. Whereupon King 20 Tributary to Ferdinando prouided a mighty Armada, hoping thereby to become Lord of the Citie. Likewile to the King of ypon a certaine high Rocke itanding opposite against the Towne, he caused a strong Fort to be built, and that within Gun-shot of the Citie, albeit the Citie walles could not bee endamaged thereby. Wherefore the Citizens immediately fent Ambassadours into Spaine, to craue a league for ten yeeres, vpon condition that they should pay certaine yeerely Tribute; which request was granted by King Ferdinando. And fo they remained for certaine Moneths free from the danger of warre: but at length Barbaroffa haftning to the fiege of Bugua, and having wonne one Fort built by the Spaniards, determined to encounter another, hoping if he could obtaine that also, that he should soone conquer the whole Kingdome of Bugia. Howbeit, all matters fell not out according to his expectation : for a great part of his Souldiers being husbandmen, 30 when they perceived the time of fowing corne to approach, without any leave or licence they forfooke their Generall, and returned home to the Plough-taile. And many Turkes also did the like, fo that Barbaroff a failing of his purpole, was constrained to breake up the fiege. Howbeit, before his departure, he let on fire with his owne hands twelve Gallies, which lay in a River but three miles from Bueis. And then with forty of his Souldiers, he retired himselfe to the Castle of Gegel, being from Bugia aboue fixtie miles distant, where hee remained for certains

dayes. In the meane while, King Ferdinando deceasing, the people of Alger released themselves

from paying any more Tribute: for feeing Barbaroffa to be a most valiant warriour, and a deadly

enemy vnto Christians, they sent for him, and chose him Captaine ouer all their Forces; who presently encountred the Fort, but to little effect. Afterward, this Barbaroff a secretly murthered the Governour of the Citie in a certaine Bath. The said Governour was Prince of the A-40 rabians dwelling on the Plaines of Mettegia, his name was Selim Etteumi, descended of the Familie of Telaliba, and created Gouernour of Alger, at the same time when Bugia was taken by the Spaniards: this man was slaine by Barbarosia, after he had gouerned many yeeres. And

then Barbaroffa viurged the whole government of the Citie vnto himselfe, and coined money.

and this was the first entrance into his great and princely estate. At all the foresaid accidents I

meane while I heard that Barbaroffa was flaine a: Tremizen, and that his brother called Cairadin

fucceeded in the government of Alger. Then we heard also that the Emperour Charles the fift

my felfe was prefent, as I trauelled from Fez to Tunis, and was entertained by one that was fent good. Arabian bookes. books. Ambassadour from the people of Alger into Spanne, from whence he brought three thousand AV0.28; per-bookes written in the Arabian tongue. Then I passed on to Bugia, where I found Barbarossa formed by 160m belieging the forelaid Fort : afterward I proceeded to Constantina , and next to Tunis. In the

This Alger is now the cage had fent two armies to surprize A'ger; the first whereof was destroyed upon the plaine of Albirus, the next ger, and the second having assailed the Towne three daves together, was partly slame, and partof Fareill vn. ly taken by Barbaroffa, infomuch, that very few escaped backe into Spaine. This was done in the christian Py. yeere of the Hegeira 922. Medus.

The Inhabitants of Medua being themselves vnlearned, so often as any learned man comes amongh them, they enter ame him with great honour, and cause him to decide all their controuerfies. For the space of two moneths, while I remained with them, I gained aboue two hundred Dicats, and was to allured with the pleafantnesse of the place, that had not my dutie enforced me 60 The Towne of to depart, I had remained there all the refidue of my life.

Vinto Temendfust belongeth a faire Hauen, where the Ships of Alger are safely harboured, for they have no other Haven to commodious. This Towne was at length destroyed by the Goths. taines is omit- and the greatest part of the wall of Alger was built with the stones which came from the wall of this Towne. Sect. IIII.

The most remarkable things in IOHN LEO his fifth Booke of the Hillorie of Africa, and a description of the Kingdomes of Bugia and Tunis.

Vgia was subject to the King of Tunis, and albeit, for certaine yeares the Trist was tubiect to the Anig on Jaws, a was it at length recovered against King of Triefs was Lord thereof, yet was it at length recovered against by the King of Triefs, who committed the Government of the Citie vince of the Sonnes, both for the tranquilitie of Bayes, and also that no discord might happen among his Sonnes after his decease. Hee left behind him three Sonnes, the eldest whereof was called Habdulhaziz, and vnto him he bequeathed the Kingdome of Busia, as is aforefaid: vnto the second, whose name was Histmen, hee left the Kingdome of Tunis : and the third, called Hammare, he made Gouernour of the Region of Dates. This Hammare began forth-with to wage warre against his Brother Hatmen, by whom beeing at length taken in the Towne of Asfacos, and deprined of both his eyes, hee was carryed Captine vnto Truis, where he lived many yeares blind : but his Brother Hutmen governed the Kingdome of Twis full forty yeares. The Prince of Bugis beeing most louing and dutifull to his Brother,

20 raigned for many yeares with great tranquillitie, till at length hee was by King Ferdinand of Spaine, and by the meanes of one Pedro de Nauerra, cast out of his Kingdome.

This ancient Citie of Busia was built (as some think) by the Romans, upon the fide of an high A description Mountayne, neere vnto the Mediterran Sea, is enurroned with wals of great height, and most of the great flately in regard of their Antiquitie. The part thereof now peopled contayneth aboue eight thousand Families: but if it were all replenished with buildings, it were capeable of more then foure and twentie thouland Housholds, for it is of a great length. The Houses, Temples , and Colledges of this Citie are most sumptuously built. Professors of liberall Sciences heere are Scholers. great flore, whereof fome teach matters pertayning to the Law, and others professe naturall Lawyers Philosophie. Neyther Monasteries, Innes, nor Hospitals erected after their manner are heere wan- Philosophers. 30 ting and their Market place is very large and tayre: their streetes either descend or ascend. which is very troublesome to them that have any businesse in the Towne. In that part of the Citie next vnto the top of the Mountayne flandeth a ftrong Caftle, most sumptiously and beau-

tifully walled : and there are fuch notable Letters and Pictures most artificially carued upon the Playster-worke and Timber, that they are thought to have cost much more then the building of the wall it felfe. The Citizens were exceeding rich, and vsed with their Warlike Gallies continually to mo-

left the Coafts of Spaine; which was the occasion of the vtter overthrow of their Citic. For Pedro de Nauarra was sent against them with a Fleet of fourteene Sayles onely. The Citizens being addiced wholy to pleafure and eafe, and being terrified with the rumour of Warre, be40 caule they were neuer exercifed therein, were no fooner adurerifed of Pedro de Nuamarra his approch, but all of them together with their King betooke themfelues to flight, and left their Ch. Pedro de Nietie abounding with all kind of riches and wealth, to be fipoyled by the Spaniards, fo that it was surro. eafily taken, in the yeere of Mahumet his Hegeira 917. Soone after Pedro de Nauarra hauing facked the Citie, built a ffrong Fort vpon the Sea shoare, and repayred another which had lien a long time waste, furnishing them both with Souldiers and Munition.

The Inhabitants of Gegel, haue in despight of the Kings of Bugia and Tunis continued al- Necaus wayes free from Tribute : for that impregnable Mountayne can be furnized by no fiege nor encounter of the Enemy. At length they yeelded themselves vnto Barbarossa, who demanded none

other Tribute of them, but onely the tenths of certaine Fruits and Corne.

50 The Inhabitants of Necaus are very rich, liberall, and curious in their apparell. Heere is an Hospitall maintayned at the common charges of the Towne, to entertayne Strangers that passe by. Here is a Colledge also, the Students whereof are allowed their Dyet and apparell. Neither is this Towne destitute of a most stately and wel-furnished Temple. Their women are white, having blacke haires and a most delicate skinne, because they frequent the Bath-stones so often. Most of their houses are but of one story high, yet are they very decent, and have each one a Garden thereto belonging, replenished with Damaske Roses, Myrtles, Cammomill, and other herbs and flowers, and beeing watred with most pleasant Fountaines. In these Gardens likewise there are most stately Arbours and Bowres, the coole shaddow whereof in Summer time is most acceptable.

No man can deny the Romanes to have beene Founders of this Citie , that shall consider the The Citie of great frength, height and antiquitie of the wals, and how curiously they are befor and adorned conflatura. with blacke flones. This Citie flandeth vpon the South fide of an exceeding high Mountayne, and is entironed with fleepe Rockes, under which Rockes and within the compaffe whereof runneth the River called Sufegmare, fo that the faid deepe River with the Rockes on either fide,

in Granada, having in his travell this way received fome discourtefie, wrote in diffrace of Tebesia certaine Satyricall Verses, which my selfe likewise haue thought good here to set downe in the dispraise thereof.

Within this place here's nought of any worth. Save worthlesse Nuts which Tebella affoords. Soft, I mistake, the Marbie walles are worth Your earnest view, so are the Christall Foords: But hence are banisht vertues all dinine.

The place is Hell, the People worfe then Swine.

To This Eldabag was a most learned and elegant Poet in the Arabian Tongue, and out of measure Satyricall, and bitter in his inuectiues. But to returne to our former purpole, these Tebessians have alwaies rebelled against the King of Tunis, and have slaine all the Governours that he hath fent. Wherefore the King that now is, translling vpon a time towards Nomidia, fent certaine Ambassadours into the Citie, to know how the Citizens stood aftested towards him: vnto who m they (in flead of God fane the King) made answere; God fane our Citie walles. Whereat the King waxing wroth, facked the Citie forthwith, beheaded and hanged divers of the inhabitants, and made such hauock, that ever fince it hath remained desolate. This was done in the yeare of the

In the Towne of Vrbs, are to be seene fundry Monuments of the Romans, as namely, Images of The Towne 20 Marble, and enery where vpon the Walles are sentences in Laim letters engrauen the Towne pris full or Re-Walles are most artificially and sumptuously built. This Towne the Gothes, being affished by the man antiquie Moores, surprised, when as it contained the chiefe treasure and wealth that the Romans enjoyed ties. in all Africa. Afterward, it remained for certaine yeares desolate, being at length not with sanding inhabited anew; yet fo, that it deserueth rather the name of a Village, then of a Towne.

We have here given the Reader, with a small generall Map of Barbary and Egypt, a description of the Ruines of Carthage, with the Goletta and Bay of Tunis.

HONDIYs bis Map of Barbarie and Egypt.



ferreth in flead of a Towne-ditch to Confiantina. The North part is compaffed with a well of great thicknesse: and there are two extreme narrow passages onely to enter into the Citie, one on the East part, and another on the West. The Citie gates are very large and stately. The on the East part, and another on the west. The citie gates are very large and stately. The Citie stielle contaymeth aboue eight thouland Families. Buildings it hath very sumptuous, as namely, the Chiefe Temple, two Colledges, three or four Monasteries, and other such like. Here euery Trade and Occupation hatha feuerall place affigned; and the Inhabitants are right honest and valuant people. Here is likewise a great Company of Merchants, whereof some sell Cloth and Wooll, others fend Oyle and Silke into Namidia, and the refidue exchange Linnen-cloth and other Wares for Slaues and Dates. Neyther are Dates fo cheape in any Region of all Barbarie betides. The Kings of Timis vitually commit the Gouernment of Confiamina vnto their Io Also without the Citie stand many fayre and ancient buildings. About a mile and a halfe

A fond and

perfition.

fenfeleffe Sta-

from the Citie standeth a ceraine triumphall Arch, like vnto the triumphall Arches at Rome, which the groffe common people thinke to haue beene a Caftle, where innumerable Deuils remayned, which (they say) were expelled by the Mahamerans, when they came first to inhabit Constantina. From the Citie to the River they delcend by certaine shaires hewen out of the Rocker and neere vnto the River standeth a little house so artificially cut out of the mayne Rock, that the Roofe, Pillars and Wals are all of one continued fubflance, and here the women of Conthat the Roote, I mais and Neere vnto the Citielikewife there is a certaine Bath of hot wa-Snails Deuils ter differing it felfe among the Rockes: in this Bath are great flore of Snailes, which the fond women of the Citie call Deuils : and when any one falleth into a Feuer or any other Difeafe, they impose the Snailes to be the Authours thereof. And the onely remedie that they can apply vpon fich an occasion, is this: first, they kill a white Hen, putting her into a Platter with her feathers on, and then very folemnely with Wax-candles they carry her to the Bath, and there leave her; and many good fellowes there are, which so some as the filly women haue set downe their Hensat the Bath, will come fecretly thither, and conuay away the Hens to their

owne Kitchins. Somewhat farther from the Citie Eastward, there is a Fountayne of extreme cold water, and neere vnto it flandeth a certaine building of Marble adorned with fundry Hiscold water, and neere viscote transcent extracting containing of seasons asserted with atmost price reglyphical Pictures or Emblemes, fuch as I have feene at Reme, and at many other places of Emorge. But the common people imagine that it was in times paft a Grammar Schoole, and be- 30 cause both the Masters and Schollers thereof were most vicious, they were transformed (fay

they) into Marble.

The ancient Towner of Benta, Saint Augustiant in times past Bishop of

they) into marote.

Bond, was in ancient times called Hoppe, where the Reuerend Father Same Angulfine was once
Bond, was in procedle of time subdued by the Gother, and was afterward surprized and
Bishop. It was in procedle of time subdued by the Gother, burnt to alhes by Huimen the third Patriarke after Mahumet, And many yeeres after they built a new Towne within two miles, of the stones that were brought from the ruines of Bona: which new Towne they called Beld Elhaneb, that is, the Citie of the fruit called Zizaphu or Insuba, by reason of the great abundance of that fruit: the which they vie to dry in the Sunne, and to keepe till Winter. It contayneth almost three hundred Families, and all the houses and buildings thereof are very base, saue one onely Temple which standeth next the Sca. The In-49 habitants are all of an ingenuous disposition, some of them being Merchants, and the residue Artizans. Here is great flore of Linnen-cloth wouen, the greatest part whereof is carryed to

Great flore of

Euery Friday they have neere vnto the Towne wals a Market, which is well frequented even Numidia. till night. Not farre from hence there is a certaine place in the Sea, abounding with great store of Corall : and because the Townesmen know not how ... fish for the same, the King of Timis licenfed certaine Merchants of Genoa to fifh for it: who in regard of the continual affaults of Pirates, because they could not speed of their purpose, they obtayned leave also of the King to ristes, because they could be, specially the first purpose, any observations and allow in a large to build a Caltle neare with the plane of the country of t couered agains by the King of Tunis.

The Citic of

Tebella, compassed with an high wall made of such stones, as are to be seene upon the Colosso at Rome : neither faw I, to my remembrance, any fuch wals in all Africa or Europe; and yet the houses and other buildings are very base. Through part of this Citie runneth a great River: and in the Market, and divers other places stand certaine Marble Pillars, having Epigrams and Sentences with Latine Letters engraven vpon them : there are also other square Pillars of Merble couered with Roofes. The Plaines adiacent, albeit, very dry, yet are they most fruitfull for Corne. Fine miles from hence, grow fuch abundance of Wall-nut-trees, as you would take them to be fone thicke Forrest. Neere wnto this Towne standard a certaine hill full of mighty Caues, wherein the common people fay, that Giants inhibited of old: but it is most eutent, that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Citie: for 60 that third Caues were digged by the Romane; at the fame time, when they built the Cities is the fame time. certaine it is that the stones whereof the Citie wals confist, were taken cut of those Rockes. The Inhabitants are people of a couetous, inhumane, and beaftly disposition; neither will they vouchiafe to look: vpon a ftranger infomuch, that Eldabag a famous Poet of the Citic of Malaga

Raines of Carthage.

The famous and ancient City Carthage was built at the first by a certaine people that came and the series and the series of the series Barbaria and Capis being taken by the Mahametans, the Inhabitants of them hoth went vnto Carthage, whither the principall Romans and Gother had retired themselves, who endeauored by all meanes to withfrand the Mahumetans: and after many skirmishes the Romans fled to Bond. and the Goths left Carthage for a pray vinto the Mahimetans; to that it remained defeate many yeares after, till a certaine Mahumetan Patriarke, called Elmahdi brought in new Colonies: howbeit, he could fearce furnish the twentith part with Inhabitants. There are to be seene at this day certaine ruines of the Citie walls, till you come to a deepe and large Ciferne. And there remaineth as yet also a certaine Conduit, which conveyeth water to the Citie frem a Mountaine thirtie miles distant, being like vnto the Conduit of the great Palace at Rome. Necre vnto Carthage likewise are certaine great and ancient buildings, the description whereof is out of my remembrance. On the West and South part of this Citie, are diners Gardens replenished with all kind of fruits, which are carried from thence to Tunis in great abundance. The plaines adioyning to this Citie are exceeding fruitfull, though not very large for vpon the North part thereof lieth a Mountaine, the Sea, and the Gulfe of Tunis: on the East and South parts it ioyneth to the *1526. Plaines of Benfart. But "now this Citie is fallen into extreme decay and milery: Merchants Shops there are not about twenty or fine and twenty at the most : and all the houses of the Towne being scarce fiue hundred, are most base and beggerly. In my time here was a stately 20 Temple and a faire Colledge also, but no Students were therein. The Townesman, though verie milerable, yet ate they exceeding proud withall, and feeme to pretend a great flew of Religion. And the greater part of them are either Gardiners or Husbandmen, and are grieuously oppressed with the Kings daily exactions.

This Citie is called by the Latines, Tunetum, and by the Arabians Tunus, which name they

The building of cair sugs.

Tunis lubie &

thinke to be corrupt, because it signifieth nought in their language: but in old time it was cal-Guie of Tunis. led Turfis, after the name of a Citie in Afia. At the first it was a small Townebuilt by the Africans upon a certaine Lake, about twelve miles diftant from the Mediterran Sea. And upon the decay of Caribage, Tunis began to increase both in buildings and inhabitants: for the inhabitants of Carthage were lock to remaine any longer in their owne Towne, fearing leaft some Armie would have been fent out of Europe: wherefore they repaired vnto Tunis, and greatly enlarged the buildings thereof. Afterward came thither one Hucha Vimen, the fourth Mahumetan Patriarke, who perswaded the Citizens, that no Armie er Garrison ought to remaine in any Sea Townes; wherefore he built another Citie, called Cairaoan, being distant from the Mediterran Sea thirtie and from Tunis almost an hundred miles: vnto which Citie the Armie marched from Tunis, and in the roome thereof other people were fent to inhabite. About an hundred and fiftie yeares after, Cair aoan being facked by the Arabians, the Prince thereof was expelled, and became Gouernour of the Kingdome of Bugia: howbeit, he left certaine Kinsmen of his at Timis, who gouerned that Citie. And ten yeares after, Bugin was taken by lofeph, the sonne of Tessin, who leeing the humanitie of the forefaid Prince, would not expell him out of his Kingdome: but fo long at it remained to the faid Prince and his posteritie, Iofepb cassed it to be free from all moleflation. Afterward, Abdul Mumen, King of Maroco, having recovered Mahdia from the Chri-other Kings of Abdul and his sonne loseph, and their successors lacob and Manfor. But after the decease of Manfor, his sonne Mahumet Ennasir made warre against the King of Spaine, by whom being vanqui hed, he fled to Maroco, and there within few yeares ended his life. After him fucceeded his brother lefeph, who was slaine by certaine fouldiers of the King of Telensin. An fo vpon the death of Mahumes, and of his brother loseph, the Arabians began to inhabite the Territorie of Tunis, and to make often fiedges and affaults against the Citie it felfe : whereupon the Gouernour of Timis advertised the King of Maroco, that valette prefent aide were sent, he must be constrained so to yeeld Tunis vnto the Arabians. The King therefore fent a certaine valiant Captaine, called Habdulnabidi, and borne in Smill, a Citie of Granada, with a Fleete of twentie Sayles vnto Tunu, which he found halfe destroyed by the Arabians: but so great was his eloquence and wifdome, that he restored all things to their former estate, and received the yearely tribute. After Habduluabidi succeeded his sonne Abu Zachberia, who in learning and dexteritie of wit, excelled his father. This Abu built a Cattle vpon a certaine high place of the West part of Tunis, which headomed with faire buildings, and with a most beautifull Temple. Afterward, taking his journey vnto the Kingdome of Tripolis, and returning home by the Southerne regions, he gathered tribute in all those places: so that after his decease, he left great treasure vnto his sonne. 60 And after Abu fucceeded his sonne, who grew so insolent, that hee would not be subject to the King of Maroco, because hee perceived his Kingdome to decay: at the same time also had the Marin Family gotten polletion of the Kingdome of Fez, and io was the Familie of Bens Zeijes possessed of the Kingdomes of Telensin and Granada. And so while all those Regions were

CHAP.I.S. 5. The King of Tunis , Saluted King of all Africa.

at mutuall diffention, the Dominions of Twis began mightily to encrease; infomuch, that the King of Tunis marched vnto Telensin, and demanded tribute of the inhabitants. Wherefore the King of Fez, who as then laid fiege against Marbee, craued by his Ambassadors the King of Tunis his friendship, and with great gifts obtained the same. Then the King of Tunis returning home Conquerour from Telenfin, was received with great triumph, and was saluted King of all Africa. becaute indeed there was no Prince of Africa at the fame time comparable vnto him. Wherefore he began to ordaine a Royall Court, and to choose Secretaries, Counsellors, Captaines, and other Others appertaining to a King; after the very fame manner that was vied in the Court of Maroco. And from the time of this King even till our times, the Kingdome of Tunis hath to 10 prospered, that now it is accounted the richest Kingdome in all Africa. The faid Kings io ne

reigning after his fathers death, enlarged the Suburbs of Tunes with most stately outldings. Without the Gate called Bed Suvaica he built a fireete, containing to the number of three hundred Families : and he built another street at the Gate, called Bea el Manera, consisting of more then a thousand Families. In both of these streets dwell great store of Artificers, and in the freet last mentioned, all the Christians of Tuns, which are of the Kings Guard, have their abode. Likewife, there is a third freete built at the Gate next vnto the Sea, called Beb el Bahar, and being but halfe a mile distant from the Gulfe of Tunss. Hither doe the Genoueles, Venetians, and all other Christian Merchants refort, and here they repose themselves out of the tumult and concourse of the Moores: and this fireet is of so great bignesse, that it contains neth three hundred Families of Christians and Moores; but the houses are very low, and of 20 fmall receit. The Families of the Citie, together with them of the Suburbs, amount almost to the number of ten thousand. This stately and populous Citie hath a peculiar place assigned for each Trade and Occupation. Here dwell great flore of Linnen-weaters, and the Linnen that they weate is exceeding fine, and fold at a great price ouer all Africa. The women of this Towne vie a ftrange kind of pinning: for ftanding vpon an high place, or on the vpper part of the A ftrange houle, they let downe their Spindles at a window, or through a hole of the plancher into a lower kind of frisroome to that the weight of the Spindle makes the thread very equall and euen. The apparell ningof their Merchants, Priests, and Doctors is very decent. Vpon their heads they were a Dulipan, which is couered with a great Linnen-cloath: the Courtiers likewife and the Souldiers weare all of them Dulipans, but not couered with Linnen. Rich men here are but few, by reason of the exceeding scarcitie of all kind of graine : for a man cannot till a piece of ground, be it neuer fo

30 neere the Citie, in regard of the manifold inuations of the Arabians. Corne is brought vnto them from other Regions and Cities, as namely, from Vrbs, from Beggi, and from Bona. Some of the Citizens of Tunis haue certaine Fields in the Suburbs walled round about, where they fow fome quantitie of Barley, and of other Corne : howbeit, the foyle is marueilous dry, and flandeth in need of much watring : for which purpose euery man hath a pit, whereout with a certaine wheele turned about by a Mule or a Camell, and through certaine conueyances and pallages made for the nonce, they water all the vpper part of their ground. Now confider(I pray you) what great crop of Corne can be reaped out of folittle a Field, walled round about, and watred by fuch cunning and industrie. Bread they make very excellent, albeit they leave the Bran still among the Flower, and they bake their Loques in certaine Mortars, fuch as the Egyptians vie to 40 beate Flaxe in. In this Citie they have no Fountaines, Rivers, nor Wells of fresh water: but

they all vie raine water taken out of Citterns, fauing that there is a Fountaine in the Suburbs, from whence certaine Porters bring falt water into the Citie to fell, which they thinke to bee more wholesome and fit for drinke then raine water. Other Wells there are that affood most excellent water, which is referred only for the King and his Courtiers. In this Citie there is one most stately Temple, furnished with sufficient number of Priests, and with rich reuenues. Other Temples there be also, but not endowed with so ample reuenues: here are Colledges likewise and Monasteries built after their manner, all which are maintained vpon the common beneuolence of the Citie. There are certaine people in this Citie, whom a man would take to bee di- Madmen , :eftracted, which goe bare-headed and bare-footed, carrying ftones about with them, and there are ucreace mad to reuerenced by the common people for men of fingular holineste. Moreover, on the behalfe of men.

one of these mad fellowes, called Sidi el Dahi; and for the residue of his fond Societie, the King of Tunis built one of the forefuld Monasteries, and endowed the same with most ample reuenues. All the houses of this Citie are indifferently beautifull, being built of excellent stones, and adorned with much painting and caruing. They have very artificiall pargettings or plaifter-works. which they beautifie with Orient colours; for Wood to carue vpon is very scarce at Tunis. The floores of their Chambers are paued with certaine thining and faire flones; and most of their houses are but of one storie high : and almost every house hath two Gates or entrances; one to-60 wards the street, and another towards the Kitchin and other back-roomes, betweene which Gates they have a faire Court, where they may walke and conferre with their friends. Pouertie constraineth some of their women to leade ar vnchast life : they are decently apparelled, and going foorth of the house, they weare vailes or maskes before their faces, like vinto the wo-

Yyyy 3

men of Fez : for with one Linnen-cloth they couer their fore-heads, and joyne thereto another which

which they call Setfare: but about their heads they lap fuch fardels of Linnen, as they teeme comparable to the heads of Giants. Most part of their fulfitance and labour they bestew voon Perfumes and other fuch vanities. They have here a Compound, called Lhafis, whereof wholoeuer eateth but one Ounce, falleth a laughing, differting, and dallying, as if he were halfe drunken. and is by the faid Confection maruellously propoked vnto luft.

Tunis his Court, and of the Rites and Ceremonies there vied.

So foone as the King of Tunis hath by inheritance attained to his Kingdome, all his Nobles. Doctors, Priests, and Indges, bind themselves by iclemne Oath vnto him. Immediatly after any Kings death, his fonne and heire apparent fucceedeth in the Kingdome: then the chiefe Officer of the Court (called the Munafid, because he is the Kings Vice-Roy or High Deputie) presenteth himselfe forthwith vnto the new King, and gineth vp an account of all things which hee did 10 while the old King lived : and then at the Kings appointment, everie of the Nobles receive Offices from the Manafid according to their feuerall places of dignitie. Another principall Officer there is called the Mefuare, that is, the Great Commander and Gouernour of the warlike forces: who hath authority to increase or diminish the number of Souldiers, to give them their pay, to leuie Armies, and to conduct the same whither he thinketh good. The third Officer in dignitie. is the Castellan, who with his Souldiers taketh charge of the Castle, and looketh to the safeguard of the Kings owne person : and he allotteth punishments vnto such prisoners, as are brought into the faid Castle, as if he were the King himselfe. The fourth Officer, is the Gouernour of the Citie. whose dutie is to administer Justice in the Common-wealth, and to punish Malefactors. The fifth Officer, is the Kings Secretarie, who hath authoritie to write, and to give answere in the Kings name : he may open alfo, and reade any Letters whatfoeuer, except fuch as are fent vnto the Cafellan and Governour of the Citie. The fixth, is the Kings Chiefe Chamberlaine, who is to furnish the Walles with Hangings, to appoint vnto every man his place, and by a Messenger to affemble the Kings Counsellors; and this man hath great familiaritie with the King, and hath acceffe to speake with him, as often as he pleaseth. The seuenth in dignitie, is the Kings Treasurer, who receiteth all Customes, Tributes, and yearely revenues, and payeth them, with the Kings consent, vnto the Munafid. These are the chiefe Officers vnder the King; of the refidue (left I should seeme tedious to the Reader) I have of purpose omitted to intreate of. I could here make a large discourse of the Kings vices that now reigneth (at whose hands I confesse my selfe to haue received great benefits) but that is not my purpose at this present : this one thing I can affirme, that he is maruellous cunning to procure money out of his fubicets purfes. But he himfelfe liueth fometimes in his Palace, and fometimes in Gardens, in the company of his Concubines, Musicians, Stage-plaiers, and such like. When he calleth for any Musician, he is brought in blindfold or hoodwinked in manner of a Hawke.

Mufician

The Towne of

El Mahdia founded in our time by Mahdi the first Patriarke of Cairaoan vpon the Mediterran sea, and fortified with strong Walls, Towers, and Gates, hath a most noble Hauen belonging otherwife cale thereto. Mahde when he first entred into this Region, fained himselfe in an vnknowne habite to be descended of the linage of Mahamet, whereby growing into great fauour of the people, hee was by their affiftance made Prince of Cairaon, and was called El Mahdi Califa: afterward trauelling fortie dayes journey Westward into Namidia to receive tribute due vnto him, he was ta- 40 was by the Prince of Segelmeffe, and put in prilon; howbeit, the faid Prince of Segelmeffe being presently moued with compassion toward him, restored him to his former libertie, and was for his good will not long after flaine by him: afterward tyrannizing ouer the people, and perceiving fome to conspire against him, he erected this Towne of Mahdia, to the end hee might there and lafe refuge when need required. At length one Beiezid, a Mahametan Prelate (whom they called the Canallerr, or Knight of the Affe, because that riding continually upon an Affe, hee conducted an Armie of fortie thousand men) came vnto Cairaoan: but Mabdi fled vnto his new Towne, where with thirtie Sayle of ships, lent him by a Mahumetan Prince of Cordona, he fo valiantly encountred the Enemie, that Beiezid and his fonne were both flaine in that battell : afterward returning to Carraoan, hee grew in league and amitie with the Citizens, and so the 50 gouernment remained vnto his posteritie for many yeares.

Of the great

The famous Citie of Cairaoan, otherwise called Caroen, was founded by Hucha, who was fent generall of an Armie cut of Arabia Defarta by Hutmen, the third Muhametan Califa. From the Mediterran Sea, this Citie is diftant fixe and thirtie, and from Tunis almost an hundred miles: neither was it built (they fay) for any other purpose, but onely that the Arabian Armie might securely rest therein with all such spoiles, as they wonne from the Barbarians, and the Numidians. He environed it with most impregnable Walls, and built therein a sumptuous Temple, Supported with stately Pillars. The laid Hucha after the death of Hutmen was ordained Prince of Muchania, and governed the same till the time of Qualid Califa, the sonne of Habdul Malic, who as then reigned in Damasco. This Qualid sent a certaine Captaine, called Muse, the sonne of Nofair, with an huge Armie vnto Cairacan; who having stated a few dayes with his Ar-60 mie not farre from Caurasan, marched Westward, sacking and spoyling Townes and Cities, till hee came to the Ocean Sea shore, and then hee returned towards Cairacan againe. From whence hee fent as his Deputie a certaine Captaine into Mannaria, who there allo conquered

CHAP.I. S.5. A River of hot water. The Lake of Lespers.

many Regions and Cities: infomuch that Muse being moved with a lealous emulation, commanded him to flay till himfelfe came. His faid Deputie therefore, called Tarich, encamped himselfe not farre from Andalussa, whither Muse within four moneths cane vnto him with an huge Armie; from whence both of them with their Armies croffing the Seas, arrived in Granada, and so marched by land against the Gothes. Against whom Theodoricus, the King of Ooibs, oppoling himfelie in battaile, was milerably vanquished. Then the foresaid two Captaines with all good facceffe proceeded even to Caffilia, and facked the Citie of Totado. Where among It much other treature, they found many Reliques of the Saints, and the very same Table whereat Chrift fate with his bleffed Apofler; which being couered with pure Gold, and Reliques 10 adorned with great store of precious stones, was esteemed to bee worth halfe a million of Ducats, and this Table, Mase carrying with him, as if it had been all the Treasure in Spaine, returned with his Armie ouer the Sea, and bent his course toward Cairaoan. And being in the meane fpace fent for by the Letters of Qualid Califa, hee fayled into Egypt: but arriving at Alexandria, it was told him by one Hefcian, brother vnto the laid Califa, that the Califa his brother was tallen into a most dangerous disease: wherefore hee wished him not to goe presently vnto Damasco, for feare least if the Califa died in the meane season, those rich and sumptious Spoyles thould be wasted and dispersed to no end. But Muse little regarding this counsell, proceeded on to Damasco, and presented all his Spoyles to the Califa, who within fine dayes after deceased. After whom his brother succeeding Califa, deprived Muse of his dignitie, and 20 fubflituted one lezul into his toome, whose fonne, brother, and nephewes succeeding, governed the Citie of Cairaoan, till such time as the Familie of Qualid was deprined of that dignitie, and one Elagleb was appointed Lieutenant, who gouerned not the Towne as a Califa: from that time the Mahumetan Califas leaving Damasco, removed vnto Bagaded, as wee find recorded in a certaine Chronicle. After the decease of Elagleb, succeeded his sonne, and the government remained vnto his posteritie for an hundred threescore and tenne yeares, till such time as they were deprined thereof by one Mahde Califa. But at the same time when Elapleb was Gouernour, the Citie of Cairaoan was fo increased, both with inhabitants and buildings, that a

Towne, called Recheda, was built next vnto it, where the Prince with his Nobles vied to re-

maine. In his time also the He of Sicilia was wonne: for Elaglate fent thither a certaine Cap-ciffe subdued name. Il in Salicana, who built vpon the faid Hand a Towne in flead of a Fort, celling it ac- by the Gouercording to his owne name, Halcama; which name is vfed by the Sicilians even till this pre- nour of Caifent. Afterward this new Towne was befieged by certaine people that came to aide the Soci- range, lians. Whereupon one Afed was lent with an Armie, and io the Moores Forces being augmented, they conquered the refidue of Sierlia, by which meanes the Dominions of Casraoan began wonderfully to increase. The Citie of Cairaoan standeth vpon a Sandie and Desart Plaine, which beareth no Trees, nor yet any Corne at all. In this Citie for certaine yeares the studie of the Mahametan Law mightily flourished, so that here were the most famous Lawyers in all Africa. It was at length destroyed, and replanted againe with new inhabitants, but it could neuer attaine vnto the former estate. At this present it is inhabited by none but Leather-40 dreffers, who fend their Leather vinto the Cities of Numidia, and exchange it also for Cloath

A mile and a half to the South of El Hamma beginneth a certain River of hot water to Spring, A River of hot which being brought through the midft of the Citie by certaine Chanels, is fo deepe that it will water. reach vp to a mans nauell: howbeit, by reason of the extreme heate of the water, there are but few that wil enter thereinto. And yet the inhabitants vie it for drinke, having fet it a cooling almost an whole day. At length this River not far from the Towne maketh a certain Lake, which The Lake of is called the Lake of Leapers: for it is of wonderfull force to heale the difease of leprosie, and Legers. to cure leprous fores: wherefore necre vnto it are divers Cottages of Leapers, some of whom are restored to their health. The said water tasteth in a manner like Brimstone, so that it will noso thing at all quench a mans thirit, whereof I my felfe hauehad often triall,

Gerbi being neere vinto the firme land of Africa, and confifting of a Plaine and Sandy ground, Of the Ileo aboundeth exceedingly with Dates, Vines, Olives, and other fruits, and containeth about eigh- Griss o Zeibi,

teene miles in compasse. Old Tripolis built also by the Romans, was after wonneby the Goths, and laftly by the Marthis Hilloric bungetans in the time of Califa Hemar the fecond. Which Mahametans having belieged the Go- was taken by vernour of Tripolitixe moneths together, compelled him at length to flee vnto Carthoge. The Italian Pintes, Citizens were partly flaine, and partly carried captine into Egypt and Arabia, as the most famous and carried thence to African Hiftoriographer Ibnu Rachich reporteth.

After the deltraction of old Tripolis, there was built another Citie of that name: which Ci- Theold Cit e 60 tie being insironed with most high and beautifull walls, but not very strong, is situate upon a of reposit. Sandy Plaine, which yeeldeth great flore of Dates. The houses of this City are most stately, in The new Cities Sandy Plaine, which yeeldeth great store of Dates. The nomes of this City are more reactively actively are more reactively are respect of the Houles of Tunis; and here also energy trade and occupation hath a feuerall place. Weauers here are many. They have no Wells nor Fountaines; but all their water is taken Pleney of out of Citherns, Come in this Citic is at an exceeding rate; for all the Fields of Tingoli are Dates,

Yyyy 3

Tribolis taken

by a Fleete of

as fandy and barren as the fields of Numidia. In this Citie were many faire Terriles and Col-Lalges built, and an Hospitall also for the maintenance of their owne poore people, and for the entertainment of ftrangers. Their fare is very bale and homely, being onely Belis or Dumolines made of Barley meale: for that Region affoordeth fo fmall quantitie even of Barley, that he is accounted a wealthy man that hath a buffiell or two of corne in flore. The Citizens are most of them Merchants; for Tripolis Handeth neere vinto Numidia and Tunis, neither is there any Citie or Towne of account betweene it and Alexandria : neither is it farre distant from the Iles of Sicilia and Malta: and vnto the Port of Tripolis Venetian Ships yeerely relort, and bring thither great store of Merchandize. This Citie hath alwayes beene subject vinto the King of Tunis : but when Abulhafen the King of Fez besieged Tunis, the King of Tunis was constrained 10 with his Arabians to flee into the Delarts. Howbeit, when Abulhafen was conquered, the King of Tunis returned to his Kingdome : but his subjects began to oppose themselves against him : and fo that Common-wealth was afterward grieuously turmoyled with civill diffensions and warres. Whereof the King of Fex having intelligence, marched the fifth yeere of the faid civill warre with an armie against the Citie of Tunis, and having vanquished the King thereof, and constrained him to flee vnto Constantina , he io straitly besieged him, that the Citizens of Constanting seeing themselves not able to with stand the King of Fez, opened their Citie gates to him and to all his armie. Whereupon the King of Tunis was carried captine vnto Fez. and was afterward kept a while prisoner in the Castle of Septa. In the meane season Tripolis was by a Genouele Fleete of twenty failes furprifed and lacked, and the Inhabitants carried a- 20 way captine. Whereof the King of Fez being aduertited, gaue the Genoueles fiftie thousand Ducats, vpon condition, that he might enjoy the Towne in peace. But the Genoueles having furrendred the Towne, perceined after their departure, that most part of their Ducats were counterfeit. Afterward, the King of Tunis beeing restored vnto his former libertie by Abulelim King of Fez , returned home vnto his Kingdome, and to the government thereof remained vnto him and his posteritie, till Abubar the sonne of Humen together with his young some was flaine in the Castle of Tripolis by a nephew of his, who afterward vsurped the Kingdome: but he was flaine in a battell which he fought against Habdul Mumen, who presently there pon became Lord of Tripolis. After him succeeded his sonne Zacharias , who within a few moneths dyed of the pestilence. After Zacharias, Mucamen the sonne of Hesen, and cou- 20 fin to Zacharias was cholen King; who beginning to tyrannize ouer the Citizens was by them expelled out of his Kingdome : and afterward a certaine Citizen was advanced vnto the Royall Throne, who gouerned very modeftly. But the King which was before expelled, fent an army of Soul liers against Tripolis, who looling the field, were all of them put to flight. Afterward. the King that began to Raigne so modestly, prooued a very tyrant, and being murthered by his

Tripalis furpri- Don Pedro de Nauarra against it : who on the sudden encountring this City, carried away mazed by Pedro

de Nauarra. The Mounraines are omitted.

V I.

kinfmen, the people made choise of a certaine Nobleman, leading as then a Heremits life, and

in a manner against his will appointed him their Gouernour ; and so the gouernment of the

Citie of Tripolis remained vnto him and his potteritie, till fuch time as King Ferdinando fent

to Meffina. Where, after certaine yeeres imprisonment, they were reflored by the Emperour Charles the fift, vnto their former liberty, and returned vnto Tripolis, which Towne was after-

ward deftroyed by the Christians. The Cattle of Tripolis being enuironed with most strong

walles, begin (as I vinderitand) to be replanted with new Inhabitants.

ny captiues with him. The Gouernour of Tripolis and his fonne in-law were fent prifoners vn- 40

Collections taken out of IOHN LEO his fixt Booke of the Historie of Africa.

The Arabians of Barca most cru. Il and bloody the:ues.

Teffet.

N Barca they have not any Corne growing at all. But Corne and other necessaries are brought vinto them by Sea from Sicilia, which that every of them may purchale, they are constrained to lay their formes to gage, and then goe rob and rifle trauellers to redeeme them againe, Neuer did you heare of more cruell and bloody theenes: for after they have robbed Merchants of all their goods and apparell, they powre warmemilke downe their throats, hanging them up by the heeles upon some tree, and forcing them to cast their gorge, wherein the lewd varlets search diligently for gold, suspecting that the Merchants swallowed up their Crownes before they entred that dangerous Defart.

Being about to deferibe all the Cities and Townes of Numidia, I will first begin with Teffet: 60 which ancient Towne built by the Numidians, neere unto the Libyan Defarts, and enuironed with walles of Sun-dried Bricke, deferueth scarcely the name of a Towne; and yet containeth foure hundred Families. It is compaffed round about with fandy Plaines, fauing that neere vnto the Townegrow some store of Dates, of Mill-feed, and of Barley, which the miserable

CHAP.1. €.6.

Plowing with a Horse and a Camell.

Townsfirm vie for food. They are constrained also to pay large Tribute vnto the Arabians Inhabiting the next Defarts. They exercife traffque in the land of Negroes and in Guzula, informuch, that they found most of their time in forren Regions. They are of a blacke colour, and deftitute of all learning. The women indeed teach their young children the first radiments of learning, but before they can attaine to any perfection, they are put to labour, and to the Ploughrayle. The faid women are somewhat whiter then other women : some of them get their litayle. The land women are rongewing winter timen other time in difference. Such as are using by finning and carding of wordl, and the refidue front their time in difference. Such as are plowing with a counted richely in this Region, pediaffe but very few Cattell. They Till their ground with a diorie and an Horfe and a Camell, which kind of Plowing is observed throughout all Numidia.

To Guaden fituate vpon the Numidian Defart, neere vnto Libia, is Inhabited by most miserable Thevillage of and groffe people. Heere groweth nothing but Dates : and the Inhabitants at at fuch enmitte Guaden. with their neighbours, that it is dangerous for them to goe abroad. Howbeit, they give them- The best calfelius to hunting, and take certaine wilde Beafts called Elamth, and Offriches, neither doe they led Elamth. eate any other fielh. All their Goats they referue for milke. And these people also are blacke of

The Prouince of Dara beginneth at Mount Atlas, extendeth it selfe Southward by the De. The Prouince farts of Libia, almost two hundred and fiftie miles, and the breadth thereof is very narrow. All of Dava. the Inhabitants dwell upon a certaine River which is called by the name of the Province. This River fometime to overfloweth, that a man would thinke it to be a Sea, but in Summer it

fo diminisherh, that any one may passe over it on foot. It so be it oversloweth about the begin- The quality to unminute in that any out may paire out in 1900. This of the state of the segment of the segment of the segment planty vanto the whole Region: if not, there followed preat thereof, feartile of Corne. Vpon the banke of this River there are fundry Villages and Hamlets, and divers Cattles also, which are environed with walles made of Sunne-dried Bricke and Mortar. All their Beames and Planchers contift of Date-trees, being notwithstanding write for the purpole for the wood of Date-trees is not folid, but flexible and fpungie. On either fide of the faid River for the space of five or fixe miles, the fields abound exceedingly with Dates, which with good keeping will last many yeeres : and as heere are divers kinds of Dates, so they are fold at fundry prices : for a bushell of some is woorth a Ducat, but others wherewith they feede their Hories and Camels, are icarce of a quarter fo much value. Of Date-trees some are male and fe- Thestrange male : the male bring foorth flowers onely, and the female fruit : but the flowers of the female properties male: the male bring toorth flowers onety, and the remaie truit; but the nowers of the falme or will not open, valetie the boughes and flowers of the male be toyened vato them: and if they bare tree.

30 beenot toyned, the Dates will prooue flarke naught, and containe great stones. The Inhabitants of Dara line vpon Barley and other groffe meate : neither may they eate no bread but one_ Bread daintie; ly voon Festivall dayes. Their Castles are Inhabited by Gold-smithes and other Artificers, and fo are all the Regions lying in the way from Tombuto to Fez : in this Prounce also there are three or foure proper Townes, frequented Merchants and strangers, and containing many Sheps and Temples. But the principall Towne called Beni Sabih, and Inhabited with most valiant and liberall people, is divided into two parts, either part having a feuerall Captaine or Gouernour: which Gouernours are oftentimes at great diffention, and especially when they moitten their arable Grounds, by reason that they are so skanted of water. A Merchant they will most courteoully entertaine a whole yeere together, and then friendly dimissing him, they require nought at his hands, but will accept fuch liberality as he thinkes good to bellow vpon them. The laid Gouernours to often as they fall a skirmishing, hire the next Arabians to aide them, allowing them daily halfe a Duca: for their pay, and sometimes more, and giving them their allowance every day. In time of peace they trim their Harquebuzes, Hand-guns, and o-

wood, and this herbe they exchange with the Merchants of Fez and Tremsen for other wares. Corne is very scarce among them, and is brought thither from Fez and other Regions, neither haue they any great store of Goats or Horses, vito whom in stead of Prouender they give Dates, and a kind of herbe also which groweth in the Kingdome of Naples, and is called by the So Neapolitans Farfa. They feed their Goats with the Nuts or Stones of their Dates beaten to Goats fed with powder, whereby they grow exceeding fat, and yeeld great quantity of milke. Their owne Dates. food is the fleth of Camels and Goats, being volumory and displacation in taste. Likewise they the Odrich kill and eate Officione the Beth subsect reflects and cate Officione. kill and cate Offriches, the flesh whereof tasteth not much volike to the flesh of a dunghill- The Provincocke, fauing that it is more tough and made of a stronger fmell, especially the Ostriches legge: cesos seedwhich confideth of flime flesh. Their women are faire, fat, and courteous : and they keepe divers maffe, thenes,

ther weapons : neither faw I euer (to my remembrance) more cunning Harquebuziers then at

This Territory extending it felfe along the River of Ziz from North to South almost twentie The Territory co miles, contayneth about three hundred and fiftie Callles, befides Villages and Hamlets: three of Segdimft. of which Cafiles are more principall then the reft. The first called Tenegent, and confilling of a thousand and moe Families, flandeth neere vnto the Citie of Segelmesse, and is inhabited with great flore of Artificers. The fecond called Tebuhafan, flandeth about eight miles to the South of Tinegent, being furnished also with great numbers of Inhabitants, and so fr quented with

flanes which are brought out of the land of Negroes.

this place. In this Prouince groweth great store of Indico, being an herbe like vnto the wilde Indico.

Merchants, that there is not in that respect the like place to bee found in all the whole Region helides. The third called Mamun, is reforted vnto by fundry Merchants, both Iewes and Moores.

These three Castles have three severall Governours, who are at great diffention among themfelues. They will oftentimes deltroy one anothers Chanels, whereby their fields are watered. which cannot without great cost be repayred againe. They will flow the Palme-trees also to the very flockes; and vnto them a company of lewd Arabians affociate themselves. They Coyne both Siluer and Gold money : but their Gold is not very speciall. Their Siluer Coyne weigheth foure graines a piece, eightie of which pieces are esteemed to bee worth one piece of their Gold Coyne. The lewes and Arabians pay excessive Tribute here. Some of their principall men are exceeding rich, and vie great Traffique vnto the Land of Negros: whither they transport Wares of Barbarie, exchanging the same for Gold and Slaues. The Territory of Segelmesse line vpon Dates, except it be in certaine places where some Corne grew. Here are infinite numbers of Scorpions, but no Flyes at all. In Summer time this Region is extremely hot, and then are the Rivers to destitute of water, that the people are constrayned to draw salt water out of certaine Pits, The faid Territory contayneth in circuit about eighty miles, all which, after the deftruction of Segelmess, the Inhabitants with small cost walled round about, to the end they might not be molested by continuall inrodes of Horsemen. While they lived all at vnitic and concord, they retayned their libertie: but fince they fell to mutuall debate, their wall was razed, and each faction inuited the Arabians to helpe them, under whomby little and little they

were brought in fubiection. The Towne of The common people together with one of our African Cosmographers, called Bicri, suppose Citie of Segel- that the Towne of Segelmeffe was built by Alexander the Great, for the reliefe of his ficke and wounded Souldiers. Which opinion feemeth not probable to me : for I could never reade that Alexander the Great came into any part of their Regions. This Towne was fituate vpona Plaine neere vinto the Riuer of Zize, and was entironed with most stately and high wals, even as in many places it is to be seene at this present. When the Mahumetans came fust into Africa. the Inhabitants of this Towne were lubie town the Fam.ly of Zeneta; which Family was at length ditpossessed of that authority by King Ioseph the Sonne of Tessin, of the Family of Luntion. The Towne it selfe was very gallantly built, and the Inhabitants were rich, and had great Traffique vnto the Land of Negros. Here frood frately Temples and Colledges also, and great 30 fore of Conduits, the water whereof was drawne out of the River by Wheeles. The Ayre in this place is most temperate and holesome, saung that in Winter it aboundeth with ouermuch

Vramelbefen is a forlorne and base Cattle, founded by the Arabians also, five and twentic miles from Segelmeffe vron a Defart, directly in the way from Segelmeffe to Dara. It is enuironed with blacke wals, and continually garded by the Arabians. All Merchants that passe by, pay one fourth part of a Duckat for every Camels lode. My felle travelling this way vpon a time in the company of fourteene lewes, and being demanded how many there were of vs, wee faid thirteene, but after I began particularly to reckon, I found the fourteenth and the fiftcenth man amongit vs, whom the Arabians would have kept Priloners , had wee not affirmed them to bee 40 Mahunectans : howbeit not crediting our words, they examined them in the Law of Mahumet, which when they perceived them indeed to viderfland, they permitted them to de-

The Castles of Fighig (land vpon a certaine Defart, manuellously abounding with Dates, Fighs, The women of this place weave a kind of cloth in forme of a Carpet, which is to fine, that a man would take it to be Silke, and this Cloth they fell at an excessive rate at Fez, Telensin, and other places of Barbarie. The Inhabitants being men of an excellent wit, doe pare of them vie Traffique to the Land of Negros, and the relidue become Students at Fez. and io foone as they have attayned to the degree of a Doctor, they returne to Numidia, where they are made either Priests or Senators, and proue most of them men of great wealth and reputation, From Segelmele, the faid Cattles are dittant almost an hundred and fiftie miles Eastward.

This great and large Region of Tegorarm in the Numidian Delart, standing about an hundred and twentie miles Eastward of Tesebit, contayneth fiftie Castles, and aboue an hundred Villages, and yeeldeth great plentie of Dates. The Inhabitants are rich, and have ordinarie Traffique to the Land of Negros. Their fields are very apt for Corne, and yet by reason of their extreme drought, they fland in need of continuall watering and dunging. They allow vinto flrangers houses to dwell in, requiring no money for rent but onely their dung, which they ke pe most charily : yea, they take it in ill part if any stranger easeth himselfe without the doores. Flesh is very fearce among them : for their foyle is fodry, that it will scarce nourish any Cattell at all : they keepe a few Goats indeed for their Milkes fake : but the fielh that they care is of Ca- 60 mels, which the Arabians bring vnto their Markets to fell: they mingle their meate with falt

temerexpelled. Tallow, which is brought into this Region from Fez and Tremizen. There were in a res past many rich lewes in this Region, who by the meanes of accrtaine Mahumetan Picacher, were at length expelled, and a great part of them flaine by the feditious people; and that in the very fame yeare when the lewes were expelled out of Spaine and Sicily.

The ancient Towne of Techars was built by the Numidians upon a certaine Hill, by the foot The Towns of whereof runneth a River, vpon which River Handeth a draw-bridge. The wall of this Towne Technot, was made of free stone and time, but that part which is next vnto the Mountayne hath instead of a wall an impregnable Rocke opposite against it: this Towne is distant sue hundred miles Southward from the Mediterran Sea, and about three hundred miles from Tegorarim. Families it contagneth to the number of fue and twenty hundred : all the houses are built of Sunne dryed Hospitalisis Brickes, except their Temple which is formewhat more flately. Heere dwell great store both and lose to of Gentlemen and Artificers: and because they have great abundance of Dates, and are destitute strangers. of Corne, the Merchants of Conftantina exchange Corne with them for their Dates. All stran-

to gers they fauour exceedingly, and friendly difmiffe them without paying of ought. They had rather march their Daughters vnto strangers, then to their owne Citizens: and for a Dowry they give some certaine portion of Land, as it is accustomed in some places of Europe. So great and furpathing is their liberalitie, that they will heape many gifts vpon ftrangers, albeit they are fure neuer to fee them againe.

The Gouernour at this prefent called Habdulla, is a valiant and liberall yong Prince, and most courteous vnto frangers, whereof I my selfe conversing with him for certayne dayes, had good

This Region is extremely hot, fandie and destitute both of Water and Corne : which wants are partly supplyed by their abundance of Dates. It contayneth to the number of fine Townes

20 and many Villages, all which we purpose in order to describe. Their foyle in Pefcara, yeeldeth nought but Dates. They have beene governed by divers The Towne of

Princes; for they were a while subject vnto the Kings of Thais, and that to the death of King Peffara. Humen, after whom succeeded a Mahametan Priest: neyther could the Kings of Tunis ever fince that time recourt the Dominion of Pefara. Here are great abundance of Scorpions, and it is present death to bee stung by them : wherefore all the Townelmen in a manner depart into the Countrey in Summer time, where they remaynetill the moneth of Nonember.

Not farre from Densen are divers Monuments of Antiquitie like vnto Sepulchres, wherein are found fundry pieces of Siluer Coyne, adorned with certayne Letters and Hieroglyphicall Figures, the interpretation whereof I could neuer find out.

The ancient Towne of Capb/a built also by the Romanes, had for certayne yeeres a Gouernour The Towne of of their owne: but afterward being facked by one Hucha a Captaine of Humen Califa, the Caphia. wals thereof were razed to the ground; but the Caille as yet remayneth, and is of great force; for the wall thereof being fine and twentie Cubits high, and fine Cubits thicke, is made of excellent stones, like vnto the stones of Vespasians Amphitheatre at Rome. Afterward the Towne wals were re-edified, and were destroyed againe by Mansor, who having slaine the Gouernour of the Towne and all the Inhabitants, appointed a new Gouernour ouer the fame place. Now this Towne is very populous, all the houses thereof, except the Temple and a few other buildings, being very deformed and base, and the streets are paued with blacke stones, like vnto the ftreets of Naples and Florence. The poore Inhabitants are continually oppressed with the ex-40 actions of the King of Tionis. In the middeft of the Towne are certaine fquare, large, and deepe Fountaines walled round about, the water whereof is hot and vnfit to be drunke, vnleffe it be fet an houre or two a cooling. The Ayre of this place is very vnholesome, insomuch that the greatest part of the Inhabitants are continually sicke of Feuers. People they are of a rude and illiberall disposition, and vokind voto strangers : wherefore they are had in great contempt

is likewile most excellent Oyle. The Inhabitants make themselues Shooes of Buckes Lea-Haning hitherto described all the Regions of Numidia, let vs now proceed vnto the description of Libya; which is divided into five parts, as we fignified in the beginning of this our Difcourse. We will therefore beginne at the dry and forlorne Desart of Zanhaga, which bordereth Westward vpon the Ocean Sea, and extendeth Eastward to the Salt-pits of Tegaza, Northward it abutteth vpon Sus, Haceha, and Dara, Regions of Numidia; and Southward it Bretcheth to the Land of Negros, adioyning it felfe unto the Kingdomes of Gualata and Tombuto. Water is here to be found scarce in an hundred miles trauell, beeing falt and vnsauourie, Water scarce. and drawne out of deepe Wels, especially in the way from Segelmeffe to Tombuto. Heere are great store of wilde beasts and creeping things, whereof wee will make mention in place conuenient. In this Region there is a barren Delart called Azaoad, wherein neyther water nor

by all other Africans. Not farre from this Towne are fields abounding with Dates, Oliues, and Pome-sitrons: and the Dates and Olives there are the best in all the whole Province: heere

any Habitations are to be found in the space of an hundred miles; beginning from the Well of 60 Azacad, to the Well of Aracan, which is diffant from Tombute about one hundred and fiftie miles. Here both for lacke of water and extremitie of heate, great numbers of men and heaft Heate and

Not farre from Agadez, there is found great store of Manna, which the Inhabitants gather Great store & in certaine little Veffels, carrying it while it is new vnto the Market of Agadez - and this Magna.

Manna beeing mingled with water they efteeme very daintie and precious Drinke. They put it also into their Pottage, and beeing so taken, it hath a maruellous force of retrigerating or cooling, which is the cause that here are so few Diseases; albeit, the Ayre of Tombus and Agadez be most valioliome and corrupt. This Delart firetcheth from North to South almost three

The refidue of the Libyan Delart, that is to fay, from Angela to the River of Nilus is inhabi-Tenata, Berdet. ted by certayne Arabians and Africans, commonly called Lenata: and this is the extreme Eaand others are omirred.

flerly part of the Delarts of Libra. This Region bordering upon the Ocean Sea, contayneth many Villages and Hamlets, and is The Region inhabited with most beggerly people. It standeth betweene Numidia and Libya, but somewhat 10 of Nun. netrer vnto Libra. Here groweth neyther Barley nor any other Corne. Some Dates heere are, but very unfauourie. The Inhabitants are continually molefted by the Arabians inuafione: and

some of them traffique in the Kingdome of Gualata.

The Region of Salt Mines. Tombuto.

The Region

uan conducted

the Caravans

of Mareco are

Condu Frd O-

by ablind

Berdean

In the Region of Tegaza, is great flore of Salt digged, being whiter then any Marble. This Salt is taken out of certaine Caues or Pits, at the entrance whereof fland their Cortages that worke in the Salt Mines. And these Workmen are all strangers, who sell the Salt which they diege vnto certaine Merchants, that carrie the same vpon Camels to the Kingdome of Tombato, where there would otherwife be extreme fearcitie of Salt. Neyther have the faid Diggers of Salt any victuals but such as the Merchants bring vnto them ; for they are diffant from all inhabited places, almost twentie dayes Iourney, infomuch, that oftentimes they perish for lacke of 20 food, when as the Merchants come not in due time vnto them : Moreouer, the South-east wind doth to often blind them, that they cannot line here without great perill. I my felfe continued three dayes among it them, all which time I was confirmed to drinke Salt water drawne out of certaine Wels not farre from the Salt Pits.

Berdoea, a Region fituate in the midft of the Libyan Defart, and standing almost five hundred miles from Nilus, contayneth three Caftles and five or fixe Villages, abounding with most ex-A whole Cara- cellent Dates. And the faid three Caltles were discouered eighteene yeeres agoe, by one Hamar, in manner following : the Carauan of Merchants wandring out of the direct way , had a certaine blind man in their company which was acquainted with all those Regions : this blind Guide riding foremost your his Camell, commanded some Sand to be given him at every miles 20 end, by the smell whereof hee declared the situation of the place : but when they were come within fortie miles of this Region, the blind man fmelling of the Sand, affirmed, that they were not farre from some places inhabited; which some believed not, for they knew that they were distant from Egypt foure hundred and eightie miles, so that they tooke themselues to bee neeuer the Librar rervnto Augela. Howbeit, within three dayes they found the faid three Caftles, the Inhabitants Defarts to Tame whereof wondering at the approach of strangers, and being greatly astonied, presently shut all their Gates, and would give the Merchants no water to quench their extreme thirst. But the Merchants by mayne force entred, and having gotten water fufficient, betooke themfelues againe

The Region of

Alguecher also being a Region of the Lybian Desart, is from Egypt an hundred and twentie 40 miles distant. Here are three Castles and many Villages abounding with Dates. The Inhabitants are blacke, vile, and couetous people, and yet exceeding rich: for they dwell in the midway between Egipt and Gaoga. They have a Governour of their owne, notwithstanding they pay Tribute vnto the next Arabians.

d. VII.

Extracts taken out of IOHN LEO his fewenth Booke of the Historie of Africa, wherein he intreateth of the Land of Negros, and of the Confines of Egypt.

Bichri and Melbudi.

Negro, Barba-

To Vr ancient Chroniclers of Africa, to wit, Bichri and Melhudi, knew nothing in the Land of Negros, but onely the Regions of Guechet and Cano: for in their time all other places of the Land of Negros were undiscouered. But in the yeere of the Hegeira three hundred and eightie, by the meanes of a certaine Mahumetan which came into Barbarie, the refidue of the faid Land was found out, beeing as then inhabited by great numbers of people, which lived a brutish and savage life, without any King, Governour, Common-wealth, or knowledge of Husbandry. Clad they were in skinnes of beafts, neither 60 had they any peculiar wives : in the day time they kept their Cattell; and when night came they rejorted ten or twelve, both men and women into one Cottage together, vling havrie skinnes in flead of beds, and each man choosing I is Leman which hee had most fancte vinto. Warre they wage against no other Nation, nor yet are definous to trauell out of their owner

Countrey. Some of them performe great adoration vnto the Sunne-rifing tothers, namely the people of Gualata, worthing the fire : and some others, to wit, the Inhabitants of Guaga, appropie of Omniano, woming in manner) neerer vinto the Christian Faith. These Negres were The Negres first subject vato King loseph the Founder of Marces, and afterward vato the fine Nations of subject vato Libys; of whom they learned the Mahumetan Law, and divers needfull handi-crafts: a while 1094 King of after when the Merchants of Barbare began to refort vnto them with Merchandize, they learned the Barbarran language allo. But the foresaid fine People or Nations of Libya divided this land to among themselves, that every third part of each Nation possessed one Region. Howbeit, the King of Tombuto that now raigneth, called Abnacre Izchia, is a Negro by birth : this Abnacre Izchia,

10 Abnacre after the decease of the former King, who was a Lybyan borne, flue all his sonnes, and so vsurped the Kingdome. And having by warres for the space of liteene yeere conquered many large Dominions, hee then concluded a league with all Nations, and went on Pilgrimage to Mecca, in which Iourney hee fo confumed his Treasure, that he was constrained to borrow Alecca, great summes of money of other Princes. Moreouer, the fifteene Kingdomes of the land of Negres knowen to vs, are all fituate vpon the Ruer of Niger, and vpon other Ruers which fall therinto. And all the land of Negros standeth betweene two vast Defarts, for on the one fide ly- Nigro. eth the maine Defart betweene Niamidia and it, which extendeth it selfe vnto this very land : and the South fide thereof adioyneth vpon another Defart, which (tretcheth from thence to the maine Ocean : in which Defart are infinite Nations vnknowen to vs, both by reason of the huge 20 distance of place, and also in regard of the discrittie of Languages and Religions. They have no traff que at all with our people, but we have heard oftentimes of their traff que with the Inha-

The Region of Gudata in regard of others is very small : for it contains though three great A description bitants of the Ocean Sea shoare. Villages, with certaine Granges and fields of Dates. From Nun it is diffant Southward about of the Kingthree hundred, from Tombuto Northward fine hundred, and from the Ocean Sea about two hundred miles. In this Region the people of Libya, while they were Lords of the land of Negros, ordained their chiefe Princely feate : and then great flore of Barbarie Merchants frequented Gualata: but afterward in the Raigne of the Mightie and rich Prince Heli, the faid Merchants omana, our attention of the property of the state of the Inhabitants are blacke people, and most friendly vnto strangers. In my time this Region was conquered by the King of Tombuto , and the Prince thereof fled into the Defarts , whereof the King of Tombute having intelligence, and feating leaft the Prince would returne with all the people of the Defarts, graunted him peace, conditionally that he should pay a great veerely Tribute vnto him, and so the faid Prince hath remained Tributarie to the King of Tombuto vntill this prelent. The people agree in manners and fashions with the Inhabitants of the next Defart. Heere groweth some quantity of Mil-seed, and great store of a round and white kinde of pulse, the like whereof I neuer saw in Europe; but fielh is extreme scarce among them. Both the This round & men and the women doe so couer their heads, that all their countenance is almost hidden. Heere white pulse is men and the women doe so couer their neads, that all their countenance a amost industry a most called Maix, is no forme of a Common-wealth, nor yet any Gouernours or Judges, but the people lead a most in the West in the West.

The Kingdome called by the Merchants of our Nation Gheneoa, by the natural Inhabitants Adefeription thereof Genni, and by the Portugals and other people of Europe Ghinea, itandeth in the midit of the Kingbetweene Gualata on the North, Tombute on the East, and the Kingdome of Melli on the dome of Gi-South. In length it containerh almoit fine hundred miles, and extended two hundred and fifty Weextend the miles along the River of Niger, and bordereth vpon the Ocean Sea in the fame place, where Ni- Country of ger falleth into the faid Sea. This place exceedingly aboundeth with Barley, Rice, Cattell, Fi- Guinnie furines, and Cotten and their Cotten they fell unto the Merchants of Barbarie, for cloth of En- ther, by apply-

ines, and Octen stand their Contenting to the fact to commodities. Their Coine is of Gold repe, for Brazen veffele, for Armour, and other fuch commodities. Their Coine is of Gold which they will be considered to the commodities of the contenting to the content of the content about matters of small value, some peeces whereof weigh a pound, some halfe a pound, and gions vnfome one quarter of a pound. In all this Kingdome there is no fruit to be found but only Dates, knowen. which are brought hither either out of Gualata or Numidia. Heere is neither Towne nor Ca. The naturall file, but a certaine great Village onely, wherein the Prince of Ghines, together with his enough of the Priests, Doctors, Merchants, and all the principall men of the Region inhabite. The willes of Ghines. their houses are built of Chalke, and the roofes are coursed with Strawe: the Inhabitants are clad inblacke or blew Cotten, wherewith they court their heads also but the Priests and Dodoes clashed ctors of their Law goe apparelled in white Cotten. This Region during the three moneths of in white, July, August, and September, is yeerely enuironed with the overflowings of Niger in manner

60 of an Iland; all which time the Merchants of Tombuto conneigh their Merchandize hither in certaine Canoas or narrow Boats made of one tree, which they rowe all the day long, but at night they binde them to the shoare, and lodge themselues vpon the land. This Kingdome was The Prince of fubiect in times past voto a certaine people of Libja, and became afterward Tributarie voto Ginea kept fubicét in times pattyono a certaine people of Libya, and became atterward 1 flourise vibic King Soni Heli, after whom fucceed a Soni Heli Izchia, who kept the Prince of this Region pri-

foner at Gago, where together with a certaine Nobleman, he miferably died.

The Region of Melli extending it felfe almost three hundred miles along the fide of a River which falleth into Niger, bordereth Northward vpon the Region last described, Southward vpon certaine Defarts and drie Mountaines, Weltward, vpon huge Woods and Forrests, firetching to the Ocean Sea shoare, And Eastward upon the Territorie of Gago. In this Kingdome there is a large and ample Village containing to the number of fixe thouland or moe Families, and called Melli, whereof the whole Kingdome is fo named. And heere the King bath his place of Residence. The Region it selfe yeeldeth great abundance of Corne, Fleth, and Cotton. Heere are many Artificers and Merchants in all places : and yet the King honorably entertain noth all drangers. The Inhabitants are rich, and have plenty of wares. Heere are great flore of 10 Temples, Prieits, and Professors, which Professors read their Lectures onely in the Temples. because they have no Colledges at all. The people of this Region excell all other Negros in wit. ciulity, and industry; and were the first that embraced the Law of Mahumet, at the fame time when the Vncle of lofeph the King of Maroco was their Prince, and the Gouernment remained for a while vnto his posteritie : at length /zehia subdued the Prince of this Region, and The Prince of made him his Tributarie, and to oppreffed him with grieuous exactions, that he was fearce able

Mr H: Gooducd by Fach a. The Kingdom O'Tunition Tombito was conquered by ths King of Ma no r (Sa from whence he had for veerely Triberte mighty firms of monev Burrhe altered that state fince. The King of Tembu.ohis rich merchanis Great Scarcity Buto which commodity mest be funplied by our

Emilifb Mer-Reuerence v. fed before the King of Tom-Poyfoned ar-

She's vied fer The Towns of

rewes

Bookes.

lewes hated.

to maintaine his Family. Tombuto is so called of a certaine Towne so called, which (they say) King Mense Suleiman founded in the yeere of the Hegeira 610, and it is fituate within twelue miles of a certaine branch of Niger, all the houses whereof are now changed into Cottages built of Chalke, and 20 covered with Thatch. Howbeit, there is a most stately Temple to be seene, the walles whereof are made of stone and lime; and a Princely, Palace also built by a most excellent workeman of Granada. Heere are many shops of Artificers, and Merchants, and especially of such as weave Linnen or Cotten cloth, And lather doe the Baroarie Merchants bring cloth of Europe. All the women of this Region except Mail-fernants goe with their faces couered, and fell all neceffary v. chuls. The Inhabitants, and especially strangers there residing, are exceeding rich informach, that the King that now is, married both his daughters vato two rich Merchants. cit lwishaue Heere are many welles, containing most sweet water; and so often as the River Niger overflowerh, they conneigh the water thereof by certaine fluces into the Towne. Corne , Cattell, Milke, and Butter, this Region yeeldeth in great abundance : but falt is very scarce heere ; for it 30 is brought hither by land from Tegaza, which is fue hundred miles diffant. When I my felfe was heere. Haw one Camels load of Salt fold for eightie Duckats. The rich King of Tombuta daughtrsmar- hath many Plates and Scepters of Gold, some whereof weigh one thousand and three hundred pounds; and he keepes a magnificent and well furnished Court. When he travelleth any whither he rideth yoon a Camell, which is lead by tome of his Noblemen; and to he doth likewife offaltin Tom. When hee goeth to warfare, and all his Souldiers ride vpon Horles. Whofeeuer will foeake vinto this King must first fall downe before his feet, and then taking vp earth, must sprinkle in vpon his owne head and shoulders : which custome is ordinarily observed by them that never faluted the King before, or come as Ambashadours from other Princes. He hath alwayes three thousand Horsemen, and a great number of footmen that shoot poyloned arrowes, attending 49 chants to their voon him. He to leadly hateth all lewes, that he will not admit any into his Citie and whatfocult Barbarie Merchants he understandeth to have any dealings with the Ienes, he prefently caufeth their goods to be confifcate. Heere are great store of Doctors, Judges, Priests, and other learned men, that are bountifully maintained at the Kings cost and charges. And hither are brought divers Manuferip's or written Bookes out of Barbarie, which are fold for more money then any other Merchandize. The Coine of Tombuto is of Gold without any flamme or finerefeription : but in matters of finall value they vie certaine fiels brought hither out of the Kingdome of Perfia, foure hundred of which thels are woorth a Duckat : and fixe peeces of their Golden Coine with two third parts weigh an ounce. The Inhabitants are people of a gentle and cheerefull disposition, and spend a great part of the night in singing and dancing through 50 all the fireets of the Citie; they keepe great itore of men and women-llanes, and their Towne is much in danger of fire : at my fecond being there halfe the Towns almost was burnt in fine dome of Canga. houres space. Without the Suburbs there are no Gardens nor Orchards at all.

Cabra a large Towne built without walles in manner of a Village, itandeth about twelve miles from Tombuto vpon the River Niger: and heerefuch Merchants as travell vnto the Kingdomes of Ghines and Mells embarke themselves. Neither are the people or buildings of this Towns any whit inferiour to the people and buildings of Tombuto ; and hither the Negros refort in great numbers by water. In this Towne the King of Tombato appoint tha Judge to decide all controuerfies : for it was tedious to goe thither to oft as need should require. I my felfe am acq ainted with Abu Bacr, firnamed Pargama, the Kings Brother, who is blacke in colour, but most beautifull in mind and conditions. Fieere breed many difeates which exceedingly di- 60 minish the people; that by reason of the fond and loathsome mixture of their meates; for they mingle Fish, Milke, Butter, and Fleshaltogether. And this is the ordinary food also in Tom-

The great Towne of Gago being vinwalled alfo, is diffant Southward of Tomburo almost feure. The Fewne hundred miles, and enclineth formewhat to the South-East. The houses thereof are but meane, and Kingdome except those wherein the King and his Courtiers remaine. Here are exceeding rich Merchants: and hither continually refort great flore of Negros, which buy Cloath here brought out of Barharis and Europe. This Towns aboundeth with Corne and Flesh, but is much destitute of Wine. Trees, and Fruites. Howbeit, here is plenty of Melons, Citrons, and Rice: here are many Wells also containing most sweet and wholsome water. Here is likewise a certaine place where slaves are to be fold, especially, upon such dayes as the Merchants vie to affemble; and a young slave of fifteene yeares age is fold for fixe Duckats, and fo are children fold alfo. The King of this Regi-10 on hath a certaine private Palace, wherein hee maintaineth a great number of Concubines and Slaves, which are kept by Eunuches: and for the guard of his owne person, he keepeth a suffici-

ent troope of Horsemen and Footmen. Betweene the first Gate of the Palace and the inner part thereof, there is a place walled round about, wherein the King himfelfe decideth all his fubicats controversies : and albeit, the King be in this function most diligent, and performeth all things thereto appertaining, yet hath he about him his Counfellors, and other Officers; as namely, his Secretaries, Treasurers, Factors, and Auditors. It is a wonder to see what plenty of Merchandize is daily brought hither, and how coftly and fumptuous all things be. Horses bought in Enrope for ten Duckats, are here sold againe for forty, and fometimes for fifty Duckats a piece. There is not any Cloath of Europe to courfe, which will not here be fold for foure Ducas an ell; Rich fale for

ac and if it be any thing fine, they will give fifteene Duckats for an ell : and an ell of the Scarlet Cloth. of Venice, or of Turkie Cloath is here worth thirty Duckats. A Sword is here valued at three or Swords. foure Crownes, and so likewise are Spurs, Bridles, with other like commodities; and Spices alfo are fold at an high rate: but of all other com nodities, Salt is most extremely deare. The reticine Salt deare. of this Kingdome containeth nought but Villages and Hamlets inhabited by Husbandmen and Shepheards, who in Winter couer their bodies with beafts skins; but in Summer they goe all naked faur their prinie members : and fometimes they weare vpon their feete certaine shooes made of Camels Leather. They are ignorant and rude people, and you shall scarce find one learned man in the space of an hundred miles. They are continually burthened with grieuous exactions to that they have fcarce any thing remaining to live vpon.

Guber standeth Eastward of the Kingdom of Gage almost three hundred milestbetween which Of the Kingtwo Kingdomes lieth a vast Defart, being much destitute of water, for it is about forty miles dome of Gaber. distant from Niger. The Kingdome of Guber is enuironed with high Mountaines, and containeth many Villages inhabited by Shepheards, and other Heardsmen. Abundance of Cattell here are both great and small : but of a lower stature then the Cattell in other places. At the inundation of Niger all the fields of this Region are overflowed, and then the inhabitants cast their feed Their manner into the water onely. In this Region there is a certaine great Village containing almost fixe Corne at the thousand Families, being inhabited with all kind of Merchants; and here was in times past the Inundation of thousand Families, being minable to with an anio to another the King of Tombuto, and his Niger.

Court of a certaine King, who in my time was flaine by Izebia the King of Tombuto, and his Niger.

The King of fonnes were galt, and accounted among the number of the Kings Eunuchs.

He which pleaseth the inhabitants of the Delart best, is fure to be King of Agadez. The re- Gaber flaine by He which pleafeth the inhabitants of the Delare bett, is fure to be King or esquaez. There-fidue of this Kingdome lying Southward is inhabited by Shepheards and Hearifmen, who dwel Cottages in certaine Cottages made of boughes, which cottages they carrie about vpon Oxen from place moueable, to place. They erect their Cottages alwaies in the fame field where they determine to feede their cattell ; like as the Arabians also doe.

The great Prouince of Cano standeth Eastward of the River Niger almost fine hundred miles. The Pro-The greatest part of the inhabitants dwelling in Villages are some of them Heardsmen, and uince of come. others Husbandmen. Here groweth abundance of Corne, of Rice, and of Cotton. Alto here are many Defarts and wild woodie Mountaines containing many Springs of water. In these Woods grow plenty of wild Citrons and Lemons, which differ not much in tafte from the best of all.

In the midit of this Prouince standeth a Towne called by the same name, the walles and houses 50 whereof are built for the most part of a kind of Chalke, The inhabitants are rich Merchants, and most civill people. Their King was in times past of great puissance, and had mighty troopes of Horsemen at his command; but he hath since been constrained to pay tribute vinto the Kings of Zegzeg and Cafena. Afterward, Ifchia the King of Tombuse faining friendfilm vnto the two The Kings of foreland Kings treacherously flew them both. And then hee waged warre against the Kings of Zeggsoft. Cano, whom after a long fiedge he took, and compelled him to marrie one of his daughters, reftoring him againe to his Kingdome, conditionally that he should pay vnto him the third part of all by indirethe his tribute : and the faid King of Tombuto hath fome of his Courtiers perpetually refiding at Kingo Tom-Cano for the receit thereof.

Cafena bordering Eastward vpon the Kingdome last described, is full of Mountaines, and drie 60 fields, which yeeld norwith standing great store of Barlie and Mill-feed. The inhabitants are all extremely blacke, having great notes and blabber lips. They dwell in most forlorne and base Cottages: neither shall you find any of their Villages containing about three hundred Families. And befides, their base estate they are mightily oppressed with famine: a King they had in times

The Kingdome

times past whom the forefaid Ischia slew, fince whose death they have all beene tributarie vn-

The South-east part of Zegzeg bordereth vpon Cano, and it is distant from Casena almost an hundred and fiftie miles. The inhabitants are rich , and have great traffique vinto other Nations. The Kingdom Some part of this Kingdome is plaine, and the relidue Mountainous, but the Mountaines are extremely colde, and the Plaines intollerably hot. And because they can hardly indure the sharpeneffe of Winter, they kindle great fires in the midft of their houses, laying the coles thereof vider their high bediteads, and so betaking themselues to sleepe. Their fields abounding with water, are exceeding fruitfull, and their houses are built like the houses of the Kingdome of Cafena. They had a King of their owne in times past, who being slaine by Ischia (as is aforesaid) they have ever fince beene fabiect vnto the faid Ifchia.

The Region of Zanfara bordering Eastward vpon Zegzeg, is inhabited by most base and Ruflicall people. Their fiel is abound with Rice, Mill, and Cotton. The Inhabitants are tall in stature and extremely blacke, their vifages are broade, and their dispositions most saluage and bru-

tish. Their King also was flaine by Ischia, and themselves made tributarie. Thefe Kingdomes of Guangara adiogneth South-easterly vpon Zanfara. Southward thereof lyeth a Region greatly abounding with gold. But now they can have no traffique with forren Nations, for they are molested on both sides with most cruell enemies. For Westward thev are opposed by Ischia, and Eastward, by the King of Borno. When I my selfe was in Borno. King Abraham having levied an huge Armie, determined to expell the Prince of Guangara out 20 of his Kingdome, had hee not been hindred by Homar the Prince of Gaoga, which beganne to affaile the Kingdome of Borno. Wherefore the King of Borno being drawne home into his owne Countrey, wasenforced to give over the conquest of Guangara. So often as the Merchants of Guangara trauel into the forefaid Region abounding with gold, because the wayes are fo rough and difficult that their Camels cannot goe vpon them, they carry their wares vpon flaues backes; who being laden with great burthens, doe vfually trauell ten or twelue n.iles a day, Yea, fome I faw that made two of those journies in one day: 2 wonder it is to see what heavy butthens thele poore flaues are charged withall; for befides the Merchandize, they carry victuals also for their Masters, and for the Souldiers that goe to guard them.

ictuals allo for their matters, and for the Southern the Prouince of Guangara, and from 30 thence extending Eastward fine hundred miles, is diffant from the Fountaine of Niger almost an hundred and fiftie miles, the South part whereof adioyning vnto the Defart of Set, and the North part vnto that Defart which lyeth towards Barca. The Inhabitants, in Summer goe all naked fane their prime members which they couer with a peece of leather : but all Winter they are clad in skinnes, and haue beds of skinnes also. They embrace no Religion at all, being neither Christians, Mahumetans, ner Iewes, nor of any other Profession, but living after a brutish manner, and having wives and children in common; and (as I vnderflood of a certaine Merchant that abode a long time among them) they have no proper names at all, but every one is nicknamed according to his length, his fatnesse, or some other qualitie. They have a most puissant named according to his length, his latitude, to be an people called Bardon. He is at perpetuall enmitte with a certain people inhabiting beyond the Defart of Seu; who in times pail, mar-ching with an huge army of footemen our the faid Defart, waited a great part of the Kingdome of Borno. Whereupon the King of Borno fent for the Merchants of Barbarie, and willed knowledgeno them to bring him great flore of Hories; for in this Countrey they vie to exchange Hories for flaues, and to give lifteene, and fometimes twenty flaues for one horfe. And by this meanes there were abundance of horses brought: howbert, the Merchants were conftrained to stay for their flaues till the King returned home conquerour with a great number of Captines, and have no religion fatisfied his creditors for their Horfes. The King feemeth to be manuellous rich; for his Spurres, on, hau ngno his bridles, platters, diffies, pors, and other vest-ls wherein his meate and drinke are brought to the table, are all of pure gold : yea, and the chaines of his Dogs and Houndes are of gold also. Howbeit, this King is extremely conetous, for he had much rather pay his debts in flaues then

Gaoga bordering Westward vpon the Kingdome of Borno, and extending Eastward to the Confines of Nubia, adioyneth Southward vnto a certaine Defart, fituate vpon a crooked and winding part of Nilm, and is enclosed Northward with the frontiers of Agypt. It firetcheth from East to West, in length fine hundred miles , and as much in breadth. They have neither The Kingdom humanitie nor learning among them, but are most rutticall and fauage people, and especially shole that inhabite the Mountaines, who goe all naked fauing their printies : Their houles are made of boughes and rafts, and are much subject to burning, and they have great abundance of Cattell, whereinto they give diligent attendance. This Prince greatly honoreth all learned men, 60 and especially such as are of the linage of Mahumet, I my selve being in his Court, a certaine Noble-man of Damiata brought him very rich and royall gifts; as namely, a gallant Horfe, a Turkish Sword, and a Kingly robe, with certaine other particulars, that cost about an hundred and fiftie Duckats at Carro: in recompence whereof, the King gaue him fine flanes, fine Camels,

The Region of Zanfara. The King of Zanfara flaine by Igeria, and the people mid tri-The Towne and Kingdome

of Gumgara.

Gold.

Izchia.

The Kingdom of Berno. Where no religious fer Ceremonies are, men are faid to have no religion: yet vpon better norice of fuch pares, alway an of and communication with the Deuil is found. God as in Brafil,&c. Alio Saurees

> The Defart of Fifteene or twentie flaues

CHAP.I.S.8. Nilus not nauigable betweene Nubia and Egypt.

fine hundred Ducats of that Region, and an hundred Elephants teeth of wonderfull bigness. Nubia bordering Weltward vpon the Kingdome last described, and stretching from thence vn-Nuisia bordering Weltward vpon the kingsome tast destances, and the tenting from piece with the continuous and the South-fide with the Defart of Gran, and on the North-fide wild of Naisia, to Nilsu, is enclosed on the South-fide with the yearnot passe by water from this Kingdome into Egypt. The River of the Confines of Egypt, Howbeit they cannot passe by water from this Kingdome into Egypt. The River of the Confines of Egypt. The River of Naisu is in Jome places no deeper then a man may wade over on foot. The uigable beprincipall Towne of this Kingdome called Dangala, is exceeding populous, and contayneth to twice Nutrition the number of ten thousand Families. The Kingdome of Nubic is most rich in Corne and Su, and Egypt. gar, which notwithflanding they know not how to vie. Also in the Citie of Dangala there is The rich Comgreat plentie of Ciuet and Sandal-wood. This Region aboundeth with Iuory likewife, because modities of 10 heere are so many Elephants taken. Heere is also a most strong and deadly poyson; one graine Most strong whereof being divided amongst ten persons, will kill them all within leste then a quarter of an Poylon, houre : but if one man taketh a grain, he dyeth thereof out of hand. An ounce of this Poylon is fold for an hundred Duckats; neyther may it be fold to any but to forraine Merchants, and whosoeuer buyeth it is bound by an Oath not to vie it in the Kingdome of Nabia. All fuch as buy of this Poylon are constrayned to pay as much vnto the King, as to the Merchant : but if any man felleth Poylon without the Princes knowledge, he is prefently put to death. The peop ple themselves are called Bugiha, and are most base and miserable, and live onely vpon Milke, Butha; Camels fiesh, and the fiesh of such beasts as are taken in those Defarts. Some times they receive Tribute of the Gouernour of Suachen, and sometimes of the Gouernours of Dangala. They had once a rich Towne fituate vpon the Red Sea called Zibid, whereunto belonged a commodious 20 Hauen, being opposite vnto the Hauen of Zidem, which is fortie miles distant from Mesca. But

an hundred yeares fince it was destroyed by the Soldan, because the Inhabitants received certaine Wares which should have beene carried to Mecca, and at the sametime the famous Port of Zibid was destroyed, from whence notwithstanding was gathered a great yearely Tribute.

> d. VIII. Notes of principall thingsin Iohn Leo hu eight Booke of the Historic of Africa. HONDIVS his Map of Egypte

ward with the Land of the foresaid people called Buyiba, and with the River of Ni hundred and lim. It firetcheth in length from the Mediterran Sea to the Land of the people called Bugiha, afirst miles . bout foure hundred and fiftie miles: but in breadth it is very narrow; fo that it contayneth long.
The Courie of nought but a small distance betweene both the bankes of Nilm, and the barren Mountaynes bordering upon the foresaid Desarts, being inhabited onely in that place where Nilm is separate from the faid Mountaynes: albeit.towards the Mediterran Sea it extendeth it felfe formewhat broader. For Nilm about fourescore miles from the great Citie of Cairo is divided into two IO branches, one whereof running in his Chanell Westward, returneth at length into the mayne ftreame from whence hee tooke his originall, and having passed about three core miles beyond Catro, it divideth it selfe into two other branches, whereof the one runneth to Damiata, and the other to Rofetto. And out of that which trendeth to Damiata iffueth another branch, which discharging it selfe into a Lake, passeth through a certaine gullet or strait into the Mediterran Sea, upon the banke whereof flandeth the most ancient Citie of Teneffe: and this division of Wilm into fo many streames and branches causeth Egypt (as I have beforesaid) to bee so narrow. All this Province is plaine, and is most fruitfull for all kind of Graine and Pulse. There are most pleafant and greene Medowes, and great store of Geese and other Fowles. The Countrey people are of a fwart and browne colour: but the Citizens are white. Garments they weare which 20 are ftrait downe to their wastes, and broad beneath, and the sleenes likewise are strait. They coter their heads with a round and high habit, called by the Italians a Dulipan. Their shooes are made according to the ancient fashion. In Summer they weare Garments of parti-coloured Cotton: but in Winter they vie a certayne Garment lined with Cotton, which they call Chebre: but the chiefe Citizens and Merchants are apparelled in cloth of Europe. The Inhabitants are of and honeft, cheerefull, and liberall disposition. For their victuals they vie a kind of new and extreme falt Cheefes, and fowre Milke also artificially congealed: which fare albeit they account very daintie, yet cannot frangers digeft it, and into euery Dish almost they put sowre

He most noble and samous Province of Egypt bordering Westward vpon the Desarts of

Barca, Namidia, and Libya; Eastward vpon the Desarts lying betweene Egypt it

felfe and the Red Sea; and Northward vpon the Mediterran Sea; is inclosed South-

A division of

Milke. Since the Mahumetans were Lords of Egypt, it hath beene divided into three parts. For the 30 Region from Carro to Roletto is called the shoare of Errif: and from Cairo to the Land of Bagiba, it is called Sabid, that is to fay, The firme Land : but the Region adiovning upon that branch of Nilsu, which runneth towards Damiata and Teneffe, they call by the name of Bechria or Maremma. All Egypt is exceeding fertile : but the Prouince of Sahid excelleth the two other parts for abundance of Corne, Cattle, Fowles and Flaxe; and Maremma aboundeth with Cotton and Sugar. Howbeit, the Inhabitants of Marenma, and Errif are farre more civill then the people of Sahid: because those two Provinces lye neerer vnto the Sea, and are more frequented by European, Barbarian, and Affrian Merchants : but the people of Sahid have no conuerfation with strangers, except it be with a few Ethiopians.

The ancient Originall of the Egyptions.

The Egyptians (as Mojes writeth) fetch their original from " Mefraim the Sonne of Chus, 40 the Sonne of Cham, the Sonne of Noe; and the Hebrewes call both the Countrey and the Inhabitants of Egypt by the name of Mefraim. The Arabians call Egypt it felte Mefre, but the Inhabitants Chibith. And Chibith (they fay) was the man, that first tooke vpon him the Gouernment of this Region, and beganne first to build houses thereon. Also the Inhabitants call themrecorded tobe felues by the same name : neither are there left any true Egyptians , besides a few Christians, which are at this present remayning. The residue embracing the Mahumetan Religion, haue Some of them mingled themselves amongst the Arabians and the Moores. This Kingdome was governed many yeares by the Egyptians themselves, as namely, by the Kings that were called Pharas, (who by their Monuments and admirable Buildings, feeme to have beene mightie Princes) and also by the Kings called Ptolomei. Afterward, being fubdued vnto the Romane Empire, this Kingdome 50 fince the comming of Christ was converted vnto the Christian Religion, under the faid Romane Gouernment : fince the decay of which Empire, it fell into the possession of the Emperours of Constantinople; who being very carefull to maintayne this Kingdome, were at length deprived thereof by the Mahametans, under the conduct of Hamrus the Sonne of Hafi being appointed Captaine Generall over the Arabian Armie of Homar, the second Califa or Mahumetan Patriarke of that name : who permitting all men to have their owne Religion , required nought but Tribute at their hands. The faid Captaine built vpon the banke of Nilm, a certaine Towne called by the Arabians Fustato, which word fignifieth in their Language a Tabernacle for when he first vindertooke this Expedition, he marched through wild and defart places void of Inhabitants, fo that his Armie was conftrayned to lye in Tents. The common people call this Towne Mefre Hatichi, that is to fay, the ancient Citie; in comparison of which Carro may not vn- 60 fitly be called the New Citie.

Neither Cairo nor any place neere vnto it, can by any likelihood challenge that they were at any time inhabited by the ancient Pharaos. But heere it is be noted, that the Nobilitie of the ancient

ancient Egyians dwelt in times patt in the Region of Sabid beyond Caro, in the Cities of Fium, of Mankelmin, and in other fuch famous Cities. Howbeit, after Egypt was conquered by the Romases, the Egyptian Nobilitie planted themselues in the Region of Errif, vpon the Sea shoare thereof, namely, about the Cities of Alexandria, Rosetto, and other famous Townes retayning as yet the Laine names. Allo when the Romane Empire was translated into Greece, the faid Nobilitie still inhabited upon the Sea shoare, the Emperours Lieutenant residing at Alexandria: but after the Mahumetans got the Dominion of Egypt, the foresaid Nobiltie retyred themselves into the in-land, hoping thereby to reape a double commoditie:namely, first, in that they might bee a meanes to pacific the Kingdome on both fides of them; and fecondly, that they might bee 70 free from the inuations of the Christians, whereof they should have beene in danger, had they

remayned any longer voon the Sea Coaft. The Ayre of this Countrey is hot and vnwholesome : and it rayneth heerevery seldome or neier. And Rame is the staff of many Diffasfes in Egypt: for in raynic weather some of the E- Thequalitie & metter. And Rame is true came of month of the horizont and others vato a strange kinde of the Ayrein E-(welling in ther prity Members: which swelling the Physicians impute vnto Salt Cheese and grat. Beefe, which are the common Dyet of the Egyptams. In Sommer time this Countrey is most Kaine you holextremely hot, for a remedie of which heat they build in euery Towne certaine high Towres, loine. having one doore aloft, another beneath, right over against the houses, through the tops whereof the wind paffing down-ward, doth somewhat coole and refresh the Ayre: otherwise in re-

20 gard of the intolerable heat of the Sunne it were impossible for any man to line there. Somegard of the intolerable heat of the Sunne it were impossible for any man to fine the some Extreme Petime the Pelitience is fo hot among them, especially at Cairo, that sometimes there dye twiches thousand persons thereof on a day. But with the French Poxe, I thinke, that no other Countries the French Poxe, I thinke, that no other Countries the French Poxe, I thinke the properties the French Poxe. trey vnder Heauen is so molested, nor that contagnesh so many people infected therewith. A- Mahdie most bout the beginning of Aprill, they reape their Corne, and having reaped it, they prefently rife in Egps. thrash the same; neyther shall you see one cate of their Corne standing till the twentieth of

The inundation or overflow of *Nilus* beginneth about the middeft of Iune, increasing after- The increase of ward for the space of fortie dayes, and for the space of other fortie dayes also decreating : du- Nilas. ring which time all the Cities and Townes of Egypt are like vnto Hands, which none can come

30 vnto but by Boats and Barges. At this time also Nibu is very fit to be failed vpon with veffels of burthen; some whereof are so bigge that they will contayine fixe or seven thouland burbels * of Come and some hundreds of Cattell tegether: and in these Vessels they sayle onely Maggia. downe the ftreame : for against the streame or without the ouer-flowing time they would scarlly passe emptie. The Egyptians according to the increase of Nilm, doe foresee the plentie or dearth of the yeere following : as wee will more at large declare, when wee come to ipeake of the Iland of Nilus over against the olde Citie, where the inundation of Nilus is measured. Netther is it our purpose in this place particularly to describe all the Cities of Egypt , because our African Writers are of divers opinions thereabout; for some would have Egypt to bee a part of Africa, but others are of a contray minde. Divers there are that affirme, that part of Egyprad-40 ioyning vpon the Defarts of Earbarie, Namidi, and Libya, to belong vnto Africa. Some others

afer ibe vnto Africa all those places that border upon the principall and mayne Channell of Ni-Im : but as for other places, as namely, Marf, Fum, Semenud, Damanbore, Berelles, Teneffe, and Damiata, they thinke them not to be situate in Africa: which opinion, I my selfe, alto vpon many and great reasons take to be true. Wherefore my purpole is to describe none other Cities but such as stand neere the mayne and principall Channell of Nilus.

The ancient Citie of Bestra built by the Egyptians upon the Mediterran Sea, and standing The Citie of twentie miles Westward from Alexandria, was in times past enuironed with most strong wals, Bolin, and adorned with most beautifull and stately Buildings. At this present, it is compalled with many possessions or grounds bearing Dates, whereof no man taketh charge nor reapeth any 50 commoditie : for when Alexandria was wonne by the Christians, the Inhabitants abandoned

this Citie, and fled towards the Lake called Buchaira. The great Citie of Alexandria in Egypt, founded by Alexander the Great, not without the The great Ciaduise of most famous and skilfull Architects, vpon a beautifull point of Land stretching into the drivin Eggs. Mediterran Sea, and being distant fortie miles Westward of Nilm, was in times past, till it grew fubiect vnto the Mahumetans, most sumptuously and strongly built, as divers and kindry Authors beare record. Afterward this Citie decaying, many yearestogether, was deprined of the ancient renowne and honour, and remayned in manner defolate, because no Merchants of Greece nor of any other part of Europe exercised any longer Traffique therein, Howbeit, a certaine craftie Mahumetar Partiste made the rate people beleeve, that by the Prophetic of Mahumet, most emble Indiabeters and Indiabeters and Indiabeters are the rate of the Prophetic of Mahumet, most emble Indiabeters were restricted upon the third benefit to the Prophetic of Mahumet, most emble indiabeters.

ample Indulgences were granted vnto all fuch as would inhabit the Citie or guard it for certaine dayes, and would beltow fome Almes for a publike benefit: by which wily ftratageme the Citie was in short time filled with forraine people, which from all places resorted thereunto: by whom were built many houses need vinto the Citie wals, and many Colledges of Students, and divers Monasteries for the reliefe of Pilgrims.

Zzzz 2

Ancient traf-

faucotthe

Eng! hvnto

Alexandria,

The Citie it felfe is foure iquare, and hath foure Gates to enter in at : one standing on the East file towards Nilm, another on the South fide towards the Lake of Buchaira, the third Welfward towards the Delart of Barca, and the fourth towards the Mediterran Sea and the Hauen: whereat stand the Searchers and Customers, which ransacke strangers even to their very shirts for they demand custome, not enely for wares and Merchandize, but also some allowance in the hondred for all kinde of money. Neere vinto this Citie-waller there are two other Gates alfo. heing dittiled afunder by a faire walke, and a most impregnable Castle, which standeth voon the S rang or Wharfe of the Port, commonly called Marfa el Bargi, that is to fav, the Port of the Cattle : in which Port ride the principall and best ships, namely, such as come from Venice. Genoa , Raguifa, with other Ships of Europe. For hither refort the English , the Low Duich, 10 the Biscaines, the Portugals, and men of all other Nations in Europe for traffique take. Howbeit this Port is most vivally frequented by the Ships of Appulia, Sicilia, and of Greece, which

This in Los fime 1526.

are Turkilb Ships; all which refort into this Harbour to faue themselves from Pyrats. and from tempestuous weather. Another Port there is also, called Marsa Essil Sela, that is to fav. the Port of the Chaine, wherein the Ships of Barbary, namely, those of Tunis and of the He of Gerbi harbour themselues. The Christians are constrained to pay about the tenth part of all wares that they bring in and carry out, but the Mahametans pay but the twentieth part : and whatfoeuer wares are carried by land to Cairo pay no custom at all. And at this present that part of the Cirie which is next vnto Caire is the most famous and best furnished with Merchandize brought by Merchants from all places of the world. The other parts of this Citie are destitute 20 both of Cuility and Inhabitants: for except one long ffreet, and that part of the Citic next the Hauen which is full of Merchants shops, and inhabited by Christians, the residue is void and defolate. Which delolation happened at that time, when Lewis the fourth, King of France, being reflored to liberty by the Soldan, the King of Cyprus with a fleet, partly of Venetians, and partly tacked by the king of Cyprus, of French-men fuddenly affailed Alexandria, and with great flaughter furprized and facked the fame. But the Soldan comming with an huge armie to refcue Alexandria, to discouraged the C1prians, that they burnt downe the houses thereof, and betooke themselves to flight. Whereupon the Soldan repairing the walles, and building a Cattle neere vnto the Hauen, the Citie grew by little and little into that effate, wherein it standeth at this present.

Alexandria vaulted.

thereof.

ftians called

Alexanders Se-

In the Citie of Alexandria there is a certaine high Mount, fashioned like vnto the place called Teffaccio at Rome, whereon, although it hath no naturall fituation, are found diversearthen Veffels of great antiquity. Vpon the top of the faid Mount standeth a Turret, where a certaine officer is appointed to watch for fuch Ships as direct their course towards the Citie, who Watch Tower. for every thip that he giveth notice of vnto the Cultomers, receiveth a certain fee: but if he chanceth to fall afleepe, or to be out of the way at the arrivall of any Ship, whereof he certifieth not the Cuffomers, he paieth double for his negligence into the Soldans Exchequer Vnder each house of this Citie there is a great vaulted Citterne built youn mighty Pillars and Arches : whereinto Nilus brought the water of Nilus at every inundation is conneced under the walles of the Citie, by a cerby a fluce into taine wonderfull and most artificiall fluce standing without the Citie it felfe. But these Ciflernes growing fometime corrupt and foule, are often in Summer the occasion of many diseases and infirmities. This Citie flandeth in the midft of a landy Defart, and is deflitute of Gardens 49 and Vines, neither is the foile round about it apt to heare Corne; fo that their Corne is brought them from places forty miles diffant. Howbeit neere the forefaid fluce, whereby the water of Nilm is conveied into the Citie, are certaine little Gardens, the fruits whereof being growen to ripenelle are to vinwhole fome, that they breed Feuers and other nov fome difeates among the Citizens. Sixe miles Westward of Alexandria, among certaine ancient buildings, standeth a pillar of a wonderfull height and thickneffe, which the Arabians call Hemaduffavar, that is to fay, the pillar of trees. Of this pillar there is a Fable reported, that Ptolemer one of the Kings of Alexandrig built it youn an extreme point of land fretching from the Hauen, whereby to the end he might defend the Citie from the inuation of forraine enemies, and make it inuincible, he placed a certaine Steele-glaffe vpon the top thereof, by the hidden vertue of which glaffe, as many Ships as pasted by while the glasse was vncouered should immediately be fet on fire : but the faid glaffe being broken by the Mahumetans, the fecret vertue thereof vanished, and the great pillar whereon it stood was removed out of the place. But this is a most ridiculous narration, and fic for babes to give credite vnto.t this prefent there are among it the ancient Inhabitants of Alexand is many Christians called Iacobites, being all of them Artizans and Merchants : these Iacobites have a Church of their owne to refort vnto, wherein the body of S. Marke the Evangelift lay in times pail interred, which hath fince beene primily foline by the Venetians, and carried vinto Venice. And the faid Iacobites pay Tribute vinto the Governour of Cairo. Neither is it to be passed over in silence, that in the midst of the ruinous Monuments of Alexandria, there remaineth as yet a certaine little house built in forme of a Chappell, and containing a Sepulci re much honoured by the Mabumetans, wherein they affirme, out of the authoritie of their Alceron, that the body of the High Prohpet and King (as they terme him) Alexander the great lieth buri-Fally terranam ed. And thither refort yearely great multitudes of Pilgrimes from forraine Nations, to a fore and prate: a Saint. reuerence the faid Sepulchre, and oftentimes do befrow large Almes thereupon.

The Citie of Roletto was built by a flaue of a certaine Mahumetan Patriarke and Gouernour The Citie of of Egypt, vpon the Eafterne banke of Nilus three miles from the Mediterran Sea, not far from Rafid called by of Egypt, vpon the Batterne Danke of Attach time think and the place where Nilsa dischargeth his streames into the faid Sea. Heere is a stately Bath-stone Rosette. alfo, hauing fountaines both of cold and hot water belonging thereunto, the like whereof for loby Leo was at the tely and commodious building is not to be found in all Egypt believes. I my felfe was in this Refid the fame Citie when Selim the great Turke returned this way from Alexandria, who with his private time when Se-Citie when Selim the great Turke returned this way from The and familiar friends beholding the faid Bath-stone, seemed to take great delight and content. Turke passed

Thebe, at this prefent, containeth but three hundred Families in all, being most of them very Table. 10 flately and sumptuously built. It aboundeth with Corne, Rice, and Sugar, and with certaine fruits of a most excellent taste, called Muse. It is also furnished with great store of Merchants The fruits caland Artificers : but the most part of the Inhabitants are husbandmen : and if a man walke the led suge ftreets in the day-time, he shall see none but trim and beautifull women. The Territorie adiacent aboundeth with Date-trees, which grow fo thicke, that a man cannot fee the Citie, till he approacheth nigh vnto the walles. Here grow likewife store of Grapes, Figs, and Peaches, which are carried in great plentie vnto Caro. Without the Citie there are many ancient Monuments, as namely, pillars, inscriptions in Latine, Greeke, and Egyptian Characters, and wals of a great thicknesse, built of excellent stone, and such a number of runnous places, that this Citie feemeth, in times palt, to have beene very large.

The women of Fuon fortie miles South from Rofecco, live in fo great libertie, that they may Fuena 20 goe whither they will at the day-time, returning home at night, without any controlement of their husbands. The fields adiacent abound greatly with Dates, and neere vnto them there is a certaine Plaine which is very apt for Sugar and Corne : howbeit, the Sugar Canes there Sugar, bring not foorth perfect Sagar, but in flead thereof a certaine kinde of Honie like fope; which they vie throughout all Egypt, because there is but little other Honie in the whole

Quer against the foresaid Citie the River of Nilse makethan Ile, which being situate on an Gegirat Eddehigh place, bringeth foorth all kinde of fruitfull trees except Oliues. They have a most beautifull Temple at Derette, and the Citizens are exceeding richaor their say, the golden

ground yeeldeth fuch abundance of Sugar, that they pay yeerely vnto the Soldan an hundred Great abunthouland peeces of Gold, called in their language Saraff, for their libertie of making and refis dance of Su-30 ning thereof. In this Citie flandeth a certaine great house like vnto a Carle, wherein are their gar. Prefics and Caldrons, for the boyling and preparing of their Sugar. Neither did I ener in all my life fire fee fo many workemen emploied about that bufine fle; whole daily wages (as I vnderstood time taken b

by a certaine publike officer) amounted to two hundred Saraffi. Caire is commonly reputed to be one of the greatest and most famous cities in all the whole the Saidens ex-

world. But leaving the common reports and opinions thereof, I will exactly definibe the forme timpate. and eftate wherin it now ftandeth. And that I may begin with the Etymologie or derivation of A Description and efface wherin it now it and efficient and that I may begin with the Etymologie of defined of the huge & the name, Cairo is an Arabian word, corruptly pronounced by the people of Europe: for the admirable Citrue Arabian word is El Chabira, which fignifieth an inforcing or imperious Mestresse. This City tie of care. built in ancient times by one Geboar Chetib a Dalmatian flane (as I have before fignified in the *1526. 40 beginning of my Difcourse) containeth within the walles not aboue eight thousand Families. The Founder, being Inhabited by Noblemen, Gentlemen, and Merchants that fell wares brought from all other places. The famous Temple of Caire, commonly called, Gemih Hafhare, that is to fay, the The Temple. glorious Temple, was built alfoby the forelaid flaue, whom we affirmed to be the Founder of the City, and whose surname was Halbare, that is to say, Famous, being given him by the Mahumetan Patriarke that was his Prince. This Citie standeth vpon a most beautifull Plaine, neere vnto a certaine Mountaine called Mucatum, about two miles distant from Nilus, and is enuironed with flately walles, and fortified with Iron-gates: the principall of which gates is called Babe Nanfre, that is, the gate of Victory, which standeth Eastward towards the Defartof the Red Sea; and the gate called Beb Zuaila, being next vnto the old Citie and to Nilu; and 50 also Bebel Futub, that is to fay, the gate of Triumph, flanding towards the lake and the fields. And albeit, Cairo aboundeth every where with all kind of Merchants and Artificers, yet that is the principall ftreet of the whole Citie which stretcheth from the gate of Nanfre, to the gate of Zuaila, for in it are built most startly and admirable Palaces and Colledges, and most sumptuous Temples, among which is the Temple of Ginuth Elbechin, the third Schilmaticall Califa of Cairo. Other Temples there are of a maruellous bignes, which to describe in particular. I thinke it superfluous. Heere are many Bath-stones also very artificially built. Next of all is the street

called Beinel Cafrain, containing to the number of threefcore Cookes or Victualiers shops, furn onified with veffels of Tinne: there are certaine other shops also, wherein are to be fold delicated waters or drinkes made of all kinds of fruits, being for Noblemen to drinke of, and thele waters Delicate they keepe most charily in fine vessels, partly of glasse, and partly of Tinne: next vnto these are drinks made shops where divers confections of Hony and Sugar, vnlike vnto the confections of Europe, are allkind or to be fold : then follow the Fruiterers shops, who bring out-landish fruits out of Spria, to wit,

Quinces. Pomegranates, and other fruits which grow not in Egypt: next vnto them are the shops of juch as fell Egges, Cheefe, and Pancakes fried with Oyle. And next of all there is a freete of the principall Artificers Shops. Beyond which fireete flandeth a Colledge built by the Soldan. called Ghaser, who was flaine in a battaile against Selim the great Turke. And next vnto the Colledge are divers rankes of Drapers Shops. In the first ranke there is most excellent out-landifh Linnen Cloth to he fold, as namely, fine Cloth of Cotten brought from Balabach, and Cloth called Mofall.that is, of Ninou, of a maruellous breadth and fineneffe, whereof Noblemen and others of account, haue Shirts made them, and Scarffes to weare vpon their Dulipans. Belides these, there are certaine Mercers Shops where the rich Stuffes of Italy, namely, Silke, Damaske. Veluet, Cloth of Gold, and fuch like are to be bought, vnto which Stuffes I neuer faw any comparable(to my remembrance) in Italy, where they vie to be made. Next who the Mercers are the Woollen Drapers, which bring Cloth out of Europe, as namely, from Florence, Venice, Flander, and other places. Next of all there are Chamblets to be fold: and from thence the way li. eth to the Gate of Zuaila, at which Gate dwell great store of Artificers. Neere vnto the faid way flandeth the famous Burse, called Conen Halili, wherein the Persian Merchants dwell. It is built very stately in manner of a Kings Palace, and is of three stories high beneath it are certaine convenient roomes, whither Merchants for the exchange of rich and could Wares doe refort: for here doe the principal and most wealthie Merchants abide: whose Wares are Spices, precious Stones, Cloth of India, & fuch like. Next vnto the Burfe standeth a street of Shops, where al kind of Perfumes, namely, Ciuet, Muske, Amber, and fuch like are to be fold: which commodities are 20 here in fo great plenty, that if you ask for twenty pounds of Musk, they w.l prefently thew you an hundred. Next followeth the ftreet of the Paper-Merchants, where you may buy most excellent and smooth Paper: here also are to be fold lewels and precious Stones of great value, which the Brokers carrie from one Shop to another. Then come you to the Gold-Smahs freete, being inhabited for the most part by I enes, who deale for riches of great importance. And next unto the Gold-Smithes are certaine streetes of Vpholsters or Brokers, who fell the apparell and rich furniture of Noblemen and other Citizens at the fecond hand, which are dot Cloakes, Coates. Napery, or luch like, but things of exceeding price and value: amongst which I my felie once faw a beautifull Paulion embroydered with Needle-worke, and befet with Pearles that weighed fortie pounds, which Pearles being taken out of it, were fold for ten thousand Saraffi. In this Citie also there is a most stately Hospitall built by Piperis the first Soldan of the Mamalucks race: the yearely reuenues whereotamount vnto two hundred thouland Saraffi. Hither may any impotent or distasted persons resort, and bee well prouided of Physicians, and of all things neceffarie for those that are sicke, who if they chance to die here, all their goods are due vnto

The Suburbe, called Bed Zuaila, belonging vnto Cairo, and containing about twelve thousand

most, as within the Citie it felfe : and the Citizens haue Shops both here and in the Citie, as to likewise many Inhabitants of this Suburbe maintaine Families in the Citie also. Amongst all

Families, beginneth at the Gate of Zuala, and extendeth Westward almost a mile and a halfe;

Southward it bordereth vpon the Palace of the Soldan, and stretcheth Northward for the space of a mile vnto the Suburbe, called Beb Elloch. Here dwell as many Noblemen and Gentlemen al-

the buildings of this Suburbe, the principall is that flately Colledge built by Soldan Hefen, being

of fuch a wonderfull height and great strength, that oftentimes the Colledges have presumed to

rebell against the Soldan, and therein to fortife themselves against the whole Citie, and to dis-

The Suburbe called Gemeb Tailon, confining Eastward vpon the ferefaid Suburbe of Beb

Zmaila, exendeth Westward to certaine ruinous places neere vnto the old Citie. Before the

foundation of Cairo this Suburbe was erected by one Tailon, who was subject vinto the Califa of

Bagder, and Gouernour of Egypt, and was a most famous and prudent men. This Tailon leaving

the old Citie, inhabited this Suburbe, and adorned the same with a most admirable Palace, and

fumptuous Temple. Here dwell also great store of Merchants and Artificers, especially such as

charge Ordnance against the Soldans Cattle, which is but halfe a Crosse-bow shot distant.

Affately Hof-

The Suburbs.

Temple,

Palace and

are Moores of Barbary. The Suburbe, called Beb Ellach, being distant from the Walles of Caire about the space of a mile, and containing almost three thousand Families, is inhabited by Merchants and Artizaus of divers forts, as well as the former. Vpon a certaine large place of this Suburbe flandeth a great Palace, and a flately Colledge, built by a certaine Mammaluck, called lazbach, being Counfellor vnto the Soldan of those times; and the place it felte is called after his name, lazbachia. Hither, after Mahametan Sermons & deuotions, the common people of Cano, together with the Bawds and Harlots, doe vitally refort; and many Stage-Players also, and such as teach Camels, Alles, and Dogs, to dance; which dancing is a thing very delightfull to behold, and especially that of the 60 Affe: who having frisked and danced a while, his Master comes vnto him, and telishim with a loud voyce, That the Soldan being about to build some great Palice, must vie all the Asses of Care to carry Morter, Stones, and other needfury promition. Then the Affe falling prefently to the ground, and lying with his heeles vpward, maketh his belly to swell, and closeth his eyes as

if he were starke dead. In the meane while his Master lamenting the missortune of the Asse vnto. These Asses the standers by, earnestly craueth their friendly affistance and liberalitie to buy him a new Asie, are somewhat the transers by, cameray cracks much money as hee can get; You are much deceived my his Curtall, And having gathered of each one as much money as hee can get; You are much deceived my his Curtall, mis Curall,
Mafters (quoti he) that thinke mine Alle to be dead: for the hungry Iade knowing his Mafters that plaid his necessity, hath wrought this sleight, to the end hee might get some money to buy him Prouen- Prizes all Esq. der. Then turning about to the Alfe, hee commandeth him with all speed to arise: but the land over. cer. I sen turning about to the pure the command and beate him neurong much: whereupon, Affe. lyeth flarke full, though hee command and beate him neurong much: whereupon, turning against to the people; Bee it knowne (quoth hee) who you all, that the Soldan turning against to the people; Bee it knowne (quoth hee) who you all, that the Soldan turning against the command turning against the sold to the command turning turning the command turning turning the command turning tur

hath published an Edict or Proclamation, that to morrow next all the people shall goe Io forth of the Citie to behold a Triumph, and that all the honourable and beautifull Ladies and Gentlewomen shall ride vpon the most comely Asses, and shall give them Oates to eate, and and Gentiewomen in all the viole the moleculary Ames and in all gue them Ozers to exceed the Christial water of Nulls to drinke. Which words being ference ended, the Affe fieldenly flarreth from the ground, prancing and leaping for ioy: then his Mafter profecuting ftill his narration; But (faith he) the Warden of our streete hath borrowed this goodly Asse of mine for his deformed and old Wife to ride vpon. At these words the Asse, as though he were indued with humaine reason, coucheth his eares, and limpeth with one of his legges, as if it were quite out of joynt. Then faith his Mafter; What, fir lade, are you fo in love with faire women? The Affe nodding his head feemeth to fay, yea. Come on therefore Sirra (quoth his Master) and let vs see among all these pretty Damosels, which pleaseth your fancie best. Whereupon the Assegoing 20 about the company, and efpying some woman more comely and beautifull then the rest, walketh directly vnto her and toucheth her with his head : and then the beholders laugh and crie out

amaine: Loe, the Affes Paramour, the Paramour of the Affe. Whereupon, the fellow that flew- South-faying amaine: Loe, the Aries Faramon, the Faramon to the Arie. Wheterpoint, the removing the first earlier wheter he are dealth this fiport leaping Ypon the backe of his Affe indet to fome other place. There is alfo and Break the kind of Chammers or lug-us, which keep certaine little Birds in Cages made after the fulth-the wind of Chammers or lug-us, which keep certaine little Birds in Cages made after the fulthon of Cupboords, which birds will reach vnto any man with their Beaks certaine skroules, containing either his good or euill fuccesse in time to come. And whosoeuer desireth to know his fortune, must giue the Bird an half-penny; which shee taking in her bill, carrieth into a little tortune, mure que que sons au managamy y mana mer camigin mer pout, carriet into a little Boxe, and thea comming forth againe, bringeth the fail stroule in her beake, I my felfe had once a skroule of ill fortune given me, which although I little regarded, yet had I more vinfortunes. 30 nate successe then was contained therein: Also, there are Masters of defence playing at all kind of weapons, and other that fing Songs of the Bartels fought betweene the Arabians and Egyptians, when as the Arabians conquered Egypt, with divers others that fing such Toyes and Ballads

vnto the people.

The Suburbe called Bulach, standing two miles distant from the Walles of the Citie voon the banke of Nilus, containeth foure thouland Families. Vpon the way lying betweene the Suburbe and this Citie, fland divers Houses, and Mills turned about by the strength of beasts. In this Suburbe dwell many Artificers and Merchants, especially such as sell Corne, Oyle and Sugar. Moreover, it is full of stately Temples, Palaces, and Colledges : but the fairest buildings thereof stand along the River of Nilms, for from thence there is a most beautifull prospect woon the Rito uer, and thither doe the Veffels and Barkes of Nitus refort vnto the common flathe of Cairo, being fituate in this Suburbe : at which place you shall see at some times, and especially in the time of Haruell, aboue one thouland Barkes. And here the Officers appointed to receive Cultome for Wares, brought from Alexandria and Damiata have their aboad : albeit, but little tribute be demanded for the faid Wares, because it was paid before at the Port of their arrivall: but those Wares that come out of the firme land of Egypt allow entire custome.

The Suburbe of Carafa built in manner of a Towne, and standing from Mount Muccatima The Suburbe flones cast, and from the Walles of the Citie about two miles, containeth almost two thousand called Charafa-Housholds. But at this day the greatest part thereof lyeth waste and destroyed. Here are many Sepulchers built with high and stately Vaults and Arches, and adorned on the inner fide with divers Emblems and colours, which the fond people adore as the facred Shrines and Monuments 50 of Saints, spreading the pauement with sumptuous and rich Carpets. Hither every Friday morning refort out of the Citie it felfe, and the Suburbs, great multitules of people for deuotions

fake, who bestow liberall and large almes. The Citie Mifralbetich was the first that was built in Egypt in the time of the Mahumetans, The old Citie, The Citie Mifrulbetich was the nitt that was built in Egyps in the fellow of Mahumetan Patri-founded by Hamre, Captaine Generall over the Forces of Homar, the fecond Mahumetan Patri-betich. arke you the banke of Nilus, refembling a Suburbe because it is vinwalled, and containing to the number of fine thousand Families. It is adorned, especially by the River Nilm, with divers Palaces and Houses of Noblemen, and also with the famous Temple of Hamre, being of an hoge Hamresbuge bigneffe, and most stately built. It is also indifferently well prouided of Tradel-men and Artifi- Temple. 60 cers. And here standeth the famous Sepulchre of a Woman, reputed most holy by the Mahnmetans, and called by them Saint Nafiffa, which was the daughter of one called Zenulhebidin, be- Saint Nafifa. ing the sonne of Husein, the sonne of Heli, who was Coulen-german vnto Mabumet. The laid Nifffa feeing all of her Family to be deprined of the Mahametan Patriarkship, left (ufa, a Citie

of Arabia Folix, and came and dwelt in this Citie; vnto whom, partly becaule shee was of the

came thither from the Port of Mount Sinai.

Linage of Mahumet, and partly for that the lived an innocent and blameleffe life, the people after her death ascribed divine honours, canonizing her for a Saint. Wherefore the Schismaticall Patriarcks of her Kindred having got the vpper hand in Egypt, began to build for Nafiffa a most heartifull Shrine or Sepulchre, which they adorned also with Silver Lamps, with Carpets of Silke, and fuch like precious ornaments. So great is the renowne of this Nafifa, that there commeth no Mahametan either by Sea or Land vnto Caire, but he adoreth this Sepulchre, and bringeth his Offering thereunto, as likewife doe all the Mahumetans inhabiting therebut sinfomuch that the yearely blations and Almes offered at this Sepulchre, partly for the reliefe of the poore Kinsfolks of Mahumet, and partly for the maintenance of the Priests which keepe the Gid Sepulchre amount ynto one hundred thousand Saraff; which Priests by fained and coun- 10 terfeit Miracles doe daily delude the minds of the simple, to the end they may the more enflame their blind deuotion, and may ftirre them to greater liberalitie. When Selim the Great Trois wonne the Citie of Caro, his Ianizaries rifling this Sepulchre, found there the summe of fine hundred thousand Saraffi in ready money, besides the Silver Lampes, the Chaines and Carnets : but Selim tooke away a great part of that treasure from them. Such as write the Liues of the Mahumetan Saints, making very honourable mention of this Nafiffa, fay, that the was descended of the noble Familie of Heli and that the was most famous for her vertuous and chafte life : but the fond people and the Priest of that execrable Sepulchre, have deuised many fained and super-fittious Miracles. In this Suburbe also, neere unto the River of Nilm, is the Customers Office, for Sepulchresof fuch wares as are brought out of the Prouince of Sabid. Without the walled Citie stand the 20 Magnificent and flately Sepulchres of the Soldans, built with admirable and huge Arches. But in my time a certaine Solden caused a Walke to be built betweene two high Walls, from the Gate of the Citie to the place of the aforesaid Sepulchres, and at the ends of both Walls caused two Turrets of an exceeding height to be erected, for Markes and Directions vnto fuch Merchants as

Colening

The onely Balme-tree in the world.

increase of

About a mile and an halfe from the faid Sepulchres, in a certaine place called Amalibria, there is a Garden containing the onely Balme-tree, (for in the whole world besides there is not any other tree that heareth true Balme, which Balme-tree growing in the midft of a large Fountaine, and having a short Stocke or Body, beareth leaves like voto Vine-leaves, but that they are not so long: and this Tree (they fay) would veterly wither and decay, if the water of the Fountaine 20 thould chance to be deminished. The Garden is engironed with a strong Wall, whereinto no man may enter, without the speciall fauour and licence of the Gouernour,

In the midft of Nilm, over against the old Citie, standeth the He called Michim, that is to fav.

The Ile of Measure; in which He (according to the Inundation of Nilss) they have a kind of

denice, invented by the ancient Egyptians, whereby they most certainely foresee the plentie or scarcitie of the yeare following throughout all the Land of Egypt. This Iland is well inhabited, and containeth about fifteene hundred Families : youn the extreme point or ende whereof flandeth a most beautiful Palace, built in my remembrance by a Soldan, & a large Temple also, which The manner of is very pleafant, in regard of the coole Streames of Nilm. Vpon another fide of the Iland stanmeasuring the deth an house alone by it selfe, in the midst whereof there is a source toure Cisterne or Chanell of eighteene cubits deepe, whereinto the water of Nilm is conceyed by a certaine Sluce under the 40 ground. And in the midft of the Cifterne there is erected a certaine Pillar, which is marked and called by Plane dissided into fo many cubits, as the Cifterne it felfe containeth in depth. And voon the feasenteenth of June when Nilus beginneth to ouerflow, the water thereof conueyed by the faid Sluce into the Chanell, increaseth daily, sometimes two, and sometimes three fingers, and sometimes halfe a cubit in height. Vnto this place there daily refort certaine Officers appointed by the Senate. who viewing and observing the increase of Ni/us, declare vnto certaine Children how much it hath increased; which children wearing yellow Skarffes vpon their Heads, doe publish the faid increase of Nilus in every streete of the Citie and the Suburbs, and receive gifts every day of the Merchants, Artificers, and Women, so long as Nilus increaseth. The foresaid denice or experiment of the increase of Nilus, is this that followeth: If the water reachethonely to the fifteenth cubit of the forefaid Pillar, they hope for a fruitfull yeare following ; but if it flaveth betweene the twelfth cubit and the fifteenth, then the increase of the yeare will prooue but meane : if it refteth betweene the tenth and twelfth cubits, then is it a tigne that Corne will be fold ten Duckats the bushell : But if it ariseth to the eighteenth cubite, there is like to follow great scarcitie, in regard of too much moysture : and if the eighteenth cubite be surmounted, all Egypt is in danger to be swallowed up by the inundation of Nilus. The Officers therefore declare unto the Children the height of the River, and the Children publish the same in all streets of the Citie, charging the people to feare God, and telling them bow high Nilus is increased. And the people being aftoried at the wonderfull increase of Nilus, wholly exercise themselues in Prayers, and gi- 60 ming of Almes. And thus Nilus continueth forthe dayes increasing, and forthe dayes decreasing; all

which time Corne is fold very deare, because while the Inundation lasteth, every man may fell

at his owne pleasure: but when the eightieth day is once past, the Clerke of the Market appoin-

CHAP.I.S.8. A solemne Feast. Birds basched after a strange manner.

experiment, that the high and low grounds of Egypt have received either too little, or too much or consenient moyflure : all which Cultomes and Ceremonies being duly performed, there followeth to great a Solemnitie, and such a thundering noyfe of Drummes and Trumpets throughout all Cairo, that a man would suppose the whole Citie to be turned vpside downe. And then out all Laro, that a man would appear the Coverings and Carpets, and with Torch-light, Iden Lee took and furnished with most dantie meates and confections, wherewith they iolace themselus. The SOLDAN allo with all bis Nobles and Courtiers reforteth vnto that Sluce or Conduit, which lede be ore is called the great Conduit, and is compafied round about with a wall, who taking an Axe in his the 7 see, had hand breaketh the faid wall, and to doe his Nobles and Courtiers likewife : infomuch, that the coquered Ehand breaketh the faid wall, and to doe his Nobres and Confects incernite another; the Ruer of \$3/4, after to fame part of the wall being cast downe, which stopped the passage of the water, the Ruer of which translations. manter part of the wait being care as which traugh that Conduit, and through all other Conduits lead thrice into and Sluces in the Citie and the Suburbes, that Caire at that time feemeth to be another Venice; Egys. and then may yourow ouer all places of the Land of Egypt. Seuen dayes and seuen nights to. A lolenne gether the foretaid Festivall Solemnitie continueth in Care; during which space the Merchants Feath of seuca and Artificers of the Citie may (according to the custome of the ancient Egyptions) consume and spend in Torches, Pertumes, Consections, Musicke, and such like iollities, all their gaines that they have gotten the whole yeere past. Without the Citie of Care, neere vnto the Suburbe of BebZuaila, itandeth the Caitle of the Soldan upon the fide of the Mountain called Mochanian. This Cattle is enuironed with high and impregnable wals, and contayneth such stately and 20 beautifull Palaces, that they can hardly be described. Paued they are with excellent Marble, on the Roofes they are gilt and cutioully painted, their windowes are adorned with diuers colours, like to the windowes in some places of Europe; and their gates be artificially carued and beautified with Gold and Azure. Some of these Palaces are for the Soldan and his Family; others for the Family of his Wife, and the refidue for his Concubines, his Eunuches, and his Guard. Likewife the Soldan had one palace to keepe publike Feafts in; and another wherein to give audience vnto forraine Ambassadours, and to exalt himselfe with great pompe and Ceremonies: and another all of for the Gouernours and Officials of his Court. But all these are at this present

abolished by Selim the great Turke. The Inhabitants of Cairo are people of a merry, iocund, and cheerefull disposition, such as The customes, 30 will promife much, but performe little. They exercise Merchandize and Mechanicall Arts, and fittles, and fathle yet trail they not not of their owne native foyle. Many Students there are of the Lawes on so the Chut very few of other berall Arts and Sciences. And their Colledges are continually full of treats of eight but very few of other liberall Arts and Sciences. And their Colledges are continually full of Students, yet few of them attayne vnto perfection. The Citizens in Winter are clad in garments of cloth lined with Cotton : in Summer they weare fine thirts; ouer which thirts fome put on linnen garments curiously wrought with filke, and others weare garments of Chamblet, and upon their heads they carry great Turbants couered with cloth of India. The women goe coilly attired, adorning their foreheads and neckes with frontlet and chaines of Pearle, and on their heads they we are a sharpe and slender bonet of a span high, being very precious and rich. The attyre of Gownes they weare of wocllen cloth with frait fleeues, being curioufly imbroydered with the women of

40 needle-worke, ouer which they cast certaine veyles of most excellent fine cloth of India. They care. couer their heads and faces with a kind of blacke Skarfe, through which beholding others, they cannot bee feene themselues. Vpon their feet they weare fine shooes and pantofles, formewhat after the Turkif fashion. These women are so ambitious and proud, that all of them disdaine evther to spinne on to play the Cookes : wherefore their Husbands are constrayned to buy victuals ready drest at the Cookes shops: for very few, except such as haue a great Family, vie to prepare and drelle the r victuals in their owne houles. Also they vouchfate great libertie vnto their Wines : for the good man being gone to the Tauerne or Victualling house, his Wife trick- The libertic of their Willes: for the good man being gone to the Lauerne or Victorining hours, in what the women of ing yo her felfe in coldy apparell, and being perfumed with tweet and precious Odours, walcare. keth about the Citie to solace her selfe, and parley with her kinsfolkes and friends.

They vie to ride upon Aires more then hories, which are broken to fuch a gentle pace, that they go eatier then any ambling horse. These Affes they courr with most costly Furniture and let them out vnto women to ride vpon, together with a Boy to lead the Ase, and certain Footmen to run by. In this City, like as in divers others, great flore of people carry about fundry kinds of victuals to be fold. Many there are also that fell water, which they carry vp and downe in certayne Leather bags upon the backes of Camels : for the Citie (as I faid before) is two miles durant from Nilso. Others carrie about a more fine and handsome Vessell with a Cocke or Spout of Brasse vpon it, hauing a Cup of Myrrhe or Christall in their hands, and these sell water for Birds hareked men to drinke, and for every draught they take a farthing. Others fell young Chickens and o- if or a shange ther Fowlesby medicre, which they hatch after a wonderfull and friange manner. They put, monacra on great numbers of Egges into certayne Ouens built vpon fundry lofts, which Ouens being mc- Efficiency

derately heat, will within feuen dayes conuert all the faid Egges into Chickens. Their meafures are bottomlesse, which being put into the basket of the buyer, and filled full of Chickens they lift it vp, and to let the Chickens fall into the basket. Likewife, fuch as buy those Chickens having kept them a few dayes, carry them about to fell againe. The Cookes theps fland

teth the price of all Victuals, and especially of Corne, according as hee knoweth by the foresaid

840

linkes, all

graine and a

Chron. 1579.

Seds of the

Foure scuerali

open very late : but the shops of other Artificers are shut vp before ten of the clocke, who then walke abroad for their folace and recreation from one Suburbe to another. The Citizens in their common talke vie ribald and filthy speeches; and (that I may passe ouer the rest in silence) it falleth out oftentimes that the Wite will complaine of her Husband vnto the Iudge, that he doth not his dutie nor contenteth her fufficiently in the night feafon, wherupon(asit is permitted by the Mahumetan Law) the women are disorced and maryed vnto other Husbands. Among the Artizans who focuer is the first Inventor of any new and ingennous Device, is clad Thereward of in a Garment of cloth of Gold, and carryed with a noyle of Musicians after him, as it were in

new and inge- triumph from shop to shop, having some money given him at every place. I my selse once saw nious devites one carryed about with folemne Musicke and with great pompe and triumph, because hee had Iq One Marke Sca- bound a Flea m a Chaine, which lay before him on a piece of Paper for all men to behold.

Amongst the fundry Sects of Religion in this Citie, there is one Sect of the Moores called made a Locke and Key and Chenefia : and this Seet liveth vpon Horfe-flefb, fo that their Butchers when they can heare of Chaine, of 43. any halting or lame Iade, buy him forth-with, and fet him vp a fatting, and kaning killed him, the faid Sect of Chenefia come and buy up his fielh hand-smooth. This Sect is rife also amons the Turkes, the Mandalukes, and the people of Asia; and albeit, the Turkes might freely viethe

which a Flea food before-mentioned, yet doe they not inure themselves thereunto. did draw, and weighed out a

In Egypt and in the Citie of Cairo there are permitted foure fenerall Sects, differing each from other both in Canon and Civill Lawes: all which Sects have their originall from the Religion 20 of Mahamet. For there were in times past foure men of singular Learning, who by subtiltie and sharpnesse of wit, found out a way to make particular deductions out of Mahamets generall Precepts, So that each of them would interpret the opinions of Mahumet according to their owne fancie, and would enery man apply them to his owne proper fense; and therefore they mitted in the must needs disagree much betweene themselnes: howbeit, growing famous among the common people in regard of their divers Canons and Precepts, they were the first Authours and Founders of the laid foure Sects: any one of which whatfoeuer Mahumetan profesieth, cannot resounce the same at his pleasure and embrace another Sect, valeffe heebe a man of deepe Learning, and knoweth the Reasons and Allegations of both parts. Also there are in the Citie of Care foure principall Iudges, who give fentence onely vpon matters of great importance: vnder which foure are fubftiruted other inferiour ludges, in euery ftreet of the Citie, which decide pettie contentions and brabbles. And if the parties which are at controuerfie chance to bee of divers Sects, the Plaintiffe may fummon and convent the Defendant before the Judge of his freet: howbeit, the Defendant may, if he will, appeale from him vnto the highest ludge of all, being placed ouer the foure principall Iudges aforelaid, and being gouernour of the Sect, called Essaicoira; and this high Judge hath authoritie to dispense withall, or to disanul the Decrees of the foure principall, and of all the other inferiour Iudges, according as hee shall fee cause. Whospeuer attempteth ought against the Canons and Precepts of his owne Religion, is severely punished by the ludge of the same Religion. Moreover, albeit the Priests of the foretaid Sects differ very much, both in their formes of Lyturgie or Prayer, and allo in many other respects, yet doe they not for that diversitie of Ceremonies hate one another, neyther yet 40 doe the common people of fundry Sects fall to mutinie and debate : but men indeed of fingular Learning and much reading conferre oftentimes together, and as in private each man affirmeth his owne Sect to be the best, so likewise doe they confirme their opinions by subtile Arguments, neither may any man vuder paine of giteuous punishment reproch any of the said foure ancient Doctors. And in very deed they all of them follow one & the same Religion, to wit, that which is prescribed in the Canons of Hashari, the principall Doctor of the Mahumetans, which Canons goe for currant over all Africa, and most part of Asia, except in the Dominions of the Great Sophi of Persia; who because he reiecteth the said Canons, is accounted by other Mahumetans an Heretike, and a Schismaticke. But how such varietie of opinions proceeded from the foure Doctors aforefaid, it were tedious and troublesome to rehearle: he that is desirous to know more 50 of this matter, let him read my Commentaries which I have written concerning the Law and Religion of Mahumet, according to the Doctrine of Malich, who was a man of profound Learning, and was borne at Medma Talnabi, where the bodie of Mahumet lyeth buryed : which Doctrine of Malich is embraced throughout all Syria, Egypt, and Arabia: wherewith if any be delighted, let him peruse my foresaid Commentaries, and they will satisfie him to the full. Vpon Malefactors they inflict most grieuous and horrible punishment, especially vpon such

as have committed any heynous crime in the Court. Theeues they condemne to the Halter. A murther committed trecherously they punish in manner following: the Executioners affishants take the Malefactor one by the head, and another by the feet, and then comes the chiefe Executioner with a Two-hand-sword, and cutteth his bodie in twaine, the one part whereof adioyning to the head is put into a fire full of vn-flaked Lime : and it is a most strange and dread 60 full thing to consider, how the same dismembred and halfe bodie will remayne a line in the fire for the space of a quarter of an houre, speaking and making answere vnto the standers by. But rebels or feditious persons they slea aline, stuffing their skins with bran till they resemble mans shape, which being done, they carry the faid stuffed skins vpon Camels backes through every

ffreete of the Citie, and there publish the crime of the partie executed: then which punishment I never lawe a more dreadfull, by reason that the condemned party liveth so long in torment: but if the tonmenter once toucheth his nauell with the knife, he presently yeeldeth up the Ghoft : which he may not doe vntill he be commanded by the Maguitrate standing by. It any The Nauell be imprisoned for debt, not having where withall to satisfie the same, the Gouernor of the prison being cut is payeth their creditors, and fendeth them, poore wretches, bound in chaines, and accompanied prefent deaths Payette the with certaine keepers, caily to begge almes from fireet to ffreet, all which almes redounderh to the Goucmour, and hee alloweth the faid prisoners very bare maintenance to line

Moreouer, there goe crying vp and downe this Citie certaine aged women, who (though Women cirthat which they fay in the streets cannot be vinderstood) are notwithstanding injoyned by their cumcised. office to circumcife women according to the prescript of Mahumet ; which Ceremonic is not ob-

ferued but in Egypt and Syria.

The dignity and power of the Soldan was in times past exceeding great; but Selim the great The mainer of The dignity and power of the Soldan was in times part exceeding great; but Soldan the great semantices.

Torke in the yeers of Christ (if I be not deceived) 1517. Verley abolished the failed dignity creating the great of the Soldan. And because it hash become my hap soldan, and of anged all the Cultomes and Lawse of the Soldan. And because it hash become my hap soldan, and the sold all the Cultomes and Lawse of the Soldan. thrife to travell into Egypt fince the faid wonderfull alteration befell, I suppose, it will not bee grees, and offimuch beside my purpose, if I set downe in this place such particulars as I know to be most cer- es in his taine true concerning the Court of the Solden. Vnto this high dignitie was wont to bee cho-Courtfen fome one of the most noble Mamaluts. These Mamaluks being all Christians at the Brit, thrisein Eggst. and stoine in their child-hood by the Tartars out of the Prouince of Circassia, which bordereth vpon the Euxin Sea, and being fold at Caffa, a Towne of Tamica Cher sonesus, were

brought from thence by certaine Merchants vnto the Citie of Caro, and were there bought by the Soldan; who constraining them foorthwith to abiure and renounce their baptisme, caufed them to bee instructed in the Arabian and Turkifb Languages, and to bee trained vp in Militarie Discipline, to the end they might ascend from one degree of Honour to another . till at last they were advanced vnto the high dignity of the Soldan. But this Custome whereby it was enacted; that the Soldan should be chosen out of the number of such as were Mamaluks and flaues by their condition, began about two hundred and fifty yeers fithence, when as the Family 30 of the valiant Saladm (whose name was so terrible vnto Christians) being supported but by a few of the kindred, fell to vtter decay and ruine.

At the same time when the last King of Iernsalem was determined to sacke the Citie of Caire, which also in regard of the floth and cowardize of the Mahumetan Califa then raisening ouer it, intended to make it felfe tributarie vnto the same King, the Judges and Lawyers of the Citie with the confent of the Califa, fent for a certaine Prince of Asia, called Azedudin, of the Nation of Curdu (the people whereof live in tents like the Arabians) which Azedadin together with his fonne Saladin, came with an armie of fiftie thousand horsemen. And albeit, Saladin was inferiour in age vnto his Father, yet in regard of his redoubted valour, and fingular knowledge in Military affaires, they created him Generall of the field, and gaue him free liberty to bellow all the Tributes and Reuenues of Egypt, as himfelfethould thinke expedient. And to marching at length against the Christians, he got the Victory of them without any bloodshed, and draue them out of Ierusalem and out of all Syria. Then Saladin returning backe with triumph vnto Caire, had an intent to viurpe the Gouernment thereof: whereupon having flaine the Califa his guard (who bare principall fway over the Egyptions) hee procured the death also of the Califa himfelfe, being thus bereft of his guard, with a poyloned cup, and then foorthwith submitted himselfe vnto the patronage of the Califa of Bagdet, who was the true and lawfull Mahametan Prelate of Cairo. Thus the inrifdiction of the Califas of Cairo (who had continued Lords of that Citie by perpetuall succession for the space of two hundred and thirty yeeres) surceased. and returned againe vato the Califa of Baedet, who was the true and lawfull Governour thereof. And so the Schismaticall Califas and Patriarkes being suppressed, there grew a contention

50 hetweene Saladin and the Soldan of Bagder, and Saladin made himfelfe a fourraigne of Cairo, because the said Soldan of Bagdet being in times past Prince of the Provinces of Mazandran and Euglizin fituate vpon the River of Ganges, and being borne in a certaine Countrey of Alia. Laid claime notwithstanding vnto the Dominion of Cairo, and intending to wage warre against Saladin, hee was reftrained by the Tartars of Corafan, who made invafions and inrodes your him. Saladin on the other fide fearing leaft the Christians in reuenge of the forefaid injury would make an expedition into Syria, and confidering that his forces were partly flaine in the former warres, and partly confumed by pettilence, except a few which remained for the defence and fauegard of his Kingdome, began to imploy himselfe about buying of slaves that came

60 from Circaffia, whom the King of Armenia by those dayes tooke and fent vnto Cairo to bee The originalk fold : which flaues he caused to abiture the Christian faith, and to be trained up in feats of warre of the Manage and in the Tarkift Language, and being the proper Language of Saladin himselfe : and so the said luts. flaues within a while increased so exceedingly both in valour and number, that they became not onely valiant Souldiers, and skilfull Commanders, but also Gouernours of the whole

A 2.222

The principall

Amer Caber.

Nai Be∏an.

The Amiri A-

The amiralf.

The Chazen-

Kingdome. After the decease of Salidin, the Dominion remained vnto he Family one nundred and fifty yeeres, and all his forceffors observed the Custome of buying there of Carcassia: hun the Family of Saladin growing at length to decay, the flanes by a generall content elected one Piperis a valiant Mamaluk of their owne companie to be their boveraigne Lord and Soldan : which Cuitomethey afterward fo introlably kept, that not the Soldans owne forme nor any other Manalisk could attain with that high dignity, valefle first he had beene a Christian, and had abiured his faith, and had learned also exactly to speak the Circassian and Turkis Languages. Infomuch, that many Soldans fent their fonnes in their childhood into Circaffia, that by learning the Language and fashions of the Countrey, they might proue in processe or time ht to beare Souerigne authority; but by the diffention of Mahaluks, they were alwayes defeated of their pur-

The Eddaguadare being in dignitie second vnto the Soldan, and being as it were, his Vice-rov or Lieutenant, had authoritie to place or displace any Mogitirates or Officers; and maintained a der the Soldan Family almost as great as the Family of the Soldan him elfe.

The Amir Cabir having the third place of honour, was Lord Generall over the Soldans Militarie Forces; who was by of .e bound to leavy armies against the forraine enemie, especially a called Edda- . gainst the next Arabians, and to furnish the Castles and Cities with convenient Garisons : and alfo had authoritie to dispend the Soldans Treasure, vpon such necessary affaires as hee thought offi er, called

good.

The fourth in dignity after the Soldan called Nai Beffan, beeing the Soldan his Lieute- 20 nant in Syria, and gathering vp all the Tributes of Affiria, bestowed them at his owned it cretion, and yet the Soldan himselfe was to place Garrisons in the Castles and Forts of those Proninces. This Nai Bellan was bound yeerely to pay certaine thousands of Saraffi vnto the Sol-

The fift Magistrate called the Ostadar, was the great Master or Steward of the Palace: whole duetie was to provide apparell for the Soldan, with Victuals and other necessaries for The Oftadar. his whole family. And wate this dignity the Soldan vied to advance fome one of his most ancient, Honourable, and Vertuons Nobles, vndes whose tuition himselfe had in times past beene

ramed vp.
The fixt called the Amiri Achor, was Master of the Horse and Camels; and distributed them 30

vinto each man in Court, according to his degree. The feuenth Office was performed by certaine principall Mamalukes, being like vnto the Colonels of Europe : every of whom was Captaine of a thousand inferious Mamalute; and their

Office was to conduct the Soldans Forces against the enemie, and to take charge of his ar-The eight degree of Honour was allotted vnto certaine Centurions ouer the Mamaluk!: who

were continually to attend upon the Soldan, either when he road any whither, or when he ex-The Amirmia. The ninth person was the Treasurer, who made an account vnto the Soldan of all the Tri-

bates and Cultomes of his Kingdome, disburfing money for the daily and necessary expenses of 40 the Soldans Household, and laying up the rest in the Soldans Castle.

The tenth called the Amirfileh, had the armour of the Soldan committed to his charge, which being contained in a great Armory was to be fooured, furbushed, and renued at his direction, for

which purpose he had fundry Mamaluks place | vnder him. The eleventh called the Testecana was Maiter of the Soldans Wardrobe, and tooke charge of all such Robes and Apparell as were deliuered vnto him by the Offadar or high Steward of the

Hourhold; which Robes he distributed according to the appointment of the Soldan; for whomfocuer the Soldan promoted vnto any dignity, him he apparelled alfo. All the faid garments were of cloth of Cold, of Veluet, or of filke.

The great Citie of Chanca lituate about fixe miles from Cairo, at the very entrance of the Defart lying in the way to Mount Sinai, is replenished with most flately Houles, Temples, and Colledges. All the fields betweene Cairo and this Citie abound with great plenty of Dates: but from Chanca to Mount Smai, which is an hundred and fortie miles, there are no places of habitation at all. Through this Citie lie two maine road-wayes, the one leading to Syria, and the other to Arabia. This Citie hath no other water but fuch as remaine in certaine Chanels after the inundation of Nilm; which chanels being broken, the water runneth forth into the plaines, and there maketh a number of small lakes, from whence it is conneighed backe by certaine fluces into the Cifternes of the Citie.

Vpon the fame fide of Num, standeth the faire Citie of Munia, which was built in the time of the Mahametans by one Chasib, a Lieutenant and Courtier of the Califa of Bandet, vpon an 60 high place. Heere are most excellent Grapes, and abundance of all kind of fruit, which albeit they are carried to Cairo, yet can they not come thither fresh and new, by reason that this City is dictant from Cairo one undreth and fourescore miles. It is adorned with most stately Temples and other buildings; and here are to be feene at this prefent, fundry ruines of the aucient $F_{\mathcal{G}^{q_2}}$

tian buildings. The Inhabitants are rich, for they travell for their gaine as farre as Gaoga, a Kingdome of the Land of Negres.

At this present there are found at Manf-Losh, certaine huge and high Pillars and Porches. whereon are Verles engrauen in the Egyptian Tongue. Neere vnto Nilis stand the ruines of a flately building, which itemeth to have been a Temple in times past ; among which ruines the Citizens find fometimes Coyne of Silver, fometimes of Gold, and fometimes of Lead, having on the one fide Hielygraphick notes and on the other ide the pictures of ancient Kings. The fields adjacent being very truitfull, are extremely fcorched by the heate of the Sunne, and much haunted with Crocodiles, which was the occasion (as some thinke) why the Romans abandoned this Io Citie. The Inhabitants are men of indifferent wealth, for they exercise Traffick in the Land of

Azioth founded by the Egyptians upon the banke of Nilms, two hundred and fifty miles from The Citie of Caire is most admirable in regard of the hugenesse, and of the varietie of old buildings; and of Atlant. Epitaphes engrauen in Egyptian Letters; although at this present the greatest part thereof lieth defolate. When the Mahametans were first Lords of this Citie, it was inhabited by honourable personages, and continueth as yet famous, in regard of the Nobility and great wealth of the Citizens. There are in this Citie almost an hundred Families of Christians, and three or foure (burches still remaining: and without the Citie standeth a Monasterie, containing moe then an hundred Monks, who eate neither Flesh por Fish, but onely Hearbs, Bread and Oliues. And yet have 20 they dainty Cates without any fat among them. This Monasterie is very rich, and giveth three

dayes entertainement to all strangers that refort thither, for the welcomming of whom they bring vp great flore of Doues, of Chickens, and of fuch like commodities. Ichmin being the most ancient Citie in all Egypt, was built by Ichmin, the sonne of * Misraine, The Citie of the fonne of Chu, which was the fonne of 'Hen, you the Banke of Nilus, next vato Afia, and 'tensione' the fonne of Chu, which was the fonne of 'Hen, you the Banke of Nilus, next vato Afia, and 'tensione three hundred miles Eastward from Cairo. This Citie the Mahumerans, when they first began wife read in

to vsurpe ouer Egypt, so wasted and destroyed, for certaine causes mentioned in Histories, that the tenth belides the foundations and rubbilh, they left nought remaining : for, transporting the Pillars Chapter of and principall Stones vnto the other fide of Nilm, they built thereof the Citie called Manifes, Gonefit, veride euen as we will now declare.

Georgia was in times past a famous Monasterie of Christians, called after the name of The Monaster Saint George, and being fixe miles diftant from Munfia. It was inhabited by more then two rie called hundred Monkes, who emoying large Territories, Policifions and Resenues, thewed themselves Georgia. curteous and beneficiall vnto strangers; and the ouerplus of their yearely reuenues was fent vnto the Patriarke of Cairo, who caused the same to be distributed amongst the poore Christians : but about an hundred yeares agoe, all the Monkes of this Monasterie died of a Pestilence, which APestilence fored it felfe ouer all the Land of Egyps. Whereupon the Prince of Munfia compaffed the faid Monasterie with a Wall, and erected divers houses for Artificers and Merchants to dwell in. And being allured by the pleafant Gardens fituate amidit the beautifull Hills, hee himfelte went thither to inhabite : but the Patriarke of the Iacobites making his mone vnto the Soldan, the Soldan caused another Monasterie to bee built in the same place, where in times pass the old Citie stood; and assigned so much allowance thereunto, as might maintains thirtie

This little Citie of Chian was built in times past neere vnto Nilus by the Mahametani, The Siece of which notwithstanding is not now inhabited by them, but by the Christians called lacobites, chies. who employ themselues either in Husbandrie, or in bringing vp of Chickens, Geese, and Doues. There remaine as yet certaine Monasteries of Christians, that give entertainement to Strangers. But Mahametans (befides the Gouernour and his Family) there are none at all.

Barbanda founded by the Egyptians upon Nilus, about foure hundred miles from Caire, was The Citie of laid fo waste by the Romans, that nothing but the ruines thereof remained, most of which ruines Barbards. were carried vnto Afra, whereof wee will forthwith intreate. Among it the faid mines are to 50 be found many pieces of Gold and Silver Coyne, and fundry fragments of Smaragds or Em- Emress.

The ancient Citie of Cana, built by the Egyptians voon the banke of Nilus over against Bar. The Citie of bunda, and enuironed with Walls of Sunne-dried Bricke, is inhabited with people of base condi-tion, applying themselues wato Husbandrie, by which meanes the Citic abounderh with corne.

**Multiple Galleria State | March 1981 | March 2011 Hither are the Merchandile brought against the streame of Nelus, which are sent from Caire to large mention Meeca: for the diffance from hence ouer the wildernesse vnto the Red Sea, is at least \$20 of this Cities miles, all which way there is no water at all to bee found. And at the Hauen of Cheffir vpon The Hauen of the shoare of the Red Sea, are divers Cottages, whereinto the faid Merchandifes are valued. Coffe.

And over against Choffe on the side of Asia heeth Iambub, another Hanen of the Red Sea, whereat Travellers going on Pilgrimage to fee the Tombe of Mahumes at Medina, must make their rendeuous or generall meeting. Moreoner, Chana furnisheth Meding and Mecca with Corne, in

which places they fuffer great and continual fearcitie. Afna in times pathwas called Siene. Round about this Citie there are to bee feene divers The Citie of A2222 2

The Citic of

LIB, VI.

huge buildings, and admirable Sepulchres, together with fundry Epitaphes engrauen both in Egyptian and Latine Letters.

The Ciric of

Suschen.

The great, ancient, and populous Citie of Affinan was built by the Egyptians upon the River of Nilus, about fourescore miles Eastward from Afra. The soyle adjacent is most apt and fruitfull for Corne. And the Citizens are exceedingly addicted vnto the Trade of Merchandile, because they dwell to neere vnto the Kingdome of Nubia, vpon the confines whereof standeth their Cirie: beyond which Citie, Nilus dispersing himselfe ouer the Plaines through many small Lakes. becommeth innauigable. Also, the faid Citie standeth neere vnto that Defart, ouer which they trauell vnto the Port of Snachen vpon the Red Sea, and it adioyneth likewife vpon the frontiers of Ethiopia. And here in Summer time the Inhabitants are extremely scorched with the heate 10 of the Sunne, being of a swart or browne colour, and being mingled with the people of Nubia and Ethiopia. Here are to be feene also many buildings of the ancient Eerotians, and most high Towers, which they call in the language of that Countrey Barba. Beyond this place there is neither Citie nor habitation of any account, befides a few Villages of black people, whose speech is compounded of the Arabian, Egyptian, and Ethiopian languages. These being subject vnto the people, called " Bugiba, liue in the Fields after the Arabian manner, being free from the Soldans jurisdiction, for there his Dominions are limited.

old time were called Trozio-

And thus much concerning the principall Cities flanding along the maine Chanell of Nilus: Some whereof I faw, others I entred into, and paffed by the refidue : but I had most certaine intelligence of them all, either by the Inhabitants themselues, or by the Mariners which carried 20 me by water from Caro to Affuan, with whom returning backe vnto Chana, I trauelled thence ouer the Defart vnto the Red Sea, ouer which Sea I crossed vnto Iambuth, and Ziddem, two Hapen Townes of Arabia Defarta; of which two Townes, because they belong vnto Asia. I will not here discourse, lest I should seeme to transgresse the limits of Africa. But if it shall please Godto vouchfafe me longer life, I purpose to describe all the Regions of Asia which I have trawelled : to wit, Arabia Defarta, Arabia Fælix, Arabia Petraa, the Afian part of Egypt, Armenia, and fome part of Tartaria; all which Countries I faw and passed through in the time of my youth, Likewise, I will set downe my last Voyages from Fez to Constantinople, from Constantinople to Egypt, and from thence into Italie, in which Iourney I faw divers and fundry Ilands. All which my Trauels I meane (by Gods affittance) being returned forth of Europe into mine owne 30 Country, particularly to describe; deciphring first the Religion of Europe and Asia which I have feene, and thereunto annexing this my Discourse of Africa, to the end that I may promote the endeanours of fuch as are defirous to know the state of forraine Countries.

φ. IX.

Principalloccurrents in IOHN LEO his ninth Booke of the Historie of Africa.

Of the African ring from the The manner of taking Elephants in one in the meane while

word wanting

in the ori-

He Elephant keepeth in the Woods, and is found in great numbers in the forrests of the Land of Negres. They vie to go many in one company, & if they chance to meet with any man, they either shun him or give place voto him. But if the Elephant intendeth to hurt anyman, he cafteth him on the ground with his long fnout or trunke, and nener cealeth trampling vpon him till he be dead. And although it be a mighty and fierce beaft, yet are there great flore of them caught by the Ethiopian Humters, in manner following. Their Hunters being acquainted with the Woods and Thickets where they keepe, vie to make among the Asby a tame trees a round hedge of ftrong boughes and rafts, leaving a space open on the one side thereof, and Female drawing his to an
inke wife a doore flanding vpon the plaine ground which may be lift vp with ropes, whereing his to an
with they can easily floope the faid open place or paffage. The Elephant therefore comand by a tame
ming to take his reft vnder the shady boughes, enterth the hedge or inclosure, where the 50 Male fighting: Hunters by drawing the faid rope, and faitening the doores having impriloned him, de-with the wild: Great downe from the trees, and kill him with their Arrows to the and they may see his fcend downe from the trees, and kill him with their Arrowes, to the end they may get his Teeth, and make sale of them. But if the Elephant chanceth to breake through the hedge. he murthereth is many men as he can find. In Ethiopia the higher, and India, they have other denices * to take the Elephane, which, least I should seeme ouer-tedious, I passe ouer in silence.

ropes fathing. The Graffa to fauage and wild, that it is a very rare matter to fee any of them: for they hide his hinder to fee any of them are for they hide his hinder to fee any of them are for they hide his hinder to fee any of them are for they hide his hinder to fee any of them. themselves among the Defarts and Woods, where no other beasts vie to come; and so some as legs. The Beatlead, one of them espieth a man, it flieth forthwith, though not very swftly. It is headed like a Camell, eared like an Oxe, and footed like a " : neither are any taken by Hunters, but led Giraffa. while they are very young;

Camels are gentle and domesticall beafts, and are found in Africa in great numbers, especially in the Defarts of Libya, Namidia, and Barbaria. And these the Arabians esteeme to bee their principall possessions and riches: so that speaking of the wealth of any of their Princes, or Gouernours, be bath (fay they) fo many then fands Camels, and not fo many thousand Duckets. Moreouer. CHAP. 1. S.O. Three kind of Camels, Camels or Dromidaries, dancing Camels.

Moreover, the Arabians that post-sie Camels line like Lords and Potentates in great liberty. because they can remaine with their Camels in barren Desarts, whither no Kings nor Princes can

African Camels farre excell them of Asia; for travelling fortie or fifty dayes together, with- The African out any prouender at all, they are valueden in the evening; and turned loofe into the next fields. Cameis are where they feed vpon Grade, Brambles, and the boughes of trees; which hardnesse the Camels the best, of Aliacannot endure, but when they let foorth any journey, they must be well pampered and full of flesh. Experience hath taught, that our Camels having travelled laden fifty dayes together without any prouender; haue fo waited; first, the field of their bunches; secondly, of 10 their bellies, and laftly, of their hips, that they have scarce beene able to carry the weight of one hundreth pounds. But the Merchants of Afia give their Camels provender, halfe of them being laden with wares, and the other halfe with prouender, and so their whole Carouan of Camels goeth foorth and returneth home laden: by which meanes they keepe them in good plight. Of Three kinds Camels there are three kinds; whereof the first being called Hugiun, are groffe, and of a tall sta- of Camels.

ture, and most fit to carrie burthens, but ere foure yeeres end they grow vnprofitable : after which time every Camell but of meane flature will carry a thousand pounds of Italian weight. When any of the faid Camels is to bee laden, being beaten upon his knees and necke with a wand, he kneeleth downe, and when he feeleth his load sufficient, he riseth vp againe. And the Africans vie to geld their Camels which they keepe for the burthen, putting but one male 20 Camell among ten femals. The fecond kinde of Camels called Bechets, and having a double bunch, are fit both to carrie burthens, and to ride vpon : and there are bred onely in Afia. The third kind called Raguabill, are Camels of a flender and low stature, which albeit they are Camels of a

whit to carry burthers, yet doe they not excell the two other kinds in I wiftnesse, that in the wood rull fpace of one day they will trauell one hundred miles, and will so continue ouer the Defarts witness, of for eight or ten dayes together with very little prouender and these doe the principal Arabians Dramidates. of Numidia , and the Moores of Libya vivally ride vpon. When the King of Tombuto is det rous to fend any message of importance vnto the Numidian Merchants with great celeritie. his post or messenger riding vpon one of these Camels, will runne from Tombato to Darba or Segelmeffe , beeing nine hundred miles diftant, in the space of eight dayes at the farthest : but 30 fuch as trauell must be expert in the way through the Delarts, neither will they demand lesse

then fine hundred Duckats for enery journey. The faid Camels about the beginning of the foring inclining to their luft and venerie, doe not onely hart one another, but also will deadly wound fuch persons as have done them any injury in times past; not forgetting light and easie stripes; and whomsbeuer they lay hold on with their teeth, they lift vp on high, and cast East three saints, trampling you him with their feere, and in this madde moode they continue force dayes together. Neither are they fo patient of hunger as of thirft, for they will abstance to the saints, with the saints are the sa abitaine from drinke, without any inconvenience, for effected dayes together; and if their greatabitiguides water them once in three dayes, they doe them great hirt, for they are not viually waternence from red but once in fiue or nine dayes, or at an vrgent necessity once in fifteene dayes. Moreouer, dinke,

40 the faid Camels are of a sentle disposition, and are indued as it were with a kinde of humaine reason : for when as betweene Ethiopia and Barbarie they have a dayes iourney to travell more then their woont, their mafters cannot drive them on, being fo tired, with whips, but are faine to fing certaine fongs vnto them; wherewith being exceedingly delighted, they performe their journey with fuch fwiftnesse, that their faid masters are scarce able to follow them. At my beeing in Cairo I faw a Camell dance; which arte of dancing how he learned of his mafter I will here in few words report. They take a young Camell, and put him for halfe an house How the Catogether in a place like a Bath-stone prepared for the same purpose, the sloore whereof is het mels o Cairo with fire : then play they without vpon a drumme, whereat the Camell not fo much in re-learneto gard of the noyle, as of the hot pauement which offendeth his feet, and I freth vp one legge af-dance. ter another in manner of a dance, and having beene accustomed vnto this exercise for the space

of a yeere or ten moneths, the then present him vnto the publike view of the people, when as hearing the novle of a drum, and remembring the time when he trode vpon the hot floore, he prefently falleth a dancing and leaping: and fo, vie being turned into a kind of nature, he perpetually observeth the same custome.

The Horles of Barbary differ not in any respect from other Horles : but Horles of the same Barbary or Are-Iwifenesse and agilitie are in the Arabian tongue called throughout all Egypt, Syria, Asia, Ara. bian Hosses. bia Fælix, and Deferta, by the name of Arabian Horfes : and the Historiographers affirme, that this kind of wilde Horles ranging up and downe the Arabian Delarts, and being broken and managed by the Arabians ever fince the time of Ismael, have to exceedingly multiplied and in-60 created, that they have replenished the most part of Africa: which opinion favoureth of truth, for

euen at this present there are great store of wild Hories found both in the African and Arabian Defarts. And I my felfe fawe in the Numidian Defart a wild Colt of a white colour, and hauing a curled maine. The most certaine triali of their Horses is when they can ouertake the beaft called Lant, or the Othrich in a race : which two, if they be able to performe, they are Aaaaa 3

Horfes fed

milke.

The wilde

Wild Horfes

CHAP.1. S.9. The Leopard, Cinet Cat, Apes, Monkeyes, Baboones, &c. frica. In the Spring, while they are given to Luft and Venery, they have most serce and bloudie pres. In the opting, while energy are given to be a called votely, every name most brece and bloodie conflicts one with an other, eight or twelve Lyons following after one Lyoneffe. I have heard many both men and women report, that if a woman chanceth to meet with a Lyon, and shewmany both men and women tepots, that it a woman changes to mere with a Lyon, and thew-eth him her prinie parts, hee will with crying and roaring, eath his eyes woon the ground and 6 depart. Beleene it they that lift. But this lam well affored of, that what focuer a Lyon getteth

effeemed worth a thousand Duckats or an hundred Camels. Howbeit, very few of their Horses are brought up in Barbarie, but the Arabians that inhabite the Delarts, and the people of Labia bring vp great numbers of them, ving them not for trauell or warfare, but onely for hunting, neither doe they give them any other meate but the milke of Camels, and that twife e-

uery day and night, to the end they may keepe them nimble, lively, and of spare flesh: with Camels and in the time of Graffe they fuffer them to feede in Paffures, butten they ride not vpon

The wilde Horse is one of those beasts that come seldome in sight. The Arabians of the Defarts take the wild Horse and eate him, faying, that the younger the Horse be, the sweeter is his flesh : but he will hardly be taken either with Horses or Dogs. In the waters where this 10 baft keepeth, they lay certaine fnares, covering them over with fand, wherein his foot being are viuall with the Tartars & at the River of caught, he is intangled and flaine.

The beaft called Lant or Dane in shape resembleth an Oxe, sauing that he hath smaller legs. Plate (but of Lyanife bread, and comlier hornes. His haire is white, and his hoofs are as blacke as let, and he is to exceeding fwift, that no beaft can ouertake him, but onely the Barberis Horfe, as is beforelaid. He is eaflier caught in Summer then in Winter, because that in regard of the extreme fretting heat of the fand his hoofs are then strained and set awry, by which meanes his swiftnesse is abated, like as Targets made the swittnesse of Stagges and Roe-Deere Of the hide of this beast are made Shields and Targets of great defence, which will not be pierced, but onely with the forcible flot of a bullet, but they

are fold at an extreme price. The wild Oxeresembleth the tame Oxe, saue that it is lesse in stature, being of a gray or ash-The wild Oxe.

colour and of great swiftnesse. It haunteth either the Desarts, or the confines of the Desarts. And the fieth thereof (they fay) is very fauoury.

The wilde Affe being found either in the Defarts, or vpon the borders thereof, is of an ashcolour. In swiftnesse they are surpassed onely by the Barbary Horses, and when they see a man. they bray out aloud, kicking and wincing with their heeles, and flanding stone-fill, till one approacheth fo neare them, that he may touch them with his hand, and then they betake themiclues to flight. By the Arabians of the Delarts they are caught with Snares, and other Engins. They goe in companies either when they feede or water themschies. Their fiesh is hot and unfavory, and hath a wilde talte: but being fer a cooling two dayes after it is fodden, it be- 20

commeth very fauory and pleafant. All the Oxen vpon the Mountaines of Africa being tame cattell, are of fo meane a flature. the Mountains that in comparison of other Oxen they feeme to be but Heifers of two yeares old : but the Mountainers vining them to the plough, fay, that they are strong, and will indure much la-

Adimmain, is a tame beaft, beeing shaped like a Ramme, and of the stature of an Asse, and The best cal- having long and dangle eares. The L. byans vie thele beafts in stead of Kine, and make of their milke great flore of Cheese and Butter. They have some Wooll, though it bee but short. I my leffe vpon a time beeing merily disposed, roade a quarter of a mile vpon the backe of one of these beafes. Very many of them there are in the Desarts of Libya, and but fewe in other places: and it is a rare matter to see one of them in the Namidian 10

fields. There is no difference betweene these Rammes of Africa and others, saue onely in their tayles, which are of a great thickneffe, being by fo much the groffer, by how much they are more fat, so that some of their tayles weigh ten, and other twenty pounds a peece, and they become fat of their owne naturall inclination : but in Egypt there are divers that fed them fat with Bran and Barley , vntill their tayles growe to bigge that they cannot remooue themselues from place to place : insomuch that those which take charge of them are faine to bind little carts voider their tayles, to the end they may have strength to walke. I my selfe faw at a City in Egype called After, and flanding upon Nilm, about an hundred and fifty miles so from Care, one of the faid Rams tayles that weighed foure-the pounds, and others affrmed, that they had seene one of those tayles of an hundred and fifty pounds weight. All the fat there-Huge style, fore of this beaft consistesh in his tayle; neither is there any of them to be found but onely in Tu-

The Lion is a most fierce and cruell beast, being hurtfull vnto all other beasts, and excelling them both in strength, courage, and crueltie, neither is he onely a deuourer of beasts, but of men alfo. In some places one Lyon will boldly encounter two hundred Horsemen. They range without all feare among the flockes and droues of Cattell, and what foeuer beaft they can lay hold on, they carry it into the next Wood vnto their Whelpes : yea, some Lyons there are (as I haue before faid) that will vanquish and kill fine or fixe Horsemen in one Company. Howbeit, fuch 60 Lyons as live vpon the cold mountaynes are not fo outragious and cruell : but the hotter the places be where they keepe, the more rauenous and bold are they, as namely, vpon the Frontiers of Temesna, and of the Kingdome of Fez, in the Defart of Angad neere Telensin, and betweene the Citie of Bona and Tunis, all which are accounted the most famous and herce Lyons in all A-

The Leopard litting in the Woods of Barbark, will not for all their great firength and cruel. in his pawes, though it be a Camell, he will carry it away. tie hurt any man, vnleffe it be very feldome, when as they meete with a man in a narrow paffage, and cannot humne him, or when they are checked and prouoked vnto fury : for then they 10 will flye vpon a man, laying hold vpon his vifage with their talents, and placking off fo much Aefh as they can catch, infomuch that fonetimes they will crush his braines in pieces. They inuade not any flockes or droues of tame Cattell, but are at deadly feude with Dogges, whom

The Mountayners of the Region of Conflamina lunt them on Horse-backe, stopping all pasthey will kill and denoure. lages, where they might escape. The Leopard ranging vp an downe, and finding every place to befet with Horsemen that he cannot get away, windeth and turneth himselfe on all fides, and so becommeth a fit marke for the Hunters to discharge their Darts and Arrowes vpon, But if the Leopard chanceth to escape, that man that lets him passe, is bound by an vsuall custome to in-

uite the residue of the Hunters vnto a Banquet. The beaft called by the Arabians, Dabub, and by the Africans, lefef, in higheffe and shape Thebeaft cal-20 resembleth a Woolfe, saving that his legges and feet are like to the legges and feet of a man. It led Dabub, is not hurtfull vnto any other beaft, but will rake the carkaffes of men out of their granes, and will denoure them, being otherwise an abject and filly creature. The Hunters being acquainted with his Den, come before it finging and playing vpon a Drum, by which Melodie beeing allured forth, his legs are intrapped in a frong Rope, and so he is drawne out and staine.

The Cinet Cats are naturally wilde, and are found in the Woods of Ethiopia. The Mer- The Cinet Cat chants taking their young Whelpes or Kittes, feed them with Milke , Branne , and Flesh, and chants taking their young with But their odoriferous Excrement (which is nought elfe but The manner of keepe them in Cages or Grates. But their odoriferous Excrement (which is nought elfe but The manner of Reepe them at Cagacher twice or thrice enery day in manner following: first, they drive them gathering Civp and downe the Grate with a Wand, till they Iweat, and then they take the faid Iweat from uet. and their flankes, their floulders, their neckes, and their tayles: which Excrement of fwest from the called friends and their tayles:

is commonly called Ciuet. Of Aprs there are divers and fundry kinds, those which have tayles, being called in the A. The Ape. frices Tongue, Monne, and those which have none, Babuini. They are found in the Woods of Monkeyes and Massitania, and vpon the Mountaynes of Bagia and Constantina. They line vpon Grasse and Baboones. Corne, and goe in great companies to feed in the Corne field, and one of their company which flandeth Centinell, or keepeth watch and ward vpon the borders, when hee espyeth the Hufbandman comming, he cryeth out and giveth as it were an alarme to his fellowes, who every one of them flee immediately into the next Woods, and betake themselues to the trees. The shee Apes carrie their Whelpes vpon their shoulders, and will leape with them in that fort from one

the Sea Horse is commonly found in the Rivers of Niger and Nilses. In shape it resembleth The Sea Horse an Horse, and in stature an Asie, but it is altogether destitute of haire, It lineth both in the water and voon the Land, and swimmeth to the shoare in the night season. Barkes and Boates laden with Wates and fayling downe the River of Niger, are greatly endangered by this Sea Horse, for often times he ouer-whelmeth and finketh them.

The Sea Oxe being couered with an exceeding hard skinne is shaped in all respects like vnto The Ser Oxe. the Land Oxe: faue that in bigneffe it exceedeth not a Calfe of fixe monethes old. It is found in both the Rivers of Niger and Nilm, and being taken by Fishers, is kept a long time a line out

50 of the water. I my felfe law one at Cairo lead vp and downe by the necke in a Chaine, which (they fay) was taken at the Citie of Afna, flanding upon the banke of Nilsa, about four hundred miles from Caire. In the Libyan Defarts are found very many Tortoyfes as bigge as a Tunne, And Bieri the The Tortoyfe.

Colmographer in his Booke of the Regions and lournies of Africa reporteth , that a certaine man Bieri his Booke being weary of trauelling, afcended to his thinking, vpon an high stone lying in the Defart, to of the Regi the end he might free himfelfe from the danger of Serpents and venemous beafts; who having out of from flept foundly thereupon all night, found himselfe in the morning removued three miles from the place where he first lay downe, and thereby understood that it was not a stone but a Tortoyle whereon he reposed himselfe, which lying still all the day long creepeth for food in the night-

60 feafon, but fo flowly, that her pace can hardly be perceived. The Crocodile commonly frequented the Rivers of Niger and Nilus, and contayneth in The Crocodile neth twelve Cobits and about, the rate thereof heins as long as the whole badie baddes all. The cent of the twelve Cobits and about, the rate thereof heins as long as the whole badde baddes. length twelue Cubits and aboue, the tayle thereof being as long as the whole bodie belides all the cract of the Crocodile beit, there are but few of fo huge a bigneffe. It goeth vpon foure feet like a Lizard, neither is it in taking both about a Cubit and an halfe high. The tayle of this beaft is full of knots, and the skinne there- men & beafts.

The African

The Lyon:

of is so exceeding hard, that no Crosse-bow will enter it. Some prey upon files onely, but athers vpon bealts and men. Which lurking about the bankes of the River, doe craftily lay wait for men and beafts that come the same way, about whom suddenly winding their tayles, they draw them into the water, and there denoure them. Howbeit, some of them are not so criell by nature ; for if they were, no Inhabitants could live neere vinto the Rivers of Nilus and Niger. In eating they moone the upper law onely, their neather law being joyned vito their breftbone. Not many yeeres fithence, passing up the River of Natus towards the Citie of Cana. ftanding in the vpper part of Egypt, foure hundred miles from Carro, on a tertaine night whilest we were in the midit of our Journey, the Moone being over-shadowed with Clouds, the Mariners and Paffengers all faft a fleepe, and the Batke vnder fayles, I my felfe fludying by Candle- 10 light in my Cabben, was called vpon by a deuout old man in the Barke, who bestowed the same night in watching and prayer, and faid vnto me, call (I pray you) some of your company, who may helpe me to draw vp this piece of wood floting vpon the water, which will ferue to morrow for the dreffing of our Dinner. My felfe, Sir (quoth I) will come and helpe you, rather then wake any of our company in the dead of the night. Nay (quoth the old man) I will try whether I ber able to draw it vp alone or no. And so when the Barke was neere vnto the Wood, as he supposed, holding a Rope in his hand to cast into the water, hee was foldainly intangled with a Crocodiles long tayle, and was in a moment draw ne vinder the water. Whereupon, I making a shoute, all the people in the Barke arose, and itr.king far les we stayed for the space of an houre, diversin the meane time leaping into the water to feeke the man, but altogether in vaine: 20 and therefore all of them affirmed, that he was caught by a Crocodile. As we failed further, we faw great numbers of Crocodiles upon the bankes of the Hands in the midth of Nilus lye beaking them in the Sunne with their lawes wide open, whereinto certaine little Birds about the big-Lide Birds By. neffe of a Thruh entring, came flying forth againe prefently after. The occasion whereof was told me to be this: The Crocodiles by reason of their continuall denouring of beasts and fishes, have certaine pieces of flesh sticking fast between their forked teeth, which flesh being putrimouth to pick fied, breedeth a kind of Worme wherewith they are cruelly tormented. Wherefore the faid Wormes from Birls flying about, and Leing the Wormes, enter into the Crocod les lawer, to fatisfie their betweene their hunger therewith. But the Crocodile perceiuing himfelfe freed from the Wormes of his teeth, offereth to flux his mouth, and to denoure the little Bird that did him fo good a turne, but being hindred from his vngrateful attempt by a pricke which groweth vpon the Birds head, hee is constrayned to open his lawes and to let her depart. The shee Crocodile laying Egges vpon the shoare concrete them with fand; and is some as the young Crosodiles are hatched, they crawle into the River. Those Crocodiles that for sake the River and haunt the Desarts become venemous; but such as continue in Nilm, are destitute of Poyson. Of these beatts I saw about three hundred heads placed upon the wals of Cana, with their Iawes wide open, being of fo monstrous and incred ble a bignesse, that they were sufficient to have swallowed up a whole Cow at

The Dragon.

once, and their teeth were great and sharpe. In the Caues of Atlas are found many huge and monstrous Dragons, which are heavie, of a flow motion, because the midst of their body is grosse, but their neckes and cayles are sinder.

They are most venemous creatures, informuch, that whosoeuer is bitten or touched by them, his flesh presently waxeth soft and weake, neither can be by any meanes escape death.

The Hydra.

The Hydra being short in proportion of body, and having a stender tayle and necke, sueth in the Libjan Delarts. The poylon thereof is most deadly, so that if a man be bitten by this beast, he hath none other remedy, but to cut off the wounded part, before the Poyfon di perseth it felfe into the other members.

The creature called Dub.

The Dab living also in the Defarts , resembleth in shape a Lizzard , saving that it is somewhat bigger, and containeth in length a Cubite, and in breadth foure fingers. It drinketh no water at all, and if a man poure any water into the mouth thereof, it presently dieth. It layeth egges in manner of a Tortoyfe, and is destitute of poyson. The Arabians take it in the Defarts: and I my felfe cut the throat of one which I tooke, but it bled a very little. Being flayed 50 and roafted, it tafteth somewhat like a frogge. In swiftneile it is comparable to a Lizzard, and being hunted, if it chanceth to thrust the head into a hole, it can by no force be drawen out, except the hole be digged wider by the hunters. Having beene flame three dayes together, and then being put to the fire, it ftirreth it felfe as if it were newly dead.

The Guarall.

The Guaral is like vnto the former, fauing that it is somewhat bigger, and hath poylon both in the head and tayle, which two parts being cut off, the Arabians will cate it, not withflanding it be of a deformed shape and vgly colour, in which respects I loathed alwayes to eate the

The Camelion being of the shape and bignesse of a Lizzard, is a deformed, crooked and leane 60 creature, having a long and flender tayle like a Moufe, and being of a flow pace. It is nourified by the Element of Ayre, and the Sun-beames, at the riling whereof it gapeth, and turneth it his offered felfe vp and downe. It changeth the colour according to the varietie of places where it comsociae Flyes, meth, being sometimes blacke and sometimes greene, as I my selie haue seene it. It is at great

enmitie with venemous Serpents, for when it feeth any lie fleeping under a tree, it prefently Howthe Caenimite with venemous serpens, and downe vpon the Serpents head, it roydeshoot of the melan filled climeth up the fame tree, and looking downe vpon the Serpents head, it roydeshoot of the melan filled mouth, as it were, a long thread of fortile, with a round drop like a Pearle hanging at the end. mouth, as it were, a long thread of fpittle, with a round drop like a Pearle hanging at the end, which drop falling wrong, the Camelion changeth his place, till it may light directly voon the

849

Serpents head, by the vertue whereof he presently dieth. The Offrich in shape resembleth a Goose, but that the neck and legges are somewhat longer, The Offrich;

fo that some of them exceede the length of two cubites. The body of this Bird is large, and the wings thereof are full of great feathers both white and blacke, which wings and feathers being vnit to flie withall, doe helpe the Offrich, with the motion of her traine, to runne a swife 10 pace. This Fowle liueth in drie Defarts, and layerh to the number of ten or twelte Egges in the Sands which being about the bignesse of great Bullets, weigh fifteene pounds a piece; but the Offrich is of to weak of memorie, that the prefently forgetteth the place where her Egges were laid, And afterward the fame, or fome other Offrich-hen finding the faid egsby chance, hatcheth and fostereth them as if they were certainely her owne : the Chickens are no sooner crept out of the shell, but they prowle vp and downe the Desarts for their food : and before their feathers be growne, they are so swift, that a man shall hardly ouertake them. The Offrich is a filly and deate creature, feeding vpon any thing which it findeth, be it as hard and vndigestable as yron. The flesh, especially of their legs, is of a slymie and strong taste: and yet the Numidians vie it for food, for they take young Offriches, and fet them vpa fatting. The Offriches wander up and downe the Defarts in orderly troopes, so that a farre off a man would take them to be so

20 many Horsemen, which illusion kath often dismaied whole Carouans. Or Eagles there are divers kinds, according to their naturall properties, the proportion of Of Fowles, Or Eagles there are divers kinds, according to their hauntan properties, the proportion and first of their bodies, or the diversitie of their colours; and the greatest kind of Eagles are called in the the Eagle. Arabian Tongue, Nefir. The Africani teach their Eagles to prey vpon Foxes and Wolues; which in their encounter ceaze vpon the heads of the faid Beafts with their bills, and vpon the backs with their talents, to avoid the danger of biting. But if the Beaft turne his belly voward, Aftrangenarthe Eagle will not forfake him, till she hath either peckt out his eyes, or slaine him. Many of our African Writers affirme, that the male Eagle oftentimes ingendring with a shee-Wolfe, begetteth a Dragon, hauing the beake and wings of a Bird, a Serpents taile, the feete of a Wolfe, and a skin speckled and partie coloured like the skin of a Serpent; neither can it open the eye-lids, and it liueth in Caues. This Monster, albeit my selfe have not seene, yet the common report over

30 all Africa affirmeth, that there is fuch an one. The Neftr is the greatest Fowle in all Africa, and exceedeth a Crane in bignesie, though the bil, The Fowle necke, and legs are fomewhat shorter. In flying, this Bird mounteth up so high into the Aire, called Nefer. that it cannot be discerned ; but at the fight of a dead carkaffe it will immediately descend. This Bird liueth a long time, and I my felfe haue feene many of them vnfeathered by reason of extreme old age: wherefore having cast all their feathers, they returne vnto their nest, as if they were newly hatched, and are there nourished by the younger Birds of the same kind. The Italians call it by the name of a Vifture: but I thinke it to be of another kind. They neftle vpon high Rocks, and vpon the tops of wilde and defart Mountaines, especially vpon mount Atla: and

40 they are taken by fuch as are acquainted with those places. The best African Hawkes are white, being taken vpon certaine Mountaines of the Numidian Hawkes. Defarts, and with these Hawkes they pursue the Crane, Of these Hawkes there are divers kinds,

some being yied to the at Patridges and Quailes, and others at the Hare. Parrats there are as big as a Doue of divers colors, some red, some black, and some ash-coloured, Parats or which albeit they cannot fo fitly expresse mans speech, yet have they most sweet & shril voices. Poppiniay. Of Locustes there are sometimes seene such monstrous swarmes in Africa, that in flying The Locustes they intercept the Sunne-beames like a thicke Cloud. They denoure trees, leaves, fruites, and all

greene things growing out of the earth. At their departure they leave egges behind them, whereof other young Locusts breede, which in the places where they are left, will eate and confume all things even to the very barke of trees, procuring thereby extreme dearth of Corne, efpecially in Mauritania. Howheit, the Inhabitants of Arabia Defarta, and of Libya, esteeme the comming of these Locusts as a fortunate boading: for, seething or drying them in the Sunne, they bruse them to powder, and so eate them.

The greater part of Africa hath none other Salt but fuch as is digged out of Quarries and Of Minerals The greater part of Africa hath none other Sait out fuch as is digged out of charies and and Fruits, Mines, after the manner of Marble or Free-stone, being of a white, red, and gray colour. Barbarie Rootes: and aboundeth with Salt, and Numidia is indifferently furnished therewith : but the Land of No- first of Minegros, and especially the inner part of Ethiopia, is so destitute thereof, that a pound of Salt is there rall Salt fold for halte a Duckat, And the people of the faid Regions vie not to fet Salt vpon their tables; One pound of FOR INTERIOR ADMINISTRAÇÃO THE PROPRIED THE

white falr congealed or kerned, as namely, in divers places neere vnto the Citie of Fez. Antimonie growing in many places of Africa in the Lead-mines, is separated from the Lead The Minerall called Antiby the helpe of Brimftone. Great plenty of this Minerall is digged out of the bottome of Mount
mone.

Atlas, especially where Numidia bordereth vpon the Kingdome of Fez. Brimstone likewise is

digged in great abundance out of other places of Africa.

Of Eupher-

Emphorbium is the luyce or Gumme of a certaine Hearbe, growing like the head of a wilder Thirtie, betweene the branches whereof grow certaine fruites as big in compane as a greene cucumber; after which shape or likenesse, it beareth certaine little graines or seedes; and some of the faid fruits are an elle long, and some are longer. They grow not out of the branches of the Herbe, but spring out of the firme ground, and out of one thag you shall see sometimes twentie, and formetimes thirtie of them issue forch. The people of the same Region, when the faid fruites are once ripe, doe pricke them with their kniues, and out of the holes proceedeth a Liquor, or Iuyce much like vnto milke, which by little and little groweth thick and flimy. And so being to growne thick, they take it off with their kniues, putting it in Bladders, and drying it. And the Plant or Hearbe it felfe is full of sharpe prickles. Of Pitch there are two kinds, the one being naturall, and taken out of certaine Stones, which

Of Pitch.

are in Fountaines; the water whereof retained the vnfauorie smell and tafte of the fame; and the other being artificiall, and proceeding out of the luniper or Pine-tree : and this artificiall Pitch I faw made vpon Mount Atlas, in manner following. They make a deepe and round furnace with an hole in the bottome, through which hole the Pitch may fall downe into an hollow place within the ground, being made in forme of a little veffell: and putting into the faid furnace the boughes of the foreland trees broken into small pieces, they close up the mouth of the furnace, and make a fire under it, by the heate whereof the Pitch diffilleth forth of the wood, through the bottome of the furnace into the forefaid hollow place; and so it is taken vp and put in bladders or bags.

The Fruit called Man or Mula.

Musa is a fruit growing upon a small tree, which beareth large and broad leaues of a cubit long, hath a most excellent and delicate taste, and springeth forth about the bignesse of a small Cucumber. The Mahumetan Doctors affirme, that this was the fruit which God forbad our first Parents to eate in Paradise, which when they had eaten they couered their nakednesse with leaves of the tame fruit, as being of all other leaves most meete for that purpose. They grow in great abundance at Sela, Towne of the Kingdome of Fez; but in farre greater plenty in the land of Egypt, and especially at Dumiata.

Of Cafria.

The trees bearing Casha are of great thicknesse, having leaves like vnto the Mulberie tree. 30 They beare a broad and white Bloffome, and are to laden with fruits, that they are confirmined to gather great store before they be ripe, least the tree should breake with our much weight. And this kind of tree groweth onely in Egypt."

The Roote called Tax narghente.

The Roote Tauzarghente growing in the Westerne part of Africa vpon the Ocean Sea shore, yeeldeth a fragrant and odossferous smell. And the Merchants of Mauritania carry the same into the Land of Negros, where the people vie it for a most excellent Persume, and yet they neither burne it, nor put any fire at all thereto : for being kept onely in an house, it yeeldeth a naturall fent of it felte. In Mauritania they fell a bunch of thefe Rootes for halfe a Duckat, which being carried to the Land of Negros, is fold againe for eighty, or one Rundred Duckats, and some-The Hearbe Addad is bitter, and the Roote it felfe is so venemous, that one drop of the water

The Rootecale distilled thereout, will kill a man within the space of an houre, which is commonly knowne euen to the Women of Africa.

The Roote Surnag growing also vpon the Westerne part of Mount Ailes, is said to be very The Roste cal- comfortable and presentine vnto the prime parts of man, and being drunke in an Electrary. to ftirte vp venereall luft, &c. Neither mult I here omit that, which the Inhabitants of Mount Atlan doe commonly report, that many of those Damosels which keepe Cattell upon the said Mountaines, have lost their Virginitie by none other occasion, but by making water voon the faid Roote: vnto whom I would in merriment answere, that I beleeved all which experience had taught, concerning the fecret vertue of the fame Roote, yea, they affirmed moreover, that 50 forme of their Maidens were to infected with this roote, that they were not onely defloured of their Virginitie, but had also their whole bodies puffed vp and swolne. These are the things memorable and worthy of knowledge, seene and observed by me lobn

Leo, throughout all Africa, which Country I have in * all places travelled quite over : wherein

whatforeer I faw worthy the observation, I presently committed to writing; and those things

which I faw not, I procured to bee at large declared vnto mee by most credible and substantiall

persons, which were themselves eye-witnesses of the same: and so having gotten a fit oportu-

Negros, and

nitie, I thought good to reduce these my Trauels and Studies into this one Volume. For a fmuch, as men defire to reade later occurrents, and thefe my Labours are intended not to the profit and pleasure alone; but to the bonour also of the English Name and Nation, I have added this following Descript of the late Warrer in Barbarie: we spenfung them to the first the understand the fellowing of the late Warrer in Barbarie: the spenfung the total from the total from print for with the logic mining, and some years; proceedings thereof, the English basing (as you shall see) rashems no fmall part therein; Que regio in terris moltri non pleta laboris; The voluntarie English aduentures in the Civill uncivil broiles of Ice-frozen Muscouia , of Sunne-foorched Barbarie, of Turkish and

CHAP.2.S.1. Remarkable observations of the Kingdome of Barbarie.

Pertian fig bes by Sea, the Mogols by Land, the Sweden, Polith, Germane, Bohemian, Belgian, and many-beaded Italian Brojles never home; the Easterne and W. Sterne Indies, the Artike Northerne Circle, and Southermost Africa remote, have really exceeded the fabulous Deuices of denifing Fublers, in Knight-Aduentures, the Issues and Occupations of idle braines. As for the mann r of the Scriftian Family, attayning at first to the Batharian Scepter, and the monityous Saint-slop and porten-THOMS power of Side Hamet, getting the Kingdome from the Brethren, and of Side Hia which dispoffessed birm of it and bie life, you have more full Relations in my Pulgrimage, with other Occurrents. Here it is more fit to let you heare others Speake then my felfe.

CHAP. IL.

Collections of things most remarkeable in the History of Barbarbarie, written by R o. C.

How the Kingdome of Barbarie came to MVLEY HAMET XARIF, the late deceased King, and the course of his government; of his Sonnes and their behausour: SHECK smilgouernment and imprisonment : HAME IS death.



He Family of the Mareines, being Larbies, were long times Kings of Barbarie: writill a plaine Hali formehundred yeeres ago, calling himfelfe Muley Hamet X4 This is that rif, came out of the Countrey of Dara, (lying beyond the Mountaynes of At- Seriffe or Xelas) with a great number of Mountayners, called in their owne Language Bre-riffe io often bers : thefe with their itrength got Mornecos from the Mareins. And going for mentioned by

ward following the fertilicities of the joyle, drage the Marieson out of fees; when the fertilicities of the joyle, drage the Marieson out of fees; when the fertilicities of the joyle, drage the Marieson and the feest ing into his power all the flat Countryes comprized vinder she Tricles of Sus, Mornecos and colour of war-Fee, from the his of Asias to the Streights of Gibraiter. Being thus grown great, he would ring spaint proue himselfer a Xarif, that is, one of the Kindred of the Prophet Mahomet, defining his birth the Christian might be held answerable to his new acquired fortunes : But within a little time after this his both Spaniards fodame inuation, Sas rebelling, refuled his Gouernment, wherefore hee fent to the bordering which had Tinkes for ayde, who fulfilled therin his request. Ayded with thele Tinkis auxiliary forces, he fet made (as you forward, and at his entrance into that Kingdome, the Twelf Souldiers through Treason killed fie in Leolarge him, and cut off his head; facked Taradant, and running ouer the whole Countrey, spoyled it entries into him, and cut off his head; lacked Taradam, and running ouer the whole Country; 1 poyled Barken) to 40 by the space of two monethes, which done, they would gladly have returned to Trimasine: yet Surpe the fearing their owne ilrength to returne the same way Hamet had brought them; it was held their State and difbetter course and shorter lourney, to palle ouer the Mountaynes; but the Montayners knowing possesse the this their new done bloudie fact, and feeing them have good flore of pillage, fet vpon them, fo former Kings. that few or none escaped their hands, but were all slaine. After this Hamet Xarifs death, who So that cue raigned some eight yeeres, succeeded his Brother Muley Abdela, having all his life time great time and affi warre with the Mareins, to keepe that his Brother had conquered : he having raigned from fif- faires, this HIteene yeeres dyed, leaning behind him thirteene Sonnes, the eldest Muley Abdela (who at his fleriefitly sucentrance to the Kingdome, commanded all his Brethren to be killed :) but the second Brother ceeds the for-Abdeinseleeb tearing hard meature, fled prefently upon the death of his Father into Torkig, merol Leafor and so faced his his. The third Brother Mules Human of whom week we hereafter compressed and ry. Of 50 and fo faued his life. The third Brother Muley Hamet of whom wee are hereafter to entreate, their manner being held a great Church-man, timple and humble spirited, not any way addicted vinto armes, of genting the was spared alive as leffe teared. The other ten were all put to death in one day at Taradant in Ste, Kingdome, and where they were kept in their Fathers life time. This Abdels raigned fortic yeeres, and dying, thereit of the left behind him three Sonnes. Mules Mehamot. Males Sheek Mules Walter Valles Males Males and Males Melan Males and Males Males and Males Males and Males Males and Mal left behind him three Sonnes, Muley Mehamet, Muley Sheck, Muley Naffar, Muley Mehamet Pulgrimage, Lo. being King, his two young Brethren ranne away into Spaine, the elder whereof named Muley (11.5.a. Sheek is yet living, and thereturned Christian. The younger Brother called Muley Naffer returned into Barbarie, in the fourteenth yeere of Muley Hamets Raigne, who dyed at lait. At this Muler Naffars landing in the Countrey of Fez, much people fauoured him and his Title, and two thousand of Muley Sheeks Souldiers (who now liueth, and then gouerned Fez., for his Father revolted from him to Nollar; infomuch, as Muley Sheek was in minde to have fled vnto his

Father, But that Alerd Hames Benlau, being a very wife Captaine, and there placed to helpe Muley Sheek by his countell, who was very young,) kept him from running away: and Mules Nassar with a illatorie warre, with whom if the Souldiers had stayed, hee might peraduenture have gotten the Countrey. But their Lent approaching, the Souldiers told Naffar, they

would goe keepe their Eafter at their owne houses. Whereupon Nasar, thinking if they were once gone, they would never returne to him againe, would give present battaile, and so was this Naffar flaine. Abdelmelech being fecond Brother to Abdela, got fuch fauour in Turkie where he lived, as entering Barbarie with foure thouland Turkifh Souldiers, he got the Kingdome from his Nephew Mehamet the eldest Sonne of Abdela, and there raigned two yeeres. Muler Mehamet thus depriued of his Kingdome, fled for fuccour to Sebaftian then King of Portugall, who came in person into Barbarie, to helpe him with thirtie thousand men; giving battaile, the Moores fled, and the Christians retyred, hoping the Moores would returne, that so the Christians might make the greater flaughter of them. According to this expectation Abdelmelech with his Armie returned, and the Christians charged the foremost of their Horse-men very hotly. Io who would have fled. But fuch was the abundance of Abdelmelechs Horse-men, following the foreward which were discomfitted, as they could not have field-roome to five but were forced to fight it out. This was a bloudie battaile wherein three Kings loft their lives, Don Sebaftian King of Portugall: Muley Mehamet vnto whose ayde Sebastian came ouer : And Abdelmelech who came out of Turkie being second Brother to Abdela; This Abdelmelecb left behind him a Sonne yet liuing at this day in Turkie, whole name is Muley Smime. After the death of thefe two. Abdelas third Brother, Muley Hamet Xarif, was made King, raigned about feven and twentie yeeres in great peace and felicitie, vntill he went to take his Sonne Muley Sheek at Fez, where the Father dyed, whose death hath caused all these Warres, as yee may reade hereafter.

Touching this Muley Hamet, I thought good, to infert this Letter of Master Bernhete, the Some 20 of that worthy Augustine Bernhere (as I have beard) which is so commended by Master Foxe for his zeale in Queene Maries dayes, in the Hiftorie of Bradford, Careleffe, Glouer, &c.

To his louing Brother Master Edward Wright.

His King Muley Hamet is much delighted in the studie of Astronomic and Astrologie, and va-I lust Instruments serving for the course of the Sunne and Moone, that are of rare device, ex- 30 ecedingly. Wherefore your Spheare, your Watch, your Mundane Diall, and your Sextant, your new Magnetical Infrument for Declination, or any Aftrolable that hath somewhat extraordinarie in it will be accepted : and you might fell the same at good prices. Now with the Eagle there goe from bence certaine Ambas adors, and one of them is the Kings Secretarie, named Abdala Walted Anoone, who bath some insight in such matters. This Bearer my friend Master Pate, and Robert Kitchen the Master of the Ship, I thinke, will bring him unto you, unto whom I would have you shew all the varietie of Instruments that you have either in your owne hands, or have fold and lent to others; that hee may choose some for the Kings wse and his owne. You may show them also the Draughts and Lineaments of what soner you have in Paper, all which I know, will make them admire and be desirous to have some that they can understand how to use. You may cause to be framed some Instruments in Brasse or Sil. 40 ner, leaning the spaces for Arabique words and figures, yet drawing the Pictures of them in Paper exally, and setting downe the Latine figures, and the words in Latine, or Spanish, which is farre better: there will be found here that can grave the same in Arabique upon the Instruments having some directs. on from you about the matter. Or Abdala Walted being a perfect Pen-man, can fet the Arabique Letters, figures, and words downe very faire; and so any of your Gravers can worke the same in Metall, haming his Writing before them. Master Cyptian would be a good Interpreter betweene you and them. or Some that understandeth and speaketh both Latine and Spanish, and knoweth what the words of Arte

The experiments Mathematicall of the Load-stone, will content the Ambassadour much. Make no scruple to shew them what you can; for it may redound to your good. I desire to heare more of Mag- 50 neticall workes, and the discouery of the North passage. Write to me thereof, and send any Maps or chaughts of instruments, or what you thinke sit about Dyalling, or the course of time, and the motion of the Heauent, which you thinke I can understand: but direct the same either to me, or to one Master Iohn Wakeman, fernant to Mafter Alderman Hammen ; who, though he have small skill in such things vet is desirous to see and learne, and can preferre such matters to the view of the King, and his Sonnes, who all are exceeding strictions of matters tending this way : so that if I had skill my selfe, or but some of yo. r Instruments, whereof I could make demonstration for their vse, I could give great content, and be a meanes to pleasure you much. But conferre with Master Pate, and Master Kitchen, who will direct you in this businesse, and from whom you may receive money before hand, for making any instruments that the Ambassadour's would have for themselves or the King.

Tour Magneticall Instrument of Declination, would be commodions for a yearely Voyage, which 60

A Voyage ouer a four Magnetical Instrument of Declination, would be commodish for a series Voyage, which a sandy Sea to some make for the King over a Sandy Sea (wherein they must vie Needle and Compasse) to Gago. Gazofor Gold. If you question about the matter, and shew them some instrument serving for this purpose, it will give great content. Other directions I might adde onto you; but from the parties about named, you may reCHAP.1.S.1. Great Dominions. Sugar Gardens. English Nation beloved.

ceine the same fully. And thus with my good will, hoping and wishing to see you shortly, I take my lease. This 24. of lune, 1600. From the Citie of Maroco.

From Marece in Barbary.

Your louing Brother in-law; Thomas Bernhere.

Obtaining the Scepter, hee first prouided himselfe of the grauest men hee could find in his Kingdomes, to be Counfellors of effate; then of the most experienced, and valuant Souldiers, Io for Commanders ouer his Campe, and Garrison Townes. And whereas he was Monarch ouer two Nations, the Larbies, and Brebers, he found it requifite to vie a two-fold gouernment. The Larbies dwelling in the most plaine Champton Countrey of his three Kingdomes , Moruscos, The Larbies Larbies dwelling in the most plaine Champion Country of this lines singuous, and rece, were easily governed, being of mild and peaceable nature, given to thrift and tillers in the lage of the ground, fought no alterations, but receiung from him a due forme of inflice, executed plaine the by his Ministers : protecting them from the Montaneirs which are robbers, willingly obeyed his Brebers Monna Regall authoritie, and yeerely payed their tenths toward their Kings maintenance. As for the tainers, Brebers, or Montamers, being of an vntamed and fierce disposition, speaking the Tamsfer tongue, which is as much different from the Larbee, as Welch is from our English, dwelling in places by nature defencible, and almost inaccessible: He could not so well gouerne, neither had ever such 20 absolute power ouer them, nor received the fift pennie of profite from them, as he dul from the Alarbier. Therefore he fought by all meanes to diminish their ftrength of people, drawing The greames them alwayes into forraigne expeditions, especially into that warre, against the Negres, which or his Domit continued a long time, t ereby extending his Empire to farre that way, as by Camell it was fixe moneths journey from Mornesos, to the farthest parts of his Dominion. Likewife, he vied A Carauanis this people to goe with the Carauans to Gago, to fetch home his yeerely Tribute and Custome, a company of whereby many were confumed in travelling over the Saharas : for any offence or robbery com- Merchants gowhereby many were continued in trauening out the sanaras for any otherical following their ingrogenher mitted by them, his fword should punish seuerely, that the rest might seare: duriding their for trading. muced by chem, mad distributes or Cantons, in every of which he placed an Alkeid, with Soul-with a great diers to suppresse any sudden vproares, much like our Lientenant set ouer our seuerall Coun-inimber of 30 ties, but that the Alkeid is continually refident, and hath greater power in executing Marfhall. Horfes, Catres, but that the sales of their loyalties, he would get their chiefest mens sonnes into his mels and law. And lastly, as pledges of their loyalties, he would get their chiefest mens sonnes into his mels and Mules, laden hands, bringing them vp in his Court to a more civill and delicate kind of life. He was alwaies of with Commomind to keepe peace with Christendome; with Spaine, who was his next Potent neighbour; but dities. about all loved the English Nation, and admired the late Queenes happie Government, willing to entertaine trading with vs. witnelf his many Letter written to that worthy Lady of happir Memorie, and his Embaffage fent vnto her, Anno 1601. Performed by Abdala Wabad Anowne, and Hamet Alhadg, their great transiler to Mecha, and other places. Toward his fabiects he was not too tyrannicall, but fweetned his absolute power and will,

with much elemencie. By divers wayes he got excessive store of gold. First, by seeing his 40 tenths truly payd from the Larbeer: Secondly, by trading with the Negro, taking vp the falt at Tegazza, and felling it at Gago, having from thence returne in good gold. Thirdly, by hulbanuing his Maserans, or Ingenewes, where his Sugar Canes did grow, (though now all ipoy- Sugar Garled with these warres) for it is sufficiently knowen, all of them about Moruces, Taradam, dens, and Magador, were yeerely worth vnto him, fixe hundred thousand ounces at the least. I omit his loue he tooke in entertaining forraigne Artizans, the reedifying of his house in Moruecos, getting Italian Marbles, the richest that could bee bought for money, and workemen hared from thence at great wages. His fumptuous prouisions for the Sarraile, and ma ntenance of his. The place from thence at great wages. His sumptuous prouisions for the Sarraile, and maintenance of his: Include wherehis wow women, not so much delighting in the sinne, as his predecessors had done before, a sto show his wherehis wow men are kept glory, because the fashion of the Countrey is such, to shew their riches and greatnesse vponthat fraile fexe, and their attendances. For his chiefest pleasures were to see the Gallantie of 50 his kingdome, managing their good Barbarian Steeds, and the Fakchons vpon their wing, making faire flights after the Heron : for these sports he was prouided, no man better, from which he was recalled by certaine discontents, which as clouds fore-runned his owne Sun-let.

At the time of his death, he left fine fonnes aline. The eldest Muley Mahemet, commonly Muley Hamet called Muley Sheek, a Title given alwayes to the eldest of the Kings sonnes : The second, Mu- Xanifison es ley Boferes, which two fonnes were both by one woman, a Negra, one of his Concubines; the three hift The third fon Maly Sidas, whom he had by one of his wines: The fourth fonne Maley Naflar, whom he had by one of his wines: The fourth fonne Maley Naflar, warres with who was about the age of nineeren experts. And the fit Maley Added Adults about formatted the work of the Maley Naflar, warres with who was about the age of nineteene yeers: And the fift, Muley Abdela, about fourteene yeers old cachother for at the time of the old Kings death, and these two last were the sons of two severall Concubines. the Kingdom, 60 This deceased King in his life time, had placed his three elder sonnes in several parts of his Kingdome, to governe for him in them, to Muley Sheek his eldest he had given the Kingdome of Fez, which Kingdome hath informer times continually beene allotted by the late Kings of Barbary to their clueft formes : Muley Boferes he placed in his Kingdome of Sus , to Muley Sidan he gaue the Prouine of Tedula, which lyeth in the mid-way betweene Mornecos and Fez: his

two younger sonnes Muley Nasjar, and Abdela remained with him in his house, whom by reason of their young yeeres, he had not as yet placed in any part of his Kingdomes. The eldest fonne Muley Sheek in his younger yeeres gouerned Fez, and those parts of Barbarie, with great approbation of his Father, through the Counsell of Balba Mustepha a Spanish Renegado : which Balles in continuance of time, grew into such fauour with him, that the whole Government of the Kingdome of Fez was wholly by Muley Sheek put in his hands: Whereupon, the Alkieds of the Country that were naturall borne Moores, and continuall attendants vpon the old King. enuying the greatnesse of the said Basha, raised divers accusations against him: Complaining to the King that he learned Muley Sheek to drinke wine (a thing vnlawfull to the Mocres, being forbidden them by their Prophet Mahomet) and that now having the whole Government of the 10 Kingdome of Fez in his hands, vnder the Kings fon he purposed after he had pollefied himself of Muler Shecks Treasure, to flie, and carrie it with him to some parts of Christendome. Which accusations, the old King vpon some probabilities and likelihoods, conceiving to be true these AL keids procured at last with him, that he should fend to his sonne Muley Sheck, commanding him to fend the head of the faid Bafba, which command; how focuer, Muley Sheck (who greatly loued, and fauoured the faid Balba) at the first delayed to performe, yet after divers mellages, the old King fending at the lait a principall feruant of his, to fee the execution done, he was forced much against his will, to see fulfilled. In these younger yeeres of Maley Sheek, whilest this Basha was alive, none of the Kings

M. Sheck.

M. Boferes .

formes was more dutifull to their father then he, neither any of their actions fo contented the old King as his; infomuch, as the whole Kingdomes hope for a fucceffor after the old Kings decease, was onely in Muley Sheck, Whereupon, and by the Kings voluntary motion, all the principall alkeids, and men of Command that were in the Kingdomes, by folemne oath vowed allegeance to Muley Sheek, after the old Kings deceale. And at that time Boferes the fecond fonne, by reason of the great plague in Sm, and other discontents, he received from that rebellious people, stayed not long there, but returned againe to his Father in Mornecos, where he flaved with him vntill his Fathers departure to Fez in September, 1602. Muley Sidan the third fonne, continued in Tedula, (a Province fruitfull and scituate in the flat of Barbarie, the mid-way betweene Fez and Morneces, as I have told you) who governed those parts in great peace and quietneffe, euen in the chiefe times of the tumults that were in the bordering Dominions of his 20 eldeft Brother Sheek, (whereof you shall read hereafter) insomuch, that hee was generally commended and liked both of his Father and of all the Kingdome for his gouernment, being strict in feeing the execution of Iuftice to be done in those parts that hee governed, not sparing his Kindred or neerest Followers in those cases: From his infancy hee naturally hated all maner of Threnes whatfoeuer, especially those his robbed by the high-wayes, and without any fapour or mercy feuerely punished them. How seeuer, he carryed himselfevery dutifull to his Father, whilest hee was living, yet from his child-hood he was alwayes of an aspiring and ambitious nature, which could never be brought to subject it selfe to give any awfull respect to his elder Brethren, but to hazard his whole estate in obtayning the Kingdome, accounting himselfe his Fathers lawfull heire, in that he was his Fathers eldeft Sonne, which he had by any of his marryed Wiues: In this point, not regarding the custome & Law of the Moores, who in tirle of Inheritance or fuccession, reford not the mother, whether she be marryed Wife or Concubine

Muley Shecks Countrey.

But to returne againe to Muley Sheck the Kings eldelt Sonne, who after the death of his Balba Multepha, (beheaded by his Fathers command) toone shewed vnto all men the want of governwent that was in him ; for in his latter times, giving himselfe over to drankennesse, and other detestable vices, which amongst the Moores commonly accompanieth that sinne, regarded not at all the government of his Kingdome, but furfered his fervants, followers, and Souldiers to doe what they would in robbing and spoyling the goods of his honest minded Subir cts. without control ment: And through want of luttice duely executed, his whole Country in a fhort time fwarmed fo with theeues and robbers by the high wayes, that there was no trauelling through his Dominions, but in Caffilas or companies of three hundred & foure hundred persons at a time, and they hardly fomtimes escaped the hands of theeues. The Alarbies, who continue to this day, in Tribes and kindreds, beeing the husbandmen of the Countrey, living in the fields in Tents, by Tilling of the Ground, and breeding up of Cattell, when as they could not quietly gather in and peaceably enion the Come and Fruits of the Ground, denied to pay the King their accustomed duetie : and in the fields followed the courses of Muley Sheeks servants in the Citie . in robbing of all passengers that came within their power. And such was the lauishing manner of foending and confuming of his Treasure, that in his humours, hee neither regarded whathe gave, nor to whom : in so much, that a Iew who was a Musician, and vsed to play before him in his drunken 60 fits. (what with the gifts given him by the Prince, andwhat elfe he got out of his house) had gotten together in money and lewels, (in the space of foure or fine yeeres) to the value of foure hundred thouland Duckats, which is about fortie thouland pound sterling.

bought with money, fo that her Sonne be the eldeft in birth.

This diffolute life and careleffe government of Muley Sheek, grieved the old King not a little,

especially to see such a change or alteration in him, whose forwardnesse in former times had been the flay of his age, and had mooted him to cause the Alkeids of the Kingdome, by out to confirme their alleageance after his owne death. Many wayes he fought to amend what was amife nrme their allengealise after this owner to allenge the state. Many ways are suggested allenge was amine in those parts, and to draw his sonne to a more strict course of life and more carefull kind of gournment, as well by his Letters, as by sending divers principall Askeids to be Coansellors vato him. Yetluch was the small account he made either of the one or the other, that the old King in the end feeing no amendment, but the estate of that Kingdome to grow daily worse and worfe, determined to goe to Fez in his owne person with an Armie, aswell to displace his son, who had denied to come vnto him, vpon his lending for: as also to put in order all matters in to thole parts, which through the ill gouernment of his sonne, were all out of frame. And so about The Kinge thole parts, which through the in government of its some, water an outer arrant. And to adole the beginning of October, 1602, hee fee forwards from Morseces with an Army of eight have beginning of October, 1602, hee fee forwards from Morseces with an Army of eight have beginning to England the Company of and Shot, and some five thousand Horse towards Fez, leaving his second some Muley Boseres to gouerne Mornecos and Sms in his absence, vntill his returne; making such speedy iourneys. that he was with his Forces within one dayes journey of Fez, before his sonne Muley Sheek was certainely adulfed of his fetting forth from Morneces. Who, when he underflood of his Fathers being so neere, and himselfe every way unprovided to resist him, would have sled towards Taillet; but being followed by Balha Mustepha, he was constrained to take Sanctuarie, Withfille Muley Sheetza. hundred of his best fouldiers, being very good Shot and well prouided. The old King the Fa- keth Sanctus. ther, seeing his sonne take the Printledge of the place (which is much respected in that Country) arie, willed him to come forth, and fubmit himselte to his mercy : But Muley Sheek refused, either obstinate in not obeying, or fearefull he could not render a good account of his fine and twentie yeares gouernment in Fez. Wherefore Muley Hames commanded Mustepha, a Basha of Sidans, though then in the old Muleys service, to take three thousand men, and perforce to enter the though then in the one strongly induced, by a second control of the reft of his company which were Taken there places which he performed, bringing Sheed, printinger, and the reft of his company which were Taken there place which he performed, bringing Sheed, but he would in no wife admit him into his prefence, but by force, let almost after the condition.

committed him to the charge and custodie of Basha ludar, one of greatest place about the King. who carried Sheek to Mickanes, a ftrong Garrison Towne, and there remained vntill the time of his Fathers death, which was some five moneths after.

of his fathers death, which was some nue monents are:

The old King in his iourney to Fee, againd his elder some, passed by the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his iourney to Fee, againd his chief some, passed by the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
The old King in his ourness of the Pronince of Trebila, robbin in
T remoue his houlhold to Fez, from Sidania (2 Citie which he had begun to build in Tedula, and died of the called it after his owne name) intending to leaue him Vice-roy of thole parts, in the roome of his Plague, which eldest sonne, whom he purposed to carry with him from Michaers, where he was prisoner to was le hot has a Manuscar; which he had also performed if her had not been prepared by finding death. For in one years Mornecos; which he had also performed, if hee had not been prevented by sudden death. For they say, there in August, 1603. he having set all matters in order in those parts of Fez, prouding for his returne died in Monco. to Mornecos, put out his Tents without Fez Gates; but being abroad, he fuddenly fell ficke, feuen hundred and his fickneffe to fore increased, that on Thursday falling ficke, on Sunday morning being the thousand, in Fourteenth of August, 1603. he died.

Fez, five hun-

My LEY SIDA & proclaimeth himselfe King in Fez. My LEY Bor ERES in Moruecos. My LBY NASSAR would have done the like in Taradant, but is hindred. The death of NASSAR. Warre betweene SIDAN and Bo-FIRES. SHECK fet free. FOKERS employed. The Battell. SIDANS flight. Fewds and robberies

Wiley Sidan, by reason his Mother Lilla Isha governed the old Kings House, vnderstood of his Fathers death, before it was noyled abroad; whereupon hee prefently went forth into his Fathers Camp and Tents, from whence he carried away al such Iewels and treasure as he found there. And after his Fathers death, hee caused himfelte in

Fex to be proclaimed King of Barbarie, as lawfull Heyre of his deceased Father. Lilla lobora, Mily Siden Mother to Muley Sheek, and Muley Boferer, seeing her eldest Sonne in prison, and void of all proclaimed meanes to helpe himfelfe at that instant, was not vinmindfull of her second Sonne Boferes, whom the old King had left to gouerne Mornecos during his absence. To whom shee dispeeded prefently Letters by one of the Kings Eunuchs; who made fuch hafte, that in foure dayes hee came from Fez to his Tents, which were some two leagues from Mornecos, where hee had lien all the Summer before (to avoide the infection of the Plague, which had been that Summer in Meritcoe) and with him was his younger Brother Muley Naffer, and his eldest Brothers Sonne Mu- Auley tofere cos) and with him was his younger Brother Muley Nallar, and his eldett Brothers Sonne 1224.

taketh possession of the Kings on and gat possession of the Alcasama, his Fathers House, before the newes of his Fathers death was House,

Bbbbb 2

novied abroad, and generally knowne, fearing how the Alkeyds, and people of Morruccos might frand affected vnto him, and knowing that it he had once possession of the Alcajana, and of his Fathers treasure, he had the best part of the Kingdome. And the next da, after his entrance. B fraprochi-he canled to be published generally thorow the whole Citie, the newes of h.s Fathers death and modal of the withall himselve to be proclaimed King: writing Letters to the Vice-roy of Sus to doe the like in Taradant, the chiefe Citie of that Kingdome; the which he accordingly performed.

Muley Nassar, the fourth sonne of the deceased King, having been all the Summer abroad with his brother Boferes, when now he understood of his Fathers death, tollowed his brother a farre off, as shough he meant to have entred Morruecos with him: but comming to the Gates of the Citie, in company with Muley Abdela his Nephew, being sonne to Muley Sheek, with 10 whom he was familiar, conferred with him about their flying into the Mountaines, periwading Mu'er Abdela, that he might no waies put any truft in Boferes, fince his father and hee were the chiefest impediments, that hindred Boferes from claiming the Kingdom by course of inflice; his Father, Muley Sheek being the old Kings eldeft sonne, and he the eldeft Sonne of his Father. Betides, his Father being in prilon fo neare Fez, where Muley Sidan was, it was to bee doubted, that Muley Sidan had already gotten him into his power, and it might be, had made some agreement with him already, to lowne both against Muley Boferes: which if it should to fall ut, would cause Boferes to deale more cruelly with him. But these perswasions moued not Abdela, who rather choic to enter the Citie, and follow his Vncle, on whose curtesie he would relie. Though Naffar fearing how Beferes would deale with him, with all speed fied into the Moun- 20 taines to the Kindred of his Mother, from whence after a few dayes with some eight hundred, or a thouland of those people whom he joined together, he passed into the Plaines of Sus, fending to the Alkeid in Taradant to proclaime him King, or elfe to fuffer him quietly to depart. But the Alkeid nauing already proclaimed Muley Boferes, withflood him, and hee having no meanes wherewith to pay his fouldiers and people that he had gathered together, was foone left of all. and fo returned agains to his Mothers Kindred, and lived privately there about feuen moneths, and then died of the plague, or as some reported, secretly poysoned, was brought to Morruecos, But to returne to Fez and those parts: after the death of the o'd King (Siden being now

proclaimed King in Fex; Boferes in Morruecos and Sus; and Muley Sheek priloner in Michanes, 20

in the keeping of Basha Indar) the Souldiers being abroad in their Tents, without Fez Gates,

began to be in a muteny, as well for fixteene moneths pay, which the old King owed them, as

alto about their returne to Morruecos, where the most part of them had left their wives and

children. To appeale this mutenie, Muley Sidan fent out of Fez vnto them Alkeid Hamet Mon-

fire, their chiefe Commander in the old Kings time, to promife them as well content in pay-

ment, as allo a speedy returne to Morrnecos with Muley Siden himselfe. But Monfore in Read

of pacifying laboured to increase their mutenous humours, and at last agreed with them sudden-

ly in the night to take up their tents, and to march with him to Morrincos, alleaging vinto them

both the vicertaintie of Muley Sidan: pay, and the Imal. likelinoo! of any speedy journey hee

meant to take to Morruecos. And being to paffe within a little of Michanes, where the Lafha kept Muley She k prisoner, he wrote vnto the said Basha to know his inten, whith the would 40

goe to Morraecos or no with him. To whom the Bafba came, and brought Muley Shock with

him, whom they brought along as priloner to Morrnecos; and delivered him up to his brother

Boferes, who kept him close prisoner in his House, tome foure or fine moneths, vntill the com-

ming of Muley Sidan against him in battell, by this meanes thinking to have established the whole Kingdome to Muley Baferes; who now, besides the possession of the Cicie of Morruecos,

and his Fathers treature, had brought vnto him the greatest part or his Fathers forces, and his

elder bro, her put prisoner into his hands. Maley Sidan being thus decented by Monfore, and

likewife by divers other principall Alkeids (who had fecretly departed from Fez, and left him)

two thousand Shot, and some Companies of Herse to Tedula, alwel to receive from the Alarbis,

those duties which they alwaies pay vnto their King, as also to stop, and returne to Fez, whom-

locuer he should find flying from thence to Marraecos, keeping possession of that Prou nee for

his yfe. He made likewife great preparations both of Horie and Foot in Fez, to be alwaies readie

to accompany himselfe in person if need should for quire, having with him in Fez of principall

Alkeids, Azus, chiefe Counfellor to the late deceafed King, and Lord ouer his Bulemel. Bocrafia,

forthwith dispeeded one Mustefa, a Renegado of his owne, whom he had made a Basha, with

Naffars flight

nered to Bo-

Azus. Treasuric,

Absadiks, and divers others. Muley Boferes likewise in Morrnecos, fore-slacked no time in making preparation to fend for hagainst him, fending first Alcaide Gowie with some fixe hundred men to make proussion of forces to be in Tedula, he fent out his Bafina Indar with fine thousand Shot, choyce men; there Pieces of Artilerie, and certaine Companies of Horse to enter Tedula, and to give battell to Mu-

Corne, and other victuals among it the Alarbies; and after he had certaine news of Muley S. dans 50 Refathe Generall of Sidans forces, or periorce to drive him out of that Country. At whole comCHAP.1.\$,2. English Gunners: Fokers Message: M. Sheck freed.

ming thither, Muffifa feeing himselfe no waies strong enough to encounter with Indar, retyred Sidaria deming initiate, naujusja ucing minitine no waits minig through the foundation of Sudana, though backe agains with his Armie out of Tedula; and Indan deflroyed the foundation of Sudana, though (which Muley Sides at his being in Tedula had begun to build vpon the River of Morbaie, and called it Sideria, after his owne name) likewife wafted and destroyed the Country, thereabout, at leaft to many of the Kimirea's of the Alarbies as he knew to be friends to Muley Siding, or those that would not acknowledge Boferes for King. Sides understanding what Isadar had done in Tedula, and likewise of the great preparations that his brother in Morneces daily made to fend out against him forthwith put forth his Tents, and ioyned together his whole forces, which were fome eight or nine thouland Shot, and fome twelve thouland Horie, with two and twentie Pie-10me eignt or nine thomann appropriate we've thousand route, what two and twente viet in 10 ces of Artillerie, himfelfe in perfon going along with them. And because hee was altogether in 10 ces of Artillerie, himfelfe in perfon going along with them. And because hee was altogether in 10 ces of Artillerie, himfelfe in perfon going along with them. enproused of skilfull Gunners for his Ordnances, he procured from Salie out of certaine Eng-Uh men of warre, who at that instant were there, two English Gunners, to whom he committed the charge of his Artillerie: but by reason of much raine that had fallen, it being in the moneth of lanuarie, 1604, the ground in many places was fo fort, that they could not march with their Artilletie fo fast as need required; fo that his Artilletie neuer came at the battell, which was

thought to be a chiefe cause of his ouerthrow.

Whilest these preparations were in hand on either side, Muley Boseres sent certaine Foleres, Februare men while there preparations were in mand on thirst use, analysis superstain extract condition of good life, held of great estimation amongst the Moores, to bis brother Oshuky Sidan, to treate condition of good life, which are only ons of peace; howbort, after their dispecting from Monaces, becometed no time and dilate only one of peace thought, after their dispecting from Monaces, he consistent on time and dilate only one of the monaces in finding forth near Armies and front hundline both near their dispections. 20 gene in fending forth new Armies and freth jupplies, both of fouldiers and promiting to fundamental Levells them Balba that was in Tedula, and understanding for certaine that his brother Sidan was in the field Hermites; in person (because he himselfe had neuer been inured to trauell, and knowing it would bee no other call an person (occasie ne nimiere nau neuer ocen murea to trauen, and knowing it would oce no office can finall difcouragement to his fide, and encouragement to the other, that Stades thould be in person in the field and no other his could in Blood in his Armier or wish flead him blood could like and Saints: fou in the field, and no other his equal in Bloud in his Armie to with fland him) hee concluded they are held acolourable Peace betweene himselfe and his eldest brother Muley Sbeck, whom vntill that in great reputime hee kept close prisoner in his house, agreeing with him that hee should goe forth into his tails not time hee kept close present into noue, agreeing with him that hee mount got forth into the fartities.

Armie, and toyne with Indar to fight against Muley Siden, whom it hee overthrew in battelly, include.

M. Sheet fetat hee should eniov the Kingdome of Fez, and so much of those Easterne parts of Barbarie, as hee libertie. inioyed in their Fathers time : on condition, that at his entrance into Fez., he should proclaime 30 Muly Befrer King, and himselfe onely Vice-roy, and in still acknowledge his government there, as derived from Boferes. And to the intent Muley Sheek thould the better observe these conditions according to their agreement, hee was to leave his eldeft fonne in pawne with Males Boferes in Mornecos. On these plautible conditions, Mules Sheek was fet at libertie, a happie turne for himselfe as hee thought, who neuer looked for any better but perpetuall impri-

Jonment, with much miferie. But the truth is, Ballos Indar had feeret aduertisement from his Master Boferes (yet not so secret, but it was knowne to Muley Sheck, and closely carried of him by interception of Letters betwixt Mornecos and the Campe in Tedula), that hee should abridge Muley Sheek of any command in the Campe, or matter of counfell in ordering of the Fight; onely shew him to the Souldiers under his Canopie, that the Fexes who were the ftrength of Sidens Armie, might know Sheek was in the Campe of Beferes, whom they loued in regard partly of his long abode amongst them, but especially of his great liberalitie, or rather produgalitie, formerly shewed vnto them, which wrought much in their minds at the enfung battell: and withall the Balba had a speciall charge sent, and his Guard so to watch him, that (if hee got the battell) hee should bring Muley Sheek in Yrons as safe a prisoner from the Campe to Moruccos, as once hee had done from Michanes. But this being discoursed. Muley Sheck to shufled his Game, that though Indar won the Field, Muley Sheck escaped vnto Fez, and was louingly entertained of the Citizens, proclaiming himselfe King of Bar-

But returne we to the Fokers, treating about conditions of Peace in Fez with Muley Siden, Fokers in Federal who by intelligence understood from Morseces of the fresh supplies of Souldiers, daily sent our ed, and peace 50 by his brother to the Baha, whereby hee greatly suspected those offers of Peace, to bee but a dealed uice to prolong the time, whilest his whole forces were in a readmesse, and then suddenly to haue conteypon him vnawares, before he should be prouided for him. And therefore hee retur-

ned the Fokers with denials of the offered conditions of Peace, and himselfe thinking to take the oportunitie and aduantage of the time, before either his brothers new forces should come to the Bafha, or Muley Sheck his eldest brother be fet at libertie. He caused with all diligence to bee Almahalla is gotten together some two thousand Mules and Horses, and vpon euerie Mule to bee set a Campe, two Souldiers with their furniture, and io (without any flay for the rehalling of Tents, or carrying along of his Artillerie with him) to bee with all hafte possible, sent and iowned to

the Almoballa of Alkeid Mustefa which lay hard by the River of Morbaie, in the fight of 60 the Almoballa of B. ha Indar, the River onely betweene them: hee himfelfe likewife in person went along with some seuen or eight thousand of his Horsemen, thinking by this meanes to come with the chiefest and best of his forces vpon Basha Indar, before the Bafba should expect him, or before the comming of Muley Sheek, who for his liberalitie Bbbbb3

and bounty in former times, was greatly beloued of all the Souldiers both of Fez., and also of Morneces. But this policie of his herein tooke no place, for Muley Sheek after hee was fet at libertie, made fuch speedie lournies that he came to the Almohalla of the Baha, before the Muter Sidan had certaine intelligence of his libertie, and yet hee entred the Almohalla but on the Tuelday, the battel being fought vpon the Friday following. Muley Sidan understanding for certayine that his eldeft Brother was come into the Basha his Almohalla, thought it no time for him to deferre giving of Battayle, least it should be knowne amongst his Souldiers, (many of whom in former times had ferued the faid Muley Sheek.) And therefore on Friday the fixt of January 1604, the Forces of each fide met and joyned together, betweene whom there was no lone fight, for voon the discharging of soure Peeces of Artillery, (which Indar Basha had with him) To some three or foure times, a great part of the Souldiers of Muley Sidan beganne to flye; except Some choice men which were in that part of the Battayle where the Maley himselfe was : by reason of the resolution of their Commander, continued somewhat longer, but in the end fled when as the Canopie ouer Muley Sidans head was shot downe with a Piece of Ordnance. At which mischance, and not before, the Maley himselfe began to leave the field; who in the managing of this battayle was some thing to be blamed; for being come to his Campe an houre before day, he should not have delayed two hours and more the present on-set, gazing in his Enemies face, and giving them time to ready themselves to fight, whom otherwise hee might have taken at the difper-view, and his Fezzes whom he halfe mistruited, no premeditation to revolt or runne away. On Muley Shecks fide few were flaine, and of Muley Sidans tide the greatest 20 member was fome fixe hundred men.

The three Brethren thus striuing for the Golden Ball of Soueraigntie, Iustice was trodden downe. The Larbees robbed one another, the strongest carrying away all. Quarrels betwixt Families and Tribes, which durft not be talked of in old Muley Hamets time, came to be decided with the Sword. After this battaile all wayes were stopped with Robbers, no trading from the Port Townes to Morneces, without great strength of men. Muley Boferes (who had the Imperiall (eat) was neither fo fit for action, or to doe Iustice, as Muley Sidan who had loft the day-And that the Kindred, called Weled Entid, well knew, which prefuming vpon the foft nature of Beferes and their owne strength, which consisted of fifteene thousand horse, foraged vo to Morweres gates, fore-closed all passages for Trauetters, making Merchants goods their prizes : Wheras an exemplary punishment executed vpon them for their robbing in Fez by Muley Siden, whileft he raigned there, made them thinke the Country too hot : For Sides commanded Alkeid German with two thousand Souldiers in hostile manner, to fall voon the next Direr of Tents belonging to that Tribe, to burne Man, Woman, Childe, Kine, Sheepe, and whatfocuer Vniuft Iuftice. belonged to them, not to spare it vpon his owne life from Fire and Sword, which fully executed and fo bloudily, that Muley Siden fighed hearing the true report, yet it made Fez the peaceableft part in Barbarie. But returne we to Sidans fortunes after he loft the field, having the ouerthrow, retyred backe to Fez, and forthwith was Alked Azas (the onely man in the latter dayes of the old King, favored by the whole Countrey) dispeeded towards Mornecos, to treate of a peace, and himlelfe beganne to make head againe to refiff fuch forces as should follow him; but before he could bring his forces together againe, newes was brought vnto him that his Brother Muler Sheek, was neere at hand with certain companies of Horle-men, and that the whole Almohalla of the Balha was not farre behind. So that then hee was rather to consider of, and to prouide for his escaping by flight, then any wayes to relift: and having before put some nine hundred thousand Duckets in Allarocha, for the which money he had fent one of his Alkeids atter his returne from the battayle; hee thought it his best course to passe that way, and to take Treafure saken that money along with him, but he was followed so hardly by Alkeid Abdela Wahad, and Alkeid Vmfoud Vmbily, Boferes Servants, that he was forced to five directly towards Trimifine, and to leave that Treasure behind him which was taken by his Brother Mley Sheck.

In these his frowning fortunes, the most of his Alkeids left him, and amongst others Mannine Bocrafia flying to Morucces, in whom he put no small trust: and more then the Servants of his house, he had no man of account but torsooke him , onely Alkeid Absadicke, Hado Tabid, and Mustepha; the two latter of them being his houshold Servante, and belonging to him in his Fathers time, left him not in his advertitie : So that any Alkeid of the Caffas or Caftes in Barbarie, he had no more then Absadicke, who rather then he would leave him (although allured by the perswasions of his Brother Alkeid Abdela Wahad, and entreated by the teares of his Sonne to returne, both of them then being in the pursuit of Muley Siden, and in a Playne ouertooke the faid Abladocke, yet he left his house and children at the mercie of Muley Boferes his Master and Enemie. The Alkeids who followed in pursuite of Muley Siden, followed him fo hard, that befides the treasure of Allarocha, they likewise tooke much of the Muleys Treasure that hee 60 carryed along with him, although with that fmall company of Horses, which were no more then twentie Horle-men or thereabout, hee returned many times, and fought with those who purfixed him, in perfon, being still one of the foremost in these Skirmishes, vntill Alkeid Vmbilie who purfued him, admiring his refolution, and pittying his miserable estate, requested his Maiestie to keepe on his way, and saue himselfe by slight, he not purposing to pursue him any further. And so the Muley in this miserable estate (forsaken almost of all) kept on his way to Trimaline a Towne bordering vpon the Turkes, in the Frontiers of the Kingdome of Argiers: and the Alkeids who purfued him, returned agains to Fez.

à. III.

Myley Sheck proclaymeth himselfe King in Fez. Sidan goeth to Tafilet, from thence into Sus. Peace concluded betweene My LEY Boffere's, and MYLEY SIDAN. ABBELA SHECK'S Sonne escapeth Sir ANTHONY SHERLEY'S Embassage, Bountie and State.

Free Muley Sidens flight in this manner, Muley Sheck entred Fez, where hee was joyl fully received of them, proclaymed himfelfe King, and not Gouernour under his Broad ther Boferes. And it being in the time of Rummadan, all the Almohallas of Morne-Rummadan is cor returned home against the Pascha: from whence after the celebration of the Lent,

Feaft, they were fent forth to all parts of the Country against the Larbies : among whom were as oreat Civill Warres, as among the Brethren, for in this time of fo many Kings, they would fions among acknowledge none, or pay duty to any of the three Brethren. Whereupon Hamet Monfore with the Larbies. three thousand Souldiers, was sent into Sm in the moneth of Aprill, 1604. but his men dying of the Plague (which was very hot at that time) and thereby the Larbies little regarding his power, would bring him no victuals, fo that with the remaynder of his men, he was contrayned to returne towards Mornecos, Divers other Almoballas were fent abroad into feverall parts of the Countrey, but in the beginning of June, newes comming of Muley Sidans returns from Trimaline to Tafilet, they were all fent for by Boferes to returne to Mormecos, and be invened together the second time against Maley Siden : who having some few monethes lived about Tri-30 mafine with some fiftie Souldiers, went towards Tafilet, about which part lived the Caffa or Caste of Alkeid Abfadock (who was Master of the Hawkesto Muley Hames) and brought to Sidar, of his Cafe some twelve hundred Horses, with which force he entered Tafilet : The Al-

keid of Muley Boferes flying to Dara or Draw with his Souldiers. In Tafilet, Mules Sides stayed some forty dayes, where he understood perfectly of the estate of Sus, and had Letters from divers of his Wel-willers there : vnderstanding of Alkeid Hames Monfores departure from thence : And that the Shebanites which is the greatest Cast in all Barbarie , and the Caste or Cast of the Malers Mother, would not acknowledge Boferes for King, and likewife, how most of all the Casts in Sau defired his comming thither : Whereupon hee prepared what Forces he could there get, to goe into Sus. Muley Befores upon the first newes of his Brothers com-40 ming to Tafilet, called in all his Almohallas, and joyning some foure thousand shot of them befides Horse, sent them from Moruecos to Dara, vn.ier the command of his Son Muley Abdelinelech, with whom went divers principall Alkeids, as Alkeid Gowie, Umbilie, and Mumine Bocrafia, who in the first battayle of Muley Sidan was a principall man of command on his side, and after his overthrow fled from him to Morneces, with divers others. The chiefe intent of these Forces was to stop the passages from thence to Sue, which Muley Sidan perceining before the comming of their whole Forces, he passed by Alcatony, where the Horse-men on each side skirmished, the Footmen not being able to come vp, and some slaine of either side, but no man of account, laue onely Alkeid Mumine Bocrafia, who as some reported dyed with thirst, beeing Death of Beouer-heated (the battavle beeing fought in the middeft of July) or as others reported, beeing crasia. so wounded, and returning to his Tent, calling for water, after hee had drunke it presently dved: whose death was little lamented or pittyed of the Moores, they faying, hee was justly re-

Muley Sidans Forces were to small, that he was not able to match in strength the Forces of his Enemies. & therefore was confravned to passe into Sau by the way of the Sabara, and durst not passe by Draw: In which Sands for want of water, both he and his whole company had almost perished, and after much misery indured in that Journey, hee arrived at Aca, where Sidie Country or Abdela Imbark the great Foker dwelleth, the friendship of whom obtayned, hee knew that all Defitts of his Brothers Forces could not dispossed him of the Kingdome of Sm , in such great reverence Sands. is that Church-man held in those parts, that the people will obey none, but whom he commanon of Hatzatte

warded for being a Tray tour to Muley Sidan his Mafter, who was not onely contented to leave

him in his misfortunes, and to flye to his Brother, but also to goe forth into the field against

He being come hither, the Foker by letters to Muley Boferes, then at Moruecos, procured that there might be a Treaty of peace betweene the two brethren: Whenipon, in August following,

Dwar, is a

Towne of

peace.

Beforesand

Anno 1604. Alkeyd Azus was sent to Muley Sidan to Aca, where by the endeuours of the faid Peace concin- Alkerd and the Foker, a peace was concluded, betweene Muley Beferes and his brother Mules Sidan, this to inioy the Kingdome of Sun, and the other the refidue of the Empire, whereupon Sidan peaceably entered Taradans the chiefe City in that Kingdome: vpon whose entrance this ther, Sus which in all former times had beene the most vinquiet and rebellious part of all Barbars. through his execution of Iustice , became the onely peaceable and well gouerned Countrey of that Kingdome, all other parts of Barbarie, that were vinder the government, and belonging to the other two brethren, as then remaining very vnquiet, and full of all tumults: Neither was his government any way to be milliked, but that scarce setled, he charged the Countrey with greater impositions then his Father euer demanded, insomuch as Sedie Abdela Imbark, who was 10 the onely man that first brought him thither, reprocued his courses and the Mountainers of At-Las, being good Souldiers, excellent shot, and their dwelling by nature defencible, finding his yoke too heavy, the leffe regarded him or his power; which humour of theirs was nourified by fecret practifes of Bofares, loth that Sidan (hould either grow great in friends, or treasure. But the Inhabitants of the Plaine and lower Regions felt the imart of his rod, knowing their throats lay at his mercy, when as the Mountainers defended themselves with open armes, and oftentimes gaue the new king his hands full.

The peace concluded betwixt Boferes and Sidan, by the meanes of Abdela Imbark, and Asse. the wifelf Counfellor that Barbary hath: we will leaue Sidan at Sin, feeking his owne end once more to become Mafter of Moraces, and returne to Baffers, who was troubled which way to 20 contriue the regaining of Maley Sheek: who like a Bird had broken cage, and was flowen to Fez. making a faire pretence to gouerne but as Vice-roy, yet fecretly practifed with forraine States. either to make them his friends, whereunto he might flie, if Muley Boferes by force should drive him out of Fez, or rather then he would lofe footing in Afrike, determined to bring in forraine power, for his aid. Wherefore Bofores fearing a Christian storme which might haile bullets, was carefull to keepe Abdela, Maley Sheek his eldeft fon, the fafer to keepe the father furer from do-Abdelsa escape, ing mischiefe. But it happened the plague was sharpe in Morneco, therefore Befores sent his son Muley Abdelmeleb forme fine miles foorth of Mornecos with his Tents , and Muley Shecks fonne with him, but either his keepers were negligent and corrupted, or elfe young Abdela too wilie. for one night he made escape out of the Campe, and having horses ready layd, posted to his Fa- 30 ther at Fee. This gallant being at liberty, fought all meanes to defend his Title, being the elden brothers fonne his firting point and youthfull hope drew all the minds of the Feezes wate hims iniomuch as Muley Boferes fore afflicted with his cleape, but more with the newes of his preparations, dispeeded Azm vnto Muley Sidan then in Sm, with request he would goe personal ly to battaile againit Sheck and Abdels his some : Muley Sidar well entertained this message, and with all concernent i peed drawing his owne forces together, came within halfe a dayes icurney of Morueces, there pitching his Tents, but not determining to hazard his fortune, or trust the price of his owne head under his brothers hands, yet daily he sent letters by his servants of great credite, wherein he was willing to undertake the charge of warre against Abdela, io that he might make choice of Captaines and Commanders, and fuch proportion of Souldiers as 40 he thought fit, to vndergoe an action of fuch import. This proposition was neither liked of Boferes or his Countell, yet making taire weather to Muley Sidan, letters passed from him daily of great loue farced with many complements, much milliking his brothers miftruft, not daring to

seopard his person within Mornecos.

Muley Sidan meaning to proue what correspondency his brother Boferes heart carried with his hand framed al tter which was fent as from the chiefest man in those Mountaine Countreys of Atlas, to Muley Boferes, full of duety and teruices, offering withall to fend him Sidans head, who was encamped within his Countrey, at the foot of the hilles. Answere to this letter was returned with great thankes, and a large reward of gold promited, if a businesse of that high and important feruite would be performed. When Sidan by this had conftrued his brothers meaning, 50 he rayled Campe, went to Tafiler, and remained in the Countrey of Dara, gathering in of money and men, after two moneths spent with his brother to no effect at all. Beferes leeing Sidan departed, and destitute of his helpe for Fez, committed his Campe to Abdelmelech his owne fon, who was to be adulfed by the Counfels of Balha Indar, Alkeyd Harnet Monfore, Sedy Gowie, and Albert Boterfe (thorow whose hands pasted all businesse of Christian Merchants, so well dispatched, and lo good regard thereof taken, that he was well liked of every man for his good dealing.) This Campe being come within a dayes journey of Fez, which is twenty dayes march from Mornecos, there the Souldiers fell to a mutenie, and three thousand of them revolted vnto Sheek, crying openly, Long line Muley Sheek, Hereupon Abdelmelech called a Counfell of warre, wherein it was concluded, though their number were twice as many, to returne without blow given backe to Morneces, perceiving indeed their Souldiers hearts quite alienated 60

Abdelmelech

His retreat.

S. Anth Sherley dor from the

About this time being the beginning of October, arrived at Saphia Sir Anthony Sherley, as Ambassadour from the Emperour of Germanie, to the King of Mornecos : his attendance was CHAP.I.S.3. Sir Anth. Sherleys Honorable Ambassage unto many States.

better then a private man, though somewhat wanting of the person from whom he was sent, few of note were in his company, being in all about thirteene persons, of every Christian lansuage one, because he would be fitted for interpretation of tongues. Amongst these was Sir Edwin Reth, whose behautour was good and well spoken of in every place where he came, not Sir Edwin Rich. frayning his credite to borrow money, but well prouided to ferue his owne turne, answering to his birth, state, and disbursements for the time. Sir Anthonie then taking the Title of Ambasfadour, during foure Moneths aboad in Safbia, kept open house, inuited all Christian Merchanes daily, both to dinner and supper : to supplie his owneturne for money , he got credite of lewes The Ambassa to take up money and pay them in Morruecos, but at excelline rate, almost lifty for a hundred; does bounty,

10 He bought likewife of an English Merchants Factor, being at dinner with him , at two or three words, a thirt of a hundred & nxty Tunne, with all her lading being Wheat, paying him in hand two thousand ounces, and if he were not paid the rest of his money within ten dayes after his arrivall in Morruecos, then the buyer to lofe his earnest. But before he went vp., Abdelmelech returning from Fez, by reaton of his Souldiers Treaton, the King of Fez marched towards Merruecos, tome foure dayes sourney, and there gave fiege vnto a Port Towns called Sally, and tooke it, but the Caffle he could not win. So the Alkerd of the Caffle wrote to Muley Boferes, that though the Towne were loft, the Castle he would keepe for him, if he fent three hundred quarters of Corne to victuall his men, and a fresh supply for ffty Souldiers. Boferes loath to lote the the place, and hearing Sir Anthonie had bought a ship of Corne, writ to Saphie, and willed him to leathis thip to Salle, and there to valde her Corne for the reliefe of the Castellan , and his 20 Sould ers. Sir Anthone, willing to doe the King a fauour, fent for the Captaine and Merchant of the flup, wilked them to goe tor Sallie, and paying them for three hundres quarters, dealt to that

thither they went, but the Castell being yesided before they came, the Captaine and Merchant landed nestirer men, nor corne, but returned to Saphie. By this time were feat for the Conduct of the Embassador fine hundred men.vn/er the command of two Alkerds a vinto enery Souldier Sir Anibonie gaue a Turbith as a Linery of his loue, which made them respect and honour him exceedingly, insomuch as one of the two Alterda not hastning to conduct the Embassador vp to Morraces, but to provide himself of Corne, at boy ing exceeding deare at Morruecos, Sir Ambonie detirous to let forward, and the Soukhurs willing to pleature him, fell to materie, in regard of the Alkerds flacknesse, killing two of his men

ing to present mind the state of the state o of his Souldiers, he was received into Morruecos with great state, having by the way, as also during his abode in Saphie, divers letters from the King, extolling his honourable endeaours, and appropued valianthese in his farre adventures both by sea and land, not omitting any Courtship His samous to win his love, or make him doubt his welcome.

After two dayes Ray in the Citie, the King made preparation for his entertainment at Court, whether he went, furing his followers as well as the flortneffe of time could fuffer, and his credite with the Christian Merchants could affoord, which was good, for two Spaniards were so Spaniards in rapt with admiration of his worth, and by his speeches allured with so strange hope, that they 40 fell in emulation, whether should doe him more services, or helpe him to more money : realo-

nably attended, he rode to Court, not lighting from his horse, where the Kings tonnes viually nany actended, he low Mulmard, (which is the Kings great Hall, wherin moit of his Louis, His flate, Garlemen, and chiefe fort of people doe attend, when they come to Court) which none but the King himfelfe doth. Being come into the Kings prefence, his Letters of credite were receined, with great shew of kindnesse, and himselve entertained with all gracious respect, not onely at the Kings hands, but of the principallest men in office or fanour about the Contr., and to for that time was difm fled, the chiefelt men a tending him backe to the place where hee tooke horie, Some fine dayes after, Sir Anthonie Sherler comming to audience, and thinking to hant

50 ridden in as he did before, a chaine was hung croffe the entrance of the Mulbrard, Awtische he perceining onely done to hinder his passage. would not alight from his Horse, but ret. medbacke very discontented. This being certified to Boferes, presently three of his chiefest allerds: were His affronce fent to qualifie the matter. But Sir Anthonie tooke the dilgrace not as his owne, but his whole and disconperson he represented, telling the Alkerds, his master the Emperonr, was able and would requite tent, the miury, neither did he feare, though now within the power of Boferes, knowing the greatneffe of him in whose service he was imployed, so faire surpassing the King of Marrieces, as maugre the proudest, he would be fetched from thence, and be fully renenged of the least minity done vnto him. The three Alkerds layd the blame vpon the Kings Porter, offering Sk Ambonie the Porters head, if he would have it, to fpending an houre to pacifie his choller, and bring 60 him backe, the Porter before his face was fore beaten and imprisoned, neither euer after was hee

hindered of riding thorow the Mushward. During his abode in Morruecos, which was fine moneths, Boferes and he had diners prinate

conferences, as it was generally thought, which way to keepe him in the Kingdoms against his two brethren Sheek and Sidan; as also to give the great Turke a blow to drive him out of Ar-

30

Eseape of a

eiers and Tunes. From Mornecos Sir Anthonie departed with great content to himselfe, and good His bounty to liking of Boferes, of whom he bought two Portugall Gentlemen, for a hundred and fifty thoufand ounces, which amounteth to some ten thousand pound sterling. These two had beene Captines in Mornecos almost fixteene yeeres, the one, sonne to the Vice-roy of the East Indies. the other of a Noble house in Portugall. The first had his resgat thrife fent for to ransome him out of the East Indies, but twile it was taken by the English, once by Flemmings during our late warres with them : the other, his brethren drine him oft for his relgat, either to faue fo much money, or not able to pay so great a fine. To accompany him from the Court to Saphie, was fent one of the Kings Gentlemen Vihers, to whom at his parting, he threw him his Hat which he wore from his head, with a lewell of great value, rewarding largely all the Vihers follow- 10 ers. For his Guard (the wayes being then very dangerous) was lent downe with him, foure hundred shot, wider the Command of Alkeyd Abdela Sinke, a Portugall Renegago. (which is a Christian turned Moore.) This man, whether by perswasien, or voluntarily, defiring to see his native Countrey, in the night gat aboard of the thip Sir Edwin Rich was in, not Sir Anthonies. the ship presently weighing Ancher, made faile for Spaine, but the other remaining with S. An-

This dealing was taken in ill part, infomuch that fine of his men being fent to shoare for certaine prouision which they lacked, were clapped up in prison, and fent in chaines to Mornecos. but afterward released. Sir Anthonie writing to the King, both to cleare himselfe of the fact, and desiring remedie for these his new sustained grieuances, seta good shew vpon the matter, staid 20 foure dayes after the other ship which had carried away the Alkeyd, and would have tarried vntill he had his five men againe, but that he was written vnto to be gone from an especiall friend a shoare, adulting him he did not wel to ride so long in the Port, divers Flemmish-men of war being abroad, and if any should chance to come in there, as seldome it is without, they finding these two Gentlemen as prize would lease vpon them, and then was there lost thirty five thoufand ounces, which a Merchants Factor had lent Sir Amhonie Sherley to cleare him out of the Country, for which the Factor had the two Portugals bound to pay this debt at their arrinall in Lifton. Vpon this aduertisement he departed, and the next day Boferes sent him a letter, to

cleare his men. And fo I returne to the file of my continued History.

MVLEY ABBELA goeth in person against MVLEY Boreaus; drineth him out of Mornecos; Putteth to death BASH A SIDAR, and other Noblemen; SIDAN expellesh him, and killeth three thousand Fexans perfideoufly, requited by ABDELA. SHRACIES trechery uniustly punished. SIP ANS flight. Many Englishmen imployed in thefe warres, and flaine.

Floy Sheek, putting his fonne Abdels forward to the whole Command of the armie, himfelfe meaning to faue one, kept in Allerea three Italies ships, purposing if matters prospered not well , with Treasure sufficient to goe to Florence : but the battell not fought, his determination altered, for he presently seized all strangers ships which came either to Laratch, Salie, or other parts, as also some Merchants ships of Fez, robbing them of their goods, making their Mariners land their Peeces, and all the men either to serue him, or elfe to haue the Iron given them. Heereby he fitted himselfe of Captaines and Souldiers being English, French, and Dutch, with seven and twentie Peeces of Ordnance and shot threunto sufficient. And so fired the mind of his sonne Abdela, with hope of winning Marue. cos (being of himselfe drunken with the ambitious defire of a Kingdome) that Abdela about the latter end of November 1606.marched to Mornecos with his troupes being some ten thouland horse and foot, besides his Christian Mariners, whose helpe won him the field, fought some sixe miles Southeast from Mornecos, on the eight of December, 1606. Sheek bore his sonne company no farther then Salae, from whence three houres riding, is a River called Mamora, into which Bay the Itelas thips put in : Sheek went thither , and hard by the thips upon the theare pitched his Tent wherein he lay, part of his Treasure being shipped, himselfe determined there to flay, and expect the event of his sonne, if it passed well with him, then Africke should hold Abdela by help him, otherwise to wifite the great Duke of Thuscane, on whose curtesie he much rested. But the 60 of English and Christian Gunners to well observed their times of thooting and placing their Ordanace, as they other Christian Gunners to well observed their times of thooting and placing their Ordanace, as they other Christian. got Abdela the field, hoping thereby to have obtained both liberty, and pillage, of which most of them poore men failed, as afterward you shall read.

When Sheek heard Abdels had got Mornecos, hee grew careleffe to fend prouition or supplie

the wants of his three Italian thips, wherefore, they fet fayle from Mannera homewards . taking such Treasure for their pay as were in their cuitodies. Boferes lost in this battayle about Boferes his fixe hundred men, fled into the Citie to faue his Treasure and his women, but for feare of being flight, furprized, durst not tarry to take his Treasure away with him, but in all haste posted toward the Mountaynes, willing the Alkeid and chiefest men of his Court to bring it after him, with the rich Sword, the like whereof is not in the World: committing also to their conduct his Daugh- Arich Sword. ter, and the choy left of his women, among it whom was the Wife of Ben Walh the Kings Merchant. At the entry of the hils, a Kindred of the Larbies being fine hundred Horse-men, Seized vpon these people, pillaged their Carriages, rified and dishonoured the women, not sparing Bo-To free Daughter, (whom Abdels determined to have marryed, but hearing duers Moores to have Iven with her, and also that the was suspected to have lived in Incest with her Father; after his entrance into Moruecos, he neuer enquired farther after her. The Alkeids beeing well mounted Sanduary, by the swittness of their Horses, returned backe to Mermeess, and there tooke Sanctuary. Abdelaypon their submission promised them pardon, on whose Princely word they relying, came Abdelas persidy forth, the Foher of the place presenting them : But Muley Abdela, whether incited by enuious counfell, or on his owne bloudy minde, putteth them fo fecretly to death, that fending all their heads in one Sacke to Fez, for a Present to his Father, Their deaths was not fully knowne in the Citie of Mornson, before their heads were fet vpon Fez gates. Here was the end of Balba Indar agreat Souldier in old Hamets time, a faithfull Commander during his life to Boferes, accompanyed with Sedie Gowie, Alkeid Azus his Sonne, Alkeid Moder the Caffensie, and some

20 foure great men more. This tyranny of Abdels thewed upon these valiant and worthy men; and the spoyle which the Fexees had made aswell in robbing the Alkeids houles, as in rifling the Citizens goods, and committing all out-rages which follow Warre, caused many to flye to Muley Siden, and the rest The fruit of rewhich remayned in Moracees grew discontented, so that the Sunne-shine of Abdelas happi- ransous per-

neffe fcarce lafted two monethes : for Sidan refting in the halfe way betweene Manucor and fidy. Fez., taking oportunitie of this vproare of the Townsfmen, marched toward Marneces on the North-side of the Towns, determining to give present battayle, hearing by the Scowts, that Muley Abdals his Campe was lodged in the great Garden or Orchard called the Almowesse, being iome two English miles about. The first might of Sidens approach, the Pritoners were re-leated, and Pritons Jisken open, so that these men getting libertie, ranne halfe madde vp and downethe Citic, crying, Long line Siden, which troubled the Citizens not a little: And in this yproare, Sidans Faction let into the Citie (at a fecret gate) many of his Souldiers, which made a Sally vpon the Regiment of Zales, meaning to have surprized Abdelas Campe, but himfelfe comming to the refcue with two thouland men, continued a hot Skirmish against the Sidanians, in which the Christians fought valiantly to recour their Peeces of Artillery which were loft, untill the Sidanians were forced to retyre. The next day beeing the fine and twentieth of Aprill, Stile none, Abdela remoused towards (Muley Sidan, who was encamped on the North-fide of the Citie, not daring to come on the South-fide, for feare of the shot which galled his men from the Battlements of the Kings Houle. Therefore he hearing of Abdelas remoue, and inten-40 ding to venture his fortune upon a present battayle, fet forward to meet him with a Regiment of his best Horie : Abdela perceining this, caused his Canoniers to march formost, which could but place fine Peeces of their Artillery in a breft, because the Orchards and Gardens made the Thebartayle,

passages very narrow and strait; where as the Armies should meete, Sidans Horse-men gaue a very gallant charge, but the Canoniers made them retyre : Which Abdelas Horle-men perceiuing, being encouraged, and too eager of the Chafe, fome thouland Horle galloped before their owne Ordnance, and followed their Enemie close to Sidens Campe, their Peeces of Artillery being drawne after them. Muley Sides well knowing the advantage of the place, feeing his Enemies deprined of the benefit of their great Ordnance, which he most feared, encouraged his 50 men to keepe their ground, and bringing with his owne person fresh supplyes to second them, gane his Aduerfaries the Abdelians to hot a charge, that they were fayne to retyre in great dif-

order, vpon the mouthes of their owne Arcillery. This dif-array perceined by the Christian Gunners, it put them in minde to discharge vpon their owne men the Abdelians, holding it better to kill fine or fixe hundred of their owne fide, then to lose the battayle. But the Moore, who was Captayne over the Canoniers and other Commanders, would not fuffer it: Wherefore Arillery tiken the Sideman following in good order, and very close, tel: to the execution with their Swords, Seven or eight furprized the Artillery, and ilue the men. The flaughter continued forme foure houres, betwixt thousand killed fenen or eight thousand killed, and few to speake on left aline, for what the Souldiers spared, Treble cruelts.

the Citizens in revenge of their Dilorders, Pillages, and Villanies done to their women, berea-60 ued them of their lines, who beeing dead were not fuffered to bee buryed, but lay aboue the ground as a prey to the Dogges and Fowles of the Ayre. Heanie likewife was the Conquerours hand upon the Christians which tooke Abdelas part, most of them for their five monethesternice to Abdela, were either slayne in the fury of battayle, or after had his throat cut. And this

and Merecco.

Priars end.

was the end of them, who had lived in the Streights of Gibraltar, and the Mediterranean Sea. not as Merchants by honest Trading but having committed ipoyle ypon divers Sea-faring men. the the bloodie hand of a barbarous Nation, (as a deferued punishment fent from Gog) to execute Inflice for their manifold committed wrongs and out-rages.

Sanchuary tai

House.

This battayle being loft with the greatest bloud-shed that any hath beene since these Warree Side Miltrof beganne, Muley Abdela fled to Fez, a hundred persons of his whole Army not lett aline to beare the field, and him company : And Sider Mafter of the field, entred the Citie of Mornecos , having another Mirace or Mer- taske to take in hand ere he could fettle himfelfe quietly in his owne Neft. For the Kings House being Caffle-wife builded, and feuered from the Citie with a defencible and a strong wall, lack-House a Castle ing no kind of Munition for the defence thereof, had within it, besides Souldiers of Morne- Io cos , three thousand Fexees who were not at the last battayle , but left there to guard the place

These presuming on their owne valour and strength of the place, denyed to render it voon all ny termes to Sidan, though they were follicited, during the space of two dayes, by all faire me anes thereunto : Sidan bringing his Artillery to the wals, yet delayed, as loth to deface a building fo itrong, coftly, and beautifull; So that in the meane time a Captaine whose house iovned to the wall by stealth with fine hundred men, scaled and wonne the top of the wall, crying, Victory for Madey Siden, which so amazed the Souldiers within, thinking the Forces which were entered farre greater then they were, without more adoe or offering to refift, they tooke Sanctuary in the great Church belonging to the Kings Houle, euery man with his Peece and

belonging to the Kings Furniture about him.

Perfidious crueltie.

Muler Sidan vpon this, fent Basha Seleman, willing them to deliver vp their Armes. with promife they should bee pardoned, which presently they did, yeelding and delivering both Swords and Peeces. Thus difarmed, they, filly foules came forth, when prefently after. meliage came from the King to butcher and cut the throats of them all, which was executed. A pittifull matter in my iungement, so many men yeelding vpon good composition, after fury of battayle, youn cold bloud to bee made to pittifull a spectacle: it was bootleffe for them to alleage eyrher Law or reason in defence of their lines; fuch is the misery and slanery of that people, whose goods and lives lyeth alwayes in the will of the King, eyther to saue, or destroy at his

Now is Sidan fetled in Moruecos but scarce secure, for the chiefest men in the Citie wished an alteration, because their King to get their money and wealth to maintayne his owne estate, beganne to picke quarrels with them, making fome who began to speake and repine at his doings, lose their heads. Quoniam Canis mortum non latrat: The common people whose naturali condition is alwayes to defire Nouelties, wished for a new King, feeling his oppression, and the Famine whereof many dyed, grew carelelle of peace, thinking enery change would bring a remedie. when indeed it was I ke the Incition of an viskilfull Surgeon, not curing the Malady, but making the wound wider, Gangrened, and incurable. Sidan purposing to purge this male-contented humour of the Commonalty, rayled an Army of twelve thousand Foot, and fixe thousand Horse, determining to take Fez. The chiese men of command over this Army, were these, 40 Balba Mustepha, Alkeid Hamet Benbreham, Alkeid Ally Tahila, Alkeid Gago, and Alkeid Hadoe Tobib, with divers others: Muley Sidan not going in person with this Army, least in his absence Mornecos the Seat of the Empire should revolt. Muley Sheek hearing these newes, went to All grocks, there tooke a great Flemmil thip from the Merchants, with all the goods in her, therein shipping his Treasure, determining to runne away, if his Sonne Abdela should lofe Fex. Abdela omitted no time to gather new Forces, to that in small time he thought himfelfe fufficient to meete the Sidanians in open field, and fo he did neere to Wickanes, where the people on Sidans part, miffing their King in the field, or any one of the Bloud Royall refused to fight, and in flead of firiking, fell to parley; That if Abdela would pardon them, they would yeeld, and so they did, yet most of them ranne away, except three thousand Morruek 7ns. who 50 prefuming upon Abdelas gentle nature, flayd with him, hoping kind entertaynment into his pay, in flead whereof, Muley Abdila commanded all their throats to be cut, granting them onely this fauour : first, to be stripped for fowling their clothes. Thus we may see, mercilesse Sidan butcher poore soules at Moruecos, pittilesse Abdela murder

Faithleffe but-

Famine fol-

thefe vntortunate flanes at Mickanes, both verifying the old Prouerbe, Quequid delirant Reges, plectumeur Achimi. In this battayle were taken betwixt thirtie and fortie Englishmen, who served Muley Sidan as Canoniers, yet not any of that company which served Abdela at Mornecos, Thirty or forty when he lost the Citie and field, but other Voluntaries, part of these field with the bodie of the Englimen G. Army backe to Moruecos, part were taken, whom Abdela spared, as well in regard of former feruices the Nation had done him, as also for the present vie he was to employ them in. This Expedition of Sides comming to fo vnlooked a difafter, made him fend forth his Comman-60 ders with divers companyes, to the Alarbies, for fresh supply of Men and Treasure: amongst which as Chiefe was dispeeded Balba Seleman, Matter of the old Kings Horse for Tafilet, there to

gouerne the Countrey, carrying with him some fifteene hundred Shot, of which fixe hundred were Shraceis, people of the King of Chang, or Consoes Countrie, who hath alwaies warres with Shraciesmu Allers or Argiers. These Straceis were borne in the Mountainesat Allas, being of a fierce and teny. bloody nature, not respecting the Turkes might or government, no more then the Mountainers of Mornecos, will acknowledge the Soueraigntie of the Barbarian, Some twelue hundred of thefe had Sider in his pay, halfe part whereof he kept at Moruecos, the other was fent with Sa-Iman. These among it themselves fell into a muteny, neither for want of pay, or ill viage, but in Their trezdefire to doe a mischiefe, by force cut off the Balbaes head, carrying it with them as a Trophy of their victorie, and a fit prefent to win Abdelae fauour, who was then at Fez, whither they went Io for intertainement, Sidan herewith moved, made Proclamation, that for three moneths what Shracee foruer, Souldier, or any other, were to be found in Mornecos, or eliwhere in his Dominions, should be put to the Sword, and to have it better & more fully executed; it was proclaimed, Bloudy decree that the Man-killer should have the goods of the Shraces so killed, Many rich men of this Nation or Kindred refiant in Moruccos, felt the furie of the Sword , for the folly and foule fault of their Tribe: fuch as could get packing, ran away: others of the better fort, their friends hid them in their houses, yntill Siden scared with newes of Abdelas comming towards him , proclaimed generall pardon for the remainder left alive, and free passage of trading or comerce for any Shraece, which would venture to Marsecos. Yet few durft come vpon their goodly termes, or those who lay hid in Morsecos, if they were worth any thing, show themselves in publike, for feare this were 20 apretence to bring the refidue vnto the halter. Thole Shraces who were fole caufers of this maffacre, being with Abdels at Fez, daily mound him to goe towards Mornecos, vowing currie man todie in his cause, and for reuenge of their Wines, Children, and Friends, who had imarted for their takes. Abdela something animated with their offers, yet delayed, knowing his Forces farre interior vnto Sidans, vntill still vrged by the Shraces; which had brought from the Mountaines some store of their Kindred, very able and resolute men to his aide, he set for wards about the latter end of August, towards Mornecon determining to give battell once more to Muler Siden. Of what strength Abdelas Armie consisted, the certaintie is not knowne, but gested to bes

Muler Sidan was very throng, for befide his owne Souldiers, the Mornecons aided him with 30 eight thousand men, and divers tribes seat supplies to augment histories. He had two hundred Two hundred eight thomand men, and differ tribestent in prices to august this street at many world in the English ferue English, the most of them voluntaries, fixtie held Pieces, with f. ficient Shot and Powder. Ouer Siden. the English and all the Christians, was Generall Captaine John Giffard, a Gentleman of a worthy Captaine Ithm foirit, and discended from the ancient and honourable them of the Giffards in Bucking ham-shire. Giffard. Vpon his first entertainement and welcome into the Country, Salar bestowed vpon him a rich Sword valued as a thousand Marks, and a Scarlet Cloake, richly imbroidered with Pearle, fent as a present to Muley Hazer, the Kings Eather, from our late Sourraigne of famous memorie A present sent Queene Elizabeth, belides many other extraordinarie fauours of good value; and often conuerfing familiarly; yea, sometimes visiting Captaine Giffard at his owne Tent. His entertaine- to Captaine ment was twentie fue failings per dien. befides many fupplies proceeding from the Kings Giffard. very deare Kinsman ; Captaine laques, a very valiant Souldier ; Captaine Smith, one of the most Captaine exquifite Enginers in Enrape; Captaine Baker, an ancient Britaine Souldier; Captaine Tailer, Captaine Fankes, Captaine Chambers, Captaine Ifack, men every way able to yndergoe their fenerall commands. These were daily stipendaries, at twelve shillings a man, except the two Sea Capraine Captaines, Ifack, and Chambers, who had foure shillings a day, and euerie common Souldier Baker. Captaines, If act, and Chambers, who have duffer inlinings 2 day, and elerie common souther. Captaine twelve pence truly payd them. These preparations considered, Maley Sidan had small reason Tailer, Faulter, to leave the field, or feare Abdelas forces being nothing in respect of his. But certaine it is, the Chambers, Muley fending for his Wizzards, Soothfayers, willing them to for tell, that he might foreknown Ifiae. the successe of his embattailed Armie. Their answere was ; He should loose the battell, bee dria Southlaying uen into Sus, within fine moneths should regaine Mornecos, and there during life enjoy the Oracles: inuen med Mar, within the moneths thoma regame. Marmeest, and there during life entry the SKingdome, Ypon this mjfwrer, betelding giving great prefet thereund as the nature of a factor formation of the state of the

very neere fifteene thouland Horse and Foote.

Muleters, with two thouland of his choylest Shot. These dispeeded, it may appeare Siden but housed, and would follow; yet the battels met the 26 of November, 1607, some fixteene miles from the Citie of Maruecas, the Canoniers of Muler Sidan, part having in the forefront discharged their Enemies being somewhat farre off but before they could charge againe, the Enemie was with them, The Shracies did not once dil-60 charges Piece, great nor imall, but joyning themselves chose to the Abdelians, charged the Sidamans very fiercely with their Sables, in reninge of Sidans tyrannie thowed vpon their Kindreds enraging their minds and courages, or their faithfull promile (which they fought to make good) to Abdela, made them put the Sidamans to flight : or elle it was Sidams feare, that hee thould not make good his Soothlayers Prophecie, which made his men to runne away : For at the first

noniers, taken by Abdela.

Captaine

Sbracies de-

encounter, his Moores fell into a dif-array, and prefently into a dishonorable flight: whereuron Muley Sidan fied, fent to the English Captaines to be gone, and to Captaine Giffard a good Horse Signer night, praise, the English returned word, that they came not thither to run, but rather die an honourable death. Captaine Gaff and encouraged his men, telling them, there was no hope of wictorie, but to prepare and die like men, inke English men: and then asking for his Laques, whom he loued dearely, and taking a Pike in his hand, thought to have rode vnto him, being told hee was not fixefcore from him, and to have died together; but in the way, Captaine Giffard being charged by eight Abdelians, one behind him thot him thorow, and so was he there slaine. Few of all the English Nation were left aline, the number not exceeding thirtie, and none of the Commanders elcaped, except Captaine Ifack, and Captaine Fankes; of the Moores were not

Sider being gone, as loath to tarry, spend bloud, and win a Field, Abdela got the ground, his Enemies marched vpon, but no great victory, entred Morneces without applaule, or reioyce of the Citizens, some yet feeling his late done injuries, force for the losse of Siden, who had proued a Tyrant, nor welcomming Abdela vpon hope of amendment, but with policie and patience fitted themselues to the milerie of the time. Abdela once againe Master of Meruces, got the time Master of Kines House but found no treasure to relieue his wants. Great were his promises to reward the Shracies with bountie, and enrich his followers, when the Citie was recoursed : now hee hauing it, there failed of his expectation, and his Souldiers lacking both meate and money : yet to keepe them still in hope, and so in government, it was bruited, the young King had found a Well full of treasure within the House, which Muley Hamet Xarif had layed up for a deare yeare: but this good news quickly vanished, the Well not yeelding water to refresh their fainting stomacks

Therfore the Straces having released their Kindred, recovered their Wives and Children, which had escaped the fury and bloudie Decree of Sidan the last King, they tooke good words and kind viages of Abdela, in lieu of payment, feeing Morneces neither affoorded them meate, nor Abdelas fortune further maintenance, and so three thouland of them departed at one time. Muley Ab dela with the relidue of his forces kept Marueces, laboring by all possible meanes to give his fouldiers content, and keepe them together; fo with much adoe hee lived in Mornetos fome two moneths, during which time, Muley Sides was gathering a fresh Army in Sm.

MYLEY HAME'S BOSON NE Commeth against ABDELA, and caufeth bim file, to his Fasher. Bofek es like to betaken, flieth to Salie. My LEY SIDAN commethagainst MYLRY HYMET BOSON HE; who flyeth, and is por foned by old Azvs. Myter SHECK fendeth into Spaine. Some observations of their Policie, and Trade to Gago.

Vt whilest Abdels and Sides were contribing their owne ends, there arose a storme in the Mountaines which fell in the Plaines of Morneces. The tempest driver was one Muley Hamet Bosome, Coulin to the three Brethren which have friven for the Kingdome. This man gathering treasure, and temporising with them all three, so played their Game, that finding their weakenesse which these quarrels had brought them vnto. wpon a ludden feeing his time, went into the Mountaines to his Mothers Kindred, muftered verie neere twenty thouland able men. The Muley being well prouided of treasure, gaue them due pay and large, winning them to his respect and service, so that in lesse then two moneths space, he got all things in readineste, descended from the Tofferon Mountaines towards Mornecos.

This newes brought to Abdela was very vnwelcome, yet (calling his wits and Couniell together) it was concluded, confidering the Stracees were gone, his remnant of Souldiers feeble and out of heart and the Moracean daily fled to Hamet Bofome, whose vprining like a blazing Star drew their eyes voor him, that Abdels should travell to Fez, which her might well doe without a guide, having heretofore vpon like necessities, often measured the miles : and though hee was determined fo to do, yet a final occasion hastened his journey, for some mile from Abdelas Campe, voon a Hill on the back fide of Morneces, a man being frene with a Speare in his hand, and a white linnen vpon it as a Flagge. Abdela thought Hamet Befonne to be with his whole Forces behind the Hill, when he was a full dayes march from Moriecos. Therfore in all hafte he tooke vp some of his Tents, but the greater part left standing in a manner, being feared, ran away. And afterward when this matter was discouered, which Abdela held a token of his lurgrise, it was 60 nothing els but a poore Moore walking his Napery, and for the specdier drying vied this meanes, which terrified Abdela from the feate of his Empire, to Fez, the fafeft place for his abode.

Lylla Ista, Sidans Mother, hearing of Hamer Bosonnes approch, was perswaded, his mouements were onely to defend her Sonnes right, knowing Bosonse of late fauoured Sidens title, comming into his pay, and in person scruing the Muley at the last battaile when Sidan fled into Su. Heereupon the tent divers Captaines, part of her owne Guard, others of her friends and kindred to his and, thinking he would have taken Moruecos for Sidan. But Bosome having entred the Bosomept Citie peaceably, proclaimed himselfe King, dismissed all Sidans fauourers, which were not wilto be his feruants, who returned to their Lady Miftreffe, certifying her error and their lucceffe: his Treasure he imparted largely to his followers, by ftrong hand defired no mans feruice, but those who were willing. Some thirty English-men remayning, weary of their sustained mesery, and the flate of the Countrey, he gaue them licence to imbarke, and writ to the Gouernour of

Saphia to give them their pale, notice whereof being given to the Factor Marine for the English. 10 he disparted them into divers ships with all conveniency, though to his cost and charges: charity to helpe the diffressed soules, and love to his native Countrey, mooning him thereunto. This Mules Hamet Bosonne, during the time of his government was a very good and just man, offered no discourtesse, or tooke away any mans goods, but paid the Merchants truely for

the fame, who liked well his current and true dealing.

CHAP.2. \$.5.

Bosomes mother hearing her sonne was setled in Mornecos, brought what strength she could from the Mountaines, and in her way knowing Boferes lodged in a fortreffe, wherennto hee was fled, not to bee well guarded, the befet the house, meaning to take the Muley prifoner, who being void of meanes to refift in the night, made a hole through the wall and fo efcaped prinately to Sale , a Port Towne within the jurisdiction of his brother Sheek , where at this day he remaineth.

On the morrow betimes, Bosonnes mother with her men entered the Fort, milling Boseres, Boseresbese. cut off the head of Umfed Benbela, one of his chiefest feruants and Commanders : then went ged: his escape the forward to congratulate her fonnes comming to the Kingdome, being their in Moruecos. But an Empire ill got, is ieldome feene of long continuance, for within leffe then two moneths, Muley Sidan came out of Sau with a great armie, for whose and Lylla Ilba sold her Iewels, and Plate, to furnish her ion with Swords, Pikes, Horsemen, Staues, and other Warl-like Munition. On the other fide Hamet Bosonne prepared to welcome his cousin the Muley Sidan; so about

the beginning of Aprill, 1608. both their Forces met hard by Mornecos where a chiefe of a kinred one Grufe, which came out of Sus, a great wine drinker, alwayes a fauourer of Muley Sidan Grufe: (though little valuing any of the three Kings) prefaming vpon his owne firength and valour, defired the honour, that hee might give charge vpon the enemy with five hundred 30 Horfe, which was his owne Regiment, and of his owne kindred : Sodan refuled to grant him his request, therefore the Casima tooke his owne leave and gave the enemy a full charge voon the Thebattell, body of his armie, which receiving him very brauely, the Casima and his company were in great danger to be overthrowne but Sidan to releeve him, fent five hundred Horle-men of his own: fo with their thousand, the Casima broke the ranks of Bosomes battalions, then with their fables fell to execution, vntill the whole campe feeing the field loft, fled towards the Mountaines: thus Sidan without further relifance entering Morneces, refting there in quiet three moneths, whrat Sidan regain

Hante Boson recounting new Forces in luly following, preferred himself-before the Cities, this will fing alwel you his own strength, as the love of the Citizens:hoping his good and gentle viage 40 when he was amongst them, would have bred a liking in them, of his mild and gentle government; but either the feruile mind of the multitude little respected his fore-passed kindnes, or the feare of Sidan made them loath to fnew any figne of good will; for at his approach no man in the Citie was knowne to draw a fword in his defence. So on the eight of July, Bosonne was discomfitted with the loffe of some thousand men, fled to the Mountaines, where within foure discompted with the sold of nome thousand men, her to the Mountaines, where within sold dayes after Alkeid Azus got him poyloned, hoping thereby to win the fauour of Muley found

This Azus is aged and fubtill, by his long experience best knoweth the secrets of that state, Alteid Azus. was brought vp vnder Abdela, Muley Hamet Xartf: brother, and for his Counfell to Abdela,

willing him either to put our the eyes of Hamet Xaif, or cut his throat, was in danger to hame 50 loft his life when Hamet Xarif came to be King, but the wifedome of the man won fuch respect with Hamer, that of a prisoner, he made him his chiefest Counsellor, and Master of his Treasurie. during whose life time his behaviour was such as he won great love among the Commons, Nobility, and many of the blood Royall. When old Hamer died, he was in his Campe neere Fez, and after his death refted all his love vpon Muley Sidan (holding him the prime man and fittest of the three brethren, to rule the Kingdome) virtill both he and Sidy Imbark could not counfell and rule Muley Sidan, for his owne good and benefit of the Common-weale being head-firong, and would take no mans countell but to his owne liking and hurt. Therefore Sedy Abdela Imbark went to his contemplation at Aca: And Azus to a Castle in the Mountaines, which he had 60 Hored with Treasure against a storme, or to refresh the winter of his age, from whence he will

not come downe, vntill he see some hope of peace, having at this instant more Treasure in his Coffers, then all the three brethren befides, and hopeth to keepe it being in the midit of his friends and kindred, and in a place as well fortified as any in Barbary.

869

Fond feare. How vaine is

full armie of

LIBVI.

CHAP.2. S. 5. Execution of Inflice. Ordinary Indges. Obligations and Bills.

Muler Sheek fearefull left Sidens next enterprise would be to rowze him out of Fez. fell in conference with an Italian Merchant, named Iohn Etina, making him his Agent to go into Spain. there to conclude, that if the Catholique King would ayde him with men and money to recouer his right, there should be deliuered vp into his hands, Allaroche, Saly, Alcafor, and other Townes lying fit for his mouth : This negotiation was well entertained. And lobn Etina was promifed for his labour in this bulinesse, and bringing it to effect, vpon the deliuerie of the Port Townes, to have yeerely paid him two thousand Duckats during his life. In June. this matter was first mooued; in the latter end of August, seuen Gallions (as was reported) and the Gallies of Naples, in all ahundred fayle, well manned with store of Pioners to rayse Forts, went to Allaroche, thinking to be received, but thirty thousand Alarbees came downe to the shoare, not 10 alowing any fuch neighbour-hood, though they hold the Andelnsian halfe their blood. Whether Sir Anthony Sherley was imployed in this service it is not certainly knowen: some

Sir Anthony Sherleyes pre-

The Author

added a dif-

course also of

are of opinion that hee was induced thereunto, because they have formerly heard the Kine of Spaine hath royally rewarded him for his travailes with Boferer, by giving him the places and pay of two Captaines in the Indies, made him Admirall of the Leuant Seas, and next in place to the Vice-roy of Nagles, having for his entertainement five hundred Duckats a moneth. Without question, he knoweth well the state of that vneinll and barbarous Nation, having an apprehending and admirable wit to conceine the disposition of any people with whom hee shall converie, whileft he was among ft them, he behaved himselfe very well toward the better fort, winning credite with them, and gaining the loue of the poorer fort exceedingly, by his larges their Religion: (for if a Moore or flaue gaue him but a dish of Dates, he should receive a reward as from an Emperour) and how socuer some may hold this a vice, counting him a laussher: yet by this meanes he came to the knowledge of that which otherwise he neuer should have attained vnto, The Reader to my more credible fame is, Sir Anthonie was not with this Fleet, therefore they sped neuer the betto the reports ter, for had he beene in company, and had command, he would either have taken footing, or of their Poli- ventered all, fcorning to returne with doing nothing, and fo be laughed at.

The Policie of Barbarie.

E Very Kingdome confifteth of men, not of buildings, therefore the Kingdome of Barbary con-30 fifteth of bond and free men: the naturall bond men are such as are descended either from Christians or Negros; the free men are Larbies or Brebers, which may be termed the Valley and Mountaine men. Ouer all, as absolute Monarch is the King, who maintaineth his seat by the fword, and power of luftice : the fword men according to their degrees are thus placed.

First, the Muleis, are the Kings children, and all other who are of the blood Royall, are termed by this name. Secondly, Balban, are Captaine Generals ouer armies. Thirdly, Alkeids be the Lords, fet afwell ouer Garrison Townes as Countreys, to rule and keepe the people in Subjection. Fourthly, Ferres, Gentlemen who carrie armes, yet leffe Commanders then Alkeids. Fiftly, Babaia, Lieutenant to an Alkeid. Sixtly, Brakbafhi, a Sergeant at armes. Seuenthly, Debulhi, a Captaine ouer thirty. Eightly, Romie, the common Souldier of these men 40 of warre, there were kept in daily pay in the old Kings time, to the number of fifty thousand Horsemen : part feruing with the Launce, others with the Speare called Spabaias, and some, especially the Horsemen of Fez, serue with the Crosse-bow on Horse-backe, bending it as they ride, shooting a strong shot and sure : and sixteene thousand foot-men, the Alarbies being fitter for the Horsemen, but the Brebers the stronger footmen, most of them shot.

The chiefest men of Command in the latter times, were these.

LIrst, Alkeid Azu, chiefe Counsellor of State. Secondly, Hamet ben Brebam Sesiani, Master of the Horse, and ruler ouer the Alkeids. Thirdly, Sedi Hamet ben Bouker. Fourthly, Sedi 50 Abdela Wahad Anoune : These two were Treasurers. Fiftly, Alkeid Hamet, 2 Capatho or Eunuchs, Gouernour over the women and Eunuches. Sixtly, Alkeid Mustepha File Master of the Ordnance. Seuenthly, Rifhanan, Admirall ouer the Gallies at Saly.

Note, though these be enobled, taking priority or precedency before others, yet is not this noblenesse hereditary, for the children of these men must claime no honour by birth-right, but what they get by their fernice and honour of their fword, line vnrespected vnlesse they be valiant, and so proouing, the King will take them into his seruice, whereupon by defert . the sonne

may obtaine his fathers fortune and honour.

There is another title of dignity termed Sbeck, attributed to the chiefe man of every Family or Cast, neither doth the Kings eldest sonne scorne the title, signifying that he is the prime or best blood of his Royall kindred. Theie Sheeks are much respected, because it is the nature of 60 the people, the whole kindred to follow their head : infomuch, as one of these Sheeks can bring into the field ten thousand Horsemen of their owne Cast, or kindred, and some more. So that

it is a matter of great confequence, the King to haue an eye ouer fuch a man, and know how his affection resteth towards him, either in loue or hatred.

rection retiet nowards annietinet in 1000 of marton. The King once in a moneth, on Fridayes in the afternoone after prayers, either in his house Execution of or Church fitteth to doe Justice, hearing complaints or appeales from subalterne Ministers, from whom the grieved persons doe appeale to his Royall person : when the King street, the franger shall have freer accesse to plead his cause before the King, then his owne borne

All inferiour Judges and Ministers are their Church-men or Talbies , and those are soonest fubiect. chosen into offices which are of stricktest life, being free from anarice, and such other sames as IO may persert and hinder the course of equitte and instice. The chiefest man for indgement water the King is Mustice, to whom the party grieued may appeale from any other ordinary Judge: the ming is orangue, to whom the party greates may appear from any other ordinary mage. There be three of these men, one in Morances, another in Fee, the third at Taraston in Sus. The Multie of Mernecos, litteth with the King in Indgement, and every Friday in the afternoone by himselfe, to heare and determine causes of the subject and stranger; though hee bee in eminent place, he is a poore man, in respect what he might be, if he would fell Infrice, and take

The ordinary Iudge fitteth all the yeere long two houres before moone; and two houres after Ordinary none in eurry great Towns throughout the three Kingdomes in places one of these ludges, whom not onely the Inhabitants of every Towne and Citie doe repaire, but the Countrey peowhom not onerly the immediates of early ple or Labers very one multitell Their manner ple or Labers very one multitell Their manner 20 his owne tale, and plead his owne matter. When both parties have spoken, then guerh the of basicante.

Indge fentence; so that in one day the cause is brought into Court, and the same day ended. If either part haue witnesse to produce, then the Judge giueth three dayes respite to bring them in, which being crought, the aduerie party shall have other three dayes respite to disprove them. And if he can prooue the witnesses either infamous in manners, or given to detectable finne, as Allegations drunkennesse, adultery, or such like : And can prooue the witnes faith not his prayers fixe times gainst wines duely in foure and twenty houres, then shal he be veterly disabled to beare witnesse, and thus in feuen dayes the longest sute shall be ended. If an Obligation or rather Bill of dehr be brought Deben into Court, the Obligee must either pay the debt, goe to prison, or to pawne the value of the anto Loure, one Designe must entire pay the debt, goe to parion, or to partie the realon, to fee if debt, or better; which pawne may be kept in Deposite nine dayes vpon great reason, to fee if the debtor can redeeme statche nine dayes end, if he doth it not, then is it fold, and the party

who should pay the money, must fustaine the losse. As Coadiutors to these Judges, and next in place to them be the Scrivanos, who vpon death Coadimors to or other remouse are commonly made lusiges. These are Talbies which make wrisings but we eng the ludges partie and partie, short and plaine, without multiplication of words, and they are of opidion, Abundans causels nocet ; in their Obligatory Bils they put neither Forfeit nor Condition ; has uing for the making thereof two pence English, and no more. They wie no long draughts in mate. ters of purchale, or these triparcite Indentures , with such large and long implicite and explicite Couenants, but thus the people deale in matters of Contracts and Bargaines. I have of your Manner of, a Umeyard, Houfe, Merchandeze, at fuch a price, to be paid at fuch a time, calling two honeft men, Comunities,

40 whereof one shall be a Talbie, if I can get him, to witnesse this our Bargaine. We foure goe to the Scrivener, who likewife is a Talbie, and have this fet downe in writing, and if our bargaine, be for twenty thousand pounds, it is fet downe in ten lines, and the Iultice of the Countrey will allow me my bargaine with as great reason, as if I had a great ingrossed Booke of Corneyance, as big as the Map of the whole world in the newest Edition.

Next in this nature to these, be the Sterree, which have small Fees to see the execution of Law Sterree of the an sentence of the ludge fulfilled; thele likewise fetch men to answere their Aduersary, which Court would delay, and not come before the Judge, eyther vpon peruerfeneffe, or badnesse of their plea, or any other cause what soeuer. Wherefore to bee alwayes ready, these are continually atten-50 dant in the House of the Judge, and wayting vpon him whethersoeuer he goeth.

Muttifeb, is an Officer to fee true Weights and Measures ; if any bee faultie , all the Wares Mutifit. in such a mans shop hee giveth to the poore, the party proclaymed an vniust man, and fore

whipped.
The Hackam, is the Lord Marshall in every City, who indgeth wpon life and death, alloone as Hackam.
The Hackam, is the Lord Marshall in every City, who indgeth wpon life and death, alloone as Hackam. the party Delinquent is taken, and his offence proued, presently his throat is cut: Murder there is death, to is manitest Theft, Adultery, likewise proued by very good witnesse: And somtimes it is death for any man to weare a Sword who is not an Officer, yea, though hee bee a Souldier, Other offences according to the necessitie of the time and pleasure of the King, by Proclamation are made death, which the Hackam must fee executed vpon losse of his owne head. 60 Muchadens, be Substitutes to the Hackam, feeing his undgement fulfilled, and in his absence Muchadens.

Folers or Saints, dwell in the best places of the Country, keepe great Hospitality for all Tra- Folers,

uellers, whither any man come for a night, and be gone in the morning : much good theled de in the Countrey by their example of morall living, and bestowing their owne goods in their life

Sheeks of Fa-Tribes.

873

time to helpe the needy and diffrested, comprisining differences betweet parties, and repressing all diforders, winning great love and respect, for their Houses are held Sanctuaries, whose Pritilledges the King will not violate, but vpon great and weightie reason.

The causes & manners of their fights,

872

The King, Nobility, and Souldiers delire to ferue on Horfe-backe, which most commonly they doe, for in any Army there be three Herse for one foot : the King will seldome venture to fight out a battavle, but as you may perceive by the precedent, it was and is the viage amonest the three Brethren, when they meete in a field, who locuer getteth at the first on-fet the aduantage, maketh the other prefently leave the field, and flye wnto fome place of firength; they fight with no Armour except a Buffe Ierkin, for the better fort; and a Leather Hide tanned for the meaner, and some Coats of Male, their Armes is a Horse-mans Staffe, Target, and Sword, or a Horse-mans Peece and Sword.

Deadly feud with the Lar-

The Alarbies serve all voon Horse, will fight forer battayles to maintayne their deadly fend. than in fertice of their King : Infomuch that vpon loffe of any great Lord or Chiefe man of their Bloud, crull battailes have enfued, wherein ten thousand men have beene slavne at one time. and it is their fashion, the fairest Virgin to ride y pon a Camell with a slagge in her hand decked in all pompe to follicite her Kindred to reuenge, and goeth foremost in the field, encouraging them to follow . you which incitement much bloud is foilt, her Kindred as loth to loie their Virgin, and no treuenge their injuries : the other fide ftriuing to winne her and the field, holding that a continuing glory to the feuenth Generation.

When a man is killed, his Tribe feeketh not reuenge only vpon the man which killed the 20 party, but the first man of that Tribe hee meeteth withall, him will hee kill if he can, and so thinkerh be bath fatisfied his Kinfmans death.

Withthe Bre-

The Brebers or Mountayners likewise maintayne this feud, who are most shot and Swordmen, whom the day of hattayle their women follow hard behind them, with a colour in their hands colled Hanna : And if they fee any of their fide offer to runne away , or retyre, prefently they will throw fome of this Hanna vpon their clothes, which will flayne, and the party ener after is held for a Coward and a dishonoured lew. For feare of this Infamy, few fortake the reds : field, but eyelier conquer their Enemies, or dye like men, who are prefently ftripped and burved by there women which follow them.

The trading of the Moores into Guinee and Gago for Gold
Ore, or fandie Gold. y was open that Coadianas to

Men's element peace with his Meighbours at quiet with his Subicets, determined to warte voon the Negree, knowing the conquest easie, because the people are vindisciplined in warrevand the profit would be exceeding great by bringing their Gold into his Coun-Effediment one trey, exchanging for it Sale, and other bater Commodities. And howfocuer certaine Miners writements ms. had found rich Mines of Gold in the Hils of Alles, vet hee held is better policy to fetch his lerand Oold farefret off; then to digge that which was found in the Centre of his owne Kingdome, fearing if the Mines proued rich, the Golden Ore would draw thither Christian Armes, therefore heer the heart shears of all fuch as were the Authors, and gaue the Masters of the Workes death

Gago.

Six moneifier

Dreadfull De-

But to perfect his other Deligne, he chole Indar Balba, fent him with great store of Souldiers. who entired farre into the Negros Country, depriving them of a great City called Gago, which standeth upon the River of Smega, three hundred Leagues within the firme Land, builded there an Alpandeca for Barbarian Merchants, and a Custome-house for the King. The Merchants make it fixe monethes lourney from Mornetes thither, of which, two monethes they palle thorow the Sandy Defarts, where no people dwell, neyther any road way, but directed by Pilots. as thins at Sea, oblerue the courses of Sunne, Moone, and Stars, for feare of million their way: If they lose themselves, they meete with Famine, and dye for lacke of water, whose dead car-* Munni; but kaffes consume not, but maketh Munna, * or Otema fielh, euery way as Physicall or Medicinable, as that which commeth from Alexandria. They never travell under two or three hundred in a company: it may be not meeting with water in twelve or fifteene dayes space, but carry water by Camels, both for them and their beafts to drinke, which failing, to faue their owne hausbeen long lives, they kill their Camels, and drinke the blood. If the wind blow at North-east, they canfince buryed, not vinlade tifeir Camels, least the Sands should court them. The Merchandize carried from as in Egypt, erc. Mornecos to the Negros, is much Cloth, Amber Beads, Corall, but the chiefett Commodity is Salt, which is bought at Tegazza, and other places, for foure shillings a Camels lading, which is fixe hundred weight, and payeth at Gage five pounds for Custome to the King of Barbarie, afterward fold farre within the Countrey to a kind of deformed Negros, who will never be feene 60 in the commerce of trading with the Barbarian, or any stranger: Wherefore they lay their Salt in the fields and leaueth it, then commeth the deformed Negro, and layeth against every mans pricell of Salt, as much of his gold as he thinketh the Salt is worth, and goeth his way, leaving his gold with the Salt : Then returneth the More, if he like the gold, taketh it away, if not, deCHAP.3.S.I. Algiers, a Den of all Fugitiues and Reprobates.

tracteth to much from his heape, as he will fell to the Negro for his gold. The Negro returning, if he like the quantity, purtech too more gold, or elfewill not barter, but departeth. Yet they feldome missike, for the Moore maketh a rich returne, and his King a full Treasure. Wherefore, the deformed Negro is prayled for the trueft dealing man in the world : the gold which they have is not coyned, but like small Grauell or Sand gathered after the gluts of raise, in the drie bankes of Mountaines and Rivers.

Touching Voyages of Englishmen so Barbarie, as also Embassages sont thinker by Queene Elizabeth: likewife teaching many English Voyages to Guinny, Benin, and other places on the Constant, and the Limits adverning; with Patents also for those parts: the Reader may, of he please, terrific and Sater elemen autoping; with cateuts any personic parts: too coaser may, of the plants, tertific and fa-lo tiffe himfelfe in Master Edens, and Master Hackbyets Voyages. English Nationarons are now adsunced to lo great Admenture, and new or remote Discontries, that I rasher haste to them; test because t manition in Joy and resonant the Reader with the prefere Stone of the metror parts of Africa : I besse and tunnees meete to acquaint the scauer with two prejon Stand of the movies and a cannot be delibered for the Stand, the Thomas of delibere following Differentiat. And because Algert is the Whirle pack of thefe Sand, the Thomas of Prejon to Habita Pracie, the Sinke of Trade and Stimbs of Slavery, the Cope of vanishment Birds of Prejon to Habita. tion of Sea. Deuils, the Receptacle of Renegations to God, and Traytors to their Country; I have the longer flaned there: both to form the place out of Nicholay; His Maisties xealous Defigne against them, and Gods goodweffe in two notable Delinerances from them.

As for Ward, or other English, infesting the World from that Het mouth, I was take so blot the fe Paperswith foretten Names.

CHAP. HIL Street Some

The African Possessions of the King of Spaine, and The service of the terminal to the terminal to the terminal to the terminal the Turke.

And the control of th

The Dominions and Fortrasses * which the King of Spoinc hath vyou the T akenous lites and mayne Lands of Africa, and of the Great Turkes.

Elides Oran, Merfalquibir, Mililla and Pomon which the King of Spaine policies Ech within the Streights; as the West of Color Trajes, and Arabit, which by the Tritle of Porngal, he holdesh very neere the Streights of Gibrather; and Marabit He hath fince gan in like fort without the Streights mouth, twenty miles to the South-ward of Arail: he hath along the Coait of Africk, from Cape de Guer, to that of South Momen

The court of the best of the b

Guardafu, two forts of States ; for some are immediately under him ; and others are as it were his Adherents. The Hands of Madera, Ruerto Santo, the Canaries, the lies of Arguin, of Cabo Verde, the lle Bel Principe, with that of Sant Thomas, and others necreadinyning, are immediately under his Dominion. Their llands are maintayned with their owne vichuall, and promition, and yet they have also some out of Europe, as in like manner they fend fome thirther : especially Sugars and Frints, where with the He of Madera wonderfully aboundeth, as also with Wine. And the Iland of Sant Thomas likewise hath great abundance of

Thefe States have no incumbrance, but by the English and Frenchmen of Wate. At the 1-30 lands of Arguin, and at Sant George de la Mina, the Portugals have planted Factories in torque of Fortreffes, by meanes of which, they trade with the bordering people of themen and the by a, and get into their hands the Gold of Mandings, and other places neere about Among the adherent Princes, the richeft and most honourable, is the King of Congo, in that his Kingdome is one of the flourithing and plentifull Countryes in all Athiopias The Portugals have there two Colonies, one in the City of S. Salnador, and another in the Iland Loanda. They have divers rich Commodities from this Kingdome, but the most important is every yeere about five thoufand Slaues, which they transport from thence, and fell them at good round prices in all the Hes and mayne Lands of the West Indies : and for the head of every flave fo taken vp, there is a good taxe payd to the Crowne of Portugall.

From this Kingdome one might easily goe to the Country of Prete lami, for it is not thought to be very farre off : and it doth so abound with Elephants, Victuall, and all other necessarie things, as would bring fingular eafe and commoditie to fuch an enterprile. Vpon the Kingdome of Congo confineth Angola, with whose Prince of late yeares, Paulo Dias, a Poringall Captaine, madeswarre. And the principall occasion of this warre are certaine Mines of Silver, in the Moun-

CHAP.4.

Miserie of Christian Stanes in Algiers.

The African Trad, might hane been as taines of Cabambe, no whit inferior to those of Patoffi; but by so much are they better as fine Silver goeth beyond that which is bale, and course. And out of doubt, if the Portugals had effecmed fo well of things neere at hand, as they did of those farther off and remote, and had thither bent their forces wherewith they passed Capo de buena esperança, and went to India, Malaca, and the Malucoes; they had more eatily, and with leffe charge found greater wealth : for there are no Countries in the world richer in Gold and Silver, then the Kingdomes of Mandinga, Ethiopia, Congo, Angela, Butua, Toroa, Maticuo, Boro, Quiticui, Monomotapa, Cafati, and Bobenemuei. But humane anarice effeemeth more of another mans, then his owne; and things remote appeare greater, then those neere at hand. Betweene Cape de buena esperanya, and Cape Guardas, the Portugals have the Fortresses of Sena. Cephala, and Mozambique. And by these they con- 10 sinne Matters of the Trade with the bordering Nations, all which abound in Gold and Iuorie. By these Fortreiles they have special commoditie for their Navigation to the Indies. because their Fleetes sometimes winter, and otherwise victuall, and refresh themselves there. In these parts the King of Melinde is their greatest friend; and those of Quilou, and other Neighhour Hands, are their Tributaries. The Portugals want nothing but menitor befides other Hands. which they leave in a manner abandoned, there is that of Saint Laurence, one of the greatest in all the world(being a thousand two hundred miles long, and foure hundred and fourescore broad) the which, though it be not well tilled, yet for the goodnesse of the soyle, it is apt and fit to be manured, nature having diffinguished it with Rivers, Harbours, and most commodious Bayes. These States belonging to the Crowne of Portugall, were wont to feare no other, but fuch Sea- 20 forces as may be brought thither by the Turks But the daily going to and fro of the Portugall Fleetes, which coast along vp and downe those Seas, altogether secureth them. In the yeare 1589. they tooke neere vnto Mombaza foure Gallies, and a Galliot, belonging to the Turkes. who were fo bold as to come even thither. But fince the English and Hollanders have traded the Indies, the Portugal affaires have much decaied in those parts, their opposing them turning to fuch effect as you have heard.

The Domini-

The great Turke postesseth in Africa all the Sea-coast from Velez de Gumera, or (as some hold Great Tu fein opinion) from the River Malais, which is the Easterne limite of the Kingdome of Fez, even to the Arabian Gulte or Red Sea, except some few places (as namely, Mersalcabir, Metilla, Oran, and Pennon) which the King of Spaine holdeth. In which space before mentioned, are situate 26 fundry of the most famous Cities and Kingdomes in all Barbarie; that is to fay, Tremizen, Alger, Tenez. Busia, Conflanting, Tamis, Tripolis, and all the Country of Egypt, from Alexandria to the Citie of Ana, called of old Siene, together with some part of Arabia Troglodytica, from the Towns of Suez to that of Suachen. Also in Africa the Grand Signior hath five Vice-royes, called by the names of Beglerbegs or Baffas, namely, at Alger, Times, Tripolis, at Miffir for all Egype, and at Sunethen for those places which are chalenged by the Great Turke, in the Dominions of Prete Immi. Finaly, in this part at Suez, in the bottome of the Arabian Gulfe, is one of his foure principal Arfenale, or places for the building, repairing, docking, and harboring of his warlike Gallies, which may lie here under couert, to the number of fine & twentie Bottoms.

CHAP. IIII.

The Description of the Citie of Alger, written by NICHOLAS NICHO-LAY, and how it came into the possession of BARBAROSSA, and also of Malta and Tripolie.



Leer is a Citie in Africa very ancient, first builded by a people of Africa, called Melgana, of whom the tooke her first name : afterwards was called let, and was the Seate Royal of Inda, in the time when the Romans bare dominion in Africa, in honour of Cafar it was called Inles Cafare; and fince the Moores called it Gezeir Arab Eleagair, which in their Language fignifieth lles, because she is cituated neere Maiorque-Minorque Ienife, and Fromentierre: but the Spaniards now

doe call her Alger : howbeit, thee is fituated woon the Mediterran Sea, voon the hanging of a Mountaine environed with strong Walls, Ramperds, Ditches, Platformes, and Bulwarks, in forme almost three-square; the largenesse which goeth towards the Seaside stretches h narrowly almost vnto the highest part, whereas there is a great building made in forme of a C. tadell, to command the Towns and entrie of the Hauen. As for the buildings being beyond the Pallace Royall are very faire Houses belonging too particular men with a great number of Bathes and Cookes houses. The places and streetes are so well ordained, that every one in his Occupation 60 apart : there are about three thousand Hearth-steeds. At the bottome of the Citie which is towards the North ioyning to the Walles, which are beaten with the Surges of the Sea in a great place, is by great Artifice and fubtill Archite Cure builded their principall and head Molquee; and a little below that is the Arcenal, which is the place into which are hailed vp, and trimmed

the Gallies and other vessels. This Citie is very Merchant-like, for that she is situated upon the Sea, and for this cause matueilously peopled, for her bignesse: she is inhabited of Turkes, Moores, and lewer in great number, which with marueilous gaine exercise the Trade of Merchandise, and lend our money at Viury. They have two Market dayes in every weeke, to the which refort an infinite number of people of the Mountaines, Plaines and Vallies, being neighbours thereabouts. which do bring thither all forts of Fruits, Corne and Foule, of very cheape price: for I have seene a Patridge fold for a ludit, which is a small piece of Siluer mony, in manner foure square, and is in Furnaces field value of our mony foure pence and a mite, but true it is that their Partridges be not so big nor de-made for breelicate as ours are: the Hennes and Chickins be also very good cheape, for that they have in most ding of Chic-Io parts of their Houfes Furnaces, made in manner like vato the Hot-houfes or Stoues of Germany, in the which with a small heate they doe breed and hatch their Eggs without helpe of the Hen, and therefore it is not to be marueiled at, though they have great plentie of fuch Pullen. They and therefore it is not to be installed and Oxen, which they doe shoo lade, and ride vpon, as vpon Horses. And going through the streetes, because of the multitude of people, which there is Oxenshod. marueilous, they goe crying with a loud voyce, Balue; Balue; which is too lay, Beware, beware. I have also feene divers Moores mounted on Barbarie Horses without Saddle, Bridle, Stirrops or The Moores do Spurres, lauing onely a string in the mouth to stay them withall. And as for the men, they are ridetheir altogether naked, having onely about their middle part to couer their privates, form price of a wingerther naked, having onely about their middle part to couer their privates, form price of a britantics, form price of a britan white Sarge or Blanket in manner of an apron, and about their head a Linnen cloth rowled, de.

20 Which they bring about and vnder their chin. Their weapons are three Daris or long Iauelins, which they carry in their right hand, and doe Weapons of shoote and throw with wonderfull dexteritie, and voon their left arme is fastned a large Dagger the Mores. made a little crooked after the fashion of a Wood-knife, which they call Seequin, and vieto hight at hand itrokes withall, and to annoy their Enemies comming to the close. The most part of the Turkes of Algier, whether they be of the Kings Houshold or the Gallies, are Christians renied, or Mahumetited, of all Nations, but most of them Spaniards, Italians, and of Pronence. of the Hands and Coatls of the Sea Mediterran, given ail to Whoredome, Sodometrie, Theft, and all other most detellable vices, liuing onely of rouings, spoyles, and pilling at the Seas, and the Iland, being about them: and with their practike Art bring daily to Align a number of poore Christians Christians which they fell vnto the Me and other Merchants of Barbarie for Bases, who afterward the standard of the standard of

which they ren vite them, and fell them where they thinke good, or elfe beating them miferably with Amiferable flaues, doe imploy and conftraine them to worke in the Fields, and in all other vile and abiest life of the occupations and feruitude almost infollerable. And therefore it is not to be maruriled at, though Ghristian thele poore Christian Slaues made of it no icruple at all in putting of vs in danger, to fet them-

Without the Citie towards the Westare many faire and pleasant Gardens, set and adorned with clivers trees bringing forth fruits of al forts. Amongst other things there be Milons of marneilous goodnesse, and incomparable sweetnesse: they have also another fruite called Pateque, which the Italians call Anguries, being like in bigneffe and colour to our greene Citrouilles in Winter, which they eate raw without Bread or Salt, and hath a tafte to delicate and sweet that it melteth in ones mouth, giuing a water as it were figred, and ferue greatly to refresh and digelt. About their Gardens are many Wells full of good water, and the ground there abouts, although it is Mountaines and Vallies, is very fertile for fruites and Vines. On the other part towards the East, without the Towne runneth into the Sea a fmall River called Saso, which ferueth aswell to drinke of, as other commodities, and also maketh many mills to grind. The course of the Sea from the Cape of Marfuz, (where as yet are seene the foundations of the ancient Citie Tipafa, which in times past was by the Emperours of Rome honoured in prayse of ancient Citie Tipafa, which in times pair was by the Emperours or Kome nonoured in prayer of Tipafa and the Country Latine) doth bow and wind like vinto a Crolebow-lath, and all along the Riuer and Citie. the shoare the Moorifb Women and Maiden Slaues of Algier doe got to wash their Linnen, being commonly whole naked, suring that they we are a piece of Cotten Cloth of some strange colour. 50 to couer their fecret parts (which notwithstanding for a little piece of money they will willlinely vncouer.) They weare also for an ornament about their necke, armes, and legges, great collers or bracelets of Latten, fet with certaine falle Stones. But as for the Wines of the Turks or

Moores, they are not seene go vncouered, for they weare 2 great Barnuche made of a Blanket of white, blacke, or violet colour, which couereth their whole body and the head. The second day after our arrivall at Algier, I found the meanes for money, and with faire word too hyre a renyed Spaniard, to conduct and leade me thorow all places that I most defired to fee. So as by his meanes, I faw and learned many things within foure or fine dayes that wee were there in quiet. And namely, brought mee voon a high Mountayne being a mile from the Towne, to fee and behold the fituation of a very fitting and great Tower, beeing builded upon another Mountayne there neere about, and gently enquiring of him what fittingth the Tower might be of the declared vnto me, that the breadth of the Ditches about the same, was seventeene brases, saving about the gate and entry into it towards the North, it was only seven fathomes

Ferdinando

King Catho-

broad, and two Speares lengths deepe. Moreouer, he faid vnto mee, that within the Fortreffe there were nine great cast Pieces, and eighteene other, as well Mynions, as Fawconets, and other : and that in the middeft of the Tower there was a Well of very good water, vpon the height thereof standing a wind-mill, and another standing without the gates. And that thirtie ordinary Souldiers are committed within it to keepe the same. And to make short, that this Tower was made to none other intent (as also others fince have confirmed) then for the gardine and keeping of the Fountayne heads, which from thence are brought and conveyed under the

Alger was long time under the Dominion of the King of Telensin, untill such time as they of Bueie chofea new King, vnto whom they gaue and rendred themselues as his Tributarie, be. 10 cause he was neeter vnto them then the King of Telensin, and that hee could sooner helpe them (if need were.) But in processe of time, perceiuing themselves to be as it were free and out of all doubt : armed certayne thips to the Sea, with the which they became fuch Courfaires or Pirates. that in thort time they annoyed by their Piracies and Robberies on the Sea, not onely the Coast of Spaine, but also all the Mediterrane Hands. Which perceiving, Ferdinando the King Catholike fent to Alger a great Armie to affrege them, and for to keepe them in most distresse, caused like confirave with a maruellous readinesse a Fort to bee made in a small Iland, which lyeth before the Citie, neth the Mores keeping them by that meanes fo straightly besieged, that in short time they were constrained to require a Truce for ten yeeres : Which was agreed vnto them youn condition of a certayne Tribute, which they payed vntill the death of King Ferdinardo, for then they espying a conuenient time and meanes, to breake the Truce, and to fet themselues at liberty, called vnto them Carradon Barbaroffe, who after the fiege of Bone, retyred to the Caftle of Gegill, flanding in the Coast of the Mediterran Sea, upon the top of a high Rocke, seventie miles from Busie, who being by them chosen to bee their chiefe Captayne, gaue many fierce affaults vnto the Fortreffe, fo as he put the Spaniards to flight, and incontinent after caused it to bee ruined and pulled downer enen to the foundation. He then feeing fo happie successe of his Enterprize, could no longer Selim flaine by abide to be as companion, but in a Bath trayteroully flue a Prince of Arabie, called Selim; who declared himfelfe to be Lord of the Citie.

Afterwards for faking the name of a Captaine any longer, caused himselfe to bee called King. and covned money under his name, and to well guided his Affaires that in fhort time after hee brought all his Neighbours about him to become contributory vnto him. Such was the begin-The Kinghad ming of the magnificent estate of Cariedm Barbaroffe: after whose death, his Brother Haria. not complete dene succeeded him in the Kingdome, and after him his Sonne Callam, who raigned at the time power: but we arriued there.

they enloyed To returne to the Discourse of our Navigation, which I left at the Cape Mataluz, from as this Author faith, a kind of whence (having follourned there a night) wee departed in the morning : the wind was fo contrary that it forced vs to come to an Anchor necre to the Cape Tedele : at which place wee faw within a great Rocke a deepe entrance, being two flight fhot long, into the which the Sea en-This Havidone greeth even to the very bottome, where we entred with our Skiffe, even to the halfe way of it: and thinking to passe on further, we found so great a number of strange Mice, that we were con-Captaine, Ad. strayned to turne backe: so were we persecuted. And so for feare they should piffe on our heads 40 mirall of the (their piffe being venemous) we were forced to couer vs, and to wrap our felues in our Clokes. Turker Nauic, This part of the Sea is very full of Mountaynes and great Rockes.

Teddell is a Citie contayning about two thousand Harth-steeds, situated upon the Sea Medithe TarkifbHiterrane, threefcore miles from Alger at the bottome of a Mountayne, and on the hanging of a great Rocke. On the midst of the Mountayne is a little Castle, from the which along goeth a Rome, and was wall fretching to that of the Citie. The Africans first did edifie it, and at this prefere is inhabited of a people very merry and pleafant. For, for the most part of them they are given to the exercise of the Harpe and Lute, Their principall Craft and Occupation is fishing, and dying of Wooles and Cloth, by reason of divers small Brookes very fit for their dyings, which delicending mage, 1.6.c.9. from the Mountaynes through divers places of the Towne, iffue into the Sea. The Inhabitants S.s. Cape of Tedof the same place are vnder the same Obeysance and Inflice that they of Alger are, Leaning the Coast and Towne of Teddell, we bare roome to Sea-wards, and had so good speed, that the Strange Mice. four and twentieth of July in the Euening, we discovered the Citie of Gigeri, but even thinking to be neere it, within a moment arose such a sudden Borasque or Flaa, that if our Mariners had not nimbly bestirred themselves in taking in of their Sayles , wee had beene in great danger to dangerous for haue beene all drowned, and immediately faw our Frigat (which was made falt to our Gally) loft before our eyes, because they had not quickly cut the Halfer , but all our men were faued by swimming to our Gallies. These Borasques (engendred of a wind, called by the Gracians, Trphon ; of Plinie, Vertex or Vertex, but vulgarly Tour billon, or Whirlewind proceed not out of the 60 West, notwithstanding doe often happen in Winter) are very often and dangerous all along the Coast of Barbarie, and as they come very suddenly, so are against some appealed.

Bone of Bone. The twentie fine in the Euening, we arrived at the Port of Bone: where were being come to

CHAP.4. A Church builded. Aflying fifth. Womenzood fwimmers. an Anker, the Ambassadour sent to salute the Caddy, which keepeth the towns vpon tribute vn- This Ambassadour

an Anker, the Ambassadour sent to saute the Casas, which recepts the towns upon thouse the der the King of Asgar. This Casas was a renyed Christian, and notwithstanding shewed him for was the der the King of Asgar. This Casas was a renyed Christian, and notwithstanding shewed him fellowers and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over and about the refreshings of fieth, bread and felle very curteous and liberal lowards vs. for over a fieth of the refreshing vs. for over a fieth vs. for over a f ment tent set the same state of the set of t colique, full of their kinde of meate, dreded according to their falhion, which was a kinde of King to the

Menules made in Patte with Onions, and fat Pullets with certaine fawces of very good tafte Great Turkear Bone, anciently called Hippon, of which Saint Augustine hath beene Bishop in times past, e- Base anciently dified of the Romans upon the Mediterran Sea, standeth of the one fide upon high and ragged Hippon. 10 Rockes, and there is a very faire and fumptuous Mojquee, vnto which is adjoyned the house of the Cady; but the other fide of the Towne towards the South, and the Valley is ficuated more lower, and as well within as without accommodated with Wells and good Fountaines. The Houses within it (having beene twice faccaged and spoyled by the Spaniards) are eaill builded, and this Towne doth not now contains about three hundred Harthes. The Emperout Charles that the the the fift, after he had subdued the Towne, caused vpon a height of one side towards the West, a builded there a great Castle to be builded; which commanded of all sides, and did accommodate it with a number of Citternes to gather Water in , for that on this height there is neither Well nor Fountaine. Notwithstanding, thorely after it was rafed by the Turbes and Moores, and the Spanis- The Spaniseds and driven out of it: without the City towards the East, is feene a goodly and large Champideness out the Castle. 20 on Countrey, inhabited and tilled by a kinde of People called Morder; which Countrey, be- Merdera peofiles the great quantitie of Corne that it bringeth forth, nourisheth and pastureth in the Valley ple. a great number of Oxen, Kine, Sheepe and other Cattell, to plentifelly, that with their Milke

and Butter, not onely the City of Bone is prouided and furnished, but also Tones and the Isle of Gerbes: there are also about it many faire Garden Plats, plentitully abounding with Dates, Figges, and iweet Mellons. At the beginning of the Valley passe two small Rivers, whereof, the next and greatest hath a Bridge of stone, under the which is a way to anold ruined Church, being betweene two Rocks, which the Moores doe say to have beene the Church of Saint An- A Church ball guffins, which made me the more defirous to goe and fee it : Notwithflanding, that a Iew, borne ded by S. Aug. in Spaine, being then with me, vied all the meanes he could to perswade mee from it : for the 30 dangers which he faid to be there of the Theenes called Alerbes, which thereabouts doe lye fecretly hid, to intrap them that came thereabouts; by which his remonstrances notwithstanding he could not diffwade me, but that needes he must accompanie mee : and certainely there i found by experience : and vpon the top of a high Mountaine hee shewed mea small troope of

thele Alerber starke naked, mounted on horse-backe with their Dartes in their hands, after the

falhion of those I faw in Alger: In the Hauen or Roade which lyeth before the Fortreffe is found great quantitie of very faire Corrall, which Andre Dorse then had in farme of the King of Alger, for which he paid vnto him yeerely great fummes of Money. By chance we found there a Ship of Marfellie conducted by a Curfarie, to gather the fame, who prefented wnto the Ambassador, many faire and great branches. The next day being the six and twentieth, after 40 Sunne-fet, waying our Ankers, we departed from Bone, and passed from the Gulfe, which continueth about eighteene miles to the Cape of Rofe, and passing further towards the sight of the cape de Rofe. lles De la Galine, and des Symboles, there flew a Fish into our Gallie, of the length, colour and G. iise and bignefic of a great Sa'dm, which before had two great wings, and two leffe behinde; his head Smbole and mouth being great according to the proportion of the body : this fifth is by the Moores call led Indole. And having doubled the Cape Bone, the twenty and eight day we arrived at the He

This lie of Pantalares, which by the Ancients was called Paconia; is very Hilly and full of Pantalares great Rocks. There groweth great quantitie of Cotton, Capers, Figges, Mellons and Rei- ciently Page ins : and throughout the llands is full of Ciftemes. There are also many small Houses very nic. 30 anciently builded within the ground (made like vitto Caues) made by the Moores in the time they possessed the lland: along the Sea side are found Stones being blacke, and glistering like vnto fine let, and certaine rough Stones. They have no Horfes, but of Oxen great flore, with the which they do labour and till the ground, how well there groweth no Corne. Of which they furnish themselves out of the He of Seedin, vnto which they are subject. But well there groweth certaine other Graine and Herbes of small estimation. There groweth a small Tree like vnto Nerte : which the Moores called, Vero; and the Sicilians, Stince, bringing forth a fmall round truit, which at the first is red, and being ripe, waxeth blacke. Of which, the Inhabitants of the Iland (which are very poore) make Oyle, which they vie as well to but in their Lampes, Oyle made of as to eate and the Women after having washed their heads, doe anoint their haire with it since. 60 to make it grow long and faire: As well the men as women are of nature good Swimmers, as The Women by experience we faw by a woman of the Countrey, bringing a great Basket with Fruit, entred into the Sea, and fwimming, brought the same to fell in our Galley. This lland containeth good Swim-

thirty miles in length, and in breadth about ten miles.

Bera/que of

aff ighted

878

Road of S.

fory.

The thirtieth day of the fame moneth of July, we departed from Pantalaree with fuch a fauourable wind : that the first day of August, being passed the He of Goze, we arrived about the enening in the Road of Malta, where incontinent we were visited by the Knights Parifot and Vil-Legaignon, and of many others of divers Nations. And after the Ambassador had given to vinderfrand to the great Mafter his comming, the chaines of the Hauen being opened with faluation accustomed of the one side and other, we entred into the Hauen, vpon the sides whereof were with the afore named, divers other Knights come thither in the behalfe of the grand Mafter (of birth a Speniard) named Omede, which received, the Ambassador, and presented vinto him a Mulet, on which he lighted, and accompanied him to the great Hall of the Castle, where the grand Master with divers Knights attended him, and having done reverence vnto him, and declared part of 10 his authorisation, the night approaching, taking his leave returned to his Gallies. The next day he was by the great Mafter bidden to a simptuous dinner, vnto the which all the ancient and notable Knights of the Religion were also bidden and assembled, and there was openly rehearfed, how that certaine dayes before Sman Bafha, Captaine Generall of the Times army had taken and faccaged the Castle of the Towne of Augusta in Sicilia, and that he from thence arriuing in a Port of Malta called Mechette, neere vinto that of the Catile, put his men there on land to ouer-run, rauifh and spoyle all whatsoeuer they should find for their aduantage, which they executed most cruelly, as such barbarous people in like affaires are accustomed to doe. But a most valiant and well admired Knight a Spannard, named Guimeran, Captaine of one of the Gallies of the Religion, who could not abide such insolency, and secretly assembling certaine number of Souldiers, did by ambushes and other meanes so distresse them, that after having taken and flaine fuch as fell into his laps, made them to remooue from that place : but not withflanding gid not delift of their enterprise : for from the nee they went to the Road of S. Panl where they landed their Ordnance to affiege the City, whereof they got the Suburbs, and framed their Trenches to make the battery. And forfomuch, as they could not atchieue the end of their enterprife (by reason as well of the roughnesse of the place being full of Rocks, as seeing their men faile them, dying through extreme heat) they resolued to remove their siege, and to imbarke Grefaeraged themselves with their Ordnance, having slaine, taken and saccaged all that they met withall at advantage. From thence they went to the He of Goze, being very neere and fubicat to the He of Malta, which they faccaged, and by descrifull composition tooke the Caltle, leading the 30 peopleboth men, women and children as flaues into miferable captiuity : being in number fixe Size thousand and thousand and the hundred in The Knight do Villagiagous in his Treaty which he hath make of and direct hundred in the waters of Malta, doth recire a History no lefte lamentable then full of dispaire, and vnnadred prisoners. turall cruelty and is of a Sicilan which in that place had dwelled of long time, and there married a wife, by whom he had two faire daughters then, being in flate to be married, who feeing his A pitifull Hilast calamity approaching, because he would not in his presence see his wife and his daughters rauished and violated, and to be brought in shamefull servitude, and to deliver them from all shame and bondage, having called them into his house, first slew with his sword his two daughters, and afterwards their mother. And this done, with a Harquebuse and a Crosse-bow bent (as cleane bereft offences) made towards his enemies, of whom he flew twaine at the first en- 40 counter, afterwards fighting a while with his fword, being incironed with the multitude of the Turkes, brought himselfe to the end of his most vnhappy life. Behold the summary of the miferies happened through the Turkes in few dayes in the Hes of Sicila, Mala, and Goze. After which things the Bascha caused his army with the whole booty and prey to embarke, and remoned the feuen and twenty of July towards Barbary, to affrege the Cattle of Tripoli.

The fixt of August we came to Tripelia City which Charles the fifth had given in keeping to the Haights of Malta, and then befieged by Sinan Balba. Where having well confidered the placing of the Campe, the Towns and Castle, we returned to the Bascha, with whom the Ambaffador talked a while, and in the meane while I went to fee the market of the Turkes (which they call Bafar) being hard by where the poore Christians of Sicil, Malta, and Gaze, were fold 50 vnto those that most offered for them (and last inhaunsers, being permitted vnto those that bought them (as the ancient Custome of the Oriental Barbarians is) to strip them starke naked, and to make them goe, to the intent to fee if they have any naturall impediment in their bodies, visiting afterwards their teeth and eyes, as though they had beene horses, and standing there, I faw creeping upon the ground a Scorpion of yellow colour, being of length more then a long finger. The same day the Turker brought their Ordnance and Oabions vnto the Trenches, which Gabions are made of great Plankes of three inches, which they carry vpon their Gallies or Shippes to ferug them when they have need of them ; for when they will batter any place, they fee them in the ground in forme of Baskets, Afterwards being fet in rankes, they fill them with earth, and is a very commodious invention, for the shot which can but slippering passe of urrit, and can doe no hurt nor dammage. The Tirkes shaving in the night placed their Gabions, and their Ordnance ready to the Battery, did the next day following being the eight of August, begin to shoot at the Castle with great furie, which was not left ynanswered, and every houre fome flaine,

Manner to fearch the Christian flaues that come to be A Scorpion

The befreged fent to the Bafra, if he would receive certains of them to treat of some good accord touching the giving over of the Cattle, whereunto the Bafcha lightly confenting, was in all diligence dispatched a brane Spaniard, named Guinare, and a Knight of Majorque, to offer an quigeness with the Artillery and Munition, fo as he would furnish them of thips to bring them with bagge and baggage fafely to Malta: to whom summarily was answered, that (foralmuch as, as yet they had not deferued any grace, prefuming to be fo bold as to keepe lo small a place against the armie of the highest Prince on the earth) if they would pay the whole charges of the armie, he would gladly agree to the matter proponed, or if they would not thereunto confent (as it became them) that for their recompence, all they within the Io Castle should continue same prisoners: notwithstanding, if they incontinently and without delay, did furrender the place he would exempt out of them two hundreth. Whereupon, the messengers returning in dispaire of any further grace, was stayed by Drogot and Salaraiz. with flattering words, and fayned promifes, that they would endeuour fo much as in any wife lay in them, to make the Bafeha condificend to a better and more gracious composition: for the y feared that the affleged through dispaire, would resolue (as their extreame refuge), to defend themselues even to the last man. And incontinent went to the Bascha, to declare vnto him his ouerfight, in refuling those which of their owne voluntary came to furrender themselves into his hands, and that to put them out of doubt and dispayre, hee ought with all mildnesse to agree vnto all that they demanded. For after he had the Catile, and all the men vnder his au-20 thoritie, he might afterwards dispole of them, as he should thinke good. The Baseba finding this counfell good, caused the two mellengers to be called against vnto him, declaring vnto them with fained and diffembling words, that at the inftance and request of Drogot and Salaraiz there prefent, inclining vnto their request, he did discharge them of all their costs and charges of the armie, (wearing vnto them (the better to deceine them) by the head of his Lord and his owne, inuicably to observe all that which he had promised vnto them, which they (too easily) beleeued, and forthwith went to declare the fame vnto the Gouernour and others within the

The Bascha the better to atchieue to his enterprise, sent foorth after the Deputie aforesaid. a Tirke (one of the most subtill to his mind, that he could choose) to whom he gaue expresse 30 charge to perswade the Gouernour to come with him, to conclude and treat concerning the giuing ouer, and for the vessels which should bee necessary for their conduct to Malin and that if hee made difficultie to come, he should make a semblance as though hee would remaine there in hostage for him, and that aboue all things hee should have an eye to confider of the firength and affurance of the affieged, and of the disposition of all things there, which the Turke could execute fo finely, that the Gouernour by the countiell of those that had perswaded him to furrender, notwithflanding the reasons of warres, and duetie of his office, forbade him in fuch manner to abandon the place of his charge, refolued upon fo small an assurance of the Bascha, who having rigorously reproached his timerity, faid vnto him: that for somuch as he had given his word, that if he would pay the charges of the armie, he would let them go with bagge Valler feat to 40 and baggage, otherwise hee would discharge but two hundred, whereat Vallier being greatly the Gallies mooued, aniwered, that it was not that which with the Deputie of the Castle hehad agreed vnto: But seeing he would doe none otherwise, that it would please him to suffer him to returne to the place for to have the adule and deliberation of the affeged, which he could not obtaine, but it was onely permitted vnto him, to fend backe the Knight that he had brought with him, to make report of these pittious newes vnto the asseged; and on the other party, Vallier was fent to the Gallie with Irons on his legges. They of the Castle having understood the Premisses, were greatly afraid of the mischiete, which they perceived approaching to- wife answere wards them, and could take none other resolution, then the next day in the morning earely to of veller. returne the faid Knight to the Bascha, to know whether they should looke for no better. But as toone as he was come before him, the Gouernour was brought in , of whom the Balcha asked. 50 which of both he would choose, either to pay the expences of the armie, or that he and all they of the Castle would remaine prisoners, to whom he answered, that a slaue had none other authoritie then that which by his mafter was given vnto him, and that having loft, besides his libertie, the power to command if any thing were yet referred in him, could not counfell him to command to agree vnto any thing but that which was concluded with the delegates, which the Bafcha hearing, for feare that fuch an answere should not come to the knowledge of the affreged, and that it should cause them desperately to fight it out, having taken counsell of his Captaines, tooke the Gouernour by the hand, and with a finiling and diffembling countenance faid vnto him, that without any doubt he would as he had promifed them, fet them at free li-60 berty : and that therefore without fearing any thing, hee would cause them all to come out of the Caille : but the Gouernour, because he had before beene deceived, would not trust to his words, but faid vinto him, that he should command him that was come from the Castle, for that he knew they would doe neuer a whit the more for him. So that the Bascha turning towards the Knight, commanded him that he forthwith should goe voto him, and cause them to come

Ddddd

hedeliuered and let at liberty, according to the first conventions agreed upon. Which the Knight beleeuing, went to report vnto them thele good newes : which they received with fuch iov, that without any further care or confideration of their miffe-hap fo neere, and prepared for them, they ran to the prease with their wines, children, and best moueables, preasing who Faith and pro- should first goe forth. But they were not so soone issued, but were cleane spoyled, and of the enemies , part of the Knights were fent to the Gallies, and the rest to the Bascha: who beeing by the Knight Vallier admonished of his faith, which hee had twife given, answered, that there was no promife to be kept with dogges, and that they had first violated their Oath with the great Lord, vnto whom at the giuing ouer of the Rhodes, they had sworne that they neuer would take on armes against the Tartes. The Castle being taken and spoyled, and about two hundreth Moores of that Countrey that had ferued the Knights, cut in peeces, with great cries and shouts, rejoycing of their victory, they discharged a great peale of Ordnance.

Tripolideferi-

An Arch triumphal.

Although the houses and buildings within the Towne be ruined, yet it is inuironed with very faire and strong wals, accompanied with a great number of Turrets, double Ditches and false breaches, and the fame are on the three parts inuironed with the fea, and within them are very good Wels and Fountaines. We faw in the middest of the Towne an Arch triumphall of white Marble with foure faces vpon foure pillars of Corinth foure square, being grauen in the Front that looketh towards the East (by excellent Sculpture) a Chariot drawen by two great Griffins, and within it was Victory fitting with two wings : Toward the Well was grauen a 20 Chariot, whereupon was fitting Pallas, and about the edge were written divers Romane letters, but were so ruined, that scarce they were to be knowne. Notwithstanding, by that which can be read . we ynderstand, that they were made in the time of P. Lentulus, which is a good witnesse to beleeve that this City, as before I have said, was builded by the Romanes. The inside of the Arch was full of divers inrichments, and aboue after the fashion of a foure-square Turret: and two other faces looking towards the North and South, were cut as from the vpper part of the body vnto the girdlestead without any heads, two great figures of the ouercome. All the rest was fet foorth with all forts of weapons in forme of Tropbee, not farre from thence was feene a great foure-square place, inuironed with many great and high Pillars in two rankes, after the manner of a Porch, and neere that are the deliructions of a high Tower, which in times past was
(as a Moore of that Countrey told me) the great Temple or Mosque of the Citie: there are a number more of antiquities ruined. The Chiaous being come was fent by the Balcha, we returned towards the Caftle, but might not at that time enter in all, because the Bascha had giuen commandement, that there should not enter with the Ambassadour aboue fine or fixe at the most, which were Sant Veran de Fleury, de Montenard, Batolomy and the Dragoman, and I : at the enery we met with Morataga and the Captaine which had the charge of the Caftle, which caused vs to be brought upon the Rampards, to the end we might the better view and confider of all things, and having feene both aboue and below, we perceived for certaine, that all things were well repaired and furnished, and well appointed with fixe and thirty peeces of Ordnance, as well fmall as great, and that there was a great number of Pikes, and pots to calt fire, a bundance of all kind of victuals and other Munitions, a good Well and Fountaine: and that at the time when the fiege was laid to it, there was as well of Knights as Souldiers of disers Nations, about fixe hundred, and the best Gunners of the world, it is an everlasting shame to them that fo faint-heartedly furrendred the fame vnto those barbarous people without any warlike resion. All which having well confidered, with a heavy mind we returned agains to our Gallies, whither incontinent the Bascha fent to defire the Ambassador that the next day he would come to his folemne dinner, which he pretended to make for ioy of his victory, and taking of the Caffle, and that he would bring Vallier with him, which he would not refuse, thinking by fuch occasion to recouer the rest of the two hundred Knights and Souldiers which were yet to be deliuered : and therefore the day following being the fixteenth day of August, 1551. accompanied by the Gouernour Vallier, the Knight de Seur, Cotignac, Captaine Coste, Montenard and me, went towards Bascha, being within the Ditch against the breach of the Castle, where for a magnificency were fet up two faire Pauillions, the one for him, joyning vnto a very fairs Fountaine : and the other for the Ambassador and his company : and so soone as he had sent his presents, as well to the Basebs, as to others his familiars (which of old time hath beene the manner and custome that they that have to do With the Basebs barians must observe) he was brought vnto the Pauillion that was prepared for him, and forthwith ferued with all magnificence, honour and superfluity of meats as well of flesh as fish, diversly dressed according visto their fashion ; and with wines very excellent that they had found within the Callle, and this feruice was done with noyfe of all their inftruments, and by Officers in number about one hundred, appa- 60 relled for the most part in long Gownes of fine cloth of Gold, tuffed or figured, and the other of Veluet and Crimfon Damaske, and divers others colours. The Bajcha was no fooner fet downe, but all the Ordnance of the Gallies, Foits and Galliots of the army (being in all one hundred and ferty, befides the great Gallion and two Mahumez) was discharged, with such a noyse and thun-

warre refting within the

dring, that it feemed the heavens and skies did shake. The table being taken up, the Ambaliador and Gouernour Vallier entred into the Pauillion of the Bafeba, which in the end agreed to deliuer the two hundred men which he had promifed; and moreouer, gaue twenty vinto the Ambaffador vpon promile, that he should cause to be released the thirty Turkes taken at Malia, at the landing of the army. But the most part of them that were deliuered, were Spaniards, Sicilians and Calabres, and few French-men: for the most part of them were put to the ranke of criminels forfwome: that day were brought into our Gallies, the Coffers of Vallier, within which were found certaine apparell, a facke with money, and a tup of filter, the rest which he faid to be more worth then two thouland Crownes; the Tinker had taken away and spoiled : besides, A creel sacti-To two Pavillions which he efteemed worth three hundred Crownes. The Timber having in their fee you the hands an ancient Gunner of the Caftle, named lobis de Chabas, borne within the Towne of Ro- perion of 1808 mance in Daulphine (to the end that their feaft of victory should not be vinfurnished of some facrifice of cruelty) for that with a Canon he had shot off the hand of the Clerke generall of the army, brought him into the Towne : and having cut off his hands and his nose, they put him quicke into the ground even to the girdle flead, and there with a cruelty was perfecuted and thot at with arrowes, and in the end for to accomplish the execution of his glorious martyrdom, they cut his threat. About eight a clocke in the euening, were lighted wom all the Gallies, follows, & other vertiles, all along woon the Tackels, Yeards, and other ropes and poupes, Galliers, Foilies, & other vertiles, all along woon the Tackels, Yeards, and other ropes and poupes, in euery of them about three hundred causiles, with cries and shouts accustomed; and found of drums and other infuruments. To make an end of all their triumps, they againe discharged all 20 their Ordnance. The next day being the leventeenth, the Bafeba lent to be prelented who the Ambassador a gowne of cloth of Gold tissed, and with the same his leave to depart, which he so long had defired : and was not received without a prefent given him that brought it, and to diuers other Officers of the Bafcha, which on all fides came running one after another, as a fort of Hounds, to have their fee and share in the Game, for they are the most barbarous, courtous, and cruell Nation of the world, and in whom there is neither truth nor fidelity, neser obferring the one halfe of that they promife : and yet men must alwayes bee giving to

CHAP. V.

A large Poyage in a lournall or briefe Reportary of all occurrents, happing in the Fleet of fhips fent out by the King bis most excellent Maiestie, as well against the Pirats of Algiers, as others ; the whole body of the Fleet, conlisting of eighteene Sayle. Sixe of his Maiefties Ships, ten Merchants Ships, two Pinnaces. Vnder the command of Sir ROBERT MANSEL Knight, Vice-Admirall of England, and Admirall of that Fleet : and a Counsell of Warre appointed by his Maiestie. Writsen by one employed in that Voyage, formerly published, and heere contracted.



Ir Robers Mansell, Knight. Sir Richard Hawkins, Knight. Sir Thomas Button. Knight. Sir Henrie Palmer, Knight. Captaine Arthur Manwaring, Elquire. Captaine Thomas Lone, Esquire. Captaine Samuel Argall, Esquire. Edward Clerke, Esquire, and Secretary to the Counsell of Warre.

The names of the Captaines, Ships, their burdens, number of men and Ordnance in his Maiesties fixe Ships.

If If t, Sir Robert Manfell Admirall in the Lyon, burden fixe hundred Tuns, men two hundred and fiftie, Peeces of Braffe Ordnance forty. Secondly, Sir Richard Hawkins Vice-Admirall in the Vantguard, burden fixe hundred and fixtie Tuns, men two hundred and fifty, Braffe Ordnance forty. Thirdly, Sir Thomas Buston Reare-Admirall in the Raine-bow, burden fixe hundred and fixtie Tuns, men two hundred and fifty, Braffe Ordnance forty. Fourthly, Captaine Arthat Marmaring in the Constant Reformation, burden fixe hundred and fixtie Tuns, men two hundred and fifty, Braffe Ordnance forty. Fiftly, Sir Henry Palmer in the Anthelope, burden 60 foure hundred Tuns, men one hundred and fixty, Braffe Ordnance thirty and foure. Sixtly, Captaine Thomas Lone in the Connertine, burden fine hundred Tun, men two hundred and twenty, Braffe Ordnance fixe and thirty.

Ddddd 2

Tirt, Captaine Samuel Argall in the Golden Phonix, burden three hundred tunnes, men one I hundred and twentie, Iron Ordnance, foure and twentie, Secondly, Captaine Christopher Harries in the Samuel, burden threehundred tunnes, men one hundred and twentie. Iron Ordnance two and twentie. Thirdly, Sir lohn Fearne in the Mary-Gold, burden two hundred and fixtie tunne, men one hundred, Iron Ordnance one and twentie. Fourthly, Captaine lohn Pennington in the Zouch Phenix, burden two hundred and eightie tunnes, men one hundred and twentie. Iron Ordnance fixe and twentie. Fiftly, Captaine Thomas Porter in the Barberie, burden two hundred tunnes, men eightie, Iron Ordnance eighteene. Sixtly, Sir Francis Tanfield in the Centurion, burden two hundred tunnes, men one hundred, Iron Ordnance two and twentie. Seuenthly, Sir Iohn Handen in the Prim-rofe, burden one hundred and eightie tunnes, men eightie, Iron Ordnance eighteene. Eightly, Captaine Eufaber Cane in the Hercules, burden three hundred tunnes, men one hundred and twentie, Iron Ordnance foure and twentie. Ninthly, Captaine Robert Haughton in the Neptune, burden two hundred and eightie tunnes, men one hundred and twentie, Iron Ordnance one and twentie. Tenthly, Captaine Iohn Chidley in the Merchant Bonauenture, burden two hundred and fixtie tunnes, men one hundred and ten, Iron Ordnance, three and twentie. Eleventhly, Captaine George Raymond in the Reffere, burden one hundred and thirtie tunnes, men fiftie, Iron Ordnance twelue. Twelfthly, Captaine Tho- 20 mas Harbert in the Marmadoite, burden one hundred cunnes, men fiftie, Iron Ordnance

The Fleet thus furnished fee fayle in the found of Plimmouth , the twelfth of October in the morning, in the yeare 1620.

The one and thurtieth of October, in the morning wee turned into the Road of Gibraltar, where were riding at anchor two of the King of Spaines ships of warre, the Vice-Admirall of a Squadron with the Kings Armes in his fore-top and another, who fo foone as they perceived vs weighed their Anchors, set sayle, and comming Lee-ward of our Admirall, strooke his slag, saluting him with their small shot and great Ordnance, after haled him with voyces; our Admirall firsking his flag, answered them with voyces, gaue them his Ordnance and small shot, all the Fleet following in order: this done, we faluted the Towne with our Ordnance, the Towne doing the like by answering vs. Our Admirall being at an Anchor, the Spanish Captaine ascompanyed with other Gentlemen, came aboord our Admirall, who told vs that there were great flore of Pirats abroad, and that two of the Pirats shippes had fought with seven Spanish Gallies, and had slaine them foure hundred men , and that they had beene at Steria a small Towne with thirty fayle of thips and ten Gallies, and had taken it, and carryed away divers Prisoners, and that they had threatned to take Gibraltar; there the Admirall fent his ficke men ashoare, having houses and lodgings provided for them, amongst whom was Captaine Iohn Fenner who here dyed.

The second of Nouember, about seuen in the morning, having a fresh gale at North-west, 40 the Admirall with the rest of the Fleet weighed Anchor and standing off, met North the Reare-Admirall of the Spanish Fleet, who faluting vs North his Ordnance and wee stood on our course North-east and by East, being bound for Malbaga. The third, about two in the morning, wee came to an Anchor in Malbaga Road, and about eight of the clocke wee faluted the Towne with our Ordnance and divers Vollies of small shot; here divers Spaniards of account cameaboord our ships whom we kindly entertayned, here we likewise expected Letters but heard nor

The fixth, our Admirall dispatched a Gentleman, one Master Iohn Duppa, with Letters to the English Embassador at the Court of Spains, to let him know of our arruall and proceedings. This day about eleuen of the clocke, the Fleet weighed Anchor and fet fayle the wind at Northwest. But before wee weighed, our Admirall gaue order to the Fleet to divide themselves into three Squadrons, the Admirall Squadron was kept fixe leagues from the shore, with pendants in the mayne tops for their fignes; the Vice-Admirals Squadron three leagues without him, on his Bow with pendants on his fore-tops; the Reare-Admiral three leagues within him on his quarter with pendants on their Misen tops, whodeuding themselves according to their order iteered away East and by South along the illoare, being bound for Allicant.

The feuenth, about fixe in the morning, it being calme, and all the Fleet together, the Admirall tooke in all her fayles, and lay a hull, all the Fleet doing the like, the Admirall put out his flag of generall Councell which was Saint George. Whereupon all the Captaines and Matters repayred aboord him, where it was concluded, and thought meet that two flips of least draught 60 of water, and one Pinnasse should hale the shoare close aboord to see if any Pirats were at an Anchor, eyther in Bayes or Coues, and to free the shoare; here likewise was given a word wherby to know our owne Fleet from others, if any strangers should chance to fall among it vs in the night, the word was Greenwich Tower. The Councell ended, and enery man repayred abound

Prizes taken by the Turkes from the Christians. CHAP.S. his owne shippe, in the evening the whole Fleet in their order sayled alongst towards Cape

The eight and ninth dayes having but little wind, we gayned not much way. The tenth, in the morning, falling with the point of Matrill, and having the wind Southerly, the whole

Fleet put into the Road and there anchored.

The nineteenth, in the morning, we came to Anchor in Allicant Road, where the whole Fleet faluted the Towne with their Ordnance, and the Towne vs; heere our Admirall having prouided houses for his sicke men, as before hee had done at Gibraliar, fent thirty seven sicke men of his owne ships Company ashoare, here likewife he dispatched a Gentleman, one Master Io Walter Long to Carthagena, with Letters of addices but all this while could receive no such Let-

ters as we expected. The five and twentieth, beeing fitted with Wine, Water, and other fuch necessaries as wee wanted, the wind being Northerly, the whole Fleet let layle, leaving behind the Good Will, out of whom our Admirall had taken most of her men to supply his wants for those sicke hee left ashoare, and being under sayle we shaped our course South-west for Algier.

The fauen and twentieth, about ten in the morning, wee came to Anchor in Algier Road in Ages. feuen and twentie fathome water, out of command of the Towne or Castle, the Admirall and Reare-Admirall wearing white Ancients on their Poops, the rest of the Fleet wearing no Ancrents at all, going in the whole Fleet, faluted the Towne with their Ordnance, but the Towne

20 gaue vs none againe. The eight and twentieth, our Admirall Sent a Gentleman ashore, one Captaine Squibe, with a white flag of Truce in his Boat, to give the Vice-Roy to understand the cause of our commines hereupon the Vice-Roy fent a Boataboord our Admirall, with a white flag and foure men in her, one principall man in the Towne who delivered our Admirali, fignifying the Vice-Roy had recrited command from the Grand Seignior, to vie vs with all respect, and that our men might have the tree libertie of the shoare to buy fresh victuals or whatsoever they wanted; they promifed our Admirall if on the morrow hee would fend any Gentleman of qualitie ashoare with the Kings Mairsties Letters, that upon the shooting off a Peece of Ordnance, according to our Admirals demand, he should receive sufficient Hostages aboord for his safetie : this night the Pi-30 rats brought in three Prizes, one Femming, the other two Englishmen, the one a Planmonth man. and the other of North Tarmouth.

The third of December, came fixe of the King of Spaines thips into the Road, the Admirall firiking his flag, faluted our Admirall with small that and Ordnance, this done, he came abourd our Admirall in his Boat, and told him hee came in pursuite of certaine Pirats, who had taken duers of their men, who being in a foip of feuen hundred tuns neere Carthagena, in fight with a Tinkill Pirat, had boorded her, entred her men and taken her, had not their owne ship vnfortunately falne on fire with a milchance happing, they were forced to forfake the Turker ship to faue their owne, and fo loft both, for being not able to quench the fury of the fire, were forced to yeeld themselves to the flavery of the Turker to save their lives, beeing in all three hundred 40 men, whereof thirty perished in the fire. This Spanifb Admirall fayling neere the Towne, the Turkes let flye feuentie foure great fhot at him , and hee gaue them fome fixteene backe in exchange, but the distance betweene them was so farre, that the shot falling short, no harme was

The fourth, our Admirall received from the Towns an answere of the Kings Letters.

The fixth, after long debating, finding the Turkes perfidious and fickle, as well in detayning our Messenger, who definered his Maieties Letters, notwithstanding we had sufficient Hostages for him, as in breaking all other promifes : in the end it was agreed thus, vpon leaving a Confull with them, they would let our Meffenger come abourd againe; whereupon the Admirall fent a common man, well clothed, by the name of a Confull, whom they received with good 10 respect, and sending our Meslenger abdord, received their owne pledges, and delivered vs some forty poore Captines, indich they pretended was all they had in the Towne, this was all wee could draw from them. The fewenth, in the morning, our Admirall fent a Letter with inflruon to our Councell, with another Letter to the Basham, to let him know how ill wee tooke his

perfidious dealing. The eight, in the morning, our Admirall and all the rest of the Fleet weighed Anchor and

The tentle day at night, the wind shifted to the South and East, and so to the East.

The fourteenth, came to Anchor in the Road of Alacotha, on the North fide of the faid Iland, we found this to be a very good place, yeelding vs Wood, Water and Ballaft, whereof we 60 had great need, the people very kind courteous, bringing vs great flore of all manner of prouifions which we bought at eafierates, whereby wee supplyed our wants, and relected our ficke men, whereof we had gread frore in our Fleet.

The foure and twentieth, in the morning, the Fleet weighed Anchor and fet fayle. The fine and twentieth, about nine at night, came eight or nine fayle of Turkes into our Daddd 3

Fleet, whom so soone as we discouered, we chased them and made shot at them, but by reason is was a darke night, and that they fayled better then our ships, they escaped vs.

The fixe and twentieth, about three in the afternoone, wee put into Alicant Road, koping there to receive Letters of advice, elle some newes of a supply of victuals out of England, but

The feuen and twentieth at night the Reare-Admirals Squadron went out to Sea in pursuit of two Turkib Pirats, who had taken about three houres before two Flemmish ships; the Flemmings quiting their ships, faued themselves in their Boats.

The fourth of Ianuary at night, the Constant Reformation and the Golden Phenix had order to goe to Sea, to feeke two Pirats ships, which we heard wereon the Christian shoare. The fifth 10

at night, they returned into the Road againe, but met not with any.

The fixth, the Vice-Admirall with his Squadron fet fayle for Malbaga, to fee if they could heare of any newes of a supply of victuals, or whether the two Princes which were long expected were come thither. The twelfth, Mafter John Duppa came from Carthagena, bringing with him a packet of Letters of aduice sent out of England, bearing date the fourteenth of December, he signified that there was fixe monethes victuals fent out of England, for a supply of his Maiesties ships, and that they were at Malbaga with the two Pinnasses, this night the Reare-Admirall with his Squadron was fent to Sea to fee if he could meet with certaine Pirats, which we had intelligence of. The thirteenth, the Reformation, the Samuel, and the Restore, put to Sea, to see if they could meet with any Pirats. The eighteenth, the Reformation with the other ships returned into the Road, where we found the Reare-Admirall with his Squadron likewife returned, but met no Pirats.

The one and twentieth, there came a Flemmish Boat with fifteene Flemmings in her abourd our Admirall, who being chased by the Turkish Pirats off, of Cape Martine, left their shippe and faued themselves by their Boat, this night was the Anthelope with other ships sent out to to fee if they could meete with them. The foure and twentieth, the Anthelope with the other thips returned into the Road, but met with none.

The fine and twentieth, our Admirall beeing innited to the English Confuls house went ashoare, where at his arruall he was entertayned with small shot and Ordnance both from the Towns and Castle, and at night with Fire-workes, running of Horses, shooting of Ordnance, 30 and other sports; this day Captaine lobn Roper was dispatched with Letters for England. The fixe and twentieth, our Admirall returned aboord the Towne, gining him a friendly farewell with their Ordnance.

The feuen and twentieth, the Admirall with the rest of the Fleet set sayle, leaving the Marmeduke behind, whose Captaine and Matter were both sicke ashoare. The eight and twentieth at midnight, we met with feuen fayle of Flemmings thips of Warre, neere Cape Paul, vnder the command of Captaine Haughton Admirall of Zealand, who the next morning, after he had faluted our Admirall with Ordnance, came aboord in his Boat, he told our Admirall hee had two and twentie ships of Warre under his charge, whom he had divided into Squadrons, imploying them some without the Streights, and some within. The one and thirtieth, wee came to an anchor againe in Alicant Road.

The first of February, the Reare-Admirall put to Sea with four shippes, to see if he could meet with any Pirats, and this day dyed Captaine Eufaber Cane, Captaine of the Hercules, and the Admirall disposed the command of the same ship to Captaine Alexander Bree. The fifth, the Reare-Admirall returned with the other foure thips but had met none.

The fixth, the wind being Easterly, the Fleet weighed Anchor about midnight, shaping our course for Malbaga, during the time of our staying here we refreshed our sicke men ashoare, hauing convenient houses provided for them in the fields Gardens, with careful people to attend them providing them fuch necessaries as they should need. The Constant, for her part, sent ashore ninetie two persons, who as they recourred their strength were sent for abourd, yet not withflanding all their care, at their departure they were forced to leaue behind them fortie two defperately ill, the Admirall taking order both for them and others, that they should bee carefully prouided for vntill the Fleets returne.

The fixteenth, came into the Road the Vice-Admirall and his Squadron with the two Pinnaffes which we so long expected out of England, the one the Mercurie, of the burden of two hundred and fortie tunnes, fixtie fine men, and twentie peeces of Braffe Ordnance, under the command of Captaine Phiness Pet; the other the Spy, of the burden of one hundred and fixtie tunnes, fiftie fiue men, and eighteene Peeces of Braffe Ordnance, vnder the command of Captaine Edward Gyles: there came also two Merchants ships with a supply of victuals for his Ma-

The eighteenth, the Zouch Phenix , the Hercules, the Noptune, and the Spy put to Sea, with order to ply betweene Gibraltar and Shutte point. The nineteenth, the Anthelope put to Sea, and with those thips which went out the day before, had order to ride in Shatie Road, to see if they could defery any Pirats come into the Streights.

The three and twentieth, the Reare-Admirall put to Sea with flue other thippes, the Golden Phenix, the Samuel, the Centurion, the Marigold, and the Restore, with order to ride in Tansey Bay, where they were to attend the comming in of diners Pirats whom we heard to be without

The foure and twentieth, the Anthelope with the rest of the shippes returned, bringing with them a prize being a small Frenchman, which had fiftie Buts of Oylein her, and divers Moores and Iewes, men, women and children, Passengers bound from Tauon to Algier, all the Turkes lauing themselues in their Boat : this day also came into the Road Captaine Gyles Penne, in a thip of Bristoll, from Tituen Road, bringing a Letter from the Mogoden to our Admirall, and two 10 Moores who treated with him concerning the redemption of their people, whom our flips had taken, offering forso many Moores, to many English, whom they held in the Towne as slaues, ha-

uing bought them of the Turkes Pirats. The feuen and twentieth, the Samuel and the Centurion returned into the Road from Tanfer, then also went out the Anthelope, the Zouch Phones, the Barbarie, the Neptune and the Restore, with order to ride at Sbutey, to fee if they could discouer any Pirats comming into the Streights, the wind being Westerly. The eight and twentieth, the wind likewise Westerly, the Reformation having taken in some of the Captines, had order to weigh and let layle for Tituon, to treat with the Moores, and to take in her company the Samuel, the Bonauenture, and the ship of Bristell, where the same day about noone they came to an Anchor in the Road of Titum in twelve fathome water, the wind at Weft.

The fourth of March, Mafter Albfield, Minister of the Reformation dyed, much lamented of the whole company, of whom in the extreame of their ficknesses they had received much comfort. The fifth, having a faire gale at South-east, our Admirall with the rest of the Fleet weighed Anchor, and let fayle for Gibraltar, having concluded nothing with the Mogoden. The fixth, wee came to an Anchor in Gibraliar Road , where wee found our Vice-Admirall with his Squadron.

The thirteenth, we came to an Anchor in Malbaga Road.

The eight and twentieth, about eight in the morning, the Admirall and, Reare-Admirall fet

The second of Aprill dyed Captaine Manuaring. The fourteenth, about three in the afternoone wee came to an Anchor in Alicant Road, where wee found our Admirall with the rest of the Fleet : here our Admirall had hyred a Pollacre about the burden of one hundred and twentie 30 tunne, for that the was reported to bee an excellent Sayler, and likewise bought three Brigandines which rowed with nine Oares on a fide : hee also hyred a house wherein hee made diners

workes for the firing of the thips within the Mould of Algier. The one and twentieth, we received Letters out of England, by a Post fent from Malhagas fignifying a remaynder of victuals, which wee expected, was arrived at Malhaga. The fine and twentieth, about nine in the morning, the whole Fleet fayle for Alicant Road, beeing bound for Firmaterra, to supply our wants for wood. The eight and twentieth in the evening, having fitted our felues with wood, we fet fayle for Mayorke to take in water. The nine and twentieth, in the after-noone, we came to an Anchor in Mayorke Road. The Towne of Mayorke is large 40 and well fortified, the people industrious, both men, women and children given to labour, louing and courteous to firangers : heere wee found all manner of victuals in plentie and at easie

rates. Their chiefe Merchandise are Oyle, Wood, and Cheese, whereof the Countrey affoordeth

The one and twentieth of May, at fixe in the after-noone, we came to an Anchor in Algier They come a Road, order being first given by our Admirall how every ship should berth herselfe.

The thips being come to an Anchor in their orders, our Admirall caufed fixe of the Merchants ships presently to weigh, with directions to ply off and on of the Westermost part, keeping as neere the shoare, as conveniently they might, to prevent the comming in of any Pirats betweene the Fleet and the shoare. In the beginning of this night, the Boats and Brigandines appointed It for the affiltance of two shippes, which our Admirall resolved should that night goe into the Mould, and there to fet themselves on fire, being chained and linked to the Pirats ships, repayred aboord our Admirall, there to receive their directions. The manner and preparations for firing of the ships was thus.

First, there were two small ships which we had taken from the Turkes, the one of the burden of an hundred tunnes, the other of fixtie, with great store of fire-workes in them. There was layd in them plentie of dry Wood, Wood of Ocham, Pitch, Rozen, Tarre, Brimstone and other Materials fit to take fire: they had likewife in them Chaines and Grapnels of Iron to faften themselues to the ships which they were to fire : they had also Boats to bring off their men 60 when they had fired the thips : then were there three Brigandines fitted with fire-bals, buckets of wild-fire, and fire Pikes to make their fire-workes fast vnto the thips: there was also a Gund-lod fitted with fire-workes, Chaines and Grapnels of Iron; the was to goe into the middest of the ships in the Mould, where rastning her to some ship, was to be set on fire. Shee had likewise with her a Boat to bring off her men. Likewise, there were seuen Boates which wee

called Boats of refcue, well filled with armed men, who were to refcue and refere the Boars of execution, if they should chance to be pursued by other Boats or Gallies at their comming oil. Thele had also hre-workes in them, to fire the ships which rode without the Mould : these Boats being all abourd, the Admirall fent for most of the Captaines and Masters in the Fleet. to adule whether it were fit to attempt it with Boats and Brigandines, in regard it was little wind, and that Welterly, so that it was impossible for the ships to get in. After some deliberation, it was concluded, that it was not fit, for that the furest and most certaine meanes of firing was by the ships which were to bee made fast to the shippes in the Mould, and to burne with them. Whereupon it was deferred for that time till a fitter opportunitie was offered. The two and twentieth at night, there were like preparations made, but deferred for like reasons. to The three and twentieth, in the beginning of the night wee had a fresh gale of wind at South by South-west, continuing the space of two houres or more, with Thunder, Lightning, and fome drops of Raine : the two ships weighed, and with the Brigandines and Boats set forwards towards the Mould, but the wind shifting before they came neere, they were forced also to

The foure and twentieth at night, after a great showre of Raine, wee had the wind out of the Bay at South South-weil, the weather then cleering vp, both the fhips and Boats advanced themselues towards the Mould, as before they had done : but comming within lesse then Musket that of the Moulds head it fell calme, fo that the ships could by no meanes get in, the Boats and Brigandines finding that they were discourred, by reason of the brightnesse of the Moone, which was then at full, and hearing it reported by a Christian Captine which did swimme from the Towne the night before to the fhips, that the Trokes had left their fhips without guard, fauing one or two in a ship, as fearing no such attempt from vs. And moreover, hearing the Alarum giuen to the Towne by those which kept watch on the walls, with good resolution went on, but wanting wind to nourish and disperse the fire, the fire-workes tooke no effect at all. In this feruice were onely fixe men flaine out-right, foure or fine dangeroully hurt (which not long after dyed) and some thirteene sleightly hurt, yet notwithstanding, the attempt was given vnder the wals of the Towne, where both small shot and Ordnance played continually voon them: the hart done our men was their comming off, for that they were got into the Mould before the Towne was rifen, and beeing in, the shippes in the Mould defended them both from small 32 that and Ordnance of the Towne, our Boates still keeping the shippes betweene them and

The fine and twentieth, there came in foure fayle of Pirates by the Wester-most point of Land, notwithstanding fixe ships were appointed to lye off at that place, for the wind being Westward and a great Current setting to the Eastward our ships were put so farre to lee-ward their returne, that they could not preuent the Pirats comming in betweene the shoare and them, but yet the Bonauen: we loofed to neere, that there paffed fome shot betweene her and the Pirats ships, but no hurt done : this night our Admirall and the whole Fleet weighed Anchor and food off to

The fix and twentieth, the fore-part of the day, the wind was shifting to and fro, from the 40 South-east to the South-west; in the after-noone at South, and South-east hard gale and raynie weather; and at night having the wind shifting at South and South-west, we played off and on all night by a wind.

The eight and twentieth, we had faire weather the wind Westerly, this night the Bonauenadde to the ture, and the Hercules put a Pirat alhoare, he having an hundred and thirtie Turkes in her, and glory of God, twelue poore Christians Captines, they were all drowned but twelue Turkes, who got the shoare by swimming.

The one and thirtieth in the morning , our Boates tooke vp two Genomages Captines, who adventured to swimme from the Towne to the ships. They told that the same night our shippes ucrances fol- flood off to Sea, there came into the Mould seuen of the best ships belonging to Algier, and that 50 if we had flayed they had fallen into our laps. They likewife told vs, that the Turkes had Boo-Stories of two the Mould, io that it was not possible for eyther shippe or Boate to get into to fire the thips, which were now filled with armed men, besides three Gallies and fifteene Boates which Lay continually well fitted without the Mould before the Boome for a Guard, &c.

CHAP. VI.

The Relation of the Iacob, a ship of Bristoll, of one hundred and twentie Tunnes. which was about the end of October, 1621. taken by the Turkish Pirats of Argier : and within fine dayes after, foure English youths did valiantly ouercome thirteene of the faid Turkes; and brought the ship to Saint Lucas in Spaine, where they fold mine of the Turkes for Gallie-flanes : with mention of fome other like English aduentures.

10

CHAP.6.

Eere the latter end of October last, 1621. 2 ship belonging to the Citie of Briz fall, being about the burden of one hundred and twenty Tuns, was met withall and fet voon by Turkes or Pirats of Argier, where after a long and sharpe fight (being in the mouth of the Straits of Gibraltar) the Euribb thip being oppress with the multitude of their enemies, was taken, their Ordnance, Cables, Anchors, Sailes, Ship and men pillaged, ransacked, and at the mercy of the inful-

ting Barbarians, who to make their worke the furer, tooke all the Englishmen out of the ship, 20 except four youths, whose names were, Iohn Cooke, William Ling, Danid Iones, and Robert Tucker, into which ship the Turker did put thirteene of their owne men to command the Englib, and to bring the ship as a prize to Argier; amongst which one of the Pirats was appointed Captaine, being a strong, able, sterne, and resolute fellow.

These foure poore youths being thus fallen into the hands of mercilesse Insidels, began to studie and complot all the meanes they could for the obtayning of their freedomes : First, they confidered the lamentable and miferable estates that they were like to be in, as to be debard for ever from feeing their friends and Countrey, to be chained, beaten, made flaues, and to eate the bread of affliction in the Gallies, all the remainder of their vnfortunate lines, to have their heads share uen, to feed on course dyet, to have hard boords for beds; and which was worst of all, never to

30 be partakers of the heavenly Word and Sacraments. Thus being quite hopeleffe, hapleffe, and for any thing they knew, for ever helpleffe, they fayled five dayes and nights wider the command of the Pirats, when on the fifth night, God in his great mercy shewed them a meanes for their wished for escape, for in the dead of the night, the wind began to arise, and in short space it blew so stiffe that they were enforced to ftrike both their top Sayles ; and at last, it encreased to such a gust or storme, that they must take in their maine Saile, and being vnable to doe it themselves, Iohn Cooke and William Ling did call to the Turkes for helpe : whereupon the Captaine himselfe came to helpe them; who standing by the ships side, betweene the foresaid Iohn and David Iones , lending his hand to hale in the faile, the faid lohn and Danid fuddenly tooke him by the breech and threw him o-40 uer-boord, but by fortune hee fell into the bunt of the fayle, where quickly catching hold of a rope, he (being a very strong man) had almost gotten into the ship againe : which Iohn Cooke perceiuing, leaped speedily to the Pumpe, and tooke off the Pumpe brake or handle, and cast it to William Ling, bidding him knocke him downe, which he was not long in doing, but lifting vp the woodden weapon, he gaue him fuch a palt on the pate, as made his braines for fake the possession of his head, with which his body fell into the Sea.

An Objection may be made here, why the Tarke cried not to his fellowes at first for helpe, or how these things could be done, but the rest of his company must either see or heare it: to which Ianswere, that at Sea a Gust, Flaw, or Storme, hath many times a louder voice then a man; befides, when Mariners doe hale or pull any thing, they doe make a noyfe, as it were crying bat 50 weet hale men hale, which with the noyfe of the wind whizzing and hizzing in the shrowds aid cordage, would ouercome and drowne the voice or crie of any man what locuer. Befides, his companions were all busie, some at the mizen, some at the sprit-faile, some to trim the fore-faile, and the night exceeding darke, all these things concurring, and chiefly, God graciously affitting, thus these brave Lads began the businesse luckily.

Nor must I forget Robert Tuckey, who was imployed all this while in a place of maine importance, for he stood at the Helme, and in all the weather guided the Ship; now after the Captaine was thus cashierd, John Cooke ran hastily up the halfe Decke to the Masters Cabine, neere which, were flanding fix or feuen Turkes, but hee being nothing daunted or discouraged for them, flipt roughly by them, and gat out two good Cuttleaxes, or thort Swords, one of which 60 he delivered to William Ling, withall faying, courage my fellowes and Countrey-men, God itrengthen and affift vs; with that, they laid about them so manfully, that they droue the Timkes from place to place in the Ship, and having courfed them from the Poope to the Forecastle, they there valiantly killed two of them, and gaue another a dangerous wound or two, Who to escape the further fury of their Swords, leap'd fuddenly ouer-boord to goe seeke his Cap-

The rest of shis Iournall contagning &c. is for breuitic,omitted. Among many English which fince the ftir-Waspes Nest, haue bin stung, wee haue zhought fit to

the English: thefe two Arange deli-

CHAP. 60

taine. Thus foure of the thirteene Turkes being made fure for doing any harme, they chafed and followed the other nine so close, that they (to saue themselves) being also many of them. fore hurt and wounded, ranne betweene the Ships Decks; whereupon the English men fastned the Deckes to keepe them vnder: the Turkes not knowing how to be reutinged, ran afterward toward the Helme, and vnshipt their Whip-staffe, or as some call it, a Whip-stocke (which is the flaffe that a Mariner holds in his hand, when he guides or fleeres a Ship) by which meanes the English men were in some distresse, by reason the Sip lay tumbling and rowling vaguided in the raging and boythrous billowes of the Sea : at last, dobn Cooke and William Ling got each of them a Musket, which they quickly charged, and went downe where the nine Turker were, making offers to shoote at them, at which they were much terrified; whereupon they quickly ship'd 10 their Whip-stocke againe, delivering the Helme to Robert Tucker, and then presently they flowed all the Timkes under the Hatches, where they kept them close till the next morning, and then as they had occasion to vie them, they would call up two or three of them at a time, to hale and pull Sheetes, Tackes, Braces and Boleins, to hoyle and strike Sayles, or any such necesfary and laborious imployments; in all which, the English made the Tirkes attend them. and directing their course for the Port of Saint Lucas in Spaine , they in short time (by Gods ayde) happily and fafely arrived at the faid Port, where they fold the nine Twiker for Gally-flanes, for a good fumme of money, and as I thinke, a great deale more then they were worth.

Nor doe I write this to the intent that any man should presume that their owne strengths, valour or courage, is sufficient to doe these or the like actions, for they are not ordinary, and therefore man is but made the ordinary infinment of an extraordinary power, and he that thall a attribute such things as these to the arms of flesh and bloud, is forgetfull, ingratefull, and in a manuse Alasis and

See the Hifton ry in Hack. Voyages,

One Iohn Fox an expert Mariner, and a good appropuled and sufficient Gunner, was (in the raigne of Queene Elizabeth) taken by the Tinker, and kept eighteene yeeres in most miserable bondage and flauery, at the end of which time, he espied his opportunity (and God affitting him withall) that hee flew his Keeper, and fled to the Seas fide, where he found a Gally with one hundred and fifty Captine Christians, which hee speedily waying their Anchor, set Saile, and fell to worke like men, and fafely arrived in Spane; by which meanes, he freed himfelfe and a number of poore foules from long and intolerable feruitude; after which, the faid lobs Fax 20 came into England, and the Queene (being rightly informed of his braue exploit) did gracioully entertaine him for her Servant, and allowed him a yeerely Pension.

Captaine Ni: hols with a Ship of London, called the Dolphin, fought a long and bloudy fight, with many of the Turkib men of warre at one time, at which time hee funke fome of them, flew many of their men, and having his owne Ship exceedingly rent and torne with the Enemies great shor, yet at last it pleased God to deliver him from them, so that hee safely arrived at home.

Mafter William Malam of Rotherhith within these three yeeres was set voon by these Rouers, and after a long fight, being much hurt by the Ordnance of the Turker (the night comming on) which made the fight to ceale, when the Generall of the Pirates past his word, and bound it with an Oath, that if Mafter Malan would come aboord his Ship all night, that hee should 40 well and fafely bee fet abourd againe his owne Ship the next morning, vpon which word and oath Master Malam went abourd the Torke, and a Merchant with him; but first, before he went, commanded his Mate to watch his opportunitie, and steale away with the Ship in the night, if he could, which fell out as he wished, whereby all the Merchants goods were faued, and the Ship fafely arrived here at London , but in the morning, when the Turker did perceive the Englift Ship was gone, then would they have put Master Malan and the Merchant that was with him, to death, whereupon he vrged him with his oath and promife, which was, that he should come and goe fafely, and that if a Christian had made him or any man such a promise, and bound it with a vow, hee would have kept his word. And (that for any thing hee knew) his Ship being fo dangeroully hurt by them, might be funke in the night, and not elcaped away as he imagined. Mow while they were in this difcourle, prefently came a Salie in fight, which afterward they found to be a small Scottifb Ship bound for England, whom the Turkes quickly tooke, and pillag'd at their pleafure, taking from them their Sailes, Cables, Anchors and all things necessary for their yse or prefernation, and having robd a rifled the poore Scot in that manner, they put Mafter Malar and the Merchant into her, to trie their fortunes, either to finke or livin, but it pleafed God, they fafely arrived in the West part of England, where they came home by land (ad and disconfolate , because they could not heare any newes of the Ship: but the same night that hee came home, before day, there was happy tidings brought of the Ships fafe arrivall into the River of Thames.

All their things are true vpon mine owne knowledge, and these worthy Mariners that have beene so delinered, doe, and euer did, attribute all the meanes of their delinerance to the mighty hand of God; and they are so farrefrom taking any of these things to their owne praise or glory, that some of them have ever done their best to suppresse them from being printed. CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

The wonderfull recovery of the Exchange of Briftow, from the Turkish Pirats of Argier, published by I O H N R A WLINS, heere abbreuiated.



CHAP.7.

N the yeere 1621, the first of Nouember, there was one Iohn Rawlins, borne in Rochester, and dwelling three and twenty yeere in Plummoth, imployed to the first of Gibraltar, by Mafter Richard, and Stenen Treniles, Merchants of Plimmoth, and fraighted in Barke, called the Nicholas of Plimmoth , of the burden of forty Tun, which had also in her company another ship of Plimmoth, called the George Benauenture of feuenty Tun burthen, or thereabout; which by reason of

her greatnesse beyond the other, I will name the Admirall; and lobn Rawlins Barke shall, if you pleale, he the Vice-admirall. These two according to the time of the yeere, had a faire passage, and by the eighteenth of the same moneth came to a place at the entring of the straits, named Trafflegar: but the next morning, being in the fight of Gibraltar, at the very mouth of the straits, the watch descried fine faile of ships, who as it seemed, vied all the means they could to come neere vs. and we as we had cause, vsed the same means to go as farrefrom them: yet did their Admirall take in both his top failes, that either we might not suspect them, or that his owne company might come vp the cloier together. At last perceiuing vs (briftions, they fell from deuices to 20 apparent discouery of hostility, and making out against vs : we againe suspecting them Pirats; tooke our course to escape from them, and made all the sailes we possibly could for Tirriff, or Gibraltar: but all we could doe, could not preuent their approach. For fuddenly one of them came right ouer against vs to wind-ward, and so fell vpon our quarter : another came vpon our luste, and to threatned vs there, and at last all fine chased vs, making great speed to surprise vs.

Their Admirall was called Califater, having upon her maine top-faile, two top-gallant failes, one about another. But whereas we thought them all fine to be Turkif thips of war, we afterwards vnderstood, that two of them were their prizes, the one a small ship of London, the other of the West-countrey, that came out of the Quartath laden with figges, and other Merchandise, but now fubiect to the fortune of the Sea, and the captimity of Pirats. But to our bufineffe. Three 30 of these ships got much vpon vs, and so much that ere halfe the day was spent, the Admiral who was the best failer, fetent up the George Bonauenture, and made booty of it. The Vice-admirall againebeing neerest vnto the lester Barke, whereof John Ramlins was Master, shewed him the force of a stronger arme, and by his Twelft name, called Villa-Rife, commanded him in like fort to strike his failes, and submit to his mercy, which not to be gaine-faied nor preuented, was quickly done : and fo Rawlins with his Barke was quickly taken, although the Reare-Admirall being the worst sayler of the three, called Reggipt se, came not in, till all was done.

The same day before night, the Admirall either loth to petter himselfe with too much company, or ignorant of the commodity was to be made by the fale of English priloners, or during not to trust them in his company for feare of mutinies, and exciting others to rebellion; fet 40 twelue persons who were in the George Bonauent ure on the land, and divers other English, whom he had taken before, to trie their fortunes in an vnknowne Countrey. But Villa-Rife , the Vice-Admirall that had taken lohn Rawlins, would not fo dispence with his men, but commanded him and five more of his company to be brought abourd his ship, leaving in his Barke three men and his boy, with thirteene Turkes and Moores, who were questionlesse sufficient to ouer-mafter the other and direct the Barke to Haroour. Thus they failed directly for Argier; but the night following, followed them with great tempert and foule weather, which ended not without some effect of a storme : for they lost the fight of Rawlins Barke, called the Nicholas, and in a manner loft themselves, though they seemed late a shipboord, by searefull coniecturing what should become of vs: at last, by the two and twentieth of the same moneth, they, or we (chase so you whether) arrived at Argier, and came in fafety within the Mould, but found not our other Barke there ; nay, though we earneftly inquired after the same yet heard we nothing to our fatisfaction; but much matter was ministred to our discomfort and amazement. For although the Captaine and our ouer-feers, were loth we should have any conference with our Country-men; yet did we aduenture to informe our felues of the present affaires, both of the Towne, and the thipping : fo that finding many English at worke in other thips, they fpared not to tell vs the danger we were in, and the mischiefes we must needs incurre, as being fire if we were not vied like flaues, to be fold as flaues : for there had beene fine hundred brought into the market for the fame purpose, and aboue a hundred hansome youths compelled to turne Turkes, or made subject to more vilder profitution, and all English : yet like good Christians, they bade vs be of good 60 cheere, and comfort our felues in this, that Gods trials were gentle purgations, and these croffes were but to cleanfe the droffe from the gold, and bring vs out of the fire againe more cleare and louely. Yet I must needs confesse, that they a forded vs reason for this cruelty, as if they determined to be reuenged of our last attempt to fire their ships in the Mould, and therefore protefled to spare none, whom they could surprise, and take aline, but either to fell them for mo-

ney, or torment them to ferue their owne turnes. Now their customes and viages in both their was in this manner.

First, concerning the first. The Bashaw had the over-seeing of all prisoners, who were presenred vinto him at their first comming into the harbour, and so chose one out of every eight for a present or fee to himselfe : the rest were rated by the Captaines, and so feat to the Market to be fold ; whereat if either there were repining, or any drawing backe, then certaine Moores and Officers attended either to beate you forward, or thrust you into the fides with Goades; and this was the manner of the felling of Slaues.

Execrable tordoes and Apo-

Sale of the

English.

390

Secondly, concerning their enforcing them, either tourne Turke, or to attend their filthines and impieties, although it would make a Christians heart bleed to heare of the same, yet must 10 the truth not be hid, nor the terror left vntold. They commonly lay them on their naked backs Bicced on the
English romake or bellies, beating them folong, till they bleed at the nofe and mouth; and if yet they continue constant, then they strike the teeth out of their heads, pinch them by their tongues, and vie many other forts of tortures to connert them; nay, many times they lay them their whole length in the ground like a grave, and so cover them with boards, threatning to starue them, if they will not turne; and so many even for feare of torment and death, make their tongues betray their hearts to a most fearefull wickednesse, and so are circumcifed with new names, and brought to confesse a new Religion. Others againe, I must confesse, who never knew any God, but their cwine ienfuall lusts and pleasures, thought that any religion would ferue their turnes, and so for preferment or wealth very voluntarily renounced their faith, and became Renegadoes in despight of any counsell which seemed to intercept them: and this was the first newes wee encountred with at our comming first to Argier. The 26. of the same moneth, Iohn Rawlins his Barke, with his other three men and abov.

came fafe into the Mould, and fo were put all together to be carried before the Balham, but that they tooke the Owners feruant, and Rawlings Boy, and by force and torment compelled them to turne Turkes: then were they in all seuen English, besides lohn Ramlins, of whom the Basham tooke one, and fent the rest to their Captaines, who set a valuation vpon them, and so the Souldiers hurried vs like dogs into the Market, whereas men fell Hacknies in England, we were toffed vp and downe to fee who would give most for vs; and although we had heavy hearts, and looked with fad countenances, yet many came to behold vs, fometimes taking vsby the hand, 30 fometime turning vs round about, fometimes feeling our brawnes and naked armes, and fo beholding our prices written in our breafts, they bargained for vs accordingly, and at last we were all

fold, and the Souldiers returned with the money to their Captaines. John Ramlins was the last, who was fold, by reason of his lame hand, and bought by the Captaine that tooke him, even that dog Villa Rife, who better informing himfelfe of his skill fit to be a Pilot, and his experience to bee an ouer-feer, bought him and his Carpenter at very easie rates. For as we afterwards understood by divers English Renegadoes, he paid for Rawlins but one hundred and fiftie Dooblets, which make of English money feuen pound ten shillings. Thus was he and his Carpenter with divers other flaves fent into his ship to worke, and imployed about fuch affaires, as belonged to the well rigging and preparing the fame. But the villanous Turkes 40 perceiuing his lame hand, and that he could not performe so much as other Slaues, quickly complained to their Patron, who as quickly apprehended the inconvenience, whereupon hee feat for him the next day, and told him he was vnferuiceable for his prefent purpofe, and therefore voleffe he could procure fifteene pound of the English there for his ranfome, he would fend him vp into the Countrey, where he should never see Christendome againe, and endure the extremity

of a miferable banishment. But see how God worketh all for the best for his senants, and confoundeth the presumption

Renegado.

Chandler a

of Tyrants, frustrating their purposes, to make his wonders knowne to the sonnes of men, and releases his people, when they least thinke of fuccour and releasement. Whilest Iohn Rawlons was thus terrified with the dogged answere of Villa Rife, the Exchange of Briston, a ship former- 50 ly furprifed by the Pirats, lay all vorigged in the Harbour, till at last one Iohn Goodale, an English Twike, with his confederates, vinderstanding shee was a good failer, and might be made a proper Man of Warre, bought her from the Turkes that tooke her, and prepared her for their owne purpole : now the Captaine that fet them on worke, was also an English Renegado, by the name of Rammetham Rife, but by his Christen name Henrie Chandler, who relolued to make Goodale Mafter over her; and because they were both English Turkes, having the command notwithstanding of many Turkes and Moores, they concluded to have all English slaves to goe in her, and for their Gunners, English and Dutch Renegadoes, and fo they agreed with the Patrons of nine English, and one French Slave for their rantoms, who were presently imployed to rig and furnish the ship for a Man of Warre, and while they were thus busied, two of som Rawins men, who were taken with him, were also taken vp to serue in this Man of Warre, their names, sames Roe, 60 and Iohn Dauses, the one dwelling in Plimmoth, and the other in Foy, where the Commander of this ship was also borne, by which occasion they came acquainted, so that both the Captaine, and the Matter promifed them good vlage, vpon the good fernice they should performe in the

voyage, and withall demanded of him, if he knew of any Englishman to be bought, that could ferue them as a Pilot, both to direct them out of Harbour, and conduct them in their voyage. For in truth neither was the Captaine a Mariner, nor any Tarke in her of fufficiency to dispose of her through the Straites in fecuritie, nor oppose any enemie, that should hold it out brauely against them. Danies quickly replied, that as tarre as he vaderstood, Villa Rife would fell Iohn Rawlins his Mafter and Commander of the Barke which was taken, a man every way fofficient for Sea affaires, being of great refolution and good experience; and for all he had a lame hand, yet had he a found heart and noble courage for any attempt or aduenture.

When the Captaine videritood thus much, he imployed Danies to fearth for Ramlins, who 10 at last lighting upon him, asked him if the Turke would fell him: Rimlins fuddenly and wered that by reason of his lame hand he was willing to part with him ; but because he had disbursed money for him, he would gaine fomething by him, and fo prized me at three hundred Dooblets, a which amounteth to fifteene pound English; which I mult procure, or incurre forer indurances. When Danies had certified thus much, the Turks a ship-boord conferred about the matter, and the Master whole Christen name was loba Goodale toyned with two Tarkes, who were conforted with him, and disburfed one hundred Dooblets a piece, and fo bought him of Villa Rife, fending him into the faid thip, called the Exchange of Brifton, as well to supervise what had been done, as to order what was left vindone, but especially to fit the failes, and to accommodate the fhip, all which Rawline was very carefull and indulgent in, not yet thinking of any peculiar plot of deliverance, more then a generall defire to be freed from this Tarkif laverie, and inhumane

By the fewenth of lamarie, the thip was prepared with twelve good cast Pieces, and all mananer of munition and prouifion, which belonged to such a purpose, and the same day hated out of

the Mould of Argier, with this company, and in this manner.

There were in her fixtie three Turkes and Moores, nine English Slaves, and one French foure Hollanders that were free men, to whom the Turkes promifed one price or other. and to to returne to Holland; or if they were disposed to goe backe againe for Araier, they should have great reward and no enforcement offered, but continue as they would, both their religion and their cuftomes: and for their Gunners they had two of our Souldiers one English and one Dutch Renegado; and thus much for the companie. For the manner of fetting out, it was as vfuall as in other thips, but that the Turkes delighted in the oftentous braverie of their Streamers, Banners, and Top-fayles; the ship being a handsome ship, and well built for any purpose : the Slaves and English were imployed under Hatches about the Ordnance, and other workes of order, and accommodating themselves: all which John Rawlins marked, as supporting it an intolerable flauerie to take fuch paines, and be fubicet to fuch dangers, and ftill to enrich other men and maintaine their voluptuous filthineffe and lives, returning themselves as Slaves, and living worte then their Dogs among it them. Whereupon hee burft out into these, or such like abrupt fpeeches : Oh Hellish slauerie to be thus subiect to Dogs! Oh, God ftrengthen my heart and hand, and fomething shall be done to ease vs of these mischieses, and deliuer vs from these cruell Mahumetan Dogs. The other Slaues pittying his distraction (as they thought) bad him speake 40 foftly left they should all fare the worfe for his diftemperature. The worfe (quoth Rawlins) what can be worfe ! I will either attempt my deliuerance at one time, or another, or perith in the enterprise: but if you would be contented to hearken after a release, and jovice with me in the action. I would not doubt of facilitating the fame, and shew you a way to make your credits thriue by some worke of amazement, and augment your glorie in purchasing your libertie, I prethee be quiet (faid they againe) and thinke not of impossibilities : yet if you can but open such a doore of reason and probabilitie, that we be not condemned for desperate and distracted perfons, in pulling the Sunne as it were out of the Firmament : wee can but facrifice our lives, and you may be fure of fecrecie and taciturnitie.

The fifteenth of lanuarie, the morning water brought vs neere Cape de Gatt, hard by the fhuare, 50 we having in our companie a final Twift thip of Warre, that followed vs out of Argier the next day, and now ioyning with vs, gave vs notice of feuen small vessels, fixe of them being Sattees, and one Pollack, who very quickly appeared in fight, and to we made toward them : but having more aduantage of the Pollack, then the rest, and loth to lose all, we both fetcht her vp, and brought her past hope of recouerie, which when she perceived, rather then she would voluntarily come into the flauerie of these Mahumetans, she ran her selfe a shoare, and so all the men for sooke her; we still followed as neere as we durst, and for feare of splitting, let fall our anchors, making out both our boates, wherein were many Musketeers, and some English and Dutch Renegadoes, who came abourd home at their Conge, and found three pieces of Ordnance, and foure Murthe-

60 rers : but they straightway threw them all over boord to lighten the ship, and so they got her off, being laden with Hides, and Logwood for dying, and prefently fenther to Argier, taking nine Turkes, and one English Slave, out of one thip, and fix out of the leffe, which we thought fur-

In the rifling of this Catelaynia, our Turks fell at variance one with another, and in fach a man-Eccee

892 The Turkes quarrelland part

Wizards or Witches carryed to Sea by

ner, that we divided our felues, the leffer ship returned to Argier , and our Exchange tooke the opportunitie of the wind, and plyed out of the Streights, which reioyced Iohn Rawlins very opportunitie of the within, and plyetudes of the popertunitie flould ferue; in the meane-while, much, as refoluting on fome Strategense, when opportunitie flould ferue; in the meane-while, the Tire per and mounturer, and would not willingly goe into the Mary Granda, as the physic is amongst them : notwithstanding the Moores being very superstitious, were contented to be directed by their Holesa, who with vs, fignifieth a Witch, and is of great account and reputation amongst them, as not going in any great Vessell to Sea without one, and obseruing whatfoeuer he conclude th out of his Dinination; the Ceremonies he vieth are many, and when they come into the Ocean, every second or third night he maketh his Coniuration; he beginneth and endeth with Prayer, vling many Characters, and calling upon God by divers names : yet at this time, all that he did conflitted in these particulars.

Vpon the fight of two great fhips, and as wee were afraid the chaing, beeing supposed to bee their dinining. Spanish men of Warre, a great silence is commanded in the ship, and when all is done, the company giueth as great a skrich; the Captaine still comming to lohn Rawlins, and sometimes making him take in all his layles, and sometimes causing him to hoyse them all out, as the Witch findeth by his Booke, and prefages; then have they two Arrowes, and a Curtleaxe, lying vpon a Pillow naked; the Arrowes are one for the Turkes, and the other for the Christians; then the Witch readeth, and the Captaine of some other taketh the Arrowes in their hand by the heads, and if the Arrow for the Christians commeth ouer the head of the Arrow for the Twices, then doe they advance their fayles, and will not endure the fight, whatfoeuer they fee : but if the Ar- 20 row of the Turkes is found in the opening of the hand vpon the Arrow of the Christians, then will they flay and encounter with any shippe what souer : the Curtleaxe is taken up by some Childe, that is innocent, or rather ignorant of the Ceremonie, and so layd downe againe; then doe they observe, whether the same side is vppermost, which lay before, and so proceed accor-

They also observe Lunatickes and Changelings, and the Conjurer writeth downe their Savings in a Booke, groueling on the ground, as if he whifpered to the Deuill to tell him the truth and so expoundeth the Letter, as it wereby inspiration. Many other foolish Rites they have,

whereon they doe dote as foolishly.

whereon they we was buffed, and made demonstration that all was finished, the people in the ship you agreat shout, and tryed out, a sayle, a sayle, which at last was discoursed to bee another 10 man of Warre of Turker: for he made toward vs, and fent his Boat aboord vs, to whom our Captaine complained, that being becalmed by the Southerne Cape, and hauing made no Voyage, the Tarkes denyed to goe any further Northward : but the Captaine resoluted not to returne to Argier, except he could obtayne fome Prize worthy his endurances, but rather togot to Salle, and tell his Christians to victuall his ship; which the other Captaine apprehended for his honour, and so perswaded the Turkes to be obedient vnto him; whereupon followed a pacication amongst vs, and so that Troke tooke his course for the Streights, and weeput vp North-

ward, expecting the good houre of fome beneficiall bootie. All this while our flauery continued, and the Tinkes with infulting tyrannie fet vs ftill on worke in all bafe and feruit a citions, adding firipes and inhumane retailings, each in our greatest labour, whereupon Iohn Ramlins resolued to obtayne his libertie, and surprize the ship; prouiding Ropes with broad speckes of Iron, and all the Iron Crowes, with which hee knew a way. vpon consent of the rest, to ramme vp or tye fast their Scuttels, Gratings, and Cabbins, yea, to faut up the Captaine himselfe with all his conferts, and so to handle the matter, that upon the watch-word given, the English being Masters of the Gunner roome, Ordnance, and Powder, they would exther blow them into the Ayre, or kill them as they aduentured to come downe one by one, if they should by any chance open their Calbins. But because hee would proceed the better in his enterprise, as he had somewhat abruptly discouered himselfe to the nine Englift flaves, fo he kept the fame diftance with the foure Hollanders, that were free men, till finding them comming fomewhat toward them, he acquainted them with the whole Conspiracie, and they affecting the Plot, offered the aduenture of their lives in the businesse. Then very warily he undermined the English Renegado, which was the Gunner, and three more his Affociats, who at first seemed to retract. Last of all were brought in the Dutch Renegadoes, who were alfo in the Gunner roome, for alwayes there lay twelve there, five Chr Rians, and feven English, and Dutch Turkes: fo that when another motion had fettled their resolutions, and Iohn Ramlins his constancie had put new life as it were in the matter, the foure Hollanders very honestly, according to their promise, founded the Dutch Renegadoes, who with easie perswasion gave their consent to fo brave an Enterprize; whereupon lohn Rawlins, not caring whether the Eng-Lifb Gunners would yeeld or no, resolued in the Captaines morning watch, to make the attempt: 60 But you must vinderstand that where the English slaves lay, there hung vip alwayes foure or hue Crowes of Iron, being still under the carriages of the Peeces , and when the time approached being very darke, because Iohn Ramlins would have his Crow of Iron ready as other things were, and other men prepared in their feuerall places, in taking it out of the carriage, by chance, it hit

on the fide of the Peece, making such a noyle, that the Souldiers hearing it awaked the Turker, and Dancer of on the face of the Teches descended with a Candle, and discourse presently searched all the slaues places, making much adoe of the matter, but finding neyther Harchet nor Hammer, nor any thing elle to moue suspition of the Enterprize, more then the Crow of Iron, which lay flipped downe under the carriages of the Peeces, they went quietly vo againe, and certified the Captaine what had chanced, who fatisfied himselfe, that it was a common thing to haue a Crow of Iron flip from his place. But by this occasion wee made star of our attempt, yet were resolued to take another or a better oportunitie.

For we fayled fill more North-ward, and Rawlins had more time to tamper with his Gun-Io ners, and the rest of the English Renegadoes, who very willingly, when they considered the matter, and perpended the reasons, gaue way vnto the Proiect, and with a kind of iov seemed to entertayne the motiues : only they made a flopat the first on-set, who should begin the enterprize, which was no way fit for them to doe, because they were no slaues, but Renegadoes. and so had alwayes beneficiall entertaynment amongst them. But when it is once put in pra-Ctice, they would be fure not to faile them, but venture their lines for God and their Countrev. But once againe he is disappointed, and a suspitious accident brought him to recollect his spirits anew, and studie on the danger of the enterprize, and thus it was After the Renegado Gunner. had protested secrecie by all that might induce a man to bestow some beliefe vpon him, he prefently went vp the Scottle, but ft yed not aloft a quarter of an houre, nay he came fooner down, Anotherdam 20 & in the Gunner roome fate by Rawlins, who tarryed for him where he left him; he was no foo- ger. ner placed, and entred into some conference, but there entred into the placea furious Turke, with his Knife drawne, and presented it to Rawlins his body, who verily supposed, he intended to kill him, as suspitious that the Gunner had discourred something, whereat Rawlms was much moued, and so hashily asked what the matter meant, or whether he would kill him or no, observing his countenance, and according to the nature of iealousie, conceiting that his colour had a passage of change, whereby his suspitious heart, condemned him for a Traytor: but that at more leisure he fware the contrary, and afterward proued faithfull and industrious in the enterprize. And for the present, he answered Rambins in this manner, no Master, be not afraid, I thinke hee doth but iest. With that Iohn Rawlinsgaue backe a little and drew out his Knife, stepping also to the 30 Gunners sheath and taking out his, whereby he had two Kniues to one, which when the Turke perceiued, he threw downe his Knife, faying, hee did but iest with him. But (as I said) when the Gunner perceived, Rawlins tooke it foill, hee whilpered fomething in his eare, that at last fatisfied him, calling Heauen to witnesse, that he neuer Ipake word of the Enterprize, nor ever would, either to the prejudice of the businesse, or danger of his person : Notwithstanding, Ramlins kept the Kniues in his sleeue all night, and was somewhat troubled, for that hee had made

All this while, Rawlins drew the Captaine to lye for the Northerne Cape, affiring him, that 40 thereby he should not miffe purchase, which accordingly fell out, as a wish would have it : but his drift was in truth to draw him from any supply, or second of Turkes, if God should give way to their Enterprize, or fuccesse to the victorie : yet for the present the fixth of February, being twelue leagues from the Cape, wee descryed a layle, and presently tooke the aduantage of the wind in chasing her, and at last fetcht her vp, making her strike all her sayles, whereby wee knew her to be a Barke belonging to Tor Bay, neere Dartmouth, that came from Auerare laden Tor Ban. with Salt : ere we had fully dispatched, it chanced to be foule weather, so that we could not, or at least would not make out our Boat, but caused the Master of the Barke to let downe his, and come aboord with his Company, being in the Barke but nine men, and one Boy; and so the Mafter leaving his Mate with two men in the same, came himselse with five men, and the boy 50 vnto vs, whereupon our Turkil Captaine fent ten Turkes to man her, among it whom were two Dutch, and one English Renegado, who were of our confederacie, and acquainted with the bu-

fo many acquainted with an action of such importance; but the next day, when hee perceived

the Coast cleere, and that there was no cause of further feare, hee somewhat comforted him-

But when Rawling faw this partition of his friends, before they could hoyse out their Boat for the Barke, he made meanes to speake with them, and told them plainly, that he would prosecute the matter eyther that night, or the next and therefore whatloeuer came of it they should acquaint the English with his resolution, and make toward England, bearing vo the helme, whiles the Turkes slept, and suspected no such matter: for by Gods grace in his first watch about mid-night, he would flew them a light, by which they might understand, that the Enterprize was begunne, or at least in a good forwardnesse for the execution : and so the Boat was let downe, and they came to the Barke of Tor Bay, where the Masters Mate beeing left (as before you have heard) apprehended quickly the matter, and heard the Discourse with amazement. But time was precious, and not to be ipent in disputing, or cashing of doubts, whether the Turkes that were with them, were able to mafter them, or no, beeing feuen to fixe, confidering they had the helme of the ship, and the Turker being Souldiers, and ignorant of Sea Affaires, could

not discouer, whether they went to Arguer or no ; or if they did, they resoluted by Rawlins ex. ample to cut their throats, or cast them ouer-boord : and so I leave them to make vie of the Renegadoes instructions, and returne to Rawlins againe.

The Master of the Barke of Tor Bay, and his Company were quickly searched, and as quickly piliaged, and difinished to the libertie of the shippe, whereby Rawlins had leisure to entertayne him with the lamentable newes of their extremities, and in a word, of every particular which was befitting to the purpose : yea, he told him, that that night he should lose the fight of them. for they would make the helme for England, and hee would that night and euermore pray for

their good fuccesse, and fafe deliuerance. When the Master of the Barke of Tor Bay had heard him out, and that his company were to partakers of his Storie, they became all filent, not eyther diffident of his Discourse, or afraid of the attempt, but refolued to affift him. Yet to shew himselfe an vaderstanding man . hee demanded of Rawlins, what weapons he had, and in what manner he would execute the businesses to which he answered, that he had Ropes, and Iron Hookes to make fast the Scottels, Gratings, and Cabbines, he had also in the Gunner roome two Curtleaxes, and the slaues had fine Crowes of Iron before them : Besides, in the scussling they made no question of some of the Souldiers weapons : then for the manner, hee told them , they were jure of the Ordnance, the Gunner roome, and the Powder, and so blocking them vp, would eyther kill them as they came downe. or turne the Ordnance against their Cabbins, or blow them into the Ayre by one Stratagemeor other, and thus were they contented on all tides, and resolved to the Enterprize.

The next morning, being the feuenth day of February, the Prize of Tor Bay was not to bee feene or found, whereat the Captaine began to fforme and iweare, commanding Ranlins to fearth the Seas up and downe for her, who bestowed all that day in the businesse, but to little purpole: whereupon when the humour was ipent, the Captaine pacified himfelfe, as conceiting heshould fure find her at Argier : but by the permiffion of the Ruler of all actions, that Argier was England, and all his wickednesse frustrated: for Rawlins beeing now startled, less the should returne in this humour for the Streights, the eight of February went downe into the hold, and finding a great deale of water below, told the Captaine of the same, adding, that it did not come to the Pumpe, which he did very politickly, that he might remoue the Ordnance: For when the Captaine askt him the reason, he told him the ship was too farre after the head : then hee com- 30 manded to vie the best meanes he could to bring her in order: sure then, quoth Rawlins, wee must quit our Cables, and bring foure Peeces of O rdnance after, and that would bring the water to the Pumpe, which was presently put in practice, so the Peeces beeing viually made fast thwart the ship, we brought two of them with their mouthes right before the Biticle, and besaule the Renegadoe Flemmings would not begin, it was thus concluded: that the ship having three Deckes, wee that did belong to the Gunner roome should bee all there, and breake vp the lower Decke. The English flaues, who alwayes lay in the middle Decke, should doe the like, and watch the Scuttels: Rawlins himselfe prevayled with the Gunner, for so much Powder, as should prime the Peeces, and so told them all there was no better watch-word, nor meanes to begin, then upon the report of the Peece to make a cry and skrich, for God, and King Iames, and 40 Saint George for England.

When all things were prepared, and every man refolved, as knowing what hee had to doe, and the houre when it should happen, to be two in the afternoone, Ramlins adusted the Matter Gunner to speake to the Captaine, that the Souldiers might attend on the Poope, which would bring the ship after : to which the Captaine was very willing, and vpon the Gunners information, the Souldiers gat themselves to the Poope, to the number of twentie, and five or fixe went into the Captaines Cabbin, where alwayes lay divers Curtleaxes, and fome Targets, and so wee fell to worke to pumpe the water, and carryed the matterfairely till the next day, which was foent as the former, being the ninth of February, and as God mult haue the prayfe, the triumph so

For by that time all things were prepared, and the Souldiers got vpon the Poope as the day before : to avoid suspition, all that did belong to the Gunner-roome went downe, and the slaves in the middle decke attended their businesse, so that we may cast up our account in this manner. First, nine English slaues, besides John Rawlins: siue of the Tor Bay men, and one boy, foure English Renegadoes, and two French, foure Hollanders : in all foure and twenty and a boy : fo that litting vp our hearts and hands to God for the fucceffe of the butineffe, we were wonderfully incouraged; and fetled our felues, till the report of the peece gaue vs warning of the enterprise. Now, you must consider, that in this company were two of Ramlins men, James Roe, and John Danies, whom he brought out of England, and whom the fortune of the Sea brought into the Jame predicament with their Maiter. These were imployed about noone (being as I said, the ninth of February) to prepare their matches, while all the Turker or at leaft moft of them flood on the 60 Poope, to weigh downe the ship as it were, to bring the water forward to the Pumpe : the ent brought his match lighted betweene two spoons, the other brought his in a little peece of a Can: and to in the name of God, the Turkes and Moores being placed as you have heard, and five and

forty in number, and Ramlins having proined the Tuch-holes, I ames Ros gave fire to one of the peeces, about two of the clocke in the afternoone, and the confederates vpon the warning, thoupeeces, about the report of the peece did teare and breake downe all the Bitickell, and The ones. compasses, and the noise of the slaues made all the Souldiers amased at the matter, till seeing the quarter of the ship rent, and feeling the whole body to shake vnder them; vnderstanding the thip was furprised, and the attempt tended to their vtter destruction, neuer Beare robbed of her whelpes was fo fell and mad : For they not onely cald vs dogs, and cried out, V Jance de Lamair. which is as much as to fay, the Fortune of the wars : but attempted to teare vp the planckes fetting a worke hammers, hatchets, kniues, the oares of the Boate, the Boat-hooke, their curtle-10 axes, and what else came to hand, besides stones and brickes in the Cooke-roome ; all which

they threw amongst vs, attempting still and still to breake and rip vp the hatches, and boords of the steering, not delisting from their former execrations, and horrible blashhemies and

When John Repolins perceived them so violent, and understood how the flaves had cleared the deckes of all the Turkes and Moores beneath, he fet a guard vpon the Powder, and charged their owne Muskets against them, killing them from divers scout-holes, both before and behind, and fo leffened their number, to the ioy of all our hearts, whereupon they cried out, and called for the Pilot, and fo Rawlins, with some to guard hum, went to them, and understood them by their kneeling, that they cried for mercy, and to have their lines faued, and they would come downe, which he bade them doe, and so they were taken one by one, and bound, yea killed with their owne Curtleaxes; which when the rest perceived, they called vs English dogs, and reviled vs with many opprobrious tearmes, some leaping ouer-boord, crying, it was the chance of war, fome were manacled, and so throwne ouer-boord, and some were slaine and mangled with the Curtleaxes, till the ship was we'll cleared, and our selues assured of the victory.

At the first report of our Peece, and hurliburly in the decks, the Captaine was a writing in his Cabbin, and hearing the noyfe, thought it some strange accident, and so came out with his Curtleaxe in his hand, prefuming by his authority to pacific the milchiefe : But when hee cast his eyes vpon vs , and faw that we were like to surprise the ship , he threw downe his Curtleaxe, and begged vs to faue his life, intimating vnto Rawlins , how he had redeemed him from Villa-30 Rife, and ever fince admitted him to place of command in the ship, besides honest viage in the whole course of the Voyage. All which Rawlins confessed, and at last condescended to mercy, and brought the Captaine and fine more into England. The Captaine was called Ramtham-Rife, The Villory but his Christen name, Henry Chandler, and as they say, a Chandlers sonne in Southwarke. Iohn Good-ale, was alfo an English Turke. Richard Clarke, in Turkifh, Iafar, George Cooke, Ramdam; John Browne, Mamme; William Winter, Mustapha : befides all the flaues and Hollanders, with other Renegadoes, who were willing to be reconciled to their true Saujour, as being formerly feduced with the hopes of riches, honour, preferment, and such like deuillish baiss, to

When all was done, and the thip cleared of the dead bodies, Iohn Rawlins affembled his men together, and with one confent gaue the praife vnto God, ving the accustomed feruice on ship- Praife gives boord, and for want of bookes lifted up their voyces to God, as he put into their hearts, or re- to God newed their memories : then did they fing a Pfalme, and last of all, embraced one another for playing the men in such a Deliuerance, whereby our feare was turned into ioy, and trembling hearts exhillirated, that we had escaped such ineuitable dangers, and especially the flauery and terror of bondage, worse then death it selfe: The same night we washed our ship, put enery thing in as good order as we could, repaired the broken quarter, fet vp the Biticle, and bore vp the Helme for England, whereby Gods grace and good guiding, we arrived at Planmoth, the thirteenth of February, and were welcommed like the recourry of the loft sheepe, or as you read of They arrive in 30 a louing mother, that runneth with embraces to entertaine her fonne from a long Voyage and England

catch the foules of mortall men, and entangle frailty in the tarriers of horrible abuses, and im-

escape of many dangers. Not long after we understood of our confederats, that returned home in the Barke of Torbar, that they arrived in Penlance in Corne-wall the eleventh of February ; and if any aske after their deliuerance, confidering there were ten Turkes fent to man her, I will tell you that too : the Euent of the next day after they loft vs, as you have heard and that the three Renegadoes had acquainted the other thip-Masters Mate, and the two English in her with Rawlins determination, and that they themselves would be true to them, and affift them in any enterprise : then if the worst came, there were but feuen to fixe : but as it fell out, they had a more easie passage, then turmoile, or man-slaughter. For they made the Tierkes believe, the wind was come faire, and that they were fayling to

Argier, till they came within fight of England, which one of them amongst the rest discovered, faying plainely, that that land was not like Cape Vincent; yes faith he, that was at the Helme, and you will be contented, and goe downe into the hold, and trim the falt oner to wind-ward, whereby the ship may beare full faile, you shall know and see more to morrow : Whereupon fine of them went downevery orderly, the Renegadoes faining themselves alleepe, who presently

flart vp, and with the helpe of the two English, nailed downe the hatches, whereat the principall amongit them much repined, and began to grow into choller and rage, had it not quickly beene ouerpaffed. For one of them stepped to him, and dasht out his braines, and threw him ouer-boord : the rest were brought to Excester, and either to be arraigned, according to the punilhment of deliquents in such a kind, or dit posed of, as the King and Counsell shall thinke meet; and this is the flory of this deliuerance, and end of Iohn Rawlins Voyage. The Acres in this Co. mick Tragedie are most of them aliue; The Tarkes are in prison; the ship is to be seene, and Ramline himfelfe dare juftifie the matter.

The names of the English Renegadoes , which consented, and toyned with the slanes in the reconery of the ship , were these.

R Ichard Clarke, the Gunner, called in Turkish, Infar. George Cooke, Gunners-mate, called in Turkish, Ramedam. William Winter, Carpenter, in Turkish, Musliapha. Iohn Browne, in Turkift, Memme. One Dutch Renegado. Foure Dutch flaves. One French flave. Five Engliftmen and one boy, taken but three dayes before. Nine English flaues which they tooke with them from Argier. In all foure and twenty men and a boy. Which were all fafely landed at Plimmoth, the thirteenth of February, 1621. They faued aliue the fine and forty Turkes and Moores, the Captaine, one Henry Chandler, borne in South-warke, an English Renogado; and fine Turkes more, who are at this prefent in Plimmoth Goale, &c.

CHAP. VIII.

Relations of Africa, taken out of Master GEORGE SANDYS bis larger discourse observed in his lourney, begun Ann. 1610. LIB. 2.

His Voyage from Rhodes to Alexandria, observations there. of Egypt, in generall, and of Nilus.

I have contraeled this Hi-

Hodes is now inhabited by the Turkes and Iewes : those Christians that be being Greeker, and not fuffered after Sun-fet to abide in the Citie: the Suburbs where-of are veterly razed. I have heard that all the Monuments, Statues, an inferiptions belonging to the Knights of the Order, are by the Turkes preferued entire, excepting such as the warres had demolished. Heere the Grand Signior main-40 taineth five Gallies. About this Iland, we expected to have met with Pirats, but

were happily deceived. Now having loft the fight of Rhodes, we faw no land vntill the third night after : in the Euening, doubtfully discourring the Coast of Agypt. Fearing the Lee-shoare, all night we bore out to Sea : the lightning ministring vncomfortable light, intermixed with thunder and tempelts. The next day we entred the Hauen of Alexandria, newly defamed with a number of wracks, which scattered here and there, did miterably testifie the vnsafe protection of that booke or other Harbour. For not past two nights before the Northerne winds beating full vpon the mouth of Authors which the Hauen, with violent Seas droue the fore-most ships from their Anchors, who falling foule were his guide, Ferwe on the reft, funkcall for company, euen two and twenty in number: amongst the rest, that 30 wires from great and washike this, called the Pol Time burstless from great and washike this, called the Pol Time burstless from the policy of the policy guides, ret we write of mens great and warlike ship, called the Red-Lion, but taken the yeere before from the Knights of

But before we proceed any further in particulars, meet it is that something be said of Agypt in generall. The wonderfull fertility of the foile, is rather to bee admired then expressed : in ers & Regions in this works: times past reputed the granary of the world; infomuch as it was not thought possible for the Roin this worke. mans Empire to Subsist, if not affisted by the affluence of Layer. The occasion of thet saying of differeth from Selymus when he had conquered the Country, that, Now he had taken a Farme that would feed his lemoglans. Amongst other commodities which this earth doth yeeld, and are fetcht from that which I bauecilledmy hence by forrainers, Sugar, Flaxe, Rice, all manner of Graine, Linnen-cloth, Hides, Salt, But- 60 targo and Cailia, being now the principall.

Whatfoeuer here is estimable, proceedeth from the munificency of this River; for progresse, out are in Lee and property of all other the most excellent : vnto former ages, though often attempted, (and or others here that by great Potentates) of an undiscouered originall,

CHAP.S.S.I. Egyptian observations of the overflowing of Nilus.

Foure miles below Cairo, it decideth into two maine and nauigable branches; that next the East running into the Mid-land Sca by Damiata (herecofore Pelusium:) the other inclining vnto the Weit, and formerly called Canopus, falleth into the ielfe-fame Sea a little below Roferta, making of the richest portion of the Landa triangular Iland, named Delta, in that it beareth the forme of that letter: the fresh water keeping together, and changing the colour of the Salt, farre further into the Sea, then the shoare from thence can be discerned. Two other branches there be that runne betweene these, but poore in waters; besides divers channels cut by the labour of man, for conuciances in the time of the inundation; which also are no small strengthing to the Country. Of those seven mentioned by Herodotus, and those nine by Ptolomy, these are all that 10 Leither law or could heare of. Nor is it a thing extraordinarie for Rivers to lose their channels, either choaked by themselves, or by the adverse Seas, with beds of Sand, and turned vp gravell refilling their passages. But among it the hidden my steries of Nature, there is none more wonderfull, then is the overflowing of this River; making of a meere Defart (for fuch is Egypt vnwatred by Nilus) the most fruitfull part of the habitable world, little when others are great, and their decrease increasing.

Not tide to lawes of other streames; the Sunne When farihest off, thy streames then poorest runne. Intemperate heaven to temper, midst of heate: Vnder the burning Zone bid to grow great. Then Nile assists the world; left fire should quell The earth : and makes his high-borne waters (well Against the Lions flaming sawes

Inde etiam leges aliarum nefeit aquarum : Nec tumer hybernus quum longe Sole remoto Officiis caret voda fuis, date iuffus iniquo Temperiem colo medijs aftatibus exit. Sub torrente plaga ne terras diffiper ignis Nilus ad ca mundo, contraque accensa leonis Oratumet Lucand, 10.

The earth then burnt with the violent feruour, neuer refreshed with raine (which here falls rarely, and then onely in the Winter) hath helpe from Nilus, most constantly observing his accultomed lealons, beginning to arise with the ariting Sunne on the seventeenth of June; swelling by degrees vntill it mount fometimes foure and twentie cubits, but that the vtter-

This yeare * at Cairo it rife three and twentie. About two miles aboue the Citie, at the end of * Hebeganhis This yeare 'at Carro it the circe and twentie, About two miss about the Contest of the sorting of August they cut the bankes; then when afcended vito his principal of August they cut the bankes; then when afcended vito his principal of the first theory than the first of the sorting of the limit the contest of the sorting of the sortin pall height; before kept in, left that the too timely deluge should destroy the fruites of the earth agains in the ere fit to be reaped. At which the Baffe is himfelfe in person (who giueth the first stroke) ac- haste way be companied with a world of people, rowed in Gallies and Barges of triumpli, and for divers dayes tweene care feating: the Baffa in the Cattle of Michias, an Hand furrounded with Nile (to called, in that and Assessa there the Pillar doth stand, by which they observe the increase of the River) others under Pauhons pitched by the shoare, with barbarous solemnities, and generall reioycings. At their returne they are met by those of the Citie, who bestrew their heads with flowers, as the welcome forerunners of that they long wished. They turned in water following them at the heeles; boats now 40 a while after couring in many places the fuperficies of the land, which there then appeareth as a troubled Lake. Answerable to the increase of the River, is the plentie or scarcitie of the yeare succeeding, bringing with it both earth and water into a fandie and thirstie soile, of it selfe vn-

profitable: fo that it as well manures as moistens, with the fat and pregnant slime which it lea- Pethaps rather neth behind it. Vnto which they owe not their riches onely, but themselves. For the plague crasing your which here oft miferably rageth, vpon the first of the flood doth instantly cease: infomuch as Sunnescenwhen fine hundred die at Carrothe day before, which is nothing rare (for the found keep companie with the ficke, holding death fatall, and to anoid them irreligion) not one doth die the day as it doth at a long them irreligion and the day are a small though incompanie and for irreligion. following. Wherefore no maruell though ignorant and superstitious antiquitie, under the name essewherein 50 of Ofreta adored this Ruser, which affoorded them fo many benefits, and fuch as not apprehended those parts. were thought supernaturall. Thus where couered with water, it is no vnpleasant light to be- A vulgar exwere thought supernaturan. I has where touched with water, it is no supernatural perincing so hold the Townes appearing like little Ilands; the people passing and repassing by boate, and not perincing so hold the Townes appearing like little Ilands; the people passing and repassing by boate, and not feldome swimming : who the leffe they see of their Country, the more is their comfort. About med : as by the midft of September it cealeth to augment; and retiring a moneth after within his proper At insus m Med. bounds gueth way two Husbandrie (the earth wtilled, by throwing the Graine on the mul, bounds gueth way two Husbandrie (the earth wtilled, by throwing the Graine on the mul, and Rice into the water, affoording her first increase) vantil May decreasing, and then in a maranda Rice into the water, affoording her first increase) vantil May decreasing, and then in a maranda Rice into the water, affoording her first increase) vantil May decreasing, and then in a maranda Rice into the water, affoording her first increase water for the second water. To proue that it proceedeth from a natural I caule, this one, though ftrange, yet true experiment will fuffice. Take of the earth of Egypt adioyning to the River, and nies of Paulus

preferue it carefully, that it neither come to be wet nor wasted; weigh it daily, and you that find Mercius the it neither more nor leffe heavie wntil the fewenteenth of lune, at which day it beginneth to grew freeh Conful, it neither more nor lette heatie viril the feuerteenth or line, at which day it beginner to grow $Ba^{\pm}\beta$: E amore ponderous, and augmenteth with the augmentation of the riner, whereby they have an V as a felium, fallible knowledge of the state of the Deluge : proceeding without doubt from the humiditie of and lot w Variet the Aire, which having a recourse through all passible places, and mixing therewith, increaseth an English the same as it increases in moysture. In the tenth and eleventh yeare of Cleopatra, it is by Wri- man

ftory(as o. thers) for bretity: omitting nothing willingly which the Author faw : in other things commonly referring the Reader to M.Sangraupiles,rarher then a history of plaСнар.8.

ters of those times for a certainty affirmed, that the Nilus increased not; which two yeares defect prognofticated the fal of two great Potentates, Cleoparra and Anthony. Many ages before. Callimachus reports, that it did the like for nine yeares together, From the lame cause, no question but that feuen yeares dearth proceeded in the time of Pharao.

It also produceth abundance of Fish, in shape and qualitie much differing from ours: but he realon of the muddy channell, not altogether fauorie nor wholfome.

Palmerrees.

Throughout this Countrey there are no Wines, yet want they none, in that they defire them not. Neither are here any trees to speake of, but such as are planted, and those in Orchards only excepting Palmes, which delight in Delarts; and being naturally theirs, doe grow without limits. Of these they have plenty, pleasing the eye with their goodly formes, and with diversitie of benefits inriching their owners. Of body straight, high, round, and stender (yet visit for buildings) crested about, and by meanes thereof with facilitie ascended. The branches like Sedges. flit on the neather fide, and euer greene; growing enely on the vypermost height, resemble faire plumes of feathers, which they yearely prune, by lopping off the lowest, and at the top of all by bearing a little of the bole. Of these there be male and female, both thrust forth cods (which are full of feeds like knotted ftrings) at the roote of their branches, but the female is onely fruitfull; and not fo, valeffe growing by the male (towards whose varight growth she inclines her crowne) and haue of his feedes commixed with hers; which in the beginning of March they no more faile to doe, then to fow the earth at accustomed feasons. Their Dates doe grow like fingers, and are thereof named; not ripe vitill the fine of December, which begin to cod about the beginning of February. They open the tops of fuch as are fruitlesse, or otherwise perisht; and take from thence the white pith, of old called the braine, which they fell vp and downe: an excellent fallad, not much valike in tafte, but farre better then an Artichoke. Of the branches they make Bed-fleads, Lattices, &c. of the web of the Leanes, Baskets, Mats, Fans, &c. of the outward huske of the Cod, good Cordage; of the inward, Brushes, &c. fuch and such like affoord they yearely without empaire to themselues. This tree they held to be the perfect image of a mana and by the same represented him : First for that it doth not fructifie, but by coiture : next. as hauing a Braine, as it were, in the vppermost part; which once corrupted, as man, even so it perifheth: and laftly, in regard that on the top thereof grow certaine firings, which refemble the haire: the great ends of the branches appearing like hands stretcht forth, and the Dates as fingers. And because the Palme is neuer to be suppressed, but shooteth vp against all opposition, the boughs thereof have been proposed as rewards for such as were either victorious in armes or exercises. Wood then is here but scarce in regard of the quantitie; and yet enough, if their vies for the same be considered. For they eate but little fiesh (fresh Cheese, fowre Milke made solid. Roots, Fruits and Herbs, especially Colocasia, anciently called the Egyptian Beane, though bearing no Beane, but like the leafe of a Colewort, being their principal fullenance, baking their bread in Cakes on the harth, and mingling therewith the feeds of Coriander.) As for cold, they know it not; having sufficient of the refuse of Palmes, Sugar-canes, and the like, to furnish them with Wood oldby fuell, answerable to their necessities. But forrainers that feed as in colder Countries, doe buy their Wood by weight, which is brought in hither by shipping. The Gallions also of Constantine pole, alwaies goe into the Blacke Sea for timber, before they take their voyage for Cairo. Omit I must not the sedgie reeds which grow in the Marishes of Egypt, called formerly Papyri, of which they made paper; and whereof ours made of rags, assumeth that name. They divided it into thin flakes, whereinto it naturally parteth: then laying them on a table, and moiltning them with the gluttinous water of the River, they prest them together, and so dried them in the Sunne. It is now governed by a Baffa who hath his refidence in Cairo, and commandeth as an absolute Soueraigne; vnder whom are fixteene Sanzsacks, and a hundred thousand Spacheis. The reuenues of this little Countrie amounting to three Millions of * Shariffes. The Great Tarke having one stampe with
the Saltam, the (vite. foure hundred thousand disbursed yearely in Sugar and Rice, and sent to Constantinople; the name of Care refidue fent ouer-land with a guard of fixe hundred Souldiers, for feare of the Florenine:) another added where it Million is spent in payes, and in setting forth the Carnan vnto Mecha; the third hee hath 50 is coined of for the supportance of his owne estate, and entertainement of his dependents. But this is little in regard of that which was raifed thereof in the reigne of Auletes, who received feuen Millions goldby two or and a halfe of Crownes; much more supposed to have yeelded to the more promident Ro-

1610.

The Baffas fe-

three Afpers manes. The Bassa now being, and called Mahomet, is a man well striken in yeares, of a sowre and inflexible nature. At his first entrance hee cut off the heads of foure thousand Spackers, that had borne themselues too infolently, and committed many outrages and extortions. Hee sent the great men that bore ouermuch (way vnto Constantinopie; those that refused to go; he cansed to be strangled, wsing the aide of the Arabians (who infilly hated the other) in all his executions. If 60 a robberie be committed, and the theeues escape, such as are appointed to guard those quarters, do fuffer in their flead; infomuch as often they attach poore innocents when they cannot apprehend the guiltie, to deliuer themselves from punishment : boring holes through the condemneds armes, fretcht wide on staues, in which are Candles stucke, that burne downe into the fiesh, and

are led in that manner through the Citie vnto the place of execution. Others are stript of their skinnes, yet line in horrible torment fo long as the Executioners Steele offends not the Nauell. Drunkennesse Drunkennesse is punished with death; and all disorders so sewerely looke into, that I thinke in punished with no other place you shall see to few amongst such a multitude of people. The malice his rigour acath. procured, had caused himselfe to confine himselfe to the Castle for a twelue-month, before our comming to Caire: but his government is fo well approved by the Grand Signior, that to doe him the more honour, he hath given him his daughter in marriage, a childe of foure yeares old. which hath beene folemnized with all possible Ceremonies. One thing more is in him prayleworthy; that hee will hardly fuffer a Christian to turne Mahometan, either out of the dislike Io of his owne Religion, or knowing well that they doe it onely for commoditie and prefer.

Those that now inhabit the Countrey, are for the most part Moores. Turkes there are many, and lewes, which relide onely in Cities. Store of Arabians, and not a few Negroes. Of Chriflians, the native Copies are the most in number : Some Greekes there bee . and a few Arme-

ans.

The Evotian Moores (descended of the Arabians, and understanding each other) are men of The Moores. a meane frature, tawnie of complexion, and spare of bodie, shrill tongued, and nimble footed; naturally industrious, affecting more their profit then their ease, yet know they not how to live of a little, as in nothing riotous. Rather craftie they are then wife; more observant then 20 faithfill, by much more denout then the Turkes in the Mahometan Religion. In Learning they are veterly ignorant. Among it them none are Noble : few admitted to the Souldiery, (nor fuffered in Townes to weare Weapons) not any to Magistracie. In Cities the best of them exercife Merchandize : rich by meanes of their Trafficke with the Indians; yet that decayed fince our East Indian Voyages : infomuch, as spices brought out of the Lenant heretofore, are now with profit brought thicher by our Merchants. In habit they differ little from the Turker, excepting Their apparell; tome of the yonger fort, who weare fide Coates of Linnen (the ancient habit of that Countrey) girt to their wastes, and Towels throwne about their neckes of the same. Divers of the Negroes weare Vests like Surplices. Those of the poorest, long Garments of Hayre, streakt blacke and white; in the winter, fide Coates of Cotten. The Beggers by finging, both get re-30 liefe, and comfort their pouertie; playing withall vpon Drummes which are fashioned like

A number here be afflicted with fore eyes, eyther by the reflecting heate, the falt dust of the The women foyle, or excessive Venerie : for the Pockes is vncredibly frequent amongst them. The women when out of their houles, are wrapt from the crowne of the head to the foot in ample Robes of Linnen, spreading their armes vnderneath to appeare more corpulent : for they thinke it a speciall excellencie to be fat; and most of them are so; so in frequenting the Bannias for certavne dayes together, wherein they vie fuch dyet and frictions, as daily via confirmeth for effectuall, They couer their faces with black Cypreffe bespotted with red. Their vnder garments of lighter fluffes then the Tweib, not differing in fashion. The better fort weare hoopes of Gold and AO Silver about their armes, and aboue their ancles: others of Copper, with Peeces of Covne halfe couering their fore-heads, and plates hung about their neckes, &c. Both men and women doe brand their armes for the loue of each other. Divers of the women have I feene with their chinnes distayned into knots and flowres of blue, made by pricking of the skinne with Needles, and rubbing it ouer with Inke and the Juyce of an herbe, which will neuer weare out againe. They have quicke and easie labour, bearing heretofore often two, and sometimes three at a burthen: those also borne in the eighth moneth huing, rarely if else-where heard of. In the adjoyning Deferts of Saint Macario, a Plant there is, low, leauelesse, browne of colour, branched like Corall, and closed at the top, this in the time of the labour of women, they fet in water in some corner of the roome, which strangely displayeth, procuring (as they generally coniecture) easie deliueries. The Countrey people doe follow Husbandry. They are not long in of dreffing themselues, being onely wrapt in a ruflet Mantle : nor houe the women any better couerture, hiding their faces with beattly clouts, having holes for their eyes; which little is too much to fee, and abstayne from lothing. Ouer their shashes the men weare rounds of shifned ruffet, to defend their braines from their piercing feruour. A people breathes not more fauage and naftie, crusted with dirt, and stinking of smoke, by reason of the * fuell, and their houses * Stereus toxiwhich have no Chimnies. Some of them dwell under beggerly Tents, and those effeemed of nem. the old Inhabitants.

But the Copties are the true Egyptians, retayning the name of Copties that ancient Citie and The Christians Territorie, a litle below, and on that fide the River where once flood Thebes, against the lland called com-60 of the Tenterites. The name ignifieth Privation, so called, for that there Isis cut off a locke of monly and the Tenterities. The name lightheth Prination, to cause 1, but that there all the total a local corruptly her Hayre, and put on funerall Garments for the death of Ofiris. Others will have them to called in regard of their Circumcition. These, as I said, are Christians, notwithstanding they are circumcifed, whereof they now begin to bee ashamed; saying, that in the Countrey they are thereunto compelled by the Moores; and in Cities where secure from violence, they vie it not;

howbeit, doing it rather in that an ancient custome of their Nation (mentioned by Herodotus) then out of Religion. They were infected with that herefie of one nature in Christ, long hefore lacobia (of whom now named, and of whom wee shall speake hereafter) divulged it in

Their Christi-

At this day they professe him to be perfect God and perfect man; yet dare not distinguish his natures, for feare of duiding his person. They baptize not their Children vntill fortie dayes old. Prefently after mid-night they repayre to their Churches, where they remaine well-nigh vnt:ll Sunday at noone; during which time, they neither fit nor kneele, but support themselves voon crutches. The Priest is veiled and vested in Linnen, having two or three Boyes apparelled alike. and fequestred from the rest of the people, to affifthim; for they conferre inferiour Orders vpon Io children. They fing ouer most part of the Pfalms of David at every meeting, with divers parcels of the Old and New Testaments; the latter, as written by Nicomedes: some in the Conticke Language, understood but by few, most in the Moresco. Often both Priest and people coniovned in Sauage noyfes, to our judgements not articulate. The Priest not seldome elevating a red cloth (vnder which, I suppose, was the Sacrament) which they administer in both kinds, and giue it to Infants presently after Baptisme. In their Churches they have the Picture of our Sauiour, and the bleffed Virgin; but not ouer their Altars; nor for any thing I could perceive. doe

In certaine Chefts they preferue the bones and afhes of fuch as have turned Mahometan.and afterward recanted ; for which they have fuffered Martyrdome. At their entrance they kiffe 20 their hands, and lay them vpon one another: the women in grated Galleries separated from the men. Excreame Viction, Prayer for the Dead, and Purgatory, they admit not of. The Romane Church they hold for Hereticall, and reiect all generall Councels, after that of Epheliu. Yet a multitude of late have beene drawne to receive the Popish Religion (especially in Cairo) by the industry of Friers, having had the Romane Liturgie lent them from Rome. together with the Bible, in the Arabecke Language. Of Alexandria hath their Patriarke his name, but his abode is in Cairo. Sixe dayes journey aboue Cairo vp the River, they have a great Citie, called Saiet; where Christ, with his mother, is faid to have made their abode vntill the death of Hered: vnto which, growing old and fickly, they repaire, as defirous to die there : where there is a goodly Church, though fomething ruinous, built by Hellen the mother 30 of Constantine, and consecrated to the bleffed Virgin. They never eate in the day time during the Lent, but on Saturdayes and Sundayes. They weare round Caps, Towels about their neckes, and gownes with wide fleeues of Cloth, and Stuffes leffe ponderous. These line in more subiection then the Moores, by reason of their Religion, and pay yerely a certaine summe for their heads to the Baffa. Ignorunt in the excellences of their ancestors, but retaining their vices. Some of them professe some knowledge' in Magicke, being but Inglers, compared with the for-

* Alexandria.

Patriarke of

Fasting.

mer, by whom fuch miracles were effected. The Lake Mardotis afforded another Hauen vnto the Citie, then that of the Sea more profitable: by reason of the commodities of India, the Arabian Gulph, and vp-land parts of Agppt, brought downe by the conveniency of that passage by Channels now vtterly ruined. And 40 the lame by a narrow cut was ioyned vnto another Lake, farre leffe, and neerer the Sea, which at this day too plentifully furnisheth all Tinkie with Salt-peter. Betweene the lese Lakeand the Citie, there palleth an artificiall channell which ferueth them with water (for they have no wells) in the time of the deluge, conneyed by Conduits into ample Cifterns (now most of them Fennie for want of vie, an occasion of much fickenesse in the summer) and so preserved vntill the fucceeding overflow. For Alexandria is all built vpon vaults, supported with carued pillars one aboue another, and lined with stone; infomuch, as no small proportion thereof lay concealed in earth, confider we either of the Coast or quantity.

Such was this Queene of Cities and Metropolis of Africa: who now hath nothing left her but ruines; and those ill witnesses of his persished beauties: declaring rather, that Townes as well as men, haue their ages and destinies. Onely those wals remaine which were founded(as 19 fomefay) by Ptolomie: one within another, imbatled, & garnished with threescore & eight Turrets ; rather stately then strong, if compared with the moderne. Yet these, by the former descriptions, and ruines without appeare to haue immured but a part of the Citie. After that de-Aroyed by the Saracens, it lay for a long time waste, vntill a Mahometan Priest, pronouncing (as he faid, out of Mahomets prophefies) indulgences to fuch as should re-edifie, inhabite, or contribute money thereunto, within certaine dayes, did in a fhort feafon repeople it. But a latter de-Arruction it received by the Cypriots, French, and Venetians, about the time that Lewis the fourth was enlarged by the Saltans, who furprised the Citie with a marueilous flaughter. But hearing of the approach of the Sultan, (who had raifed a great army for their reliefe) delparing to main- 60 taine it, they fet it on fire, and departed. The Sultan repairing the walls as well as be could, built this Cassle that now stands on the Pharms for the defence of the Hauen; and brought it to the state wherein it remaineth. Sundry Mountaines are raised of the ruines, by Christians not

CHAP. 8.S. 1. Pompeis Pillar. A Vice-Confull, more stately then proud. to be mounted; left they should take too exact a survey of the Citie: in which are often found (especially after a shower) rich stones, and medals engrauen with the figures of their Gods, and men, with fuch perfection of Art; as these now cut, seeme lame to those, and valuely counterfits. On the top of one of them stands a watch-tower, where continual centinell is kept, to gue notice of approaching failes. Of Antiquities there are few remainders : onely Hieroglyhpicall Obeliske of Theban Marble, as hard wel-nigh as Porphir, but of a deeper red, and speckled npicati Outrisacio. Locuson manicie, as natu were arigin as a sepontantion a secreta require persiste alike, called Phores Needle, flanding where once from the Palace of Alexander: and another Phores Needle

lying by, and like it, halfe buried in rubbidge. Without the walls on the South-well fide of the of the fame, all tittle hill flands a Columne of the fame, all of one flone, eightie fixe Palmes high, and Io thiry fixe in compasse, the Palme confifting of nine inches and a quarter, according to the meafure of Genoa, as measured for Zigal Baffa by a Genomes, let vpon a square cube (and which is to be wondered at) not halfe (o large as the foot of the Pillar, called by the Arabians, Hemadeslacor, which is, the Columne of the Arabians. They tell a Fable, how that one of the Ptolomies etected the fame in the furtheil extent of the Hauen, to defend the Citie from Nauall incursions : hauing placed a Magicall glaffe of Steele on the top, of vertue (if vncouered) to fet on fire fuch Thips as failed by. But lubuerted by them, the glaffe loft that power, who in this place re-ere-Red the Columne. But by the Westerne Christians it is called the pillar of Pompey: and is faid to have beene reared by Cafar, as a memoriall of his Pompeian Victory. The Patriarke of A- Pompeis pillare

texendris hath here a house adioyning to a Church, which stands (as they fay) in the place 20 Where Saint Marke was buried, their first Bishop and Marty: who in the dayes of Traism, haled with a rope tied about his neck, vnto the place, called Angeles, was there burned for the testimonie of Chrift, by the idolatrous Pagans. Afterward his bones were removed to Uenice by the Venetions, he being the Saint and Patron of that Citie. There be at this day two Patriarkes, one of the Greek; another of the Circumoifed, the value fall Patriarke of the Coffies and Abaf. Two Patriarks one of the Greek; another of the Circumcyea, the vinuerian Farriarke or the Logiste and 2203- (mill the Pa-lines. The name of the Greeke Patriarke now being, is Critla man of approued vertue and lear-uirke his ning, a friend to the reformed Religion, and opposing the contrary ; saying, that the differences saying. betweene vs and the Greekes, be but shels; but that those are Kernels betweene them and the other. Of whom fomething more shall be spoken hereafter. The buildings now being, are meane and few, erected on the ruines of the former : that part that lieth along the shoare inha-30 bited onely, the reft defolate : the walls almost quadrangular ; on each fide a gate, one opening towards Nilm; another regards Mariotic; the third, the Defarts of Barcha; and the fourth, the Hauen. Inhabited by Moores, Turkes, lewes, Coffies, and Grecions; more in regard of Merchandize. (for Alexandria is a Free Port, both for friend and enemy) then for the conueniency of the place : feated in a Defart, where they have neither Tillage nor Pasturage, except what borders on the Lake; that little, and vnhusbanded; yet keepe they good store of Goats, that have cares hanging downe to the ground, which feed amongst ruines. On the He of Pharm, now a part of the Continent , there stands a Cafile, defending the entrance of the Hauen ; which hath no water but what is brought vpon Camels from the Cifterns of the Citie : this, at our comming in, as is the vie, we faluted with our Ordnance. As many of vs as came alhoare, Cuttomes. 40 were brought to the Cuftome-house, to have our selves and our valeifas searched : where ten in

the hundred is to be paid for what foeuer we have, and that in kind, onely money payes, but one and a halfe; whereof they take an exact account, that thereby they may aime at the value of returned commodities; then paying eleuen in the hundred more, euen for fuch goods as are in property vnaltered. At so high a rate is this free trassique purchased, the Mahumeran here paying as much as the Christian. The Customes are framed by the lewes, paying for the same vnto A connected ing as much as the Christian. The Cultomes are trained by the zone; profile to a Ryall of eight. Wee the Affect for the Baffa twenty thousand * Madeins a day, thirty of them amounts to a Ryall of eight. Wee the Affect for lodged in the house of the French Conful, vnto whose protection all strangers commit themfelues. The Cane lockt vp by the Turker at noones and at nights, for feare that the Franks should suffer or offer any outrage. The Vice-conful keepes a table for Merchants, he himselfe a 30 Magnifice, leffe liberall of his prefence, then industrious to pleasure; yea, rather stately then The Vice-con-

proud; expecting respect, and meriting good will: that was a Prieft, and would be a Cardinall; with the hopes whereof, they say, that he frasteth his ambition. By him we were prouided of a Lanifary for our guard wnto Caire: his hire, fine peeces of gold, befides his owne diet and his mans. with prouision of Powder. For our Asses (not inferiour in this Countrey vnto horses for travell) halfe a Shariffe a peece for our Camels a whole one. At the gate they tooke a Madein a head, for our selues and our Asses, so indifferently doe they prise vs : through which wee could not paffe without a Tefcaria from the Cadee, the principall officer of this Citie.

ð. II.

His lourney to Cairo, the things remarkeable there, and by the way.

The fecond of February in the afternoone, we undertooke our lourney : passing

A Defart.

QO2

Matter of Christall

through a Defart, producing here and there a few vnhusbanded Palmes, Capers, and a weed called Kall by the Arabs. This they vie for fuel, and then collecting the affect which crusht together like a stone, they sell them in great quantity to the Venetions; who equally mixing the same with the stones that are brought them from Pania by the River of Ticmum, made thereof their Christaline Glasses. On the left hand we left divers ruinous build dings : one faid to have been the Royall manfion of Cleopatra. Beyond which, Bucharis, once a little, but ancient Citie, now onely shewing her foundations, where grow many Palmes which fustaine the wretched people that live thereabout in beggerly Cottages; where on a Rock stands a Tower, affoording light by night to the failer, the place being full of danger. Anon we paffed by a guard of Souldiers, there placed for the fecuring of that passage, paying a Madein for eutrie head. Seuen or eight miles beyond, we ferried ouer a Creeke of the fea. On the other fide stands a handfome Cane, not long fince built by a Moore of Cairo for the reliefe of Trauellers, sontaianimg a quadrangle within, and arched underneath. Vinder one of these wee reposed; the stones our beds, our fardels the bolsters. In such like places they unloade their merchandize, refreshing. themselves and their Camels with proussion brought with them, secured from theeves and violence. Giving a trifle for Oyle, about midnight we departed, having here met with good flore of company, fuch as allowed travelling with their matches light, and prepared to receive allowfers. The Moores to keepe themselves awake, would tell one tale a hundred times over. By the way againe we should have paid Caphar, but the benefit of the night excused vs. Travelling along the Sea shoare, and at length a little inclining on the right hand, before day we entred Rosetta, repairing to a Cane belonging to the Frances. Our best entertainement an vnder-roome, musty. without light, and the vnwholfome floore to lie vpon.

about some three miles beneath dischargeth it selfe into the Sea. Hauing here (as at Damiata) his entrance croffed with a barre of Sand, changing according to the changes of winds, and bear ting of the Surges, infomuch, that the lerbies that paffe ouer, are made without keeles, having flat and round bottoms. A Pilot of the Towne there founding all the day long, by whose directions they enter, and that so close vnto him, that one leapes out of that boate into the other to receine pilotage, and returneth swimming. The lerbies that can passe ouer this barre, may, if well Or rather in directed, proceed vnto Cairo, Rofetta (called Rasid by the Egyptians) perhaps derived of Ros. the Hungarian, which fignifieth Rice in the Tw kifb Tongue, and so named for the abundance that it vetereth (they here shealing monethly three hundred quarters) was built by the slave of an Egyptian Caliph. The houses are all of Brick, not old, yet feeming ancient; flat-rooft, as generally all bee in these hotter Countries (for the Moores vie much to lie on the tops of their houses) ietting over 40 aloft like the poopes of thips, to fliadow the fireers that are but narrow, from the Summes reflecti-

ons. Not small, yet of small defence; being destitute of walls, and other fortifications. I thinke

This Citie stands upon the principall brance of the Nile, (called heretofore (anophu) which

no place under heaven is better furnished with Graine, Flesh, Fish, Sugar, fruites, Rootes, &c. Raw hides are here a principall commoditie from hence transported into Italy.

Breadthof

Cutofthe

Letting in of the River drawne vp by Buffolo.s.

Elough is their gin, In Gods

The next day but one that followed, we imbarked for Cairo in a Ierbie, vnto which fenen water men belonged, which we hired for twelue Dollars. This Arme of the Nile is as broad at Rofetta. 25 Thames about Tilbury, streightning by little and little : and then in many places fo shallow, that oft we had much adoe to free our felues from the flats that had ingaged vs : the water being euer thicke, as if lately troubled; and patting along with a mute and vnspeedy current. Ten miles aboue Rosetta, is that cut of the River which runnes to Alexandria. By the way wee often bought as much Fish for fixe pence, as would have fatisfied twentie. On each fide of the River flands many Townes, but of no great effeeme, for the most part opposite, built partly of Brick and partly of Mud; many of the poorer houses appearing like Bee-hiues, seated on little Hills throwne vp by the labour of man, to preserve them and their Cattell in the time of the ouerflow. Vpon the bankes all along are infinite numbers of deepe and spacious Vaults, into which they doe let the Riuer, drawing up the water into higher Cifterns, with wheeles let round with Pitchers, and turned about by Buffoloes: from whence it runnes along little trenches, made upon the ridges of banks, and fo is conneied into their feuerall grounds, the Countrie lying all in a levell. The winds blew feldome fauourable, infomuch as the poore Moores for most part 60 of the way were enforced to hale up the boate, often wading about their middles to deliver it from the (hallowes. At every enforcing of themselves (as in all their labours) crying Elough, perswaded that God is neare them when they name him, the diueil farre off, and all impediments leffened. Of thele it is ftrange to fee fuch a number of broken perfons, fo being my reason

Fooles, foolifhly admired. Contempt of Christians. CHAP.8.\$.3. of their strong labour and weake food. The pleasant walkes which we had on the shoare, made

our lingring passage leffe tedious. The fruitfull foyle possetting vs with wonder; and early maturitie of things, there then as forward as with vs in line, who beginne to reape in the ending of The Sugar Canes ferued our hands for states, and featled our tastes with their Liquor, By the

way we met with Troupes of Horismen, appointed to cleere those passages from Theeues, whereof there are many, who also rob by water in little Frigats. Which made our carefull Janizer (for fo are most in their vindertaken charges) assisted by two other (to whom wee gaue their passage, who otherwise would have taken it) nightly to keepe watch by turnes, discharging

To their Harquebuses in the evening, and hanging out kindled matches, to terrife the Theeves, and teffise their vigilancie. Fine dayes now almost spent since we first imbarked, an houre before Sun-fet we fix led by the Southerne angle of Delta: where the River deuideth into another branch, not much inferiour vnto this, the East bounds of that Iland (which whether of Afa or Africa is yet to be decided) entring the Sea (2s hath beene faid before) below Damiana. Proceeding up the river, shout twinight we arrived at Bolac the Port Town to Cairo, and not two miles Bolac. diffant : where every Franke at his landing is to pay a Dollar. Leaving our carriages in the Boat, within night we hired fixe Affes with their drivers for the value of fixe pence, to conduct vs with Care, where by an Englift Merchant we were kindly entertayned, who fed and houled vs Bountle of an

This Citie is feated on the East fide of the River, at the foote of the rockie mountaine Mss. chan a Care. 20 the : winding therewith, and reprefenting the forme of a crefcent, firetching South and North Garre defribed with the adioyning Suburbs, fine Italian miles; in breadth scarce one and a halfe where it is at at the broadest: the walker (if it be walled) rather seeming to belong voto private houses then otherwise. Yet is the Citie of a marueilous strength, as appeared by that three dayes battell carried through it by Seigman, and maintained by a poore remainder of the Mamalucky. For the firets are narrow, and the houses high-built, all of itone well nigh to the top, at the end almost of each a Gate, which shut (as nightly they are) make enery street as defensine as a Castle. The houses more beautifull without, then commodious within, being ill contriued with comberfome passages. Yet are the roofes high pitcht, and the uppermost high thy open in the middest to let in the comfortable aire. Flat, and plaistred aboue : the walls surmounting their roofes , comomnly of fingle bricks (as are many of the walls of the vppermoft flories) which ruined aboue, monly of tingle briess (seare many or the waits of the properties) of tingle briess (seare many or to waits of the as fund alofe affoord a confided fperfacle, and may be comported to a Groue of Bourille to fuch as fund alofe affoord a confided fperfacle, and may be comported to a Groue of Bourille to find the first footes and Keyes be of wood; expression of the footest factors and the footest factors are the footest factors and the footest factors and the footest factors are the footest factors and the footest factors and the footest factors are the factors and the footest factors are the footest factors and the footest factors are the footest factors and the footest fa uen vnto doores that are plated with Iron. But the private buildings are not worth the mentio-

ning, if compared to the publike, of which the Mofques exceed in magnificencie : the flones of many being curioully carued without, supported with Pillars of Marble, adorned with what Art can deuile, and their Religion tollerate. Yet differ they in forme from those of Constantinople; some being square with open roofes in the middle of a huge proportion, the couered Circle Tarraft aboue : others ftretching out in length, and many fitted vnto the place where they fland. One built (and that the greatest) by Gehor, called Gemith Hashare: hee beeing named 40 Halbere by the Caliph, which fignifieth Noble. Of thefe in this Citie there is reported to bee

fuch a number, as paffes beliefe, to that I lift not name it.

Adiopning wato them are lodgings for Santons, (which are fooles, and mad men) of whom Foolesfoolidswe have spoken already. When one of them dye, they carry his body about in procession with by admired, and great rejoycings, whose soule they suppose to bee rapt into Paradise. Heere bee also divers mad Saint. goodly Hospitals, both for building, revenue, and attendance.

Nex: to these in beautie are the Great mens Serraglies. By which if a Christian ride they will Contempt of pull him from his Affe (for they prohibit ve Horfes as not worthy to belitide them) with indignation and contunely. The firetests are vapaued, and exceeding dirtie after a shower (for

there it rayneth fonetimes in the winter contrary to the received opinion, and then moil tubied to plagues) ouer which many beames are laid athwart on the tops of houses, and couered with Mats to shelter them from the Sunne. The like couerture there is betweene two high Mofques in the principall street of the Citie, vnder which when the Balha passeth, or others of qualitie, they shoot vp arrowes, which sticke aboue in abundance. The occasion of that cuitome I know not. During our abode in the Citie fell out the Feath of their little Byram, when in their Little Byram, private houses they flaughter a number of fheepe; which cut in gobbets, they distribute vnto their flaues and poorer fort of people, befmearing the docres with their bloud : perhaps in imitation of the Paffcourr.

The Nile (a mile diffant) in the time of the inundation, by fundry channels flowes into the 60 Citie. When these channels grow emptie, or the water corrupted, they have it brought them thence-forth from the River by Camels. For although they have many Wels. yet is the water bad, and good for no other vie then to coole the streets, or to cleanse their houles. In the heart of the Towne flands a spacious Caue, which they call the Befessan; in which (as in these at Constantinople) are fold all kind of Wares of the finer fort, felling old things by the call, ot, Who

omes more? imitating therein the Proctions, or imitated by them, Three principall gates there be to this Citie, Beke Naufre, or the Gate of Victorie, opening towards the Radde Sea : Bab Zueila leading to Nilwa, and the old Towne (betweene thele the chiefe ftreet of the Citie doch. extend) and Bebel Futuli, or the Port of Triumph, on the North of the Citie, and opening to the Lake called Elbykie. Three fides thereof are inclosed with goodly buildings, having calleries of pleafure which lettie ouer, furlayried vpon Pillars, Qu the other lide (now a heape of ruines). Stately palace, Rood the stately Pallace of Dultibe, Wife to the Sultan Caithem: in which were doores and Jaumes of Juorie; the walles and pauements checkered with discoloured Marble, Columnes of Porphir, Alablaster, and Serpentine : the seelings shourished with Gold and Azure, and inor Porphir, Alabraner, and Server which being cut downe, almost equals a stone in hardnesse. In a word, the magnificencie was fuch as could be denifed or effected by a womans curiofitie. and the Purse of a Monarch, levelled with the ground by Sehmus, the stones and ornaments thereof were coursed vnto Constantinople. :

The Lake both square and large, is but onely a Lake when the Riner over-floweth, iowned

The Lake.

thereunto by a channell, where the Macres (rowed up and downe in Barges, shaded with Damaskes, and Stuffes of India) accustome to solace themselves in the evening. The water fallen. Fine Harnests yet the place rather changeth then lofeth his delightfulness: affoording the profit of fine Harn ueffs in a yeare, together with the pleafure, frequented much in the coole of the day. I cannot, forget the injurie received in this place, and withall the inflice. Abused by a beggerly Moore, (for fuch onely will) who then but feemed to begin his knauery, wee were glad to flye wato another for fuccour, feeming a man of good fort; and by kiffing of his-garment, infinuated into his farour: who rebuked him for the wrong hee did vs. When croffing vs againe, ere wee had gone Baleknauerie, farre, he vied vs farre worse then before : we offering to returne to the other, which he fearing. &good inflict, interpoled; doing vs much villary to the merriment of the beholders, efteeming of Christians as of Dogges and Infidels. At length we got by, and againe complayned. Hee in a maruellous rage made his flanes to purfue him; who caught him, fript him, and beat him with Rods all along the Levell, calling vs to bee lookers on, and fo conneyed him to the place of correction; Admirable fer- where by all likelihood he had a hundred blowes on the feet to feafon his pattimes. Beyond this tility of fruits, are a number of stragling houses, extending well-nigh to Bolas, which is the Key vnto Caro, a large Tow ne, and firetching along it the River; in fathion of building, in some part not much inferiour to the other. Within and without the Citie are a number of delicate Orchards, watered as they doe their fields, in which grow variety of excellent fruits; as Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranates, Apples of Paradile, Sicamor figs, and others, (whole barkes they bore full of holes the trees being as great as the greatest Oakes, the fruit no growing amongst the leanes, but out of the Plantans fupbole and branches) Dates, Almonds, Callia fiftela, (leaned I ke an Alh, the fruit hanging downe poied supplanlike Saulages) Locust, (flat, and of the forme of a Cycle) Galls growing vpon Tamarix, Apples no bigger then Berries, Plantains that have a broad flaggie leafe, growing in clusters, and inaped like Cucumers, the rind-like a Pefcod, folid within, without stones or kernels, to the taste

Emblemeof good Magi.

Cameleons described at exceeding delicious, (this the Mahimerans fay was the forbidden fruit; which beeing eaten by our first Parents, and their nakednesse discoursed vito them, they made them Aprons of the leaues thereof) and many more, not knowne by name, nor feene by mee elfe-where : fome bearing fruit all the years, and almost all of them their leaves. To these adde those whole fields of Palmes (and yet no prejudice to the vider-growing Corne) of all others most delightfull. In the aforefaid Orchards there are great numbers of Cameleons; yet not eafily found in that neere to the colour of that whereon they fit. A creature about the bignesse of an ordinary Lizard. His head vapropotionably bigge, his eyes great, and mooning without the writhing of his necke which is inflexable, his backe crooked, his skinne spotted with little tumors. leffe eminent as neerer the belly; his tayle flender and long : on each foot he hath fine fingers, three on the out-fide, and two on the infide flow of pace, but fwiftly extending his tongue, of a maruellous length for the proportion of his body, wherewith he preyes vpon Flyes, the top thereof being hollowed by Nature for that purpose. So that deceived they be who thinke that they eat 50 nothing, but onely line vpon Ayre; though furely Aire is their principall fuftenance. For those that have kept them for a whole yeare together, could never perceive that they fed vpon any thing elfe, and might obterue their bellies to fivell, after they had exhausted the Ayre, and clofed their iawes; which they expanse against the rayes of the Sunne, Of colour greene, and of a duskey yellow : brighter and whiter towards the belly, yet spotted with blue, white, and red. They change not into all colours, as reported : laid vpon greene : the greene predominates; vpon yellow the yellow : but hid vpon blue, or red, or white, the greene retayneth his hue notwithstanding; onely the other spots receive a more orient lustre: laid vpon black, they looke black, yet not without a mixture of greene. All of them in all places are not coloured alike. They are 60 faid to beare a deadly hatred to the Serpent, infomuch as when they espie them basking in the Sunne, or in the shade, they will climbe to the ouer-hanging branches, and let downe from their mouthes a thred, like to that of a Spinsters, having at the end a little round drop, which shineth like Quickfilter, that falling on their heads doth deftroy them : and what is more to be

admired, if the boughes hang not fo ouer, that the thred may perpendicularly defcend, with their former feet they will fo direct it, that it shall fall directly.

Aloft, and neere the top of the Mountaine, against the South end of the Citie, stands the Caffle (once the stately Mansion of the Mamaluck Sultans, and destroyed by Selymus) after- The Caffle. ded ynto by one way onely, and that hewen out of the Rocke; which rifing leifurely with eafie freepes and spacious diffiances, (though of a great height) may bee on horse-backe without difficultie mounted. From the top, the Citie by reason of the Palmes dispersed throughout, anneareth most beautifull; the Whole Countrey below lying open to the view. The Castle so great, Marbles mist T that it feemeth a Citie of it felfesimmured with high wals, divided into partitions, and entred by usls. To doores of Iron; wherein are many spacious Courts, in times past the places of exercise. The ancient buildings all ruinated, doe onely shew that they have beene sumptuous, there beeing many Pillars of folid Marble yet standing, of so huge a proportion, that how they came thither many Finals of rolls and the state hath the Baffa his Refidence, wherein the Dimen is kept on Sundayes, Mundayes, and Tueldayes the Chamfer as Aduocates, preferring the Suites of their

Chenes. Fortie lanizaries he hath of his G ard, artyred like those at Confiantinople, the reft employed about the Countrey, for the most part are not the sonnes of Christians, yet faithfull who fuch as are under their charges, whom should they betray, they not onely lose their lines. but also the pay which is due to their Posteritie. Such is this Citie; the fairest in Twice, ver differing from what it was, as from a body beeing young and healthfull, doth the same growne 20 old and wasted with Dileases.

Now Catro; this great Citie is inhabited by Moores, Turkes, Negroes, lewes, Copses, Greekes. and Armenians : who are here the poorest, and enery-where the honestelt; labouring painfully; Armenians and living loberly. Those that are not subject to the Timbe, if taken in warres, are freed from bondage, who are, live freely, and pay no Tribute of Children as doe other Christians. This bondage who are, the nerry, and pay bomet. They once were vader the Patriarke of Conftantonople : but about the Herefie of Eury ches they fell from his gouernment, and communion with the Grecians, whom they deteff about all other rebaptizing fuch as convert to their Sect. They believe that there is but one hature in Christ, not by a commission of the dimne with the humane, as Empeher taught, but by a 30 conjunction, even as the foule is joyned to the body. They deny the Reall Presence in the Sacrament, and administer it as the Copies doe : with whom they agree also, concerning Purgatorie, and not praying for the dead : as with the Greeter, that the Holy Ghoft proceedeth onely from the Father, and that the dead neither doe nor shall feele loy or torment vntill the day of

Their Patriarke hath his being at Tiberis in Perfia: in which Countrey they live wealthilv and in good estimation. There are three hundred Bishops of that Nation; the Priests marry not twice : eat flesh but five times a yeare; and then lest the people should thinke it a sinne to eate; in regard of their abstinence. They erre that write, that the people abstaine from all meates prohibited by the Mojaicall Law; for Hogges fiesh they cate where they can, without 40 offence, to the Mahometans. They observe the Lene most strickly, yet eate fiesh vpon Fridayes betweene Eafter and Whitfontide. As for Images they adore them not. Here they have their Affemblies in obscure Chambers. Comming in (which was on a) Sunday in the after-moone) we found one fitting in the middeft of the Congregation, in habit not differing from the rest, reading on a Bible in the Chaldean Tongue. Anon the Bishop entred in a Hood and Vest of blacke, with a staffe in his hand, to which they attributed much holinesse. First, hee prayed, and then sung certaine Pfalmes, assisted by two or three; after all fung joyntly, at interims praying to themselves : resembling the Turker in the positure of their bodies, and often proftrations; the Bishop excepted; who erecting his hands stoot all the while with his face to the Altar. The Seruice ended, one after another doe 50 kiffe his hand, and beftow their Almes, he laying the other on their heads, and bleffing them. Laftly, preicribeth facceeding Fafts and Festivals. Where is to be noted, that they faft vpon the

Day of the Natinitie of our Saniour. Here also is a Monasterie of Greeke Coloieros, belonging unto the capitall Monastery of Saint Greeke Katherine of Mount Sina, from Cairo fome eight dayes journey over the Deferts; faid to bee the daughter of King Cofta, a King of Coprus, who in the time of Maxentine connected many vnto Christ. Tortured on a Wheele, and finally beheaded at Alexandria (where two goodly Pillars of Theban Marble (though halfe swallowed with ruines) preserve the memory of the place,) the was conceyed (as they affirme) by an Angell, and buried in this Mountaine. It hath three tops of a maruellous height : that on the Wett-fide of old called Mount Horeb, where God appeared to Mofes in a bush, fruitfull in pastorage; farre lower, and shadowed when the Sunne arifeth by the middlemost, that whereon God gaue the Law vnto Mofes. The Monastery stands at the foot of the mountaine, refembling a Castle, with an Iron doore; wherein they shew the Tombe of the Saint much visited by Pilgrims, from whence the top by fourteene thouland steps of stone is ascended, where stands a ruined Chappell. A plentifull Spring descendeth from thence

and watering the Valley below, is againe drunke up by the thirftie fand. This strong Monaferie is to enterrayne all Pilgrims, (for there is no other place of entertainment) having an annual Resense of fixtie thousand Dollars from Christian Princes. Of which foundation fixe and twentie other depend, dispersed through divers Countries. They give also daily Almes to the Arabs, to be the better fecured from out-rage. Yet will they not fuffer them to enter, but let it downe from the Battlements. Their Orchard aboundeth with excellent Fruites :amonoft which Apples, rare in these Countries, transferred from Damasco. They are neither abiest to Pope, nor Patriarke, but have a Superintendent of their owne, at this prefent in Caire. Thefa here made vs a collation, where I could not but observe their gulling in of Wine with a deare felicitie, whereof they have their provision from Candy.

During our abode here, a Garuan went foorth with much folemnitiv, to meet and relieue the great Caruan in their returns from Meche , which confideth of many thoulands of Pilgrims that travell yearely thither in denotion and for Merchandize; every one with his bandroll in his hand, and their Camels gallantly trickt (the Alcoran carried vpon one, in a precious case coursed ouer with needle-worke, and laid on a rich pillow, inuironed with a number of their chanting Priefts) guarded by divers companies of Souldiers, and certaine field peeces. Porty easie dayes Journey it is diftant from hence : divided by a wildernesse of fand, that lyeth in drifts. and dangerously mooneth with the wind , through which they are guided in many places by

farres, as thips in the Ocean.

Then Caro, no Citie can be more populous, nor better ferued with all forts of promison. Here hatch they egges by artificiall heat in infinite numbers ; the manner as feene thus briefly. In a narrow entry on each fide flood two rowes of Ouens, one over another. On the floores of the lower they lay the offals of flaxe; over those mats, and vpon them their egges, at least fixe thouland in an Ouen. The floores of the vpper Quens were as rooffes to the vnder , grated ouer like Kilnes, onely having tunnels in the middle, with covers vnto them. These gratings are coursed with Mats, on them three inches thicke lyeth the dry and pulperated dung of Camels, Buffoloes, &c. At the hither and farther fides of those vpper Quens are Trenches of Lome 12 handfull deepe, and two handfuls broad. In these they burne of the foresaid dung, which gineth a smothering heat without visible fire. Vnder the mouthes of the vpper Ouens are conuevances for imoke, hauing round roofes, and wents at the top to flut and to open. Thus lye the Egges in the lower Ouens for the space of eight dayes, turned daily, and carefully looks to that the heate be but moderate. Then cull they the bad from the good, by that time diftinguilhable (holding them betweene a Lampe and the Eye) which are two parts of three for the most part. Two dayes after they put out the fire, and conuey by the passage in the middle, the one halfe into the upper Quens : then shutting all close, they let them alone for ten dayes longer, at which time they become disclosed in an instant. This they practise from the beginning of lanuary vntill the midft of lune, the Egges being then most fit for that purpole; neither are they (as reported) prejudiced by Thunder : yet thefe declare that imitated Nature will never be equalled, all of them being in some part defective or monstrous.

Most of the Inhabitants of Corre consist of Merchants and Artificers; yet the Merchants frequent no forrein Marts. All of a Trade keepe their shops in one place, which they shut about the houre of fine, and folace themselves for the rest of the day, Cookes excepted, who keepe theirs open till late in the evening. For few, but such as have great Families dresse meate in their houses, which the men dee buy ready drest; the women too fine fingerd to meddle with houswifry, who ride abroad ypon pleafure on eafie-going Affes, and tye their Husbands to the benepolence that is due; which if neglected, they will complaine to the Magistrate, and procure a Divorcement. Many practitioners here are in Phylick, invited thereunto by the store of Simples brought hither, and here growing, an Art wherein the Egyptians have excelled from the

beginning.

Rue whole-

A kind of Rue is here much in request, wherewith they perfume themselves in the mornings, not onely as a prefernative against infection, but esteeming it prevalent against hurtfull spirits. So the Barbarians of old accustomed to doe with the Roots of wild Galingal. There are in this Citie, and have beene of long, a fort of people that doe get their livings by the shewing of feats Fears by birds with Birds and Beafts, exceeding therein all fuch as have beene famous among it vs. I have heard a Rauen to speake so perfectly, as it harh amazed me. They wie both their throats and tongues in vetering of founds, which other Birds doe not, and therefore more fit for that purpole. Sealiger the Father, reports of one that was kept in a Monasterie heard by him; which, when hungry, would call vpon Comade, the Cooke, fo plainly, as often miltaken for a man. I have feene them make both Dogges and Goats to fet their foure feet on a little turned Pillar of wood, about a foot high, and no broader at the end then the palme of a hand, climing from one to two, fet on 60 the top of one another, and so to the third and fourth; and there turne about as often as their Masters would bid them. They carry also dancing Camels about, taught when young, by setting them on a hot hearth, and playing all the while on an Instrument : the poore beast through

the extremity of heat lifting up his feet one after another. This practife they for certaine moneths together, to that at length when seuer he heareth the fidule, he will fall a dancing. After they will teach to doe fuch tricks, as if posselled with reason: to whom Bankes his horse would have proved but a Zany.

The time of our departure proroged, we rode to Matarea, fine miles North-east of the Citim Matarea. By the way we faw land cast vpon the earth, to moderate the fertility. Here they say, that our Saujour, and the bleffed Virgin, with Iofeph, reposed themselves, as they fled from the fury of Hered, when ohpressed with thirst, a Fountaine foorthwith burt forth at their feet to refresh them. We faw a Well enuironed with a poore mud wall, the water drawne up by Buffolos in. Salaricus 100%; them. We faw a Well enuironed with a poore mud wall, the water drawne vp by Ballous the 10-ca.6. dares to roa little Cifterne; from whence it ran into a lauer of Marble within a small Chappell, by the 10-ca.6. dares Moores (in contempt of Christians) spitefully defiled. In the wall there is a little concaue lined faith himselie with fiveet wood (diminished by affectors of relicks) and smoked with incense in the fole, a secting it) this flone of Porphyr, whereon (they fay) she did fet our Saujour. Of so many thousand Wells (a from Sunday flone of Porphyr, whereon (they tay) me did let our samour. Or so many thomans were among another building most miraculous) this onely afforderh guifable waters, and that so excellent, that the Monday mor-Balla refuleth the river to drinke thereof, and drinkes of no other; and when they ceafie for any more they will time to exhaust it, it sendeth foorth of it selfe so plens sulla streame, as able to turne an ouer-fall not beurin Mill. Paffing through the Chappell, it watereth a plea fant Orchard; in a corner whereof there the drawing flandeth an ouer-growne fig-tree, which opened (as they report) to receive our Savicur and his vooi water, mother, then hardly ecaping the purfuers; clofing against all the purfue was part; then against though wind dipling, as now it remainst. A large hole there is through one of the fulse of the large. dividing, as now it remaineth. A large hole there is through one of the fides of the leaning 20 bulke : this (they fay) no baftard can thred, but thall sticke tast by the middle. The tree is all to be-hackt for the wood thereof, reputed of fourraigne vertue. But I abuse my time, and proto be-nackt for the wood inclosure adjoying, they shewed vs a plant of Balme, the whole remainder of that flore which this Orchard produced, destroyed by the Turkes, or enny of the Icwes, as by them reported, being transported out of Lury, in the dayes of Herod the Great, by the commandement of Antonius, at the fuite of Chepaira : but others fay, brought hither out of

The Pyramides viewed, SRHENT and other antiquities. Journey from Cairoto Gaza.

Arabia Felix, at the cost of a Suracen Sultan

Day or two after, wee croffed the Nilm. Three miles beyond on the left hand left Strange, If the we the place whereupon Good-friday the armes and legs of a number of men ap- dealing beas peare fretched foorth of the earth, to the aftonishment of the multitude. This I true as the haue heard confirmed by Christians, Mahometans, and Iemes, as feene vpon their

feuerall faiths. An importury perhaps contriued by the water-men, who fetching them from 40 the Mummes; (whereof there are an vnconfirmeable number) and keeping the mystery in Mummes their families, doe ticke them over night in the fand, obtaining thereby the yeer ly Ferrying oner of many thousand of pallengers. Three or foure miles further, on the right hand, and in fight, athwart the Plaine, there extendeth a causey supported with Arches fine Furlongs long, ten paces high, and five in breadth, of fmooth and figured frone; built by the builder of the Pyramides, for a passage ouer the soft and unsupporting earth with weighty carriages. Now having ridden through a goodly Plaine, some twelve miles over (in that place the whole breadth

of Egypt) we came to the foot of the Libyan Defarts. Full West of the Citie, close voon these Desarts, aloft on a Rockie Levell adjoyning to the Valley, stands those three Pyramides (the barbarous Monuments of prodigality and vante- Pyramides, 50 glory) fo vinuerfally celebrated. The name is derived from a flame of fire, in regard of their shape; broad below, and sharpe aboue, like a pointed Diamond. By such the ancient did exprefle the originall of things, and that formelefle forme-taking substance. For as a Pyramis beginning at a point, and the principall height, by little and little dilateth into all parts : fo Nature proceeding from one vindeuidable Fountaine (euen God the Soueraigne Effence) receiueth divertitie of formes, effused into feuerall kinds and multitudes of figures; vniting all in the fupreame head from whence all excellencies iffue.

Most manifest it is, that these, as the rest, were the Regall Sepulchers of the Egyptians. The greatest of the three, and chiefe of the Worlds seuen wonders, being square at the bottome, is 60 jupposed to take up eight Acres of ground. Every square being three hundred single paces in length, the square at the top consisting of three stones onely, yet large enough for three score to stand upon : ascended by two hundred and fiftie fine steps, each step aboue three feet high, of a breadth proportionable. No ftone so little throughout the whole, as to be drawne by our Carriages, yet were these hewen out of the Troian mountaynes, farre off in Arabia, so called of the Fftff 3

Captine Treisns, brought by Monelans into Egyps, and there afterward planted. A wonder how connerved hither : how fo mounted, a greater. I wentle yeares it was a building , by three hun- 10 dred threctore and fixe thousand men continually wrought you or who onely in Radillies, Garlicke, and Onions, are faid to have confirmed one thousand and eight hundred Talens. By thefe and the like Insuentions exhausted they their Treafure, and employed the people, for free left fuch infinite wealth should corrupt their Successors, and dangerous idlenesse beget in the Subject a defire of innouation.

Yet this hath beene too great a morfell for Time to denoure; having flood, as may be probably conjectured, about three thousand and two hundred yeares; and now rather old then ruinous: vet the North-side most worne, by reason of the humiditie of the Northerne wind, which here is the moistest. The top at length we ascended with many pauses and much difficultie, from whence with delighted eyes we beheld that fourraigne of streames, and most excellent of Coun- 40 tries. Southward and neare hand the Mammes: a-farre off divers huge Pyramides; each of which, were this way, might supply the repute of a wonder. During a great part of the day it casteth no shadow on the Earth, but is at once illuminated on all sides. Descending againe, on the Eastfide, below, from each corner equally distant, we approched the entrance, seeming heretofore to North moift. have beene closed up, or so intended, both by the place it selfe, as appeareth by the following Picture, and conveyances within.

908

Into this our lanizaries discharged their Harquebules, lest some should have skulke within to have done vs a mischiefe, and guarded the mouth whilst wee entred, for feare of the wilde Arabs. To take the better footing we put off our shooes, and most of our apparell: foretold of the heate within, not inferiour to a Stone. Our guide (a Moore) went foremost : every one of of ws with our lights in our hands. A most dreadfull passage, and no lesse cumbersomes not about a ward in breadth, and foure feet in height : each stone contayning that meature. So that always flooping, and sometimes creeping, by reason of the rubbidge, we descended (not by staires, but as downe the steepe of a hill) a hundred feet : where the place for a little circuit' enlarged; and the fearefull descent continued, which, they say, none ever durft attempt, any farther. Saue that a Baffa of Caire, curious to fearch into the fecrets thereof, canfed divers condemned persons toundertake the performance; well flored with lights and other prouision; and that some of them ascended againe well-nigh thirtie miles off in the Deserts. A Fable deuised onely to beget wonder. But others haue written, that at the bottome there is a spacious Pit eightie and sixe Cubits' deepe, filled at the ouer-flow by concealed Conduits: in the middest a little Hand, and on that 60 a Tombe contayning the bodie of Cheeps, a King of Egyps, and the builder of this Pyramu: which with the truth hath a greater affinitie. For fince I have beene told by one out of his owne experience, that in the vttermost depth there is a large square place (though without water) into which he was led by another entry opening to the South, knowne but vnto few (that now



CHAP. 8.5.3. Their exall and curious building of the Pyramides.

open being flut by some order and came up at this place. A turning on the right hand leadeth into a little roome, which by reason of the noysome favour, and vnease passage were refused to enter, Clambering ouer the mouth of the aforefaid Dungeon, we ascended as youn the bow of 40 an Arch, the way no larger then the former, about a hundred and twentie feet. Here we passed through a long entry which led directly forward; fo low, that it tooke even from vs that vncafe benefit of flooping. Which brought vs into a little roome with a compaft roofe, more cafe benefit of flooping. Which brought vs into a little roome with a compaft roofe, more long then broad, of polithed Marble, whose granel-like finell, halfe full of rubbidge forced our quicke returne. Climing also ouer this entrance, we ascended as before, about an hundred and twentie feet higher. This entrie being of an exceeding height, yet no broader from fide to fide then a man may fathome, benched on each fide, and clofed about with admirable Architecture, the Marble fo great, and fo cumningly loyned, as had it beene hewen through the lining Rocke. At the top we entred into a goodly Chamber, twentie foot wide, and fortie in length, the roofe of a maruellou beight; and the frones fo great, that eight floores it, eight roofes it, eight flagge the ends, and fixteene the fides, all of well wrought Thehen Marble. Athwart the roome at the vpper end there standeth a Tombe, vncouered, empty, and all of one stone; brest high, at the ypper end there manactin a name, ynounced, simply, and and an only of fewer feet in length, not foure in breath, and founding like a Bell. In this, no doubt, lay fewer feet in length, not foure in breath, and founding like a bell. In this, no doubt, lay fewer feet in length, not onely out of a vaine bodie of the Builder. They erecking fach coffly Monuments, not onely out of a vaine oftentation : but beeing of opinion, that after the diffolution of the flesh the soule should furnine; and when thirtie fixe thousand yeares were expired, againe bee loyned wnto the felfefame bodie, restored vnto his former condition : gathered in their conceits from Astronomicall demonstrations. Against one end of the Tombe, and close to the wall, there openeth a Pit with a long and narrow mouth, which leadeth into an under Chamber. In the walles on each fide of the vpper roome, there are two holes, one opposite to another; their ends not discernable, nor 60 bigge enough to be crept into : footie within; and made, as they fay, by a flame of fire which darted through it. This is all that this huge maffe contayneth within his darkefome entrailes:

Herodotus reports that King Cheeps became so poore by the building thereof, that hee was The Cheeps compelled to profittute his Daughter, charging her to take whatfoeuer fhee could get : who af-

feeting her particular glorie, of her feuerall Customers demanded seuerall stones, with which the erected the fecond Pyramis; farre lesse then the former, smoothe without, and not to be entred. The third which standeth on the higher ground, is very small if compared with the other. vet faith both Herodotsu and Strabo, greater in beautie, and of no leffe cost: beeing all built of Touch-stone: difficult to be wrought, and brought from the farthest Athiopian mountaines: but furely not for yet intended they to have covered it with Thehan Marble; whereof a great quantitie lyeth by it. Made by Mycerinus the Sonne of Cheops; some say, by a Curtizan of Naucretis, called Dorica by Sappho the Poetrelle, beloued of her Brother Caracus, who frambe with Wines, oft fayled hither from Lefbes. Others name Rhodope, another of that Trade; at with white, our with the fige the writer of Fables; who obtayning her libertie dwelt in this to Citie: where fuch in some for were reputed noble. But that she should get by whoring such a mafie of Treasure, is vncredible.

Some tell a Storie, how that one day washing herselfe, an Eagle snatcht away her shoot and bearing it to Memphis, let it fall from on high into the lap of the King. Who aftonished with the accident, & admiring the forme, forth-with made a learch for the owner throughout all his Kingdome. Found in Naucretie, and brought vnto him, he made her his Queene, and after her Anguine. Found the Monument. She lived in the dayes of Amalia.

Not farre off from these the Carlon and oth stand, vnto the mouth confiding of the natural

Not rare on from these una services would be the following of the purpose of the following of the purpose advanced by Nature, the refer of huge flat flones laid thereon, wrought altogether into the form of an elibipies woman, and adored heretofore by the 20 Countrey pooplegas nurally ligherty. Nater this, they by, lieth buried the body of Ampli. Of flape, leffe monthrough the 12 Planter report: who affarmeth, the head to be an hundred and two feet in companie, when the whole is but fixtie foothigh, the face is something disfigured by Time, or indignation of the Manes, detecting Images. The fore-faid Author (cogether with others) doe callet Salmax. The vyper part of a Sphons refembled a Maide, and the lower a Lion; whereby the Egyptians defigured the increase of the River, (and consequently of their riches) then rifing when the Sunne is in Leo and Vargo. This but from the shoulders vpward furmounteth the ground, though Plon give it a belly, which I know not how to reconcile vnto furmounteen the ground, though rion give to word, which above the now now to reconcile who the truth, while the fam doe couer the remainder. By a 58pm; the Eppitans in their Hierotlyphickes prefented an Harlot, having an amiable and alluring face plus withfull the tyrannie, 20 and rapacitie of a Lion; exercised over the poore heart-broken, and voluntarily perishing

The Images of these they also erected before the entrances of their Temples; declaring that fecrets of Philosophy, and facred Mysterie, should be folded in Enigmaticall expressions, separated from the understanding of the prophane multitude.

Fine miles South-east of these, and two West of the River, towards which inclineth this Fine mice south-eart of these and we were in a man, sown are which income this brow of the mountaine, shoot the Regall Citie of Memphis: the strength and glory of old English, built by Ogdos, and called Memphis, by the name of his Daughter; compressed (as they tame) by Nilas, in the likenesse of a buil. In this was the Temple of Nilas, in the likenesse of a buil. In this was the Temple of Nilas, in the likenesse of a buil. with Ofiris) as Ofiris with Nilus, Bacchus, Apollo, &c.

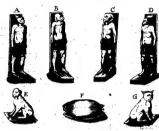
But why spend I time about that that is not ? The very ruines now almost ruinated, yet " fome few impressions are left, and divers throwne downe, Statues of monstrous resemblances, a scarce sufficient testimonie to shew to the curious seeker, that there it had beene.

This hath made some erromoully affirme old Memphis to have beene the same with new Cain re: new in respect of the other. But those that haue both seene and writ of the former, report it to have flood three Schoenes about the South Angle of Delta, (each Schoene contaying fine miles at the least, and sometimes seuen and a halfe, differing according to their seuerall cuflomes) which South-angle is diffant but barely foure miles from Caire. Befides, these Pyramides appertaining vnto Memphis, affirmed to have flood fine miles North-weft of that Citie. standing directly West, and full twelve from this. But the most pregnant proofe hereofare 10 the Mummes, (lying in a place where many generations have had their Sepultures) not farre about Memphis, neere the brow of the Libyan Defart, and freightning of the Mountaines, from Cairo wel-nigh twenty miles. Nor likely it is that they would fo farre carry their dead, having as convenient a place adjoyning to the Cities.

These we had purposed to have seene, but the chargeable goard, and seare of the Arabs, there then folemnizing their festival, being besides to have laine out al night, made vs content our selus with what we had heard; liauing before feene divers of the embalmed bodies, and fome broken vp, to be bought for Dollars a peece at the Citie. In that place are some indifferent great, and a number of little Pyramides, with Tombes of feuerall fashions: many ruinared, as many violated by the Moores and Arabians, who make a profit of the dead, and infringe the priviledge 60 of Sepulchers. These were the graves of the ancient Lappians, from the first inhabiting of that Country; coueting to be there interred, as the place supposed to containe the body of Ofris. Vinder euery one, or wherefoeuer lies stones not naturall to the place, by remoouing the same, descents are discovered like the narrow mouths of Wells (having holes in each side of the walls

to descend by, yet so troublesome, that many refuse to goe downe, that come thither of purpose) fore well-night en fathoms deepe, leading intolong vaules (belonging, as should feeme, to par-ticular families) hewe out of the Rocke, with Pillars of the fame. Betweene every Arch the corfes lie ranckt one by another, shrowded in a number of folds of linnen; swathled with bands of the fame: the brefts of disert being finished with Hieroglyphicall Characters. Within their belies are painted papers, and their Gods inclosed in little Models of stone or mettall, some of the shape of men, in coat-armours, with the heads of Sheepe, Hawkes, Dogs, &c. others of Cats, Beetles, Monkies, and fuch like. Of these I brought away diuers with mee, such in fimilitude.

CHAP. 8.5.3.



A. This with the bead of a Monkie or Babon Should feeme by what is faid before, to have beene wer-Shipped by these of Thebais.
B. Anubis, whereof Virgil,

> The Monfter-Gods, Anubis barking, buckle With Neptune, Venus, Pallas.

Omnigenumq; deum monfira,& latrator Andin. Contra Neptunum & Venerem, contrac; Minerus, Tela teneint. Eu.S.

Some fay, he mas the eldest source of Olicis, being signred with the bead of a dogge, in that he game a dagge for his Ensure. Others, that under this shape they adored Mercuric, in regard of the saga-cisis of that creature. The Dogge throughout Segyet was uninersally morshipped, out especially by

40 C. Thefe of Sait dad principally worship the steepe, it should seeme in this forme.

D. This I consessure (how ever unlike) hash the head of a Hawke, being generally worshipped by the

Repyptians, under which forms they prefented Ofitis.

L. I know not what to make of it (for the original is greatly defaced) unlesse it be a Lyon; under which (hape they adored Ifis.

F. Not fo mach at the Beetle, but received Dinine Honours : and why? fee Plutat. in Ilis and Ofiris,

G. The Cat all generally adored : they bonewing such creatures for that their vanquish and run-away Gods tooke on them such shapes to escape the furie of pursuing Typhon.

so The Linnen pulled off (in colour, and like in fubftance to the inward filme betweene the Barke and the bole, long dried, and brittle) the body appeareth folid, vncorrupt, and perfect in all his dimensions : whereof the musculous parts are browne of colour, some blacke, hard as stone-pitch, and hath in Phylicke an operation not volike, though more Soueraigne. In the preparing of thefe, to keepe them from putrifaction, they drew out the braines at the notirils with an inftrument of iron, replenishing the same with preservative spices. Then cutting up the belly with an Libiopian Stone, and extracting the bowels, they clenfed the infide with wine, and stuffing the same with a composition of Cassia, Myrrhe, and other odours, closed it againe. The like the poorer fort of people effected with Bitumen (as the infide of their skuls and bellies yet teffifie) fetcht from the lake of Afthalises in Imy. So did they with the inyce of Cedars; which by the

60 extreame bitterneffe, and ficcative faculty, not onely forthwith subdued the cause of interior corruption, but hath to this day (a continuance of aboue three thousand yeeres) preserved them vncorrupted. Such is the differing nature of that tree, procuring life as it were to the dead, and death to the living. This done, they wrapt the body with linnen in multitudes of folds, besmeared with Gum, in manner of seare-cloth, Their ceremonies (which were many) person-

med, they layd the corps in a boate, to be wafted over Acherufia, a lake on the South of the Cirie by one onely whom they called Charon, which gaue to Orphess the insention of his infernall Ferri-man: About this lake stood the shady Temple of Heeme, with the Ports of Constmand Oblimon, separated by barres of brasse, the original of like fables. When landed on the other file, the body was brought before certaine ludges, to whom if commend of an endlifie, they, deprived it of buriall; if otherwise, they suffered it to be interred as aforesaid. So supprisons were they in shefe houles of death, to carefull to preferue their carkaffes, Forfomuch as the foule knowing it felfe by durine inffinct immortall, doth defire that the body (her beloued common on) might inioy (as farre foorth as may be) the like felicitie : gining , by erecting fuch lottie Pyramides and those dues of funerall, all possible eternity. Neither was the losse of this less to

feared, then the obtaining coueted.

Returning by the way that we came, and having repast the Nilw, we inclined on the right hand to fee the raines of the old Citie adiopning to the South of Cairo, called formerly Babylon, of certaine Babylonians then fuffered to inhabite by the ancient Egyptian Kings; who builta Caffle in the felfe fame place where this now standeth, described before, which was lone after the Garrison Towne of one of the three Legions, fet to defend this Countrey in the time of the Romanes, and anciently gaue the name of Babylon vnto this Citie below, now called Mifrailee.

tich by the Arabians, faid to have beene built by Omar the fuccessor vnto Mahomes; but surely, rather reedified by him then founded, having had in it fuch flore of Christian Churches as reftified by their ruines. We past by a mighty Cisterne closed within a Tower, and standing upon an an in-let of the Riser, built as they heare fay, at the charge of the Iswes, to appeale the anger of the King, incenfed by them against the innocent Christians; who by the removing of a Montaine (the taske imposed upon their faith) converted him unto their Religion, and his displeafure vpon their acculers. This ferueth the Cattle with water running along an aquadost borne vpon three hundred Arches. The ruines of the Citie are great, so were the buildings, amongst which, many of Christian Monasteries and Temples, one lately (the last that stood) throwne by this Bassa (as they say) for that it hindred his prospect: If so, he surely would not have giuen leave vnto the Patriarke, to rebuild it ; for which he was spitefully spoken of by the Moores, as a suspected fauourer of the Christian Religion, who subverted forthwith what he had begun. Whereupon the worthy Cerill made a Voyage vnto Constantinople, to procure the Grand Signi- 100 ers Commandement for the support of his purpose, when by the Gwels there, not altogether, with his will, he was chosen their Patriarch, but within a short space displanted (as the manner is) by the bribery of another, he returned vato Care. Befixes, here is a little Chappell dedicated to our Lady, underneath it a grott, in which it is hid that she hid her selfe, when purfued by Hered. Much frequented it is by the Christians, as is the Tombe of Nafifa (here being)

The few inhabitants that here be are Greekes and Armemons : Here we faw certaine great Serraglias, exceeding high, and propt up by buttreffes. Thefe they call the Granaries of lolob. wherin he hoarded corne in the yeer of plenty against the succeding famine. In all there be festen, three franding and imployed to the felte same vie the other ruined. From thence up the River for twenty miles space, there is nothing but raines: thus with the day we ended our Progresse.

Vpon the fourth of March we departed from Caire, in the habites of Pilgrims, foure of vs English, conforted with three Italians, of whom one was a Priest, and another a Physician. For our felues we hired three Camels with their keepers; two to carry vs, and the third for our prouifion. The price we shall know at Geza, vpon the dividing of the great Carvan answerable to the fucceffe of the journey. We also hired a Copie for halfe a Dollor a day, to be our interpreter. and to attend on vs. Our prouision for so long a Voyage we bore along with vs , viz. Biscot. Rice, Raifins, Figs, Dates, Almonds, Oliues, Oyle, Sherbets, &c. buying Pewter, Braffe, and fuch like implements, as if to fet up house-keeping. Our water we carried in Goat skins. Wee rid in shallow Cradles (which we bought also) two on a Camell, harboured aboue, and conered rid in hanow Chaute (Winch we fought and) two on a Camen, instronce about, and powered with linnen, nove sexceeding wreake; 1 not 6 to the people of these Country's, who six crosses, edge with a naturall failcity. That night we pitched by Hanjis, Some fourteene miles from the Citie. In the evening came the Captuale, a Turky, well mounted, and attended on, Here the Citic. In the evening came the capaning, a sweet, we study the next day following, for the gathering together of the Camon; paying four Madeins a Camell vato them of the Village. Their as (those elfewhere) doe nightly guard vs. making good whatformer is stolne. Euer and anon one crying Walbad, is answered, Elongh by another (ioyntly fignifying one onely God) which passing about the Carnan, doth affure them that all is in fafety. Amongst vs were divers Iswih women : in the extremity of their age vndertaking fo wearifome a journey, onely to die at Israfalem, bearing along with them the bones of their Parents, Husbands, Children, and Kinsfolke; as they doe from all other parts 69 where they can conceniently. The Merchants brought with them many Negros; not the worft of their Merchandizes. These they buy of their Parents, some thirty dayes journey about, and on the West side of the River. As the wealth of others consists in multitudes of cattell; so theirs in the multitude of their children, whom they part from with as little pation; never after to

See Les.

Vnnaturall

be feene of heard of regarding more the price then condition of their flavery. These are defcended of Chus, the Sonne of curfid Chan; as are all of that complexion. Not to by reason of chans Corfe their Seed, nor heat of the Climate; Ner of the Seyla, as some have supposed; for neither haply, continuing still will other Races in than Soyle proque black, nor that Race in other Soyles grow to better com-

will other faces in the 1839 by Parket of New yors 6 brown the Posteritie of Char.

Black collection but rather from the Carte of New yors 6 brown the Posteritie of Char.

Black collection but rather from the Carte of New yors 6 brown the next, mouning pit.

Black collection but refer to the next mouning pit.

Black collection but refer to the next mouning pit. ched an Balbelt, which is in the Land of Collen. Paying two Madeines for a Camell, at midnight wedeparted from thence. Our Companions had their Cradles flrucke downe through thenesligence of the Camellers, which accident cast wy behind the Caruan. In danger to have beene surprized by the Pealants, we were by a Spable that followed . delivered from that mischiefe. About nine in the forenoone, we purched by Catera, where we payed foure Madeines.

Here about, but negres the Nile, there is a certaine Tree, called Alchan, by the Arabs, the Theree All leanes thereof being dryed and reduced into powder, doe dye a reddilla yellow. There is yeare room ly frent of this through the Turkifo Empire, to the value of fourelcore thouland Sultanies. The women with it doe dwe their haire and nayles, some of them their hands and fert; and not ac few, the most of their bodies tempered onely with Gamme, and laid on in the Bannia, that its may penetrate the deeper. The Christians of Bossa, Valachia, and Russia, doe viert as well as the Mahametans. Trees also here be that doe bring forth Cottens. The next morning before day, we removed and came by nine of the clocke to Salbia, where we over-tooke the reft of the Salbia 20 Caruan all Christians of those Countries riding vpon Mules, and Affes. Who had procured leaue to fet forward a day before; defirous to arruse by Palme Sunday at Ierufalem, (this Carnan. flaving ten dayes longer then accustomed, because of certaine principall Merchants) but they dust not by themselves venture over the mayne Delerts : which all this while wee had trented along and now were so pulle through.

A listle beneath is the Lake Sirbonis, called by the old Egiptions, the place of Tiphons expiration, now Bayeras, dividing Egypt from Siria. A place to luch as knew it not, in the fectimes. full of vnfufpected danger. Then two bundred furlangs long, being but narrow, and bordered. on each fide with hils of fand, which borne into the water by the winds to thickned the lame, as nor by the eye to bee diffinguished from the part of the Continent; by meaner whereof whole Armies have beene deuoured. For the lands neete hand feening firme, a good way ent-tred flid farther of, and left no way of returning, but with a lingring crueltie swallowed the ingaged: whereupon it was called Barathram. Now but a little Lake and waxing he daily : the pallige long fince choaked vp which it had into the Sea. Close to this standerh the Mountaine Cuffins (no other then a huge mole of fand) famous for the Temple of Inpiter, and Sepulchee of Pompey, there oblicurely buried by the pietic of a private Souldier, ypon whom hee is made by

Lucan, to bellow this Epitaph:

Here the Great Pompey lyes, fo Fortune pleas'd 40 To inftile this stone whom Casars selfewould have Interr'd, before he should have mife a Graue.

Hic fires eft magnus, placet boc Fortuna sepulchrum Dicere Pempei: quo condi maluit illum Quam perra caruiff. Socci-

P : 1660

Who loft his head not fatre from thence by the treatherie and commandement of the yngrate full Ptolomie. His Tombe was sumptuously re-edified by the Emperour Adrian. North hereof Ives I diames, betweene Arabia, and the Sea extending to Indea.

The Subaffee of Salna innited himfelfe to our Tent, who feeding on fuch prouision as we had, would in conclution have fed vpon vs; had not our commandement (which flood vs in foure

who is the contrained that the popular is an order commensuration when the contrained by from the Ball of Gaire, and the famour of the Captaine, by friencase of our Phylician, protected visotherwile; right or wrong had bit but a filly plea to the garage concretefied armed youth power. We focus were all the Friendry that were in the confusion, we heard how he had ferned others, and retoyced not a little in being thus fortified against family family the whole Captained. The committee of the following the confusion of the contraining now affectible of a thousand Hories, Mules and Alies; a significant hintered Camels's deficience. Thefe are the ships of Arabia, their Seas are the Deferts. A Creature created for burthen, Sixe hundred weight is his ordinary load; yet will be carrie a thouland. When in lading or valading he lyes on his belly, and will rife (as it is faid) when laden proportionably to his fire night, nor fuffer more to be laid on him. Foure dayes together hee will well trauell without water, for a necofficie fourceme : in his often belchings thrusting vp a Bladder, wherewith hee moysteneth his mouth and throat, when in a lourney they cramme them with Barley dough. They are, as fome fay, the onely that ingender backward. Their paces flow, and intollerable hard, beeing 60 withall valure of foot, where neuer folittle flippery or vaeuen. They are not made to amend

their paces when wearie, with blowes; but are encouraged by Songs, and the going before of their Keepers. A beaft gentle and tractable, but in the time of his Venery : then, as is remembring his former hard whate, he will bite his Keeper, throw him downe and kicke him : fortie dayes continuing in that farie, and then returning to his former meeknesse. About their neckes

they hang certaine Charmes included in Leather, and writ by their Dernifes, to defend them from milchances, and the poylon of ill eyes. Here we paid fine Madeines for a Camell.

· Hauing with two dayes referefreshed them, now to begin the world of their lourney on the tenth of March We entred the mayne Deferts, a part of Arabiapetrea: io called of Petrea, the principall Citie, now Rasbalalab. On the North and West it borders on Syria and Egypt, South ward on Arabia Folix and the Red Sea; and on the East it hath Arabia the Defert : a barren and desolate Countrey, bearing neither Graffe nor Trees , faue onely here and there a few Palmes which will not forfake these forfaken places. That little that growes on the Earth, is wild Hysope, whereupon they doe pasture their Camels, a Creature content with little, whose Milke and fielh is their principall inftenance. They have no water that is fweet, all being a meere Will ro dernesse of fand. The winds having rayled high Mountaynes, which lye in Dritts, according to the quarters from whence they blow.

About mid-night (the Souldiers beeing in the head of the Caruan) these Arabs affayled our Affault of wild Rere. The clamour was great, and the Paffengers, together with their Leaders, fled from their Camels. I and my companion imagining the noise to bee onely an encouragement vnto one another, were left alone; yet preferued from violence. They carryed away with them diners Mules and Affes laden with Drugges, and abandoned by their Owners , not daring to flay too long, nor cumber themselves with too much luggage, for feare of the Souldiers. These are defcended of Ifmael, called alfo Sarracens of Sarra, which fignifieth a Defert, and faten, to miles bit. And not onely of the place, but of the manner of their lives, for Sarrack imports as much as a Thiefe, as now, being given from the beginning vnto Theft and Rapine. They dwell in Tents, which they remote like walking Cities, for opportunite of prey, and benefit of pathurge. They acknowledge no Soueraigne, not worth the conquering, nor can they bee conquered, retyring to places impatible for Armies, by realon of the rolling finds and penuric of all things. A Nation from the beginning vnmixed with others, boafting of their Nobilitie, & at this day hating all Mechanicall Sciences. They hang about the skirts of the habitable Countries; and having robbed, retyre with a maruellous celeritie. Those that are not detected persons, frequent the neighbouring Villages for protision, and trafficke without molefation, they not daring to intreat them euilly. They are of meane statures, raw-boned, tawnie, having feminine voyces, of a fwift and noyfeleffe pace, behind you ere aware of them. Their Religion Mabs- metanifme, glorying in that that the Importor was thir Countriman: their Language extending as farre as that Religion extendeth. They ride on swift Horses (not misse-shapen, though leane) and patient of labour. They feed them twice a day with the milke of Camels, nor are they co fleemed of, if not of fufficient freed to over-take an Offridge. Of those there are flore in the Deferts. They keep in flockers, and oft affrighted the franger Paffinger with their fearfull flueces, and oft affrighted the franger Paffinger with their fearfull flueces, appearing after off like a troupe of Horfemen. Their bodies are too heatier to be imported with their wings, which 'delieft for flight, do ferue them one to to make the more speedily. They are the simplest of Fowles, and Symbols of folly. What they find, they swallow, without delight, even flones and Iron. When they have laid their Egges, not leffe great then the bullet of a Culurin (whereof there are great numbers to be fold in Caire) they leave them, and vamindfull where, fit on those they next meet with. The Arab, catch the young ones, nuning apace as foone as disclosed; and when fatted, doe eate them, so doe they some part of the Dromedaries, old, and fell their skinnes with the feathers upon them. They ride also on Dromedaries, like in shape, but lesse then a Camell, of a jumping gate, and incredible speed. They will carrie a man (yet vnfit for burthen) a hundred miles a day; living without water, and with little food fatiffied. If one of these Arabians undertake your conduct, he will performe it faithfully, neyther will any of the Nation molest you. They will leade you by voknowne nearer wayes, and farther in foure dayes, then you can trauell by Caruan in fourteene. Their Weapons are Bowes, Darts, Stings, and long lauelings headed like Partifans. As the Turkes fit croffe-legged, fo doe they on their heeles, differing little in habit from the Ruftick Egyptians.

Frandes vietatis,

About breake of day we pitched by two Wels of brackish water, called the Wels of Duedar. Hither followed the Subaffee of Salbeia, with the Iewes which we left behind, who would not trauell the day before, in that it was their Sabbath. Their Superstition had put them to much trouble and charge; as of late at Tunis it did to some paine. For a fort of them being to imbarke for Salonica, the wind comming faire on the Saturday, and the Master then hoyfing fayles, loth rewarded with to infringe their Law, and as loth to lose the benefit of that passage, to coozen their consciences, they hyred certayne Ianizaries to force them abourd, who tooke their money, made a ieft of beating them in earnest. At three of the clocke wee departed from thence, and an houre before mid-night pitched by the Cassle of Casie, about which there is nothing vegetiue, but a few folitary Palmes. The water bad, infomuch that that which the Cap- 60 taine drinkes is brought from Tina, a Sea-bordering Towne, and twelve miles diffant. Threefcore Souldiers lye here in Garrison. We paid a piece of Gold for every Camell, and halfea Dollar a piece for Horses, Mules and Asses, to the Captaine, besides, sing Madeines a Camell to the Arabs. It feemeth strange to me, how these Merchants can get by their Wares so far fetcht, and travelling through fuch a number of expences.

The thirteenth spent in paying of Caphar, on the fourteenth of March by five of the clocke we departed, andrefted about noone by the Wells of Slaues. Hither followed the Gouernour of Catie, accompanied with twenty horse, and pitched his tentbesides vs. The reason why her came with fo flight a Conduct, through a pallage fo dangerous (for there, not long before, a Carring of three hundred Camels had beene borne away by the Arabs) was for that he was in fee with the chiefe of them, who vpon the payment of a certaine taxe, fecured both goods and paffengers. Of these there were divers in the company. Before midnight we dislodged, and by fixe the next morning, we pitched by another Well of brackish water, called the Wel of the mother of Affar. In the afternoone we departed. As we went , one would have thought the Sea

ther of explain. In the arternoone we oppose the property of the gliftering Nire. Nitre. And no doubt, but much of these Desarts haue in times past beene Sea, manifested by the faltnesse of the foile, and shels that lie on the fand in infinite numbers. The next morning by fine of the clocke, we came to Ariffa, a small Castle, entironed with a few houses: the Garrison Africa confifting of a hundred Souldiers. This place is fomething better then Defart, two miles remoued from the Sea, and bleft with good water. Here we paid two Madeins for a Camell, and halfe as much for our Affes ; two of them for the most part rated vnto one of the other. On the feuenteenth of March, we dislodged betimes in the morning, refting about moone by the Wels of Feare; the earth here looking greene, yet waste; and vnhusbanded. In the evening we departed. Haumy paffed in the night by the Caitle Haniones, by the breake of day they followed vs Haniones:

to gather their Caphar; being three Madeins vpon every Camell. The Coun rey from that 20 place pleafant; and indifferent fruitfull. By feuen of the clocke, we pitched clote vnder the Citie of Gaza. And here we will leave him till our Aim opportunity doth remarks a returning now to the more Southerly and Westerly parts of Africa, passing from Nilus to Niger. Onely in the

way, we will with our Author touch at Males an African Iland, and with his eyes observe the

è. IIII.

Arrivall at Malta, and observations there.

Ow out of fight of Candie, the Winds both flacke and contrary, we were forced to beare Northward of our course, vntill we came within view of Zant, where our Mafter purposed to put in (fince we could not shorten our way) but anon we difcouered five failes making towards vs; and imagining them to be men of warre, made

all things readie for defence. Butto our better comfort, they prooued all English, and bound for Fine English England; with whom we conforted to furnish the ship with fresh water, and other provisions: this.

they having supplied our necessities.

they haumg tipplied our necetities.

So on the fector of fune being Sunday, we entred the Hauen that lies on the Eafl fide of the Citie of Patria; which we faluted with eighteene peeces of Ordnance, but we were not fuffered to come into the Citie (though every lift phad a neat Patent to flew, that those places from whence they came weier free from the infection) nor infered to depart, when the wind blew faire; which was within a day or two after. For the Gallies of the Religion were then fetting forth, to make some attempt vpon Barbarie. The reason thereof, left being taken by the Pyrats, or touching vpon occafiorac Timoli, Tunis, or Argire, their defignes might be by compulsion, or voluntarily reuesled : nor would they fuffer any Frigat of their owne, for feare of furprifall, to goe out of the Hauen, vntill many dayes after that the Gallies were departed. But because the English were so strong (a great ship of Holland putting also in to seeke company) and that they incented to make no more Ports: On the fixt of lune, they were licenced to fet faile, the Ma-flers having the night before, in their feterall long-boats, attended their returne of the great Ma-

comed him home with one and twenty peeces of Ordnance. But no intreaty could get me abroad, choosing rather to vndergoe all hazards and hardnesse whatfoeuer, then fo long a Voyage by fea, to my nature fo irkefome. And to was I left alone on a naked promontory right against the Citie remote from the concourse of people, without prouision, and not knowing how to dispose of my felse. At length a little boat made towards me, rowed by an officer appointed to attend on strangers that had not practicke, left others by com-

fter (who had beene abroad in his Gallie to view a Fort that then was in building) and wel-

ming into their company, should receive the infection; who carried me to the hollow hanging of a rocke, where I was for that night to take vp my lodging; and the day following to be con-ueied by him who the Lazaneta, there to remaine for thirty or forty dayes before I could be admitted into the Citie. But behold, an accident, which I rather thought at the first to ha se been Curioficie of a vision, then (as I found it) reall. My guardian being departed to fetch me fome vichule, lack a muting along, and muting on my present condition, a Postacco arriveth at the place. Our of which

Ggggg

there stept two olde women; the one made mee doubt whether shee were so or no, shee drew Green mothers, her face into so many formes, and with such anticke gestures stared vpon me. These two did Gregmoners, busides other spread a Terkie Carpet on the rocke, and on that a table-cloth, which they furnished with varietie of the choycest viands. Anon, another arrived, which set a Gallant ashoare with his two Amarolaes, attired like Nymphs, with Lutes in their hands, full of disport and forcery. For little would they faffer him to eate, but what he received with his mouth from their fingers. Sometimes the one would play on the Lute, whill the other fang, and laid his head in her lane their false eyes looking upon him, as their hearts were troubled with passions. The attending Hags had no fmall pare in the Comedie, administring matter of myrth with their ridiculone moppings. Who indeed (as I after heard) were their mothers borne in Greece, and by them to brought hither to trade amongst the vamarried fraternitie. At length, the French Captaine for fuch he was, and of much regard) came and intreated me to take a part of their banquet; which my stomacke perswaded me to accept of. He willed them to make much of the Forestier : but they were not to be taught entertainment, and grew fo familiar, as was to neither of our likings. But both he and they, in pittie of my hard lodging, did offer to bring me into the Citie by night (an offence, that if knowne, is punished by death) and backe againe in the morning. Whilest they were vrging me thereunto, my guardian returned; with him a Maltefe, whole father was Impudence of an English man, he made acquainted there with, did by all meanes dehort them. At length (the Captaine having promifed to labour by admittance into the Citie) they departed. When a good way from shoare, the Curtizans stript themselves, and leapt into the Sea, where they violated all the prescriptions of modestie. But the Captain the next morning was not vinmindfull of his promife, foliciting the Great Mafter in my behalfe, as he fate in Counfell; who with the affent of the great Croffes, granted me Pratticke. So I came into the Citie, and was kindly enterrained in the house of the foresaid Maltese, where for three weekes space, with much con-

as common as themickies,

Malta doth lie in the Lybian Sea, right betweene Tripolis of Barbaris and the South-east and gle of Siculia: diftant an hundred fourescore and ten miles from the one, and threescore from the other; containing also threescore miles in circuit, called formerly Melita, of the abundance of honey. A Countrey altogether Champion, being no other then a rock couered ouer with earth but two feet deepe where the deepest; having few trees, but such as beare fruit; whereof of all forts plentitully furnished, to that their wood they have from Sicilia, yet there is a kind of great Thiftle, which together with Cow-dung ferues the Countrey people for fuell, who need not much in a Clime so exceeding hot; hotter by much then any other which is seated in the fame parallell, yet sometimes temperated by the comfortable winds, to which it lies open. Riuers here are none, but fundry fountaines. The foile produceth no graine but Barley, bread made of it, and Oliues, is the Villagers ordinary diet : and with the ftraw they fuftaine their Cattell. Commin-feed, Annis-feed, and honey, they have here in abundance, whereof they make Merchandize, and an indifferent quantity of Cotten-wooll; but that the best of all other. The inhabitants die more with age then dileafes, and heretofore were reputed fortunate for their excellencie in Arts and curious Weauings. They were at first a Colonie of the Phanicians, who ex-ercising Merchandize as farre as the great Ocean, betooke themselves to this Iland; and by the commoditie of the Hauen, attained too much riches and honour (who yet retaine some print of the Punicke Language, yet in that they now differ not much from the Morefee) and built in the middest thereof the Citie of Melita (now called old Malia) giving or taking a name from the Iland, Now whether it came into the hands of Spaine with the Kingdome of Sietha, or won from the Moores by their fwords, (probable both by their Language, and that it belongeth to Africa) I am ignorant : but by Charles the fifth it was ginen to the Knights of the

This order of Knight-hood received their denomination from Ioho the charitable Patriarch of Alexandria, though vowed to Saint lobn Baptist as their Patron. Their first feat was the Hospitall of Saint Isbs in Irrigalem (wherepoon they were called Knight-hopitallers) built by one Gerrard, at fact time as the Holy land became famous by the fueccessful expeditions of the Christians; who drew divers worthy persons into that societie, approved by Pope Galasius the second. They by the allowance of Honorius the second, wore garments of blacke, signed with a white croffe. Raymond, the first Master of the Order, did amplifie their Canons; inftiling himfelte, The poor framt of Christ, and Guardian of the Hofpitalin Ierufalem. In euery Countrey throughout Christendome they had Hofpitals, and Reuenues aff gned them, with contributions procured by Pope Innocent the second. They were tied by their vowes to entertaine all Pilgrims with fingular humanitie; to fafeguard their puffages from theeues and incurfions, and valiantly to facrifice their lines in defence of that Countrey. But the Christians being 60 driven out of Syria, the Knights had the Rhodes affigned them by the Greeke Emperour, (others fay, by Clement the fifth) which they won from the Twike, and loft agains as aforelaid; retiring from thence vnto Malta. There are of them here feuen Alberges or Seminaries, one of France in generall, one of Amerne, one of Pronince, one of Caffile, one of Aragon, one of Italie, one of

Almany: and an eight there was of England, vintill by Henry she Elglith diffolioid, with white Luftice. I know not. Yet is there one that supplyeth the place in the Blestion of the Great Man fler. Of every one there is a Grand Prior, who lives in great reputation in his Countres; and orders the affaires of their Order.

Saint Johns without Smith-field, being in times part the Manifors of the Grand Price of Bay. Lond, an Irifo-men liming in Napler, and recuing a large Pention from the King of Spaine (now) benetete that Title. Those that come for the Order my to bring a teffinonic of their Ocntry for. All Gants has DESTRUCTION 1 100. 1 1000 CHAI COME DO THE VIVEN HE SOUTHING EXTENSIVE OF SHEET PROPERTY AND A SPECIAL PROPERTY OF THE SECRET OF THE SECRET PROPERTY OF THE SECR In mitted by a Statuce made in the Mafterthip of Hope Erweiss, Berhatys, for that to spile with a state was the Mafterthip of Hope Erweiss, Berhatys, for that to spile with the state was the Author, as they affirme, of their Order; but that there be the spile where it is not a state was the Author, as they affirme, of their Order; but that there be the spile where it is not a state when the state was the Author.

more then I could be informed. The Ceremonies vied in Knighting, are thelis of telly contying the his hand a Taper of white Waxe, hee kneeleth before the Alear ; elithed in a long took the ment, and deireth the Order of the Ordinarie; Then, in the Name of the Father, the Soane; Ceremonies and the Holy Ghoft, he receive tha Sword, therewith to defend the Catholike Church : well, of creation pulle and vanquish the Enemie, to either the opported; it need floated by; is obeyond in the sum of the vertex of the Cross, which by the Cross-sale slates and all by the power of the Cross, which by the Cross-sale slates grown red, Then is he girt with a Belt, and thrice trooks owelle foodders with his Sworth to with him in mind that for the honour of Christ he is chearefully to fuffer what focuer is glietions, who

20 taking it of him, thrice flourisheth it aloft as a prounkement to the Adversary and to theather it againe, having wiped it first on his arme, to cestifie that thente-forth het will live vadefited ly. Then hee that gives him Knight-hood laying his hand on his monkler, doth exhibit him tobel vigilant in the Faith, and to afpire vizo true honour by course jour and laudable actions, decri Which done, two Knights doe put on his Spurres, guilt; to fignific that he fhould fourne Gold as Which done, two ampures one put our into pures general to regime concept mouse point and durt, not to doe what were ignoble for reward. And so goes beet to Masse which the Papers in his hand, the worker of Pictic, Holpitalitic, and tedemption of Calpithes; being consummanded unto him, told also of what he was to performe in regard of his Order: Being asked it he be a free? man, if not iny ned in Matrimonie, if vanowed so another Order, or not of any profession; and if he were resolved to line amongst them, to revenge their muries; and said the anthoritie all

30 Secular Magistracie: Haning answered thereunted voton the receiv of the Standards; he wower in this Order, I want to be Almightic Godyo the Unique Mary his immediate Michael as Santor Their Von in this Groce, a two to the attemption to use of the way in the strength of th fuch as have beene flame in their Warres. They were Ribands about their neckes with Brown ches of the Croffe, and Clokes of blacke with large white Croffer for thereinto enlithe thousand of fine Linnen, but in time of Warre, they weare Crimson Mandilions , behind and before to croffed, ouer their Armour.

40 They come hither exceeding young, that they may the fooner attayne to a remained and home, (whereof many be of great value) not got by fanous but figureritie; and are to line here for the space of five yeares (but not necessarily together) and to goe on some Expeditions. If one of them be connicted of a capitall crime; her is first published, diffraded in the Church of Saint labs where he received his Knight-hood, then strangled, and throwns after into the Sex Degradation in the night time. Every Nation doe feed by themselves in their leveral Alberges, and fivat and death, the Table like Fryers, but fuch as vicen fuite doe get leave to eat apart, have fuite Crownes atlowed them by the Religion yearely as all have fine and twentie a piece for appearell.

There are here refident about fine hundred, not to depart without leave, and at many more dispersed through Christendome, who hither repairs vpon enery summons, or notice bit intuitie. Their number 50 on. The Religion is their generall Heire wheresours they dyel onety each Knight may dispose and governof a fifth part of his substance. There be fixteene of them Counsellors of State and of printele ment pall authoritie, called Great Croffes, who weare Tippets, and Coates also wider their Cloakes; that be figned therewith. Of thefe are the Martiall, the Mafter of the Hofpitall, the Admirals; the Chancelor, &c. When one doth dye another is elected by the Great Matter and his Knights. who give their voyces (if I forget not) by Bullets, as doe the Venetians ; whereby both enale and faction is anoyded. Now, if the Great Mafter fall ficke, they will fuffer no Voffell to goe The Great out of the Hauen, untill hee bee either recourred, or dead, and another elected, left the Pope Mafter and his should intrude into the Election, which they challenge to be theirs, and is in this manner per-

60 The feuerall Nations cleek two Knights a piece of their owne; and two are elected for the English, from among it themselves these fixteene choose eight, and those eight does nominate a Knight, a Priest, and a Fryer-servant (who also weares Armes) and they three thoose the Great Master, out of the fixteen Great Crosses. This man is a Pickerd borne, about the age of fixtie, and hath gouerned eight yeare. His Name and Title, The Illustrious and most Reverent Prince my Land

Meltaner

OFS

Old & Make is feated (as hath beene faid before) in the midft of the lland, you a hill and fat. med like a Scurabion ; held of no great importance, yet kept by a Garrifon In it there is a Grot. where they fay Saint Poullay when he fuffered thipwracke; of great denotion among them. The refined floor thereof they cast into little Medals, with the Efficies of Saint Paulon theore fide, and a Viperon the other, Aguas Det, and the like : of which they went flore to the For- ab some reiner. They day shar being drunke in wine it doth cure the venome of Serpents, and withall though there he many Serpents in the Hand, that they have not the power of hurting although handled, and approd; berett of their venome ener fince the being here of the Apofile; The other three Cities (at they may all be fo termed) are about eight miles diftant and not much without a Musket (honesch of other, neere the Eaft-and, and on the North-fide of the Hand, where there is a double blauer divided by a tongue of rocke, which extendeth no further then the one. meniently large enerance. The East Hauen refembleth the home of a Stag; the first branch (as the Palme) affoording an excellent harbour for the greatest shippes, and the second for Gallier, the self are shallow. Close to the vappermost toppe there is a Fountayne of fresh water, which pleatifully furnished all Vesses that doe enter. On the tip, of the foresaid tongue should the things Calife of Saint Hermer, the first that the Turke belieged, which after many furious af-

loff of ten thousand lines, they tooke in the years 1 56v. in the moneth of line, but to the

mester slow of the vanquished, that hofe rather inraging then dis-heartning the remaynder.

From Alofius of Mignian - court, Great Mafter of the Hofpitall of Saint Iches of Isrusian.

Prince of Malta, and Goza. For albeit a Fryer, (as the rest of the Knights) yet is he an absolute

Sourraigne, and is beauty attended on by a number of gallant youg Gentlemen. The Clere in do

weare the Cognizance of the Order, who are subject to like Lawes except in military matter.

There are here to Villages in the Hand, under the command of ten Captaines, and foure Cities.

Their glorious faults, twentiethouland Canon thou (whose horrible roarings were heard to Meffina) and the the Turke.

. Now you the point of the Promontory which lyes betweene these two branches of that Hanen, where the Ships and Gallies have their stations, on a steepe rocke stands the Castle of Saint Aurel, whole frength appeared in furthrating those violent batteries (being next befieand by the Tarke) whereof it yet beareth the skarres. At the foot of the Rocke are certains Ganons plantest than from the mouth of the Hauen: This Caffle is onely disided by a Trench case through the Rocke, from the Burge, a kettle Citie which possession the rest of that Promontory, being all a Rock, hewen hollow within, for their better defence; distoyned by a gutar deep Ditch from the Land, South of this, and on the next Promontory, stands another Towne. Ditter room tent Europe States of the States of the States of the Conference of the States of the St and mangreall the flor that was made at him, Iwamme to this Caille : where first requiring and receiving Baptiline, her made knowne wato them the fecrets of the Enemie, aduled how to frustrate their purposes, and brauely thrust himselfe forward in enery extremitie. But now to transact over purposes, and causery undermanter rowware in earry extremite. Dut the Knighano's the Order adding one another by their groper valous; so nobly behaved them-felues, that the Turke began acclespance of saccetic, and 'epon the rumoured approach of the Christian succourse (which is the best construction by the over-circums poet Vice-Roy of Sicilia had beene dangerously protracted) imbarqued shem selves, and departed. But all, favire Eures and Saint edwerle, reduced into powder, and the returne of the Turke diffrufted, it was propounded among fithe Knights, to abandon the lland, rather then vainly to repaire, and enderour to defend those samentable runes, the Adversaries vnequal power, and backward ayde of the Christian Princes considered. But it soo much concerned the state of Christendome, (especially of the Countries confining) it being as it were both the Key and Bulwarke thereof, infomuch IT that the Pope, the Florenine, and the reft of the Princes of hely, encouraged them to ftay, affifing them with money, and all necessary proution; but effectially the King of Spaine, who over go and about diddend them three thousand Pioners, leaved in the Kingdome of Naples and Sicilia, to repaire their old Fortreffes, and begin a new Citie vpon that tongue of Land which divideth the two Hauens, now almost absolutely finished. . This is called the Citie of Waletta, in the honour of John de Valetta, who then was Great

Mafter. Not great, but faire, exactly contriued, and ftrong about all others, mounted aloft, and no where affailable by Land, but at the South end. The walls of the reft doe icyne to the vpnarrow Ifthmes, where the Rocke doth naturally rife, the Ditch without , hewen downers ceeding broad, and of an incredible profunditie, strongly slankt, and not wanting what fortifiin are two great Bul warks, planted on the top with Ordnance. At the other end (but without the wall) flands the Caffle of Saint Horses, now floorer then over, whereof (as of that Saint Angel) no French man can be Gouernour. Almost every where there are platformes on

right Rocke, as if of one piece, and beaten upon by the Sea. That towards the Land, is but a estion can doe. This way openeth the onely gate of the Cieie, (the other two, whereof one 60 leadeth to Saint Hermes, and the other to the Hauen, being but small Posternes) and hard with-

the walls, well flored with Ordmance. The walls on the infide not aboue fixe foot high, vnimbattald, and thelaing on the outfide, the buildings throughout a good distance off both to leane roome for the Souldiers and to secure them from batterie. Neere the South end, and on the West fide, there is a great pit hewne into the rocke, out of which a Port cut vnder the wall into the West Hauen , intended (for yet vnfinished) to haue beene made an Arsenall for their Gallies, (that harbour being too shallow for ships) a worke of great difficulty. The market place is snacious, out of which the fireers doe point on the round. The buildings for the most part vniforme, all of free stone, two stories high, and flat at the top; the wpper roomes of most having norme, and or free from, two mores many a Princely structure, having a Tower which overto looketh the whole lland. The chamber where they fit in Counfell, is curioufly painted with their fights by Sea and by Land, both forraine and defensive. The seven Alberges of the The seven Albert Sea and by Land, both forraine and defensive. Knights, be of no meane building; amongst whom the Citie is quartered. Magnificent is the Church of S, Paul, and that of Saint lobus: the one the feat of a Bilhop, and the other of a Prior. And Saint lobus Hospitall doth merite regard, not onely for the building, but for the entertain- Saint lobus ment there given. For all that fall ficke are admitted thereunto, the Knights themselves there Hospitall lodge when hurt or diseased, where they have Physicke for the bodie, and for the soule also (such as they give.) The attendants many, the beds over-ipread with faire Canopies; every fortnight having change of Linnen. Serued by the Junior Knights in filter, and every Friday by the Great Master, accompanied with the great Crosses. A service obliged vnto from their first insti-20 tution; and thereupon called Knight-hospitallers. The Issuits have of late crept into the Citie, who now haue a Colledge a building. Heere bee also three Nunneries; the one for Virgins, another for penitent Whores, (of impenitent here are flore) and the third for their

The barrennesse of this He is supplied with the fertilitie of Sicilia, from whence they have

their prouision. The Citie is victualed for three yeeres, kept vnder the ground, and supplied with new as they fpend of the old. They have some fresh water Fountaines, and the raine that falleth, they referue in Cifternes. Besides the Knights and their dependants, the Citizens and Ilande be within the muster of their forces; in which there are not of living foules about twentie thouland. They keepe a Court of guard nightly, and almost every minute of the night, the 30 watch of one Fort gives two or three tolls with a bell, which is answered by the other in order. The Religion hath onely fine Gallies, and ftinted they are, as I have heard, to that number, Their Gallies (if more, they belong voto private men) and but one thip. The custome is, or hath beene, hauing hung out a flagge, to lend money to all commers that would dice it, if they win, to repay it with advantage ; it lofe, to ferue vntill their entertainment amounted to that fumme. Now the Their expediexpeditions that they make, are little better then for bootie; fometimes landing in the night tions. time on the maine of Africa, and furprifing some village, or scouring along the coasts, take certaine small Barks, which disburdened of their lading and people, they suffer to hull with the weather. For they made good profit of their flaues, either imploying them in their drudgeries, (they having at this instant aboue fifteene hundred of them) or by putting them to ransome. For 40 euer and anon you shall have a little boat with a flag of treaty, come hither from Tripoli, Tunic, or Algers, to agree for the redemption of captines, as doe the Maltefes to those places who are ferued with the same measure. During my abode here, there arrived a Barke, brought in by eight English men, who had for a long time served the Turkish Pirats of Turks, they bound for Algeirs, tooke weapons in hand, and droue the distrustlesse Turkes (being twice as many) into the fterne, kept there by two, whilst the other dressed the failes for Maira. Among ft them there was one, who faving he would never be flaue to a Christian, stript himselfe secretly, propping

ing delirous to ferue him) who will not fuffer their cruell authoritie to enter into the new City. to that they are faine to refide in Burgo.

The Matelies are little lefte Tawnie then the Moores, especially those of the Country, who The people. goe halfe clad, are indeed a miferable people; but the Citizens are altogether Frenchified; the Great Master, and major part of the Knights being French men. The women weare long blacke fioles, wherewith they couer their faces (for it is a great reproach to be frene otherwile) who converse not with men, and are guarded according to the manner of Italy. But the lealous are better fecured by the number of allowed Curtizans (for the most part Grecians) who sit playing in their doores on inframents; and with the arte of their eyes inueagled these continent by yow, 60 but contrary in practife, as if chastitie were onely violated by marriage. They here stirre early and late, in regard of the immoderate hear, and fleepe at noone iday. Their markets they keepe on Sundayes.

up his gowne, and laying his Turbant upon it, as if still there, and dropt it into the Sea. But the deceiver was deceived by the high land which feemed neerer then it was, and to wearied with

fwimming, funke in their fights. The Inquificion would have feized both on their perfons and purchafe, because they had served the Infidell: but they were protected by the Great Master (be-

Now were the Gallies returned with indifferent successe, and yet my stay was proroged by the approaching festivall of their Patron; for vntill that was past, no boat would stirre out of

LIBVI.

CHAP.I.

G2I

the Harbour. The Palace, Temples, Alberges, and other principall houses, were stucke round on the outlide with lampes, the evening before; and among it other folemnities, they honoured the day with the discharge of all their Artilery. The Forts put forth their Banners, and enery Al berge the Enligne of his Nation, at night having Bone-fires before them; five great ones being made in the Court of the Palace; whereof, the first was kindled by the Great Master, the second by the Bilhop, the third by the Prior, the fourth and fifth by the Marshall and Admirall. On the foure and twentieth of June, I departed from Malta in a Phalucco of Naples, rowed by fine, and not twice to big as a Wherry, yet will for a space keepe way with a Gally. They vieto fet foorth in fuch boats as thefe. two houres before Sun-fet, and if they discouer a suspected faile betweene that and night (for the Turkes continually lie there in waite) doe returne againe : if not, they proceed; and by the next morning (as now

The end of the Sixth Booke.

did we) reach the Coast of Socilia.

NAVI-



NAVIGATIONS, VOY-AGES, AND DISCOVERIES OF

THE SEA-COASTS AND INLAND RE-GIONS OF AFRICA, WHICH IS GENERALLY

CALLED &THIOPIA: BY ENGLISH. MEN AND OTHERS.

THE SEVENTH BOOKE.

CHAP. L

30 Atrue Relation of Mafter RICHARD IOBSON'S Voyage, employed by Sir WILLIAM Saint IOHN, Knight, and others; for the Difconerie of Gambra, in the Sion, a fbip of two hundred tuns, Admiral; and the Saint John fifthe, Vice-Admirall. In which they paffed nine bundred and fixtie miles up the River into the Continent. Extracted out of bis large Iournall.



E fet fayle from Granefend, on Saturday the fift of October, 1620. From Granefend. On the fine and twentieth, we departed from Dartmonth, we favled from Dartmonth to the Ca-

The foorteenth of February, we came to an anchor in Tran The Katherine wifen Road, where we found three Frenchmen. and one Flem- bestayed ming.Francisco a Portugal here d welling was bufie to enquire if we went to Gambra, having a letter as he faid from M. Cramp, who had lately departed thence for Sierra Liona, let forth by the Company. This Portugall fearing inft revenge for the faip Portugal taken and men betrayed and murthered by them in Gambra, which trade. had procured a Letter in behalfe of some of his friends. In Gambre.

the River of Borfall we entred, where we tooke a small Boat belonging in part to Hellor Namez, the principall in that Freachery and Murther aforefaid and detayned some of his goods therein for fatisfaction, taking thereof a publike Inventorie, that it any other could lay inficlayme they might be reflored. This was done by punshing Namez, and to terrific others. The generall from like trecherous attempts, not without effect. The Portugals were glad they fo escaped, winds. knowing and curfing Names his vilianie. The Portugalls which trade here, and inhabit the Riuer are banished men, Renegadoes and baser people, and behaue themselves accordingly.

We built a Shallop, and lanched it the two and twentieth. The next day we fer tayle up the Riner, and the tyde ipent, anchored against a little Iland on the South-fide forme four leagues up. From October till May, the winds are generally Eafterly, and downe the River which much hindred our course up the same. We past up by tydes, intending to stay at a Towne called Tankeronalle, but over-fhot it in the night, and the next morning were against another Towne foure Tonhoualle,

leagues higher, called Tindobauge. Our ship with her Ordnance might here come both sides the Riner.

Here dwelt Emanuel Corfeen a Partugall, which told vs that Mafter Tomfan was killed by one of his Company, and that the rest were in health. It was intended the Sion should stay here. and therefore the Kines Customers were paid, who dwelt some fixe miles from the River, but had his drunken Officers to receive them.

Leauing her with five and twentie men and boyes. On Wednesday, the nine and twentieth. vp the Riacts the Saint John and two shallops, we set fayle vp the Riuer twelue men in the bigger, with Henry Lone, and thirteene in the leffer with my felfe, which with the Boat towed her vp in calmes.

Carauan from Tinda for Salt before this place.

On the first of December, we came to Pudding Iland, sixteene leagues from the ship. The 10 second, we anchored against a little Creeke which leads into a Towne Mangegar. We went to this Towns, meeting by the way a Portugall, called Bastian Roderigo, who game mee an Ounces skinne. On Munday the fourth, the King with his Alcade came aboord, and drunke himselfe with his Conforts fo drunke, that the Customes were deferred till next day. Henry Lowe agreed for a house, and left there Humfrey Danis, Iohn Blithe, and one Nicholas a prettie youth. which two last dyed there. On the seuenth, we passed thence by a Towne on the North-side called Woller, Woller, bigger then any wee had yet feene, and in the after-noone came to an anchor at Callan (where the Katharine was betrayed) where no Portugall would now be feene. This King is under the great King of Burfall. The Aleade shewed vs friendship, and told vs that the Portweals had hired men of that Towne to kill vs as we went vp, in some narrower Strights of the 20 River, for feare whereof we could not get any Blackman to goe with vs to be our Pilot and Linguist. This Towne is populous and after their manner warkke. We here had intelligence, that

Salt is a good Commoditie aboue in the River, and that within eight dayes there would come a

Pometou. English at

Oranto,

Portugals per-

On the fourttenth, we came to a Towne on the South fide, called Pompeton, aboue which dwels no Portugall in this River. Next morning we came to the Port of leraconde. two miles from which dwelt Farran a perpetual! Drunkard, but which held his Countrey in greatest awe-Hence Henry Lowe fent a flaue with a Letter to Oranto fixteene miles off, where the English dwelt. On the feuenteenth , Matthew Broad and Henry Bridges came to vs by Land, which were exceeding glad after fo long space to see their Countrimen, as we also to heare them re- 39 port their securitie amongst those wild people. Broad said, much good might bee done up the River, but that it must be done without delay, the River falling daily. Comming within fixe miles of Oranto we landed and went thither, where Brewer which had beene at Tinda with Tomfor, filled vs with golden hopes. But the neglect of bringing Salt thorough ignorance or emulation was a hinderance. The King of Orante abode on the other fide of the Rivers his name Summa Tumba, a blind man and fibriest to the great King of Cantere, We went to him and had a speech made to him of thankfulnesse, for our Countreymens kind vsage; His answere was repeated by the mouth of another, after the fashion of the Countrey : which Ceremonie done, he made haft to drowne his wits in the Aquenite and good liquor we brought him. His Custome

The one and twentieth, I fent away my Boat, & the next day came abundance of people; fome to fell; all to begge; the King fometimes by his Wife, fometimes by his Daughter, but every day his Sonnes were there, and likewife divers others of the better fort, but Count, from many great persons : which word they vie for commendations. You must return tomething agains.

or it will be ill taken, Ferrandra faith. On Christmas day, Ferambra fent vs as much Elephants flesh as one could well carrie, new killed. This Ferambra went foure miles off, and was a friend of our people, and when the Pormy ale had dealt with the King of Naoy, to kill them all, who fent his forces to performe it, he put himselfe and his people in Armes for their defence, and conveyed them over the River to his Brother, called Bo. lohn, and fatied their goods. On the one and thirtieth, came the Shallop

We being ten white men, went the second of Ianuary from Oranto for Tinda: the first tyde we went to Batto, Bo lobus Towne, and thereagreed with a young Marybacke to goe with vs. Lower emulation hindred vs with delayes, both now and before. On the fixth, Sumaway, King of Bereck under the great King of Cantore, came abourd with his Wife, and begged our courtefie. We tooke in Sanguly, a blacke Boy, who had lived with Mafter Tomfon, and spake prestie English. On the ninch, we anchored in a vast place both at noone and night, where was a world of Sea-horfes, whole pathes where they went on thore to feed, were beaten with tracts as great as London high-way. Next morning we anchored at Maffamacoadum, fifteene leagues from Pereck. On the eleventh, at Benanko. The twelfth, after rockie pallages to Baraconda. 60 The tyde went no further. Beyond were no Townes, neere the River, nor Boates nor people to

On the fourteenth, Bacay Tombo, the chiefe man of the Towne, came a board with his wife, and brought vs a Beefe. We hired another Marybuck, because they are people which may travell freely: & now were ten white and foure blacke, Hauing now the streame against vs. we durst not for feare of Rockes in the night, nor could for immoderate heat in the Suns height proceed, but Marbucker for for first of Kockes in the night, nor count to immediately and after three in the afternoon. We cred period, were forced to chafe our houses in the asstraing till nine, and after three in the afternoon. We cred period, were forced by while a final Riter, and found about final low witers, wherein were many Sea Horfes by the figure, and found about final low witers, wherein were many Sea Horfes by the figure. part by reason and inorting hard by vs, one came (winning by vs dead and flinking, yet the Negros were displeased they might not eate him.

were displeased they might not eace mile.

On the femericenth, on both fides the River we faw thousands of Baboones and Bronkies. A and Mer-On the reservement, on both more that did no harme. We had fill our Canoe before vs to chants.

10, n. On the eighteeneth, we were forced to enter the River naked, very fearefull of the Blimbos, On the eighteenern, we were rorced to enter the root maken, very reaction to the balloon of the content, and oner of thorow the fand, before the content, and oner of thorow the fand, before the beauing and fhouing till we come in deepe water. The nineteenth, we met with a violent current, that all the ftrength of fixe Oaies could preuaile, but a mile in an houre. The twentieth, on the Star-board fide, we had Canton River, are like a which hath a faire entrance, where Ferran Cubo is the great King. On the one and twentieth,

which hath a faire entrance, where Ferran Cubo is the great King. On the one and twentieth, with the work of the same to the Mountaine tops, whence might be perceived onely Defarts; respensible on this fret, with terrible wild Beafts, whose roaring we heard cutry hight. The Blackes are so affitted of the and shortleg, Bumboe, that they dare not put their hands into the water, divers of them being by eliem makes, manes, denoured. Yet did they anoid from vs. whether it were our noife or militrade which caused it. &c. Monkies denoured. Yet did they anoid from vs, whether it were our noile or muteriast winting and Baboone Some we faw thirty foot long, yet would not come neere vs. On the two and twentieth, wal-20 king on the banke, I efpied fixteene great Elephants cogether hard by me. A Blat Frienth has fell thirty foee reing on the dance, i oppose execute great surpliants operater and by article source with the case of a trembling. The fedge in the place was almost as high againe as our freats; for this we'could not king. be feath that we were within P field that of them. We faw diners little parts by their fields. We The plainess made an offer to shoot , but the Peece would not off, which they perceiuing began to run, in a

made an one of much as earning nor looking behind them ; making speed to the Mountaines, like a Deare in the Forrest. The Moores wondred at our adventure. On the three & twentieth, we were faine to enter the water, & by itrength of hand, to carry the boat a mile & a halfe mito deeper water. On the foure and twentieth, we towed her, sometimes adding halling by the Boars ide, as sholds and trees permitted band met with one vehement current, osefthwart bro ken rockes, to that we were forced to hold her by force, till one taking the Anchor on his neck, waded about that quicke fall, and letting it fall, we haded by our fallor, and elephathia gut.

30 The fine and runter to the country of the

The fine and ewenty, troubled with flokis, we heard as we pasted, a gefth of water, hidden by the greene trees, with which water we flored our felties; that of the River being libranke with a Munite water. music lent of the Crocoliles, a wednopoded that it was distracted it; whereas this was pleased and the control of the control could fwimme well, had not one of our mentaid hold on him as he rofe the third time, almost spent, from under water. On the fixe and twentie, we were comforted with the light of the hill of Tanda, being high rockie land. We fent tirree Moores thither with a preferit to the King, and to Bucker Sano, a Merchant of Tonda, intreating him to come downe to vs with prouision, for we had no flesh. Deare and Fowle were plentifull on both fides the River, had we beene pro-

40 u ded of a good Peece. And the River fifth did fo tafte of Muske, that (like the water) we could not endure the shoare. I went ashaore to view the River, & might fee sometimes twentie Croco- Muskie fish. diles one by another: and in the night, specially towards brake of day, they would call one to another, much resembling the sound of a deepe Well, and might be easily heard a League. We past the sholds, and against Tinda River, recovered steepe water, and faw many Sea Horses, which loue deepe waters. On the thirtieth, we killed an Anthelope bigger then any Windfere Antelope. Stagee, the blood of him drew a world of Eagles, and other Fowle; amongst which came one Stalker, a Fowle higher then a man, which we like wife killed. Prefently after, came our men backe with Buctor Samer brother, and a feruant of the Kings, with Hens. Our Deare was kil-

led in good leafon for their entertainment; the report palling among them current, that with Gun-bunder, 50 our thunder (so they called our Guns) we could kill what some would. They much fearing the same, as having never feene or heard it, whereof we made good vie.

On Thursday, the first of February, came Bucker Same with a troupe of forty people, amongst which his wife and daughter. Haning tafted of our strong Waters, hee lay drunke aboard that night (he was neuer fo after) and was ficke the next day. He gaue vs a Beafe, and many of the people brought Gozes, Cocks, and Hens, which we bought early. On Saturday, we began to trade our Salt, which is the chiefe thing they defined; other things they asked for, which we had Sak, chiefe, not prosided : flaues (he told vs) were the things they held dearest ; for any thing elfe we flould trade. have, if we would maintaine our comming thither, he would prouide it. We had some Ele-

60 phants teeth, Negres Clothes, Cotten Yearne, and some gold of them. We refused to buy Hides, because we would not lade our Boat downe the River, the water falling enery day, which wee kept note of by the shoare. The people came daily more and more to vs, and vpon the shoare they built houses, we also had a house open to trade vnder, so as it seemed like a pretty Towne. Our Blackes went ouer the River, and three dayes after brought other people, which built a Siege

Towns on the other fide the River. And within three dayes there were five hundred, which were a more Sauage people; having breeches of beafts skins, neither had they ener feene any white people before. The women would run and hide themselues when we came neare them at their first comming; but after grew bold to buy and sell with vs. These people likewise were all for Salt, and had Teeth and Hides store. Our Salt was almost gone before they came a for we had but forty bushels at first,

Baier Dinks the chiefe was aboard e very defirous we should come againe. On that fide wee faw likewise there was Gold, and those people had familiarity with each other, whereby chiefe man & it seemed they had trade and commerce, by some higher part of the River.

On the feuenth', the King of leliest on Tinda fide, under the great King of Weller, 10 came Country, you downe with his Iuddies or Fidlers, which plaid before him and his wines, such being the fathion derthe great of the great ones. These loddies are as the Irish Rimers: all the time he eats, they play and figh King of Calery. Inddies or Fidlers fongs in his pray fe, and his ancestors: When they die, they are put in an hollow tree vprishe and not buried, we gave him a Present, and he a Beefe to vs.

He Boughrand On the eighth, Bucker Sano would needs be filled the white mans Alcaid; I tooke it kind. fold fire for v. ly, and put about his necke a firing of Christall, and a double firing of Currall. Broad gaue hima

filter chaine, and with drinking a cup of Rofa-folis, and fincoting off fine Muskets, a folerane cry, Aloside, Meside, was proclaimed: he adding his fidlers musicke, the people aboready with their bowes and arrowes, his wife with matts on thoare to attend the folemnity. So foone as he came on houre, he frankely gaue his nuts to the people, retoycing in this new honor. These at Nuss of peac. nuts are of great account through all the Riner, and are a great fauour from the King: four hum. ous effective dred of them will buy a wife of a great house. Their take is very bitter, but canneth the water He feemeth to prefently after, to taste very pleasant. This done, he went to the Kings houle, who san be the case, without doores, their fashion being associated as the san to the kings houle, who san the case without doores, and the best fort to haue matts, on which to sit downe, and vie their Ceremonies. He placed me by the King, and went himselfe fixe paces off, right before him, and made a speech, which one repeats after him as he speakes, to intreat his kind viage to the white men. The King and one repete after him as neapeaces, to anterest ma aims viage to the wind until the freedy with a like freedy thirt in token of thankefulneffe, and kneeled downe naked, vntill diners Martinete with their

hands raked up a heape off the ground, upon which he lay flat with his belly, and covered him with the earth lightly from head to heele. Then with his hands he threw the earth round a-In this manner with the earth lightly from head to heele. Then with his hands he threw the earth round a-the Kings take bout amongst vs all: after which, the Aday backer gathered a round heape againe together and compassing it with a round ring of the same earth, wrote with his singer as much as the round solumon or would containe: which done, Bucker Same tooks of that earth into his mouth, and put it forth acame to. _ againe, and then taking both his hands full of the earth, and our two Marybuckes following him vpon their hands and knees, they came to me where I fate, and threw it into my lap. This done, he role up, and two women were ready with clothes to wipe him, and a third woman to with a cloth to fan him, and stepping a little off, he had his best clothes brought him, which he put on, and his sheafe of arrows a shour hus necke, a bow and an arrow in his hand. He came in againe, and twenty more, with bow and arrowes, after he had gone twice or thrice about, prefenting himselfe by drawing his arrow up to the head, as if he were to shoot, he delivered them, and fate downe by me. The rest with their bowes and arrowes came one after another, and kneeling at his foot with their faces, from him presented their bowes, as hee did. Then began others to dance after their fashion, at the end whereof they began to make seuerall speeches, (for every one of the better fort will have his speech) wherewith we were weary, and left them for that night. Our manner was to fet our watch with a Pfalme, which they hearing, would be still, and after a shot would leave vs quiet till morning.

I shewed this Bucker Same a small Globe , and our Compasse , whereupon he told vs that he had feene with his eyes a Countrey Southward, whose houses were all courted with gold, the people wearing iron in rings through their lips and eares, and other places, to which place hee told vsit was foure moones trauell. Hee told vslikewife of a people which hee called Arabeete, who came vnto this Country and would be at a Towne, called Mondow, but fixe dayes iourney from Tinda, the second moone after, which was in March. And there was a Town called lage, from whence much gold came, but three dayes journey from Mombar, whither these Arabeckes went not. More I might have knowne, had not the emulations of my companie hindred, who would not fuffer the blacke boy to let me know what he speake.

Some people which came to vs, were of Combaconda, a Towne foure dayes journey thence, 60 which we thinke is Tombuto. A Marybucke was here of Matter Tomfons acquaintance, borne in Tape, which would not company with the people of Tinds, but came to vs, and toll vs that ma-ny people were comming, but were fent backe by some that returned, and reported our Salt was gone. He offered, if we were past these people, he would vadertake to bring vs to Mombar

and Gago, We made hafte to be gone; for by our marke the water was funkeaboue fixe inches. promiting to returne in May, when the water increased. We called this place Saints lobus

CHAP.I. Circumcision performed with mirth, musicke and dancing.

On Saturday the tenth of February, we came away, the wind and freame femed, but wee durft nor fayle for the sholds, nor row by night. On Wednesday at night, having but three miles to Baraconde, by the Moores intreatic wee went thither over Land, and pasted cally in Baraconde fixe dayes downe, what had coft vs twelue dayes labour and trouble. We had a great chafeat an Elephane, wounded and made him flie, but lost him in the high fedge; and after found him in the River, where being that in the eare he turned head on vs, and made vs tow off, and leave him thrice wounded, our Peece failing in the discharge.

Munday the nineteenth, we came to Batte, Bo lobas Towne, wee had out first Marybucke Gircumtifion. Munday the nuncteenth, we canned a men, and a men a town a town and a men a men and a men a men and a men a Drummes and Countrey Musicke. The Boy knew the meaning, and told vs it was for cutting of pricker, a world of people being gathered for that purpose, like an English Faire. Vnder euene great tree, and among all their houses at night were fires without doores, and in especiall places dancing, the Musicall Instruments made with Keyes like vnto Virginals, whereupon one playes with two stickes which have round Balls of leather at the end; about their wests from Bracelets, They are called Ballardes, and contayne fome feuenteene Keyes. The women for Dunness. 20 the most part dance with strange bending of their bodies, and cringing of their kntes, their the most part onne with strange origining a time no capping their hands together to give the legges crooked, the flanders by keeping a time in clapping their hands together to give the legges crooked, the men dance, it is one alone with fush Swords as they weate, maked in his hand, dance. If the men dance, it is one alone with fush Swords as they weate, maked in his hand,

with which he acteth. About two furlongs from their houses wader a great free were many fires, and much drumming with great noyle : here they faid were clieft which were out , but would not fufer mee to ming with great muye mene taken mene the state of the mene and the mene and the state of the sta for whom they proude store of Rices Comes Beefer, and other stella readile deast, which is infor whom they promine the control of with a Beefe, or other belly-timber: and so many dayes after must they be mute, and cannot be enforced to speake. This seemes an illusion of their Priests to exact Circumcision, and the hoarseself of fome thewed, they had loft their threaks in that roaring. This roaring, showing and dancing continued all night, We faw our black Boy circumcifed, not by a Marshack, but an ordinary fellow hackling off with White at three curs his present, holding his member in his hand, the Boy neyther holden nor boined the white like was carried to the reft, nor would they fuffer our Surgeon to heale him. The people in twentiemiles space came in to this Feast with

their prouuon.

I made hafte backe to Strice, to meste the Tanda Morthants; and on the fixe and twenkieth, series being within two miles of the place, i received a great and dangerous blow by a Season for the blow by a Season for the indungered our finking, but we made fluit to flop is well from a loft; We cannot be designed bore. miles from the water lide, the greatest Towne we saw in the Country, higher than which the Portugal Trade not, and from hence carry much Coolds the most of the Inhabitants Marybucker. and the Townegournes by one of them, called Folias Brant. They are flored with Affes and nerall. and the 1 owne gourness By one or them, same a young branch and a few control and same Slaves, their Merchandize Salt. The chiefe Marybuck dying, there came multitudes of people to his function. On the Graze-Earth dygred for him enery principal! Marybuck; made a Ball mingled with water sutof one por, subject they afterned as a Reliku. They lay all flower finels they can get into the ground with him, and cooke it kindly that the flowed forme. Much Gold is buried with them, or before by themselnes in alprimet place, for their we in mother World? 50 Much finging, or howling, and crying is vied many theyes about the Grane. This recourse with also to establish his eldest Sonne in his dignicie, to which many Presents are fent. I faw among other beafts one Ramme of a naytie Waoltake Gozzi. Sonnesfinteel their gathers , but the

ned my departure. and an angle of send and a laborather was to a so deligation and Sunday the classifier of March, Littuined, and on Wellnelday same to the Saint John. The next day, I fet forward to the Sun, and on Saturday Same to Polagons, where the Portuguil made vs good cheere. Hee told vs of the Duils giting notice of our beeing in the River, and comming vp, which the circumfeatocomade probable. On Ministay, we came to Caffet, a with Deuils or when where the Sim did ride: the Mallerand many others dead, and a reliant four able men in the state a continued! finally secured a deeper transcript in a

Kings Brethren take pleas before the Somers. The fickingle of our men in the Saint lobn, hafter

Here we lay from the ninescenth of March, to the nighteenth of Aprill, wee'weighed and came the next morning to anchor steamst Walley, Walley, voider the King of Caffee. Whiles wee were there, came anow King from the King of Barjall to take pollettion of the Country , the old King being eieched as the Sonne of a Captine woman, whereas this was right Heire by both

* Tranflated

our of Duck

by G. Artas

Dantife and

the fixthpart

o De Bry, his

Ind. Orient.

The Voyage from the Tef-

fel.Nouember

the first. 1600.

third, when they arrived at

Moure, I omit.

Parents, and now comme of age, who now transported himselfe and his over the River, to give place to this new King, which promited vs all kindnesse.

The twentieth, we came to Mangegar, within a mile of which, every Munday is a great concourfe medinarket, but miferable Merchandize. The last of Aprill, the Saint lobe came toys. and the fourthes May we sayled downe the Ruer together. From May to October, it blows up the River except in the Tonado, which comes for the most part South-east. On the ciph. menth, we prepared our Shallop. On the nineteerth, we set up Tents on the shoare. The King of the Countrey called Cambo, came to vs, and was very kind and familiar, promiting all funour. labours of calking and other businesse, watching and Musketos, which here exceedingly abounded, did much moleit vs. On the ninth, weet tarned out of the River. Next morning before to dan we had a violent florme, or Fernado, with Fluinder, Lighting, and exceeding flore of raine. This weather is finequent frem May to September. Wee hare in at Tranife for Workmen, our Carpenters beingstead. Thence we halted home. and the first for lower and all the first with the

A STATE OF CHARLES OF THE STATE A description and historicall declaration of the golden Kingdome of Guinea, otherwise called the golden Coast of Myna, lying in a part of Africa, shewing their beliefe, spinions, it affiguings bartering, and manner of speech; together with the stuation of the Countrie, Townes, Cottages, and Houses of the lame; with their Perfous and Propositions; Hamens and Rivers, as they are now found one and discourred: all perfettly viewed and curiously discourred. and written by one that both offentimes beene there, Translated til Ianuaryshit ast of Dutch, conferred alfo with the Latine

and the second of the second o

The special power of the speci

Spanning of the state of the st Whereby commonly then the person on the hand, the goldentimes every thinke they are And White 19 family among the stricture as uses mental to general managemental entry souther they are, and being the properties of the stricture graymates Buntbey, thunding not to give merry no Capbelli ands we this Glaine. Coalt, this on-19 Ly leeks to go a new facility that has suched and a lating hold which dought by the lands of Gu les Patrices.

The Graine maries, and layles South percentages in the Brighthair spirit layering beings abdificable Parels, leaving them Coaff, is Macommonly on Bagh-board, or as the wind ferneth them, being vinder ten, nine, or eight degrees, they they begin, to see he sawards the Land, and a chole and recourse South and by East, and by the lame courfest lockess gas bore all Befut and diskbores, whichese altering their country for they that fall your Saint Americal low countries would the defenced have much labour and America was proposed to the state of the sta which is because it is no continual shallow, but hill of deepe pits : for in one place you shall be appricted a shallow the state of the free you shall be appricable to the free of the free my difficult of the free of the free of the free my difficult of the free of and contained and or teneratures one of Economicans comparations one game of the second secon

it is not a time of Trauadoes, which is in Aprill, May, and Iune, whereof men are in great feare. It fell out fo with vs., that beeing vnder those highthes, we were twentie dayes driving in a calme, without winning any great highth, and that which we wonne with the Current, the next day we loft it agains with a contrary wind; fo that you must beware of the Land in any hand, specially, thole that goe to Brafilia, for they must take heed, not to goe too neere the Land, left the calme taketh them: I once found a fhip thereabouts, which thought to fayle to the Bay, de Todos los Santes, and thinking that the treame drave him woon the Coaft of Well All Saints Bay India, fell there vpon the Graine Coast, so that hee was forced to goe backe againe, and beeing not able to fall into his right course, hee was constrayned to leave it, and in stead of sayling to 10 Brafilia, he was forced to goe to Saint Thomas, to that wnder those highenes, you can doe nothing

with the wind, but onely by the current, which alwaies tunnes East with the bough. They that favle to East India, also shunne this calme as much as possible they may, to get aboue the fand, or rife of Brafilia, for otherwise they must whether they will or not, soe to Cane Taxes Gonfalues, and then fayle along vnder the Equinochiall Line, at least three or foure hundred miles, before they can get againe into their right courfe, as it happened not long fince to fome of our thips, which was a great hinderance vito their Voyage, further having past this See what have calme, and towards the Landabout Cape de Lis Palmas, or to fome other places, which you know, pened to the then you must hold your course along by the Land, but no neerer to the Land then eight and Dregen and then you must note your course along by the Band, the punctus, where the Golden Coast begins, taine Keelings traine Keelings

and where the Hollanders traffique with the Negroes. First, passing the River of Senega, you begin to draw neere to Cape Verde, which is a piece Description of of Land eafily to be knowne, for the first point sheweth it selfe with two hillockes or houels. Cape Perde. and lyeth farre into the Sea, and on both the North and South-fide thereof lofeth the Land, but Southward from the point, about halfe a mile from the Land, there is an Iland feene, whereon many Fowles breed, and great numbers of Egges are found therein, behind this lland there ly eth a great Rocke, a little separated from the Land. This Iland is very vnfit to rayle shallops on, you may fayle betweene the Land and this lland, with a ship of three hundred and twentie tuns, but not without great feare, for that there are many Rockes lying under the water, but for the best securitie of thip and goods, it is better to sayle on the West side of the Iland to the other Iland, where shallops may be set together, which you may see being right against the first Iland, lying about three miles Southeast from the othersthese Ilands are not inhabited, and there is nothing to be had in them but great store of ballast and wood to burne, but for that there is a convenient Valley to make shallops in, therefore those places are much vied, and are the cause that many thips fayle to them, but on the firme Land there are great flore of Negroes inhabi-

ting, which traffique with all Nations. The Countrey people goe naked, only that they hang a piece of Linnen cloth before their The people & prinie members, but their Gouernours (as Captaines and Gentlemen) are better apparelled their apparelle then the common fort of people, and are well knowne by their Garments to be fuch. They go in a long Cotton Garment close about them like a womans smocke, full of blue stripes, like

40 feather bed tikes, on their armes they weare many foure-cornerd leather bagges, all close iov ned together, and the like vpon their legges, but what is within them, I know not, bedenfe they will not let vs fee. About their neckes they weare Beads made of Sea-horse Teeth, and some Corals, or Beades which wee bring them, on their heads they weare Caps of the fame stuffe that their clothes are, they are people that are very industrious and carefull to get their liuings, their chiefest Trade is Husbandry, to sowe Rice and Corne : their great riches is in Cowes, which there are very scant and deare, but further into the Countrey there are great store, for that men lade whole ships full of Salthides at Porta dallia, which they take in exchange or barter for Iron, which place lyeth but seven or eight miles from Cape Verde. They make very faire Iron worke, and in that Countrey, there is great store of Iron spent, specially faire long barres, whereof they are as curious as any man in the World can be, those they vie to make Instruments

of, wherewith to fish, and to labour vpon the Land, as also to make weapons, as Bowes, Arrowes, Aponers; and . Affagagen they have no knowledge of God, those that traff que and are Kind of Darts conversant among frange Countrey people, are civiller then the common fort of people, they fathion at both are very greedie eaters, and no leffe crinkers, and very lecherous, and theeuish, and much addi-ends. Eted to vncleanenesse : one man hath as many wives as hee is able to keepe and maintaine.

The women also are much addicted to leacherie, specially, with strange Countrey people, of Their women, whom they are not icalous, as of their owne Countrey people and Neighbours; their Religion is after the manner of Mahomets law, for circumcilion and fuch like toyes. They are alfogreat Lye's, and not to be credited, the principall Commodities that men traffique for there, are Commodities,

60 Hides, Amber-greece, Gumme of Arabia, Salt, and other wares of small importance, as Rice, Graine, Teeth, and some Ciuet. The Poringals also dwell there, with other Nations, wherewith they may freely traffique, because they are not subjects to the King of Spaine; and besides, that they are not Mafters of the Countrey, and have no command but over their flaves. The Negroes are under the command of their owne Governours, which are called Algaier in their Language, which is a Captain of a Village, for every Village hath his feverall Algaier, and when

nigeste, so cal-led of a kind of

any thip come to anchor there, then the Captaine comes prefently aboard with a Canoe, to aske

Anchoridge money, which is commonly three barres of Iron, but of fuch as know not their cu-

flome, they take as much as they can ; their bodies are very blacke, and of a good proportion.

When they speake, they put out their neckes, like Turkie Cockes, and speake very fast. They

The course from Cape-Miles are to be understood Dutch or as the Latin bath leagues Lease feu mila

028

haue a speech by themselves. Leauing Cape Verde, to faile to the Golden Coast of Myna, the course is best (if the wind will ferue) along by the land, to the place where you will Trafique, and deale with the Negros: from Cape Verde to Rio de Gambra, it is fine and twenty miles, from Rio Gambra to the Baixos of Rio Grande thirty miles, from thence to Sierra Liona, threescore miles; there is a good place to lie in the Winter time, for in the entrie of the River, you have five fathome deepe at the leaft, to and so for the space of fourteene miles going South-east towards the Roade, you have sixteene, fourteene, twelue, ten, and eight fathome water : from the River of Sierra Liona, to Rio de Galinas, (that is, the River of Hens, because there are many Hens, and very good cheape, at a Mesken a peece) fourty miles, from Rio de Galinas to Cape de Monte eighteene miles, the land of Cape de Monte reacheth South-east, and by South, it is a low land, but the Cape is high land. lise a hill, or like a horse necke, with a falling in : from Cape de Monte, to Cape dos Baixos. fiftie miles; from Cape de Baffis to Cape de das Palmas, fiftie miles. These are the three principallest Capes of a'l the gold Coaft; this Cape lieth under foure Degrees, and is the furtheit land of all the Coast, which reacheth towards the Equinoctial line, all the land for the most part lieth South-eaft, and North-weft, low ground, sometimes rising, but no high hils to be seene inward 20 to the land ; from Cape das Palmas, to Cape de Apollonia, and fo to Cape de tres Punclus fixtie miles, from Cape de Monte, to Cape de Miferade, lixteene miles (this Cape is a high land) from "Nefitrade R. Cape de Miserade to Rio de Ceste, foure and twentie miles, all along hither to you, haue good Anchor ground at twelve fathome, the West point is rising land, like to a hill that riseth and sheweth it selfe within the Country, when you are North) from it you are then right a gainst Riode Cester, before in the mouth of the River, there lieth a small Iland, and the Village where you Traffique, lieth a mile vpwards within the River. From Rio de Cestes to Cape das Baixos fine miles, this Cape sheweth like a faile, and it is a white Rocke which lieth out into the Sea, being two miles from the Cape you faw, foure and thirty, and fine and thirty fathome water . good Anchor ground , you may hold your course along by the land at two and thirty, 30 three & thirty, and foure & thirty fathome deepe, but go no neere if you defire not to go to the gold Coast, because of stormes, with a wind out of the Sea, as also because of Rockes, and foule ground, that are, and is found to be there, which will rather hurt, then doe you good. From Cape de Baffis to Sanguin three miles, thereis much Graine to be bought, and good Traffque to be made. From Sanguin to Bofse a mile and a halfe, there also is Traffique; from Bofse to Sertres two miles, there also you may Traffique, and it is a good place : from Sertres to Botoma two miles, it is also a good place to Traffique in : from Bottoma to Synno, fiue miles. There also is Traffique ; from Synno to Sommeroboe three miles, from Sommeroboe to Baddoe two miles , from Baddoe to Crontwo miles; from Cron to Wappa foure miles; from Wappa to Granchetre two

> Kingdome under it, called Bitonni, which lieth not farre from Rio Ceftes. The Kingdome of Melle is rich of Corne, Graine, Rice, Cotten, and Flesh, and some Elephants, where by they fell many of their teeth vnto strangers. The inhabitants are mischieuous and cruell, (yet better in one place then in another) alwayes feeking to spoile and intrap strangers, that come thither, and cruelly to murther them ; but some Countri-men are better welcome vnto them then others, and those are Frenchmen, because of their long Traffique 50 into those Countreys. The Portugalls come very little thither , one Countrey men are better entertained in one place then in another, & that by reason they have sometimes swaggred there abouts, and for that cause the Negrosseeke to be revenged. The greatest Traffique here is Graine, Teeth, and some Rice; other Wares that are there to be had cannot be bartered for in any great quantity, as gold and Teeth, for there is little to be had, but other necessaries for fullenance of man, are there reasonably to be had, and wine of Palme, which they draw out of the trees, is there very delicate, exceeding sweet, and as excellent as any can be found in those Coasts. The Inhabitants are subjects to their Captain, whom they call Taba, and are very submitfine and ready to obey his commandement. The Kings or Captaines of their Villages, are very 62 grave, and rule with great severitie, holding their subjects in great subjection. Their Language differereth in the one place from the other : but most of them speake a little French , by reason, that they are vied to deale much with the French men , and fo get some part of their speech, as they on the gold Coast also doe, who likewife speake a little Portugall, by reason also that the Portugalls in times past vied to Traffique much there. They are very expert in husbandry, as to

miles : This the French mencall Paris (from Granchetre to Goyana, foure miles, thither there

commette reat flore of Graine to fell, and it is a good place to Traffique in with the Negros,

from Goyana to Cape de das Palmas three miles, all this from Cape Verde to Cape de

das Palmas is called the Graine or golden Coaft (otherwise Mellegette) wherein the Kingdome of Mellie is contained, which by visthat are the Netherlanders is called the Graine Coaft:

but by others it is called the Coast of Mellegette : This Kingdome of Mellie. hath an other

fome Graine, wherewith they have a great Traffique, they are also very cunning, and fine workmen to make many fine things; specially, very faire Canoes or small Scutes, wherewith they also rowe into Sea, which they cut out of a whole tree (like to a Venetian Goudel) which are very fwift to goe; the men haue as many wines as they can maintaine, but they keepe them very thort, and looke neere vnto them. They are likewife very lealous of their wines; for if they perceiue that any of their wines have plaid falle with them, they will feeke great reuenge against the partie that hath done them the wrong, and will make warre vpon him, and for that cause, raise all their Countrey, so that the women are not here so common, as on the golden Coast of Mina, and else where. Passing further from Cape das Palmas, you find many Rivers. To where you may barter for great store of Teeth, to Cape de Tres Punitas, and for that cause it is

CHAP.2. S.2. Preuision of a wife. Her portion. Rites of marriage.

called the tooth Coast. Patting Cape de Apolonia, (which lieth betweene Cape las Palmas, and Cape de Tres Punitas) fine miles further: there lieth a small Castle, but not strong, which is held by the Portugalls, the Willage is called Achombene, and the Castle Ariem, there many Negros dwell, but come feldome abourd our ships that lie there at Anchor, which the Poring alls forbid them to doe. Thus you have read the Description of the Graine or gold Coast, as also the Tooth Coast, and now you shall read of the Coast of Mina. * And first of the Iron people in this golden Coast.

* See Cap. &

ð. 11.

How they marrie each with other, and what goods their Fathers give with their Children: their House-keeping together; the womans lying in; education of their Children: Their proportions, industrie and conditions.

Hen their children begin to attaine to yeetes of discretion, and are able to be married to a wife. Then the father leeketh out a wife for his Son, which he thinks will like his Son well, and yet he never faw, nor knew her before, & without wooing each other. Who being thus brought together, the Father gineth nothing at all with his Pronifion of a fon towards houlhold but if he hath gotten any thing himfelfe, by filhing or carrying Merchants wife, aboord the ship, that is his owne to begin houshold withall. But the Brides friends, give the value of fourteene Gulderns in gold with their daughter, for their marriage good : which is to be understood, that if they be any thing worth, then the Father giveth his daughter a Pelo and a halfe of gold, and the mother halfe a Pelo of gold : which after our reckoning altogether, is Portion. halfe an ounce of gold Troy weight, which they give them to buy wine de Palme, to keepe their Bridall withall : for the bath nothing elfe, but that which her Father and Mother smeth her, for the getterh nothing in her youth , as her husband did. And if it be a Kings fonne or daughter, they also give no more with them to their marriage; for it is a common cultome with them to give no more with their daughters in marriage, then they give them as a liberalitie, but when they goe to keepe house, they give them a slave to ferue them. Besides this, the Bride in the presence of her friends which come to the Banquet, maketh a promise, and sweareth, to be Rites of martrue to her husband, and not to vie the bodily company of any other man; but the man taketh riace. no fuch oath, but is free thereof.

Now, if the chanceth to commit whoredome withan other man, either willingly or against Divorceand her will, and that her husband heareth thereof, then he must put her away for it; and the man forseiture. that hath committed the act, shall forfest to the King foure and twenty Pelos (which after our account is nine ounces) of gold. But if it be a Datch man, he payeth no fine, because he is a firanger, and knew not whether the woman was married or hot, which excufeth him : yet the 50 fault is laid upon the woman that hath done fuch an offence, and the must pay to her husband foure Pefos, or halfe an ounce of gold, because she committed adultery with another man. If fhe hath gotten any thing; but if she hath nothing, and cannot pay the fine to her husband, it excuseth her not : for if he hath no great fantalie to his wife, or that they have little affection one vnto the other; if he will, he may put her away from him, and as then the band of Matrimonie is broken betweene them, and he may take an other wife when he will.

But if he cannot learne that his wife hath committed fisch a fact; by information of other men, but pielumeth it of himfelfe, of fulpecteth that his wife hath laine with any other man. Triallofierhe chargeth her with it, and making her eate certaine Sale; Wheth other Ceremonies of their loufie, Idolatrous Feriffos, wherewith the woman knowing her felre to be cleere, and not to have com-60 mitted adultery with an other man, willingly taketh her oath. But knowing her felfe to bee faulty, the dare not take her oath fearing, that if the should for sweare her selfe, her Fetiffo would make her die, whereby oftentimes the wife difcourre her owne offence, and produceth the mean's to moone her husband to be denorced from her which chiefely hapnetle, by meanes of the Ielousie; which the man hath of his first wife, for it causeth a great hatred and contention be-

tweene them, because it is a great scandall vnto him, and oftentimes there groweth so great Orife about it, that he feeketh to murther the man that doth the fault, and although he hath raid the fine imposed upon him, the married man hath the Privilege to drive him out of the

Polygamy.

Further, when they keepe house together, if the man beginneth to thrine, and hath meanes to buy an other wife, he may not buy her without the confent of his first wife, valessehe were at controuerfie with her, and put her away, for some thing that he could charge her withall ; but with her good will he may buy another. He gineth his first wife fixe Englishen of sold. or two, three, foure or fine, as much as he can get, or hath need of, keeping his other wife for his flane, or to ferue him, or for his Etigurou, or in our Language, his Whore or Concubine, to to whom he beareth not so great affection, nor is not so icalous of her, as of, and to his wife, and those serve for every man, for he may complaine of no man for her, nor cause him to pay any fine for her. His first wife waxing old, and her mind being not so much addicted vnto lust, if he perceineth it, then he cleaneth to his yonger wife, to have his pleature with her, and ener after efteeming most of her, maketh his old wife doe the houshold worke, giving her meat and drinke as long as she liveth, and putteth her not away, but she is forced to serve the yong wife, and shall never trouble her felfe with any thing, but onely to eate and drinke well to have a care to please her husband, and to doe whatloeuer he commandeth. Although a man hath as many wives as he is able to keepe, yet all are not of one, but of feue-

rall ages, the one yonger then the other, that they may be the better ferued by their wines. For a when the eldelt can doe no more for age, (that he may not want worke) and that the yongest wives might doe him more pleasure, they make most of the yongest: and every wife dwelleth in a house by her selte, although he had ten wines, as many of them have. The wife keepes her husbane's money, and when he needeth any, he fetcheth some of her. They eate not one with the other, but either of them alone by themselves ; the husband cateth with one of his companions that he dealerh with, or with whom he goeth to Sea : his wines also eate with their friends or neighbours, every one bringing their meat with them, and so make good cheare together, and at evening, the women goe home to their houses againe, and are together but in the day time. The man and wife lie each of them in a feuerall roome, at night, spreading a mat vpon the ground, and lay a wooden stoole vinder their heads, in stead of a pillow, and then making 30 a little fire of wood, when it burneth they lie downe, with the fcles of their feet before it, that the heat thereof might draw out the cold, which they by day have drawne vp into them from the earth (by going bare-footed, effeeming it to be very good for them, which we must also acknowledge. Now, when he hath a defre to vicany of his wives, either he calleth or fetcheth her. and that night helieth with her, & the next day, the goeth to her houle againe, where the dwelleth, not once making any of the rest acquainted, what she did that night, or that her husband by with her; for then they would be too irealous.

Child-birth.

The triff doe

Beds.

Being with child, when their time of deliverance, and bringing foorth of their child into the world commeth, when the is in labour both men, women, maids, youg men & children, run vnto her, and the in most shamelesse manner, is deliuered before them all. I would say much more hereof, but in respect of the credit of women, I will leave it. When the child is borne, she goes to 40 the water to walh & make cleane her felfe, not once dreaming of a moneths lying in, nor of making Caudles of Ipocras, and other wines, as women here with vs vie to doe: they vie no Nurfes to helpe them when they lie in child-bed, neither feeke to lie dainty and foft; but they prefently take a spoonefull of Oyle, and a handfull of Manigette or Graine, whereof they make a drinke and drinke it vp.

The next day after, they goe abroad in the ftreets, to doe their bufineffe, as other women doe. They give their child fuch a name, as they thinke good to themselves, and bleffe the same with their Fetiffes , and other witchcrafts, and when time ferueth, circumcife both boyes and girles : at which time they make a great feast, whereof they make great account. But where the women are most shamelesseat the time of the birth of their children, the men in three moneths after, lie not with that wife, nor once have the vie of her body, which nevertheleffe, I thinke they doe not, for any shame or regard that they have, to deale with that woman, but onely because they have other wives enough. They take the yong child as soone as it is borne, and wrapping a cleane cloth about the middle thereof, lay it downe on a mat voon the ground, and not in a gradle, and there let it turne and forawle about, and doe what it will, and when it is two on three moneths old, the mother ties the child with a peece of cloth at her backe, and fo lets it hang there, as the high Durcher wines vie to follow their husbands in the warres. When the child crieth to fucke, the mother is keth one of her dugs backeward over her shoulder, and fo the childfuckes it as it hangs. The women goe vp and downe from place to place, and ftill car- 60 Viage of chil- ry their children in that fort, as lightly, as if they had nothing at their backes, the childs head lies just amon her shoulder, and so the goes shaking of the child most pitifully to behold, whereby we wondered that they brake not the childs ioynts, by bearing them in that fort, being fo young, and yet you find very few or no lame persons in those Countreys. They teach their chil-

dren to goe very young, for they make no reckoning thereof, and fuffer them to creepe and runne abroad when they are very little, and teach them to speake very soone, whereby you find many children there among them that can both goe and speake ere they bee a yeare old; and some of them speake so plainly, that you may vinderstand what they say in their Language, for they focake and goe farre koner then our children doe, which we wondred at, belides this, they are ffrong, fat and well disposed, whereof we will speake hereafter in another place.

The children being a moneth or two old, then they hang a Net about the bodie thereof, like Denillish prea littleshirt, which is made of the barke of a tree, which they hang full of their Fetifos, asgol-irrustines aden Croffes, thrings with Corall about their hands, feet, and neckes, and their haire is filled full gainft the De-10 of fiels, whereof they make great account, for they fay, that as long as the young childe hath will. that Net about him, the Deuill cannot take nor beare the child away, and leaning it off, the Deuil would carrie it away, for they fay, the childe being fo little, it would not bee strong enough

uni would darie is way, is a tiery way, the chine comp to need be under the conting enloyed to refift the Deuill, but having that Net you he bodie, it is armed, and then the Deuill hath no power out right Corals which they hang about the child, which they call a Fetific, they efterme Fetifica. much, for that hanging such a Fesiso about the childes necke, they say, it is good against vomiting; the second Fetiffs, which they hang about his necke, they fay, it is good against falling the third, they fay, is good against bleeding; the fourth, is very good to procure sleepe, which; they hang about the necke thereof, in the night-time, that it may fleepe well; the fift, is good against wild beatts, and the vnwholfomeneffe of the Aire, with duers other fuch like Fetiffor, each ita-20 uing a name a-part, to shew what vertue it hath, and what they are good for; and they credibly

beleeue them to be good againft vomiting, falling, bleeding, (which they preferrly helps) and for fleeping, they feed their young children with all kind of groffe meates, almost from the first, for when they leave fuckling (they fuffer them not to fuck long) then they beginne to learne the childe to eate of their groffe meates, and to drinke water; when they be vied thereunto, then they take little heed to them, but beate the children lying downe in their house, like Dogges, rooting in the ground like Hogges, whereby it falleth out that the young children foone learne

Euery woman bringeth vp her owne children, and each child knoweth the Mother, and remayneth with her, vntill the Father either buyeth it of her, or that it goeth away from the 30 Mother it oftentimes falleth out, that the Husband taketh the child from the Mother, & felleth it to other men for a flaue. When they begin to goe, they prefently learne to fwimme, and to Colour. runne into the water, and when they are first borne they are not blacke, but reddish, as the Brafilsons are; and then by little and little begin to be blacke; and at last, to bee as blacke as Pitch, and growing bigger, run vp and downe like Sanage men, Boyes and Girles together, fighting one with another, taking each others meate from them, and from their child-hood vpwards, begin to be enuious one against the other, and so grow bigger and exercise all kind of villanie and knauerie, their Parents not once teaching them any civilitie, nor shewing them what they should doe, suffering both Boyes and Girles to goe starke naked as they were borne, with their

prinie members all open, without any shame or ciunhtie. They vie to beate and chaften their children most cruelly, striking them with great staues, in Correction fuch fort that we wondred that they did not breake their bones, which they doe not, but for fome great cause (whereby their children respect them much) and for that they beate them cruelly, so that they doe not easily forget it. Other good Discipline they teach them not , but they grow up like will trees: having spent their time thus uncludly, and beginning to be eight, ten, or twelve yearesold, then their Parents begin to inftruct and teach them to do some thing, and to labour with their hands, the Fathers teach their Sonnes to fpinne Thred made of barkes of Trees, and to knit Nets, which having learned they goe to Sea with their Fathers to fifth, and when they know how to rowe, and to guide a Boat, then two or three Boyes will goe out to- Arts. gether in a Canoe or Almadia to fish, and that which they take they carrie to their Parents for

50 food, but when they are eighteene or twentie yeares old, then their Sonnes beginne to deale for themselves, and leave their Fathers, and go and dwell two or three of them together in a house, buying or hyring a Canoe, (which is one of their Boats) and therewith goe to Sea together, and what fish they get they fell for Gold, first, keeping as much as serueth for food for themfelues, with that they fell, they buy a fathome of Linnen cloth, which they hang about their First, apparell. bodies, and betweene their legges, wherewith they couer their prinie members, for then they begin to be shame-faced; whence they proceed further and beginne to deale and traffique with Merchandize, and to carrie it abourd the flup in their Cances, and ferue Merchants to carry them to and from their thips, and to learne to deale with Gold, and to get fome thing. After that, beginning to be amorous, and to looke after young Wenches, then they are effected to bee men, 62 Which when their Fathers perceive, they looke them out Wives, and then they marrie, which Wining.

they doe very young, to that in those Countries, Children get Children. Touching the Girless they also begin to worke, and that fome-what fooner then the Boyes, they learne to make Baskets, Mats and fir w Hats of greene Rushes, which they fold with their hands, they also learne to make Caps, Purfes, and apparell made of barkes of Trees, dyed with all kinds of co-Hhhhhh 2

lours, most cunningly done, as if they were fastened together with cords, much to bee wondre at, they also learne to grind their Corne or Millia, and thereof make Bread, which they goe and fell for their Mothers, and bring them the money to buy other meate withall, and whatfor uer they get, they give it to their Mothers, who for that (when they marrie) give them fome gift, as I have faid before. In this fort the Girles begin to labour, and to learne to doe houshold worke, wherein according to their manner of house keeping, they are very curious, and exceed

the men in cunning workmanship.

The men in those Countries are of a very good proportion, with faire members, firong legs. and well-shaped bodies, which is easily to be seene, for that they goe almost naked of their bo- todies, they have round faces, and no great lips, nor wide mouthes, as the Barbarian Morrer haue, but their Nofes are flat, which they make flat when they are young, for they effeemea and members. flat Nose to be a great ornament vnto them, and to say truth, it doth not amisse in them for the according to the proportion of bodie, it beautifieth their faces : their eares are small, their eyes white, their eye browes very great, white teeth in their mouthes, (for they keepe their teeth very cleane, fouring them with small stickes, and thereby make them very smooth, and shie ning like Inorie) they have little beard, and are at least thirtie yeares of age, before they have a Long nailes, a ny. They have broad sholders, thicke armes, great hands, and long fingers, and let their nailes grow very long, which they keepe very cleane with scraping, for some of them let them grow as long as the joynt of a mans finger, which they esteeme for a great ornament, for that cause thinking themselues to be Gentlemen, The Merchants also that dwell within the Land, vie 20 those long nailes for a great shew, for they keepe them as white as Iuorie, by scraping them, and againe they have good vie for them, for that sometimes when they have not a Spoone by them, and that they vntie their Purfes to weigh Gold, and wanting a Spoone to take it out, for haffe they ofe their long nailes, and therewith put the Gold into the Scales, and I have seene some of them at one time, take at least halfe an ounce of small Gold like fand out of their Purses. They haue small bellies, long legs, broad feet, and long toes, little haire vpon their bodies, curled haire vpon their heads, but not fo much curled as the Tawnie Morres, for theirs is almost like briftels, and not like Wooll. In the palmes of their hands, under their feet, and under their lips,

> like wife haue a great prime member, whereof they make great account, therein they much fur- to As they grow in yeares, they become blacker and blacker, at thirtie yeares of age beeing in their best time, but when they are seventie or eightie yeares old, then their blacknesse beginnes to decay, and their bodies become yellowish, and their skins begin to be rugged, and to wrinkle like Spanib Leather; they exceed all other Moores in Africa, for proportion and flature of

they are very white, their skins are as foft as Veluet, and smooth, which they raze not, they

bodie.

The men are industrious and subtill persons as can be, good Workmen or Labourers, strong of bodie, strait, and very vpright, ingenious to learne any thing, and readie to conceine it: for any thing what societ they see done before them, they will soone imitate and counterfeit: they Their wits are are of a very sharpe fight, and see further then our Netherlanders, for if there be any ships at the 40 Sea, they will fee them fooner then we; they are fubtill Merchants to traffique with all, and euerie day more and more learne of the Netherlanders, fo that in time they will surpasse them, for they have good skill and knowledge in the Merchandizes which we fell them, they are hard of complexion, and have very hot stomackes, for they are able to difgest raw and most strange meates (whereat we wondred) for if they had an Offridge maw, they could not better diffeth Stomacks and fuch raw meate as they many times eate, as I will further declare, when I speake more of their manner of feeding. They are very enuious and spitefull one against the other, and will beare malice against a man ten yeares together, and when they have the meanes to be reuenged, then they will make their malice knowne, and vntill then keepe it fecret.

Ealements.

They are Idolatrous, and very superstitious in their Religion. They have a strong complexion 50 or fauour of their bodies, much like Oyle of Palme, wherewith they often anoint themselves. They are very curious to keepe their bodies cleane, and often wash and scoure them. They are much troubled with Lice and Fleas. They are not ashamed to shew their naked bodies, but they are very carefull not to let a Fart, if any bodie be by them; they wonder at our Netberlanders, that vie it so commonly, for they cannot abide that a man should Fart before them, esteeming it to be a great shame and contempt done vnto them; when they ease themselues, they commonly goe in the morning to the Townes end (where there is a place purposely made for them) that they may not bee feene, as also because men passing by should not bee molested with the smell thereof, they also esteeme it a bad thing that men should ease themselves upon the ground, and therefore they make houses which are borne vp about the ground, wherein they ease themselves, 62 and every time they doe it, they wipe; or elfe they goe to the water fide, to ease themselves in the fand, and when these Prinie-houses are full, they set fire in them , and let them burne to ashes; they pisse by Iobs as Hogs doe, and not all at one time; they are very couetous, and much addicted thereunto, and they can begge fo well, and are fo expert therein, that they furpaffe all

the beggers in our Countrey, who although they had fet ten or twelue yeeres ordinarily at the Church doores, in Holland or Zeland; or gone from doore to doore to begge an almes : yet they cannot have their leffons so perfectly as these. And although they are very hard and nigardly, and will give but little, yet when they have gotten any thing by their begging, then they will

be formewhat liberall thereof, when it costs them nothing. They are very lecherous, and much addicted to vncleannesse; especially with yong women. Lechery. whereby they are much subject to the Poxe, and other vncleane diteales, that are gotten thereby: which they make small account of, and are nothing ashamed of them. They are no lesse giuen to drinking; for they are great drunkards, and dainty mouthed, and can eate and drinke Drunkennesse Io of the best. In their feeding, they are very greedy. They cannot endure that any raine should fall and greeding vpon their bodies, and therefore they shun it. They are very great liers, and not to be credited. They are likewise much inclined to theft, for they will steale like dogs, for their Kings and Lying and Captaines practife it, and they are fo well vied thereunto, that they cannot leaue fealing. Realing. They are very expert and cunning to fish, and to till the land, and in their apparell, and going very proud, they are very flout, proud and curious in all their actions. They are not to be trufled nor credited, for they are no good pay-mafters, you wereas good give it, as trust them with any thing. They are of a very good memorie, and will remember a thing long. They are by nature warme and hott, and therefore cannot endure cold, they are not frugall, for whatfoeuer they get, they fpend it prefently : for it grieues them to keepe it,

20 fo that therein they are like to little children, that can keepe nothing. They are excellent Swimmers and Diuers in the water, and are so expert therein, that they much surpasse our Coun-

d. III.

Of their Apparell, Customes within doores, Manner of diet, Merchandiling, the vie of Dache : Wares carried thither.

Lthough their apparell and manner of drefung is not variable, yet they take a great Cutting their pride thereingas hirth in cutting their haire, every one of a feueral fashion, and as smely baire. as he can deuifeit : fome with a halfe moone, fome croffe wife, others with three or foure homes upon their heads, and every one a feverall way, so that among fiftie men,

you shall scarce find two or three that are cut alike. On their armes they hang Iron rings, three Rings. or foure you one arme cut, iome round, others flat, which are raced, and markt as we make fairings for children. About their neckes they were a ftring of Beades, of divers colours, which our Netherlanders bring them; but the Gentlemen weare Rings of gold about their necks, on their feet, they weare many frange wreathes, which they call Fetiffes, (which name they derive from Fetifica their Idolatry) for when they eate or drinke, then they power meat and drinke vpon them; and first give them to eate and drinke. At their knees also they weare a string of *Denice* beades, with some gold among them, of divers fashions, much after the manner that our yong maids weare their Corall bracelets about their armes. They weare caps made of Barkes of trees, with a long ffring hanging at them, which they bind about their heads, after the Turkib manner. in flead of a hat-band, painted and dyed of divers colours. They also make caps of Reeds, they Capa likewise have hats of Straw, as we have, and some of greene Rushes, they also make caps of Dogs and Goats skins; which they spread vpon a blocke of wood, all finely made, they weare at least two fathome of Linnen about the middle of their bodies, and betweene their legs, and round about them like a girdle, and let it hang downe beneath their knees, like the Portugals Breechese and when they goe out of doores, they take a fathome of Linnen cloth, Sey, or Stuffe, and weare it about their neckes, and croffe vnder their armes likea Cloake, and in their hands they weare

50 an Assagaie or two, and when they goe in this manner in the streets, they have a Boy or a Slave following them, which carrieth a stoole after them, and where they stay, there their slaves sets downe their stooles for them to fit and prate; they are very proud in their going, for they goe pride. very flowly, and viea long pace as they goe along through the ftreets, they looke forward, and never cast vo their eyes, untill some body that is better then themselves, speaketh vnto them, and with them they will ftand and talke, and make them an answere; but if they be such as are of meaner qualitie then themselves, to them they will make no answere : but with an angry countenance, and dispitefully, saying, hold your peace, speake not to me, esteeming themselves embaled, by fpeaking to a meaner person then themselves in the streets; for there are very great men among them, very proud in speech, and doe much honour and reuerence to strangers, to the end you should doe the like to them.

When they goe to Sea, then they put off their clothes, and taking a little peece of Linnen or cloth, about a handfull broad, tie that about their bodies, and betweene their legs, before their priny members, and when they goe on land againe, then they put it off, and wash them-

selves from head to feet, and anoint their bodies with Oyle of Palme, or fat of beasts, to make them fline; and betweene their toes put Soape, to keepe them cleane; they also vie to anoint their bodies to keepe them from the biting of Flies. In the morning, when they goe out and meet with any of their friends or acquaintance, they falute each other very fole mnly, bidding them good morrow, embracing each other in their armes, & putting forth the two fore-fingers of their right hands, one to the other, they hold each other fast by them, and kinckling them twice or thrice together, at every time bowing their heads, they fay, Auzy, Muzy, which in

Their luft.

parts. And th s is one chiefe cauf- of the many there. Combes for

courtefie. Racing.

death of fo

Rings.

their Language is good morrow. The Portugals in Mina marry Mullato women, halfe white, halfe blacke, because white women cannot live there. These weare their haire short, as the men, weare many Corals, and are to brauely apparelled. But of the Natine women of these parts. First, I will tell you of their Natures, Complexions, and Conditions: from their youths vpwards, they are given to Lust and vncleannesse, for a great while they goe with their privile members vncouered, as I faid before and as they had no shame at all, so when they begin to weare some thing upon their bodies, they Thrugh you is begin to expresse shamefac tnesse, but then begin to be lecherous, which they naturally learne any name blast from their youth vowards; and before the Netherlanders and Portugals dwelt among them and Traffique in that Countrey, the women were not so proud nor curious, as they are now; but that they have learned much of vs, by feeing that we rather defire a handsome, then an euill tauoured wench; and for that cause, they give themselves thereunto, that they might be beloued 2.3. Let Christians read this of vs; for they effeeme it to be good fortune for them to have carnall copulation with a Nether-20 wit shame lander, and among themselves, brag and boost thereof. In former time, they wie to goe starke especially tra- naked untill they were very great, as yet they doe among those that dwell within the land, as uillers. Let the Negros themselves have told vs ; but on the Sea side they are growne more shamefac't, by not Heatnens be made worfe meanes of fuch as comes out of Europe to Traffique with them. They are also thecuish, but thereby Christians of they have not so much need as the men. They are very proud in their gate and apparell they which alas is curle and fold the haire of their heads, making a hill in the middle of their heads like a Hat, now common fuch as the Datch Gentlewomen vie to weare, and round about the same, they make round ffrikes as bigge as a Dollor, which they dreffe and trim fo long, till it be as they would have it: and then they anoint it with Palme Oyle, which makes it very much frizled, They have long Combes with two teeth onely, each tooth being a finger long, which they thrust into their 30 haire, and combe it therewith; for they are troubled with Lice; they vietheir combes also for a kind of falutation or reuerence, which they dos vnto men; for when they bid one good morrow, and kincke fingers together, they put their combes out of their haire, and put them in againe, which they vie for a kind of reuerence, in stead of bowing their heads. Vpon their foreheads they cut three or foure flashes in the fiesh, about the length of the joint of a mans finger. and also on their cheekes not farre from their eares, which they suffer to swell, and rise vp, about the breadth of a knife, which they couer ouer with painting, and under their eye browes, they also make white strikes, and on their faces they set white spots, which a farre off shew like Pearles. They also race their armes and their breasts with divers kinds of cuts, every morning putting divers colours upon them, whereby they shew like blacke silke doublets cut and pinckt, 40 or like a womans Sattin stomacher, they weare eare rings of Copper or Tin, and Copper bracelets about their armes, and some of Luorie, and vpon their legs also they weare many red and vellow Copper Rings. But a yong maid that is vinmarried, weareth many Iron Rings about her armes, fometimes thirty or forty vpon one arme: a Whore (by them called Etigafou) oftentimes weare Copper Rings vpon her legs, with Bels hanging at them, which she goes ringing through the fireets. They are well proportioned and membred, much surpassing our women, in ftrength and agility of body, both when they are delivered of their children, and otherwise, as I have faid before. They are very wife and diligent in house keeping, good House-wives and Cookes but not very skilfull to make cleane & fcoure their Copper Kettles & Dilhes, to make them (hine. They keepe no more Houshold-fluffe then they have need of, you find the women so more at home in their houses, then the men commonly are; for they vie not to goe abroad to prate with their neighbours, they are not over fruitfull : for commonly it is two orthree veers before they are with child, which I thinke proceeds from their hot natures, and the aire of the Countrey, and fecondly, because their husbands have so many wives, two, three, foure, five, and Signe of riches fixe, and some more, et h one as he hath power and abilitie to keepe them; and with them, he lieth according to their manner, every one her turne, and vieth no. one onely, but hath so much to doe with them alle, that it is long before some of them are gotten with child. Their men are diligenter therein then we are, & the first thing they will tell you, is of their wifes and children, for he that among them hach many wives and children, hee is a rich man. The women teach their daughters from their youths vpwards, to bake bread, and to grind Millia, with other Housewarry, whereby it commeth to passe, that they have good skill in house-keeping because they are brought up the rein from their youths. They are alwaies rubbing their teeth with a certaine kind of wood, where with they make them to smooth that they shine, as is before said, 25 white as Luory : and in truth those white teeth make a faire shew in their blacke faces. They

weare a fadome and some a fadome and a halfe of linnen cloth about their bodies, which hangeth from beneath their brefts or their nauele down to their knees, then they take a piece of red, Apparell and blue or yellow cloth, whereof they make a Girdle, and put it about them, and on it they hang ornaments. their Kniues, Purfes with monie, and some Keies, and although they have but few Chests or Cubboords, yet they hang Keies at their Girdles, because it makes a faire shew. They also hans divers Wifpes of itraw about their Girdles, which they tie full of Beanes, and other Venuce Beades, efteeming them to be their Fetifies, or Saints, some of them take a piece of cloth, others a Mat made of barkes of Trees, others a piece of a Carpet, and weare it about their bodies, and fo every one weares something, and this they doe within the house, but when they goe to Mar-10 ket to buy fomething, then they put off those things, and goe and wash themselves in a Kertle of water from the head to the feet, and then they take another piece of Linnea to pur about their bodies and another Girdle, and another fathome or two of Linnen Cloth, and hang it about their bodie, from their brefts downe to their feet like a Gowne, and vpomit weares another thing of Sey or of striped linnen, and that she carries upon her shoulders, and under her arme like a Cloake, and carries a woodden Platter in her hand which the beares vp a long h. and so goes to Market, and when she comes home againe from the Market or other places where the hath beene, the puts off those cloathes, and put on worse, for they are more sparing then the men, and therefore they carrie the Purse, and when their Husbands will have any monie, they

must come to them for it. The women haue the government of their Houses, and the men take care as much as lyes in Their house-20 them, to earne fomething, but the women prouide the meate to ferue for their daily food , although they eare a part, they buy no more meate every day, then ferueth them for that day, or they can eate at a meale. In the evening they goe to their houses that stand without the Towne, Making of and are full of Millia (which is their kind of Corne) where they take a certaine quantitie, as bread, much as they need for their House, and with a staffe stampe it, as wee vie to stampe Spice in a Grocers shop, and that is their manner of threshing, then they fanne it in a woodden dish, till it be cleane, but fuch as have flaves make them doe it. This Millia is a faire white Seed, when it is broken, as hereafter I will shew, ouer night they steepe this Millia with a little Mais in faire water, and in the morning after they have washt, and made themselves readie, they take the Millia and May it toon a stone, as Painters doe when they grind their colours, then they takean-30 other from about a foot long, and with their hands grind the Millia as fmall as they can, till in a manner it be dough, and then it sheweth like baked Buckway Cakes, they temper their dough with fresh water and Salt, and then make Rowles thereof as bigge as two fifts, and that they lay youn a warme harth, whereon it baketh a little, and this is the bread which they wie. The Negroes of the Castle Damina, bake faire bread of Mais, which is almost like our wheaten bread, Rawfoods and that they cut in Rowles : they can also bake it so hard , that it will keepe two or three monethes fweet and hard , for they furnish their ships and Iacts with such bread, when they

fend them to the Hands of Saint Thomas, or to Angola, others that have not the meanes to have fuch bread, they goe to Market to buy it, and call it Kangues, when the Fisher-men come out of the Sea with their fish, then the women carrie it to the Market, where everie one comes to buy 40 that and fieth, fruite, and other things. They wie altogether raw and strange kind of meates, as handfuls of Graine or Manigette, (and will drinke vp whole Romers full of Aquatite at a Filthy food draught) Dogs, Cats, and filthy stinking Elephants, and Buffolds flesh, wherein there is a thoufand Maggets, and many times stinkes like carrion, in such fort that you cannot indure the smel thereof; there are likewise little Birds as bigge as a Bul-finch, of a grey colour, with red bills, which very cunningly make their Nefts vpon the smallest ends of the branches of trees, thereby to preserve themselves from Snakes or other venomous beasts. Those they eate alive, feathers

I have beene told by some of the Moores, that the Countrie people dwelling within the Land, eate dried Snakes, and the Boores or Slaues, as also the common people which dwell vp-50 on the Sea-fide, although they have better provision of meate then thole that dwell further into the Land, yet they are of io hot a nature, that they eat raw Dogs guts, and neuer leethe nor roaft them, which we our felues faw : And there was one of their Boyes left aboord a Nethers landers ship for a pawne for debt, which Boy was so greedie to eate raw meate, that although he had fufficient meate with them in the ship, yet hee would eate the Hens meate out of their Troughes, This Boy made a flicke, and at the end thereof hee draue a naile with the point vp. A greedie Boy. wards, and went and lay by the Hens Cage, and when any of them put out their heads to eate meate, he strooke them in the heads, and killed them, and then here went and shewed the Sailers, that some of the Hens were dead, which he did to the end he might eate their raw guts, and 63 would not itay fo long vntill the guts were made cleane, but tooke them and eate them raw as they came out of the Hens bellies. They eate also great store of old stanking fish, which is dried

in the Sunne, but to fay, that they eate fuch kind of raw meates for necessitie and no other, were vntruth; for they also are very daintie, and can eate good meate when they have it. There are

Palme-oiles

Drinking.

women that dwell in the Castle among the Portugals that can dresse meate well, they cate also many Hens, Goats, Oxen, and Hartes, but such meate is not eaten by the common people, but those that eate them are Gentlemen, or such as are rich, and are able to buy them; they also eate Their Trees. Iugnamis, Bannanas, and Patates. They have three kind of trees, as the Palme-trees, whereof fome are Females which yeeld no wine, but beare Grapes as bigge as Plummes, of an Orange colour, at the one end being some-what blackish: those Grapes they peele to the stones, and thereof they make Oile, which they call Palme Oile, which is verie delicate and good, which they vie to dreffe their meate withall, and make good fawce thereof for their fish, the thickest of this Oile they vie to anoint their bodies withall, to make them cleane, and the women vie it to frizell their haire, the veines are as great as Acornes, and as hard as a frone, at the end thereof having three round holes, they beate them in pieces, and within them find certaine Nuts, like little earthen pellets, much like hazell-nuts, but when you eate them, they tafte of the wood.

and are verie drie. They likewise have many Beanes and Pease, whereof some are like Turkie Beanes of a purple colour, those Beanes are good and fat, which they dresse with Oile of Palme, and it is a very excellent meate and nouritheth well, but the other kind of Beanes and Peafe, they vie not to eate. for they have no great quantitie of them, growing thereabouts. The lugnamis also they vie in many places in flead of bread. Their drinke commonly is nothing but water, but yet in some places they brew a little Mais in water, which beeing fodden together, is almost like a kind of beere, which they also vie much to drinke and call it Poitou, others buy a pot of Palme-wine, an and because that will not continue long, therefore foure or fine of them goe together, and buya pot or two : a pot of theirs is ten pots of ours, and that they pay for together, which they powre into a great Cabas, which growes upon Trees, whereof some are halfe as big as a Kilderkin and will hold at least twelve Kans, and then fit downe round about it to drinke, whereof everie man fenderh his louingeft and trueft wife a little pot full home to drinke, and the first draught that they drinke, they take it out of the Cabas with a smaller Cabas, and when the first man drinkes. the reft fland vp. and taking his Cap or Hat off, lay their hands vpon his head, and with a loud roice cries, Tantofi, Tantofi; at the first draught, they drinke not the Cabas full out, but leaves little in it, which they throw vpon the ground, faying, 1. OV, as giving their Fetifies that to drinke, and if they have other Fetiffas on their armes or feete, they fpit drinke out of their mouthes you them, as if they gaue them drinke also; for they are of opinion, that if they do it not, or forget to doe it, they should not drinke their wine quietly together, but that their Fetiffes would let them. Naturally they are great Drinkers, and vie no leffe vnfeemelineffe in their feeding but eate as vnmannerly and greedily, as if they were a companie of Hogs: for fitting Strange hun- down you the ground to eate, they stay not till they have eaten one morfell vp, but still cramme in, and they put not their meate into their mouthes, but pull their meate in pieces, and take it

never faile nor cast it beside their mouthes, whereat we wondred much. They are alwayes hun-

grie, and would willingly eate all day long, which shewes that they have very hot mawes, and

although the Countrey is very hot, whereby the heate of the Aire commonly should fill mens

stomakes, yet they are hungrie, and wee Netherlanders are not weake stomaked there, but al-

waies have good appetites, whereby I am of opinion, that heate in those Countries makes men

hungrie : but because I am no Doctor of Physicke, I will not intreate thereof. And because they

make great account of that drinking together, they are verie earnest and industrious to get some-

thing, and to make prouition of Gold, which having gotten, they cannot be frugall or sparing,

but prefently goe and drinke it with their companions, now one, and then another, euerie one

his turne, and if one gets more then his fellowes, then hee must be liberaller then his fellowes.

that is, when they begin to deale with the Merchants, and to goe aboord the ships, and he that

as poore or bath not much, can hardly beare companie to drinke, because they are not fparing,

to live by, but live voon that which they got from others by force, which was not much, speci-

As I have viderflood by the Inhabitants of those Countries, before the Portugals came this

vp with their three middlemost fingers, and gaping, cast it so right into their mouthes, that they

Vaciuill fee-

Good fellow-

thip or prodi-

Their tradings ther to deale with them, they had very little or no kind of Merchandize to traff que withall, or

ally to get any thing to apparell themselves; for before that time they went all naked, as I faid before, much leffe had they any cattle or victuals for their maintenance, but only fuch as the First simplicity Portugals brought thither, and by that meanes the Countrie was filled and replenished with diners kin is of beafts and Corne, whereby at this day, there is almost all kind of things that are necessarie and needfull for mans sustenance, and otherwise to bee had in those Countries. And within a while after, the Portugals began to traffique and deale with the Sauage Inhabitants, they

when they have gotten any thing.

like wife began to know their Merchandize.

At the first, in former time they came and brought their Gold vnto the Portugals, and bought of them fuch things as they wanted, as Linnen Cloth, &c. but the people dwelling further First trading, within Land, durift not venture to come to the Portugals to deale with them, as wondring at them, it being a fearefull thing vnto them to fee white men apparelled, and they themselves blacke and vnapparelled, (as the like happened vnto our men; for at the first they were afraid to fee Blacke (Moores) and therefore they brought their monie to those that dwelt on the Sea fide, where the Portugals traffique, and told them what wares they would have, and they went to the Caltle, and bought such things as they defined, as Iron, Tinne, Copper Basons, Knines, Cloth, Linnen, Kettles, Corais; and fuch like wares, and the Merchants that fent them to the Partugals, paid them for their paines, vpon enery Pelo of Gold by them disburfed, fo that if they bellowed many Petoes, they received a good deale of monie for their Factoridge, and by that meanes they got their livings.

10 But after that, when we began to traffique thither; (the first that went from hence thither First Dutch out of Holland, to deale with the Negroes, beeing called Barent Erickson of Medenblicke) and Trade. found what profit the Portugals did there, we increased our Trade thicker , and fent more thins with the faid Barons, as a fit man for it, because he knew the Coast, as having beene there with the Portugals. But having no place you the Land (as the Portugals had) to carrie our wares ashoare, and to lay it in Ware-houses to traffique with them as time served, and durst not, or else might not goe on Land, we were confirmed to flay with our shippes at anchor before their Townes, attending for the Merchants, that came abourd our thips with their Canoes, at which time the Negroes leeing that wee had Merchandize abound, imboldened themselves to traffique with vs, and brought their Gold aboord our ships, and for that at this present they deale but 20 little with the Pertugals, but only with our Countrimen, therefore I will shew in what man-

ner they deale with vs.

In the morning betimes, they come abourd our fhips with their Canoes, or Scures to traffique with ve and the cause why their Merchants came so early abourd is for that in the morning the wind, which they call Bofone, blowes off from the Land, and then it is caline smooth water for Windin the about noone the wind which they call Agom Bretton, begins to blow out of the Sex and then morning from they row to Land againe: for the people that dwell within the Land, can hardly brooke the land & calme-Seas, for when they are abourd the ship, they can scarcegoe or stand, but lie downe and spue like Dogges, and are verie Sea-ficke , but their Rowers and Pilots that bring them abourd, are hardie enough, and never are ficke, by reason of their drily vsing to the Seas. But some of their 30 Merchants when they come about our thips, are to ficke, that they cast out all they have within their bodies; and by reason of their beeing so sicke infaire weather, they are so afraid of the wind (when the waves goe any thing high) that they make as much hafte home as they can, and fome of them dare not venture vpon the Seas to goe abourd the ships, but deliner their monie to the Pilots or Factors, telling them what Merchandize they defire to buy, and those Tolker come with the Gold aboord the hips, haning a Purfe which thangeth about their middles, wherein they put their Gold, and enery feueral mans Gold is in a piece of Cloth or Paper by it felfe,

times they have twelve or ten mens Gold to beflow, which is called an English of Gold, and of fome two, three, or foure, and when any of their monies is not waight, then they put it into 40 their Purse, and carrie it to the man agame, for if they should put any thing to it, to make it full waight, the Merchant would not give if them againe, for they weigh their Gold first upon the Land, and know how much it is before they fend it abourd the flip for they credit not one the other, and when they have bestowed their monie, then we must give them some-what to boot,

and they can tell which is everie mans, and what wares hee defireth to have for it, and fome-

which they call Dache.

When we began to traffique here in the Countrie with two or three thips, as one of Middle- Vadermining burgh, one of Amsterdam, and one of Schiedum, and that all our ships met and lay at anchor and defrauding together to fell our wares, the one ship seeing that the other traff qued more, and vented more Merchans. wares then his fellowes, to find the meanes to get the Merchants aboord their ships, they willed the Pilots (with whom they must hold friendship, for they carrie the Merchants abourd) to so bring them abourd their ibips, and they would give them something for their labours, and the Pilots accordingly to get something, brought them about that thip, which had made them that offer, for they are verie couetous, which the other thips perceiuing, willed the Pilots to bring the Merchants aboord their shippes, and they would takewise give them something : and they made them answere, that if they would give them as much as the other did, they would come abourd their ships, which they promised to doe, and game them more Dache then the other, and by that meanes drive the Merchants, Pilots, and Telker aboord their fhips, which the other ships feeing, and thinking that their Merchants wares coft them no more then the others, gaue them more Dache then the others, and by that meanes striuing one with the other, they deminished one and the others gaine, and in fine, their gifts grew to luch a rate, that at this day, their Da-

62 che amounteth vnto fixe or feuen per cente. And now it is come to passe, that whereas the Countrie people and Merchants were wont to pay the litridge and brokeridge to the Pitots and Tolken, to carrie them abound the ships, they fought to the Merchants and Countrie Moores to get them into their Canoes , for greedineffe of Dache, which they got of the Factors for their labours, to bring the Merchants aboord, and

thereby in stead of paying them for going aboard, they give the Merchants much Dache, in repard of the great profit they get thereby.

Many Merchants comming to the Sea fide to buy wares, some of them a hundred or two hundred miles from within the land, bring great flore of gold, & haue divers flaves with them, which they lade with the wares which they buy in the ships, wherof some have twenty, others thirtie. and some more, as they have meanes, and according to the trade that they wie : which Merchanes or Morrish countrey people, know the houses or lodgings, where they vie to lie, and waish their money to their Tolke or Hofte, and tell them what goods or wares they will have ; who comming aboard, commonly bring one of the Merchants with them, for they trust not one the pe ther, and leave the rest with their slaves you the land, which tell them what wares they de- 16 fire to haue; and if it be a Merchane that can speake no Portugall speech, they will prefently tell von and will the Factor not to speake Maris speech vnto them, because their Merchant is one that dwels farre within the land; thereby giving you to understand, that they meane to deceius him , and to beguile him of much money. The poore Merchant being ficke, and lying in the hip spaing like a dogge, in the meane time the Brokers make the match for them, telling the Factors how much ware they define to have for for much gold; for that the wares are commonly fold all at one price: The Tolken makes not many words with the Factors, but fet certains wares before the Merchant, as little as they can to content him for his money, and the price being made with him, he weighes their gold, and takes the wares, and goes on land againe; and the Merchant being gone home, then the Pilots and Tolken come aboard the thips againe, to fetch that which they have coozoned the Merchant off : fo that oftentimes the Merchants are deceived of a third part of their goods by fuch practifes tothers, while he lookes about, or turnes to fpue, fteale a peece of the Merchants gold, and put it into the r Mouthes, Eares, or Nofirels, making the Merchant believe that his money is too light: the Merchant for his part, feeing that by meanes of their theeuery his money will not reach out; because it is too hight, that it may weigh more then it is, blowes in the Ballance, which the Factors oftentimes perceiving not, and thinking that they have their full warght, are by that meanes deceived, and come floor of their reckoning; fo that they have a hou fand devices to fleale, and to beguile the Merchants. At first they were woont to be very simple in their dealing, and trusted the Netberlanders very much, whereat we wondred : for they were of opinion, that white men were Gods, and would not deceius them and these sooks the wares upon their words, without reckoning it after them, whereby they were decemed; for, that is they bought ten fatheme of Linner cloth they found but eight, and by that meanes; loft two fatheme, and other things after the rate, which the Factors did fo groffely, that the Merchants in the end perceived it, and began to looke better to themselves, and grew to subtill in their reckioning, that if they bought one hundred fathome of Linnen, they could reckon it to a fathome, and tell whether they had their measure or not; fo that now if you doe them any wrong, by measuring or reckoning, they will not come about your ship any more; and which is more, for any bad looke, or hastie word that you shall give

Cooxening

White Deuils

928-

them, they will never be friends with you againe. Wares for Troubles and warres in the Neiberlands, confirmed we to feek Traffique here alfo, and to vinthele parts of
the figure for the first property of the first property o Guines, and for that fince the Netberlanders came hither to Traffick with the Negroes, Moores, the Portugalls have best trading, and are wholly decayed. First, we bring them great store of slight Linnen cloth, whereof there is very much frent in those Countries, for they apparell themselues therewith, and it is the chiefest thing they vie for that purpose : besides this , we carry them great store of Basons, as little Basons, Barbers Basons, Basons to drinke in, Platters of Copper, flat Basons, greatbroad Copper pans, at the least two fathome about, and small Poinets without edges: The small Basons they vie to put Oile in, wherwith they amoint themselves, and the greater fortof. them they let in the graues of the dead, & vie them to carry divers things in The Barbers Basons they vie to wash themselues in, & when shey cut their haire, platters they vie to lay ouer others to couer them withall, to keepe dust and filth from falling, into their things. The great broad to Pans, are by them vied to kill a Goat or a Hogge in, and to make it cleane therein, in flead of a Tub. The Poffenets they vie to dreffe their meat in, which ferueth them to very good purpose, they will not have them with steales, as we vie them here with vs, and many other fich like Basons of Copper, which our thips bring thither in great quantities, and therewith fill the Countrie fo full; and by meanes thereof, they are fold as good cheape there vato the Negros, as they are bought in Amsterdam, and although there are so many of those Basons brought thither, and no ware that weareth to much, as Linnen, yet you fee but few old Copper things there, and therefore you must thinke, that there is great flore of people inhabiting further within the land, which vie fo great quantitie of fich things.

We carrie thither great flore of Kettles, which they vie to fetch water in, out of their pits and Vaileyes, and I me red Copper pots Tinned within, wherein they vie to put water, in flead of a barrell of beare to drinke, earthen pots they wie also to drinke out of. Iron is vied by them to make their weapons as Aslagaie, cutting Knues, Poniards, &c. The Aslagaies & Poniards

they yie for the warres. The cutting Kniues, to Till and cut vp the ground in flead of Spades. and fome to cue wood withall, and to vie about their Building, for they have no other Tooles : They also buy great flore of Red, Blew, Yellow, and Greene Rupinsh cloth, which they vie for Girdles about their middles, to hang their Kniues, Purfes, Poniards, and fuch like things at. They vie white Spanish Serges to weare upon their bodies, in stead of Clokes, Rings of Copper and Braffe, which they weare about their armes and feet for a great pride. They also vie Tim things, as Rings for their armes, but not many. They vie many Kniues which wee make with vs in Holland, and call them Docke Meffen. They also vie great store of Venice Beads, of all kinds of colours, but they delire some colours more then others, which they breake in foure 10 or flue peeces, and then grind them vpon a ftone, as our children grind Cherrie ftones : and then put them vpon ftrings, made of Barke of trees, ten or twelve together, and therewith Traffique much : Those ground Corals they weare about their neckes, hands and feet. They also vie round Beads, and specially great round Counters, which they hang and plait among their haire, and let them hang ouer their eares. Pins they vie to make Fish-hookes, Horse tailes they vie when they dannes, & also when they fit ftill, to keep the flies from their bodies; Looking, glaf-fes, and finall Copper milke Kans, with many such like things. But the chiefest wares that are vetered there, and most vsed among them, is, Linnen, Cloth, Braffe, and Copper things, Basons, Kettles, Kniues, and Corals.

At first we yied many times to deceive them, not onely in measuring of Linnen, but in deli- Their mowuering them broken and patcht Basons, and peeced Kettles for their money; rotten Cloth, ledge in our through the which they might have fitted Beanes; Kniues that were fo ruftie, that they could warres, and trihardly without breaking pull them out of their sheathes, with such like wares. But now by all thereof. vie and experience, they have attained to fuch skill in our wares, that they are almost able to furpaffe vs therein. For, first, when they buy any Linnen cloth, they looke if it be not to

flight and thin, and whether it be white and broad; for they are very curious to buy white and

broad Linnen, and respect not the strength so much as the breadth of the Linnen ; for they yfe to hang it about their bodies, specially the women, which defire to have it hang downe from underneath their breafts, to their knees. Secondly, they take Woollen cloth, and hold it wo an 30 gainst the light, to see if it be thin. They draw the Kniues ont of the sheathes, to see if they he not ruftie. They looke vpon the Balons one by one, to fee if they have no holes in them: or whether they be broken, and the least hole that they spie in them, they lay them away, and defire to have others for them; and also if they be but a little foule or greafie, they will none of them : And for quantitie and qualitie make triall of all other wares, as curiously as in En-

d. IIII.

What Custome the Merchants pay to their Kings. Their Measures, Weights, Scales, Markets: Alfo their Sabbath, Fetifios and Superflitions.

He Kings have their Customes dwelling vpon the Sea Coast, where the ships lie to Traffique with the Countrey people, and they are placed there, to see that the Customes. Kings lofe not their Rents and Imposts, and that it may be the better paid them, and

no deceit vied, they appoint one of their Sons or fome one of their neerest friends to be present with them. Those Cultomers receive the Custome of the fish, which is taken in his precinct, or before his Hauen, and to that end he hath a measure to measure it withall, and if the measure be not full (of any fish what souer) then it payeth no Custome, but if their fish bee 50 more then filleth that measure, then he taketh the fifth fish thereof, or as much as he thinketh

good to take for his Custome, and that is presently sent to the King of that quarter by his slaues, which every morning come thither to fetch the fifh.

Such Merchants as come thither a great way out of the Countrey, pay to the King of the Hanen where they goe to Traffique, the weight of fixe pence in gold, for their passage through his Toll Countrey, and whether they intend to buy much or little, the passage money is all one, and when they have Traffique with the Factors in the ships, and come to land, the Customer taketh a part of their goods from them, which is commonly a fourth part of that which they have bought, and carrieth it away with him, then the Merchant takes the rest and carrieth it to his lodging, which done, he goethbacke agains to the Customer (whom they call la guarda, 60 within Portugall is the watch) and agree with him, and pay him as little as they can, and io have their goods againe, and if they have bestowed lesse then two ounces of gold vpon wares, then there is no fet Custome to bee paid for it, but they give as much as they can agree vpon for it, with the Cultomer, and that is the Cultomers owne profit, in stead of his wages, but whatfoe-

ner they buy about the value of two ounces of Gold, then they must pay an English of Gold for cultome thereof, those two ounces of Gold they call Benda.

Fines.

Also if they have stolne any thing from any of their Countrie people, they also pay monie for it, as the case requireth. And also when they have laien with another mans Wife, then the King hath a forfeit paid vnto him for it. And when the Countrie people come to Market with their weapons, they must leave their Weapons in some place, or else they must pay a forseign which is fixe penie weight in Gold, if they come with any Armes or Weapons to their Sea. townes, And they also that counterfeit falle Gold, with divers other forfeitures, which are all paid to the King, whereof the Customer everie three monethes maketh his account, and payeth In it vnto the King.

Weights and

They make Weights of Copper of divers forts, and have little Copper Scales which are round, and hollow like an Orange peele. A Benda is their greatest weights, which with vs is two nunces; Benda-affa, is halfe a Benda, which is an ounce. Affuwa, is two Pefos and a halfe. Eggeba, is two Pesos, or halfe an ounce. Seron, is a Peso and a halfe. Eusanno is a Pelo or a Loot. Quienta, is three quarters of a Pelo, each Pelo is a Loot. Media taba, is a quarter of a Pefo, or a small parcell. Agiraque, is halfe a Pefo, or halfe a Loot, each Pefo is a Loot; fo that their weights are all one with ours for the names, but differ in the pound a Pefo and a halfe, which is a Loot and a halfe, so that their weights are so much lighter then ours. They measure their Cloth by two fathome together, which they cut one from the other. and

Mealures.

Telling or

call it lectam, and fell their Linnen in that fort among themselves, and those two fathome atter 20 our measure is a storke and three quarters, and they are verie subtill in measuring of their Linnen, and can reckon that so many of our storkes make so many of their fadomes. They cut their Woollen-cloth in pieces not aboue a handfull broad, which they vie in stead of Girdles about their middles, and fell the Cloth in this fort among themselves in this manner, and vie no other kind of measure thereunto. They are not verie subtill nor expert in telling, specially to reckon, for when they have past the number of ten, they rehearse so many words one after the other for one number, that they are fo cumbred, that they cannot tell how to get out of it, and fo fit buz. zing fo long, till at last they have forgotten their number, and are forced to begin to tell agains. but fince they began to deale with the Naberlanders , and were to reckon aboue the number of ten, for they vie no more among them, they tell till they come to ten, and then take one of 30 their fingers into their hands, and then tell to ten againe, and then take another finger into their hand, and so proceed till they have both their hands full, which in all maketh an hundred, then they marke that vp, and then begin againe to tell to ten, and vie the same order as before.

Eurrie Towne hath Market daies specially appointed, wpon the which you find more to bee ther are kept. bought then vpon other daies, and eueric Towne hath his Market vpon fuch a day, as the others No Market on haue it not, and so eueric one differeth vpon their daies, and when their Market daies come, they their Sabbath, haue two daies Market one after the other, wherein the principall Boores or Countrie people, come from divers places to traffique with the ships. They have their Sunday also, but on that

day they doe nothing.

In the morning betimes, affcone as it is day, the Countrie people come with their Sugar to Canes to the Market, carrying two or three bundles together vpon their heads, which are bound up like faggots, and being in the Market they vibind them, and fo lay them downe vpon the ground, which done, the Inhabitants of that place come to buy them, some two, others three, and some more as they have need of them, whereby they have soone fold their Sugar Canes, for they wie many of them to eate, and alloone as they have fold their Sugar Canes, then the women come to the Market with their wares, who bring Oranges, Limons, Bannanas, Backouens, Potatoes, Indianias, Millia, Mais, Rice, Manigette, Hens, Egges, Bread, and fuch like neceffaries, which those that dwell on the Sea-side have need of, and are fold both vnto the Inhabitants, and to the Netherlanders in the ships, which come thither to buy it. The Inhabitants of the Sea-fide, come also to the Market with their wares, which they buy of the Netherlanders, 25 50 Linnen Cloth, Kniues, ground Corals, Looking-glaffes, Pinnes, arme Rings, and Fish, which their Husbands have gotten in the Sea, whereof the women buy much, and carrie them to other Townes within the Land, to get some profit by them, so that the fish which is taken in the Ses, is carried at least an hundred or two hundred miles up into the Land, for a great Present, although many times it stinkes like carrion, and hath a thousand Maggots creeping in it. Those women are verie nimble about their bufinesse, and so earnest therein, that they goe at least fine or fixe miles every day to the places where they have to doe, and are laden like Affes : for at their backes they carrie their children, and on their heads they have a heavie burthen of fruit, or Millia, and so goe laden to the Market, and there she buyeth fish, to carrie home with her, so that oftentimes they come as heavily laden from the Market, as they went thither. Thele pay no 69 custome to the King, but if they find any Feeffes in the way as they goe (which are their Idolatrous gods) they give them fome of their fruit or Millia to eate, which is as much as if they gaue them the tenth part thereof.

Tithes.

Those women goe seven or eight together, and as they passe along the way they are verie merrie and pleatant, forcommonly they fing and make a noise; about noone the Countrie people begin to come to the Market with their Palme-wine, which they carrie in pots, some bringing one fome two pots, as they are able, they come armed to the Market, hauring a hewing Kmite at their Girdles, and two or three Affagayes in their hands, but when they enter into the Market, then they let their armes in a certain place appointed thereunto, and when they haue fold and goehome againe, euery man takes his weapons and goes his way, not once changing one with the other, but everie man takes his owne, and when the Notberlanders and the Negroes have done traffiquing: when the Countrie people come to the Market with their wine. To looke what the Pilots or Rowers (that carried the Merchants abourd the ships) have gotten, or that was given them for Dache, by the Factors, therewith they buy Palme-wine, and drinkeit vp together, they pay for their Wine either with Gold, or Linnen; but for the most part, they pay for it with Gold, which they weigh verie narrowly, one vnto the other, and when there are many Merchants, and that the Wine is much defired, then it is oftentimes deerer then Spanish Wine is with vs.

Befides this, the Market folke know enerie one their place, and where to fit to fell their wares, as those with fruit stand in one place, they with Sugar Canes in another place, they with Wood, Water, and Bread by themselves; and those that sell Wine in a place by themselues, but the Palme-wine which is brought thither by Sea, from other places, that is ne-20 uer brought to the Market, for many times when it comes in the Canoes in the evening, when the people have need thereof, affoone as it is brought on Land, the Negroes fland readie vpon the sheare watching for it, and going to the Merchants, enerie one takes a Pot, and carries it away. fo that they have presently fold it, & the Me rehant needs not feare that his Wine will fowre for want of vtterance, for they are so greedie of it, specially for to drinke, that oftentimes they fight

and fall together by the eares for it.

They yie no monic nor any kind of Mint, wherewith they pay each other, but when they buy any thing they pay for it with Gold, and that by weight, and it is a verie small parcell that hath not some kind of weight to weigh it withall, and they pay each other with foure fourre pieces of Gold, weighing a graine or halfe a graine. The cause why they pay in this fort, 20 and have this custome, is by meanes of the Portugals, of the Castle of Myna, which shewed them this way, for before the Portugals came thither, the Negroes knew no fuch thing, but when they bought any thing, they exchanged ware for ware, but the Portugals cd ming thither had no monie to pay them, when they bought fruits or other victuals to eate, an therefore they defired to pay with Kacramen, in fread of monie, & fo it is the custome about the Castle of Myna, that they have great flore of Kacramen, which they vie for paymet more then in other places. In places. where the Portugals are not known, the Negros vie not that kind of Mint, but fel their Gold as it commeth out of the Earth, for they know not how to melt or vie their Gold as the Negros do. that deale with the Portugals, and in stead of monie paid one the other in small stones: they vie also small pieces of Iron of a finger length, with a halfe Moone thereon, which they vie in stead of monie, and have no other kind of monie in the Golden Coast of Guinea, then fuch as I faid

before, wherewith they pay each other. Although they are altogether wild, rough, and vnciuill, having neither Scripture nor Bookes. nor any notable Lawes that might be fet downe, or declared to shew the manner of their policie and living, yet when they have past the fix daies of the weeke in labour and paines taking. to get their linings, the feuenth day they leave working, and reckon that to bee their day of ease, and abstinence from worke, or their Sunday, which they call Dio Fetissos, which in our Fetissos day. speech should fignifie Sunday, but they observe it not upon our Sunday, nor upon the Jewes Sab- An Echaicke Sabbath, both Day but had it man Triedday the second working day in the weather what I won Triedday the second working day in the weather what I bath Day, but hold it yoon Tuesday, the second working day in the weeke; what law or opini-

on they have to moone them thereunto, I know not, but they hold Tuefday for their Sunday, and that day the Fishermen goe not to the Sea for fish: The women and Countrie people that 50 day bring no Wine to the Market, but all the Wine which that day they draw out of the trees. they deliver it vnto the King, which in the evening hee giveth vnto his Gentlemen, and they drinke it among them. That day they doe no kind of worke, nor traffique with other but fuch as dwell on the Sea-fide, refraine not for all that to goe aboord the shippes, and to buy wares of the Netherlanders. In their Markets they have a fquare place foure foot every way, supported with foure Pillars, and about two cubits high from the ground, flat on the top, and courted close with Reedes, and hanged round about Wifpes or Feriffes of straw, whereon they lay Millia with Feiffer mease. Palme-oile or water, and give their god that to eate and drinke to fustaine him withall, that he

should not die for hunger or thirst, thinking that he eateth and drinketh it and lives by it, but 60 the Birds of the Aire eate the graine, and drinkes the water, and when it is eaten they anomit the Altar with Oile, and fet moremeate and drinke vpon it, thinking thereby to doe their god great facrifice and feruice.

They have also a Priest, who in their speech they call a Fetifiero, hee voon their Sabbath day The Fetifiere, fits youn aftoole, in the middle of the Market before the Altar or place whereupon they facri- or Prieft.

fice vnto their Fetiffo, then all the men, women and children come and fit round about him. and His preaching. there he speaketh vnto them, & they sit still to heare him but what it is, or what it meaneth that cannot I learne, nor perceiue, neither can you get it from them, for I haue oftentimes asked them about it, but they will not tell, but are ashamed to declare it. But I have seene this Fetifiere. have a por with a certaine drink, (wherein there was a Snake) standing by him, and a Wifpe, and fome women with their little children went to him, which children hee stroaked with colour. or with some of that drinke, and so they went away, which I ghesse to be a kind of Salue against their Fetiffe, for they efteeme their Fetiffes to be both good and euill. And when their Fetiffere hath made an Oration vnto them, then he flands vp and imeareth the Altar with his Wilpe. and drinke out of his pot, and then the people ving certaine words and making a great noise a- 10 mong them, clapping their hands together, cry I. on, I. on, and therewith their preaching is

Their Mattins.

Appealing

done, and so euerie one goes home to his house. They hang many straw Wispes upon their heads, and thinke thereby to bee free and safe as long as they weare them, and that their Fetifies can doe them no harme. In the morning betimes when they have washt their bodies cleane, they stroake their faces with white stripes, made of earth like chalke, which they do in honour of their Fetifo, and vie it in stead of praiers in a morning; when they eat any thung they present their Feiss (the straw Wispes which they weare about their legges) the first bit, and also the first draught that they drinke, giving him to drinke, which if they doe not, they thinke they shall have no good lucke that day. for they perswade themselves that their Feriss would not otherwise suffer them to be quiet. When 20 the Fishermen take but small store of fish, then they thinke that their Fetifio is angrie, and therefore will give them no fish, then they make a great crie among them, and goe to their Fetifere, and give hum Gold to conjure their Feriff, to fend them store of fish. This Conjurer presently goes, and makes all his Wives (two, three or foure, or as many as he hath) put on their best apparell and ornaments, and with them goes howling and crying round about the Towne, firiking themselues upon their brests, and clapping their hands flat together, and so making a great firre and noise, goe to the Sea-side, and taking boughes from the trees, shang them about their necket: those trees they esteeme to be their Fetiss Dustanam, who they thinke send them fish. Then, the Conjurer or he that should bewitch the Ferifos, comes with a Drumme, and plaies or founds before the trees, which they efteeme to be good for that purpose, which done hee goes to his 30 Wives youn the strand, and when they have spoken one vnto the other a good while, he casteth Millia into the Sea for his meate, with other colours, thinking that thereby their god is appeafed, and will let them take fish enough. When the King receiueth not coftone enough, to maintaine himfelfe withall, then he goeth

Confultation with their O- to a tree which he efteemeth to be his Fetiffs, and facrificeth vnto it, carrying it meat and drinks then the Conjurers come and conjures the tree, to tell them whether there will any Merchants come or not, which to doe they make a heape of afhes, in forme like a Sugar-loafe, and cutting a bough from the tree flicke that in it, then they take a Bason of water and drinke out of it and therewith sprinkle the bough of the tree, which done they speake each to other, and then againe they sprinkle more voon it, after that they take some of the ashes, and be-dawbe their fa- 40 ces therewith, end in that manner vie many foolish and vaine Ceremonies, and not long after they shall heare a voice which is the Deuill, that saith something vnto them, and therewith they goe home againe, and bring word what their Fetife hath said. They hang many of those

things about their children for diseases, as is said before, as also of their drinke of icalousie. When any man dieth, they also make a Fetifo, and defire it to bring the bodie into the othe world, and not to trouble it in the way as it goeth, then the next our neerest kinsman killetha Hen, and dreffeth it ready to be fodden, which done, they goe and fit in a corner of their house: and with him take all his Feriffer, and place them in order, as their greatest god in the middle, and the rest of meaner fort by it, then he takes certaine beades, some made of shels, some of Beanes and great Peafe, and others of feathers, mixed with Buttons made of barkes of trees, 10 and hangs them upon the Feuffos. After that they take the bloud of the dead Hen, and therewith fpinkle their Fesifo (for a dead man must offer bloud vnto his god) then hee fetcheth certaine Herbs out of the fields, and hangs them about his necke like a chaine. In the meane time, while the man is in this fort made readie. The Hen is fodden, and being fodden then he brings it, and putting it in a Platter, sets it in the middle of the Feriffer, which done, hee beginneth to coniure, vfing many words, and caffeth water or wine of Palme vpon his Feiffe, then he takes two or three of the greene leaves, which he hath about his necke, and rolleth them betweene his hands, making a little bowle or bale thereof, which he takes in the two fore-fingers of both his hands, and thrufts it betweene his legges, twice or thrice one after the other, faying, to his Fetifo, Ancie, which is as much as if he should fay, All haile. After this he wringeth the sap out 60 of that ball, and lets it drop vpon his Fetifo; which done he laies the ball vpon the ground, and takes two or three leaues more of the Herbs he hath about his necke, and rolles them in his hands, and having made them in a Ball, thrusts them betweene his legges, speaking certains words as aforelaid, and then lets the fap drop vpon his Ferifo, and this he doth vntill such time

CHAP. 2.S.4. Birds and Fish gods. Tree gods. Hill gods, &c.

as he bath rolled and wrung all the greene Herbs in that fort, which he had about his necks then he takes all the balls or leaves together in his hand, and thereof maketh a ball as bigge as a matis fift, wherewith he wipeth his face, and that also is a Fetifo, which being done the dead bodie shall rest in peace, and therewith he packeth up all his trinkets, and laieth them aside untill another time, that some other bodie setteth him a worke. This kind of Superstition they esteeme Amulets. for agreat holineffe for their bodies; for when they goe to warre they hang fuch beades about their neckes, armes and legges, thinking that their Feiffe will defend them thereby, and preferue them from killing, and thinke that they need not feare any thing. They efteeme the Pitteir alfo for a god, for when they goe from one Towne to another, and heare it call, they are

exceeding joyfull and glad, for they fay that it is a Fetifo, which fpeaketh vnto them, faving, Pitaira Fetiffo. that all those that then trauell in the way, shall have no hurt, nor need feare any danger, for he will defend them from all men that feeke to moleft them, and where focuer they heare it crie, there they fet Millia for him to cate, and pots full of water to drinke, and dare not passe that place without giving it femething, whereby in fome corners of fireets, and in the Woods you shall fee a number of pots; and other meates as Millia, Mais, &c. which they fer there to honour the Feiffe the Peteir, whereby it appeareth that they make great account of Birds and alfo of fome filhes, as of the Tonny, which they by no meanes will take, but efterme it to be their

Ferificer Sea-god. They take many Sword-fiftes, and cutting of the Swords they drie them, Bird and fift . which they allo efteeme for a great Feriffo. Others put their truft in fome trees, and when they gods, defire to know any thing they goe to those trees, where the Deuill oftentimes appeares in forme Tree godes. of a blacke Dogge, or of fuch like things, and many times mulibly, and maketh answere vno they killed a

fuch things as they aske him. So that if you aske them any thing touching their beliefe, and Dutchman for they sine you no answere, which maketh any shew of truth, then they say that their Petillo said cutting these fo, and willed them to doe it, for they efteeme him for their god, and vie many fooliff toyes trees against and vaine shewes when they pray to him, and serue him, thinking that it doth them good, and their will. that they merit much thereby, yet it helpeth them not. But they rather find themselves deceiued, and as they deale with the Deuill, and put their trust in him, so he rewardeth them, and vet they defire not to heare of him, but feare him much.

There are some hils in those Countries, whereon oftentimes it thundereth and lighteneth. 30 and thereby manie times fome Filhermen, or other Moores, are cast away or receive some great Hil-gods. hurt, which causeth them to thinke that their god is angry, and would have some meate and drinke, or wanteth fome other thing, and by that meanes they hold manie hils to be their bods. and fee meate and drinke vpon them to pacifie them withall, and they dare not passe along by them, without going vp and giving them fomething fearing that if they did it not, they would doe them some hurt, and make each other beleeue such things, and whatsoeuer they beleeue, and once conceine in their heads, it will never be extirped, but have as firme an opinion of their Fetiffer as possible may be. But when the Netberlanders faw them vse fuch vaine toyes, which were fo foolish, and laught and iested at them, they were ashamed, and durst make no more Fesiffes in our prefence, but were ashamed of their owne apislinesse.

We asked them of their Beliefe, and what opinion they had of diuers things; as first, when Opinions of they died what became of their bodies and foules. They made vs answere, that the bodie is dead, the soules dobut they knew not what any refurrection at the latter day meant , as wee doe : but when they parted. die they know that they goe into another World, but they know not whither, and that therein they differ from brute beafts, but they cannot tell you to what place they goe, whither vnder the Earth or vp into Heauen, but when they die, they vie to give the dead bodie fomething to carrie with him, whereby it is to be marked that they believe that there is another life after this, and that there they have need of fuch things as they have here on Earth; for when they lose any thing, or when any of their friends die, then they thinke that those that are dead came and fetcht it away, and that they had need of it, but they know not what the Soule nor the

so Refurrection is. Secondly, asking them of their god, they made answere, that hee is blacke like themselves. Of God. and that he was not good, but did them much hurt. Whereunto we faid, that our God is white as we are, that he is good, that he doth vs much good, that he descended downe vpon Earth to faue vs, and how he was put to death by the lewer for our fakes, that when wee die wee goe to dwell with him in Heauen, and that there we neither need meat nor drink, whereat they wondred, and willingly heard vs speake of those things, and faid that we were Gods children, and that he told vs all things, but yet they murmured, faying, why doth not your God tell and give vs all things (as well as he doth to you) and why doth he not also give vs Linnen, Cloth, Iron, Basons, and other kinds of wares; whereunto we made answere, that our God sent vs all those 60 things, and yet that he forgot not them, (although they knew him not) and fent them Gold, Palme-wine, Millia, Mais, Hennes, Oxen, Goats, Bannanas, Iuiamas, and other fruits, to fu-

ftaine them withall, but that they denied, or elle they could not conceive that fuch things came from God; but to the contrarie faid that God gaue them no Gold, but that the Earth gaue it them, wherein they digge to find it: that hee gaue them no Millia nor Corne, but that they

945

blindne ffe.

fowed it, and reapt it themselves, and that the Earth game it them; that the trees which then had planted gaue them their fruits, and were first brought thither by the Portugals; that yong beafts came of the old, that the Sea gaue them filh, which they tooke themselves, with many Milerable and other fuch like things, which they would not acknowledge came from God, but from the Earth and the Sea, each according to their natures, but they acknowledge that Raine came from our Saujonr Christ, and that by meanes of our God they had much Gold, for that he meanes of the Raine they found their Gold , and their Fruits and Plants grew , and waxed ripe by meanes of the moyllure, and for that we brought them everie thing readie made to their hands, therefore they thinke that wee find all fuch things , and need but goe into the fields to fetch them, as they doe their Fruits.

Feare of Thunder.

And when it happened that some of our Hollanders being in their Houses, when it beginner to Raine, Blow, Thunder and Lighten (whereof they are in great feare) went forth through the fireets, not once hunning the Thunder and Lightning, neither did it once hurt them, they wondred thereat, for they were afraid that if they should come out of their Houses at that time, that it would not be good for them, for that many times, (when it Thundrethand Light. neth there) it hapneth that some of them that are travelling abroad, are carried away by the Deuill, and throwne dead vpon the ground, whereby they are as much afraid thereof, as any man possible can be. And for that they know that our God dwels aboue in Heauen, when it Thunders and Lightens they point vpwards, and call him Inan Germain. And once wee had a Negro aboord our ship, whom we kept prisoner because he brought false Gold, and gaue it our to for good, which Negro euerie morning tooke a Tub with water in it, and want his face therein, which done, he tooke his hands full of water, and caft it over his head, speaking divers words vnto himselfe, and after that spit in the water, and vied many other Apilh toyes, which wee feeing asked him why hee did it, and hee made answere, that hee prayed his Feriffo that it might raine, that so his friends might find much Gold to release him, that hee might see

Circumcifion.

They circumcife their young children, therein following the Mahometical Law, with divers other opinions which they hold thereof, as thinking it cuill to fpit youn the Earth , befides many other Superflitions which they vie, but affirme, that they altogether viethole toves, and only trust in their Feriffer, were an vntruth, for many of them that can speake to Portugall (as having dealt with them and also daily traffique with vs) beginne to leave those foolish toyes, and to have some understanding of Gods Word, which they doe by reason that wee mocke and ieft at their foolish Ceremonies, and for that they say that wee are Gods Children, therefore they beleeve much of that which we say voto them, and begin to know God. but it is without any ground, for they grounded in their owne Superstitions , because they are not otherwife infruded.

Christianitie.

But the Negros which dwell among the Persugals, know much of God, and can fpeake of his some smacke of Comman Jements, as I have found some among them, that could tell of the birth of Christ, of the Lords Supper, of his bitter Paffion, and death of his Refurrection, and diners other fuch like points, concerning our Christian faith ; specially, one whom I knew well, and that was my good 40 friend : for he could write and read Portugall, and was indifferent well learned in the Scripture And which is more, when we spake vnto him, and argued vpon some points against the Romis faith, or against the Religion which the Portugals had taught him (for he had dwelt with a Monk in the Cattle of Mina) he would dispute the contrary with vs,and shew that it was otherwise set downe in such a Gofpel and in such an Epistle of the Apostles, & that it must so be vinderstood: whereby we may perceive, that those among them that have any understanding of the Christian faith, are sharpe witted, and will soone comprehend any thing ; but it seemeth, that it hath not pleased God tocall them to the vnderstanding of the Christian faith, and therefore we are much bound to prayle and thanke God, that it hath pleased him to vouchsafe vs the knowledge of his holy Word, and to understand and know what belongethernto our faluation.

Of their Houses, Townes, Countrey wayes, Warres, Armes, State of their Kings , ludgements , Lawes , luftice , Thefts , Promifes , Oathes, and other Rites.

Their houles,

Heir Houles are not very curioully made, but altogether flight, much like to a num- 60 ber of Hog-fties, and I am of opinion, that in many Countreys, there are better Hogflies then their Houses are ; I cannot liken them better to any other thing, then to Souldiers Cabins in Sconces and Bulwarkes : for a man might fay, that they have taken a paterneby them. To build them first, they take foure Posts or Trees, which they thrust

deepe into the ground, which stand foure square; that done, they lay other Beames or Trees woon them, and bind them fast together; then they take a number of thin small stickes, and inclose their Houses round about, and those they bind very close together, so that you can hardly thrust your hand in betweene them : then they make Morter of a certaine kind of yellow earth, which they find in the fields, and that they beat very small and thin, so long till it be like vnto Pot-earth; which they take in their hands, and dawbe it vpon the smal stickes round about their Houses from the foot to the top, where they defire to have it close, and with their hands thrust ir in betweene the chinckes of the flickes, that it may hold fast, as if it were betweene Lathes. and when they have made their Houses close in this manner, which is almost halfe a foot thick to in the walles; then they let it fland and die, so hard that it is like vnto stone, and being well

dried , then they make an other kind of Morter of Red earth, which is as thin as water, and take a wifpe of ftraw in their hands, and therewith wash all their house round about within: which seruesh them in stead of Painting, whereof they make great account, and take a great pride to paint their houses in such fort, some with white, some with red, and others with blacke as best liketh them; for the first thing they shew you when you come into the Country is their boules. To couer them, they take two foure fquare Couerings of Palme tree leaves: they rie fast rogether, and so close, that they are able to hold out the Raine, which they lay voon their houses for the Roofe thereof, and bind them fast together, and when it is faste cleare Sunne-shine weather, then they open the Roofe of their house, like two wings, under-propping of it with flickes, and fo let the Sunne shine into their houses , and when it raineth, they let them

fall downe againe close together. Before their house they make a fouresquare hole, like a doore, and make a doore of Reeds, which they open and thut, and bind it too with Withes. The floores are flat and very euen, couered with Red earth, as if they were paued, and in the middle thereof commonly they make a round hole to fet their pot with Palme wine in, when they drinke together in this fort they make two or three houses close together, which are placed toure square ; and in the middle of them, there is a place wherein the women dreffe their meat, in which houses they dwell together, as the women in the one, the man in the other, for they are asunder one from the other, and make as many as they have need of, and those houses they inclose round about with a pale of Reeds, or fraw of Mais, a mans height, or as high as the walles of their houses, which are also but a mans height : so that if it were not for the contring of the 30 house, which standeth paint-house wise, a man could not goe vpright in their houses. Their houses stand altogether in a heape; but because they separate them one from the other by those pales of Straw, by that meanes they shew like streets, and are somewhat separated one from the other. Their streets are fo little and narrow, that but one man alone can goe in them, and when it raineth it is very flipperie to goe in their Townes, because the earth is so fattie, but when the Sunne shines, it drieth vp againe, and becomes as hard as a stone.

When you will goe into one of their houses, you must goe so long through the streets, till you find a doore open, wherein being entred, you must passe through all the Roomes, till you find the place where you would be. Their houses are not very full of House-hold stuffe, but com-40 monly they have woodden Chefts, which they buy of the Netherlanders, wherein they locke

up their things, fo that you fee but little of their House-hold stuffe abroad. The Kings or Governors houses are commonly in the Market places, which are paled alone by themselues, and separated from all the rest, having no other neighbours dwelling by him. but onely his wives and children (for he is commonly better furnished thereof, then the meaner fort of men.) His houle is greater and higher then the reft, and hath many roomes which paffe one into the other, couered ouer with Reeds, each chamber by it lelfe, wherein his men dwell, and his watch flayeth all the day long. In the middle of his house he hath a foure square place all open, but couered ouer for the Sunne, where in the day time he fitteth, with his Gentlemen that come to speake with him and to passe the time away; at the Kings doore there are alwaies

90 two pots fet deepe into the ground, which are full of fresh water, and enery day are fild with new water, which I thinke are fet there for their Feteffes to drinke.

Their Townes that stand upon the Sea-fide are not very faire, but rather filthis places, and stinke like carrions, by reason of the filth which they carry and lay without, not farre from them; and many times, when the wind blowes from the Land, you may finell the stinke of them, aboue a mile and an halfe into the Sea. The Townes that lie inward to the Land, are richer of Goods and Gold, then the Sea-townes, and fuller of Houses and Men; besides that, they have more Merchants dwelling in them : for, those on the Sea-fide are not fo rich , nor of so great power, as being for the most part Interpreters, Rowers, Pilots, Sequants, Fisher-men,

60 and Slaues to the Inhabitants of the Townes. The King keeps his Court in the neerest Towne, that standeth within the Land whereof he is King, and placeth a Captaine in the Sea-townes which are under his command. The Land-townes are very great, but they have no Gates, Walls, nor Forts, nor any strength to resist the force of Enemies. I have heard some of the Negroes that dwell within the Land, fay, that there are many great Townes within the Land, much and farre exceeding the Hauen or Sea-townes.

Rio S. Georgio.

946

They vie to reckon the Gold Coast to begin from Cape De tres punction, to Rio de Volta. This Cane De tres panitas lieth under foure degrees and an halfe; and because it hath three Points or Heads, which reach into the Sea, therefore it is called the Cape De tres punctas; but, for that the Portugals have a Caltle there, called Aziem, the Negroes are not suffered to deale with the Hol-

Eastward fine miles lower there lieth a place, called Anta, and there the ships commonly cast foorth their Anchors; for there the Negroes buy much Iron , and are very expert to make Ironworke. These People traffique much with Palme-wine, whereof they have great store, as of Hens, Goats; and duers Fruits, lugnamas, and Annanasos; and when the time commeth that they draw their Wine out of the Trees, then the Canoes come thither with their Negrees and Merchants, at the least, ten or twentie miles from within the Land to buy Wine, so that it is carried almost all the Coast along, and great traffique made therewith. This Wine they efteeme very good for their men to drinke, because it is not so sweet as the Wine which is farther within the Countrie, which is not mixed with Water, as this Wine is. The other Wine they efterme to be good to be drunke by their women because it is not mixed, but is exceeding fweet, and foone makes the women merrie. A mile lower lieth Rio de St. Georgio , and a place, called labbe, and Cama, where the Portugals also have a House: and because this Quarter is very fruitfull, there dwells three or foure Portugals there, which receive the Custome of the Fish. which is taken by the Negroes in the River, and buy great flore of other victuals, which they fend continually to the Castles of Aziem and Mina, to victuall them withall. Before this Riuer there is a great Sand, which firetcheth farre into the Sea, whereby you cannot enter into it with any thips, but onely with great Canoes. And a mile lower there lieth a Village, by the Negroes, called Aguaty: by the Portuguis, Aldea do Torto; and by the Netherlanders, Comando: but yet it is not Comando, although we call it so; for Comando lieth vpon the Hill, where the Kings dwell. They of Edom, Waffa, Comando, and other Townes, come to this Hauen to buy their Wares: there we tell many Venetian Madrigerten, and Corals (for the common people traff que much therewith by grinding and felling them one vnto the other) fmall Copper Basons, and blue Cloth: broad Linnen is well fold there. In this place men fell not any Wares in great quantities, but all in small parcels; & for that there are so many small parcels fold there, therefore it is the worlt place of all that Coast for giving of Dachies: and for that their Gold, for the most part, is molten, and cut in final pieces, therefore there is much deceit therein, for they mixe much vellow Copper among it, and many times bring Copper in stead of Gold; and for those two Points it is the worst place to deale in throughout all the Coast. They have the greatest number of Cartoes in all the Countrie befides; for many times they goe to Sea early in the morning. with fenentie or eightie Canoes, and enter as farre into the Sea as you can well diferne them. and about noone-time they come home againe with their Fish, for there they are very expert in filhing. It is likewise no lesse prouided of Fruits, for there is no place in all the Land, where a man may have greaterstore, nor better cheape Fruit, then there, especially a kind of Fruit, called, Bannana; and for that cause it is by vs called, the Fruit Market. When you faile somewhat lower, and are North North-east from the high Hill of Comando, there is a place called, Terra pelma. Necre to that is the Castle of Mina, with a Portugal Garrison to prohibite

Terra pequina Cape Croffe.

Infanths.

place of traffique, where the French men in time past vied much to lie with their ships, and to traffique in the Countrie, and in the years 1'590. or 1591. there was a fhip of Deepe fet vpon, by them of the Caftle of Mina, whereof most of the men were slaine, and the rest made Slaves; and when we began first to traffique there, in the yeare 1,92, there were some of our Hollanders flaine in a Boat at the same place; but now the ships begin to trasfique there againe, because of the great quantitie of Gold which is brought thither from Foetu, Abrenbon, and Mandinga, and other Townes, which lie aboue two hundred miles within the Countrie. Sai-ling a mile lower, you come to the chiefe place of Traffique in all the Countrie, called Monre. A mile lower there lieth a place called, Infantin, and two miles farther there lieth a towne called Cormantin, under the King of Foetsi There the Hollanders fetch their hoops, to bind their water veffels withall; for there are the best. Sayling foure miles lower, you come to the high hill of Mango, whereon the Negros offer facrifice to the Deuill, but there is no Traffique. A mile lower there is a Village salled, Biamba, where they keepe good flore of Cowes, for it is good Pafture ground. The Inhabitants vie great Traff que along the Coast, by selling their Cattle; and because that there , there are many proper women ; divers of the Negroes come from other places of the Countrey thither to buy women, and to fetch flates to ferue their turnes withall; The Countrey people thereabouts are good husbandmen, and fow much Millie, prefix good flore 60 of Palme wine, and bring great number of yong Cattle vp. Three miles lower, there lieth a place called, Bergs, the Village lieth vpon a hill, there the French men vied much to Anchor with their thips. Those people speake another Language, and to that place all the people forwards speake one Language. The people are very Ingenious to make all kind of things, special-

Sailing a long mile lower, you come to a place called, Cape Croffo; this Cape or Point is a great

ly of gold, for they can make faire Chaines of gold, with other faire things, as Rings, &c. There they brew a kind of drinke called Pitouw, which is much like small Beere. They have great store of Hens, and better cheape then in other places: there also they take the greene Birds.called Parrots. The Inhabitants in their time vied to buy great store of Iron, for they have many Smithes, whereby they make faire Armes, but now there comes no more ships thither . they goe with their Canoes to Ackra, which lieth foure miles lower; which is a low land voon the Strand, having a halfe tree made in forme of a Gibet, which they effeeme to be their Feriffo. The Portugalls were wont to have a Castle there 3 but for some mischiefe that they had done to the Inhabitants, the Negroes tooke their Caftle by force, flew all the Poringalls, and brake downe
To the Caftle. There against hey vie another Language, they are a craftic and fubtle people, and the subtillest of all that Coast, both for Traffique and otherwise. They have very few Canoes to fish or goe to Sea withall; but those they have are very great, for I have seene one that was cut out of a tree, which was five and thirty foot long, and five foot broad, and three foot high. which was as bigge as a Shallop ; so that it would have held thirty men at the least. They come not often to buy wares, but observe certaine dayes in the weeke to that purpose, and then they come with great store of money, bringing the gold as it is found in the hilles. Two miles below that there lieth a place called Neuro. A mile lower, lieth Temin; And a mile lower then

that another place, called (binks, where the Hollanders begin to place boats to traffique with the Negroes, which from the yeere one thousand fixe hundred, was first begun to be known vnto vs. They make warre for a small matter, for the Kings are so enusous and angry one against the Their warres other, and so proud, that they cannot endure their equalls; whereupon they challenge one the and Marriall other to the Battell, and to fight together in the field. The King gives warning to the Townes Customes. winder his command, to will the Captaines with their men to come to him, to fight against the

enemies : their enemies likewife doe the like, and so make preparation to fight one against the other. The Kings of those Townes have certaine men, that are their Souldiers or flaves (which are as much as Souldiers) who every day watch in the Kings house, and are as it were his guard. They are very proud of their offices, and in the streets they goe stately, looking upon themfelues, fome times striking with their armes ouer their heads, and fometimes leaping backeward and forwards, and round about : looking fiercely, as if they would kenoure all the 30 world. They goe to the warres with the King, and if not then, they flay continually with him, to guard his person ; and when the time commeth that they must fight, every one prepareth himfelfe thereunto, in the best manner that hee can. First, they paint their faces with colours, some Red, others White, and others Yellow; and talso their brefts and the whole bodies with Croffes, Strikes, and Snakes, and many fuch like things; They also take their Beads with them, wherewith they make their Fetiffes, and hang them about them, and thinke when they have them about them , that their Feriffees will defend them , and that they shall not be flaine. They make and wreath a Ring of boughes of trees, as thicke as a mans arme, which they put about their neckes, to beare off the blowes of their Kniues , in flead of Gorgets ; on their heads they weare Caps made of Libards or Crocodiles skins : on their bodies they weare a Cloth Gir-40 dle which they thrust betweene their legges with a peece of Cloth of a handfull broad, to couer their prinities withall; for then they weare as few clothes on their backes as they can, that they may not be cumbred therewith when they fight, in their Girdles they sticke a hewing

broad as themselves, in their right hands they hold their Allagaies, wherewith they fling each at other, some of them haue two, some three, source, or more as they are able, and such as are not Affagay a kind able, to have shields and Assagaies, they carrie Bowos and sheaves of Arrowes, made of of Date. skins, full of fmal Arrowes with Iron heads at the ends, wherewith they wil shoot most cruelly. The Boyes or Seruants carrie the Drums into the warres, whereon they play, others have hornes of Elephants Teeth, wherewith they blow. When all is prepared, and euerie Morinni

Knife or a Poniard; in their left hands bearing their shields, which are almost as long and as

50 or Gentleman with his men are readie, they all meet at the Kings Court, and so goe with their Wives, Children, and all their Houshold together to the Warres, where the battaile should bee fought, and if it be a Warre which concerneth them much, and wherewith they are much moued, and protoked to ouercome their Enemies, then they burne their owne Houles, and all their Townes, that their Enemies may have no fuch advantage against them, as also because their minds should not be moved to looke and harken home-ward, but rather to give them the better courages to set upon their Enemies. But if it be a Warre of no great importance, and that will be soone ended, then they burne not their Houses nor take not their wives and children with them, but they leave their Townes, and fend their wives and children to the next place, with whom they have no enmitte, which take all their houshold-stuffe with them, leaving their 63 Houses emptie, without any kind of thing in them , as if they had wholly abandoned their Townes, and when their Warre is ended, then their wives and chridren returne againe to their

owne Townes withall their stuffe. The Souldiers on both tides meeting together in the fields, doe the best they can to destroy their enemies, both by casting at each other with their Affagaies, and by blowes. They can cast so

Frate skill with Daris. Min-caters.

e xceeding ftraite, right and fure with their Affagaies, that they will not faile to hit a Stineror piece of monie as bigge as a Groat, the reft shoot with poiloned Arrowes. The Drummes and Hornes are heard to make a great noise when they fight together, and in this Warre whosener is taken Prifoner they make him a flaue a I his life long, and fuch as are flaine, their bodies are droft and eaten as good meate. Their Warres are not fo cruell as they feeme, nor according to the noise and preparation by them made, and their Warre continueth not long, but is some ouer-patt and ended. They also burne each others Houses and Townes, and drive the Inhabitants out of them.

Securitie.

It hapneth oftentimes, that although they have no great controverse with each other, they make peace together, promifing not to warre one against the other, and to affure and confirme 10 their promises, they believe no words, but they send each other a man for a suretie, whom they keepe by them, and this man whom they deliver in this fort for a furetie, is one of the chiefe of their Towne, who being brought to the place where he must remaine by the Kings slaves, he himselfe being brauely dreft, and fitteth vpon a slaues sholder, and in that fort is carried to the King, and to him they shew much honour, and yet they watch him narrowly.

They also buy many Peeces, and begin to learne to shoot in them, and have the understanding to know that a long Peece carrieth further then a short, which both the Portugals and wee also teach them. They are very expert in making of Armes, for they make Poniards of an ell long without hilts and foure fingers broad, with two edges, the handle being of wood, with a pummell at the end, they couer the handle ouer with a plate of Gold, or with the skinne of a cer- 20 taine kind of fish which they take, which with them is esteemed as much as Gold is with vs. they make sheathes of Dogs or Goates skinnes, and aboue at the end of the sheathe, in stead of a chape they put a great red shell, as broad as a mans hand, which is in great estimation with them, others that have not the abilitie to buy such shels, make or buy hewing Kniues in faihion like a Gammon of Bacon, broad at the end and narrow before, which cut but on the one fide. and in flead of a red shell, they trimme them with an Apes or a Tygres head, and those they flicke in their Girdles, on the one fide, and weare them as they goe along in the streets, and carrie their Assagaies in their hands, and if they have a servant or a slave, they make him beare their Affagay and Shield before them, and they follow them with a staffe in their hands. The Merchants travell in the Countrie with their Armes, and their fernants or flaves likewife carrie 40 Armes with them, who commonly have Bowes and Arrowes, because they'are Weapons

which are least cumbersome to bee carried, for they can carrie them about their neckes, Their Affagaies are made of divers falhions and of many forts, but for the most part of Iron, at least two foot at both ends, and that part which they hold in their hands is of wood, both the ends are as heavie of Iron one as the other, because they should weigh an even weight, and for that one should not be heavier then the other, for if it should they could not strike nor cast right with them. They are very curious of their Armes, for they will alwaies have fixe or feuen of those Assagaies in their Houses, which stand in the ground one by the other, with their Shields hanging by them; those Shields they make of woodden hoopes, which they fold one within the other, and so make them foure square, but some-what bowing like a Buckler, and they are commonly fix foot long, and foure foot broad, in the middle they make a croffe of wood. and bind it upon the reft of the hoopes, to hold them the faster together, thereof also they make their handles whereon they beare their Shields ; some of them of the better fort coner their Shields over with an Oxe-hide, and put a plate of Iron vpon it two foot long, and a foot broad. They make great account of their Shields, thinking that under them they have a great fafeguard for their bodies. They make their Bowes of very hard wood, the stringes are made of the barkes of trees, their Arrowes are of thinne and tuffe wood, the Feathers are made of the haire of a Dogges skinne, wherewith they couer almost halfe their Arrowes, and on the ends they put small Iron heads, which heads when they goe to warre one against the other, they go anoint with poison, which is the inyce of certaine greene Herbs , but they must not carrie such poisoned Arrowes but in time of warre, and that vpon paine of a great forfeit, or some other punishment to be inflicted upon them that beare fuch Arrowes about them, their sheafes they make of Goats skinnes, which they hang about their neckes, and put their Arrowes into it. Their Drums are made of hollow trees, which are concred ouer with Buckes skinnes, with woodden pinnes, and strike vpon them with woodden stickes made like Spoones or Ladels. Those Drums commonly he before the Kings Captaines and Guards Houses, and are sometimes twentie foot long, whereon they play when the King makes a Feaft. They also make smaller Drums of hollow trees, which they hang about their neckes, and goe about the Towne, playing on them, those Drums are round aboue, and vnder very narrow like a funnell, no man may vie them; but Gentlemen. They make Homes of Elephants Teeth, and race them finely with ma- 60 nie stickes in them, and in the middle of the Horne they make a small hole which is source fquare, and blow at that, but no man may vie them but only the King or the Captaine.

King.

They choole their Kings by the most voices and consents of the common people, for their

Kingdomes are not fuccessive to any of their children or Kinsmen, but when their Kins is dead. they choose another to gonerne them, and to possesse the Kingdome, and hee dwelleth in the deceafed Kings Court, and poffeffeth all that he kindeth therein, at his first entrie into the Kingdome, he mult buy good flore of Cowes, and Palme-wine, and bestow a Banket vpon his subieds, for they make great account of a King that is liberall, and feafteth them, but if their King he conetous, and feeketh to heape vp good store of Gold, they hate him, feeking all the meanes they can to find some cause to drive him out of his Kingdome, and to choose a better according to their minds. As it hapned in my time to the King of Sabe, (who had beene King of Infantin) and was made King of Sabe, whom they draue out of his Kingdome, and taking all his Io goods from him, made him goe to Infantin againe, from whence he came, and chose another in his place that pleated them better. And for that cause, the King that will bee well beloved of his jubicets, everie three monethes when his Guard or Customers come to pay him that which they have received at the Sea-side, and of the Countrie people for custome, he must make a Banquet, and fpend more then he receiveth at that time, and then he biddeth his Morrinnis (which is as much to say as a Gentleman or one of his Countell) and buyeth many Cowes or Oxen, and alfo all the Palme, wine in the Countrie, that he can get which is given by him to the common people, who at that time are very merrie and joyfull, linging and playing vpon their Drums. The king the heads of the Cowes are made cleane and fairely painted and hanged full of Fetifices, which done, they are hang'd very orderly in the Kings thamber one wader the other, in flead of Pictures, and for a great honour wato the King, whereby fuch flrangers as come to the Kings Court, may perceine that he is a good King, and for that cause is much esteemed and beloued of his peoule. Befides this, they hold another Feaft day everie yeare, as being the day of their Coronation or their Fetifoes day, then the King inuiteth his Neighbour Kings and Captaines, with all his

Gentlemen to a Banquet, and makes a great Feast, and that day he prayeth to his Fetiffo, and he himselfe facrificeth vnto him, which he doth but once a yeare. This Fetiffo is the highest tree in the Towne, which is the Kings Fetiffe, vpon this Festivall day they vie manie Apill Toves.as Fencing, Drumming, finging and leaping, the women also are verie merrie and dance, and enerie King holdeth his Featt day apart, and they doe it one foone after the other, which they doe in their Summer time. On their Sunday at night the King makes a Feast, and buyes up all the Palme-wine which

is drawne out of the Trees that day, and biddeth his wives and children to Supper, and his chiefest Gentlemen, at which time they are verie merrie, for hee eates but one day in a weeke with his wives and children, and that is voon their Sunday. These women are verie serviceable to the King their Husband, and euerie one of them featleth him to winne his loue so that he His wheel wanteth no feruice at their hands : euerie one of his wives hath his goods and riches apart by her felfe, and keepeth and feedeth her owne children, and shee that is in fauour with the King,

wanteth nothing.

When the Kings wives go abroad, they leane vpon the shoulders of other women that serve them, and are their flaues, and their children are also carried upon the shoulders of other of the Kings flaues, hee himfelfe commeth little abread, but flayeth alwayes in his Houfe, fometime he fitteth at his doore but not often, his Houfe is watcht both day and night by his flaues, which watch armed in his Court, and in his Chamber, and when he goeth out they attend on him and His Gnard. goe round about him. In the morning betimes and late in the evening, his flaves blow those Hornes of Elephants Teeth, which make a prettie found, for they have the flight to draw their breath in and out as they lift, and can answere one the other when they blow, when the King comes out of his Chamber, his wives stand readie to attend on him, to wash his bodie all over. and then to anoint it with Palme-oile, after that hee eateth some-what, and so fets himselfe downe upon a stoole, and in his hand hee holdeth a Horse or an Elephants tayle to keepe the Flies from his naked bodie, he is brauely dreft after this manner; his Beard is knotted with golden Corals, and other coftly things, on his armes and legges hee hath Rings of Gold and other 50 faire Beades of Corall, and the like also about his necke, and so hee fitteth all the day talking with one or other, for he wanteth no company to paffe the time away, they have one attending on them, whom they call Viador (which word they have learned of the Portugals), hee is the His Viador, on Kings Treasurer, and keepeth his Gold and other Riches, receiveth and payeth all, and doth all Treasurer. other businesses for the King, This man is next vnto the King, and he commonly hath more golden Rings about his necke, armes and feet, then the King himfelfe. When the Kings children are of some yeares, if they will have any thing they must looke to get it, for the King may give them nothing to live idly vpon, for the common people would murmurre at it, if the King should give somewhat vito them, he might doe wrong to his Gentlemen, but hee giveth them His children, their Patrimoniall goods when they marrie as their cultome is; and befides, that he giveth them euery one a flaue to ferue their turnes with all, and they have nothing elfe of their Fathers, whereby it falleth out, that when they waxe old, and feeke not to doe any thing, they are no

more respected then another man is. The King keepes them with him to serue him, and when

he maketh peace with any other Towne or King, then he imploresh his children, and fends his

fonnes

former for hoffages, that they may begin to be honored, and thereby attaine to great effate : the revenues of the Fruits, Fish, Wine, and Palme-oile, which the King hath, are fufficient to main. taine the King, and his Wiges, and Children. His Millie, whereof he maketh Bread, is fowed and reaped for him, at other mens charges; whereby he hath a good life (but yet miferable in respect of ours.) When the King dies he is honourably buried after their manner, and then prefently they choose another, one that is not of the last Kings kindred; but they choose a strange man, whom they thinke good; and by no meanes they will choose any that in any point held with, or fauoured the last King. Hauing made him King, they bring him to the Palace, and he taketh the gouernment vpon him, and hath all the treasure and goods of the dead King, which he got during the time of his Raigne; and that he holdeth, to that the dead Kings Children enioy not a penie: but that which he had when he was chosen King, that they take and part amone them, as their custome is.

Combars.

They vie no Counfellors nor Attorneyes, but every man must tell his owne tale to the Judge. who fends for the accused partie; after whose answere, the Plaintiffe speaketh againe: and in this fort they are each of them heard to speake foure or fine times, and when the one speaketh the other must hold his peace till he bath done, for they must not interrupt one the other when they speake, vpon paine of corporall punishment, so that although they bee wild men . and without any civilitie or good behaujour; yet therein they yie a very good and laudible cultome. When the ludge hath heard them fay what they can, according to his owne mind, hee gineth Indgement, which they must stand vnto without appeale. If it bee any thing concerning the King, whereby he is to have any forefeiture or otherwife, the Iudge receiveth it, and demandeth it of him that is to pay it, in the Kines name, which he must pay presently without delay, and if he be not able to doe it, he must presently depart from thence to another Towne, or some other Kings Jurisdiction, and there stay till he hath contented his King, & payed his Fine. If it be a controuerfie which is to be determined among them, and they cannot agree thereon, then they will feeke to kill each other, or challenge their adverse parties to fight with them, appointing a day and place when they will meet with their Armes to end or determine their controuerfie. In themeane time they make their cause knowne to some of their friends, and defire their helpe. (for each of them may have three or foure men to helpe them) and commonly they are of their neerest friends and kindred; and when their appointed day is come, each of them goeth with his companions to the same place, and when they meet together with their Shields and Assagaies to defend themselves withall, they place themselves orderly in the field one right over against the other, the Plaintiffe and the Defendant standing in the middle, and so begin to cast and shoot at each other with their Assagaies, and shoot in that fort so long vntill that some of them on both fides are hurt, and fall to the ground. Then they cease their Fight, and so their quarrell endeth. But his fide on whom the dead man is found to be flaine, or that hath loft the victorie, come to the other partie and defire to have the man out of their companie, that was the cause of that Combat, in flead of the dead man that is flaine. And if he runneth away, and getteth to another Towne, they will follow him, and will neuer leave before they have gotten him into their hands, and none of their Kings may give fuch a man freedome, nor keepe him fecretly in his Towne, but if he can find him in his Towne, he must deliver him to those that seeke after him, and if he doth it not, then they make complaint to their King, and so, many times one King makes warre vpon another for that cause; when they have found him, he is delivered to the wife the dead man, and shee keepeth him for her Slaue, or else shee fells him to another: but if hee hath any meanes to pacifie the woman, or the friends of that man, and to redeeme himfelfe out of bondage, he may doe it, and goe freely abroad. They are very great controuerfies that are

ended in this manner, for they are no common men that end their quarrels in such fort. The Plaintiffe certifies the Captaine, who caufeth a Drum to be founded by one of his Slaues, and he goeth round about the Towne with the Drum about his necke, and with him there goeth two boyes more, each with a Cow-bell in their hands, without Clappers, and they strike upon them with stickes made of wood, and when they have gone in this fort round about the Towne (which is a figne vnto the people that Iustice is to be executed) then the Captaine with his Gentlemen comes and fit round together in the Market-place, each man with his Armes, wherewith all the people affemble together, knowing not what the matter is, and goe to the Market-place, where their common affemblies are made, the women standing in one place, the men in another, to heare what the Captaine will fay; and he that is acculed is presently taken, and kept prisoner in the Captaines house, and if it be a weightie matter, he is bound; if otherwife, he is onely kept by the Executioner, and he must not depart from thence before his cause be tried, in the meane time, the Captaine with his Gentlemen fit still in the Market-place, to heare the complaints made against the Prisoner, and send him word by his Slanes what accusa- 60 tions are laid against him, whereunto he must prefently, without delay, make antiwere; otherwife, if he cannot excuse himselfe, he must pay the penaltie which he hath incurred; and if he cannot pay it, he must in the Kings behalfe be fold as a Slaue, towards the payment of his Fine, and euer after, while he liueth, he muit be a Slaue : but if he hath done any offence that defer-

ueth death, he may redeeme his life with money, if hee can agree with the King, and content him; which money is divided among the Morinni, which have the one halfe, and the King the other halfe, without giving any to the friends of the dead man. And if it be one that hath incurred the danger of paying a Fine for lying with another mans wife, being accused to have won her thereunto by false promises or by force, and hath not kept his promise with her; then the King first taketh all his goods from him, as forfeit vnto him; and the woman must pay two or three ounces of gold for a Fine vnto her husband, or as he fauoreth her, and she can agree with him; otherwise he may put her away, and take another wife, and the womans friends soe and burne, or pull downe the mans house that hath done the fact, and doe him all the mischiese they 10 can, to make him to leave the Towne, that they may heare no more of him. In my time, while Hay there, it hapned that a man came from one Towne to another, to gather vp his debts, which man a yeere before had layne with another mans wife, and the same woman was then by chance come to the same Market, and seeing him, went straight and complained to the Ane. (which is the Captaine) who presently caused him to be taken; and their Counsell being affembled, there before them the woman complained that he had forced her, and had not paid her according to his promife: he made antwere, that he did it with her good-will, and although neither of them both were of that Towne, yet their cause was heard, and as good Iustice vied towards them, as if they had beene Inhabitants of that place, and after long disputation by them made, the Fetiffero (which is the Prieft that conjureth their Fetiffes or gods) came thither with 20 a certaine Drinke in a pot, and fet it downe before the Captaine, the woman tooke the pot and drunke thereof, to inftine that he had not contented her for the loffe of her honour; and if hee would have drunke thereof before the woman drunke, to justifie that he had paid her, and owed

her nothing, then he had beene quit from paying any thing; but knowing himfelfe to be guiltie, he durit not drinke, but was found guiltie, and was judged to pay a Fine of three Bendaes, which is fixe ounces of gold.

This Drinke among them is as much as an Oath, and is called Enchionkenou; which they Enchionkenou. make of the fame greene herbs whereof they make their Fetifies; and as they fay, it hath fuch 30 a force, that if a man drinketh it faliely, their Fetifo cauleth him presently to die : but if they drinke it innocently, then their Feriffo fuffereth them to live. By reason of the great hatred and enuie which they beare one vnto the other, they accuse each other, although it bee for a thing that hath beene done ten yeeres before, so that there is no quarrell but it is called in queftion. And if a man hath married or bought the fifter of that man that is to pay a Fine vnto the King, and is not able to doe it, then his fifters husband must ioyne with him to doe it, and helpe him to pay his Fine, so they dwell both under one Iurisliction, and for that they must agree together; for before all things the King must be paid his Fines, by one meanes or other, or else they must goe out of his Countrey, and dwell in another place; and so if he be not able to pay his Fine, then he taketh all his Wines and Children , and goeth to another Towne , and which 40 is more, all the friends they have dwelling in that Towne must also goe with him, and dwell all in that place, vntill they have agreed with, and paid the King his Fine; and when they come againe, then they goe to all their acquaintance and aske them forgiuenesse, and seeke and make peace and friendship with them, as they had before; the man going to his friends, and the woman to hers. The cause why their friends also depart and leave the Towne, is, because they should not bee molested nor troubled by the King for the same. The Fine which they pay for Theft, is fixe ounces of gold, or three Bendaes of their weight; for in that Countrie they are not put to death for it. But if they steale any thing from the Netherlanders , they pay no Fine, but onely when they steale one from another. If any man hath falfified Gold, and carried it to the Netherlanders, and that they complaine thereof vnto the King; he must pay a Fine for it, as the case requireth. If much Gold bee fallified, many times they are sold for Slaues. And all these Fines are the Kings, to maintaine his expences. If it be a case wherein any man hath deferued death, and that he cannot pay the King but with his life, then he is judged to die, and without any more delay, the Executioner, or hee that is appointed to doe it, taketh him, and bindeth his hands behind him, and then covering his eies, leadeth him into a Field, or a Wood, or where he thinketh best, (having no place purposely appointed to doe it in) and being there, maketh him kneele downe, and stoope with his head, and taking an Assagaie, steppeth backe, and firikes him into the bodie, wherewith he falleth downe, then he takes his cutting Knife, and cuts off his head, and then hee is dead; for they believe not that a man is dead before his head is cut off, and therefore when they put any man to death, they cut off his head; which done, hee cuts his bodie in foure quarters, and casts them into the field, to bee denoured by Beafts and Birds. But their friends come and fetch the head, and keepe it for a great Prefent, feething it in a Kettle, and then eate the broth thereof; which done, they take the bare Scull, and hang it by their Fetiffo. The women at that time make a great noise with crying and howling, and take the quarters, and carrie them into the fields : when the execution is done, there are no Officers by, but onely the Executioner and the Partie that is to be executed; but when it is done, then they come about him, and lament the dead man, as aforefuld.

Lacedemonian Theenes.

For flealing, I am of opinion, that of all the Nations in the World, they have not their Maflers. They effeeme it a shame to steale one from another, but when they have stolne any thing from the Netberlanders, they esteeme it to be a credit vnto them and bragge thereof, for they esteeme vs to be craftie and subtill men, and when they have stolne any thing from vs. they thinke themselves to be the subtiller and craftier, and seeke to bee honoured for doing so brave

Lead, that is nayled without upon the ships, to keepe them from being eaten by Wormes. Lacedemonias, ruftie Nayles, Greale, Weights (which they hide in their Haire, Mouthes, or Eares) any other small matters are exercise of their Theft; yea, although they be neuer so great Merchants, and bestow two or three pound of Gold with you for Merchandize, and haue no need to steale, but 10 if any thing bee taken from them, they make so many words and such a noyse, as if it were a matter worthy of death.

They fay that they may steale, and we not : I askt them the cause why; they made answere that we are rich and had great store of wares, and brought ships full vnto them, and tooke great paines and labour to fell it, and were fo long before we fold it, that they thought it fit to helpe vs therein, that we might the fooner be rid thereof, that we might fetch others, and that wee were clothed and they went naked, and had nothing upon their bodies, and that therefore it was freer for them then for vs to steale. When they have taken any thing and that you miffe it, you must presently search them all, for they steale very cunningly, and give it one vnto the other, and when they come together they part it among them; when you have found it, and 10 know who stole it, then you must beat him well, be he neuer so great a Merchant, and the rest of the Negroes will laugh at him and mocke him, because hee did his businesse no better; but when they perceive that their Theft is discovered, then they leape over-boord and get away, fearing to be beaten, and if you let them goe and beate them not at that time when you take them, then they feare a greater matter and expect more blowes, and that you will intrap them, and therefore they will commonly euer after thunne that thip and goe abourd another ; but if you beate them for their labours when they doe it, they will not hate you for it, nor shunne the Ship, but will come the next day agains to deale and traffique with you.

Promifes. Oathes.

In their Promises or Oathes which they make vnto vs, they are vnconstant and full of vntruth, but fach promifes as they make among themselves, they keepe and observe them well. and will not breake them : when they make any Oathes or Promiles, specially, when they will shew it to our Netberlanders. First, they wipe their faces upon the tole of your foot, and then doe the like voon their shoulders and brefts, and voon all their bodies, speaking thrice each to other, faying, Ins., Ins., Ins., euerie time clapping hands together, and flamping with their feet vpon the ground, which done, they kiffe their Fetiffe, which they have vpon their legges and armes : fome for the more affurance of their Promifes and Oathes , will drinke certaine drinke, as I have faid before : but he that should repose much trust therein, should soonest find himfelfe deceived, because they are not to be credited further then you see them.

). VI.

Of their Summer and Winter; And of their manner of Tilling and Sowing the Land: Their Corne, Rents, Raines: Beafts and Huntino: Fowles, Trees, and Fruits.

Barren Summer and fertile Winter.

Lthough it is alwayes warme in those Countries, yet they have a difference in the time of the years, and so they account some monethes for their Summer, and some for their Winter. The difference which they have therein is the weather; for both in Summer and Winter the trees are greene, and some of them have leaves twice a yeare. In Summer their fields are bare, and in Winter they are full of Corne, and are very greene,

Millie and Mais in, but when that time is gone, to beginne their Husbandrie, they goe into

the Woods or Fields, and there feeke out a good place, which they thinke fit for their

fo that they have their Haruest in Winter. The Daves and Nights are of one length, or else there is little difference : for the Sunne rifeth and goeth downe there, commonly at fixe of the clocke, but it is rifen at least halfe an houre about the Horizon, before it sheweth it selfe, so that you shall seldome see it cleerely rise and goe downe. The Fruits are there as plentifull and abundant in Winter, as in Summer. When the weather is warmest, and that the Sunne is about their heads. They esteeme that time to be their Winter, which beginnes in the monethes of April, May, and June; because as then it raineth and is very foule weather there with Thunder and Lightning, (which the Portugals call, Tranados, and they Agombreton) which foule weather and raine followeth the Sunne, and rifeth vp with his highth, at that time they are most 60 cumbred with raine : but in their Summer they are not fo much troubled with it, but then the Earth dryeth and is hard and unfruitfull, and therefore they shunne that time to sow their

Myfts,

purpole to fow their Corne in, to ferue to maintaine their Wines and Children. No man hath any Land to himlelfe which he can or may keepe to his owne we, for the King: drie. hath all the Woods, Fields, and Land in his hands, to that they may neither few nor plant therein but by his confent and licence, which, when they have obtained, and have a place permitted them to fow their Corne in, then they goe with their flaues and burne the Woods, trees, roots and firmbs with all the rubbith downe to the ground; then they goe with their long chopping kniues which they call, Coddon, and frape and raze vp the ground with Colon (and all that ferreth them to fatten their ground) about a foot deepe, and let it lye eight or ten dayes, and when all of them have tilled their ground, every man makes readie his feed to fow it with-To all, voon their Sunday, and then they go to their Kings or Gouernors House, of that quarter for first, they helpe to till his ground, and to fow his Corne, and go all rogether to his field, and take all the rubbilh out of the Earth and caft is into the middle of the field, and then once againe rake the Earth and fow their Corne in the field. They begin upon a Sunday, and first ferue their Governour or King, and when they have done his worke, the Captaine lendeth into the field a great number of Pots with Palme, wine, and a fod Goat, with good flore of other mear, according to the number of Workmen, and there they fit down together and make good cheare, and at that time they burne the roots, and fit and fing and make a great noise about them, all in the honour of their Fetifo, to the end that he should let their Corne grow well and prosperoully vo When their Captaines or Kings Land is tilled and fowed, the next day they goe to another 20 mans ground, and doe with it as they did with the Kings ground, and there also make good cheere as they did before, and are merrie together, and so forth-with the rest whome they helpe. The Corne foone groweth up, and lyeth not long in the ground : when it is as high as a mans head, and beginnes to prout, then they make a woodden House mathe middle of the field; conered over with Reeds, and therein put their Children to watch the Corne, and to drive a way the Birds, wherewith they are much cumbred. They weed not their Corne, but let is

The Millie hath long eares, and is a feed of colour like Hempe-feed, and long like Canaries Millesfeed, it hath no fhels, but groweth in a little huske, and is very white within. This kind of graine they alwayes had, and ferue their turnes therewith before the Bortugals came thither. Is 30 groweth and is ripe in three months, and when it is cut down, it lyetha month after in the fields o smile? to dry, and then the eares are cut off and bound in heafes, and to carryed home to their Houles.

They vie the ftraw to couer their Houses withall. This Millie is a verie excellent graine . buth a good tafte and is wholfome to eate, it is fweet in your mouth, but gnasheth in your teeth. which commeth of the flone wherewith they grind it. When they have vied the Land , and their Harusft done, then they fell part of their Corne to other men, which are nonable to fow bee directly it, and by that meanes get a good quantitie of Gold; they give some to their King for the rent of his Land, and carrie it home to his House, every one as much as he thinketh good. For these is no certaine fumme appointed for them to pay , but every one grueth according to his abilitie, and the quantitie of ground that he hath vied, and bringeth it vnto the King, fo that hee liath 40 at least fine or fixe Bendas of Gold of them at one time, which they carrie altogether to their King, who welcommeth them, and thanketh them for their Dache or Gift, and for their labours gineth them their bellics full of meate and drinke, and that they pay to the King for the

farme of his Land, and no more.

The Corne by the Indians called Mais, by the Portugals or Spaniards, Indian-wheat, and by the Their Mais. Italians, Turkilb-corne, is a Graine almost knowne throughout all the World, and was brought out of Well India into Saint Thomas Hand, and they of Saint Thomas (after they had built their Caftle) brought it thither for to ferue their necessitie withall, and fowed it there, for before the Portugals came into those Countries, the Indians knew it not, but they fowed it first in that Countrey, and disperied it abroad among the wild Indians, so that now the Countrey is full 50 thereof, and at this present there is great abundance in Guinea. They wie to mixe it with their Millie, and sometimes take halfe Millie and halfe Mais. The Negroes that dwell among the Portugals, grind it alone without any Millie, and make exceilent bread thereof wherewith they fustaine themselves, and sell it to the Portugals : they know how to bake it in such fort, that it will endure good three or foure monethes. The Children also eate it in flead of bread. which they fet awhile vpon the fire, and then crush the Corne out of the huskes, such as eate much thereof and are not vied vnto it, vie to bee Scurule and Itchie, or elie to bee troubled with great bloud Veines, for it increaseth bloud : it is no lesse nourishing then Corne in the Netherlands , and in a manner tafteth like our Corne.

The people of the West Indies can make Wine of Mais, which they call, Chicke, wherewith 6. they will make themselves drunke, as if it were of Wine made of Grapes, and for that they know, that Corne folden or fleept in water maketh a kind of drinke, wherewith a man may make himfelfedrunke. Therefore they lay this kind of Graine to foake in the water till it is foft, and then they brew thereof, as fome of the Negroes in Guinea, which deale with the Portugals, also doe, and call it Poiton.

heat of the land.

This Mais will grow in a movil fatty and hot ground, and beares twice a yeare : it is not fowed like other Corne, but it is thrust into the ground, as we vie to doe Beanes in our Corn. trey : it lieth not long in the ground, but soone springeth vp, and groweth higher then a mans length abone the ground, like to great Reeds that grow in the water, or in drowned land, where with husbandmen vie to couer their shades : euery Reed hath his eares whereon the Corne groweth, and notwithstanding, that they are heavy cares, as big as yong Cucumbers, and shares aboue like the top of a Steeple, yet enery Reed hath seven or eight eares upon it. I have told five hundred and fiftie Graines vpon one Reed, which came of one Graine alone. They are of divers colours, as White, Blacke, Yellow, Purple, &c. and fometimes you shall have threeor to foure colours thereof in one care. There are two forts thereof, great and imall, the great Graine is stronger then the small. They vie the Reed to couer their houses.

954

Raine burefull. They thun the Raine, and effectue it to be very ill and vnwholefome to fall your their naked bodies, which they doe not without great reason, for wee find our selves to bee much troubled therewith, when we travelt, specially when it raineth much, and maketh great Travados , as it doth once a veere. In those Countries, which is in Aprill; May, and June; at which time there are fuch Tempetts of Thunder, Lightning, wind, and Raine, that it is incredible, foerially the Raine under the Equinoctiall Line, is so vinwholesome and rotten, that if a man hath beene in the Raine and is thorow wet, and so lieth downe to sleepe in his Cabin, in his wet clothes, without putting them off, he is in danger to get some sicknesse; for it breedeth Feuers : and agains, if you drie not your wet clothes presently in the Sun , but forgetring them, chance to let them he, they will rot with the force of the water, in fuch fort, that you may plucke them in peeces with your fingers. And they find no leffe vnwholesomeneffe therein; for when it begins to Raine, they get them out of the way, and if any drops of water fall vpon their maked bodies, they shiner and shake, as if they had a Fener, and cast their armes over their shoulders to keepe the Raine from them : which they doe not, because the water is cold, for often times it is as warme as if it were fodden : but because of the vnwholesomenesse for their bodies, which they find thereby. And when they have troden in the day time in the water with their feet at night they make a fire, and lie with their foles of their feet against it, which they doe, to draw the moyfure of the water, which is gotten into their bodies, out againe at their feet : then they anount their bodies with Palme Oyle, which they vie also for a beautifying to make their bo- 30 dies shine, and that they doe to shunne the Raine water within those Countreys (as many men write) is very vnwholesome, and thereof many and dangerous diseases are ingendred.

Great Snakes.

They have Elephants, Leopards, Tigers, Cats of the Mountaine, Monkies, Foxes, Harts and ted the fish and Hinds; it is faid, that in this Countrie there are white Elephants : but I could never understand it from the Negros themselves.

There are the greatest and most venimous Snakes that ever was seene, there was one in my time taken there (as the Negroes told me) which was thirty foot long, and as much as fixe men could carrie; There is also a beast like a Crocodile, but it never goeth into the water, as the Croeodile doth which is called Languad.

Spiders,

Dogges,

There are Spiders as big as the palme of a mans hand, and great store of them. Camelions and Agtifier a great number, but they efteeme not them to be venimous, for they drie many of them & eat them. There are many Dogs & Cats, such as we have, but their Dogs have sharper snowts then ours, and their chaps full of wooll, they cannot barke nor make a noile, they are very faire beafts for colour, as blacke, red, white, and yellow Spaniels, &c. They are also a little smaller footed then ours, so that they are not much valike the Dogs in our Countrey, but they are valike to ours in one thing, for when you strike them, they run away, and make no noise, nor once offer to bite you; but when you run away from them, and are afraid of them, they will leape at you. and bite you by the legges : those Dogs they vie for their necessitie, and eate them, and in many places of the Countrey they are brought and driven to the Market like sheepe or hogges, being 50 tied one to the other with strings, they are called Ekia, or Cabra de matto, which is a wild sheepe, it is the first gift which a man of that Countrie giueth when he buyeth his Gentilitie, they make much of our Dogs in these Countries, for when they barke, they thinke they speake; and for that cause esteeme greatly of them. Cats also are there much esteemed, because they take Mice, wherewith the Inhabitans of

Carre.

If they know where any Elephants are, they vie all the meanes they can to take them, for they eate them also, although they should stinke like a Carrion, and that a thousand Maggots 60 crept out of them. Where they know that they vie often times to come, they make great pits, which they couer ouer with straw and foule leaves of trees, which the Elephant knowing nothing of, goeth that way as he was wont to doe, and falles into the pit, and cannot get

the Townes are much troubled, they are called Ambaio, they have very faire skins, and

are very good Moufers, they vie also to eate them, they were first carried hither out of

The Negroes hearing that hee is fallen into the pit, run thither with their weapons and fmite him mto the body with Affagaies, and fo kill him; which done, they leape into the pit, and cut him in quarters, and enery one may go and fetch his part thereof when he will; of the hide they make itooles to fit on: the taile is given to the King to beat the Flies from his naked body. they make itooles to in on the came a giner of they are much efteemed off there; with no leffe subtilitie they take the Leopards, for they Leopards. doe them more hurt then other beafts: and because it is a cruell beaft to spoyle and destroy men, keeping in the way where men should passe along. In every foure cornered way, or at the end of the fireet, they make houles with woodden pales, which are like to Rat trans, wherein they put Hens. Sheepe, and other things which he defireth to eate, where the Leopard comming to eate his prey is taken with the fall of the trap, and kild with an Aflagaie; they effecme much of the skin, whereof they vie to cut Girdles , and to make Caps. There are no Horses in that Country, and when there were some brought vnto them for a great Present , they kild them, and eate them : because their fielh feemed sweet wnto them.

The Oxen and Cowes that are found in that Countrey are not very great but of bignefic like Oxen, great Calues : their hornes stand backeward on their heads, they are not milke, for they give none; they can hardly bring up their yong Calues, by reason of the small moviture that the Cowes give their Calnes, by meanes of the drie Countrey wherein they are, and by reason of the

The Hens and Goats, (which with them are (heepe) that they have there, were brought them thither by the Portugalis of S. Thomas, the Hens profper and encrease well there, and are fo fat with the Millie that groweth there; as if they were Capons; but they are commonly smaller then ours, the Egges which they lay are no greater then Pidgeons Egges. The Dones which Dones they have there, were also brought them thither by the Portugals, and are called Abranama, which is as much to fay , as Birds brought thither vnto them by white men. They are very like to our Pidgeons, but their heads are leffe, like Sea-mewes, there is no great flore off, them in

The Hogs also were brought them by the Portugals, and are called Ebbio; they are very little tieges. but very sweet and pleasant to eate, but not so good as the Hogs in Mofambique, where the Hogs field is as daintie as Hens field : and because it is a very vnwholesome place, they give their 30 ficke men Hogs fiesh to eate, in stead of Hens fiesh : they have also not long tince gotten some Geese out of a ship of Holland, which they call Aparta, which are there much effectived off, be-

The Country is full of Monkies, of divers formes, for fome of them have white beards, and Monkies blacke Mustachoes, with speckled skins, their bellies white; and voon their backes they have a broad Tawnie firoke, with blacke Pawes and a black Tayle, and by vs are called Board-men. There are some called white Noses, because no part of them is white but onely their Nose, there is a third fort, called Boorthers, those than men very much, and stinke filehily, by nature they are very crafty : the fourth are very like to the lacken, which are found in the Graine Coast ; there: 40 are also many Monkies of diners other fashions, they take the Apes and Monkies with springes How taken which hang upon the trees, where into the Apes and Monkies leape, and are taken by the Nogros. Muske Cats are there in great abundance, the Poringals call them Cato degalia, which is Agalia Cats ; the Negroes call them Kankan, those kind of Cats are also found in East India , and in lana, but they are not fo good as those in Guinea; or of the golden Coast, they are there called Caltory, those Cats are much effeemed of by the Partugals, whereby they reape great profit, specially by their Agaly or Muske, which they take from them, and make them cleaner, and then Musk cars, it is put into glaffes, and carried into Lifton, it is a kind of beaft much given to bite; and to eate flesh ; because they give them fielh (as Hens, Pidgeons, Goats, and other costly meats) to eate in They eafe themselves in a place apart, and leave it and never lie in it ; it is almost tike a Foxe? but their tayles are like other Cats, their skins are speckled like a Leopards skin : the Negroes 50 take many of them in the woods when they are your, and so bring them vp : but betaute they have no skill there how to vie them, they fell them to ftrangers. The Male Cats are the beft,

are to rule, fo much the cofflier and better their Agalia is. There are Hares also in this Countrey, specially in a place called Akra, in forme like ours, and because that Countrey is low Sandy Ground , therefore they are found more there then in any other part of that Coaft : when the Negroes will take them, they goe a great number of them together, to the place where the Hares are, every one taking with him ewo or three cudgels of 60 wood, as long as a mans arme, and there they compale the field round about, and flanding about their holes, make fuch a noyfe and crying, and clapping their flickes one v ponthe other, that the Hares are fo feared therewith, that they leape out of their holes, and are by them kild with those Cudgels, which they cast at them, and by that meanes get many of them. Harts and Harts. Hinds are fometimes found there also, but in some places more then others, they are of the same

and yeeld the most Agalia, by reason that the Females pisse in the cod wherearthe Muske

groweth, and piffe it out with their water; when you perceive that they teare their bagge,

you must take their Agalia from them for they doe it to be rid of it: the wilder and worse they

fashion that ours are in the Low-countreyes, but they have another kind of homes then ours. they have no expresse kind of Instruments to take them withall : but when they see them goe to the water to drinke, they strike them into the bodie with an Assagaie and kill them, Himting to take wild beafts is lawfull for any man to wie in those Countreys, if they can take them. without punishment for doing it: There are many other kinds of beafts of such several forts, that a man cannot tell what to make them; but for that the Natherlanders that vie to Guinea, date noe goe farre into the Country to take wild beafts, leaft they should be taken and intrapped by the Bartueals or their adherents, and made flaues all their lines long : therefore there are many wild beafts that are not knowne by vs, and which the Inhabitants themselves know not, nor can not tell by what names to call them. The Birds that are found there, are of diners forts, and are little birds like vnto ours; fall.

Parrots.

there are blew Parrets, whereof there are great store, which being yong, are taken out of their nefts, and made tame, having not flowne abroad, they are better to teach, and to learne to frenke but they will not prate to much as the greene Brafilian Parrots doe. They have also an other kind of greene Birds, as big as Sparrowes, like the Catalinkins of Well India, but they cannoe speake, Those Birds are called Assessed, and by our Nesharlanders, called Parokites. They are taken with Mets, as you wie to take Sparrowes. They keepe much in low Land, where much Come or Millie groweth; for they eate much thereof. Those Birds are very kind one to the other; for when you put a male and a female in a Cage, they will alwaies fit together without making any poyle. The female is of fusha nature, that when the is coupled with the male, the 20 respecteth him much, and setteth him fit on the right hand, setting her selfe on the left hand; and when he goes to eats, thee followeth him; and so they live together quietly, being almost of the nature of the Turtle-doves. They are of a very faire greene colour, with a fpot of granestewnie voon their Nofes.

There are another kind of Parokian, which are much like them, being of the fame nature and condition. but are of colour as red as bloud, with a spot of blacke vpon their Noses, and a black Talle, being forms what greater then the Pavelage. There are other Birds not much valike to Gold-finches, all their bodies being yellow, those Birds make not their Nefts in the field for feare of Snakes, and other venimous books; but make their ness very craftily your the beanches of high trees , and there by their egges to keepe themselves from venimous beatle. They to have other small Bists, not much valide to hedge Sparrowes; but they keepe in the Fields atmong Corne, those Birds they thrust into their mouthes alive, and eate them Feathers Benns and

ming corne prince in the state of Mulchen, with many other hand of final Rinds,

all: they have fitter of Mulchen, with many other hand of final Rinds,

Birds.

The haut a kind of Rinds has Fagles, which play their hands the Turkle-cocks, their Birds are

Birds.

The haut a kind of Rinds has Fagles, which have to the Negross, whereby shey are much excellent
and therefore they carry them meant we to the halfes, and call them Paffer at Dags; which is the Birds of their god, and therefore they doe them no hurt, knowing well that they would resence themselves well enough : they lie alwayes in myre and durt, and stinke as ill as a prime. and you may fmell them stage off. They have fome water Suites, but not many, And Torole. Dozes, which have a blacke fisoke about their neckes like a crowne. There are many Phefines, 40 not much unlike ours for fathron, but have not such feathers, for they are speckled blacke and white, and without long taylor as our have; they are not of to good a taffe as other common Hens are. Beake-cockes alfo I have feene there, not much walke our Peake-cockes; but there is some difference in the Feathers, for some of them are of other colours. Pitters I have feene there as Liaid before, which they efterme for a great Faiffe, and a South-fayer. Cranes also there

are many, and Kites also of the same fashion that our Holland Kites are. There is a kind of Birds

also there which are like Storkes, but they have not so long red Bils, and make not such a notice.

Pearcockes.

Speckled Cromes, and gray Sea-mewer are there in great abundance, with diners other kinds of Birds, not much valide outs, but if you marke them well, there is difference betweene them. as some in their feathers, others in their Bils, the third in their feet, and the fourth in their so heads, so that there is some difference, although they resemble much; and because Birds are little taken and those in those Countreyes, for that they have no kind of Instruments to doe it withall. there are great from in the Countrey, and by that meanes, both the beafts and the Birds waxe Burning Flies. very bold. There are many Owles and Bats which flie by night, and store of great greene Frogs, and gray Grashoppers, and many great land Grabs, which keepe in the earth, and are of a purple colour, which they effected for a great prefent. When I went by night to walke in the fields. I faw things in the graffe that thine like fire coales, which I tooke vp and tied them in my handhercher, which made it thow with the light of the beaft as if it had burnt: and when I went into the Towns to the Meyor, and she wed it them, they wondered therest, and the next day 60 when I lookt on them, they were small blacke Flies, like Spanish Flies, but were as blacke as Pitch : Flies, Mothes, and Bees are there also to be seene. The Bees make their Hiues vp. on trees. There are great flore of blacke Ants, which make holes in the earth, like field Mice, those Ants doe much hert to the Bees, and cate up there Hony and Waxe.

Bannana, in Brafilia, Pacona ; and the tree Paguouer, in Malabar, Patan, &c. is the fruite Bannanas, or whereof lobs Hunghen western, and calleth it ladien Figs, this tree hath no branches, the fruit Indian Figges where the cut of the tree, and hash leaves at least a fatheme long, and three spannes broad. Those leaves among the Two ket are vied for Paper, and inother places the Houses are covered therewith there is no wood ypon the tree, the out-fide (wherewith the tree is covered when it beginneth to waxe old) is like the middle part of a Sine, but opening it within, there is nothing but the leaves, which are zolled up round and close together, it is as high as a man, on the too the leanes begin to foring out, and rife up an end, and as the young leanes come forth the old win ther away, and begin to drie varill the tree comes to his growth, and the fruit to perfection : to the leaves in the middle have a very thicke veine, which disideth it in two, and in the middle of the leaves, out of the heart of the tree, there groweth a flowre as bigge as an Effridge Egge, of

a ruffet cologe, which in time wasteth long like the stalke of a Colewoort, whereon the Figures grow close one by the other, when they are fill in their huskes, they are not much valike great Beanes & fo grow more and more vistill they be a span long, and foure thumbes broad like a Cucumber, they are cut off before they are sipe, and are in that fort hanged up in bunches, which oftentimes are as much as a man can carrie. It also yeeldeth good Tromnelis like Milke (when the tree is cut downe) which commeth out of the bodie thereof, having hanged three or foure dayes, they are through ripe, the tree beares but one bunch at a time, whereon there is at least one hundred Figges and more, and when they cut off the bunch of Figges, the tree also is cut and within a moneth bath his full growth, and all the years long no time excepted. The tree

20 downe to the ground, the root flaving fill in the Earth , which prefently fpringeth vo agains. beareth fruit, the fruit is very delicate to eate, you must pull off the huske wherein the fruit lyeth, very delightfull to behold, the colour thereof is whitish and some what yellow, when voubite it, it is fost, as if it were Meale and Butter mixed together, it is mellow in byting, it conleth the maw, much thereof eaten maketha man very look and raw in the throate, it maketh women lecherom if they eate much thereof. Some are of opinion, because it is so delicate a fruit, that it was the fame tree that flood in Paradile, whereof God forbad Adam and Ene to eate. It imels like Roies, and hath a very good imell, but the tafte is better. The Portugals

will not cut it through with a Knife, but breake it, by reason of a special observation which 30 they have in the cutting thereof, which is, that then it sheweth like a crosse in the middle of the fruit, and therefore they thinke it not good to cut it,

The Bachouens (by vs so called) are very like the Bannanas, for the condition and forme is Bachouens or all one, only that the fruit is smaller, shorter, white of colour within and sweeter of taste, and Bannanas de is effeemed to be wholfomer to be eaten then the Bannanas, but there is no fuch great quantitie canes. of them, and for that they were first brought out of the Kingdome of Congo, into other Coun-

tries, they have gotten the name thereof. The Annuages is also a delicate and pleasant fruit for smell, and of the best taste that any fruit Annuages can be, it hath also diners several maries, there are two forts, the Male and the Female, the Can marians call it, Anamase, the Brasilians, Nana; those of Hispaninia, Interna, and the Spanians in

40 Benfilis, Pines, because one of them found that and the Pines first in Brafilia, it is as great as a Mellon, faire of colour, some-what yellow, greene and carnation, when it begins to bee ripe, the greanenede thereof turneth into an Orange colour, it is of a pleafant taffe, and hath a fine inell like an Apricocke, forthat it is to be smelt farre off, when you fee the fruit afaire off, being greene, it shewes like Artichokes, and is eaten with Wine, it is light of difgefture, but eating much thereof it inflametha mans bodie. In Braffinthere is three forts thereof, each having fournall name : first, laisuna, the fecond, Boniams; the third, laisums : but in Gnines there is but one fort. The time when they are in their flowre is in Lent, for then they are heft, it growes halfe a fathame about the ground, the leanes thereof are not much whike Semper Vincon, when they are eaten, they are cut in round fices, and lope in Spanife wine; you cannot eate enough 10 thereof, it is verie hot of nature, and will grow in moift ground, the fops that you take out of the Wine taftes like fweet Muske, and if you doe not prefently wipe the Knife wherewith you cut the fruit, but forgetting it let it lye halfe an houre, it will bee eaten in , as if there had

beene frong water laid upon it, being eaten in abundance and without knowledge, it caufeth great fickneffe. There are great store of Iniamus growing in Guinea, in great fields, which are fowed and Iniamus. planted like Turnips, the root is the Iniamus, and groweth in the Earth like Earth-nuts, those Iniamus are as great as a yellow root, but shicker and fuller of knots, they are of a Mouse-colour, and within as white as a Turnip, but not fo sweet, being put in a Kettle and sodden with fieth, and then peeled and exten with Oyle and Pepper, they are a very delicate meate, in ma-

my places it is vied for bread, and is the greatest meate that the Negroes eate. The Battatas are somewhat redder of colour, and in forme almost like Iniamus, and taste Battatas. like Earth-nuts, those two kinds of fruit are very abundant in Guinea, they are commonly

rofted, or elfe caten with a hodge-pot in stead of Parsenips or Turnips.

The Palme-wine tree is almost like the Cocos tree, or \$1 Lantor, with disers others, and are tree.

959

of three or foure forts, most of them have all one kind of leafe, but in manner of wood they are walke, for this tree is therer of wood then the reft, the Wine is drawne out of those trees by boring them, from whence there iffueth a fap like Milke, which is very coole and fresh to drinke at the first when it is drawne, it is pleasant and sweet, having stood a while it is as fower as Vineger, fo that you may vie it in a Sallet, but being drunke iweet and fresh, it causeth a man to void vrine well, whereby in those Countries, there are very few found, that have the difease of the Stone: drinking much thereof a mans head will foone be light, the lightneffe which a man hath in his head thereby, causeth it not to ake. When it commeth first out of the tree it is fweeter of tafte, then when it hath flood awhile, but yet it is efteemed to bee better when it hath stood awhile, and is some-what setled, then presently to bee drunke, for it standeth feething and bubling, as if it hung over the fire and fod, fo that if it were put into a Glaffe and floor vo without letting any ayre come into it, the force thereof would breake the Ghaffe in pieces, but being a meale tyde olde, it is nothing worth, because it is so sowre, and then it is of another colour verie waterith, therefore it is much mixed with water, and feldome comes pure to the Market, asit is taken out of the tree, which is done partly to increase their Wine, as ale fo that then it is the sweeter to drinke, and hath the taste of Syder, and the colour of Must. when the tree is old, and will yeeld no more Wine at the top, it is cut downe at the foot, and a fire made at the root thereof, where they fet a pot, whereinto the Wine (by meanes of the heate) runneth, the tree beeing changed, and yeelding no more profit, there groweth another tree out of the roote thereof, but it is halfe a yeare old before it glueth any Wine. In the morning betimes an houre before day, the Wine is drawne out and brought to the Market at noone.

The Palmitas tree is not much to be seene in Guinea, but for that a Negro in that Countrey Palmitts tree. The Palmitts tree is not much to be termined to fay fomething of it in this place, it is showed me some of the fruit thereof, I thought good to say something of it in this place, it is a tree without branches, on the top of the tree the fruit groweth, and it is almost like the Annames when it is ripe. It is outwardly of a faire gold colour, and within it hath graines like Pomegranates, they are of a very (weet talte, the other is hard and wnfit to eate.

Of their Gentlemen, and how they are made: Their Dancings, Sports, Difeafes, Cures, Vifitations, Mournings, Funerals: and of their Gold.

Ambition of

Here are many Gentlemen in that Countrey, but of small meanes, for affoone as they have bought their Gentilitie, they are then poorer, and in miferable estate then they were before, and for that they thinke to be men of great account when they are Gen-

Creation.

tlemen, they feeke much after it, and begin to gather fome wealth from their youths of the year to obtayne the place of a Gentleman. First, they give three gifts to be made a General cheman, the fright is a Dogge, which they call Cabre do Masse, which is as much to fay, saa Field-sheepe. The second Gift, is a Sheepe or a Goat. The third Gift, is a Cow, with many other things, and then he is made a Gentleman. These Guess are given among those that are Gentlemen, and are given the one now, the other at another time, as the man that is made a Gentleman can best doe it, and hath the meanes to performe it, and then hee makes the Captaine acquainted with it, which done, he buyeth a Cow, which is carryed and tyed in the Market place, and then it is made knowne to the people, that such a man shall bee made a Gentleman at fuch a time, in the meane time all those that are Gentlemen make themselues as fine as they can to goe with him, and to fight and shew many Apish Toyes. The man that is to bee made a Gentleman, makes all things readie, as meate and drinke to entertaynehis Guests, 10 and to bid them welcome in good fort, he buyeth Hens and many pots of Palme-wine, and fendeth enery Gentleman a Hen and a pot of Palme-wine home to his House, to make merrie

When the Feast day comes, the Inhabitants affemble together vpon the Market place, the men (as he mafters) goe and fit on the one fide , having many Instruments, as Drums, Hornes, Bels, and other things with them. The Captaine armeth himfelfe, and with him hath many young Batchelors with Shields and Affagaies, their faces being coloured and their bodies painted with red and yellow Earth, which makes them looke like a company of yong Deuils. The man that is made a Gentleman is accompanied with a number of other Gentlemen, having a 60 Boy behind him which carryeth his stoole to fit vpon when hee goes to speake with any man, and his fellow Gentlemen come to falute him, and with him good fortune in his new efface, at which time they take a great deale of ftraw in the one hand, and lay it under his feet, which he treadeth upon (the like also they we when their owne friends come to visit them, and bring

them any Prefents, which they vie for a great honour.) The wines of the Gentlemen goe to her, to doe all the honour they can to the wife of the Gentleman that maketh the Feat, and dreffe her finely, folding her haire with many golden Fetifes, and Croffes, putting about her neeke a Ring of gold, and in the one hand shee carrieth a Horse-taile, and on her right arme shee hath a Ring of gold, at each end thereof having a round thing like the Lid of a Pot, all made of gold; and being readie, they are placed in order, as their manner is, one after the other; then the Cow is led forth, and then all the Gentlemen in the Towne come and follow them, as it were on Procession, dancing and leaping round about the Towne, and when they come againe into the Market-place, the Cow is bound to a stake, and there they make a great noise with Drummes and Pipes, and the young Bachelors with fencing and leaping, with their Shields and Affagaies, now in one place, then in another, making, as they thinke, great 10y about the Gentleman; every man feeking to excell each other, and to get most praise and commen-

The women also make no leffe adoe with finging and dancing, fometimes carrying both the

Gentleman and his wite, vpon a stoole, round about the Towne, casting white Meale in their faces, and in that fort make great pastime three dayes together, and every night they are led home to their houses, and watcht by the other Gentlemen. The next day he is fetcht by a great number of people, and great honour done vnto him as before; at which time hee hangs a white Flag out of his houle, which doth fignifie ioy, or open house. The third day, the Cow is killed by the Executioner, and quarrered, and every man bath a piece of the flesh thereof , that they also may be participants of the Feaft: but the man and the woman that maketh the Feaft may not eate of the Cow ; for they make them beleeue, that if they eate any thereof, they shall die within a yeere after. The Featt day being ended, the head of the Cow is carried home to his house, which he hangeth up, and painteth it with divers colours, hanging many fraw Fee tifiees upon it, which is a figne of his Gentilitie, and a warrant to proue him to be made a Gen-

Then he hath great priniledge, for he may buy Slaues, and doe other things which before he priniledge. might not have done. When he is made a Gentleman he is very proud thereof; for, the first thing that they will tell vnto a Stranger, is, that they are Gentlemen, and that they have many Slaues, efteeming themselues to be great Masters; but it falleth out oftentimes, that after their feafting is done, and he made a Gentleman, that then hee is poorer then he was before, because he disburfed all his money to get it, and then he foult goe out to fish againe and doe other things. if he will get his litting. This kind of Gentilitie cofts him about eight Bendas, which is a pound of gold; but deducting that which is given for Profests of other men which bring them to him, each man according to his meanes and abilitie, it standeth him not in about halfe a pound of gold. Those Gentlemen haue a Fellowship among them, and euery yeere make a Feast, and then bold their Friends to be merrie with them, and make good cheere; at which time they hang their Annual Feath
Cowes or Sheepes heads, with Millie frawes, and paint them with white colour, lignifying thereby the remembrance of their Feaft. Befides this , the Gentlemen haue an other Feaft amongst them, vpon the fixth day of July, at which time they paint their bodies with white and red ftripes, and hang a Garland made of greene boughs and ftraw about their necks, which they weare all that day, that you may know the Gentlemen from the rest, and then also they hang their Cowes and Goats heads full of Fetifoes, as before; in the evening they meet together at a Banket, in the house of the Captaine, where they are very merrie together, eating and drin-

king their heads and bellies full, till they are drunke. They make themselves very fine, especially the women, when they goe to dance, wherein Their danthey take a great pride. They hang many Copper, Tin, and Juorie Rings about their armes, and cings. on their legs they put Rings with many Bells, that they may found when they dance. Their heads are frizled, and dreffed with a tuft of haire. They wash their bodies faire with water, and then anoint them with Palme-oile, to make them shine. Their teeth also they rub with a hard 50 flicke : then they put a piece of white linnen about their bodies, which hangs from vnderneath their breasts, downe below their knees; and commonly about evening they assemble together, and goe to the Market-place to dance there. Others have instruments whereon they play, as

fome Copper Basons, whereon they strike with woodden Stickes. Others have woo Drums, cut out of an hollow Tree, couered ouer with a Goats Skin, and play vpon them. Others have round Blockes, cut very handfomly and evenly, whereon also they firike with woodden Stickes. Others haue Cow-bells. Some haue small Luits, made out of a piece of wood like a Harpe with fixe ftrings of Reeds , whereon they play with both their hands , every one having their feuerall Instruments, and each keeping good correspondence with their fellowes Instruments. Others sing, and begin to dance two and two together, leaping and stamping with one of their feet upon the ground, knocking with their fingers, and bowing downe their heads, and speaking each to other; in their hands carrying Horle-tailes, which they cast sometimes on the one shoulder, then upon the other, using certaine order in their sports, one following the other, and each doing as the other doth. Other women take fraw, which they let fall to the

ground, and then dancing yount, cast it wp againe into the aire with their feet, and catch it as it. doexcellent well; but they defire not to be seene by strangers, because they laugh and ieft and them, and then they are ashamed.

This continuing an houre or an houre and an halfe, enery one goes home againe, as hauing ended their sports. There are houses also among them, wherein young men and maids vie to dance and play. The young Bachelors vie to drinke themselves drunke, and by night runne through the streets with their Armes and Assagaies, making a great noise with crying and showting. as if a companie of young Deuils ran about the ffreets; and meeting with other companies, with whom having some words, they fight together, wherein they are so earnest one against the other, that they are almost readie to kill each other, and many times cannot leaue off. There to will not lightly beginne to quarrell, for they are not so hastie, but will indure much, specially of strangers, before they will quarrell; but if they once beginne, they are not easily pacified. on mangers, betore they want quantity of their aduerse Parties, and to be reuenged, though it Should coff them their livies, and they have very quicke hands to thrust and to strike. Their bodies are fubiect to many ficknesses and diseases, which they esteeme but little, and

Their wounds

make no account of wounds or hurts. The ficknesses wherewith they are most troubled, are make no account of woodness of the provided and burning Feuers. The didates they get from foule and filthie women, whereunto they are much addicted, and although they filted they get from foule and filthie women, whereun hade any differies by fuch meanes, which are not without much danger, yet they effected not much of them, but palle them away as if they ayled nothing, and are not faint-hearted, but of 40 much of them, but palle them away as if they ayled nothing, and are not faint-hearted, but of 40 much of them, but palle them away as if they ayled nothing, and are not faint-hearted, but of 40 much of them. à hard complexion, suffering their wounds to iwell and putrifie, without any meanes of remedie applied thereanto; for they neither haue nor vie any Physicke among them, to ease them in their ficknesse; nor Surgeons or Physicians to heale their wounds, but suffer their wounds and difeales to hade their course, vnlesse any of our Surgeons give them any Physicke or Surgerie, For the Pox and Clap-dollers they vie much Salfaparillia, which the Hollanders thips bring them; which Salue they feethe with falt water , and drinke the water for drinke against the Wormes in the Pox, and fuch like dileafes; and alfoagainst the Wormes that are in their legs, (as I will declare more at large) wherewith also we are much troubled, whereunto they vie no remedie at all, but fuffer their legs to continue to, vntill they heale and waxe better of themselues. For the paine of the head they vie certaine Pap, which they make of greene leaves, and therewith anoint the place where their paine is ; and if they have any swelling about their bodies, which Barbarous In breaketh not out, then they take a knife and true two or three long flathes therein, and so give the wound a meanes to worke, and to Weale wood and grow together againe; which is the cause that they have fomtich knobd fleth, and fo many flashes in their bodies : but is well to be differned, whether they be cut and made in their flesh to beautifie and set out themselues, or wounds and fores that are healed up againe. They also vieno letting of bloud, but onely make a hole in their bodies with a kinfe to let their bloud come out : when they have any other naturall ficknesses, they will not helpe nor comfort one the other; but if any of them be ficke, they will flum him as it were the plague, and sparne the sicke man like a Dog, and not once helpe him with a drop of Oyle or Water, although they have never fo much need ; no, not the Father to the Sonne, but let them lie like Beafts and die with hunger and fickneffe; fo that they are not skilfull to

They make difference betweene the word Morian and Negro, for they will not bee called Morians, but Negroes or Prettoes, (which is as much to fay) as Blacke men; for they fay that Morian is as much to say as Slaue or Captine, and also a man that knowes nothing, or that is halte a Foofe; and therefore they will not be called Morians, but Negroes or Prettoes: for if you call them Morians, they will hardly speake vnto you, nor make you any answere. They make Tone the other Slaues, but in other fort then in Congo or Angola, for there you can lade no thips full of Slaues; but to the contrarie, they defire much to have them, and buy them : yet there are both States and Captines; and for that in those Countries they take no great paines, nor so need any great number of Slaues, therefore there is no great quantitie of them to be had, to fell them as they doe in other Countries, but onely among them of the Land, that have need of them. Againe, no man may buy or fell them, but fuch as are of great account and Gentlemen. They are marked with an Iron in their bodies, that if they chance to runne away, they may be

knowne againe by their markes.

Such as are blind, or have any other imperfections in their bodies, as being lame or Criples, and by reason thereof cannot get their liuings, the King placeth them with Smiths, to blowe their Bellows; others with those that preste Palme-oyle, or grind Colours, whereun to such de- 60 formed perfons are fit; or to fuch Occupations and labours wherewith they can helpe themfelues, and get their victuals; fo that there you fee none fuch as begge their victuals, but they are put in some place or other to earne their meate; so that the Inhabitants give no meate one to the other, The Kings of the Townes have many Slaves , which they buy and fell , and get much by then and to be briefe, in those Countries there are no men to be hired to worke or

goe of any errand for money, but fuch as are Slaues and Captines, which are to fpend their dayes

Harred and enuy is much vied in those Countries, and to whomsoeuer they once beare hatred and enuie, they will hate them cruelly, and doe them all the hurt and villany that they can : on the other fide, they beare a villany long in their minds, and will keepe malice in their hearts feuen or eight yeeres, and when time ferueth them, then show it openly; no lesse hatred and enuy is borne by one Towne vnto an other, speaking all the villany they can, and extolling themselves as much as they may, to have the honour of Traffique, and to the end that the ship should come and Anchor before their Townes, and by that meanes to bring the Countrie Merto chants to Traffique there, wherein they are very diligent : and although one Townelyeth but three or four miles one from the other; yet they are as enuious one against the other as possi-

ble they can be, and report as hardly of their neighbours as they can imagine; that fo they may get the Netherlanders to Traffique with them : and to that end, they firme to flew more friendthip to the Netherlanders, one then the other, to draw vs to affect them, and bring the trade of

Merchandize vnto them.

The men commonly live there till they be old, as it feemeth by their faces and outward appa- Old age and rance, and as we conceane; but they cannot reckon their owne ages, nor tell how many yeeres the effects, they have lived. When they begin to be old, then they are not well proportioned nor feemely; but looke euill fauouredly, with gray beards, yellow wrinckled skins, like Spanifb Leather, 20 which proceedeth of the anointing of their bodies with PalmeO-yle. They are likewise leane of Legs and Armes, and wholly mishapen, specially olde women, with their long breasts. which then shew and hang upon their bodies like old Hogs bladders, they would not willingly be old; because as then they are not esteemed of, but much despised, and not respected, and as from their youths vowards, to the best time of their lives, they still waxe of a fairer blacke colour, fo when they are past that time, they begin to decay, and to lose their perfect

In their winter time, they are very fickly, & then commonly there is a great mortalitie among them.by meanes of the vnwholefomeneffe of the aire, which they then endure : and when they die, their friends come to the dead mans house, and weepe and forrow grienously for him, spea- lamentable

20 king vnto him, & asking him why he died, with many fuch like foelish Ceremonies, They take the dead body and lay it on a mat vpon the ground, & wind it in in a woollen, purposely made in that Country, of colour red, blew, blacke and white. Vader his head they lay a woodden stoole.

and couer or dresse his head with a Goats skin, and strew all the body ouer with ashes, and dust of Barkes of trees; they close not his eyes together, they lay his armes downe by his fides, and fo let him lie halfe a day in the aire. If it be a man, his best beloued wife goes and sits downe by the body, and if it be a woman, the man goes and fits downe by her, crying and weeping . hauing in their hands a wispe of straw, or of Barkes of trees, wherewith crying and howling ouer the dead body, he or the wipeth his face, fometimes faying vnto it, Anzy, and making a great noyle; in the meane time, the friends or neighbours come to vilite the dead, and to mone him for his misfortune, others (as the neerest friends) being women, goe round about the house.

finging and beating upon Basons, sometimes comming to the dead body, and goe round about him finging and leaping, and kincking of hands, making a great noyle, and then againe 200 round about the houle inging and playing upon Basons, which they doe twice or thrice one after the other.

In the meane time, preparation is made for the buriall, and to make good cheere together, after it is ended; to the which end, they dreffe certaine Hens, and a Sheepe, and other meats which Funerall they are accultomed to este, and while the dead bodie is about the ground, the eldeft Marinni of that quarter, goes about from house to house with a Bason, whereon every one must put the value of twelve pence in gold, with the which money they buy a Cow, which Cow is given to a Fetifero that with to consure their gods, to will him to consure the Fetife, to fuffer the dead

50 body to remaine and reft in peace, and to bring him into the other world, and not to moleft him in the way, with this Cowes blood hee conjureth his Ferifo ; (for a dead man must fmeare his Fetiffo with blood) then they bind the dead body vpon a planke, and carry him to the grave finging and leaping : the bodie is carried by men, and the women follow after one by one, about their heads having a Crowne or Garland of fraw, and a staffe in their hands: the man, if it be a woman, goes next to the dead body crying to the graue, elfethere goes no man after it, vnleffe the dead body chanceth to be borne to another place to be buried; as sometimes it hapneth that tiey carry the dead body twenty miles off, from the place where he died, to be buried there : and then many men go armed with the body, to conucy it to the buriall: the body 60 is carried to the earth, & the graue-maker maketh a grave about foure foot deepe, and therein he

is laid; ouer the grave there are many flickes of wood aid, close one by the other: the women creepe to and fro ouer the graue, making a great noyfe, with howling and crying, and ouer that, they lay the earth, and place it, and bind it about the same, as if it were a Cheft : all his goods, as Apparell, Weapons, Pots, Baions, Tooles, Spades, and fuch Houshold-stuffe, wherewith he earned

Viateum.

his living, are carried to the grave, and buried with him, which are fet round about the grave to ferue his turne withall in the other world, as they did when he lived vpon the earth : other of the dead mans friends, bring fome thing also to set in the graue for a memory, which is port into the grave with the rest of his goods. It he were one that delighted much in drinking & lound Palme well when he hued : they will fet a pot of Palme-wine by him in his graue, because hee should not die for thirst, and what in his lite he vied, that is given him, and buried in his grave with him. If it be a woman that died in travell of her child, the child is laid in the mothers right arme, and buried with her; about your the graue, there is a ftraw house made like a Serul chre, wherein all the houshold-stuffe and other things are set. The graue-makers fee, is to have halfe the goods that are let into the grave, but the friends of the dead content him, and he is paid for it; because they should let the goods stand still varoucht : for it is a great credit to the friends of the dead to leave good flore of goods vpcn the grave with the dead body; which they let fland there to long, till it be cleane confumed, and none of them will ever offer to take any of it away by any meanes whatfoeuer. The body being buried, they goe altogether to the Seadide or to some other River, where the women goe in, & Hand up to their middles in waters, and taking vp water in their hands, cast it in their owne faces, and vpon their bodies, and wash their breatts. and all their bodies. Other women in the meane time play vpon Basons, and such like infan. ments, one of those women take the man or woman, whose husband or wife is dead, and leading them into the water, laid them therein flat vpon their backes, and take them vp againe; which they doe divers times, speaking one vnto the other, and making great complaints. When he or the is well and cleane washt from the head to the foot, the leadeth them out of the water againe and puts their clothes upon their bodies again, & then they go together to the dead mans house to make good cheere, and to drink themselves drunk. If it be a man that died that had children , the women must not retaine nor keepe any of his goods for the behoofe of the childrens but mult give all the mans goods (both that which he had to his marriage, and which he gother his labour while he lived) ynto his Brethren, if he hath any living, and must not keepe any thing from them. It he hath no brethren, then the father if he be living, taketh all his fonnes goods, and injoyeth it. If it be a woman that dieth, then the husband must deliver her marriage goods to her brethren, as aforefaid, without keeping any thing thereof for his children, fo that no children in those Countreyes inherite their Fathers good, neither are they their Fathers heires : No more; may the wife inherite any of her husbands goods, but it is all divided among his brethren; but while their wives live, shey give her what they thinke good of that which they gaine, fo yong maids and men must endeaour themselves to get some thing in their youths, that they may have some thing when they marry and keepe houses.

For the Kings death, more forrow is made by fome of the Gentlemen , who in the Kings life ferued him; when he is dead, give him a flave to ferue him, & other men one of their wivesto wait on him, and to dreffe his meat : others bring one of their fonnes to goe with the King into theother world; so that there are a number of people that are appointed to goe with the King to the other world : which are killed, and their heads cut off, but they know nothing thereof, for fuch men and women as give them to the King when he is dead; tell not them that they shall be put men and w.men as gue tuem to the Aing When he is dead; tell not them that they shall be put to death, to go en into the other world with the King; but when the time comes, that the butinal is to be solemnifed, they fend them on some message, or to setch water, and so so lowing them, strike them through the body with an Affagaie, and kill them in the way : which done, they carry the dead body to the Kings house, whereby they shew what faithfull servants they were vnto their King while he lived : others also doe the like, and those dead bodies are smeared with blood, and buried with the King in his grave, that they may travell together. If any of his wives loved him intirely, they faffer themselves to be kild with the rest, and are buried with him, that they may raigne together in the other world. The heads of the dead men and women, are fet round about the Sepulchre and graue of the King, for a great brauerie and hono ir vinto him. Vpon the graue they fet all kinds of meat and drinke, that they may eate some thing, and verily believe that they eate and drinke it, and that they live thereby, and for that cause the pors of Palme-wine, and of water, are continually fild vp : all his stuffe, as Armes and Clothes are buried with him, and all his Gentlemen that fequed him, have every one of them their Pictures made of Clay, atter the life, and fairely painted, which are fet and placed orderly round about his graue, one by the other fo that their Kings Sepulchers are like houles, and as well flurt as if they still listed: which Sepulchres are so much esteemed off, that they are watcht both by night and by day, by ai med men : to the end, that if he defireth to have any thing, they should straight bring it him.

Gold how efreemed and

Gold at this day is as much entermed off by them, as it is with vs, (of whom they fay, Gold, is our God) and more too, for they are greedier and earnester to have it then we are because they 60 marke and fee that the Hollanders take to much paines for it, and give more Merchandife for it in Exchange, then over the Portugals did. .

For I am of an opinion, that there are few Negroes that dwell on the Seafide, that know where the Mines are, or that ever faw them, also there was never any Portugall or Netherlander at them, or neere them, but the Mines are well kept, and lookt vnto by the owners thereof; fo I have heard by some Negroes, that each King hath his Mines, and causeth the gold to be dieged by his men, and felleth it to other Merchants , and fo it paffeth from one to a-

In what manner the gold is found in Guinea, I know not, but as some Negroes have told me. they finde gold in deepe pits, which they digge vp, and that with the water it is driven downe like Sand, at which waters and running iprings, many people fit with spoones in their

hands, and take up the gold, fand and all, and put it into a Bason.

Some peeces are covered over with Chalke, and Earth, wherein they are found, the small gold. which is found in the Sand, they purge and make cleane in cleare running water, but yet they let fome Sand and Grauell remaine among it, it is found in no great quantities, (as they themselues say) but with great paine and labour, for it costs many men their lives, which are fmothered in the Mines; and a man that can find two or three Englishen of gold in a day, hath done well, and hash earned a good dayes hire. The halfe which is found is the labourers, and the other halfe is for the King, or for him that oweth the Mine; This I have been told by fome of the Negroes. Goldby them is called Chika, and some great Merchants that dwell ahout the Maine, bring the gold aboord the ships to buy wares, as it comes out of the Mine, and that is effected to be the best gold , wherein there is left deceit, but the receiver must looke well to it, to blow the fand cleane out of it, and to beat the yeallow earth with the ftones out 20 of it, with a hammer, and so he cannot lose by it ! neuerthelesse, the gold that is brought rough out of the Mine, is efteemed to be better and richet, and more worth in every Marke then

It falleth out oftentimes, that some gold is more worth then others, which hapneth by meanes of the receivers negligence, and many times as the Mines of gold fall out ; for some of them are finer gold then others: and also the deeper that the Mines are digged, the gold falls out to be worfe, and is more mixed with filter, even in the earth it felfe, then the gold that heth

higher in the earth.

CHAP.2.S.6.

Befides this, meane Merchants bring much molten gold, 44 Crakawen, armeRings, Iewels, Falle gold, and other things, wherein there is most falshood vied: for fuch Negroes as have but small 30 meanes to Traffique with vs, are more vsed and addicted to the falfifying of gold, then others are, wherein they vie great fubtilitie, but we our felues are oftentimes the cause thereof; for we bring and fell them the matter, and the Instruments which they wie therein; and so deceine our felues, and make a rod for our owne breeches: but they were wont to falfifie it more then now. For the Portugals hanged vp fome forit. They have good knowledge in Gold, and can foone perceiue whether it be good or falfified; but of other lewels, as Pearles, Diamonds, Rubies, Emralds. and fuch like precious stones, they have no knowledge; but they know fine red Corals wel, which are much efteemed off by them.

Silver alto is well, and too much knowne among them; because they vie it to falsifie Gold withall, and to make it of leffe value then it is. They learned of the Portugals to melt gold. 40 They also have found the meanes to put an edge of gold round about filter, and Red Copper mixed together, letting the false mettle remaine in the middle of the peece, and so when hee that receiveth it, is in hafte, and toucheth it but on the edge thereof, (where it is not fallified) with his Touch-stone, it passets for good : but such must bee cut in sunder with a hammer. and then the fallifying is perceived, and when they could find no meanes to fallifie the small fine Chika Foets Gold, fo that the receivers had no suspition thereof, and tooke the leffe heed there vnto, wee our felues brought them tooles to doe it withall : for wee brought them Files, and Sawes to fell, so that they filed the yellow Copper, and mingled it among the final gold, that it could hardly be perceived because it was no smal, which was the subtiltest falsifying of gold by them vied, but when we blew the fand & dust out of it, then the Copper shewed 50 it selie, whereby it appeareth that the Negroes have many wayes and deuses to fallifie gold, but fuch as looke narrowly vnto them, will not be deceived : but to trie their falfifyings, the best way is to touch their gold, and to be warie of deceit, and of receiving bad gold. An other way is to looke fpeedily vnto the Negroes themselves; To see if they have bad gold or not, for when they bring bad gold, they will be in great feare, with your handling thereof, and when you offer to trie their gold, they will refuseit, and alter their colours, and shake and quiner

The wormes in the legges and bodies, trouble not every one that goeth to those Coun-Troublesome treves, but some are troubled with them, and some not, and they are found in some men long wormer. fooner then in others, fome have a worme before the Voyage is done, and while they are still

60 vpon the Coalt, some get them while they are vpon the way, others have them after their Vovage is full ended, some soure moneths after, some nine moneths after, and some a yeere after they have made a Voyage thither; others have made two or three Voyages thither, and never were troubled with those wormes.

At Forker in Rafiria, there are the like. funpoled to

The Negroes themselves are much troubled with them, specially those that dwel about the castle of Mina, and it is a thing to be wondered at, for the Negroes that dwel but 25 miles lower East. ward are not troubled with wormes as their neighbors are, And another (whereof John Harehen speaketh in his Itinerario) are troubled therewith, for the Hands of East India, Welt India, China Brasilia, and other strange Countries are not troubled therwith, nor know not thereof, and which is more; They of the Iland of Saint Thomas, which men esteeme to be the vnwholesomest place in come by drin- the world; and wherein fo many men are ficke, and lofe their liues, know not what those king bad water wormes meane, but wondred much thereat, when it was shewed them of such as had been in that place, with the Hollanders in Guinea. The Negroes themselves knew not whereof they are ingendred. as M. Ant. 100. but the greatest presumption is, that they proceed and breed of the water which men buy of kinjon observed the Negroes, which they take out of Wels or Pits, and it is very likely (as we find by the experience) that they breed of the water ; for in Ormus, or in those parts, the fresh water is fetche vp in pots by diners, eighteene fathome deepe under the falt water, which those people drinke. because they are there also troubled with wormes, and as some men write: the Indians themselnes fav. that they come of the water. Such as have them are in great paine, for some of them can neither goe nor fland; fome neither fit nor lie, others lie wholy in dispaire, as if they were fenceleffe, and fomtimes are faine to be bound; fome have them with a feuer, or shaking, as if they had a feuer; fome get them on a fullen, others have them before they know it, and have little paine therewith; so that the wormes shew themselves divers wayes : they appeare with a litthe Blain, others with a fpot like a Flea-biting, others with a litle swelling; so that you may often 20 fee the worme betweene the skin and the fleth, others shew themselues with bloody vains, &c. It must shew it selfe before men vie any remedie for it : neuerthel fe, it sheweth it felfe many times too much, and too foon, for it were better that it came not fo foon, nor appeared at all, but fuffered men to be at ease, it will feeke to helpe itselfe, and thrust out his note, which a man must then take hold on, least he creepe in againe : he she weth hi nfelfe in divers places , as in a mans legges, in the fole of the foot, in the armes, knees, buttocks, and commonly in places of a mans bodie, where there is much flesh; and some men have them in their privile members, and which is more, in their cods, with great griefe and paine: for those that haue them there, indure extreme paine. But it is true, that one man hath leffe paine with them then another, and shal also be fooner healed of them then another: which commeth by the handling or dealing with them. for it is very good, when a man findeth himselfe to be troubled with them, to be quiet, specially being in his legs, and not go much, and to keepe the place warme where they begin to appeare; for thereby they shall indure lesse paine, for they come better out of a mans flesh with warmth, then with cold and difeate. For some men haue little respected themselves when they have had the wormes, fo that they appeared with a great swelling, whereby they indured much paine, and were in hazard to loofe their legges or their armes. When it comes foorth to farre, that a man may lay hold on it, then they must draw him out till hee stayeth, and then hee must let it rest till hee beginneth to come forward againe; and as much thereof as is come out of the bodie, must bee woond voon a sticke, or bound close to the hoole, with a thrid that hee creepeth not in againe. When hee commethout every time, he bringeth good ftore of matter with him, and a man must every day looke vinto it, and draw him to long, till he be out, but you must not draw him too hard, least he should breake, fo that by reason of the poylon that is in him, the wound will fester: It hapneth oftentimes, that after there is one worme drawne out of a mans body, that there commeth another in the fame place, & hath his iffue out at the fame hole. Some men are soner rid of them then another, for fome are eated in three weeks and leffe time, and fome are three months in healing of them, fome men have more wormes then others, for some have but one worme, and others ten or twelve, as I my felf knew one that had ten wormes, hanging out at his body all at one time; and I have known men that had wormes that hegan to open them telues, and crept in againe, and confumed away, fo that they had no more trouble therewith but the next Voyage after. They are of diuers lengths, and greatneffe, some are of a far-home long, some shorter, as it fals out; in thicknesse they differ much, some are as thicke as great Lute-strings, and like common peare wormes, others like fmall Lute-strings, and some as small as silke or fine thred, some fay that they are not living and that they are but had finowes and no wormes. I have not long fince feene a man that had certaine wormes which shewed themselues, and the Surgeon drew a worme out with one pull, and the worme being drawne out, and held vp on high, wrung and writhed it felfe, as if it had beene an Eele, and was about fine quarters long, and as thicke as a Lute-firing, if it were but a finow, it would have no life in it, and therefore they are naturall wormes. The Negroes vie no kind of Surgerie for them, but fuffer them to hauetheir course, and wash the fore with Salt-water, which they fay is very good for it.

Note that our returne backe from Moure, we vie to put off from that place, from whence you must set sayle with a wind from the land, and hold your course as neere by as you can, losing no wind, and yet you shall hardly get aboue S. Thomas, or Rio de Gabon, because of the breame which driveth you East & by North, & East North-east towards the land. To the Bouthes of Fernando Poo, which you must beware off, for he that falleth into that Bombe, will hardly get out, because of the fireame, and is in danger to be cast away in that place, or else he must have fome flormes or winds out of the North, and fo come out Southward, otherwise it is hardly to be done; for there are some, who having had the wind a little contrary, were fixe or seven weckes before they could get to Cape Lope Gonfelues. Heere you must note, that the neerer you come to the Equinoctiall line, the wind bloweth the more Southerly, fo that as you paffe vinder the line, the wird bloweth South, and South and by Eaft, and somewhat higher, you must also note, when you fee great flying Fishes, that you me not farre from Saint Thomas; or about He De Principe.

ę. VIII.

The passage from the golden Couft to the Kingdome of Benni, or Rio de Benni, and Rio Floreado : The Citie, Court, Gentry, Apparell : alfo other places adiouning, described.

O a that the gold Coaft reacheth no further then from Cape De tres Panttas, to Rio de This was ta-Uelta, ther fore those that will goe from the golden Coait, to the Kingdome of Essenauto Dais, m, hold their course along by the land, and along by the Ruers of Rie de Ualto, Rie de Ardri, and Rie de Lago. These Rivers were never entred into, because there is nothing to be had in them, but a little quantitie of Elephants Teeth ; fo that the labour to fetch it, is not worth the paines, by meanes of the dangers that a man incurreth by entring into the Rivers, by reason of Sands. Before at the mouth of the River of Forrado, there lieth an Iland, and the River is fo indifferent great, that a man may well know it. The land reacheth most (being about forty miles) to Rio de Ardra. This River is much vied to be entred into by the Portugals, and is well knowne, not because of any great commoditie that is therein to be had 30 but because of the great number of slaues which are bought there, to carry to other places, 48 60 Saint Thomas, and to Brafilia, to labour there, and to refine Sugar for they are very strong in all, and can labour stoutly, and commonly are bester slaues then those of Gabara, but those that the fold in Angols are much better. In this River there is no speciall thing found, which is of any value, but some Blew, Greene, and Blacke stones, whetewith they grind colours, and for their fairenesse are desired of other Negrees, specially in the golden Coast of Gunes, whiere they are much esteemed of by them. There both the men and women are starke naked, vistill they be fold for flaues, fo that they are not ashamed to shew themselves one to the other, as they themselves one to the other of t felues affirme, and by reason proue, saying, that a man more coueteth and delireth a thing that he feeth not, or may not have, then that he feeth or may borrow or have, and for that cause they 40 hide not their privie members. There the Portugals Traffique much with Barkes to buy flaves, and the Inhabitants are better friends with them, then with any other Nation; because they come much there, and for that no other Nations come to buy flaves there, but the Portugals onely. And there are some Portugals dwelling there, which buy much wares and Merchandizes, fuch as there to bee had. From Rio de Ardra, to Rio de Lago, is ten miles; and in that River there is nothing else to buy, and therefore it is not much vied, so that Rio de Ardra, is more vied then Rio de Volta, and Rio de Lago; from Rio de Lago to Rio de Benni, is about twenty miles, , fo that Benni is esteemed to be part of the golden Coast, that is about one hundred miles from Mourre, to that in two dayes with helpe of the streame, a man may get thicher, where as men are wont to be fixe weekes; before they could turne backe agains from whence they came.

The Towne feemeth to be very great, when you enter into it, you goe into a great broad The Citient ftreet, not paued, which seemeth to be seuen or eight times broader then the Warmoes street Bennie in Amsterdam; which goeth right out, and neuer crooketh, and where I was lodged with Mattheus Cornelison, it was at least a quarter of an houses going from the gate, and yet I could not fee to the end of the fireet, but I faw a great high tree, as farre as Louid differne, and I was told the freet was as much longer. There I fpake with a Neiberlander, who told me that he had beene as farre as that tree, but faw no end of the freet; but perceived that the houses thereabouts bee much lesse, and some houses that were falling downe: so that it was to be thought, that the end thereof was there abouts, that tree was a good halfe mile from the house where I was lodged fo that it is thought that that ftreet is a mile long befides the Suburbs. At the gate where I en-

60 tred on horfe-backe, I faw a very high Bulwarke, very thicke of earth, with a very deepe These are broad ditch, but it was drie, and full of high trees; Ispake with one that had gone along by the Datch miles. ditch, a good way, but faw no other then that I faw, and knew not well whither it went round about the Towne or not, that Gate is a reasonable good Gate, made of wood after their manner, which is to be flut, and there alwayes there is watch holden. Without this Gate, there is a

LIIII 2

great Suburbe: when you are in the great Street aforefaid, you fee many great Streets on the fides thereof, which also goe right forth, but you cannot see to the end of them, by reason of their great length, a man might write more of the fination of this Towne, if he might fee it, as you may the Townes in Halland, which is not permitted there, by one that alwaies goes with you, forme men fay, that he goeth with you, because you should have no harme done vnto von bet yet you must goe no farther then he will let you.

The Houses in this Towne stand in good order, one close and even with the other, as the Hou-Mellerd Rand, fuch Houses as Men of qualitie (which are Gentlemen) or others dwell in. pewo or three steps to goe vp, and before, there is, as it were, a Gallerie, where a man may sies which Gallerie every morning is made cleane by their Slaues, and in it there is a Mat 10 somen to fit on, their Roomes within are foure-liquare, ouer them having a Roofe that is in the middle, at the which place, the raine, wind, and light commeth in, and therein cheir meate; but they have other places belides, as Kitchins and other roomes. has platfiel, for they have but one Wall before, wherein there is a wood-

> very great, within it having many great foure-square Plaines, which The state of the s many Souldiers, he also hath many Gentlemen, who when they on whom they hold fast; and the greater their estate is, the moon any moustant and the greater their citate is, the second of their men haue great Shields, wherewith they make; they go next to him, except those on whom he learning those on Drums, others you Horses and Fluits, for The Gordemen have another kind of Musicke, when they the high Ners wherewith men in our Countries goe to the 30 countries thind of thing, which they firthe voor with the strength their Ners were filled fall of great Nuts, and in the state of the s men Slanes seene in the Towne, that carne they fay is for the King; and many carrie Graile,

see how to make Windowes, but fuch light and aire as they have, comes

goes twice out of his Court, and wifteth the ad Magnificence, and all the Bracerie he can, es, which are above fixe arraired in num-Sentlemen also have many Wixes, as some meaned Man among them but bath on find more Women then Men. they keepe their Markets; in oce

to the Court. The King oftentimes fendethout

eafter the other, and by them, there goeth one 40

thep afide and give them place, although hee

through the firests, and as the other things afore-

m another place, they hold their co to fell, as quicke Dogs, where-Iniames, Hamigette in beca-Cantiens, with many other tohume, Cape to care and great store of Cotis of the spec isente to fill there. any Wespoos,

The Gentlemen goe with great Majeftie to the Court, having divers kinds of Musicke with Their fallet them, and are waited on by divers other Negrees, one Laung a Drum whereon he playes, others ons. with other Influements; ypon the Horse there is a little woodden Stoole set, and on the Horse necke they hang a Cow-bell, which rings when the Horse goes; there goes two Negroes by him, on either fide one, on whom he leageth. Those Negroes that attend on him, come energy min, currents in Gendemans doore, and flay there till be comes out, to wait on him. Their Horfes are very little, not much greater then Calces in our Countrie, which is the caufe that our Hories are to much efteemed of in that Coaft. The King hath many Souldiers which are fulouer them, and they have a Generall to command over them, as if he were their Captaine: To This Captaine hath fome Sculdiers under him, and goes alwaies in the middle of them, and they goe round about him, finging and leaping, and making great noise, and ioy. Those Capa taines are very proud of their Office, and are very stately, and goe exceeding proudly in the fireets. Their Swords are broad, which hang about their necke in a leather Girdle

CHAP. 2. S.8. Captaines flutely and proud. Boyes ...

which reacheth under their armes: they also vie Shields and Affagaies, as they in the Golden They cut their Haire diverily, each after the best manner that they can. Their apparell also Apperell is the like, and vie strange customes, not one like vnto another, all finely made of Cotton, over

the which they commonly weare Holland Cloth. The young Maides and Boyes goe flarke naked, untill they marrie, or that the King giueth them licence to put on some Apparell; then 20 they make great ioy, because of the friendship the King therein sheweth vnto them, and then they make their bodies very cleane, and strike it ouer with white Earth, and are very stately, fitting in great glorie and magnificence. Their friends come vnto them, to congratulate them, as if thee were a Bride. They are circumcifed, both Boyes and Girles. They cut three great ftreakes in their bodies on either fide, each ftreake being three fingers broad, which they doe from their shoulders downe to their wastes, which they thinke to be a great good deed tending to their faluation. They are very confcionable, and will doe no wrong one to the other, neither will take any thing from ftrangers, for if they doe, they should afterward be put to death, for they lightly judge a man to die for doing any wrong to a stranger, wherein they vie strange Wrong to a Lutice: they bind the Offenders armes behind at his backe, and blind his eyes, then one of the 30 Indges comes and lifts him vp with his armes, in fuch manner, that his head lieth almost vpon

the ground, then comes the Executioner and cuts off his head; which done, his bodie is quartered, and the quarters cast into the fields to bee denoured by certaine Birds, which Birds they Birds superfitfeare much, and no man dares doe them any hurt, nor chase them, for there are men purpolely toodly respeappointed to give them meat and drinke, which they carrie with great magnificence, but no man may fee it carried, nor bee present, but those that are appointed to doe it; for every man runnes out of the way when they fee those men come to carrie the Birds meate, and they have a place where the Birds come purposely for it. They respect strangers very much, for when any man meeteth them, they will shun the way for him and step aside, and dare not bee so bold to goe by, vnleffe they be expreffely bidden by the partie, and prayed to goe forward, and although

40 they were never fo fore laden, yet they durft not doe it; for if they did, they should be punished for it: They are also very conetous of honour, and willingly defire to be praifed and rewarded for any friendship they doe.

Vpon the Iland of Corifes, or about Rio de Angra, in the mouth whereof the Iland of Corifes Rio de Angra lieth. The Iland of Corifeo is a bad place to dwell in, for no man dwelles in it, for there is nothing to be had in it but fresh Water and Wood, so that the ships that come from the Golden Coaft, and fall vpon it , prouided themselues there, of Water and Wood. Within the River there lieth three other small Hands, which also are worth nothing, because they yeeld no profit, and there is nothing abounding in them but Wood. Those Ilands at this day are called (for before they had no names) the Ile De Moncheron, because one Balthasar de Moncheron had by his Moncheron. 50 Factors found them, wherein he caufed a Fort to be made, in the yeere 1600, thinking to dwell

there, and to bring great Traff que from other places thither. But they of Rio de Gabom, vnderflanding that there were Strangers inhabiting in them, fought all the meanes they could to murther them, and to take both the Fort and their Goods from them, which they did, before they had dwelt foure moneths there, (vnder a Captaine called Edward Hessus) and tooke the Sconcefrom them by force, murthering all the men that were in it, and called it the Iland of Corifco, which name it had of the Portugals, because vpon that lland there are many Tempests of thunder and lightning, and great flore of Raine, and therefore it is not good to inhabite in, and there will nothing grow therein but Cucumbers. It is well prouided of fresh Water, excellent faire red Beanes, and Bratill wood, so exceeding faire and gliftering, when it is thauen, 60 as any Glaffe can be, which is so hard, that without great paine and labour it cannot be cut downe. The Iland is almost a great mile in compasse, but it is a bad anchoring place, when the

From Rio de Angra, to Rio de Gabom, is fifteene miles. The Inhabitants of Rio de Gabom, are not friends with them of Rio de Angra, for they oftentimes make warre one against the other, and Lilli 3

great Suburbe; when you are in the great Street aforefaid, you fee many great Streets on the fides thereof, which also goe right forth, but you cannot see to the end of them , by reason of their great length, a man might write more of the lituation of this Towne, if he might fee it as you may the Townes in Holland, which is not permitted there, by one that alwaies goes with you, some men say, that he goeth with you, because you should have no harme done vnto you. but yet you must goe no farther then he will let you.

966

The Houses in this Towne stand in good order, one close and even with the other, as the Houles in Holland frand, fuch Houses as Men of qualitie (which are Gentlemen) or others dwell in. haue two or three steps to goe vp, and before, there is, as it were, a Gallerie, where a man may fit drie: which Gallerie euery morning is made cleane by their Slaues, and in it there is a Mat In fored for men to fit on, their Roomes within are foure-iquare, ouer them having a Roofe that is not close in the middle, at the which place, the raine, wind, and light commeth in , and therein they lie and eate their meate; but they have other places belides, as Kitchins and other roomes. The common Horifes are not fuch, for they have but one Wall before, wherein there is a wood. den Doore, they know not how to make Windowes, but fuch light and aire as they have, comes in at the roofe of the House.

The Kings Court is very great, within it having many great foure-foure Plaines, which round about them have Galleries, wherein there is alwaies watch kept; I was so farre within that Court that I paffed ouer foure such great Plaines, and where soeuer I looked Hill I faw Gates vpon Gates, to goe into other places , and in that fort I went as farre as ever any Netberlander 20 was , which was to the Stable where his best Horses stood , alwaies passing a great long way: it feemeth that the King hath many Souldiers , he also hath many Gentlemen , who when they come to the Court ride vpon Horles , and fit vpon their Horles as the women in our Countrie doe, on each fide having one man, on whom they hold fast; and the greater their estate is, the more men they have going after them. Some of their men have great Shields, wherewith they keepe the Gentleman from the Sunne ; they goe next to him, except those on whom hee leaneth, the rest come after him, playing some on Drums, others vpon Hornes and Fluits, some haire a hollow Iron whereon they strike. The Horseassia led by a man, and so they ride playing to the Court. Such as are very great Gentlemen have another kind of Musicke, when they fide to the Court, which is like the small Nets wherewith men in our Countries goe to the 30 Fish-market, which Net is filled full of a certaine kind of thing, which they strike vpon with their hands, and make it rattle, in like fort as if their Nets were filled full of great Nuts, and fo a man should strike voon it : those great Gentlemen have many Servants , that goe after them firiking youn fuch Nets. The King hath very many Slaues, both men and women, whereof there are many women Slaues feene, carrying of Water, Injamus, and Palme-wine, which they fay is for the Kings wives. There are also many men Slaves seene in the Towne, that carrie Water, Iniamus, and Palme-wine, which they say is for the King; and many carrie Grasse, which is for their Horses; and all this is carried to the Court. The King oftentimes sendethout Presents of Spices, which are carried orderly through the streets, and as the other things aforefaid are carried, to they that carrie them goe one after the other, and by them, there goeth one 40 or two with white Rods, so that every man must step aside and give them place, although hee were a Gentleman. The King hath many Wates, and every yeere goes twice out of his Court, and visiteth the

Sixe hundred

ten or twelue Wiues at the least, whereby in that place you find more Women then Men, They also have severall places in the Towne, where they keepe their Markets; in one place they have their great Market day , called Die de Ferre; and in another place, they hold their 60 little Market, called Ferre: to those places they bring all things to fell, as quicke Dogs, whereof they cate many, roafted Apes, and Monkies, Rats, Parots, Hens, Iniamus, Manigette in bonches, dried Agediffen, Palme-oyle, great Beanes, divers forts of Kankrens, with many other kinds of Fruits, and Beafts, all to eate. They also bring much Wood to burne, Cups to eate and drinke in, and other forts of wooden Dishes and Cups for the same purpose, great store of Cotton, whereof they make Clothes to weare upon their bodies. Their Apparell is of the same fathion as theirs of the Golden Coast is, but it is fairer and finelier made; but to shew you the manner thereof it would be over-long. They also bring great store of Iron-worke to fell there, and Instruments to fish withall others to plow and to till the land withall ; and many Weapons, as Assagaies, and Kniues also for the Warre. This Market and Traffique is there very orderly 60 holden, and every one that commeth with such Wares or Merchandises to the Market, knowes his place where to ftand, to fell his Wares in the fame, they also fell their Wines as they doe in the Golden Coaft.

Towne, at which time he fleweth all his Power and Magnificence, and all the Brauerie he can,

then he is convoyed and accompanied by all his Wives, which are above fixe hundred in num-

her but they are not all his wedded Wives. The Gentlemen also have many Wives as some

have eightie, some ninetie and more, and there is not the meanest Man among them but hath

The Gentlemen goe with great Majestie to the Court, having divers kinds of Musicke with Their fashithem, and are waited on by divers other Negrees, one lauring a Drum whereen he playes, others ons. with other Inflrements; ypon the Horse there is a little woodden Stoole set, and on the Horse mecke they hang a Cow-bell, which rings when the Horfe goes; there goes two Negroes by him, on either fide one, on whom he leaneth. Those Negroes that attend on him, come enery morning to the Genelemans doore, and flay there till he comes out, to wait on him. Their Horfes are very little, not much greater then Calces in our Countrie, which is the caufe that our Hories are so much efteemed of in that Coaft. The King hath many Souldiers which are subet vnto him, and they have a Generall to command over them, as it he were their Captaine a To This Captaine hath some Souldiers under him, and goes alwaies in the middle of them, and

they goe round about him, finging and leaping, and making great noise, and ioy. Those Cana taines are very proud of their Office, and are very flately, and goe exceeding proudly in the streets. Their Swords are broad, which hang about their necke in a leather Girdle which reacheth under their armes: they also vie Shields and Affagaies, as they in the Golden

They cut their Haire diverily, each after the best manner that they can. Their apparell also Apperell, is the like, and wie strange customes, not one like vnto another, all finely made of Cotton, ouer the which they commonly weare Holland Cloth. The young Maides and Boyes goe starke nathe which they continued that the King given them licence to put on from Apparell; then 20 they make greating because of the friending the King therein floweth with other, and then 20 they make greating, because of the friending the King therein floweth with others, and then they make their bodies very cleane, and strike it ouer with white Earth, and are very stately. fitting in great glorie and magnificence. Their friends come vnto them, to congratulate them. as if thee were a Bride. They are circumcifed, both Boyes and Girles. They cut three great ftreakes in their bodies on either fide, each ftreake being three fingers broad, which they doe from their shoulders downe to their wastes, which they thinke to be a great good deed tending to their faluation. They are very confcionable, and will doe no wrong one to the other, neither will take any thing from ftrangers, for if they doe, they should afterward be put to death, for they lightly judge a man to die for doing any wrong to a stranger, wherein they vie strange luthice : they bind the Offenders armes behind at his backe, and blind his eyes, then one of the Stranger. 30 Indges comes and lifts him up with his armes, in fuch manner, that his head lieth almost upon

the ground, then comes the Executioner and cuts off his head; which done, his bodie is quartered, and the quarters cast into the fields to bee denoured by certaine Birds, which Birds they Birds superflifeare much , and no man dares doe them any hurt , nor chafe them , for there are men purpolely tiously respeappointed to give them meat and drinke, which they carrie with great magnificence, but no man may fee it carried, nor bee present, but those that are appointed to doe it; for every man runnes out of the way when they fee those men come to carrie the Birds meate, and they have a place where the Birds come purpolely for it. They respect strangers very much, for when any man meeteth them, they will shun the way for him and step aside, and dare not bee so bold to goe by, vnlesse they be expressely bidden by the partie, and prayed to goe forward, and although

40 they were never fo fore laden, yet they durft not doe it; for if they did, they should be punished for it : They are also very couetous of honour, and willingly defire to be praifed and rewarded

for any friendship they doe. Von the Iland of Corice, or about Riode Angra, in the mouth whereof the Iland of Corifee Rio de Angra. lieth. The Hand of Corifeo is a bad place to dwell in, for no man dwellet in it, for there is no-

thing to be had in it but fresh Water and Wood, so that the ships that come from the Golden Coalt, and fall vpon it, prouided themselues there, of Water and Wood. Within the River there lieth three other imall Ilands, which also are worth nothing, because they yeeld no profit, and there is nothing abounding in them but Wood. Those Ilands at this day are called (for before they had no names) the lie De Moucheron, because one Balthasar de Moucheron had by his Moucheron.

To Factors found them, wherein he caused a Fort to be made, in the yeare 1600, thinking to dwell there, and to bring great Traff que from other places thither. But they of Rio de Gabom, vnderstanding that there were Strangers inhabiting in them, fought all the meanes they could to murther them, and to take both the Fort and their Goods from them, which they did , before they had dwelt foure moneths there, (vnder a Captaine called Edward Hefins) and tooke the Sconcefrom them by force, murthering all the men that were in it, and called it the Iland of Corifco, which name it had of the Portugals, because vpon that lland there are many Tempests of thunder and lightning, and great flore of Raine, and therefore it is not good to inhabite in. and therewill nothing grow therein but Cucumbers. It is well prouided of fresh Water, excellent faire red Beanes, and Brafill wood, so exceeding faire and gliftering, when it is shauen, 60 as any Glaffe can be, which is so hard, that without great paine and labour it cannot be cut

downe. The Iland is almost a great mile in compasse, but it is a bad anchoring place, when the From Rio de Angra, to Rio de Gabom, is fifteene miles. The Inhabitants of Rio de Gabom, are not friends with them of Rio de Angra, for they oftentimes make warre one against the other, and

Lilli a

then againe make peace, fo that the friendship betweene them is very small, they have a Kine among them, but they are not fo mightie as those of Rio de Gabom, but better people to deal withall then those of Gaboni, for fince the time that they of Gaboni, tooke the Skonce and the goods of Moncherom, and kild the men, they of Rio de Angra would have nothing to doe with them, but were grieued that it was done, but because they feared them of Rio de Gabem, and of Pongo: they durit not withfland them : with those Negroes there is much Traff que to be had. and there are many Teeth to buy, but not so many as in Rio de Gabom, but when you Traffique there you must not stay long with your shallop or boate there, for if you deale not with them for their Teeth in two or three dayes, you shall not deale with them at all, for by reason the few Pinnaffes or shallops come thither to Traffique, therefore the Negros bring all their Teeth 19 thither at the first, to barter for other Wares. Their fpeech is not like theirs of Gabom, but for opinion and religion they are almost one, and agree therein.

R. Gabern.

Panto.

The River of Gabom, lyeth about fifteene miles Southward from Rio de Angra, and eight miles North-ward from Cape De Lope Gonfalues, and is right under the Equinoctial Line, as bout fifteene miles from Saint Thomas, and is a great Land well and eatily to bee knowne. At the mouth of the River there lyeth a Sand three or foure fathome deepe, whereon it beateth mightily, with the streame which runneth out of the River into the Sea. This River in the mouth thereof is at least foure miles broad, but when you are about the Hand called Pange, it is not about two miles broad, on both fides the River there standeth many trees. The Hand lyeth neere to the North, then the South, and a little further there is an Iland wherein there is good 10 promision to be had, as of Bannanas, Iniamus, and Oranges; about two miles within the River you have eight fathome deepe, good anchor ground. This Coast reacheth North and South, the depth a good way from the Land about a mile or a mile and an halfe; is , twelue and thirteens fathome, and halfe a mile from the Land, it is foure, five, fixe, and feven fathome, you may goe neere about it, because all along tha: Coast it is good anchor ground, by night you have the wind off from the Land, and by day from the Sea. This River hath three mightie Kings in it, which raigne therein, as one King on the North point, called (aiombe, and one vpon the South point, called Gabom, and one in the Iland, called Pongo, which hath a montirous high hill: hee of Pongo is strongest of men, and oftentimes makes warre vpon him of Gabons, he of Caisanbo. is a great reiend to him of Pougo, and the Inhabitants of the South point of the River, are great to friends with thole of Cape De Lope Gonfalues.

The twelfth of December, we got to Cape Lapo Gonfalues, where we found three ships lying at anchor, two of Zeland, and one of Schiedam. Touching their Religion , they neither know God nor his Commandements, fome of them pray to the Sunne, others to the Moone, others to certainetrees or to the Earth, because they receive food from thence, so that they effeeme it a great fault to fpit vpon the Ear h, they goe little abroad in the ffreets, but when they goe abroad, they carrie a great broad Knife in their hands : both the men and the women have their bodies pinkt in divers forts, ftrange to behold, wherein they put certaine Greafe, mixt with colour, they will not drinke before they first put some of it out of the Pot or Kan, and when they eate they vie not to drinke, but when they have dired, then they drinke a great draught of water, or of Palme-wine, or elle of Malaffe, which is mixed or made of Honey water. In the 40 morning as soone as it is day, they goe to falute their Commander, or Changenso, and to bid him good morrow, and when they come to him they fall downe vpon their knees, and clapping both their hands together, lay, Fino, Fino, Fino, whereby they wish peace, quietnesse, and all good

They are much addicted to Theeuerie, and to steale some-thing, specially from Strangers, whereof they make no conscience, but thinke they doe well, but they will not steale one from another. The womenalfo are much addicted to Leacherie and Vncleannesse; specially, with ftrange Nations, whereby they thinke they get great credit, and which is more, the men offer 50 their wives vnto ftrangers that come thither, and the King himselse presented and honoureth Strangers with some of his Wines, whereof he hath a great number. They have a filthy custome among them, which is, that the King when any of his Daughters waxe great, hee takethand keepeth them for his Wines, and the vie of their bodies. The like is done by the Queenes his Incestuous cu- Wines, when their Sonnes beginne to be great, for they lie with them, as well as the King doth with his Daughters. Their apparell is fairer then theirs on the Golden Coaft, for they trimme their bodies more; about their middles to hide their Privities. They weare a Mat made of barkes of trees, which is coloured red, with a kind of red wood wherewith they dye it, upon those Mats, they hang fome Apes and Monkeyes skinnes, or of other wild beafts, with a Bell in the middle, fuch as Cowes and Sheepe have about their neckes. They paint their bodies red, with a colour made of red wood, which is verie good. but much lighter then Brafil-wood, oftentimes 60 they make one of their eyes white, the other red or yellow, with a fireake or two in their faces, some weare round Beades about their neckes made of barkes, some imall, some great, not much valike the Boxes, which men in Hamborough hang vp to put money in for the poore, but they will not fuffer you to looke what is in them. The men and women also for the most part

goe bare-headed, with their haire shoared and pleated disersly, some of them weare Cans made of the barkes of Cocos or Indian Nut-trees, others weare bunches of feathers made faft to their haire with little Irons, fome of them have holes in their vpper lips , and through their Nofes. wherein they put pieces of Elxen bones, as thicke as a Doller with a stalke, which shutter h the hole, which being thrust in comes out at the Nose, and over their mouthes, which serveth their turnes well and to good purpole, when they are ficke and fall into a fwound, and that men cannot open their hands by force, then they take that bone and crush the sap of some greene herbe through it, wherwith they come to themsclues again, so that they serue them for two purposes. Some weare Rings in their lips and in the middle part of their Notes, some thrust small Hornes To or Teeth through them, and weare them fo, which they thinke to bee a great ornament vito them, others boare a hole in their neather lips, and play with their Tongues in the hole; many of their men and women weare Rings in their eares, whereof fome weigh at least a pound weight, fome have flickes thrust through them, of five or fixe fingers long, most of them, specially the men weare a Girdle about their middles made of Buffols skin, with the haire fill on it which meeteth not together before by almost a hand breadth, with a piece thereof sticking out at each end, which is tyed together with a small cord of Threed, woon their belies they carrie a broad Iron Knife, the sheath thereof also being of Iron : some of those Girdles are a hand broad . and fome two or three handfuls broad. Befides those, they we another fort of Kniues, with two or three points, which are very fearefull to behold, wherewith they cast at a man, and wheresoe-20 uer they hit they take hold.

They are better armed for weapons then they of Mine, or the Golden Coast, their Armes Armes are Pikes, or Affagaies, Bowes, and Arrowes, long Targets made of barkes of Trees. Their Drummes are narrow below and broad aboue, their Pikes are very cunningly made, for they are very curious Workmen in Iron; the women carrie their Husbands Armes for him, and when they will vie them, their Wives give them : they are cruell and fierce against their Enemies and fight one against the other by Land and by Water in Canoes, and when they take any of their Enemies (they were wont in times past to eate them, but now they doe it not) they rut them

The women also set themselves out verie faire (as they thinke) and weare many redicopped 20 and Tinne Rings upon their armes and legges, fome one, others two; which many times weigh three or foure pound weight, which are fo fast and close about their armes, that men can hardly imagine how they get them on ; those Rings also are wome by some men, but more by women, The women weare Aprons made of Ruthes, which I have feene them make. Touching their Dyce. clothes and fetting forth of their bodies, it is beaftly and vnfeemely. They have no leffe vnfeemelinesse in their eating and house-keeping, for they live like beasts, and sleepe voon Mats hid vpon the ground, which they make very cunningly. The chiefe meate they eate is Injamus, Batates, and Bannanas. The Bannanas they vie in stead of bread, when it is well dryed, they alfo eate fish and fiesh, with Roots and Sugar-canes : they lay all their meate in one dish, and fit round about it, and eate like a company of beafts. Their King called, Mani, eateth his meate out of a Tinne Platter, but the rest in woodden Platters, fitting vpon a Mat spread vpon the

The greatest labour the women doe, is to fetch water, to gather fruit; and to dresse their The Kingmeate : their Houses are finely made of Reeds, and couered ouer with Bannanas leaues, and better and cle ner then the Houses in the Golden Coast. The King hatha faire House greater then any in all the Towne, he is called Golipatta, hee is brauely fet out with many Beads made of beanes and shels, which are dyed red, and hanged about his necke, and vpon his armes and legs, they strike their faces with a kind of white colour, they are very much subject to their Kings, and doe him great honour when they are in his prefence : before his House there lyeth an Iron Peece, with certaine Bases which he bought in former time of the Frenchmen. They are verie fubtill to learne how to vse all kind of Armes; specially, our small Gunnes. Their Winter is 50 from April to August, at which time it is exceeding hot, and few cleere daies, and then it raineth mightily with great drops, which fall so hot upon the stones that they presently dry up, by which meanes also the waters are thicke and slimie, in the Rivers and also vpon the shoare, There is good fifthing, Oyiters grow on the branches of the Trees, which hang downe into the Oyiters on water. They draw their speech long, so that it is better to learne then theirs in the Golden Trees. Coast. The Cape is low Land, and is well to be knowne, for there is no Land thereabouts, that reacheth fo farre Westerly into the Sea as that doth, it lyeth about a degree Southward from the Equinoctiall Line. When you are at the Cape, there is a River which lyeth South-east from it, about three miles, whereinto the shallops commonly faile, to barter for some Teeth, which are 60 there to bee had in the Village, which lyeth about foure miles vpwards within the River : In this River : there are many Sea-horfes, and Crocodiles, fo that it is thought that hee Riner of Nilm joyneth thereunto, and hath an iffue there into the Sea : In this Country there are many cruell and strange beasts, as Elephants, Buffols, Dragons, Snakes, Apes, Monkeyes, which are very fearefull to behold, and very hurtfull.

CHAP. 3.5.2.

970

Cruelty of Gahom

Ofdiners

Those people are better to be dealt withall, then they of Gabon, and we find not, that they beare any fpight or malice to the Netherlanders, (as they of Gabom have done) in Anno 1601. to a ship called the Palme-tree, and to another, called the Moorein of Delft, as also to a Spanish Barke, who in hort time, one after the other they fell vpon, and taking them, kild all the men parts of Guines and eate them, with divers other fuch trickes more by them done : but for that it is good for the and eater them, with duers other such trickes more by them done; but for that it is good for the and especially ships in that place to lie and reiresh themselders, to fetch water, and to Calke them; therefore of Caps Sirrs. of Cape sures.
Lung, Gr. See all thefhips lie most at this place, to make themselves ready, and fit to returne backetagaine. A. Keeling, and bout this Cape there lie many Sands, whereon a ship might soone smite, but behind the bankes Finches lour- there is no feare, the Lead will give a man meanes to find his way well enough.

CHAP. III.

The strange adventures of Andrew Battell of Leigh in Essex. fent by the Portugals prisoner to Angola, who lined there, and in the adiogning Regions , neere eighteene yeeres.

ANDREW BATTELL, his Voyage to the River of Plate, who being taken on the Coast of Brasill, was fent to Angola.

Santa Cruz-

Nthe yeere 1589, Abraham Cocke of Lime-house, began his Voyage toward the N the yeere 1369, Arabom Coee of Lima-boufe, began his Voyage toward; he River of Plate, with two Pinnafes of fittie Tuns a peece: The one was called, the Arabomaning; the other, the Dolphine. We failed from the River of Thomes, the twentieth of Aprill; and the fixe and twentieth of the fame moneth, we put into Plimmoth, where we tooke in some prouision for the Voyage. The seventh of May we put to Sea, and with foule weather were beaten backe againe into

Pinmoth, where we remained certaine dayes, and then proceeded on our Voyage: and running along the Coast of Spaine, and Barbarie, we put into the Roade of Santia Cruz, and there fee our Light-horse-man together, which we carried in two pieces; Abraham Cocke made greatac-Calmeson the count hereof, thinking that this Boat should have made his Voyage. This done, we put to Sea, and running along the Coast of Guinea, wee were becalmed, because wee wer so neere Coaft of Gui-

Heere our men fell ficke of the Scuruie, in fuch fort, that there were very few found. And

For they are very trecherous, and were like to have taken our boat, and hurt some of our men.

From this Cape we lay South-west off, but the Current and the Calmes deceived vs; so that

we were driven downe to the Ile of Saint Thome, thinking that we had beene farther off to the

Sea then we were. And being in diffresse for wood and water, we went in on the South end betweene Sun Tome, and the llands Das Rolas: where we rode very smooth, and with our

Herre we had great flore of Plantans and Oranges. We found a Village of Negroes, which are fent from San Tome, for the Portugals of San Tome do vie, when their flaues be ficke or weake, to

refreshed our selues with the fruit of this Iland, we burned the Village. And running on the East

fide of San Tome, we came before the Towne; but we dust not come neere : for the Castle shor

fend them thither to get their strength againe. For the Ilands are very fruitful; and though there so be no fresh water, yet they maintaine themselves with the wine of the Palme trees. Having

The Scorbute. being within three or foure Degrees of the Equinoctiall line, we fell with the Cape De las Pal-Care de las mas, where we had some refreshing, wherewith our men recoursed. The people of the Cape de 40 Palmas. las Palmas made much of vs, faying, that they would trade with vs : but it was but to betray vs.

Trecherous people.

Ilbas das Ro'M. Light-horse-man went on shoare, thinking to have watered : but wee found none in the Iland.

Village. The Towne of San Tome.

Cape de le; o

at vs. which hath very good Ordnanee in it. Then we lay East and by South toward the Maine, and in foure and twentie houres, we had fight of the Cape De lopo Gonfalues : and being within three Leagues of the faid Cape, we caft about and stood againe toward the Hand of San Tome, and turned up on the West side of the Lland : and comming to a little River, which runneth out of the Mountaines, we went on shore with our Light-horse-man, with fixe or feuen Buts to fill with water. But the Gouernour had imbosked one hundred men of the Iland; and when we were on shore, they came vpon vs, and 60 killed one of our men, and hurt another : wherefore we retired to our Boat, and gate aboord.

Some burt. They depart fro n Sen

Then Abraham Cocke determined to fetch the Coast of Brafil, and lay Well South-west into the Sea : and being some fiftie Leagues off, we fell into a Scull of Dolphins, which did greatly relicue vs : for they did follow our ship all the way, till we fell with the land : which was some

thirtie dayes. And running along the Coast of Brafil, till we came to Illha Grande which standeth in fine Degrees Southward of the line; we put in betwirt the lland and the Maine, and fine Degrees haled our thins on thours, and washed them, and refreshed our selves, and tooke in fresh water, to the South In this Hand are no Inhabitants, but it is very fruitfull. And being heere fome twelve dayes, of the line, on there came in a little Pinnaffe, which was bound to the River of Plate, which came in to water, the Co and to get fome refreshment: and prefently we went aboord, and tooke the Portugal Merchant Frafil. out of the Pinnale, which told . Abraham Cocke, that within two moneths there fhould two Pinnaffer come from the River of Place, from the Towne of Buenes Aieres.

From this Towne there come every years foure or fine Caravels to Bahia in Brafil and to An- Bahia 10 gold in Africa : which bring great flore of Treasure, which is transported out land out of Pers. into the River of Plate. Then Abraham Cocke defirous to make his Voyage, tooke fome of the Dalphins men into his shap, and sent the Dalphin home againe, which had not as yet made any The Dalphin Voyage. This Pertugal Merchant carried vs to a place in this Hand, where there was a banished man, which had planted great store of Plantans , and told vs , that we might with this fruit The benefit of goe to the River of Plate : for our bread and victuals were almost all fpent.

With this hard allowance we departed from this Hand, and were fixe and thirty dayes before man, we came to the Ile of Labor Marines , which is in the mouth of the River of Plate. This Iland lie de Labor is halfe a male long, and bath no fresh water; but doth abound with Seales and Sea-morfles : in Marines, fuch fort, that our Light-horfe-man could not get on thouse for them, without we did beat 20 them with our Oares and the lland is covered with them. Vpon thefe Seales we lived fome Motfles and thirty dayes, lying vo and downe in the Riner, and were in great diffresse of victuals. Then we Seiles. determined to run vp to Buenos Aires, and with our Light-horfe-man to take one of the Pinnaf- The Towne of fes that rid at the Towne. And being to high vp the River as the Towne, wee had a mightie frome at South-west, which draue vs backe againe, and we were faine to ride under Isla Verde, En verde, that is, the Greene Hand, which is in the mouth of the River on the North fide.

Here we were all discomfored for lacke of victuals, and gaue oner the Voyage, & came to the They returns Northward again, to the He of Sant Schaffian, lying just vnder the Tropicke of Capricorne. There Nerthward. we went on shoare to eatch fish, & some went vp into the woods to gather fruit : for we weare Setelland all in a manner famished. There was at that time a Canor fraught with Indians, that came from The Towns of 30 the Towne of Spirits Sautio. These Indians landed on the West fide of the Iland, and came Spirits Sautio through the woods, and tooke fine of ve, and carried ve to the River of laneiro. After this mil. The River of chance, our Captaine Abraham Cocke went to Sea, and was rever heard of more.

When wee that were taken had remained four moneths in the River of Innerro, I and one and four co. Torner West fent to Angele in Africa to the Citie of Saint Paul, which flandeth in nine De-therstaken grees to the Southward of the Equinoctial line. Heere I was prefently taken out of the ship, dadre Baile and put into prison, and fent up the River Quantatos Towne of Garrison, which is one hun-lent prisoner dred and thirtie miles vp the River. And being there two moneths, the Pilot of the Governors to Angela in Pinnafie died : then I was commanded to cerrie her downe to the Citie, where I prefently fell the Citie of S ficke, and lay eight moneths in a poore effate: for they hated me because I was an Englishman, Paul, 40 But being recoursed of my fickeneffe, Don John Hurrado do Mendoça, who then was Governor, Inanfa. commanded me to goe to the River of Conyo, called Zaire, in a Pinnaffe, is to trade for Elephants His Pilotage teeth, Wheate, and Oyle of the Palme-tree. The River Zare is fiftie Leagues from the Citie and heater to the Northward, and is the greatest River in all that Coast. In the mouth of this River is an lephants ceets Bland, called the Ile De Calabes, which had at that time a Towne in it. Heere we laded our and Ovicof Pinnaffe with Elophants teeth, Wheate, and Oyle of the Palme, and fo returned to the Citie the Palmetree

Buenos Aieres.

ð. II.

Bu trading on the Coast, offer to escape, imprisonment, exile; escape, and new imprisenment : bis fending to Elambo, and Bahia Das Vaccas; Many frange occurrents.

Hen I was sent to Longo, which is fifteene Leagues to the North-ward of the River Zaire : and carried all Commodities fit for that Countrey ; as long Glaffe-beads, and round Blew beads, and Seed beads, and Looking glaffes, leave and Red courfe cloth, and Imple Rugs, which were very rich Commodities. Here wee fold our cloth at a gentle wool. n

60 great rate, for we had for one yard of cloth, three Elephants teeth, that weighed one hundred cloth and triffe and twenty pound : and we bought great store of Palme-cloth, and Elephants tayles. So in Rugs, rich little time, we laded our Pinnasse. For this Voyage I was very welcome to the Gouernour; Commodities. who promifed me my liberty, if I would ferne him. So I went in his Pinnasse two yeeres and a halfe vpon the Coaft.

A fhip of Hol Coaft. Imprionmear. Ma Cangero Fort. Sixe yee:es miferic.

The River

Then there came a thir of Holland to the Citie, the Merchant of which thip promited m carrie me away. And when they were readie to depart, I went fecretly aboord; but I was bewraved by Portugals, which failed in the ship, and was fetched on shoare by the Sergeants of the Citie, and put in Prilon, and lay with great bolts of Iron two moneths, thinking that the Governour would have put me to death ; but at last, I was banished for ever, to the Fort of Mel. Cangano, to ferue in the Conquest of those Parts. Here I lived a most miserable life for the frace of lixe yeeres, without any hope to fee the Sea againe.

In this Fort there were Egyptimes and Morifcoes, that were banished as my felfe. To one of a thele Egyptians I brake my muid, and told him, that it were better for vs to venture our lines for our libertie, then to live in that milerable place. This Egyptian was as willing as my felfe, and told me, he would procure ten of his conforts to goe with vs. So we got three Egyptions, Heflerth from and feuen Paringals. That night, we got the best Canoe that we could find, and went downs the River Coanza: and being as farre downe as Mani Cabech, which is a little Lord in the Province of Elamba, we went on shoare with our twelve Muskets, Powder, and Shot, Heere we funke our Canoe, because they should not know where we went on shoare. We made a little fire in the Wood, and fcorehed Gmie Wheat, which we brought from Maffangano to relieue vs.

Affoone as it was night, wee tooke our journey all that night, and the next day without any

water at all. The second night, we were not able to goe, and were faine to digge and scrapevp Mani Cabech. Lake of Ca-

rootes of Trees, and fucke them to maintaine life. The third day, wee met with an old Negre, an which was trangiling to Mani Cabech, we bound his hands behind him, and made him leade vs the way to the Lake of Calanfa. And transiling all the day in this extreme hot Countrie, we came to the Banfa, or Towne of Mani Cafanfa, which lieth within the Land twelve leagues from the Citie of San Paulo. Here we were forced to aske water: but they would give vs none. manic a anic a language. Then we determined to make them flee their houses with our shot: but seeing that we were detwelveleagues from the Citie sperately bent, they called their Lord Mani Cafanfa, who gave vs water and faire speeches, deof San Pauls. firing vs to stay all night, onely to betray vs : but we departed presently, and rested that night in the Lake of Cafanfa.

The River Bengo... dangerous Cracodiles. The River

The fourth day at night, we came to the River which is toward the North, and paffed it with great danger. For there are fuch abundance of Grocodiles in this River, that no man dare come neere the River fide, where it is deepen. The fift day at night, wee came to the River Dande, and travailed fo farre to the Eastward, that we were right against the Sorras; or Mountaines of Manibangono, which is a Lord thanwarreth against the King of Congo, whither wee intended to goe. Here we passed the River, and refted halfe the night. And being two leagues from the River, we met with Negroes, which asked vs, whither we transiled. Wee told them, that we were going to Congo. These Negroes said, that we were in the wrong way, and that they were Masscomess, and would carrieve to Bambe, where the Duke of Bambe lay.

So wee went some three miles East up into the Land, till wee perceined that we were the wrong way : for we transited by the Sunne, and would goe no farther that way : and turned backe againe to the Westward, they stood before vs with their Bowes, Arrowes and Darts, readie to shoot at vs. But we determining to goe through them , discharged fixe Muskets together, and killed foure; which did amaze them, and made them to retire. But they followed vs foure or fine miles, and hurt two of our companie with their Arrowes. The next day, we came into the borders of Bamba, and travailed all that day. At night, we heard the furge of the Sea. The fenenth day in the morning, we faw the Captain of the Citie come after vs with Horsmen, and great store of Negroes. Hereupon our companie being dismayed, seuen of our faint-hearted Portugals hid themselves in the Thickes. I and the foure Egyptians thought to have escaped: but they followed vs to fast, that we were faine to goe into a little Wood. Assoone as the Captaine had ouertaken vs, he discharged a volley of shot into the Wood, which made vs lose one another.

Thus being all alone, I bethought my felfe, that if the Negroes did take me in the Woods, 50 they would kill me : wherefore, thinking to make a better end among the Portugals and Mul-Hisrefolution, latos, Trame presently out of the Wood with my Musket readie charged, making none account of my life. But the Captaine, thinking that we had beene all twelve together, called to me, and faid, Fellow Souldier, I have the Gouernours pardon, if you will yeeld your felues, you shall haue no hurt. I hauing my Musket readie, answered the Captaine, that I was an Englishmen, and had ferued fixe yeeres at Massangono, in great miterie; and came in companie with eleuen Portugals and Egyptians, and here am left all alone; and rather then I will be hanged, I will die amongst you. Then the Captaine came neere vnto me, and faid; Deliuer thy Musket to one of the Souldiers, and I protest, as I am a Gentleman, and a Souldier, to faue thy life, for thy refo- 60

He yeekleth, lute mind. Whereupon I yeekled vp my Musket and my felfe. They were ta- Then the Captaine commanded all the Souldiers and Negroes to fearth the Woods, and to arm profesers, bring them out alive or dead; which was prefently done. Then they carried vs to the Citie of and fine again San Paulo: where I, and the three Egyptians lay in Prilon three moneths, with Collars of Iron, and great Bolts upon our legs, and hardly escaped.

CHAP.3.S.2. A fruit good for the Cholicke. Men effeminate.

At that time the Gouernour fent foure hundred men, that were banished out of Portugall, vp Foure buninto the Countrey of Elambe. Then I was with Proclamation through the Citie binished for dred banished into the Countrey of Elambe. Then I was with Proclamation circuin the Circle binilhed for Portugals ener to the Warres, and marched with them to Sowon fo, which is a Lord, that obeyeth the Duke employed in of Bambe: from thence to Samanibansa, and then to Namba Calamba, which is a great Lord, the Warres. who did resist vs: but we burned his Towne, and then he obeyed vs, and brought three thou- Sowons. fand warlike Negroes to vs. From thence to Sollancango a little Lord , that fought very despe- Namia Calamba sand warlike evegrees to vs. From there to be and then to Combrecasinga, where we remay ned two Combinations, where we remay ned two Combinations. yeares. From this place wee gaue many affaults, and brought many Lords to subjection. Wee were fifteene thousand strong, and marched to the Outsiro, or Mountaine of Ingombe. But first Ingolia, 10 we burned all Ingafia, which was his Countrey, and then we came to the chiefe Towne of In. Jagonbe.

gombe, which is halfe a dayes iourney to goe vp.

This Lord came vpon vs with more then twentie thousand Bowes, and spoyled many of our men. But with our shot we made a great spoyle among them, whereupon he retyred up into the Mountaine, and fent one of his Captaines to our Generall; fignifying, that the next day hee would obey him. The next day he entred our Campe in great pompe with Drums, Petes, and Pongoes, or Waytes, and was royally received : and he gave great Prefents, and greatly inriched the Generall, and them which marched vp. Vpon the toppe of the Mountaine is a great Plaine, where he hath his chiefe Towne; verie fresh, full of Palme-trees, Sugar-canes, Potatos. and other roots, and great store of Oranges and Limons. Here is a Tree that is called Engerian. that beareth a fruit as big as a Pome-water, and hath a stone in it, present remedie for the Wind Afruit good 20 Cholicke, which was strange to the Portugals. Here is a River of fresh water, that springeth for the Collick

out of the Mountaine, and runneth all along the Towne. Wee were here fine dayes, and then we marched up into the Countrey, and burned and spoyled for the space of fixe weekes; and then returned to Engombe agains with great store of slaves, sheepe and Goates, and great store of Margarite stones, which are currant money in that Land. Here we pitched our Campe a league from this plea fant Mountaine, which remayned twelve monethes : but I was shot in my right legge, and many Portugals and Mullatos, were carryed to the Citie to be cured.

Then the Gouernonr fent a Frigat to the South-ward with fixtie Souldiers, my felfe beeing Sending to Baone of the company, and all kind of Commodities. We turned up to the South-ward till wee bia das Vaccas came into twelve degrees. Here we found a faire fandie Bay. The people of this place brought or Babia de vs Cowes and Sheepe, Wheate and Beanes ; but we flayed not there, but came to Babia das Vac. Torre. ess, that is, the Bay of Cowes, which the Portugals call, Babia de Torre, because it hath a rocke like a Towre. Here wee roade on the North-side of the Rocke in a sandie Bay; and bought like a Tower. Here we're road on the Avetterians on the Norsa in Section 2017, and Congress greatflors of Cooper, and Sheepe bigger then or English Sheepe, and very him Cooper. Also Store of we bought a kind of (weet wood, called Caesays, which the Pertuguize effectme much, and great Cower, great and the Country of Cooper, and the Cooper of the Coope thore of Wheate and Beanes. And having laded our Barke wee fent her home: but fittie of vs fine Copper. flayed on floare, and made a little Fort with rafters of wood, because the people of this place Cacingo a weet 40 are treacherous, and not to to bee trufted. So in feuenteene dayes wee had fine hundred head of wood Cattell : and within tenne dayes the Governour fent three shippes and so wee departed to the

In this Bay may any ship ride without danger, for it is a fmooth Coast. Here may any shippe A good Bay that commeth out of the East Indies refresh themselves. For the Portugals Carracks now of late and fir refree come along that Coast, to the Citie to water and refresh themselves. These people are called, thing from the Endallarbondos, and have no government among themselves: and therefore they are verie treche. East Indies. rous, and those that trade with these people must fland vpon their owne guard. They are very small small representations and those that trade with these people must fland vpon their owne guard. They are very small representations and the small representations and the small representations are the small representations. fimple and of no courage, for thirtie or fortie men may goe boldly vp into the Countrey, and for blue glaffe fetch downe whole Heards of Cattell. We bought the Cattell for blue glaffe-beads of an inch beads of an long, which are called, Mopindes; and payd fitteene beads for one Cow.

This Province is called. Dombe, and it hath a ridge of high Serras, or Mountaines, that Dambe. firetch from the Serras, or Mountaines of Cambambe, wherein are Mines; and Iye along that Mines of fine Coast South and by West. Here is great store of fine Copper, if they would worke in their Copper. Mines : but they take no more, then they weare for a brauerie. The men of this place weare skinnes about their middles, and beads about their neckes. They carrie Darts of Iron, and Bow and Arrowes in their hands. They are beaftly in their living, for they have men in womens Men effemiapparell, whom they keepe among their wives.

Their women weare a Ring of Copper about their neckes, which weigheth fifteene pound The appreca at the leaft, about their armes little Rings of Copper, that reach to their elbowes, about their their women. middles a cloth of the Infandie Tree, which is neither fpunne nor wouen, on their legs Rings of 60 Copper, that reach to the calues of their legs.

ð. III.

Discourrie of the Gagas: Their Warres, Man-eating; Oner-running Countries. His Trade with them, betraying, escape to them, and living with them. withmany strange Adventures. And also the Rites and manner of life observed by the lagges or Gagas, which no Christian could ever know well but

Be neuele.

the Great

The Lagget

Campe.

lagge. I thinke

N our fecond Voyage turning vp along the Coast, we came to the Morre, or Cliffe of Benquele, which standeth in twelve degrees of Southerly latitude. Here we faw mighty Cape of men on the Southfide of the river Come. And being defirous to know what theywere, we went on shore with our Boat; & presently there came a troop of Sue hundred men to the water fide. We asked them, Who they were then they told vs, that they Lopes was were the Gagas, or Gindes; that cames from " Serra de Lion, and passed through the Citie of deceived in their originall, Congo; and to tranelled to the East-ward of the great Citie of Angola, which is called Dongo. The Gagas, a The great Gaga, which was their Generall, came downe to the waters fide to fee vs. For hee moft warlike had never feene white men before. Heasked, wherefore we came: we told him, that wee came people. He in difcourfe to trade vpon the Coaft: then he bade vs welcome, and called vs on floare with our Commowith me, called dities : we laded our ship with slaues in seuen dayes, and bought them so good cheape, that mae them letter, & ny did not cost one Riall a piece, which were worth in the Citie twelve Millie-reys. their Chiefe

Being readie to depart the great Giaga stayed vs, and defired our Boat to passe his men over the River Cona: for he determined to over-runne the Realme of Benguele, which was on the North-side of the River Coua, So we went with him to his Campe, which was very orderly Gagas for Gia intrenched with piles of wood. We had Houses prouided for vs that night, and many burthers

gas by false spelling. of Palme-wine. Cowes, Goats, and Flowre.

In the morning before day the Generall did firike his Gongo, which is an Inftrument of War that foundeth like a Bell; and prefently made an Oration with a loud voice, that all the Campe Campe.
Their manner might heare, that he would destroy the Bengnelas, with such couragious and vehement speeches, to Their mainter of remouse.

Their vaineand marched to the Riuers fide, where he had produced Gingadas. And beeing readie without Boat and Gme ados, the Generall was faine to beate them backe, because of the credit who should be first. We carried ouer eightie men at once; and with our Muskets we beat the enemie off, and landed, but many of them were flaine. By twelve of the clocke all the Gaess were Then the Generall commanded all his Drums, Tonales, Petes, Ponges, and all his Instruments

The Benguelas

of warlike Musicke to strike vp, and gaue the on-fet, which was a bloudie day to the Bonguelas. These Benguelas presently broke and turned their backes, and a very great number of them were flaine, and were taken Captines, man, woman and child. The Prince Hombiangymbe was flame, which was Ruler of this Countrey, and more then one hundred of his chiefe Lords, and 40 their heads presented, and throwne at the feet of the great Gaga. The men, women, and children. that were brought in captine aline, and the dead Corpfes that were brought to bee eaten, were The Gegas are frange to behold. For these Gagas are the greatest Canibals and Man-caters that bee in the Man-eaters in World, for they fed chiefly upon mans flesh, having all the Cattell of that Countrey.

the World.

They fetled themselves in this Countrey, and tooke the spoile of it. Wee had great Trade with these Gagas fine monethes, and gained greatly by them. These Gagas were not contented to flay in this place of Benguela, although they lacked almost nothing. For they had great ftore of Cattell and Wheate, and many other Commodities, but they lacked Wine : for in thele go parts there are no Palme-trees.

The Prouince

After the fine monethes were expired, they marched toward the Province of Bambala, to 2 great Lord, that is called Calicanfamba, whose Countrey is fine dayes journey up into the Land. In these five monethes space we made three Voyages to the Citie of San Paul, and comming the fourth time we found them not.

Being loth to returne without Trade, wee determined to goe vp into the Landafter them; So we went fifty on shore, and left our ship riding in the Bay of Benguela to stay for vs:and marching two dayes up into the Countrey, we came to a great Lord, which is called Moferine fat: and comming to his first Towne, we found it burned to the ground, for the Gagas had peffed and taken the spoyle. To this Lord we fent a Negro, which we had bought of the Gagas, and lived with vs, and bid him fay, that he was one of the great Gagas men, and that hee was left to car- 60 rievs to the Campe. This Lord bade vs welcome for feare of the great Gaga: but hee delayed the time, and would not let vs paffe, till the Gaga was gone out of his Countrey. This Lord Mofarigofat, feeing that the Gagas were cleere of him, began to palter with vs , and would not let vs goe out of his Land, till we had gone to the warres with him; for hee thought himfelfe a

CHAP.2.S.2. Mountaines of filuer, Fall of waters beard thirtie miles.

mightie man having vs with him. For in this place they never faw white man before . nor Gunnes, So we were forced to goe with him, and destroyed all his Enemies, and returned to his Towne araine. Then we defired him, that I e would let vs depart : But he denyed vs . without we would promife him to come againe, and leave a white man with him in pawne.

Thele Portugals and Mulates being defirous to get away from this place, determined to draw lots who should stay ; but many of them would not agree to it. At last they consented together that it were fitter to leave me, because I was an Englishman, then any of themselves during Battel Here I was faine to stay perforce. So they left me a Musket, Powder, and thot; promising this left with the Lord Moferigo fat, that within two monethes they would come againe, and bring an hundred Andalamberdes 10 men to helpe him in his Warres, and to trade with him : but all was to flift themselves away. for they feared that he would have taken vs all Captines. Here I remayned with this Lord till the two monethes were expired, and was hardly vied, because the Portugals came not according

The chiefe men of this Towne would have put me to death, and stripped me naked, and were In danger of readie to sut off mine head. But the Lord of the Towne commanded them to flay longer, thin- death king that the Portugals would come. And after that I was let loofe againe, I went from one Towne to another, shifting for my selfe, within the liberties of this Lord. And beeing in feare of my life among them, I ranne away, purposing to goe to the Campe of the Gagas.

And having travelled all that night, the next day I came to a great Towne, which was cal-20 led. Calbil, which flood in a mightic over-growne thicket. Here I was carried into the Towne Callingress to the Lord Calbil; and all the Towne great and small came to wonder at mee, for in this place Towne, there was never any white man feene. Here were some of the great Gagas men, which I was plad

to fee, and went with these Gages to Calican fambs, where the Campe was.

This Towne of the Lord Cabit is very great, and is so ouer-growne with Olicondie Trees. Ce-

dars, and Palmes, that the ftreets are darkened with them. In the middle of the Towne there is an Image, which is as bigge as a man, and frandeth tweller foot bigh: and at the foot of the mage called Image there is a Circle of Elephants Teeth, pitched into the ground. V pon their Teeth fland Questions, and great flore of dead mens skuls, which are killed in the warres, and offered to this Image. They their idolar great force of dead mens saust, windows a nice was a power their blood at his feet. This wous Rece. yet to power Palme-wine at his feet, and kill Goats, and power their blood at his feet. This wous Rece. 30 Image is called One force, and the people have a great beliefe in him, and twear by him; and doe Their fleets. limage is caused Description, that Quelange is offended with them. In many places of this Towne A Marific of were litle Images, and ouer them great ftore of Elephants Teeth piled.

The ftreets of this Towne were paled with Palme-canes very orderly. Their Houses were He comment round like an Hiue, and within hanged with fine Mats very curiously wrought. On the South- to the Gampe east end of the Towne was a Mokiso, which had more then three Tunnes of Elephants Teeth of the great

piled our him.

From this Towne of Cafiel, I trauelled up into the Countrey with the Gages two dayes, and can be came to Calicanfamba, where the great Gage had his Campe, and was welcome to him. A Fafeting look mong the Caniball people, I determined to like, hoping in God, that they would trauell fo fairs the Caniball people, I determined to like, hoping in misher tecture by frome him. The first min page. ao to the West-ward, till we should see the Sea againe; and so I might escape by some ship. These life by M.Hart. Gagas temayned foure monethes in this place, with great abundance and plentie of Cattle, well, and my Corne, Wine, and Oyle, and great triumphing, drinking, dancing, and banquetting with mans Pilgrimage, 1, flesh, which was an heatile spectacle to behold

At the end of foure monethes they marched toward the Serras, or Mountaines of Calbind-Author, which are mightie high, and hauegreat Copper-mynes, and they tooke the spoyle all the Author, which way as they went. From thence they went to the River Longs, and passed it, and setled them- heed so long felues in the Towne of Calogo, and remayned there five or fixe monethes. Then wee arofe, and with them, entred into the Promince of Toude, and came to the River Gonfa, and marched on the South- The River fide of the River to a Lord that was called Makellacolonge, neere to the great Citie of Dongo. Calante. Here we passed ouer mightie high Mountaines, and found it very cold.

Having spent fixteene moneths among these Canibals, they marched to the Westward againe, Gonfa River, or and came along the Riner Gonfa, or Gamea, to a Lord that is called Shillambanfa, Vnkle to the Gunza. King of Angola. We burned his chiefe Towne, which was after their fashion very sumptions the high ly builded. This place is very pleasant and fruitfull. Heere we found great store of wild Pea-Mountaines. cockes, flying vp and downe the Trees, in as great abundance as other Birds. The old Lord Shillambania Shillambasla was buried in the middle of the Towne, and had an hundred tame Peacockes kept deftroyed. vpon his Graue: which Peacockes he gaue to his Mokefo, and they were called Angello Mo. Store of wild volume trade. Which a substitution of the Birds, and were accounted as holy things. He had great flore The River for of Copper, Cloth, and many other things laid vpon his Graue; which is the order of that area, 60 Countrey.

From this place we marched to the Westward , along the River Coanza, and came right a- taines of filmer. gainst the Serras, or Mountaines of Cambanbe, or Serras de Prata. Here is the great fall of wa- heard thirtie ter, that falleth right downe, and maketh a mightie noyfe, that is heard thirtie miles. Wee miles. entred into the Province of Casama, and came to one of the greatest Lords, which was called casama,

Mmmmm

cafach a great

credit.

Mafagan

976

Langere. He obeyed the Great Gaga, and carried vs to a Lord, called Cafoch, which was a great Warrier; for he had some seuen yeeres before, ouerthrowne the Portugals Campe, and killed eight hundred Portugals, and fortie thousand Negroes, that were on the Portugals side. This Lord did Houthy withfrand the Gagas, and had the first day a mightie battaile : but had not the victorie that day. So wee made a Sconse of Trees after their falbion, and remayned foure moneths in the Warres with them. I was fo highly efteemed with the Great Gaga, became I kil. dear-bought led many Negroes with my Musket, that I had any thing that I defired of him. He would al-The Authors fo, when they went out to the Warres, give charge to his men ouer me. By this meanes I have beene often carried away in their armes, and faued my life. Here we were within three dayes Tourney of Mallangano, before mentioned, where the Portugals have a Fort : and I fought Io meanes, and got to the Paragals againe with Merchant Negroes, that came to the Campe to

He getteth 2gaine to the Portugals. Discourse of Falundola the great lagge. dance of the His feueritie.

Oranons. Their fortify-

There were in the Campe of the Gagas, twelve Captains. The first, called Imbe Calandola, their Generall a man of great courage. He warreth all by enchantment, and taketh the Deuils counfell in all his exploits. He is alwaies making of facrifices to the Deuill, and doth know many times what shall happen vnto him. Hee beleeueth that hee shall neuer die but in the Warres. There is no Image among them, but he vieth certaine ceremonies. He hath flraight Lawes to his Souldiers: for, those that are faint-hearted, and turne their backes to the Enemie, are presently condemned and killed for cowards, and their bodies eaten. He vieth euery night to make a warlike Oration.vpon an high Scaffold, which doth encourage his people.

It is the order of thefe people, wherefoeuer they pitch their Campe, although they flay but one night in a place, to build their Fort, with fuch wood or trees as the place yeeldeth: fo that the one part of them cutteth downe trees and boughs , and the other part carrieth them , and buildeth a round Circle with twelue Gates. So that every Captaine keepeth his Gate. In the middle of the Fort is the Generals house, intrenched round about, and hee hath many Porters that keepe the Doore. They build their houses very chose together, and have their Bowes . Arrowes, and Darts, standing without their Doores: And when they give alarme, they are sodainly allout of the Fort. Euery companie at their Doores keepe very good watch in the night. playing vpon their Drums and Tauales.

A Riger 112ning great to the South of Babia das 27 Arres They found of

this Gold. how drawne.

Thele Gagas told vs of a River that is to the Southward of the Bay of Vaccas, that hath great so ftore of Gold: and that they gathered up great ftore of graines of Gold vpon the Sand, which the fresh water driueth downe in the time of raine. We found some of this Gold in the handles of their Hatchets, which they wie to engrave with Copper, and they called it Copper also, and

These Gagas delight in no Countrie , but where there is great flore of Palmares , or Groues of Palmes. For they delight greatly in the Wine, and in the Fruit of the Palme, which servets to eate and to make Oyle: and they draw their Wine contrarie to the Imbondos. Thefe Palmetrees are fixe or feuen fathoms high, and have no leaves but in the top: and they have a denice to goe up to the top of the Tree, and lay no hands on it, and they draw the Wine in the top of But these Gagas cut the Palme-trees downe by the roote, which lie ten dayes before they

Such difference berween will gine Wine. And then they make a square hole in the top and heart of the Tree, and take out of the hole every morning a quart, and at night a quart. So that every Tree giveth two quarts of Wine a day for the space of sixe and twentie dayes, and then it drieth vp.

What they doe being relifted.

Fruges can fu-

When they fettle themselves in any Countrie, they cut downe as many Palmes as will sense them Wine for a moneth : and then as many more. So that in a little time they spoile the Countrie. They flay no longer in a place, then it will affoord them maintenance. And then in Harveft time they arile, and fettle themselves in the fruitfullest place that they can find; and doe reape their Enemies Corne, and take their Cattell. For they will not fowe, nor plant, nor bring vp any Cattell, more then they take by Warres. When they come into any Countrie that is strong, 50 which they cannot the first day conquer, then their Generall buildeth his Fort, and remayneth sometimes a moneth or two quet. For he faith, it is as great warres to the Inhabitants to lee him fetled in their Countrey, as though he fought with them euery day. So that many times the Inhabitants come and affault him at his Fort: and these Gagas defend themselves and fesh them on for the space of two or three dayes. And when their Generall mindeth to give the onfet, he will in the night put out some one thousand men: which do emboske themselves about a mile from their Fort. Then in the morning the great Gaga goeth with all his frength out of the Fort, as though he would take their Towne. The Inhabitants comming neere the Fort to defend their Countrey, being betweene them, the Gagas give the watch-word with their Drummes, and then the embosked men arife, so that very few escape. And that day their Generall ouer-69 runneth the Countrey.

His attire. Bamba facils. Maje thells, of great account amongthe

The great Gaga Calando hath his haire very long, embroydred with many knots full of Banba shels, which are very rich among them, and about his necke a Collar of Maloes, which are also shells , that are found vpon that Coast, and are fold among them for the worth or twen-

tie stillings a stell: and about his middle he weareth Landes, which are Beades made of the Offridges Egges. He weareth a Palme cloth about his middle, as fine as Silke. His body is car- Cruell brauery ned and cut with fundry workes, and enery day anointed with the fat of men. Hee weareth a peece of Copper crosse his nose, two inches long, and in his eares also. His body is alwaies painted red and white. He hath twenty or thirty wines, which followed him when he goeth abroad and one of them carrieth his Bow and Arrowes, and foure of them carry his Cuppes of They vie this drinke after him. And when hee drinketh, they all kneele downe, and clap their hands and Elmids

Their women weare their haire with high trompes, full of Bamba shels, and are anointed 10 with Ciuet. They pull out foure of their teeth; two aboue and two below for a brauery: And Fooliff Galthose that have not their teeth out, are loathsome to them, and shall neither eate nor drinke with them. They weare great store of Beades about their neckes, armes and legs; about their

The women are very fruitfull, but they enjoy none of their children : For as foone as the wo. Generation of man is deliuered of her Childe, it is prefently buried quicke; So that there is not one Childe Aggaration brought vo in all this Generation. But when they take any Towne, they keepe the Boyes and without generation. Girles of thirteene or foureteene yeares of age, as their owne children. But the men and wo- ration of Gase: men they kill and eate. These little Boyes they traine up in the warres, and hang a collar about Parizeries. their neckes for a diferace, which is neuer taken off till he proueth himfelfe a man, and bring Boyes trayned his enemies head to the Generall: And then it is taken off, and he is a Free-man, and is called vp in the wars. 20 Gonfo, or Souldier. This maketh them all desperate, and forward to be free, and counted men: and so they doe increase. In all this Campe there were but twelve naturall Gagas that were These Gagas their Captaines, and foureteene or fifteene women. For it is more then fiftie yeares fince they came from come from Serra de Lion, which was their native Countrey. But their Campe is fixteene thou- Serra Leone. fand ftrong, and fometimes more.

When the great Gaga Calandola, vindertaketh any great enterprize against the Inhabitants of Hissolemnesaany Countrey, he maketh a facrifice to the Diuell, in the morning before the Sunne rifeth. He crifice to the 30 fitteth vpon a stoole, having on each side of him a man Witch: then he bath fortie or fiftie women which frand round about him, holding in each hand a Zenera, or wilde horses rayle, where Zewa. with they doe flourish and fing. Behind them are great flore of Petes, Ponges, and Drummes, which alwaies play. In the midft of them is a great fire; vpon the fire an earthen pot with white powders, where-with the men Witches doe paint him on the forehead, temples, thwart the breast and belly, with long ceremonies and inchanting tearmes. Thus he continueth till the orest and more T. Then the Witches bring his Caforgada, which is a weapon like an hatchet, and put it most hand, and bill him bee firong against his enemies: for his Mokel is swith him. And prefer his hand, and blanch hid been gainft his enemies: for his Mokel is swith him. And prefently there is a Man-hild brought, which for the whyth he killeth. Then are foure Burcherly men brought before him ; two whereof, as it happeneth, he prefently firiketh and killeth; the rites. 40 other two, he commandeth to be killed without the Fort.

Here I was by the men Witches commanded to goe away, because I was a Christian. For then the Dinell doth appeare to them, as they fay. And prefently he commandeth fine Cowes to be killed in the Fort, and fine without the Fort: And likewise as many Goates, and as many Dogges; and the bloud of them is sprinkled in the fire, and their bodies are eaten with great feasting and triumph. And this is vied many times by all the other Captaines of their

When they bury the dead, they make a vault in the ground, and a feate for him to fit. The Buriallof dead hath his haire newly imbroydred, his body washed, and anointed with sweete powders, their dead He hath all his best robes put on, and is brought betweene two men to his graue, and fet in his feate, as though he were aline. He hath two of his wives fet with him, with their armes bro-50 ken, and then they couer the vault on the top. The Inhabitants when they dye, are buried after the same fashion, and have the most part of their goods buried with them. And every moneth there is a meeting of the kindred of the dead man, which mourne and fing dolefull fongs at his grave, for the space of three daies; and kill many Goates, and powre their bloud vpon his grave, and Palme-Wine also; and vie this ceremony as long as any of their kindred be alive. But those that have no kindred think themselves vnhappy men, because they have none to mourne for them when they dye. These people are very kind one to another in their health; but in their sicknesse they doe abhorre one another, and will shun their company.

Mmmmm 2

ø. III F.

ð. 1111.

His returne to the Portugals : inualions of diners Countries, abufe, flight from them, and living in the Woods divers moneths : His strange Boate, and comming to Loango.

Malangano,2 Towne of Portugal.

Eing departed from the Gagas, I came to Majangano, where the Portugals have a Towns of Garrison. There was at that time a new Gouernor, which was called Signar Issas Continho: who brought authority to conquer the Wines of Majangano. Cambamba; and to performe that service, the King of Spaine had given him seaven

Salt Mines. Siluer Mines.

Stone-falt, a fpeciall com-The like is in Poland.

After we had beene two moneths in the Countrey of Angophayonge, we marched toward Serras da Prasa. Cambambe, which was but three daies journey, and came right against the Serras da Prasa, and paffed the River Coanza, and prefently over-ranne the Countrey, and built a Fort hard by the Rivers fide. Here I ferued two yeares. They opened the Silver Mines : but the Portugals did not like of them as yet; because they yeelied small store of Silver. This new vp-start Governour, was very cruell to his Souldiers, fo that all his voluntary men left him; and by this meanes he could goe no farther. At this time, there came newes by the Iesuites, that the Queene of England was dead, and that King Iames had made peace with Spaine. Then I made a petition to the Gouernour, who granted me licence to goe into my Countrey : And fo I departed with

death of the

nour came, and then to come to the Citie againe. For every Governour that commeth, maketh Proclamation for all men that be absent, to come with free pardon. The same day at night, I departed from the Citie, with two Negro Boyes that I had , which carried my Musket, and fixe pounds of Powder, and an hundred Bullets, and that little proxtion of victuals which I could make. In the morning I was some twentie miles from the Citie, up along the River Bengo, and there I flayed certaine dayes; and then paffed Bengo, and came to the River Dande, which is to the North-ward; purpoling to know what

The River Benge. The River newes was in the Citie, for I was neere the high-way of Congo: And one of my Negroes 62 inquired of those that passed, and brought me word; That it was certaine, that the new Gouernour came not that yeare. Now I was put to my shifts, whether I would goe to the Citie againe and be hanged, or to flay and line in the Woods: for I had runne away twice before. So I was forced to line in the Wood a moneth, betwixt the Rivers of Dande and Bengo.

yeares custome, of all the Slaues and Goods that were carried thence to the West-Indies. Brafil, or whither focuer : with condition, that he should build three Castles; one in Demba. which are the falt Mines; the other, in Cambamba, which are the Silver Mines; and the other in Babia das Vaccas, or The Bay of Comes. This Gentleman was so bountifull at his comming, that his fame was foread through all Congo, and many Mulatos and Negroes came voluntarily to ferue him. And being fome fixe moneths in the Citie, he marched to the Outaba of Tombe : and there shipped his Souldiers in Pinnasses, and went vp the River Confa, or Coanza, and landed at the Ontaba of Songo, fixtie miles from the Sea. This Lord Songo is next to Demba, where the Salt Mines be. In this place there is such store of Salt, that most part of the Countrey are perfect cleere Salt, without any earth or filth in it: and it is some three foot vnder the earth as it were Ice : and they cut it out in stones of a yard long, and it is carried vp into the Countrey, and is the best commoditie that a man can carry to buy any thing whatfoeuer.

Here the Gouernour stayed ten daies, and sent a Pinnasse to Majangano, for all the best Souldiers that were there. So the Captain of the Caftle fent me down among an hundred Souldier ers, and I was very well vied by the Gouernor; and he made me a Sergeant of a Portugall Company, and then he marched to Machimba; from thence to Cauo, and then to Malombe . 2 great made Sergeant Lord. Here we were foure daies, and many Lords came and obeyed vs. From thence we marof a Portugal ched to a mightic Lord, called Augorkayonge, who food in the defence of his Country, with more then fixtie thousand men. So we met with him, and had the victory, and made a great to flaughter among them. We tooke captives all his Women and Children, and fetled our felues Seignier Iuande in his Towne, because it was a very pleasant place, and full of Cattle and victuals. And being continue dieth, eight daies in this Towne, the Gouernour fickned and dyed, and left a Captaine in his roome

to performe the feruice.

England, 1603. the Governor and his Traine to the Citie of Saint Paul.

But he left flue hundred Souldiers in the Fort of Cambambe, which they hold flill. Then I went with a Portugal Marchant to the Pronince of Bamba and from thence to the Ontere, of The Omero of Citie flanding upon a Mountaine of Congo: from thence to Gongon and Batta: and there wee fold our commodities, and returned in fixe moneths to the Citie againe. Then I purposed to have hipped my felfe for Spaine, and thence homewards. But the Gouernour denyed lus word, and commanded me to prouide my felte within two daies, to goe vp to the Conquest againe. This Gouernour had ferued his three yeares, and the Citizens looked every day for another out of Portugall. So I determined to absent my selfe for ten or twentie daies, till the other GouerThen I went to Bengo again, to Mani Kafarea, & pasted ouer the River, and went to the lake, of Ca- The Lake of

The Late of Angola. About this lake I staid Calania. Here is the greatest store of wild beatls, that is in any place of Angola. About this lake I staid Calania. ix monethes, & liued only, vpon dried flesh, as Buffes, Deere, Mokokes, Impolancas, and Ro-bucks, and other forts which I killed with my Musket, and dryed the flesh, as the Sauages doe, vpon an The manner of and other tree foot from the ground, making vnderneath it a great fire, and laying vpon the field the Sauages greene houghes, which keepe the moke and heate of the fire downe, and dry it. I made my fire drying of their with two little stickes, as the Sauages vie to doe. I had sometimes Guiney Wheate, which my flesh. Negro Boy would get of the Inhabitants for pieces of dryed flesh. This Lake of Colonze doth abound with fifth of fundry forts. I have taken up a fifth, that hath skipped out of the water on In thour, four foot long, which the Freathen call Somber Thus after I had lived fixe monethen

with dryst dela and fith, and feeing sprend of my materie, I wrought meanes to get away. In this late are many little Hander, that are full of sees, called Memba; which are as light as He made a Corke, and as fort. Otthela trees I built oldergado, with a Knife of the Sauagendist Abadim the Boat with a Conceans as int. 1.4 single acces to other spaces various annies in the same general shadon the constraint fall principle about any left with the constraint of the space of t into my Gongato, and my two Negro Boyes , and Towed into the River Bongs and io came, Calange falleth downe with the current twelve leagues to the barre, Here I was in great stanger, because the imo Benge. Sea was great; and being over the barre, I rewed into the Sea, and shon (ayles after the wind 20 along the Coat, which I knew very well, minding to goe to the Kingdome of James, which is

toward the North and being that night at Sea, the pext day I fay: a Prinale come before the wind, which came from the Citie, and was bound so Sen Thome, and thee, came neare to mee. The Mafter was my great friend, for we had beene Mates together, and for pitic take he tooke, The Matter was my great triend, for we naubtent mater operator, and to protestate to the years in mein, and fee me ondinate in the Port of Longo, where I remay ned three years, and was well to the control of the port of Longo. beloued of the King, became I killed him Deere and Fowles with my Musket,

years a secretarial control of 19 Doct a statement location and the second of the sec of the Prinince of Engoy, and other Receipt of Lorago, with the Kustomes, and there observed by the King and people.

Romthe Point of the Palmar, which is the North-lide of the River Zaire, istthe Palmar a Pal Rome the Porticos the Primary Within the avoidable of the Advantage of 1945(8).

Port of Cabunda, where many hips we're to water and refrich then fellows; and sign sure.

The leagues Northwards. This place is called Engry, and is the first Prominee of fairly round.

Lange, and is full of Woods and Thicketts. And tenen leagues North-wards of that of Lange. fine leagues Northwards. This place is called Engry, and is the first Prounce of first Prounce place is the River Catongo; a very pleafant place and fruitfull. Here is great store of Elephanes. The River Ca-Teeth : and a Boat of ten tunnes may goe vp the River.

The Mombales have great Trade with them , and passe the Ringer Zaire in the night , be- The Mombales 40 caufe then it is calme; and carrie great fore of Elephants Teeth to the Towne of Mani Sonna, and fell them in the Port of Pinda to the Portugale, or any other stranger, that first commeth.

And toure leagues from Cacongo, is the River of Cage, or Longo Leuges. This Towne of Cage The River of is one of the foure Seases or Lordships of Longo : and then the Angra, or Guife das Almadias. Caye. In this Gulfe or Bay are great itore of Canoes and Fishermen, betaufe the Sea is smoother there; Gofam des. Al-In this Gulfe or Bay are great more or canoes and must men or said the Saus in South Court, medical then youngle Coaft. And two leagues North-ward is the Port of Longo. And it is a fandie Bay; The Port of and a frip may ride within a Musket short of the shoare in foure or fine fathomes.

The Towne of Mani Longo is three miles from the waters lide, and standeth on a great Plaine. This Towne is full of Palme and Planean Trees, and very fresh wand their Houses are builded under the Trees. Their streets are wide and long, and alwayes cleane swept. The King hath his Houses on the West-fide, and before his doore hee hath a Plaint, where hee fitteth, when hee hath any feating or matters of warres to treate of. From this Plaine there goeth a great wide ffreet tome Musket fhot from the place; and there is a great Market every day, and it doch begin

Here is great flore of Palme-clothes of fundry forts, which is their Merchandizes : and great store of Victuals, Flesh, Hens, Fish, Wine, Oyle and Corne. Here is also very fine Logwood, Fine Logwood which they vie to dye withall; it is the root of the Logwood, which is the best, and Molangos. Copper. of Copper. Here is likewife great store of Elephants Teeth, but they sell none in the Market Elephants place. The King bath ten great Houses, and is never certaine to be found, but in the afternoone, Teeth when he commeth to fit. And then be keepeth alwayes one House. The House is very long, 60 and at twelve of the clocke it is full of Noblemen. They fit vpon Carpets vpon the ground. The Houle is alwayes full of people till mid night. The laft King Gembe, neuer vied to speake in the day, but alwayes in the night. But this King speaketh in the day : howbeit bee spendeth most of the day with his Wittes. And when the King commeth in, he goeth to the upper end of the House, where hee hath his seate, as it were a Throne. And when the King is let, they clap

Mmmmm 3

LIB.VIL

their hands and falute him, faying in their Language; Byani Pemba, Ampola, Moneya

980

On the South-fide of the Kings Houses he hath a circuit or Village, where his Wines dwell. comme or wines and in this circuit no man may come in paine of death. He hath in this place one hundred & fifty Wines and more. And if any man be taken within this Circuit, if he be with a woman, or doe but speake to her, they be both brought into the Market place, and their heads bee cut off, and their bodies quartered, and lyc one day in the fereets. The laft King Grade, had foure hundred children by his women.

Strange cuflome of drin-

When the King drinketh he hath a cup of wine brought, and he that bringeth it hath a Bell in his hand, and affoone as he hath delinered the cop to the King, hee turneth his face from the 10 King, and ringeth the Bell: and then all that be there fall downe voon their faces, and rife me till the King have drunke. And this is very dangerous for any firanger, that knoweth not the falhions: for it any feeth the King drink, he is prefently killed, whatfoeuer he be. There was allow of twelue yeares, which was the Kings Sonne; This Boy chanced to come vnaduifedly when his Father was in drinking : prefently the King commanded he should be well apparelled, & victuals prepared. So the youth did eat & drinkiafterward the King commanded that he should be cut in quarters, and carryed about the Citie; with Proclamation that he faw the King drinke Likewill for his Dyet, when it is dinner time, there is an House of purpose, where hee alwayes eateth and there his Dyet is fet vpon a Benfa, hke a Table : then hee goeth in and hath the doore fine. So when he hath eaten, then he knocketh and commeth out. So that mone fee the King eat not so drinke. For it is their Beliefe, that if hee bee seene cating or drinking, hee shall presently dye, And this is an order with all the Kings that now are, or shall succeed, whether they abolish this

This King is fo honoured, as though hee were a God among them ; and is called Sambe and Pongo, that is, God. And they believe that he can give them rame, when hee lifteth. So onces raineth here weare when it is time to raine; which is in December, the people come to begge raine, and bring their gifts to the King : for none come emptie. Then he appointeth the day, and all the Lords farre and neere come to that Feast with all their troupes, as they goe in the warres. And when all the troupes of men be before the King, the greatest Lord commeth forth with his Bow and Arrowes, and the weth his skill with his wespons, and then he hith a merrie conceit or self, that to he speaketh before the King, and kneelethat his feet, and then the King thanketh him for his loue : and in like manner they doe all. The King fitteth abroad in a great place, and hath a Carpet spread vpon the ground, which is some fitteene fathomes about of fine Ensuch; which are wrought like Veluet, and vpon the Carpet his test, which is a fathome from the ground. Then wrongen has visual power of trikerp, which are Drums, fo great that they cannot carrie them, and others that are very great. He start allo eight Pages, which are his Wayters, made of the greateft Riephans? Techt, and are hollowed and faraped light: which play slid. And with the Drums and Waytes they make an hellish noyie. After they have sported and shewed the King pleafure, he arifeth and frandeth upon his Throne, and taketh a Bow and Argowesin his hand and filooteth to the Skie, and that day there is great rejoycing, because sometimes they have raine. I was once there when the King gave raine, and it chanced that day to raine mightily, which made the people to have a great beliefe in their folly.

Policie of th Deuill

Seme white children borne in this Countrey write crutaren, winter in vary law country write crutaren, with it was a children borne for their Parents are Noppost. And when any of them are borne, they bee preferred write the among them.

Here are fometimes borne in this Countrey write crutaren, within it was the children borne in the crutaren and children borne. The crutaren is a single white man. The fe are to white the crutaren is a single children borne in this crutaren. dare meddle with these Donder. If they goe to the Market, they may take what they lift, for all men stand in awe of them. The King of Longo hath four of them. This King is also a Witch and believeth in two Idols, which are in Longo. The one is called, go

a little house, at a Village that is called, Kinga, which standeth in the landing place of Longo.

Mokifo Gem-

Colour of their children

the courtefie of the Country. Thole that be Crafts-men, as Fishermen, Hunters & Witches do, of fer to this Idol, that they may have good lucke. This Checocke doth sometimes in the night comea and haunt some of his best Beloued; sometimes a man, sometimes a Boy, or a Woman, And then they be franticke for the space of three houres. And whatsoever the franticke Person speaketh, that is the will of Checock. And they make a great Feaft and dancing at his house. There is another Mokiffe, which is also in Kinga, and it is called, Gomberi. It is the name of a

Mokiffo à Longo, the other is called, Checocke. This last is a little blacke Image, and standeth in

This house of Checocke standeth in the high-way, and they that go by clap their hands, which is

woman, and is in an houle, where an old Wittn dwelleth, and thee is called, Ganga Gomberi, which is, the Prieft of Gomberi. Here once a yeare is a Feath made, and Ganga Gomberi speaketh 60 walet the ground. And this is a common thing cutry yeare. I have asked the Negrees what it was, and they told me, that it is a strong Mokife, that is come to abide with (becocke.

The children in this Countrey are borne white, and change their colour in two dayes to a perfect blacke. As for example, the Portugals which dwell in the Kingdome of Congo, have fometimes children by the Negro Women, and many times the Fathers are deceived . thinking when the child is borne that it is theirs, and within two dayes it proueth the fonne or daughter of a Negro; which the Paragals doe greatly grieve at : for they reloyce when they have a Ma.

lare child, thought it be a battard.

The Towns of Lange standard in the middest of the foure Lordships; and is governed by Foure Princes foure Princes, which are the Kings fifters fonnes. For the Kings fonnes neuer come to be Kings, in Louise, The first is, Mani Cahanga. The fectual, Mani Salay. The third Mani Sack, The fourth, Mani no Cay, This Mani Cay, an ext to be King, and hath his Trains and Court as a Prince. And when the King dieth, he someth presently into the fact of the King. Theris Mont Sock, com-to meth to Go: Manu Soing commeth to Bock, and Mani Cabang commeth to Salag. And then they pround another to goe to Calonge. So there be foure Princes that wait to be Kings, when their turnes core. The adother of these Princes is called, Mari Lombo: and thee is the higheft and chiefe woman is all the Land. Shee maketh choice of her husband, and when flee is wearie of him, she putteth him away, and taketh another. Her children are greatly honoured a and whofocuer passets by them, kneele downe and clap their hands, which is the curefie of the Countrie. These Lordings are champaine grounds, and full of Corne, and Fruit. The men in this Kingdome make great flore of Palme-cloth of fundrie forts, very fine and curious. They

are neur side; for, they make fine Capai of needle-worke, as they goe in the firetes:

There is a place two leagues from the Powne of Longo, called Longor, where all their Kings Burial of their

be buried; and it is compalled round about with Elephants teeth pitched in the ground, as it kings.

were a Pale, and it is ten roods in compaffe.

These people will suffer no white man to be buried in their Land. And if any Stranger or No white man Portugali come thither to trade, and chance to die, he is carried in a Boat two miles from the may be baried shoare, and cast into the Sea. There was once a Periogall Gentleman, that came to trade with in Longs, them, and had his hook on shoare. This Gentleman died, and was buried some source moneths. That weere it did not raine fo foone as it was wont , which beginneth about December : fo that they lacked raine fome two moneths. Then their Mohife told them , that the Christian which was buried, must be taken out of the earth, and cust into the Sea. And so he was taken up and cast into the Sea; and within three dayes it rained : which made them have a great beliefe in 30 the Devill.

V I.

of the Preumees of Bongo, Calongo, Mayombe, Manikelocke, Motimbas: of the Ape-monster Pongo, their bunting, Idolatries; and diners other observations.

O the Eastward of Longers is the Province of Bongs, and it bordereth upon Mocoke, Emg. the Great Angeon is King. In this place is great flore of Iron, and Palme-cloth, and Elephant: teeth, and great store of Corne. To the North-east, is the Prounce of Congo, and it is fourteene dayes sourney from the Towne of Longo. This place is full of Mountaines and rockie ground, and full or Woods, and hath great flore of Copper. The Elephants in this place doe excell. Here are fo many, that the people of Longo fetch great flore of Elephants teeth, and bring them to the Port of Longo.

To the Northwards of Longo three leagues is, the River Quelle: and on the North fide is, the Calenta Province of Calongo. This Countrey is alwaies tilled, and full of Corne: and is all plaine and champaine ground, and hath great store of Honie. Here are two little Villages, that shew at Sea like two homocks: which are the markes to know the Port of Longo. And fifteene miles Northward is the River Nombo: but it hath no depth for any Barke to goe in. This Province. toward the East, bordereth upon Bongo; and toward the North, upon Majombe, which is nine-

teene leagues from Longo, along the Coaft. This Prouince of Majombe is all Woods and Groues; so our growne, that a man may tra- Majombe. uaile twentie dayes in the shadow without any Sunne or heat. Here is no kind of Corne nor Graine: fo that the people liueth onely upon Plantanes, and Roots of fundrie forts very good, and Nuts, nor any kind of tame Cattell, nor Hens. But they have great store of Elephants flesh. which they greatly efteeme; and many kind of wild Bealts; and great flore of Fish. Here is a great fandy Bay, two leagues to the Southward of Cape Negro, which is the Port of Mayombe. Cape Negro is

Sometimes the Portugals lade Logwood in this Bay. Here is a great River, called Banna : in in fixteene de-60 the Winter it hath no barre, because the generall winds cause a great Sea. But when the Sumne grees to the hath his South declination, then a Boat may goe in : for then it is smooth because of the raine. Line. This River is very great and hath many Hands, and people dwelling in them. The Woods are Banna River. so couered with Baboones, Monkies, Apes, and Parrots, that it will feare any man to trausile in them alone. Here are also two kinds of Monsters, which are common in these Woods, and very dangerous.

The Posts of his, which iithey furorile at highth was like a mans but Their frength.

foould be, be hath forgotten to relate: and thele papers came to my hand fince his death, which otherwise in may often conferences I might have learned, Perhips he meameth the Piglers, mentio-The author was twelve

> Histranaile te Mani Kefeck. Mani Seat.

Great Bote of Loowood.

The greatest of these two Monsters is called, Pongo, in their Language: and the leffer is called led. Eneco. This Pongo is in all proportion like a man, but that he is more like a Giant in fin-He told me in ture, then a man : for he is very tall, and hath a mans face, hollow eyed, with long hairs upon with him, that his browes. His face and eares are without haire, and his hands also. His bodie is full of haire. oncor there but not very thicke, and it is of a dunnish colour. He different not from a man, but in sisters. Pongarroaka a for they have no carre. Hee goeth alwaies upon his legs, and carrieth his hands clasped on the name of his neske, when he goeth upon the ground. They fleepe in the trees, and build shelters nis, which a moneth for the raine. They feed vpon Fruit that they find in the Woods, and wpon Nuts, for the yeare with them. For no kind of fleth. They cannot theke, and have no understanding more then a beatt. The Pena they hart not ple of the Countrie, when they transile in the Woods, make hies where they fleepe in the 10 night; and in the morning, when they ategone, the Pongoes will come and for about the fire. they impute at the at goethour: for they have no vinderstanding to lay she wood to gether. They goe many cept they look together, and kill many Negrotes that trausite in the Woods. Many, manes they fall whom the on them, which Elophants, which come to reed where they be, and fo bestethem with their clubbed fifts, and picces of wood, that they will runne roaring away from them. Those Pongoes are never taken slave, because they are so from that ten men cannot hold one of them s but ver they take made as of their young ones with poiloned Arrewes. The young Ronge hangeth on his mothers beltheir bigneffe. He, with his hands faft clasped about here to that, when the Countrie people kill any of the twice as great, femals, they take the young one, which hangeth faft upon his mother. When they dis among flist the New hiemfelnes, they court the dead with great heapers of boughs and wood; which is commonly as Tarmourus (in a found in the Forrests.

The Morenbes vie to hunt with their Countrie Dogs, and kill many kinds of little beafts. ther Monfter and great flore of Pheafants: But their Dogs be thumbe and cannot barke at all. They have woodden clappers about their neckes, and tollow them by the rathing of the clappers. The Huntimen have Petes , which they whitherheir Dogs withall. These Dogs in all this Counmie are very little with prickt cares, and are for the most part red and dunne. The Portugall mathe Dog, or any other great Dog are greatly esteemed, because they doe barke. I have seene a Dog fold varin the Countrie for thirtie pounds.

In the Towne of Man Mayombe is a Ferifo, called Maramba: and it frandeth in an high bafket made like an Hine, and ouer it a great house. This is their house of Religion : for they be- 26 leeue onely in him, and keepe his lawes, and carrie his Reliques alwaies with them. They are for the most part Witches, and vie their witchcraft for hunting and killing of Elephants, and fishing, and helping of sicke and lame men : , and to fore-cast journeyes, whether they shall speed well or euill. By this Maramba are all thefts and murchers tried : for in this Countrie they vie sometimes to be witch one another to death. And when any dieth, their neighbours are brought before Maramba: and if it be a great man that dieth, the whole Towne commeth to sweare. The order is, when they come before Maramba, to kneele and claspe Maramba in A Dog fold for their armes, and to fay ; Emeno, eye bembet Maramba: that is, I come to be tried, O Maramba. And if any of them be guiltie, they fall downe ffarke dead for euer. And if any of them that Mani Majombe, sweare hath killed any manor child before, although it be twentie yeeres past, hee prefently 40 slieth. And fo it is for any other matter. From this place as farre as it is to Cape De low Gonfalses, they are all of this superstition. I was twelve moneths in this place, and saw many die this Countrie.

These people be circumcifed, as they be through all Angola, except the Kingdome of Cones, All Angola cirfor they are Christians. And those that will be sworne, to Maramba, come to the chiefe Gangas, which are their Priests, or Men-witches; as Boyes of twelve yeeres of age, and men and women. Then the Gangas put them into a darke houle, and there they remaine certaine dayes with very hard diet: after this they are let abroad, and commanded not to speake for certains dayes, what injurie focuer they be offered: fo that they fuffer great penurie before they bee fworne. Laftly, they are brought before Maramba, and have two markes cut voon both their 50 shoulders before, like an halfe Moone; and are I worne by the bloud that falleth from them, that they shall be true to him. They are forbidden some one kind of fielh, and some one kind of fish, with many other toyes. And if they eate any of this forbidden meate, they prefently ticken and never prosper. They all carrie a relique of Maramba in a little boxe, and hang it about their necks, under their left armes. The Lord of this Province of Mayombe, hath the Enligne or shape of Maramba carried before him, whitherfoeuer he goeth; and when he fitteth downe at is let before him; and when he drinketh his Palme-wine, the first cup is powred at the foote of the Mokife, or Idoll; and when he exteth any thing whatfocuer, the first piece he throweth toward his left hand, with enchanting words.

From Cape Negro Northward is a great Lord, called Mani Seat; which hath the greatest 60 ftore of Elephants teeth of any Lord in the Kingdome of Longo : for, his people practile nothing elie but to kill Elephants. And two of thole Negroes will eafily kill an Elephant with their darts. And here is great store of Log wood.

There is another Lord to the Eastward, which is called Mani Kefock, and he is eight dayes

journey from Mayombe. Heere I was with my two Negro Boyes, to buy Elephants haires Twentie thouand tayles; and in a moneth I bought twentie thousand, which I fold to the Portugals for thir- fand Ele and tayles; and in a moneth I bought twentier including when the Slaues, and all my charges borne. From this place I fent one of my Negro Boyes to Mani phants tailes.

A Trade a little Seat with a Looking-glade: he did effeeme it much, and fent me foure Elephants teeth, (very North ward of oreat) by his owne men; and defired me to cause the Portugals, or any other shippe, to come to Cape Negro. the Northward of the Cape Negro, and hee would make fires where his landing place is : For which is about there was never yet any Portugall, or other stranger in that place.

To the North-east of Man Kesock, are a kind of little people, called Matimbas; which are South of the no bigger then Boyes of twelve yeares old, but are very thicke, and line onely vpon flesh, which line. 10 they kill in the Woods with their Bowes and Darts. They pay tribute to Mani Kefock, and The Matimbas bring all their Elephants teeth and tayles to him. They will not enter into any of the Marom- a people of ve bos houles, nor will fuffer any to come where they dwell. And if by chance any Maramba, ry [mal flaure or people of Longo passe where they dwell, they will fortake that place, and go to another. The mevs. Women carry Bow and Arrowes as well as the Men. And one of these will walke in the Women ving Woods alone, and kill the Pongos with their poyfoned Arrowes. I have asked the Marombos, Bowes and Arwhether the Eiephant sheddeth his teeth or no? And they say no. But sometimes they finde Elephants their teeth in the Woods, but they find their bones also.

When any man is suspected for any offence, he is carried before the King, or before Mani shed their Bomma, which is as it were a Judge vnder the King. And if it be voon matter that hee deny- rech. 20 eth, and cannot be proued but by their oath; then the suspected person is thus fworne. They haue a kind of roote which they call Imbondo. This roote is very firong, and is fraped into The verue of water. The vertue of this roote is, that if they put too much of it into the water, the person the roote imthat drinketh it cannot voyd vrine sand fo it ftriketh vp into the braine, as shough hee were bondo. drunke, and he falleth downe as though he were dead. And those that fall are counted as guiltie, the this room and are punished.

In this Countrey noting of any account dyeth, but they kill another for him : for they belegue they doe not of their owne gamrall death, but that fome other, hath bewitched them to Gall he rafted death : And all the feare brought urby the friends of the dead which they ful ped so that ma- it) and one ny times there come fine intuited were and women to take the drinke, made of the foresaid root, to try one hun-30 Imbonde. They are brought all to the High-streete or Market place, and there the master of the dred. They Imbonda fitteth with his water, and greeth enery one a cup of water by one measure; and they which have are commanded to walke in a certaine place till they make water, and then they be free : But drunke and he that connot wrine prefently falleth downe, and all the people great and finall fall vpon him made water with their knines, and beate and cut him into pieces. But I thinke the Witch that gueth the red, before water is partiall, and giveth to him whom he will have to dye the strongest water, but no man which if dizzican perceive it that frandeth by. And this is done in the Towne of Longo, almost every week nes cake them.

and preferrly execute them. See my Relat. 1. 9. 6. 50, which it writ from his mouth. Neither may this be a ferribed to the vertue of the herbe, but to the vice of the Duuill, a murtherer and his Influments. The Garga or Prick. * And therefore that conjecture 40 (eems vnprobable, For how could an ordinary tryall of life where are fo many to perilous; and therefore curious (more then) ine-Sators, not perceine this in fo long and frequent experience, which cofts to many their dearest friends their dearest life ? I thinke rather that this was the transcribers conjecture. I remember no such scruple in his Narrations to me, who knowes not the Deuils ambition of Deity, and cruell Malanthropie or man hating ? This is his Apith imitation of Diminity, and those Rites prescribed for triall in case of Italouse, Num, s. In Guinea like triall is made by Salt, and also by the Feifferer port. In Remonstrate, by a water also is the Menumber trial before, and Materials could be the total times with ver and the tryall of Wiches falls in the Early arts of water, Sa. were not verified in decirable superstances in old times with ver and the tryall of Wiches falls in the Early arts of water, Sa. were not verified in decirable superstances.

VII.

Of the Zebra and Hippopotamus: The Portugals Warres in those parts: The Fishing, Graine, and other things remarkable.

N this Kingdome there is no kind of tame Cattle but Goats; for none other Cattle rwill lue here. Oxen and Kine have beene brought hither, but they presently dye:
The Hennes in this place doe so abound, that a man may buy thirtie for the worth The Hennes in this place our to account of the Hennes in this place our to account of fixe pence in Beads. Heere is store of Phealants, and great plenty of Partridges, and wilde Fowle. Here is a kind of Fowle that lines in the Land bigger then a Swan, and Plenty of wilde

they are like an Heron, with long legges, and long neckes, and it is white and blacke, and hath Fowle. 63 in her breaft a bare place without Feathers, where the ftriketh with her Bill. This is the right The right Pe-Pelican, and not those Sea Birds which the Portugals call Pelicans, which are white, and as lican, bigge as Geefe, and those abound in this Country also.

Here is also the Zenera or Zebra, which is like an horse; but that his mane, his taile, his strakes The Zenera or of divers colours downe his fides and legges, doe make a difference. These Zeneras are all wilde, Zetra,

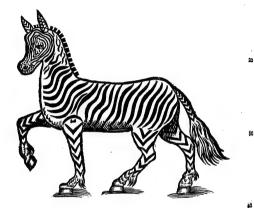
whether they

and line in great heards, and will fuffer a man to come within thot of them, and let them floore three or foure times at them before they will runne away.

The Hipporetemut or Ruer Horie. A prefent remedy for the

Moreouer, there are great flore of Sea or Ruier Horfes, which feed alway on the Land, and line onely by Graffe, and they be very dangerous in the water. They are the biggeft creature in this Countrey, except the Elephant : They have great vertue in the clawes of their left forefoote, and have foure clawes on every foot, like the clawes of an Oxe. The Portugals make Rings of them, and they are a present remedy for the Fluxe.

The ZEVERA OF ZEBRA.



in Congo.

The Generall of the blacke

The Portugals make warre against the Negroes in this manner. They have out of Cones a Noble-man, which is knowne to be a good Christian, and of good behaulour. He bringeth out of Congo some one hundred Negroes that are his followers. This Macicongo is made Tandala, or Generall ouer the blacke Campe; and hath authoritie to kill, to put downe Lords, and make Lords, and hath all the cheefe doings with the Negroes. And when any Lord commeth to obey; first he commeth to the Tandala and bringeth his present; as Slaues, Kine, and Goats: Then the Tandala carrieth him before the Portugall Gouernour, and bringeth two Slaues for the Gouernours Page before he goeth in. Then he must have a great gift for the Governour; which is fometimes, thirtie or fortie Slaues, besides Cattle. And when he commeth before the Gournour, he kneeleth downe and clappeth his hands, and falleth downe with his face youn the ground, and then he rifeth and faith; I have beene an enemy, and now I protest to be true, and never more to lift my hand against you. Then the Gouernour calleth a Souldier which hath deserved a reward, and giveth the Lord to him. This Souldier feeth that he have no wrong ; and the Lord acknowledgeth him to be his Mafter; and he doth maintaine the Souldier, and maketh him rich. Also, in the warres he commandeth his Masters house to be built before his owne : and whatsoeuer he hath taken that day in the warres, he parteth with his Master. So that there is no Portugall Souldier of any account, but he hath his Negro Sona, or Lord.

Their Fishing on the Coast.

They vie vpon this Coast to Fish with harping Irons, and waite vpon a great Fish that commethonee a day to feed along the sheare, which is like a Grampas. Hee runneth very neere the 60 shoare, and driueth great skuls of Fish before him: and the Negroes runne along the shoare, as fait as they are able to follow him, and firthe their Harping Irons round about him, and kill great store of Fish, and leave them wpon the Sand till the Fish hath done feeding; and then they come and gather their Fish vp. This Fish will many times runne himselfe on ground, but they

will presently shous him off agains, which is as much as source or fine men can doe. They call him Embea, which is in their speech, and will by no meanes hurt or kill any of them. Alfo, they vie in the Bayes and Ritters, where should water is, to Fish with Mats, which A strange kind are male of long Reiffred and they make them of six hundred fathoms long. The Mars (wire of filling with are mane or nong remain and they make them or an amount of the Mats, and for they draw the Mats in compating a new doc our Nets. The Filhes fearing, the Ruthes that hang downe, fpring out of the water, and fall opon the Mar that lyeth flat on the water, and fo are taken.

to or the water, and tall pour the man that sy the first, is called Masters, and it groweth upon Foure forts of I ney naue to the great of the interest of the state of t

called stagement. In its 100 great mixeue 2 to to one actined one prings route or me Can-s, which are tenne foote high, and they bages half a paint of 0, Corne a peece. This graine isas big actives, and very good. Thirdly, they have another that groweth low like Graffe, and is very active from the control of the control like Mustard-seed : and this is the best. They have also the great Guiney Wheate, which they call Maf-impota. This is the least esteemed.

call Maj-mpota. I his is the leat externed.

They shaw very good Pedon, formewhat bigger therrours that they grow not as ours do. For Two forse of the poodes grow on the rootes waterneath the ground; and by their leaves they know when Peason show the poodes grow on the rootes waterneath the ground; and by their leaves they know when Peason show the poodes grow on the rootes waterneath the ground; and by their leaves they know when Peason show the poodes grow on the rootes. they be ripe. They have another kind of Peafon, which they call Wandor. This is a little tree; they grow, and the first yeare that it is planted, it beareth no fruit but after it beareth fruit times yeares,

and then it is cut downe. 20 Their Plantan trees beare fluit but once, and then are cut downe : and out of the root thereof fpring three or foure young ones.

They have great store of Hony, which hangeth in the Elicondy Trees. They gather with Their Hony. an hollow piece of Wood or Cheft, which they hang in the top of the Tree, and office years it is full, by imoake rewarding the laborious Creatures with robbery, exile, death.

THIS Alicumde or Elicondy Tree is very talk, and exceeding great fome as high at twelte men ladded this can futhoms, freeding live as Oake; fome of them, are bollow, and from the liberall skiet results from the control of the can control of the can be controlled in the c Least Janussen, pressuring tree on vage 1 jume of the trees, and prom the more man term to control the owner play leaves of water, that they are Hefsald entertainers of thousands in that the life Region. resports only 30 Once have I havener there or foure abilityland remains at one of these Trees, and thence receiving all (eds. Other 30 Once have I havener there or foure abilityland remains at one of these Trees, and thence receiving all (eds. Other Once name I quarme torce or your extrugence remains at one of vone retenes, and some receiving all lefts other individually programs for foure and treated bases, and yet one employee. The Negroes elimbed up using bits like things you peggers for who whose (which that fifting asfly receiveds, the smoothness admitting other climb. may find from peggers for the Works (which that fifting asfly receiveds, the smoothness admitting other climb. pegges of bard Worke (which that soften easily received, the smoothness and antiting abort climb.

ing) and thinks these some one tree bolds for its imme of water. This Tree associates the solid behavior that be solid to the back to the solid print in the promoter Trees, whose tendere backs being more sast and to cauted in any excepting that this is better from the younger Trees, whose tendere backs being more sast and the print of the solid part of the main fault, whence came the first nakedwife) wherever one factions can from the Year, is extended into twente, and is presently fir for warray, though not of sine as the Uzzanda tree prelds. This tree peeds excellent cloud from the immorback three by like bea
The Irrends. ting. Of their Palme Trees, which they keepe with watering and cutting enery yeare; they make Vel-

40 nets, Sattins, Taffataes, Damaskes, Sarcenets, and such like out of the leanes cleanfed and purged. dranging long threads, and even for that purpole. They draw Wine (as is faud) from the Palme Tree; there is another kind of Palme Tree, which beareth a fruits good for the somacke, and for the Liuer

One Crocodile was Johnge and greedy, that he denoured an Alibamba, that is, a chained company of eight or nine Slaues : but the indigettible Iron paid him. his wages, and murthered the murtherer, found after in his belly. I have seene them watch their prey, haling in gemet, Man or other Creature into the water. But one Souldier thus wrapt in Shallmer water, drew his knife, tooke his Taker in the belly and fine bim.

,			
	* 1		
			Сна

CHAP. IIII.

986

A report of the Kingdome of Congo, a Region of Affica: Gathered by PHILIPPO PIGAFETTA, out of the Discourses of Master Ed. VY ARD LOPES a Portugall, translated out of Italian into English, by Master ABRAHAM HARTYVELL,
and bere abreviated.

The iourney by Sea from Lisbone to the Kingdome of Congo: Of the Agre, Winds, Raines, Temperature thereof.



N the yeare 1 :88. when Don Sebastian King of Portugall, embarked himselfe for the Conquest of the Kingdome of Morocco : Edward Lopes borne at Be. for the Conquert of the Mangaone will add than from Lisbons, incere vpon neuentum. (a place foure and twentie miles diffant from Lisbons, incere vpon 10 the South shore of the River Tague) sayled likewise in the moneth of April towards the hauen of Landa, structe in the Kingdome of Congo, in a ship called S. Anthony, belonging to an Vncle of his, and charged with diners mar-

Patathe 1. a

The Island of Madera. The Canaries.

chandifes for that Kingdome: And it was accompanied with a Parache (which is a fmall veffel) whereunto the ship did continually yeeld good guard, and ministred great releefe, conducting and guiding the same with lights in the night time, to the end it should not lose the way, which and guiding the lame with inguist in the ingent time of the class it means not tote the way, which the hipper it felfe did keepe. He arrived at the Island of Masters, belonging to the King of Portugall, diffant from Lisbour Dut fare hundred miles, where he termained fifteen daire, to furnish himselfe with fresh Victuall and Wine; which in great abundance groweth in that Island, yeard in mine opinion the best in the world, whereof they carry abroad great flore to Heefs, 46. Hand, yearns in time opinion the out in the word, which have also discovered between the discovered the call of the control of the quantity, and also fingular excellency. From this Island they departed, leaving all the Const ries belonging to Cafiile, and tooke hauen at one of the Islands of Cape Verde, called S. Anibory, without having any fight thereof before they were come vpon it and from thence to another called S. Jacopo, which commandeth all the reft, and hatha Bishop & a Chaplaine in it, that rule and gouerne them : and here they prouided themselves againe of victuals. These Islands of Cape Verde governe enem and nere ency produced assembled as plants of the control of the Welf, cog-e-ther with the Cape or Promontorie which he termeth Corne whimmen, or the Illands Macania The generating and in those Countries do Trafficke with fundry marchandies, as little balles of discn coloured Glasse, and other such things, wherein those people doe greatly delight, and Holland cloath, and Caps and Knines, and coloured Clothes: In exchange whereof they bring backea-

gaine, Slaues, Waxe, Hony, with other kind of food, and Cotten-cloth of fundry colours. Now the shippe called S. Anthony, holding on his course, met with the generall windes and then turned their Prow and their Sayles, by North, and by North-west on the right hand towards the Kingdome of Congo. And sayling on-wards closely with the halfe shippe, they came in twelve dates and twelve nights, to the Island of S. Elena, not looking for the lame, nor thinking of it. This Island was to called, because on the Feast day of S. Helma, which falleth to meths together vpon the third day of May, it was by the Portugals first descried. And as it is very small, so is it (asit were) fingular by it selfe: for being situate in the height of sixteene degrees towards the Antarctike, it containeth in compasse nine miles about, and is farre distant from the firme

From the Island of S. Helena, they made sayle with the same weather, and so within the space of seuenteene daies came to the hauen of Lounda, which is in the Province of Congo, the winds being somewhat more calme then they were afore. This is a very fure and great hauen, so called of an Island of the same name, whereof we shall speake hereafter.

There are two courses of fayling from the Island of Cape Verde to Loands; the one of them now declared, which being neuer vied afterwards, was at the first attempted and performed by the same shippe wherein Signer Odoardo went, being then guided by Francisco Mar- 60 tinez the Kings Pilot, a man very greatly experienced in those Seas, and the first that ever conducted vessell by that way : the other is atchieued by passing along the Coast of the firme Land-From the Illand of San Iacomo, they came to Cape Das Palmas, and from thence direct themfelues to the Island of San Thomas, which lyeth under the Equinoctiall; fo called, because it

the Etely, which blow from fome Northerly point vnto degrees South bout fixe mooff toward Brafil, to gaine the wind and re-

all of Eben-The Port of De las Palmas. course of Try-The life of S. CHAP.4.S.2. Great Traffique. Christian Churches, Wormes hurtfull.

was diffeourred upon that day, wherein the Feast of that Apostle is vied to be celebrated. It is distant from the firme Land, one hundred and eightie miles, right against the River . called Gaban, which is fo termed because it is in shape very like to that kind of Vesture, that it is called a

The Haven thereof is fore-closed with an Hand that raiseth it selfe in the Channell of the Ri- The Haven of uer, whereunto the Portugals doe fayle with small Barkes from Saint Thomas Hand, carrying S. Thomas. thither fuch things as vivally they carrie to the Coast of Guinea, and from thence carrying backe with them Joorie, Waxe and Honey, Oyle of Palme, and Blacke-moore flaues. Neere to the Iland of Saine Thomas, towards the North lyeth another Hand, called the He of the Prince . diand or Saint Formath, towards the red and five miles, being of the fame condition and Trafficke, Prince. that the He of Saint Thomas is, although in circuit some-what lesse. This lland of Saint Thomas Thelle of S. is in fashion almost round, and in breadth contayneth fixtie miles, and in compasse one hundred Thomas

and eightie. Very rich it is and of great trafficke, discouered at the first and conquered by the Great afficke, Portugals, at such time as they began the conquest of the Indies. It hath divers Hauens, but the principall and chiefest of all, whereinto the Vessels arriving there, doe with-draw themselves,

is in the place, where the Citie standerh.

The Hand breedeth an infinite deale of Sugar, and almost all kinds of victuals. In the Citic Sugar. there are fome Churches, and a Bishop, with many Clerkes and one Chaplain or Priest. There is A Castle. alfo a Caffle, with a Garrison and Artillerie in it, which beate voon the Hauen, beeing a verie great and a fafe Port, where many thips may ride. But a very strange and admirable thing it is, that when the Portugals did first come thither, there was no Sugar there planted, but they brought it thicher from other Countries: as they did Ginger also, which tooke roote, and grew there in Ginger. most abundant manner. The soyle indeed is moyit, and as it were appropriated to foster the Sugar-cane, which without any other watering, multiplyeth of it felfe, and fructifieth infinitely: the reason whereof is, because the dew falleth there like raine, and moysteneth the Earth. There are in this lland above feventie Houses or Presses for making of Sugar, and every Presse fee somate

hath many Cottages about it as though it were a Village, and there may bee about fome three Sugar in 30 handred persons that are appointed for that kind of worke: They doe every yeare loade about fortie great thips with Sugar. True it is, indeed, that not long agoe the Wormes (as it were a Wormes hore plague to that Land) have deuoured the roots of the Canes, and deftroyed the fruits of their Su-fully ear, in such fort as now of the fortie ships, they doe not loade aboue fine or fixe Vessels with that Merchandize.

The Hand of Saint Thomas holdern Trafficke with the people that dwell in the firme Land. which dovimily refort to the mouthes or entries of their Rivers : The first whereof (to begin withall) is named the Riner of Fernando di Poo, that is to fay, of Fernando Pouldre, who did first The Riner and discouer the same, and lyeth in five degrees towards our Pole. Right against the mouth of it, ri- Iland of Ferfeth an Iland of the same name, lying thirtie and six emiles distant from it. The second River is Bando Poo. 40 called Bora, that is to fay, Filth: The third, La riviera del Campo. The fourth, de San Benedetto. La Riviera del and the fifth, that of Angra, which in the mouth of it hath an Iland, called de Corifeo, that is Came. to fav. Thunder. All these doe Trafficke the same Merchandizes, which we mentioned before, River, disas

But to returne to the Voyage of Saint Thomas: departing from thence towards the South, we Benedetta. found the Cape of Lupo Gonzale, which standeth in the altitude of one degree beyond the Equinoctiall towards the Pole Antarchike, one hundred and fine miles diffant from the foresaid Ile. Corifica. And from thence they faile with Land winds, creeping still all along the Coast, and enery day The Cape of cafting Anchor in some safe place either behind some point, or else in some Hauen, vntill they Luje Songes, come to the mouth of the greatest River in Congo, called in their Tongue Zaire, which signifies h in Latine, Sapio, (in English, I know.) From whence if yee will goe through to the Hauen of Leands, ye must faile the length of one hundred and fourescore miles.

The Kingdome * of Congo in the middle part thereof, is distant from the EquinoStiall neth these towerds the Pole Antarctike (inft where the Citie called Congo doth lye) feuen degrees and two cond chapter thirds : so that it standeth under the Region which ancient Writers thought to be unhabitable, as it is in the

and called it Zona Torrida.

The habitation there is exceeding good, the Ayre beyond all credit temperate, the Winter for breuiticalnothing fo rough, but is rather like Autumne in Rome. The people vie no Furres, nor change of tered, and apparell, they come not neere the fire, neither is the cold in the tops of the Mountaynes great longer Parater then that which is in the Plaines : but generally in Winter time, the Ayre is more hot then it is in Summer, by reason of their continual raines, and especially about two houres before and The temperaafter noone, so that it can hardly be endured. The men are blacke, and so are the women, and ture of the 60 fome of them also formewhat inclining to the colour of the wild Olive. Their hayre is blacke Kingdomeand curled, and some allored. The stature of the men is of an indifferent bignesse, and excerting their blacknesse they are very like to the Portugals. The apples of their eyes are of divers plecolours, blacke and of the colour of the Sea. Their lips are not thicke, as the Nubians and other Negroes are: and so likewise their countenances are some fat, some leane, and some betweene both, as in our Countries there are, and not as the Negroes of Nubia and Guinea, which are very

Small diffe. rence between their dayes and nights. Their Winter

deformed. Their nights and their dayes doe not greatly differ, for in all the whole years were shall not discerne the difference betweene them to bee more then a quarter of an houre.

The Winter in this Countrey (to speake at large) beginneth at the same time . there our fping heere beginneth , that is to fay , when the Sunne entreth into the Nottherne Signes, in the moneth of March. And at the fame time that wee have our Wine ter, when the Sanne entresh into the Southerne Signes in the moneth of September. ber, then beginneth their Summer. In their Winter it rayneth fine monethes almost continual ly, that is to fay, in Aprill, May, lune, July and August. Of faire dayes they have but a few. because the rame falleth so greatly, and the drops of it are so big, as it is a wonder to see. These waters doe maruellously supple the ground, which is then very dry, by reason of the heate of the Summer past, wherein it never rayneth for the space of fixe monethes together, and after the ground is full, and as it were ingorged with water, then do the Rivers (well beyond all credit, and are fo replenished with troubled waters, that all the Countrey is furrounded by them.

The winds in

The winds which blow in these Moones through all this Region, are the very selfe-sime this Countrey that Calar calleth by a Greeke word Erefy, that is to fay, Ordinary enery yeare: whereby are in Wintertime meant thole wind, that in the Card are noted from the North to the Welt, and from the North to the North-east. These winds do drive the Cloudes to the huge and high mountaynes, wherewoon they rush with very great violence, and being there stayed of their owne nature, they are afterwards melted into water. So that when it is likely to raine, you shall fee the Cloudes flunding (as it were) upon the tops of their highest hils.

The cause of ward. Nilus runneth

And hence arrieth the increasing and augmentation of the Rivers that spring in Athionia. e increase of and especially of Nilss and others, that discharge themselves into the East and West Ocean. Nilm, and o- And in the Kingdome of Congo and Guinea, through which runneth the River Niger, fo called th Rivers in by the ancient Writers; and by the new, termed Senega, you shall see the faid River increase at Ath open.

The Ruser Ni- the very selic-same time that Nilm doth; but indeed carrieth his waters towards the West, di-The kiner NI.

The ki and Wilderneifes, and Deferts.

North-ward.

Now, for as much as in the Regions of Congo and Ethiopia, it is alwayes woont to raine e-North-ware.
It seldome rais ry years at a certaine fet time, the fwelling and ouer-flowing of the Rivers there, is of no great noth in Eggs confideration, nor any firange accident to make account of, But in the Countries, that are rame but onely in diffant and very dry, as in Egyps, where it neuer raineth (fauing onely in Alexandria, and the Alexand 14, and Territories thereof) it is accounted a maruellous matter, to fee every years to great a quantitie there fallere of thicke troubled water come vpon them, from places to remote, at a certaine let time, withvarhollome. out milling : which water doth quicken the ground, and ministreth food both to man and

> This is then the cause of the increase of Nilsu, and other Rivers in that Climate, whereof the Ancients of olde times made to great doubt, and invented to many Fables and Errours.

But in their Summer, which is our Winser, there blow other winds that are quite opposite 40 Summer time. to the former, even in Diametro, and are noted in the Carde, from the South to the Southeast, which out of all queffion must needs be cold, because they breathe from the contrarie Pole Appe arctike, and coole all those Countries, even for all the World as our winds in Summer doe coole our Countries. And whereas, there with them, these winds doe make the Ayre very faire and cleere, fo doe they never come vinto vs. but they bring with them great flore of raine.

And certainly, if the breath of their winds did not refresh and coole these Countries of A. thionia, and Congo, and other places neere about them, it were not possible for them to endure the heate, confidering that even in the night time they are constrayned to hang two coverings Cooling of hot ouer them to keepe away the heate. The lame cooling and refreshing by winds, is common also Regions bythe to the Inhabitants of the He of Candie, and of the Hands in Archipelago, and of Cyprus, and of go Afia the leffe, and of Soria, and of Egypt, which doe line (as it were) with this refreshing of the fore-faid winds of the North-welt, and of the West : so that they may well bee called as they are in Greeke, Zephers, quafi Compies, breeders of life.

Let it be also remembred, that in the mountaines of Athiopia, and of Congo, and the Regions neere adioyning, there falleth no Snow, neither is there any at all in the very tops of them, fauing onely towards the Cape of Good Hope, and certaine other hils, which the Portugals call, Sierra Neuada, that is to fay, the Snowie Mountaines. Neither is there any Ice or Snow to bee found in all the Countrey of Congo, which would be better efteemed there then Gold, to mingle Re anowner Leein Ethiopia with their drinkes : So that the Riners there doe not fwell and increase by melting of Snow, but because the raine doth fall out of the Cloudes for fine whole Moones continually together, 60 that is to fay, in Aprill, May, June, July, and August : the first raine sometimes beginning on the fiftuenth day, and sometimes after. And this is the cause why the new waters of Nilm, which are fo greatly defired and expected by the Inhabitants there, doe arrive fooner or later in

Of the circuit of the Kingdome of Congo, and of the borders and confines thereof; As also of dissers bordering Nations: and remarke. able Rarities therein.

He Kingdome of Congo, is diftinguished by four borders: The first, of the West, which is watered with the Ocean Sea : The fecond, of the North : The third, of the Eaft.

and the last, which is towards the South. . And to beginne with the border lying vpon the Sea, the first part of it is in the Bay; The Westerne called Sene delle Vacche, and is fituate in the height of thirteene degrees vpon the Antarchike- border of Gale, and firetcheth all along the Coaft ynto foure degrees and a halfe on the North-fide, nevre to The Bay of the Equinoctiall; which space contayneth six hundred and thirtie miles. This Seno delle Vacebe, is Cower. a Hauen but of a moderate bignesse, and yet a good one, and able to receive any hip that arriueth. It is called Senodelle Vacche, that is to lay, The Bay of Cowes, because thereabours there are patturing very many Herds of that king of Catele, The Countrey is plaine, and aboundeth wih all manner of victuals, and there you shall find some kind of Metals to be publikely fold. especially filuer, and it is subject to the King of Angola.

A little more forward lyeth the River Bengleli, where a certaine Lord , beeing fubiect to the The River King of Angela, doth specially command and about the faid River is a great compasse of, Bengles, Country, much like to the former. And a little further runneth the River Songa, focalled by The River the Portugals: wherein you may fayle fine and twentie miles vpwards in a Countrey also like South

Then followeth the River Coassa , which iffueth out of a little Lake , fed by a certaine Ri- The River uer that floweth out of a great Lake, being the chiefe and principall Spring or Head of Nilus, Coarse, whereof in the other part of this Discourse wee shall have occasion to write. Comes, at the mouth of it is two miles broad, and you may fayle with small Barkes vpwards against the

freame a bout one hundred miles, but hath no Hauen. And here it is to bee noted, that all this 30 Countrey which we have here described, was woont to be fibited to the King of Congo: but awhile agoe the Gouernour of that Countrey is become the absolute Lord thereof, and professet himlelfe to be a friend to the King of Congo, but not his Vaffall : and yet fometimes he fendeth

the King some Present, in manner of a tribute. Beyond the River Coanza, is the Hanen of Lounda, being in ten degrees, made (as it is faid) The Hand of by a certaine Hand, called Loands, which fignifieth in that Language, Bald, or Shanen; because it Loands, is a Countrey without any hils and very low : for, injeed, is scarce rayseth it selfe about the Sea. This Iland was framed of the fand and durt of the Sea, and of the River Coanza; whose wanes meeting together, and the filthy matter finking downe there to the bottome, in conti-

nuance of time it grew to be an Iland. It may be about twentie miles long, and one mile broad 40 at the most, and in some places but onely a bow shoot. But it is a maruellous thing, that in such a fandie ground, if you shall digge to the depth of two or three hand-breadthes, you shall find -fweet water, the beft in all thoie Countries. Wherein also there is a very ftrange effect. that Strange water when the Ocean ebbeth, this water becommeth somewhat salt, but when it floweth to the top, it is most sweet. A thing that falleth out also in the Hand of Cadis in Spaine, by the report and

This Iland is the Mine of all the Money which the King of Congo spendeth, and all the peo. The money of ple thereabouts. For you the shoares you shall have certaine women, that wie to diue and ducke into the Sea, two yards deepe and more, and fill their baskets with fand, and afterwards divide the gravell from certaine small Shel-fishes that are among it, which are called Lamache; and when these Lumache are severed by themselves, then doe they picke out the Males from the Females, which they may eafily doe, because the Female is more fine then the Male, and greatly. effeemed for her colour, which is very neat, bright and pleafant to the fight. Their Lamache The Lamache

because they looke very fine, and of a very bright colour, some gray or ash-coloured, and some of other colours not fo precious. And here you must note that gold and silver and metall is not of any estimation, nor in vie of money in their Countries, but onely their Lamache: fo that neither with gold nor filter, in Nomerall-momaffe or in coine you shall buy any thing there, but with these Lumache you shall buy both gold ney-

and filuer, or any thing elfe. 63 In this Hand there are feuen or eight Townes, called in that Countrey Language, Libara, the principall whereof is Spirito Sancto: and therein dwelleth the Governour which is fent from Congo, to minister luttice and to gather the treasure of the moneyes of these Lumache. Here Spirito Santio. are also Goates and Sheepe, and Bores in great numbers, which being tame at the first, doe afterwards become wild and line in the Woods. Here groweth alfo a tree, called Enzanda, which

Nnnnn 2

à. II.

doe breed in all the shoares of the Kingdome of Congo, but the best of all are those of Lounds, of Lands.

Shel-filbes

growing on

in fundrie

Countries.

Pepper mo-

Villa di San

The River

The River

999

is a great one and alwayes greene, and endued with a fingular qualitie. For from the boushes of it that forout vowards, there hang downe certaine threeds (as it were) which creeping into the Earth doe take roots, and out from these roots doe rise other trees, and so they multiply. Cloth made of And within the outmost barke thereof, there groweth a certaine kind of Pill like fine Linnen Cloth made of And within the common baracteristics, they spread out in length and in breadth, and therewith they cloath their men and women, that are of the baseft fort.

In this Iland they have certaine vessels made of the bodies of Palme-trees, joyned together Their Boats or and framed after the manner of our Boates, with a prow and a sterne, wherein they passe from place to place, both with Oares and Sayles. In these Boates they vie to fish about the Rivers. which are indeed exceeding full of fift, and sometime also they will goe over to the firme to

In that part of this Hand, which is towards the maine Land, in certaine low places there grow certaine trees (which when the water of the Ocean ebbeth) discouer themselves; and at the feet thereof you shall find certaine other Shel-fishes cleaning as fast to the trees as may bee . hae time within them a great fifth as bigge as a mans hand, and very good meate. The people of the trees.

Ambig amature, Country know them very well, and call them Ambig amature, that is to fay, The fish of the Rocke. The fiels of the fefifhes, they vie to burne, and thereof make very good Lime to build withall. And being like the corke of barke of the tree, which is called Manghi, they dreffe their Oxe-hides withall, to make their those foles the ftronger.

To be briefe, this Iland bringeth forth neither Come nor Wine, but there is great store of vi-Quall broughe thither from all parts thereabouts, to fetch away thefe Lamache. For as in all omoney is vied ther places all things may be had for money of metall, fo all things here are had for Lumache. Whereby may be noted, that not onely here in this Kingdome of Congo, but also in her Neighhour . Athiopia and in Africa, and in the Kingdome of China, and certaine others of the Indien: they we moneyes of other matter then of metall, that is to fay, neither gold, nor filter, nor copper, nor any other mixture tempered of thefe.

For in Ethiopia, their money is Pepper : and in the Kingdome of Tombato, which is about the River Niver, otherwife called Senega, their money is Cockles or Shel-fift; and among the Azanaehi, their moneyes are Porcellette: and in the Kingdome of Bengala, likewife they vie Percellette, and metall together. In China they have certaine Shel-fifthes, called also Percellette, 30 which they ye for their money : and in other places Paper flamped with the Kines Seale, and the barkes of the tree called Gelfomora.

Great flore of Neere to this Iland towards the cutward Coast to the Sea, there swimme an innumerable fort of Whales, that looke blacke, and fighting one with another doe kill themselnes; which afterwards being by the waves cast up upon the shoare, as bigge as a midling Merchants ship; the Negroes go forth with their Boats to fetch them, and to take the Oyle out of them, which being minded with Pitch they vie to trimme their Veffels withall. Vpon the ridges or backs of their creatures; there grow many Shel-fishes, made like Snailes, Cockles, and Whelkes; whereof Signor Odor to affirmed, that he had feene great ftore. He was also of opinion that Amber commeth not from these fishes. For ouer all the Coast of Congo, where there is an infinite number of them, you shall not find either Ambergriz, or any other Amber, blacke or white in any place.

Voon the firme Land directly over against the Hand is a Towne, called Villa di San Paulo , altogether inhabited with Portugals, and their Wines, which they brought with them out of Spaine : and yet it is not fortified. All this Channell is very full of fifth, especially of Sardmans. and of Inchiones; whereof there is so great store, that in the Winter time they will of themfelues leane up to Land. Other kinds of most excellent fishes there are, as Soles, and Sturgeons, and Barbelles, and all manner of daintie fish; and great Crabs, in firange abundance, and all very wholfome : to that the greatest part of the people that dwell about the bankes there, doe

Into this Channell runneth the River called Bengo, which is a very great one, and navigable 50 vowards twentie fine miles. This River with that other of Comza, whereof I told voubefore do make the He of Lounda, because when their waters doe meete together, they leave their fand & filth behind them, and so increase the Hand. There runneth also into itanother great River called Dande, which will receive Vessels of an hundred tunne : and then another Riger called Lemba, which neither hath Hauen, neither doe any ships enter into it. Very neere vnto this there is also another River called Ozone, which issueth out of the same Lake, whence Nolm likewise springeth, and it hath a Hauen. Next to Ozone, there is another called Loze, without any Hauen : and then another great one with a Hauen called Ambriz, which runneth within foure leagues neere to the Royall Citie of Congo. Last of all, is the River Lelunda, which fignifietha Trowt fish, and watereth the roots of that great Hill, whereon the Palace of Congo Standeth, 60 called by the Portugals, the Oteiro. This River Lelunda, fpringeth out of the fame Lake, from whence Come aillueth, and taketh into it by the way another River, that commeth from the great Lake : and when it doth not raine, then you may passe ouer Lelanda on foot, because it hath fo little ftore of water in it.

Next youto this is the Zaire, a huge River and a large, and indeed the greatest in all the King. The River dome of Congo. The original of this River commeth out of three Lakes : one is the great Lake Zare from whence Nilss ipringeth; the second, is the little Lake about mentioned; and the third, is the second great Lake which Nilss engendreth. And certainly, when you will consider the ahundance of water that is in this Riner, you will fay, that there was no need to have any fewer or leffer forings to make so huge a streame as this carrieth. For in the very mouth of it, which is the one'ventrance into it, the River is eight and twentie miles broad, and when it is in the Huge breadth height of his increase he runneth fresh water fortie or fiftie miles into the Sea, and sometimes eightie, so that the passengers doe refresh themselves withall, and by the troublesomenesse of the to water they know the place where they are. It is nauigable vpwards with great Birkes about fire and twentie miles, vntill you come to a certaine straight betweene the Rockes, where it falleth with such a horrible noyle, that it may be heard almost eight miles. And this place is Carrette called by the Portugals, Cachninera, that is to fay, a Fall, or a Cataract, like to the Cataracts of Nilm. Betweene the mouth of this River, and the fall thereof, there are divers great Hands Certaine L well inhabited, with Townes, and Lords obedient to the King of Congo, which for times for the land

CHAP.4. S.2. Water falls or Cataracts, Water-borles. Fishes Royall

out of a stocke of a tree, which is of an vnmeasurable bignesse, and these Boats they call Lange, Boats. The greatest Boates that they have, are made of a certaine tree, called Licondo, which is to The tree Ligreat, that fixe men cannot compaffe it with their armes, and is in length of proportion answerable to the thicknesse, so that one of them will carrie about two hundred persons. They row 20 thefe Boates with their Oares, which are not tyed to any loopes, but they hold them at liberty in their hands, and moue the water therewith at pleasure. Every man hath his Oare and his Bow, and when they fight together they lay downe their Oare and take their Bow. Neither do they vie any other Rudders to turne and gouerne their Boats, but onely their Oares.

The first of these Hands, which is but a little one, is called, the He of Horses, because there The He of are bred and brought vp in it great store of those creatures that the Greekes call Hippopotami, that Horses. is to fay. Water-horfes. In a certaine Village within this Iland doe the Portugals dwell, having 30 withdrawne themselues thither for their better securitie. They have their Vessels to transport them over the water to the firme Land, vpon the South banke of the River, which Land is cal-

them oper the water to the man water, power many hips doe ride that arrive therein.

The Hauen led the Hauen of Pudd, where many hips doe ride that arrive therein.

In this River there are living divers kinds of creatures, and namely mightie great Crocodiles, Crecodiles. which the Countrey people there, call Caiman, and Water-horses about named: And another Water-horses kind of creature, that hath (as it were) two hands, and a tayle like a Target , which is called, Ambize Angulo, that is to fay, a Hog-fish, because it is as fat as a Porke. The flesh of it is very Hog-fish, good, and thereof they make Lard, and fo keepe it meither hath it the fauour or tafte of a fift, alchough it be a fift. It never goeth out from the fresh water, but feedeth vpon the graffe that groweth on the bankes, and hath a mouth like the muzzell of an Oxe. There are of these fishes. 40 that weigh fine hundred pounds apiece.

The fishermen vie to take them in their little Boats, by marking the places where they feed, and then with their hookes and forkes, striking and wounding them, they draw them dead forth of the water : and when they have cut them in pieces, they carrie them to the King. For whofocuer doth not fo, incurreth the penaltic of death', and fo doe they likewife that take the Trowt, and the Tench, and another fish called Cacongo, which is shaped after the likenesse of a Salmon, fauing that it is not red : but indeed so fat it is, that it quencheth out the fire whiles it is rofted or broyled. Other fishes also there are that are called Fishes Royall, which are carried Fishes Royall, to the King, vpon very seuere and rigorous punishments.

Beyond this River of Congo, there commeth downe another River, which the Portugals call, Cassage, 2 fifth Deyond this Almed of Congr. La Baia de las Almadias, that is to fay, the Gulfe of Barkes, because there are great store of them, La Baia de las 30 that are made there, by reason of the abundance of Woods and Trees that grow thereabours, Almadian which are fit for that vie, and wherewith all the Countries round about doe furnish themselves. At the mouth of this Bay there are three Hands, one great He in the middle of the Channell, which maketh a convenient Hauen for small Vessels, and two other lesse, but none of them in

A little higher runneth another streame, not very great, which is called, De las Barreras Rossa. The increde last of the red Clay-pits, because it showesh from among certaine Rockes of Hils, whose Earth is arrival vindred with a red colour-where all othere is a very high Momentaine, called by the Degreest. dyed with a red colour: where also there is a very high Mountaine, called by the Portugals, La Surra Complida, that is to fay, the long Mountaine.

And yet going up a little further, there are two Gulfes of the Sea in the likenesse of a paire 60 of Speciacles, wherein is a good Hauen, called La Baia d'Aluaro Gonzales, that is, The Gulfe Baia d'Aluaro of Aluxo Gonzales. Beyond all these, are certaine hils and shoares, not worth the remem-Gonzales. brance, vntill you come to the Promontorie, that is called by the Portugals, Capo de Ca- copa de Cateserina, which is the border of the Kingdome of Congo towards the Equinoctiall, and is diffiant rime. from the Equinoctiall Line two degrees and a halfe, which is one hundred and fittie Italian

great entraitie that is among them, doe warre one against another in certaine Boats, hollowed

The Hauen of

992 The Northern Canto.

Now from Cape De Caterina on the North fide, beginneth another Border or Coast of the Kingdome of Congo, which Eastward stretcheth it selfe to the place where the River Vinne joyneth with the River Zaire, contayning the space of fixe hundred miles and more. Bevond this Coast of Congo towards the North, and vnder the Equinoctiall Line vpon the Sea shoare. and about two hundred miles within Land, (comprehending in that reckoning the aforefaid Gulfe of Lope Ganzales) the People called the Bramas doe inhabite in a Countrey, that is now The Kingdom called the King Jome of Loange; and the King thereof, Mani Loange, that is to fay, The King of Loange. The Countrey hath great abundance of Elephants, whole teeth they exchange for Iron, whereof they make their Arrow heads, their Kniues, and fuch other inftruments. In this Countrie alfo, they weare certaine Cloth of the leaves of Palme-trees, in fundrie forts: as we for

shall tell you in some other place of this narration. The King of Loange is in amitie with the King of Congo, and the report is, that in times past Longo circum- he was his vaffall. The People are circumcifed after the manner of the Hobrens, like as also the rest of the Nations in those Countries vie to be

The Countrie

Beyond the Kingdome of Loange, are the People called Anzigues, of whom wee shall deliver vnto you a historie, which in trueth is very strange, and almost incredible, for the beastly and cruell custome that they wie in eating mans flesh; yea, and that of the neerest kinf-folkes they haue. This Country towards the Sea on the West, bordereth vpon the People of Ambin ; and towards the North, vpon other Nations of Africa, and the Wilderneffe of Nubia; and towards the East, upon the second great Lake, from whence the River of Congo springeth, in that Part 20 which is called Anzicana; and from the Kingdome of Congo, it is divided by the River Zaire, wherein there are many Ilands (as before is told you) scattered from the Lake downewards. and some of them belonging to the Dominion of the Anzigues, by which Riner also they doe traffique with the People of Congo. In this Kingdome of the Anzigues, there are many Mines of Copper; and great quantitie of Sanders, both red and grey: the red is called Tamilla, and the grey (which is the better effeemed) is called Chicongo, whereof they make a powder of a very iweet fmell, and divers medicines. They doe also mingle it with the Oyle of Palme-tree, and fo anounting all their bodies over withall, they preserve themselves in health. But the Portion sale vie it being tempered with Vinegar, which they lay vpon their pulses, and so heale the Medicines for French Poxe, which they call in that Language, Chitangua, Some doe affirme, that this grey 30 the French Sanders is the very Lignam Aquide, that groweth in India: and Signer Odosedo affirmed, back that the Persuada have proved it for the Thead-ache, by laying it on the coales, and taking the

Poxe. For the head-

Sandets.

smooke of it. The pith and innermost part of the Tree is the best, but the outter part is of no They make great store of Linnen of the Palme-tree, both of fundrie forts and colours, and much Cloth of Silke, whereof wee will discourse more hereafter. The People are subject to a King that hath other Princes wader him. They are very active and warlike. They are readient take Armes; and doe fight on foot. Their weapons are different from the weapons of all other

people round about them: for, their Bowes are small and short, made of wood, and wrapped about with Serpents skins of divers colours, and so smoothly wrought, that you would thinke 40 them to be all one with the wood : and this they doe, both to make the Bowe stronger, and also to hold it the faller. Their Strings are of little woodden twigs like reeds, not hollow within, but found and pliable, and very daintie; fuch as the Canalieres of Portugal doe earrie in their hands to beate their Palfreyes withall. They are of an afh-colour, and of a Lion-tawney, fomewhat rending to blacke. They grow in the Countrey of the Anzignes, and also in the Their Arrows, Kingdome of Bengala, through which the River Ganges runneth. Their Arrowes are short and flender, and of a very hard wood, and they carrie them on their Bow-hand. They are fo quicke

in shooting, that holding eight and twentie Shafts or more in their Bow-hand, they will shoot and discharge them all, before the first Arrow light on the ground: yea, and sometimes there have beene ferne divers front Archers, that have killed birds as they flie in the aire. Other weapons also they make, as Axes and Hatchets, which they vie and frame after a

firance manner: for, the handle is shorter by the halfe then the Iron is, and at the lowest end of it there is a pommell, for the fafter holding of it in the hand; and all coursed ouer with the forefaid skinne of a Serpent. In the vppermoft end of it, is the Iron very bright and shining, failned to the wood with plates of Copper, in the manner of two nailes, as long as the handle: is hath two edges, the one cutteth like a Hatchet , and maketh a wound after the falhion of an halfe roundell; the other is a Hammer. When they fight with their Enemies, or defend themfelues from their Arrowes, they are so exercised with a wonderfull speed and nimblenesse to manage their weapons, that whirling them round about, as it were in a circle, they keepe all that compasse of the ayre which is before them; so that when the Enemie shooteth, and the 60 Arrow beginne to fall, it lighteth vpon the Hatchet, being fo fwiftly and vehemently whirled about, that it breaketh the force of the Arrow, and fo it is repulsed: then doe they hang the Hatchet vpon their shoulder, and begin to shoot themselves. They have also certaine short Daggers, with sheaths of the Serpents skins, made like Kniues with an haft vnto them, which they

wie to weare acrosse. Their Girdles are of divers forts; but the Men of warre have their Girdles of Elephants skin, three good fingers broad : and because they are at the first two fingers thicke, and very hard to handle handlomely, by the hear of the fire they bow them round, and fo with certaine buttons tye them ouerthwart about them. The men are very active and nimble, and Thenarure of leape up and downe the Mountaines like Goats. Couragious they are and contemne death: the Angues. men of great simplicitie, loy rie, and fidelitie, and such as the Portugals doe trust more then V in elotious any other. In fo much as Signer Odo, and was wont to fay, that if these Anziehi would become madnesse. Christians (being of fo great fidelitie, finceritie, loyaltie, and fimplicitie, that they will offer themselues to death, for the glorie of the world, and to please their Lords will not sticke to give their owne field to bee denoured) then would they with a farte better heart and courage indure martyrdome, for the name of our Redeemer Isfas Chrift, and would most honourably maintaine our Faith and Religion, with their good testimonie, and example against the

Moreover, the faid Signor Odoardo did likewife affirme, that there was no converting with Their merthem, because they were a suage and beaftly people, fauing onely in respect that they come and chandile. traffique in Congo, bringing thicher with them Slaues, both of their owne Nation, and allo out of Nubia (whereupon they doe border) and linnen Cloth (whereof, we will tell you hereafter,) and Elephants teeth: in exchange of which chaffare they recarrie home with them, Sal-, and these Lumache, which they vie in flead of money and Coyne; and another greater kind of Lu-20 mache, which come from the lle of Saint Thomas, and which they vie to weare for Brooches to make themselves fine and gallant withall. Other Merchandises, also they carrie backe with them, which are brought out of Portugall, as Silkes, Linnen, and Glaffes, and fuch like, They vie Circumcifion, to circumcife themselves. And another foolish custome they have, both men and women, as Well The Amics of the Nobilitie, as of the Commonaltie, even from their childhood, to marke their faces with are circumcia fundrie flathes made with a knife, as in due place thall be further fliewed viito vou.

They keepe a Shambles of mans fieth as they doe in thele Countries for Beele and other vi- faces. Stuals. For their Enemies whom they take in the Warres , they eate ; and also their Slaves , if A thombeson they can have a good market for them, they fell: or if they cannot, then they deliner them to man fieth, the Butchers, to be cut in pieces, and to fold, to be rofted or boiled. And (that which a manuel-30 loughistorie to report) some of them being wearie of their lines, and some of them even for valour of courage, and to flew themselves stout and venturous, thinking it to bee a great honour wnto them, if they runne into voluntarie death, thereby to flew that they have a special con. Blind subietempt of this life, will offer themselves to the burcherle, as faithfull subjects to their Princes, thon, for whole fakes , that they may feeme defirous to doe them notable feruice, they doe not onely deliver themselves to bee devoured by them, but also their Slaves, when they are fat and well fed, they doe kill and eate them. True it is, that many Nations there are, that feed voon mans fleth, as in the East Endies, and in Brafill, and in other places: but that is onely the fleth of A ftrange their advertiries and enemies, but to eate the fielh of their owne friends, and lubicets, and kink folkes, it is without all example in any place of the World, fazing onely in this Nation of the 40 Anzichi.

The or linarie apparell of these people is thus: The common fort goe naked from the girdle Their Apparel vpwards, and without any thing vpon their heads, having their haire truffed vp, and certed. The Noblemen are apparelled in Silkes and other Cloth, and weare vpon their heads, blue and red, and blacke colours, and Hats and Hoods of Portugall Veluet, and other kinds of Caps vivall in that Countrie. And indeed, they are all delirous to have their apparell handfome and neat, as their abilitie will fuffer them. The women are all coursed from top to toe, after the manner of Africa. The poorer fort of them doe gird them felues clote from the girdle downewards. The Noble women and fuch as are of wealth, doe weare certaine Mantles, which they cast over their heads, but keene their faces open and at libertie : and Shooes they have on their feet, but the poore goe bare-foot. They goe very quicke and lightfome. Their stature is comely, and their conditions faire and commendable. Their Language is altogether different from the Language guage of Congo, and yet the Anxiels will learne the Language or Congo very foone and eafily. Suigebecause it is the plainer Tongue : but the People of Congo doe very hardly learne the Language of the Anzichi. And when I once demanded what their Religion was, it was told mee they were Gentiles, and that was all that I could learne of them.

The East Coast of the Kingdome of Congo, beginneth (as we have told you) at the meeting border of of the River Vumba, and the River of Zaire; and to with a line drawne towards the South in Congo. equall distance from the River Nilse, which lieth on the left hand, it taketh vp a great Mountaine which is very high, and not inhabited in the tops thereof, called the Mountaine of Cryfiall, fiall. 6: because there is in it great quantitie of Crystall, both of the Mountaine and of the Cliffe, and of The Mountaine all forts. And then pairing on farther, includeth the Hills that are called Sierras de Sol, that is to taines of the fay, the Hills of the Sunne, because they are exceeding high. And yet it never fnoweth voon The Mounthem, neither doe they beare any thing, but are very bare and without any trees at all. On the taines of Salleft hand there arise other Hills, called the Hills of Sal-Nitrum, because there is in them great Nitrum.

Led in their

The Eaftern

flore of that Moserall. And so cutting over the River Berbela, that commeth out of the fire Lake, there endeth the ancient bound of the Kingdome of Congo on the East.

Thus then the East Coast of this Kingdome is derived from the meeting of the two forefaid Rivers. Vumba and Zarre; vntill you come to the lake Achelunda, and to the Countrie of Malemba; contayning the space of fixe hundred miles. From this line which is drawne in the Easterne Coalt of Congo to the River Nilus, and to the two Lakes (whereof mention shall be made in convenient place) there is the space of one hundred and fiftie miles of ground well inhabited, and good ftore of Hills , which doe yeeld fundrie Metals , with much Linnen, and Cloth of the Palme tree.

The Arre of

And seeing wee are now come to this point of this discourse, it will be very necessarie to demaking sinces, clare vinto you the maruellous Arte which the people of this Countrie, and other places thereabouts doe vie in making Clothes of fundrie forts, as Veluets shorne and vnshorne. Cloth of Tiffue. Sattins, Taffata, Damaskes, Sarcenets, and fuch like, not of any filken Stuffe, (for they have no knowledge of the Silke-wormes at all, although some of their apparell bee made of Silke that is brought thither from our Countries.) But they weave their Clothes afore-named of the leanes of Palme-trees, which Trees they alwaies keepe under and low to the ground. every yeere cutting them, and watering them, to the end they may grow small and tender against the new Spring. Out of these leaves, being cleansed and purged after their manners. they draw forth their threeds, which are all very fine and daintie, and all of one evennesse, siuing that those which are longest, are best esteemed: for, of those they weame their greatest 20 pieces. These Stuffes they worke of divers fashions, as some with a nappe upon them like Veluet, on both fides, and other Cloth, called Damaskes, branched with leaves, and fuch other things; and the Broccat, which are called High and Low, and are farre more precious then ours are. This kind of Cloth no man may weare but the King, and such as it pleaseth him. The greatest pieces are of these Broccats: for they contains in length fours or five spans; and in breadth, three or foure spannes, and are called Incorimbas, by the name of the Countrey where it groweth, which is about the River Pumba. The Veluets are called Enfactors, of the fame bigneffe: and the Damaskes , Infulas; and the Rafi , Maricas; and the Zendadi , Tangas; and the Ormefini. Encombos. Of the lighter fort of these Stuffes they have greater pieces, which are wrought by the Anzichi; and are fixe spannes long, and five spannes broad, wherewith every man may apparell himselfe according to his abilitie. Besides that, they are very thicke and found to keep 30 out the water, and yet very light to weare. The Portugals have lately begun to vie them for Tents and Boothes, which doe maniellously result both water and wind.

The Southerne Coaft.
The Moungaine of Siluer.

This Eafterne Coaft (as it is before fet downe) endeth in the mountaine, called Serras de Plata, that is, the Mountaines of Silver; and there beginneth the fourth and last border of the Kingdome of Congo, towards the South, that is to fay, from the forefaid Mountaine to the Bay of Cowes on the West containing in length the space of source hundred and fiftie miles. And this Southerne Line doth part the Kingdome of Augola in the middle, and leaneth on the left hand of it, the forefaid Mountaines of Silver; and farther beyond them towards the South, the Kingdome of Marama; which is a great Kingdome, very mightie, and absolute of it selfe, and fometimes in amitie, and fometimes at vtter enmitie with the Kingdome of Angola,

The King of

The King of Matama is in Religion a Gentile, and his Kingdome firetcheth towards the South to the River Branagal, and neere to the Mountaines, commonly called the Mountaines of the Moone; and towards the East bordereth on the Westerne bankes of the River Bagamidri, and fo crosseth over the River Coari.

This Countrie aboundeth in Vaults of Crystall and other Metals, and all manner of victuall, and good aire. And although the people thereof, and their neighbour borderers doe traffique together : Yet the King of Matama, and the King of Angola, doe oftentimes warre one against the other, as we told you before : And this River Bagamidri divideth the Kingdome of Matana from the Kingdome of Monomata, which is towards the East, and whereof lohn de Barros doth most largely discourse, in the first Chapter of his tenth Booke.

Of Angola, the Warres betwixt Congo and Angola: their manner of warfare. The present Kingdome of Congo bounded. Of Bamba, one of the fixe Princes of Congo, and the Creatures therein.

Owards the Sea-coast there are divers Lords that take vpon them the Title of Kings: 60 but indeed they are of very base and slender estate : Neither are there any Ports or Hauens of any account or name in the Rivers there. And now, for a much as we have oftentimes made mention of the Kingdome of Angola, this will bee a very conmenient place for vs to intreat thereof; because it hath beene heretofore said, that the King of

Angola, being in times past but a Gouernour or Deputie vader the King of Congo; although, The King of fince that time he is become a Christian, he made himselfe a free and an absolute Prince, and v. Angola freeth funce that time he is second in the first time he is second in regiment and govern-funced all that Quarter to his owne Iurisdiction, which before he had in regiment and govern-funced to ment voider another. And to afterwards in time conquered other Countries thereabouts; info-the King of much, as he is now growne to be a great Prince, and a rich, and in power little inferiour to the Congo, fince much, as he is now growing to the agreement tribute, or refuseth to pay tribute vinto him, the Faith. euen at his owne good pleature.

euch at his owne good pleature.

It came to paffe, that Don Giouanni the Second, being King of Portugall, planted the Christian tom the SeReligiam in the Kinedome of Congo; and the range on the King of Congo became a Christian. After cond, King of
to which time the Lord of Angola was atmace in amilie, and (as it were) a Validatiof the forenamed King. Perugul, that
the control of the Congression of the Congr of Congo, and the People of both Countries did traffique together one with another, and the Lord of Stiantie into of Longo, sens the company onto the names when the regiment of the company of the long of S.Thomas, Whereby it came to paffe, that the traffique was here mited with the traffique of S.Thomas: so that the ships did vse first to arrive at that Iland, and then afterward passed over to Loanda. And when jo total trajulya dad vje jis ji sad silene to entreafe, they dispatched their shops from Lisbone to Angola of their trade began in processe of time to entreafe, they dispatched their shops from Lisbone to Angola of themselves, and sent with thom a Gonerwoor, called Paulo Diazof Novais, to whom this businesse did Paulo Diazitre (asi were) of right appartaine, ur regard of the good deferts of the Antifore, who first defensed finitificourter this treffique. To this Paulo Diaz, did Don Sebastiano King of Portugall grant lease and authori- Don Sebastiano King of Portugall grant lease and authori- on Sebastiano tie to conquer, for the space of three and thirtie leagues upwards along the Coast, beginning at the King of Portu-River Coanza towards the South, and within the Land alfo, what soener hee could get towards all his gall. charges for him and his beires. With him there went many other ships that opened and found out a great case yet; for time and a lie accret. I the accrete with interference with interference years and towns out a great trade mit is negles, which we would find mind you for each of the the foreign and the accrete foreign and find diffill difference beemfoliates. And by third and third be entred mu the firms Land, and made being fifty and when a certains of Plates, called Anzelle, within a mile server to the Kerre Courtza, be Pavio Diez. complete an owner of the more commodisses and nigher to the traffique of Angola. When the trade here began buildeth at thus to encrease, and merchandises were freely carried by the Portugals, and the People of Congo to "cole, in Angola." Cabazo, a place belonging to the Lord of Angola, and diftant from the Sea, one hundred and fiftie miles, The Author Cabazzo, a place beimging to the Lord of Mayoundoon anyone from two code, one neutron and fifthe miles. The Action of there is also there is to find the tree thorus, it founds be callet hims flaine, and their goods confiferated, allocking for the defrence, that they were come thinky as fixer, and to Lord, because the properties of the state of the mental that wealth to be him. It is a binder to the confirming that it was a Teople that that who dad it may be quarter, but after the manner that the meant is the confirming that it was a Teople that that we deale in the babtic of Warriers, but after the manner that the meant of Martin Mayount. And this life loom in the fame prever, that the King Don Schallian on was differentied.

and that with all prosperous successe he had gained much Land upon him , hee assembled a great Armie

where they doe encampe, and advancing their Ensignes and Banners in such fort as before is remembred.

the Drum, and the Captaines founds of the Trumpet.

in Rarbarie

When Paulo Diaz onderstood of this course, he put himselse in Armes against the King of Angola, Paulo Diez, in and with such a troupe of Portugals as he could gather together, that were to be found in that Countrie. Arms against and with two Gallies and other veffels, which he kept in the Riner Coanza, he went forward, on both sides of the River conquering, and by force subdued many Lords, and made them his Friends and Sub-40 wells. But the King of Angola perceining that his Vassals had yeelded to the obedience of Paulo Diaz.

to goe against him, and so otterly to destroy him. Whereupow Paulo Diaz requested the King of Congo, P.Diaz demanê that be would succour him with some beloe to defend himselfe withall, who presently sent unto him for ayde, an Armie of fixtie thousand men, under the conduct of his Consiss Don Sebastiano Mani-bamba, comes,

and another Captaine, with one hundred and twentie Portugall Souldiers, that were in those Countries, and all of his owne pay for the atchieums of this enterprise. This Armse was to some with Paulo Diaz. and so altogether to warre against the King of Angola: but arrising at the scoare, where they were to passe ouer the Riner Bengo, within twelne miles of Loanda, and where they should have meet with many Barkes to carrie the Campe to the other (boare, part) because the said Barkes had slacked their comming, and partly because much time would have beene spent in transporting so many men, the whole

50 Armie tooke their was quite ouer the Ruser, and so going on forwards, they met with the People of the King of Angola, that were readic to stop the Souldiers of Congo from entring upon their Countrie. The militarie order of the Mociconghi (for by that terme wee doe call the naturall borne People of The militarie the Kingdome of Congo, as we call the Spaniards, those that are naturally horne in Spaine) and the People of militaric order of the People of Angola, is almost all one: for both of them doe viually fight on foot, and druide their Armic into feuerall troupes, fitting themfolues according to the fituation of the Field

The remones of their Armie are quided and directed by certaine senerall sounds and noyses, that proceed from the Captaine Generall, who goeth into the middest of the Armie and there significth what is to diers doe va-60 be put in execution ; that is to fay, either that they shall some battell, or else retire, or put on forward, or deritand the turne to the right hand, and to the left hand, or to performe any other warlike action. For by these sene- pleasure of ral founds destinctly delinered from one to another, they doe all understand the commandements of their their Generall, Captaine, as we here among us doe understand the pleasure of our Generall by the sundrie stroakes of

996.

Three kinds of

Thevicof

chefe Inftrue

Three principall founds they have which they of in Warre: One which is ottered aloud, by great Rattles, fastned in certaine Wooden Cases, bollowed out of a tree, and conered with Leather, which then frike with certaine little handles of Inory. Another is made by a certaine kind of Instrument, fallion ned like a Pyramis turned upward: for the lower end of it is sharpe, and endeth as it were in a point. and the opper end waxeth broader and broader, like the bottome of a Triangle, in such fort, that beneath they are narrow and like an Angle, and about they are large and wide. This Instrument is made of certaine thinne plates of Iron, which are hollow and emptie within, and very like to a Bell turned up-fide-downe. They make them ring, by firsking them with woodden wands: and oftentimes they doe also cracke them, to the end that the sound should be more harsh, horrible, and warlike: The third Inmy or ance corm, to see the firment is framed of Elephants seeth, some great, and some small, boston within, and blowen at a ro-certaine bole which they make on the side of it, in manner of the Fife, and not aloft like the Pipe. These are tempered by them in such fort, that they yeeld as warlike and harmonious Musicke, as the Cornet doth, and so pleasant and iocoud a noyse, that it mooneth and stirreth up their courages, and maketh them not to care for any danger what some . Now of these three severall sorts of warlike Infruments, there are some bigger, and some lesse. For the Captaine Generall carrieth almaies with him the greater fort, to the end that by them he may gine signification to the whole Campe what they shall doe. The particular bands and troupes of the Armie bane in live manner their smaller fort, and enery Captaine in his severall Regiment hash also one of the smallest, which they strike with their hands. Whereupon it falleth out, that when they beare the found of the generall Rattle, or Cornet. panas. Processing and of Instrument, every part of the Army doth presently answere in the same 20 we come time some of interments, every party the variety and prejently adjusted in the fame ones, if unifying thereby, that they have well workful code by each placeful or the Capatine, and is confiquently the under Capatines doe to him. Neither doe they onely uf the fe Instruments and found unimerfally, but also when they are in sight and in the mult, the valuant and contragious Souldier; go bu-fore the rest, and with this kind of bells, which they strike such their woodden wands, they dance, and encourage then fellowes, and by the note doe fignific unto them in what danger they are, and what weapons they bane met withall.

The Military apparell of the better fort, and of the Lords of the Moci-Conghi, is this. On their apparell of the beads they carry a Cap, which is garnified with fundry Plumes of the feathers of the Estridge, of the Peacocke, of the Cocke, and of other kinds of Birds, which make them to feame men of greater flature then they are, and terrible to looke upon. From the girdle upwards they are all naked, and have banging about 30 them from their necks, both on the right fide and on the left, even as low as to both their flankes, certains chaines of Iron, with Kings upon them as trigge as a man, little fuger, which they Use in a certaine mi-litarie pempe and brauery. From, the girdle downs mards they have breeches of Linnen, or Sendals, which are concred with Cloath, and reach downe to their beeles, but then they are folded againe upwards, and tucked under their girdle. Upon their girdle, which (as we told you) is made with exquifice and curious worke, they doe fasten certaine bells, very like to the instruments that are before named, which is mooning of themselves, and in sighting with their enemies, doe ving and make a worse, and addecourage unto them, while they are in combate with their adversaries. Upon their legges they have Their wempons the wife their Buckins, after the Portugall fashian. Their Armour we have already declared, that is to fay ; Bow and Arrowes, Sword, Dagger and Target : but yet with this causes, that who focuer wearst to a Bow, he weareeh alfo a Dagger, but no Target : for thole two weapons may not be worne together. but Sword and Target they may lawfully weare both at once

The common Souldiers goe all nated from the girdle-stead upwards, and have the rest of their baapparellof the dies armed with Bow and Arrowes, and Daggers. These are they that doe first offer the shormish, goaux arman mun Down and Mary, as it were [currally and disperfedly prousing to fight, and receiving out before the reif of the Army, as it were [currally and disperfedly prousing to fight, and receiving the flow from a farre off, they turne and winds this way and thus way, and doe nimbly leape from one fide to another, to the end they may anoyd the lighting of their enemies Arrowes. Befides thefe, there are also certaine quicke and gallant young men, that runne out before the rest, which with the ringine of their bells (as before is said) are as it were comforters of their fellowes, and when they have fourth much, that the Captaine thinketh them to be even weary, then doth be call them backe with the found of 10 one of those instruments above mentioned: fo that perceiving the medley to wax hot, they turn about and retre themselves backe againe, and others succeede in their places, which course is still observed and kept untill such time, as both the Armies doe undeed toyne all their maine forces together, and so sight it out. In the place abone described, there were sundry encounters on the one side, and on the other. And

in the first battailes the people of Congo remained Conquerors: but afterward, when they had divers simes fought together with great loffe on both sides, and victuals began now to faste, and consequently

men waxed sicke and died, the Campe of the King of Congo was dissolved, and every man returned to

The Iffue of

P. Diaz at

In this meane while Paulo Diaz, though be could not some his forces with the Armyof his friends that came to succour him, yet set himselfe forwards, and passing over the River stayed at Luiola, be- 60 cause it was a place very strong, and fit to resist the King of Angola. The situation of Luiola is this: The two Rivers, Coanza and Luiola doe some together about one bundred and fine miles from the Sea shore, and a little about the said joyning, these Rivers doe sever themselves, for the space of an Harquebusse shot, so that they make as it were an Iland betweene them. In which Iland, at the meeting of the two Rivers shere rifeth a bill, which Paulo Diaz furprized and fortified for his better lafetie. And whereas in time spait, there was never any habitation there, now at this prefent it is growne to be a prety Countrey inhabited by the Portugals.

From this place times furprized by Randa Diaz, and called Luiola, you may faile along the Riner with certaine small vesicle, even to the Sea, and goe by land without any danger for the fpace of one hundred and fine miles. Neere thereunto are the hills, that are called the hills of The hills Cabambe producing intinite flore of Silver : which the faid Diaz doth every day by little and little endenour to conquer. And there his are the grand quarrell betweene him and the people of Angolu. For knowing that the Portugals doe effective greatly of these hills . in regard of the 10 Silver pits which are there in great abundance; they doe vie all the force and skill they can to keepe the Portugals from them. They fight also with them in diners other places: for the Portugale passing over the Kurr Casans, who continually make in-roades into the Countries that are

inbied to the King of Ameda,

The weapons of the repoples, are Bowes fixe handfull long, with strings made of the barks The weapons of Trees, Arrowes of Wood, lefte then a mans little finger, and fixe handfuls long. They have of the people Iron heads, made like a booke, and feathers of Birds in the tops of them : and of thefe Arrowes of . age. they vie to carry to the number of fixe or fruen vpon their Bow hand, without any Quiuer at all. Their Daggers are fashioned with a haft after the manner of a Knife, which they weare at their girdle, on their left fide, and hold them aloft in their hands, when they fight with them?

20 By their Militarie actions and proceedings, you may observe their great skill and good order in Their militarie matter of warre. For in divers batalles that were betweene them and the Portugals, it was plaintly feene how they could chufe their advantages against their enemies, asby affaulting them in the night cime, and in rainy weather, to the end that their Harquebuffes and Gunnes thould not take fire a and also by dividing their forces into many troopes, to trouble them the more. The King doth not vie to gooto the warre in his owne perion, but fendeth his Captaines in his flead. The people are also accustomed to flye and runne away incontinently, as foone as they lee their Captaine flaine, neither can they be perswaded to flay by any reason or argument, but prefently yeeld up the field. They are all Foot-men, heither have they any Horfes at all : and therefore the Captaines; if they will not goe on foote, cause themselves to bee 30 carried on the shoulders of their Sianes, after one of the three manners, which we will shew vin

This Nation goeth out to warre, in number almost infinite, and very confusedly : they leave Rudenesse of no man at home that is fit to carry a weapon : they make no preparation of victuals necessarie art military, for the Campe: but fuch as perhaps have any, convey it with them vpon the shoulders of their of and for foul-Seruants, and yet they have fundry forts of creatures that might bee managed, and ferue their diers. turnes to draw, and to carry, as in the fecond part of this Treatife shall be described vnto you.

And thersupon it falleth out, that when they come into any Countrey with their whole Army, a. I their food is quickly quite confumed, and then having nothing left to feed upon, they diffolue their heaft even in the greatest necessitie of profecuting their enterprise, and so are inforced by 40 hunger to returne into their owne Countries.

They are greatly given to Dismation by Birds : If a Bird chance to flye on their left hand, or cry in They are gial fuch manner, as those which make profession to understand the same, do say, that is fore-showeth ill sucke to dimination and adversity, or that they may go no further forwards, they will presently turne backe and repaire home:

by Birds. which custome was also in the old time observed by the ancient Romans, and likewise at this day by sun-

Now if it shall feeme strange to any man, that so few Portugall Souldiers, as Paulo Diaz retain Why so small s Now if a local ferme prompt to any mone, roase so year vertical communers, on exame Lite return that there with hum, and after of the Portugal II Nation, which Traffice into the Realme, and refere the Powlo him, and him mith faccours, being in number hus three hundred at the most, accounting their Stanes, and adjo the with him, was Male-contents, the Rebels and Fuguines of Angola, which daily refort unto him, and amount not in able to refer to so all to the quantitie of fifteene thousand men, bould be able to make so gallent a resistance against that buge and range so innumerable rabble of Negroes, being subsect to the King of Angole, which are gathered there togged on the King of ther (as it is faid) to the number of a Million of Soules. I answere, that great reason may be allead. Angela. ged for the same. For the Armie of the Negroes is all naked, and otterly destinate of all provision and furniture for Armonr of defence: And as for their meapons of offence, they confist onely but of Bowes and Daggers (as I told you.) But our few Portugals that are there, are well lapped in certains lackets that are fluffed and basted with bombaste, and flitched and quilted very foundly, which keepe their Armes very safe, and their bodies downe wards as low as their knees : Their beads also are armed with cappes made of the same stuffe, which doe resist the shot of the Arrow, and the stroke of the Dagger: Besides that, they are get with long swords, and some Horsemen there are among them that carry 6c speares for their weapons. Now you must understand that one man on horse backe, it of more worth

then a hundred Negroes, because the Horsemen doe afright them greatly: and especially of those that doe discharge Gunnes and Peeces of Artillarie against them. , they doe stand continually in an extreame bodily feare. So that these few being well armed and cunningly and artificially ordered, must needs onercome the other, though they be very many in number. This Kingdome of Angola, is full of peo-

ties of Angola. A Dogge fold for two hunrie Duckets.

The Religion The language

The rest of the Kingdome of Angela descri-bed-

Cape Negro 1. The blacks

Monti Freddi. z. The cold Mountaines.

The Moun-

gaineth 3750

paffe, 1685.

In breadth 600, miles.

The kinedome ple beyond all credite: For every Man tabith as many Wines as he listeth, and fothey multiply infi-The kingdome ninely: But they doe not vie fo to do in the kingdome of Congo, which lineth after the manner of the

This Kingdome also is very rich in Mines of Silner, and most excellent Copper; and for other I bit. Singaime digit it very vice is a rimer if yourse, a mainer source in cupper; a may be show, think of Metall, there is more in bits lengthen them in may be the Country of its two ord which the Friendli it is in all mainer of feed, and flendry fort of Castell, and specially for great bearth of Kine. True it is, that this people doe love Dogges sligh batter them may other meases: and for that pumple they feed and fatter show, and then hill them and fell them in their grant should be it is a unit antly affirmed bear and fatter show, and then hill them and fell them in their grant should be it is a unit antly affirmed bear them. a great Dog accustomed to the Bull, was fold by exchange for two and twentie Stanes, which after the rate of ten Duckets a poll, were worth m all two hundred and inventie Duckets: in so high a price and acdred and twen- count doe they hold that Creature.

The Monyes that are vied in Angola, are much different from the Lumache of Congo : for they of ité Doceste. The Mayes tout are viga in Angous, ou e mone on personne de la Mayes de la Marcha del Marcha de la Marcha del Marcha de la Marcha del Marcha de la M onely to vie them for money, but also for an ornament of their men and women, to weare about their necks and their armes, and are called in their tongue Anzolos: but when they are threeded upon a firing like a paire of Beads, they call them Mizanga.

The King of Angola is by religion a Gentile, and worshippeth Idols, and so doe all the people in his Kingdome. It is true, that he hath greatly defired to become a Christian, after the example of the King of Congo. But because there hath not beene as yet any possibilitie to send Priests unto him, that might illuminate and instruct him, be remainesh fill in darknesse. The forefact Signor Odoardo sold mer, that in bis time the King of Angola sent an Ambassadour to the King of Congo, requesting that bee would fend him... some religious persons to informe him in the Christian Religion: but the King of Con-go had none there that he could share, and therefore could send him... none. At this day, both these Kings doe Trafficke together, and are in amitie one with another : the King of Angola having now cleared and discharged himselfe for the interies and slaughters that were committed upon those of Coppe.

and voon the Portugals at Gabazo. The language of the people of Angola is all one with the language of the people of Congo, because (as we told you before) they are both but one Kingdome. Onely the difference between them. is, as ommanly it is betweene two Nations that border one upon another.

We have fignified vnto you heretofore, that the Bay of Cowes doth divide the Kingdome of 10 Angels in the middest; and hitherto we have treated but of the one halfe thereof : Now wee will describe vnto you the second part of it, which lyeth from the faid Bay of Comes towards the South. From this Bay then, to the blacke Cape, called Cape Negro, by the Coast of the Ocean, they doe reckon two hundred and twenty miles, of fuch Countrey and foyle as the former is , and possessed by many Lords that are subject to the King of Angela. From Cape Negre there runneth a line towards the East, through the middest of the Mountaines, that are called, Monti Freddi, that is to fay, The cold Mountaines: which also in some certaine parts of them, that are higher then the rest towards the Equinoctiall, are tearmed by the Portugals, Monti Newofi, or Snowy Mountaines, and fo endeth at the rootes of other Mountaines, that are called the Mountaines of Crystall. (Out of these Snowy Mountaines doe spring the waters of the Lake Dumbes Zocche.) This forefaid line, from the Mountaine of Crystall, taines of Chri- draweth on-wards towards the North through the Mountaines of Silver, till you come to Melemba, where we told you the Kingdome of Congo was divided, and parted the River of Coari in the midft. And this is the Countrey possessed by the King of Angola, whereof I have no more to fay, then is already fer downe, neither of the qualities of his perion, nor of his Court. Beginning therefore at the River Course, and drawing towards the Equinocall three hun-

dred seuentie fine miles, you shall finde the River, that they call Las Barreas Vermellias, or the Redde Pits, which are indeed the ragged ruines of certaine Rockes worne by the Sea; and when they fall downe, doe thew themselves to bee of a red colour. From thence by a direct line you the North, that which the King possesset, is four hundred and fifty miles. And then the faid line dividing it felfe towards the South, paffeth by the hills of Crystall (not those that we told you before did belong to Angola, but others that are called by the same name) and so by the Mountaines of Salmire, traverling the River Verbela, at the roots of the Mountaines The South 360 of Silver, it endeth at the Lake Aquelunda, which is the space of five hundred miles. The fourth line runneth along the River Count, which issueth out of the faid Lake, and containeth three The kingdome hundred and fixtie miles. So that the whole Realme now possessed by Don Aluaro, the King of Congo con- of Congo is in compafie, one thousand fixe hundred eightie five miles. But the breadth thereof tainethin com- beginneth at the mouth of the River Zaire, where the point is, which in the Portugall speech is called. Padraon, and fo cutting the Kingdome of Congo in the middle, and croffing over the 60 Mountaines of the Sunne, and the Mountaines of Crystall, there it endeth, containing the space of fixe hundred miles, and within one hundred and fiftie miles, neere to the River Nilm. Very true it is indeed, that in ancient time the Predecessor of this Prince did raigne over many other Countries there-abouts, which in procedle of time they have loft : and although they bee

CHAP.4.S.2. The King of Congo his titles. His chiefe Nobles.

now in the gouernment of others, yet doe the Kings of Congo, retaine ftill to this day the titles The title of now in the government of chief, Jon Aluaro, King of Congo, and of Abundos, and of Mata- Rile of the ma, and of Quizama, and of Angola, and of Cacongo, and of the feuen Kingdomes of Congere King of Conte. Amolaza, and of the Pangelunges, and Lord of the River Zarre, and of the Anziques. and An-

ziquana, and of Loango. This Kingdome is duided into fixe Prouinces, that is to fay, Bamba, Songo, Sundi, Pango, The first Pro-Batta, and Pemba. The Province of Bamba, (which is the greatest and the richett) is go-ba, and the deperped by Don Sebastian Mani-Bamba, cousin to the King Don Aluaro last deceased, and it is fitriated you the Sea-coalt, from the River Ambrize, vitill you come to the River Coanza to- Schaffinchiele To wards the South. This Don Schaffian hath under his Dominion many Princes and Lords, and Gouemour of

the name, of the greatest of them are these, Don Autonio Mani-Bamba, who is Lieutenant and Bamba, and Brother to Don Sebastian, and Mani-Lamba another, and Mani-Danda, and Mani Bengo, and viderhim. Mani-Loanda, who is Gouernour of the Hand of Loanda, and Mani-Cormba, and Mani-Coanza, and Mani-Catzanzi. All these doe governe all the Sea-coast but within Land, for that part which belongeth to Angola, there are another people called the Ambundes, who dwelling on the borders of Angala, are lubiect to the laid Mani-Bamba, and they are thele, Angaza, Chingbengo, Motollo, Chabonda, and many others of bafer condition.

bengo, Motollo, Chabenda, and many others of batter conditions.

Note, that this word Mani, fignifieth a Prince or a Lord, and the reft of the word is the fignifieth.

name of the Countrey and Lordhip, where the Lord ruleth. As for example, Mani-Bamba The Configure fignifieth the Lord of the Countrey of Bamba, and Mani-Corimba, the Lord of the Countrey of or Bamba 20 Corimba, which is a part of Bamba, and so likewise of the rest. This Prouince of Bamba confi- The Country neth with Angola on the South, and vpon the East of it towards the Lake Achelunda, lyeth of Quirema. neth with Angota on the South, and you the Late of a Common-wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, who indeed lising at their ownelibertie, doe neither obey the King of Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, who indeed lising at their ownelibertie, doe neither obey the King of Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, who indeed lising at their ownelibertie, doe neither obey the King of Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, who indeed lising at their ownelibertie, doe neither obey the King of Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, who indeed lising at their ownelibertie, doe neither obey the King of Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, which is governed like a Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, which is governed like a Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, which is governed like a Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, which is governed like a Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, which is governed like a Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, which is governed like a Common wealth, and is disulted among a number of Lords, which is governed the like a number of Lords, which is governed to the like a number of Lords, which is governed to the like a number of like go, nor the King of Angola.

And tobe flort, these Lords of Quitama, after they had a long time quarrelled with Paulo Bamba yeeld-Diaz, yet at last they became his subjects, because they would anoyd the yoke of the King of chioraneed 30 Angola, and by their good aid and affiltance, doth Paulo Diez greatly helpe himselfe against the foods. men fad King of Angola.

Now, the aforefaid Countrey of Bamba, (as we have told you) is the principal Province of cipil Cine of all the Realme of Congo, and indeed the very Key, and the Buckler and the Sword, and the de- Bamba fence thereof, and (as it were) the frontier which opposeth it selfe against all their Enemies. For Mines of filter it refifteth all the revolts and rebeliions of those quarters, and hath very valorous people in it, that are alwayes readie for to fight, so that they doe continually keepe their Adueriaries of An- Incredible gold in great awe : and if it happen at any time that their King stand in need, they are alwayes numbers of at his command to annoy the other Countries whenfoeuer. When need requireth, he may have flaues yearely in Campe foure hundred thousand men of Warre, and yet that number is but onely the fixt part fold to the Per-40 of the whole Kingdome, though indeed it be the better part and the fironger. The principall One MT. Ter.

Citie of this Prounce lyoth in the Plaine which is betweene the River Loze and Ambrize, and ne which fined is called Panza (which is a common name for every Towne.) There dwelleth the Lord of there, told me the Prouince, and it is distant from the Sea one hundred miles. In this Signorie also doe the hils of 10000, states begin, where the Mines of filuer and other metals are found, and so firetch out towards the Kingdome of Angola. It is very rich, for vpon the Coast of the Sea there, they have great yearely can flore of the Lumache, which are vied for moneyes over all the Kingdome of Congo : Befides, yeeld, and that there is also a greater Trafficke and Market for flaues, that are brought out of Angola, then in any one Portugally had in Brafill had in Brafill had place else. For there are yearely bought by the Portugals aboue fine thousand head of Negroes, in Braji which afterwards they conneigh away with them, and fo fell them into diners parts of the World.

The people of this Prouince, are in Armer the most valiant of all the Kingdome of Congo. They goe armed like the Slawonians, with long and large Swords, that are brought them out of Portugall. There are among them very mightie men, that will cleaue a flaue in the middeft at one blow. and cut off the head of a Bull at one stroke with one of those Swords. And (that which is more, and will peraduenture seeme incredible) one of these valiant men did beare your his arme a certaine Veffell of Wine, which was the fourth part of a Butte, and might weigh about three hundred twentie fine pound, vntill it was cleane emptied. Moreover, they doe carrie Bow and Arrowes, whereat they are very quicke and nimble, and withall their long Targets made of the Dants skinne, whereof wee told you before, when wee made mention of the Certaine crea-

60 Anzichi. The creatures that are found in this Prouince, are first the Elephants, which do breed over all Elephants. the Kingdome of Congo, but principally in the Countrey of Bamba, because it aboundeth in An Elephants Woods, in pastures and in waters.

Signor Odoardo told mee, that hee had oftentimes taken the measure of an Elephants foot in The Elephant the duft, and one of them was in plaine Diameter foure spannes broad. But in thele quarters they liveth 150. fay that the Elephants doe line one hundred and fiftie yeares, and that vutil the middle of their years.

tures in Bamba

An Elephants waight,

age they continue full in growing. And to confirme this truth he added, that hee had frene and weighed divers of their Teeth (which are not of horne, as fome thinke) and their waightamounted to two hundred pounds spiece, after the rate of twelue ounces to every pound. In the Language of Congo, the Elephants Tooth is called Mene-Manzao, that is to fay, The Tooth of an Elephant.

Their Eares are greater then the greatest Targets that the Tinkes vie to weare, in length five fpannes, in thape like an Egge, and towards their floulders they grow to be narrower and tharper. With their Bares, and with their Trunke, and with their Tayle, they beat away the Flies

Certain haires

They have in their Tayle, certaine haires or briftles as bigge as Rushes or Broome-sprigs, of a 10 thining blacke colour. The older they be, the fairer and ftronger they bee, and of great prices.

in the Elephants tayle. very precious, mong them. M. Ieb/on gaue me one of thefe tayles with fuch blacke frong haires.

And for the cause lately rehearsed, many there are, which wayting for the Elephants, when they afcend fome fleepe and narrow way, doe come behind them, and with very fharpe Kninge cut off their Tayles: the poore beaft being not able in those firaites to turne backe to regenge it felte, nor with his Trunke to reach his Enemie. And this they doe, onely to have those haires. which they fell for two or three flaues a piece. Other light and couragious persons there are, that truffing much to their fwiftnesse in running, doe Ive in a waite, and let your the woore beailts behind, whiles they are in feeding, and at one blow attempt to cut off their Tayles, and io endenour to faue themselves by running away in a round. For the greatnesse of the beast is such, as out-right it is very swift, because it maketh very large strides, though indeed but slow, and in the plaine is farre quicker then any luftie Horfe; but in turning round it loleth much time, and

fo the Huntiman elcapeth in fafetie.

In their feeding, they yie to shake and root up the great Trees with the force of their should ders, and firength of their whole backes : But the smaller Frees they take betweene both their Teeth , and to bow them and plucke them downe , that they may feede vpon the leaues of them : infomucl, as sometimes they breake one of their Teeth with so doing. And this is the carfe why you shall find divers of them in the fields that have lost their Teeth. They chave knees is a fable their meate with their short Teeth, which are not seene as their two long Tuskes are : and they carrie it to their mouth by their long Snout, or Trunke, which is to them in flead of an arme to and a hand. The tip of their Trunke istalhioned and divided into little flits, and (as it were) fingers, wherewith they will take vo very finall things, as Nuts, and Strawes, and Berries,

and to reach them to their mouth, as I, Philippo Pigajetta have feene my felfe at Lison.

The Females of these Creatures, doe beare their trood in their wombe for the space of two yeares and no more : And for as much as the yong Elephant cannot fo quickly he brought vp. (for it groweth very flowly) the Milke is kept from it, and fo it waxeth apt to feed of it felfe. And therefore Mother Nature hath projided that the Elephants are not great with young, but from fenen yeares to feuen yeares.

The Elephants skinne. The manner of taking the Elephants.

Their skinne is hard beyond all credit. For being foure fingers thicke, it cannot be pierced no not with the shot of an Hard sebusse. The recule of that Countrey have not the skill to tame these beasts. Whereby they might 40

reape great commeditie and profit, for carrying their stuffe from place to place for dieers other good vies. But yet they take them; by digging certaine deepe Trenches in the places, where they vie to passure, which Trenches are very narrow at the bottome, and broad aboue, to the end the beait may not helpe himfelfe, and leape out when hee is fallen into them. Thefe Trenches they couer with Soldes of Earth, and Graffe, and leaves, because the braft should not see their traine, but passing over them remayne there entrenched. Whereupon the Gentlemanbeforenamed told me, that he had feene with his owne eyes a very flrange and admirable thing in Coanza; namely, that a young Elephant following his Damme, fell downe by chance into one 50 of their Pits, and after that the could not with all her skill and ftrength draw him out of it, the buried him therein, and coursed him with Earth, with branches and with boughes, infomuch as she filled the pit up to the top, to the end that the Hunters should not enjoy her Calfe, choosing rather to kill it her felfe, then to leave it to the mercie of the cruell Huntimen. This louing and kind Mother, not fearing the people (that flood round about her, and shouted against her, and threatned her with fundry weapons, and vetered strange clamours and noyses to affray her, and

found that it was not possible for her to atchieue what shee defired, then she couered it in manner as we have told you. The Elephant is a very gentle beaft, and trusteth greatly in his naturall strength. Hee feareth 60 the Elephant nothing, nor hurteth any man that doth not trouble him : and haunteth neere to mens houses, without doing any harme at all. If hee efpie men that goe in his walke, hee will not medile

cast many fires at her) but affuring her felfe in her owne strong and valiant nature, did labour and

toyle from morning till night, that the might draw her Calte out of the pit : and when thee

with them, vileffe they feeke to moleft him : faving that forectimes peraduenture he will gently with his Snout, hoyfe them vpwards into the Ayre, whom hee meeteth withall in his way, and that is all the hurt he will doe wato them. These Elephants doe greatly delight in waters. For Sienor Odoardo affirmed, that ihrebe way betweene Cazanza and Lounda, in a little graffie Vailey he had feene about one hundred of them in a company, old and young that followed their Dammes : they vie to goe together in Heards, as Kine, and Camels, and other fuch like gentle Creatures doe, and not alone like Lions and other fich wild beafts.

CHAP.4.S. 2. Elephantson great Herds. Lione, Tame Typres.

There are brought into the Countries of the idesciebt, some of the Hornes that grow voon the note of the Rhinoceros, that are both of great value and estimation, and also vied for the

There are in the Region of the Anziebi, Lions also like the Lions that breed in other parts of Lions 10 the World, but they doe not vie to haunt the Region of Bamba : But in Bamba there are verie great flore of Tygres, which are of iche very fame flaspethat those in Florence are, which signer Odwards (aw there, and bestified to be very Tygres indeed. They will not set vpon any men that Tygres, are white, but onely such as are blacke : And it hath beene found, that when the white and the blacke have flept together in the hight-time, they have flame the black to devoure them, and

When they are hungry, they will be so bold as to fetch Cattle, even out of the yards that are about the houses without any feare at all, when they cannot find any victuals abroad in the fields. They are very dangerous and hurtfull to all kinds of Creatures whatfocuer they bee, and

in that Language they are called, Engai.

They are as fierce and cruell beafts as the Lion, and roare as the Lion doth. They are also altogether like the Lion, fauing onely in the colour of their haire; for the Tygre is spotted, but the Lionall of one colour. They vie to take and kill thefe Tygres after divers manners. For befides that, which hath beene before spoken, they poyson them with Sublimate, or some other of raking the venome, mingled with fiesh which is laid for them. Or else they tye young Goates at certaine tame Tygres, Lines made like snares, and fastned about the stocke of a Tree, so that when the beast commeth to her prey, the Engine openeth it felfs; and the more the beaft firmeth withall, the more it is intangled, and so at last is hanged cherein.

Signer Odoardo told me, that he had gotten one of them, that was lifteene dayes old, and liee A same Tygre. brought it vp with Goats Milke : which being afterwards growne bigger would follow him 30 like a Dogge : and although it were tame, yet it would not willingly fuffer any other to touch it belides his Mafter. He would also roare mightily, and when he was angry, his eyes would looke very terribly and fearefully. But in processe of time this Tygge killed a Dogge , belonging to the house, and also a Zebra, that were very deare to their Master, and thereupon, percei-uing how perillous a beast it was, he sue it with an Harquebusseshot.. Hee reported, moreouer; that the Mostacchios of the Tygre are held in that Region to be mortall Poylon : for being gla uen in meates, it procureth a man to die, as it were in a matheffe: And therefore the King doth punish all those that bring him a Tygres skin without the Mostacchios.

There breedeth like wife in this Country another Creature, which they call a Zebra, commonly found also in certaine Protinces of Barbary and Africa, which although it be altogether The Zeita. 40 made like a great Mule, yet is not a Mule indeed, for it beareth young ones. It hath a most singular skin, and peculiar from all other Creatures. For from the ridge of the chin downe towards the belly, it is straked with rowes of three colours, blacke, white, and browne Bay, about the breadth of three fingers a piece, and so meet againe together in a Circle, every row, with his owner colour. So that the necke, and the head; and the Maine (which is not great) and the eares, and all the legs are fo interchanged with these colours, and in such manner and order, as with out all faile, if the first strake beginne with white, then followeth the second with blacke, and in the third place the Bay : and so another course beginning in white, endeth still in Bay. And this rule is generally and infallibly observed over all the bodie. The Tayle is like the Tayle of a Mule, of a Morell colour, but yet it is well coloured, and hath a gliftering gloffe. The feet like the feet of 50 a Mule, and so are the hooses. But touching the rest of her carriage and qualities, she is very lu-

ftie and pleasant as a Horse : and specially in going, and in runningsshee is so light and so swife, that it is admirable. Insomuch as in Portugall and in Castile also, it is commonly vsed(as it were for a Prouerbe) as swift as a Zebra, when they will signifie an exceeding quiknesse. These Creatures are all wild, they breed enery yeare, and are there in such abundance that they are innumerable. If they were made tame, they would ferue to runne and to draw for the warres, and for many other good vies, as well as the best Horses that are

Necessitie hath taught them to vie men in steed of labouring Cattell. For either they lay The manner themselues all along in certaine Litters (as it were) or else set themselues vpright, with shadowes of the carrying ouer them to keepe them from the Sunne, and fo they cause themselves to bee carryed too and of the Mesi-50 fro, by their slaues, or by other men that for wages are alwayes readie at Poste-houses to that combipurpose. They that meane to journey with speed, doe take with them many slaves, and when the first number are weary , then doe the second number vndertake the burden , and so successfully change one after another, as the Tartarians and Persians vie to doe with their Hories; and their men being thus accustomed to these labours, (and so often changing) will goe as fast as any Pofilion gallop. O0000 2

ae I Hantin . 11/62

CHAP.4.S.4.

There are also to be found in this Coutstain, Certaine other foure-footed beafts, fomewhat lesse then Oxen, of colour Red, swith hornes like Goats homes; which are very smooth and glissing, and inclining to blacke, whereof they make divers pretie knackes, as they doe likewife of the Buffes hornes. They have their heads and their haires, like the heads & haires of Oxen; and their skins are of great estimation ; and therefore they are carried into Portugall, and from thence in. to Germanie-to be drelled, and then they are called Dunes. The King of Congo is very delirone to have some men that had skill to cleanie them, and dresse them, and to make them fit for vie to end he might employ them for Armour of defence. And yet those Nations doe alreadings them for Shields and Targets; and soe finishhat they will reful the blow of a weapon, and effecally the (hot of an Arrow). They kill them with Harquebuses, and with Arrowes. But if they doe efpie the Huntiman, they will fee vpon him, and being by nature very fierce, and couragious, they will so knocke him and the impe him swith their feet, and their Muzzle (became they cannot doe him any harms with their hornes) that they will leade him either halfe dead. or starke dead. There is also an infinite number of wild Buffes, that goe wandring about the Defarts, in the Kingdome of the Anzichi; and wild Affes likewife, which the Greeker call

Wild Affes

Empalanga.

There are befides these, other beafts, called Empalonga: which are in bignesse and shape like Oxen, saving that they hold their necke and head aloft, and have their hornes broad and crooked, three hand-breadths long, divided into knots, and sharpe at the ends, whereof they might make very faire Cornets to found withall: and although they line in the Forrests, yet are they not nov fome nor harmefull. The skins of their neckes are vied for shoo-soles, and their fielh for meate. They might like wife be brought to draw the Plough, and doe good fernice in any other Other finitfull labour, and tilling of the ground. Moreover, they feed great herds of Kine, and tame Oxen,

tame Hogs, and wild Boares, flockes of Sheepe and Goats. Signor Odoardo affirmed, that the

Goats and the Sheepe doe bring forth two, and three, and foure Lambs or Kids at a time, and

two. when they have feweft, and never one alone at any time.

Wolnes.

There are Wolues also which loue the Oyle of Palmes, beyond all measure. They will smell this Oyle afarre off, and steale it in the night time out of their houses of straw, and sometimes from those that carrie it by the way, whiles the poore soules doe rest themselves and sleepe. The Oyle (as shall be told you) is made of the Palme-tree; it is thicke and hard , like Butter. And 10 it is a margell to fee, how thefe Wolnes doe take a Bottle that is full of this liquor betweene their teeth, and fo cast it on their shoulders, and runne away withall, as our Wolues here doe with a Sheepe. There are very great flore of Foxes, that fleate Hennes as our Foxes doe, And farther in this Countrie of Bandai, there is an innumerable quantitie of hunting game, as Scage, fallow Deere, Roe-buckes, and Gazelm, whereof he affirmed that he had feene exceeding great herds, as also of Conies and Hares, Because these were no Hunters to kill them.

In the Region of Pembachero are many wild Givet-cats, which the Portugals call Algazia,

and some of these, the people of that Countrie had made tame, that they might entry their

Ciuet, in the smell whereof they doe greatly delight. But this was before the Portsigals did

white haires, and exceeding fine, called Incine ; but no man may weare thele skinnes waleffe the

Prince permit him to to doe : for it is held in great estimation, and every Sable is worth a Slave.

Towards the Anzichi they catch Marterns alfo , wherewith they apparell themselues , as in

Hunting In Pemba, Ci-

ner-cats.

In Batta Sables trafficke with those Countries. And in Manbatta there are caught many Sables , with very 40

In Anzigue, Marterns, In Sogne, Apes, Adders and The Author doth not fet downe the GH they call it Сиситинья.

due place we will note vnto you. Apes, Moskies, and fach other kind of beafts, small and great of all forts there are many in the Region of Some, that lieth upon the Riner Zaire,

Of Adders and Snakes you shall find some that are fine and twentie spanne long, and fine span broad : and the bellie and the mouth fo large; that they can fwallow and receive into their bellie huge feaniling. a whole Stag, or any other creature of that bigneffe. And it is called, great Water-adder. It will goe forth of the water up to the Land to prey for his victuals, and then returne into the Rivers againe, and fo it liveth in both the Elements. It will get it felfe so vp vpon the boughs and branches of Trees, and there watch the Cattell that feed thereabouts, which when they are come neere vnto it, presently it will fall upon them, and wind it selfe in many twines about them, and clap his taile on their hinder parts, and so it straineth them, and biteth fo many holes in them, that at last it killeth them. And then it draweth them into some Wood, or other folitarie place, where it denoureth them at pleafure, skinne, hornes, hoofes and all. Now it falleth out, that when it is thus full, and (as it were) great with fo monstrous 2 meale, it becommeth almost drunke, and very sleepie, so that any child may kill it. And in this fort will it remaine full and fatisfied for the space of five or fixe dayes together, and then returne againe to prey. Thefe Adders doe change their skinnes in their ordinarie feafons; yea, and sometimes after they have eaten so monstrously, and the faid Sloughs, when they are found, 60 are gathered vp, and referred for a flew of fo vnmeasurable a Creature. These Adders are also greatly effeemed by the Pagan Negroes, for they doe vie to reaft them, and eate them for meate, and make more account of them then they doe of Hennes, or any fuch delicate fielh. They find great store of them, when they have occasion to burne their thicke Woods : for there they shall

have them lying on the ground, rosted with the fire. Besides these there are Vipers also, well Vipers. knowne vnto that People. Which Vipers are so venemous, that such as are bitten by them. doe die within the space of foure and twentie houres. But the Negroes are acquainted with certaine herbs that will heale their wounds. There are also certaine other Creatures, which being as big as Rams, have wings like Dra- Another

gons, with long tailes, and long chaps, and divers rewes of teeth, and feed vpon raw fielh. Their ftrange Creacolour is blue and greene, their skinne bepainted like fcales; and two feet they have, but no ture, more. The Pagan Negroes, doe vie to worthip them as Gods, and at this day you may fee divers of them, that are kept for a wonder. And because they are very rare, the chiefe Lords there doe 10 curioufly preserve them, and suffer the people to worthip them , which tendeth greatly to their profit, by reason of the gifts and oblations which the people offer vnto them. There are there Chamelions also to be found Chamelions.

Other Serpents there are that are venemous, that carrie vpon the tippe of their tayle, a certaine little roundell like a Bell, which ringeth as they goe, fo as it may be heard.

Estridges are found in those Parts of Sunds, and of Batta, that are towards the Muzambi. The Estridge The young Estridges doe spring out of their egges, being warmed and disclosed by the eye and heate of the Sunne. Their feathers are vied in stead of Ensignes and Banners in Warre, mingled with some plumes of the Peacocke, and are fashioned in the likenesse of a shadow Peacocks. against the Sunne. And forasmuch as I am fallen into the speech of Peacocks , I must tell you 20 by the way, that in the Parts of Angola, there are Peacocks brought vp prinately in a certaine Wood that is compassed about with walls : and the King will not suffer any other bodie to keep those Birds but onely himselfe, because they are for the Royall Ensignes, as I told you before.

There are also Indie-cocks, and Hens, and Geefe, and Duckes of all forts both wild and tame: Fowles of di-Partridges, fo many as children take them with ginnes. Other Birds they have likewise, as Phefants, which they call Gallignoles, Pigeons, Turtles, and of these small Birds, called Becea-fichi, an infinite number. Birds of prey, as Eagles Royall, Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, and Sparrow-hawks, and others, great store, which not with standing the people never vie to hawke withall. Birds of the Sea, as Pelicanes (for fo the Portugals doe call them) white and great, which fwimme Birds of the under the water, and have their throats to wide, that they will fwallow a whole fish at once. Sea. 30 This Bird hath to good a ftomacke, and naturally to hot, that it easily digefleth the Fish that it fwalloweth whole, and the skinne of it is so hot, that the people of that Countrie doe vie to weare them, and to warme their cold fromackes withall, and therefore make great reckoning of them. There are many white Herons, and grey Bittours, that feed in the Washes there, and Other kinds of are called Royall Birds. Other Fowles there are of the likeneffe of a Crane, with a red bill Fowle, and red feet, as bigge as Storkes, and their feathers for the most part red and white, and some

Flemmings, because they doe much resemble them, and are good meat to eate. They have Parrots of grey colour, great and very talkative : and others of greene colour, but Parrots they are little ones, and not fo talkatine. They have likewife certaine small little Birds, which ficks. 40 they call Birds of Musicke, and yet greater then the Canarie Birds, of feather and bill red : some greene, with their feet and bill onely blacke : fome all white : fome grey or dunne : fome all blacke, and this kind is more sweet in their notes then all the rest afore-named; for you would thinke that they talked in their finging. Others there are of divers colours, but they doe all fing in fundrie forts, fo that the chiefe Lords of those Countries, from ancient times to this day, have continually kept them in Cages, and greatly effeemed them for their fong.

darke grey. Goodly Birds they are to looke to , and the people of the Countrie doe call them

Q. IIII.
Of the fine other Provinces of Congo, to wit, Sogno, Sundi, Pango, Batta, and Pemba.

His Countrie is bounded with the Riuer Ambrize, towards the North in feuen degrees The frond and an halte, and so trauerfing the River Lelunda, and the River Zaire, it endeth at the Pouince Sog-Rockes, called Berrewas Vermellias, that is to fay, the Red pits, which are in the Bor- no, and the dea ders of the Kingdome of Leange. In the middeft of this Province there is a certaine feription ther-Territorie, called by the same name Soone, where the Gouernour of the Countrie dwelleth. The Soone the chief chiefe Lords that rule this Prouince, are called Mani-Sogno, that is, Princes of Sogno, and are Towne of this commonly of the bloud Royall. The Prince that gouerneth there at this day, is called Don Province. Diego Mani-Sogno. He hath vnder his dominion many other petie Lords, and other Provinces, Post Diego, 6) that in old time were free, and lined by themselues, as the People of Mombalas, fituate lome-chiefe Gouerwhat neere to the Citie of Congo, which are now subject to this government. And on the other nour of Soene. fide of the River Zaire towards the North, is the Province of Palmar, that is to fay, of Palmes, and those that because there is great store of Palme-trees growing therein. Other Lords there are, that bor- tu'e vader der vpon the King of Loango, who was sometime subject to the King of Congo; but in processe him.

000003

of time he became a free Lord, and now profeseth himselse to bee in amitie with the King of Comeo, but not to be his vallall. The people that are vnder thefe Lords in those borders, are called the Branas : and they reach within the Land, under the Equinc Riall line towards the East. to the bounds of Anzicana, all along the Mountaines which divide them from the Anzich vpon the North. They are called by the people of Loango, Congreamolal, because they were subiect to Congo.

In this Countrey of Laurge there are many Elephants, and great flore of Juory, which they dities of Segne, doe willingly exchange for a little Iron, so that for the naile of a ship (be it neuer so small) they will give a whole Elephants tooth. The reason thereof, is either because there groweth no Iron in that place, or elfe they have not the skill to get it out of the Mines where it groweth : But all re the Iron they can get, they imploy for the heading of their Arrowes, and their other weapons. as we told you when we spake of the Bramas.

of the life of the Inhabi-

They make great store of Cloth of the Palme tres, whereof we made mention before : but these are lesser, and yet very fine. They have great abundance of Kine, and of other cattell, before named. They are in Religion Pagans: their apparell after the fashion of the people of Congo: They maintaine warre with their bordering neighbours, which are the Anzichi, and the Inhabitants of Anzienna; and when they enterprise warre against the Anziehi, then they craue ayde of the people of Congo, and so they remaine halfe in freedome, and halfe in danger of others. They worthip what they lift, and hold the Sunne for the greatest God, as though it were a man, and the Moone next, as though it were a woman. Otherwise every man choofeth to himselfe his owne Idoll, and worthippeth it after his owne pleasure. These people would eafily embrace the Christian Religion : For many of them that dwell upon the borders of Congo, have beene converted to Christendome ; and the rest, for want of Priests, and of fuch

as should instruct them in the true Religion, do remaine still in their blindnesse. The third Pro-

uince Sundi, & Saint Sanioners, and beginneth about fortie miles distant from it, and quite out of the Territorie thereof, and reacheth to the River Zaire, and so over the same to the other fide, where the Cadate or Fall is, which we mentioned before : and then holdeth on up-wards on both fides towards the North, bordering upon Anzicana, and the Anzichi. Towards the South it goeth along the faid River Zaire, vntill you come to the meeting of it with the River Bancare, and all 10 along the bankes thereof, even to the rootes of the Mountaine of Crystall. In the bounds of the Province of Pango, it hath her principall Territorie, where the Governor lyeth, who hath his name from the Prouince of Sunds, and is feated about a daies journey neere to the Fall of the River, towards the South.

This Province is the chiefest of all the rest, and (as it were) the Patrimony of all the King.

Sundi, is the neerest of all to the Citie of Congo, called, Citta di San-Salnatore, the Citie of

The chiefe Towns of

This Prouince of Sundi, is al- dome of Congo and therefore it is alwaies governed by the Kings elden Son, and by those Princes that are to fucceed him. As it fell out in the time of their first Christian King, that was calned by the heite apparent led Don John: whose eldest sonne, that was Gonernour heere, succeeded him, and was called of the King of Don Alfonfo. And ever fithence, the Kings of Congo have fuccessively continued this custome, to configne this government to those Princes which are to fucceed in the Kingdome: As did the King that now " is called Don Aluaro, who was in this government before Don Aluaro the King 40

Conco. # 1588.

died asmea any thing of

In all the kingpole, or leave to his beires, but all is the

his father died, and was called Mani-Sundi. And heere by the way you must note, that in all the Kingdome of Congo, there is not any dome of congo, person that possessed any proper goods of his owne, whereof he may dispose, and leave to his heires : but all is the Kings, and he distributeth all Offices, all Goods, and all Lands, to whomfocuer it pleaseth him; yea, and to this Law, even the Kings owne sonnes are subject. So that if of he may dif. any man doe not pay his tribute yearely (as he ought) the King taketh away his Gouernment from him, and giveth it to another. As it happened to the King that now liveth, who at the time that Signor Odoardo was at the Court, being of his owne nature very liberall, and bountiful beyond measure, and one that bestowed much vpon his servants, could not discharge those im-50 politions that the King had laid on him. Whereupon he was by the King deprived of his revenues, of his gouernment, and of his royall fauour; that is to fay, in that language, he was Tom-

bicado, as we will declare more at full in the second part of this Discourse. The manner of Many Lords there are that are subject to the Gouernour of Sundi. The people doe Trafficke the life of Sun- with their neighbour Countries, felling and bartring divers things. As for example, Salt, and di Inhabitants. Cloathes of fundry colours, brought from the Indies, and from Portugall, and Lumachette, to ferue for their Coyne. And for these commodities they doe exchange cloath of Palme Trees, and Iuory, and the skinnes of Sables and Marternes, and certaine girdles wrought of the leaues of Palme trees, which are greatly efteemed in those parts.

There groweth in thele Countries great flore of Crystall, and divers kinds of Metall : but 60 Iron they low about all the reft; faying, That the other Metals are to no vie: for with Iron they can make Knines, and Weapons, and Hatchets, and such like Instruments, that are necessary and profitable for the vie of mans nature.

The Prouince of Pango in ancient time was a free Kingdome, that was gouerned of it felfe,

and bordereth on the North vpon Sunds, on the South vpon Batta, on the West vpon the Coun- The fourth trie of Congo, and on the East vpon the Mountaines of the Sun. The principall Territorie, where Prouince trie of Cango, and on the East vpon the Mountaines of the Saus and principal retrieve, which is the Gouernors dwelling is, hath the same name that the Prouince hath, (viz.) Pango. It standescription the Gouernors awening is, man the later Barbela, and in old time was called, Pangue-lungos: thereof. dern vpon the vectorie has of the word was corrupted and changed into Pange. Through the midt Pange the of this Province runneth the River Berbela, which fetcheth his Original from the great Lake, chiefe townof (whence the River Nilus also taketh his beginning) and from another leffer Lake, called Ache. this Provinces lands, and is dischargeth it selfe into Zare. And although this be the least Countrey of all the Berbels. reft, yet doth it yeeld no leffe tribute then the reft.

This Prouince was conquered after the Countrey of Sund, and made subject to the Princes of Comes: and is now all one with it, both in speech and manners; neither is there any diffeor congo: and is now an one with it, or Gouernor thereof is called, Don Francesco Mani-Pan-Don Francisco go, and hath remained in the gonernment of this Region for the space of fiftie yeares, and no chiefe Goner-

man euer complained of him.

CHAP.4.\$.4.

The bounds of Bassa are towards the North, the Countrey of Passe: on the East it taketh The fift Proquire ouer the River Barbols, and reacheth to the Mountaines of the Sunne, and to the foote of quince Batta, the Mountaines of Sal-Nitre. And on the South from the faid Mountaines, by a line pathing & the deferiethrough the meeting of the Rivers Barbela and Cacinga, to the Mountaine Brusciato, that is to tion thereof.

Within these bounds is Batta contained and the principall Citie where the Prince dwelleth, Batta, the is likewife called Batta. In ancient time it was called Aphirmba; but afterwards the word thick was was corrupted, and it is now called Batta. It was in old time a very strong and a great King of all Batta. dome, and voluntarily of it telfe, without any warreit inynedit felfe with the Kingdome of Cones, peraduenture because there were forme differtion among their Lords : and therefore is hath more preheminence then the reft of the Prouinces of the Kingdome of Congo, in printledges and liberties. For the Gouernment of Batta is alwaies affigned to one, that is of the The prehemi-blood of the Kings of that Countrey, at their choise and pleafure, having no more respect to one nearest the then to another, to that he be of the flockeand blood Royall, neither to the etdeft fonne, nor to Gouernor of the second. Neither yet goeth this Gouernment by inheritance, but the King of Congo (23 is Batta 30 told you before) dorh dispole it at his owne pleasure to whom he thinketh best, to the end they should not vsurpe it by way of succession, or by rebellion. He dwelleth neerer the King they mount now supper to y way the them of the Kingdome of Conget, and is the ferond perion thereton, neither may any man gaine-by his arguments and realous in they may any of the reft, sort is fo decreed among them. Now if the line of the King of Towns found thanks of take, to have Dep Point, there were none of that blood to fucceed, the fuscetion thall fall upon the Gosephour of Bathat. chiefe Gosephour of Bathat.

He that now gouerneth there, is called, Don Pedro Mani-Batta. Sometimes he eateth at the Kings owne Table, but yet in a baser feat then the Kings seat is, and that also not fitting, but standing; which is not granted to any other Lord of Congo, no nor to the sonnes of the King himselfe. His Court and his craine, is little leffe then the Court and my. traine of the King of Compo. For he hath Trumpets and Drums, and other inflamments going before him, as becommeth a Prince.

He doth hold continuall warres with the Pagans that border vpon him, and he is able to gather together about seventile or eightie thousand fighting men. And because he doth still maintaine warre with the people that are next him, he hath libertie granted wato him to entertaine Harquebufires, that shall be of his owne natural subjects. For the King of Congo will not suffer The King of any other Gouernor of any other Provinces, nor any of their children, to have any Harquebu- Congo will not fiers that are borne within their Countrey, but onely the Portugals

Towards the East of Batta, beyond the Mountaines of the Sunne, and of Sal-Nitre, vpon turali borne the bankes of the East and West of the Riner Nalus, and in the borders of the Empire of Mo- subject in Conbenbe-Muge there liveth a Nation, which by the people of Congo, are called Giaques, but in their Barouebuffe. 50 owne language they are called Agag: Very herce they are and warlike, much given to fight and The Giaguage pillage, and make continuall inroades into the Countries neere adioyning; and fometimes a- Of thefe, fee mong the rest into the Province of Batta. So that this Countrey must needs bein continu. Andrewsattell, all Armes, and stand vpon good guard, and maintaine Harquebusiers to defend themselves which lived

The Prince of Batta hath many Lords under him : and the naturall people of this Province The conditiare called Monfobos, and their language is well understood by the Inhabitants of Congo. They onsof the are farre more rude and rufticall then the Moci-Congi, and the Slaues that are brought from people of thence, doe prooue more obstinate and stubborne, then those that come from other Coun-

The Prouince of Pemba is leated in the heart and middle of the Kingdome of Congo, compaffed and comprised within the bounds before described, whose Gouernor is called Don Anto- tion thereof. nio Mani-Pemba, fecond fonne to King Don Aluaro, that dead is, and brother to the King that Don Antonio raigneth at this prefent. And for as much as his father did loue him dearely, he affigned vinto chiefe Gouer-

nor of Batta.

him nor of Pemba.

him this Gouernment, because he knew not what better thing to give him, saving the Realme it felfe : which in deed he would willingly have bestowed on him, for that hee was more like vnto him in quality and nature then his eldest some was. But it would not be by reason of the law of the Kingdome, which would not have veelded thereanto. This Country is the very Centre, and middeft of all the State of Congo, and the originall of

The chiefe Critic of all Company is an every senter, and middet of all the State of Congo, and the original of Congo, is future all the ancient Kings, and the Territorie where they were borne, and the chiefe and principal in dis 970. [cat of all the other Promines and Principalities And the chiefe and principal in dis 970.

nince of Pinia all that Empire, is affigued to this Province, whereof we will hereafter deliver you a full information. The Gouernor of Pemba dwelleth in a Territory of the same name, fituate at the force of the Corched Mountaine, along the River Loze, which rifeth out of the Lake, and runneth The Courtiers through the Region of Bamba into the Sea. The Courtiers and Lords, and Seruitors belonging &c. dwellfor to the King of Congo, have their goods and possessions, and revenues in this Province; because it is negreff to the Court, and very convenient for the conveighing of their victuals, and their o. ther stuffe vnto the Court. Some of these Lords, in that part specially, that bordereth vpon the aforefaid Province of Bamba, have much adoe to keepe fight and defend themselves from the people of Quizama, because they are neerest vnto them. For this people (as we told you) did rebell against the King of Congo, and revolted from him, and doe professe that they will be at libertie, and gouerned of themfelues.

HONDIVS bis Map of Congo.



Of the fituation of the Royall Citie of the Kingdome of Congo: Of their first conversion and Warre, thence arising betwixt the Kings two Sonnes.

The Territory of the chiefest Citie in all Congo, contaipasse twentie

Lthough the chiefe and Royall Citie of the Kingdome of Congo be after a fort compre- 60 hended within the Pronnee of Pemba, yet notwithstanding for as much as the gouernment thereof, and the Territorie thereunto belonging, which may in compaffe amount to the space of twentie miles about, doth depend wholly of the King of Congo himfelfe, we will place it in a fenerall Regiment, and intreat of it by it felfe.

This Citie is called Sun Saluatore, or Saint Sanion, and in times past in that Countrie Lan- The chiefe Ci-guage it was caned amount, which generally insured and fifthe miles from the Sea, vp- Saluatore. on a great and a high Mountaine, being almost all of a Rocke, but yet having a veyne of I- The situation ron in it, whereof they have great vie in their housing. This Mountaine hath in the toppe of of the Citic, is a great Plaint, very well manured and furnished with Houses and Villages, contaying in the Mountain scircule about ten miles , where there doeth dwell and hue, the number of one hundred thour financia.

The fowle is fruitfull, and the aire fresh, wholsome, and pure: there are great store of Springs, The soul, the In of indifferent good water to drinke, and at certaine times doe not harme any man: and of all aire, the waters forts of Cattell great abundance. The top of the Mountaine is feuered and diffinguished from and the Catforts of Cartell great abundance. The top of the Monnague is related and difficult tell, all the reft of the Hill which is about it, and therefore the Portugals doe call it, The Othero, that The Othero. is to fay, A view, or a Watch-tower, or a Singular heighth, from whence you may take a fight of all the Champaine round about: onely towards the East, and towards the River, it is very

fleepe and rockie.

For two ranfes did the Princes of this Kingdom place this habitation in the forefaid heighth The resson of this Mountaine. First, because it lieth in the very middelt, and (as it were) in the Centre of why they built all the Realme, from whence hee may prefently fend aide to any part of his Kingdome, that in this place, may fland in need of reliefe: and secondly, because it is situated in a Territorie that is by Nature as mounted aloft, having a very good aire, and of great fafetie; for it cannot be forced. By the

chiefe common high-way that goeth up to the Citie, and looketh towards the Sea, being diflant from thence one hundred and fiftie miles (as hath beene told you) which way is very large and competent, though it goe somewhat about in compasse, you shall ascend five miles from the bottome to the ton of the Mountaine. At the foot thereof on the East fide there runneth a Ri- Five miles tier, whereunto the women doe descend by the space of a miles walke to wash their clothes. from the boxther, whereunto the women doe deteend by the space or a miles walke to wain their clothes.

In divers other parts thereof there are fundric valleys planted and manured: neither doe they Hill to the top. fuffer any part of the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts to be left vitilled or vitufed, because it is the Countrie thereabouts the countrie the countrie the countrie thereabouts the countrie t trie where the Court remaineth.

The Citie is feated in a corner or angle of the hill towards the South-east, which Don Alfon- The particular 30 fo the first Christian King did compasse about with walls, and gave vnto the Portugals a severall stranson of the place for themselves, thut up likewise within walls. Then did he also inclose his owne Pa- Cine. ace and the Kings Houses with another wall, and in the middeft betweene these two enclosures place for the left a great space of ground, where the principall Church was built, with a faire Market place Pertuj before it. The doores and gates as well of the Lodgings of the Lords, as of the Portugals Inha-bitations, doe open on the fale of the faid Church, For, in the vppermoit end of the Market place fale doe divers great Lords of the Court dwell, and behind the Church doeth the Market place runne into a narrow street, where there is also a gate, and beyond that gate many houses towards the Marketplace. East, Without these walls, (which doe enclose the Kings houses, and the Citie of the Portugals) there are a number of other buildings, erected by divers Lords, every man making his feuerall

40 choife of the place which he thinketh most fit and convenient for his dwelling neere vnto the Court. So that the greatnesse of this Citie cannot well be determined or limited. Beyond these walls also, that thus doe compasse this Citie; there is a great champaine Plaine, full of Villages. and fundrie Palaces, where every Lord poffeffeth (as it were) a whole Towne within himfelfe. The circuit of the Portugals Citie containeth about a mile; and the Kings houses as much. The walls are very thicke : the gates are not flut in the night time, neither is there any watch or ward kept therein.

And although that Plaine doeth lie very high and aloft, yet is there great abundance of wa- Good force of ters in it, so that there is no want thereof. But the Court and the Portugals Citie doe all drinke waters of a certaine Fountaine that springeth continually, towards the North, and lieth downe the so hill, as farre as a Gunne will shoot : and from hence they doe ferch all their water, and bring it

to the Citie in vessels of Wood, of Earth, and Leather, ypon the backes of their Slaues.

All this Plame is very fruitfull, and well manured. It hath Meadowes full of Graffe, and The Plaine Trees that are alwaies greene. It beareth fundrie forts of Graine, but the principall and belt of very fruitfull. all is called Laco, which is very like to Mustard-seed, but that it is somewhat bigger. When it is of Grant, grinded with Hand-querns (for fo they vie to do) it yeeldeth a very white Meale, whereof they Luce, Miller. make Bread, that is both white, and also of a very good fauour, and wholsome withall : neither doth it give place to our Wheat in any fort, faving that they doe not celebrate the Sacrament with it. Of these Graines there now is great store, over all the Kingdome of Congo: but it is not long fince that this Seed was brought thither from that part of the River Nilms, where it 60 falleth into the second Lake. There is also a white kind of Millet, called the Muzza of Congo, White Millet,

that is to lay, The Corne of Congo: and another Graine which they call Maiz, but they make Massa of no account of it, for they give it to their Hogs: neither doe they greatly efteeme of Rice. The Congo. forelaid Maiz they commonly terme by the name of Mazza-Manpuro, that is to fay, the Por- Maiz. tugals Corne; for they call a Portugall Manputo.

Diners kinds of Freesbearine fruit.

There are moreover divers and fundrie forts of Trees, that beare very great flore of Fruits. infomuch as the greatest part of the people doe feed vpon the Fruits of the Countrie, as Citrons. Lymons, and specially Oranges, very full of liquor, which are neither sweet nor sowre, and are ordinarily eaten without any annoyance or harme at all. And to shew the frutfulnesse of this Countrie, the faid Signer Odoardo reported, that he had feene from a kernell of the fruit of a Pome-Citrone, which was left within the rind thereof, there iprung vp within the frace of four-dayes a pretie tall forig. Other Fruits there are, which they call Banana, and wee verile

Renna

thinke to be the Mules of Laype and Soria, fauing that in those Countries they grow to be as bigge as Trees; but here they cut them yeerely, to the end they may beare the better. The Fruit is very (weet in smell, and of good nourishment. In these Plaines there grow likewise funding of Paim-trees, kinds of Palme-trees; one that beareth Dates, and another that beareth the Indian Nuts, called Cocoes, because they have within them a certaine shell that is like to an Ape : and thereupon they vie in Spaine to flew their children Coccola, when they would make them afraid. Another

The Oive of

Palme.

Palme-tree there groweth also very like to the former, but of a more firange and fineular pmpertie : for it yeeldeth Oyle, Wine, Vinegar, Fruit and Bread. The Oyle is made of the shell of the fruit, and is of the colour and substance of Butter, saving that it is somewhat greenish. They yie it, as other people doe vie Oyle and Butter, and it will burne like Oyle. They anoing their bodies withall; and befides, it is very good to eate. They presse it out of the Fruit, as Oyle is pressed out of the Olives, and then they boyle it, and so preserve it. The Bread is made The Bread of of the stone of the fruit it selfe, which is like to an Almond, but somewhat harder : and within an the fame is there a certaine kernell or pith, which is good to eate: very wholfome and of good

The fruit of the Palme. The Wine and

pourishment. The whole Fruit, together with the outter shell is greene; and they vie to eate it both raw and roifed. The Wine is drawen from the top of the Tree, by making an hole therein, from whence there distilleth a liquor like Milke, which at the first is sweet, but afterwards fowre, and in processe of time becommeth very Vinegar, to serue for Sallets. This Wine they drinke cold, and it moueth to wrine very much : fo that in those Countries, there is not a man that is troubled with Granell or Stone in the bladder. It will make them drunke, that drinke too much of it : but indeed it is of a very good nutriment.

The fruit Cola.

There are other Trees, that beare a certaine fruit, called Cola, as big as a Pine-apple, which hath within it other fruits like Cheft-nuts, wherein are foure feuerall shells or skins, of red and an Carnation colour. These they vie to hold in their mouthes, and chaw them, and at last to eate them, for the quenching of their thirst, and better relishing of their water. They comfort and preserve the stomacke, but above all other qualities, they are singular good against the diseases Andrew Bettell of the Liver. And it is faid, that the Liver of a Henne, or of any other like Bird, which is putrified, and stinketh, being sprinkled ouer with the matter of this fruit, returneth into his former estate, and becommeth fresh and found againe. This food is commonly and generally vsed among them all, and there is very great abundance of it: and therefore it is good cheape. O-Other kinds of ther kinds of wild Palme-trees there are, which yeeld divers fruits that are eaten: and their leaves referred to make Mats, wherewith their houses are covered; and Baskets and Skeps, and such other like Instruments that are necessarie for their daily vies. Other Trees there are likewise, called Ogbegbe, which beare a fruit which is like a yellow Plumme, and is very good to Trees called, to eate, and hath a very fweet fmell withall. Of thefe Trees they cut off the boughs, and plant them fo thicke together, that they touch one another, and fland closely all in a ranke; fothat when they are growne great, they make a strong Fence or wall about their houses, which being afterwards coursed with Mats, it resembleth a handsome Court or Closse, wherein they vie to walke, (as it were) in an Arbour that maketh a great shadow, and defendeth them from the heate of the Sunne. In the middest of these enclosures, they vie to build certaine houses of wood, couered with straw, and disnded into fundrie consenient roomes, all on the ground without any Stories or Sollers about them. These they doe line with very faire and delicate Mats, and furnish them with other ornaments in very handlome manner.

There are to bee found among them many maffes and lumpes of stone, which are of such 50 thickneffe and hugeneffe, that you may cut out a whole Church, even of one whole piece; yea, ftone to build and of the fame kind of stone, whereof the Obelifco is made, that is erected before Porta del Popolo in Rome. Befides this, there are whole Mountaines of Porphyrie, of Iasper, and of white Marble, and of other fundrie colours, which here in Rome are called, Marbles of Numidia, of Africa, and of Athiopia : certaine Pillars whereof, you may fee in the Chappell of Pope

> Other Stone there is, that is speckled with graines or strakes, but among all the rest, that kind is most admirable, which bath in it faire lacynthes, that are good Iewels. For the strakes being dispersed like veynes ouer all the bodie of their Mother-itone, if you shall divide them, 60 and plucke them out as you would picke the kernels out of a Pomegranate, they will fall into graines and little pieces of perfect lacynth. But if you please to make Pillars, or Obeliskes, or other fuch like memorials, of the whole maffe, you shall see them shine and sparkle, full of most faire and goodly Iewels.

There are allo other kinds of rare stones, which make a thew of metall in them, as of Copper, Wanto work and of fundry other colours, that are very fresh, and bright, and smooth, whereof you may make men to build Images, or any other worke of fingular leautic. True it is, indeed, that they want Majons and Cutters, and Playsterers, and Carpenters, and other such Artificers : for when the Churches and the walls, and the other fabrickes in those Countries were built, the Workmen were brought

thither out of Portugall. There are also Tamarindes, and Cassia, and Ceders in such multitudes growing all along the Ri- Stuffe for per of Congo, befides other Trees of an vinneafurable length and thickneffe, that an infinite number of thips and houses may be bui IJed of them. Their Gardens doe beare all manner of Herbes and housings 10 and Fruits, as Pompions, Melions, Cucumbers, Coleworts, and fuch like, befides other forts Herbs & fruits

that doe not agree with our Climates of Europe.

The King of Portugall, Don Giouanni the Second, being defirom to discouer the East Indies, Sent The first forth diners ships by the Coast of Africa to search out this Namagation, who having found the Hands of fices of the Cape Verde, and the Ile of Saint Thomas, and running all along that Coast, did light upon the River Portugali inco Zaire, whereof we have made mention before, and there they had good Trafficke, and tryed the people to bee very courteous and kind. Afterwards bee sent forth (for the same purpose) certaine other Vessels, to entertaine this Trafficke with Corgo, who finding the Trade there to bee so free and profitable, and the people so friendly, left certaine Portugals behind them, to learne the Language, and to Trafficke with them: among whom one was a Maffe-priest. These Portugals conner- Mani Speno, the 20 fing familiarly with the Lord of Sogno, who was Uncle to the King and a man well flicken in yeares, Kings Incle dwelling at that time in the Port of Praza (which is in the mouth of Zairc) were very well entertained entertayneth

and estremed by the Prince, a dreuerenced as though they had beene earthly Gods, and descended the Portuguis. downe from Heaven into those Countries, But the Portugals told them that they were men as them-Selves were, and professors of Christianitie. And when they perceined in kow great estimation the people ne'd them, the foresaid Priest and others began to reason with the Prince touching the Christian Rehe can a two, too few winto them the errors of the Pagan Superstition, and by little and itself to teach Mani-Sogne, them the Faith which we proselfe, in somuch as that which the Portugals spake vnto them, greatly pleased conserved and the Prince, and so be became converted.

With this confidence and good frist, the Prince of Sogno went to the Court, to enforme the King of o the true Dollrine of the Christian Portugals, and to encourage him that he would imbrace the Christian Religion which was so manifest and also so wholsome for his soules health. Hereupon the King commanded to call the Priest to Court, to the end be might himselfe treat with him personally, and understand The King of ded to call the Piest to Court, to the exa ne mugos oscopies. Whereof when hee was fully infer. Come, promi-the truth of that which the Lord of Sogno had declared onto him. Whereof when hee was fully infer. Come, promi-settico become

med, he conserted and promifed that he would become a Christan.

And now the Portugall ships departed from Congo, and returned into Portugall: and by them did 2 Christian. the King of Congo write to the King of Portugall, Don Grounni the fecond, with earnest request. that he would send him some Priests, with all other Orders and Ceremonics to make him a Christian. The Priest also that re named behind had written at large touching this businesse, and game the King The King of full information of all that had happened, agreeable to his good pleafure. And so the King tooke order Fortigal lea-to for sundry Religious persous, to be sent unto him accordingly, with all Ornaments for the Church and deth Priefits to other service, as Crosses and Images : so that he was throughly furnished with all things that were ne- the King of ceffire and needfull for fuch an action.

In the meane-while, the Prince of Sogno, ceased not day and night to discourse with the Portugall struct him. Priest, whom hee kept in his owne House, and at his owne Table, aswell that hee might learne the Mani Sogne Christian Fanh himselfe, as also instruct the people therein : so that bee began to fauour Christianitie Christian Res with all his nower.

At last the ships of Portugall, arrived with the expected provisions (which was in the yeare of our The ships re-Saluation 1 49 1.) and landed in the Port which is in the mouth of the River Laire. The Prince of turne from Sognowith all shew of familiar ion accompanied with all his Gentlemen ranne downe to meete them, and Mani Spero & entertained the Portugals in most courteous manner, and so conducted them to their Lodgings. The next historiace on 50 day following, according to the direction of the Priest that remayned behind, the Prince caused a kind of terrayneth that

Church to be builded, with the bodies and branches of certaine trees, which hee in his owne person, with Portugalse the helpe of his Seruants, most denoutly had felled in the Wood. And when it was coursed, they erected includes in therein three Altars in the worship and reserence of the most boly Tri itte, and there was baptised him- Chur h. feife and his young Soune, himfeife by the n me of our Sautour, Emanuel, and his childe by the name Mani Same & of Anchony, because that Saint is the Protester of the Cite of Liebone. The men and women before this had no proper names greeable to reasonable creatures, but the com-

mon na es of Plants, of Stones, of Birds o dof Beasts. But the rinces and Lords had their denomination: from the Places and States which they go erned. As for example, the forefaid Prince, which 6) was the first Christian in Congo was called Mani Segno, that is to fay, The Prince of Sogno, and when hee was christned, was called Emanuel, but at this day they have all in generall fuch Christian names as they have learned of the Portugals.

After a Masse was celebrated and sung, one of the Priests that came from Portugall went up, and

an Religion. Mani Sogno rehearfeth the Sermon to his people.
The Parturals goe to the tife the King.

made a briefe Sermon in the Portugall Language, declaring the summe of the new Religion, and faith Afermon con- of the Golpell which they had received. This Sermon, the Priest that was left behind, having now leartiving the ned the Congo speech, did more at large expound to the Lords that were in the Church : for the Church could not possibly hold the mnumerable multitude of the people that were there gathered toes. ther, at the connersion of their Prince : who afterwards came abroad unto them, and rehearsed the whole Sermon, with great lone and charitie, moning and exhorting them to imbrace likewife the true beliefe of the Christian Doctrine.

When this was done, all the Portugals put themselves on their way towards the Court, to baptise the King, who with a most feruent longing attended the same. And the Gouernour of Sogno tooke order that many of his Lords should wait upon them with Musicke, and singing, and other signes of wonder. 10 full reins sing; besides, divers slaves which he gave them to carrie their sinste, commanding also the people, that they bould prepare all manner of will wall to bee readie in the fireets for them. So great was the number of people, that rame and met together to behold them, as the whole Champaigne stemed to bee in a manner coursed with them, and they all did in great kindnesse entertaine and welcome the Portugall Christians, with finging and founding of Trumpets and Cymbals, and other Instruments of that

them that bring tydings of peace? The Courtiers

The Portugall

Embaffadour

declareth his

Embaffage.

reidyce at it.

The King

Pertugall.

Portugals for the Christ-

ning of the

a Church.

the Douill to

hinder the

And it is an admirable thing to tell you, that all the streets and high-wayes, that reach from the Sea. How beautiful to the Citie of Saint Sauiours, being one hundred and fiftie miles, were all cleanfed and swept, and abundantly furnified with all manner of victuall and other necessaries for the Portugals. Indeed, then doe vie m thole Countries, when the King or the principall Lords goe abroad, to cleanfe their wayes and 10 make them handlome.

Three dayes iourney from the place whence they departed, they described the Kings Courtiers, that came to meet them, to present them with fresh vittuals, and to doe them bonour : and so from place to place they encountred other Lords, that for the same purpose were sent by the King to receive the Christians, who were the Messengers and Bringers of so great a toy. When they were come within three miles neere to the Citie, all the Court came to entertaine and welcome the Portugals, withall manners pompe and infulnesse, and with Musicke and Singing, as in those Countries is vied upon their solemans

And so creat was the multitude of people, which abounded in the streets, and that there was neither Tree nor Hillocke higher then the rest, but it was loden with those that were runne forth and assembled to The King him to view these Strangers, which brought unto them this new Law of their Saluation. The King himselfe selfe receiveth attended them at the eate of his Palace, in a I brone of Estate erected upon a high Seaffold, where he did publicely receive them, in such manner and fort as the ancient Kings of that Realme were accustomed to doe, when any Embassadours came onto him, or when his Tributes were payed him, or when any other (uch Royall Ceremonies were performed.

And first of all, the Embassadour declared the Embassage of the King of Portugall, which was expounded and interpreted by the foresaid Priest, that was the principall Author of the connersioned those people. After the Embassage was theu delivered, the King raysed himselfe out of his Seate . and standing upright upon his feet, did both with his countenance and speech, Shew most evident signer of The King to the great toy, that he had conceined for the comming of the Christians, and so fate down agains. And a longer that the committee of the christians and so fate down agains. And the longer that the incontinently all the people with houting, and founding their Trumpets, and Singing, and other maniest ioyceth at the arguments of reiorcing, did approve the Kings words, and shewed their exceeding good liking of this Embassage. And further in token of obedience, they did three times prostrate themselves upon the ground, and cast up their feet according to the use of those Kingdomes.

Then the King tooke view of all the Presents that were sent him by the King of Portugall, and the Vestments of the Priests, and the Ornaments of the Altar, and the Crosses, and the Tables, wherem viewe:h the were depainted the Images of Saints, and the Streamers, and the Banners, and all the rest, and with in-Prefents fent credible attention, caused the meaning of enery one of them to be declared onto him, one by one. And se withdren himselfe, and lodged the Embassadour in a Palace made readie of purpose for him, and all the vate him by the King of rest were placed in other Houses of senerall Lords, where they were furnished with all plentie and so Confulration among the

The day following, the King caused all the Portugals to be assembled together in prinate; where they denised of the course that was to be taken for the Christning of the King, and for effecting the fall con-mersion of the people to the Christnan Eath. And after sandry Discourses, it was resolved and concluaing and tot she building of ded, that first of all a Church should bee builded, to the end that the Christing, and other Ceremonist thereunto belonging, might be celebrated therein with the more Solemnitie : and in the meane while the King and Court fould be easing and officered in the Confinence Court Religion The King per (init) communed, the without pred prompted by the made of all manner of fluffenecoffur for this Building, at An infurrecti. on rayled by Timber, Stone, Lime, and Bricke, according to the direction and appointment of the Work-master; and 60 Masons, which for that purpose were brought out of Portugall.

progresse of Christian Re-But the Deuill who never ceafeth to croffe all good and holy proceedings, rayfed new diffentions and conspiracies, by procuring a rebellion among certaine people of the Anzichi, and of Anzicana, which CHAP.4. S.S. King, Queene, Mani-Sundi, and many Lords christned.

dwell upon both the bankes of the River Zitte, from the foresaid fals upwards, to the great Lake, and are subject and belonging to the King of Congo. Now this monstrous Riner being restrayned and kept backe by the le falls, doth [well there mightly, and spreadeth it selfe abroad in a very large and deepe channell. In the breadth whereof there are many Hands, some small and some great, so that in some of them, there may be maintayned about thirtie thousand persons. In these llands and in other places adjorning to the Rivers thereabouts, did the people make an infarrection, and renounced their obedience to the King. and flue the Governours that he had fent thither to rule.

us just the Ornitario state of the perfect of pacific these broyles showbeit, he resolved to bee bap. The King tifedbefore his going, and so was enforced to forbeare the building of the Church of Stone, and withall buildeth in 10 fleed, in flead thereof to erect one of Timber, which Church bee in his owne person with the advice of halle a church fleed in flead thereof to erect one of 1 moer, which comes to be and therein did receive of timber, the Portugals, did accomplish in such manner and fort as it ought to bee, and therein did receive of timber.

The King and the Sacrament of boly Baptisme, and was named Don Giouanni, and his Wife Donna Eleonora, Oueencot after the names of the King and Queene of Portugal, and the Church et selse initialed and dedicated comes christ-

The same day, wherein the King was baptifed, divers other Lords following his example were bapti. The Church fed likewife, having first learned certaine Principles of the Christian Faith. And when all this was Divers Lords done, the King went in person to disperse the turbulent attempts of his Adversaries, against whom bee baptifed. found the Price his Sonne, and the Lord of Batta alreadie fighting with a formall Armie, But at The King gothe arrivall of the King, the Enemies yeelded, and submitted themselucs to the obedience which before eth in person they performed, and so be returned in triumph to the Citie of Congo, and the Prince his Sonne with sels, and dif-

bits, and of him, who presently was desirous to become a Christian, and was christned by the name of the first Prince commeth of Portugall, called Altonio: and with him also were christned many Gentlemen and Caualieros, and them. other of his Sernants, that came with him out of his Province.

The Kings Second Sonne, would not agree to receive the new Religion, many other Lords fanoured christned and him, who being addited rather to the emfualitie of the fleft, then the puritie of the minde, resisted the withhim Goftel, which began now to be preached, especially in that Commandement, wherein it is forbidden, that Mini Poneo a man [hould have any mo Wives but one. The eldest Brother Don Alfonso, did with great fermencie, defend Christianitie, and burned all the Gospel

Idols that were within his Province. The second Brother (called Mani-Pango, because hee was Gouer- Polygamic, nour of the Countrey of Pango) did resist it mightily, and had gotten the greatest part of the principall Lords of Pango to be on his side. For there were diners of the new christned Lords, whose Ladies seems themselves seperated, and for some of their Husband-Lords by force of the Christian Law, did take it as a great insurie and scorne done unto them, and blashbemed and cursed this new Religion beyond all measure. These Lords umted themselves together with others, and began to plot Trecherie against Don Altonlo, hoping that if they could rid him out of the World, the Christian Faith would veterly cease of it Mani-Panco & selfe. And therefore Mani-Pango and bis Complices gaue intelligence to his Father, that the Prince his Complices Don Altonio fauoured the Christian Faction, onely to the end that under the colour of his countenance accust Maniand favor, they might rayle an Insurrection & Rebellion against him, of so drive him out of his Kingdom. Father, The King gaue credit to their informations, and deprined his Soune of the Government wherein hee

was placed: But the Providence of God which referred him for a greater matter, did relieve him by the good mediation and counfell of his friends, who entreated the King his Father, that hee would not be mogood mediation and counfel of his frunas, who entreated the Ang his Fainer, that he would not be morpriseth Maci-sted to anger, before he had examined the Answeres and Reasons of the Prince his Some. Wherein the Sundi of his King was especially perswaded by Mani-Sogno, who (as wee told you) was before christned, and called, government. Don Emanuel, and by good hap was in Court at that prefent. This man (being the ancientest Courtier and Lord of that time, singularly well beloned of the King and all his people) did with sound reasons and Mani-Sogno, and Lord of that time, lingularly well beloked of the King and all the people) all who found realous and mix is inter-dexteritie of wit, procure the King to renoke the fentence, with a special charge, that hee should not pro-cession for his ceed with such rigour against the Gentiles, for the propagation and exaltation of the Christian Religi- Brother. on. But he being full of ferment charitie, and godly spirit, ceased not (for all that) to admance the Faith of the Gospell, and to put the Commandements of God in execution.

Whereupon his Aduersaries who neuer rested from their former attempt, were continually at the 50 Kings elbow, and fought by all cunning shifts and secret desises, to destroy that which the good Prince had builded, especially when they saw that the Prince of Sogno was departed from Court, and returned ento his conserument. So that no bodie being now left to proteit and defend the Christian Religion, the The King wa-King began to doubt of the Faith, which with fo great zeale he had before imbraced : and therefore fent wereth in Reto his Some, that he flouldcome agains to the Court, to make account of those Revenues that he had lest M. as sungathered within the Countrey of his Gouernment, with a full intent and meaning indeed, to deprise him, dito eccount, when his accounts should be finished.

But he, in the meane-while, his Father being an old man, did by meanes of a naturall infirmitie de- deprine him. part out of this life, Andhie Mother who alwaies perfenered constant in the Catholike Faith, louing her eldest Sonne most entirely, concealed the Kings death for the space of three dayes, being therein anded and The Querne affifted by some of her trustie friends, & game it out, that the King had taken such order as no man might Mother tencome unto him to trouble him. In the meane feafon, fooded fecretly fignifie to her Sonne, the death of his dech in thate Father, which the would keepe close till his comming, and charged him without any delay, and in all hafte Mani Sundi. to freed him to the Court,

Ppppp



This shee did by certaine Runners, that from place to place in consumint distances and iourneyes, are alwaies readie like Postes, to conuey the precepts and commandements of the King oner all the Realme Whereupon he presently caused himselfe to be carried poste both day and night, by certaine Slaves accome. ding to the vie of that Countrie, and in one day and two nights, with most exquisite diligence, accompli-licat the inseries of two hundred miles, and so arrived at the Citie, before he was expected.

The funerall of King lebn, celebrated by King Afonfa.

Now together with the death of the King, there was also published the succession to the Crowne at Don Alfonio, being then present, who in his owne person did accompanie the corps of his dead Father to the buriall, with all the Lords of the Court, and all the Christian Portugals, which was folemnized after the manner of (bristendome, with service and prayers for the dead, and all this with such sunerall pompe. as was never scene before among shose people. But they which heretofore were adversaries to this new King, doubting of their owne safetie, if they Should remaine in the Court, united themselves with Manie Pango, who was now departed into the Province of his owns Government, and while his father lived was wholly employed in fighting against the Mozombi, and certaine other people that had rebelled a

Mani-Panee. rebeilerh against his brother.

Mani-Pango and his forces fet forwards to the befreging of the Citie, with fo great a noyfe of werlike Instruments, and cryes, and showtings, and terrible threatnings, that the poore few, which were in the Citie, as well Christians as others, fainted in their hearts, and failed in their courage, and came and presented themselves before the King, saying, that he had not power enough to resist so powerfull an Enemie, and therefore they thought it better for him to grow to some concord and composition, and to shen, don the new Religion, which he had lately begun to professe, to the end be might not fall into the hands of to uon 100 ter Keitgeren. Woode we communes, pears by the street of the community of the commu bim, he did not doubt, but afferedly trust, though not with the poffibilitie or strength of Man , yet with the fausur of God, to vanquish and ouercome that innumerable multitude. And therefore hee would

The King to

fake, but onely they might rest them selves and expect the if we that should follow thereon. The King ere-Acth a Croffe of a great length. The miracle which the author addes, I haue omitted a vision of light and fine

the vision of our Ladie and Saint lames, fighting agianft Mani-

of Mani-Pange, owne destru-The death of called Saint

King Alforfo

di patcheth

the Portugall Embaffadour. his owne into Portugall. The king commandeth all Idols to bee and all other

He did presently cause a Crosso to be planted, and erested in the middest of the Market place, right squinft the Church, which his Father had builded. This Croffe was of a wonderfull length, for it was Surescore spanne long, and the Crosse-barre in proportion answerable thereunto. The Crosse is to be u seene in the same place, wherein it was erested, at the front of the Church, which Church was called Saint Crosses, of the Crosse there planted. This Crosse the last King, that dead is, Don Aluaro, Father to the King that now is, renewed and made another of the same biguesse that the first was of.

not request them either to to me with him, or to put their lines in bazard against his adner faries for his

Mani-Pango terrified with visions, and not with his brothers forces, ouercome with feare and danger ranne away, and fell into the Snares and Nets which he himselfe had laid for the Christians; For lighfwords, as also ting among the foresaid Stakes, he was with one of them thrust into the bodie, and so being surprized with an enill death, he finished his life, as it were in a rage. For you must understand, that the sharpe ends of the faid Stakes, were enuenomed with a certaine porfon, which taking hold of the blood, and entring somewhat into the field, would kill without all cure or remedie. By this victorie and death of his brother, did the King remaine in securitie and libertie.

All things well established, the King Don Alfonso tooke order, that they should presently goe in hand " The fratagem with the fabricke of the Principall Church, called Saint Croftes, which was so named of the Crofte that was there planted, (as wee told you before) and also because upon the Feast day of the boly Crosse, the first stone was laid in the soundation thereof. Morcouer, be commanded that the men should bring Stones, and the women should fetch fand from the River, for the furthering of this worke. The King would needs be the first Porter himselfe, and upon his owne shoulders brought the first basket of stones, which be cast into the foundation, and the Queene ber basket of [and likewife, thereby giving an examof the Church plo to the Lords and the Ladies of the Court to doe the like, and to encourage and hearten the people in so boly an action. And so this fabricke being furthered by so good Work-masters and Workmen, in a very short time was fully finished, and therein were celebrased Masses, and other Dinine Service, with 10 great solemnisie, besides, a number of Lords and others; that were there bapissed and christned: so that the 10 multitude of such as came to be partakers of the holy Bapt: sme abounded so greatly, that there were not Priests enough to execute that office.

After this the King dispatched away the Portugall Embassadour, who till this time had remained at and another of the Court, by reason of these troubles: and with him be sent also another Embassadour of his owne, called Don Roder:co, and divers others that were of kinne both to himselfe and to his Embassadour, to the end that they should learne, both the Doctrine of the Christians in Portugall, and also their Language, and further declare unto the King all these accidents that hapned.

Moreover, hee caused the Lords of all his Provinces to be assembled together, in a place appointed for that purpose, and there publicely signified onto them, that who sever had any Idols, or any thing elfe 60 that was contrarie to the Christian Religion he should bring them forth and deliner them over to the Lieuthings that are tenants of the Countrie. Otherwife, who seemer did not so, should be burned them selues, without remissions or pardon. Which commanded was incontinently that in execution. And a wonderfull thing it is to be noted, that within leffe then one moneth, all the Idols, and Witcheries and Characters, which they

worldipped and accounted for Gods, were fent and brought unto the Court. Many there were, that caried a deution to Dragons with wings, which they nourshed and fed in their owne private houles, tiuing onto them for their food, the best and most costly Viands that they had. Others kept Serpents of borrible figures: Some worshipped the greatest Goats they could get; some Tygers, and other most monstrom creatures; yea, the more vinconth and deformed the Beasts were, the more they were bonoted. Some held in veneration certains uncleane Fowles, and Night-birds, as Bats, Owles, and Scriich-Owles , and such like. To be bruefe, they did choose for their Gods diners Snakes, and Adders, and Beasts, and Birds, and Herbs, and Trees, and Jundry Characters of Wood and of Stone, and the figures of all these thines about rehearsed, as well painted in Colours, as granen in Wood and in Stone, and in 10 Such other Stuffe. Neither did they onely content themselves with worshipping the faid Creatures. when they were quicke and aline, but also the verie skinnes of them when they were dead, being stuffed

with straw. The act of this their adoration, was performed in dinersforts, all wholly addressed, and directed to ex- Their denomin presse their humilitie, as by kneeling on their knees, by casting themselves groueling upon the earth, by worthing defiling their faces with dust, by making their prayers unto their Idols, in words and in actions, and by of Idols. offering unto them the best part of the Jubstance which they had in their poffession. They had moreoner, Witches their Witches, which made the foolish people to believe that their Idols could speake, and so decided them: and if any man being in fick ne fe or infirmitie, would recommend himselfe unto them, and afterwards that man recovered his health, the Witches would per [wade, him that the Idoll had beene angry with him.

but now was appealed and had be aled him.

The King caused fire to be set unto their Idols, and utterly consumed them. When he had the done. be assembled all his people together, and in stead of their Idols which before they had in reverence . hee gane them Crucifixes, and Images of Saints, which the Portugals had brought with them, and eniormed every Lord, that every one in the Citie of his owne Government and Regiment, should build a The king com-Church, and set up Crosses, as he had already shewed unto them by his owne example. And then he told in andeth every Lord to build a them and the rest of bus people, that he had dispatched an Embasadour into Portugall to fetch Priests, Church, in the that should teach them Religion, and administer the most holy and wholesome Sacraments to enery one Citic of his of them, and bring with them disters Images of Christ of the Urrem Mother, and of other Saints to disonne countries.

Of this temporal tem in the faith. But they had so linely imprinted the same in their bearts, that they nester more remembred Imagerie. their former beliefe in falle and lying Idols.

He ordained moreover, that there stould be three Churches builded. One in renerence of our Sani- The Kine builour, to give him, thankes for the victorie which he had granted visto him, wherein the Kings of Cort- dech three 20 doe lye buried, and whereof the Citie Royall tooke the name, (for as it was told you before, at is called Churches, go doe the burren, and worren the caste to name, the manner, the mother of God, called, One S. Saniours.) The second Church, was dedicated to the blessed Virgin, the mother of God, called, One Ladie of Help, in memorie of the succour which he had against his enemies: And the third, was con- The secon fecrated to S. Iames : in bonour and remembrance of the Miracle which that Saint had wrought by our Lady of 40 fighting in the fauour of the Christians, and shewing himselfe on Horse-backe in the heate of the Hebe.

Butaile.

Not long after this, the ships arrived from. Portugall, with many men that were skilfull in the boly Scriptures, and divers religious Friers of the Orders of S. Francis, and of S. Dominick, and of S. turne from Scriptures, and distor religious tries of 100 UTANES of S. FLANDS, of S. D. S. the firetes. These Priests being arrived into their senerall Proninces, did instruct the people in the Faith of Christ.

The death of the King Don ALFONSO, and the succession of Don PIED RO. How the Hand of S. THOMAS was first inhabited, and of the Bishop that was sent thither : The Kings linage extinct : Inualion of the lagges : Their fanage conditions.

Hile these matters were thus in working for the service of God, and that Christiani. King Alfonso tie was now begun and increased with so happy successe, it pleased God to call away to himselfe the King Don Alfonso, who at the time of his death, discoursed of the Christian Religion, with so great confidence and charitie, as it euidently appeared, that the Crosse and Passion, and the true beliefe in our Saulour Iesus Christ, was imprinted in the root of his heart. To Don Piedro, his sonne and successour, he did especially and principally Don Piedro recommend the Christian doctrine, which indeed following the example of his father, hee did succeedeth

maintaine and vphold accordingly. In his time, there began to faile into these quarters a great number of vessels, and the Hand of S. Ppppp 2

neth to be inhabited. The King of Portugall fen-Bishop of the Ile of S.Thomas, and of

The le of S. Thomas was inhabited with Portugals, by the Kings commandement. For before those daves Theracor of Thomas begin it was all waste and desert within Land, and inhabited onely upon the shoare by a few Saylers that came from the Countries adioyning. But when this Iland in processe of time was well peopled with Portugals, and other Nations, that came thither by licence of the King, & became to be of great Trafficke, and was Tilled and Sowed, the King fent thither a Bishop, to gouerne the dethane to be Christians that were in that Iland, and those also that were in Congo: which the faid Bishop did accomplish presently upon his arrivall, and afterwards in Congo, where hee tooke pessession of his Pastorall charge. When he was come into the Kingdome of Congo, it was a thing incredia ble to see, with how great toy he was entertained by the King and all his people.

For from the Sea side, even unto the Citie, being the space of one hundred and sistie miles, he canfed the streetes to be made smooth and trim, and to bee concred all ouer with Mats, commanding the 10 ment of the Bilhop in Ces. People, that for a certaine space severally appointed unto them, they should prepare the water in such fort that the Bishop should not set his feet upon any part of the ground which was not adorned. But it was a far greater wonder, to behold all the Country thereabouts, and all the Treet, and all the places that were higher then the rest, swarming with men and women that ran forth to see the Bishop, as a man that was bely and sent from God, offering unto him, some of them Lambs, some Kids, some Chickins, some Partridges, some Venison, and some Fish, and other kinds of viltuals in such abundance, that be know not what to doe withall, but left it behind him; whereby he might well know the great zeale and obedience of these new Christians. And aboue all other things it is to be noted for a memorable matter, that the Bilhop going on his way, there met him an immumerable multitude of men, and women, and goles, and boyes, and perfous of fourescore yeares of age, and aboue, that crossed hims in the streets, and with 20 fineular tokens of true reliefe required the mater of holy Baptisme at his hands: neither would they suffer him to passe untill be had given it them: so that to satisfie their desires, hee was greatly stared in bis voyage, and was faine to carrie water with him in certaine veffels, and Salt, and other provision ne ceffary for that attion.

The Bishop Gathedrall Church of S.

And now I will tell you, be arrived at the Citie of Saint Sautours, where he was met by the Priests. and by the King, and by all the Court, and so in procession entred into the Church, and after due thankes gissen to God, he was conducted to his lodging, that was assigned unto him by the King. And then pre-fently he beganns to resorme and reduce to good order, the Church is selfs, and the Friers, and Priess that dwell therein : ordaining the faid Church to be the Cathedrall Church of Saint Croffes; which at that time bad belonging unto it eight and twentie Canons, with their Chaplaines, and a Master of the 10 Chappell, with Singers, and Organs, and Bels, and all other furniture meete to execute Distine service. But this Bishop who laboureth in the Lords Vineyard, sometimes in Congo, and sometimes in the Ile of Saint Thomas, going and comming continually by Ship, the space of twentie daies, and still leaving bebind him, his Vicars in the place where he himselfe was absent, at the last dyed, and was buried in the Iland of Saint Thomas. After this Bijbop, succeeded another Bijbop in Congo, being a Negro, and descended of the blood Royall, who before had beene sent by King Altonio sirit into Portugall, and asterwards to Rome,

where he learned the Latine tongue, and the Christian Religion, but being returned into Portugall, and

whereupon the Kinedome remained without a Pastor for the space of diners yeares. Don Piedro alle the King aforesaid, dyed likewise without Children; and there succeeded him his Brother, called. Don

Francisco, who in like manner lasted but a while: and then was created the fift King, named Don

tie, of a very good disposition, wise in counsell, and above all other qualities, a maintainer of Christian Fash : and in brusse, so great a Warriows he was, that in few yeares he conquered all the Countries ad-

ioming. He loued the Portugals very much, so that he for sooke the v suall garments of his owne natu-

apparell, as also in the ornaments and furniture of his palace: he was besides very courteons and the-

cost would be provide and buy such finffe as pleased him, and would often say, that Rare things should

not be in the hands of any but onely of Kings. He vied to weare one fuite of apparell but once or

twice, and then he would give it away to his followers. Whereupon the Portugals perceining, that he did

To greatly esteeme cloath of Gold and Arras, and Such other costly houlhold-stuffe, they brought great

apparen, an anjourned to the store largely, both upon his owne Subiects, and also upon the Portugals. With great 10

Landed out of his Ship, to goe and enter upon his Bishopricke of Saint Sautours, be dyed by the way: 40

The Bishop

Thefecond Bishop dyeth.

The King Den succeedeth and Diego, who was next of all the race Royall: A man of baughtie courage, and magnificall, and wit-Don Diego the fift King.

The King Diego rall Countrey, and attired bimselfe after the Portugall fashion. He was very simptuous, as well in his very fumpru-

flore thereof out of Portugall, fo that at that time, Arras-hangings, and Cloth of Gold, and of Silke. and such like Lordly furniture, began to be of great estimation in that Kingdome. In the time of this King, there was a third Bulop of Saint Thomas, and Congo, by Nation a Porthop of S. The- tugall, who with the visual ceremonies was entertained both by the way, and also in the Court at Saint man, & of Congo Sauiours. And now enery man esteemed bim selfe not onely to be as good as the Bostop, but also to be a farre better man then he was ; and therefore would yeeld no obedsence to their Prelate. But the King 60 like a good Catholike, and a failbfull, did alwaies maintaine the Bilhops part, and to cut off these troubles and stirres, he sent some of these Priests to prison into Portugall, and others into the Ile of Saint Thomas, and some others went away with all their substance of their owne accord.

Also after the death of this King, there started up three Princes at once to challenge the fur-

cession. The first was the Kings Sonne, whom few of them favoured, because they defired to have another, fo that hee was flaine incontinently. The two other that remained were of the blood Royall : one of them was created King by his fauourites and followers . with the good liking of the greater part of the people, but vtterly against the minds of the Portugals, and gertaine of the Lords, who aymed and endeauoured to let up the other. In fo much as the forefaid Lords, together with the Portugals, went into the Church to kill the King elected : making this reckoning with themselves, that if they slue him, the other must of necessitie bee made King. But at that very felfe-fame time, those of the contrary faction had flaine the King that was already made by the Portugals, perswading themselves affuredly, that he being dead, there To would be no difficultie for them to obtaine the State for their King, because there was none other left, that by law could challenge the Scepter Royall. And thus in an houre, and in two feuerall places, were thefe two Kings murthered at once.

In these conforacies and slaughters, when the people saw that there were no lawfull persons The Portugate left to enjoy the Royall Crowne, they laid all the blame upon the Portugals, who were the flaine and difcausers of all these mischiefes : and thereupon they turned themselves against them, and slue as peried. many of them as they could find: Onely they ipared the Priefts, and would not touch them, nor any other that dwelt in other places.

Seeing therefore (as before is faid) that there was none of the blood Royall left to be placed Don Henrica in the Gouernment, they made choite of one Don Henrico, Brother to Don Diego the King de- created King.

20 ceased. And this Henrico going to warre against the Anziehi, left behind him in his stead for Gouernour, under the Title of King, one Don Aluaro, a young man of fine and twenty yeares of age, sonne to his Wife by another Husband. But Don Henrico dyed shortly after the warre King Henrico was ended, and thereupon the faid Don Aluaro was with the common confent of them all ele- dieth and Don was ended, and thereupon the last Don extuaro was with the common content of them all elediagraphic ceeceed King of longo, and generally obeyed of enery man. And thus failed the Royall flocke of deth; and fo the ancient Kings of Congo, in the person of Don Hemico.

But Don Almero was a man of good judgement and gournment, and of a milde disposition, the ancient so that he did presently appeale all these tumults in his Kingdome, and caused all the Partingals Kings of Congo that by the laft warres were dispeared over all the Countries there-abouts, to be gathered to coaled. gether, as well religious persons as lay men, and by their meanes he was much better confirmed floreth the 20 in the Catholike Faith, then he was before.

Moreover, he vied them very courteoutly, and cleared them of all faults that were laid to their charge, declaring vnto them by gentle difcourfes, that they had not beene the occasion of the former troubles, as every man would confesse and acknowledge; and to that effect hee determined with himfelfe to write a large information touching all these accidents to the King of Portugall, and to the Bishop of Saint Thomas, which he did accordingly, and dispatched certains Messengers vnto them with his letters.

When the Bilton of Saint Thomas understood these newes, he was very glad thereof, and whereas The Bilton of before he dwest not adventure to goe into the Kingdome of Congo in the heate of all those troubles, he s. Thomas re-did now presently take ship and sayled thinker, where he imployed himselfe whosly with all his authorisie, turneth into 40 to pacifie the first primer alfording, and to fet downe order for all field matters as concerned the words of the filled for the first as a concerned the words of the filled for the filled filled for the filled fo that those parts remained without a Bishop.

Now it came to passe, that for want of Bishops, the King and the Lords, and the people likewise began King alware li-Non icame to page, tous per man y yourses men man additing immedia, incoming to be literie of the web licensis. By web licensis, but we would be come age, that due only, familiarly connerse with him. Among whom there was one principall man, that was both a Lord, and Francisco Balla his Kinsman, called Don Francisco Bullamatare, that is say, Catch-stone. This man, because he was Matare, an ill a great Lord, and wholly estranged from all instructions of Christiannie, walked inordinately after his Councellour owne pleasure, and did not sticke to defend openly, That it was a very vaine thing to keepe but one to the King. Wife, and therefore it were better to returne to their former ancient cuftome. And fo by his meanes didthe Denill open a gase, to the onerthrow and destruction of the Church of Christ in that pullamatere di-Kingdome, which untill that time with so great paine and transile had beene there established. But eth: and as afterwards the man did so wander and stray out of the way of truth, that he fell from one sinne to ano they say, carither, and in the end quite relinquished and abandoned all true Religion. Tet at the last, the faud Francisco ed out of his stied, and was folemnly buried.

For not long after, there came to rob and spoyle the Kingdome of Congo, certaine Nations What people that live after the manner of the Arabians, and of the ancient Nomades, and are called Giachas. the Giachas Their habitation or dwelling is about the first Lake of the River Nilse, in the Province of the are : Their 60 Empire of Moenemusi. A cruell people they are and a murderous, of a great stature, and horrible conductors, countenance, fed with mans flesh, fierce in battell, & valarous in courage. Their weapons are Pa- Of their, fee uifes or Targets, Darts and Daggers : otherwife they goe all naked. In their fashions and daily Andrew Battell, course of luning, they are very suage and wilde: They have no King to governe them, and they Chip 3, which leade their life in the Forcest under Cabbing and Cottages like Shanbage is leade their life in the Forrest under Cabbins and Cottages like Shepheards.

The Giachas Royall Citie

This people went wandring vp and downe, destroying, and putting to fire and sword . and robbing and ipoyling all the Countries that they passed through till they came to the Realmens Congo, which they entred on that fide where the Province of Batta lyeth. Those that first came forth to make reliftance against them, they ouerthrew, and then addressed themselves towards the Citie of Congo, where the King remayned at that time in great perplexitie, for this victorie that his enemies had gotten in the Countrey of Batta: yet fome comfort he tooke to himselfe and went out against his Adversaries with such Souldiers as he had, and in the same place, where in times past Mani-Pango fought with the King Don Alfonfo, he joyned battell with them. In which encounter the King being halfe discompted, retyred into the Citie, wherein when hee perceived that he could not remayne in good fafetie, being veterly forfaken of the grace of God 19 by reason of his sinnes, and not having that confidence in him, that Don Alson fo had, he thought good to leave it for a prey to his Adverlaries, and to betake himselfe to an Hand within the Rim uer Zaire, called Ifola del Canallo, that is to fay, The Ile of Horfe; where he continued with cer-Byeth into the taine Portugall Priests, and other principall Lords of his Kingdome. And thus were the Giachi become Lords and Masters of the Citie Royall, and of the whole Realme. For the naturall Inhabitants fied away, and faued themselues in the Mountaynes, and defart places : but the enemies turprise the Citie, and rule burned and wasted, Citie, and Churches, and all, and spared no mans life, so that having divided themselues into seuerall Armies, they ruled and gouerned sometimes in one Prouince, and sometimes in another ouer all the Kingdome.

The King, and those that folplagued with

Ile of Horfes,

As for the poore people, they went wandring like Vagabonds over all the Country, and perished for hunger and want of necessaries. And for the King with those that followed him, and had faued themselves in the Hand, they also, because the He was very little, and the multitude great, were oppressed with so terrible a scarsitie of victualls, that the most part of them died by famine and peffilence. For this dearth so increased, and meate arose to so excessive a rate, that for a very small pittance (God wot) they were faine to give the price of a flave, whom they were wont to fell for ten Crownes at the leaft. So that the Father was of necessitie conflrayned to fell his owne Sonne; and the Brother, his Brother, and fo every man to provide his victualls by all manner of wickednesse. The persons that were fold, for the satisfying of other mens hunger, were bought by the Portugall Merchants, that came from Saint Thomas with their thins laden with victualls. Those that fold them, faid, they were Slaues; and those that were fold, juitified and confirmed the fame, because they were desirous to be rid of their greedie torment. And by this occasion there was no small quantitie of Slaues, that were borne in Congo, bloud Royall fold ypon this necessitie, and sent to the He of Saint Thomas, and to Portugall, among whom fold for Slaues there were fome of the bloud Royall, and fome others, principall Lords.

to the Portu-

King Aluare dropfic.

deth fuccour

tugall with letters for moe Pri:fts.

The King becommerh 1 good Christian, and mar-

By this affliction, the King did manifestly learne and know, that all these great miseries and aduerlities abounded for his mildeeds: and although he was not much punished with hunger, because he was a King, yet he did not escape the cruell infirmitie of the dropsie, that made his legs to fwell exceedingly, which disease was engendred, partly by the aire, and very ill diet, and partly by the movimeffe of the Hand, and so it accompanied him even vntill his death. But in the meane while, being stricken to the heart with these misfortunes and calamities. he converted and turned to God, requiring pardon for his offences, and doing penance for his sinnes : and 40 then was counfelled and aduifed by the Portugals, that he should fend to request succours of the fend th to the King of Portugall, by certaine Embashidors, that might recount vnto him all the mischiefs which King of Portu- had lighted vpon him. This embassage was accordingly performed, at the same time that the all ter fuccor.

Don Schaftun

King Don Schaftun began his reigne, who with great speed and kindnesse sent him succours by the King of a Captaine, called Francisco di Gonea, a man well exercised in divers warres, both in India, and Portugallica- also in Africa, who lead with him fixe hundred Souldiers, and many Gentlemen Aduenturers, that did accompanie him.

This Captaine, Francisco di Gones, carried with him a commandement from his King, that the Jolland of Saint Thomas should prouide him ships and victualls, and what source else was requisite the King, and for this enterprise. And with this prouision he arrived at the last in the He of Horse, where the King of Congo was relident. In whose companie the Portugalls departing from thence, and gathering together all the men of warre in that Country, with all speed possible, put themselves Francisco di Go. Onwards against their Aduersaries, and fought with them fundrie times in plaine battell, so that uta, after foure at the end of one yeere and a halfe, they restored the King into his former estate. Which victoyeeres retur- rie they atchieued indeed by the noyfe and force of their Harquebuffes, for the Giachi are exceen: th into Por- dingly afraid of that weapon.

The Portugall Captaine stayed there for the space of four yeeres, to fertle the King in his Kingdome, and then returned into Portugall with letters of request to his King, that hee would fend ouer fome moe Priests to vphold and maintayne the Christian Religion. And the King be- 60 ing thus established in his former degree, and the Kingdome all in quiet and peace, became a very good Christian, and married the Lady Katharina, who is yet aline; by whom hee had foure daughters, and by certaine Maid-femants, which he kept, two fonnes and one daughter. And because in those Regions the women doe not succeed; there remay ned as Heire of his Kingdome his elder fonne, called also Don Aluaro, who liveth at this day, 1588.

During the time, that the forefald Captoine flayed in Coogo, the King of Portugall, Dow Se-ballions valeritanding, that these were in that Kingdome duers Caues and Mines of Silver, of regalfendeth Gold, and other Metals, fent thither two persons that were cunning and skilfull in that Arte, to make search for therein they had ferued the Castilians in the Weit) to make fearch for them, and to draw in Consessor ion e profit thereof. But the King of Congo was by a certaine Portugall, called Francisco Bar. metall Mines. fon e profit thereot. But the King of Congo was of the contrarie, that he should not but that was his Confesior, and great familiar, perswaded to the contrarie, that he should not but diffusbuto, that was us Contenor, and great sammar properties of the thereby peraduenture dethits any case suffer those Mines to be discovered: ingnifying vnto him, that thereby peraduenture dethits King in any care runer choic raines to be subscribed in might by little and little be taken quite from from making the free enjoying and polletion of his Kingdome, might by little and little be taken quite from from making him, and therefore adulfed him that he would cause these skilfull Masters to bee led and guided the search, and to by some other wayes, where he knew there were no metall Mines to be found, which he did aucydeth itby by lome other wayes, where he knew there water a great milchiefe: for, thereupon began the localicity. But affuredly, it grew afterwards to a great milchiefe: for, thereupon began the The income great trade and trafficke in that Countrie to cease, and the Portugall Merchants did not greatly nience of not great trace and trained in the dwelling there any more. And so consequently, very few Priests suffering the resorted among them. So that as well upon these occasions, as also for other such causes afore rehearsed, metall Mines the Christian Religion waxed so cold in Congo, that it wanted very little of being vitterly extinguished, to be digged But the King Don Aluaro ceased not still to send new Embasadors into Portugall, with earnest re- Pices reserved quest that he might have moe Priests, and such as were skilfull in the holy Scriptures to maintaine the notto save Catholike Faith, which was now almost utterly forgotten in that Realme, onely for want of religious per- soules so much Catabolike Faith, which was now atmost viterey progress in total actuates, every yet many of retigeous per-occito mixed, from, that should teach the people and administer the Sacraments. He bad more observativers from item, as to get gold, from, that should teach the people and administer the Sacrament. He had not not the more than the sacrament of the sacramen while he presided neither Priests, nor Distinct to be sent for Congo. Whereupon the King of Congo basiladors into wonte to granucazentor rriciti, ser Jumes i vo ten por Conigo, revertupos i ce Ang of Conigo ballidos in dipacted againe acober principal Embalfadori, beng ba kinjuna, called Don Schattano Aluarcz, Portugal for together with a Portugall, to beare bono companie. But be was faure to returne bonne againe into Con-moc Priciba-

20, without any Priests or Religious persons to goe with him. , without any Priests or Keligious persons to goe with nim.

Three recres after, the King Don Schaltiano dispatched a certaine Bishop (called Don Antonio de returne into gli Qua, being a Castilian borne) principally to the Iland of Saint Thomas: but withall hee gane him congowithout also a commission to visite the Kingdome of Congo: who being arrived at Saint Thomas, fell at larte any Priests. with the Captaine there, and so sailed into Congo; there he stayed eight moneths, and then departed a. Anionio degli gaine, and left behind him in Congo, two Priars, and foure Priefts. The Bishop being thus gone, and Ous lent by gaine, and 161 pennia min in Arrica, there was exalted to the Crowne of Portugall, Don Henrico the the Portugall to the King overthrowne in Arrica, there was exalted to the Crowne of Portugall, Don Henrico the King to be Cardinall to whom the King of Congo did write, with great instance, and earnest request; that bee Bishop of S.

would fend him some religious persons, and Preachers.

Thereas

After Don Henrico succeeded Philip King of Castile, who sent advertisements to the Captaine Congs. of Saint Thomas, that he was innested in the Crowne of Porcugall, and Letters also to the King of Don Selastion of Saint Thomas, that he was intelled in the Crowne of Portugall, and Letters and to the King of K. of Portugall Congo, to the same effect: and in his Letters proffered to discover vnto him the metall Mines, which overshown heretofore bad beene concealed from all the other Kings his Predecessors: and withall sent him discres in Africa, and trials of them; befeeching him especially withall affection are entreatie, that (as soone as possibly he could) Don Henries be would surned him with some store of Priest: But Costa, which was sent, died by the way, the Vessell the Costinall we would purme to my train from a friend or train to the Letters, that were found in a little Cheft, spaining and the multiple many trains the footness that the multiple many trains the footness that the multiple ments were known by the content of the Letters, that were found in a little Cheft, spaining of the latters and the multiple ments were known by the content of the Letters, that were found in a little Cheft, spaining of the latters and the multiple ments and the many that the ments of the latters. which was driven on Landby the waves of the Sea.

After this he made choise of one Odoardo Lopez a Portugall borne, from whose month Piga- dinall. fetta tooke this present report, and put it in writing. This man had dwelt now a good time in those Re- The King of

gions, and was well experienced in the affaires of the World

The summe of his Embassage was this: That he should present his Letters to the King Don Phi- Sparnethe dis-Spane the dil-lip, and at large discourse some bim the state, wherein the Kingdome of Congo stood, touching matter courtie of the of Religion, by the reason of the somer Warves, and scarshie of Priests, and thereupon request his Ma. metall Mines iclies to provide him a competent number of Confessors, and Preachers, that might be sufficient to main. in Congo, with taine the Gospell in those remote Countries, being but lately connerted to Christianitie. Moreoner, Frieth. that he should show onto him the fundrie trials of Metals, which he had made, and many other matters, Costs dicth by

50 which were worthis to be knowne : and withall, that he fould proffer unto him in his name, free and li- the way, and berall trafficke of them, which heretofore was ener denied to his Predecessors. Touching the Pepe, That his mellage be should themse on his behalfe his feet, deliner unto him his Letters, and recount the miserable knowed byter trouble and detriment that his people had suffered for the Christian Faith. That he should recommend found. those poore soules to his Holinesse, and beseech him, as the universall Father of all Christians, to have The Embascompassion veon so many faithfull persons, who because they had no Priests to deliner the holy Faith with sage of Odomthem, and to administer the whose one Sacraments, were by little and little falling into enertalling perdition. And being thus dispatched he departed from the Court, and went about certain services for the King. His simbilings. wherein he frent about eight moneths. So that in Ianuarie, being then Sommer time in Congo, he em- to the Pope. barked himselfe in a Vessell of one hundred Tunne burthen , which was bound with her lading for Lit-

bon. But forced by leakes and winds, the Pilot thought it better to turne his course, and ta- The Ilo of carking the wind in the poope, to goe and faue themselves in the Hands of Noua Hispania. And begon. they arrived with much ador, at a little Hand, called Cubagon; and fituate over against the He The He of S. of Saint Margarete, where they fish for Pearles. From thence, when they had in some hafte Margarete.

deth the Car.

new kingdome

1018

of Grandain The thio lunke in the Hauen. Odgardo Lopez flayeth in Camand a veare and a balfe. The King of Coago fenderh Don Piedro Antonio, and the fame Fmbaffage which he fent by Lo-

misfortune drowned, and Congo dyeth. Conqueft of Odoardo Lopez changeth his kind of profeffion. Lapez goeth to he was kindly entertayned by the Pose. The Vow of Odowdo Lopez to erecta Seminary,and an Holostall in

mitteth the whole matter to the King of Spaine.

amended their thip, and fome-what refreshed themselves , they sayled with a shore out to the firme Land, and tooke Hauen in a Port, called Cumana, or (as it is called by another name) The new Kingdome of Granado in the West Indies. This battered and weather-beaten Vessell, was no the West Indies fooner arrived in this fafe Harbour, but it funke prefently.

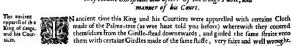
While the forefaid Embaffadour endeauoured in this place to recouer his former health, the company of thips, which is called La Florta, that is to fay, The Fleet, and vieth every yeare to faile from that Coast for Castile, departed from thence, so that he was confirmed to flay for a new Nauie, and so consumed a whole yeare and a halfe without doing any good. In this meane time the King of Congo fent another Embaffadour with the felfe-lame commandements, called Don Piedro Antonio, the second person in all his Realm, & with him one Gasparo Diaz, a Portugal, 10

But an infortunate end had this Embaffadour, for he was taken at Sea by Englishmen, and his ship also, which being drawne towards England, when it was neere vnto the Coast, by great misfortune it ranne a-thwart the shoare, and there Don Piedro Antonio , and his Sonne were Portugall, with both drowned : but the Portugall and some few others with him escaped, and arrived in Spaine. at such time as the faid Odowdo was come to the Court, and had entred upon the charge of his Embassage.

There he was courteously entertained by his Catholike Maiestie, to whom he propounded the contents of his Commissions. But divers great accidents there happened. For first, he heard the Don Piedro 12ken by the Eng- dolorous newes of the Kings death, that ient him on this meffage : and then the King Don Philip was wholly bufied about the Conquest of England, fo that his bufinesse went nothing for- 20 wards, but was delayed from time to time : neither did he see any meanes of dispatch, but his Sonne with rather he was given to vinderstand, that for that time they could not intend to harken vinte him.

Now the foresaid Odoardo, being afflicted with so many adversities, renounced the World Aluaro Kingof with all the deceitfull pompe and glorie thereof, and in Madrill apparelled himselfe in a grey course habit, and so went to Rome, to declare to Sixtus Quintus the Pope, the Tenor and Commission of his Embassage, because he would not altogether neglect the good intent and meaning of the King, that had fent him, although hee were now descended into a better life. Hee was kindly welcommed and received by his Holinesse, to whom he discoursed the miserable effate wherein the Christian people of the Realme of Congo did stand, for want of the worthip and fer-uice of God, and also the small number of Priests, that were there to instruct them in the Do- 30 Etrine of the Gospel, and to deliuer vnto them the Sacraments of the Church, especially the multitude in that Countrey, being (as it were) innumerable, that every day reforted together. to be baptifed, instructed, confessed and communicated. Moreover, he made a vow and resolved in his mind, that with fuch flore of wealth, as God had bleffed him withall in Congo, (which was not very fmall) he would build a house, wherein for the feruice of God, there should dwell certaine learned men, and fundry Priests, to instruct the youth of those Countries in all good Languages, and in the Arts Liberall, and in the Doctrine of the Gospel, and in the Mysteries of our Saluation. Out of which House, as it were out of a holy Schoole, there might come forth from time to time, many learned men and well studyed in the Law of God, that should be able in their owne naturall Countrey Tongue, to awaken and raife againe the Faith of Christ, which 40 was now alleepe, and dryed up in those Regions: and thereby in processe of time there would fpring vp many fruits of bleffing, and vigilant foules in the Christian Faith. Hereunto hee meant also to adde an Hospitall, that might be a Recourse and Harbour for Gods poore, which comming and fayling out of strange Countries should have reliefe and entertainement in that Hostelry, and the re be cured and restored of their infirmities and necessities. With this purpose therefore he went to Rome, to obtaine of his Holineste a Licence to erect this Seminarie and Hospitall, and to befeech him also that he would grant him Iubilies, Indulgences, and other Dispensations, that for such Christian and wholsome workes are requisite, especially to the vie and benefit of those Countries, which are so remote from Christendome. He presented himselfe to the Pope, and deliuered vnto him his Letters of credence, and then declared vnto him at large 50 the Tenor of his Commissions, wherein hee had a gracious audience. But when the Pope did understand that the Kingdome of Congo belonged to the King of Spaine, he remitted that mateter wholly vnto him.

of the Court of the King of Congo. Of the apparell of that people before they became Christians and after. Of the Kings Table, and



They yield also to hang before them, like an Apron, certaine delicate and daintie skinnes of little Tyeres. of Cinet-cats, of Sabels, of Maternes, and of such like creatures for an ornament : and for a more glorious pompe and shew, they did weare vpon their shoulders a certaine Cane like a Hood. Voon their bare skinne they had a certaine round Garment like a Rotchet, which they call Incusto, reaching downe to their knees, made after the manner of a Net, but the stuffe of it was very fine cloth of the faid Palme-tree, and at the skirts there hung a number of threedtaffels, that made a very gallant shew. These Rotchets were turned vp againe, and tucked vpon their right shoulder, that they might be the more at libertie on that hand. Vpon that shoulder also they had the tayle of a Zebra, fastned with a handle, which they vsed for a kind of

to brauerie, according to the most ancient custome of those parts. On their heads they wore Caps of yellow and red colour, fquare about and very little, fo that they scarcely couered the tops of The stoiene their heads, and worne rather for a pompe and a vanitie, then to keep them either from the Aire apparell of or from the Sunne. The most part of them went vushed : but the King and some of the great the meant Lords did weare certaine shooes of the old fashion, such as are to bee feene in the ancient Images fort. of the Romanes, and these were made also of the Wood of the Paime-tree. The pocrer fort and common people were apparelled from their middle downewards, after the same manner, but the cloth was courfer; and the reft of their bodie all naked. The women yied three kinds of Trauerses, or (as it were) Aprons : beneath their Girdle-stead. One was very long and reached to their heeles: the second shorter then that, and the third shorter then both the other, with fringes about them, and every one of these three fastned about their middle, and open before. From

20 their brests downewards, they had another Garment, like a kind of Doublet or Iacket, that reashed but to their Girdle: and over their shoulders a certaine Cloake. All these severall Garments were made of the same cloth of the Palme-tree. They were accustomed to goe with their faces vncourred, and a little Cap on the head, like a mans Cap. The meaner fort of women were apparelled after the same manner, but their cloth was courser. Their Maid-servants; and the basest kind of women were likewise attyred from the Girdle downeward, and all the rest of the bodie

But after that this Kingdome had received the Christian Faith, the great Lords of the Court Their new kind beganne to apparell themselues after the manner of the Portugals, in wearing Cloakes, Spanilo of apparell Caps, and Tabbards, or wide Iackets of Scarlet, and cloth of Silke, euery man according to his wealth and abilitie. Vpon their heads they had Hats, or Caps, and vpon their feet Moyles or Pantofiles, of Veluet and of Leather, and Buskins after the Portugall falhion, and long Rapiers by

The common people, that are not able to make their apparell after that manner doe keeps their old custome. The women also goe after the Portugall fashion, sauring that they weare no Cloakes, but vpon their heads they have certaine Veiles, and vpon their Veiles blacke Veluet Caps, garnished with Iewels, and Chaines of Gold about their neckes. But the poorer fort keepe 40 the old fashion : for onely the Ladies of the Court doe bedecke themselves in such manner as we

After the King himselfe was converted to the Christian Religion, hee conformed his Court in The Court of a certaine fort after the manner of the King of Portugall. And first, for his service at the Table Congenowimis when he dineth or suppeth openly in publike, there is a Throne of Estate erected with three tateth the then a control of the state of Crimfon Veluet, adorned with Boffes and Nayles of Gold. He alwayes teedeth alone by himselfe, neither doth any man ever sit at his Table, but the Princes stand about him with their heads couered. He hath a Cupboord of Plate of Gold and Siluer, and one that taketh affay of

He maintayneth a Guard of the Anzichi, and of other Nations, that keepe about his Palace, 50 furnished with such Weapons as are aboue mentioned: and when it pleaseth him to goe abroad, they found their great Instruments, which may be heard about fine or fixe miles, and so signifie that the King is going forth. All his Lords doe accompany him, and likewise the Portugals, in whom hee repoleth a singular trust : but very seldome it is that hee goeth out of his Palace.

Twice in a weeke he giveth audience publikely, yet no man speaketh vnto him but his Lords. And because there are none, that have any goods or Lands of their owne, but all belongeth to and Laws of the Crowne, there are but few Suites or Quarrels among them, fauing peraduenture about some Congo.

They wie no Writing at all in the Congo Tongue. In Case Criminall they proceed but sten. No Writing. derly, for they doe very hardly and feldome condemne any man to death. If there be any Riot 60 or Enormitie committed against the Portugal; by the Moci-Congbi, (for so are the Inhabitrants of the Realme of Congo, called in their owne Language) they are indged by the Lawes of Portug all. And if any milchiefe bee found in any of them, the King confineth the Malefactor into some Desart Iland : for he thinketh it to be a greater punishment to banish him in this fort, to the end he may doe penance to; his finnes, then at one blow to execute him. And if it so happen, that those which are thus chastized doe line ten or twelve yeares, the King vieth to pardon

1010

them, if they be of any confideration at all, and doth imploy them in the Service of the State. as persons that have beene tamed and well scooled, and accustomed to suffer any hardnesse. In as primes that have been tamed and went above, and actionize to thirty any matinetic. In Chall diagreements there is an order, that it a Pringal have any Suite gainful Meei-Congo, be goth to the ladge of Congo: but if a Maci-Congo doe impleade a Paringal, he citeth him before the Conful, or ludge of the Portugals : for the King hath granted vnto them one of their owne Nation to be Judge in that Countrey: In their bargaines betweene them and the Portagals, they vie no Writings nor other Instruments of Bils or Bonds, but dispatch their businesse onely by word and witnesse.

Time measured by the Moone. Muficall Instruments. LIB, VII

Time meafured by the

They keepe no Histories of their ancient Kings, nor any memoriall of the Ages past, because they cannot write. They measure their times generally by the Moones. They know not the lo they cannot write. Hery measure their times generally by the models a large know not the hours of the day nor of disalight: but they wit to lay, i.e. the time of face a most law a time and hours of the hours of th the journeyes and trauell of men, that goe from one place to another, eyther loden or valoden.

Touching their affembling together at Feasts, or other meetings of ioy, as for example, when Their manner they are marryed, they fing Veries and Ballads of Loue, and play vpon certaine Lutes that are made after a strange fashion. For in the hollow part and in the necke they are somewhat like a neu mittu-ments of Me-ments of Megoe inward) that is made not of wood, but of a skinne, as thinne as a Bladder, and the ffrings are made of haires, which they draw out of the Elephants tayle, and are very firong and bright: and of certaine Threads made of the wood of Palme-tree, which from the bottome of the Inlina- 20 ment do reach & ascend to the top of the handle, & are tied every one of them to his several ring. For towards the necke or handle of this Lute, there are certaine rings placed fome higher and fome lower, whereat there hang divers plates of Iron and Silver, which are very thinne, and in bignefie different one from another, according to the proportion of the Instrument, These rings doe make a found of fundry tunes, according to the firiking of the firings. For the firings when they are stricken, doe cause the rings to shake, and then doe the plates that hang at them. helpe them to vtter a certaine mingled and confused noyse. Those that play vpon this Instrument, doe tune the strings in good proportion, and strike them with their fingers, like a Harpe, but without any quill very cunningly : fo that they make thereby (I cannot tell whether I should call it a melodie or no, but) such a found as pleaseth and delighteth their sences well an

Speech by In-

Belides all this (which is a thing very admirable) by this Instrument they doe veter the conceits of their minds, and doe understand one another so plainly, that every thing almost which may be explaned with the Tongue, they can declare with their hand in touching and striking this Instrument. To the found thereof they doe dance in good measure with their feet, and follow the suft time of that Mulicke, with clapping the palmes of their hands one against the other. They haue allo in the Court, Flutes and Pipes, which they found very artificially, and atcording to the found they dance and moue their feet, as it were in a Morefee, with great grauitie and sobrietie. The common people doe vse little Rattles, and Pipes, and other Instruments, that make a more harsh and rude found, then the Court-Instruments doe.

In this Kingdome, when any are ficke, they take nothing but naturall Physicke, as Herbes, and Trees, and the barkes of Trees, and Oyles, and Waters, and Stones, fisch as Mother Nature hath taught them. The Ague is the most common Dilease that raigneth among them; and plagueth them in Winter by reason of the continual raine, that bringeth heat and moysture with it more then in Summer, and befides that the sicknesse which heere wee call the French Disease, and Chatangas in the Congo Tongue, is not there fo dangerous and fo hard to be cured, as it is in

Their Medicine for an A. gue. Their Medicine for the head ache, & letting of bloud. Their Medi-Curing of

our Countries. They heale the Ague with the poulder of a wood, called Sandale, or Sanders, whereof there is both red and grey, which is the wood of Aguila. This poulder being mingled with the Oyle of the Palme-tree, and having anointed the bodie of the ficke person two or three times with 50 all from the head to the foot, the partie recourreth. When their head aketh, they let bloud in the Temples, with certaine little boxing hornes: first, by cutting the skinne a little, and then applying the Cornets thereunto, which with a lucke of the mouth, will be filled with bloud: applying the Cornets thereunce, when with a marker or the many other part of a mans bodie, of the bodie, is and this manner of letting blod is viel afton Eggs. And fo in any other part of a mans bodie, ether bodie, is and the manner of letting blod in this fallion and heale it. Likewife they cure the letting of infirmitie, called Chitangas, with the fame Vnction of Sanders : whereof there are two forts, one red (as we told you) and that is called Tanila: the other grey, and is called (bicongo: and thisis eme tor une French Poxes, best esteemed, for they will not sticke to give or sell a slave for a piece of it. They purge them-Their Purga- felues with certaine barkes of trees, made into powder, and taken in some drinke : and they 60 will worke mightily and strongly. When they take these purgations, they make no great ascount for going abroad into the Ayre. Their wounds also they commonly cure with the myce of certaine Herbes, and with the Herbes themselues. d. VIII.

d. VIII.

Of the Countries that are beyond the Kingdome of Congo, towards the Cape of Good-Hope: Of the River Nilus, and of Sofala, Monomotapa, the Amazones . Saint LAVRENCE, and other Æthiopian Countries.



Combinete, (which is the Kingdome of Matama) from the first Lake, and the The Lingdome Confines of Angola, containeth all the reft of the Countrey Southwards, till of Matamar, you come to the Kinger of Brangard, which formingeth out of the Mountaine of R. Brangard, the Money, and that springeth out of the R. Brangard, the Money, and to the Moone, and joyneth with the River Magnice, and that springeth out of the R. Magnice, the Moone, and joyneth with the River Magnice, and that springeth out of the River of the Moone, and joyneth with the River Magnice, and that springeth out of the River of the Moone, and joyneth with the River Magnice, and that springeth out of the River foresaid first Lake: These Mountaines are divided by the Tropicke of Capritaines of the corne, towards the Pole Antarcticke, and beyond this Tropicke lyeth all the Countrey and Moone. borders of the Cape of Good-Hope, which are not ruled and gouerned by any one King, but by diuers and fundry feuerall Princes. In the middel betweene that Cape and the Tropicke, are

IO2I

the faid Mountaines of the Moone, so famous and so greatly renowned among the ancient Writers, who doe affigne them to be the originall head and fpring of the River Nilus: which is ve- Northehead ry falfe and vntrue, as the fituation of the Countrey doth plainly flew, and as we a little here- of Nilus, 20 after will discouer vnto you. This Countrey is full of high and rough Mountaines; it is verie cold, and not habitable: It is frequented and haunted with a few persons that live after the manner of the Arabians, under little Cabbins in the open fieldes, and apparelled with the skins of certaine beafts. It is a fauage and rutticall Nation, without all faith and credite, neither will they fuffer any strangers among them. Their furniture is Bowes and Arrowes. They feed voon such fruits as the land breedeth, and also vpon the flesh of beasts.

Among these Mountaines of the Moone, there is a Lake called Gale : a very little one it is, The Lake Gale and lyeth fomewhat towards the West. Out of this Lake there issueth a River, called Camissa, Camissa. The and lyeth fomewhat towards the West. Out of this Lake there much a Aluci, cance compy, and by the Portugals, named, the Sweete River, which at the point of the Cape of Good-Hope, Sweet Sizer. apply the forming in the control of the first the control of the c Cape of the Needles, and then afterwards this leffer Cape : Whereupon they call it the Falfe Agebas. Cape, because it is hid and couered with the true and great Cape. Betweene these two Capes or Promontories, there is the distance of an hundred miles, containing the largenesse and breadth of this famous Cape: which being divided into two points, as it were into two hornes, it maketh a Gulfe, where sometimes the Portugall thips doe take fresh water, in the River that they call the Sweete River.

The Inhabitants of this Coast, which dwell betweene these two points, are of colour black, "although the Pole Antarctick in that place be in the elevation of five and thirtie degrees, which "Not perfect is a very strange thing; yea, the rude people that line among the most cold Mountaines of the blacke 40 Moone are blacke alio.

oone are diacks also.

Beyond the Cape or Point of the Needler, there are many competent Harboroughs and Hanens, the principall whereof is Seno Formofo, the Faire Bay : and Seno del Lago, the Bay of the Some datlage, Lake: For there the Sea maketh a certaine Gulfe, wherein are fundry llands and Ports: and fomewhat beyond there runneth into the Sea the River of Saint Christopher, and at the mouth River of Saint thereof there by three pretie llets. And a little further forwards, the Coast runneth all along Christopher. by a Councrey, which the Portugals call, Terra do Natal, the Land of the Nativitie, because it Terra do Natal, was first discouered at Christmas : and soreacheth to the Cape, called Della Pescheria. Between capodella Pescheria. which Cape and the River Magnice, within the Land is the Kingdome of Buttua, whose Ter-River Magnice, ritories are from the roots or bottome of the Mountaines of the Moone, vntill you come to the The kingdom 50 River Magnice towards the North, where the Countrey of Monomorapa standeth, and West- of Eurose. wards from the River Brauagul towards the Sea, all along the bankes of the River Magnice. In The kingdome this Kingdome there are many Mines of Gold, and a people that is of the same qualities and R. Erzangul. conditions, that the people of Monomotopa is, as hereafter shall bee shewed vnto you. And so Store of Gold

going along the shoares of the Ocean, you come to the River Magnice, which lyeth in the very Mines, entrance of the Kingdome of Sofala, and the Empire of Monoparape.

The Kingdome of Sofala beginneth at the River Magnice, which fpringeth out of the first The original Lake of Nilm, and conveyeth it felfe into the Sea in the middeft of the Bay, betweene the of the River Point Pefebersa, and the Cape, called Cape Delle Correnti, fittute in three and twentie degrees Magnice. and a halfe of the Pole Antarchicke, under the Tropicke of Capricorne. With this River neere Three Rivers vnto the Sea, there joyne three other notable Rivers, the principall whereof is by the Portu- runne into gals, called Saint Chryliophers, because you the day of that Saints Feasis it was first discovered, Magnate, but by the Inhabitants it is named Nagos. The second tooke the name of one Lorenza May. . Same Nagos. that fold thought The Saints Read to the Saint gues, that first found it. These two Rivers doe spring originally from the Mountaines of the Moone, so greatly renowned among the ancient Writers, but by the people of the Countrey

they are called, Toroa: out of which Mountaines they did thinke, that famous Nilsa tooke also his beginning ; but they were vtterly deceived. For (as wee have already told you) the not out of the first Lake ariseth not out of those Mountaines, but lyeth a great way distant from it : and be-Mountaines of tweene it and them, is there a very great and a luge low plaine. Befides that, the streames that the Moon, See flow from the faid Mountaines, doe runne towards the East, and bestow their Waters vponother great Rivers : to that it is not possible for them to passe into the forelaid Lake, much lesse into Nilus, confidering especially that the River Magnice, springeth out of that first Lake, and by a farre different course from the course of Nilses, runneth towards the East, and so ioyneth it felfe with the two Rivers aforesaid. The third, is called Arroe, and ariseth on another side out of the Mountaines of the Gold Mines of Monomopata : and in some places of this River th there are found some small pieces of Gold among the Sand.

These three Rivers enter into the great Magnice, neere vnto the Sea, and all foure together doe make there a great Water, in a very large Channell, and fo dischargeth it selfe into the Ocean. From the mouth of this River all along the Sea Coast, stretcheth the Kingdome of Sofala. vnto the River Chama, which is so called of a certaine Castle or Fortresse that carrieth the same name, and is possessed by Mahometans and Pagans : but the Portugals call it, The mouthes of Cuama: because at the entry into the Sea, this Riner divideth it selfe into seven mouthes, where there are fine special Ilands, besides divers others that lie up the River, all very-full, and well peopled with Pagans. This Cuama commeth out of the fame Lake, and from the fame fprings from whence Nilus floweth. And thus the Kingdome of Sofala is comprised within The kingdome the faid two Rivers, Magnice and Cuama, vpon the Sea coast, It is but a small Kingdome, and 20 hath but a few Houses or Townes in it : The chiefe and principall head whereof, is an Iland that lyeth in the River called Sofola, which giveth the name to all the whole Countrey. It is inhabite by Mahometans, and the King himfelfe is of the same fect, and yelldeth obedience to the Crowne of Portugall, because he will not be subject to the Empire of Monomotapa. And thereypon, the Portugals there doe keepea Fort in the mouth of the River (uama, and doe trade in those Countries for Gol., and Inory, and Amber, which is found vpon that Coast, and good dities of Sofale, flore of Slaves, and instead thereof, they leave behind them Cotton-cloath, and Silkes that are brought from Cambasa, and is the common apparell of those people. The Mahometans that at this present doe inhabite those Countries, are not naturally borne there, but before the Porcants of Sofels sugals came into those quarters, they Frafficked thither in small Barkes, from the Coaft of 30 Avahia Falix. And when the Portugals had conquered that Realme, the Mahometans flaved there ftill, and now they are become neither vtter Pagans, nor holding of the Sect of

The Empire of full of Gold

From the shoares and Coast, that lyeth betweene the two foresaid Rivers of Magnice and Cuama, within the Land spreadeth the Empire of Monomotapa, where there is very great store of Mines of Gold, which is carried from thence into all the Regions there-abouts, and into Sa-Sofila supposed fola, and into the other parts of Africa. And some there be that will say, that Solomons Gold. which he had for the Temple of 'erufalem, was brought by Sca out of these Countries. A thing in truth not very vnlikely: For in the Countries of Movemorapa, there doe remaine to this day many ancient buildings of great worke, and fingular Architecture, of Stone, of Lime, and of 40 Timber, the like whereof are not to be feene in all the Prouinces adioyning.

The people of The King of Monometate main:aineth

Left-handed

The Empire of Monomotapa is very great, and for people infinite. They are Gentiles and Pagans, of colour blacke, very couragious in Warre, of a middle flature, and swift of foot. There are many Kings that are vaffals and fubie to Monomotapa, who do oftentimes rebell and make warre against him. Their weapons are Bowes and Arrowes, and light Darts. This Emperour many Armies, maintaineth many Armies in feuerall Provinces, divided into Legions, according to the vie and cultomes of the Romanes. For being to great a Lord as he is, he must of necessitie be in continuall water, for the maintenance of his effate. And among all the rest of his Souldiers, the most valourous in name, are his Legions of Women, whom he efteemeth very highly, and accounteth them as the very finewes and firength of his militarie forces. These Women doe burne their left pags with fire, because they should be no hindrance vnto them in their shooting, after the vie and manner of the ancient Amazones, that are io greatly celebrated by the Hilloriographers of former prophane memories. For their weapons, they practife Bowes and Arrowes: They are very quicke and twift, lively and couragious, very cunning in shooting, but especially and about all, venturous and constant in fight. In their battailes they vie a warlike kind of craft and fubtilitie: For they have a custome, to make a shew that they would flye and runneaway, as though they were vanquished and discomfitted, but they will divers times turne themselves backe, and vexe their enemies mightily with the shot of their Arrowes. And when they see their Aduerfaries fo greedy of the victorie, that they begin to disperse and scatter themselves, 60 then will they fuddenly turne againe upon them, and with great courage and hercenesse make a cruell flaughter of them. So that partly with their swiftnesse, and partly with their deceitfull wiles, and other cunning shifts of warre, they are greatly feared in all those parts. They doe enioy by the Kings good fauour certaine Countries, where they dwell alone by themfelues : and

fometimes they choose certaine men at their owne pleasure, with whom they doe keepe company for generations sake : So that if they do bring forth Male-children , they fend them home to their fathers houses: but if they be Female, they referue them to themselves, and breed them in the exercise of warfare.

The Empire of this Monomotapa lyeth (as it were) in an Iland, which is made by the Sea- The fittation coaft, by the River Magnice, by a piece of the Lake from whence Magnice floweth, and by the of the Emoire River Course, It bordereth towards the South, vpon the Lords of the Cape of Good-Hope, of Managingta before mentioned, and Northward upon the Empire of Mohenemugi, as by and by shall be shew-

CHAP.4.5.8.

But now returning to our former purpose, that is to say, to runne forwards vpon the Sea- The kingdome coast, after you have passed over some part of the River Cuama, there is a certaine little King- of Angoleia. dome voon the Sea, called Angoscia, which taketh the name of certaine Hands there so called, and lyedirectly against it. It is inhabited with the like people, both Mahometans and Gentiles, as the Kingdome of Sofals is. Merchants they are, and in small Vessels doe Trafficke along that Coast with the same Wares and Commodities, where-with the people of Sofala doe

A little beyond, fuddenly flarteth wp in fight the Kingdome of Mozambique, fituate in The kinedome foureteene degrees and a halfe towards the South, and taketh his name of three Hands, that lye of Morambiane in the mouth of the River Megbincare, where there is a great Hauen and a fafe, and able to re- R. Megbincare, 20 ceiue all manner of thips. The Realme is but small, and yet aboundeth in all kind of Victuals. It is the common landing place for all Veffels that fayle from Portugall, and from India into that Countrey. In one of their lles, which is the chiefe and principall, called Mozambique, and The lland of giveth name to all the rest; as also to the whole Kingdome, and the Hauen aforesaid, wherein Mazambiana. there is erected a Fortreffe, guarded with a Garrison of Portugals, whereupon all the other Fortreffes that are on that Coast doe depend, and from whence they fetch all their provision : all the Armadas and Fleetes that fayle from Portugall to the Indies, if they cannot finish and performe their Voyage, will goe and Winter (I fay) in this Iland of Mozambique : and those that travell out of India to Europe, are constrained of necessitie to touch at Mozambique, to furnish themselves with Victuals: This Hand, when the Portugals discovered India, was the first place 30 where they learned the language of the Indians, and provided themselves of Pilots to direct

them in their course. The people of this Kingdome are Gentiles: Rusticall and rude they bee, The Inhabiand of colour blacke. They go all naked. They are valiant and strong Archers, and cunning Fishers, with all kind of hookes.

As you go on forwards upon the forefaid Coast, there is another Iland, called Quiloa, in The kingdome As you go on to water the fingular. For it is fituate in a very coole and fresh Ayre: of guida. It is replenished with Trees that are alwaies greene, and affordeth all varietie of Victuals. It lyeth at the mouth of the Ruer Coaso, which springeth out of the fame Lake from whence Nilus floweth, and so tunneth about fixtie miles in length, till it commeth neere to the Sea, and there it hath a mightie streame, and in the very mouth of it maketh a great Iland, which 40 is peopled with Mahometans and Idolaters, and a little beyond that, towards the Coast on the West, you may see the taid Iland of Quilon. This Iland is inhabited with Mahometans also, which

are of colour some-thing whitish. They are well apparelled, and trimly adorned with Cloath The Iland of of Silke and Cotten: Their Women doe vse ornaments of Gold, and Iewels about their hands Quilse, and the and their neckes, and have good store of houshold-stuffe made of Silver. They are not altoge- Inhabitrants ther so blacke as the men are : and in their limbs they are very well proportioned. Their houses thereof. are made of Stone, and Lime, and Timber, very well wrought, and of good Architecture, with Gardens and Orchards, full of Hearbs and fundry Fruits. Of this Iland the whole Kingdome tooke the name, which vpon the Coast extendeth it selfe from Capo Delgado, (the Cape Delicate, that bordereth Mozambique and Quiloa,) and is fituate in nine degrees towards the South, 50 and from thence it runneth out vnto the aforesaid River of Coase. In old time the Kingdoms

of Quilsa was the chiefest of all the Principalities there adioyning, and stood neere to the Sea: but when the Portugals arrived in those Countries, the King trusted so much to himselfe, that he thought he was able with his owne forces not onely to defend himselve against them, but allo to drive them from those places which they had already surprised. How beit the matter fell The King of out quite contrary. For when it came to Weapons, he was veterly overthrowne and discomfi- 24102 overted by the Portugals, and foiled away. But they tooke and possessed the lland, and enriched throwne by the themselves with the great spoyles and booties that they found therein. They erected there also driven out of a Fortresse, which was afterward pulled downe by the commandement of the King of Portugal, the liand. because he thought it not necessarie, considering that there were others sufficient enough for 60 that Coaff.

And heere we may not leave behind vs the He of Saint Laurence, so called by the Portugals, The comendabecause they did first discouer it vpon that Martyrs feast day. It is so great, that it containeth tion of the lle becaute they did first discover it upon that Martyrs reating. It is so great, that it contained of S. Laurente, in length almost a thouland miles, and standeth right over against the Coast which wee have Ofis, see the described, beginning directly at the mouthes of the River Magnice, which are in fixe and former lour. Qqqqq.

The Inhabi-

tants of the

He of Saint

Their Wea-

Laurence.

pons

twentie degrees of the South, and fo going forwards to the North, it endeth right against the mouths of Cuama in the Kingdome of Quilon. Betweene this Hand and the firme Land, there is (as it were) a Channell, which at the entry West-ward, is three hundred and fortie miles broad: in the middeft where it is narroweft, ouer against the Hand of Mozambiche ; one hundred and feuentie miles, and for the reft, it enlargeth it felfe very much towards India, and containeth many lles within it. The ships that goe from Spaine into India, or returne from India to Spaine, doe alwaies for the most part passe and sayle in, and through this Channell, if by time or weather they be not forced to the contrary. And furely, this Iland deferueth to be inhabited with a better people, because it is furnished with singular Commodities. For it hath many fafe & sure hauens. It is watred with fundry Rivers, that cause the earth to bring forth fruits of divers kinds, as Pulse, and Rice, and other Graine, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, and such like fruit. Flesh of all forts, as Hens, &c, and Venison, as wilde Boare, & Deere, and such like, and all this of a very good tafte and relish, because the soyle is very fat : their Fish also is exceeding good. The Inhabitants are Pagans, with some of the Sect of Mahomet among them. They are of the colour which the Spaniards call Mulato, betweene black and white. Very warlike they are, and given to their weapons, which are Bowes and Arrowes, and Darts of very light Wood, firengthned with Iron. whereof they make the heads of their Darts, which are crooked like hookes; and thele they will cast and throw most slightly and cunningly. They vie also Targets, and lackes that are made of certaine beafts skinnes, wherewith they faue themselves in fight from the blowes

of their enemies. This Iland is divided among feuerall Princes, that are at enmittee one with another : for they are in continuall Warres, and perfecute one another with Armes. There are divers Mines of Gold, of Siluer, of Copper, of Iron, and of other Metals. The fauage people doe not vie to Livle out of the Hand, but onely from one fule to the other they goe coasting along the shoares, with certaine Barkes that are made but of one stocke of a Tree, which they hollow for that purpose. The most part of them doe not willingly entertaine firangers, neither will they confent that they should Trafficke or converse with them. Netwithstanding, in certaine Ports the Sundry Ilands Portugals doe vie to Trade with the Ilanders, for Amber, Waxe, Silver, Copper, Rice, and fuch sundry Hands other things, but they neuer come vpon the Land. In the Channell before mentioned, there are divers Hands, fome greater, and some lefte, inhabited with Mahometans. The chiefe of them is a the He of Saint Christopher, and then of Sante Spirite : and another, called Magliaglie, and so the reft, as the lles of Comora, Anzoame, Maiotto, and some other.

The kingdome of Membaza and Silucrand

Pearle. The Citie of Mombine spoy-

The kingdome of Melinde.

The tayle of a Ende weigheih commonly 25. or 20, pound, Sec Lee Afer of Egyptian

But let vs returne to the Sea fide, and profecute the Coast of the Kingdome of Quilon, where we left. Next vnto it, isithe Kingdome of Mombaza, in the height of three degrees and a halfe towards the South, which taketh the name from an Iland inhabited with Mahometans, which is also called Mombaza, where there is a faire Citie, with houses that have many Sollers, furnished Pictures, both graven and painted. The King thereof is a Mahometan, who taking voon him to relift the Portugals, received the fame fuccesse that hapned to the King of Quilon, fo that the Citie was ranlacked and spoyled by his enemies, who found therein good store of Gold and Silver, and Pearle, and Cloath of Cotton, and of Silke, and of Gold, and such other Commo- 40 dities. This Kingdome lyeth betweene the borders of Queloa, and Melinde, and is inhabited with Pagans and Mahometans, and yeeldeth obedience to the Empire of Mohenemusi.

A little beyond is the Kingdome of Melinde, which being likewife but a little one, extendoth it selfe voon the Sea Coast, as farreas the River Chimarchi, and Iyeth in the height of two degrees and a halfe : and vp the streame of that River, it reacheth to the Lake Calice, the space of one hundred miles within land. Neere vnto the Sea, along the bankes of this River, there is a great deale of Countrey inhabited by Pagans and Mahometans, of colour almost white, Their houses are built after our fashion. But there is one particularitie to be admired, that their Muttons or Sheepe, are twice as great as the Sheep of our Countrey : for they divide them into five quarters, (if a man may to call them) and reckon the tayle for one, which commonly weigheth 50 fome five and twentie, or thirtie pound. The Women are white, and fumptuously dreffed, after the Arabian fashion, with Cloath of Silke. About their neckes and hands, and armes, and feet, they vie to weare lewels of Gold and Silver: When they go abroad out of their houses, they couer themselves with Tassata, so that they are not knowne but when they list themselves. In this Countrey there is a very good Hauen, which is a landing place for the Vessels that sayle through those Seas. Generally, the people are very kind, true and trustie, and converse with Strangers. They have alwaies entertained and welcomed the Partng als, and have reposed great confidence in them, neither haue they ever offered them any wrong in any respect.

In the Sea betweene these two Capes of Mombaza and Melinde, there are three Iles: the first, is called Monfie; the fecond, Zanzibar; and the third, Pemba; all inhabited only with Mobeme- 60 tans, that are of colour white. These Iles abound in all things as the others do, whereof we made mention before. These people are somewhat enclined to Armes: but they are in deed more addicted to dreffe and manure their ground: For there groweth much Sugar, which in fmall Barks they carrie away to fell into the firme Land, with other fruits of that Councrey.

Besides these three Realmes last described, Quiola, Melinde, and Mombaza, within the Land is the great Empire of Mohenemugi, towards the West. It bordereth vpon the South, with the The Empire of King dome of Mozambique, and with the Empire of Monomotapa to the River Coane, voon the Mobentmuti-West with the River Nilw, betweene the two Lakes; and upon the North it iowneth with the Empire of Prete-Gianni. Towards the Sea, this Emperour standeth in good termes of peace with the forelaid Kings of Quiola, Melinde, and Mombaza, by reason of their trafficke together. and the better to fecure the entercourse and trade by Sea: by meanes whereof they have brought vnto them much cloth of Cotton, and cloth of Silke from divers Countries, and other merchandifes that are well effeemed in these parts: and particularly certaine little balls, that are made in the Kingdome of Cambaia, of a kind of Bitumen or clammie Clay, like vnto Glaffe, but that it is (as it were) of a red colour, which they vie to weare about their neckes, like a paire of Beades in flead of Neck-laces. It ferueth them also in flead of Money, for of Gold they make none account. Likewise with the Silkes that are brought vnto them, they doe apparell themfelues from the girdle downewards. In exchange and barter of all their commodities, they giue Gold, Siluer, Copper, and Iuorie.

CHAP.4. S.8. Agagi dreadfull and devillish. Warlike Amazones.

But on the other fide towards Monomotapa, there are continuall warres ; yea, and fometimes so bloudie, that it is hardly discerned who hath gotten the victorie. For in that Border there meet together two of the greatest and most warlike Powers and Forces that are in all those Regions: that is to fay, on the Partie of Monomotapa, there came forth into the field the Amazones, of whom wee told you before; and on the other partie of Mohenemugi are the Giacehi, (as the Moci-Congi doe call them) but in their owne tongue they are called Agagi, who did The Giachan (as the Moci-Congr doe can them) but in the More as you may remember. Neither are these or Asai. tumetime to greatly affect people leffe couragious or ffrong then the Amazones, but are of a blacke complexion, and prefumptious counterances. They doe vie to marke themselves about the lip vpon their checkes came from 5iwith certaine lines, which they make with Iron instruments and with fire. Moreover, they ever lines. But have a cultionne to turne their eyeshids backwards! so that their skin being all blacke, and in they differed that blackfielle shewing the white of their eyes, and those markes in their faces, it is a strange themselves as thing to behold them. For it is indeed a very dreadfull and Demillifth fight. They are of bodie filtence, and great, but deformed, and liue like beafts in the field, and feed vpon mans flesh. In fight, they, common finew themselves exceedingly couragious, and doc vtter most horrible showting and crying, of commen of purpose to daunt and affright their Enemies. Their weapons are Darts, and Passiles of testands pares Leather that couer all their whole bodie, and so defend themselves therewith. Sometimes they of Ethiop will encampe together, and flicke their Pauises in the ground, which are voto them inflead a trench. Sometimes they will goe forwards in the battell, and shrowd themselves valer them. and yet annoy their aduersaries with the shot of their Darts. And thus by warlike policie, they doe ordinarily plague their Enemies, by endeauouring with all fubtilitie to make them found their shot in vaine, voon their Targets : and when they see that they have made an end of shoos ting, then doe they renew the battell a fresh, and driving them to flight, make a cruell slave iter of them without all mercie. And this is the manner which they vie against their Enemies, and The america, the Amazones. But the Amazones, on the other fide, which are very well acquainted here-40 withall, doe fight against them with other militarie stratagems (as we have aboue declared) and doe ouercome the forces of their Aduerlaries with their swiftnesse, and great skill in matters of Warre. For, they doe affure themselves, that if they be taken, they shall be denoured; and therefore with doubled courage they fight for life, that they might duercome, and in any cafe fauetheir lives from that serce and cruell Nation. And in this fort due they maintaine contimall Warre, alwaies with great mortalitie on both fides. These Agage dwell at the beginning of the River Nilm, (where it runneth Northwards out of the Lake,) xpon both the bankes of

Towards the Cape of Guarda-Fuy, there are many places inhabited with Mahonteraus, all 2long the Sea-fide, of colour being white. Vpon this thouse there are divers good Flavens, where Many good the thips of fundrie Countries doe trafficke with the forcfaid merchandifes. The first of these Ha places, is called Patee; the second, Brana; the third, Magadoxo; the fourth, Affion; and the last is, the famous Promontorie and Cape of Guarda-Fin : which because it is very great, and The Cape of interth out a good way into the Sea, is well knowne to all Sailers that come from India, and 60 from Ormuz, and from Arabia Falix. It is the place and harbour where the Portugals are wont to attend, and yeerely with their Nauies to watch for the Veffels of the Mahometans, that being laden with precious merchandifes, doe faile into those parts without their licence, they being the Lords of the trafficke and trade for Spicerie, and all other commodities that are brought

the River, till it come to a cercaine limite, wherein they are bounded; and then Wellwards all ouer the bankes of the faid Nilus, even to the second Lake, and to the borders of the Linguis

of Prete-Gianni. Touching thefe Agags, I thought it convenient in this place to adde this.

are fundrie other petie Lords, and people that are of a white colour, and yeeld obedience fome-

times to one of these two Princes, and sometimes to the other. They are men of a farte greater

50 which before I had omitted. Betweene the confines of this Mobenemugi, and Prete-Gianni, there

flature then all the rest of the people in those Countries.

Qqqqq a

1026

from India. So that every yeere the Portugall Fleet doth take great prizes of Merchants ships in that place, as the English and the French doe at C. Saint Vincent. After you have compassed about the foresaid Cape of Guarda-Fuy, toward the red Sea, von

Diners Ports

shall come to other Townes and Hauens of the Mahometans. The first of them is called Methe. and another beyond that , called Barbera. And this is the farthest place wherein you shall find cosift towards any people with white skins: for here the men beginne to be all blacke. Then there is Coila, and Dalaca, and Malaca, and Carachin: and all this Coast is called in that Countrie language, Baragium. The People that inhabite therein are all blacke, valiant in Armes, and apparelled from the girdle downewards with cloth of Cotton: but those that are of the best account among the girare downewards with Gotth of Clokes with Hoods, called Bernuff, fuch as the them, doe weare vpon their floulders certaine Clokes with Hoods, called Bernuff, fuch as the old Romans vied, and were termed Saga Romana. It aboundeth in Gold, and in luorie, and in Metals, and in Victuals of all forts.

That which followeth of Abassis, Nilus,

Then follow the Mouths or Entrances into the red Gulie.

CHAP. V.

The Voyage of Sir FRANCIS ALVAREZ, a Portugall Priest, made onto the Court of PRETE IANNI, the great Christian Emperour of Ethiopia.



who translated this Booke, I found it in Mafter Hacklugts

N the Name of Ielus, amen. I, Francis Aluarez, Priest of the Masse, which by especiall commandement of the King our Lord, Don Emanuel (whom God bath received mo bis glorie) went with Edward Galuano, a Gentleman of his bonfe, and one of 60 his Counfellors; which was Secretarie unto the King Don Alfonio, and unto King Iohn, his Sorne, till his dying day; and by King Don Emanuel was fent Ambassadour unto King Prete lann, have determined to write all things which hapned unto ated is where L vs in this Voyage, and to describe the Countries wherein we were, with the qualities, sustames, and vsa-

ges thereof, and how they agree with Christian Religion. Neither doe I here take upon me to reprehend though it still or approve their cuffernes and v sages, but leave them wholly unto the Readers (which are able to instruct continued veor approuse their cultimers and views, but clase voew movely one we accessed, where or a dote to infirst continuous verse to present moves, and certified what fewer to plain limiting each of And decrast for laws ferme found visiting of an Countrie, and efflower of another, to confound the same together, I so, that were reliable to the following of the present property wherein I sught to know a great with Ramafol part of the Countries, Kingdomers, and Syminories of the faul Prete Iamin, and their cultimers and agreed with Ramafol part of the Countries, Kingdomers, and Syminories of the faul Prete Iamin, and their cultimers are considered to the countries of the faul Prete Iamin, and their cultimers are considered to the countries of the faul Prete Iamin, and their cultimers are considered to the countries of the fault of the countries are considered to the countries of the countries of the fault of the countries are considered to the countries of the fault of the countries part of the Countries, Kingdomes, and Symmets of the plant First Caustin, some unter two process one upon the titude Editget, fome by fifty, and fome other by the report of realible persons. And enter, at lease to the frome, tion, and in
todge of them, so I put them downs in writing that it is 163, delinering fact things at I faw, at having many placed the
times them, and things reported, at received by hearing; and therefore I favere and prattle you may
the found that the sum of the sum that my confession shall be true water my lines end, so likewise shall this my present writing be true : for it and added

he that leth to his neighbour, leth to God. illustrating it with marginall notes, &c. He that compareth these Relations with those of the Great Mogod in Sir T. Ros, shall find great correfpondence in the vacuuill customes whereinto wild MaieRie and barbarous Greatnesse, both here and there, haued g nerated s ipondence in the vacciuil cuitomes watercare of markets are always of the control of the control of the control of the both vall bodies rather then firong 5 the one found in the control of that giantly navelalized to be the fire of the control of

growing from the relations of a Prief lobin in Afe, and by ignorance applied to this Negus of Ethiopia, as in my Pigrimage you may fee at large. Lefteeme his relations true in those things which he faith he faw: in some others which he had by relation of other ging Travellers, or boafting Abaffines, hee may perhaps sometimes rather mendacia dicere then mentiri. Euen yet the Law-giver in not departed from Iuda, it Melechs posteritie hath euer fince raigned, wily wits had their pias fraudes to make Religion a firrop

MATTHEW the Ambassadour of PRETE IANNI, is conducted by the Portugals unto the Hauen of Maczua in the red Sea, and what bapned

Hereas I faid that I went with Edward Galmano (whom God pardon) true it is that The Chapters, I did fo, and he died in Comoran, an Ile of the red Sea , neither tooke his Ambaffage as they are diany effect, during the time that Lopez Swarez was Captaine generall of the Indies, wided in Ramu-Diego Lopez de Sequeira succeeding Suarez in the government of India, effected that fo, are expreswhich Lopez Swarez would never execute, to wit, the conducting of Matthew (who was lent fed by the fi-Which Lopes Source, would neter execute, to wit, the conducting of Particol (Mineson, neere vinto gure in the Ambafalour from Prete Launi to the King of Partugal) to the Hauen of Maczas, neere vinto beginnings of Ercoco, being a Port-towne of Prete Launi. This Diego Lopez prepared a goodly and great the lines: Fleet, wherewith we failed into the red Sea, and arrived at the faid Hand of Macana on Mun- which method day in the Octaves of Easter, the fixteenth of the moneth of Aprill, in the yeere 1520. which I have reduced day in the Octaves of Eafler, the fixteenth of the moneth or Aprill, in the year 1520. William to our wonted lland we found abandoned and for faken by the Inhabitants, because that sue or fixe dayes beforme of Parafore they had knowledge of our comming. This Ile is distant from the Continent about two graphs l.ft (o 40 Crosbow-shots, whither the Moores of the faid Iland were fled with their goods. Our Fleet many distifons therefore riding betweene the Continent and the lland. The Tuefday following, there came fould make therefore roung over the Towne of Erece. The Confidence fail that the Towne of Erece belonged to the Christian and a Moore from the Towne of Erece belonged to the Christian, and was vader the luridiction of a great Lord, called Barrauch magasso, being subject vnto Prete lanni; and that the Inhabitants of this Ile of Maczasa, and Maczasa of Ercoco, when the Turkes came thither, fled all into the Mountaines; but at this present Mague. they would not flee away, having vinderflood that wee were Christians. Our Generall having Erroco. heard thus much , gaue thankes to God, that he was come to the happie knowledge of Chriflian; and this procured great fauour vnto Mathen, which before that time was little ac-

2. The day following being Wednelday, the Captaine of the faid Towne of Ercoco came to of the Aboling. speake with our Generall, and presented foure Oxen vnto him, and the Generall gaue him very courteous and honourable entertainment.

Twentie or four and twentie miles from this place standeth a very high Mountaine, with The Monsteea famous Monasterie thereupon, which Mathew oftentimes made mention of, being called the rie of Bifan, Monasterie of Bifan, that is, Of the Vision. The Friars of this Monasterie having knowledge of vs, came seuen of them the Thursday after the Octaves, to visite vs; whom our Generall and all his people went on shoare to meet, with great ioy and gladnesse: and they seemed to reioyce no lesse; and said, that they had long time looked for Christians, because they had certaine Prophesies in their written Booke, which foretold that Christians Should arrive at this Hanen, Prophesies

60 and that a pit should there be digged, after the opening whereof, no more Mootes should dwell in that place: with many other Speeches tending to the like purpose. At all these things the Ambasfadour Matthew was present, whom the foresaid Friars did greatly honour, killing his hands and his shoulders, according to their manner; and he, on the other side, tooke great delight in them alfo. Thele Friars faid that they observed then the Feast of Easter, and eight dayes next en-

Eader Rites

fuing, and that during those eight dayes they yield neither to travell, nor to doe any other work: but to foone as they heard fay that Christians were arrived at that Hauen (a thing which they fo earneftly defired) they craued licence of their Superiour to vindertake this iourney for the feruice of God, and that Barnagaffe was likewife informed of our arrivall, but that he would nos fet forward out of his house till eight dayes after Easter.

3. These Friars vie to carrie Crosses in their hands, and other people weare them about their neckes, made of blacke wood, and all our companie bought of the fame Crosses which they weare about their neckes, because it was a new thing, and not vsuall amongst vs. While their Friars abode with vs, the Generall commanded one Fernando Diaz, which vnderstood

the Arabike Tongue, to goe and view their Monasterie.

Comming of Barnazaffo.

4. On Tuefday the foure and twentieth of Aprill, Barnagaffe came to the Towne of Er- 10 0000, and gaue vs aduertisement of his arrivall. Order was taken, that they should meet one and State observed other in the mid-way. Barnagaffo came thither first, but he would not come to the place which was prepared for him. The Generall being I ghted, feing that he would not come thither, caufed the preparatives to be carried before neere unto the place where he flood: which againe, to maintayne his grandure and reputation, would not once stirre with his people to come vnto the place prepared, lo that the faid Anthonie de Saldanza and Matthew the Ambassadour, were confirained to returne againe, which in the end resoluted, that both of them at one instant, should League confire fee forward, that is to say, the Generall and Barnagaffe, and so they did, meeting together and med by Oath, conferring in a large champaine field, as they fate on the ground vpon certaine Carpets. And 20 among many diffourfes that they had together, giving thankes to God for this their entenuew.

Barnagaffo taking a Cross-of Silver in his hand (which was there readie for the same purpose) faid, that he fware voon the figne of the Croffe, voon which our Lord fuffered his Pation, in the Name of Prete lanni his Malter, that he would alwaies fauour and aide the people and affaires of the King of Portugals, and also assist his Captaines which should arrive at that Hauen, or in any other Hauens or Lands, where it lay in him to aide and affift them, and likewife that he would take into his protection the Ambassadour Matthew, and other Ambassadours, which it pleased the Generall to send into the Kingdomes and Dominions of Prete lanni, with all such

Roderico de

Lima, fent to

the Prete in

Embaffage.

people and goods as they should carrie with them. The Generall (ware, on theother part, to doe the like for the Subiects and Affaires of Prete Lami, and of Barnagaffs, there and in energy place where he should find them, and that the rest 10 of the Captaines and Lords of the King of Paragall should doe the like. The Generall gaue vnto Barnagaffo a faire Armour, and certaine pieces of cloth of Silke; and Barnagaffo gaue vnto the Generall a faire Horse and a Mule : and so they departed glad and contented on either part.

This Barnagaffo had in his traine two hundred persons mounted upon Horses and Mules, and two thousand Footmen, Our Gentlemen and Captaines seeing these so good newes which God had fent vs, and that a doore was opened to exalt the Catholike Faith, whereof afore wee had fmall hope of any successe, all men holding this Matthew for no true Ambassadour, but for a falle man and a Counterfeit, whereupon they were onely of opinion to put him on Land, and let him goe his way, when they had feene thefe things (as wee have faid before) they all rouzed vp 40 themselves, requesting the Generall of his fauour, that hee would suffer them to goe with the faid Matthew to Prete lanni, in that Ambassage; considering that by that which they had seene, it was perfectly knowne that the faid Matthew was a true Ambassadour. And albeit, manyrequested this charge, yet was it granted to Roderigo de Lima : and the Generall appointed certaine that should goe with him, which were theie, George de Bren, Lopez de Gama, Iobn Scolaro Secretarie of the Amballage, John Gonfalnes Interpretor and Factor of the same Amballage, Emunuel de Mares an Organist, Pedro Lopez, Maiter John the Physician, Gaspar Pereira, Stephen Pagliarte, both Kinimen of Don Roderigo, John Fernandez, Lazarus de Andrada Painter, Alfonfo Painter in dif. Menzdez, and my felte, Francis Aluarez Prieft, though vnworthy. All we before mentioned went in the company of Don Roderigo, and likewite, three Portugals accompanied Matthew, 50 of whom, the one was named Magaglianes, another Aluarenga, the third, Diego Fernandez, Pre-

fents also were prouided.

We went to Ercoco, where we were appointed by Barnagasso, which caused vs to lodge two or three Crosse-bow-shoots, distant from the Towne in a certaine Plaine, which is at the foot of a Mountaine, whither immediately hee fent vs of free gift an Oxe, and Bread and Wine of the Countrie. We stayed there, because in that place they were to prouide vs of Horses and Camels to carrie our goods. This was vpon a Friday, and because in this Countrey they chferue the old and the new Law, we rested the Saturday and the Sunday to keepe both those

Saturday and

In this meane space, the Ambassador Matthew, dealt very effectually with Don Rodorigo, and 60 with vs all, not to stay with Barnageffo, although hee were a great Lord, but that it was farre better to goe vnto the Monaltery of the Vilion, where wee thould have farre better difpatch Whereupon, gluing him to understand, that wee were not to stay with him, hee departed and went his way, neuertheleffe hee gaue vs fourteene Horses and tenne Camels to carrie our

6. We depirted out of this Plaine, neere voto the Towne of Ercoco; on Munday, the thirtieth of Aprill, wee traue fled not aboue two miles from that place, but that wee refted about noone, Drought, best, neere vnto a River which was dryed vp, which had no water lauing in certaine small Pits. And barrenneste. because the Countrey through which we were to trauell, was dry and barren, and the heate extreame; each of vs carried with him his Veffels and Bottles of Leather full of water. Voon the bankes of this River grew many trees of divers forts, among which were Sallowes, and trees of bearing the fruit, called Iniuba, with other fruitleffe trees. While we refted by this River, about Giucgiole. noone there came a Gentleman vnto vs,named Framasgual, which in our Language fignifieth. The Sernant of the Croffe, who in his blacknesse was so faire, that he seemed to be a Gentleman A Gentleman. to indeed, and they faid that he was allyed to Barnagaffo, that is to fay, his Wives Brother. Before he came at vs, he lighted from his Horfe, because this is their custome, and they vient also for a courtefie. The Ambaffadour Mathew, hearing of his comming, faid he was a Thiefe, and came to rob vs. and that we should all betake vs to our Weapons; and Matthew himselfe caught vp Matthew suspi his Sword, and put on his Head-piece. Framafqual hearing this noyfe, fent to craue leave to clous. come vnto vs, and though he could not obtaine it of Mauhem, yet neuertheleffe; he came vnto vs as a man well brought vp and very courteous, and as one that had beene conversant at the

and foure men which went by him on foot. 7. From this Lodging we departed all together, and the faid Gentleman riding woon his Mule with his Horsebefore him, accosted our Amballadour, Don Roderigo with his Interpreter, and 20 they rode a great while conferring and deuiting together. Hee was in his conference and in his aniweres very gentle, and courteous, and the Ambaffadour tooke fingular delight in him. Wee A Caranga. found a Carauan of Camels and people, which came from Ercoco, because they travell not but in Carauans for feare of theeues. Wee lodged all in a Wood where there was water, being an ordinary place for Caratans to lodge in, and the forefaid Framasqual remayned with vs . where we and those of the Carauan kept watch all night for feare of wild beafts. The next morning, Dry Riuers. we departed from this place, alwayes trauelling ouer dry Riuers and Brookes, most huge Mountaines taines standing on both sides of the way, with great Woods and Trees of divers forts, most and Woods. beautifull and tall, the greatest part whereof were wishout fruit, and among them were some which I my felfe knew, being called Tamarinds, which beare clusters of fruit like vnto Grapes, Tamarinds, which being prefied are somewhat blacke, because they make Wine of them, some quantitie whereof they carrie vnto all their Faires, as they vie to make of Raifins. The Rivers and wayes whereby we passed, teemed to be high and tagged, which commeth to passe through the fury of Furious storms the water of itormes and tempelts mingled with Thunder, which waters hinder not the way, and thunders. according as they told vs, and as we faw our felues in other places like vnto thefe. The remedie

Court. This Gentleman had a very good Horse before him, and a faire Mule whereon hee rode.

was at the time of these stormes to stay upon the side of some Hill, the space of two houres, vntill the force of thefe stormes be runne downe. And how great and terrible soeuer these Ri-40 uers became through the foresaid showres, the water is no sooner falne from the faid Moun- Strange sudtaines, and come into the Plaine, but it is dispersed and soked up, and neuer commeth vnto the showness. Sea : neither could we learne that any River of Ethiopia enter thinto the Red Sea, but that all of them have their ending, as soone as they come to the low and plaine fields.

Vpon these Mountaines and Rockes, are many beasts of divers kinds, as we our selves saw, to Many beasts. wit, Elephants, Lions, Tygres, Buffes, Badgers, Ante, Deere without number, and other heafts feath of of all forts, fauing two, which I neither faw, nor heard to be in those parts, that is to say, Beares, No Beares nor and Conies. There are likewife all kind of finging Birds, which may be imagined, and also Par-Gonies. tridges, Quailes, wild Hens, Doues, and Turtles, in fuch incredible numbers, that they covered the Sunne, of all these forts which are in our parts, fauing that I saw no Pyes, nor Cuckoes. All along thefe Rivers and Rockes I faw great plentie of Iweet Herbes, which I knew not, fa- Store of Bafill

50 uing onely Baiill, whereof there was exceeding store, which yeelded a fragrant and sweet smell, Herbs and had leaves of divers forts. 8. The time of resting our selves being come, Matthew determined to cause vs a-new to leave

the high way, and to travel with him toward the Monasterie of the Vision, through Mountaines and Woods exceeding full of high Trees.

We departed from this Lodging, and travelled through a more rough and craggie Country, Mathews perand through farre greater and thicker Woods, being our felues on foot, and our Mules before vs, versencile to which were not able to trauell. The Camels yelled out as though they had beene possessed with lead them Deuils. It feemed, to vs all, that Atather had brought vs into this way, eyther to make vs way-left wayes; conlofe our lines or our goods, for in that place we could doe no other but call vpon God to helpe traty to fre-60 vs; and the Woods were to darke and fearefull, that Spirits would have beene afraid to patte mafawaliking them. We faw many favageand cruell beats at noone-dayes, pailing this way and that way, Wildbeitts without being any whit afraid of vs. For all this we went forward, and began to find people of the Countrey, which kept their fields that were fowne with Millet, and came farre off to fow Millet. it vpon their high and craggie Mountaynes. We saw likewise many Herds of goodly Oxen, Nakedpoorle. and Goats feeding. The faid people which we found there, were all naked, and had in a manner,

Of the manner and fituation of the Monasteries, and of their boly Rites, Times, Places, and Things: And first of this of Saint MICHAEL.

Irit, this Monasterie is situate vpon the cragge of a Mountaine, which is very wild, seated at the foot of another huge Mountaine, vpon the which no man can afcend. The Rone of these Rockes is of the colour and graine of the stone. wherewith the wall of the Cities of Portugal are built, and the stones are verie great. All the ground except these stones is covered with many great Woods, and the greatest

part are wild Olive Trees, and great flore of Herbs grow among them, and the most part is Bafill. The Trees which were not Oliues, were not knowne of vs, and all of them were without fruit. In certaine narrow Vallies, which belong to this Monasterie, were Groues of Orangetrees, Limons, Cedars, Vines, and Figs of all forts, as well of those which are found in Portsgall, as those of India, and Peaches : there were also Cabbages , Corianders, Cress, Worme- Orchards. wood, Mirtles, and many other kindes of Herbes fragrant and medicinall: and all was ill The Abasims husbanded, because they are people of no industrie; and the Earth bringeth forth the things The building aforefaid, as it bringeth forth wild things, and would bring forth much better, all they should of the Mona 20 plant or fow. The House of the Monasterie seemeth, indeed, to bee a Church-building beeing fterie. made like vnto ours : it hath about it a circuit like to a Cloyfter, and the covering above is faitned

to the couering of the Church. It hath three gates, as ours have, to wit, one chiefe gate in the fore-front, and one on each fide in the midit. The couering of the Church, and of the circuit is made of wild Reed, which lafteth the life of a man. The body of the Church is made with Hes, very well wrought, and the Arches are very well

flored, it femeth all to be made like a Vault : It hatha little Quire behind the great Altar, with a Crosse afore it, whereupon hang Curtaines which goe from one side to another; and likewise, LittleBels there are other Curtaines before the Gates, passing from one Wall to another, and they are of Silke, and the entrie by these Curtaines is at three places, and are fastned against the Wallst and at these three entrances or gates, are little Bels fastned to the Curtaines, about the bignesse of Saint Anthonies Bels; and a man cannot enter in at the gates, but these Bels will ring. There is but one Altar belonging to the whole Church, which standeth in the great Chappell. About the Altar is a Cloath of Goldborne vp with soure pillars, and the Altar toucheth all these source Pillars, and the faid Cloath of Gold is hollow like a Vault, it hath his Super-Altare, or confecrated frone, which they call Tabato, and vpon this frone frandeth a very great Bason of Copper, and it is flat in the bottome, and is low brimmed, which reacheth vinto all the foure Pillars 40 of the Altar, because the Pillars are set in a square, and in the said Bason is set another leffer Bafon, and on every fide of this cloth of Gold, that is to fay, behind and on both fides a Curtaine

Bels of Bone.

hangeth downe which concreth the whole Altar downe to the ground, fauing that it is open Their Bels are of stone, that is to fay, long and thin stones, hanged up with Cords, and they beat them on the infide with a piece of wood, and they make a very strange found, like to the found of broken Bels when they are heard afarre off. And likewise on Festivall dayes, they take Basons vied Basons, and strike them with certaine small stickes, which make them found very loud. They for Bels. haue likewise Bels of Iron, which are not fully round, but haue two sides like vnto the lacket of a Muletier, whereof the one part couereth him before, and the other behind; they have a clapper which beateth the same first on the one side, and then on the other, and it maketh a found 30 like vnto a man that diggeth Vines. They have also other Bels ill-fauoure. ly made, which they carrie in their hands when they go on Procession, and ring them altogether voon Festivall dayes, Darke Maron other dayes they vietheir Bels of stone, and of Iron; they ring to Mattens two houres be- tens. fore day, and they say them by heart without light: onely there hangs a Lampe before the Al-Butter vied

tar, wherein they burne Butter, for they have no Oyle. They fing and fay with a loud and harsh voice, as of one that cryeth, without any art of finging : they fay no Verses, but their speech is as it were in Prose, and yet they are Plaimes, and They standalon their Holidayes, befides their Pfalmer, they fay Profe, and according to the Feath fois their way in the Profe, and alwayes they stand on their feet in the Church. They fay not aboue one Lesson at their Mattens, with a harsh, disordered and vntuneable voice, and like vnto that wherein wee 60 pronounce the words of the Inves, in reprefenting the Passion of our Saujour Christ. And al-

though their voice be so harsh, yet they speake it running, as fast as the tongue of a man can Valcuous dewagge, and a Clerke or a Frier faith the fame; and this Leffon is read before the principal gate. untions. Which being ended on Saturday and Sundayes, they goe on Procession with source or five cross- Procession. fes, being carryed vpon certains states not very high; and they carrie the same in their left Confers and

hands, because in their right hand they carrie a Censer, and alwayes there are so many Censers Crosses.

no part of their bodies. They were very blacke, and were faid to be Christians. They had their Wines with them, which conered their Prinities with a ragge of cloth halfe torne. Thefe was men weare upon their heads a kind of attyre, made after the fashion of a Crowne, as blacked Pitch, and their haire bound up in round wreathes like Kandles of Tallow: the blackness. these attyres, with these Lockes of haire fastned unto them, seemed a very strange thing to be.

hold. The men weare a piece of skinne before their Prinities.

Thus trauelling forward through many other Woods which could hardly be paffed, and wee our felues lighting on foot, and valading our Camels there met vs tenne or twelue Friers of the Monasterie of the Vision, among whom, there was foure or fine very aged, and one older then the reft, whom all the rest did reverence, and kissed his hands; and our selves did the like, be- in Matthewfile. cause Matthew told vs that he was their Bishop, but afterward we knew that he was no Bishop.

David & Abbs. but that he had the Title of David, which fignifieth, a Warden, & that in the Monasterie there was another aboue him, whom they call Abba, which fignifieth a Father, beeing like vnto a Prosinciall, and in regard of their age and drynesse (for they were as dry as a stocke) they seemed to be men of a holy life at the first blatt. The foresaid Friers trauelled through the Woods to gather their Millet which they had fowed, as also to gather up their Roots, which are payed vinto them by such as sow Corne in those Mountaines and Woods. Their apparell was made of dreffed Goat-skinnes, others weare apparell made of old yellow Cotton, and went bare-foot. From hence we departed not till our Camels had rested a little : afterward, within the space of halfea mile, we came to the foot of a very rough and cragged Mountaine, vpon the which our Camels 20 could not ascend, and hardly the Mules without their burthens, and heere wee refted our selnes at the foot of a Tree.

9. The next day the Ambassador Matthew commanded his goods to be laden vpon the backs of Negroes, to carry them into a small Monasterie, halfe a league distant from vs, called Saint Michael de Ifeo. Here Framafqual departed from vs, and wee came vnto the Monatterie halfe dead, as well for the roughnesse and iteepnesse of the way, as also because of the great heat.

While we aboad there, the faid Matthew came vnto vs with a counter-mand, and faid vnto vs. that he had written vnto the Court of Prete lanni, and to Queene Helena, and to Marke the Patriarke, and that the answere could not bee returned in lesse then fortie dayes, and that without the same we could not depart, because from that place they were to furnish vs. and to 30 haue Mules for vs, and for our goods; neither was he well affured of the performance of this, but faid that Winter began to approach, which lasted about the space of three monethes, wherein we could not travell, and that therefore it was needfull, that wee should provide victuals for our felues : for three monethes in the Winter they trauell not in these Countries , to wit. from the midft of June to the midft of September, which is their ordinarie Winter. Within a fhort space after our arrivall here, our people as well Portugals as slaves fell so sick, that few or none elcaped vntouched, and many were ficke to the point of death, infomuch that they flood in need often to be let bloud and to be purged. Among the first , Master John our Physician fell ficke, which was all our humane helpe, yet it pleafed God that he recouered, and from that time forward he laboured for vs with all his power.

They fall ficke,

Inacceffible

Among these, Matthew the Ambassadour fell sicke also, which had many Medicines minifired vnto him, and when he feemed to be very well recoursed and strong, he rose vp and commanded his goods to be carryed to a Towne belonging to the Monasterie of the Vision, where Matter dieth, he yeelded up his spirit vnto our Lord, which was the foure and twentieth of May, Anno Dom. 1520, and I confessed him, and ministred the Communion vnto him, and he made his will in the Portugall Tongue, but it was also made in the Abassim Tongue, by a Frier of the said Monastery.
We caused the corps to bee buried very honorably in the said Monastery, where wee said Seruice and Masse for him according to our custome, and the Friers did the like according to theirs. 10. Wee determined, to fend to request Barnagaffo, that hee would give vs fome meanes

Abafsines vntherefore mi-Bruffell.

The death of

Marthew, the

Abassine Am-

to returne into our Countrey, to the end wee might not petith in that place. The Friers vn- co derstanding this, tooke it in very ill part, and calling Don Roderigo aside, perswaded him not to fend thither, praying him to attend the comming of the Provinciall, which would bee within ten dayes, and if he come not , they would furnish vs with necessaries for our iournies. And because they are people of small trust themselves, they gave no credit voto vs, although the Ambaffadour had promifed them to doe fo, but fought to minister an Oath vnto each of vs vpon a Crucifixe, that we would flay during those tenne dayes, and they likewise tooke an Oath to performe that which they had promised.

ther holy Vest. der then the breadth of a piece of Damaske, or of any other piece of Silke from the vpper pare to the neather part; and on the breaft before, they have a traverfe; and on both fides they fewe a piece of other Cloth of what colour foeuer, although it agree not with the principall; and of the principall Cloth they let a traine hang downe voon the ground. They make this Procession in their Circuit, which is like vnto a Cloister. Which being ended on Saturdayes, and Sundayes, Image of our and Festivall dayes, he which is to say Masse, with two others, enter into the Chappell, and take out an Image of our Ladie, which they have in an old Cell (for in all Churches they have of their

Copes and or as there be Croffes. They weare certaine Copes of Silke, but rudely made, for they be no broad

* Ancone. Candles,

* Cells) and they put it on a Crozier, turning the face toward the principall gate, and this Image holdeth her hand before her breaft, and they which stand on both fides of it hold lighted Can- to dles in their hands, and then they which are before it beginne to fing in manner of profe, and they goe all crying and dancing as if they were in a Towne-dance. And going before this I. mage with this their fong or profe, they ring their little Bells and Cymbals with the like found. and as often as any chanceth to paffe before this Image they doe great reverence to it, which feemeth to the beholder to be done with great defire of denotion : and fo they carrie in this

Feast Crosses and Centers, as they did in their Procession.

Communion among the Great volesuened Cake.

When this is ended, which continueth for a long space, they falute the Image, and then they goe unto a certaine clolet, which standeth toward the North; and that part where the Gospel is faid, according to our Maffe, is without the circuit, wherein they make the Hoft, which The manner of they call Corbon, and they carrie Croffes, Cenfers, and Bells with them, and from hence they ministring the bring a Cake of Wheat-flowre vulcauened, newly made, very white and very faire, of the bignesse and roundnesse of a great Paten, because there are but a few people in this Monasterie: but in other Monasteries and Churches (whereof there be many) they make this Cake great or fmall according to the number of the people, for all doe communicate, and according to the breadth fo they make the thicknesse, either halfe a finger, or a whole finger, or a thumbe thicke: and they carrie this Cake in the little Bason which is one of them that belong to the Altar couered with a cloth, with a Croffe and Cenfer, and a Bell ringing afore them. Behind the Church where that Quire is, which they hold as a Cloifter, no man may fland which is not in holy Orders ". but all of them must stand before the principall gate, where there is another great circuit which all Churches have, but it is not couered, and there may fland any man that lift.

When they goe in Procession with this Cake, all they which stand in the Church and in the

Bason, and they couer it with a blacke Cloth like vnto a Corporall. This Monasterie hath a Cha-

lice of Siluer, and likewise in all principall Churches and Monasteries they have Chalices of Sil-

uer and in some they have Chalices of Gold. In the Churches of the poorer people (which they

call the Churches of the Balgues, that is to fay, of the Husbandmen) they have brazen Chalicia.

These vessels are more wide then ours are, but euill made; but they have no couers. They powre

into the Chalice, wine made of Raifins in great quantitie; for, as many as receive the Bodie, re-

king then finging, and all the companie answere him; and then he holdeth his peace, and begin-

neth to blelle them with a little Croffe which he carrieth in his hand; and as well they that are

about, as those which are within beginne to sing, vntill a certaine time, when as one of them

two that frand at the Altar take a Booke, and receiveth bleffing of him that fayeth Maffe, and

the other taketh a Crosse, and a Bell, and goeth ringing the same toward the principall gate,

with his tongue, and afterwards finging returneth backe to the Altar: fuddenly he which fin-

hath received, as many as stand at the Alter doe kisse the same, a candle is borne with this Booke,

and he which reads the Gospell, readeth it as the Epistle was read, very hastily, and with as

high a found as his tongue can veter, and his voyce can beare : and returning to the Altar, on

the way he beginneth likewife another fong, and those which goe with him follow him: and

geth the Masse taketh a Booke from the Altar, kissing the same, and gueth it to him which is to say the Gospell, which boweth downe his head, and asketh him blessing; which when hee

where all the people standeth in that circuit; and there he readeth the Epistle running very fast

Hee that is to fay this Masse, beginneth, saying, Hallelaia, with a lowd voyce, rather squea- 40

* An order fometimes fo fridly obferued, that Saint When they goe in Procession with this Cake, all they which stand in the Church and in the Assa, sen 78edoing to rewhen they heare the little Bell, bow downe their heads untill the Bell cease, which is, assign to rewhen they fee it youn the Altar in the leffer Bason which is set (as I said before) in the greater Procession with the Hoft Chalices of Gold, Siluer, Wine of Rai-

Communion in both kinds.

Centing. Bleffing with

croffing. Confectation in the vulgar

when they be come to the Altar, they give the Booke to kiffe to him that fayeth Maffe, and fo they put it in his place. And fuddenly, he which fayeth Maffe, taketh a Cenfer, and cenfeth the vpper part of the Altar, and they goe often about it and cense the same. When they have done these censings, he turneth to the Altar, and bleffeth it very often with the Croffe, and then hee vncouereth the Cake which he had couered in flead of the Sacrament, and taketh it vp in both his hands, and 60 lifting up his right hand the Cake remayneth in his left hand, and with his thumbe he maketh fine fignes like prickes, that is to fay, one in the top, another in the midft, another in the bottome, and the other two on both fides; and therewithall he confecrateth it in his owne Lan-No eleuation. guage, with the very words that we vie, and he vierh no eleuation. The very fame he doth over

the Cup, and lifteth it not vp, he fayth over the fame, the very words that wee vie in his owne Tongue, and he covereth it, and taketh the Sacrament of the Bread in his hands, and breaketh it in twaine, and of the part that is in his left hand, hee breaketh a little Morfell of the top of the fame, and the other two pieces hee layeth the one vpon the other. The Priest taketh this little Moriell for himselfe, and likewise taketh part of the Sacrament of the bloud . and afterward he taketh the Balon with the conered Sacrament, and ginth it to him which hath faid she Gofpell, and like, wife he taketh the Chalice with the Sacrament, and giveth it to him which read the Epiffle : and finddenly they give the Communion to the Priefts which fland at the Altar, receining a small piece of Sacrament out of the Bason, which a Deacon holdeth in his right Deacon and hand; and while the Deacon gineth the same, a Sub-Deacon taketh of the bloud in a spoone Sub-deacon. of Gold, of Silver, or of Copper, according to the abiltie of the Church, and greath it vnto The Wine ad-

him which receive th the Sacrament of the body in very small quantitie : and on the other fide, a soone Handeth another Priest with a little Vessell of holy Water, and powreth into the palme of his Holy Water. hand, which received the Communion, a little of that water, wherewith he washeth his mouth,

and afterward (walloweth it vp.

This being done, they all goe to the Altar with this Sacrament, before the first Curtaine and in this fort they give the Communion to them which fland there, and afterward to all those of the other Curtaine, and lastly, to the Secular people which stand at the principall gate, as well men as women, if the Church be such that women may bee suffered to come this her: at the ac giving of the Communion, and at all other divine Services all frand vpon their feet; and when Standing they goe to receive the Communion, all of them come with their hands lifted vp before their shoulders, with the palmes of their hands spread abroad before them : and when any man receiueth the Sacrament of the bloud, he receiveth of that Holy Water, as I faid before. And also Wathing. generally al fuch as are to receive the Communion before the Maffe, vieto wash their hands with water, which is placed in all Churches and Monasteries for this purpose. The Priest which faith the Maffe, and they which flood with him at the Altar (the Communion being ended) returne wato the Altar, and wash the Bason wherein the Sacrament was put with the water remayning in the Vessell, which they say is Holy Water : this Water is put into the Chalice, and he which faid Maffe drinketh it up all. This done, one of the Ministers of the Altar taketh a Croffe and a 30 facring Bell, and beginning a little Song, goeth to the principall gate where the Epiftle and Gofpell were read, and where they ceafed to give the Communion, and all they which are in the Church, and without the Church, incline their heads and take their leaues, faying, That this is the bleffing, and that without this no man may depart. On Saturdaies and Sundaies, No man may and Feativall daies, in all Churches and Monasteries, they vie to give holy Bread. The forme of department Ceremonies which this little Monasterie vieth (which hath not about twentie or fine and thebleffing twentie Friers) is observed in all other Monasteries and Churches. The service of the Masse, Short Masse, (except the Processions) is very short, because the Masse in the weeke daies, is ended almost as

12. The manner how they make the Cake aforesaid, is this: The house where they make Manner of man 40 it in all Churches & Monasteries, is placed (as is said before) toward that part where the Gospel king the Cake. is faid without the Church, and the couered circuit, which is as a Cloyster in all Churches and Monasteries: and they vie the other circuit which is without and not couered, as a Churchyard. This house is as bigge as the Quire behind the great Altar, and somewhat bigger, and in all Churches and Monafteries they have nothing elie in that house, but that which ferueth for House of our this bufineffe; to wit, a Staffe to beate the come out of the eares, and an Inftrument to grinde pole for it. the Meale, because they make it very white, as is convenient for such a purpose : because they make not the faid Sacrament with Meale or Wheate, wherein Women have put their hands. They have Earthen Platters, wherein they knead the Meale, and they make the Dow harder Nowomen then we make it, they make a little Quen like a Still to Still Water, and youn the same a plate may touch the of Iron, (and some Churches haue it of Braffe, and some others of Bricke) which is round, Mease, with a large compafie, and they put the fire vnderneath it, and when it is hot, they make it cleane with a course cloath, and then lay a good piece of this Dow vpon it, and spread it abroad with a Woodden Knife, as broad as they will have it, and make it very round, and when the Cake is baked they take it away, lay it aside, and make another after the same fashion; and this fecond Cake after it is likewife ready, they take the former, and lay it thereupon, to wit, that fide which was vppermost they turne downe-ward, and so both these two Cakes are laid together, as they were one Cake, and they doe nothing all the while but turne and toffe them you this Plate, untill they bee baked beneath and aboue, and on every fide, and to they make as many as they will. In the same house are also the Raisins where-with they make their The Raising

60 Wine, and the Instrument where-with they presse the same. In these houses also is the Holy Holy Bread-Bread made, which is diffributed on the Saturdaies and Sundaies, and other Featurall dayes, and when their great Featts are held, as Christmas, Easter, and our Lady of August, they fetch out this Sacrament of Bread with a Vertment, Bels and Croffes, very demoutly and before they "Pako. enter into the church ther with, they go once about the circuit, which is like vnto a Cloyiter, but

ministred with

Rogation, or

1034

when it is not Holy day they go strait into the Church, The Saturday before Ascension day when we vie to fay our Letanies, these Friers made a Procession, and because we were strangers in the Countrey, it feemed a goodly fight vnto vs, and it was on this wife : they tooke Croffes and a confecrated stone of the Altar with great reuerence, couered with cloth of Silk, & a Frier which carryed it on his head, was likewife wholly coursed with the like cloth of Silke: they carryed also Bookes, Bels, Cenfers, and holy water, and went into certaine fields fowed with Miller, and there they made their Denotions, with cryes after the manner of Letanies, and with this Procession they returned vnto the Monasterie. And when weasked them wherefore they did this. they faid, because the Wormes doe eate their Corne, therefore they went to formkle them with they raid, occasine the world accept the which faith Maffe, hath no other difference to Sprinkling Wormes with in his apparell from a Deacon and Sub-deacon, fauing a long Stole flit in the midft, fo that hee may thrust his head through it, and behind and before it reacheth downe to the ground. The Holy Water to Friers which fay Maffe weare their haires long, and the Priests weare it not, but are shorne, and fo they fay Malle, and are alwayes bare-footed, and no man may come shod into the Church, and in imitation of for this purpose they alleage that which God said vnto Moses, Put off thy Booses, for the place where thou flandest is boly ground.

13. In this Monasterie of Saint Michael, where we were, we faid Masse every day, not in the

notion as they feemed, and supplyed our want with Censers and Incense, because weehed 20

Monasterie, but in the circuit which is like a Cloyfter : because in this Countrey they say but one Masse a day in every Church or Monasterie. The Friers came vnto our Masse with great de-

kill them.

But one Maffe

Many Priests necessary to Shooes and fpirting in Churches mile

A Fast from Trinitie Sunday till Chrift-Lay Fast till

Forme of the

brought none with vs : and they thinke it an ill thing to fay Maffe without Incense, and they faid that all things feemed well vnto them, fauing that they thought it not commendable for one Priest alone to say Masse, because among them they vie not to say Masse, except they bee three, or fixe, or fixe, and all these stand at the Altar. Also, they misliked that we went with our shooes into the Church, and much more when we did spit in the Church. But wee excused our selues, saying; That this was the fashion in our Countrey. And so wee said Masse energy day untill Trinitie Sunday, and when the Munday after the faid Trinitie Sunday came, then they would fuffer vs to fay no more Masse in the morning, and we marueiling thereat, and not The great fafts well pleased, and having at that instant no Interpreter to learne wherefore they would not suffer ane great raiss with pre-tail, at length we vinderstood, that which by experience afterward we law, to wit: 30 which these vs to say Masse, at length we vinderstood, that which by experience afterward we law, to wit: 30 Religious men that they observe the Old Testament in their fasting; for they fast very straitly in the Lent. which they begin the Munday after the Sunday of Sexagefina, which are ten dayes before our Shrouetide, and so they make their Lent of fiftie dayes, and say that they take those dayes before, for the Saturdayes on which they doe not fast : and their Fast is to eate at euen-tide, andeuery day they receive the Communion, and therefore they fay not Maffe but in the evening and when Masse is done, they receive the Communion and then goe to supper. And like as they haue thefe fiftie dayes of faft, so they take as many dayes after Easter and Whitsontide, wherein they fast not at all; and when it is not fasting day, they say Masse in the morning, and all those dayes they eate flesh without observing any one of them, and say Masse in the mornings, and frait way goe to dinner because they fast not. When this time is ended, and Trinitie Sunday past, all the Clerkes and Friers are bound to fast every day saving Saturdayes, Sundayes, and this Fast continueth untill Christmase day. And because they fast all, they say Masse at night, alleaging for proofe hereof the Supper of Chrift, how that it was fasting time, and almost night when he confecrated his Bodie. But com-

monly, the Lay-people as well men as women are bound to fait weekly on Wednesdayes and

Fridayes, from Trinitie Sunday vntill Aduent : and from Christmasse day till the Purification of

the Virgin Marie (which they call the Feaft of Saint Simeon) they fast not at all. The three

dayes after the Purification being not Saturday nor Sunday, are an exceeding strait Fast for the

Clerkes, Friers, and Lay-people, for they fay that they eate but once in all these three dayes,

the Lent the Clearkes, the Friers, the Laitie, the men and women, small and great, found and

ficke doe all fast. And likewise, from Easter vnto Trinitie Sunday, and from Christmasse vnto

and they call it the Fast of Name. These three dayes being ended, until the beginning of Lent, 10 they fast againe as they did before, until the Feast of the holy Trinitie. In the Aduent and all

the Purification, the Maffe is faid in the morning because there is no Fast, all the rest of the yeare it is faid in the evening because they fast. The Monasterie where we buried Matthew, is distant from this wherein we aboad three miles space of very bad way, & it is called, The Monastery of the Vision of less. It is seated upon the point the Monaferie of a Rocke exceeding high, and from enery part as a man looketh downward, there is a Valley miruled, The which feemeth to be as deepe as Hell. The Church of the Monasterie is very great of bodie, & Dreadfull Val.

Dreadfull Val. or walkes, which are very finely made with their Arches and their Vaults, which feeme to bee made of wood, because they are all painted ouer, so that a man cannot perceive whether the Church be built of stone, or of wood. It hath two walking places in forme of a Cloyster about the bodie of the Church, which are both couered and painted with the Pictures of the Apoltles,

and Patriarkes, and with the florie of alpoher Old Tellament, and with Shine Constant of Thirty and Patriarkes, and with the in all their Chorches And like wilk, there is in the fame a great price of Arras, wherein is wouens Christia eyeir land with the Highties, the Patrianes, and Prophets, in all heir and every one hath his title or name in Lines; which fleweet that the fifthe worke was not Churches. made in those Countries. There are also many ancient Intages, which stated not woon the Afrays. Saints in Array becaule it is not their faltion, but they keeps them in a Welliy kapped to with many Bookes. Images in and they bring them not forth but on Holy-dayes; concentration of 1919 and 1919.

active or ingerient not to compare ou reasy says and the street of apperfaying, with a great roometo dine in, where they face alcogether and three and three in a Treen drift Which is not very deepe, but plaine like vnto a wooden Platter. Their Dyet is very honely, their Brad is made of Mille and de Burley, and of mother Seed which takey all Index y their Hard Distantial Brad blacks. This Bread they made the the the state of the thing and blacks. This Bread they make the state of the thing and they give three of these to sich one, and the thing and tweener two, and I wonder greatly to thinks how they give three of the thing betweener two, and I wonder greatly to thinks how they give the three of things be such one. wife, they give each of them a little fresh fish without Ove or Sale. Of the felfe lame Dye wile, mey gine each or them a new rean may warmen type or out. The inner anne types, they fend to many aged and honorable friend; forwards without hey vil gild-instance, which they should be come not varochedining hall. And if any man aske me how Pknow this tamiwere; that behots years in the come not varochedining hall. And if any man aske me how Pknow this tamiwere; that behots years in the come not varochedining hall. that which I law when we buried Marther this greatest part of the That Paint which we've though, boad in Libiopia, our Lodging was not farre from the lard Monatter ? While I departed of their times from our houle vpon my Mule, and came in the evening to the Monasterie, and for the most part I went to passe the time with the Friers, and principally at their Festivall times, and Hearned many things of them concerning their Affaires, Revenues, Viages, and Customes. An hundred Friers age commonly in this Monasterie, and the most part of them are yerk aged, and

as dry as a flocke, few of them are young. There are also many little children, of eight yeares old and vpward, which they bring vp, and many of them are lame and blind. This Monasterie is walled round about, and hath no entrie but by two gates which the alfulves thire.

14. This Monasterie is the head of fixe Monasteries, which stand about who fame among these Six other Cele Mountaines, and that which is farthest, is not past nine and swentie or thirtie miles off, and all subject to this

(Mountaines, and that which is ravially specified to this of them are this et al. (1994). The control of them are this et al. (1994) and that is to key, a Warden placed by the Abbbr or Provincially and this Mountaines which hash a Douad, that is to key, a Warden is blisbed to the Abbbr or Provincially and this Mountaines which hash a Douad, that is to key, a Warden is blisbed to the Abbbr or, which it is a Provincial of the Viscous in the Warden of the Warden place, in a certaine Procession which they made, and in my indgement, the Friers were not a. The friend boue three lamidred, and the greatest part of them were old men. I law a great circuit, which Friers, men this Monafterie hath about two places, which are like to Cloytters, which circuit is open; but old men. at that time it was all coursed oner with great and small Clothes of Gold; Veluets of Meca. Their kiches, all long pieces sewed one vino another, to same cound about that circuit; though which then. attractment was an consequence varing case and many control about that circuit; through which they all long pieces sewed one withe another, to hang comed about that circuit; through which they artifects, made a goodly Procedion, all dad in Coper of the faid Cloth-of Gold, but made ill-fation-thank artifects, and at many as I have faid before. They carried fiftie Croffes of Silver, (mail and badly made , and at many set of the control of

Brazen Cenfers, when they faid Maffe I faw a great Chalice of Gold, and a Spoone of Gold, wherewith they gaue the Communion. And of the three hundred which were aftembled in this earne their Monastery, there were very few of mine acquaintance: I enquired of certaine of my friends, Juing, wherefore feeing fo many Friers belonged to this Monattery, as they faid, to few wette prefere at fo great a Solemnitie : they answered me, that the number was greater then they kooked for, because they are divided in other Monasteries, Churches, and Faires to earne their living as long as they be yong : for they cannot be maintayned in the Monaftery, but by their owne industrie, and when they are so old that they cannot travell, they come to end their dayes at this Monastery. This day I faw feuenteene yong men taken into Orders.

In this Monastery is the burial of an Abbot or Proninciall, called Philip, and his wisekes of Philip, an Erro. Holineffe were very great for they fay, that there was once a King or Prete Lanni; which transcours Saint, dained that they should not keepe the Saturday holy throughout all his Kingdomes and Dominions. And this Philip repaired immediately vnto him with his Brethren and with many Bookes, and shewed him how God had commanded that the Sabbath Day should bee observed, and that who oeuer observed it not should be stoned. This man disputed this question before all the religious men of Ashiopia, and was commended before the King and therefore they take him to bee a Saint, and they observe an Holy-day vnto him every yeare in the moneth of July, which they call the Fafor of Philip, which finifieth the Teflament or Memorie of Saint Philip. Holy day to 60 And therefore the Inhabitants of this Countrey and Monasterie are more infected with this bim. lewifb Herefie, then any other part of the Dominions of Prote lanni, although all of them bee in part infected : but their are more then any others. I have feene them with mine eyes feethe fifh on the Sabbath, and bake bread allo: and on the Sabbath in this Monastery, they make no fire at Difference of all . on the Sunday following, they make readie all things needfull for their Dyet, and I came Rice.

Yong Friers

1026

Oxenoffered

twiceto, this Eafear of Philip; at which times they received me with great honour. And at this Feat yearely, they kill many Oxen, and as one of them I face them kill thirtie, and at another eight and twentie, which were offered by the Inhabitanta their Neighbours, for denotion vnto this Philip, and they give this fieth raw to all the people, that come to the Fascar without and bread at all. The Friers cate no kind of flesh.

Friers eate no Wine of Honey, or Mead. No mom att. nerbeaft of the female fer

They fent me yearsly two great and fat quarters of beefe, with much bread and wine of Ho. ney, which likewise the Friers drinke not in the Monastery, but when they are abroad with ve Parturals, they drinke wine and eate fieth if they be but one alone, but if they be two, they doe it not, for feare the one of the other. This Monaffery and all the reft which are fubicat to it. observe an order, that no women may enter into it, nor thee Mules, nor Kine, nor Hens, nor any to other beaft of the female kind. This I both learned and faw my felfe; for when I came thithera Croffe-bow shoot distant from the Monastery, they came to take my Mule, not suffering meeto come with her to the Monastery, and they fent her to a house of theirs, called Giangargara, where Matthew died. They kill their Kine and Hens, a certaine diffance from the Monasterie. I faw but one Cocke in the Monastery with two bels at his legs, without Hennes, and they faid, that they kept him to crow at the time of their Mattens. If any women come into the house, they know it, for oftentimes I asked certaine children which were brought vp there, whose Sonnes they were, and they named ento me, the Friers for their Fathers, and fol know the yong Friers tobe called the Sonnes of all the old Friers.

Of the Husbandry of this Countrey, and how they preserve themselves from wild beasts, and of the Renenues of the Monasterie. Their departure, strange Rivers, Mountaines, Apes : BAENAGASSOES entertainment. Barna. Polygan mie, Marriages, Dinorces, Baptisme, and Circumcision. Their Branding, and Burying.

Heefe Friers or thole of other Monasteries, their subjects might very well play the 30 good Husbandmen, and might obscrib up Trees, Vines, and Orch-yards with their diligence, yet neuerthelelie, they do nothing at all, and the foile is good and fir to bring forth every thing, as may be gathered by that which is wild and farage, but they till mought else but fields of Mill, and keepe swarmes of Bees, and as soone as

night is come, they goe not once out of their houses, because of the wild beasts which are in that Countrey, and they which keepe their Millet, have their houses very high from the ground vpon Trees, where they lodge in the night. There are about this Monastery, and in the Vallies of thele Mountaines, great Heards of Cattell kept by Arabian Moores, which goe fortie or fiftie together with their wives and children, and the Captaine among them is a Christian, because the Cattell which they keepe are Cariftian Gentlemens of the Countrey of Barnagaffo. The Morres receive none other wages for their paines, but the Millie and Butter which they get of the Kine, and therewithall they futtaine themselves, their wines, and their children. Certaine times it chanced vs to lodge neere their Arabians, and they came to know of vs whether wee would buy any Cattell, and offered them vnto vs at a reasonable price. It is reported, that they are all Theeues favoured by the Lords which are Owners of the Cattell, and that men travell not among them but in great Caravans. The Revenues of this Monastery of the Vision are very great, as I saw and understood. First,

The Renenues of this Monafteric very

this Mountaine whereon this Monaftery is feated, containeth thirty miles in compaffe, whereon they fow much Millet, Barley, Rye, and Tafi, and of all this they pay a portion vato the Monastery, and also for the pasturing of their Cattell. In the Vallies of these Mountaines of are great Townes, and the most part of them belong vnto the Monastery, and within one or two dayes iourney, there are very many and fundry places which belong vnto the Monastery, and they are called, The Guleus of the Monastery, which fignifieth, priviledged places. Don Roderigo the Ambassador and I, on a certaine time trauelled towards the Court , departing from this Monafterie fine dayes iourney at the leaft, and came to a certaine peopled place, called Zame where we rested all Saturday and Sunday in a small Village, where there were to the number of twentie Houses. There they told vs that this place belonged vnto the Monastery of the Vision, and that there were one hundred places all belonging to the Monastery, and therewithall shewed ys many of them, and told vs that these one hundred places payed vnto the Monastery enery third yeare, one Horse apiece, which amount to thirtie foure Horses enery yeare.

And to vinderstand the same the better, I enquired of the Alicasin, of the Monastery, which this agreeth to fignifieth, The Anditour or Steward of the House, because hee receiveth and disbutfeth all things. And hee told mee that it was true that they payed the faid Horses And I enquired of him why the Monasterie required so many Horses, considering

that they yied not to ride; he faid, That they payed not the Hories, but Kine in their stead. that is to fay, Fiftie Kine for one Horfe; and this tribute of Horfes continued all the time that Fiftie Kine these places were in the Kings hands, which endowed the Monastery with these inrifdi- paidinex-Gions. And afterward the Inhabitants of those Countries compounded with the Monasterie, change, and changed the payment of Horses into so many Kine : besides which, they payed many other tributes of corne. This Monastery hath, aboue fifteene daies journey distant within the Kingdome of Tigrimation, a great Territorie, which is fufficient to make a Dakedome, which is called Adetyeste, which payeth yearely fixtie Horfes, and infinite tributes and rents. There goe Aderyte. alwaies vnto this Territorie, aboue one thoufand Friers of this Monasterie, because therein are IO many Churches. Of their Friers some be very good, reuerent, and deuout; and other some as bad and euill conditioned. Befides the tribute of the forefaid Hories, which are payed vnto

the faid Monasterie, are many other places which appertaine onely to the King, which pay tribute of Horses according to their ancient custome; and these are places which frontier vpon the An excellent Countrey of Egypt, from whence come good and stately Horses, and other places of the Arabi- breed of herans, which likewise have good Horses, but not so good as those of Egypt.

From this Monasterie of Saint Michael, we departed the fifteenth of the moneth of June.

fome went on foote, there were also but few people to carrie our goods, and the Oxen being not able to trauell through the Woods and Thickets, because all the way was rocky and craggy; the Gunners with their Skourers were left behind, and the Barrels of Gun-powder; and they 20 had not trauailed past two miles from the Monasterie, but that the Embassadour and we which were in his company ouer-taking them, found all the goods validen, and when we could not learne wherefore they had done so, we caused them to lade them againe. Having passed over Riversin exthe Mountaines, we found certaine dry Riners, which in Winter time are very great and tervery fullor dry, rible, that is to fay, During the time of the stormes and Thunder; and as soone as the storme and tempeft is ouer, suddenly the Rivers become dry, and on both sides of the faid Rivers are most high and steepe Mountaines, as fauage as the rest which we passed. Along these Brookes are very mightie Forrests of Trees, which are very faire and tall, but fuch as we knew not : as mong which, vpon the bankes were certaine Palme-trees. Neere one of these Rivers we lodged one night, with very great showers of Raine and Thunder-

30 17. The day following, we went ouer another high Mountaine, exceeding wilde and fauage, so that we could not well trauell ouer the same, neither on our Mules nor on foote. In this Mountaine we found many Beafts of fundry forts, and an infinite number of Apes in fqua. Squadrons of drons, and commonly they are not feene in all the Mountaine, faung onely where there is Apes. fome great rupture and hole, and some Cane; and they went not fewer then two or three Their number. hundred together, and where there is any plaine ground above those suptures, they make forme, and ha their abode, and they leave not any one flone vnremooned, and they digge the earth in fuch fort, bour, that it seemeth to be ploughed. They are very great, and from the middle vpwards, are hairie like Lyons, and are as big as Weathers. After we had passed this Mountaine, we lodged in a place at the foote thereof, called Calote. From the Monastery whence we departed vato this Calote. 40 place, is about fixteene or eighteene miles. We paffed a River of running water, which was

The next day we faid our Maffe in the Church of the faid place, which is called Saint Mariel chael, and the house with the furniture thereof, are very poore. In this Church were three Piicks. married Priefts, and other three Zagonari, that is to fay, Priefts of the Gospell, and three other must be of necessitie, for with a leser number they cannot fay Maste. This Sunday we departed about the Euening-tide, because the people of the Countrey, which were our guides, would haue it fo rand from thence we began to trauaile through plaine Countries, fowed and manured after the manner of Portugall: and the Woods which were betweene these manured places, are Woods of all of wilde Olines, exceeding faire without any other Trees. We lodged neere a running Riz wilde Olines. 50 uer, among many good Villages.

18. We came vnto the Towne of Barus, which is about nine miles from the Towne of Barus, Calote, the eighteenth of the moneth of June : this is the chiefe Towne of the Country, and Kingdome of Barnagaffe, where his principall Palaces are; which they call Bete-Negron, that is to say, The Honfer of the King. The same day that we came thither, Barnagaffe departed before we came into the Towne vnto another. Heere we were exceedingly well lodged, according to the Countrey, and in great houses, very well furnished in the lower part, and aloft they were flat couered with earth.

The third day after our arrivall there, the Embasiadour purposed to visite Barnagasse, who tooke fine of vs with him in his company, all riding vpon Mules, and wee came to the place 60 where he was about Euening; and from the place whence we departed vnto the Towne where Bernagaffo remained, was eleuen miles, or thereabout. Being come thither, we highted before Barnagaffo visihis Palace, neere vnto the Church doore, whereinto we entred and faid our Prayers, according ted. His brutiff to our manner; which ended, we tooke our way toward his Palace, supposing all of vs that we entertainment should suddenly be admitted to his speach; but they would not suffer vs to enter in, saying, That Riffic

he was a fleepe, where flaying a while to speake with him, they tooke no order for vs, but ne was a neepe, wherein hardly we could all fland : for our lodging, in flead of beds. they fent vs two Oxe hides with the haire on them; and for our Supper, they fent vs Bread and Wine of the Countrey in abundance, and one Sheepe.

The day following, wee flayed a great while, looking when they would fend for vstn haue audience. At length, we were fent for , and entring into the first Gate , wee found three men like vnto Porters, having each of them a staffe in their hands, and when we would have entred they would not fuffer vs, faying, that we should give them some Pepper, where they kept vs out for a long while. At length, being entred in at the first Gate, wer came to the fecond, where we found three other Porters, which feemed to be men of more account, who 10 made vs to stand wayting there aboue halfe an houre vpon a little straw, and the Sunne so scorshed vs, that we were almost smothered with heate; and we should have stayed there much longer, had not the Ambassadour sent him word in choler, either to admit him into his presence, or The Ambaffa; that he would return eagain evito his lodging. Then one more honourable then the reft, came dour had many and told vs. that we might come in. The laid Barnagaffo was in a great house in a lower roome, dience of Bar- because in those Countries they build no houses with stories; and hee lay vpon a couch, as his manner was, con passed with certaine Curtaines which were very homely : hee had fore eves,

with flories.

and his wife fate at his head. Here, after due falutations, the Ambassador offered him his physician to cure him: to whom he answered, That he needed no Physician, and that he madeno reckoning of him. Then the Amballador belought him of his courtefie, to furnish him with meanes for the 20 performance of our voyage; Barnagaffo replyed, That he could not give him Mules, and that we must buy them our felues, but that hee would furnish vs with all other things, and would tend a fon of his with vs, which should accompany vs to the court of Prese lanni, and so he dismissed vs. 19. Being come forth out of the house where Barnagaffo remayned, they eaused vs to sit owne vpon certaine Mats ipread vpon the ground, whither they brought vs attend with full of Barly meak halfe kneaded into dowe, with an horne of Wine made of honey and because

wee were not vied to eate nor to fee fuch kind of meats, wee would not eate thereof, but after that we were vsed thereunto, we are thereof willingly: and so at that time wee rose without eating of ought at all, and returned to our lodging, and straight-way got to horse-backe two houres before noone; and being about two miles on our way, a man came running after vs. which 32 prayed vs to flay for him, because the Mother of Barnagasso had sent vs meat, and that she would take it in ill part, if we accepted not thereof, and io we stayed for him, and they brought vs fine wheaten Loanes very great and good, and one home of good Wine, which was made of honey. Let no man maruell, in hearing mention of a horne of wine, hecause the great Lords and Press I lensi himselfe, make their. Vessels to drinke wine in, of hornes of Oxen: and some hornes there are that contayne five and fixe measures. Moreover, shee fent vs a quantitie of the said meale in dowe; faying, that in that Countrey they take it for a good food. This food is made of parched Barly ground into meale, and they knead it with a little water, and so they cate it. After we had garen we followed our journey to the Towne of Barna, where we had left our goods, and where We were lodged, In this Countrey, and in all the Kingdomes and Dominions of Prete Ianni, they 40 reckon not by Leagues nor Miles : and if you aske them how farre it is to fuch a place, they will any men me and any seegus nor paues: and it you aske them how tarte it is to fuch a place, they will diffunce of the appropriate you, if you less forth at Sunne-tiling, Tou load come thirter when the Sunne is there, point way, pointing ting to the place of the Simple in the skie; and if you trauell follow, Tou load come thirter when the vano the could. And the loan, which is at night; and if the way be long. bete, that is to fay, in one weeke. Between their two Townes is a very goodly Countrey, that is to fay, very, well manured, and Fields of Wheat, of Millet, of Barly, of Chich-peafon, of Lentils, and of many other kinds of graines, which are in that countrey vnknown to vs, to wit, Tafo dignas, and Millet Zaburre, and this Tafo de gaza, is a feed very good and delicate among them, and great-

of the Sunne in the Hea-Tafédi guza, a Graine

> Wild Kine hurcfull.

Barua.

20. In this Towne of Base, where we were, and where afterward we aboad a long time, are three hundred houses, and the greatest part of the Inhabitants are Women; for in this Towne is kept, as the were, a Court, formany respects. One is, because it is never without people belonging to the Court of Prete lani; and those which come thither, having no Women with them, vie the Women of the Towne as their Concubines. Another is , because here the Court of Barns 60 gaffo is kept, where for the greatest part of the yeare hee maketh his residence, and continually hath in his stable about three hundred Horses, and as many more, which daily come thither, to disparch their businesse with Barnagasse, in regard of their affaires and sures. And sew, or none of them will be without their Concubines; and hence it is that here

ly efteemed, because the Wormes eateth not the same, which is wont to denoure their corne and

great Villages which are very well inhabited, and all of them feated in goodly greene fields. Vp-

on the faid manured grounds, Herds of wild Kinerange vp and downe, fortie, fiftie, and fixtie in a

companie, and we Portugals hunted them with great delight, and flue very many of them : for

they of the Countrey will take no paines, although they receius great damage by them in their Corne, but fight, know not how to kill them.

other Pulle, and it is of long continuance. On both fides of the way, a man may fee aboue fiftie 50

many light young Women fettle their abode, which after they be growne old, betake themfelies to another kind of life: For in this Towne there is a great Market enery Tuefday, where Tuefday Mira there is three or four hundred perions met together, and all the old Women and young Laifes bercarrie Measures in their hands, wherewith they measure in the Market all the Corne and Salt that is fold, and in this fort they earne their living. And moreover, they lodge those that remaine in the Towne, and keep the goods which are left vnfold vntill the next Market day, and all things effe in like fort. And because there are many women in this town, those which be rich Potremic yeld. and haue the meanes, take two or three Wiues, neither is it forbidden them by the King nor and how purithe Inflice, but onely by the Church; because all such as have about one Wife may not come shed. To within the Church, much leffe communicate or receive any Sacraments of the Church, and are

held for excommunicate perfons.

During the time we abode in this place, a Coulin of mine and my felfe lodged in the house of a man, whole name was Ababitan, which had three Wives, which were all of our acquain- Ababitan, our tance, and our good friends; and he told me that hee had feuen and thirtie children by them, Authors Hofte and that no man had forbid him their company, fauing that the Church admitted him not to Wines, and be the Communion. Before our departure he had dismissed two of them, and held himselfe to one themseure and onely; namely, to her which he had last married, and for all this he was restored to all the Sa- thirty children. craments, and licenfed to come to Church, as though he had neuer had but one Wife. And there, for there are many Women in this Towne, because Rich men and Courtiers take two or three, a configuration of the comments of the

divorced for a small trifle.

I have feene many of their Women married, and my felfe was prefent at a certaine marriage, Rites of mark made without the Church, which was celebrated on this manner. In a Court before a house, age, was placed a Litter or Couch, and they caused the Bridegroome and the Bride to fit downe thereon, and there came three Priests, which beganne to sing with a loud voyce, Haleluis, and thus finging as it were, certaine verfes, they went thrife about the faid Couch or Litter: afterward they cut off a locke of haire from the Bridegroomes crowne, and as much from the same place of the Brides head, bathing the faid haires in Wine made of Honey, and the Bridegroomes haires they laid upon the head of the Bride, and the Brides haires they laid upon the head of 30 the Bridgtoome, in the same places where they were cut off; and vpon the same they cast holy

Water, and afterward they beganne to make a feast, after the manner of marriages, and at night the faid married persons were accompanied home vnto their house. And for the space of one moneth no man entreth into that house, sauing onely one man which is the Bridegroomes God-father, who remaineth all the moneth with them, and the moneth ended hee departerh home. And if the Bride be a Woman of account, it is fine or fixe moneths before the commetti out of her house, and she weareth continually a blacke veile before her face; and if she be with child before fixe moneths, the layerh off her veile, and if the proueth not with child within fixe moneths space, she layeth it aside.

21 Moreouer, I have feene Abuna Marco, whom they call their Patriarcke, vie certaine Abuna Marco 40 bleffings in the Church, that is to fay; before the principall gate, where they caused the Bride- the Patriarke, groome and the Bride to fit downe on a Litter, about which he went with Incenfe and a croffe, his marria and comming vnto the faid couple, he laid his hand, upon their heads, faying, That they fhoold bleffing. and comming which God commanded in the Golpell, and that they floudd remember that they wereno more two, but which God come the commanded in the Golpell, and that they ought fo to bee in-heart and mind, and they stayed there till Masse was done, where, after they had received the Communion, hee gaue them his bleffing. This I faw done in a Towne called Dara, which is in Darain the the Kinedome of Xaa. Another of these marriages I saw in a Village hand to the kinedome of kaa. the Kingdome of Xoa. Another of these marriages I saw in a Village, being in the Parish of Xoa

Coquete, being a place in the Kingdome of Barnagaffe. And when these marriages are made. they are concluded by contract or covenant in this fort : If thou leave me, or I thee, he which for I 50 be the cause of this dististion, shall pay such or such a penaltie; which penaltie is appointed, according to the qualitie of the persons, either in so much Gold or Silver, or so many Mules, or so many Kine or Goates, or to many Cloathes, or fo many measures of Corne. And if any man would disorce himselfe, immediatly he seeketh an occasion wherefore he may doe so: and by Disorces. these meanes few doe fall into those penalties; and thus they disorce themselves, as well the

And if any observe the order of Matrimony, they be the Priests which cannot be divorced, Priests cannot. and also the Husbandmen which loue their Wiues, because they be a great helpe vnto them in and husbandkeeping of their Cattell, and bringing up their Children, and in digging their fields, and wee- men will not ding of their Corne, and because they find all things needfull made ready; when they come bediuorced. 60 home at night, and therefore by reason of these commodities, they continue married as long as A Pardirathey line. And whereas I have faid, that in their contracts they put downe penalties; The first, mountethro they mee. And whereas I have and, that in their contracts they put downe penalties; and many additional barragaffe, whom hee knew (whose name was Dari) was discreted from his Wife, and payed Double iniqui-

for a penaltie one hundred ounces of Gold, which are one thouland Pardas, that is to lay; One 19, Aduktious thouland duckats, and was married to another, and his Wife married vnto a Gentleman, called and inceftuous

Rrrrr 3

Aron , brother to the faid Barnagaffo , and both these Brethren had Children by this Woman. whom we our felues knew. There are great Lords, and are Brethren to the Mother of Prete Ianni, whom all of vs did very well know, and we Portugals knew also Romana Orque a noble Lady, the fifter of Prete Ianni, which was married vnto a great and noble young Gentlemans and in our time thee was disorced from this her busband, and was married to a man aboue fortie yeeres of age, a person of great credit in the Court, whose name was Abucher, and his Father had the Title of Cabeata, which is one of the great Lords that remayne in the Court : thus I haue both ieene and knowne many of these disorcements, and I thought good to put downe there, because they fell out among great personages. And whereas I have faid, that Aron tooke to wife the wife of his brother Dori, maruell not awhit thereat, because it is the manner of this Io Countrey, and feemeth not any firange thing, that a brother should lye with his brothers wife. Scripture abu- for they lay, that the brother rayfeth up feede unto his brother, as was accustomed.

Scripture abused. Circumcision. Baptisme, Funerall Ceremonies. LIB.VII

22. Any man may circumcife that lifteth, without any ceremonie; onely they fay, that they Circumcision. finde it written in their Books, that God commanded them to be circumcised. And let no man maruell which heareth this, for they circumcife women as well as men, which thing was not v. fed in the old Law. They baptize in manner following; menchildren they baptize within fortie dayes, and the female fexe after fixtie, and if they die before, they goe without baptilme. And I often told them, and in fundrie places, that herein they committed a great error, and that they did against the Gospell of our Lord, which faith : That which is borne of the flesh is flesh : and that which is borne of the Spirit, is Spirit. Whereunto they answered me very often, hat the faith of the Mother, and the communion which shee received, while shee was with child of them, was sufficient for them. And this Baptisme they minister in the Church as wee doe, but not in the christning Fount, but at the Church-gate with a pot of water, and so they bleffe them , and they powre O le as we doe voon the top of their fore-heads, and voon their shoulders; neither doe they vie the Sacrament of the Chrisome, nor the Oile of extreme Viction. Their forme of Baptime is not fo long as that which is vied in the Archbishoprick of Bragança, but seemeth to be about the length of that which is vied in the Church of Rome. At the time when they wil baptize the Infant with this water, one which is there as a God-

father, taketh the Infant out of the hands of the Midwife which beareth the same, and he taketh

hath the pot in his one hand, and fprinckling the water vpon the child with the other hand, hee

washeth it, saying the same words that we vie, to wit : I baptize thee in the Name of the Father,

and of the Sonne, and of the holy Ghost. They alwayes minister this Sacrament on the Saturday.

Communion was very dangerous and nothing necessary. And whereas I have faid, that they

powre oile upon the crowne of the childs head, this is because all the Infants are brought to bee

And those markes which wee see certaine Negro slaves to have on their noses, and betweene

gion, but onely for a brauery, with a cold Iron; and they fay, that these markes are very beauti-

make them in this firt: they take an head of Garlicke, which is great, cleane washed, and

fomewhat stale, and they lay it to the eye or to the other part where they will make the marke,

and then they cut round about it with a sharpe knife, to wit, about the faid head of Garlicke, and

then they widen the faid cut, and powre vpon it a little waxe; and vpon the waxe they clapa

little dowe, and binde it with a cloth, and so bound, they let it alone for one night, and this

it ynder both the armes, and so holdeth it hanging downe, and the Priest which baptizeth it to

Oile. No Chrisme Vaction.

Not in the Fount.

Rices of Bap-

or on the Sunday, and it is done in the morning at the Masse, and all that they baptize, as well doe then also Males as Fernales, they cause to receive the Sacrament of the Lords Supper in small quantitie,

communicate, and by force of water they confirming them to iwa low it. Touching this point, I faid, that this

baptized with their heads shauen.

The cause why their eyes, or on their eye-browes, are not made with fire nor for any token of Christian Reli- 40 they marke with an Iron in full to beheld. And there are women which are very skilfull in making these markes. And they the face. And how they

doe it.

Their manner

Alı commers

marke remayneth as long as the partie lines, which feemeth to be made with fire, because the co- go lour of that marke is blacker then any part of their bodies. When any one dyeth, I have feene them carried, as well perfons of Honour, as them of the middle and poorest degree, all after one fort. First, at the time of their death, they are not accuflomed to light candles, but after they be dead, they beflow vpon them much centing, and wash them, and then winde their whole bodies in linnen cloth. And if it be a person of Honeur, they lay an Oxe-hide ouer the Areet, spreading it ouer the Litter: and the Priest comming to carry him to the buriall, faith a fhort feruice, and they take him and carry him to the Church , with a Croffe, a Cenfer, and holy Water, running as fait as euer they can, fo that a man cannot our-No fertice for take them : and when they are come to Church, they bring not the dead corps into the fame, but the dead, but the driving way for him downe at the graue, mether fay they any of our feruice for him, that is to the Guigellot fay, no service for the dead, nor any Psalme of David, nor of lob. And when I inquired what it 60 No Dirigeor was which they faid, they answered me, that it was all the whole Gospell of Saint John, which Maffe for the being ended, they put the corps into the grave, but first they cenfe it and sprinkle it with holy water. Neither lay they any Dirige or Maffe at all for the dead, and much leffe for denotion of any man huing, onely they fay one Massea day in every Church, and every body which commeth thither receiveth the Communion.

JIII .5

Of the lituation of Barua, the chiefe Towns of the Kingdome of Barnagallo, and of their Houses, and of the wild Beasts, and Fowles. Of his Dominion and Government: of their two Winters, Churches, Church-yards, and Priests marriages : their departure to Timei, and qualitie of that place.

His Towne of Barna is a very commodious and pleasant place, and standeth upon a 22. His I own of Bornets a very common start. Place in the Property high Rocke, on the fide whereof runnersh a Ruer. The Kings houles are built eye, bene deferious on the fast Rocke, very well made, in forme of a Forteefic all the rest of the country bed. is mightic champion, manured fields, wheren are exceeding many Towness to bee is mightie champion, manured fields, wherein are exceeding many Townes to bee feene, and the foile is very fertile to reare vp Cattell, to wit, Oxen, Goates, Sheepe, and many Cattell, fifth. other wild beafts, ant for hunting. Much good fish is in the Riuer, many wild Geefe, and wild wild beafts, Duckes; here are likewise great store of wild beasts of all forts, to wit, wild Oxen, and Hares fowle. in great number, so that every morning we killed twentie or thirtie of them without Dogs, only with Nets, Partridges there are of three forts, which differ not from ours, but in their big. Partridges of ly with Nets. Partriages there are or three forts, which and the following three forts, neffe, and in the colour of their feet and beacks; for they are as big as Capons, and of the colour as big as Capons, and of the colour as big as Capons. that ours are of, but their feet and beaks are yellow. There are other like Hennes, but their pons. feet and beaks are red. There are also certaine others, in nature like vnto our Partridges, but have their feet and beaks gray; which although they differ in colour and greatnesse from ours, vet

all of them taile like ours, fauing that they are more delicate. Turtles there are without num- Turtlesdarken ber, which in flying darken the Sunne, and are very fat and good, and likewife Hennes, and the Sunne, wild Geefe, and infinite numbers of Quailes, and all forts of fowles that may bee named or knowne, as Popingayes, and many other kind of birds vnknowne to vs, both great and small, of infinite forts and colours. There are likewife birds of prey, to wit, royals Eagles, Faulcons, Lenards. Sparrow-hawkes, and great flore of Girfaulcons, and Faulcons for the Rivers, and Cranes. and of all forts that may be named.

In the mountaines are wild Swine, Stags, Roes, beafts called Ante, wild Goats, wild Oxen, Wild beafts. Lions, Luzerns, Tygres, Foxes, Wolues, Porcupines, and divers other forts of knowne and vnknowne beafts, and all wild. If any man shall aske mee how it is possible, that there should be

30 fo many wild beafts in this Countrey, and fishes in the Rivers, seeing the same is so well peopled: I fay that no man hunteth, nor fisheth, nor hath any engine or way to take them , nei- No hunting ther delight they to feed upon them : and therefore it is a very easie matter to goe on hanting, nor fishing. and to kill as much game as a man lift, because the beatls and the fowles are not molested by the people: and the wild beaits (as it hath beene told me) hurt no perion, yet the people of the Wildbeafts Countrey fland in great feare of them. At one time onely, at a place called Camarua, a mile di- nothurtfull. flant from Barua, while a man flept in the night at the gate of his Oxe-cote, with his little for, there came a Lion and killed the faid partie, so that no man perceived it, and burt not the child at all, but eat the mans note, and opened his heart. The people of this Towne were greatly amazed hereat, faying, this Lion hath begunne to fauour mans flesh, he will doe much mis-40 chiefe, and no man thall el ape him : yet (bleffed be God) it was not perceived that hee did

any more harme; and wee at the same time went often on hunting neere the same place, and neuer found any Lions. Wee found indeed Panthers, Ounces ", and Tygres, which we hurr not. "Leonze.

24. The authoritie of Barnagaffo is in manner following. By his title hee is called a King : for, Nagas fignifieth, a King ; and Bar, the Sea: and fo Bar-nagas fignifieth King of the Sea. And Barnagas fignified when they give him this government, they give it him with a Crowne of gold vpon his head, fieth, King of and it is given according to the will of Trete lanni, and lafteth as long as it pleafeth him. For in the Sea. fixe veeres frace while we remayued there, I law foure Barnagaffos. At our comming into the An Officer of Countrey, Dori was Barnagaffo, and he died of his naturall death, whose Crowne was given to tenchanged.

50 his sonne Bidla, a child of ten or twelve yeeres old, which after hee was made Barnagasso, was ftraightway called to the Court of Prete lanni, whom he deprised of the government, and gauge the same to a noble Lord, called Arrax Annubrata. This man held is two yeeres, and then it was taken from him, and he was made the chiefeft Lord of the Court, which in their Language is called, Bestude; and he gave the government of Barnag affo, to another Lord, named Addr. a nestude. very gentle person, which is now Barnagasso. Vnder his government are many great Lords. which are called Xunn, which fignifieth Captaines, and thefe Xunn are men of great authoritie. And it is faid, that two governments of this Land was wont to bee the Kingdome of Q cene Q.c. lace. Candace, which in her time had no other dominion, and thee was the first Christian that this Land had.

Also there are two other Gouernments, to wit; Doffila, and Confila. These border upon E- pastila and gypt, and these Captomes and Lords remaine upon the Frontiers, and have Trampets carried to- confia fore them, which they call Vgardas, which none can have but fuch as are great Lords; and all thefe attend upon Barnagaffs to the warres, when he goeth forth, and wherefoeuer he goeth. He

1042

hath many other Lords under him, which are called Arrazes, which fignifieth Captains ; & one of them we knew, whose name was Arraz Aderao, that is to say, Head of the men at Armet. whereof he had fifteene thousand vnder him , which are called Causs. And I have seene the Arrax his habit faid Arraz Aderao twice at the Court, and both those times walking before the gate of the King, without any fhirt, and with a cloth of Silke girt from the middle downwards, and a Lions skin vpon his shoulders, and in his right hand a Dagger, and in his left hand a Target. I afked why io great a person went on that fashion; it was told me, that that was thought to be the most honourable habite that could be imagined, for him that was Arraz di Canal, that is, Head of the men at Armes. And in the very fame habite there followed after him twentie or thirtie Foot-men with Daggers and Targets, but alwaies the Arraz marched before,

The faid Barnagaffo hath other two, namely, Arraz Tagale, and Arraz lacob, Lords of great 10 Countreyes, which I knew, and many other Xxxx Captaines, and Lords of other Countreyes. but without any titles of honour ; and so he is Lord of many people, and of many Countreyes. And as well he, as the other Lords are lubie t vnto Prete lanni: and he it is that giveth and taketh away their offices, when he feeth good, and it pleafeth him : and to him they pay the Gui. bre,, that is to fay, the Tribute of the Countrey. And all these Lordships are towards the parte of Egypt and of Arabia, from whence come the good Horses, cloth of Gold, and Silks, whereof they pay him tribute; that is to fay, all of them pay to Barnagaffo, and he payeth it ouer agains to Prete lami for himselfe, and for the rest euery yeere, to wir, one hundred and fiftie Horses, and a great quantitie of Silke, and cloth of Gold. They pay likewife great flore of Cottoncloth of India, for the customes which are gathered in the Hauen of Ercoco.

25. The people of this Towne of Barna, and their neighbours round about them have a cu-

from the wild beafts in the

frome to enclose themselves, ten, twelve, or fifteene of them in a Court all walled and strong. ly enclosed, which Court hath not past one gate, and herein they shut up their Kine, of which they have their Milke and Butter : they thut vp likewise their small cattell, as Seepe, Mules, and Affes; and befides the locking vp of their gate in the night, they make fires also at the gate, and place men to watch there, for feare of wild beafts which range about their lodgings. And if they should not take this course, no beast of theirs should escape vindeuoured. And of this Towne of Barna, and the other Townes adioyning, are the men which goe to fowe Millet vnto the Mountaines of the Vision, and they goe thither three moneths before the Generall Winter: and 20 the cause why they goe thither, are two: the first is, because they are neere to the Sea, whereby all victuals are transported to Mecca, to Ziden, to Tore, and to all Arabia, and India. And has uing many forts of Corne, they feeke a fit place for the vent thereof. The fecond cause is, for that in this Countrey there are two Winters, divided into rainy stormes; neither do the Cornes grow, but with abundance of water: therefore they depart from Barna, and goe to fowe their Corne in the Mountaines of the Vision, where at that time it is Winter, which lasteth all the time of Februarie, March, and Aprill, and the felfe same Winter is in another Countrey, which is vnder the government of Barnagaffo, called Lama, diffant from the Mountaines of the Vilion. at least eight dayes iourney. At this very time also it is Winter in another Countrey, which is called Dobas, being thirtie dayes journey from this place. And because these feeds of Millet re- 40 quire much raine, therefore these Winters being out of the ordinarie season of the places about mentioned, they goe to sowe them where it raineth, and so they make their profit of the two

Winter and Two great

Churches, one for men, and one for wo-

In this Towne of Barna are two very great and goodly Churches, wherein are many Priefts. the one fast by the other: one is for the men, called Saint Michael; and the other for the women. called, The Church of the Apostles, that is, of Saint Peter, and Saint Paul. They say that the Church belonging to the men was built by a great Lord that was Barnagaffo, who gaue it this priviledge, that no woman should enter therein, save the wife of Barnagaffe with one maide only, and that onely when thee went to receive the Communion; and yet might thee not enter into the Church, for women come not into the Church, but stand at the gate in the circuit before 50 the Church, and there they receive the Communion with the Lay people; and so likewise doe the women in the other Church of the Apostles, which receive it in the forme aforesaid before the gate. And in the womens Church I have alwaies seene the wife of Barnagasso goe to communicate with the other women, not ving the priniledge granted vnto her, to goe to communicate in the Church of the men.

Church-yards.

These two Churches have the circuit of their Church-yards, which toucheth one another, and are compassed about with high walls, and they make the Sacrament, that is to say, the Bread, for both of them in one house, and both of them say their Masses at one and the selfe same time, and the Priess that serve in one Church doe serve in the other, that is to fay, two parts of the Priests in the Church of the men, and the other part in the Church of the women, and being 60 No Tithes, but thus divided, they fay their Divine Service. Their Churches have no manner of Tithes, onely they have great possessions which belong vnto the Priests, and they cause them to be tilled and manured, the revenues whereof are divided among them, and the Barnagaffo alloweth them what soeuer is needfull in the Churches, that is to say, Reparations, Ornaments, Waxe, Butter,

Incense, and all things else belonging thereunto. At these Churches are twentie Priests , and Abundance of ten or twelue Friers continually resident, and I never faw Church of Priests where there were Friers. not Friers, nor Monasterie of Friers, where there were any Priests, for the Friers are fo many that they court the World : both in the Monasteries, the Churches on the waies, and in all Markets, and lastly, in all places are Friers.

26. The Priests, marrie with one Wife, and observe Matrimonie better then the Laytie. They Priests best obd continue alwaies in House with their Wife and children, and if perhaps their Wife die . they seruers of Mamarrie no more; and likewise if the Priest die, his Wife marrieth not a second Husband, but the trimonie. may become a Nume it the will. And it a married Priest lie with another woman, hee entreth

10 no more into the Church, neither is he partaker of the Revenues thereof, but becommeth as it Loffe of orders were, a Lay-man, And this I know to bee true, for I faw a Prieft accused before the Patriarke, that he had lien with another woman, and I heard him confesse the fault, and straight way the Patriarke, commanded, that he should never carrie Crosse more in his hand, nor come any more into the Church, but should become a Lay-man. And if any Priest being a Widdower doe marrie againe, he becommeth a Lay-man, as it hapned to Abuquer, whom I mentioned before, which being a Widdower was married to Romana Orque, the Sifter of Prete lanni. This man having beene a Prieft and principal Chaplaine to Preie lanni, after hee had beene Widdower many yeares marryed againe, and Marte the Patriarke digraded him, and made him become a Layman, and he came no more into the Church, but flood at the Church-porch, to receive the Sacrament, as the Lay-people doe. . . .

The Priests Sonnes for the most part become Priests for in this Countrey no Schooles are yied No Schooles to teach children to reade or write, neither are there any Schoolemaiters : and the Priefts teach makers. their children that little which they know, and fo they make them Priefts, being admitted into Orders by Abura Marke, that is no fay, Their Patriarke : for through all Libbopia there is none other, neither Billsop nor any bodio elfe that gineth Orders, and Orders are ginen to thele No Billson Priests, twice in the yeare, as I will hereafter declare, having my felfe oftentimes beene present at their taking of Orders. In all thefe: Countries the Church-yards are enclosed with very 30 firong wals, that beatis may not come and digge up the dead bodies. They vie great reverence Reperence to to their Churches : and no man is fo hardy as to rule on horse-backe by a Church, bor lighteth, Churches

and walketh on foot, till he be gone a great way beyond the Church, and the Church yards. 27. We aboad in this Towne of Barna, and could not at the furth, for many daies i pace, get Bad morele. any order for our dispatch : yet at the last, we departed the eight and twentieth of lune, 1 , 20. being verieglad and well appayed of our dispatch and the people which carried our fluste would carrie them but two miles onely from the Towne, faying, that they were not bound to carrie them any farther, because there ended the limits of their Conntrey. Beeing thus in the wide fields in the moneth of June, and in the depth of the Winter of thefe Countries with our faid goods, and induring most huge raines and showres, the Ambassadour with three of vs in his

40 company returned to Barna, to ipeake with Barnagaffo. He alwaies gaue vs good words but bad deeds: yet at last after foure daies he fent for the fain goods. 28. The next day, a Gentleman came thisher from Prete Ianni, whom Barnagaffo fo highly Barnag intertained, that he forgot vs, and went forth of the Towne to receive him as far as a little hill without the Suburbs, accompanied with much people, and the faid Barnagaffo was naked from themiddle vpward. As soone as the Gentleman was come thither, he mounted up that little hill about all the rest, and the first speech that hee wied was this: The King greets you well; at With what rewhich words the whole company bound downe their heads, touching the ground with one of ucreace their their hands, which is the honour and reverence that they vie in this Countrey. These words the Ambassia ended, the Amballage which he broughablum from Prete Immifollowed. After he had ended his ges of Prete from the Amballage of Prete from the Amballage of Prete from the Gentleman to his Palace. Immi 30 This is the manner of hearing the medage which Prote lanni lendeth, to wit, abroad without Manner of doores, and on foot ; and naked from the Girdle vpward, vntill the fame be ended: And if it be hearing medi-

fage bee fent in difpreature, then bee which receive th it abide th still maked, shewing him selfe to bee in difgrace of his Soueraigne, This Barnagaffo was Brother to the Mother off Prete Jannis. After many delayes, the Ambasador prayed him to lend him twelve Mules; he anfierred, that he could not lend us them, and that if he would have them he must buy them; and as we would have bought them of the Countrey people, which willingly would have fold them wanto vs. his Servants came and threatned them, that if they fold we any they would punish them, and take the Gold from them a for no other money runneth currant in this Countrey. When we fought to buy vs Mules, all the Countrey people refuted to fell vs any , faying, That they were attack of Barragaffo, because he himfelfe would have the felling of their Mules. The Custome of all

the Realme of Prete Lour, is, that there is no other coined money currant, but onely Gold, and it coing disough passeth from man to man by waight, and the principall waight is an ounce, which maketh ten all the King Pardaos, or ten Cruzados; the next is halfe an ounce; and the least money is a dramme, and ten dome of frue drammes make an ounce; and the value of a dramme is according to a dramme in the Kingdome Ianni.

an acceptable message from Prete Lamis he which receive thit clotherh himselse; but if the met-Prince.

of Portneall, or in Indea. Their Gold differeth in fineneffe three quarters of a Ducate, fo that one Wicked policy ounce of Gold is fometimes worth but feuen Ducates and a halfe. Moreouer, the faid Barnacef. to had commanded that none but himselfe and his Officers, should keepe any Waights to weigh Gold withall and who focuer would buy and fell must come to intreat them for their Waights. and by this meanes he and his Factors underflood to whole hands the Gold came, which Gold afterward he would take from them at his pleasure, as it was told mee by themselues.

29. In this Towns of Barns, there is a Church of our Ladie, which is great, new, and verie well painted, and notably furnished with many Ornaments, and Cloth of Gold, Cloth of Silke Crimfon and Veluet of Mecca, and red Chamblets. In this Church the Seruice is the felfe-fame Faire and rich which is vied in the Church of Barna, before mentioned, faming that here it is fomething more to

folempe, because Barnagaffo is here resident, and many more Priests, and great numbers of Friers. The Church is governed by Priefts, and one time while I was there, I taw a Procession made as bout the Church in the greatest Circle which is in the Church-yard, wherein were many Priess and Friers, men and women (for in this Church, the women receive the Communion with the Lay-men) in which Procession were the rich Ornaments aforesaid; and they compassed the Church at least thirtie times, finging, as it were, Letanies, and ringing many Basons like vnto

In this Towne is a great Market, as there is at Barna, and likewife, once a weeke, there is a Their manner Market kept in al those places which are head-towns. In these Markets they yee to exchange one of buying and thing for another; namely, to give an Affe for a Cow, and that which is wanting of the worth, is a supplyed with two or three measures of Corne or Salt. Moreouer, they change Goates for felling in this Market by ex-Bread, and for Bread they buy Cloth; and for Cloth, Mules and Kine : but especially they may change. Salt precious, hauc what they will for Salt, for Incenfe, for Pepper, for Myrrhe, and for small Pearles, all which are things much effeemed and had in price, and make account of them as of Gold, and alfo incenfe, these runne as current through all the Kingdomes of Prace farmi, and of the Gemiles : for energy Pepper, &c. fmall thing, they change Hens and Capous. To be flort, what focuer a man would buy is here to No money be had in the Market by exchange, for no money is here currant. Neither wie they many words

in their bargaines, but are foone agreed, whereat we greatly maruelled.

Few words vfeel in barrering. Priefts Friers and Nunnes. chiefe Chap Habit,num-

current.

The greatest Chapmen in these Markets, are Priests, Priers, and Nunnes. The Friers goe decently apparelled, with their Habit downe to the ground : fome weare yellow apparell of to course Cotton-cloth, others weare Goars-skins dreft like Chamois. The Numnes also weare the like Habit, Moreoner, the Friers weare Cowles, like the Cowles of the Dominican Friers. men. the like Habit. Moreover, the Piers weate Coverage to the fair and also weare their haire long. The Numes Nunnes: their weare neither Cowles nor long haire, but onely a Gowne, and have all their heads fhamen, and hanca thong of Leather tyed Brait about their heads, and when they be old, they weare a certaine attire upon their heads and Veiles over the fame. They are not inclosed in Monasteries, but dwell in certaine senerall Townes; and because all the Monasteries are of one order, therefore they are obedient visto the Monasterie that is next them, from whence they receive their Habit. These Nunnes enter not into the Church, but doe as other women doe. The number of them is very great, and in a manner, as great as the number of the Friers : they to fay that some of them are women of a very holy life. Againe, some of them have children. The Habit which the Priests weare, is little differing from the Habit of the people, for it is made all of one Cloth, and they are girded like the common people; their difference is, in that they carrie a Croffe alwares in their hands, and their heads are alwaies shauen. And contrariwise, the Lay-people weare their Lockes long, and the Priefts shaue not their Beards, but the Lay-men are shauen vader the chinne, and cut off their Mustaches. There are also certaine other Priests, called Debeteras, which is as much to fay, as Canons, thefe are Priests of great Churches, asa manimonid fay, of Cathedrall, or Collegiate Churches : and these men goe very well apparelled, so that they well declare what manner of men they bee : and these goe not vo and downe the Markets as the rest doe.

Croffes and ?

30. The flare of this Barnagasso (although he be a great Lord, and hath the title of a King) is very poore. Whenfoeuer we spake with him, we found him sitting in a Litter couered with a Quilt, the Testerne was of Cotton-cloth, which they call Basine; it is very good according to that Countrey. There bee some verie deare, and behind the said Litter or Couch, the wall was hanged with foure verie rich Swords faitned to foure pieces of wood, faitned to the wall, and two great Bookes likewife hanged thereon : before the Litter vpon the ground were spread certaine Mats, on which they fit which come to fee him. They sweepe not their Houses very often. His Wife alwaies fitteth at his elbow vpon a Mat, which is layed at his beds head. Also many people and men of account are alwaies before him, which fit voon the faid Mats. Our against him, right before his Litter, stand alwaies foure Horses, one of which is alwaies fadled, 60 and the rest are onely couered with Couerings, and there they stand eating.

Courts of

In all his Houses are two round places inclosed as it were Courts; each circuit hath his gate, and enery gate hath his Porters, with their stanes in their hands. In the gate next vnto him stand the principall Porters, and betweene these two gates is alwayes one of his Alicazi, which

is nifieth an Auditour or Steward of the House; and he it is that mimittreth luftice when he hath heard both the parties. And if the cause be of great importance, he heareth both the parties till they have made an end of speaking, then he relateth the whole matter to Mariage allo, and hee himselfe decidech the matter : and if it be but a small matter, and the parties agree together, and the faid Alicarigiue fentence thereof, the cause is so ended. Moreouer, their muit needs be there present, a man of honour and account, which by his office, is called Mallagana, which fignifieth the Notary of Prete lanni, at all fentences which Barnagaffo or this Alicani gineth. And if any of the parties will appeale to Press Ianni, or vnto his Auditors, in such cates they Appeale. fend vnto him the state of the caule, and by this meanes Prete Lanni vnderstandeth all the com-10 plaints of his fubicets, as well great as small : and all the Lords of the Dominions of Prete Ianni, haue each of them one Alicaxi, and one Mallagana, placed by himfelfe, and the Captaines

fibied to Banagaffo have the like.

The great Lords which remaine in the Court of Barnagaffo, and others which come vnto Manner of him for their affaires, come in this manner. Departing from their houses, they ride voon a Mule, comming to with seauen or eight men on foore, which goe before him vnto the first gate, and there her him. lighteth, if he be a greater Lord, he rideth with feuen, or eight, or ten Mules, his whole company riding, or with more, according to his quality, and commeth vnto the first gate; and being come thither, they all alight, and then they go to the second gate, and if peraduenture they cannot get in, they fit there without, as Bees doe in the Sunne, all in a clufter. All these ho-20 norable persons, weare Sheepe-skinnes about their necks and shoulders, and those which weare Lions, Tygers, or Leopards skinnes, are more honourable, and when they come before Barna-

gaffo, they put them off to honour him, as we put off our hats.

While were were in this Towne of Barna, on a Market day was a great Proclamation Proclamation made, that Barnagaffo would goe to warre against the people of Nubia. The order of this of war against Proclamation was in this wife: One carried a Cloath like a Banner vpon a lauelin, and another Nubia, went crying warre against the Nubians, which they say are very farre off in the vemost Confines of their Countrey, fine daies iourney towards Egypt, and border upon the Countries of Canfila and Daffila, as hath beene before mentioned, being subject to the faid Barnagaffo. These people of Nubia, are neither Mobres, Iemes, nor Christians ; but they say at sometimes they Nubians, what 30 were Christians, and that through default of cull Ministers they loft their Faith, and are be- People

come Iufidels, and without Law.

Moreover, they told me, that they had flaine one of Barnagaffo his Sonnes not long before, for which caufe he purposed to goe into those parts, to be auenged of them. And it was told me, that in this Countrey of Nubia, is found abundance of fine Gold, and that upon the Fron. Gold. tiers thereof, are alwaies foure or fine hundred Horfe-men kept, which are excellent men of Armes, and that their Countrey is very fruitfall, and aboundeth with all forts of Victuals and Cattell, and it cannot be otherwise; because it lyeth on both tides of the River of Nilw, which passeth farre many miles space through the midst of the same. The Proclamation said, That within five daies space, Banagasso would fet forward, but as yet there was no furniture of 40 Weapons prepared : for in that Countrey there is no great flore of them, faue onely the Canas, Armes. which are the men of Armes, were there present, which carrie a lauelin, a Target, and a Bow, with store of Arrowes, and persons of more honour weare an arming Sword, and a lacke of Male, but not many of them. Vpon this occasion of going to warre, Barnagaffo begged a Sword of our Embassadour, which gaue him his owne sword which he weare in that expedition, which was very faire and good, and this notwithstanding, with great importunitie he begged another, which he knew that he had, being very well garnished, and very rich, saying; That hee had great need thereof. Our Embaffadour being not able to thift him off, was forced to buy one for him among his Company, which had a Veluze skabberd, and the Hilts gilded, and fo he gaue it him in exchange for one of his. And in the house where we kept our goods, and where wee 50 lodged, which was without gates : the night following, they robbed vs of two Sallets, and

one head-piece, you may well thinke, that they pilfered the same vpon occasion of this warre. 21. In this Towne we bought Mules for our journey, and Barnagaffo gaue vs three Ca- Their deparmels, and with much paine wee departed from thence, through the great Thunders, Tem- ture, petts, and Raines, which terribly troubled vs; for at this feafon is the tury of Winter, which Whattime pells, and Raines, which terribly troubled us; for at this feation is the furly of winter, which their Winter beginneth about the fifteenth of June, little more or leffe, (as we have faid before) and endeth beginneth and the fifteenth of September, and at the end thereof is their Summer, as it is with vs : and what endeth.

Countries, they trauaile not, but we notwithflanding proceeded on our journey, because wee knew not the cultome of the Countrey, and much leffe the danger whereinto we thrust our 60 felues. And so we set forward on our journey with part of our goods, because we left the greatell part at Barna with our Factor, and came to a place called Temes, which is in the Countrey Temes. of Maizada, distant from the Towne of Barna whence we came, about twelve miles, wee Maizada spent three daies in this journey, by reason of the cruell Winter and huge raines, our goods

which we carried, being spoyled with water.

it taketh of the one, it leaneth of the other. During all this Winter-feafon in some of these

1045

Αţ

Store of tame

beafts,

Vocleane

towies.

beafts and

Locult. ware

At this place where we arrived, we found a Xuum, that is to fay, A Captaine, whose nach At this place where we arrived, we could be Brothers, an honourable person, and of effect was Prime, and hee was one of Barnagasso his Brothers, an honourable person, and of effect worth, who vied as very courteoully. They faid, that he was likewife Brother to the Mother of Prete lanni, and that he had in his Xameta, or government of the Countrey of Maizada twentie Townes, and not about , because it is the least Shire within the Kingdome of Barnagan. Description of This town is seated upon a steepe hill, not of Stone, but all of arable ground, with certains man Villages thereon and vpon three fides a man may fee the Champaine Countrey, for fortiers fiftie miles about ; and on the fourth fide, by the space of three miles, beginneth an huge fire. tome or downe-fall, which the ground maketh toward a great Riner, neere vnto which a man may behold most goodly champaine fields, all manured and fruitfull, wherein are feated about h one hundred Villages; in so much, that I thinke in no part of the world is any Countrey to well inhabited, nor fo full of all forts of Graine, as this is. Neither doe the raines in Winter any harme thereunto, for this is the best season they can with for, for at that time the Come groweth best, and becommeth most beautifull. And I thinke there is no Country wherein fuch abundance of Cattell, as well tame as wilde, may be found, and where a man may crob fuch flore of Wilde-fowle, as in these champaine fields; but of wilde Beatts there, none other forts but Tygers, Wolues, and Foxes, which also are common in all the Country. They eate not many forts of beafts, as Hogges, Hares, Wilde Geefe, and Ducks, and all because they are not clouen-footed : neither eate they any other kind of Beaft, if it chanceth to dye, before it be eaten; and by this meanes so many beasts doe multiply, which neither are molested nor cha-20 fed. because they have no Dogges for this purpose. And when we went on Hunting without Dogges, we caught sometimes twentie Hares in our Nets at a time, in the space of an hoore. Partridges ea. and as many Partridges we droug vnto the frates, as though we had driven Hens into an house. because they are not very wilde, nor much afraid of men, for as much as they see them all the day long; and in this manner we killed as many of them as we would defire. Those kinds of Beafts which they eate not of, we fed vpon in secret, that they should not report any cull

Of the infinite number of Locasts, and of the barme which they do, and how we made a Procession, and the Locusts dyed. The incredible hurs done by them. Of Ti-GREHAHON, MARABON, and of CHARVMA, the Queene of Sheba, and the Eunuch. The rare Buildings and Pillers at Caxumo.

N this Countrey, and in all the Dominions of Prete Jame, is a very great and horrible plague, which is an innumerable company of Locufts, which eate and confine and the corne and Trees, and the number of these Creatures is to great, as it is incredible, and with their malitized they coust the earth, and fell the ayre in such bla plague, which is an innumerable company of Locufts, which cate and con-4 fume all the Corne and Trees, and the number of these Creatures is so great, as it is wife, that it is an hard matter to be able to fee the Sunne. And againe, I fay, that it is an incre-The mischiefe dible thing to him which hath not seene it, And if the damage which they doe, were generall through all the Prouinces and Realme of Press lanni, they would perish with famine, and it were impossible to inhabite the same, but one yeare they destroy one Prouince. Sometimes in two or three of those Proninces; and wheresoener they goe, the Countrey remaineth more ruinate and destroyed, then if it had beene set on fire. These Vermine are as great, as a great Graf-A frangefigne hopper, and haue yellow wings. We know of their comming a day before, not because wee of the coming fee them, but we know it by the Sunne, which sheweth his beames of a yellow colour, which so is a figne that they draw neere the Countrey, and the ground becommeth yellow, through the light which renerberateth from their wings, whereupon the people become suddenly as dead men, faying ; We are undone, for the Locusts come.

Neither will I omit to declare what I have feene three times, and the first time was in the Towne of Barna, where we remained three yeares; and here, oftentimes we heard fay, Such a Country, or such a Realme is destroyed with Locusts. During our abode in this Towne, we saw the figne of the Sunne, and the shadow of the earth, which was all yellow, whereat the people were halfe dead for forrow. The next day, the number of these Vermine which came, was incredible, which to our judgement, couered foure and twentie miles in compaffe, according 25 we were informed afterward.

This plague of God being come vpon vs, the Prices of this place repaired vnto me, befeeching mee to give them fome remedy to chafe them away; to whom I answered, That I could tell them none other remedie, faue only to pray denoutly to God, that he would chase them out of the Countriey. And I went my selfe vnto the Embassadour, and told him, that peraduenture

it would doe well to goe on Procession, and to pray to God to deliver the Countrey, and that Through the it might be that he would heare vs, for his mercies fake. This motion highly pleased the Emprayers of the Potagely, the

ination.

The next day we affembled the people of the Towne, and all the Priefts, and taking a confe-all defroyed crated from and a Croffe, according to our custome, all wee Portugals sung the Letanie, and I and billed commanded those of the towne to cry vnto God like as we did, faying, in their language : Zio Marina Christos, that is , Oh Lord God have mercy upon vs. And with this our cry, we went through one field, whereas there grew store of Corne, for the space of one mile, vnto a little hill. and there I caused them to take vp a quantity of these Locusts, and made of them a consuration, Exorcising the 10 which I carried with me in writing, which I had made the night before, Requiring them charging Locusts. WHEN CARTIED WITH ME IN WITHING, WHEN I HAVE MORE THE HIGH OCCURRENCE OF THE WARD FOR THE WARD F alone; and if ther obesed me not, I called and adjured the Fowles of the Heanen, the Beafts of the field, cared. and all the Tempests, to scatter, destroy, and consume their bodies. And for this purpose I tooke a quantitie of thele Locults, and made this Adminision to them which were present, in the name of themselues, and of those which were absent; and so I let them goe, and gaue them libertie. It plesfed God to heare vs Sinners; for as we returned homeward, there came so many of them behind vs, that it feemed they would breake our heads, and our shoulders, they strucke vs so hard, that they seemed to be blowes of stones and of states, and went from this part toward the Sea. The 20 Men, Women, and Children which stayed in the Towne, were gotten up to the roofes of the houses, praising God, because the Locusts began to depart and fly before vs., and part of them followed after vs. In the meane while, arose a great storme and Thunder toward the Sea, which came right against them, which lastest three hours, with an exceeding great shower and tempeft, which filled all the Rivers, and when the water ceafed, it was a dreadfull thing to behold frames of the dead Locusts, which we messured to be aboue two fathomes high vpon the bankes of the dead Locusts. Rivers, and in some Rivers there were exceeding great Mountaines of them, in such wile, that

on the next morning there was not one of them found aliue vpon the ground. The people of the Townesadioyning, hearing heereof, many men came to make inquiry by Diseas cenwhat meanes this thing came to passe. The Countrey people said: These Portugals are holy sures 30 men, and by the power of God haue chased away, and killed the Locusts. Others laid, (chiefely the Priests and Friers of the places adiopining) that we were Witches, and that by witchcraft we had chafed the faid Vermine, and that thereby also, we were not afraid of Lyons, or of any other wilde beafts. Three daies after this acte, comes unto vs Xmuss or Captaine of a Another expeplace, called Coiberia, with Men, Priests, and Friers, befeeching vs for Gods fake to helpe them, riment. faying, That they were vindone by the Locusts, and this place was a daies iourney distant to-

They came vnto vs at Buentide, and at that instant I and foure Portugals departed with them, we trauailed all night, and came thither an houre after day-breake, where wee found all the people of that place gathered together, with many of the places neere adioyning, and 40 they also were troubled with the Locuits, and suddenly vpon our arcivall, we made our Procesfion round about the Towne, which is feated vpon an high hill, from whence wee faw many Villages and Townes all yellow with the multitude of Locusts. Having ended our Ceremonies. as in the former place we went to dinner, and the people adjoyning belought vs inflantly to goe to them, promifing vnto vs a great rewards. It pleafed God, that as foone as euer we had dined, we faw the ground cleane, so that one Locust appeared not in their fight, to their great admiration. When they saw this, not wholly truffing in the Grace of God received, they be-Jught vstogoe with them to bleffe their fields, for yet they were afraid leaft they would returne againe.

33. At another time while we were in a Towne, called Albuguna, Prete Ianni lent vs to The hurtibey 10 this Towne, that here we might furnish our selues of victuals, which is in the Kingdome of An- faw done by gets, and sidner from the Towne of Berne, where we about chirtie dais source. When Localiseis-we came hither, I went with the Emballadour Zaga Zabo (which afterward came into Portugal) and fine Genoueses, to a Towne and a Mountaine, called Agoan, and we transiled fine daies jour 210 Zalo, an ney through places wholly waste and destroyed, wherein Millet had beene sowen, which had fenting Perstalkes as great as those which we set in our Vineyards, and we saw them all broken and beaten taged. downe, as if a Tempest had beene there, and this the Locusts did. The Trees were without leanes, and the Barkes of them were all denoured, and no Graffe was there to be seene, for they had exten vp all things, and if we had not beene warned and adulfed to carrie victuals with vs. we and our Cattell had perished. This Countrey was all coursed with Local's without wings. Their milchieand they told vs, that those were the seede of them which had eaten vp all, and that as soone usus spanne. as their wings were growne, they would feeke after the old ones. And the number of them

was fo great, that I will not speake of it, because I shall not be beleeved : but this I will say, That I faw Men, Women, and Children, fit as forlorne and dead among these Locusts; and I Hardestepeo-

faid with them, Why stand yee as dead men, and will not kill these Vermine, to be reuenged of Ple-Sifff

Foure and zwentie miles compaffe, conered with Locusts.

the milchiefe of which their fathers and mothers have done vnto you, teeing that those which you shall kill shall neuer be able to doe you more harme . They answered, that they had not the heart to refift the plague which God fent vpon them for their finnes. And all the people of this Countrey departed, wee found all the wayes full of men and women, tratelling on foot with their children in their armes, and vpon their heads, going into other countries where they might find food, which was a pitifull thing to behold.

Men driuen by Locusts out of their Habita-

While wee abode in the faid Signorie of Abuguna, in a place called Aquate, at another time came fuch an infinite swarme of Locusts, as it is incredible to declare. They began to come about three of the clocke in the after-noone, and ceased not til night, and as they came they lish about three of the clocke in the arter hoods and the part, fo that by nine of the clocke there ted, and the next day in the morning, they began to depart, fo that by nine of the clocke there was not one of them left, and the Trees remained without leaues. The fame day and houre. there came another Squadron of them, and these lest neither bough nor Tree vnpilled, and so Hart to Trees, they continued for the space of fine dayes, and they said, they were the yong ones which went to feeke the old ones, and they did the like, where wee faw them that were without wings. and the compalle which thele Locusts tooke, was nine miles, wherein was neither leaves nor

barke on the Trees. This Country feemed not to bee burnt up, but rather to bee coursed with Snow, by reafon of the whitenesse of the Trees, which were all pilled, so that all the Countrey remayned bare. It pleased God that the Harnests were alreadie gathered in, but wee could not ynderstand whether they went afterward, for they came from the Sea-coast out of the King- 20 dome of Dancali, which belongeth to the Moores, which are continually in warreneither could

Dancali.

Tieremabon.

we learne where at last they lighted. 34. The next day after our comming to this Towne of Timei, before our goods remaining in Barna, were brought thither our Ambaffadour, departed with fixe on Horfe-backe in his company, to goe to the Court of Tigremabon, which bath the title of a King, and vnder his Gouernment and Iurildiction, are many great Lords and Townes. The Ambaffadour requefted him to give him aide : and while we here ftayed two dayes for people to carrie our goods, a Cap-

taine came vnto vs, with many people to carrie the lame, and hence wee departed the third of August, with great Thunders and a terrible storme of raine, and trauelled for the space of three miles through manured fields. Then beganne we to defeend downward, by a very rough craggie, and steepe wayes, many miles more, and at euening lodged in a Church-yard, where wee abode in great feare of Tygres, and maruelled much at the Winter and stormes. Departing thence the day next following, wee trauelled through craggie Mountaines full of Woods and Trees without fruit, but very greene and faire, and fuch as wee knew not, and came vnto a Riuer, which because it was Winter, was swollen and very dangerous to passe, which is callled Marabo: and upon this River is feated the Towne of Barna, as I have faid before, and it runneth towards Nilus: and this River parteth the Iurifdictions of Barnacello, and Tigremabon, and from this River vnto the place where we lodged, are about fixe miles, and albeit cise Mountaines be craggie and full of Woods, yet are they inhabited with store of peo-

The River of

ple, and have many places manured in them. 35. When we were come vnto the River, they which were with vs layed downe our goods, Tigromabor to and fuddenly we heard on the other fide the River a great noise of Drums, and of people, We deconnoy them, manded what the matter was, it was told vs that it was a Captaine of Tigremahon, which came to carrie our goods. And having passed the River, we found a goodly company which came to meet vs, and they were betweene fix or feuen hundred men. Suddenly we faw a great contention fall out betweene these people, and those which come thither with vs : for they which belonged to Tigremahon faid, that they were not bound to take charge of the goods until they were past the River : and the others said, that they were not bound to carrie them further then the waters fide. While they were in this contention, because the River was greatly swollen, they agreed all together to transport the goods vpon a raft, and that this should be nothing premiciall so at all, but that, it should remaine free for them as before, and so were passed the River with our goods. These people travelled so Liftily with our stuffe, that we could not stay them back, with

During that little part of the day which remayned, wee travelld ouer most craggie Mountaines, and faw wilde Hogges in divers Herds, and they were aboue fiftie in a companie, Partridges innumerable, and other fores of Birds of divers colours most beautifull w behold, which covered the Ground and the Trees : and wee were informed, that in these places were all kinds of rauenous beafts, and it cannot bee otherwise, as it seemeth by the terrible Mountaines.

High hils.

This night wee lodged abroad in the field in places enuironed with people and many fires, 60 rices for feare of beafts, beeing informed, that they made these fires for feare of wild beafts, and here immediately wee found great difference in the People and in the Soyle, and in the Trees, as also in the qualitie of the Countrey, and in the Traffique of the Inhabitants : and here wee began to travell over certaine Mountains fo exceeding high & craggie, that they feemed to touch the Skies, & in regard

of their heighth they winded a little at the foote, and all of them were porportionably fituate. and they are divided one from the other, and ftretch in length a very great way : and all thote which are accessible, although there be great danger in translling of them , have Chappels buil- Lady-Chapded on the tops of them, and the most part of them are dedicated to our Lady; and on many of pels. the tops of these Hills we saw Chappels, where wee could not imagine how they could ascend up to build them. We lodged at a place, in the midft of these Mountaynes, called Abafacem. Abafacem. whereon flandeth a Church, dedicated to our Lady, very well builded, with an Ally in the midst, mounted higher then the other two, on both sides, and the windowes thereof about the other Allies are under the middle Roofe, and the whole Church is vaulted; and in all this Coun-10 trey wee have not seene a fairer nor better builded Church then this, which is like vnto those Churches of Badie, fituate betweene the Rivers of Duore and Minio in Portugall.

Hard by this Church, standeth a mightie, huge, and a goodly Tower, as well for the heighth as the compaffe thereof, and for the making of the wall, which feemed to fland as though it would fall; and it is of free stone finely hewed, which seemed well to bee a Princely worke : neither have wee seene any other the like building, and it is enuironed with most beautifull houses, which are very answerable vnto the same, as well in regard of their walls, as of their Roofes and Lodgings, which feeme to have belonged to some great Princes. They say that Queene Candaces dwelt in this place, and that her House was not farre from thence, and this is Candaces, not valike to be true. This Towne, Church, and Tower, are feated in the midft of those crag- Adl 8.17. 20 gie Mountaynes, in very beautifull and goodly greene fields, all watered with Fountaynes of water, which fall from the feet of thole Mountaynes, and all these Fountaynes are made of free flone. The Graines which here are watered, are Wheat, Barly, Beanes, Chiches, Lentils, Pea-

fon; and all the yeere long they have Garlicke, and exceeding great Leekes, and Mustardfeede, and Creffes grow about their houses; and on those Rockes grow great flore of a kind of herbe, called (referent, and certaine other kindes of herbes which they feed on. In the conversation.

faid Church are very many Priefts, very well apparelled, which feeme to be men of vertuous 26. We lodged in another Towne, which is named. The boules of Saint Michael herante

the Church is called Saint Michael; and comming hither, they would give vs no lodging, fay- Saint Michael. 30 ing, that they were priviledged and exempted from fisch kinds of moleculation; and because of the great raine, we lodged in the circuit of the Church as well as we could, and fet vp our Mules in the other circuit, which ferueth for a Church-yard, because there was great store of graffe, which was growne very much, by reason of the winter and the showers, which graffe in Portugall, is called Wild Panick, and it was very long and high, because it was made luftie by reason of Wilde Panike, the dead bodies there buried. In this Countrey they vie not to eate but once a day, that is to fay, at even-tide; certaine moneths of the yeere when they doe fait, and to is the custome throughout Fasting. all the Realme of Prete lanni: and as they refused to give vs lodging, so they were flow to give vs food, in which meane space we were almost dead for hunger. Our Factor seeing this, said, I 40 haue two fodden Hens, if it please you, let vs eate them. The Secretarie and I maruelled much, that he wished vs to eate flesh without bread; howbeit, we were compelled to eate them. Afterward they feemed fo good wate mee (I thinke by reason of mine extreme hunger) that I would oftentimes eate the like againe, to wit, bread without fielh, and fiefh without breadand bread dipped onely in Salt, Water, or Pepper. And thus by reason of these divers forts of dyet, I forgat that, which at the first I so wondred at. Howbeit, in the evening they brought vs meate after their manner, and wee lodged in the forefaid circuits. And because we would be more cleane, we got neere to the place where they vie to receive the Commu-

when we perceined, we ran to that the gates, because they could escape none other way, and fo running wpon them there escaped not one of them, for we tooke them all, even to the young ones that were in the nest, so that we filled a sacke with them. And this was the cause. that at another time, when after certaine yeeres wee returned thither, they gaue vs lodging, that the second time wee should not take all the Doues of their Church, which by that time were replenished anew.

The difference of the people of this Countrey from those of Barnagaffo, is, that the men weare certaine aprons two spannes long bound about them, and these are of Cloth, or of tanned Lea- Apparellment ther, full of plights, like vnto those which our women weare, which when they stand vp, doe apparelling. couer their fecrets; but when they fit downe, or goe in the wind, they hade nothing. The married women were their aprons much shorter, so that all their secrets are seene. Young maides 60 and other ynmarried women, and fuch as haue no Suters weare girdles of Beades about their middles, and about their prinities, which other women weare about their neckes. They weare

also many garlands full of Timaquetes, which are a little round kind of fruit of crees, which Timaquetes, a make a none like vnto Lupures. And fuch as can get any small Bells weare them upon their fruit. prinities for a brauerie, and some weare sheep-skins about their neckes, wherewith they couer Foolish brauer but one part of their bodies, and not the other, because they weare them loofe, and bound onely rice.

nion. Here hauing with vs a candle lighted, the Doues began to flie about the fame, which Church Doues

Court of Prete Baba Baxe. Caxumo.

brought Prefente v.. to \$4-Loman. E. unque lesnom, I have left out the reft of Salamons fh:pson th?

of the Legend fonne by her, his 70 taile of Indian Sea. &cc. See my Pilgr.

Altar ftone,

The Church.

Pharant Fig-

about their neckes, with one foot hanging before, and another behind, and with neuer folittle mounts of it. a man may fee from one fide of the bodie to the other, whatfoener he lifteth. Then wash themselves every day once at the least, and sometimes twice or thrice, and by this meanes they are very cleane, and this manner of attire is for the base people, for the wines of Gentle-The way from men and Lords goe all coursed. The way which they travell in this Country of Prete Lanni Eggs to the is this: he which trauelleth from the red Sea, commeth to Barna; and he which commeth from Egypt, arriveth at Snachen, and fuddenly turneth his backe to the North, and beginneth to trauell Southward, vntill he come to the gates, called Baba Baxe.

27. Carinno, is two dayes journey distant from the Towne of Saint Michael, alwaies trauelling ouer their rough Mountaines, in which place wer abode at another time eight moneths. In by the commandement of Prete lanni. This place was in old time, the Citie Chamber, and refi-The Cirie of dence of the Queene of Saba, whose proper name was Maqueda, and this was shee which the Queene of brought Camels laden with Gold to Salomon, when he was to build the Temple in Ierafalem. In this Towne is a very noble Church, wherein we found a most ancient Chronicle, written in the Abifine Tongue; in the beginning whereof it was declared, that first it was written in the Hebrew afterward translated into the Chaldean Tongue, and lastly out of that, into the the A. biffine Language. And it began in this manner : Queene Maqueda bearing of the great and rich building: which Salomon had begun at Ierusalem, determined to goe and visite him, and laded certains camels with Gold to beflow open his work-men. And him come never to the Cities of Icritisem, described being to paid a Lake our certaine Bridges, fueld. And him to the holy Goots, five lighted, and here to paid to five lighted, and here. I ling downs, worshipped the timber of those Bridges, and faid: God firbid, that my feet should touch those beames on which the Sautour of the World Shall Suffer.

38. In this very Towne of Carumo, was also the chiefe residence of Queene Candaces, whose proper name was Indith, and from her sprang the beginning of Christianitie in these parts : and from the place where the faid Queene was borne vnto Caxumo, are two miles; which is a little Towne, being at this time inhabited with people, which by their trade are Carpenters. The Christian Faith beganne here in this manner. Their bookes in the Abissine Tongue say, (as alfo is written with vs, in the Acts of the Apofiles.) And they fay, that the Prophefie was herein fulfilled, wherein it is faid, that Ethiopia Shall Stretch out ber bands onto God. And thus they fay, that they were first converted vnto the Christian Faith, and that the Eunuch returned fud. denly to Ethiopia with ioy, vnto the house of his Ladie and Mistresse, and converted and baptized her with all her houshold; for he declared vnto her all which had hapned vnto him by the way, and so the Queene caused all the people of her Kingdome and Dominions to be baptized, and the Faith began in a Kingdome which is now called Burre, being fituate in the Eaftern part of the Kingdome of Barnagasso, which is now divided into two Signiories : and in this Towns of Caxano, the built an exceeding goodly Church, which was the first, which is faid to Churches nas have beene made in Ethiopia, and it is called Saint Marie of Sion, because that from Sion, the confecrated from of the Altar was fent; for in thefe Countreves they call the Churches by no other name, but by the Altar-stone, wherein is written the name of the place from whence it

> This Church is very large, and hath fine allies of fufficient breadth, and very long, madelike a Vault, and aboue the Vault is a Tarraz, and under the Vault, and on the walls it is rainted. and the Church is built of free stone exceeding faire, and ioyned together: it hath seuen Chappels, which are all lituate with their shoulders toward the East, and their Altars very well adorned; it hath a Quire like vnto ours, fauing onely that it is so low, that with the top thereof it reacheth onely to the Vault; and there is another Quire built ouer the Vault, but they vie it not. This Church hath a great compaffe builded with very great free-stones, as big as the stones wherewith we couer graues, which circuit is enuironed with very great walls, and is vincouered, contrarie to the rest of the Churches of this Countrey. And befules this circuit, it hath another as great as the compafe of a Caffe or a Towne, within which are goodly houses of one 50 ftorie, and each of them hath Fountaines, which fend forth their water through the Images of certaine Lions, made of stone of divers colours. Within this great circuit are two faire Palaces made of divers frories high, the one on the right hand, the other on the left, which belong to the Two Governours of the Church; the other houses belong to the Canons and the Friers. Within this great circuit, neere vnto the gate which is next vnto the Church, is a square field of ground at this day lying waste, which in times past was full of houses, wherein in each corner is a square Pillar of free-stone, very high, and comingly carned with diners workes, and in the same are in letters graven to bee seene, but no 1. " vnderstands them; neither doth any man know of what Tongue they be, and there are many of these kinds of Epitaphs, and this place is called, Ambacabete, which fignifieth, The honfe of Lions, because in times past Lions 60 were kept bound there.

Before the gate of the great circuit is a great Court, wherein groweth a mightie Tree, which is called, The Fig-tree of Pharao; and from the one end to the other are certaine faire Cifterns made of free-flone, well wrought, and well feated, whereunto the Tree doth fome harme, one-

ly where it reacheth vnto them with his roots. Ouer these Cifterns are twelve Seats of stone placed, raifed in order one behind the other, as well wrought as if they were of wood, with Carions works their feet and feats beneath, and they are not made of one entire stone, but of divers pieces s which feats (they faid) ferued for the twelve Auditors or Indges of the Law, which at this day are resident at the Court of Prete lanni. Without this circuit are many goodly houses, the like whereof for beautie and greatnesse are not to be seene in all Ethiopia; there are also many goodly Wells of water, adorned with very goodly stones, and likewile in the most part of the houses are antique Images, as of Lions, Dogs, and Birds, and all of them are made of exceeding hard and fine ftone, Behind the backe of this mightie Church, is a Lake of fpringing water at In the foot of a little Hill, where at this day the Market is kept, and about the fame are many

CHAP. S.S.S. Curious Stone-works Stately Pillars. Seeking for Gold.

Chaires, wrought in such fort as those are which belong to the circuit. This Towne is fituate vpon the entrance of a faire Medow, betweene two small Hills, and Valence the greatest part of this Medow is replenished with most ancient buildings, wherein are many of Characters. thole Chaires with many Pillars, which have letters on them, whose Language no man vnder. A flately Pil. standeth; but they are very well ingrauen. At the entrance of the faid place are many Ruines of larflone, part flanding vp. and part ouerthrowne to the ground, which are very high and goodly. with faire antique-worke, whereof one standeth as yet vpright, built vpon another beeing wrought like voto an Altar-stone, and as it were carned into the same; and this which is built vpon the other is exceeding great, being fixtie foure yards " in length, and fixe in breadth, and "64. brachia, foot to the top, to wit, one window about another, and the top of the faid stone is like with an as afterwards

20 three in the flankes, and very straight and well wrought, all carned with windowes from the the Translater halfe Moone, wherein are fine nayles in the part which flandeth towards the South, nayled into the faid stone in forme of a Crosse, the rust of which nayles running downe in rainy weather along the faid stone, a spanne distance from the faid nayles, seemeth to bee like vnto fresh bloud. This Pillar of stone standing yet so high from the ground toward the South hath the forme of a gate in it, wrought in the very stone, with a chaine which feemeth to bee lockt, and the stone vpon which this fame is feated, is a fathome thicke, and very square, and this stone is also set vpon other great and little stones, wherein I could not discerne how farre this stone entred into them, or whether it went downe into the ground. Neere vitto these are a very great num-30 ber of stones, very faire and well wrought, which (as it seemeth) were brought hither to be framed in some piece of building, and also those other which were so great, and set vpright. Of these stones, some were fortie fathoms * long, and some thirtie, and in the most purt of * Brachia, these stones, are very mightie letters ingranen, which none of the Countrey is able to reade. And among the stones which he vpon the ground, there are three very great and very fairely wrought, and one of them is broken into three pieces, and every piece is aboue eight fathoms long , and ten fathoms broad ; neere vnto which, are other stones, whereon these should have

29. Neere vnto this Towne of Caramo standeth a little Hill, from whence descendeth a great deale of ground on all fides. A mile distant from the Citie are two houses builded under- Houses rader 40 neath the ground, wherein a man cannot enter without light. These houses are not made with the ground, vaults, but are made of very goodly hewen stone, all euen, as well on the sides as ouer the head. and are twelue fathom high, and the faid stones are so well couched together, that they seeme to be all one piece, for the joynts thereof cannot bee discerned. One of these houses is divided into many roomes. At the entrance of the gates are two holes, wherein they put the post wherewith they fasten the gates. In one of the chambers of this house are two great Arches of foure fathoms long, and one and an halfe broad, and as much in height, to wit, the hollownesse within, and albeit they lacked their couer, yet feeme they to have had one. They fay that thefe were the Chifts of the treasure of the Queene of Saba. The other house is somewhat broader, Chifts of the and hath but one chamber and a porch, and from one gate to the other is the distance of a stones Q of Sabses cast, and the open field is voon the top of the houses. In our companie were certaine Genone feet treasure, and Catalans, which had beene flaues vnto the Tarkes, who fware that they had feene many goodly buildings, but that they neuer faw fuch huge buildings as these of this Towne of Carremo. And we judged that Prete lanni fent vs hither to solace our selues of set purpose, that we

fhould fee these kind of buildings, which are farre greater then I haue written. In this Towne and in the fields thereof, which are wholly in their feafon fowed with all kind of Come, when the flormes come with abundance of raine, neither man, woman, nor Seeking of child, of what age foeuer, flay within the Towne, but goe out to feeke for Gold in the manured Gold after fields, which, they fay, is discouered by the raine, whereof they find great store; and likewise raines. they goe through all the wayes where the water runneth, turning the earth up with staues, 60 Having heard them speake of so much Gold, I purposed to make a Table, like those which I haue seene made in the Towne of Foz. de roca in Portugall, and at the Bridge of Muzella, and so I began to wash the earth, and to lay it vpon Tables; but I found no Goldat all: I wot not whether it fell so out, because I knew not how to wash the earth; or else, because I knew not the Gold; or, that there was none at all; but the fame thereof was very great.

They

Anci:nteft Church in Ethiop'a. 150. Canons, and as many Friers. Two Nebretie

They fay, that the Church of this Citie is the most ancient Church in all Ethiopia. And it feemeth to be no leffe, for it is more honoured then the reft, and Diuine Seruice is faid therein very felemnely after their manner, and there are in it one hundred and fitte Debeteres or Canons. and as many Friers. And it hath two principall Gouernours, which in their Language are called Nebreti, that is to fay, Mafters of instruction, one of which two is ouer the Canons, and the other over the Friers, and these two are lodged in the Palaces which are within the circuit of the Church, and the Nebret of the Canons lodgeth in the Palace on the right hand, and this is the greater and more honorable of the two, and hath authoritie to execute inflice, not only vpon the Canons, but also vpon the Lay-men of the Countrey, and the Nebrer of the Friers executeth inflice you the Friers only, and both of these have Trumpetters in their Courts, and others which in play vpon certaine Instruments like vnto Drums, and haue exceeding great Reuenues. Besides these, there is given them daily out of the Countrey a portion of Bread, and a portion of the Countrey-wine, called Mambar, which is given vnto them when Maffe is ended; and they give it vnto them in two parts; to wit, one vnto the Friers, and another to the Canons, and this their portion is fo great, that feldome the Friers eate any more then this, for this sufficient them for all the day. And hereof they faile not enery day, except Good-friday; for, on the day they neither eate nor drinke. The Canons receive not their portion in the circuit of the The Canons Church, and feldome times they flay in it, fauing onely when they fay Dinine Seruice; as alto the Nebrets stay not in their Palaces, faue onely when they give audience to the people: and thus they doe because they bee married, and line with their wines and children in me their houses, which houses be very good, and are without the circuit of the Church, whereinto women are not suffered to enter, neither may the Lay-people come into the Churches. But there is another very faire Church, whereunto the Lay-people and women repaire to receive

A strange Mountaine.

married.

the Communion. 40. There is an high Mountaine, and small as well at the bottome as at the top, which feemeth to reach vp to Heauen, which hath three hundred steppes to the top, and vpon the fame flands a very holy and faire Chappell , which hath about it a circuit of flone, wrought very well, as high as the breaft of a man, from whence a man would be afraid to looke downe. The circuit of this Church is so broad, that three may walke in it together in a ranke, and is called by the name of Abbot Pantaleon, which was a most denout and holy man, and there lies his 12 bodie; and this Church hath great reuenues, and hath in it fiftie Canons all honourable persons, and well apparelled, and their chiefe Gouernour is called, Nebret. 41. From this Citie of Caxumo Westward men tranell toward Nilus, where there are great

Cities and Lordships: and they fay that toward this part is the Citie of Sabaim, of which the

Queene of Saba tooke her name, from whence shee had that blacke wood which shee tent to Sa-

neth to his

tie of Sacaum 18 fituate, where lomon, to polish the works of the Temple. And from this Towne of Caxamo, vnto the beginof the Queene ning of the Townes of Sabaim, are two dayes journey; and this Signiorie is subject to the of Saba tooke Kingdome of Tigremahon: and the Lord and Captaine of the fame is Coufin to Prete lami: and it is reported to bee a good and large Sigmorie. Toward the North is a Countrey, called Torrate, all full of Mountaines, toward which within the space of twelue miles, is an high Mountaines taine, which is great at the bottome, on which is a Plaine of two miles long, full of Woods of exceeding ftraight and beautifull Trees, neere vnto which Woods, there is a Monasterie which hath large reuenues, and great number of Monks, which is called, The Monasterie of Allelniah, and the cause of this name is faid to be this, that at the first building thereof, there lived a Frier of most holy life, which spent the most part of the night in prayers, and having heard the An-A Frier, alyer, Monafteric called by that name. And as this Frier was very holy and good, fo the report is, that they which line there at this prefent are as bad and wicked. About this Hill whereon this Monasterie is seated, are Rivers to be seene, which are dried vp,

which run not, but in the time of great tempefts & thunders. But now to returne to our voyage, 30 about eight miles distant from Caxumo, is another Monasterie on a Mountaine, which is called, The Monasterie of Saint Iohn : and fixe miles beyond this is another, which is called, Abba-Gariman, whom they report to have beene King of Grecia, and that forfaking his Kingdome and Gonernment, he came hither to doe penance, and here he ended his life deuoutly, and yet, they fay, hee doeth many Miracles, and wee were there present on the day of his folemnitie, where wee faw about three thousand persons, some blind, some lame, and some sicke of the French Poxe.

ò. V I.

ð. V I.

Departure from Saint Michael, to a place called Bacinete : Their willting TIGREMAHON. Of divers Monasteries, and other places in the way which they passed

E departed from the Church of Saint Michael, with the people of the Coun- Angela. trey, which carried our stuffe, and came to our lodging in a Towne, called Angeba, in a Betengus, which is an house of the King, wherein before in other Reuerence to places we had oftentimes beene lodged, which no body elfe may vie, but fuch the Kings hou-Noblemen as represent the Kings person, and they vie such reuerence to these houses, that the Racinete. gates thereof stand alwaies open, and no man dare presume to enter, or to touch them, sauc one-

ly when the Gouernour is within, and when he is gone out, they leave the gates open, and the beds whereon they fleepe, and their prouision to make their fire, and their Kitchin. Departing from this place, we trausiled about fifteene miles, and lodged voon an high Mountaine, which flanderh neere vnto a great Riger, called Bacinete, and so likewise is the Towne and Territorie called, whereof the Grand-mother of Prete lanni was then Gouerneffe; and at the time when we were there, it was taken from her, because she had done wrong vnto the Inhabitants, and 20 Prete lanni beareth as great affection and respect vnto his Subjects, as to his Kinsfolkes, and this Countrey is subject to the Kingdome of Tigremabon, and in euery part is very well peopled, and manured in all parts : but especially it is full of fruitfull Mountaines, and Rivers which runne continually towards Nilus. All their habitations are feated and built upon high places, and out of the way, and this they doe, because of the Trauailers, which take away such things as Provision athey have perforce. They which carried our goods for feare of wilde beafts, made a hedge with gainst wilde Fasots of Thornes very firong, and lay within the fame, and we with our Mules, and that beafts. night we had no harme.

We derarted from Bacinete, and transiled fixe miles vnto our lodging, vnto a place called 30 Malue, which is compassed with many goodly manured fields, full of Wheate, Barley, and Millet, and Pulse of all forts, the like whercof, so faire and so thicke, we had not seene in any place together. Neere vnto this Towne, is an exceeding high Mountaine, but at the foote not High Mounvery great, for it is as great in a manner at the top as beneath, because it is as steepe as a Wall or saine as steepe fortrelle right vp, all bare without Grasse, or any greene thing; and it is duided into two A Monasterie, parts, to wit, the two outward fides are sharpe, and the midst is plaine, and on one of those sharpe tops, trauailing up into the same, aboue two miles, there is a Monasterie of Friers of our Ladie, called Abba Mata, and they are men of an holy life. The order of Friers heere, is All Friers of all one, because through the Realme of Prete lanni they are all of one order; namely, of the or- the order of S. der of Saint Anthonie the Hermite, and out of this order is forung another, which is called Anthony in Ellefarrez, which is taken rather to be an Hebrew, then a Christian order; and they fav. that Ethiopia. oftentimes they burne some of them, because there are many herefies among them; namely,

because they will not worthip the Crosses which they themselves make, because all the Priests The order Eller and Friers carry Croffes in their hands, and the Laity at their neckes: and the cause why they farrag will not will not worship them, is, because they say, That Crosse is onely to be worshipped, whereon worship the Christ dyed for vs, but that those which they and other men make, are not to be worshipped, Georges the use because they are the workes of mens hands: and for other like herefies, which they fay, hold, pertitions to and maintaine, they are greatly perfecuted. The place where this Abba Mata is, feemeth to besten and the be three miles distant from Malue, I would have gone thither, but I was wished not to goe; for Author so the though it be but a daies journey thither, yet I should be driven to spend foure daies in the same, the west of though it be but a dates nourney thitner, yet a mound be unuented upon noure dates in the latine, them, in not and to climbe up thither upon my hands and my feete, for otherwise a man cannot come admitting 50 thither.

In the midft of this Mountaine, which is as flat as a Table, flandeth another Church of our tions Lady, wherein very great denotion is vied ; and on another sharpe Mountaine, is another little Other Chur-Church, called Saint Croffes. And beyond thefe, foure miles and an halfe, there is another Mountaine, like vnto that of Abba Mata, and there is another Monasterie, called Saint lobn. The young Women are much out of order, and if they be twentie, or fine and twentie yeares of age, they have their breafts so long, that they reach downe vnto their waste, and this they take for Long breafts a goodly thing, and they goe naked, and from the girdle vpwards they weare Cordans of Beads lotthome, for a brauery. Others more in yeares, weare Sheepe-skinnes tyed about their neckes, which louely. couer but one fide of their bodies : and because this is the custome of their Countrey, a man is Brutishaesse. 60 no more ashamed to shew his secrets, then if yee saw his hands and his seete; and this is vied a-

mong the baser fort, for the Gentlewomen are all couered. Tigremahon, was about two miles distant from this place in a Betenegus, or house of the King. The same day that we came thither, Tigremahon sent for the Embassadour, which went thither with his Company, but when we were come vnto his Palace, it was told vs that he was gone

of the Suppoin

to the Church with his Wife to receive the Communion, and this was about halfe an houre past Many Coun- two and twentie of the clocke; for about that time they fay Masse in this Countrey, except tries confirme it be Saturday or Sunday. And we went to meet him as he came from Church with his Wife who rode vpon two Mules richly furnished, as is requisite for persons of great Estate, and such as are accompanied with menof great Nobilitie.

This Tigrematon is an old man, of a goodly pretence, and his Wife was wholly covered with Blue Cotten-cloath, and that in fuch fort, that we could fee neither her face, nor any other part swenty boures of her body. When we came neere vnto him, he prayed me to give him a Croffe which I had in Tigremiben de- my hand, which he kiffed, and gaue vnto his Wife to kiffe, and the not vncouering her face, kifmy hand, which he killed, and gath vine on the trace, and vied vs with great courtefie. This man to hath a great Court of men and women alwaies with him, and greater furniture then Barnasas

Absolute Soucraignty of the Negat

In this Kingdome Prete lanni placeth and displaceth, when it seemeth good vnto him, and when he pleaseth, with cause or without cause the Kings, and those which are vnder the Kings, and therefore when they are depriued of their government, they make no flew of melaneholy or fadnesse, and if they take it cuill, they keepe it fecret. While I was in these parts, I faw great Lords deprined of their States, and they which were placed in their roomes, oftentimes talking and conferring with them as good friends, but God knowes the heart. In this Country, whatteeuer thing happen vnto them, whether profperitie or aduerfitie, they fay, That God fends it. These Lords which are as Kings , pay tribute vnto Prete Lanni, which tribute is in an Hories, in Gold, in Silke, in Imbroidered Cloath, and in Cotton-cloath, according to the abilia tie of the Countries. And these Countries are so greatly inhabited and peopled, that their reuenues must needs be great, and when the Noblemen line in the Townes, they line at the common charges of the poore people.

After the delinerie of Prefents, Tigremakon fuddenly tooke order for the carriage of our goods before denyed, and that through all his Dominions they should furnish vs of Bread, Wine, and Flesh, on free cost. Having received this newes upon the ninth of August, we departed, and came to our lodging in certaine small Villages, enclosed as the former, for feare of Tygers. And that night which we lodged there, being about two of the clocke in the night, two men went Two men afgers, and one of them was wounded on the leg. It pleafed God that we heard them cry, and ran out to fuccour them, for otherwife they would have flaine them. In this Country are diuers Villages, inhabited by Moores, divided from those of the Christians, who (as they fay) pay great tribute of Cloath, of Silke, and of Gold, to the Lords of the Countrey, but they are not put to other troubles which the Christians are put too; and these Moores have no Church at all, for they will not fuffer them to vie any. All these Countries ar fertill, as well in Pasture, as in Wheate, and other Corne.

Neere vnto our lodging was a Church of Saint George, very well gouerned, after the manner of our Churches, it was vaulved, and well painted with their pictures; to wit, with the Apo-

ftles, Patriarks, Noah, and Elias, wherein serue ten Priests, and ten Friers, And till wee came 40

Saint Georges

Two men af-

Villages of

Tewiffs Sabba-

hither, we faw no Church gouerned by Priests, without having Friers with them, but where the Friers be the chiefe, there are no Priefts. Three miles diffant, is the Monasterie of the Holy Ghost, where the Friers were grieved, because it was Saturday, whereon they might not gather fruits to give voto vs as they defired, and prayed vs to excuse them, and faid; They would give vs such things as they had in the Couert, and so going into the house, they gave vs dryed Garlick & Limons, and at last prepared for vs in the Refectorie, Cabbages cut in manner of a Salet, and mingled with Garlick. Behind the Towne where we lodged, for the fpace of fix miles. is a Towne called, Agro, wherein Tigrematon hath a Palace, where we were oftentimes lodged, Church out of and here is a Church of our Ladie digged out of a Rock by force of mans hand, very well made, a Rocke.

with three Iles or Allies, and with pillers hewed out of the faid Rocke, and the great Chapell, 50 the Vestry, and the Altar, are all likewise of the same Rocke, and the principall Porch, with the Pillers thereof, as though it were made of fundry pieces, it cannot be fairer then it is. In the fides it hath no gate, for on each fide is the mightie and terrible Rocke, and it is very pleafant to heare them fing Dinine Seruice, for the voyces of them which fing, make a wonderfull

45. On the thirteenth of August, we departed from this place, where wee rested all Saturday and Sunday, and came to a place, called Angugui, where there is a Church like a B. shoppes See, very great and faire with Allies, and with Pillars of stone very faire and well wrought, and it is called Chercos, that is to fay, Saint Quirico. The place is very faire vpon a very goodly Riuer : the Inhabitants haue a priniledge, that none may enter the Towne on horse-backe, but 60 onely on Mules.

Bellette, where stands a Betenegree, a very good Lodging. The situation of the place is very pleafant, and hath abundance of good waters, and wee were lodged in the faid Palace. During our abode here, there came vnto vs a great Lord, named Robel, beeing Gouernour of a Prouince,

named Balgada, wherofraking his name, he is called Balgada Robel. This Nobleman had with him Balgada. a great train all on horse-back, and many other Horses and Mules led by hand, which they vie to do for authority and reputation, and there were many Drums in his company: it is faid that he is Subject to Tigrematon, And comming to the Palace where our Ambassador was, he sent to request him to come out and speake with him, because he might not enter into the house in Tigremabons absence. The Ambassador hearing this request, fent him word backe againe, that he had trauelled about fifteene miles, and that if he would fee him or speake with him, he should come into the house, for he would not come forth. Then this Nobleman sent him an Oxe, a Sheepe, a Vessell nouse, for ne would not come to the analysis of Honey as white as Snow, and hard as a stone, and a Horne full of very good Wine. And sent Honey, white

10 him word, that he would come and fee him although the penalties were very dangerous, and and hard. that he hoped that he should be pardoned of the penaltie, because Christians were lodged in

As he was come neere vnto the Palace, there fell fuch store of raine, that hee was constrained to enter into it, and there he talked with the Ambassadour and vs, enquiring of the state of our Voyage, and of our Countries, which till that time hehad neuer knowne nor heard off, and then discoursed of the Warres which he made against the Moores, which iowne voon his Countries toward the Sca-coast, saying, that he neuer ceased to warre with them, and he gaue a very good Mule for a Rapier to one of our company. The Ambassadour seeing his courteste, game him an

And they fay, that his government is very great, and that he hath the best commoditie in all Through all Athionia, to wit, Salt, which goes currant in flead of mony, as well in the Kingdomes of Prete Athionia. Salt Janni, as in the Dominions of the Moores and Gentiles , and they fay , that it passeth from runneth as a thence as farre as Congo, vpon the West Sea. And this Sale they digge out of Mountaines, as it is principal Merthence as farre as Congo, vpon the Weit Sea. And this sait they digge out of Mountaines, as it is chandize, reported, as it were out of Quarries; the length of enery from is a handfull and an halfe, the Salt money. breadth foure fingers, the thickneffe three, and to they carie them in little Carts, and voon beafts backes, like short cliffes of Wood. In the place where they digge this Salt, one hundred or one hundred and twentie of these stones are worth a dramme of Gold, which dram (in my indigement) is worth three hundred Rease, which are three quarters of a Ducate in Gold. And as foone as it commeth vnto a certaine Faire which is in our way, in a Towne, called Corcora, a Corcora, dayes iourney diffant from the place where the Salt is digged, fine or fixe ftones leffe make a

drammer And fo it diminisheth in patting from Faire to Faire. And when it commeth to the Court, fixe or feuen stones onely make a dramme : and I hatte also feene them in the Winter time buy five for a dramme. Great bargaines are made with this Salt, and it is very deere in the Court. They fay, by that time it commeth to the Kingdome of Damute, they buy a good flave Damute. for three or foure itones, and paffing farther into the Countries of the Moores, they fay, that they may buy a flane for one flone, and in a manner, waight for waight in Gold. Wee found in this way, three or four hundred beatts in a company, laden with Sake, and as many more emptie which went to fetch Sale, and they faid that these belonged to Noblemen, which fend thither every years for their necessarie expenses in the Court, and other twentie or thirtie beafts

AO laden, which belong to drivers of Mules. Also we met men laden with the faid Salt, who carried the fame from Faire to Faire, which valueth, and runneth currant for money, and who foeuer hath it, may have by way of trucke, whatfoeuer he needeth.

46. Departing from this Betenegut, we lodged in certaine poore and ill-prouided Villages in a Countrey, called Burnace. And the next day wee departed from thence following our stuffe, Burnace. which was fent before vs, which we found valaden in the midst of a Medow, which was full of water, and feeing the fame to badly conceyed, wee marcelled greatly; and while wee were in this mufe, there met vs fiue or fixe riding vpon Mules, having tenne or twelve foot-men with them, among whom was a Frier; which comming to the place, caught the Captaine of Tiere- Aftout Frier. mahon, who conducted our goods by the haire of the head, and beat him with a Cudgell, wherevpon all of vs ranne to him to know wherefore hee did fo. Our Ambassadour seeing the Cap-

50 taine fo beaten and hardly handled, falling into Choler with the Frier, tooke him by the breft to flab him, but I know not whether he hurt him or no, and all of vs likewise came vpon his back. The poore Frier began to speake a little Italian, which George de Bren one of our company vnderitood, which if he had not done, it had gone hard with the Frier. When every one was pacified, the Frier faid, that he was come thither by the Commission of Prete lami, to see our goods conneyed, and whereas he had beaten him, he did it for the negligence which hee yied in conveyance of them.

The Ambaffadour answered, that it was no time to make any tumult, especially in his prefence, for hee tooke it as if hee had done the fame to his owne person. And thus being pa-

60 cified, the Frier fairl, that he would goe to Signior Balgada Robel, which dwelt behind vs , and that from thence he would bring vs Mules and Camels to carrie our fluffe, and that wee should Zago Zabo, the goe before, and thay for him is a Letenegus, halfe a daies tournie diffant from this place. This was which Prete the fame Prier which was after ward tent by Prete Janni, as his Ambaffador into Portugal withvs. Janni fent into And fo we departed, each man his way the forward, and we toward the faid Betenegus, and that Portugall.

night we lodged in a little Village; where was a goodly Church, called Saint Quiricus, and that might we feared leaft we should have beene denoured of Tygres. The day following, wee transl. led about two miles, and found the Betenegus which the Frier told vs of, which is in a Town.cal. led Corcora, having good Lodgings, and in that place there is a very faire Church, and here wee flaved all Saturday and Sunday, wayting for the Frier vntill the Munday. Eaftward of this place. they fav, there is a faire and rich Monastery, called Nazareth, which hath great Reuenues and many Friers. And West-ward towards the River of Nilss, they say there are many Mines of Siluer, but they know not how to digge it, nor to take any profit of the same.

Q. VII.

Departure from Corcora, the pleasant Countrey which wee passed through, and of another Forrest; bow the Tigres fer upon us. Dofarto, the Moores of Dobas: Ancona, Angote; Salt, and Iron Money. Other Monasteries and Churches.

A goodly Countrey,



N Tuefday morning, feeing the Frier came not, wee went forward on our inurney along the banke of a passing goodly River, for the space of sixe miles. through a very pleasant and goodly Countrey, and full of greene Herbs, and 20 Trees truitfull and fruitleffe, and on both fides were Ridges of Mountaines ex-

ceeding steepe, which are all fowed with Wheat and Barley, and replenished with wild Olive Trees, which shew like yong Oliues, for they often cut them, that they may the better fow their Corne. In the midit of this Valley is a passing faire Church of our Ladie, about which are many Houses, Lodgings and Habitations of Priests. There are also infinite abundance of Cyprefle Trees fo tall and great, as it is strange to speake of, and many Thickets of Trees of fundry forts which we knew not.

Cypreffes.

fame field harueft in Seed-

Neere vnto the principall gate of the Church, was a very goodly and cleere Fountaine, which enuironed the Church, and afterward foread it felfe into a great Champaigne field, which may be watered throughout with the streames thereof, and therefore is fowed every moneth of the 12 every moneth, yeare, with all kind of Seeds: as Barley, Millet, Lentils, Fitches, * Beanes, Chiches, Taffo di Guza, which is very good, and withall other Pulie, which are in this Countrey, and at the vefame instant some Seeds are sowen, others are sprung up in the blade, some are full ripe, some are new out downe, and some threshed, a thing not seene in our parts of Europe. At the head of this Valley, there is a great afcent, and so craggie a Mountaine, that fixtie miles beyond the fame, there is none other paffage, and it feemeth verie likely to be fo, by the great flore of people that alwayes paffe that way. Hauing gotten vp to the top of that Mountaine, wee descended into a goodly Champaigne

Fertilitie.

They lofe each

Countrey, full of all kind of Cornes, which they fow all the yeare long, as that was which I spake of before, and there is a World of Medowes for pasture. This Champaigne and Valley, 40 may be in length about fixe miles, and in breadth two, and it hath on every fide high Mountaines, and at the foot of every Mountaine, are many Townes and Churches to bee feene, howbeit, they be but small among which there is one, named Saint Croffes, and another Saint Iohn, and each of them bath twentie Friers. When we had passed this Valley, we beganne to change the foile, and entred into certaine rough Mountaines not very high, but very fleepe, the greater part whereof we passed by night, by meanes whereof we lost one another, and the Ambassadour remained with four onely in his company, and my felte with fine, and another of our number, with two, and our stuffe was left in these wild places with one man onely, as it pleaseth God. And in that part where I was, we faw a fire, which because it was night, seemed neere vnto vs. but was about three miles diffant from vs. And while wee fought to goe that way , there 50 followed vs such a fort of Tygres, as was wonderfull, and if we entred into any Thicket, they came fo neere vs, that wee might have thrust them through with a Pike, and none but one in

Danger by

Corne-fields for our more securitie, and here wee tyed our Mules together, and kept watch and ward all night with our naked Rapiers. The next day about noone-tyde, wee met with our Ambassadour in a Towne well-peopled,

our companie had a Pike, the rest had Rapiers. At length wee concluded, to stay in certains

Mountaines, it was not Winter but very hot at that feafon, and the Countrey is called Dobba, and it was Summer there, and this is one of the Countries, which I spake of before, where I

distant from that where we lodged, aboue fixe miles, and it is called Manadeli, which hath one Townsof one thousand Housholds in it, and the Inhabitants thereof are Moores, Tributaties to Prete lanni, and thou and hou- among them are fifteene or twentie Families of Christians, which dwell there with their wives, and take up the Tributes. Whereas I faid before, that wee beganne to change the foile of the Countrey, it is to be understood; that unto this time, which is two monethes space since we begin to trauell, it was alwayes Winter, and when wee entred into the Valleyes betweene these

faillet was Winter in Februarie, March and Aprill, contrarie to the other. The like is also from the Monattery of Vision vito the Sea, and in another Countrey of the Realme of Barnagallo called Carna. Thele Coontries which haue the Winter altered, are very low, and lye vnder the Neishbours Mountaines: and the length of this Territorie is about fifteene dayes rounney, the breadth is Mountaines; and the length of this Technology of the Moores. The generall and common Winternaria Winter is from the midft of lune, to the midft of September. There are very goodly Oxen in cular and this Countrey of Dobba; and in fuch multitudes that they cannot well be numbred, they are common. of greater stature then Oxen of any other place. But many miles before wee came to this Towne Manadeli, we met many Christian people in the fields with their Tents set vp, which faid ynto vs, that they were come thither to gray to God for water from Heaven for their Catle, which dyed for thirst, and to fow their Millet and their Corne, which had indured great want of Great drought water. Their Cry and Prayer was this: Zio Marina Christos, which is, Ob, Christ, baue mercie

Now, to returne to this Towne of Manadeli, I say, that there is Traffique vsedas it were in a great Citie, and there are infinite forts of Merchandize, and a wonderfull number of Merchants. Manadeli, a and there be Moores of all Languages, as namely, of Giadra, of Marocco, of Fez, of Bugia, of Tunis, of Turkie, of Rumes, that is to lay, White Men of Grecia, * Moores of India, which are * Or rather heere as free Denizens of Ormuz, and of Cairo, which from all the Countries above-named, bring Turkes of C. Merchandize of all forts. While we were here, the Moores of the Towne complayned, faying, necre Conflanthat Prete lanni, had taken from them one thousand ounces of Gold perforce, adding, that Ti. t. apple, called 20 eremahon also, as Lord of the Countrey, sought also to draw his maintenance from them, so that

they were no longer able to hold out. In this Towne enery Tuefday is a Market.

48. Afflone as the Frier was arrived, wee departed, and the same evening wee went two miles from thence to a Betenegus, feated on a Hill. The next day wee came to a great Towne Defarle. a inhabited by Christians, and contayning one thouland Families , which is called Dofarfo. And Towne of one there is a Church, wherein are aboue one hundred Prietts and Friers, and as many Nunnes, which thousand haue no Monatterie, but dwell in private houses like Lay-women, saving, that the Friers dwell Christian alone by themselues in two Courts seperated one from another, wherein are many Cottages of bousholds. little value. And the number of their Priests, Friers and Monkes is to great, that the rest of the 30 Laytie cannot stand in the Church, for which cause they have set vp a Tent of Silke before the Church, wherein the Lay-people receive the Communion : and heere they vie those Solemni-

ties, which they cannot in the Church, as founding of their Drummes and Cymbals, during the time of ministring the Communion. While we lodged here two nights, the Nunnes came and washed our feet, and after they had washed them, dranke off that water, and washed their faces with part of it, faying, that we were holy Christians of Iernfalem.

In this place, the Malter of the house faid vnto me, that yeare wherein we gather but a final crop Exceeding of Corne, fufficeth vs for three yeares. And farther he told me, if it were not for the Locusts and plennie, the Tempests which sometimes doe them harme, they would not sow halfe so much Seed as they doe. We faw great Herds of Oxen comming toward the Towne, and those of our company 40 judged them to be aboue fiftie thousand. The Tongue of this Country differeth from the Tongue of the other Countrey which we had passed, for here beginneth the Tongue of the Kingdome of

Angote, the Towne is called Angotina.

In all this Countrey they make bread of all forts of Graine, namely, of Wheat, Barley, Mil- of Angele, and let, Chiches, Peafon, Fisches of divers colours, of Beanes, of Lin-feed, and of Taffo di Aguzza. the Towne of Likewise they make Wine of these Seeds, but the Wine made of Honey is better then any Becreor Ale. of the rest. This people after the Frier was come vnto vs gaue vs victuals, and defrayed our charges of this kind of bread, by the commandement of Prece Janni, but we could eat none of it, but that which was made of Wheate, and they brought vs these their victuals out of due season, that is to fay, (according to their custome) at Euen-tyde, for they eate but once a day, and that in the Euening, and their Dyet is raw flesh, and a certaine sawce made of the Gall of the Cow, day, which we could not looke vpon, and much leffe feed vpon, but we are that little which our flaues Raw flaffe, dreffed for vs, and wheaten bread, and so we continued vntill the Frier vnderstanding our Dyet and cuftome, caufed them to fend vs flesh, which was rosted and sodden by our slaues, to wit, Hens, Partridges, Mutton, Beefe, and fuch like.

49. Departing from this Towne, we travelled through the midft of certaine fields of Millet growing high, and having stalkes as bigge as small Canes. Towards the Sea-coast, all the Inhabitants are Moores, called Dobas, and it is no Kingdome, but this Prouince is divided under foure and twentie Captaines, and fometimes the one halfe is in peace, and the other halfe in warre, and the same time while wee were in those Countries, they were all in a manner at continual! 60 warres : yet we faw twelue of them in the Court of Prete lann, which came to craue pardon for a new Rebellion moued by them.

And when they came neere the Paulion of Prete Ianni, which liueth alwayes in the field, Signe of peace euery one of these Captaines carried a great stone upon their heads, laying both their hands upon the same, which Ceremonie is a figure of peace, and of comming to craue mercie. Whom

Winter and

The Kingdome

Prete Ianni curreoutly received, and shewed them good countenance, and they brought with them about one hundred Horfes, and faire Mules, which they led in their hands, but they came into the Court on foot, with stones on their heads, where they stayed about two moneths with. out their difpatch; and they had daily given them Oxen, Sheepe, Honey, and Butter. At length Prete lami fent them about three hundred miles from their Countrey; namely, into the Kingdome of Damute, with a very great Guard. As soone as the people of these Captaines vo. deritood, that they were banished into those Countreyes, they role vp in Armes, and made as many moe new Captaines, beginning to make warre and breake the peace.

Cause of the

This warre and contention (they fay) beganne with this Prete Ianni, which now taieneth more then with his Predecessors, both because these Moores were of ancient time Tributaries in to the former Prete Lanni, and also because the Ancestors of him, which now raigneth hane al-The Pretes ma- waies had fine or fixe wines, the daughters of the Moorifb Kings, his neighbours; and not the daughters of the Pagan Kings, and also one or two wives of the Signiories of the faid People called Dobas. If they were of age, and one of the daughters of the King of Daneali, and another of the King of Adel, and another of the King of Adea. And this present Prese, having promised to take for wife a daughter of the King of Adea, when hee faw that her fore-teeth were very great, he would none of her; neither would he deliner her to her father, because shee was note become a Christian, but married her vnto a great Lord of his Court : and they say, that fince that rime vntill this present day, he would never take wives of this Moorish Kings race; and he married a daughter of a Christian, and would marrie but one wife, saying, that he would live a according to the commandement of the Gofpell, and still he requireth the tribute, which thefe Moores are bound to pay him : and they, because they payed it not before, in regard of the marriages which they made with his Predeceffors , therefore they will not now pay it to him and hereupon these warres arise.

Deuillifh Law

These Moores of Dobas are very valiant men, and have a Law among them that none of them may marrie, vnleffe he can proue that he hath killed twelve Christians; and for this cause. Weekly Caro- no man trauelleth alone this way but in Carouan, which they call Nagada, and first one great uans to Faires, companie affembleth together, which paffeth that way twife a weeke, for one halfe of them goe, and another come, and none of these companies are fewer then one thousand persons with their Captaine; and these Carouans age from two Faires, to wit, of Manadeli, and Corcora, vn. 14 to Angore; and though they goe in great companies, yet notwithstanding the Moores affault them, and fometimes murther many of them.

A remarkable

co. Departing from hence wee travelled through the faid Plaine along by certaine Mountaines, which belong vnto the Christians, all inhabited by these Giannamori: and wee passed ouer certaine Rivers which fall from those Mountaines, hard by which Rivers wee found certaine very shadie places, by reason of the abundance of Willowes which were there, being very pleafant to reft under at mid-day, and so we rested a little, because it was exceeding hot, and a very cleere day, and this River had not fo much water in it as might drive a Mill, and we flood talking, one part on the one fide of the water, and another part on the other; and while wee were thus reasoning, suddenly we heard a great thunder, and it seemed to be farre off, and they as told vs, that it was so drie, as sometimes it was wont to bee in India. And being thus out of feare of raine or wind, and that the thunder was ceased, wee began to fet our stuffe in order, to An exceeding fet forward on our Voyage, and had newly lapped up a Tent wherein we dined, and Mafter lobs fulden and pegoing vpward the River about some businesse, began to cry vnto vs, take heed, take heed, and as we turned our felues about, we beheld the water comming as high as a Lance, with exceeding great furie, which carried away part of our goods, and if by good fortune wee had not taken downe our Tent, it had carried the same and vs quite away, and many of vs were constrained to climbe vp into the Willowes. And this furious streame of water came running downe betweene certaine Mountaines, where it had thundred; and it brought downe with it exceeding great flones, and the noise and furie of the water was so great , and the cluttering of the flones of which beat one against another, that the Earth trembled, and the Skie seemed to be readie to Violent things fall. And as it was fudden in comming, so it fuddenly passed away; for we passed the same that very day, and we faw a great number of other exceeding great stones, tumbled vpon those stones which were there before, which came downe with the water from those Mountaines. Departing from hence, wee tooke vp our lodging in certaine poore Cortages; when wee came neere them, we faw our felues conftrained to lodge without doores, and that without our fupper, and that night about the breake of day, we heard of exceeding great thunders and raines in that Plaine, as it fell out the day before vpon the Mountaines.

The River Sabalette.

Saint Peters

51. Wee departed all from this place for want of food. And thus wee travelled without our stuffe all that day, and came at night vnto a great River, called Sabatette, which endeth the 60 Kingdome of Tigrematon, and is the beginning of the Kingdome of Angare. And in a very high Mountaine Westward, out of which this River springeth, is a Church, called Saint Pier of Angote; and they fay, it is the chiefe of this Realme, and the Church of the Kings, and that when this Kingdome is newly given to any, they goe thither to take possession thereof, and to-

ward the East, in another exceeding high Mountaine fixe miles out of the way, there is a very oreat Monasterie with many Friers, whereof we saw nothing but the high Trees which are about the fame, and here endeth the Countrey of the Moores. And on Saturday, we refled by this River, and on Sunday at night about our first sleepe the Tygres affaulted vs, although wee had Tygres made great fires, to that the greatest part of our Mules brake loofe for feare, On Tuesday, defeending downe from the top of the Mountaines, we came into the way where our fluste was. neere vnto a Church called, Our Ladie, enuironed wholly with shade of most pleasant and starely Trees, (and here by reason of the heate wee rested about noone) which Church bath many Priefts, Friers, and Nuns, and is gouerned by Priefts : and the Towne is called, Corcors, of An-10 gote. With much travell we puffed that night a very high Mountaine, where fometimes wee were faine to goe on foot, and fometimes we were faine to crawle vpon our hands and feet, and having passed this bad way on the top of the Mountaine, we found certaine other Mountaines. and Hills, which make valleys, where small streames runne; but among the rest there is one Hill very great, on both sides full of Pastures, and of Corne-fields, wherein all the yeere long they fowe and reape all kind of feeds; for at all times when wee walked that way, we found them at that inflant fewing of Corne, and fome newly sprouted, and some in graffe, some eared, forme ripe, and some cut downe, and that which I speake of Wheat, is also to be vindentbood all Seed time all kind of Corne and Pulse. In this Countrey they conuay not streames to water the same, be-

cause it aboundeth with Rivers, and is as it were a Marish, and all Countreys which are like you 20 to this, or which may bee watered beare fruit as this doth, that is to fay, they are lowed in all moneths of the yeere, and yeeld their haruest. This Countrey round about is peopled, and full of Villages , because it is exceeding fat and fruitfull , and in every Towne there is a Church, which hathabout it great flore of Trees.

52. On Wednesday the fift of September, we trauelled but a little way, but that we began to descend into a pleasant and wide Valley full of exceeding great Millet, and abundance of Beanes, through the midth whereof passed a great River, the nelds on both sides being fowed. And this River is called, The River of Ancona; and in the highest part of this Valley is a beautifull Church, called Saint Marie of Ancona, which hath exceeding great revenues, wherein are Faire Church. many Canons, whose head is called Licenste, and besides the Canons there are many Priests and 20 Friers, and in all great Churches from this place forward, which are called the Kings Churches.

there are Canons, and their Head is called Licenses. This Church hath two Bells of Iron badly Two Bels of made, and hanging low neere the ground; and in this Countrey weefaw no more but thefe Iron two. Wee stayed in this place witill Thursday, for on that day here is kept a great Market, which they call Gabeia. In this Towne, and in all the Kingdome of Angote, Iron runneth currant for money, which is in fathion of Bullets, and it cannot be wrought fo round in any thing, but they breake them as they have need, and give ten, eleven, and twelve, of them for a dram. which dram amounteth to three quarters of a Ducatin gold. Moreouer, Salt in this place runneth currant for money, as it doth through all the Countrey, and here they give fixe or feven ftones of Salt for one piece of this Iron.

Here beginneth towards the West a Countrey called, Bugana, which is a very cold Countrey. In all the by reason of the exceeding high Mountaines which are there, whereupon groweth great flore Kingdome of of that herbe whereof they make ropes, that is to say, Hempe; whereof at one time 1 brought a certaine quantitie to certaine Genone fes which were here with vs, who told me, that they had and fall runne neuer seene any so good, and that it was better then that of Alicante. The food of these Moun- currant for taines is great flore of Barley, and in the Valleys is abundance of Wheat, the fairest that euer money. Thate feene in any place. The Cattell are small of statute, like those which are in the Co.n.- Country. trey of Maia, between the Rivers of Minique and Dorius in Portugall. The Lord of this Land Good Wheat. is called, Abunaraz; the Countrey is fixe dayes journey in length, and three in breadth. They Small Cantell, fay, that after the Land of Caxumo was conserted vnto the Christian Faith, this was the fecond and that the Kings here kept their Court, as the Queenes kept theirs in Caramo, although the Strange Mo-

50 fame be barren by reason of the Mountaines. The buildings which I faw, are these : first, in an nature. high Mountaine there is an exceeding mightie Caue, wherein is builded a very goodly Monafterie and Church of our Ladie, not lo much for the greatnesse thereof, as for the goodly proportion which it hath, which is called, Icono Amelaca, which is as much to (ay, as, God be praised, The feat of the Countrey where it is builded, is called Acate. It hath poore reuenues, but many Friers and Nuns, the Friers dwell in an Hill aboue the Caue, which Hill is enclosed. They haue but one way to come to their Church. The Nuns dwell beneath in the fide of the Caue, and are not enclosed: they till and digge the fields, and sowe them with Barley and Wiscar, for the Monasterie affordeth them little sustenance. The faire proportion of this Monasterie cau-

60 feth it to be inhabited, because it is builded in this great concauttie or caus of the Hill, and it is made like a croffe, and is well compassed about, and they may goe on Procession round about it, and all the Friers may goe afront in this circuit, if they were more then they bee; before the gate of which Monasterie there is a place enclosed with a wall, as high as the brimme of the Caue, which is not a Church, and here stand the Nens to fay Divine Service, and here likewife

The Nunnes.

they receive the Communion. This Roome for the Nunnes looked toward the South, because the Church standeth East and West; and toward the right side over this Caue falleth a Brooke made of divers Springs, downe from the Moun ayne, which runneth continually, and whente commeth to the top of the Caue, is divided into three branches; and one falleth right vpon the midt thereof, which is a goodly fight; the other two branches runne in Gutters, made by hand. on both fides of the Caue, and iowne themselves toward the place of the Numes, hard vmma Wall which (toppeth them, and thefe branches water their Gardens. The body of this Church bath three Gates, one which is principall, and two on the fides, as though it were builded youn a Plaine : and because the mouth of the Caue is great, therefore there is light enough. 43. As we departed from this Monasterie or Church before mentioned, trauelling toward 10

the West two dayes iourney, there is another great and rich Church, made in another Caue.

wherein, to my indgement, three great Ships with their Masts may stand vp-right, but the en-

trance is no bigger then the space whereby two Carts may enter with their Ladders, and it is

Another Church in a Cauc.

Aluarez his iou: ney full or aufficultie

fixe good miles to the top of the Mountayne : and I would needs goe thither, for the defire I had to fee that Church : but furely, I thought, I should have died, the way was so hard and rough: but God affifted me, for it was very coole, and I had with me one of my Slaues; which holpe me to goe, and drew me vpward with a cord, and another behind which led our Mules by hand; left they should fall and cast vs backward. I set forward from the bottome of the Mountayne before day, and could not get up to the top before noone. The Woods and Trees, which I faw, are of fundrie forts, which I knew not, faining fore of Broome, whose yellow flowers made a goodly 20 shew, and great store of Hempe to make Ropes withall. The Church which is within this Caue, is as great as a Bishops Sea, and hath goodly Allies well adorned and wrought, and all are vaulted; it hath three Chappels exceeding faire and stately adorned. The entrance of this Caue of the Church. is towards the East, and the Chappels are vaulted towards the same entrance, and when you'be

Canons and Reuenucs,

paffed the third Chappell, there is no light, and they fay fernice by candle-light. The Church hath two hundred Canons, and there be no Friers, but it hath a Licanate, and very great Reuenues and Possessions, and they live like honorable Gentlemen by reason of their wealth; and this Church is called Imbra Christos, that is to fay, The way of Christ. As you enter into this Cane, the faid Chappels are right before you: and on the right fide are two little Chambers finely painted, which, they fay, a King caused to be built, which ended his 9.

life in that place, and caused the same Church to be builded. As you enter in on the left hand,

Three Tombs are three most honorable and stately Tombs, neither have I seene the like in all Ethiopia, whereof one is chiefe and very high, and hath fine fleps round about it, and is all ouer-caft with white One of a King. chalke, which was covered over with a great cloth of Gold, and of Veluet of Mecca, to wit, part thereof of Gold, and part of Veluer, and it was fo large, that on every fide it touched the ground, which cloth the fame day they had layed vpon the faid Tombe, because it was a festinal day : and this was the Tombe of that King which dwelt there; whole name was Abraham. The rest are like voto this same, saming that the one hath three and the other hath source steps, all of them are in the midft of the faid Caue. The greatest is the Tombe of a Patriarke, which came from Ierusalem, to visite the faid King for his holineste, and after his death was buried 40 here. The leaft is a Daughters of the faid King, who, they fay, was about fortie yeeres a Prieft of the Malle, which every day did minister the fame, which thing I found written in a Booke of this Church, wherein the life of this King was recorded. Among other miracles, they fay, that when he ministred the Communion, the Angels brought him Bread and Wine, and in the be-

ginning of the Booke, the King is painted like a Priest apparelled at the Altar , and it semeth

that one hand reacheth out of a Window, with an Hoft and with a Chalice of Wine, and after

the same fort he is painted in the greatest Chappell.

One of a Pa-The King a

Legenda, fabu-

The bountie and bolineffe of Aprabam Prete lami.

When I came to the top I found a quarrie of the like blacke flones, and the place wherehence they were digged, and I was much aftonied, confidering how fo many of them should bee digged up by them of so hard a graine, which have no kinde of meanes nor skill to cut and polith so them. In the sime Booke was also written, that the said King neuer tooke money nor Tribute of his Subjects, and if they brought him any, he caused the same to be distributed to the poore, and maintaine himselfe of the Reuenues of his Lands, which he caused to be tilled. Likewife, that it was reuealed vnto him, that if he would keepe his Kingdom in quiet, all his fonnes should be shut vp, saving his first borne, as hereafter shall be declared. This day being the day of his Feaft, I was desirous to goe to the faid Church to fee, if that which was told mee were true: Twentie thou- and I faw twentie thousand persons, who all come thither for deuction, and to receme the fand Communion; and this Feaft was kept vpon the Sunday, and they faid Maffe very early, and nicants atone Masse being said, they began to give the Communion in all three Porches of the Church, and it continued untill the Ase Maria, which thing I faw, for I was there from the beginning, and 60 afterward going to dinner, I returned, and found that it continued vntill that houre.

ø. VIII.

A registration of a world of the family of the Paris of the Company of the Compan

Of the flately buildings of the Churches which are in the Countries of An va A & A. which king I villa at a made, and of his Tombe in the Church of Colored of of Colo

Dayes iourney diffant from this Church; are fuch kind of building, talazin my singlement; I belease, the like are not to be found in all the World, which are Churches all hewen in free from out of fote Mountaynes, zery well wrought?

In and the names of the Churches, are thefe : Emanuel, Saint Sacion, Saint Mary, Faire Chit Haly Craffe; Saint George, Golgora, Befinkliem; Marcinia; and The Marry . And the principal, ches. is called Ladibolla : and they fay ; that this was the name of a King of this Countiey ; which Ladibella reigned before Abraham the aforefaid King about eightie veeres, and vauled the faid building to be erected. His Sepulture is not in the Church of his name, but in that of Galgeta ; which is of leffe canacitie, being whofly hewen out of a mayne Rocke, being one hundred and swentild Galeston don't fpannes in length, and fixtie in breadth, the Roofe is built woon fine Pillars, two on each fitte; he Church and one in the midft, as it were , in a fequare , which Roofe is flat and smooth as the floore be hemmen af. neath; on both fides it is well wrought, the Windowes and Gates are most excellently engra- a Rocker of a 20 uen, to cunningly, that no Silver-Imith could make them more faire. The Kings Tombe is like

unto the Sepulchre of Saint Lames of Galicia, in Compostella. This Church hath another body underneath it, hewen out of stone, as bigge as all the stoore about, and of the heighth of a Greate or Launce. The Kings Tombe is directly before the Altar of the vpper Church : In the Hoore whereof is the entrie to goe downe beneath, which is thut with a stone, made like vitto a Graueftone, laved in very even and closely, but no man goeth into it , because (mee thinkes) the faid stone cannot be removed, which stone is bored through the midst, with a hole that passeth quite through, of three handfulls wide, wherein the Pilgrimes (which in exceeding great Pilgrimage number come thither for denotion) doe put their hands, and fay, that there are seene many and Miraclesi

About this Church is a way like a Cloyfter, but five fteps lower then the Church, wherein soward the East are three Windowes, which give light to the Charch that is beneath, which Windowes are as high as the floore of the vpper Church, which is higher then that Way or Cloyfter, by as much as the fine fteps doe contayne, and if you looke through the faid Windowes, you may fee the faid Tombe placed right before the Altar, as I have faid. Before the description great Chappell is a Tombe hewen out of the fame flone which the Church is of, and they fave of the it is like vnto the Tombe of Christ in Arrafalets, whereunto they doe great honour and rive. The holy Sec rence : and in the fame frome, on the right hand are two Images carnetland engraven out of the pulchre referen fame frome, fo well made that they feeme to have life : one is of Saint lobs, and the other of bled, Saint Peter, which they shewed me as a tare thing, and I tooke great delight to behold them, 40 whereunto they doe great reuerence.

This Church hath alfo on the left hand a Chappell, made after their manner, which fremeth to be a Church, because it hath Allies. It hath fixe Pillars about it , cut out of the same Rocke; A Chappell, well and finely made; and the middle Ally is very well arched or vaulted. The Gates and Windowes are very well wrought, to wit, the principall Gate, and one fide-oate, for the other ferueth for the great Church. This Chappell is as long as it is broad, to wit, two and fiftie frans euery way; and on the right fide, it hath hard vnto it another small Chappell very high, but narrow, after the manner of a Bell, with very faire Windowes : and the faid small Chappell is fixe and thirtie spannes high, and twelve broad. All the Altars of the faid Churches have their clothes of filke, and their Pillars made out of the faid Rocke. There is about the Church a very 50 great circuit, hewen out of the selfe same Rocke of the Mountayne by force of Masonne, which is square, and all the walls thereof have holes in them, as bigge as a Cube, and all these holes are These Church stopped with small stones, and they are burials, for a man may see that they are but newly stop-cheshauctheir ped. The entrance of the circuit is thirteene spannes deepe beneath the Mountaine, and all poursitures

made by force of Masonrie. ec. The Church of Saint Sanioner, is hewen out of a Rocke of a great Mountaine, the body of Saint Sanioner the Church is two hundred spans long, and one hundred and twentie broad, and it hath fine Iles, hewen out of and every Ile hath seven pillers, which are square, &c.

The open circuit of the Church which is the Cloytter, is all hewen out of the same Rocke, The Cloytter, and is fixtie spans broad in enery part, and in the front of the principall Porch, it is one hun-60 dred fathome wide, and about the Church, where it should be coursed, where nine great Arches fland on each fide, they all reach from the top vnto the ground, where the Tombes are on each fide, placed like those in the other Church. The entry to passe into the circuit or Cloyster of The Entrie. the faid Church, is hewen under the Rocke, the space of eightie spans, wrought artificially, so

broad, that ten men may goe fide by fide, and is a Lance high, and it ascendeth by little and lit-

ouer the Church. The description on of the other

Churches

which the Au-

twice to fee. Great afcent.

1052

Alownefield tle. This way or entry hath foure holes aloft, which give light vnto the passage. And on the top of this Mountaine, round about the Church, is a champaine field, wherein they fow Barley and there are also many dwelling houses.

I take God to witnesse, in whose hands I am, that all that I have written is most true, with on of the other Churches, is oft preume out adding any thing thereunto: for haung heard report of the margels of these Churches, I would need see thither twice, to see them and describe them, 50 gard was my desire to make

the excellency of them knowne vnto the world. The excellency of thele

This place is feated on the fide of a Mountaine, and to go vp to the top thereof is a very great afcent, which I thinke cannot be performed in a day and a halte, such is the height thereof .. and ver notwithfranding, about the fame, there feemeth to be another Mountaine and this this hill to is lebarated from the other. And to goe downe from this place into the plante, is about fifteene miles frace, and in the way are mightie fields, which feame to continue a good dates in mee and more all which firetch toward the River Nilm, wherein are as great flore of habitations m in the Towne of Carreno, built exceeding flately with square stones, for here they say, the Kines were wont to have their dwellings : and that the worke of these Churches cut into the hils, was made by Ciberes, that is to fay, Whate men : for they know well, that themselves can-The le Vanhe Their Value. by Whiteman, be made, was called Balibela, which fignifieth a Miracle: because at his birth he was conered Balleles with Bees, which made him cleane, without doing him any hurt and he was the Sonne of the Sifter of a King, which King dyed without heire, and therefore his Nephew was made King, as and that he was a Saint; and their denotion is fo great, that all Ethiopia hath concourse hither.

and here they fee very many miracles. This Sigmory of Abugana, where these buildings are, before our departure the Prese I ami bestowed upon the Frier, which afterward came with vs as Embassadour into Postugal : and

terred to the dignity of their therefore I lay, that I was twice to view these Churches and buildings; and the second time that I came thither, was when the Embassadour came to take postession of the same Lordshin. During whose aboade in that place, there came thither two Calacenes, that is, Messages or Commandements of the King, and they told the faid Embaffadour or Captaine, that the Press land fent him word, that he should fend him certaine tributes, which his Predecessour ought to have paied him; which was one hundred and fiftie Oxen for the Plough, thirtie Dogges, thirtie 10 Landins, and thirtie Targets. Heanswered them, that bee would see what goods there remain ped of his Predeceffour, and that he would pay it all very willingly, although he found none

Returning now vato our Veyage, we departed from the Church and faire of Ancona, and

not lodge vs. faying; That they were places which belonged to the Mother of Prete lami, and were fubicet to no body effe but to her. And they would have beaten the Frier which guided

vs. They balted well a Serum of his. Leaning our furfe here, wee came to our lodging at a place called Ingabela, which is great, and replenished with goodly houses, and situate vpon a lit-

which water a great part of the Countrey, which is called Oleby. And while we were here,

I faw them building a most beautifull Church, wee found heere exceeding great abundance of

Hennes, whereof we might have had an infinite number in exchange, of a few Graines of Pepper, fo small account they make of Hennes, and so highly they esteeme of Pepper. In this place

tle hill, in the midit of a field, enuironed round about with Mountaines, at the bottome of which Mountaines there are so many peopled Townes, that I have not seene the like in any place; there are also great store of Fountaines and Brookes, which runne downe on every side.

Me returneth to his voyage. having transiled nine miles, we came with our goods to certaine Villages, where they would

Rude people.

were infinite flore of Limons, Citrons, and Orenges. We abode here Saturday and Sunday, on which day the Tygres affailed vs, and we could not fo well defend our felues, but they denoured 56. On Thursday, the foureteenth of September, we went with our goods to a dry River, three miles off where the Lord of this Kingdome of Angore had his residence, which is called Angoteraz. Before we came thither, we faw much people affembled together, and we supposed that they were affembled to carrie our goods : but they came to doe vs small pleasure, for they enclofed vs betweene them, getting vp into three small hils, and we were in the bottome, and vpon enery top of the faid hils, were about two hundred persons assembled, the greatest part with flings to fling ftones, the reft flung at vs with their hands, fo that the number of the stones was fuch, as it feemed to raine stones, and we stood in great feare of our lines. And all of vs which were in company with the Frier, were aboue fortie persons; to wit, the Captaines which waighted voon him, with certaine of their Men, an Home of our Slaves; and all faue my felfe, and a young man which was with vs, which was ficke of the Mealels, were very threwdly 60 floned and wounded : but God of his Grace vouchfafed to preferue him and me. They tooke some of vs also Prisoners, and wee which fled in the Euening, came to our lodging where our

stuffe was, without our Suppers. On Saturday Angoteraz fent for vs to his house, where at our entrance wee found no hindeCHAP.5. S.8. Questions of Religion. Dyet of Noblemen.

rance at all of guard, but entred freely, and found him with his Wife, and certaine of his familiar friends, and he gaue vs good intertainment as well in countenance as in speach. Foure Jarres of excellent Wine made of Hony were standing by him, and by every larre was let a Cup of Crystall-Glaste, and so we began to drinke, and his Wife and two other Women in the compa- Crystal glastes

On Sunday next wee went to Church, where we found Angoteraz, which came to meete Oneffices of vs with great courtefie, and then he beganne to speake of matters concerning our Faith, and Religion. called vito him two Friers, besides the Interpreter and the Frier that conducted vs ; And his first question was, Where Christ was borne, and which way he went, whenhe went into Egypt, and how many yeares he abode there, and how old he was when our Lady lost him, and found him in the Temple, and where he made of Water, Wine . It pleafed God to helpe me, fo that I answered him according to the truth, better then I knew. The Interpreter told me, that the Frier which guided vs, informed the other two Friers, that I was a man that vnderstood much. wpon which ipeaches they fell downe wpon the ground, and whither I would or no, would needs kifle my feet, & Angoteraz, embraced me, and kifled me on the face, who, as I was informed afterwards, is one of the best, and most learned Priests in all Ethiopia: and at our returne, wee faw Alwarez. him honoured with the Title of Barnagaffo. Afterward, he defired vs to heare Mafie with them, which being ended, he inuited vs to dinner, but the Embaffadour having vnderftood before Angolica a hand what meate they would fet before vs, thought good to fend for our owne dinner, which Prieft.

was certaine fat rofted Hens, and fat Beefe, and fresh Fish. The house where we dined, was great, and made with earth, which is (as wee haue faid) a Betenegus. Before the bed, whereat Angoteraz fate, many Mats were spread vpon the ground, and he came downe from his bed and fate downe vpon them, where many skins of blacke theepe were spread, and two great platters of exceeding white wood, with low brims, like those which we vie to picke Wheate in, which they call Ganeins, and they were very faire, great. and large, with a brim of two fingers broad, the greatest was about eighteene spans in compasse, and the lesser sourceene, and these be the Tables of great Lords. And heere wee sate

round about with the faid Angoreraz: we had water brought vs, and washed our hands, but they brought vs no Towell to dry them with, much leffe to fet our bread vpon : but in the faid plat. The dvetof ters were loanes brought, made of fundry forts of Corne, to wit, of Wheate, of Barley, ot Mil- the Noblemen let, of Fitches, and of Taffo. Before we beganne to eate, Angoterae commanded one to bring or actions. him a great piece of the coursest bread, and with his owne hand laying a piece of raw Beefe vp. on the same, he sent it to the poore which stood without the gate, waiting for an almes. Wee indeed faid Grace after our manner, whereat he feemed to take great del ght.

Then came there in the Imbandicioni, whereof I dare not in a manner speake, but yet they Imbandicioni are ordinary diffies in that Countrey, and these were their fauces or broaths, wherein were cer- loathsome, tain pieces of raw flesh with warme bloud, which in this Country is esteemed for a most delicate delicacies, diffi, and none but great personages eare thereof. Their sauces were brought in certaine little diffies, very finely made of blacke earth, and they strewed upon them certaine crums of bread,

and alwaies powred butter vpon them. We would not tafte at any hand of these their meats, but to fed of that, which our Ambassadour had caused to be brought for vs, as I said before. And like as we could not eate of their meats, fo neither would they take of ours. But as for their wine, in truth it walked about with great furie, and the wife of Angoteras dined hard by vs. vron such a Table as we yied, and we fent ynto her of our meats, and we could not fee whether the raffed thereof, because there was a Curtaine betweene her and vs, but in drinking she brauely seconded vs. After al other diffies, a breaft of Raw Beefe was brought to the board, which we did not once touch, but Angoteraz fed thereof, as if he had eaten Marchpane or Comfits after dinner. After Raw Beefe. we had dined, and given thankes vnto Angoteraz, we returned home vnto our lodging.

57. On Munday morning, we went to take our leaue of Angoteraz, & the Frier led vs through a mightie thicke Wood, fo that we knew not whither we went, but wee came to the place 50 where we were floned: and hither he would needs goe to fee Iustice done. We were eight vpon Mules, and fifteene on foote, and comes to our lodging in the house of one of them, which were the principall that made the affault, and we found them all fled vnto a Mountaine neere adioyning, but there was good prouision for our felues, and for our Mules. This night the Frier returned, and brought with him a couple of Mules, one Oxe, and eight pieces of Cloath, which they had given him, in recompense of the blood which they had shed. And the Iustice wied in this Countrey, is to take the goods of Malefactors; as namely, their Oxen, and their Mules. These places are called, Angua, and Mastano, and belong to the Patriarke Abana Marke.

Heere we began to enter into a pleasant and delectable Countrey, lying among very high Aferile and 60 Mountaines, but infinitely peopled, at the foote thereof, with great Townes, and very Noble populous Churches, which was tilled and fowed with all kind of Corne. Here we faw infinite flore of In- Country, dian Figges, Limons, Orenges, and Citrons, without number, and Pastures with an incredible multitude of Cattle, And because I trauaited another time this way with the foresaid Frier,

Ttttt 2

fonnes all ius-

which then was called the Embaliadour, and stayed a Saturday and a Sunday, in the house of an honourable Canon, and every day went to Church with him, where wee faw very great mm-Eight hundred ber of Canons, We asked him, how many Canons there were in all; He told vs, about eight Canons: the hundred. We inquired farther, what recemes they had? He told vs, very little among formany : We replyed vnto him, Why are you so many, seeing your reuenue is so small ! He answe. red vs. that at the beginning when these Churches were first founded, they were not many. but that in processe of time they were increased : because that all the sonnes of the Canons, as many as doe descend of them, become all Canons: and this custome is observed in the Kines Churches : and that the Prete lanni, as often as he buildeth any new Church , fendeth for Canons hither, and so he diminisheth their number, as hee did when he built the Church, called Io Machen Celacem, when he tooke away two hundred, and that in this fame Signiory there were eight Churches, wherein were about foure thousand Canons: and that if the Prete Lami should not take them away for the furnishing of these new Churches, and those of his Court, they in eight Chur- should be driven to eate one another.

Of the exceeding huge Mountaine, whereupon the Sonnes of PRETE IANNI are keps, where we were almost stoned to death . The greatnesse, quard, manner of fending, punishments; Of the PRETES

The hill, by fome called Amara.

HE foresaid Valley, reacheth vnto a most huge Mountaine, whereon the Sonnes of Prete lanni are continually kept, as it were in prison. And they have accorded in their old Bookes, that in the daies of a King of Ethiopia, called Abraham, it was remealed voto him one night in a dreame, That if he defired to keepe his

Thus ancient Law.einert. 4 feribed their denifes to Deity, as Abraham, heire herwi'e. to fecure him Gelfe, perhaps

Realme in quiet and obedience, he should shut vp his Sonnes, which were many, in a Mountain, and fuffer none of them to come abroad, fauing him which he would have to be his Succeffor, 10 and that this order should alwaies be observed, as a thing which came from God, otherwise E. thiopia being large and great, some part thereof would fall to infurrection, and would bee disobedient vnto the heire, or elfe perchance would kill him. The King standing doubtfull concerning this relation, where fuch a Mountaine might be found; it was againe reuealed vnto him. That he should fend to fearch out all the Countrey, till he found a place where they should finde Goates upon the cragges and cliffes of Rockes, so high, that it should feeme they would fall downe, and that in this place he should shut them vp. Which being done, this Mountaine was found out, which is to huge, that they fay a man must spend many daies in compassing the foots

This Mountaine is exceeding fleepe, round about from the top to the bottome, fo that it fee- in meth to be a wall that rifeth vpright, and to a man that looketh vpward, the sky feemeth to rest upon it. It hath onely three entrances or gates, and no more, whereby a man may ascend up to it, and of these I saw one, vpon this occasion. We came from the Sea vpon a time, to goe to the Court, and one of those Servants of Prete Launi, whom they call Calacem, was our guide, which was not very well acquainted with the Countrey, and when we fought to lodge in a Village the Inhabitants would not receive vs, because they faid, It belonged to a Sister of Prete Janni, and we were inforced to trausile forward: the night was farre spent, and this guide began to ride a great pace, and hafted vs forward, faying; That he would bring vs to a good lodging. I caused Lopez de Gama, which had a good Mule, to ride in fight of the said Calacens, and my felfe followed him, and the Embaffadour and the reft kept me in fight. And having travailed 2- 10 boue three miles out of our way, toward the Mountaine where the Sonnes of Prete I and are kept, as foone as we were perceived by the trotting of our horses, in a moment there affembled to great a multitude of the people of all those Townes, that they had almost killed vs with preaching this stones, and we were inforced to divide our selves. The Embassadour stayed behind, and I went forward, because I could not otherwise choose, to a place where it rained stones on all sides, and the night was exceeding darke, and because they should not perceive me. I alighted, and gave my Mule to a Slaue of mine.

It was my chance, that a Warder of this Mountaine, a very honest man, rode next vnto mee, who enquired of me what I was, I told him I was a Gazia Negu, that is to fay, a stranger of the King. This man causing me strait-way to ride neere him, held one of his armes ouer my 60 head, faying vinto me, Ate fra, Ate fra; that is to fay, Feare not, feare not; and brought meinto an Orch-yard neere vnto his house, where stood many long pieces of Timber set vp against certaine Trees, under which he caused me to goe, because they were in manner of a Cabin, where being as I thought in securitie, I caused a Candle to be lighted, and immediatly they beganne to

raine stones, whereupon I suddenly caused it to bee blowne out. This honest man afterward brought me to his house, and gaue me a very good Supper, to wit, rosted Hennes, and Bread and Wine; and on the morning taking me by the hand, he led me to thew me the way whereby they goe up into the Mountaine and Rockes, which were rent on enery fide, and there flood a verie Penatrie of high gate, which is kept flut, within the which is a very great Garrison of Souldiers. And hee entring the told mee, that if any man should presume to enter, hee should suddenly have his hands and his gate. feet cut off, and his eyes bored out, and that wee were not in fault for comming fo neere vnto that gate, but that they which were our guides deferued to be punished.

59. The manner of the fending of the Sonnes of the Prece into this Mountaine, is this : that Manner of 10 whereas all the Prete Lanni, the Predecessors of this Danid were wont to have five or fixe Wives, fending the and many Sonnes by them, at their death the first-borne did inherit. Others say, that he inhorited which seemed to be most fit, and of most understanding ; and others, hee which had most Followers, and greatest authoritie. Touching this point, I will fay, that which I have heard spoken by many Courtiers of experience and wildome. King Alexander, the Grand-father of this King Alexander present King David, dyed without Sonnes, and although hee had Daughters, yet notwithstanding the great men of the Court went vnto this Mountaine, and feecht from thence Nabu his Brother, which was the Father of this Danid. This Nahu brought with him from the Mountaine a lawfull Sonne of his, which was a very noble and valiant Prince, but he was fomething head-frong and proud. After he was fetled in the Kingdome he had other Wives, and Sonnes, 20 and Daughters, and after his death they would have made his eldeft Sonne King, which came from the Mountaine with his Father, but it was objected, that because he was in proud and ob-

Others were of opinion, that he could not inherite, being borne in captinitie, where he had no right of fuccession, and so they made this David King, which was the first borne, after his David, the prefather was made King, and was eleuen yeares old. The Patriatke About Mark did tell mee. Jent Prete land that he and Queene Helena made him King, because they had at their commandement, all the succeeded in great Lords of the Court; and fo also it seemeth vnto me, that next after the Title of first borne, the Kingdome. the adherences, friendships, and treasures may doe much. The rest of the sonnes of Naha, the Brethren of the faid David, which were young, were sent to bee kept in the faid Moun-30 taine with that eldeft Sonne of his, which was brought with him from thence : and fo all the Sonnes of the Prate have beene vied from the time of that King Abraham vnto this prefent day. They say it is very cold on the top of this Mountaine, and that it is round, and that it The coldnesse cannot be compassed about an lesse then sisteene dayes. And in my judgement, it appeareth so and greatnesse to be. In this part where our way lay we translled almost two dayes, and then we left it, which of this Monge

stinate, he would intreat all the people badly.

Kingdome is very farre from bence.

reacheth vnto the Kingdome of Amera; and Bogamidri, which confineth upon Wiles, which taine.

Vpon this Mountaine are other Mountaines which make certaine Vallies, wherein are very Amera. & Zan many Rivers and Fountaines, and Fields which are manused by the Inhabitants. There is also gamidi. 40 a Valley betweene two Mountaines, which is very firong, fo that by no meanes a man can goe out of the same, because the passage is closed up with exoceding strong gates, and in this Valley which is very great, and bath many Townes and Dwellings in it, they keepethose which are of the Bloud-Royall, and it is but lately fince they have found this meanes to keepe them in the faid Valley, thinking that they be fafer here : but the Kings Grand-children and Nephewes, and such as are almost forgotten are not kept with so great a Guard, notwithstanding, this Mountaine is guarded round about with exceeding great Garrisons, and grand Captaines; and the fourth part of the people which come vnto the Court are of the Captaines and Garrisons of this Mountaine, which have their Lodging separate from all others, neither doe they come to any other, nor others vnto them, because they will not have any bodie else to know the seto crets of the faid Mountaine. And when they come to the Court of the Prete, immediately hee fendeth his mellage to them, and every man with-draweth him felfe, and all other businesse whatfoeuer crafeth, while their Affaires are handled.

60. Touching the state of these Sons of the Prete, I faw a Frier of thirde yeares of age, which Scurriticona was brought vnto the presence of the Prese, and about two hundred men with him, who was Frier, and 200, faul to have brought a Letter to Prete lami, from those of the Mountainegand these two hundred men, for a men were part of the Garrisons of the same. They beat this Frier every beher day, and in like this mountain. fort they beate these men, divided into two parts; and that day when they beate the Frier, they beate the one halfe of them, and alwayes they begun with the Frier, and all the rest were continually present, and still they inquired of the Frier who gaue him that 60 Letter, and for what cause, and whether hee had ever carryed any more Letters, and of what In this Coun-

Monastery be was, and where he was made Frier. The naughtie wattehrans wered, that fixteene trey they vie yeares past he came out of the Mountaine, and that then the Letter was delivered voto him, and not to write that he neuer after returned thither, and that he neuer durit deliver the same till now, that the 'pon their Deuillhad prouoked him thereunto. And this might be true, feeing it is not the manner in this day not Countrey, to put any date vnto their Letters, neither of yeare, nor moneth, nor day. The men moneth. were demanded nought elle, but how they had let the faid Frier get out.

1066 Manner of beating and

The manner of beating them was after this fort, they throw the Malefactor on the ground woon his belly, and bind his hands vnto two flakes, and a cord about both his legs, and two men hold this cord and draw it out ftrait, and two Ministers of Justice stand by, one at the head, and another at the feet, neither do they alwayes firike them, but betweene whiles, for if they should beat them continually, they would die, they lay on to cruelly. I faw them carrie one away, and before they could couer him with a cloth, he gaue up the ghost; whereof the Prete being informed (because this execution was done before his Tents) he commanded that the dead man should be carryed backe vnto the place where he was beaten, and that they which were heaten, should lay their heads upon the feet of the dead corps. This execution lasted a fortnight, wherein this order of beating the Frier, and halfe of the Guard from two day is, to two dayes neuer ceafed to faning onely youn Saturday and Sunday, whereon they punish no Malefactors.

Samurday and Sunday free from executi-Escape of the Pretes Brother. and what fol-

During the time of our abode in this Country, a Brother of the Prete, of fixteene yeares of age. fled out of the Mountaine, and came at length to his Mothers house, which was Queene Helene. and was Wife to the Father of this King. And because no man might receive any that came out of the Mountaine voon paine of life, the Mother would not harbour her Sonne, but tooke him and brought him to Prete lams, who asked him why hee fled away, which answered, became that he was started for nunger; and that he came thither for nothing elfe, but onely to give him witting thereof, because no bodie else would bring him this message. It was given out, that the Prete apparelled him in rich array, and gaue him much Gold and cloth of Silke. and fenthim backe into the Mountaine. It was also given out through all the Court, that this yong man fled, thinking to escape away with the Portugals. This Nobleman which fled and was sent backe a... 10 gaine into the Mountaine, while we abode with the Ambassadour of Prete lami, which came into Portugall, in the Countrey of Ludibella, (where the Churches are which are hewen into the Rockes) passed that way with a Calazan, and with a great traine of people . which conducted him yoon a Male, and he rode all coursed ouer with blacke clothes, so that no part of him might be feene, neither could any part of the Mule bee feene, faue her eyes and eares. It was reported, that he fled away the fecond time in a Friers Weed with another Frier, and that this Frier his companion discovered him the tame day, that they should have departed out of the Country of Prete lami, and so they led him away Priloner with the Frier, neither would they suffer them to speake to any bodie, and two men alwayes went hard by his Mule. Euery bodie reported, that hee should bee put to death, or have his eyes put out. I know not what became of him.

We heard reported of another, which would have field out of the Mountaine, and hid him-Prete Level had felfe under many boughes and leaves of crees, and certaine Husbandmen which paffed that way. feeing the faid boughes stirre, went to behold what elematter was, and laid hold on him, and out, for dying the Guard, affoone as they had him in their clutches put out his eyes, and yet he lineth till this prefent, and is great Vincle to this Prete lanui. It is reported , that there are great numbers of the Bloud-Royall in this Mountaine, whom they call Ifraelites, or the Sonnes of Danid, for they are all of the fame Kindred and Bloud that Preve land is of. In the fame Mountaine are many Churches and Monafteries builded having many Priests and Friers in them, and many In-

habitants which never come downe out of that place.

No Kindred to This commeth neere to the Ottoman poli-Lea hill all but one as they doc really. No honour to nor to their

his ever nur

61. The Prete Lami hath no Kinsfolkes at all, for those which came of the Mothers side, are not taken nor named for his Kinsfolkes, and those of the Fathers fide are thut yo in the faid Mountaine, and held as dead men. And although they marrie, and have great flore of children there. yet none of the male-children may come forth, except (as I have faid before) the Prese die witheier here civil- out heire : then they fetch out of that place the next of Kindred , and fitteff to governe. Some of the Females come out to be married, but are not esteemed as the Kinswomen, Daughters, or Sifters of the Prete, but are honoured during the life of their Father or Brother, and as soone as he dyeth, they become like to any other Ladie. All of we faw a Ladie in the Court, which was the Females of the Daughter of a Prete, which albeit, when thee went abroad, had a Canopie carried ouer her, yet notwithstanding she had a very simple Traine. We knew also a Sonne of hers, which was go in as meane a case as any poore foot-man, so that in a very shore space the same of his Paren-

tage was extinguished.

This King Danid which now liveth, at our departure had two fonnes, and three daughters, to whom he allotted out great revenues, which he intended to beliew your them, and the place was shewed me, where one of them possessed these revenues : but the report was generall, that as foone as the father should decease, and that one of them was made King, the other should be fent vnto the Mountaine, whither hee should carrie nothing but his person with him, And it was told me, that the third part of the charges which the Prete is at, is spent in the keeping of these Ifraelites, to whom he maketh better allowance, then and of his predecessors have done. And betides the great revenues which belong vnto them, he fendeth them much Gold, cloth of 60 Silke, and fine clothes, and much Salt, which runneth for current money in these Kingdomes. And at our comming thither, having presented him with our Pepper, wee understood of a certaintie, that he fent the one halfe thereof vnto them , willing them to relovce and be merrie, because the King of Portugall, his father, had fent to visite him, and had fent him that Pepper-

Wee ynderflood also of a suretie, and as eye-witnesses in many places, that Prete launi hath great lands and poffessions, manured by his owne flaves and Oxen; and that these Slaves are apparelled by the King, and are exempted from other people, and marrie together, and are alwaies Generation of parelled by the King, and are exempled from which are about the Mountaine are carried vp flaues. The whole renemes of these Possessions which are about the Mountaine are carried vp flaues. into it, the regenues of other places goe vnto the Monasteries , Churches , and the poore , and specially to certaine poore and aged Gentlemen , which in times past haue beene in gouernment, and at this presentare out of authoritie. Twife also hee sent of this Wheat vnto our companie, to wit, once fue hundred burthens in Caxano, and five hundred more in Aquate. neither keepeth her any part of these possessions vnto himselfe, but bestoweth all in manner 10 abouefaid.

Of the end of the Kingdome of Augote, and of the beginning of the Kingdome of Amara, and of divers Lakes; the Church Machan Celacen; Endowments of Churches : Of ABRAHAM. Strange trenches and gates in the entrance to Xoa: and what hapned before the PRETE called for them.

Eturning to bur Voyage, I say, that wee went along the foot of this Moun-taine by a Rivers side, and the Country is very goodly and faire, sowed with the mouth Mill and other Corne of the Country, but there is very little Wheat.

There are many Villages on both fides of this River, and on the fide of the Mountaine, and at the end of the Valley we left this River, and began to find a wooddie Coun- The Jestites try full of flones. Here are no Mountaines, but certaine small Valles fowed with Wheat and Bar call this Lake ley, and Pulse of the Country and here endeth the Kingdome of Angote, and the Kingdome of A. Aicha. mara beginneth. In the beginning whereof towards the East, 15 a great Lake, whereby we lod-30 ged, which is eight miles long, and three miles broad. It hath a little Iland in the middeft, and a Monatterie of Saint Stephen with many Friers, wherein are many Limons, Oranges, and Citrons, and to paffe ouer to the Monasterie, they vie a raft made of Timber and AMonasterie Bull-rushes, with foure great Gourds , and they make it in this former : They take foure in a Lake. Poles of wood, and lay Bull-rushes youn them, flanding youn these Bull-rushes, being ye-

ned, and at every corner there is a great Gourd, and in this manner they paffe over to the Ile. This Lake runneth not but in Winter time, when the water overfloweth, and it iffueth out at Sea-horfes. two places. There are in this Lake certaine great beaffs which they call Gomerae, which are Sea-horfes, and also a fish like vnto a Congre, which is very great and long, and hath the most 40 mif-shapen head that may be imagined, made after the manner of a Toad, and the skinne vpon rafted fig. the head thereof feemeth to be like the skinne of a Snake, and all the rest of the bodie is smooth like a Congre, and it is the fattest and most delicate fish that is in the world. There are great store of Villages about this Lake, which reach downe to the brinke of the water, and there are fifteene Xumetes or Captainships, and most pleasant fields of Wheat and Barley. We have seene Many Lakes. many Lakes in these Countreys, but this is the greatest of all that I have fecue. The Countrey

ry well bound together, and upon these they lay other foure Poles well bound and faste-

is very faire and fruitfull.

Wee trauelled from hence aboue fixteene miles, through a Countrey very well fowed with Millet , and replenished with Fountaines. The three and twentieth of September, wee went from thence to a Towne, called Azzel, which is feated upon a small Hill, betweene two Rivers, Azzel, 50 and all the field was fowed with Wheat, Millet, and all kind of pulse, and it is a place wherein a great Faire is kept. Beyond one of these Rivers there is a Towne of Moores, rich and of great trafficke, as of Slaues, cloth of Silke, and of all other forts of merchandife, as it is in the Towne of Manadeli voon the Confines of Tieremahon. These Moores pay great tribute to the Prete. and here the Christians and the Moores are very familiar together, for they bring them water. they wash their cloth, and daily in this place the Christian women keepe companie with the Moores, of which their doing we thought not well. Wee stayed all Saturday and Sunday at the Moores, foot of this Towne, where all night our men fought with their Lances against the Tygres, Tygres, which would have carried away our Mules, and slept not a winke. The next day, we travelled through a plaine Countrey, well peopled, and well manured for the space of fixe miles. Then 60 wee alcended up an high Mountaine, without all kind of Rockes and Woods, but was all plowed and fowen, and refted our felues about noon-tide. While I flayed here, ten or twelue men of account, and our Interpreter were with me, and wee began to discourse of the heighth of this Mountaine whereon we flood, and the waste Countrey which we viewed with our eyes. They shewed me the Mountaine where the Sonnes of the Prete are kept, which fremed not pait

Charges of this Royall Prifon.

rwelne miles from vs. and we might fee the Rocke which was all ragged on every fide which ffretcheth fo farre toward the River Niles, that wee could not discerne the end thereof, and je was fo high, that the Mountaine where we were, seemed to bee under the foot thereof. Home they informed me particularly of the great Gernsons, which were maintained for the kieping of the Kings Sonnes, and of the abundance of victuals and apparell which they had. They told no moreouer, that this high Mountaine whereon we flood, divided the Country where the Miller growes, from that where the Wheate groweth, and that from hence forward we should find no more Millet, but Wheate and Barley.

62. We travelled over the top of this Mountaine, having a plaine way above nine miles, and on enery fide were fields fowed with Wheat and Barley. Here wee found another Lake but not.

Another Lake, fo great, it might be fome three miles long, and two miles abroad. Wee lodged in a field all full Great hunfull of goodly pasture, where we found such a multitude of Flies, which were very great, that we thought they would have killed vs. This field was not fowed, because it was halfe ouer-flowne Want of skill with water, for they know no meanes to conneigh away the water, and cause it to passe downe and industrie.

Cold nights.

Nakedneffe.

We began afterward to enter into a Countrey, wherein the day time it was very hot, and in the night exceeding cold, and we faw the Inhabitants weare about them before their prinities a piece of an Oxe-hide. The women likewife weare a piece of cloth twice as bigge as the mens was, and courred as much as they could thetewith, yet the greater part was feene neuertheleffe. the rest of their bodie was all naked. Their haire was divided in two parts, the one hanging downe to their shoulders, and the other to their eares, and they fay, that these Lands belong ynto the Trumpetters of Prete lanni. A little out of the way is a great Wood of Trees wilk mowne to vs , but exceeding high , neere vnto which there is a Church of many Canons . built by a Rich Church. King that lyes there buried. Haung passed this day ouer very huge Mountaines, we came to our lodging being gotten out of them, at the enterance of a passing goodly field.

The fixe and twentieth of September, in the morning we travelled through the faid Cham? paigne field, descending still for the space of six miles, and came to a faire and mightie Church called Machan Celacen, which fignifieth, The Trimitie, which we faw afterward with Prete Immi, when he removed his Fathers bones. This Church hath two great circuits, one compafied a bout with an high wall of plankes, and the other paled round about, and the paled circuit, contained about two miles in compasse. We went thither very joyfull, thinking to have seene the faid Church, but when we came neere it within a Croffe-bow-floot, two men came vnto vs to cause vs to light : for this is the custome when any man commeth neere to a Church, And when we were come to the gate of this circuit, they would neither fuffer vs to enter, nor yet the Frier Inhospitall ho- that was our guide, and with their fifts they thrust him in the brest, telling him, that he had no authoritie to bring vs in.

This Champaigne field, and the fituation of the Church are very beautifull : for all the Countrey is manured for the space of ten or twelve miles, neither is there any one spanne of ground, Goodly coun- which is not manured and full of all kind of Corne, except Millet: and in all monethes of the yeare here Corne is reaped and fowed, so that alwayes here is some Corne ripe, and some 40 greene, On both fides of this Church, runneth an exceeding faire River, without any Trees growing on the bankes, and they fetch water out of the same to water the fields, and out of certaine hils adioyning, descend also many Fountaines of water, which water all the Countrey. There are likewife many Houses and Towns, the one senarated from the other with their Churches; for wherefoeuer the King hath a Church, there also must be Churches for the Hubandmen 64. After we were passed through these Champions, we travelled in greater fields about thir-

Churches Royall and volgar. Saint Georges

tie fix miles Eastward, where they shewed vs a Church of S. George, wherein the Grandfather of this Prete Ianni lyeth buried. Heere they informed vs , that the ancient Kings which came out of the Kingdomes of Barnagaffe and Tigremahon, when they had their first beginning, en-Beginnings of larged their Kingdomes through these Countries of the Moores and Gentiles, and passing through 50 this Kingome in Barnagaffe. the Countrey of Tigras, and so through Angote they came into the Kingdome of Amara, but All belones to before they came thit her is the Kingdome of Xod, wherin are certaine exceeding great trenches, and here they dwelt a long time, & builded many Churches and houses, endowing the same with great Revenues, neither is there any span of ground which belongeth not to the Churches. And Nahu the Father of this Prete began the Church of Machan Celacen, and his Sonne afterward

Taffila.

Ail Churches no Monaste-Priefts ferue the King, and

thereof was Amara Taffila, which fignifieth King of Amara, as Xoa Tafila, King of Xoa. And when the bones of this Nabs was removed, into the faid Church of Machan Celacen, at which Translation we Portugals were present. This present Prese finished, and confirmed the Donations made of all this Signiory vnto this Church. There is neuer a Monastery in all this 60 Kingdome, but all are Churches. The Canons and Priests of which, and those of the other Churches of the rest of the Kingdomes before spoken of, serge the Prese in all sergices, saying in war. And in these Countries Justice is executed universally, upon the Canons, Priests, and Friers. And the Frier which guided vs for the conneiance of our furte, if he were not obeyed, caused

furnished and endowed it. This Realme hath no more the name of a Signiorie, for the title

both Friers and Priests to be beaten. As we trauelled through these mightie Champaine fields. we thought wee palled through a Sea, being not able to fee any Mountaine at all. The last of Huge Cham-September, we came to a small Village, where was a Church of our Ladie. Heere toward the paines, East beginne certaine ragged and strong Mountaines, with certaine Vallies fo wonderfull deepe. that a man would thinke they descend downe to Hell, neither would any man easily believe how deepe they be. And even as the Mountaines, where the Sonnes of the Prete are kept, are Horrible Val. Graggy from the foote vinto the top, fo these are craggy, for a very great depth, in some places lies, twelue or twelue miles downe; in others fifteene, and in others leffe, about nine miles: and it is faid, that fifteenemiles these Vallies stretch vnto Nilss, which is very fatre from this place toward the West. Wee deepe. to knew perfectly, that they firetch vnto the Countries of the Moores, where they bee not fo

rough and wilde as they be here. In the bottome of these Vallies, are great Townes and places Great Hairy manured, and infinite number of great Apes are there, which are hairy on the fore-part of their Apes

65. The first of October, 1520. we travelled still through a plaine Countrey, till we came to these Vallies, in which our trauell wee found an infinite number of small Lakes and Fountaines, for the space of twelve miles, and came to our lodging in a certaine place, where wee were to palle over these low bottomes. The third of October, having travelled two miles, we came to certaine gates voon a craggy Rocke, leaving one of them on the right fide; and the other on the left, and it was so narrow, hard by these gates, that with much adoe a Cart could passe vpon to the pallages which the Mountaine made, and they are stopped vp, where these Gates are so like in Findless freight in enery Valley; and passing through this gate, you descend downe a Speares length description of through a parrow way, made as freede as a Dart in the midft, fo that you can paffe it neither on the Moratofoote, nor on horse-back, and this way is so steepe and down-right, that a man cannot go downe vnlesse it be on all foure : and it may easily bee perceived, that it was made by arte of man, for the fafe keeping of that passage, and after we were passed through this narrow way, wee tranelled for a certaine space, by a way made almost as steepe as a Dart, for the space of six spans, and on both sides are exceeding great downe-fals, and if I had not seene our Mules and people paffe before me. I would have tworne that Goates could not have paffed that way; and fo wee pur our Mules before vs. as thinking them loft, and wee came after them. This rough way la-30 fteth the space of a Crosse-bow shot, and this place is called Aquifagi, which signifieth, The Aquifagi, or death of Affer. They pay Toll there. Many times afterward we paffed by thefe gates, and neuer Death of Affer.

came that way, but we found Mules and Oxen dead. Befides this paffage, there are fixe miles more of very bad way, all of Rocke, defending downe-ward. In the midft whereof is a Caue digged into the Rocke, out of the top whereof, water continually droppeth, which continuall dropping, maketh proportions in the stone of divers formes.

At the end of these size miles, we found a great River, which is called Anecheta, wherein, The River of as they fav. is store of great and goodly Fish. Afterward we transled still up the hill for three analysis as they say, is trope or great and goods, I am All miles space, which when we had passed, we found another Ri-40 uer, where are certaine other gates, which are not vied. And they which paffe these bottomes and deep Vallies, come hither to their lodging, because they cannot passe in one day from one end to the other. Heere the Frier which guided vs, vied fuch crueltie towards a Xuum or Captaine, A begger on 25 2 man would not have vied to a Moore. This Captaine fent not his men to carrie our fuffe fo horfe-backs. to foone as he should, therefore he destroyeth certaine fields of Beanes, and vtterly speyled them, of which Beanes they line in these Vallies, because here groweth nothing but Millet and Beanes. And because we spake against his doing, he said; That this was the Law of the Countrey, and daily he caused many of them which carried our stuffe to be beaten, and sometimes he tooke away their Mules, Oxen, and pieces of Cloath, faying, That wholoeuer ferned badly, was so to be vied.

The fourth of October, we trauelled still by these bad waies, and came to a Riner, by which The Riner of we lodged, which is very great and faire, and is called Gemma, and aboundeth with Fift, as the Gemma Countrey people fay : and these Rivers joyne together, and fall into Nilw. Wee descended downe this Mountaine for fixe miles space, at the end whereof we found other gates, where we also payed for our passage. From these gates we came to our lodging in a Champaine field, where we tound no Vallies nor any thing elfe, but all was plaine & euen ground. The distance between both the gates aforefaid, is about fifteene miles, and here is the diufion of the Kingdomes of Amara and Xoa. And these gates are called Baba Bassa, which signifies h, The new Land. In these Baba Bassa Vallies and rough grounds, are infinite numbers of all forts of Fowles.

66 The fifth of October, wee trauelled through Champaines, not farre diffant from the faid 60 Rockes and deepe Vallies, and we lodged in the mid-way towards a Monasterie, called Bilibranos, whereof I will speake that which I saw Prete lanni doe three times. The first was, when he came to performe a yearely folemnitie for a Prelate of that Monasterie, which was deceased, Tobes, the sewhole name was Gianes, and was raken for a Saint. His Title was Ichee, and he is the chiefelt cond, Prelate

Prelate of all Esbiogra, fauing the Patriarke Abuna Marke. The fecond time, hee came to the of all Esbiogra, election of another lobee, whole name was lacob, a man of wonderfull holy life, which fome-

1060

times had beene a Moore. This Ichee was our great friend, and he told vs, that he was admonithed in a night by a Vision, that he was not in the right way, and that hee should repaire vnto the Patriarke Abuna Marke, who received him graciously, and made him a Christian, and influcted him in all points of our Faith, as if he had beene his Sonne. Ichee, in the tongue of 71. grai, fignifieth an Abbot, which is vied in the Kingdome of Barnagasso, and Tigremahon. In this Champaine through which we trausiled, were certaine small houses, made almost under-ground and so were the yards likewise round about them, where they keep their Cattel, & they said they builded their houses so low, because of the huge Winds, which are rife in those parts. Here wee faw the people badly apparelled, but such store of Oxen, Mules, and Mares, as it is

Taharun.

67. The Wednelday following, we found a better Countrey, fowed with Wheate and Bare ley, and in some of these fields wee saw some Corne ripe, some newly cut downe, and other which seemed newly to be sowne. This Countrey is called Tabagua, and is very well peopled, with many great Townes, and hath infinite heards of all kinds of Cattell, to wit, of Oxen. Horses, Mules, and Sheepe. In these Countries many are ficke of Agues, vnto whom, as wee Their Physick, perceived, they ministred no remedy, expecting onely the helpe of Nature, and if any man hath paine in his head, they let him bloud in the head; and if he be ficke in his breaft, fides, or

shoulders, they seare him with a red-hot Iron, as we vie to seare our Cattell. On Wednesday, to our great comfort, we began to behold a farre off, the Campe and Paulic ons of Prete lanni, which feemed to be infinite, and to cover all the fields, and heere we lodged. On Thursday, we made no great journey. From Friday at noone, we rested all Saturday and Sun. 20 day in a little Towne, where there was a new Church , which was not yet painted , (for they paint all their Churches) neither was it very curiously wrought, which was called Auriata, that is to fay, The Church of the Apostles, and they faid it belonged to the King, vnto whose Tents was some three miles distance : and from this place vnto the Church where Abuna Marke was lodged, is a mile and a halfe, which Abuna Marke is his great Patriarke.

Prete lamies Campe, Adrugez.

68. There came vnto vs a great Lord, who by his office was called Advagaz, that is to fay, Great Mafter of the Houshold, who told vs, that the Prete lami vnderstanding of our comming, bad fent him to guard vs, and provide vs of all things that wee stood in need of , and streight-way willed vs to take Horse and goe with him , and supposing hee would have led vs to the Court, we prepared our felues. He caused vs to goe backe againe, not the same way which we came, but made vs compasse certaine small hils, and turned vs backe againe about three miles, willing vs not to take it in ill part, because Prete Lami came that way whether we went, as indeed hee did : we faw also fixe or feuen men , mounted vpon very goodly Horses, ride skirmishing and playing before vs, having their faces wholly couered, fo that one could not bee difcerned from the other, and many followed after them voon Mules, and wee judged that this Canalcade was made of purpose for our sakes, because the Prete was desirous to see vs. and they led vs on the backe-fide of certaine small hils, where this Gentleman was lodged in his Tent, and caused vs also to be placed hard by him, in another goodly Tent, and saw vs plentifully prouided of all things, which we stood in need of. We were not farre distant from the place, where 40 Prete lami himfelfe was lodged, the Frier also came and lodged neere vs. On Wednelday, in the morning, they brought vs another goodly great Tent, which was white and round, faving, That Prete I anni lent vs the fame, and that no man might have the like Tent, fauing the Prete and the Churches, and that himfelfe lodged in the same when he transiled; and so we stayed vntill Friday, without understanding what we should doe, but were alwaies well prouided of vi-Quals. The Gentleman which guarded vs, and the Frier likewite admonished vs to have a good East, The cause eye vnto our stuffe, because in that Countrey there were many Theeues; and the Frances, that is, The White men, which were in the Court, gaue vs the like warning, and told vs that there were Captaines, and others like Toll-masters over the said Theeves, which payed a Tribute to Prete Ianni, of fuch goods as were stolne.

White round White men. called Franks, as all Europe ans are in the the expeditions of thefe Nations (the most of which were "rankes) to the holy

> How the Embassadour and we were called for by the Commandement of PRETE IANNI, and of the order which we found, and of the State and Majestie of PRETE IANNI. His conference, allowance, remoue; The Embassadours Audience.

The Portugals

N Friday, the twentieth of O Crober, about three of the clocke, the Frier came 60 vnto vs, and told vs in great hatte, that the Prete lanni had called for vs. The Embaffadour commanded all the goods to be laden, which the Captaine Generall had fent, and charged vs to put our felies in order, which we did in very good fort by the help of God, and many people as well on toote as on horse-backe, came to

CHAP.S.S. 11. Protes moueable Citie of white Tents. Feasival Red Tents. 1071

waite your vs. with whom we came in good order vnto a Gate, from whence we beheld on all fides, an infinite number of Paulions and Tents, like vnto a Citie, and those which belonged The Pretes to Prete lami, were fet up in a wide field, all White, (as I have fard, it is their generall vie) and mourable dite before the same was a very faire Red Tent', which shey say, is neuer set up, but on daies of ot white Tenta great Feafts, or of some great audience. Before the faid Red Tent, were two rankes of Ar- The Red Feaches erected, couered with White and Red Cloath of Silke, to wit; one arch couered with flual Tent. Red, and another with Silke, and they were not covered, but had the Cloath of Silke round about them, as it were a piece of Wood, which supporteth a Crosse, having a Stole wrapped about it ; and fo these Arches stood on one front , and were about twentie : their bignesse and to breadth was like vnto the arch of a little Cloyffer, and one ranke was dittant from another.

about a stones cast.

Here were an infinite number of people placed together, which to my indgement feemed Fortiethous to be about fortie thousand persons, and all of them stood in good order on either tides with sandpersons. to be about fortie thousand persons, and an or the most of the arches, among our firring, and the people which were best apparelled, were next vnto the arches, among Canons and whom were certaine Canons and Church-men very honourable, with great hoods on their heads, not like vnto Miters, but with certaine tharpe points on the top, painted with Colours, and were of Cloath of Silke, and Crimzon, and other people in very rich array, before whom stood foure Horses, to wit, two on the one side, and two on the other, which were fadled, and richly couered with Embroydered Cloath downe to the ground: the Ar-20 mour which they ware voder the fame, was not to bee feene: Their Horfes had high Thegreat

Crownes vpon their heads, which mounted about their eares, and went downe to the magnificence Bits of their Bridle, with great Plumes of Feathers of fundry Colours, and winder the of Prete Lami's faid Horses stood many other good Horses, sadled and couered with Silke and Veluet; and the head of each one was equall, and as it were in order with the people : next vnto these Horses, behind them (because the throng of people was so great) stood many honourable persons, which were apparelled onely from the girdle downe-ward, with very fine and White Cotton cloath. The rest of the people which were basely apparelled, stood betweene them and the reft. It is a Custome, that before the King and great men of Commaundement, there alwaies

20 goe men which carrie Whips, that is, A little staffe with a large Thong of Leather, and when they lash in the Ayre, they make a great noyse, to make the people give backe. About one hundred of these Fellowes came to meete vs , all apporelled in certaine small lackets of Silke, which made fich a noyle with lashing; that one man could not heare another. The men on Horse-backe, and voon Mules which were with vs, lighted a farre off, and wee were led on Horse-backe yet a great way farther, and lighted within a Crosse-bow shot of the great Tent, and here they which conducted vs, beganne to doe their accustomed reverence, Reverence, and we likewife, because wee were so instructed, which is, to stoope downe with the right how done. hand vnto the ground.

Likewise, in this place, within a Crosse-bow shoote, there met wat least fixtie men, which 40 were, as it were, Porters with Maces, and they came halte running, for so they are wont to name with all Messages which the Press lendeth. They were apparelled in white lackers. of good Cloath of Silke, and vpon their shoulders they had certaine skinnes, of Roane or Tawny colour, very hairie, which they faid, were Lyons skinnes, and reached downe to the ground. And vpon those skinnes they had certaine Chaines of Gold, rudely wrought, with Iewels fet in them, and likewise other Iewels about their neckes. They weare certaine Silke Girlles of divers Colours, in breadth and making, like to the Girts of Horses, fauing that they were long with Flakes and Taffels downe to the ground, and they went halfe on the one fide, and halfe on the other, and waited vpon vs to the first ranke of the arches, where

But before we came to the faid Arches, there stood foure great Lyons, tyed with their Foure Lyons. 50 Chaines in the way which wee were to passe, and having passed them in the midst of the FoureLords, fields : vnder the shadow of the faid Arches, flood foure men of Honour, among which, was one of the two greatest Lords which are in the Court of Prete lami, which is called Betu- The Estudue. dete, that is to fay, The Grand Captaine, and there are two of them, whereof one waiteth on his right hand, and the other on his left. He which waited on his right hand, was (as they faid) in warre against the Moores; and hee that waited on his left hand, was the time which stood there; the other three were great Personages. When wee came vnto them, we flood a great while without speaking any word, neither we to them, nor they to vs. In the meane while there came an old Prieft, which was (as they fay) the Kinfman and 60 Confessor of Prete Ianni, wearing a white Bonet, like vnto a Bernasso, and a great hood of

This man by his Office, is called Cabeata, and is the second person in these Kingdomes; and he came out of the Presents Tent, from whence we were distant two stones cast. Three

Vunnu

Three, 216-

markable

Silence.

number

of the foure that flayed with vs, went halfe way to meete him, and the Betudete flayed with vs. and when they drew nigh vnto vs , the Betudete mound three or foure steppes toward them and fo all five of them came vnto vs. The Cabeata being arrived, demaunded of the Ambassadour, what hee would have, and

whence he came : The Ambassadour answered, That he came from India, and brought an Ambaffage vnto Prete Ianni, from the Grand Captaine and Gouernour of the Indies, vnder the King of Portugall. Herewithall, hee returned to the Prete from whom he came, and returned three times with the very felfe-same Questions and Answeres. To all their demands. the Ambassadour answered after one fort. The fourth time, the Cabeata said, Say what you will, and I will declare the fame to the King. To whom the Ambasadour answered, That He The Ambassa- and his whole Companie kissed his Highnesse hands, and greatly thanked God, which had fulfil 10 led their holy defires, in isyning (bristians together with Christians, and that they were the first dors feech which had performed the same. With this answere, the Cabeata departed hence, and ftraightway returned with another Meffage, and alwaies the forefaid foure Honourable persons went to meete him, in such fort, as we have before already declared, and comming vintovs. he faid, That we were right welcome to Prese Ianni, and that we should go to our lodging and

reft our felues.

At this first Audience, he vieth noother words, neither in his Maieflie to bee feene, for Policy of State the better maintaining of his reputation. Then the Ambassadour delivered out by severall parcels, all the Preients which the Grand Captaine fent vnto his Highnesse, and ouer and belides the same, foure bagges of Pepper, which we brought to defray our charges. All 29 the particulars were forth-with conceyed to the Tent of the Prete, and afterward brought backe againe to the Arches where wee flood, and they hanged up the Cloathes of Arras which we gaue them, vpon the Arches : and likewise, every parcell of the rest of the goods and things; and while they hung vp in the fight of all men, all men were commaunded to keepe filence, and one which is called the Lord Chiefe Iustice of the Court, spake with a lowd voyce, and declared piece by piece, what the things were which the Grand Captaine had fent to Prete lanni, and willed all men, To give thankes unto the Lord God. for baning caused Christians to meete together, and that if any Man were there that were griened thereat, bee might weepe and bowle; and who some respect thereat, might sing. Then all the people that were there affembled, gaue a mightie shoute in manner of praising God, which continued for a great space. This beeing ended, they licensed vs to depart, and brought vs to our lodging, a great Croffe-bow shoote distant from the Tents of the Prete. where our Paullion, which hee had fent vs, was set vp, and where the rest of our stuffe

70. In the remouning of these our goods, we beganne to see by experience, the adule which was given vs concerning the Theeues, for fuddenly on the way, they tooke by force from one of our Servants, foure Basons of Latton, and soure Dishes of Porcellan, and certains other small things belonging to our Kitchin, and because the Servant would have defended himselfe, they gave him a great wound on the Legge. The Ambassadour 40 could doe no more, but cause him to be healed, and of these goods could never after recourt any whit. As soone as wee were lodged, Prete lanni sent vs three hundred great White Loanes of Wheate, and many larres of Wine of Hony, and tenne Oxen, and the Melfengers which brought chefe things, faid; That Prete lami had commaunded, that wee Provision fent should have fiftie Oxen given vs, and as many larres of Wine. The Saturday following, which was the one and twentieth of October, he fent vs great flore of Bread and Wine, and many Haggalles of Flesh, of divers forts, which were very well made and dresied, and the like was done upon the Sunday, whereon among other many and fundry Haggaffes, 2 young Calfe was brought vnto vs, all whole laid in Paste, so well dressed and seasoned, with Spices and Fruits put in the belly thereof, that we could neuer fatisfie our felues with fee- 50

A calfe whole

On Munday following, there was a rumour spread through all the Court, that wee had kept backe many bagges of Pepper, which the Grand Captaine had fent vnto the Prete, ben merchan-dize in Ethiopia which was vntrue; and because they make exceeding great account of Pepper, and that it is the greatest merchandize that runneth through Ethiopia, therefore the Frier came vnto vs, with a cunning, faying vnto vs, That if the Ambassadour would give all his Pepper to Prete lanni, that he would give order, that our charges should be defrayed during our abode there, and vntill our returne vnto Maczna: and thus they cealed to give vs Victuals, neither were the fiftie Oxen fent vnto vs., nor the Iarres of Wine. Likewife, they forbade all the Frankes in the Court, that they thould not speake with vs.

They willed vs allo, not to depart out of our Tent, because it was the Custome, that all they which come vato this Court, should speake with no man, till they had talked with the King, and that for breaking this order, they had cast in prison a Portugall of Acuma,

which came to fpeake with vs on the way with another Franke; laying to their charge, that they came to reveale vnto vs the fecrets of the Court. This Portugal fled on a night with his manacles on his hands from an Eurach, which kept him, and came to our Tent to face himselfe. The next morning with speed they came to seeke him, but the Ambassacior would not deliner him, but fent his Factor and the Interpreter to fpeake with the Betudete on his behalfe , and to aske him, why hee cast the Portugalls into fetters, and handled them so badly by Eurucha which were Slaues. The Betndete answered nothing to the purpose, saying : Who sent for you hither ? and added further, That Matthew went not into Portugall by Prete lanni his commandement, nor by the commandement of the Queene Helena, And that if this Slave 10 had put the Portugalls into fetters, the Portugalls likewife might put this Slave againe into fet-

ters, for fuch is the inflice in those countries. 71. On Tuelday, the foure and twentieth of October, wayting, while the Prete would Remonted fend for vs to speake with him, hee departed with all his Court toward the same place from the Court, whence hee came, which was about fixe miles off. In the meane leafon the Frier came vnto vs, and wished vs if wee would goe to the place where the King lay, that wee should buy our selues Mules to carry our stuffe, and told the Ambassador, that if hee would buy or sell hee might to doe. The Ambaffador answered him . That wee were not come thither to play the Merchants, but onely to ferue God and both the Kings, and to vnite one Christian people with another, and this they did onely to fift out what our intention and pur-20 pose was. Vntill this present they had forbidden all Christians in the Court to speake with vs. Other their or to come vnto our Tents, and if they came thither they came very fecre: ly , because the Frier tricks are here

was alwayes with vs as our Guardian.

72. When Lopez Sucrez, grand Captaine and Gouernour of India, came with his Fleet to the Hauen of Ziden; in which Fleet I my felfe was, wee found in the fame place fixtie The Hauen of Christian men. which were Slaues vnto the Turker, and they were of diners Nations, who Ziden, neere were part of these which at this present we found in this Court, who say, that they wayted Mecca. for the grace of God, to wit, while the Portugally should come into this Hauer of John, that they might escape away with vs; and because the people of our Fleet could not goe on Land. therefore they traved behinde; and few dayes after, histeene of thefe white men, with as many 30 more Abilimes of the Countrey of Prote James, which likewife were Slaves, found two Brigandines, and fled away to get vinto our Fleet; and being not able to come vinto the lle of The Ile of Can Camaran, they came to the lle of Marcha, which is necre voto Ereoco, a Towne of Prete ma Janni. And comming on land they funke the Brigandines, and came vnto the Court of the Thelle of Prete, whom we faw more honorably and courteoutly vied their our felues, till this prefent, Margan And they have given them Lands and Slaves which ferge them and maintayne them. There are the Frankes, the greatest part whereof were Genoueles, two Canalamans, one of Sio, one a Biscaien, and one an high German, which afterward came all into Portugall, and they call vs Portugalls also Frankes. All other white people, to wit, those of Syria, of Grecia, and of Caire, they call Gibetes. These Frankes prevailed with vs to give foure bags of Pepper, and Eastern Chris foure Chefts couered with leather, for a present to the Prese, which wee carried the thirtieth of flians called October, which was but collusion of the Courtiers for their owne aduantage. The Franker Western Fresh which were in the Court came after to our Tent and rold vs , that the great men of the Court both in Africa

were our enemies, and that this Frier had put into their heads, to countell Prese Lann to fuf- and Afa, ever fer vs not to returne, nor to depart out of his Kingdome. Because wee reported enill of the facethe Expefer vs not to returne, nor to depart out or mis adaptation. Declared out of the fame, disions into Countrey, and that wee would speake much work when wee wore departed out of the fame, the holy Land, the holy Land, and that was alwayes the custome of these Kingdomes, not to suffer Strangers to depart wherein the which came into the same. Wee suspected thus much by that which wee had heard, and they Franks were confirmed the fame. For wee knew very well, that lobs Gomez, and lobs Prete, Portugalls, first and most, 10 (which were fent hither by Triffan de Acumna, Lord Gouernour of India, together with a beginning at Moore, which yet liueth and dwelleth in Manadeli) were not suffered to depart; because they the Councell threatned to kill them, if they departed : and likewise one Peter de Conillan a Portugal, and of cure

On Tuesday, the last of October, Prete lami came downe from the Tents where hee lay, flome of Etoward this Circuit where wee aboad; and when hee pailed by hee faw our Tent, not fare thispia, not to diffant from his , and fent a man to the Ambaffador, to with him to remooue his Tent , because to depart. the ayre was bad where the same stood , and yet our Tent stood in the same place which they Christians dehad appointed vs the day before. The Ambassador sent him word, that he had no people to re- tayned. mooue his Tent nor his stuffe, and that if he might have people, he would cause it to be remoo-60 ued, whither soeuer it pleased his Highnesse. This day at evening came a message from the Prete,

faying, That if the Ambassador or his companie, had any Crosse of gold or of silver, that hee Crossedemanshould lend it him , for hee desired to see it. The Ambassador tent him word , that neither hee ded. nor his companie had any, and that one which he had brought with him he had given to Barnagaffo, herewithall the Page departed, but suddenly returned againe, saying, That we should send him any that we had.

Wee fent him a Woodden Croffe of mine, with a painted Crucifixe, which by the way I carried in my hand, according to the custome of the Countrey. Immediatly he fent it backe vnroys, faving; That he tooke great pleature in beholding of it, because he perceived that wee were good Christians.

The Ambassadour sent word vnto the Prese by the faid Page, that he had yet a little Pepper. to defray his owne and his companies charges, which hee defired to bestow upon his Highnesse. and also foure Chests to keepe apparell in, and that when it pleased him, he might send for them. The Page departing with this meffage, returned fuddenly, faying; That the King defined no Pepper nor Chefts, and that the Cloathes which he had given him, were bestowed vpon Churches, and that the Pepper was given to the poore. For fo it had beene told him, that the Grand to Captaine of India had done, in gining all the cloathes fent him by the King of Portugal, vnto Churches. The Ambasiadourans wered, That whoseuer had told him any such things had not told the truth, because it was all laid vp together, and kept in safetie. This answere beeing fent, there came another message, saying; That Prete James commanded, that the Ambassadour without all delay, with his whole Company should come vnto him, and it was three houres at least within night. Forthwith we all beganne to put on our best Apparell, to goe whither we were fent for. When we were ready, another came which brought vs word, that wee must not go; and thus we stayed at home in our dumps.

74. On Wednesday the first of November, two houres within night, Prete lami fent for vs by a Page, and having put our felues in order, we went our way, and comming to the gate or entry of the first circuit or hedge, we found Porters, which caused vs to waite therea 20 good houre, in the cold and dry winde. From the place where we stood, we faw many lighted Torches, standing before the other part of the circuit of the hedge, and men held them in their hands. While wee flayed thus in this entry (for they would not fuffer vs to paffe) our men that off two Harquebuffes, and fuddenly there came a word from the King; demanding, why we had not brought many Harquebuffes from the Sea. The Ambaffadour answered, that we came not as Warriors, and that therefore wee brought not the faid Armour with vs; but that we brought onely these three or foure Harquebulles, to shew pleasure and pastime. While we waited heere, five principall men came vnto vs, among whom was one called Advuess, to whom we were appointed at our first comming to the Gourt. As soone as they were come with the word of the Prete, forthwith they did their wonted reuerence, and we in like manner, and began to fer forward, and having gone five or fix paces, but we and they flood fill. They went on the fide of vs, as if they had led vs by the hand, & on the one fide of them, went two men with two Touches lighted in their hands, & two before them on the other fide, and as they guided vs. each of them in his course began to cry with an high voyce, Hurcha, Hiale, Huchia, Abeton, which fignifieth ; Him which you have commanded me (Six) beere I bring unto you. And when one had made an end, another beganne, and to they followed one after another, and vied this foeech to long, vntill we heard a voice from within, vttered by divers, which was, Cafacinela, that is to fay, Come yes in?

admittingto prefence. Strange Ceremonies of Ten paules.

> We went a little farther, and they began againe to flay, and vttered the foresaid words a 40 gaine, vintill they heard an answere from within, as at the first. They made aboue ten of these pauses, from the first entrance vnto the second, and every time when they said within Cafacio nelet, because it is the word of the King, they which were our guides, and wee with them, bowed downe our heads and our hands to the ground. And having passed the second entry, they began to make another fong, which was this; Caphan, Hiam, Caphha, Afrangues, Abran, which lignifiesh; The Frankes which you commanded me here, I bring them, my Lord. And these he vttered as often as the other words before, and attended an answer from within the house, which was like vnto the former, and to from pause to pause, we came vnto a Bed or Table, before which flood many busing Torches, which we faw in the first entry, and told them to bee eightie on enery fide, in even ranke, and that no man might goe out of the ranke : Those which so held them, had before them certaine long Canes in their hands, which went ouer-thwart break

high, and the faid Torches flood all equall. This Bed was placed within the entrance of a great house of earth, whereof we spake before, which is built voon very great Pillers of Cipreffe; the roofe standing voon these Pillers, was Painted with certaine goodly colours, and it was Wainfcoted directly downe from the top to the bottome. The couering of the roofe, was of the Graffe of the Countrey, which lasteth (as they say) the life of a man. In the entry of the house, that is to say, at the vpper part thereof, were fine Curtaines prepared, which hung before the faid bed, and the middlemost of them was embroidered with Gold, and the others were of fine Silke. Before these Curtaines, on the floore was laid a great and rich Carpet, and neere vnto it, two great cloaths 60 of shaggy Cotton, like Campets which they call Basutos: all the rest was coursed with painted Mats, lo that no part of the bare floore could be frene. And likewife from the one end vnto the other, the whole roome was full of lighted Torches, like those which we had seene while wee were without.

While wee thus food fill from behind the Curtaines, there came a word from Prete Lanni, Manner of and faying, abruptly, that he fent not Matthew into Portugall, though it were granted that beewent dience. thuther with his Licence, seeing the King of Portugall, had sent him many things, what was become of them, and wherefore were they not brought as the King had sent them? And that those things which the Grand Captaine had fent him from India, were alreadie delivered? The Ambaffadour aniwered. that if it pleased his Highnesse to vouchsafe to heare him, he would satisfie him in all points; and findden ly he began to say, those things which the Grand Captaine sent him were atreadic presented, and ouer and above, that he had given him part of that Pepper which he brought with hims for his expenses. Touching the goods fent unto him by the King of Portugall, the cause why they were not brought unto his 10 Maiestie was, because the Ambassadour which brought them, named Edward Galvan, deceased in Camaran, and besides that certaine Portugals deceased in the Ile of Delaca, among whom were the Faltor and Interpreter, that should have delivered the same; and finally, the Grand Captaine, being not able to recover the Hauen of Maczua, through contrary winds, returned into India, and from thence departed home unto Portugall; to the Captaine which succeeded in his place. The King of Portugall not knowing of the death of the faid Edward, but thinking he had beene come to the Court of your Highnesse, gaue no further Commussion, but only to come into the Red Sea to destroy the Moores, and to har-ken after hie Ambassadour; which Grand Captaine, doubting that he spould bee able to recours no Hamen, as at other times they could not, would not bring the goods which the King of Portugall had fent him which are preserved in India, layed up together, and that hee desired enery to conduct Matthew thi-20 ther with him, that if it were his chance to recover any Hauen on the Coast of the abiffini, bee might there put him on loave, and afterward fend him those goods. And because it pleased God, that they ar-rined at the seresaid Hauen of Maczua, which is in his Territories, although is bee in the hands of the Moores, the Grand Captaine determined to fend unto him himsfelfe, Don Roderigo with these goods and Peeces wherewith he had preserved him, and that he should come in company with Matthew, onely to see him, and to learne the way against another time, when is should please him to send the Ambassador of the King of Portugall, and that Matthew was departed out of this life at the Monasterie of the Vision. At the end of this Answere, returned another Message; saying , If three were flaine in Delaca, how escaped Matthew! Hereunto it was answered, that Matthew escaped because hee would not firre one of the fire. And the Ambassadour belought him very humbly, to vouchfase to 30 giue him audience, because he should understand the truth, and that likewise, bee would deliner him in writing that which the Grand Captaine had fent him by word of mouth, besides the Letters, and

Bread, Wine and Flesh, and two men which faid, that they had charge to give vs every day our dyet and other necessaries. 75. On Saturday the third of November, the Prete Lami fent for vs, and we went at twen- Jedian and Be. tie foure of the clocke, and comming to the first gate or entrance, while we stayed a while, there bemien and ocame a meflage, that we should shoot off our Peeces, but without Bullets for hurting no bodie, therefore, and within awhile after, they let recome in and was find and the median begin as the 40 and within awhile after, they let vscome in, and we vied the like respite that we did before, ning, the reand comming in betweene the Gates and the Curtaines, where we stood at the first, we saw the koning of 14 place of the Bed very richly trimmed, and decked as before, and all behind and before, was coue- boures; as wee red with embroydered cloth, and the people were more richly arrayed, and ftood on both fides all of 12- at mid-

that by this meanes he should understand the whole matter. Questions and Answeres passed too and

fro, without any conclusion, and so they dismissed vs. The next day hee sent vs great store of

in a ranke with their naked Swords and Daggers in their hands, and placed, as though they had bin to fight one with another. There were two hundred Torobes, lighted on both Car they had night. bin to fight one with another. There were two hundred Torches lighted on both fides flanding in a ranke, as they did the other day, and when wee were come in ; he began to aske vs questions, and fend vs Answeres by the Cabeata, and by a Page called Abderago, which is Captaine of all the Pages, with these his Messages he carryed his naked Sword in his hand, and the first which he brought was this, How many we were, and bow many Harquebuffer wee had brought? and strait 50 way there came another; demanding, who had taught the Moores to make Hand gumen; and great Ordnance, and whether they shot at the Portugals with them, or the Portugals at them, and who were

most afraid of the Moores or the Portugals?

Each of these Questions came at severall times, and we made a severall Answere vnto each Diver Que of them. And touching the feare of the great Ordnance, wee faid, that the Portugals were fo filos and An-well armed in the Faith of Jefus Christ, the they were not find and and a file of the control of well armed in the Faith of Ielus Christ, that they were not afraid of the Moores, and had they feared them, they would not have come fo farre off, without any necessitie to seeke them. Touching the making of Calieuers, and great Ordnance, they faid, that the Moores were men, and that they had wit and understanding as well as any of us.

He fent to enquire whether the Turkes had good Artillery? The Ambassador answered, that 60 their great Ordnance was as good as ours, but that wee were not one whit afraid of them, because wee fough for the faith of lefus (brift, and they against the same. Then he demanded who had taught the Turkes to make great Ordnance? Wee answered him as before, to wit, that the Turkes were men, and had understanding and capacitie of men in all persection, saving in the Faith. Then hee were men, and had under jeanding and capacitie of men in an perfection, Journa on the came.

Into to know, whether there were any in our company that could play at Rapier and Dagger, for that he would glady fee them play. The Ambassador appointed George de Breu and another tall tellow Dagger.

Degen.

1055

the Ampull; and he viewed all, piece by piece, and willed me to open the Cloth wherein the

Altaritone was (which was fewed in a white Cloth) and so he did; which when hee had feene

he willed to be couered. This stone on the upper side was very smooth, square, and well made.

to play, which both did very well, and performed as much as was to bee expected, of meney. ercited and trained up in Armes, and the Prete might very well behold them from behind the Curtaines, and tooke great pleasure at them, as we were informed.

When they had done, the Ambassadour sent to Prete lanni, beseeching him to give him andience, and to understand the message which the Grand Captaine of the King of Portugall had fent voto him, and that he would dispatch him, that he might returne to their Fleet against the time of their arrivall, and not to put him to any more expenses without profit. An answere was returned, that wee were but newly come thither, and had not feene one third part of his Lands and Dominions, and that we should take our pleasures: For assources as the Grand Captaine should come to Mac-minions, and that we should take our pleasures: For assources as the Grand Captaine should come to Mac-Zila, he would lead to speake with him, and then we should depart, and if the said Captaine would build a Fortresse in Maczua, or in Suachen, or in Zeila, that hee would see the same forth-with surnished 10 all things necessary. And because the Turkes are many and we few, when such a Fortresse were builded with on the Red Sea, wee might very well finde out a way whereby wee might passe to service and the Holy Land with an Armie. The Ambassadour answered, that all these were the very things which the King of Portugall defired, and that still bee befought him to give him Audience, and if hee were minded not to give him audience, that hee might fend him to the Grand Captaines Letters, and all the whole Mossage in writing, which he sent him to deliner by word month. He tooke order that all things should be interpreted and written in the Abifin Tongue. and fent vnto him : which the Ambassadour did, requesting him instantly to give him his difpatch. After this, the Prete Ianni fent him word, that Seeing bee had brought him a paire of Organes, he frould fend him one to play thereon, and to fing, and so bee did. Then hee defired that we 20 thould dance before him after our manner. When the Dance was done, wee fignified vnto him that we were Christians, & prayed him to give vs leave to fing Masse after our custome, according to the Church of Rome. Suddenly we received an Answere, that He knew well that we were Chri-Bians, and that fince the Moores which were wicked and trecherous had their Prayers after their manner; wherefore (bould not we have the same after ours? And that hee would send us all things necessarie thereunto. Affoone as wee were come to our Ledging , they brought vs three hundred great Loanes of Bread, and twentie foure larres of Wine, and the Bearer told vs, that there were hirtie larres appointed for vs, but that the Porters on the way had broken fixe of them.

Of the Questions moved to the Ambassadour, by the appointment of PRETE I A N N I, at feuerall times by Interlocutors, and laftly, in prefence : wherein many points of their Religion are opened.

He Sunday following many Questions came vnto our Tent from Prete lanni, to the Ambassadour, and all of them were concerning the Armour which hee vnderftood, that the King of Portugal had fent him, and whether it should bee 40 fent him out of India. The Ambafiadour faid, that the Armour and all things elfe which the King had fent him, should come the yeare following, and that the Grand Captaine would either fend them or bring them himselfe, and so hee sent him word, and wrote him his Letters. Then he willed our men to shoot with their Calieuers, within the great hedge, and that certaine of his people should shoot also, and whether any of vs could make Gun-powder? It was told him, that there was none that could make the fame, but that the Grand Captaine would fend men with their Instruments to make Salt-peeter, and that hee would bring Brimstone with him in his shippes. Hee said that Brimstome might bee found in his Kingdome, to that there were Mafters to make Salt-peeter, and that his Armies wanted nothing elfe, but the vie of Artillerie, and men to teach them to make the same, because hee was able to so bring vnto the field an infinite number of Harquebuffes, wherewith hee might fubdue all the

And to this purpose a certaine Genenes which lived in the Court, told me, that hee had confidered, that more Salt-peeter might be made in their Kingdomes, then in any other place of the World, by reason of the infinite number of Cattell which were there, and that heere bee also Mountaines that yeeld Brimstone. He sent vs word afterward, that he would have vs shew him how we did put on those white Armours, which the Grand Captaine had fent him. Our men forth-with armed one of the company, where he might well fee him. Then he fent for the Swords and Curaffes, which the Ambaffador and his company had brought, that hee might

Sight of the

Moorish Kings about him.

77. On Munday at Euening, he fent for me, Francis Aluarez, to bring the Hofts vnto him, which he defired to fee. I brought him eleuen of them very well made, not in boxes or pixes, because I knew the great reuerence which they vie to their Hosts, which is one Cake onely-And these Hosts had a Crucifixe vpon them, and therefore I carryed them in a very faire Dith

and on the nether fide was somewhat vneuen, according to the nature, and proportion of stones. He fent me word, that feeing in Portugall there were fo good Mafons, why had they not polified it on that fide alfo; faying, that the things which belonged unto Gods Service, ought to be perfect and not imperfect. The night being come, he sent for methat I should come to his Tene, and willed I should to come in, and fo I did. They fet me in the midft thereof, which was all foread on the ground with exceeding fine Carpets. I flood foure yards diftant from Prete Janni, which fate behind those

Curtaines: he commanded me to apparell my felfe, as if I should fay Masse, which I did. When I was apparelled, he caufed me to be asked, Who game vs that apparell, whether they were the Apo-lifts, or fame other Saints? I aniwered him, that the Church had taken it out of the Paffion of Christ. bed Maffine He willed me to tell him what every one of those pieces signified; and so I beganne with every Apparell. part, to flew him what they fignified, according to the Pagion of our Lord, And when I came The Myfle ies to the Manipulum, I told him, that it was a little Cord, wherewith they bound the hands of Ie. Thus in. fus Christ. Then comming to the Stole, I told him, that that fignified the great Cord, which deed is hee they cast about his necke to lead him this way and that way, and that the Planet signified the most cally 20 apparell which they put you him, for to mocke him * withall; Which when I had ended, he mocked, when

faid againe with a very loud voyce, that we were true Christians, because we knew the Passion of Christ so pertectly. And whereas I had said, that the Church bad taken this out of the Passion of Preaching was must diverge to the Passion of Preaching was Christ, he demanded, which was that Church! Because we held two head Churches in Chistendome, Lefture Vesture the first of Constantinople in Greece, and the second of Rome in France. a Lantwered him, there and boddly exwas but one Church : and though it were granted, that Conftantinople was the head in the be- ereife: as at ginning, jet it ceased now to be because the Head of the Church b is there where Saint Peter was be. Rome and in cause Ielus Christ said, Thou are Peter, and vpon this Rocke I will build my Church. And when S. a Of this see Peter was at Antiochia, the Church was there, because the Head was there, and when hee came to before, all We-Rome hee abode fill there, and there the Head Shall alwayes bee : and this Church ruled by the Holy fleme Chri-

30 Ghost hatb ordaynedsthings necessary to say Masse. Moreoner, I proved this Church onto him, telling thendome calbim, that is the Articles of our Faith, which the Apostles made, the Apostle Simon c faith: I believe the East From in 4 the boly Catholike Church. But in the great Creed which was made in the Nicene Councell by the Holy Land three bundred and eighteene Bilbops, against the Horefie of Arrius, they fay : I beleeve in one Catholike Expeditions. and Apostolike Church; and this is the boly Roman Church, wherein Saint Peter fate, apon whom God b Abriefe of founded his Church, as be faith. And Saint Paul, a chofen Veffell and Dotter of the Gentiles, calleth Popile Faith. tt Catholike and Apostolike, c because in it are all the Apostolike powers, which God game to Saint Pe- d This word ter, and to all the rest of the Apostles of binding and loofing. They answered mee, that I gaue a good (in) is twice reason for the Church of Rome; but what could I say for the Church of Conflaminople, which here put in by belonged to Saint Marke, and for the Cherch of Greece, which belonged to Saint John the Pa. Iomeocher As40 triarks of Alexandras' Hercunto I and wered them, that their reason firengithened mine, because mill Zenus,

Com Barress Com Markes 24.51m. and the limit in the Committee of the Committe

tharke or Alexandrus: Freetention survered than 5 cases over comparing progression mane, because emiliaryth, Sain Peter was Saint Markes Mailter, and be from him into toke parts, and be that neither Marke Sermen, wor Iohn f could plant any Churches, but onely in the name of him which bad fent them, which Chur-13, createn the ner 10111 : couta pain any concore, one encry in the name y own nove one yent to come, where the cheese were temperes of the Hand, whole he taked per freeders; to which Hand all Authorities were given, delian non in And many years after, when Saint lectome, and many other body must had speared throughout, they excellent, quie ordained Anonatries of entires and holy the whoeven they might true God, and that the said Mos. Disa Gric. show the state of the Anonatrie of entire that the fail Mos. Disa Gric. show the state of the Most Rome; and how can they make Churches in preinduce of the chiefe Head, if they were not builded, and D.m.61.Trac.in made by our Lord Iesus Christ? They yeelded hereunto, and the Interpreter faid that Prete Iami 10,29. 06. tooke exceeding great pleafure hereat.

Then they asked me whether in Portugall, the Priests were marryed? Itold them, no. They fore then did demanded, whether we held the Councell of Pope Leo & which was made at Nice! I told them, yea, Christ and the and that I had alreadie declared, that the great Creed was made there. They asked me againe, how Apolitics to many Billoops were then with the Pope? I answered, that I had alreadies ald them, that there were three Nations? bundred and eighteene. They replyed againe vnto mee, that it was ordained in this Councell, that Monafleries. Priests might marrie, and if this Councell were sworne and consistmed, wherefore were they not married? g No despe I told them that I knew nothing elfe of that Councell, but that the Creed was made there, and that reading cilies our Lady might be called the Mother of God.

Afterward, they told me many other things which there were ordained and fwome, which For Leolurd Pope Leo brake, and prayed me to tell them what they were : I answered them , that I knew (but was not Fope-to-orang and prayed the coefficient what any week 1 adverted them; that a gent quartening for them though any of them, they might be found that in most opinion; the band token any of them, they might be found of thefe, which be the case perfect when the strength of boue one hundred yeares after the Nicene Councell) when that of Chalcedon was held. In the former Syluefter and Island were Bishops of Rome, not Callers, or Rulers of the Councell, wherein Paphantius withstood that adulterate inforced colineary Sec. Me. bifl. Lise. 8. Sozom, les . 6,22. 46. The Author here confounds divers Councels,

fitable,

1078

enisted) muft

his Wife, ap-

be younger then Peters A.

fixable, and that otherwise he should not have beene allowed, and canonized for a Saint as he is. Againe. he asked me concerning the Marriage of Priests, inquiring of me, whether the Apostles were married? I told him, that I never hadread in any Booke, shat the Apostles had Wives; after that, they went in company with Iesus, and although Saint Peter had a Daughter, yet he had her by his wife, before he was an Apostile, and that Saint Iohn the Enangelist was a Virgine : and that I had read that after the death of Christ, the Apostles preached constantly the Faith in him, and doubted not to the far the same : And that the Church of Rome, which is the true Church , hath ordained and confirmed. the same: Ant was no conversed No. 11. When a way in the control your demands and complitude, that after the ministerior file Applies no Prief bound have a wife, to the end they floud the name cleave, and home pure in their conficiences, and floud not bee buffed all their time in bringing up their child en, and promising for their laung. Hereunto answer was returned me, that their Bookes com- 10

*Petronills (as manded, that they should be married, and that Saint Peter saidenen so. her age is cal-

They caused me to sing Gloria in excelsis, and certaine Verses of the Creede. At this conference, an Interpreter flood continually, and hard by him the Frier, which had conducted vs in our way. This Frier had beene sometimes in Italy, and understood a little Latine. The Prese Lanni caused him to be asked, whether he understood that which I spake. He answered him, yea.

postleship. But thit Peter did and that I had faid, Gloria in excelfis, and the Creed, as they fay it.

78. The night that I stayed so long with the Prete, before morning, the Ambassadour was robbed in the Tent where wee lodged, and they stole away two Cloakes of cloath, two rich Hats, feuen fine Shirts, &c. In the morning, the Ambassadour willed me and the Secretary to go is, and healing to the Tent of Prete, to complaine and crane Inflice for this robbery, and fo I did. But because an the Amballadour had taken two Theeues, therefore while we were before the Tent of the Prete, a Woman came crying and crauing Iustice, and faid; That the Ambassadour and his Company, leading about the last night, by meanes of an Arabian, that knew the language of the Countrey. had taken be more suspin away her Daughter by force, and led her to their Tent, of whom they had had their pleasure. cious) and the And because her Sonne complained for the forcing of his Sifter, they had taken him with the whole tenure A-abian, which had deceived the Maid, and laid to their charge that they were robbed. When they had heard vs and this woman, they made vs both all one answer, that is, that Iuflice should anuquiv. Here they had heard vs and this woman, they made vs both all one answer, that is, that Inflice should ance be done, and so they distinstifled vs. The same day, the Frier which was with me before the Prese. are own mex.
the night past, came with a rich Tent, but halfe worne, saying; That the Prote had sent vs it to leane the truth fay Masse in, and that immediatly it should be set up, because the next day was the Feast of the 12 Angell Raphael, and that we should say Masse in it every day, and pray to God for him. This Tent was Embroidered, and of Veluet of Mecca, lined within with very fine Cloath of Chaus. Anceues.

Conning trick, They told me, that foure yeares before the Prese had wonne it in the warre, which he made a-ATent lento gainst the King of Adel, who was a Moore, and Lord of Zeila, and Barbera: and the Prete lent vs word, that we should hallow the same before wee said Masse in it, because of the sames committed therein by the Moores. The fame night it was prefently fet vp, and on the morrow, we faid Maffe therein, and all the Frankes which were in the Court, for fortie yeares space, came thither to heare it, as also many people of the Countrey.

79. The eight of November, the Prete fent for vs, and forthwith we repaired thither, the Ambaffadour would needs carrie the Chefts and bagges of Pepper, which hee had promifed him. 10 When we were come vnto the entry of the first hedge, they held vs with certaine friuolous questions, cocerning the Negroes which we had taken, for the goods which they had stolne from vs : and the demands continued foloug, that in the meane while they fent to loofe the faid Negroes, without any conclusion or remedy for the theft, and the Prese fent vs three hundred Loaues, and thirtie Tarres of Wine, and certaine victuals of flesh from his owne Table, and so we returned to our Tent. They fent another time for vs, and when we were come, we flood a great while vpon certaine questions, why we tooke not our way from the Sea coast, toward the Kingdome of Dancute, which is farre the neerer way: and feeing we were Seruants to the King of Portugall, why wee had not Croffes marked in our flesh vpon our shoulder, because such is their cuitome, that all the Servants of the Prete have a croffe marked vpon their right shoulders: 40 They asked rare her : feeing we had given away our Pepper, wherewith we would buy our Vie

chals for our journey, &c.

Skirmith on

Gifts.

80 The twelfth of November, the Prete fent vs fine very great and goodly Horses to our Tent, praying the Ambassadour to come with foure others of his company upon the said Hories, to skirmilh before his Tent : and it was very late, and the Ambafirdour was not very well pleased that it was so late and darke : but streight-way there were so many Torches lighted, that it was as light as day. And here they skirmished in such tort, that they delighted the Prete very much, which skirmish being ended, wee returned to our Tent; whither suddenly the Prese lent vs three lanes of Wine, much better then any he had lent vs before. The next day, he fent to the Ambassadour a Cup of Silver, very curiously gilt, and made after our manner, as 60 well in the foot, as in the Bowle. On the foote were the Apostles grauen, Handing vpright, and in the Bowle were certaine Latine letters, containing these words: Hic est calix noni Testamenti: A cloath of Gold for the Altar of our Church, and a Bason and Ewer made of blackwood, with red and white veines, as faire as euer we faw, to powre water vpon our hands, and

fent vs word, that we should fend him all our names in writing. They were suddenly carried ient vs word, that we allow what Roderige fignified, and what Lima fignified, and likewife Signification him: nevert backe to know, the other names. The cause of this demand was, because in of names, what was the signification of all the other names. this Countrey they neuer giue any proper name, which hath not fome fignification. The next this Country they never got any popular there was another theft committed; for while George Theeners, de Bren was a sleepe, he had a Cloake stolne that cost him twentie duckats, and from vs alio were itolne certaine bagges of ftuffe, neither vie they any diligence to cause these things to bee were nonecessanic angle of the Theenes, which for the reftored vnto vs, becaule (as wee haue faid) there is a Captaine of the Theenes, which for the feeting of the Prese his Tents, hath no other reward, but fuch things as they steale. This day 10 the Prete fent vs a Saddle for a Horse, wholly befet with stones of Cornellon, (this Saddle, befides that it was very heavy, was also very badly made) faying, That the Ambassadour should

81. The Saturday following, the Press commanded all the Lords and great men of his Court. to goe and heare our Masse, which they also did the Sunday following; but there were farre more on the Saturday; for besides our Masse, we baptized also: and as farre as we could gather by their gestures, and as the Frankes told vs which we found in this Countrey and the Interpreters which were with vs, they marueiled much, and greatly praifed our feruice: faying. That they could not speake against it, but onely because we gave not the Communion to all those that were present at the same, and likewise to those which were baptized. The eighteenth of the said 20 moneth, the Prete fent for me, and moued many questions vnto me, and among others, how many Prophets had prophelied of the comming of Christ. I answered him, that in my judgement all of them had tooken of the fame, to wit; one of his comming, another of his Incarnation, another of his Pathon and Refurrection; all which concerned Chrift. Likewife, how many bookes Saint Paul had made ! I answered him, That it was one Booke onely, divided into many parts, that is to fay, Into many Epittles. Hee asked me likewife, how many Bookes the Euangelists had made ! And I made him the same answer. Also, he asked, whither we had a Booke diui- A strange had made: And I made in the land and the depolites, being gathered together at lengther, had written. Books intended into eight parts, which all the Apolites, being gathered together at lengther, had written. Books intended which they call Manda and Abrillis' 11 aniwered, that I neuer had heard of any fuch Books, which they call Manda and Abrillis' 12 aniwered, that I never had heard of any fuch Books, which is the same and the form and the form and the fact that the first that the form and the first that the f and that it was not to be found among it vs. Hee faid, That they observed all the Commande-

20 ments written therein. 83. On a Tuelday, we were fent for vato the Prete, and it was the nineteenth of Nouember, and being come to the first gate or entry, we stayed a great while, the weather being verie cold, and the night well fpent. Then we entred with the like paufes and flayes, as we had vied twice before, and there was a farre greater affembly then before. And the greatest part had their weapons. There were alfo a great number of Candles and Torches light before the gates; fo Admitted to that it feemed as light as day, neither made they vito waite any long while, but that the Ambaffadour and nine of vs Portugats went fuddenly in, even hard waso the first Curtaines : which when we had palled, we found others farre richer, and those also we passed, where wee found certaine rich and great Thrones, couered ouer with rich Tapiftry. Before these Thrones, hung 40 other Curtaines of farre greater riches, which they opened on both fides, wee flanding neare

wnto them. And heere we law the Prete laws fitting vpon a skaffold, very richly adorned with fixe steps to astend thereunto. He had vpon his head an high Crowne of Gold and Silver, that The habitet fixe steps to alcend thereunto. He had voor in he had at high clowne of Coule and share which is to say; One piece of Gold, and another piece of Silver, and a Crosse of Silver in his hand. Prete lamb His face was coursed with a piece of Blew Taffata, which was to bee mooned vp and downe. fo that fometimes all his face was feene, and fometimes all conered. On his right hand flood a Page, cloathed in Silke, with a Crosse of Siluer in his hand, whereon certaine Pictures were engrauen, standing vpright, which from the place where we stood, we could not perfectly difcerne: but afterward I had this Croffe in my hand, and faw those Images. The Press was apparelled with a rich garment, Embroydered with Gold, and his Shirt was of Silke, with wide fleeues, which were like vnto a Surplice. Before him downeward, hee was girded with a rich cloath of Silke and Gold, like the Rochet of a Bishop spread abroad, and he sate in Maieste, after the manner that they paint God the Father vpon the wals. Befides the Page which held the

fword in their hands. In his age, colour, and stature, he scemeth to be young. Hee is not very blacke, but of the Hisperson decolour of a Chest-nut, or of ruddy Apples, which are not very Tawny, and sheweth a great scribed. grace in his colour and countenance, and is of a meane stature, and is faid to be three and twentie yeares old, and so he seemeth to be. Hee hath a round visage, great eyes, an Hawkes nose, and his beard began to bud. In his presence and pompe, he seemeth to be a great Lord, as in ve-

Croffe, there stood on each tide another Page in like apparell, each of them holding a naked

60 ry deed he is. We frood the space of two speares length from him : que stions and answeres natfed too and fro, and all by the Cabeata. On every fide of this Throne, flood foure Pages in rich array, every one holding a burning Torch in his hand. When these questions and answers were ended, the Ambassadour deliucred the Grand Captaines Letters to the Cabeata, which were translated into the Abyllis tongue, and he presented them to the Prese, who read them very rea-

CHAP. S.S. 12. Baptizing of a child. Mooneable Court-Churches.

d. XIII.

Of the Progresse of PRETEIANNI. Their Wrestling, Baptisme, Maffe passage; of the dangerous Straits comming to Saint GEORGES Church. Many other Questions. The PRETES preparations in his Tranell.

He fine and swentieth of the faid moneth of November, the Prete temooned in this order. He mounted on horse-backe with two Pages onely, and passed beforeour Tent, skirmishing and managing of his horse. And suddenly a brute went through the Campe, that the Negri was departed. And enery man haft-ned to follow after as fast as they could. He caused fiftie Mules to bee descuered vs, thurie fine

to carrie our Meale and Wine, and fifteene to carrie our other Stuffe, with certaine flaues, and we were recommended to accreaine Lord, called Aiat Raphael. Miaz is the title of his Lordthin, and Raphael his name, who gaue vs every day an Oxe. Wee departed, and on the Wednelday came vnto the Court, and lodged in a great open field vpon a Rauers fide: Eft-soones, there came a very honorable Frier to visit vs, which is the chiefe of the Kings Secretaries, and a great Durine, and also the Nebres of the Friers of Charumo, and faid, that hee came to vilit vs on the 20 behalfe of his Lord.

86. The second of December, Lazarus de Andrada, our Portugall Painter, being neere the Kings Tent, was asked whether he would wraftle; and hee wraftled, mifdoubting no danger at all: and at the first bowt his legge was broken, he brake another Poringals arme. This Wraftler of the Prete, was called Gabmariam, which lignifieth, The Servant of Mary, and was a Moore, and is broad-shouldred, and a strong fellow, and worketh cunning with his hand in Silke and Gold, This day came newes from his Grand Besudete, which was in Warre against a King of the Moores, that he had vanquished him; and fent much Gold and slaues, and the heads of certaine great men which he had flaine.

At this time one Mafter Peter Cordiero a Genoues, had a Sonne borne of his Wife, which was Bapting of a a Negre, who requested me to baptize him within eight dayes, because they baptize not their childe. male children before the end of fortie dayes. I baptized this childe the tenth of December, and thicher repayred great flore of people, and those of the most honourable and principall of the

87. Departing from this Countrey, we tooke our journey by that way, by which wee came Multimide of vnto the Court. And fo great was the throng of people which trauelled on all fides, that for people. ten or twelve miles space, the people were so neere one another, that it seemed to bee the Procession on Copys Christiday; and scarcely the tenth part are well apparelled. The rest are atl clad in skinnes and other base apparell, and carrie all their riches with them, which are onely certaine pots to make Wine in, and Dishes to drinke in. And if they make no long journey, these Very poore-40 hase people, carrie their poore Cottages all whole and couered as they are, and if they goe any Aboue 30000 long journey; they carrie nought but the rafts onely, which are certaine small Poles; and the rich Mule in the men cause their Tents to be carryed with them, which are very good and of great price. I speake trains not of the great Gentlemen and Lords; for with enery one of them is mooned as it were a Citie Few good hor or a good Towne, as namely, their Tents carryed partly vpon flaues backes, and partly vpon ies becau'e Mules, We Portugals, and the Frankes have oftentimes confidered the number of these Mules, they cannot and take them to be aboue fiftie thousand. The Horses are but few, for albeit there are very faire thousand. ones, yet because they know not how to shooe them, they quickly marre their feet; and if the Prete travell any long journey, all the Townes are full of furbated Hories, which are faine to follow foftly after. The Mules of carriage are innumerable, and they ride as well on Male as Fe-

male Mules. There are great store of Hacknies which carrie burthens, and yet their feet are not furbated as the Horses be. There are many He-asses more serviceable then Hacknies. They make many Oxen also to carrie burchens, and in the plaine and Champaigne Countries, the Camels 88. The Prete feldome travelleth in the high way, neither doth any man know whether hee

goeth; but the Altar-stones, that is, their Churches, which are thirteene doe keepe the high Thirteene way, although the Prete goe out of the way, and all the people commeth after in the way, vntill they find a white Tent fet vp, and straite way every man taketh vp his lodging in his place, ches, and many times the Prete comes not to this Tent, but lyeth in Monasteries and other Religious Aoufes. In this Tent which is erected, they yfe continually to fing and play upon Instruments. as though the Prete were there in perion, but not fo cunningly as when he is there prefent. The Altar-Rones are carryed with great renerence, and alwayes by Priefts that fay Maffe, and there Altar-Rones

be foure of them which carrie the same on their shoulders upon a square Table, and foure Priests carryed by come behind to change courses in carrying of the same. They are coursed with rich Embroyde- Priests. red Clothes and cloth of Silke, and two Clerkes goe before with a Centor and a Croffe, and ano-

This thing is now too truly come to paffe.

1080

dily, and when he had read them, he faid : As thefe be the Letters of the Grand Captaine, fo would to God they had beene the Letters of the King of Portugall his Father; howbest, that these Letters were melt welcome unto him, and that he gave God most hearty thanket, for having granted the never gift unto him, to behold that which his Ancestors had never seen, neither did he chinke he should have feene himselfe, and that his defires should be fully accomplished, if the King of Portugal mould build Fortresser upon the sle of Maczua, and in the Towne of Suachen; because he doubted greatly, that the Turkes our enemies would fortifie in them, which if it came to paffe, they would greatly disturbe both binn. and us Portugals: and for this purpose he would give us all things necessarie, as well people to worke, as Gold and Valtuals: and to be stort, what some wee should stand in need of: And that is his opinion, besides the building of the said Forts, it was needfull to take the Citie of Zeila, and to build a To Fort in the Same, because it is a place which aboundeth with all kind of Utituals : and having taken this Citie, they might make sureworke, that no Viltuals should passe to the Cities of Aden, Zidem. Mecca, and into all Arabia; and vnto Toro and Sucz: which Townes being deprined of these Ustu-Mecca, and now an extractive and control of the con bimselfe with Christian Princes, he would spare nothing that he had in the world. And in this discourse of taking these Townes, and making of these Forts, we spent a great time with exceeding great delight of the Prete. 82. The next day, being the twentieth of November, I was called for by the Prete, and a- 20

mong others, he moved these questions; that I should declare was him the lines of Saint Icrome.

and Saint Dominicke, and Saint Francis, and of what Countrey they were, and wherefore in the Let-

ters of the Grand Captaine mention was made, that the King of Portugall had builded Churches unto these Saints, in the Townes which he had taken in the Kingdomes of Congo, Benin, and of the Indies. I answered, that Saint Ierome was borne in Sclauonia, and Saint Dominicke in Spaine, and game bun. large information of their orders, referring my selfe to the Booke which I had of their lines. Suddainly there came an answere, that I should show him the lines of these Saints, seeing that I faid that I had them. After this, they came with another question, whether wee did all things that the Pope commanded vs ! I faid, yea; for fo wee were bound by the Article of our holy Faith, which confessed One boly and Carbolike Church. Hereupon they answered me, that if the 13 Pope would command them any thing which the Apostles had not written, they would not doe it : and

likewife if their Abuna or Patrarke would commained them any fuch thing, they would burne fuch a Commandement. After this, came another question, Why there are not fo many bodies of Saints in Ethiopia, as there be as Icaly, Germany, and France ! I answered him, That in those Proninces many Emperous bad raigned, whose Muniters being Pagans, were very cruell, and that they which were consected to the Fauth of Christ, were so constant in the same, that they chuse rather to dye for it, then to worthin Idals, and that therefore there were fo many Martyrs and Virgins. Touching this point an answer was returned, that I said the truth, which he greatly delighted to heare to plainly delinered, and asked whether we knew, How long it was fince Ethiopia received the Christian Faith? I fent him word, that I thought, that within a fhort time after the death of Christ, this land an

* It was Philip was conserted by the Ennuch of the Queene Candaces, which was baptized by the Apostle Saint Philip. An answere was sent me, that by this Eurosch there was no more conserved but the Country of Tigrai, which is in Ethiopia, and that the rest was connerted by force of Armes', as also be proceed. Most parc of E- deth in daily converting of divers Kingdomes by the faul force of Armes, and that the first conversion things convert of the Queene Candaces, was ten yeare after the death of Christ, and that from that time unto this cut by force of

present, it had beene conversed by Christians, &c.

84. The next day, the Prete fent for my Booke, which is called, Flos Sanctorum, faying; That I should shew them the lines of the faid Saints: I fent him my Booke, which presently they fent me backe againe by two Frien, faying, That the Prete willed them to write the name of every Saint, in the Abifin tongue, and to place the same vpon every figure. The next day, so the faid Friers were with their Booke to translate these lines. I durit not go to speake with the Prete, valefie I carried with me the Booke of the Kalender, because they asked me the day of epery Saint, and would needs have me tell it them immedia ly. On Saint Kaiberines day, being Sunday, the Prete fent certaine Canons and Priests, which (a Venetian Painter, called Nicholas Brancaleon, which had lived about fortie yeares in this Countrey, and vnderstood the Abissia Single Com- tongue, was their Interpreter) and that every thing was excellently well handled, faying, That one alone said Masse, and that they gave not the Communion to all the standers by.

They come 2-

This very day being Sunday, when wee were gone to bed, the Prete fent for vs. and being againe into the come vnto the first Curtaines, he caused vs all to put on our best apparell, and to come into the Principresence presence of the Press, who sate vpon his Throne in the very same fort that he sate before. And 60 here he talked with vs of many matters, and among other things, that the Frankes which were in his Court might depart this Realme, when it pleased them, and the Ambassauour also with his Company, and that one France should stay behind, called Nicholas Muzza, by whom hee would fend his Letters, which were to be made in Gold, and that therefore he could not write

ther goeth ringing with a small Bell, and every man and woman that heareth the same, goeth our of the way : and if hee bee on horse-backe hee firait-way lighteeh, and giveth place, that the Church may raffe. Likewise there alwayes goe with the Court foure Lions, each of them led with two Chaines, one before and another behind, and every bodie maketh roome for them. We wayted on the Court till the twentieth of December, and came vnto those terrible Mountaines where the gates are, whereby we passed when we came first into the Country, and there they

After that the Tents of the Prete were erected, strait-way they beganne to make a very high Scaffold neere one of his Tents, because the Prete would shew himselfe to his people on Christmas day. And commonly he sheweth himselfe thrice a yeare, that is to say, on Christmas day, to The cause why Prete Tan- on Easter day, and on Holy Rood day in September. And the cause why he thus sheweth himfelte thrice, is, because his Grand-father, whose name was Alexander, was kept three yeares sehimfille to the cret atter his death by his Seruants, who governed the Countrey all the meant-while : for varill peo, le thrice a that time, none of the people might fee their King, neither was he feene of any, but a few of his Servants. And at the requeft of the people, the Father of this David shewed himselie these three dayes, and this King also doth the like: They also say, that when he goeth to warre heal-

wayes goth open, that all men may fee him, and also when he trauelleth. 89. On Christmas Euening at atter-noone, the Prete called for me, and asked mee what Feath kept the day next fellowing? I fent him word, wee kept the Feaft of the Natinitie of Christ. He asked me, what Solemnitie we yied? I answered, that we kept our visall manner, and the folemnitie of three Messes. Hee faid, that they did all things like vnto vs., saue that they yied ²⁰ but one Maffe, and willed me to flay one of those three Maffes which I would my felfe. Six of vs went and we prolonged the Mattins with Lessons, Hymnes, Plalmes and Prophelies, and fearthed all fuch things at wee could best fing and thunder out ; and the Prete neuer departed from the gate of his Tent, which was as I haue faid, neere vnto our Church : and two Pages neuer ceafed to goe and come, and to inquire what it was the which we fung, specially when they perceived vs to change the tune of the Pfalmes, Hymnes, and Responsories. When this was done, and one man confessed, it began to be broad day, and I sent them word, that I would say Masse, and strait way we began a Procession, with a Crosse carryed vp before vs, and an Image of our Lairy, and two Torches about the Croffe : and wee begannethe Procession neere the Circle within our Tent. Suddenly the Prete fent vnto vs to make our Procession about his Tents, and Tent vs foure hundred great Candles of white Waxe, to carry them lighted before vs. and would have vs beginne our Procession with our Portugals, and the white people, and that his owne people should follow after. When the Procession was ended, which reached a great Circuit, wee began our Afterges, and I went to give Holy Water to Prete lans, which I might eafily fling from our Church, because he was neere vnto vs. There were with him, as I was informed, the Queene his Wife, Queene Helena his Mother, and the Cabeata, with other his familiar friends. In the Tent of our Church flood all the great Nobles and Lords of the Court, which could fland in the roome, and the rest stood without : and from our Altar vinto the Prete his Tentall the way was open, because he defired to see the whole Service of the Masse. 40

90. The Procession, Masse, and Communion being ended, the Ambassadour and all the rest of his company were permitted to goe home vnto their Dinner, and I onely with mine Interpreter was stayed behind. Strait way that old Father, the Kings Schoole-master came vinto mee, and faid, that the Prete Lannigreatly commended our Service, but defired to know what reason we had to fuffer the Lay-people to enter into the Church, as well as the Clergie, and that hee wis informed, that women also came into the Church. I answered him that the Church of God was not thut vp against any Christian, and that if Christ stood alwayes with open armes to receive all that come vnto him into his glory in Paradife, why should not wee receive them inso the Church, which is the way to paffe into Paradife? and as touching women, although in olu time they entred not into Santia Santtorum, yet the merits of our Lady were fuch and io 50 great, that they were fufficient to deferue, that the feminine fexe might enter into the Houle

They fent me word, that they had fourescore and one Bookes of the old and new Testament, and would know whether we had any more, or no. I fent them word, that wee had about ten times fourefore and one Bookes, which were drawne out of the aforefaid Workes, with many and more perfect Expositions. They told mee that they knew well, that wee had more Bookes then they, and therefore he defired me to tell him the names of those which they had not. And fo they held me with Quettions and Answeres vntill night, with Messengers that ceased not to trot vp and downe. I stood on my feet leaning vpon a staffe, and Questions came vnto mee not onely from the Prete Ianni, but also from his Wife and from his Mother Queene Helena; and I 69 answered them as God affilted me. At length, I became so wearie and hungry, that I could not fland any longer upon my legs, and they gaue mee leaue to depart. I was no fooner gone away, but a Page came running after me, and faid, that the Prete requested mee very instantly to give him the Canopie that was over my head, praying me to pardon him, that he had stayed me so

CHAP.5. \$.12. Craggie and rockie passages. Feurefull down-fals.

long without meat, and requested me so some as I had dired, to returne vnto him, because he de- ... fired to know other things of me. After I was come to our Tents, and had fearer dired the cames mellage vnto mee to pray mee to returne, and fo I was conficained to goothicher, and brought them with me which had fung Masse, and there we sung a Complen, as well as we could And the Prete with the Queene continually shewed exceeding great attentiuenesses

The Service being ended, he commanded the Tent of the Church to be taken downe, becan fe he meant to depart that night to paffe those bad paffages, which are on these mightie high Moun- Remoue at taines whereof we have spoken before, and so hee did : for at mid-night wee heard a great nove mid-night. of Horfes and Mules, and every body faying, The Negus marcheth. And forthwith wee put out 10 felues in order, and followed him. And when we came to the first passage, we were constravned with Lances to make our way behind and before vs, fo great was the turie and the throng, and the multitude of people which preffed vs behind. Wee traue led till wee over tooke the Kings Tents, which were pitched in the midft of those great Trenches, which are betweene the Riners before mentioned ; heere wee rested vntill mid-night, and rill the Trete beganne agains to march, and we with him : and before morning, we were gotten out of those ill passages. And we heard afterward, that the same night in those passages there perished very many men . women. Affes, Mules, and laden Oxen : and in this fecond paffage, called Aquafaghi, as wee have Horrible faid before, it was told mee that a great Lady being voon a Mule, beeing led by two of her Ser- down falk, mants, all of them being tyed together, fell downe from that great height, and were torne in

20 pieces before they came to the bottome : fo terrible and fearefull are those Rockes and downefals, that it feemes they goe downe to Hell, to him that beholder them. This was our jour- Offaues notabiney without keeping holy the Octave of Christmas, which in that Countrey is not observed, I ferued, have faid before, that the Court stayed in other places five or fixe dayes in removing, but at theie paffages they stayed three weekes, and the stuffe of the Prete was about a moneth in paffing, although they passed every day.

91. The eight and twentieth of December, \$ 520. we'drew neere vnto a Church which wee faw before, as we came into the Countrey, but we were not thereat, which is called S. Georger, Saint Georges vinder which they fet up the Pavilion of the Prete, and we lodged in our appointed place. The Church. next day very early, the Prete fent to call vs. and fignified vitto as that wee friend frethe

20 Church, which is great and all painted round about, the walls and paintings are very conuenient, where are many goodly Histories well set forth, and made in due proportions by a Dinetian, called Nicholas Brancaleon, of whom we spake before, and here his name is so put downe in writing, although in this Countrey they call him Marconius. The walls which are without the body of the Church, and meet under the conered circuit, which is like a Cloyffer, were all coursed from top to the bottome with whole pieces of Embroydered Cloth, of Vehuets, and o- Riches thereof ther rich Cloth of Silke. When we came into the gate of the open circuit, and were entring into the coursed circuit, they caused the Clothes to be lifted up, which were hanged over the principall gate, which feemed to bee covered over with plates, which at the first blush wee tooke to be of Gold, because they told vs fo, but when we came neerer; wee perceived, that they were 40 but plates of Siluer, but gilt ouer, and it was laid fo cunning as well vpon the gates, as in the Windowes, that it could not be mended.

The Cabeata, which is fo great a Lord, was the man that were with vs and thewed vs energy thing. And the Prese also was present, but enuironed with his Curtaines : yet when we passed by him he might see vs and we him. Whereupon when he saw vs, hee could not containe himfelfe, but needs he must send to know of vs, what we thought of that Church and of those paintings. We answered him, that they seemed vnto vs to bee things that belonged to a great Lord and King, which answere pleased him not a little. The roofe or covering of this Church is framed vpon thirtie fix Pillars of wood, which are very thicke, and as high as the Mafts of Gallies, and covered all over with Wainfoot, which are painted, like as all the wals round about.

After divers fashions, hoping that I should have beene dispatched, there were fetched out of the Church foure great and rich Canopies, which fo foone as I faw them, I greatly wondred at although before I had seene many great and rich ones in India, which doe shadow those Kings, Fourcich Cabut none of that greatneffe and richneffe, whereat they reioyced that brought them, and ranne nopics of flate, to tell it vnto the Prete, who fuddenly fent for me vnto him, and standing in the gate of his Pautlion with the Frankes, which remay ned in the Court, he willed them agains to be shewed vnto one in their presence, commanding me to view them well, and to tell him what I thought of them. I answered him, that they were exceeding faire, and that I neuer had seene in India. where many of the Kings vie them, neither fairer, nor richer. Then he commanded, that they should be set up on the ground against the Sunne, so that they made a shadow like vinto a Tent,

60 and willed them to tell me, that when he travelled , and would rest himselfe and his wife together, he rested himselfe under the shadow of one of those Canopies, and tooke his repast, and slept vnder the same. These Canopies might well be of the bignesse of a great Cart-wheele, to that ten men might well stand vinder the shadow of one of them, & were coursed all ouerwith Silk. After all these Questions and Answeres, hee sent to know what hee defired most to drinke, whether

Scriptute.

Merits of our

Lady for wo-

Bookes of

men.

Xxxxx

Diners Wines. Wine of Grapes or of Honey, or of Zauna, which is made of Barley: His travelling was Diners Wines. The manner of after this manner : he rode vncouered aloft, with a Crowne vpon his head, compafied with reddthe Pretexti- Curtaines, very long and high: onely behind him and on both fides, and he was in the midft. They which carryed the faid Curtains, were on the outfide of the fame, & bare the fame aloft wpon fmal Speares. Within the faid Curtaines goe fix Pages, which they call Lagameneos, which figuifieth. Pages of the head, because the Mule which the Prese rideth on, hath a very faire ornament about her bridle, which hath in the cheekes of the bridle, two Cordons of Silke with goodly Taffek and one of these Cordons, one Page holdeth on one fide, and another on the other fide, which lead the Mule, as it were by the head : then follow two other Pages likewife, one on the one fide and another on the other fide, which lay their hands on the necke of the Mule, and two follow after to in the same manner with their hands upon the buttockes, almost upon the Crouper. Without the Curtaines and before the Prete March twentie of the principall Pages in very good array, and before the faid Pages goe fixe Horses, very faire and richly furnished, each of

Curriers,

them being led by foure men, very well apparelled, to wit; two by the head, & two behind, with their hands youn the Crouper, in fuch fort as the Prete his Mule was led. And before thefe Horfes goe fixe Mules, fadled and very well furnished, and enery one of them likewise hauefoure men to lead them as the Horles were led. And before the faid Mules, goe twentie principall Gentlemen riding vpon other Mules, with their fine Serges * about their bodies. And then wee Portugals went before the faid Gentlemen, for this place was appointed vnto vs. Neither may any Footmen or Horsemen, either on horse-backe or vpon Mules approach 20 neere him by a great diffance, for there bee Curriers which alwayes runne before voon horfebacke, and if their Horses be tyred, they light and take others, which cause the people to fland Betudetes with out of the way, to that there is no bodie to be feene in the way. The Betudetes march with their Guard a great diffance out of the way, and one goeth on the one fide, and another on the other. at the least a Calceuer-shot distance off : and if the way be Champaigne, sometimes they goes mile and an halfe off, according to the qualitie of the Countrey. And if the way bee rockie and firait, and so continue any long space, and that it bee necessary that every man must passe that way, the faid Betudetes divide themselves a mile and an halfe alunder, and one goeth before. to wit, hee which is on the right hand, and hee on the left hand commeth behind, with each of which Officers may be about fixe thousand persons, and as I said before; with these men alwain 10 goe foure Lions chained with great Chaines, both before and behind. They march also which carrie the Churches and the Altar-stones, whereunto they doe great honour and reuerence. Another thing the Prese carryeth with him whitherfoeuer he goe, for hee neuer ftirreth without it. which are one hundred larres of Wine of Honey, and as many of Wine of Raifins, every one of which larres may containe fixe or feuen draughts of Wine, and they are as blacke as let. and are very smooth and finely made with a couer of Earth, and then stopped vp, and no man dare bee so hardie as to come neere or to take any of them without the Prese his licence. The carrie likewise one hundred Paniers painted ouer and closed, tull of Wheaten bread, and these came after the Prete, not farre diffant from him, and they carry them in a ranke, and they came one after another, that is to fay, first a larre, and then a Panier, and behind them came fixe men which are as it were Stewards of the house. And when they are come to the Prete his Paullion, they valade all these things, and carry them in, and afterward he lendeth some part thereof to whom he pleafeth.

ð. XIIII.

How the PRETE came to the Church of Machan Celacem and of the Procession where with they received him & Diners Messages: Their twelfth Baptisme of the AB V N A & Circumcision , Orders , Confectation of the Church and Translation of NAHV. Divers Questions and Discourses.

He first of Ianuary, 1521. we came vnto a great Church, which when wee came that way first, and passed neere the same, they would not suffer vs to see. The Church is called Machan Celacem, which signifieth, The Timite. Three miles before wee came at the Church, the Prete commanded eight Horses well furnithed to be given vnto vs, wherewith we should ride before him skirmishing, managing and turning our Horses far better then they could, whereat he took great delight. When we were come within a mile of the Church, there came forth an infinite multitude of people to receive vs, and 60 there were so many Crosses, Priests and Friers of divers Monasteries and Churches, that they could not be numbred, and to our judgement they were aboue thirtie thousand. And we thought that the Friers came from farre Countries, because in this Kingdome of Amera, there were no Monasteries, because all the great Churches are the burials of their Kings. There were about

two hundred with Miters, which are made like vnto great and high hoods of Silke. And like- Two hundred wile fixere foure Canopies of those great ones, which might well be rold, because they carried Mitred. them aloft about the people : but they were not fo faire and rich, as those of the Church of Saint George, All these Canopies belonged vnto Churches, where Kings were buried, because at their death they leaut the fame vnto them. This great multitude of people affembled, belonged partly to the Churches and Monasteries, and part of them were of the Countrey, which came to tee the Prete, who rid all open, whom they never faw ride fo before.

The Prete having lighted at the Church, and having made his Prayers, returned to his Pavia. The Prete rode lion, and straight-way sent for me, and willed that the Ambassadour and his Company should open. 10 goe to their lodging. Heere he demaunded of me, What I thought of this great meeting and enter-

tainment, which was given unto him by this great multitude, and whether the King of Portugall had any such great entertainment, and of so great number of people? And that this people were farre more then they seemed to be, because the most part of them were naked, and therefore appeared not to the bebolders so many as they are, and that our people in France are well apparelled, and in order, and seeme to be many more then they be; and that I should goe rest me with the Ambassadour, whom I met opon the way. Againe, hee fent me word, that this Church was newly built, and that there was nener any Maffe said in it, and that it was the Custome, that as many as entred thereimo, should Custome of ofgive some offering, and that the Ambassadour sould give his Weapons, and I should give my Cap teining in Churches

which I wore, and likewise each man should give somewhat. 94. The day following, the Prete fent vs word, that we should come and see the foresaid Description of Church, whither he was gone before. This Church is very great and high, and the Wals are of the Church, white stone, wrought with Iron Chizels, with very goodly worke, vpon which they lay no Transames, because they would not beare them, for the stones are not soyned one with another, nor feamed together, but onely laid one vpon another, without any Ligaments or firmenelle : and they freme very faire, to a man that knoweth not how they are framed within. The chiefe gate is made all of plates, as the gate of the Church of Saint George is, and beweene these platts are counterfer, stones, and lewels set with very good Pearles, all very well set in-About the wall of the principall gate, are two Pictures of our Lady: very reverendly, and well made, with two Angels, all crawne with Pentill. They fay, that a certaine Frier drew them 30 very huely, and I my telfe was acquainted with that Free. In this Church are three Iles built vpon fixe Columnes, and the faid Columnes are built of pieces of Free-stone, laid one woon another, and very well wrought: and the circuit without, and couered like a Cloyfter, is

built vpon fixe Columnes of Wood, as great as the Maits of Gallies, and very high, and vpon the faid Columnes, is Timber land very that, which maketh a very thicke Roofe; and doubt- Artleffe people leffe, it is a wonderfull thing to thinke, how these people which are without any great wit. were able to let up these Pillers of Wood which are so high. About the Church are fixteene Curtaineshanged, running which way so eneryou will, and they are as deepe as the whole Curtaines, piece is, which are Embroydered Cloathes, very rich and stately, and enery Curtaine is of se-40 uenteene pieces taffned together.

oc. The fourth of lanuary, the Prete lent vs word, that wee should remooue our Tent, and Prete lansi vour Church, and should cause it to bee carried a mile and an halte from thence, where they had feth to be bapmade a Poole like a Pond or Lake, fell of Water, wherein they went to baptize themselues vp- tiz donce a on twelfth day, because this is their custome to baptize thems. Jues every yeare, on the same day his whice s, that Christ was baptized. And so the next day being the Vigil, we went and saw a great circuit enclosed with an hedge in a very large field, and they sent to know, whether we would be baptized or no ! Hent them word, that the manner of our Church was to baptize vs once only in our Infancy.

All that night an exceeding great number of Priests, ceased not to sing, vntill the morning ouer the faid Lake, faying, that they bleffed the faid I ake. About midnight they beganne the baptisme, and they say (which I beleeve also to be true) that the first which was baptized, was the Prete, and nex vnto him the Patriarke, Abuna Marke, and the Queene the Prete his Wife, And these three persons had cloathes about their privities, but all the rest were starke naked, as they came into the world: And about the riting of the Sunne, when the baptisme was in the greatest heate, the Prete lent for me to come and fee him, I went thither, and stayed there till three of the clock, to see how they were baptized, and they placed me at an end of the said Lake, ouer against the Prete, and they were baptized in this manner.

The Lake hath a great bottome, and it is plaine, and cut into the ground, very right downe. The manner and square, and boorded round about, and in the bottome with Plankes, and ouer those Plankes, of the bay 60 it is courred with course Cotton-cloath, made like a Cert-cloath. The Water was conveyed tifme of these thitherby a little Gutter, fuch as they vie to Water Gardens withall, and ranne into the People. Lake through a Pine, at the mouth whereof hung a great Sacke, to straine the Water which ranne into the L. ke. And at my comming thither, the Water cealed running, because it was already foll of Holy Water, whereinto they had cast Orle. This Lake had on the one fide one or fixe teppes, and ouer against them about fixe yards distant, was made a little XXXXX 2

Three dip-

enclosure of wood, wherein stood the Prete, which had a Curtaine of blue Sindall beforehim. being halfe flit in twaine, and through this flit he might fee those that were baptized, for his face was turned toward the Lake: in which flood that old Father, the Schoole-mafter of the Prete. with whom I had conference on Christmas day at night. This old man was naked as hee came out of his Mothers wombe, and almost dead for cold, because that night was a great Frost, and hee flood in the water vp to the shoulders, for of that depth the Lake was where they entred. which were to be baptized, downe by the faid steps starke naked with their backes toward the Prete, and when they went out, they shewed their fore-parts as well women as men. These people came, neere to the faid Schoole-mafter, and he laid his hand vpon their heads, and thrust them downe thrice vnder the water; faying, in his owne Language: I baptize thee in the name of 10 the Father, of the Sonne, and of the Holy Ghost, croffing of them in flead of bleffing. And if they were little children, they went not downe all the faid fleps , but the faid Schoole-mafter came vnto them, and dipped them downe after the manner aforefaid. And as I haue faid. I flood on the other fide ouer against the Prete, so that when he saw their backes, I saw the foreparts of those which were baptized.

This Poole or Lake was compaffed and couered with Tents of divers colours, fo well placed and ordered with fuch store of boughes, of Orenge-trees, Limons, and Citrons, that it feemed to be an exceeding faire Garden. The great Tilt that hung ouer the faid Lake was very long, and

all full of red and blue crosses of Silke, which gaue a great grace thereunto.

Circumcifion

is vied in the

Countrey of

Prete lanni.

96. The next day after the baptisme, I went to visit the Abuna, whom till then I had nei- 20 ther spoken withall, nor seene, but onely at the Baptisme, beeing almost dead for cold, where I could not speake vnto him. He tooke exceeding pleasure at my visiting of him, and would not let mee kille his hand, but rather would have fallen downe vpon the ground to kille my feet. And being fet downe voon a Couch, the beginning of his speech was, that he gaue most heartie thankes to God for our meeting together, and that hee conceined exceeding great pleasure when those things were told him which I had so often spoken vnto Prete Ianni, and especially concerning that Baptisme, in that I had vecered the truth so freely in his presence, wherein hee would not believe the Abuna himselfe, because he alone was of that opinion, and that if he had me companion or two to helpe to backe him in aelling of the truth, that hee would draw the Prete from many faults and errours, wherein he and all his people were plunged. And while we so were talking of this matter, there came in a white Prieft, the Sonne of a Gibete, that is to fav.of a white man borne in this Countrey, and he asked me why we were not circumcifed, feeing that Christ was circumcized : I answered him, that it was true, that Christ was circumcifed, and that he would have it fo, because he would fulfill the Law which at that time was vsed, because hee would not be accused before the time for breaking of the Law, but that shortly after, hee commanded that Circumcifion should cease. This Priest forth-with replyed, that he was the Sonne of a Franke, and that his Father would not fuffer him to be circumcized, and that when he came to the age of twentie yeares after the death of his Father, on an Evening going to bed vncircumcifed, the next morning he found himselfe circumcifed : and how might this come to passe, if God would not have Circumcifion! I answered him, that this was a notable deceitifor though 40 it were granted that God had not forbid Circumcifion, yet hee was not fo worthy a person, that God would shew this Miracle vpon him, that is to say, of an imperfect man to make him perfect : and that if it were as he had faid, that going to bed whole, he was found the next morning circumcized, it might be the Deuill that had done the fame to doe him dishonour. The Abung, and as many as were in the house laughed exceedingly at this speech, and tooke great pleafure thereat : and this Priest afterward became an especiall friend to me and to all the Portugals, and came daily to heare my Masse.

Orders giuen to thoulands at once.

A Sermon.

needs make vsa little Banquet, and fent vnto our Tents good forc of Bread and Wine and one Oxe. The eighth of Ianuary, the faid Abuna, determined to give Orders, and I went thither to o fee the manner which hee vied in giuing of the fame; which was in this wife: A white Tent was erected in a great Champaigne field, where were affembled betweene five and fixe thouland persons to receive Orders. Hither came the Abuna, riding upon a Male, and my selfe was in his company with an infinite number of others. And fitting on his Mules backe in the midfl of that fo great Affembly, hee made, as it were, a Sermon in the Arabian Tongue, and one of his Priefts expounded it in the Abasson Language. I asked my Interpreter, what it was that the Abasso faid : he told me that he laid, that if any man there had two Wives or more, although any of them were dead, he should not become Priest, and if he did take Orders he did curse and excommune him with the curse of God.

After this the Abuna caused Wine and Fruits of the Countrey to bee brought in, and would

This speech being ended, hee sate him downe in a Chaire before the said Tent. and three 60 Priests sate downe before him v pon the ground, every man with his Booke, and certaine others which directed this businesse, caused all those which were to take Orders, to set downe on the ground vpon their heeles, and all of them flood in three very long rankes or allies, and enery ranke had one of those Priests which held the Bookes and examined them shortly, so that some

reade not past two words; and after this man went another Priest, with a Bason full of a white tincture, and with a plate made like vnto Seales dipped in the faid tincture, and with the fame Their manner they made a marke upon the bare of their right arme, which beeing done, they role from that dery note place; and went and late downe in the midft of the fields vpon certaine Hillockes of Earth, Priefly, where they that were examined must stand, and there were very few which went not oner this ther. This Examination being ended, the Abone went into his Tent and fate in a Chaire, and this Tent had two gates, through which they canfed all the Examinates to paffe, one after another, and as they were prefented before the Abana, comming in at the one gate itrait-waves, he layed his hand woon their heads, and faid certaine words which I underflood not.; and then east To fed out by the other gate; neither was there any one of them to whom this Ceremonie was not

Then he tooke a Booke in his hand, and read a great while on the fame, holding a little croffe of Iron in his hand, and made many fignes of the Croffe therewith vpon the whole Companie This ended, a Prieft went out of the gate with a Booke and read, as it might bee, the Epiftle or the Gospel, and strait-way the Abuna said a Masse, which continued no longer time, then a man Two bouland might thrice fay ouer the Pfalme of Miferere mei Deus : and firait-way he ministred the Com- three hundred munion to all those Priests which were Massing Priests, and were in number two thousand three fifties in Priests hundred fiftie fixe, for they make these Priests of the Masse by themselnes, and the Clerkes by themselues another day. And the Abuna told mee, that the Clerkes were ordayned to the de-

20 gree of Deacon, as Saint Stephen was. Yet I faw him make Clerkes and Priefts altogether in one day, and that at oftentimes, because hee made them and gaue them Orders, very often, and None but the alwayes in great numbers, because they come to him out of all the Kingdomes and Territories of Almacan gine the Prete, for there is none that can give Orders but he. They are not registred nor have any Orders. Letters of Testimonie or Certificate of their Orders: And because I have spoken of the number of two thouland three hundred fittie fixe, I could not have knowne the fame, vnleffe I had beene told it by him which had the charge to count them, and I thinke he told me true.

97. The next day being the ninth of Ianuarie, the Prote fent for me : When I was come vnto him he faid, that he understood that I had beene to see his Priests consecrated, and asked mee what I thought of them. I answered, that I had seene two things, which though they had bin 20 told me and confirmed by Oath, yet I would never have beleeved them, to wit, the multitude of the Clergie, the Croffes and Miters which were at the receining of his Highnesse, and the entertainment which he made them. The second, was this so great and infinite number of Priests. which received Orders altogether, and that he thought that Ceremonie was very well performed; but that the dishon-stie of the Priests wherein they came to take Orders, displexed mee not a little. Strait-way I was answered, that I needed not to maruell at any of these things; for as touching their meeting of him, there were no Priests that came thither, but onely those which belonged to the Churches of his Grand-father and Predecessor, which were builded in those parts,, and that they bare those Miters, Canopies, and Crosses which were left vnto thems and that the Priests which received Orders were but a few, in comparison of the number that 40 they were wont to be, for alwayes they are wont to make fine or fixe thouland, and that now they were so few, because they knew not of the comming of the Abuna, and that I should tell him what dishonestie I had seene: which was contrarie to the Order of the Church! I answered, that it feemed to mee a very dishonest and shamefull thing, that the Priests which were to bee admitted to the ministration of the Masse, and were to receive the bodie of Christ, should come

almost all naked, shewing their Prinities: and that Adam and Ene so soone as they sinned saw themselues naked, and when they were to appeare before God did hide themselues : and that these beeing to receive the Sacrament, which is much more, are not ashamed to show all their dishonestie, and that I had seene a Frier which was starke blind, which never had eyes, and another which was lame of his right hand, and foure or fine which were lame of their legs, to have received Orders of Priest-hood, which ought to have been found, and to have all their limmes 50 found and perfect. Suddenly hee fent me word againe, that he was highly pleased, that I had mar- No Pricts ked every thing particularly total him my opinion, that afterward thing smight be amended, faring that ought obec the would take ander for the Deixil, then then hould not asserted bee would take order for the Priests, that they should not goe naked, and that touching those which were mayined in lame, I foould conferre with Aiaz Raphael, which was present at this giving of Orders. This Ataz booic, Raphael, is that honourable Priest and great Lord, to whom wee were recommended when wee dist Raphael came first vnto the Court.

The tenth of Ianuarie, the Abuna made Clerkes. These are not examined, because they make them of all Ages, even children that are carryed in the armes and cannot speake, untill they bee fifteene yeares old, whiles yet they have no Wives, but if they have Wives they cannot bee Clerkes or nrecency yeares out, whites yet they hade no veries, on the Malle, while they bee Clerkes, may Children children. take Wiues, and so become Priests : for if they become Priests before they take Wiues, afterward they may not marry. The men beare the children in their armes, and cannot speake nor goe, because the women may not come within the Church. Their crying feemeth to bee like the crying of so many young Kids, because they are there without their Mothers, and are halfe

Xxxxx 3

Infancy and Literature admitted. Manner of making Clerkes.

flarued for hunger : for this Ceremony is not ended vntill night, and they are enforced to continue without eating or fucking, because they must receive the Communion. It is certainely knowne, that these little ones are not able to reade, and the great ones also can reade but little. And they make them after this fort. The Abana fitting in a Chaire, which is in a Tent nla-

ced in a Church, caused these Clerkes to passe along before, and having read a while in a Booke. he pulleth from each of their Temples a tuft of haire : then hee readeth a Booke, and cauferh them to passed y a second time, and to touch the Keies wherewith they open the gate of the Tent, and they put a Cloath vpon their heads, and at every one of thefe actions they must once passe by : and likewise another they put a blacke Earthen Dish in their hands, in stead of the page of anninewise annual of Ampullar to ferue at the Maffe, and at each of these Ceremo to meet they read a little while, which being ended, the Abson fath Maffe. And it is a fearfull thing to behold the danger which these lettle Infants suffer, which perforce they make to swallow downe the Communion, by powring water downe into their throats, as well because the Hoft is made of course Dough, as also by reason of their tender age, and the continual mourning

very Babesso receive the

Communion. which they make.

In the end, the Abuna prayed me to goe and dine with him at his Tent, and heere hee defired me to tell him, what I thought of this Ceremony, whereat I was present all the while, and had feene every thing particularly, and faid that the Prete had fent him word to talke with mee concerning this Ceremony : I faid, that his Ceremony liked me very well, But to admit Infants Abslie without new borne unto Orders, and great Lubbers without learning, me thought it unseemely to thrust Alles 20

an dessa three into the boufe of God. He answered mee, That God had sent him hither to tell the truth, and and twentie that he did nothing, but as He was commanded, and that the Prete had willed him to make all the (hildren Clerkes, and that they would learne in time to come, because he was now very old, and they wist not when they (hould have another Abuna, feeing this Countre) heretofore had beene three and with not meet not promise cours and the state of the stat they had fent none, and yet they had detained the Gold, and that now God had caused me to come thisher to tell them the truth, that this Country might speedly be promided of an Abuna, because he was not of any long life. After this, I went many times to fee thele Ceremonies, of giving Orders to these Priests and Clerkes, because every day in a manner they received Orders, in great multitudes, which came thither daily, and they observed not the Ember-weekes, nor the Lent. And if at any time there were any intermission of giuing these Orders, straight-way some would come vinto me, and take acquaintance of me, although I knew them not, befreehing mee for Gods fake, to pray the Abuna to give them Orders, because they dyed for hunger while they waited there : and I befought him in the Euening, and ftraight-way he commaunded the Tent to bee fet vp, to give Orders the next day following. And certainly, I neuer requested him, but immediatly he did the same, for he bare me exceeding good will, and tooke me as if I had beene his owne Brother. 98. The cause why this Countrey continued three and twentie yeares without an Abuna.

ciriacus affe-Sted to Rome. they lay was this; That in the time of the great Grand-father of this prefent King, whole name was Criacus, the Father of Alexander, which was the Father of Nabu, the Father of this present Prete lanni, the Abuna dyed: and the faid Cirracus stayed ten yeares, and would fend for none, faying; That he would take none from Alexandria, and that if none came from Rome, he would have none at all, and that he would rather have all the foules of his peopleto perift, then to receive an Abuna from the Countrey of Hereticks : and at the end of ten years he dyed, without having of any Abuna; and his Sonne Alexander flood flifly in the fame purpole, for the space of thirteene yeares. At length the people complained vnto him, saying, That now there were scarce any Priests or Clerkes remaining to serue the Churches, and that if they were decayed, the Churches also would grow to decay; and consequently, the Christian Faith. And the faid Alexander fent for an Abuna to Cairo, where at that time the Patriarke of of Alexandria remained, which fent him two, that the one might succeede the other, and both of them were living while wee were there. And during our aboad there, Abuna lacob dyed, which was to fucceed this man who now liveth: who told me, that he came into this Country fiftie five yeares past, and that he was as white and hoary-headed, as he was at that instant, and when he departed out of Cairo he was about fittie, or fine and fiftie yeares old, so that he thinketh he is about one hundred and ten yeares of age. And truly, he that beholdeth and confidereth

Age of the

Fewer lewith

him well, would take him to be no leffe. And farther he told me, that the Prete which fent for him, was a most Christian Prince, and that the Saturdaies were not kept holy as long as he lived, nor any of these Iewish Ceremonics were observed, and that they did eate Hogges Hesh, and flesh although it the throat were not cut: 60 for all these things belong vnto the old Law : and that it was not long, fince two Frankes came vnto this Court, to wit : one Venetian, called Nicholas Brancaleon; and one Portugall, called Peter de Conillan, which when they came into the Countrey, before they came into the Court, hegan to fail and keepe the customes of the Countrey, (for as yet in many places, the Saturday was

kept holy) and did not eare meates that were forbidden. The Priests and Friers feeing this, which tooke upon them to know the things continued in the Bible, much better then of any other Bookes; came to complaine to the Frete, faying; What thing is this, that their Frankes which now come from the Kingdomes of France, being both of them of fcuerall Countries, do observe the ancient customes of the Abyfines how then commaundeth this Abana, which is come from Alexandria, that we should observe those things which are not in our Bookes, and hereupon the Prete Linni forth-with commanded, that they should againe observe the ancient Hereare osustomes of the Abyfines. Abuna reported all thefe things vino me; giving many thankes to mitted pro-God for our erruall. This Abana lived in his Tent after this manner, (for I never how him in France, &c.

10 an house but once.) He sitteth continually upon a Conch; coursed with a faire Gloath, as the great Lords of this Country wie to doe. He hath his Containes about the Lord Couch, and likewife ouer the fame. His apparell is White, that is to fay a Made of most pure and fine Cotton Cloath which commeth out of India, where they call it Cacha ! and it is made like a Cardinals The habite of Cloake or Paniell, which is joyned and buttoned together on the break. He hath also a Scapo- Abana Marke. tall, which is likewise closed before, made of Blew Silke Chambler, and on his head a great . Scaperall. broad Miter made likewife of Blew Silke; Hee is, as I have faid, a very old man, of small stature, and bald : his Beard is very white, but fmall, and long in the midft; for in this Countrey the Church-men shaue not their Beards : he is very gracious in his speech and gestures, as any man may be : he neuer speaketh, but he gueth God thankes. When he goeth forth to the Tent

20 of the Prete, or to give holy Orders, he rideth upon a goodly Mule, being very well accompanied, as well with men riding vpon Mules, as others following him on foote; he carrieth a little Hispompe, Croffe of Silver in his hand, and they carrie three Croffes vpon states on each fide of him, which reach up higher then he is on his Mule. He carrieth with him whither focuer he goe, two high Canopies which are to be fet on foote, as great as those of the Prete, but not fo rich. Moreouer. foure men goe before him with Whips, which make the people give way on both fides : the ground is coursed whereforeer hee trauaileth with Children; Young men, Friers, and Priefts, which all runne crying after him. I enquired what they faid, and I was answered; that they

faid, May it please your Lordship to make to Clerkes, and God Grant you a long life. Confecention 99. The twelfth of January, 1921. was a very great allembly of Clerkes and Priests in the of the Church 30 faid Church, and they continued all that night with Singing and Muficke, and faid, That they Machan Colores did confecrate the same, wherein as yet no Masse had beene faid, but they faid it in another lifele Church which was nevre adiovning, wherein the Father of this Prete was buried, and that Canons. they would remoone and carrie him into this great Church, which he begunne in his life time, and his Sonne had finished, and that they were thirteene yeares finte he deceased, and on a Sunday in the morning, they faid Maffe there. This Church hath now at the first foundation thereof, about foure hundred Canons, with great revenues; but when the number shall increase, as it is fallen out in other Churches, they shall not have fusficient to sustaine themselves. The fifteenth of the faid moneth, wee were called for, and they caused vs to goe to the faid Church, where there were gathered together aboue two thousand Priests, and as many Clerkes, which Two thousand

40 were aftembled before the principall Porch of the great Church, and in the circuit which is like Priefts, and as a Cloyster, and the Prete stood compassed in his Curraines within a Clozet, which vieth to bee many Clerkes. placed upon the steppes of the principall gate, and all the Clergie stood before him, which faid along Seruice, with finging, muficke, dancing, and leaping. Which being ended, he caused all the people, and the Clergie, and vs, to goe forth of the Church, and they placed vs toward the North, willing vs not to firre from that place; and all the Clergie and people went to the little Church, where the Kings Father was buried, which also was towards the North, and therein Translation of entred as many as could stand. And as we flood heere, an exceeding great Procession in very the Kings body good order, beganne to passe betweene vs and the Church, and they carried the bones of the

good order, beganne to pane between the Patriarke Abuna Marke went in this Proceffion, being Queeness 50 very feeble, and two men held him vp vrider the armes, by reason of his old age. Then followed the Queenes, to wit, Queene Helena, the Prete his Mother, and the Queene his Wife, each of them under a blacke Paulion, in mourning wife, (for before they used white Paulions) and likewife all the people were clad in blacke cloath, weeping and howling with mightie cryes, faying; Abeto, Abeto, that is to fay, Our Lord, Our Lord. And they pronounced the fame with fo abrupt and pitifull a voyce, and with fo great abundance of teares, that they made all the mulcitude to weepe. The Coffin wherein the bones lay, was carried vnder a Paulion of Embroydered cloach of Gold, compassed about with Curtaines of Damaske, and so they entred into the Church by the fide-gate, where we flood, and as many people as the place would hold; and we went to this Ceremony at the Sunne ring, and returned to our lodging at night, by

100. Straight-way we were led into a Tent which was newly fet vp, and was placed on the backe fide of the great Church in that circuit, and it was very long and flat, and all the Roofe was couered with Crosses, made of Silke, like those of the Tent which was placed our the Lake, where they were baptized, and within it was dreffed with exceeding faire Tapiffries, fo

LIB.VII

a little for his fake, refreshing our selues, and discoursing of our private matters. And while we thus discoursed a good while, we saw comming in very good order, many larres of Wine, and a great basket of fine Bread, and great flore of meate botne in great Platters, made of black earth. very faire, and excellently wrought, which feemed to be of blacke Amber. The meate was made of divers forts of Flesh, dressed after fundry fashions, somewhat after our manner, amone

which, were Hennesall whole, great, and fat, fome fodden, and fome roafted and in other Platters came other Hens, which feemed to be Hens indeed, but were onely the skins, in such fort, that they had taken out the flesh and all the bones, with wonderfull diligence, so that the skinne was not broken in any part, but was perfectly whole, and then mineing the fiesh verie to fmall, and mingling it with certaine delicate Spices, they filled the same againe with it, which. as I hane faid, was perfectly whole, and wanted nothing but the necke and the feete, from the neather loynt downe-ward, neither could we at any time differne how they could get out the bones, or how they might flay them, and yet could perceine no rupture at all. We fed very well of these Hens, to our contentment, because they were so good and delicate. Then brought they in groffe and fat meate, fo handfomly dreft, that wee knew not whether it were fodden or roafled. Afterward certaine White-meates were brought in, in other Platters, and meats of other colours, made partly of flesh stamped, with the sinewes taken out, and part of Birds, and divers Fruits of the Countrey, and in some of them was store of Butter, in others Hennes fuet : of epery one of them we tafted, which feemed vnto vs very good and delicate : and we wondred how it was possible, that they should have so good Cookes in that Countrey, Among the Iarres 20 of the Wine of Raifins, which were all of that Earth like blacke Amber, there was one of

earth and Cry-

Crystall Glasse, with a great Bowle of Crystall, all gilded ouer, and another great Bowle of Siluer, Enamuled all ouer with foure exceeding fine fromes, which feemed to be Saphires let in the fame, standing in a square case, beset with many Rubies, and this Bowle was very faire and rich, When we had eaten as much as we thought good, the Prote fent vnto vs, requelting vs to fine and dance, and to recreate our felues after our owne manner.

Church fin-

101. The eight and twentieth of January, he willed vs to come vnto the great Church, and caused ws to be placed before his Curtaines, which were about the place of the steps, which are neere vuto the principall gate. Here was an infinite multitude of Clerkes, which, as they did at the mooung of his Fathers bones, did nought elfe but fing, dance, and leape, and in their leaping, did alwaies touch their feete with their hands, nint one foote, and then another : and when we had flayed there a good while, he fent to aske vs, whether they fung after this manner in our Countrey! We answered him, no : because our inging was more quiet and plaine, as well in voyces as in body: for we neither danced nor flirred a whit. He replyed! Seeing that our custome was such, whether we thought that his was ill done? We fent him word, that the things belonging vnto God, after what manner soener they be done, feemed alwaies to be wel done. This ceremonie being ended, they began to goe about the Church with fine and twentie Crosses, and fine and twentie Cenfers, carrying their Croffes in their left hands, as it were Standards, and the Cenfers in their right hands, cafting Incense vpon them without any spare. And vpon the steppes where we stood, were two great Latton Basons, gilded and wrought about, full of a kind of Inceale, fweeter then that which is brought into these parts; and as often as they passed by, they cast great quantity thereof into the Censers, and they which went about in Procession, were clad in very rich Copes, and Hoods, made after their fashion, and so were they which

102. The nine and twentieth of Ianuary, the Amballador and all the Frankes (whereof fome were come to this Court before vs) with all his Company, went to visite the Abana Marke, because he had not as yet spoken with him. We found him as before, sitting upon a Couch. The Ambaffadour would have kiffed his hand, but he would not fuffer him, but gave him the Croffe to kiffe, which he alwaies carried in his hand, and so he did to all the rest. As soone as we were 50 fet, the Ambassadour said, that hee was come to visite him in the name of the Grand Captaine, and prayed him to pardon him, that hee came no fooner to him, because they would not suffer him to visite any body. The Abuna answered him, that he ought not to marvaile thereat, for it was the cultome of that Court, not to fuffer any stranger to goe vnto any mans house, and that this was not by the confent of the Prete, which was a good and godly man, but of the Courtiers which are malicious. The Ambaffadour told him, that the King of Portugall was informed of his bounty and holineffe, by his Brother Matthew, and also by others, and that therefore he befought him to keepe the Prete Ianni constant and immutable in this enterprize, of chasing and destroying of the Moores. The Abuna answered, That he was no Saint, but a poore Sinner, and that Matthew was none of his Brother, but was a Merchant, and his friend, and although hee 60 came with lies, yet was it manifest, that his comming was ordained by God, seeing it turned to fo good feruice and profite, &c.

CHAP.S.S.IS. The Storie of Peter de Couillan: His life in his rough.

à. X V.

A Discourse of PETER COVILLAN: Of the PRETES gifts and presents. and the Portugals quarrels, and their licence to depart out of the Countrey.

Hereas I have spoken often in this Booke of Peter de Comillan Persughez, being The Storie of an honourable person, and of great credite with Prete Ianni, and all the Court, Peter Conillanit is conuenient that I should declare how he came into this Countrey, and

the cause thereof, as he hath oftentimes told me himselfe. But first I will say, that he is my spirituall sonne, and that I have oftentimes confessed him , because in three and thirtie yeeres while he lived in this Countrey, he told me that he neuer was confessed, because Confession the custome here is not to keepe that secret which is vetered in confession, and that therefore not vied here; he went into the Church, when he confessed his sinnes vnto God. His beginning was thus : he was borne in the Towne of Cosillan in the Kingdome of Portugall, and being a boy, he went into His life in his

Castile, and gat into the service of Don Alfonso, Duke of Simile; and when the warre began be- youth. tweene Portugall and Castile, heereturned home with Don lobn de Gusman, brother to the laid Duke, which placed him in the house of Alfonso King of Portugall, who for his valour presently 20 made him a man at Armes, and hee was continually in that warre, and served also abroad in France. After the death of King Alfonso, he was one of the Guard of the King Don lohn his tonne, vntill the time of the treasons, when he fent him into Cafhie, because hee spake the Cafilian Tongue very well, to spie out who were those Gentlemen of his Subjects, which practifed there against him. And returning out of Castile, he was sent into Barbarie, where he Hayed a time, and learned the Arabian Tongue, and was afterward fent to conclude a Peace with the King of Tremizen: and being returned, he was fent againe to the King Amoli bela gegi, which restored the bones of the Infant Don Fernando. At his returne he found, that the King Don Iohn defiring by all meanes that his ships should find out the Spiceries, had determined to fend by land certaine men to discouer as much as they might. And Alfonfo de Paina was choien for Alfonfo de Paina 30 this enterprise, a Citizen of Castle Blanco, a very skilfull man, and very expert in the Arabian

When Peter de Conillan was returned, King John called him vnto him, and told him fecretly, That having alwayes knowne him loyall and his faithfull feruant, and readie to doe his Maiestie good service, seeing he vnderstood the Arabian tongue, he purposed to send him, with another P.Co., sente companion, to discover and searne where Prete land dwele, and wheesher his Territories reached vnto the Sea, and where the Pepper and Cinamon grew, and other forts of Spicerie, which Spices and were brought vnto the Citie of Vence from the Countries of the Moores; feeing hee had fent Country, for this purpose one of the House of Monterio, and one Frier Anthony of Lubon Prior of Porta de Ferro, which could not paffe the Citie of Ierufalen, faying, That it was impossible to tra-40 uell this way without vnderstanding the Arabian tongue, and therefore feeing he vnderstood the fame well, hee prayed him to under-take this enterprize, to doe him this fo principall feruice, promiting to reward him in such fort, that he should be great in his Kingdome, and all his Posteritie should alwayes live contented. Peter answered him, That he kissed his Maiesties hands for the great fanour which he had done him, but that he was forry, that his wifedome and fufficiencie was not answerable to the great defire he had to serue his Highnesse, and yet neuerthelesse,

as his faithfull feruant he accepted this meffage with all his heart. And foin the yeere 1487, the feuenth of May, they were both dispatched in Saint Arren, the His journey. King Don Emanuel alwayes there prefent, which at that time was but Duke, and they gaue them a Sea-Card, taken out of a generall Map of the World, at the making whereof was the Li-50 centiate Calzadalla, Bishop of Viseo; and the Doctor Malter Roderigo, inhabitant of Tietre Nere; and the Doctor Mafter Morfes, which at that time was a Iew : and all this worke was done very fecretly in the house of Peter de Aleazona, and all the forenamed perfons shewed the vttermost of their knowledge, as though they should have beene Commanders in the Discouerie, of finding out the Countries from whence the Spices come, and as though one of them should have gone into Ethiopia to difcorer the Countrey of Prete lanni, and as though in those Seas there A consultation had beene some knowledge of a passage into our Westerne Seas; because the said Doctors said, for the seeking they had found some memoriall of that matter. And for the charges of them both, the King ap- out of the pointed foure hundred Cruzadoes, which were given them out of the Treasurie of the Garden of Almarin : and (as I have faid) the King Emanuel was alwayes prefent, who at that time was 60 Duke. Befides this, the King gaue them a Letter of credit in all parts of the Leuant, that if they The small befell into any necessitie or perill, they might be succoured and aided thereby. One halfe of these gunning of the

to Bartholmew Marchioni a Florentine, to be payed them in Naples. And having received the Kings bleffing, they departed from Lisbon, and came vnto Barçelona

TOOL

foure hundred Cruzadoes, they defired to have in readie money, and the other halfe they gave neffe in the

on Corosa Christi day, and thence vnto Naples on Saint Johns day; when their Bills of Fy change were payed them, by the Sonne of Cosmo de Medices. From Naples they went vato the He of Rhoass, and here they found two Portugall Knights, the one called Frier Gonfalno, and the other Frier Fernando, in whose house they lodged; and after certaine dayes, they tooke their voyage for Alexandria, in a thip of Bartholmen de Paredez; having first bought many larres of Honey to shew that they were Merchants. When they were come to Alexandria, they both fell grieucusiv ficke of an ague; and the Cadi tooke all their Honey from them, supposing they would have dyed. But being recovered, they were payed as they would themselves, and having bought fundrie forts of merchandize, they went to Cairo, where they flayed till they found companie of certaine Moores, called Magabrini, of the Kingdome of Fez and Tremizen , which to went to Aden, and in their companie they went by Land to Tor; where taking thip, they failed to Smachen, upon the Coast of the Abyfins, and from thence unto Aden. And because it was the time of the Monfons or Motions, when those Seas cannot be failed, they divided them. felues the one from the other, and Alfonfo passed into Ethiopia, and Peter made his choice togoe: into India, as the time ferued him for to doe. And they agreed together, to meete at a certayne time in the Citie of Cairo, that they might be able to aductize the King of their discourrie. Peter de Couillan, when time ferued, tooke shipping, and failed directly to Cananar, and passed

thence to Calecut, and faw the great quantitie of Ginger and Pepper which grow there, and

underflood, that the Cloues and Cinamon were brought thither from farre Countries. Then he

went toward Goa, and palled thence to the Ile of Ormuz, and having informed himfel'e of cer- 20

W ereupon he determined to returne into Portugall : but it pleafed God, that two Ienes.

Calicut.

Cairo.

discouer the Seas, on the Ethiopia. Mada: 4fc.ir. or the lie of the Moone Aden and Tor. P.ina dead.

tayne other thing ., he came in a flip toward the Red Sea. Hee landed at Zeila, and with cer-The chiefe end tayne M: rchants, which were Moores, he trauelled those Seas of Ethiopia, which were shewed of Courter his him at Lisbon in a Sea Chare, to the intent hee should vie all his industrie to discouer them. And woyage, was to he went fo faire, that he came vnto the Towne of Cefala, where he learned of the Mariners and certayne Arabians, that the faid Coast might be failed all along toward the West, and that they knew no end thereot, and that there was a great He very rich, which was about nine hundred miles in length, which they call, The He of the Moone. And having understood these things, being very glad thereof, he determined to returne vnto Cairo, and to he came backe to Zeila, and from thence passed to Aden, and then to Tor, and lastly to Cairo, where he stayed a great time. wayting for Alfonfo de Paina, and at length, had newes that he was dead.

> which went to leeke him, by good lucke found him, and deliuered him Letters from the King of Portugall. One of their Jewes was called, Rabbi Abraham, borne in Beggian. The others name was loseph de Lamego, and was a * Shoo-maker. These having beene before in Persia and in Bagades, told the King many great matters, which they had learned concerning the Spiceries. and the riches which were found in the He of Ormuz, wherof the King conceined great pleafure. and commanded them to returne thither agains to fee the fame themselves; but first, that they should tecke out Peter de Covillan , and Alfonso de Passa , which hee knew were determined to meet together at a time appointed in Carro. The contents of the Kines Letters were , that if all the turnes given them in commission, were fearched out by them, then they should returne, an because her would reward them; but if they were not all discovered, that they should fend him particular information of those things that they had seene, and then should doe their best endeauour to fearch out the rest, and aboue all things, to discouer the Countrey of Prete lanni, and to cause Rabbi Abraham to see the He of Ormuz. For which cause, Peter de Conillan, purposed to aduertife the King of all which hee had feene along the Coast of Calicue, touching the Spiceries and of Ormuz, and of the Coast of Ethiopia, and of Cefala, and of the great Iland of the Moone, concluding , that his thips which traded into Guinea , fayling along the Coast , and feeking the Coast of that Iland, a d of Cefala, might safily enter into their Easterne Seas, and fall upon this Coaft of Calieut, for all along there was Sea: he had understood, and that he would return with Rabbi Abraham to Ormuz, and after his returne he would feeke out Prete Janni, whose Countrey 50 firetched vnto the red Sea.

to Prete Alex-

going againe to Ormuz, and returning to Aden, hee willed him to goe and carrie newes to the King that hee had feene the He of Ormaz with his owne eyes. And himfelfe passing into Ethio-His comming pia, came into the Court of Prete lanni, which at that time was not farre from Zeila. And hauing prefented his Letters vinto him , who at that time was called Alexander, hee was very courteoully entertained, and had great honour done vnto him, and was promifed that he should speedily be dispatched. But in the meane while, he departed this life, and Naha his brother succreded in his flead, which faw him, and made very much of him, but would never give him leane to depart. Afterward Nabu died allo , and his fonne Danid incceeded him, which raigneth 60 at this prefent, which would not fuffer him to depart, faying, that hee came not thither in his time, and that if his Predeceffors had given him to great Lands and Revenues he ought to enjoy them, and to lefe none of them : and therefore, feeing they had not given him licence, neither might he give him leave to depart; and so he remained still in the Countrey; and they gave him

And with these Letters, he dispatched lofeph de Lamego the Iew. And he and the other lew

a wife, with very great riches and possessions, by whom he had children, whom we also faw. And in our time, when he faw that we would depart, he was exceeding defirous to returne into his Countrey, and went to crave leave of the Prete, and we with him, and were very inflant on his behalfe, and befought him very earnestly, yet for all that wee could not obtain leave. Hee is a man of great spirit and wit, and of his qualitie hee hath not the like in all the Court, and can speake all the Languages, as well of the Christians as of the Moores, Geniles, and Abessiss and of all things which hee bath knowne and feene, hee can yeeld as particular account, as if they were present. And therefore he is very gracious with the Prete, and all the Court,

104. Returning to our Voyage, or rather to our Hiftorie; The dayes following, the Secreta-10 ries crafed not to write the Letters, which wer were to carrie with vs to the King and to the The vicof write grand Captaine, and they bestowed much time and labour in making them: for their manner ting was not in grand Captaine, and they construct index and mentages, are all done by word their demands, answers, and messages, are all done by word these dayer, of mouth. And while we were there, they beganne by little and little to learne to write : and when they wrote, they alwaies held before them the Epiffles of Saint Paul, of Saint Peter, and of Saint James; and those which studied in them, were taken for the most learned and wife among them. They wrote the Letters to the King in three Languages. The Aballin, the Arabian, and the Portugall; and after the fame manner were the Letters made vnto the Grand Captaine. The Grand Betweete comming voto vs, which is the Lord that flandeth on his left hand. brought mee a Croffe of Silver, and a passing faire Staffe wrought with inlayd worke, saving, Giffe. 20 that the Prete fent methefe things in token of the government which he had given mee in the Iles of the red Sea: I gaue his Highnesse thankes in the best manner that I could. There came another message from the Prete, that he had given order that thirtie Mules (hould be given vnto vs to carrie our goods. And moreover, that he had fent thirtie ounces of Gold to the Ambassa- The Prefere dour, and fiftie for his companie; and that George , and those which were with him , had recei- which Prets ued their part; and withall, that he had fent one hundred loads of Meale, and as many hornes of Janni fent the Wine of Honey, to ferue vs in our Voyage, and willed that we should not trouble the poore for his part.

Hushandmen by the way, because he was enformed, that in our committee as he can be for his part. Husbandmen by the way, because he was enformed, that in our comming to the Court we had wasted the Countrey through which we trauelled, and that certaine Captaines were appointed for vs, which should conduct vs from place to place, enen to the Sea side, to wit, that every one

30 should furnish vs through their Countreyes with all things necessarie : and forthwith they appointed vs to a sonne of the Cabeara, because we were to travell a great way through his fathers Territories, which are those where the great Church standeth, wherein the bones of the Prese his father were layd: which Church (as I have faid) hath foure hundred Canons, and ouer the faid Canons there is a sonne of the faid Cabeata, which is a Licanate, that is to fay, The head ouer all the rest of the heads.

105. This day at evening, were thirtie ounces of Gold brought to our Tent for the Ambaffadour, and fiftie for vs, and a great Crowne of Gold and Silver which was the Crowne of Prete Iami: and it was not fo faire for the worth thereof as for the bigneffe, and it was in a round Chift lined with Cloth , and without with Leather , and it was presented by Abdenago , the 40 Captaine of the Pages, which faid voto the Ambassadour, that the Prete fest that Crome to the The present

King of Portugall, and that he should say unto him, that a Crowne is not wont to be taken from the which Prete King of Portugall, and that he journal pay once mm, journ a coverne is not specify to the stage from the wincertie. Fathers head, also methy for the Sonne: and that he was hes Sonne, and that he had also the first him the fame to his owne head to fend it to the King of but the King of a the most person that the stage of the the King of a the most person thing that he had a that inflate, offering him at the feature, so, and section; as exceeding well of Men as of Gold, and Viltuals, which he flowed fland to need of for his twentyle and little, and generalize. for the Warres which he would make against the Moores in these parts of the red Sea, enen unto Ie-

The first day of Lent, wee beganne our Voyage, and the sonne of the Cabeata went with vs. through whose Countreyes we were to passe, and Abdenago Captaine of the Pages; for, after- There was a 50 ward we were to passe through his Territories. And we transled the next day, farred listant quarrell twist one companie from the other, vntill we came to Manadeli, a Towne in the Kingdome of Ti- Brog and the gremahon.

106. Being come to this Towne of Manadel, which is wholly inhabited by Moores, who had wounded are peaceable Tributaries to the Prete: and one Stephen Pagliarse, as it feemeth, fell out with a the Factor, Moore, which strooke out two of his teeth, and certaine of our people comming running this Manadeli. ther at the noise of this garboile, they brake one of our mens heads with a stone. Abdenago tan downe, and caused certaine of these Moores to bee apprehended, which had done the harme: but because it was night, there was nothing else done. The next day he sent vs word to come vnto the place where he held theie two Moores prisoners, and caused vs to fit downe on the Manner of

graffe : and hee fate downe likewife , leaning with his shoulders against his Chaire. And there instice. causing the priloners to be brought, he began after their manner to demand Gold of them. Then he caused them to be stripped and cruelly beaten, demanding how much they would give vs: they began to promise one ounce of Gold, two, and three; but still beating of them, they asked how much they would give ; at length they came to feuen ounces, and herewithall they ceafed

Ed us. One of the

Moores be-

A Court cu-

headed.

to beat them, and the Gold was given to those that were hurt, and the parties which were beato west them, and the Open and Burns. Wee went on still on our Voyage vinto Barna, where wee lodged, when we came into this Countrey. While wee flayed here a long while, there came a Metienger of the Prete, and one of the Moores which were beaten with him, with the head of the other, faying vnto vs, that the Prete would needs understand and examine the whole matter concerning those Moores, for the hurt which they had done vnto the Poringals, and that he had caufed his head to be cut off which he found to have done the wrong, the which he had fent vs. that we might be affured of the trueth, and might know whether that were it or no: and the other which hee had not found in fault, hee had alfo fent vs; and that wee might doe with him what we thought good, either kill him, or free him, or make him a Slaue.

107. Two Great men were fent to vs from the Court, which feeing the enmitte and rancour that was betwixt the Ambaffadour and Bren, which came from words to blowes, they wish not what course to take concerning our matter, seeing it is a custome in that Conutrey, that no great personage may goe from the Court without licence, nor come to the Court wilesse he be called for : therefore the faid Lord flood in doubt, what they should doe concerning vs; because on are particulars of the Am- the one fide, they durit not leave vs; and on the other fide, to bring vs to the Court in fuch great harsotine aun- the one noe, they dear for, they feared they might incurre some great punishment; yet at length, fulnetie against they choic rather to returne to the Court, although they should suffer some great punishment.

108. These Noblemen having considered that the Monson was past, wherein the grand Captaine was to come for vs, and that they could not paifie vs, determined to carrie vs backe to the Court: and we let forward altegether with the Franke, and as we came to the Towneof 20 Bacinete, before mentioned, whither the fame of our falling out was come, all the Countrevpeople put themselues in Armes, and would not suffer vs to palle, and such numbers of Friers came downe an hill, with Bowes, Arrowes, and States, that they feemed to be flocks of Sheep and here we had a great skirmilh, and many of both fides were wounded, howbeit wee beat them backe, and made them runne away. The aforefaid Noblemen, while we were lodged here. put the place to the facke, as if they had beene Moores, and tooke away their Barley, Hens, Capons, Sheepe, and whatfoeuer they found in the houses. And departing from hence, we trauelled in two companies; to wit, George de Bren, and all those that were with him; and the Frier, and we with the Ambassadour, and the Lords, Andrugaz and Garucta, and wee cameto Manadeli, where they wounded our men , and here we found the Moore which fled from the Amballadour, who was nothing at all afraid: and having past two miles beyond this place, we met with Barnagaffo, which came from the Court, and brought order from the Prete, what the faid Lords should doe with vs. Which while we fought to know, we allembled all together in a Corne-field under a great Tree, where the faid Lords were highly rebuked of Barnagaffo, because of our returning without licence, saying, that they should goe to the Court, and receive their punishment there. Then he began to crie out voon the Ambassadour, and George de Bren, commanding the Ambassadour to give him the Crowne and the Letters, which he carried vnto the King and the Grand Captaine. The Ambassadour and George de Bren vttered very vncimil and difhonest speeches one against another : for which cause the Barnagasso committed vs to cer- 40 taine Captaines, to conduct vs leuerally one from the other, in fuch fort as wee came to that place, and so we returned with him toward his Territories. By this time the Winter was begun, which was exceeding terrible and cruell with huge raine. Here the Authour ceaseth to speake any more of his Voyage.

Of the time and day when their Lent beginneth in the Countrey of PRETE IANNI and strange abstinences, and other bodily exercises, with other their holies. of the Troglodites, and Goraifes.

Ethiopian Lent, 109. long and firide.

N the Country of Prete Lami, they beginne their Lent in the Munday after
Sexagefima, which isten dayes before our Shrouetide; and after the day of
the Purification is pail, the Prietts, Friers, and Secular men generally obfered
a great Fail for three dayes, and they fay, they doe fail the penance of the Grant

tie of Ninine. And many Friers eate not about once in these three dayes, and then they cate but Herbs without Bread: and they fay, that there are many women, which then will not give fucke to their children past once a day. The generall Fast of the Lent is Bread and Water; for although fome would eate Fish, yet they could not have it, because they have not the Sea neere 60 them. In the Rivers there is great abundance of Fish, which are very good, but they know not how to take them. They eate no Milke nor Butter, neither drinke Wine of Grapes, nor of Honey; but their common drinke is of Zauna, which is made of Barley, or of Millet, or of Aguza: for of each of these Graines they make a senerall Wine, which in taste is like vinto Ale.

CHAP.5. S.16. Senere fasting and abstinence. Strange kind of penance.

There are also many Friers, which for denotions sake eate no bread all the Lent, and others all the years, and all their life time.

As I went on a time with the Ambaffadour toward the Court, in a place called Immamora. a Immamora. Frier fell into our companie; and because I would pleasure him, I caused him to ride vpon a Mule. and lodged him in my Tent. The first day, I invited him to eate with me, because it was Euen- The fasting tile and supper time, and he excused himselfe, that he had no built to eate. In the meane space, and abstinence tide and supper time, and neextured minitary with him to receive orders) came with Agricoret, which for the Nouices (fixe or feuen of which went with him to receive orders) came with Agricoret, which for which are Herbs of that Countrey, and gaue him an handfull without Sale, or Oyle, or any o- Lone. ther mixture, and those he cate alone without Bread or any thing else. Whereof when I had af-

10 ked the faid Nouices, they told methat they never yied to eate any bread. When I doubted of this, I cauled him diligently to be watched night and day; for, on the day he went on foot by my Mules side like voto a Lackey, and on the night he slept by my side; and lay on the ground in his apparell, and I alwaies faw him eate Herbs called Agriones and Rabafas, and when they Whohathrecould find none, sometimes he tooke Mallowes and Nettles, and when they passed by any Mo- quired these nasterie, he sent the Nouices to gather some Garden-herb, and if they found none, the Noui- things at your ces brought him Lentiles, to long fleeped in a gourd of water, that they began to grow, and he hands? fed of them : which I would needs tafte of, and found them to be the worlt meat in the world, This man trauelled thirtie dayes with vs vnto the Court, and afterward flaved three weekes with vs in our Tent, and neuer cate any thing elfe but the things aforefaid. Afterward I faw

20 him in the Towne of Caxumo, where the Prete caused vs to stay eight moneths, and when hee understood that I was there, he came to visite me, and brought me certaine Limons. Hee wore an habite of Leather without fleeues, and his armes were naked; whereas I embraced him , by chance I thrust one of my hands under his arme, and found that hee had about him a girdle of Iron of foure fingers broad, and I led him by the hand into our chamber, and shewed him to Peter Lopez, my coufin, and wee faw the faid girdle, which was ioyned the one end with the other, with certaine points, as if they had beene to peg in a piece of wood"; and this "Camelaria da girdle was faffined upon his fiesh : and the faid Frier tooke it in very ill part, and feemed ficcare will legal. as though hee had received great wrong, and fuddenly departed, so that wee never could fee

30 After this, we faw many other Friers which worethe like girdles of Iron in the Lent . And we heard fay, that there were others also, which during all the time of Lent, did neuer sit, but Very strange alwaies flood veright. When we heard that there was one of thele in a Cane fixe miles off, we nance rode thither, and found him in a frame made of wood; of that bignesse, that he only might stand within it. And it looked like an old Chift without a court, and his hips were befinedred with Chalke and Oxe-dung, and where his buttocks floody he had an open place three fingers broad: A frame to he had likewife another open place where his knees touched, and before him hee had a little fland in wirk. Deske of wood, whereon lay a Booke. His habite was an Haire-cloth, made of the haire of an outfitting. Oxe tayle, and underneath the same, upon his flesh he wore an Iron girdle like to that about

faid, and he shewed vs the same willingly. In another Caue adioyning, dwelt two young little 40 Nouices, which prouided him victuals, which was nothing but Herbs, and for this our vifiration, he became our great friend. These Caues seemed to have beene made in old time to doe the like penance; for there were Graues in them,

In the Towne of Barna, in another Lient, I saw two Friers in the Church of the said Towne, Supererogathat is to fay, without the Church gate, which were in the like Tabernacles, one on the one tion, if not fide of the Church , and another on the other fide , which did eate the faid Herbes, and freeped fuper-arroga-Lentiles, and I went to fee them often times , wherewith they feemed highly to be pleafed; tion. Obediand if I went not to them, they fent to visite me, and they wore voon their fiesh a Sack-cloth, then sactifies, and a girdle of Iron. And it was told mee, that one of them was a kiniman of the Prete; and they continued in this persance vntill Easter day, and when Masse was sing, they went out of

so the fame. Having heard report, that in the aforefaid Towne of Caxamo, every Wednesday and Friday Standing in in the Lent, many Friers, Priefts, and Nons flood all night in the water up to the necke, when water, like 1860 we could not be pertiwaded to believe the fame, lohn Scolaro , my coulin Peter Lopez , and I, thus his Phawent thither on a Wednesday at night, and were associed, beholding to great a multitude of rife. them, which were in the water up to the necke, and it was told vs , that they were Canons, and the wives also of Canons, with Friers and Nuns, and there were feats of stone made by the waters fide, and where the water was shallow, there was one stone, whereupon they fate vntill the water reached up to their necke, and if the water were more deepe, they layed another

stone there, and so all the faid Lake was fall of people, which came from all the Country 60 round about ; and in this time of Lenr, there are great frofts and cold in the night. And having Froft and cold, talked with Peter de Couillan, concerning this matter, he affured me, that they vied to observe this custome in all the Dominions of the Prese, and also, that there bee many which doe not onely eate no bread all that time, but also went into mighty Forrests, and into certaine mon-

Going into Penance.

frous deepe Valleyes, lying betweene exceeding high Mountaines, where they may finde water, whereas no other people come, and there they doe their Penance all the time of Lentand

Forrests and for proofe hereof. Valleyes for

I was on a time with the Prese, in a Towne called Dara, which is neere those great and deep Trenches (whereof I have spoken before) into the which, a great River falleth downe head long from an high Mountaine into a Bottome, and the water of this River, breaking in the Ayre, became as white as Snow. As we flood aloft, Peter de Couillan shewed mee a Caue in this Bottome, which we could hardly difcerne, and faid, that in the fame there was a Monke which they held for a Saint, and under this Caue, there feemed to bee a Garden : On the fide of this Bottome, and not farreoff, hee shewed mee such another Caue, wherein a white Man was to dead, which was knowne to have beene twenty yeeres in that Defart, and that the time of his death was not knowne. Onely when they faw him no more in this Mountaine, they were to fee his lodging or Caue, and they found it closed vp on the infide with a good Wall . fo that none might goe in or out thereat : and the Prete being advertised hereof, commanded, that by no meanes it should be opened or touched.

The generall faft in lent of Friers and Number Queene Helena care but

thrice in the wecke. Customes of

Tigrai. Polygamie, Priests also doe obserue, is to eate once, from two dayes to two dayes, and that alwayes in the night time. They fait not on Sundayes : The like doe many old Women when they are going out of the world; and so they reported that Queene Helena did, as often as shee fasted at any time in the veere, that thee did not rate about thrice in the weeke; to wit, on Tueflay, Thuri. day, and Saturday. In the Kingdome of Tigrai, which is a Kingdome subject to Barnagaffo, and in the Kingdome of Tigremahon, every body eateth flesh in the Lent, on Saturday and Sunday, and they kill more Oxen on these two dayes, then in all the yeere beside. And if they will marry their first or second Wife, they marry them the Thursday before our Shrouetide, for vp. on their marriage they have licence to eate Flesh, Milke, and Butter, for two moneths space, at what time foeuer they will. And therefore, that they may cate the fame, they marry Wines, and drinke Wine. In all the other Territories, Kingdomes, and Signitories, they fast all the Lem, # well areat as small, Men as Women, Male-children as Female, without breaking the same in any point.

110. The generall fast in Lent, which the most part of the Friers and Nunnes, and the

and fo they doe almost all the Aduent. Palmefunday.

On Palme-Sunday they fay their Service after this manner : They beginne to fay Mattin m about Mid-night, and they continue their finging and dancing; carrying painted Images vncouered in their hands, vntill broaddaggand at the houre of Prime, they all get boughes and hold them in their hands at the Gate, for the Women and Lay-men may not come into the Church. and the Priests stand singing in the Church, with boughs in their hands, and sing very loud, making oftentimes the figne of the Crosse, with the said Boughs, and going about without the Church, they come vnto the principall Gare, into which, fixe or feuen of them enter, as we are wont to doe, which they that, and he tlands without which is to fay Maffe, and they fing both within and without the Church, as wee does and then het which flood without, com-Weeke before meth in and fayeth Maffe, and ginerh the Communion vnto all. On the holy Weeke or Weeke before Eafter . no Maffe is faid . Jave on Thursday and Saturday . And their ordinary custome, 40 which all Noblemen and Gentlemen vie at all times in the yeere, of faluting one another, is: When they meete together once a day, they kille their shoulders, and embrace one another, and one killeth the right shoulder, and the other the left. These faintations are not yied this weeks, but when they doe meete, they speake not one to another, but passe by without lifting up their eyes; and men of any quality, are apparelled all in Blacke or in Blew, and they doe no kind of works, but all the whole day is frent in great depotions, and finging in the Churches, and alwayes there is no Candle lighted.

Silance Mandy-thurf-

Cultome of

Good-Friday.

Of their great lame tation and beating one another, voon Good-Friday at

On Good Friday about noone, they trim up the Churches according to their abilitieand riches, for there be some Churches which are hanged all with cloth of gold and crimton, and chiefely, they decke up the principal Gate, because there is the flanding place of all the people, and they hang vp a Crucifixe vpon the Cloth, made of printed Paper, and ouer the fame 152 little Curtaine which couereth it, and they fing all night and all day, and reade the Pation; which being done, they vncouer the Crucifixe, and ftraightway all the people fall profirate on the ground, beating one another with Wandes, and Cuffes, and Piles I with great fury, jowling their heads one against another, and also against the Wall and make so bitter mourning, that any heart of Fline would bee mouned to teares with pure denotion. This lamentation and forrow continueth two houres at the leaft. After this , two

On Holy-thursday at Eventide, they make the Maunday, that is to say, the Ceremonic of

of the Church, fitteth on a Chaire like vnto a Treuit, girded with a Towell, and a great Bason 50

washing of Feet, and all the people affembleth together vito the Church, and the chiefe Priest

full of water before him , and beginneth to wash the Feet of the Priests; which being done,

they beginne to fing, and fing all night, and the Priefts. Friers, and Clerkes goe not out of the

Church, neither eate, nor drinke, vntill Saturday after they have faid Maffe.

Priefts goe to every gate of the circuite, which are three, which goe into the Churchyard, and frand at all these gates, one on the one side, and another on the other side, with a little Whip in their hands, which hath five great thongs of Leather vpon it. And all they that were before the principall gate came out through one of these three gates stripped from the waste vp- Whippings ward, and as they paffe, they bow downe their bodies, and thele Priefis with the Whips doe nothing elie but lay on them as hard as they can, as long as they fland still: some passe by, and have but few stripes, others stay and receive many : but the old men and old women stand there halfe an houre, vitill the bloud trickle downe their bodies, and fo they lye all night in the Cloy- Eafter Equa fler of the Church. And at mid-night they begin their Songs, which continue vntill the next Eafter day, To day at Euening, and then they begin Masse, and all receive the Communion.

On Easter day at mid-night, they begin their Mattens, and before day they make a Procession, and at breake of day they fay Maffe : And they observe this weeke vntill the Munday following, the Apostles Sunday, and so they keepe seventeene dayes holy, that is to say, from the Saturday before Palme-funday, vntill the faid Munday.

III. Voon a time we werein the Lent at the Court of Prete Jami. which lay on the borders of a Countrey of Gentiles, called Gorages, a Nation (as they lay) very malicious, and none Gorages. of these will be made flaues. for they had rather die or kill themselves, then serve the Christis- Translates. ans. The place where the Court lay was out of the Countrey of the faid people: which; as it Countrey of the faid people; which it countrey of the faid people it countrey of the faid people it countrey of the faid people it countrey of the faid peop was told vs, have their Habitations under the ground, that is to fay; they make Caues wherein People luing they live. But the Court was lodged by a goodly River, the chanell whereof ran low in a deepe dertheground bottom, and on the banks on either fide the Countrey all was a most goodly greene Champaigne, but the Earth within a foot deep was a fandie Rock, like the Rocke De glali de Charnache in Portugall. On all places on the fides of this River, were exceeding store of Houtes digged in the Mountaine, one aboue another : and the biggeft of them had their doore no larger then the mouth of an Hoghead, whereby they might eatily creepe in, and ouer the doore was an hole made where they fattened a Cord, whereby with their hands they climbed up. In which Houfes abundance of the poore people of the Court were lodged : and they faid, that thefe Houses were able to receine twentie or thirtie persons with their stuffe.

There was also by this River a very strong Towne, which on the fide toward the River was 30 hewen into the mightie Rocke, and toward the Land there was a Ditch cast, fifteene fathomes Towarin a deepe, and fix fathomes broad, and both the ends thereof reached voto the River : and in this Trench all round about it were Houses digged like to those aforesail, but in the midst of this circuit which was like a plaine field, there were little Houses made with wals and roofes, wherein at this time Christians dwell, and there is also a good Church. The entry into this Towne is digged under the ground, through this landie Rocke, all made like a Vault, where a man would not thinke, that any Mule or Oxe could enter in, and yet neuertheieffe they paffe well enough.

Not farre from this Towne, going vp the River is a great Rocke very fleepe from the top to the bottome, and on the top thereof is a plaine field, and in the mid-way vp this Rocke, there the optionic, and on the top the total a palace they fay, was the Palace of the King of this Monafterie of 40 Countrey of Gorages. This Mountaine or Rocke looketh toward the East, and they goe vp to our Ladie as this Monasterie with a woodden Ladder, which may bee placed and remooned, for they take it cented by a away enery night for feare thefe people Gorages, when the Court is not there, Afterward they Ladder, and goe vp a paire of staires of stone, and on the lett hand is a Ladder, and tifteene Cels of Friers, stone staires. which all have windowes very high over the River. Then there are their Butterie, their dining roome, and Chambers to lay up their Corne; and turning on right hand, patting through a darke way, a man commeth vnto a great height, where the principall gate of their Church is, which is not made of the faid Rocke, but it feemeth in ancient time, that there hath bin a great Hall with wals about it, which is very lightiome and broad, for it harh many windowes ouer the River; To this place come some small number of Friers. Many people come hither from the Court to receive the Communion, both for the denotion of this place, and also by reason of the fame, 50 which thefe Friers have to be men of good life, and because they suffer many miseries, by reason of the wrongs which these bad Neighbours of theirs, the Gorages doe continually vnto them. And because the Court doch alwayes lodge after one manner, that is to say, all the people of the Court, that part on the left hand which belonged to the great Betsdete, lay ouer against these Gorages : and very few dayes passed, wherein we heard not this newes : This night, the Gorages

neffe, and faintneffe of body, neither would they breake the leafon vpon any occasion. On the holy weeke, and Eafter day being hard at hand, the Prete fent vs word to prepare 60 our felies to fay Maffe before his Tent, because he would heare the same. I fent him word, that all should be readie, but that we lacked a Tent, because that which we had before was all broken and spoyled by the raine. He fent vs word, that he would fend vs a Tent, and cause the same to be fet vp, and that as foone as he called for vs, we should come prefently with all things necessary to fay Maffe. And it was not past mid-night, but hee fent for vs , and strait-way wee went this

haue flaine fifteen or twenty men of the great Betudete, and no man would fuccour them, because I will have that being in the Lenthy reason of the seure Fait, no man had any courage to fight for weak-not such as the second process of the se

ther, and were brought before the gate of the Prete, which wee found in this manner : A great part of the circuit of the hedge was broken and taken away, and from the Tent of the Printero the Church of holy Croffe, flood aboue fixe thousand Waxe Candles lighted, and all in a ranke, and the distance might bee as farre as a Peece of great Ordnance might shoote : and the breadth from the one fide to the other of them that held these Candles, was as farre as one could ffrike a Ball at twice, and all the way was plaine and equall. And there stood about fiftie thoufand persons behind them, which held the Candles, so that they which held the Candles, made as it were, an hedge that could not be broken, holding Canes before them bound all along topether, and the Candles fastned vpon them round about the way. Before the Tent of the Press. rode foure Gentlemen on horfe-backe, foliacing themielues, and they placed vs next vnto them. 10

Sometime car-

ried on mens

Choulders.

In the meane while, came the Prete forth of his Tent, mounted vpon a Mule as blacke as a Crow, and as bigge as a great Horfe (whereof they fay, he maketh great account : and alwayes when he trauelleth, will have this Mule come after him, and if he ride not vpon the same, hee sitteth on a Litter which is carryed on meas shoulders) and he came forth clad in an Embroydered Robe, which reached downe to the ground, and likewise his Mule was covered all over. The Prete wore his Crowne on his head, and held a Croffe in his hand, and on both fides of him wene two other Horses, and they went even with the head of the Mule, but not hard by him. for they went afarre off, and were adorned and couered all ouer with Embroydered Cloth of Gold. and feemed to bee enclosed in Gold, by reason of the great glittering thereof. They had great Crownes ypon their heads, which came downe to their very bits, and in the tops thereof were great plumes of Feathers. As soone as the Prete was come forth, those foure Noblemen which rode before, departed away, and were feene no more, and those which came to call vs. As soons as the Prete was past, placed vs after him, so that no bodie else could come there, nor passe the Crowned hor- raile of the Candles, fauing onely twentie Gentlemen, which went a good space before the Prese on foot ; and in this order we came to the Church of holy Croffe, where the Maffe of the Refurrection was to be faid : and here alighting and going into the Church, he entred into his Curtaines, and westayed at the gate, out of which great numbers of Church-men immediately comming, were accompanied with a farre greater number then that which was without . and they began to make a great procession, placing vs in the end of the same next wnto the first degrees and flates of honorable calling : and after the Procession was done, as many went into the 10 Church as could fland therein, and the rest stayed in the fields, and they caused vs also to enter

in, placing vs hard by the Curtaines of the Prete. As soone as Masse was done, and that they began to give the Communion, the Prete sent vs word, that we should make our selues readie to goe and say Masse, because the Tent was now set vp. and that he would come prefently. We went our way with those which called vs. which brought vs where there was a blacke Tent fet vp, hard by the Tent of the Prete, which when we faw to be blacke, we thought that they had done it to differace vs : and fuddenly the Ambaffador faid vnto me; Father, yee shall do well not to fay Maife : for this is done to try vs : anfwered; neither doe I meane to ky Maffe, let vs goehence to our Tents : And this was done st

After our refufall and expostulations, the Prese sent vs word to have patience, because hee would see condigne punishment executed on them which had done the same, and prayed vs to goe into that blacke Tent, because that seeing it was not good to say Masse in, yet it was good enough to dine in; and fo we went into it : And hither was fent vnto vs a royall Dinner, with infinite and excellent viands of fundrie forts of flesh, and excellent Wine both white and red, which were very ftrong, and of an excellent fmell. Poter de Conillas was with vs. and was prefent at all which passed that night. And at Dinner, he told vs, that all this was done of purpose, to trie what estimation we had of Gods matters, and of the Church, and that from henceforth, they would take vs for very good and perfect Christians, All this Lent, we were very well prouided of meat and drinke, and of good store of Fish, and of store of Grapes which were then 10 ripe in that Countrey. As foone as we had dined, That old Father which baptized the peo came vnto vs, and told vs, that the Prete fent vs word, that though wee had faid no Maffe that day, yet at least he would have ve say Masse the next Sunday, and that he would take order, that we should have a good Tent provided for vs, wherein we should say Masse according to our manner for the foule of his Mother, which was deceased a full yeere past; and that they likewise did say the Tajear, that is to say, The commemoration for the dead, and that we also should say, the fame after our manner.

A. XVII.

Don Lawis de Manases Letters : King Buanvets death : Their Rites of mourning, Fatigar and Xoa. MAFVDI bis many mif. chiefes and death in battell.

N the Sunday, being the Ockaue of Eafter, we went thirther, and fourill a great white and new Ten fet vp, with Curvaines all of filke, below overstillists are milit thereof of the below the second of the second o milft thereof, after their manner, and it was placed very necre the Terri of the
Prete, and there the Frier, which now commeth Ambaffadour with vs. and o-

ther Priests, sang a Notherne for the dead with vs, and we faid Masse, and before we had finished the lame, there came vnto vs two packets of Letters, which Don Lewis de Menefer had fent vs, Letters from which was come with a Bleet for vs to the Hauen of Macana, and the Letters came by two Macana. wayes, and the Mellengers arrived at one instant. There were also Letters directed to the Press. wherein he requested him of all favour, that he would dispatch vs without delay, that we mighe be at Maczus the fifteenth of Aprill, because he could they for ve no longer, as well because the moouing of the Sea, which is the fit time to depart out of the Red Sea, would paffe away, as alto because there was great need of his presence in India, Aird it fo fell out, that the same day. The death of whereon the Letters were delivered, the terme of the fitteenth of Aprill expited. It was allo pon Emanuel.

20 written in the faid Letters, that the King Don Emanuel was departed this life. And because it is the fashion of this Countrey, when their friends die, to shaue their freads, Shauing and and not their Beards, and to cloath themselues in blacke apparell, wee beganne to shaue one and. Blacke for thers head, and while wee were doing this, in came they which brought yo our driver: who mourning when they faw this, they fet downe the meate vpon the ground, and ranne to tell it vnto the vied. Prete, which fuddenly fent two Friers vnto vs, to vnderstand what was fallen out. The Ambasladour could not answere him for the great lamentation which he made and I told them as well as I could, that the Sunne which gaue vs light was darkned, that is to lay, that the King Don Emanuel was departed this life, and juddenly ail of vs began to make our moane, and the Ffiers went their way. Immediately at that instant were cryes matle, that all places where Bread, Wine,

30 and other Merchandize were fold, and all other Tents of Officers and Judges should be shorty and this continued for three dayes, in the end whereof this Highmest fent for vs, and his first Sale forbidden message vnto vs was; who did inherit the Kingdomes of the King his Father. The Ambassadour faid, the Prince, Dan lebn his Some. As foone as he understood this meffige, they fay, that hee reinyced greatly, and fent vestis word, Assign, Assign that in to say, he not as said, so that a first and, be that a first and to say, he not as said for you are among Christians, the Faster was good, the Somewall also be good, and I will write vest bine. At length her was content, that wee should send some Confidence our Factor to the Sea, with a Letter of his owne and ours also, and gaue him a very goodly Mule and rich apparell, and ten ounces of Gold, and with him went two of the Pretents Kinimen.

As for our felues which did folicit him with all importunitie, hee drew vs along for the space Richgifts. 40 of fixe weekes, and in the end he gaue vs very rich Garments, and to foure of vs he gaue chaines of Gold, with Croffes hanging at them, and every man his Mile: I had one of those Mules which went as though the would flie in the Aire, and that withour any hardnesse in the World: and for the rest of the company, fourescore ounces of Gol 1, and one hundred Loaves for our journey which we were to make. Being departed from the Court, we had not trauelled very farre, but the Meffengers returned which wee had fent vnto the Sea, and fightfied vnto vs, that Don Don Lewis de-Lewis was departed a good while fince, and though we knew that we could not over-take him, Parted. because the motion of the Sea would not suffer him to stay for vs, yet neuerthelesse were went thither, and found that he had left vs great flore of Pepper, and certaine goods for our mainte-

nance, and there were Letters of his directed to the Prete, and vnto vs. It was determined by the greater part of vs, to fend halfe of the Pepper to the Prete, and that the other halte should remayne for our vie, and that the Factor and I should goe on this melfage. For all this, Don Roderigo would needs goe himfelfe, and would carrie all the P pper, hoping that the Prete would giue him some great present, because it is a thing most eftermed. which may be brought into these Countries. And with these our Commodities we departed the first of September, and went faire and fortly with our Mules, and these carriages of our good, and came to the Court about the end of Nouember, and found the Perse in the Kingdome of Enter which in the written and the court about the end of Nouember, and found the Perse in the Kingdome of Zilia. Fatigar, which is in the vttermost part of the Kingdom e of Adel, vnder which Adel, is Barba- The King of ra and Zeila. This King is greatly electmed among the Moores, and counted for a Saint, recaule Adel amorali he maketh continuall warre against the Christians, and is furnished by the Kings of Arabia, and streng vino

60 the Lords of Mecca, and by other Kings which are Moores, with Armour. Herfes, and w. attoeuer he will haue, and he on the other fide fendeth them infinite numbers of Abiffir flaues, which flee med a he taketh in warre. From the place or field where wee found the Court vnto che first Mart. Saint, towne of Adel, is a dayes journey, and from that Maratowne to Zeila, are eight dayes

d. XVII.

I-100 Fatigar de-

A Lake of

is for the most part Champaigne, that is to fay, all low hils; wholly manured, and fowed with Wheate. Barley, and other Seeds, and there are mightie Champaigne fields fowed all ouer with Corne, There are also infinite Herds of Cattell of all forts, to wit, Goates, Sheepe, Oxen. Mares, and Mules. From this Champaigne we faw a far off, a Mountaine higher then all the reft, not of from thut covered all over with Trees, and also manured, wherein are many Monafteries and Churches engironed with manured fields; in the top of which Mountaine showing Lake twelve miles in compafe, from whence were brought vnto the Court great flore of the dry forts, and those very good, and I saw not such store in any other place. Hear great sweet Oranges, Catrons, and Indian Figs, in Such abundance, as it is incredible. Peter de Comilion told me, that the faid Mountaine was so great, that he travelled eight dayes journey about the foce thereof, and that he tooke measure thereof, and that the Lake on the top of the Mountaine was twelve miles in circuit. When the Cours departed, we travelled two dayes and an halfe, before we came to the foot of this hill, and when we came neere it, it feemed very high, and in energy part fruitfull. Many Rivers fall downe from the same, wherein is taken great store of fifth.

We travelled a day and an halfe on the back-fide at the foot of this Mountaine, and leaning the fame, we went out of the Kingdome of Faigar , and entred into the Kingdome of Nos, and here we delivered the Pepper to the Prote, and the Letters of Don Lewis, which we had translated into the Abiffin Tongue, and could not receive any Answere at all. This Voyage which the Prete made into this Kingdome, grew vpon occasion of making certaine partitions and dinifions, betweene him and two which were his Sifters, by Father and Mother : for Nahu his Father had fine Wines. These partitions were of the Lands and Goods, which remayned by the death of his Mother, Here we flayed foure daies, wherein they cast Lots, what part should fall to each one of them. And Peter de Comilian affured mee, that there were Countries in these portions. which could not bee travelled about in tendaies journey. When this division was made of the portion, which fell vnto the Prete, he caused the same to be divided in two parts, which he game vnto two of his little Daughters. The hils were conered with Oxen, Goates, Horfes, and Sheepe. The Clothes of Silke and Gold, were likewife durided, whereof there was great dust title, and he gaue the greatest past of the Clothes of Silke vneo the Monasteries and Churchi. which belonged to his Mother, in this Territorie. From hence we came to the Towne of Date : where Peter de Conilan thewed the Woods ento va, wherein I faid , that the Friers led fo first a life, and where that white man dyod, whose Cane was closed up.

A famous war113. This Storic was told me by many, and checkely by Pear de Comilion, of a Moore Caprious.

213. This Storic was told me by many, and checkely by Pear de Comilion, of a Moore Caprious. many Songs were made, which are fing even to this day by many people in the Court. They fay, that for the fpace of twentie fine yeares together in the Lent, every years he made in-roads, and spoyled the Countrey of Prete Laws, and because in this time, the Fast which is great, taketh away the strength of the people, so that they are not able to fight, therefore hee made inroads without any danger through those Countries, and sometimes hee entred above threefcore miles. And one years he came into the Kingdome of Amers, or into the Kingdome of In. 40 or into the Kingdome of Faiger, and formetimes in one part, and formetimes in another : and he began to make thefe in-toads in the life of King and lowender, which was Vnefe to the King for the space of twelve yeares together, who being dead without Sonnes, his Brother Natural ded him, which was the Father of this prefenc King, and he did the like in his dates. This prefent Prote Janni, began to raigne when he was twelve years of age, & til he grow to be feuenteen yeares old, Mafudi ceased not to make these in-roads, and warres in the Lene : and they say, that they were lo great, that in one of them he led away nineteene thousand Abiffins Captius, whom hee fent all to the house of Mesos, causing them to bee presented to the Kings of the Moores, where being enforced to become Renegados, they grow to bee very couragious and valiant men, because they get out of the straitnesse of fasting, and enter into the fatnesse, and a 10 bundance of the vices of the Moores. Hee also carryed away a great multitude of all forts of Cattell.

Ninetcene Савшись

> On the foure and twentieth yeare of his Inuations, when hee entred into the Kingdome of Fatigar, all the people fled vnto a Mountaine, and Mafiedi environed them about, and tooks them, and burnt all the Churches and Monasteries therein. I have said before, that through all the Countrey of Prete Ianni, there are certaine called Canas, which are men at Armes, because the Husbandmen in thele Countries goe not to warre. There were many of these Cana in these Kingdomes, which together with the Husbandmen were retyred into the faid Mountaine. Mafudi tooke them altogether, and put them by themselver, and the poore Husbandmen he dismit fed, fending them away that they might fow the fields with Corne the next yeare, for him and his Horses; and to the men of Armes, he said; Yee Cowards, which eat the bread of your King, and so badly defend his Territories, passe by the sword; and so fine thousand men at Armes were flaine, and he returned with great victorie, and without any impeachment at all.

The Prete being much moued with this Act, and especially at the burning of the Churches

and Monasteries fent Spies into the Kingdome of Adel, to know by what part Mafiedi meant to enter; and understood, that he meant to come with great troupes into the Kingdome of Fatiagr. in the time of Wheate and Barley Haruest to destroy them. The Frete hauing learned. that he came not in the time of Lent, at which time they are forbidden " to fight, refolued to " Cruekie of west for him by the way, and this he did against the minds of all his great Courtiers, he set for. Superfinien. ward with his people and Court onely, without fending for any from farre Countries, because he would not be discourred, and travelled day and night : and on a morning at breake of day, hee fet yn his Paulions, in a Towne where the first Market of the Kingdome of Adet is held, which is a dayes sourney from the Citie of Adel, where we found him when we carryed him the Pen-IQ per. Here (they fay) is a great passage, which the King of Adol had passed the day before . and was entred three miles into the Countrey of Prote Jamis, and was gone out of the way; when it

began to be broad day, they faw one another. Mafadi, which was a man of great valour, and was never knowne to fice, as the Abillion wie to fing of him; as foone as he faw the Paulion of the Prete, and the red Tents, which are never wont to be fet up, but at great Feafts, and entertainments of Princes, faid unto the King of A. del: Sir the Negue of Ethiopia is here in perfon; and this is the day of our death, doe what you can to face your felfe, for my part I means here to die : and the faid King being fearefull, efca- King of Adel ped with four others on horfe-backe, among whom was the fonne of a Betudete, which then fleeth. remayned with the King of Adel, and is now with the Prese in his Court (for they make no an ereat account to run away, and become Moores, and if they will returne againe, they are bandized anew, and are pardoned for their fault, and become Christians as they were before) and hee

told vs all these things particularly. As foome as the King of Add was gotten to a fafe place. which was with great freed; the Prese lane fignified to his Armie, after hee knew that the The Barrell King was fled . that they should receive the Communion , and recommend themselves water betweet the God, and after breake-fait, should fet themselues in order; and at nine of the clocke they began to Nega and arrange themselves in battell array, and to march against the Moores, keeping alwayes their Majudi. Tents and Paulions armed.

Mafadi, which was resolved not to fice, and faw death before his eyes, defired to end his dayes with some notorious and honourable action, and therefore spake vnco certayne Christian 30 ans, inquiring of them, whether there were any Knight fo hardie among them, that hee durft fight with him. Hereunto a Frier offered himselfe, called Gabriel Andrew, which flue him in Mafiel flaine combat, and strooke off his head, and for this his victorie, he is much honoured in the Court and by Gabriel dewe our felues were acquainted with him. The rest of the Armie gaue the onset voon the Moores, dress a Frier. and difcomfited them, which could no way escape, because the Prese his Tents were placed in the principall passage, and another passage which was farre off, and whereby the King of addel fled, was by this time also taken.

After this victorie, the Prote Laws rested in his Tents, and the day following made an insead through the Kingdome of Adel, untill he came to certaine Palaces of the faid King, which he found quite abandoned , the Gates whereof the Prese strocke thrice with his Launce, and Fides pietales 40 would fuffer no man to enter in or come neere them, because it should not be said, that hee came with qui cafera thither to rob; for if the King had beene there, or any body elfe, hee would have beene the first ferre. that fhould have entred in, and made them faire warre : and when he found no body therein, he would fuffer none to enter into them, and so returned backe. This battell was in the moneth of July; and it is faid, that it was on the very fame day, that Lopez Sucrez deftroyed and burnt. the Citie of Zoila, at the fack whereof I my felfe was, and the Moores which were taken told Love Saore, vs. that the Captaine of Zeile was gone with the King of Adel, to warre against the Negue of tooke Zeile in Ethiopia. And oftentimes the Prete lent to flew vs foure or fine bundles of Swords, with hiles the pour ast of filter, but groffely made, and told vs , that he had won them in the Warre against the Solden of Adel; and the Tent which he fent vs of embroidered cloth and veluet of Mees, he also wan to in the faid Warre, and wished vs to hallow it before we faid Maffe therein, because the Moorie had committed many finnes in the fame.

The head of this Mafudi was carried for three yeeres space with the Court, even untill our comming thicker, and on every Saturday, Sunday, and other Holy-dayes, which the common people keepe; all the Boyes and Girles did nothing elfe but fing Verles, made after their manner, in the praise of this Victorie, and at this day their singing passets throughout all the Court, and I thinke it will continue to the worlds end. Gabriel Andrew, as I have said, is a Frier, and a very honorable Person, and a Gentleman of very great revenue; and besides this worthy Act which he did, he hath done many other; and the report is, that he is very cloquent, and a friend to the Portugalle, and underflandeth very well the holy Scriptures, and the things that concerne 60 the Christian Faith, and hath great delight to talke of them, although King Natur caused the tip Gibriel spague of his tongue to be cut off, for his over-much talking.

114. He fent vs word, that he purposed to write to the Pope of Rome, whom they call, Romes Negus Lique Papas, which fignifieth, King of Rome, and bead of the Pope, and that I should make him the beginning of the Letter, because they are not wont to write, and knew not how they

thould write to the Pope. Ifent him word, that I would make the beginning for him, and that

they should adde the referablish they meant to write , or request at his hands. When were came

thither, we found all those which they hold most learned and wife with many books; and they

asked me where mine were. I answered, that I had no need of books, but onely to know his

Highnesse purpose, and that we were to bee gouerned according thereunto. Forthwith by 2

chie e man, as well in authoritie as in knowledge, which was there present, and by his office is

called Abucher, which fignifieth, A chiefe Chaplaine; the Prete his intention was delinered

so the Frier, and he told it me, and I fet my felfe to write, and made a briefe Preface; which

forthwith was carried to his Highneffe in my hand-writing. Which having seene, her first mes

Within a while there came a Page, which taid, That the King liked very well of that which i

had written, and maruelled much, that it was not taken out of books; commanding, that it

should be written in a faire hand, and in two Papers, and that his learned Priests should fluide

their books, for the rest which should be added to these Letters. The Copie of the Letter which

Lorade, is written in a Paper by it felte, and beginneth in this manner : Right bappy and boh Fa-

ther, ore. Three dayes they beflowed in making of the other Letter, and about fifteene in ma.

king a little Croffe of gold, which weigherh one hundred Cruzadoes, which also I was to came

back againe, and forthwith we translated it into his language, and returned it agains note him; to

1102

chiefe Inflice beaten three times befides, and within two dayes after, he returned to his office: because they are not ashamed bereof, but rather say, that the Prete meaneth them well and is mindfull of them, and (horsly after bestowerb his favour on them, and puttern them in office.

When this chiefe luftice was beaten, there were fixtie Friers in new apparell prefent, which was vellow, after their custome. And when the chiefe Iustice his punishment was ended, they Yellow Friers. tooke an old Frier which feemed to be a man of account, and was Head of the rest, and heat him after the aforesaid manner, but he was not touched to the quicke. After him they tooke another which was about fortie yeeres of age, who feemed to be a man of much honour, and they beate him as they did the reft, and this last was twice touched to the quicke. While this was to done. I inquired the cause, and what fault the Friers had committed : it was told me, that the last Frier which was beaten, had taken to wife a daughter of a Prese Ianni, that is to fay, of Alexander the ynckle of this David, and that he was separated from her, and had taken another fifter of this prefent Prete, which being very dishonest, and doing what she listed, her husband fearing to put her away, in regard of the Prete, and because also in this Countrey the faults of Womens faults women are not regarded, he forfookethis fecond wife, and tooke agains the first : and the Prese neglected. having commanded him that he should receive his fifter againe, he would not obey it, but went and became a religious man : and the Prete having committed this cause to the chiefe lustice . to confider whether hee might become a Frier lawfully or no: the Juffice gave fentence, that hee might lawfully take vpon him the habite of a religious man, and for this cause, the Justice was 20 punished. The father of the Friers was beaten, because he had given him the habite; and this third man, because he received the same : and immediatly he was enjoyined to leave the same. and to take againe the fifter of the Prete; and by this meanes wee could not have audience for

d. XVIII.

the space of infteene dayes.

Death of Queene HELENA. Tributes of Goiame, and other Provinces. Succours oiwento the Queene of Adea. Apprehension of the two Betudetes and Tighe MAH ON their sentence, and the execution. Expedition of the Negus to Adea. Strange Oxen. The PRETES Tent-court, and manner thereof; Places, Courts, and courses of Instice, with other parts thereof described. His Treasuries.

Veene Helena had beene dead fome eight or nine moneths, which gouer- General the ned the greatest part of the Kingdome of Goiamo, when as many as came government newly to the Court, went to be waile her in her Tent, which as yet flood of Queene

vpright in the old place, and were did the like, when were came anew to Helena.

the Court after her death. And the Prote hauing sent wnto that Kingdome the grand

Betudets to receive the Gibre, which is the yearsly tribute of the King; at this time the Gibre, or will be the court of the King; at the court of the King; faid Betudete came to the Court with the Gibre, which was three thousand fine hundred bute of Griams Mules, three hundred Horses, and three thousand Baffati, (which are a kind of clothes which Baffati, great men weare upon their Litters, and they are made of Cotton, shaggie on the one side, like vnto Carpets, but not fo course; and great personages lay them vpon their Beds; and they are of fo great price, that one of them is worth an ounce of Gold at the least, and sometimes three or foure ounces, yea and fine ounces) and aboue three hundred Cotton clothes of finall value, *One Conie whereof two are worth but a dramme of Gold, and sometimes lesse: and, as wee have faid, an hath 3000.0. ounce is worth a Pardon, which is three quarters of a golden Ducat of Partugall, and it was told which feemeth me, that he brought thirtie thousand drachmes of Gold.

I my lefte was at the prefenting of this tribute, and faw it all; and it was in this manner, with that The Betweete came on foot naked from the girdle vpward with a cord tyed about his head, like eth. wnto a wreath of a Castilian Carrier, and comming within audience of the Tent of the Prese. he faid three times this word in short space , Abeto, Abeto, Which signifieth Lord: and Strange cereanswere was made him but twice in his Language, Who art thou? Who art thou? And he said, monics. I which call, am the least of thy house, which saddles thy Mules, and tyeth up thy Cattell, and doe other bufinesse which thou hast commanded mee, and I bring thee that which then hast intermed mee : and these words were spoken three times; which being ended , a voice was heard , saying , Come, come forward. And he comming neere did reverence before the Tent, and passed by. After him So came the Horses one after another, all led by the heads by servants. The first thirtie were sadled,

and in very good order, the rest which followed were deare of two drachmes of Gold, and many were not worth one dram a piece, and I faw them afterward fold for leffe, and there might be fomethree thousand of them. After these Hackneys came the Mules in like order, to wit, Roszini thirtie which were fadled, faire, and in good order; the reft were little young Mulets like those Hackneys, and there were Mules and Mulets, of one, of two, and of three yeeres old, and not

in bookes.

to the Pope.

115. At this time the Prete lanni determined to fend an Ambaffadour into Portugall. because that hitherto he had sent none, and he sent for Don Roderigo and me, and told ve, that hee an purposed to send a man of his with vs vnto the King of Portugal, to the end, that his defires Zara Zabo Am . might fooner take effect : and asked vs, whether we thought, that Zaga Zabo the Frier, who alwayes kept vs companie, were fufficient for this Amballage, feeing hee underflood our language, and had beene before-time in our Countries. We answered him, That he was most fufficient, and was a man which underflood ve, and we him. He fent vs word, that wee should take him with ys in our companie. The next day he fent vs againe very honorable apparell, and thurtie ounces of gold, and one hundred loanes of bread for our voyage, and yet wee flayed a good while after: The Prete fent a Messenger vnto vs, appointing vs to returne vnto the Towns of Charmes, where (as I faid before) we had beene a long time; and here he furnished vs with fine hundred loades of Graine, with one hundred Oxen, and one hundred Sheepe, with one hundred to earthen Pots of Honey, and another hundred of Butter ; and fent for the Ambaffailour which went with vs, twentie loades of Corne, twentie Oxen, twentie Sheepe, twentie pots of Honey, and as many of Butter.

116. While we aboate in the Towne of Charmo, the faid Zaga Zabo was adultized, that a cestayne little Lordship, which he had, was taken from him : whereupon he praved me, that I would goe with him to the Court to demand inflice. When we came thither, we found, that his Aduerfarie was Abdenago, Captaine of all the Pages of Prete Ianni, for here is no office but bath an Head aboue all the reit. And because all Suizes and Answeres are made to the Prese by Pages, we had no meanes at all to make the Prete acquainted with our faite; howbeit, wee were aided by one Aiace, which is a great Lord : and though he were a great friend of Abde- to mago, yet made he the Prese acquainted with the cause of our comming. Our Indges were ap-Hearing of the Pointed, Aiaz Daragote, and Aiaz Caite, to whom we imparted our request; and they appointed vs a time the next day, when the Sunne should be in such a place, shewing vs the place in the skie: and the Proctor of Abdenago was there prefent, and Zaga Zabo the Ambailadour was there in person. When the day was come, both parties disputed and alleaged greatly for themselves, and they concluded in words, for in their Courts they write nothing at all; and the Judges gaue fentence by word of mouth, after this manner; That the Mannor and Lording, which Zaga Zabo demanded, was a very finall thing, and in former times subject to another great Lordship, whereof Abdenago was Lord, and that it was right, that as the great Winde

paffeth oner all the Earth, fo Abdenage, which was a great Lord, might not be hindred from entring voon this, but that he ought to enter voon this little Signiorie.

When we heard this fentence, we were much amazed, and went to complaine vnto the Pret, which fent vs word to goe to our lodging, and be of good cheere, for all should be well, and that the next day we should repaire to the chiefe Iustice, which should fee vs dispatched, and herewithall we departed. The next day we waited upon him at his Tent, who received vs with a cheerfull countenance, faying, That he had a commandement from the Prese to dispatch vs, and that we should stay for him at his Tent; howbeit, wee would need goe with him vntill hee went to speake vnto the Prete. Where, after he was gone in, and had trayed a while, hee came out with two Pages, which led him to the place where offenders are beaten, and there calling eniefe luftice two which doe this office, they ftripped him, and throwing him downe voon the ground, they 60 mierably beat tyed his hands vnto two posts, and his feet straight, with a thong of Leather, which two men held fast. These ministers of Instice stood one at his head, and another at his feet, smith g him oftentimes, and for the most part on the backe; and when the Prete commanded them to touch him, the firipe pierced vnto the bones, and of thele firipes he had onely three. I have feene this

past, and none of them fauing those which were fadled, were fit to beeridden: and they passed by as the Betudete and the Hories had done. After the Mules, came the Cloathes called Baffuri, and one man could carrie but one of them, they were fo weightie. After the Baffuti palled, the cloathes made up in Fardles, and one man carried ten of them; and there were about three thoufand men, that carried Baffati, and three thousand men that carried those other Cloathes; and all these were of the Kingdome of Goiame, which are bound to bring the said Gibre. After these cloathes, came ten men, each of them bearing a Charger vpon his head, made like vnto those wherein they doe eate, and were couered with Greene and Red Sindall. After these Chargers, came all the men of the Betudete, which passed by one after another, as hee himselfe had paffed. In these Platters was the Gold put, which was commanded to bee borne vnto his to lodging, with the rest of the tribute, which was done accordingly. In this Procession were spent

aboue ten houres, that is to fay, From the morning vntill euening. About fifteene daies before our comming to the Court, thither came a Queene of the Moure. Wife vnto the King of Adea, which was the Sifter of one, which was fent to be the Wife of

Her traine.

Prete Ianni, whom he refused, because two of her fore-teeth were too great, and therefore she was married vnto a great Lord, which was the Barnagaffo, and is now a Betudete. This Queene came to craue succour of the Prete, because a Brother of her Husbands was risen vp against her. and tooke her Kingdome from her. She was well accompanied like a Queene, and brought with her fiftie Moores, which were very Honourable persons, and very well apparelled, riding vpon Mules, and one hundred men on foote, and fixe Maids of Honor mounted voon Mules, and they were people which were not very blacke. She was received with great honour, and was called 20 for within three daies after her comming, and the came before the Tent of the Prete, being her felfe enclosed in a blacke Litter. She changed her apparell twife that day, once in the morning, and againe at euening, and both times the was clad in Embroydered Cloath of Veluet, and in Moorish smocks of India: and the Prete sent her word, that she should take her ease, and put away all forrow, because she should have her whole desire, and that shee should stay for Barnagaffo, and Tigremahon, at whole comming the should prefently depart.

Within eighteene daies after her comming hither, the was againe apparelled after the former manner, and the next day, the foresaid parties arrived at the Court, and each of them brought the Tribute which they are bound to pay vnto the King. And with them came the Cana, that is. The men at Armes of their Kingdomes, with many other Noble-men. They being arrived, 30 the Prete commanded, that the Betudete should first shew his tribute of the Kingdome of Goianne. After him the Barnagaffo began to giue his Tribute, which were one hundred and fiftie exceeding faire Horses, and the first day they did nothing else but runne and prance, and the next day he presented great store of Cloath of Silke, and great store of passing tine Cloathes of India. 1 was not at this presentment, because I felt not my telfe well. When this was done, the next day very early, Tigremahon began to present his Tribute, which were two hundred Horses, fatter, fairer, and better then those of Barnagaffo, because they came from a farther Countrey, yet both of their Horses were of Egypt and Arabia, and all this day, they did nothing else but view Horses. The next day they presented more Cloathes of Silke, then ever I faw together in my 40 life, and the whole day was bestowed in presenting, counting and receiving of the same. The Munday following, about noone, came Balgada Robel, a great Nobleman, subject to Tigremahon,

phants, very fat, and a Xumagali, that is, a Gentleman without Title vpon each of them; and

eight of these Xumagali had good Curasses like vnto ours, part couered with Veluet, and part

with Cordonan, and their stude gilded. They had also Helmets like ours vpon their heads. Bal-

gada Robel himselfe was one of these eight: the other two and twenty had shirts of Maile, with

long fleenes, which were very well faitned to their bodies : they had thirtie Iauelins, and Ma-

ces of Iron like vnto the workes, and all of them we are Blue wreathes about their heads, with

*Anhyperbo- to present his Tribute by himselfe, which were thirtie Horses, all of Egypt, great like * Ele-

long haire which waved in the wind.

Tributes of

Succeurs for

118. Of the Canas, that is, The men of Armes which came with Barnagasso and Tigrena. hon, and with the Gentlemen of their Companies, the Prete lanni appointed, that ifteene thousand of them, with a Noble-man named Adrugaz, which is often ipoken of in this Booke, frould goe immediatly into the Kingdome of Adea, and pacific that Kingdome, and that the Queene should follow loft and faire. And forth-with the Queene and Adrigaz departed, and it was reported, that they should trauaile through the Countrey of the Prete, thirtie daies journey, before they could come into the Kingdome of Adea. The next day after, the Queenes departure, the Prete commanded the Grand Betudete to be apprehended, which had brought him tribute from the Kingdome of Goiame. Likewise he caused the other Betudete to be taken, whose Apprehension name is Camba, he caused also Tigremabon to be taken; which being apprehended on a morning 60

of greatmen. before day, the Prete departed, and all the Court with him, and we after him. And as the Ambassador of the Prete, and I stood by a Rivers side, watering our Mules, this Betudete that brought the Tribute passed by vs, and said vnto mee, Abba Barqua, which fignifieth, Father gine me your bleffing : I answered him ; Ibezeria Barqua, that is to say, God bleffe you. He

answered with teares, which trickled downe his cheekes : Father, pray to God for me, for at this time I feall end my daies. His prison was a little Chaine, very thinne, of a fathome long, like a A Chaine-pritime I ball end my daues. His priori was a little chain circle about his necke, and himselfe carried his son. Chaine in his hand.

On a Wednelday, we came to the place where the Tents of the Prete were fet up, and that night it was faid, that the Prete commanded the Betudete to bee brought to his prefence, and fo he was brought with two of his Sonnes. When they were come to the gate of the Tent . the Prete fent forth two Pages, to cause him to be brought to the backe-side of the Tent. because he would speake with him in his owne person, commanding the Guard and his Sonnes to atto tend, and withdrew themselues a little from the gate of the Tent. Here they stayed vntill the morning, when the Prete rid away, and all of vs with him, without any newes at all of the Betudete, whether he were dead or aliue, or what was become of him. His faid two Sonnes, and three others which stayed at home, being all great personages, and worthy Warriors, made pittifull moane, and all their Fathers Seruants, which kept an honourable house, like a great King. After this the Prete commanded, that they should not vie any Servant of their Fathers, nor of their owne; and I have seene them riding all alone without any Seruant, naked from the Girdle vpward, with a blacke shaggy Sheepe-skinne vpon their shoulders, and clad in blacke Cloath from the Girdle downeward, and all their Mules couered with blacke. Their owne Seruants and their Fathers, were divided all, and walked mourning on foote, and drove their Mules fad-

20 led before them. On a Munday, when we entred into the Kingdome of Oife, there was a commandement, to The kingdome observe the Feast of the Kings, or Twelfe-day, which they call, Tabrobete, on which day they ob- of Oifa, ferue their Baptisme, as I have said before. This day very early in the morning, these Sons of the Betudete went from house to house, that is to say, To the Tents of the great persons, as others Chanceand were wont to come vnto them, enquiring newes of their Father, whether he were living or Change, &c. dead, whereof they could learne nothing at all, vntill fifteene daies after, when they were returned, which had conveyed him into the Kingdome of Faijar, into a Mountaine, which is faid to be in the vttermoff Border of the Kingdome of Adel, which is very high, having a deep Valley in the midft thereof, and there is but one entrance thereinto : In this bottome or Valley, A ftrance Val-

30 are all kind of Beafts and Oxen, but the men which came into it, dye within foure or fine daies ley redfor a of an Ague, and that there they had left him without any man to waite upon him, fauing cer- killing prifes. taine Moores which were to guard him vntill he were dead. This newes increased their griefe more then the first : and men beganne to speake of this death in the Court, that the Prete had The cause of put him vnto the same, because he had lien with the Queene his Mother, and the report went his apprehen-To while shee was alive, and that hee had a Sonne by her; and that the Prese would not put fion him to death while his mother lived, because hee would not discredite her. And while these rumours went about the Court, Proclamation came forth, that no man should speake of the Betadere, on paine of his life. Suddenly this rumour ceafed; And three moneths after, while wee were neere the Sea fide, in the Territories of Tigremahon, there came a new report, that 40 the Betudete was not dead, and that his Sonnes, by the helpe of the King of Adel, had wrought his escape. Immediatly there came other newes, that the Prese had beheaded twentie Moores.

which guarded him, and two of his Servanes, because they came to speake with him; and this 119. Alfoon a night, the Prete commanded that Tigremibes should be carried away neither was there any man that could tell; to what place he was conveyed. The next day they fent to lav hold vpon all that hee had in his Tents, and ceased not three daies together, to carrie,

count, and deliuer out course Cloathes, and many Chamblets, and very fine Cloathes of India. We were then in the Court fixe White men of vs, to wate I, and one Portheall, and foure Genomeles. To each of vs the Prete fent fixe cloathes, to wit, three pieces of Chamblet, and three 50 cloathes of India, and it was reported within few daies, that the Prete had fent Tigremabon into the Kingdome of Damie; into a wonderfull high Mountaint, which had but one way made by hand into it, and the top thereof was cleatifed, and very cold. Hither they tend men, whom they would speedily ride our of the way. And according as false newes came into the Countries of T grem thon, that the Betseere was fled, to certaine newes came vinto vs, that Tigrema- Tigremabon deboy was dead in that Mountaine for hunge and cold. At this time also, while wee were at the ed with hunger Court, the other Betudete which was apprehended, was depoted from his Office, and Arraz and cold. Nobiata was made Beindere, which had beerie Barnagaffo, and Baloada Robel was made Tigremation, who came with thirtie Horfes in fuch good order. And there ranne a great brute

through all the Court; lamenting the death of the Queene Helena: for they muttered, that Queene Halena 60 fince her death, Both weat and finall went all to wracke, and that while fee lined all were preferred as Imported. line and cherifoed, and that she was the Father and Mother of all men; and that if the Prete went forward on this falbion, all his King dome would speedily come to nought.

The Tabuchete or Baptisme being ended, the Ambassadour Bago Zabo, and I, left of the profeet ion of our fuir, because we durft not proceede therein, by reason of the great and weightee

Abdenage our adversarie held, and the other which we demanded, he gave them both vnto the Amballadour, and so dispatched vs fully contented. Before wee departed, newes came from Adregaz, which went with the Queene of Adea to fuccour her Husband, whereby the Prete was advertized, how the people would not obey her, and that whether focuer the came, they fled away, and ranne into the Mountaines, and that his Highnesse must fend more men. The Prete determined to goe thither in person, and to bring the Queene his Wife vnto a Towne. wherein before we had beene with her, which is called Orgabra, being in the Frontiers of the Kingdome of Adea, and there to leave his Wife, his Children, and all the Court; and so hee did. There went with him of the Portugals, George de Bren, Diego Fernandez, Alfonfo Mendez, 10 and Almarenga, and fine or fixe Genome [es. Vpon their returne, they reported, that where foemer the Prete travelled through the Kingdome of Adea, all the people came to do him homage, as vnto their Lord, and that he would have gone a great deale farther, even vnto Magadaxe ; and that the Countrey was very fruitfull and full of Woods, so that they could not travell, vnlesse they cut downe the Trees, and so made their way. And that there was infinite store of victuals of all forts, and great herds of all Cattell, which are very bigge, and that in this Kingdome there is a Lake fo great, that it feemeth to be a Sea, and that a man cannot fee from the one fide to the other, wherein there is an Hand, where in times past a Prete Lanni built a Monastery and placed many Monkes in the fame, although it were built in the Land of the Moores, which

Friers for the most part dyed of the Feauer, sauing a few that remained in a little Monasterie as

out of the Ile, by the Lakes fide, which were found alive, and that the Prete forth-with com-

manued, that other Churches and Monasteries should bee built, and many Priests and Friers

should be left there, and lay-people to inhabite the faid Kingdome, which being pacified, here-

affaires, which we faw to be in hand. The Prete fent for vs, and taking away a Lordship, which

Maradaxo.

Orgabia.

turned backe againe to the Towne where he had left the Court. This Kingdome payeth a great number of Oxen for tribute, and we have seene of them in the Court, and they are as bigges without hornes, great Camels, and white as Snow, and without hornes, and have very great and hanging eares. as bigge as

is lodged in his Tents.

The hedge with twelve Tares.

Saint May of

120. The manner which the Prete observeth in disposing of his Court, is, that alwaies he lodgeth in the fields, for no other place were able to containe his traine; And if there be any How the Prete high place, thereon they fet vp the Tents of the Prete, the backe parts whereof stand always to the East, and the Gates vnto the West, and they are alwaies foure or fine Tents, all fashed to together one to the other, and these are properly his habitations, enuironed about with certains high Curtaines, which they call Mandekate, being wrought in Checker-wife, divided into black and white, and if you will flay there any long time, they compaffe them about with an hedge, which is a good mile about, wherein they make twelve Gates. The principall Gate looketh toward the West, and behind the same a good distance off, are two other Gates, one on the one fide, and another on the other, which ferue for the Church of Saint Marie of Sion, which flandeth toward the North, and the other serueth for the Church of holy Crosse, which is towards the South. Next vnto these gates, which seme for these Churches, as farre distant from these as the principall Gate is from the Gates aforefaid, are two other Gates on each fide. That towards the South, ferueth to goe to the Tents of the Queene, the Wife of the Prete, and that toward the North, serueth to goe to the lodgings of the Pages; and at all these Gates, standie uerall Guards. I could not fee the rest, for they will suffer no man to goe round about that hedge. This I wot well, that in all places wherefoeuer he lodgeth, they make twelue Gates: 2mong which there is one, that setueth for the Pages of the Kitchin.

Behind thefe Tents, the distance of a Cross-bow shot and more, are the Kitchins placed and the Tents of the Cookes divided into two parts : To wit, the Cookes on the right hand, and the Cookes on the left hand. And when the meates are brought from these Kitchins, they vieto carrie them after this fort, (according as I faw in the Citie of Orgabra, in the Kingdome of Xoa, as I flood upon an hill neere unto the Kitchins; for in other parts the Tents are fet in the Plaines, that no man may fee them.) There passed a Canopie of Rol and Blew Crimzon, of as it seemed of sixe whole long pieces sewed together, and they carried this Canopie vpon certaine Canes, which in this Countrey are very good, strong, and so long, that they make Lances with them. Voder this Canopie came the Pages, which carried the meate in certaine great Platters of Wood, which they call Canete, being madelike plaine Patens of Wood, wherein we cleanse our Wheate, with a brim two fingers high but they be greater, and in each of them were fet many Dishes of black earth, wherein the meates were put, as Hens, Turtles, and other fmall Birds, and many fruits, and White-meates, which are for the most part made with Milke and other things. There were also little Pipkins, as blacke as the diffies, with other Vindagan Broth of divers forts. These meats which I speake of, which were carried in these Platters, I fay not that I faw them when they carried them, because I was a farreoff ; but I faw them, 60 when they fent them to vs, that they came in the fame Platters, as they were brought from the Kitchin, without any Canopie, and the Pipkins were couered with cheir heads closed vp Menshorwich with Paste: and these Platters which they sent vs, were full of these Pipkins, which were seething hot. In all meats wherein they may put Ginger and Pepper, they layed on fo much, that

we could not eate of them, because they were so hot. Betweene the Kitchins and the Tents of the Cookes, almost behind the same, is a Church of Saint Andrew, which is called, The Church of the Cooker. No man may repaire vnto the place where the Kitchins are, nor yet behind them.

nem. 121. Two Crosse-bow shoots distant, before the gates of the Kings Tents, or of the hedge, if Reprence to it be there, a long Tent is fet up, which they call Cacalla, and this is the house of Iustice or Au- the Tents. dience. And betweene this Tent and the Tents of the Prete, no man paffeth on Horse-backe.in reverence of the King, and of his luftice, but all doe light and goe on foot. Into this Tent of Cacalla, no man entreth : onely thirteene low Chaires of Iron are placed therein. The place

IO where they fit is couered with Leather; and one of the faid Chaires is very high, reaching as high as the breit of a man, and the other twelue are as low as our stooles. None of the Judges Court of Inwhich heare the parties fitteth in these Chaires, (they onely stand there for a Ceremonie) for fice, they fit on the ground upon the graffe, if there bee any, as many on the one fide, as on the other. and there they heare the parties which contend, and every one according to his jurifdiction ; because (as I have said) as the Cookes were divided into two parts, so are altothers: to wit on the left hand, and on the right, and Audience is given after this fort,

The Plaintiffe deligereth his Action by word of mouth, and no man speaketh, while he hath Manner of done. The Defendant speaketh against him as long as hee will, without any mans disturbance ; Suit, when the Defendant hath done, the Plaintiffe replyeth if hee will, and the Defendant answe-

20 reth him the fecond time, if he thinke fo good, without any diffurbance. When they have done Cenfure. their Oppositions, and Answeres by themselves, or by their Proctors, there standeth vp a man. which is, as it were, a Reporter; and hee repeateth ouer againe as much as the parties have faid, and at length delivereth his opinion, which of them both hath best right. Then one of those Judges which fit downe, to wit, he that is the first, doth even so as the Reporter had done to wit. he repeateth all that the parties haue faid, and at length deliuereth, which of them he thinketh to have best reason. And after this manner, doe all the rest which fit and deliver their opinions and they fland vo when they speake, vntill they come to the Chiefe Luftice, which standeth vo laft, who having heard the opinion of all the reft, giveth his fentence, if there bee no need of proofe : but if they have need of tryall, they give them due and necessary respite. And all is done 30 in words without writing.

Other matters which the Benedetes and the Lieu heare, they heare flanding, because they Scanding Asfrand before the Tents of the Prete, and before this Cacalla, and as foone as they heare the par- dience ties, immediately they goe with that which they fay voso the Prate, and they enter not into his Tent, but onely within the Mandelare or great Cirtaine, and there they fpeake, and then returne to the parties with the refolution of the Prote, And femetimes they spend a whole day in passing thus too and fro, according to the weight inesse of the causes.

122. A good diffance before the Tent or House of Iulisce, on the right hand and on the left, are Two Prifons. two Houses or Tents, as it were Prilons, to keepe men in Chaines; and they are called Maiques Bete, where the Prisoners are kept on both side, to wit, on the right hand, and on the left. 40 And they are kept after this manner, that according to their fault and cause, such is their Prison Their manner and their Guards. The Priforer is bound to maintaine the Guards which keepe him, and payeth of imprifor them as long as he is in Prison. And if there be any that hath Fetters on his legges, when they ment.

them as one a me and the Free, where they have Audience, thefe Warders carrie him bring him before the Tent of the Free, where they have Audience, thefe Warders carrie him Boundes find: in their armes, to wit, two reach their hands one to another, and cause the Prisoner to it wpon him who their armes, which layeth his hands upon their heads, and the rest of the Wardersfollow him you make with their weapons, and forthey goe and come. There is another kind of Prifoners : for if you will have a man attached, you are bound to

find him, if you will accuse him, and his Guard also to guard him. And this I know, because our Portugals caused certains to bee apprehended, for Mules which were stolue from them , and 50 because they sent meate write the Prisoners, and to their Keepers, othey made request to have them let at libertie. I knew another which was a Genouese, which hada Mule stollen from him. and the Thiefeconfessed that he had stollen her, but that the was not in his possession, and that he had not wherewithall to pay for her. They condemned him to bee a flate, and hereiwas fold, and he was a very couragious fellow.

123. Right ouer against the Tents of the Prilons , a good diffance off, are the Tents of the two Chiefe Iuffices placed, to wit, one on the one fide, and another on the other, and betweene them is a Church, called, The Church of the Inflices. And ouer against this Church ; aigood way: The Prote case from the same are foure Lions in Chaines, which are alwayes led, which erioeuer the Prete land i rich foure goeth. And a good way from the Lions, is another Church, which is called , The Church of the Lions about 60 Christians Market, who fell in the same : for the greatest part bee Marret; especially the princi- with him. pall Merchants of goods, and wares fold by the great; and the Christians fell small wares, as No christians bread, wine, meale and flesh, because the Marrie around following and file will care of that bread, wine, meale, and flesh; because the Moores are not suffered to fell any kind of victuals; which a Moore neither will any man eat of that which they doe dreffe, nor of the fieth that they doe kill. This killeth or dref-Market must alwayes be right before the Tent of the Prete: the least roome that the compasse sein,

of the Market taketh vp, is a mile and an halfe, and iometimes three miles and more. Although the Court change as often as it will, yet this Order of placing their Tents is alwayes observed And from the Tent of the King vnto this Market, the way is free and open, that is to fay, there flandeth no Tent at all, faue onely the two Churches of the two Iustices, and those of the Lions, and that of the Church of the Market. And thefe are a good way diffant from all other Tents. 124. On each fide of both the Churches, flanding on either fide of the Tent of the Prete, there is

Veltries.

placed a very faire and goodly Tent, wherein they keep the Veltments of the Churches and another, where they keepe the fire and the flower to make the Corban, that is, the Communion Bread. And al other Churches have a Tent after this maner. Before these Churches are set vp other great, In Double Tents long and wide Tents, like vnto Hals, & theie they cal Balagamie, wherin they keep the Apparel, and Capraints Robes, & Treatures of the Prete, & as many of them stand on the one side as on the other, for they are double, as the reft of the Tents of the Officers of the Court are. These Tents have their Captaines which are ouer those that guard them; And the greater part of this people are slaves, which are Eunuches. Behind these Tents of the Wardrobe on the right hand, stand the Tents of the Queene the Wife of the Prete, and of all the women that wait vpon her, and the Tentsof Queene Helena, which was wont to be ferued in very great pompe: but none but women and Eunuches enter thereinto. On the left hand, are the Tents of the Pages : then the Aiazi have their lodging, because they take up a great roome, for they have many people under them, which are alwayes neere about them : atter the Asazi, lodgeth the Patriarke Abuna Marke, with a me great number of Tents, because an infinite number of people come to bee admitted into Orders,

to that he occupieth as much roome as were h ficient for a great Towne.

The Cabeata

On the other fide lodgeth the Cabeata, which in like manner hath a multitude of Tents, and his lodging was wont to be next vnto the Church of Saint Mary, because this Office was wont al wayes to be given to a Frier; but this prefent Cabeata being a Friest, and having a Wife, they place him next the Abuna. Then follow all the Noblemen in their places, and next vnto them the people that are well apparelled, and then the common people, as the Tauerners, and Baken, which felland make Wine, and vie victualling. Then follow the Tents of the women him todoe businesse, which they call Americas; and these are many, and they have many other Tents femarated from theirs, wherein the ftrangers are lodged, which come to fell, to buy, and to train a fique with the Court of the Prete. And hereof there be many richly and well apparelled. Next wato there are lodged all the Carpenters, on the one fide, and on the other, and they take vpa very great roome. The two great Besaders with their people, the one on the right hand, and the other on the left, doe lattly occupie the frace of a Citie; fogreat a multitude doe they alwayes cartie with them, and are as it were, the Guard of this Court. And alwayes the Tents of the Prete are first fet vp, and strait-way every one knoweth his place, where he ought to fet vp his, whether on the right hand or on the left. And the Streets, Markets, and Churches are ease to bee feene. And this Campe or Lodging of the Prete lann, extendeth it fefe for the space of 124. No great Lord, nor Gouernour of Territories, if hee bee in his Gouernment may come 40

The Preterabil

Mun er of gresemens.

forth, por sture to come wnto the Court in any wife, whilefie he be fent for by the Prete and being fent furthe may not deferre his comming for any occasion; and when he removueth hee leaveth there neither Wife, nor Children ... nor any goods at all, for he alwayes feareth, that he fall not returns broke againe .; because ... (as I haue said before) the Prete greeth and taketh Goern ments atihis pleafure and if he taketh them from any, strait-way that Nobleman which is placed in his roome, taketh from him whatfocuer hee findeth, and therefore they carrie entry thing away; or fend them into other Territories. And when they come necre the Court with great triumph, they stay at least three miles distance from the Court, where they remayne of tentimes one or two moneths, without starring from thence, so that they seeme to be forgotten, vntill it pleaseth the Prese to thinke of them : yet exate they not, in this meane time, while they flayas forgotten, to enter into the Court, and to talke with other Noblemen, but not with the umph, nor well apparelled, but with two or three men , and naked from the Girdle vpward, and with a theep-skinne on their thoulders, and to they goe, and returne to their Tents, would they have licence to repaire vnto the Court; which being obtayned, they make their entrance with great triumph of Musicke and Drummes, and retyre themselves vnto their place, which in former time was appointed voto them.

And when any of them is lodged, hee goeth not out of his house apparelled, as hee did at his comming to the Court, but goeth naked, as I have faid, although he came at his entrance apparelled with great pompe. And at this time all men commonly lay: Now Jack on one is not in the ga King: fauour, because he goeith naked. And if hee hath any fauourable speech from the Prete, in a continently he commets forth apparelled, and then the people (ay; Such an one is in the Lords fasters, and the cauffe is spread abroad, for which he was fent for. For the most part they return vnto their governments, and sometimes not : and if they returne, they are strait-way dispatched : if they be taken from them, they flay them five, fixe, and feuen yeares, without departing

CHAP.S. \$. Honorable respect to Souldiers. Wonderfull oreat treasure.

from the Court, from whence they may not depart without licence. They are wonderfully obedient vnto their King. Before they were not is greatly accompanied, but now they are as greatly abandoned, and now they ride vpon a Mule with two or three men after them, for the rest which were wont to waite vpon them, belonged to the governments which were taken from them, and those are appointed to wait vpon the new Gouernour.

126. If any Gentleman be called forth for the warres (as oftentimes wee have feene) his en- Honourable try into Court is not forbidden, but prefently he entreth, and p. ffeth along as he commeth, with relpcd of fortmany people. These Gentlemen are not forbidden, that which I have looken of, not to passe diers. betweene the Tent of Cacalla, and the Tent of the King, neither on horie-backe, nor on Mule. because when they come to goe to warre, they enter into that space, even to the Tents of the King, and neere vnto them they make their multers, skirmilhing, and ranging themselves in battell array, as they thinke good, that the King may take pleature thereat. And this wee haue feene very oftentimes. Thefe Souldiers flay not in Court about two dayes, for fo they becaccustomed, for in two dayes they will assemble one hundred thousand persons together, if they will have so many, and as they come to Court they are speedily dispatched, for there they yie not to give any wages, but every man bringeth his victuals with him, namely, Meale of Barley, The cafe is and of Chiches, and of Millet parched, which is a good food to go to warre withall : for they find now altered;

Oxen and Kine enery where as they go; and if it be in Wheate Harnest, this is the principall

victuall carryed by those people vnto the warre. 127. All the Pretes Robes of Silke are laid in square Paniers made of wicker, which are The Pretes foure spans long, layed two and two together, and are halie so broad, couered with raw Oxe Carriages. Hirles with the haire on, and at every corner there is a chaine, which commeth over the cover, and hathin the midft a locke of Iron, wherein these Chaines are locked with a little Key, And as these are locked which carrie the Silke, solikewise are those which carrie fine Clothes of Inda, and they are borne upon mens heads, and are about five thousand or fixe thousand, and hetweene euery hundred goe certaine Souldiers. And because euery yeare the Silkes and embroy. dered Clothes grow to such quantities, as wel of those which are payd for the Tributes of divers Realmes, as of those which the Prete sometimes causeth to be bought, and so great numbers are not frent, and cannot be carryed with him in his trauell, therefore every yeare they put them 39 we faw in our way, when wee came first to Court, which was never to the gates, called before Treatment.

Badabaie, neere vnto certaine deepe Vallies before-mentioned. At this Caue many Warders are continually, and every paffinger payeth vnto them a certaine Toll, which is appointed for this Guard. After the same manner that the Robes and Clothes of Silke are carryed, so is the Treaturor likewise carryed in Chefts, but somewhat leffer, which are covered with Leather, and locked, as those which carryed the Robes : and ouer the couering, the Chaines, and the Locke. is another raw Oxe-hide put, which is failtned with thongs of the faul Hide, and there it dryeth and becomme h very firong. And thefe Chefts of Treasure are wonderfull many, and alwayes goe with a great Guard, and likewife yearely many of them are put into those Caues, for they

40 cannot carrie fo many with them as doe increase, and multiply cuery yeare. This Caue which we faw, was three miles from the house of Peter de Couillan, and hee told

vs, " that the Goldin this Came was sufficient to buy the one, halfe of the World: for every yeare " Sit perhibent vs, "that the Goath fine Came was just we way one were complety and reverse. Lot there yet when take any out. Tou-quiet manys, and he neuer law them take any out. Tou-quiet manys cheng the Silke and Cloth of Gold, "Peter Caulius told vs, that often times the yout tooke out maintainment."

The contract of the Churches and Manuflarine as were done there were before the contract that the contract of the contract that the contract the contract that the contract that the contract the contract that the contract the contract that the c thereof to give vnto the Churches and Monasteries, as was done three yeeres before our comming thither, when the Prete lent exceeding great Offerings to Ierufalem, of Cloth of Gold and Silke, which he had taken out of those Caues, because of the great store that was therein, And the Offerings were so great, that they covered the wals of the Church of the holy Sepul-And the Otterings were to great that they control to the Gall. There are many more of these kind of The Turbu chre. * He sent thither also a quantitie of other Gall. There are many more of these kind of then warming Caues made after the 'ame manner that this is, being all of them in the files of Mountaines, be-against the So cause they have no walled Cities or Calle, wherein they may keepe in, he had of things. The solar haire of Ambastadour which went vinco levigatem, to carry the forefaid Offerings, is called, 1864 Abe. themsees rata, who at this present is chiefe Guardian of the Sisters of Prese Lanni, and carryed with him stroyed. about fifteene hundred men, with other Gondemen with Drummes and I have heard of them files nor Chies which were with him, that they alwayes trauelled by the way playing upon their Drummes. in all Ethiopia.

from the Citie of Cairo vnto Ierasalem, and in their returne they came running away being halfe destroyed, because the Great Tinke came against the Soldan of Egyps , and against the faid Ci-

tie of Cairo, whereby they were to paffe.

ò. XIX.

Pilerimage to Ierusalem. Of the Countries which border on PRETE IANKE Moores, Gentiles, Amazones, Cafates, Damute, Goiame, Baga. midri, Nubia. Of SALOMONS Officers.

Pilgrimage to

128. Hile we were in the Towne of Barna, which is the head of the Kingdome of Barnagasso, there assembled a Caranan to goe to Ierusalem, and they were three hundred thirtie fix Friers and Priefts, and fifteene Nuns. And this was 10 in the Christmas Holy-dayes : for they depart immediately after Twelfe.

tide, and vie to be at Ierusalem the weeke before Easter, travelling fort and faire as their manner is. They began their journey from a Towne diffant from Barna, a dayes journey and an halfe. which is called Einacen, which is a Towne and a Territorie, abounding with all kind of victories als, and there are many Monasteries, and here they began to close vp their Carauan, and it is place subject vnto the gouernment of Daffila, which is vnder Barnagaffo. When the faid Friers departed, they made a very small journey, and in the Euening tooke vp their Lodging, and prefent'y fet up the Tents of their Churches, whereof they had three, and began to fay their Houres and Maffes, and receiving the Communion; the next day, about nine of the clocke, they began their Voyage, and they were all laden with victuals, and with Gourds, and Barrachios of wa- 24 ter, and the Tents of their Churches, and the stones of their Altar were carryed vpon Camels: and they trauelled not about fixe miles a day. And because I would fee their manner of trauelling : I went two dayes journey with this Carauan.

This Carauan, after they had passed Suachen, was affaulted by Arabian Moores, which our The Pilgrims threw those that were their guides, and tooke the Pilgrimes, and bauing slaine the old men, they fold the young men for flaues; and of three hundred thirtie fixe there escaped but fifteene. which went forward on their Voyage. And afterward I faw three of them, which declared vnto me all their mif-hap, and they told me that this out-rage was done vnto them, because they were the Paringals friends, and it is most certaine, that they are very odious vnto their Neighbours for our sakes. Since the Massace of these friends vntill this instant, no man hath passed in 19 Carauan to Ierufalem, but they goe thither fecretly as Paffengers, and these are accounted for holy men. And because the Inhabitants of Ierusalem are white people, when we came first into this Countrey, they called vs Christians of Ierusalem. There is also another way by Sea, which is gone in a leffer time. They imbarke themselues at the Hauemof Maczas, and sayle to the Hanen of Tor, which is neere to Mount Smai, and they poffe in five and twentie dayes.

129. The Territorie, Kingdomes and Lordships confining voon the Kingdomes of Prete Ianm, as farre as I can learne, are these. First, beginning at Maczna toward the Red Sea and the Eath, on that Coast are Archian Moores, which keepe the Cattle of great Lords that are under the Kingdome of Barnagaffo. And thefe goe thirtie and fortie together with their wives and children, and hauea Christian for their Captaine, and are all Theeues, and rob by the high way, 40 and are fauoured by the Lords whose Cattle they keepe. A little farther, you enter into the Kingdome of Dangati, which is a Kingdome of the Moores, and it hath one Hauen, called Della, and this Hauen is neere vnto the Street of the Red Sea, entring into the Land toward the Abiffins, and this Kingdome stretcheth vnto the borders of the Kingdome of Adel, which belongeth vnto the Lord of Zeila and Barbara : and thefe two Kingdomes meete in the in-land, vpon the Confines of Prete lams. And there is source and twentie great Captain-ships or Lord-ships, which are called Dobas.

\$30. Adel is a very great Kingdome, and stretcheth to the Cape of Guardafui, and in that part, a fubicat of his gouerneth; and this King of Adel is held for a Saint among the Moores, becaute hee maketh continuall warre vpon the Christians : and of the spoiles which hee win- 50 neth, hee alwayes fendeth Presents to the bouse of Mecca, to Cairo, and to other Kings: and they returne vnto him in recompence, Armour, Horles, and other things for his ayde O which King I have spoken in the one hundred and fourteenth Chapter. This Kingdome of Adel bordereth in some part with the Kingdome of Fatigar and Xoa, which Countreyes belong

Adea.

131. In the midst of the Kingdome of Adel, as you passe into the Country, beginneth the Kingdome of Adea, which is inhabited with Moores, who are subject to Prete lanni, and this Kingdome Aretcheth vnto Magadaxa.

Lord thips of

132. Amidft the Kingdome of Adea, as you goe Westward, beginne the Lord-ships of the Gentiler, which are no Kingdomes, & border vpon the Dominions of the Prets. The first of the fe Lord-ships, or Captain-ships, is called Ganze, and is inhabited with Gentiles and Christians. Next vnto this is a great Lord-ship, almost as bigge as a Kingdome, and they are Gentiles, the slaues of which Countrey are made no great account of. They have no King, but many Lords in divers parts of the Countrey, and this Lord-ship is called, Gamu. And as you paste farther to-

ward the South-west, in the Kingdome, called Gorage. And with this Kingdome of Gorage, and Lord-ships of Ganze and Gamu, the Kingdomes of Oifa and Xoa, which belong to Prete lanm. doe confine together.

122. Asyee trauell toward the West, upon the faid Frontiers of the Kingdomes of the Prete. especially spon the Kingdome of Xos, there is a very great Citie and Kingdome, called Damnie, Dannie, the slaves of which Kingdome are highly esteemed by the Moores, who will not depart with them for any money. And all Arabia, Perfus, and Egyps are full of the Slaues of this Countrey, which become perfect Morrer, and great Warricurs. The people of this Kingdome are Geniller. a hough there be many Christians among them. I say thus much because I have feene many 10 Priefts Friers, and Nuns conversant in the Court of the Prete, which affored mee that there

are many Monasteries, and Religious persons in that Country. This King is called, The King of the Centules. And the most part of the Gold which numeric current in the Dominions of Golder Bat. the Prete, is brought out of this Country; for they know better how to digge and refine the mate fame : and great flore of victuals is also brought from thence. And when we kept our Lent in the Countrey of Gorage, we had great store of greene and fresh Ginger brought from thence, and Ginger great flore of Fish, and plentie of Grapes, which in Lent season were ripe in those parts. And

after Eafter we had many great Sheepe and Oxen.

CHAP. S.S. 19.

And I was certified and affered, that on the Frontiers of these Kingdomes of Damute, and Gorage, as you travell toward the South there is a Kingdome governed by women, which may 20 be called Amazones, according as it is recorded and wratten in the Booke of Don Piedro, the In- Amazones, the fant of Porgugall. But these women (if it bee true) in generall have their Husbands with them all warlise win-s the years, and line with them: they have no King but a Queene that hath no certaine Husband, of those parts. but suffereth any man to lye with her, and to get her with child, and the eldest Daughter forceedeth in the Kingdome. They fay, that they be very valiant women and great Warriours, and that voon certaine beafts which are very fwift, and like vnto Oxen. They are great Archers, and in their youth they cause their left brest to be dryed up, that it hindernot their shooting. They gather great store of Gold in this Kingdome, which is first carryed into the Kingdome of Damuse, and from thence into many other parts. The Husbands of these women are no Warriours. because they will not faffer them to manage Armes.

30 In the Kingdome of Denute, they fay, there for ingeth a most mighty River, which is contrarie A mightle to Nilus; for the one runner those way, and the other another Nilus runner th toward Egyps, but huge Ruser. the Inhabitants know not particularly whither this other runeth, but it is supposed to run westward vitto the Kingdome of Congo. In the Kingdome of Domine, when the winter approacheth, is faid, frings and that they look for raine flowers and lightning all-house they have and that they looke for raine showres, and lightning, although they be not enforced thereunto, out of the flue they digge and delue the Earth very well, till the mould be fine, that the swater which faller he Lesroish M. may wash the same, and the Gold may remayne cleane, and most commonly they seeke it in the be, of which night by Moone-light, for then they fee it gliffer. Also I have often feene the people feeking Lakes perhaps. Gold in the aforefaid manner, in the Towne of Carring, which is in the Kingdome of Tigrai, man 40 and they told ne, that they found it for the most part by night.

134. Trauelling Westward, and as it were directly West, through this Kingdome of Dammer, of spathering there are certaine gournments of people, called Cafairs, a Nation very blacke, and of great stature : and it is reported that they were descended or the race of the leves, but they have neither Coffeet 2 No. Bookes nor Synagogue. They are very subtile men, and of greater wits then any other people tion supposed that are in the parts. They are Geniller, and great Warrers, and alwaies are in warre with temple nightal, the Prete. They confine with part of Xea, and Goisson. I was neuer there my lefte; but that which I fay, I heard reported by our Peringals, which were there, when the great Betudete went against them with an Armie; and againe, when the Prete went in perion: and they told mee, that these Cafates made great assaults upon them, and chiefly by night, when they came to stay 50 and rob them: on the day-time they retired to the Mountaines and Woods, and namely, into

certaine wonderfull deepe Valleyes, which are among the Mountaines. 135. But leaving the South, and taking the West; another Kingdome lieth somwhat lower, Gainer belonging to the Prete, called Goiame, a great part whereof belonged to Queene Helens his mo- The RiverNither. In this Kingdome springeth the River of Nilmi, which in this Countrey is called Gion, and Im, otherwise ther. In this Kingdome (pringerth the Kiner of Nilsa, which in this Countrey is called Gism, it is illusth out of two Lakes, which are fo great, that they feem to be Seas, wherein, as they report, called Gism, if illustrations and Mermaids, and some haue assured me, that they haue seem them. Peter de Coullans of two great or twh told me, that he had beene in this Kingdome, by commandement of Queene Helena, to give or- Likes, in the der for the making of an Altar, in a Church which five had caused to bee builded in that Terri- Kingdome,

torie, wherein shee her selfe was buried, and that this Altar was made of wood, which they fil- Goiane. 60 led full with massie Gold : and the Patriarch Abuna Marke told me, that he did consecrate the Altar stone, which was great, and very heavie, that is to say, it was all of Gold. We were certaine times upon the frontier of the laid Kingdome, where we were informed, that this Church had great Guards appointed vnto it, because of the great quantitie of Gold which was in the fame : and all the Gold of this Kingdome of Goiame is tomewhat base. I could not understand, with what People this Kingdome confineth on the farther fide, which lieth in the West, only I

Zzzzz z

heard fay, that there were Defarts full of Mountaines, and that beyond them were certaine lewes. I affirme not this, but only deliuer that, which I heard spoken in generall by every bodie

well of Goiame. Bazamidri 2 great Kingdome 600. miks long.

A1401.

Nubia.

falf a lutting?

Bifhop and

len from the

faithfor chile

Salamons Offi.

The Prophe

conuction

126. At the end of this Kingdome of Goianse beginneth another Kingdome, which is the greatest irrall the Dominions of Prete lann, and is called Bagamidri. This runneth along by the bankes of Nilm, and therefore is very great, for it beginneth at the Kingdome of Colume and nankes of raises, and intercore invery great, for a comment at the amyoome of commen, and particulating by the Kingdomes of Americ, of Trayen, of Trayenshop, and Barnegaffe; and paffeth about fixe hundred miles in length. Betweene the Kingdonjes of Angelet and the state of them, are certaine Econollings, Weltward toward (Nike, the people where are called, Again, which are partly Gentiles, and partly Christians. On the other file, I know not youn whom they doe confine, but I thinke they mult border voon this Kingdome of Baga. In marr, in which Kingdome, I was certified by many, that were there themselves, that there is a

Mountaine of Mountaine contayning Silver in great abundance, which they knew not how to get out of the fame, but in this manner, that where they faw any Caue, they filled it with wood, and let fire on it, as they vie to doe in a Lime-kill, and this fire maketh the Silver to melt, which runneth all into barres, which is a thing almost incredible : nevertheleste, Peter Conillan told me, that I needed not to doubt, but that this was most true. I fay, that which I have heard, and know. that this Siluer is in exceeding great reputation, and defired of all men.

137. At the end of this Kingdome of Bagamidri, toward Egypt, dwell certaine Moores, called

Belloos, which are Tributaries vnto Frete Lanni, and pay great numbers of Hories. Toward the North, thele Belless border vpon the People called Nuby, who by report were fometimes Chiti- 20 ftians, and fubicat vnto the Church of Rome. I have oftentimes heard r ported by a Sprien, borne in Trivoli of Syria, whole name was Iohn, and converfed with vs three yeeres in this Countrey of Prete lanni, and afterward went with vs into Portugall, that he had beene in Nubia, and faw there one hundred and fiftie Churches, which to this day have all of them the Images of the Crucifixe, and of our Ladre, and other Images painted upon walls , and that all this is old and

Their eligion ancient works. The Inhabitants are neither Christian, Mayer, nor laws, in line with a define to become Christian. All these Churches were builded in certains old and ancient Fortrefire to become Christians. All these Churches were builded in certains old and ancient Fortrefes, which are in the Countrey : and looke how many Fortreffes there be , fo many Churches there are in them.

While wet abode in this Countrey of Prete Janni, there came from Nubia, fixe men in forme to Word, and mis of Ambaffalors, to crave of him Priefts and Friers to inftruct them in the Faith; but he would fendle niggat fend them'none, faying vinto them, that be had fent for his Abuna, that is, his Patriarch, from the dife: wherest ... Chie of Alexandria, which is substituted by the Moores, and that therefore he thought it not consensed to how many of ... Chie of Alexandria, which is substituted by the Moores, and that therefore he thought it not consensed to the warm weard. Our Prieff had from vinto from feeting he had bleaked them with so great travell by the memes of of Montes, and others: and so they returned back against. These Noblans said, that is all time they had their Bishop from Rome, which being dead many yeeres agoe; and being not able, by reason of the Warres of the Mahametan; to have another, they were without Priests and Religious men, and by this meanes the Christian Fairh began to be forgotten. These Nubians border upon E. Profes are fal- gypt, and this Countrey lieth ouer against Smachen, which is toward the East vpon the red Sea: and the Dominions of thele Nutrans are on both fides of the Ruer Nilst: and as many Forttel- 40 les as there be, so many Captainsh ps be there also.

This Snachen is that Towne, which standeth on the frontiers of the dominions of Prete land, and in the beginning of Egypt, and on the frontiers of thefe Lord hips of the Nubians: and hath betweene it and them the Moores, called Bellois. As you come from this Suachen, and goe along Tem for reichis the Sea-coast toward the He of Maczina, it is faid, that the Countriey is so full of Woods, that a man is not able to travell through them. This is as much as I could learne and know, concerning the Kingdomes and Dominions of Preie lanni, on every fide of the fame, the greatest part whereof, I have heard by others, and the leffer part was feene by my felfe.

propnected)
by that design 138. Salomon is faid to have appointed Officers to his fonne Mesleeb, when hee fent him
of destruction from Ierufalem to Ethiopia, to the Saba, his mother. And truth it is, that vnto this day the faid to Offices continue in the race of them which then were fent hither, having succeeded from the father vnto the fonne. Which Officers " hee gave him out of the twelve Tribes, to wit, out of

Lew fb Monke possesting to long to large a Soutraign tie, as all others rates of the Queene of Sabas sonne and his followers; hatched (it feemes) by some Politicin, which to confirme a Sourcaspine (perhaps wonne by the food) would deutic dreams of a benourable defeast, And it Salomes had this sonne, how it salomes that the salomes between the salomes that the salomes between the salomes that the salomes that the salomes that the salomes the salomes that the salomes the salomes that the salomes that the salomes that the salomes the salomes that the sal Salomer his owne line (if he had any) ought to his merit e Neithert och te levelly, or Gettile, or chriften Stories or commen rester, or probabilitie fubfiribe to this Merich tale. And contrarie to letels Prophecie, both before and quest fince Shiles committee. bath a Scepter and a Lam giver in Ethiopia: ye a, the pertition wall was pulled downe, and had extended it felfe to Chambefror lay nates a septements a Law jume in Leavenger. — in the principle of the prin is aburd to be earnest in rejuting fo aburd a iest. Once if this rate were true, they were neither good If refiter which rieglected the Temple and legall Rires; nor are good Chriftians to admit to many of them. Yet is it likely, that forme len, or lewift Christian have corrupted their Christianitie by continuance of Circumcision, which the Ethiopians and Arabians have forming Ages before and fince Christ vice : And also many Ethnicke parts of Africa fill doe : and made way to fome Statisfe to been this headle liquod of Meiketh to arrogase Propheticall authoritie and Royall Nobilitie, though with insure to Christ himselfe the heire of Salamon, and to the mysteries of Christianitie. See my Pi'g. 1.7.c.a. and 6. 5.4.

each Tribe one Office, asiChamberlaines, Porters, Surveyers, Vihers, Trumpetters, Captaines of his Guard, and other Officers necessarie for a King or Potentate in his Court: and these are much Honoured, hecause they be Grentlemen , and descended of the People of Ifrael; and there be many of every Office; because the somes of the Chamberlaines, and all their off-spring carrie the name of that Office, and the like is to be faid of all the posteritie of the rest. And all of them are taken for such, saving the Pages, which were wont to be the sonnes of great Noor them are classed for along juding the reges, which were worked to be the following great Noblemen, and Lords; but now they are not: because (as I have faid before) when the Prece. Sends for any great Nobleman, it ended him not work wherefore he sends for him; and when he was senued by Pages; which were the sometis of great Noblemen, they discovered his secrets; Io and therefore he put them from that Office, and vied Places within he chambers, which were Slavespaird the formes of Kings of the Mores, or of the Gentiles, which are daily taken by inroads which the Prese his people make : and if he fee that they be towardly, hee causeth them to be instructed, before they be admitted into his presence; and if they proue discreet and good, he taketh them in , and vieth them for Pages. Indeed hee vieth the lonnes of great Lords for Pages abroad or without doores; as, for Pages for his Bridle, when he rideth, and Pages of the Kirching but they come not into his Chambers, as is reported, and as we our felues have feene. Moreouer, all the Canons, which they call Debeteres, defeend of the race of those which came from lerafalem with the forme of Salomin: and therefore they are more honourable then all the rest of the Clergie.

δ. XX.

The Frier . Ambassadours Signiories. Their departure and arrival at Osmuz, and after at Goa : at Lisbon. Briefe Notes of Ethiopia, and Letters to the King of Portugall, and the Grand Captaine.

He fame day that the Preir departed toward the Kingdome of Ades, the Frier his Ambaffadour, and I, departed toward the Lordship, which the Press had given him. One of these Lordhips concayneth eightie houses and two Churches, and belonged vitto a little Monafterie, which the faid Frier had before.

The Lordinip which was newly given vnto him, was Arras of the Canas, that is, Capeaine of the men of Armes, in the Countrey of Abugana, and they may be some eight hundred and more. About mid-Lent, wee came to the place where our people aboad, and wee thought long vntill Easter, when the Portugals were to come for vs. When Easter was past (about which time is the motion of the Sea) and we faw no body some for us, we remayned very fad, as we had been before. The moneth of July being come; when the Pres widerstood, that the Porsugals were not arrived, he gave order to his Ambassadour, and to a Nobleman of Abussas, whose name was Abuse Arraz, that they should goe with vs vnto these Lordships, to furnish vs with victualls: 40 and because the Flaruest was alreadic ended, hee commanded that wee should have five hundred loades of Corne, one hundred Oxen, and one hundred Sheepe: and that Zaga Zabo his Ambaffadour should give vs Honey to make vs Wine. And having received those victuals, we returned to Barua, by the midst of Innuarie.

140. On Eafter Tuelday at mid-night, there came Letters from Don Heller de Silniera. Grand Captayne of India, that he was come for vs , and was at Macana; which Letters being read, we conceived all of vs vnfpeakable ioy. Don Roderigo the Ambaffadour, would have had vs depart without delay the next morning, but I would not, faying, That if we did fo, they would take vs for no Christians, and that we oughe to stay till the Octaves of Easter : and immediately we dispatched one of our Portugals with a man of the Country, with our Letters, vn-

so to the faid Don Helter, and fent another Letter to Zaga Zabe the Ambaffadour of the Prete, who flayed behinde, that he should come with as great hafte as was possible, and travell day and night toward the Sea-fide, to the Towne of Ercoco, because the Fleet was come thithet to fetch

141. On Munday, being the Octave after Eafter, we departed from Barun, the Barnagaffo, and all we Portugals, toward Ercoco. The Barnagaffo, what with his owne and his Gentlemens traine, had one thousand men riding upon Mules, and about fixe hundred men on food and wee Dimenil. lodged fixe miles from Barne, in a Towne called Dinguil, standing in the midst of a great champaigne field, where every Munday at night great store of people meet together, to goe to the Faire of Ercoco, and they goe as it were in Carauan, for feare of the Arabia 1, and of the wilde

6c Beafts of the Countrey. Here two thousand men loyned themselves with vs, which went to the faid Faire. And they faid, they were but few, because the rest would not goe thicker, for feare they should not finde water to drinke; howbeit, the people that went with Barnagaso, From Barna to and we our felues, were all promided : and from the Towne of Barna to Ercoco, might bee some Ercoco five and fine and fortie miles, and we spent a whole weeke in this voyage. And on Saturday morning, fortie miles. we lodged neere the Towne of Ereoco, and came not vnto our Ships.

On Tuelday morning, the Barnagaffo with all his Captaines and people, deliuered vs to Dan Hetter de Silmera, with exceeding ioy and gladnelle, and fent vs for a prefent fiftie Oxen, many Sheepe, Hens, Capons, and Fish, which hee had caused to bee taken, to divide the same among our Ships, On Wednesday morning, came Zaga Zabo, the Ambassadour of Prete lann, whom we went to meet with vito Ercoco, to accompanie him; and to Barnagaffo came and delivered him to the Captaine of the Armie, and so we stayed attending for the motion of the Sea. that is to fav, the time for our departing, which alwayes commeth betweene the foure and twente or fixe and twentie of April, and the third or fourth of May : and if wee depart not at this motion, and in this feafon, there commeth none other till the end of August. 142. On the eight and twentieth of April, 1526, the whole Fleet departed, which confi. lo

The Portugall Floet of fine failes. Cameran. Adta

fled of fine Sailes, that is to fay, of three great Galeons, and two Carauels, and wee arrived on the Ile of Camaran. The tenth of May, when wee were over against the Citie of Aden. And when we began to launch into the mayne Sea, from whence the Winter of India began to come against vs full in our faces, and we failed against the same, there began so great a Tempest. that the second night wherein we entred into the same, with extreme darknesse and rage of weather. we loft companie, not knowing what course any of our Consorts held. We failed in this florme untill we came to the Streightof Ormaz; and the eight and twentieth of May, we came to the The Hauen of Hauen of Mazcare, which belongeth to the Kingdome of Ormaz. Departing from this Hanen, we arrived in the Citie of Ormuz, where the King our Mafter hath a Fortrelle. Here Long Vaz of Saint Paul, being Grand Captaine and Gouernour of the Indies, came forth to receive vs on 2 the Sea-moare, who embraced vs all; and the next day, after we had heard Maffe, we went to Speake with the faid Grand Captaine, and presented vnto him the Letter of Prete Ianni, which we brought for Diego Lopez de Sequeira, which brought vs into the Countrey of Prete lami; which Letter the faid Lopez Vaz did reade, becanfe he was Successor to Drego Lopez de Seguera. Then we presented him a Vesture of filke, having five plates of gold before, and five more behinde, and one voon each houlder, which make twelue in all, every one of them as bigge as the palme of a mans hand, which the Prete lent to Diego Lopez: and the laid Lopez Vaz gaue vun Don Roderigo de Liena the Ambasiadour two hundred Pardaos, that is to Gy, two lundred Ducats, and water the Ambaffadour of the Press other two hundred, and to me one hundred. Du Hector de Schuera Stayed but a while in Ormez, and would needs returne with his Fleet, to wat 1) for the thips which depart from Zidem to come vnto Die, and let forth at the time of the motion of the Sea, wherein we came forth; but they winter in Aden, and fo goe forward in the voyage: but we flayed here in Ormas, vntill wee were fire that the Winter was ended.

> A Copie of the Letter which Prete lanni writ to Don Diego Lopez de Sequiera, which was delivered to Lopez Vaz of Saint Pant, his Successiour in the government of the Indies.

IN the Name of God the Father, which hatb beene almaget, who hath no beginning; In the Name w It is supported by the fact, which is they wind him, before the light of the Startes was feete, and he fore the foundation of the Ocean Sea was laid, who was conceived as another time in the Firgins wonder, without the Seede of Man, and without Marriages, for after this fort was the understanding of his Office: in the Name of the Holy Ghoft the Comforter, which knoweth all fecrets, what feeter they bee, that is to fay, of all the beighths of the Heanen, which is suffayned without any pillars or props, and bath amplifieth the Earth, which before was neither created nor knowne , from the East unto the Well, and from the North unto the South. And of these three Persons, none is afore or after another, but is a Trimitie, contayned in one eternall Creasor of all things, by one fole Counsell, and one onely Word

These Letters and Ambassages are fent from mee Atani Tingil , that is by interpretation , The 10 Income of the Urigin (for for man I named at the day of my Christians) but most an eliked Danid, the Head of my Kingdomes of the higher and large Ethiopia, the beloned of God, the Piller of the Faith descended of the Stocke of Iuda, the Some of Dauid, the Some of Salomon, the Some of the piller of Sion, the Sonne of the Seeds of lacob, the Sonne of the Hand of Mary, the Sonne of Nahu, according to the flesh; To Diego Lopez de Sequeira, Grand Captaine of the Indies. I have underflood, that albeit you are subiest onto a King, yet neuerthelesse, that you are a Conquerour in all enterprizes, which are committed to you, and are not afraid of the innumerable forces of the Moores, having subdued Fortune, with the Armes of the boly Faith, and that you cannot be unquighted of any forest things, being arreed with the Truth of the Capell, and refine your felly even the Speare, which carrieth the Bana of the Creffe, for which canife the Lord be always: bleffed, which hash fulfilled our vey for the love of our 60. Lord Tofus Christ.

Upon your comming into these parts, you certified vs of the ambassage of the King your Lord, Don Emanuel, and of the Preferent whoch you have preferred with 6 great nearlett us your flow, having induced great trindes and Stormer, as well by Sea as by Laud, wherein you have come from 6 farre Countrajes to Subdue the Moores and Pagans, conducting and governing your Ships whither some you thinke good, which is wonderfull to confider: and about all things, that you have beene two whole yeeres in Warre upon the Seas, enduring so great travell, taking rest neither day nor night; considering, that the actions of Man, according to the visuall custome, are done in the day-time, as to buy, to fell, to tranell by the way, and the night is made to sleepe, and to take rest, as the Scripture saith; The day is Pial, 104, v. 20, made for Men to doe their bufineffe, from the morning vnto the evening, and the Lions roaring \$1.22. after their prey, doe feeke their meate at God; and when the Sunne arifeth, they get them a-

way together, and lay them downe in their Dens: and 6 both Men and Bedis are went to take the reflex yet neither fleepe both bearcome you, we the night, nor the day, when the Sume arifeth, for 10 the low which you bear our boly Early & Sum Paul flath; Who thall feprate vision the Roma. 1,31. loue of Chrift' Shall tribulation, or anguish, or persecution, or famine, or nakednesse, or perill, lames 1,12, or fword. And the Apostle Saint James fasth: Bleffed is the man that endureth temptation; for when he is tried he shall receive the Crowne of Life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him. God fulfill your desires, and give you prosperitie, and bring you safe and sound onto Keng Don Emanuel, your Lord, and remove the Mootes on to jour fight, which you have vanquish, and, because they beteene not in the Faith of our Lord Lefue Christ: and "essent be your men of Warre al[9]; for surely, they be Martyrs for our Lord lefus Christs sake, for they due for hunger, for cold, and for heate, for his boly Names (ake. Honorable Sir, when I understood of your comming into our Countries, I greatly reiojeed thereas, and freeward understanding of your fudden departure. I was not a 20 little griened. I reiojeed also, when I was informed, that you had som an Ambassadour vote suce, and

praised the Name of God the Father, and of his Sonne Issus Christ our Lord, especially for the good report of you, which resoundesh on all sides, and because you were desirous to enter in friendship with vs. And because (as I conceive) your good will is such, I wish that you would wouch fafe to fulfill the sures. in fending vs Artificers which can worke in gold and filner, and can make Swords, and Armour of Iron, and Head-pecces; and also Masons to build Houses, and men that are skilfull to plant and trim Vines after your manner, and to dresse Gardens, and are skilfull in all other Artes, which are best and most necessarie for the life of man, and also Worke-men to cast sheets of Lead for the concring of Churches, necessaries for rot use of man, non-user over-oness uses processed, and of these we fland in very great need, and of these we fland in very great need, and for want of them we are alwaise in disquiet. I have built a great Church, which is manual the Ti-30 mitic, wherein the body of my Father is buried, for his Soule is in the hand of God, and the walls there-

tills, worten we way y my earness were my year good and I would court be force a force as force as I could possibly, and would take away the Grasse which at this project is upon its. For Gods fade, fend mee of the Artificers, twelve at the least nevery Art; and yet for this you foull never want (Artismen, And if they will far with ve, they shall far, and if they will depart, they shall depart, and will the work them very bountful for their paints, etc. This Towns of Zeila is the Hauen, whither all the Vestuals doe come, which are result port aits Alen, and fo through all Atabia, and other Kingdomes and Countries, which cannot be farnished, but outly with fact Victual as Come from Cella and Maccia, which are brought thicher from our Kingdomes, and the Kingdomes of the Moores. And if you doe this, are oronger tottoer from our Longames, smaller Amgames of the Mooles. and I fon are tou, which I perfunde you, possible from grown fabrichton the whole Kingdome of Aden, and all had 40 bis, and other Kingdomes a disgning, without ware, or the death of any of your people, for taking vic-

tuals from them, they will remaine besieged, and hunger-started. And when you will wage warre against the Moores, acquaint mee with what sever you want; for I will fend you great troopes of Horse-men and Archers, Vituals and Gold, and will come my seife in person, and I and you will defeat the Moores and Pagans, for the advancement of the holy Christian Faith.

dua l'agans, for toe ausancement of the 1921 versions - auto.

Father Don Francisco is worth of double remard, because best is an boly man, and of an oppighs

conscience, and exceeding bouest for the tone of God. Being fully acquainted with his good disposition,

I have given him a larifaction, a Crosse, and a Stasse is the hand, which is a signe of authoritie, and have made him an Abbot in our Dominions, and I would wish you to increase his honour, and to make bim Bishop of Maczua, and of Zeila, and of all the Hands of the Red Sea, and head of our Countries. 30 because he is sufficient, and deserveth the like, or a greater office, &c.

143. Wee departed from Ornouz in the fleet of Lopez Usz of Saint Paul, the Grand Cap- ornur, taine, because Don Hector de Silniera was gone toward the Red Sea, to encounter the Ships of Mecca, which wintered in the Citie of Aden, as I faid before : and being come out of the threit of Ormuz, we found that the Winter of India was past, and that wee might sayle without any Tempest, and we failed to a Fortresse of the King our Lord, in the Countrey of Chaul, which chaul. is very pleasant, and aboundeth with Corne, which commeth from Cambaia, and of Oxen, Sheepe, Hennes, and infinite store of Fish, and many fruits of India, and Herbs of Gardens, made by our Portugals. Within few daies after, Don Heltor de Silviers returned, and brought Three rich with him three Ships of Mecca, which he had taken, with great riches of Gold, because as yet thins of Mecca

60 they had not brought their merchandize, and came to buy them in India, and all the Moores taken. which were young and luftie, that were taken in the faid thips, they thrust into the Kings Gallies, felling them at ten Duckets a man, which is the Kings ordinary price. The reft which were old and weake, were likewise fold for ten duckets a piece. Departing from thence, wee came vnto the Citieof Goa, the fine and twentieth of November, on Saint Katherine; Euen. Go.

We leparted from thence, and came to Caranor, where we stayed fixe daies, then wee went to Co.hm, where wee found Antonie Galuano, the Sonne of Edward Galuano, the Ambassadour. Anionie Ga 24. a Garracke exceedingly rejoyced thereat, and would needs come and fetch them from the ship, with all the Priests and Friers of the Citic, and with an infinite number of Waxe-Candles, and so hee was carried to the Monasterie of Saint Antonie. And because the Mariners will not carriedead Corples in their ships, therefore the said Antonie caused a Graue to bee made behind the high Altar, and made as though he had put the Coffin therein, but secretly caused the same to bee carried to his ship, whereof he was Captaine.

14c. Being come to an Anker in the River of Lifton, over against the Kings house, incon-16 tinently came Boats vnto vs to receive our stuffe, and carried them to Saint Arrem, where we refeet fixe daies, and bought vs Mules and apparell, after the manner of Portugall. From hence we departed in a greater heate, then euer I felt in the Countrey of Prete Ianni, or in the Indies. The Ambasadour of Prete lanns with-drew himtelfe out of the way to the Towne of Azinaga being himtelfe and all his Company almost smothered with heate. The Kings Commissary conducted me to Ponte de Anonda, where I thought verily that I should have ended my daies for extreame heate, and if I had not beene succoured with coole Water, I had presently beene stifled. While we stayed in this place, Don Roderigo came thither, riding as fast as he could, and crying, Helpe, helpe for the loue of God, for the Moores, the Kings Pilots, and my Slaues, are dead for heate. Straight-way foure Mulettiers raune with foure Mules, and brought them thither, whereof one dyed immediatly, and another within two daies after : and so we indured a 10 great extremitie of heate. And voon the death of thefe two Moores, there was some suspicion of the plague, but the Kings Commissarie gaue sufficient Testimony of the truth, that is to fay, That they dyed with extreame heate; because that albeit they came out of hot Countries, yet were they not wont to goe clad and shod, but onely with a cloath from the girdle downe.

ward ; and now in this extreame heat which happened, being cloathed in apparell, they were veterly stifled. And truly, all the time that I was in the Indies, and in Ethiopia, I neuer felt for great a heat; and it was told me for a certaintie, that the felfe-fame day, there were very many that dyed of heate. The next day we transiled by night, and came to Zarnache, where were

ceiued order from the King, to flay there till he fent for vs.

146. Hauing flayed thirtie daies at Zarnache, with as much pleasure as might be, Diego Le pez de Sequeira, Surueyer of the Nauie, came vnto vs, who was the man that brought vs with his Fleet into the Country of Prete lanni, to fetch vs vnto the Citie of Coimbra, where the King lay. After two daies came many Bulhops, the Deane of the Chappell , and fundry Chaplaines, to fetch the Amballadour of Prete Tame, and all of vs which were with him from his lodging and they brought vs to the Kings Palace, where the faid Ambaffadour prefented to his Highness a Crowne of Gold and Siluer, which was fquare in foure pieces, and every one was two spanns high, and very rich, which the Prete Ianni lent, and two Letters made in quaternians of Parchment, faid ; King David my Lord, Sent this Crowne, and the fe Letters to the King your Father, which is in glorie, and Jent him. word, that never Crowne was Jent by the Sonne unto the Father, but the to they were wont to come from the Father to the Sonne : and that by the figne of this Crowne King Daund himseife was knowne, loued, feared, and obeyed in all his Kingdomes and Signiories, and bee being his Sonne, fent omto the King his Father the faid Crowne, to affure him, that all his Kingdomet, Signiories, and people, were readie to doe what soener his, Highnesse Should command. And afterward, basing beene enformed of the death of King Don Emanuel, hee faid; Let the Crowne and Letters, which for was the King Don Evanuel, my Father, be first was the King Don Ichn, my Bruber, be first was the King Don Ichn, my Bruber, be first was the King Don Ichn, my Bruber, which but Letter which I will write was him.

This being done, the faid Amballadour and I prefented two bagges of Embroydered Cloats, with two Letters, and a little Croffe of Gold, which the Prete lanni had lent to the Popes Holineffe, which things he requested to bee presented wnto him by me, Francis Aluarez. His Mar 50 ieftie receining the Croffe, kiffed the fame, and afcerward gaue it to Antonie Carmero, together with the Letters, and faid, that he thanked the Divine Maieftie , for that hee had guided in an happy way, the things which were begunne by the King his Lord and Father, and that hee would finish them accordingly, to the honour and glory of our Lord Iesus Christ,

In the yeare 1529, a good Benefice being fallen void in the Arch-bishepricke of Braga, his Maiestie bestowed the same of me, and commanded me to goe and present my lesse to my Lord Arch-bishop, Don Diego de Sonfa, that hee might confirme me in the same: which when I had done, his Lordship asked memany things concerning the Countrey of Prete Ianni, which her

wished me to put downe in writing. When the Prete transleth with all his Court; the Altar of the confectated stone, whereupon 60 Masse is said, is carried by Priests v pon their shoulders, and the said stones are laid vpon a little beare of Wood, and the Priests are alwaies eight, that is to say, Foure and foure to carrie them by turnes, and before them goeth a Clerke with a cenier, and a Bell which he ringeth, and eury man remoueth out of the way, and they which are on horse-backe do light, and doe their re-

In all this Countrey there is no Towne, that hath in it about fixteene hundred hou fes, and there are but few that are so bigge. Neither is there any walled Towne or Cassie. Their Villages are without number, and they have an infinite multitude of people. Their Houses are made in a round forme, all of Earth concred with Flagges, or with a certaine kind of Straw. which lafteth a mans life, with yards about them. There are no stone Bridges vpon their Rivers, but Bridges of Wood, They lye commonly vpon Oxe-hides, or in beds made of the thongs of the faid Hides. They have no kind of Table to eate vpon, but feed vpon or the thongs of wood, which are very broad, without Towels or Napkins. They have Their manner certaine great Platters like Basons of blacke Earth, as bright as blacke Amber, and Vessels like of feeding, In Curs to drinke water, and the Wine of the faid Countrey. Many eate raw flesh, others broyle it you the coles or burning embers : also there are Countries so destitute of wood, that they

broyle their meate vpon fire made with Oxe-dung-

The cause why Nilm overfloweth Egypt, is this, that whereas the generall Winter beginneth The cause of in & thiopia, in the midit of lune, and laiteth untill the midit of September, by reason of the the in rease exceeding great raines, which continue there all that feafon; Nilms groweth great and ouer. of Nilms

Prete, aritall his receits and expenses are onely put in writing. The Prete lanni hath two names of honour, that is to fay, Aregue, which tignifieth an Emperour, and Neguz, a King. Wine of Grapes is made openly but in two places, that is to fay, in the house of Prete lanni,

20 and of Abuna Marke, and if they make it elfe-where, they doe it iecretly. The Wine which Small store of they yie at the Communion, is made in this manner. In the Monasteries and Churches they Wine made in keepe Grapes as it were halfe dryed in their Veftries, and fleepe them ten dayes in water, when this Countrey. they be swolne, they day them, and then they presse them in a Wine-presse, and with that Wine

There is infinite plentie of Sugar-canes, but they know not how to boyle and refine the fame. Sugar-canes. onely they eate them raw.

There is no Mountaine in the Countrey whereon Snow is seene, neither doth it snow, al. No snow is though there be verie great Frosts, and specially in the plaine Countries.

There is exceeding great quantitie of Honey in all this Countrey, and the Bee-hiues are pla-Abundance of 30 ged after our manner, without the principall house, but they let them in the Chambers where Honey. the Hissbandmen remayne, and fet them against the wall, wherein they make a little hole. whereby they goe out into the fields. They also file about the Chambers, and yet the people will flay within, for they vie to goe in and out. They bring vp great flore of thefe Bees, effe-

cially in the Monasteries, because they are a great foundation of their suffenance. There are also Bees in the Woods and Mountaines, by whom they let wholfome barkes of Trees, and when they be full of Honey, they carrie them home. They gather great flore of Ware, and make Ware. Candles thereof, because they vie no Tallow-candles.

They have no Oyle of Olives, but of a certaine kind, which they call Hona, and the Herbe whereof they make it is like vuto little Vine-leaues : this Oyle hath no fmell at all but is as faire 40 and yellow as Gold. There groweth Flaxe also, but they know not how to dreffe it to make Flaxe. Cloth thereof. There is great store of Cotton-wooll, whereof they make Cloth of divers co- Conon-wooll, lours. There is also a certaine Countrey that is to cold, that they are forced to goe apparelled in courfe Cloth like a darke tawnie.

In no Towne where I have beene, have I feene any thanbles of flesh, fauing in the Court ? and in other places no man may kill an Oxe, although it be his owne, without asking licence of the Lord of the Towne.

Touching their ordinarie luftice, it is not their manner to put any men to death ; but they Their sidney beat him, according to the qualitie of his fault, and also they put our his eyes, and cut off his magnet of he hands and feete, howbeit, I faw one man burnt, because hee was found to have robbed a flick

The common people feldome speake the truth, although an Oath bee ministred wato them, valefie they be bound to sweare by the head of the King. They greatly stand in feare of Excommunication, and if they be commanded to doe any thing which is greatly to their prejudice. they doe it for feare of Excommunication. An Oath is ministred after this manner. They goe to Their manner. the Church gate with two Prietts, which carrie Incente and Fire with them . And hee which of mouthing is to Iweare, layeth his hand upon the Church gate, and the Priests will him to tell the truth, an Quet. faying, If thou fweare fally, as the Lion denoureth the freepe in the Forreft, to let the Douill denoure thy foule; and as the Corne is grinded under the Mil-stone, so let the Dendi reind thy bones ; and as the fire burneth the wood, fo let thy foule be burnt in Hellifise. And hee which 60 fwerresh, answereth Amen, to each of these Sentences. But if thou shall rell the truth; let thy life be prolonged with honour, and thy foule goe to Paradife with the Bleffed and tree faith,

Amen. Which Ceremonie being done, they caufe him to grue like tell monie. Whereas I have faid, that they fit not in their Churches, therefore I tell you, that without the gates of the same, there are alwayes placed a great number of woodden Crouches, like those

wherewith lame men doe helpe themselves, and every man taketh his owne, and leaneth voon in untill Seruice be done. All their Bookes, whichere many, are written in Parchment, for they have no Paper, and the writing is in the Language of Tigia, which is the Abaffine Tongue, that is the Language of that Countrey wherein they became first Christians.

All the Churches have two Curtanies, one by the high Altar with Bels, and within this Curtaine none doe enter but the Priefts : then there is another Curtaine in the midft of the Church : and none doe enter into the Church, but fuch as have received holy Orders, and many Gentlemen and Honourable persons doe receive Orders, that they may be admitted into the Church

The greatest part of the Monasteries are seated vpon high Mountaines, or in some deepe Val-The greatest part of the sound furifications, and in many of them, they eate no fieth all lev. They have great Revenues and Jurifications, and in many of them, they eate no fieth all the yeare long. They eate also very little fish, because they know not how to take them.

Voon all the wals of the Churches are Pictures of Christ and of our Ladie, and of the Apostles. the Propliets, and Angels, and in every one of them is the Picture of Saint George. They have no graven nor carued Images; neither will they fuffer Christ crucified to bee painted in the wals. because they say they be not worthy to see him in that Passion. All their Friers, Priests . and Noblemen, continually carrie a Croffe in their hand; the people weare Croffes about their neckes. Egery Prieft alwayes carryeth with him a Cornet of Braffe, full of holy water, and whereforper they goe, the people alwayes pray them to bestow holy water, and their blessing voon them. which they give voto them, And before they eate; they caft a little holy water voon their meat. and likewife into the Cup where they drinke.

pali Feafts,

The moutable Feaths, as Easter, the Ascension and Whitfuntide, are kept on the very fame 20 daves and dealons, wherein wee observe them. Touching Christmas, the Circumoison, and Twielfe-tide, and other Feafts of Saints they likewise agree with was in other Feafts they

When their

Their years and their first moneth beginneth the fixe and twentieth of August, which is the beheading of Sign 1660. And their year confilters of twelve monetts, and their monets of three days just when the years and they adopted the ways which they call by some, that is to fay, are ending of the years. Sand in the Laip opposite and fax days, and to they are

They have Cymbals like curs, and certaine great Baton; what what who rine. Flutes they of They have Cymbals like curs, and certaine special Baton; what who was the company of the Manuella shall have and certaine special Desiral Massa. They make the company of the Cymbals land they play know their before the Proceedings, but some what nudtly.

The naturall Hories of the Country are infinite; but are not very good, but are like vines

Hackheies, but those which come from Arabia and Egypt, are very excellent and faire, and the great Lords have Races of these Hories and as soone as they bee foled, they suffer them not to flicke their Dams about three dayes, whom they will prefently transil on, and taking the Cole from their Dams, they put them to be finkled of Kine, and they become exceeding faire.

Company De Thefe Letters :: following were eranflated into Latine, by Pa. louiss, and reniewed after alfo and pubmianus a Goes, by Ramusio. That which is omirred, is the fame with that in the former

The Letters of Danid, the Mightie Emperour of Ethiopia, unto Emanuel King, of Portugall, &c. Written in the yeere 1521. as also to King John and Pope Clement.

N the name of God the Father, who was from Enerlasting, and hath no beginning, &c. This & Letters are fent from me Athani Tingil, & c. Emperous of the great and high Echiopia, and of mightie Kingdomes, Dominions, and Territories, King of Xoa, of Caffate, of Fatigar, of Angote, of Baru, of Baaliganze, of Aden, of Vangue, of Coiame, (where Nilus fpringeth) of Amara, of Baguermedri, of Ambeaa, of Vagne, of Tigremahon, of Sabaym, from whence came the Queene of Saba, of Bernagaes, and Lord even to the Commercy of Nubia, bordering open Egypt. 19 These Letters are dissociated onto the most suiphie, most excellent, and victoriaus King Don Emanuel, who dwelleth in the things Good, and remayneth steds fast in the Catholike Faith, the Sonne of the Apafiles Peter, and Paul, sine King of Portugall and Algerbi, a lower of Christians, an Burmie. Index, Compromes and Tomographer of the Moores and Gentiles of Africs and Gottee, of the Cape of Bloom Sperimus, and of the Lie of the Moores, the of the Kel Sea of Arabis, Perita, and Ormuz, of the greater India, and of all places, Hands, and Countries adjacent, the destroyer of the Moores, and State Pagans, the Lordiof Foreresses, high Castles and Walls, the Inlarger of the Falsh of Lefiu Christ. Peace become thee, King Emanuel, who retying upon the affiftance of God, destroyeft the Moores; and with the places the fairblesse Dogs Peace be with 63 she Queine the Wife balance of lefu Christ. Sermant of the Virgine Marie the Mother of the Sanion of all people. Peace be to the Sounts, being now, is it were, in a fresh Garden, amidst the surreiting Litters, a Tuble furnished with all Daintness. Peace bee unto your Daughters, which are aderted with Princily Robes at Palatoone with Hangings of Tapistra. Peace unto your Kinsfolkes, the Off-firing

of Saints, of whom faith the Scripture, Bleffed are the Sonnes of Saints, and michtie abroad and at home Peace be to thy Counfellers, thy Officials, thy Magistrates and Ir does. Peace be to the Captaines of the Caffles and Borders, and of all thy defensible places. Peace be unto all Nations . People and Cities, and to all Inhabitants, except Moores and lewes. Peace bee to all Parifies, and to all that are faithfull to Christ, and to thy selfe. Amen.

I was advertised (most worthy King, and my Father) that so soone as the renowne of my Name mas brought onto you by Matthew, mine Ambassadour, you presently caused a great number of Arch-billogs, Bilhops, and other Prelats to be affembled, to give thankes unto our Samour Christ . for the same Ambassace, and that the said Matthew was entertained with creat bonour and folemnitie.

10 cfc. But let us omit these matters, and consult betweene our selves, how wee may innade and conquer other Lands of Infidels. I verily will bellow 100000000, drachmes of Gold, and Comanthoulands of Souldiers. Yea, I will bestow Wood also, and Iron, and Copper, for the bailding and furnishing of a breuite which Nany, and great plentie of vittuals. Ob King, and my Father, Emanuel, that one God protett and in theformer fane you, which is the God of Heanen, and alwaies of one Substance, being Subject neither to youth Authors may nor old age. He which broughs your message, was called Roverigo de Lima, and was the principall of the scene : as all his good company, and with him came Francis Aluarez, whom for his honest demeanour, his singular was not cent Religion, and opright dealing, I could not but most entirely lone, especially, when as being demanded by him, but by as touching the Faith, he are wered most truly and aptly. Tou one ht therefore to exalt him. to call him. Queen Heleus,

Master, and to grant him authoritie to convert the people of Maczua of Delagua, of Zeila and of 20 all the Ilands of the Red Sea, because they are upon the Borders of my Kingdomes, and I have sinen unto him a Crosse and a Staffe, in token of authoritie, and so likewise commend you the same things to be graunted unto him, and let him be created Bishop of the said Countries and Ilands, for he deserneth So to be, and is meete for the administring of this Function: and God will so mightily bleffe you, that you shall ever baue the upper hand of your enemies, and shall constraine them to fall downe before your feete. The same God prolony your daies, and make you partaker of the Kingdome of Heanen in a most Honourable place, even as I would wish for mine owne selfe. I have heard with mine eares, many good reports of thee, and with mine eyes I fee those things that I never expected to bine feene : God profeer all your affaires from good to better, and grant you a place upon the wood of life, where the Saints themselues are placed, Amen.

30 I, like an obedient Sonne, have done those things which you commanded, and will bereafter doe, when some your Ambassadours shall come, to the end we may mutually assist one another . And omo every of your Ambassadows which shall come, as the former did unto Maczua, or Delaca, or to other Hauens within the streets of the Red Sea, I will gime, and canse to bee einen those things which you James and the press of the second sec gue unto your subject sthose Lands to inhabite, which are next unto the Dominions of the Mobres : for it is requisite, that you bring your good beginnings to a bappy end. In the meane while, send societies from the services of Silver and Golden Images, and such as can worke in Copper, from Time, and

Lead: as also Artificers, which may Print Bookes in the Letters of our language for the Church, and likewife fuch as can beate Gold into thinne Plates, and therewith can gild other Metals. All thefe hall be most bonestly intreated in my Court, and when sour they will depart, I will give them liberal mages for their paines. And I sweare by our Lord lefus Christ, the Some of God, that I will freely dismisse them, when they shall thinke good. And this I doe most considerity demand, because I am not ignorant of your verine, and know right well the goodnesse of your disposition, being also assured of your exceeding lone toward me : and this I know the more certainly, because you so benowably intertained, and dismissed Matthew for my sake. And this is the cause that maketh mee so earnessly to request, Neither let this cause you to bee ashamed, for I will pay fir all things to the ottermost. That a bich a

50 Sonne asketh of his Father, ought not to be denyed : you are my Father, and I am your Sonne : let ve therefore be joyned together, as one stone in a wall is so ned to another, so being two, we doe agree in one heart, and in the love of lefus Christ, who is the had of the world, and they that are with him, are likened unto flones united in a wall. Amen.

TN the Name of God the Father, Almughtic Creator of Heanen and Earth, of all things visible and His Lewess to mulfible. In the Name of God the Sonne, Christ, who is the Sonne, and Counsell, and Prophet of his John the third Father, In the Name of God the holy Spirit, the Comforter, the living God, equall to the Father and King of Portuthe Son, who spake by the mouth of the Prophets, inspiring the Apostles, that they might give thankes &M.

and glorific the Trinitic, perfet alwaies in heaven, and in earth, in the fea, and in the deepe. Amen. 60 These Letters and this Messenger are sent from me, the Incense of the Virgine, orc. Now I send my meffage by Frier Christopher Licanati, being named at his Baptifme, Zaga Zibo, that is to fay, The Grace of the Father, who Shall follicite my request wnto you. Moreover, visto the Pope of Rome, I fend Francis Aluarez, to performe obedience in my Name, as it is meete. Renowned King and my Brother, indenous thy selfe to confirme that friendship betweene vs, whereof they Father was the Authors, and send often unto me thy Messengers and Letters, which I greatly desire to see, as comming from

my deare Brother. for it is very consenient, fithens we are both Christians, and fith the wicked Moores are alwases at concord in their felt. And now I doe protest, that I will not here after admit the Ambalfages of the King of Egypt, nor of other Kings, which have often fent Messengers unto me, but onely she Ambasadours of your Highnesse, whose comming I earnestly desire; for the Moorish Kings efleeme not me to be their friend, in regard of our diffention in Religion : but they faine a kind of friend thin to the end they may more fafely and freely exercise Traffique in our Kingdomes, whereby they rease great Commoditie. For they convey mightie summes of Gold, whereof they are most greedy, out of my Dominsons, whereas they are my Enemies, neither doe their Commodities please me any whit. Howben. thie was to be tolerated, because it hath beene an ancient custome of my Predecessours, I doe not indeed wage warre against them, nor otterly destroy them, but spare them onely in this respect, leaft they on the contrary should violate and cast downe the holy Temple at Ieru'alem, wherein stands the Sepalchre of O lefus Christ, which God bath left in the power of the abhommable Moores, and least they should make banocke of all other Christian Churches in Egypt and Syria; and this is the cause why I doe not in nade and conquer them, and it is a great griefe uniome. And I am the more perswaded bereunto, seeing I have no Christian King neere unto me to ayde me, and to comfort my heart I my felfe (Ob King) can finde no cause of revocung in the Christian Kings of Europe, when as I heare that they are at discord and warre among themselves. Be yeall united in one concord; For you ought all to be contouned together in a certaine league of amitie. And verily, if I had any Christian King bordering upon me, I would not depart for the space of one houre from him : but I know not in the world what to say or doe, at touching this matter, when as it seemeth so to be appointed by God. My Lord, send (I pray yen) Mes-Congers often unto me : For in Coing your Letters, I doe ceries behold your countenance, because oreater friendling groweth betweene men farre distant afunder, then betweene those that are neere together, in regard of the mutuall defire which they have. For he that hath hidden Treasures, not seeing them with his eyes, be loueth them alwases, and that most vehemently with his heart, as our Lord lesses Christ in his Gospell faith, Where thy Treasure is , there is thy heart ; Enen fo my heart is with thee, seeing thou thy selfe art my Treasure, and thou likewise oughtest to make me thy Treasure. and fincerely to towne thy beart with mine. Oh Noble Brother, keepethis word : for thou are most wife . and (as I heare) like vnto thy Father in wifedome, which when I know, I prefently game thankes unto God, and abandoning forrow, I exceedingly reioyced, and faid; Bleffed bee the wife Sonne of to greats Father, the Sonne of King Emanuel, which fitteth in the Throne of his Kingdomes. My Lord, 30 for that you be not discouraged, because you are strong as your Father was : neither send you any fields forces against the Macres and Gentiles. For by Gods beipe and the indenour of your vertue, you shall easily vanquish and destroy them. And say not that your Father left you but meane forces : for they be very great, and God will ener affist you. I have men, Gold and Villuals, like the fands of the Sea, and the Starres of Heaven. Wee two soyned together, will destroy all the Sanage and barbarous Moores. Neither doe I request ought else of you then men of skill, which may teach my Souldiers feats of warre. And then (Ob King) art a man of a perfect age. King Salomon at twelve yeares old, undertooke the managing of his Kingdome, and had mightie Forces, and was wifer then his Father. My selfe also, when Nahu my Father deceased, was a child but of eleuen yeares old, and being inuested into his Throne. I have by the goodnesse of God, attained to greater wealth and strength then he. For in my hand are the 40 Borderers, and Nations of my Kingdome . Wherefore buth of vs ought to thanke God for so great abenefit received. Give care unto me, my Brother and Lord : for beere in one word I request you, that learned men and Artificers may be fent mee, which can Print Bookes, and make Images, Swords, and all kind of Militarie Weapons: as also cunning Builders, Carpenters, and Physicians, which can both minister Potions, and beale Wounds. I would gladly also have such, as can beate Gold into thinne Plates, and can artificially carne, both Gold and Silver, and also can digge Gold and Silver out of the Mines, and such as have skill in Mining of all other Metals. Moreoner, they shall bee welcome unto me, that can make Speets of Lead, and Such as can frame Brickes and Tiles of Clay. To be Short, all Artificers Shall be serniceable unto me, & ofpecially Gun-founders, Assist me (I beseech you) in these things, as one Brother fronted affelt another, orc.

His Letter to Pope Clement the Couenth. Appy and Fertunate Holy Father, who of God art made a conferuer of Nations, and holdest the binde and long-shall be bound and holdest him to Keyes of the Kingdome of housen, and what source thouss that had not and long-shall be hound and holged in hisman. Christ bash shall, and Matthew heath so written in his Gossell, I, the King whose Name the Lions homer, and by the Orace of God, Atani Tingil cyc. Emperor of great and high Ethiopia, of great Realmes, swifidations, and Landi, King of Xoa, of Caliate, of Fattagas, of Angote, of Barly, and of Bailguarne, of Anders of Yange, and of Goisman, (where of Fattagas, of Angote, of Barly, and Barly, and the Goisma, (where was the Queene of Shab) of Barnagas, and Lord a street and Whise, which is on the Constitute of Egypt. All these of Foundations of the Gord of the Constitute of the Gypt. All these of Foundations and Province of home of the God of

this hath made me Lord of Adel, and enemie of the Moores and idolatrous Gentiles. I fend to kille the feet of your Holineffe, as other Christian Kingsmy Brethren are wont to doe, to whom, neither in Power nor in Religion I am inferiour. I in my Kingdomes, am the Pillar of Faith, nor have I neede of on ther wyars, but place all my confidence and helpin God, who hath alway sustained and governed me from tore my state the feet did to compare an accommodate the right Feeth to the Emmit of Gan-than time that the Angel of Gall plage as Philipsohon to anythe the right Feeth to the Emmit of Gan-dace, I still no Orient of Ethiopa, which were from I crutalem to Gaza. Then Philip baptical the Embits, I whollfuller maint the Queene was bapticed, while great part of the Embit, and her poothe Embeds, of whomager warm too yearen was confined, with offered part of ver camer, and he people, which were fines regal to be Corfifeian, and all of been from the times thirm, beare been flowing in the East. At Prefetcifiers Integral of more but God, base entarged the Christian Faith in the for great Ringdomer, which is another to the Christian Faith in the form of which admits when the More and the Christian Faith in the forces, and other Nations, enemies of the Christian Easth, who was a faith of the More and the Christian Easth, who was a faith of the More and the which will not be are the word of God, nor my faithfull exhortations, I girt with my Sword, purfue them. which will nee, negate the word of Loak, nor my junopus excorrations, a gut into my sworts, purjet treem, and by little and little, a hafe them out of their neft, by the heips of God which neiser failed mee, which hath otherwise bappined to other (Brifilans. To if they will extend the Confiners of them Kingdomes, they doe it not agains! Incides, which they easily why; because one of them may beine and succour ano ther, being also marueilously surthered by the benediction of your Holinesse, whereof i also am partaker, haming found in my Bookes the Letters of Pope Eugenius, which in times past be fent with his bleffing to the King, the Seeds of Iacob, of which bleffing, having received it from hand to hand, I am olad and reiogce. Moreouer, I boldin great veneration the Temple of Ierusalem, whither I often fond due offe-20 rings by our Pilgrims : and much better and richer would I fend, if the maies were not infested with Moores and Innidels, which not onely take away the Presents and Treasures from my Messengers, but binder them also from free passage. And if the way were open, I would come into familiaritie, and commerce with the Church of Rome, as doe other Kings Christian, to whom I am not inferiour: and as they believe, I also confesse one right Faith and Casholike Church, and believe sincerely in the boly Trinitie and in one God; the virginitie of our Ladie the Virgin Matie, and I hold and observe the Articles of the Faith, as the Apostles have written. At this present, our Lord God, by the hand of the most mighty of the casto, as the Appliets name with an arrangement of the same and the same through the same through the same through and fortification for the same through the same through the same through the same to the 30 dome. Whence, as by his Fathers death I was much grieved, so was I mearneitously cheered by the happy succession of his Sonne in the Kingdome : insomuch as I bope, that having soyned our Armies and Forces, we shall be able both by Sea and Land to open a way through the Prominces of the wicked Moores. tes, bit pome or more used y to the man we to me in give rough over the market of the media and fer upon them with fuch furic, that we fould that for them sate of them. Seate on the Kingdomer, and for Confliction may more commoditudity goe to be I temple of I tertilaten, and returns at their pleasfore. And I sate I carried a derive to be made particly of the Dissipation in the Tample of the Applice, Peter and Paul, fo I defirs to beaut the boly highing of the Vicar of Corift; and mittous doubt, I bold that your Holinessess the Vicar of Christ; and also that of the Pilgrims, which come from our Regions to Ierulatem, and to Rome, and not without great miracle returne, I heare many things flower of your Hounes, which can see mercedule pleasure and toy. Tes should I have much more pleasure, if my Americans 40 baffadours could vie a Shorter way, and at all times relate the newes unto mee, as I hope they foallonce y Sagmann tenus of a price of my many man and the state of the state o

Another Letter of his was delinered by the same Alasren, to the same Pope: desiring him to Dum. A Gortaf that they might be that they might take Armes against the Mahamestan, which assist one coord the Christian Kings, Ethiop, markly that they might take Armes against the Mahamestan, which assist one another, &c. But we have been already tedious, and therefore omit it: And the Letter of his mother Helema, sant 1999. Whather already and therefore omit it: And the Letter of his mother Helema, sant 1999.

50 the prefence of Charles the first Emperour, and Martus the Nephews, Countellour and Ambaffadour of King John of Portugals, and entertained as Ambaffadour of the faid King Danid, in his Name, prefenting obedience to the Pope, as more at large in Ramufo 2 more at the contract of the said King Danid, in

Aaaaaa 2

CHAP.

ding the Pa-

eria ch Bermu-

dez to Ethiopia,

how that State

decayed, in-

uaded by the

Morres, and

ter which I

haue feene, I

granflated, it

CHAP. VI.

A Rutter of Don IOHN of Castro, of the Voyage which the Portugal. made from India to Zoez. Dedicated to the most Illustrious Prince, the Infant Don Luxs, and bere abbreviated: shewing the state of Socatora, and the parts on both fides the red Sea, as they were aboue eightie yeeres fince, with the Hurbours, Ilands, Depths, Shelnes, and other things pertayning to the Billiarie of the Sea, Land, and People. The original of which is reported to have beene bought by Sir WALTER RALEIGH, at fixthe pounds, and by him caused to be done into English. out of the Portugall.

The layling from Goa to Socatora, and into the red Sea, as farre as Mazua.

He one and thirtieth of December, 1540. * at Sunne rifing, we let faile from the Barre of Gos, the way of the Straights, the wind was off the Land to the East ward. Were coafted along the Coait, bearing but little faile: about ten of the clocke, we came to an anchor at a Ruser, which is called Chapters.

The thirteenth of Ianuarie, 1541. in the morning we saw great quantitie of The thirteenth or lamane, 1541 in the Rockes of the Sea, and within a little while wee faw a Snake; the Sunne being vp, wee faw Land of the Hand of Societies, in fearch of the which we went, and the Land bare with vs flat South.

Now, after we were at anchor in this part, I asked of the most principall Pilots of the Fleet. how farre they made themselves off the Land the day that they saw it, and I found, the chiefe with shall dif Pilot was ninetie leagues short, when wee faw it; the Pilot of the Galleon Bufora, one huncontents con deed and odde; and others, eightie: those which made theraschues the least, were seuentie tayning also a leagues flort. In such fort, that my Pilot, which made it fixtie five, was the neerest to the more tutting. ngence of the palores would make their reason good, sed Sea, then be so great; and either because it was so, or because the Palores would make their reason good, any other Rut- they all cried out, affirming, that this deceit proceeded, of the way being shorter then the Cards make it. Likewife, the Morifs Pilots made good their complaint, affirming, that from God to Societies, there were no more then three hundred leagues.

The Iland of Socators hath in length, twentie leagues, and nine in breadth; it flands in # to it, Bermudez twelve degrees and two third parts, on the North fide; the front of the Hand that is opposite to the Septentrionall part, runneth East and Weit, and fornewhat to the North-west and Southeast: the Coast of the Sea is all very cleere without any Rocke, or Shoald, or any other imfeemeth, by the Coalt of the Seals and very the ground in the Road is fand, and in fome plate fame hand pediment that may hinder the Nauigators: the ground in the Road is fand, and in fome plate fame hand (not the most ces flonie, but in fuch qualitie, that it will not cut the Cables. On this side the treuerse wind refined in his or the North wind is so forcible, and bloweth with such a rage, that it raiseth great heapes of English phrase, fand ouer the Hills, and doth drive them beyond their high and craggie tops. In all the circuit of the Iland, there is not any other place or harbour, where any thip may fafely winter. The earn not so too bulle with, Coaft of the Sea is very high in enery place, and begire with very great and high Mountaines, wanting the with many Pikes, Piramides, and discresother very faire shewes. In these Coasts of this Iland 50 the tides are contrarie to them of India: for, when the Moone rifeth, and appeareth in the Horizon, it is high floud, which the Mariners call, full Sea; and the Moone beginning to afcend in bere and there our Hemisphere, the tide begins to ebbe, till it commeth to the Meridian of this Iland; and being ding the in it, it is dead low water; but the Moone descending from the Meridian, it begins to flow, by English, which the same order and degrees that it was set in the great circle of our Horizon, and being set, it yet in part was is here full Sea. I made this observation many dayes by the Sea shoare, and found alwaies the fame operation. This Iland of Socatora, (if I be not deceived) was called in old time, Dioscorimany margi- die. There was in it a Citie, called also Dioscorides, as it appeareth in Prolomie, the fixth Table of

nall notes ad- Afia: but, by the manner that he had in calling it, and the place where he leated it, it appeares 60 Water Raleigh himselfe. For prolizitie we have omitted the way hitherto. A Snake, Sacatora Iland, From Goa to Socatorais 300. leagues, as the Moster account. The lland of Sections is in length 26 leagues and nine in breadth. The tides here contratie to them of India, being alwaies full Sea, when the Moone appearath here in the Horizon. Dioftoridis Infula; in which in times pift was an ancient Citie, called Diofeorides.

that he had euill information of the Trauellers. The Socatorians doe keepe the Law of the Gofpell; and they were enlightned, and brought to the Faith by the bleffed Apolile Saint Thomas, conserved to as they themselves beare record. In all the circuit of the Iland are many Churches, in which the Fauth of there is no Oracle, but the Crosse whereon our Saujour suffered. They pray in the Chaldean Christ by Saint Tongue, as I was enformed, they want instruction, but they are very desirous of it, and demand Thomas the A. with great efficacie the doctrine and customes of the Romifb Church, and all of them doe con. postle. feffe this a one to be good, and is to be kept; they call themselues by our names, as lobn, Peter, written, the Andrew, &c. and the women generally Maries. To confider the manner how this People li- Meeters of Arts. meth. certainly is worth the noting: for, among them they have no King, Gouernour, Prelate, bigue here as ueth, certainly is worth thenoung; tor, among unem uey have an ang, sometimely the world beafts, in many mag-jor operform to obey, or who may gouerne them; but they live in a manner like the wild beafts, in many mag-writhout any order of Indice, or politique life. In all the Hand there is no Citie or great Town, if the turns of the contract of the contract of the contract of the contract of the turns of the turns of the turns of the contract of the contrac but the greatest part of the People dwellerh in Caues, and some haue little Cottages thatcht, such feparated the one from the other, liuing a life more then sauage and pastorall. Their sood is Finish and o-Flesh and wild Dates, they drinke Milke, and taste the water very seldome. All of them are therein the 20 very denoted to the Croffe; and for a wonder shall you find one person that doth not weare it a and 4. Booker, bout his necke; this People is of the best disposition in all these parts, they have their bodies tall and straight, their faces well proportioned, their colour is swarthie, the women are somewhat whiter, and honeitly faire. In all the Country there is no manner of weapons, offenfine and defensive, except certaine Swords of dead Iron, very short; the men goe naked, and they 20 couer onely their fecret parts with certaine Cloth, which they call Cambolis, of the which they Cloth called make great quantitie in the Iland. The Countrey is naturally poore, and no other merchandile Camboles. are found then * Verdigrease, and Sanguis Draconic. But the Verdigrease is in great abundance, * I thinke he and eftermed above all. All this Hand is mountainous, and breedeth all fort of Cattell that is in meanth Alor

our parts, of the which there is great abundance. The Countrey neither produceth Wheat nor Rice, nor any maintenance of this kind. I belieue, this is not the fault of the ground, but want of Industrie and Arte in the Inhabitants; for the Hand within the land is very fresh, and hath me, merchan many Valleys and Plaines, very convenient for to receive all benefit that they will bestow on it. difes in this This People nath no manner of Nauigation , neither industrie for to catch the Fish , which by Iland. the Coaits of this Iland is infinite; they have very few Fruit-trees, among the which the Palm-30 trees are effeemed, and nourished, as the principal part of their food to maintaine Life: the Countrey yeeldeth all manner of Garden-herbs, and medicinable Herbs, the Mountaines are concred with the Herbe Bafill, and other imelling Herbs.

The feuen and twentieth of Ianuarie, 1541, in the morning, we were very little beyond the Mountainers Citie of Aden, in fuch fort, that it was to the North-west of vs, the distance might be about The like Alua fixe leagues , the wind was at East, and faire, wee failed West South-west, and wee knew that reg relateth of the Land that wee faw yesterday in the afternoone, and seemed to vs an Iland, was the Moun- Ethiopia. taine of Aden: this Mountaine is very jugh and faire, on every fide craggie and rough; vpon it The Moun there arise some very high pikes and sharpe, in all shewes it is very like, and of the making of the Faill of Simtra, which more then any other thing doth make it noble and famous. This Hill

descendeth to the Sea, and with great violence, thrusteth within her waves, a very great and long point, and prefently withdrawing it felfe a great space inward to the land, there remaine, made two neokes, as faire as compafied, wherein that which lieth on the East fide, stands fituated the strong Citie of Aden. This Hill in times past, was called Cabubarra,, and was made fa- The simution mous by the Nauigators, and the Citie of Aden was knowne for Madee a. This Citie of Aden, of Aden, as knowne for Madee a. This Citie of Aden, of Aden, as where a capturers. mousey the realigness, is come to the power of the Turkes, by Treason which Solman Bassa, Madeche Citie, Gouernour of Caire, did to the King of it, which past in this manner. The Great Tierke making Adenbrought a great Armie, at the request of the King of Cambaya, and of all the Inhabitants of the Straights in subscenor of Mecca, for India. Hee fent the Governour of Cairo, called Solimes Baffa Eunuch, with a great of the Tarte by

50 Armie of Ships and Galleys for India. This Captaine being come to the Port of Aden, the King Treaton Refle and Citizens, fearing the little trueth of the Turker, denied them the entring into the Citic, but Dam & Goes they prouided them with all necessaries of yactuals and promisions : Soliman, and also the Souldi- Bell in a speciers, not shewing any griefe at this hospitalitie, the King affored himselfe, and with many messa. all Treame ges and vifitations of great friendship, which past betweene them both, shey came to conclude, called Diesfit to meete in the Admirall Galley, that they might intreat together about the Conquest, which newly he went to make in India. The iday of the agreement, the King comming to confult with Soliman Balla, was taken prisoner, and the Trikes, which for this act were prepared, assulted the gates of the Citie, and being entred, easily possessed themselves thereof; and the day following, the King was hanged before the gates. The Citie being taking by this Treason, Soli-

60 man leaving a great Garriton within it, made his journey in all hafte toward Dio. On the fide of Africa, beginning at the Cape of Guardafui, in other times, called Aromata: Accomata Proand on the other fide of Afra, from the Promontorie Sugres, or Cape of Fartaque, which is the montorie, fame; all the Sea that is contay ned vinto the ancient. Citie of the Heroer, which now is called Sogras Pro-Soez, is called the Arabick Gulfe, knowne vulgarly for the Red Sea. The space of Sea that ly- Cape Fartaget eth betweene these two Promontories, and divideth in this place Asia from Africa, may be the Gulfe,

Gulfes, Lakes, Channels, Mouthes, Ports, Harbours, and Points. LIB. VII Arabigue figne fumme of riftie eight leagues. And from hence, viz. from these Promontories, the Coast of euery fide turning to the fetting of the Sunne, doe runne almost in the same distance, till they come to two Cities, that is, Aden in Arabia, and Zeila in Ethiopia, or Aberi; and from thence Aton. The Coasts begin to streighten very much, and every time more running with delart Coasts and little winding, till they meete in the place of the Mouth, with two P: omontories, that is, Poffior E-mona.

Passidium Pro- dium on the Arab: an fide; and another which lyeth on the contrarie fide, that is, of Ethiopia or Aberi, whose name, as well Ancient as Moderne, is not come to my notice; where as farreas these Promontories is the narrowest and streightest passage of the Streight. This streightnesse, of the neighbouring people, and of those which inhabit the Coasts of the Indian Ocean, is called Albabo, which in the Arabian tongue, do fignifie Gates or Mouthes; and in this place and mouth, 10 the Land doth neighbor fo much, and the shewes which they make of willingnes to joyne them-

selves, are so knowne, that it seemeth without any doubt, the Sea, much against their wills and

perforce, to enterpole it felfe in separating these two parts of the World. For the space which

in this place divideth the Land of the Arabians, from the Coast of the Abeni, is about fixe leagues

dittance. In this space there lye so many Hands, little Hets, and Rocks, that they cause a double.

confidering this streightnesse without, that some time it was stopped, and so by these streight

Sluces and Channels, which are made betweene the one Iland and the other, there entreth fuch

a quantitie of Sea, and maketh within fo many and so great Nookes, so many Bayes. so many

1:4be

The Serviche

broad.

names of great Gulfes, so many divertities of Seas, so many Ports, so many Ilands, that it seemeth not that we (alle in a Sea betweene two Lands, but in the deepett and most tempettuous Lake of the great Ocean. Now returning to the Mouthes of the Streight, which is the intent of 20 our Description, Wee are to note, that in this place the Land of Arabia Aretcheth into the Sea. with a very great and long point, and to for this cause, as because it remayneth out of the Mouth. and a great Nooke from this Point, it feemeth comming from the Sea, that the Land of this Point is fome Iland, very diftant from the firme Land. This Point is the Promontorie, which

Prolomie calleth Possidium. Against this Point or Promontorie Possidison, little more then a stones cast standeth a little L.

let, called the Ilet of the Robones. For Robonn, in the Arabian tongue, is as much as Pilot . the which dwelling here did bring in the Ships that came from the Sea, and from thence directed there to the places of their Countrie that they went vnto. This Iland is round and very flat, the circuit may comprehend the fixt part of a league, from it to the firme Land yee may paffe, the Water being low, but the Tyde beginning once to flow from one quarter flood, it cannot be waded. To the Sea off this little Hand, opposite to the Coast, about one league, standeth an Hand, which hath in length about a league and a halfe, the which on that fide that fronteth the Abexi. See Sir Harie hatha very great Hauen and jure from all Windes, where a great Nauie may well bee harboured of Galleyes, but the other front of the Hand which is opposite, and fronteth the Land of the A. rabian, not onely wanteth a Harbour and Receptacle, but also wanteth a landing place. This Channell is failed well in the middeft North-west and by West, and South-east and by East: through all the Channell is eleven fathome deepe, we may passe either neere the Hand, or neere the firme Land, or through the middest it is very cleane in every place without any Flats or 40 Shoalds, or any other inconvenience that may diffurbe ve; the ground is a foft stone, which they call Corall stone, and scarcely shall yee finde a fandie plot, though you seeke it with great dilithe Channell. gence. Being farre within the Channell, and going to feeke the Roade and Hauen, which may Eastern winds harbour vs from the Easterne windes, which in this place are very strong, the depth diminishraine in this eth formewhat, but it is no leffe then nine fathome. Befides this Channell of the Arabian, there be many other whereby you may goe into the Streight fafely , and being many, the mention's made of one onely of them, and they called it; the Channell of the Abexin; because from the Hand of the Gates, who the Promoneorie opposite to Poffulium, which is in the Coasts of Abexin, there may be of distance about fine leagues, in this space there lye fixe Ilands very great and high, and feeing them from without the Mouth of the Sereight, they put the Sailers in great feare 50 and doubt, shewing that they forbid the passage that way, but the truth is, that betweene them, there goe very large Channels and of great depth, whereby without any danger wee may make our way, and also if we will, leaving them all on the right hand, wee may palle betweene them and the Mayne of Aberta

Iournalls, of their voyages to Maha. Eleuen fa-

> The nine and twentieth of Ianuarie, 1 141. at noone, I tooke the Sunne, and being in his greatell heighth, it role ouer the Horizon two and fixtie degrees and three quarters, the declination of this day was fifteene degrees, whence it remayneth that the Mouth of the Streight and Pro-The Month of montorie Poffidium, ftandeth in twelte degrees and one quarter towards the North. The Pilot and model to the North. The Plot the Streiberg tooks the fame heighth, the which being taken points Land, it cannot choole but be of very be Refere.

twelue degree's one quatrer.

That night, two hours after mid night, wee let Take from the Mouth of the Streight. The thirtieth of Ianuarie, 1941, by day, we law the Land of both the Coalts, and wee were neerer the Land of Aberi, then to the Arabian; the Wind blew hard at East South-east, rill noone; we failed to the North-west and by West, making the way by a Channell that goeth betweenethe first Hands, and the Coast of the Abexi, the which vntill this day was vnknowne and strange to the Portugals; the distance were went from the Land by this Channell, might be about toure leagues; an houre after Sunne rife, we faw along the Coast a ranke of Hands, the greatest part of them were low, and as the ranke of Hands, to the Coast tireeched North-west , South-raft: the ranke of the Ilands might comprehend about fixtie leagues journey. Now, failing by this Many little Channell with a prosperous winde, at whatsoever part we cast our eyes, we saw many little I- slands.

1125

lands, as well on the one fide as on the other.

By this Channell, which is called of the Abexi, we must not faile by night, and without the Annotations, winde in the Poope, for if the winde change, we cannot come too and againe, nor come to an an-how we are to to chor in any place, till we are so farre ferward as the first of the first Illands, wee shall see to the Channell. Sea-ward nine little Hands, and from thence forward the Sea remay neth free and open and onely to the Land of vs there be a great quantitie of them ; and some doe separate themselves from the Coaff and the Mayne, about two leagues; but the greatest part of their llands doe lye along the Coaft : the length of this Channell, which incloiush it felte in the three first Ilands, and the Land of Abexs, may be about eight leagues : to make a fafe voyage, it behough to goe neerer to the firme Land, then to the Ilands; but about all things, my opinion is, that none doe take it in hand without a Pilot of the Countrey.

The one and thirtieth by day, we came to a should where were sixe fathom water, and to the Sea of magainst certaine Ilands, which are called the feven Sitters, there is a Rocke of stone very and dangerous, as the Moorilb Pilots told me : fo that the good Naugation in this part is to goe ve- Moorilb Pilots ry neere the firme Land, and in no case goe to the Sea of this shoald. At night wee came to an loss, anchor within a Hauen, which is called Sarbo, in mine fathome and a halfe water, all this day filters. very close to the Coast we saw great quantitie of little Ilands.

Li-tleHands

The first of Februarie, I went on Land in the Hand, and Port of Sarbo, carrying the Pilot with me and the Mafter, that we all might take the Sonne : and in his greatest heighth it was ri-Ten ouer the Horizon one and fixtie degrees fearle: the declination of this day, was thirteene degrees and fixe and fiftie minutes; whence it remayneth manifest, this Iland and the Port of Sarbo, to be in fifteene degrees and feuen minutes, towards the North fide.

About four and twentie leagues fore of Macha, and diftant from the Coaft of the Abexi The description 20 foure leagues, in fifteene degrees of heighth, there is a great Archipellago of Ilands, fome of on of the Iland which lye follow, that they rife very heteleabone the fuperficies of the Sea, and others doe rife and Port of fo high, that they feeme to touch the Cloudes, and betweene the one and the other, there are fo many Bayes, Ports; Haibours, as no winde can annoy ve ! all of them want water ; except one wery high, which the Portugals call , The Hand of the Whale, because it refemblesh one very much, and there is water, and plentie of Cattell , and there is a great Hauen where Ships may A good Harwinter. Of all thefe, that which is most to the Sed is one that in Warabique is valled Sorbo, bour for flips, where at this prefent we live at another. This Hand of Sarbe, is of length about a league, and almost halfe a league broade; the Land of it is very low, it liath many Trees but very low and barren, all the Plaine is full of graffe, in every place wee finite the footing of Men and Cattell, 40 but there was onely one Camell feete, for the which occasion, they called it. The Hand of the Camell ; in all the circuit of the Iland, we found no week, though we fought it very diligently. exceptione Well digged in a stone, which according to the appearance of it, was to receive the raine waters. Betweene these llands doe enter many waters of the Sea, Reaches and Channels.

The fourth of Februarie, 1541. at Summerile, we fet faile from the Port of Sorbo. Februarie the federath, we failed along many Hands, which are diffrant from the firme Land about three or foure leagues; the greatest part of them are very low and flat with the Sea. We went to the Sea of them all about a league, and about even-fong time; we faw to Sea of vsa ranke of Ilands very long, which feemed to take fome have leagues diffusive, there was from vs to them about fome four eleagues, all of them lay Morth well and South eart, as farre as I could differ the. The Coast which all this day we saw, stretched North-west and by West, and South-east and by East. 30 So that this Channell, wherein this day we failed; hath in breadth about fue leagues, reckoning the space that lyeth betweene the one land and the other : the greatest part of this day I commanded to cast the Lead, and I found alwayes sucrand twentie fathome water, and the The eight of Februarie, 1541, two houres after the Sunne role , wee fet faile. Most of this

time we lailed to the North well, at Sunne fet we were almost entred into the Channell , that

goeth betweene the Point of Dillagua, which looketh to the firme Land, and an fland, which The Point of is callen Xamen, but Hauring refredering he began to come on, and that many Galleons re- Dallaque. mayned tarre off, and it would bee difficile to hit the Channell; and also considering, how at Xame: Infulz. this time the winde was alreadie scarfe, we tooke in our failes, and with our fore-failes we went rummare, failing to the South-east; and two hours within night we came to an anchor in fortie fathome water, the ground One. All this day wee faw along the Coast many Hands, so flat, that they and the Sea leemed to have one superficies. The Coast that shewed it selfe to vs, stretched North-weit and South-east, to a low Point, which is as farre forward as the Hand of Dal-

lagua. Doubling this Point, the Land maketh a great Nooke, that entreth ten or twelve

The descriptiland of Dalla-This Iland is five and twentie leagues long, and breadth.

leagues into it. The Hand of Dallaqua is a very low Land, and almost slat with the Sea, without rising in it. Mountayne, Pike, or any other heighth; it hath in length, according to the common opinion, fine and twentie leagues, and twelve in breadth; the fide of this Iland, which is opposite to the South, firetcheth East South-east, and West North-west, that is, all the Coast which I could comprehend with the fight, and along the Coast lye great quantitie of little Hands, all very low, and beare the same course of the Coast. I onely coasted this side of the lland seven leagues. and two distant from the Land, and casting many times the Lead, neuer found ground. The Me. tropolitan Citie, is fituated almost in the Point of the Iland, which lyeth on the West fide a lo frontier to Abexi, it is called Dallaca, whence the Iland tooke the name, which is to fay in the litan Citic cal- Arabique tongue, ten leques, and this, because in times past, the Custome-house thereof, yeelded fo much every yeere to the King. Every Arabian leque is worth ten thouland Seraphons . and e. very Seraphin Arabique two Tangas larmas; in fort that ten Arabian leques, are worth in our money fortie thousand Crazados. The Point of this Iland on the West fide, and opposite to the Above, is diffant from the firme Land about fixe or feuen Leagues, and in this space of Sea, there lye fine Ilands, very flat; the first is distant from this Point one league, it is called Xamon. it hath in compasse two leagues, in it there be some Springs and Wells, and betweene this Hand of Kamon, and the Westerne Point of Dallagua, is the principall Channell and most current for to goe to Magna. In this Channell there are seuentie fathome water, the Land of this Iland is red: 20 it produceth few Trees, and great abundance of Herbs. The King of it is a Moore, and all the People, he is resident the most part of the yeere in Maçue, because of the traffique he hath with the Abexins. This Hand at this present yeeldeth little; for after the riling of Suaquen, Macua.

Seuentie fathome water. The King of Dallaqua, 2 The description of the Hand and Portor

Xamea Infula,

in which are Springs or

Wells of wa-

Aden, and Indaa, it loft the traff que, and with the traff que the reputation. The twelfth, the Nauie of Galleons came into the Port of Magna. Magna is a small Iland, very flat, and in it in old time was built the Citie Psolomaida, of the wilde beafts. This Iland hath in length about the fift part of a league, and of breadth a Caliner thot, it lyeth in a great and crooked Nooke, very neere the Point of the Nooke that is on the North-west side. The space of Sea that divideth this Hand from the firme Land, is about a Faucon flor, and in fome parts not

fo much; in this distance, to wit, betweene the Iland and the firme Land is the Hauen, in the so The Citie of Prelona da boilt bere-

which the Sea is not troubled with any weather, and the Current is very little, and all windes come ouer the Land, the depth is eight or time tarh me water, the ground is Ozie. The entrance of this Port Iveth on the North-east side by the middest of the Channell betweene the Land and the Hand, because that from the Point which turneth to the East North-east, there goeth out a Should toward the Land, and the Point of the Nooke casteth another against the Point of the Hand, for the which they force the Ships to beware of the extremes of the Mouth of the Channell, and to feeke the middeft of it. The Channell is very fixeight, it runneth North-eaft and South-west : very neere to this Hand of Magua, toward the South and South-west , lye other two llands, the neerest to the firme Land is somewhat the bigger of them, and that which is more to the Sea, and lyeth toward the South-well, is the leffer, and very round. These three I- 40 lands stand in a triangle forme, they are all very flat and barren, there is, no springing water in any of them, onely in Macres are many Cifternes, whereof the Inhabitants doe drinke and line. in Tanyan I.

Indian many Betweene these Ilands are scattered many. Shoalds, but through the middest of them gotth a

Cisternes of Charmell where Gallies and rowing Vessels may passe at a full Sea. This Iland of Magna was a little while fince of the Signiorie of Profee Islan, with all the Coaft, courtayned from the Cape of Guardafus to the Citie of Snaquen; but within thele few-yeeres, the King of Dallaqua hath vfurped it, and is relident in it the most part of the yeare because of the traffique he hath with the Abexines, of whom he hath great quantitie of Gold and Juorie. The ayre is vnhealthfull in the moneths of May and June, and very votemperate through great and intollerable calmes, in such fort that as well the King as the Inhabitants, doe avoid it, as d leave it emptie thefe two moneths, and goe to Dallaqua. The firme Land of the Nooke, wherein standeth this lland of Magua, till yee come to a place of many Wells of water, called Arquito, by the Sea fide is very high

and mountaynous, but from thence forward, the Sea coast is more open and cleere, and betweene

the Hills and the Sea are great Fields and Plaines. There may bee from Arquito to Mague 2 league. Arquito standeth to the South from the Hand : through all their Mountaines and

Fields, are great number of wilde beafts of divers kinds, to wit, Elephants . Tygres . Wookies,

wilde Boares, Stagges, Elkes, and many other formes of Beafts, not knowne vnto vs; whence,

with much reason, it is called Prolomaids, of the wilde Beasts, And that Mague and Prolomaids,

be one and the felfe same thing, the elenation of the Pole doth testifie in this behalfe.

Now then, fince it was manifest, that all the inundations of Nilsu in Egypt, begin to increase when the Sunne was in the Solffitium Efficial, which is in the moneth of June, the Sunne entring in the beginning of Concer, but passing by the Signe of Lee, which is in July, the River inerealed in greater abundance, and when it was in the Signe of Virgo, which is in August, where delivered the in this moneth the raines begin to affwage in the Abexis, and Winter takes his leave, the River fame reason of began to decrease by the degrees it had increased, till it come altogether into his Channell, the this oueroccasion remay ned manifest of the increasing of this River, to be the great and continual raines, slowing, 6> which in the moneths of Iune and Iuly, did fall in the Land of Abexy, or Ethiopia, which is all one; Seeing that when these raines ceased in August, the River at that same time did beginne

to withdraw himselfe to his accustomed bounds. I was my selfe in Magna, the moneth of lune,

mually, we faw great blacknesse and cloud messe, and tempess, and the Abexins faid, that we saw

ð. 11.

Relations of Ethiopia fub Ægypto, and PARSTER TOWN: of Niles. and she Abaffine Cuftomes and Neighbours. The canfe and meanes of the decay of that great Empire, never fince recovered. of Marate and Suaquen.

He Preste lobe, which by another name, is called King of the Abeat, is Lord of all the The Colmbe Land of Ætispita ful Ægifio: which is one of the greatest Prouinces we know in graphic of & the World. This Easterne Empire beginnisth at the Capt of Guardafia, called in old thingin, faib

the World. This Eafterne Empire beginneth at the cape or Dissease in the Light of the East Northfide it bordereth with the warlike people of the Nubis or Nubians, which lyeth between King of the the Land of the Abexis, and the superiour part of Egypt, called, Thebayda, and from hence runnine great fraces within the Land, toward that part where the Kingdome and Land of Meni- Premontorie ning great paces within the Lans, overlate the property which was ungern; all the other on the West.

"West of the construction of the construction of the construction of the construction of the West of the construction of the Construction of the Springer of Lakes of the Construction of the Springer of the Construction of the Construction of the Springer of the Construction of the Co 20 fide in the Barbarran Gulfe, which at this day is knowne of the Portugals , which doe nauigate

the fame on the Coast of Melinde and Magadaxo. Nilus at this day is knowne by his ancient name; for of the Abexys, Egyptians, Arabians, and Ethiopia pro-

Indians, it is called Nil, a thing certainly worth the knowing; the Springs and Lakes whence does the man this River proceedeth, are in the Confines that separate the Land of the Abexins, or Athiopi- Mines of a ans from the Safres, which inhabit the mayne of the Land, that goeth from Melinde toward Lakesof Nime. Mofambique, as I vnderitood, by fome great Lords, and other perfons of Abery, Which thing is held of them all for manifest, and well knowne, and hence appeareth, the little knowledge that the Ancients had of his originall. Now, enquiring of thele persons, if it were true, that this River in many places did finke vnder the Earth, and came out agains many daies journies thence. 30 I knew there was no such thing : But that through all the Land where it ranne, it shewed it felfe upon the Superficies thereof, carrying a great depth and breath, without hiding it felfe or flying from the light of men, as yee reade in Pline, Lib. 5. of the Natural Hiftorie: About the increatings or ouer-flowings of the River, I asked very often the causes, this beeing a thing so

disputed of all the ancient Philosophers, and I came perfectly to know of them the Solution of this doubt, hitherto neuer determined; and soalmost iestingly, with certaine supple Questions, And soit doubt I came to know that which so great and proud wits of Philosophers knew not. These principall Lords of Abexy, told me, that in their Countrey the Winter beganne in the raines falling end of May, and lasted Iune, Iuly, and part of August, but that in August, the Ayre is more pleafant, the weather milde and tractable, but that in the monethes of lune and July, for a great moneths,

40 Wonder appeared, the Sunne; so many, and so continuall were the raines which continually fell from Heauen, with the which the fields and low grounds were fo couered and ouer-flowne of the waters, that in these two monethes, they cannot goe nor passe from one place to another. and that this multitude of waters had no other iffue or place where to gather themselves, but only to the Channell of the River Nilw: because toward the Red Sea, there ranne along the Sea very great Mountaines, it was of necessitie, that the River should increase and go out of his owne course, not being able to containe so great abundance and weight of waters in it selfe, and the River running with fuch vehement and terrible rage, it is very apparant, that as well in the Egyption, as in other Lands whereby it paffeth, it would goe out of his naturall course, and cause, whereby it passeth, great ouer-flowings : and the Territories of Egypt being most plaine , 6 ne-

50 cefficie, the ouer-flowings in it would be more copious, and the River would have a larger scope to spread it selse with his waters in every place, the which could not so happen in the high and Mountainous Lands.

4. II.

and part of July, where I faw great flormes, raines, thundering, and within the Mayne conti-

Cape of Boss Efberanza.

but little to that which went within the Land. Likewife, wee haue experience, that the moneths of June and July, is the Winter of Cape Bona Esperanza, and all this Coast where the raines are very continuall. In this manner, having refolued my doubt, of the flowings of Niles. I asked them if the River made any Ilands; they answered mee, that it made many but one of them was very great, whose was built a most rich and great Citie, which by due confideration Meroe infulain ought to be the Hand of Meroe, and they told mee, that aswell in this Hand, as through all the River there were great numbers of certaine herce and petitierous beafts, which, without doubt. great and rich must be the Crocodiles; and being defirous to know if it were true, that in a certaine place the River fell from such a beight, that with the great noise of the fall, those that inhabited in the bordering Townes were borne deafe: I found no Hiltorie of this, onely they told mee, that in a fe certaine place, which they named, the River did fall of a great Rocke, downe with a great noile and rumour, but that there was no other thing.

As touching the customes and manners of the Abexines, the Lecture that of them might bee made, it would diffurbe the Historie of the Rutter, for which caule, I will touch in briefe somethings most worthy to bee knowne; especially, of theruine and lose of this Empire, in our vn-

Prefle John, by name Atim Tingill, called after David, raigning in the yeare 1 520. in the Davidstyranny, of which forme Land of Athiopia, he became fo cruell to his Subjects, and did tyrannize fo much ouer the people. Exaples of the that he fel into an vinuerfall hatred of the Abexines; in this time Gradamet, King of Zeila, indine that he tel into an universal matter of the presbyter lobm, to fee what he could find in the minds the time fit, began to attempt warre with Presbyter lobm, to fee what he could find in the minds of the Abexines, & this, not that he was able to take fuchan Enterprize in hand, but either he encouraged himself in the great emmitie the Abexines had with their King, either this warre was fecretly moved by fome Lords of the Kingdom, Now, beginning to enter through the Land of the foure Eurnagaffaes, in fixe Presbyter, and to take some Townes, he disuded largely the spoiles among his Warriours, among yeares, &c. you the which he had three hundred Harquebustes, Turkes, which was the greatest strength of his forcin Alurez. Armie, and franchized all the Inhabitants of the Townes, where through he paffed, and exemp-This humour, ted them of the Taxes and Impositions imposed by Presbyter John, with which liberalities hee in feemeth, in- got the minds of the Abexines, and not onely of the vulgar fort, but also of the most principall created with Lords of the Kingdome. his yeares, and The Presbyter lobn, feeing the damage received of the King of Zeila, fent against him his . Captaines, which beginning tome Skirmilhes, as foone as the Turkes that their Caleeuers among Pope, which

the Abexmes, and did kill fome of them, the feare they tooke of these shots was so great, that Religion allo, presently they fer themselves in flight. The King of Zeila proud of this victorie, entred withas appeareth
by diseres and in the Land, confident alreadie in the fauour of Fortune, accompanied with great companies of by Austra and
Bermuder, his. Abexines, which followed his partie, and foraging the Land of Ælbiopia, by that part which
Elgates to the flandeth upon Magadoxa, and Melinde, to the end that by this way hee might in shorter time might come to a Mountaine, where was the great Treasure of all the Presbyters past, the Presbyter freing that every day his Aberines passed to the Campe of the Moores, determined to come to a battaile, before that so great Harpyes did make an end of denouring the Land altogether, and the minds of his Subjects, and gathering his Armies, and going against the King of Zeila, hee 40 gaint him. the minds of his Subiects, and gathering any names, and going a fam. the minds of his Subiects, and gathering are names, and going a fam. the Abexines could Gradunes over gave him battaile, in which the Preshpter lobs was overcome, because that the Abexines could not abide the Harquebuffes, and so fled from them, as from a cruell pestilence. The Presbiter with-drawne after this conflict to the Mountaines with some of his, within a few dayes, hee of Harquebul- left this life, in the yeare of our Lord 1539.

The King of Zeila obtayning so great a victorie, travelled by great journeyes toward the Mountaine, where the Treasure was of the Kings of Abery, and comming to the foot, affaulting the paces with great furie, not withflanding, they were vnacceff ble, and were defended from the top, in the end they entred them, and gained the Mountaine, where was taken the greatest Treasure, that vnto this day we know together in the compasse of the whole Earth. Now, vpon the accease of Presbyter lobn, the Abexines , which continued in the faith and loue of their 50 Countrey, elected his eldest Sonne for Presbyter, and King of Abexis, being a yong man of little age, which finding the Realme vfurped by Infidels, and almost irrecouerable (and because there might remaine nothing wherein Fortune might not be contrarie to him, and fauourable to the Moores) it happed that a Brother of his, dealt with some great men how to get the Kingdome,

* Since which which was the vtter ouer throw of the Abexines. The matters of Ethiopia, beeing in thele termes, and the infortunate youth contending with his Domesticall and Natiue Countriemen, the King of Zeila came vpon him, but the new Presbyter not being able to relift, with-drew himfelfe to the Mountaine of the lewes.

We are to note, that in the inward part of Æthiopia, there ariseth a great and most high Hill, which hath but one onely alcending and very difficult, but on the highest top of it lyeth a very 60 plane Countrey, where there are great abundance of Springs, Fruits, Cattell, and Tillages, the Inhabitants of this Mountaine doe observe the Law of Moses, not finding in all the Land of Abexis: any Iemes: the Historie and Antiquitie how they have arrived here, and the cause of nener delicending downe, and connerting familiarly with the Abevines, is not come to my notice,

though I laboured it much. The new Presbyter receiving of these lower friendly entertainment. and reknowledged for their Lord, they defended him from the Moores, and King of Zeila. which despaying of the victorie, and entring the Mountaine, retyred backward. About this time we arrived at Magua with all the Armie : which when it was knowne, it put the Moores in a great feare, and lifted up the decayed hearts of the Abexines, in fort that the Presbyter emboldnedhimselfe to descend from the Mountaine, and seated himselfe with his people in certaine Mountaines towards the Sea and Towne of Magna, where we were arrived, writing many Letters more then pittifull and milerable, and in all of them before the writing, came Our What these Lord lefus crucified, of the which, having louing Aniweres, and full of hope of fuccour, wee Fortingals perto made our journey toward Soez, and being returned againe to Maçua, it was ordayned to fend forced in Ehim fine hundred men with a Captaine. This done, we fet faile, and came directly the way to final reade in India, and to this prefent, I have not knowne what more hapned, or is become of the Presbyter, the following

CHAP.6.S.2. Abexines ceremonious. Good Warriors. Nimble Horfe-men.

and matters of Ethiopia. The Aberines are naturally ceremonious men, and full of points of honour. Among them Bermudez. there is no other kind of weapons then Darts, in which they here figured the Lonce where the abesines. with Christ was wounded, and the Crosse whereon he suffered for Signers. Some, though very They are efew, weare halfe Swords. They are nimble on Horfe-backe, but badly apparelled, generally they freemed great are lying people and given to Rapine. Among them he is not counted rich, that possesset many, Warriours out but he that hath abundance of Cattell, and Camels, and notwithstanding, this they esteeme the of their owner 20 Gold very much: In their owne Countrey they are weake and cowards, but in a strange Coun-

trey from and valiant, in fort, that it is a Prouerbe in all India, to fay, That the good Laf-carin, which wee call a Souldier, must be an Abexine; and they are to efteemed in Ballagate, Cambaya, Beneala, and in other places, that they are alwayes Captaines, and principall persons in the Armies. Their attyre is vile and poore: they weare Shirts of linnen cloth, and fome great person weareth a Beden, the vulgar goeth naked, and couered with whatioeuer cloth; they eate Bolliemse, and raw field, and when they lay it to the fire, they hold it to little at it, that when they eate it, the bloud runneth out of it. In the Land there is no Cities, nor Townes, but they line in the fields in Pauillions or Tents, like the Alarbes.

They doe honour themselves very much of the Queene of Saba, and they say, she tooke ship-30 ping in the part of Magna; and others affirme, that it was in Suaquen, and carrying great riches with her and lewels of great value, the came to lerufalem to fee King Salomon, giving him great gifts, and returne from thence with child by the King, to her Kingdome. It is an hillorie much talked of among the Abexines, that a Soldan of Babylon, mooning warre against Presbyter Iohn many yeares agoe, the Presenter gathered a great multitude of people, with the which he put in practice to turne the River Nilm another way to the Sea , fo that it should not runne through Egypt. The Soldan amazed at fo great an Enterprize, and feeing that the worke comming to perfection, it would be the veter ourrehrow of Egypt, he fent vnto him his Embaffadors with great g:fts, by the meanes of the which he obtayned his friendship and peace with the Presbyter John. and gave a priviledge to the Abexines, that they might passe through all his Countrey, without 40 paying any Tribute, and at this day they pay no Tribute when they goe to visit the holy Sepulchre, and Saint Casherine of Mount Sinai; I asked within the streights of some old learned Moores for this Antiquitie, and they told mee the fame, not digreffing one iot from the

The nineteenth, at Summe rising, we set faile from the nooke which is beyond Magna, halfe a league and an halfe of water, distant from the Land about halfe a league : This day the weather was very close, and it rained, and numbring our Armie, I found fixtie foure rowing Veffels. that is three Galliots, eight small Gallies, and thirtie flue Foysts. By night the wind The Pointail was North-west, it calmed, and blew a little at West, in the second watch it began to raine, Armada and halfe the morning watch past, wee wayed our Anchors, and went rowing along the shoare 50 till the morning, it rained very hard all this time.

The twentieth, at evening, we were as farre as the Point of the ranke of Ilands on the Northfide, at this time wee might bee from Maçua, about fourteene leagues, the Coast from Macua hither, ftretcheth North North-west, and South South-east, there is in the distance fourteen legues, in the I lands which we faw on the Sea-fide, we knew that in fome of them there was Cattel and water, with some few and poore dwellings, the distance between them and the sime Land, might be some foure leagues, the names of these Ilands where the Cattell and the Water is, are Harate, Dohnall, Damanil, the Land of them is low, and round about it is full of Shealds Harate, Doball,

By night all the first watch, the wind faire at East, we failed to the North North-west, at 60 the beginning of the second watch, wee fell on a sudden in certaine very whitish spots, the which did raife and cast from themselves certaine flames like vnto Lightnings, wondring at the shew of this strange event, presently we tooke in our Sailes, and beleeving wee were your fome Shoalds or Bankes, commanded to cast the Lead : I found twentie fixe fathome water,

they have deercated, and are now almost vectiy ruined.

inftigate his

der water to he feared.

now this noueltie making no impression in the Pilots of the Countrey, and seeing how we were by a great depth, wee fet fayles againe.

The one and twentieth when it was day, wee faw at Sea off vs, the low Hand, whereof the Moorill Pilots were afraid.

The two and twentieth when it was day, wee fet fayle: my Pilot tooke the Sunne at the higheft, and found himfelfe in eighteene degrees and an halfe. At this time we were as farre as a Point of fand very long, which the firme land thrust out, doubling this Point, we found the Sea very faire, and we fayled North-west and by West. An houre after noone, we came to an Hauen, called Marate, All the Coast wee faw this day, stretcheth North North-west, and South South-east, the Land by the Sea fide is very low, and maketh neuer a Hillocke, but within the Io Land there arife fo great Mountaines, that they feeme to reach the Clouds,

A Description of the Port and Iland of

Marate is an Hand very low : the land thereof is very Defart , and without water, it is beyond Macua, about fixtie fixe leagues; the Hand hath in compasse a league and an halfe, the figure thereof is rather round then any other, it lieth from the firme land about three leagues, in the fide of this Hand which is opposite to the South-west, and beholdeth the firme land, there is a very good Hauen, free from all winds, and especially from the Easterne winds: for on this fide, the Hand doth cast out two very long points into the Sea, which stretch East and West, and a quarter North-west and South-east: betweene the which the land on both sides doth streighten very much, and makes a very great and hollow bosome, in the mouth and front of which lieth a long Hand, and very flat; and also some Heads of fand, and Shoalds, by reaton of which 20 no Sea can come in there: this Hauen hath two entries, one of them goeth on the East fide, and the other on the Well fide, the one and the other very neere the points of the lland, betweene the which the Hauen is made. The Entrie and Channell which goeth on the East fide, firetcheth North and South, a quarter to the North-weil and South-east, the depth is three fathom in the Foure or fine shallowest place, and comming out of this, it encreaseth presently, and within the Hauen wee fathom water, have neere the Shoare foure and fine fathome, the ground is mudde. By night, the wind blewat East, and lesse then by day, we rode all night. The three and twentieth the Sunne being vp, we let faile from the Iland and Port of Me.

The Hands of

Shoalds.

Daratata and rate, and found feuen fathome, and fandie ground; at eleuen of the clocke, wee came in fight of two little Hands, which were farre to the Sea ; one of them is called Daratata , and the other, 12 Sugger Chan- Dolcofallar, from which to Sugger is a dayes journey: from noone forward, we fayled Northwest and by West, till Euensong time that we entred the Channell of Suaguen and entring into it we fayled North-west the space of a league, and presently there wee had ahead of vs certains Shoalds, for which cause wee tayled West, and a quarter North-west, and sometimes West, to free our felues from them, and we fayled this way about three leagues, till we faw a great Hand ahead of vs; as foone as we faw it, we went by a tacke toward the Land, and came to an anchor Xabane Hauen betweene certaine great Shoalds of itone, where there is a good Hauen, called Xabane, which in 19. degrees is to fay in the Arabian Tongue, a Net. At this time it might bee an houre before Sunne fet. This day my Pilot tooke the Sunne in his greatest height, and he found himselfe in nineteene degrees scarce.

The Shoalds of Suaquen are so many, and so intermingled the one with the other, that no in-

of the Soilds formation or picture is sufficient, I say not to passe them , but for to understand them, the Hands, Shoalds, Bankes, Rockes, Channels that are among them are fo many. These Shoalds at the entring, when wee are readie to goe in, have on the Sea fide a Shoald under water, whereupon the Sea breaketh very much, and to the Landward a little Hand, which firetcheth with the Shoald North-east, and South-west, a quarter of the East and West, the distance is about three quarters of a league: as foone as we enter by these Shoalds, the Channell appeareth to vs large and spacious, and the farther wee goe forward, so much more to the Seaward there appeare to Infinite num- vs (uch an infinite number of Hands very flat, Flats, Heads of fand or stone, that they have no ber of Hands, number, the which toward the Land are not so many, though in comparison of any other Sea, 50 Flats, and the so if fand the fouleft and vinnauigable. The precept which most ought to be kept for to passe between their shoulds, is to take heed that we goe alwaies neerer to them that lie to the Sea, and keept and should their shoulds. A precept how our felues the most we can, from the other that are to the Landward. The breadth of the Chanto avoid them. nell that goeth betweene the one and the other, in some places is about halte a league, in others a quarter, and in others lefte then a Caliuer flot. As touching the depth of water through all this Channell, wee are to note, that in the entrie of it we found fixe fathoms, and from thence Fineleagues of to the Port of Xabaque it abated nothing of this depth, nor exceeding twelve fathoms: from the Shoalds, ele- beginning of thele shoalds to this Hauen , there may be about fine leagues , the length of them may be eight or nine leagues, where there goeth another Channell furer for fhips and great veffels, and wee may likewise passe these Shoalds, leaving them all to the Sea, going very clote 60 with the firme land, and this is the rightest way and most pleasant.

The foure and twentieth, the Sunne being vp, wee fet fayle from the Port of Xabaque, and rowed by fo narrow a Channell, that in the broadest place we could not goe abreast; but one after another, & wherefoeuer it widened it might be about a Crof-bow shot, the most we went from

the firme land, might be a Cannon shot, and the least little more then a Cros-how shot. The Shoolds, Rockes and Bankes, we had on eveny fide, and were all vader water, voon them weet faw manifest fignes to awoyd them; For whereformer they lay, the water over them did appeare to vs very red, or very greene, and where wee faw none of these colours, it was manifest to be Rednesse of the deepe, and cleerest of the Channell, the water shewing it selfe darke. Now going by this the water. Channell, compassed with 10 many controuersies; at halfe an houre past eleuen, wee came to an anchor under the lee of a little low and round Hand, in nineteene degrees. In this height Prolomie placeth the Mountaine of the Satyres, of the which I found no memorie in the Pilotes of Mountaine of the Countrey, but going into the Land about halfe a league, I found the foot of to many kinds the Saryrs. to of Beafts, and flockes of Pianets, fo great, that it was a wonder, and all the footings came till they fet their feet in the Sea, and the tracke was fo great, that it occupied the greatest part of the field. I beleeve that Fable fo foread abroad of the Satyres to come from hence, which they

fay, inhabite these Hills and Mountaines, and likewise it is to bee noted, that in these foure leagues of Channell that is from Xabaque to this Iland, the water is no lower then two fathoms and an halfe, nor higher then eleuen, and also that the tide in the Iland ariseth not about halfe a vard. And it begins to flow as foone as the day beginneth to afcend by the Horizon, according to the order of the tides of Socatora.

The fixe and twentieth by Sunne rifing, we departed from this Iland, rowing along a Shoald of stone, that ranne betweene vs and the Land almost equidistance from the Coast, and from it 20 to the Land all the Sea was full of Shoalds and Bankes, to the Sea of vs there appeared neither Shoalds nor Flats, or any other impediment. At nine of the clocke, we came to an anchor in a little Iland, compaffed with many Flats and Shoalds, where was a good Hauen: this Iland was distant from the other, whence wee parted in the morning, a league and an halfe, and short of

The feuen and twentieth the Sunne vp, wee fet faile from this fecond Hand; two houres within night, we came to an anchor a league and an halfe from the fecond Iland, in eight and

The eight and twentieth by day, we brideled the Oares, and fet faile: at nine of the clocke. wecame to an anchor about two leagues from the Land, in three and twentie fathome waters 20 the ground was a foft fand like oze, or mudde. This morning, wee found some Shoalds vader water at Sea, but upon them it shewed it selfe very greene or red. Two houres after noone wee fet faile againe, at night wee came to an anchor in feuen and thirtie fathome water, the ground was fand, the place was short of Suaquen, a league and an halfe, hard by an Iland, the Coast runneth North-West, and South South-east, and all along there runneth a Shoald that entreth into the Sea neere halfe a league, the Land vpon the Sea side differeth in nothing from

The first of March, 1 (41. by day, we departed this place, which is short of Smagnen, a league and an halfe: having doubled a point which the Shoald maketh, being as farre as the place, wee approached the Land, and entring by the Channell inward, we came to an anchor within the 40 Hauen of the Citie of Snaquen.

Suaquen was called in old time, the Port Afti, as wee may fee in Ptolomie his third Table of Description Africa: at this day " it is one of the richeft Cities of the Orient, it is fituated within the Are of the Cities bike Gulie, in the Coast of Athiopia fub Agypto, called now, the Land and Coast of the Aberi, and Port of Among all the famous places, this may be equall or superior to them all in four things. The first, The Port of Among at the famous pracessors may be expected to the famous and second and the famous and second for the famous the factor, and the famous the famous the famous the famous and second and the famous the famous and second for t Lands, and of divers behaviours. The fourth, in the strength of the stration of the Citie. As Since the Two Lands, and of discribehasiours. The fourth, in the strength of the situation of the Circe. As touching the goodnesse of the Port, and the fecuritie of it, I will first speake of: Nature made with Conquest. this Port in fuch manner, that the storme of the Sea cannot come into it by any place whatfo- therepaces euer. Within the Hauen it is fo quiet, and it runneth fo infenfibly, that fcarcely yee can per- hauebeene of

50 ceiue to haue any tides; the ground is mudde, the Road hath in all places fine and it x fathom, and greater trades in the form in this compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the form in the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the Haups may used the compafe and hydrograph of the compafe and hydrograph of the hydrograph of the hydrograph of the compafe and hydrograph of the compafe and hydrograph of the hydrograph of th in some it hath seuen, in this compasse and harbour of the Hauen, may well two hundred ships ficked Saelie, and rowing Vessels without number. Yee may plainly see the ground, and where it appeadies with mareth not, it is so deepe, that at the least it hath ten or twelve fathom water. The ships are laden by Nations for round about the circumference of the Citie, casting a planke into the Ware-houses of the Mer- Gold, suorie, chandife, and the Galleys fastning themseliues to the stones and doores of the houses, set their and rich meta-Beak-heads ouer the streets, and by them as he Bridges they are formed. M. Beak-heads ouer the fireets, and by them as by Bridges they are ferued. Now, touching the Traffique and Nauigation that is in it, with People of many forts, and strange and remore Coun-

tries: I know not what Crite can compare with it (except it be Lifton,) for, this Citie tradeth 60 in all India intra Gangem, G extra Gangem, citat is, Cambaya, Tanagama, Pegu, Mallaya, and within the Arabike fine, in Inda, Cairo, Alexandria, and from all Ethiopia, and the Land of the Abexi it gathereth great abundance and quantitie of Gold, and Iuorie. As touching the strength of the situation of the Citie, there cannot so much bee said that it is not much more, feeing that to come to it, the inconveniences, lets, dangers, and hinderances are so great, that it

1122

feemeth almost impossible. Seeing that fifteenel agues about the Shoalds, Flats, Hands, Channels. Rocks, Bankes, and Flats of Sand, and breakings of the Sea, are io many, that they put the leagues, is en- Saylers in a great doubt, feare and dispaire. The fituation of the Citie is in this manner : in the very midft of this Nooke standeth a most plaine Iland, which is almost levell and even with the Flats, Hands, Sea, and it is fo round, that it feemeth a circle. It hath in compasse a quarter of a league, voon Rocks, Chan- this Hand is the Citie of a Suaguen, built in such manner, that in all the compasse of the Hand nels,Banks,&c. there is not one foot of ground that is not replenished with houses, so that this Illand may rather be faid to be full of Houses and Inhabitants, then built and inhabited of people, to that all the Hand is a Citie, and all the Citie an Hand. On two fides this Citie and Hand, doe come within a Bow shot of the firme Land, that is, on the East South-east, and on the South-west side, but Io all the rest is further of the Land : The Road in this Hauen or Nooke, is round about the Citie. from the edge of it to a great Crosse-bow shot of it. We may cast Anchor where wee lift and all this diftance hath fixe and feuen fathome water, the ground is Mud. This Nooke where this Citie lyeth, as in his Centre, round about it along the shoare hath a great Shoald. So that the deepe is at the edge of the Citie, and a Bow shot round about it on every side, and beyond this distance it is full of Shoalds. In this Nooke lye other three Ilands on the Land fide, that lyeth to the North-west; the second of them that lye further in, are little, but the other neerest to the Channell, is about the bignesse of the Citie. Betweene this lland and the firme Land of the Nooke, on the North fide, there goeth a great Channell very long, in which is feuen fathome water : Along this Channell may a great Name lyeat Anchor, without any danger of hurt from 20 the Citie, or feeing more then their Masts. When the morning appeareth in the Horizon, it is full Sea : and the morning comming on, it beginneth to ebbe till the day comes to our Mendian, when it is dead low water, and patting from hence to the fetting in the Horizon, it begins neth to flow till day shutting in, and being shut in it is full Sea: from dead low water till full Sea againe, the water rifeth not in the Citie more then a quarter of a yard, and along the Coast, the most that it rifeth, is a yard and an halfe to be measured, and in some high places lesse then three quarters of a yard. But when I made this observation were new Tides.

The ninth of March, an houre before Sunne set, wee weighed Anchor from before the Citie, and lay at the mouth of the Channell. The tenth, we fet faile from the mouth of the Channell of Summen; We lay all might at Anchor, and the Dew was so great, that it was wonderfull.

ð. III.

Mountaines of Sand on the Coasts of Dradate, Doroo, Fuxaa, Arequea, Farate, Quilfit and Igidid.

THE eleventh, the Winde was at North, and it blew so hard that it was a storme, it raifed along the Sea Coasts great Mountaines of Sand toward heaven, and after they 40 were very high it brake them, and the ayre remained as though it were a great mith or fmoake: all this day we lay at an Anchor.

The twelfth, we went out of this Channell, two leagues beyond Swagnen, and being without we set saile, and being about a league and a halfe from the Coast, we met so many Rocks. Shoalds and Flats, whereon the Sea did breake very much, that wee were forced to take in our Sayles, and to row the space of three houres, till we were free from these Shoalds, and presently we set fayle againe. At Euen, we came to an Anchor within the Banke, entring a very narrow Channell, this Channell is one league beyond the other whence we parted, & three from Swaquen, it is great and spacious within, the ground is very cleane, there can no Sea come in nor doe any hurt.

The thirteenth, we went an houre before day out of the Channell, and to the Sea of vs about 50 a Canon shot, we saw a very long ranke of Shoalds breake, which seemed to beare the same course that the Coast. At eleven of the clock, the wind scanted and blew from the North Northwest, for the which not being able to make any way, we were forced to fasten our selues to the Rockes of the Shoalds, and being here about three houres, at two of the clocke afternoone we fet fayle, the wind was very much fresher, and about North North-east, we sayled North-west, and when we were with the banke of the Land, we tooke in the Sayle, and rowing, we entred a Channell, and well within the banke we harboured. This Channell and place is from Snaques about feuen leagues, the Channell is very narrow, and windeth in many Crookes, the Coast from Snaquen hither, ftretcheth North and South, and North & by West, and South and by East.

feuen leagues The fifteenth, I went a shoare, and observing the order of the flowing and ebbing of the Sea, 60 from Suaquen. Obleruation I found that after the morning was ouer the Horizon, two houres it was full Sea, and thence it began to ebbe till two houres afternoone, at which time it was dead low water, and prefently it began to flow till the Moone was fet, and two houres after : Now measuring the quantitie, the tide did arife. I found two and twentie cubits.

of the Tides. Course of

A Channell

CHAP.6. S.3. A great watering place. Diogenes Promontorie.

The fixteenth, we went out of this Channell, that is feuen leagues from Sugaress, the winder was at North, halfe a league at Sea we cast Anchor. The seventeenth, werentred into a very good harbour, called Dradate: the Coaft from the Port of Sunguen vnto Dradate, lieth North and by West, and South and by East : It is distant ten leagues, the Land over the Sea is all very low, and three leagues within the Maine, are great and high Mountaines.

The Port of Tradate, with great reason ought to bee placed among the great and famous Ports, it hath elevation of the Pole, nineteene degrees five fixth parts, and is beyond Sugaren ten leagues. The mouth and entry hath in bredth, about a small Faulcon shot, and entring within, presently it beginneth to narrow, and close more and more, but in all his length, the depth 10 of water is twentie fathome, the ground is mud. About a quarter of a league within the Land, there is a great watering place of Wels, where is the belt and greatest quantitie of water, that Agreat water

is knowne in all these Coasts.

The nineteenth, the Sunne being vp, we fet fayle : we journed this day about three leagues and a halfe at Sea off vs wee faw many Shoalds, the Coast stretched these three leaves and a halfe North and South. The twentieth, at Sunne rifing the wind blew at North, and troubled the Sea : wherefore we were forced to feeke harbour within the Shoald, entring by a very narrow and troublefome Channell; after wee were within, the wind came North Northeast, we lav all day at an Anchor. The one and twentieth, we went out of the Shoald, the wind was West North-west faire weather, we sayled to the North, distant from the Land about halfe 20 aleague: an houre after Sunne rifing, we were with a very long and faire point, which Ptolomie

calleth the Promontorie of Diogenes.

Dorso, is a very great and faire Bay, it is fifteene leagues beyond Sugger, and a halfe: this A Description Bay on the South fide thrusteth a verie large and bare point into the Sea, where there is built of the Bay of a great and round Turret in manner of a Pillar, Piolomic calleth this Point, the Promontorie of Doron. Diogenes, "Through this Channell, presently at the entrie, there is fixe fathome Water, and promontoris from hence it goeth diminishing till it come to three, and thence doth not descend; the ground of Diverse. is a verie hard lay, the Bay is to great, and maketh fo many Creekes and Nookes, and within it lye fo many Ilands, and the firme Land is cut with fo many Creekes, which doe penetrate fo farre into the Land, that in every place there may be many Vellels hidden, without any no-30 tice of them. A quarter of a league to the Sea of this Bay, there lyeth a Should that doth gird and compafie it in luch fort at the mouth thereof, that no Sea can come into it because it is alwaies aboue water, without having any entrance, except the mouth which aboue I have rehear-

fed. This entry or mouth stretcheth East and by North, and West and by South. A Cannon A Brackish falt that from this Bay, is a Well, of great quantitie of water, but it is very brackish and falt. The Well, two and twentieth, when it was day, wee departed, and made our way Rowing, the Sca feemed to be very full of Rockes, and getting free of forme, we encountred with others; halfe an houre past ten of the clocke, we made ve safe to the stones of them. About Euensong time, we were with the Land, and having doubled a low point, we entred intro very great Bay, which is called Fuxaa, there is betweene Doros and Fuxaa three leagues and a halfe, the Coast stretch-40 eth North and South, and feemeth to take formething of North-Weff and South-Eaft. The Bay The Deformation of Fuxes, is made Noble of famous, by a verie high and tharpe Pike, and in it the Pole of the on of the Bay North doth rife twentie degrees and a quarter. In the entry and mouth of this Bay, there are of Funds.

two verie low points : they lye North and by East, and South and by West, the distance is one league and a halfe. No great Sea doth enter heere, and for this cause heere is a good harbour. where there is ten and twelve fathome water, and the ground is mud, every where elie it diminisheth, till it come to five fathome. Along the Land of the Bay that goeth on the South fide, there lyeth nine little Ilands on a row, and in other places are fome other scattered, all of Nine little them are small, low, and compassed with Shoalds : In this Bay there is not any water, the Land Ilands, is verie dry and barrene

50 The five and twentieth, were journed along the Coast to the Sea off vs , about a league wee Arequis Harfaw many Rockes: at ten of the clocke we entred into an harbour, verio great, which is called bour twinte Areques. There is betweene the Bay of Faxas and this Hauen foure leagues, the Coaft run- two leagues meth North and South, and taketh something of the North-west and South-east. Arequea is The Description the strongest and most defeneeable Hauen that hitherto I have seene; it is beyond Suggest two onothe Port and twentie leagues. In old time it was called Diofeori, as wee may fee in Ptolomie; in the of drequen midft of the entry and mouth of this Port, lyeth a great lland, which hath in length about a Dioferi Port. Croffe-bow shot, and almost as much in breadth, and there runneth from it to the tirme Land, on the South fidea Shoald and a Banke, that ioyneth with the Land, in fuch fort, that not any thing can passe ouer it : but from the same lland to the Land on the North fide, which is a-

6 bour a Croffe-bow shot distance, there goeth a Channell that hath fifteene fathome water, it runneth North-west and South-east, and both neere the Land, and neere the Iland it is verie shallow and full of Rockes, so that the way lyeth in the very midst; the Channell hath in length about a Caliuer shot, and presently the Coasts on every side winding, doe make within Bbbbbbb 1

agreet and very faire Hauen, in which there is no feare of danger. This Port hath in length 2bout one league, and halfe in breadth, it is deep in the midft, and neere the Land full of Shoalde. there is no water in it. The token we have to know when we are as farre as it, is, that the Pike about aid remaineth to the West South-west. Here we agreed to fend all the Armie to Macre. and to goe forward onely with fixteene small Gallies.

The thirtieth at noone, we fet fayle from the Port of Arequea, we came to an Anchor in a Salaquarianen, Hauen, which is called Salaqua, beyond Areques foure leagues, and from Suaquen fixe and twentie; the Coast North and South, and taketh somewhat of the North-east and South-west The Land which is over the Sea, maketh many ritings and hillocks, and behind them there arife great Mountaines: and we are here to note, that the Land by the Sea from Arequea, begin- 10 neth to make this flew forward, for hitherto it is all very plaine and low, till it reacheth to the Mountaines that are within the Maine. The one and thirtieth, we fet fayle from the Port of Salarna: an houre before Sunne let, we faltned our selves to a Shoald, that is a league from the shoare, we might goe this day about seventeene leagues, and were beyond Suaquen three and From the Port of Salaque forward, the Coasts doe begin to winde very much, and from Re-

The coaffing

Celdoaer forward, the space of a league, the Coast runneth very low to the North North-east, and in the end it maketh a point of Sand, where there are thirteene little hillockes or knobs of stone, which as the Moorsh Pilots faid, were Graues, and from this point of the Calmes a. bout two leagues, the Coast runneth to the North North-west, and from thence as farre as this 20 Shoald, which is three and fortie leagues from Suaquen. It is the most famous and named point of all this Coast; because all that doe sayle from Macus, Suaquen, and other places, to Inda,
Alorer, and to Toro, must of force fetch this point. As touching the Sea that lyeth within these seventeene leagues. I believe there can be no rules or experience to be securely sayled, but that as well the skilfull as the vaskilfull, must passe at all adventures, and save themselves by chance, for the Shoalds are so many, and so great, the Sea so sowed enery where with Rockes. the Bankes are so continuall in every place, that it seemeth certainly rather that we may goest on foote, then fayle it; yea, although it be infinill Boats, in these spaces which are contained betweene Salaqua and Raseldoar, are three Ilands lying in tryangle, neerer to Raseldoar then to Salaqua. The greatest of them is called Magarcan, it hath in length about two league, 10 the Land of it is verie high; and without water. This Iland beareth with Rasidoaer North and South, the diffance is three leagues. The fecond Hand lyeth much to the Sea, and is called Elmante : the Land is likewise high, and without water ; but the third Hand is very low, and all of Sand : it lyeth foure leagues from Salagna, toward Rafeldoaer, the name whereof is not vet

The second of Aprill, 1541. an houre before day, we loosed from the Shoald, that is three and fortie leagues beyond Suageen, and went Rowing along the Coast, wee entred into a River which is called Farme: there might be from the Shoald whence wee departed to this River, foure leagues, and ferting fayle a league from thence, wee entred into an Hauen very faire, Quilite Hanen, which is called Quilite. All this day we faw not to the Land of vs any Rocke, but to the Sea of an The Description which is called Quilite. The Channell thereof hath of the vs we did ice a Shoald. Farate is a Riner very great and faire, the Channell thereof hath of eon the River lenation of the Pole one and twentie degrees, and two third parts, that separates two low Points; at the entrance are a small Caliver shot, and from each of them commeth a Should toward the mouth of the River, so that the Channell or entry is in the very midit; this River runneth East and West. The Land of every side of the River is very low, without Bush or any Trees of any other kind; in the mouth of the River is thirtie fathomes water, and from thence

it diminisheth till it remaineth in eighteene.

of Feate.

of Quife.

Quilfit, is an Hauen no lefte faire and noble, then very fure and profitable, because being once within, we need to feare no winde or any misfortune. There are at the entrie of this Port two very low Points, which are coasted North-west and South-east, a quater North and South. The 10 diffrance is almost a quarter of a league. All the Hauen round about, may comprehend more then three leagues, and wee may lye at Roade in any place of it, and bee fafe. In all this Hauen is twelve fathome water, along the Shoare the Coast is rockie, betweene this part and the River of Farate, which is a great leagues journey, there croffeth a ranke of Mountaynes, one higher

The third, one houre before day, we came out of the Port of Quilfit, and went rowing along the Coast. An houre before Sunne set, we came to an anchor in an Hauen, which is called Rafile gid, which in the Arabian tongue is, The new Head. This day we went about nine leagues, to the Sea of vs, we faw some Shoalds, but fewer then we had seene before. Two leagues from Quilfit there is a very good Hauen, which is called Monnaa, and presently from this Point of the 60 Shrubs, vnto another Point of Sand very long, which is about two leagues, before the Port of Rafilgia, the Coast runneth North and South, and taketh somewhat of the North-west and South-eaft, the diffance is about three leagues and a halte.

Igided, is a small Hauen, but a very pleasant one, it is beyond Suaquen seuen and fiftie leagues: A description the proportion thereof is like a great Cauldron, and within is fo round, that it feemes a part of the Port of of a Circular: in the mouth and entrie of the Port are two Points; which fretch North and ligitid. South. Within this Pert, onely the Eafterne winde can doe fome hurt, all the ground is very proportion cleane: at the Mouth there is eighteene fathome water, and within thirteene; and halfe a league like a great. from it into the Land there is a Well of water, though little abounding, the water of it is very Cauldron. bitterish; the Port hath in compasse a great halfe league. It is a thing to be noted, that as well A Well of wain this Port, as in all the reft, which I have seene in this Coast, Rivers, or Harbours, none hath ter viry bitterifh. any Barre or Banke at the Entrie , but rather the greatest depth is at the Mouthes , rather then to within. In this Port I found certaine Trees, which in the Trunke or Stock refembled the Corke Trees like

Trees, for the Trunkes and Boughes of them were coursed with a kind of Barke or Corke, and Corke trees. very different in all the reft, for the leaves of them were very great and large, and wonderfully thicke and greene, having certaine bigge veines that did croffe them, thefe Trees were with Flowre, and the Flowre in the Bud refembled the Mallow flowre when it is in the Bud, but that this was very white; and after it openeth, the Bud it refembleth the white Cockle. Cutting a little Bough or Leafe of these Trees, there runneth out a great streame of Milke, as if it were the dugge of a Goat. In all this coaft I faw no other Trees but thele, except a Groue that is a little beyond Macus, hard by the Sea in the marith ground; besides these Trees, within the Land, there are fome Valleyes where grow some Capers, the leanes of which the Moores Trees of Ca-20 doe cate. They fay, that they be appropriated to the ioynts.

The fourth, from Sunne rifing till eleven of the clocke, the winde blew fo much at Northwest, that it was a great storme; and from eleven of the clocke, it began to thunder very hard. Thunder and and it hayled with the biggeft drops that ever I faw; with thefe thunders, the Winderanne very great through all the Points of the Compasse, and at last it remayned North. This day I carried my Hayle. instruments on Land, and found the variation one degree and a quarter to the North-east, and the Port in two and twentie, by many observations.

Notwithstanding, that these operations were made a shoare, and with so much heede in the fetting of the Instrument, that after once placed I never stirre it, till the end of all the observations, yet there cannot be but that some error may be in them and some difference, because the 20 great heate and forchings of the Sunne, did cracke the plate of Juorie in the middeft, and there The exceeding remayned a great Clift as thick as a Portegue of gold, betweene the one halfe and the other.

The fixth, an houre before day, we weighed from the Port of Igidid. All this dayes journey Sunae. might be three leagues and a halfe.

The feuenth, in the morning, the Winde blew fresh at North-west, we rowed to the shoare : and at eight of the clocke, in the morning, wee fastned our selues to certayne stones of a Shoald and a Shelfe, that lyeth before a long Point, which hereafter I will call Starta; we went in this Starta. space about three leagues; but about noone we departed, and set faile, being in no little doubt. because on the one fide and on the other of vs, we saw so many Shelues that it was a wonderfull thing : we were forced to take in our failes, and helpe our felues with the Oare. At Sunne fet we comel, a good 40 came to an anchor in a good Hauen, which is called Comel.

ð. IIII.

A description of the Coast, that is contayned from the Port of Igidid vnto Comol, Raselnaxef, Xuarif, Gadenauhi, Xermeelquiman, Gualibo, Tuna, Alcocer, and Toro.

Rom a Point that lyeth two leagues beyond the Port of Igidid, to another, very long come! Hauen doe it any harme, and it is very deepe. The Point remayneth an Iland, which by reason of the heighth and place where it standeth, without doubt it seemeth to be an Iland, which Ptolomie calleth Starta. But from hence to a great Point , which the Land over the Port of Comol doth Starta Infula. thrust out, there may be fine leagues, these two Points stretch North-west and by West, Southeast and by East; betweene them both there is another great and faire Nooke. As touching the description of the Land vpon the Sea coast, we are to note, that from as farre as Igidid, till halfe a league short of the Port of Comol, along the Sea, the Land sheweth all along in small Hills and 60 very close, and behind them there arise within a league distance, very great and high Mountains, rayfing very high Pikes and sharpe Points, with other very faire shewes, the which the neerer they come to the Port of Comol, so much the neerer they come toward the Sea, and being come to the edge of it, they runne very high, ouer-pearing the Coasts, till they come within halfe a league short of this Port of Comel.

Вынын з

A description of the Portof nated two and twentie degrees and an halfe. This Port standeth in the end of this second Nooke.

very neere the face of the Point, which the Land that Iyeth on the North-west side, doth thrust out, the which though it be not very great, yet it is very fure and profitable : for toward the Sea fide it hath certaine Shoalds ouer water, which defend it, that no Sea can come into it; the Land which is seene round about it, is very plaine and pleasant, and greatly peopled with Badoic. Now, the Point of the North-west, wherewith the Land ouer this Port and end of the Nooke. commeth out into the Sea, is very long and faire : the Land of it is all low and equall. This Point is the Promontorie Prionoto, if wee looke well to Ptolomie in the third Table of Africa. which because that as farre as it the great Mountaines doe end, which roame along all this 10 Coaft. Three houres after mid-night, we went out of the Port of Comol, and rowing a little while, wee all fet faile and went along the Coast; but an houre before morning, some Forsts

ftrooke your Rocks and Shoalds, for which cause we strooke saile, and made our journey, rowing

The eight, at breake of day, we came into a great and faire Bay, of which toward the North and North-west side, we saw no end, or any Point where it might end. We sailed in the broad and high Sea, the Shoalds on every fide were fo many, that it was a wonder wee could make any profit of a large winde, for now going roamour, now by a tacke, sometime out of the way, and fometime in it, there was no way wee could take certayne and quiet About Sunne fet, wee found a very great Shelfe, and faithing our felues to the stones of it, we tooke harbour. The ninth, 20 being cleere, we fet faile from the Shelfe. We tooke harbour within a very great Shelfe, which is called Xaabiliden : after we were at anchor, we faw to the Sea an Iland, which is called Zemorgete. This Port and Shelfe ftretcheth North-east and by East, South-west and by West. From the point of the Cape of the Mountains, to another Point which is beyond it, where are certain great Furres or Whinnes, the Coast runneth North-west and by North, and South-east and by South, bushes of the distance may be about three leagues & an half, or foure, & presently from this Point, the Coasts of the great nooke, beginne to wind toward the Land inward, drawing toward the fetting of the Sunne, and afterward they turne againe very winding and crooked, making with fo many turnings a great and large circuite, and from hence they wind outward, carrying a great and long front, till they thrust into the Seaa notable and great Point, called Rafelnazef, which in 2 Arabique, is to fay, the dry Cape which Ptolomie doth call. The Promontorie Pentadatilors, & we may fee in the third Table of Africa, the Hand of Zemorgete, is diffant from this Point ahout eight leagues towards the Sunne rifing, and from it, as the Moor / Pilots told vs, is the first Note an illand place from whence the Land is feene of both the Coasts, but the Coast of Arabia is a great of both Coaffs deale further from the lland, this Iland is barren and very high, and hath another fail by it very finall, the greater Zemorgete, Prolomie doth call Agarbon, and maketh no mention of the lef-fer. Now, for a declaration of the shelfe Xaabeliden, wee are to note, that in the end of this great Bosome farre to the Sea, there lyeth a very faire shelfe aboue water, all of it, which maketh a figure like to two armes wide open with their hands, and because of this shew that it

Point, or the dry Cape. Promontorie Pentidatilors.

great Shelfe,

Zemorgite 1.

The Point of

taines end.

Raselmaxes

fresher, and the Sea appeared to vs cleere and Nauigable, about halfe a league from the Point, we faw in the judgement of all, aship vnder faile, and making toward it, after wee were very neere it, we perceived it was a white Rocke that was in the Sea, which, as wee had notice, deceiveth all the Nauigators, and prefently we failed to the North and by East. At nine of the clocke, wee were as farre as an Iland, which is called, Cornagua, and wee passed betweene it and the sime Land : this Iland is small and barren, it hath in compasse about halte a league, the distance from 10 it, and the firme Land is about a league and an halfe, the Land of the Iland maketh the figure and shew of a great and mightie Lizard, with his armes stretched out, which is the occasion it is much noted and seene of the Nauigators, and therefore made famous, this Iland of Cornaqua beareth with the Hand Zermogete, North-west and by West, and South-east and by East, the distance is about fixe small leagues, but returning to our way, about halie an houre past ten, wee were as farre as a very long Point of Sand, entring a great way into the Sea, which is called, Rafelenfe; which in Arabique, is to fay, The Point or Cape of the Nofe. This Point hath not round about it any high Land, but a great or vast field doth begirt it, without feeing in all this space any Tree or any greene thing, and in the very face of the Point, is a great Temple erected, without any other building, and on enery side of it is a very cleere sandy Coast, in manner of a Bay. Rafelenfe is very famous; all the trouble of their Nauigations, is, till they come to this Point, and whenfoeuer they double or come to it, they hold themselues at home and sure. Now profecuting our journey running along the Coast, the wind was at South-east. At noone my Pilot tooke the Sunne, and found himfelte in twentie foure degrees of height, one fixt part,

representeth, it was called, Xaabeliden; which in Arabian, is to say, The shelfe of the Hands, 40 the Port of this shelfe is on the Land side, for on this side it winderh very much, and stressheth

fuch armes that keepe and fluit up the Hauen from all the winds of the Sea, this Hauen firet-

cheth with Rafelnaxef, East South-east, and West North-west, the distance is about foure leagues.

The tenth, the Sunne being vp, we fet faile to the North North-east, the wind began to blow

at this time we might be beyond Rafelenfe three leagues, whence it remayneth manifell, this acting time we might be beyond anything the degrees; and of this it appeareth, that the Citie of Note the Citie Berenice, was built in this Point of Rafelenfe, for Ptelomie doth place it under the Tropicke of of Berenice. Cancer, by the Sea-side in this Coast, and in his time they made the greatest declination, almost twentie three degrees fiftie minutes : Likewise, Pime, Lib.6. speaking of Berenice, saith, that in the Solftreium at high noone, the Gnomon maketh no shadow, which signifieth, this Citie to

CHAP, 6.S.4. Notes of Points, Coasts, llands, and the variation.

he under the Tropicke. Halfe an houre before Sunne-set, we were as farre as an Iland, which is called Xwaru, but past Xwait Iland. fine forward a quarter of a league, we met certaine shelpes of fand, and others of stone. Wee To came to an Anchor betweene them in a good Harbour, which in the Arabique Tongue, is called Cel, In these shelues wee saw so great a quantitie of Foule, as hitherto in no part of this Sea wee haue seene : these shelues and Port of Cial, is beyond Suachen, one hundred and three

From Raselnaxes, till so farre as the Iland Xuaris, there may be betweene sixteene and seven- The coasting teene leagues. The Coast when we have doubled Rafelnaxef, which by another name. I call the from Rafe North-west point of the great Nooke, doth wind very much, and runneth into the Land, and maxef to Xuatit turning outward againe, it thrusteth into the Sea: a verie long Point of Sand, called Rafelenfet, Raselnaxes shele two Points firetched North-east and South-west, and take almost the whole quarter of Point. North and South, there may be in the diffance about fixe leagues large, and prefently from Ra-20 felenfet, forward the Coast windeth directly to the North-west, till we are as farre as the Hand of Xuart, this distance is betweene ten and eleven leagues : the Sea that Iyeth in this distance is in onely three places foule and full of Shoalds, the first is, to the Sea of the Hand of Connagua, where is feene a great and very faire Shoald, which going ouer water raifeth a great ridge of very great flones, and runneth a great space toward the Land. The second place is in the Ilan d of Xuarit, for from this Iland, as well on the East as on the West-side, there goe great Shoalds and Xuarit Iland, Flats toward the firme Land, in such manner that they seeme to shut up all the Sea, that lyeth Calceuer shot

many Shoalds and Flats, that they have no number, neither can yee perceive any part of it. that 30 shewes it selie free and void of them. The Iland of Xmarit is a Caleeuer-shot in length, and in breadth almost as much, the Land of it is very low, and in the midst of it a great Bush very greene, on the East-fide there is opposite to it a great Rocke like an Iland, this Iland is distant from the firme Land little more then halfe a league.

From Suagnen to Rafelenfe, the Countries are inhabited of a people, called Badois, which worthip Mahomet, the one and the other called of the Cosmographers Libiopians. And from Rafelenfe vpward to Soez, and the end of this Sea, the Coasts doe appertaine to the great Region of Egypt, therefore the Inhabitants which doe inhabit betweene them and the River Nilm, Ptolomie will have them called, Archique Egyptions. Pomponius Mela, and other Authors doe onely Archique Egyptions we must hold with, and follow Ptolomie, tions. 40 as Prince of the Cosmographers. These Arabique Egytian;, all those that doe inhabit from the Mountaines toward the Sea, are commonly called Badoic, of whose customes and life, wee will

intreat in some other place. The eleuenth, we tooke in our fayles, and Rowed along: at nine a clocke of the day we en____ Roote, four tred into a great Nooke, which is called Gadenaubi, there may be from the part of Giall to this leagues from Nook, about foure leagues: the Coast stretcheth North-west and South-east, and taketh of the cial. North and South : the Land ouer the Sea, leaving the shape it had, to wit, of a Wall or Trench. it commeth very mountainous and doubled, making so many Mountaines, and so close, that it is a very strange thing. The Port of Gadenaubi, is beyond Suaquen, one hundred & seuen leagues, Variation to and in it the Pole is elevated foure and twentie degrees, and two third parts; being low water, to North-caft 50 it was one houre after high noone, and flowing from that houre, comming to the Point of full halfe a degree.

Sea, it was one houre after the Moone role ouer the Horizon, & from that houre the Moone afcending by the Hemisphere, it beganne to ebbe, till the Moone passed the Meridian, about an houre of time, and prefently the Moone descending from hence, going to set under the Horizon, the Tyde began to flow till the Moone was fet, and an houre after it was fet, was full Sea. By night the wind was North-west, two or three houres after mid-night wee departed from Gadenaubi, and profecuting our journey, at the paffing betweene the Shoald which commeth from the North-west Point of the Nooke, and the Hand of Babuto : we flrucke and were fast Babuto. vpon the Shoald, and all being troubled, wee were in the Net, (as they fay) but in this there was neither danger nor hurt, infomuch that we got out of this place, and hit voon the Channell,

60 and went along the shoare, rowing against the North-west winde till it was day. The twelfth, we rowed along the shore, one houre after Sun rife, we anchored in a hauen, which
Hauen. is called Xarmeelguman, which in Arabique, is to fay, a cleft or opening of the Mountaines: Adeceription This Port lyeth beyond Gadenauhi a league and a halte. Xarmeelquiman is a small Port, and of the Port of little pompous or proud in quantitie , but in qualitie great and Noble. This Port is from Sua- Xarmeelquiman

betweene the lland and the Land, but the third remayneth manifest, to bee this part where at in length, and the season and the Land, but the third remayneth manifest, to bee this part where at in breadth all the season and the land and the Land, but the third remayneth manifest, to be this part where at in breadth all the land and the Land, but the third remayneth manifest, to be this part where at in breadth all the land and the Land, but the third remayneth manifest, to be this part where at in breadth all the land and the Land, but the third remayneth manifest, to be this part where at in breadth all the land and the Land, but the third remayneth manifest, to be this part where at in breadth all the land and the Land, but the third remayneth manifest, to be this part where at in breadth all the land, but the land and the land and the land and the land, but the land and this prefent we lye at Anchor, called Cial; in the which the Sea is fo full and thicke, with fo most as much

A ftrange

1128

quen, one hundred and eight leagues, it is much like the Port of Igid.d. The twelith of Arrill. we fet favle going along the shoare, the winds came fresher and larger, that is, at East South east, about noone it blew verie hard, and it came with so great Gales, that it rather the Sands of the Coast very high, raising them toward the heavens, in so great Whirle-winds, that they fremed like great fmoakes. About Euen-long time the Armie comming together, the Winde calmedaltogether to some ships; and some other that came hard by, or a little behind, or more to the Sea, or to the Land, had the wind is firong, that they could beare no fayle. The diffance from those that were in calme, and those that were in the storme, being no more then a stones cast, and presently within a little space, it tooke the shippes that were in calme with their Savles, up to the top, fo that they had the Winde very fresh; and the other that went verie to fwift, remained in calme, and so in short time the one was reuenged of the other. This chanced poing close all together, in such fort, that it feemed a thing done for the nonce, and in mockage. Gales of winds In this chance, there came some Gales of East, and East North-east winde very great, and so that fcorched hot, that in their fcorching they made no difference from flames of fire. The Dufts that were raifed on the shoare, went sometime to one place, and sometimes to another, as they were drinen and cast with the Winds : many times we law them make three or foure waies before the were alayed, or did fall in the Sea, with the Counter-winds that tooke them from divers parts. This Mysterie and Chance among hils and high grounds had not beene much, nor any new thing to have happened; but so farre from the Coast with the Sea Winds, certainly it ought to be much regarded. When these Counter-winds beganne to take vs, we were as a Port. that is called Xaona, and going on in this fort, now sirrking Sayle, now Hoyfing, fometimes ta. 20 king pastime at that which we saw, and other whilet dread and teare, we went almost till Sun fet , when we entred into a Port, called Gualibo , which is to fay in Arabique, The Port of Trouble ; we went this day, and a piece of the night patt, about thirteene leagues.

ronneth North-west, and by North and South-east, and by South, the distance is about tenne leagues : and from this Red hill, to a Point that lyeth beyond this Port of Gualibo almost 2 league, the Coaft runneth North North-west, and South South-east, the distance is about fixe leagues. In these fixteene leagues the Coast is very cleere, and onely one league beyond the Red hill lyeth a Shoald, diftant from the Land halfer a league large. In the length of these Coasts contained in the fixteene leagues, are many fare and tamous Ports, the most that I have seene or 30 thought to fee in fo short a space of way : among which Ports, there is one that is called Xaona, very great, where the Moores and Inhabitants doe fay, A famous Citie of Gentiles was built in times past, which looking well to Ptolomie in his third Table of Africa, was called Nechefia. Along the Sea runne great and infinite Mountaines, very double and close together, and behind farre within the Land, there arise ouer them great and mightie hils. In all the length of the Coasts where these Mountaines are placed, there are two great Mountaines, not onely more Noble then the other their neighbours : but all those that are in this Coast, the one of is very blacke, and feemeth as though it were findged, and the other is yellow, betweenethem very great and them are certaine heapes of Sand: From the blacke Mountaine inward to the Land, there is to an open field, where I faw many Trees very great and high, which tooke a great compasse with the tops. These Trees were the first I faw in this Coast, that seemed Domesticall and proper, to the Land : for the other, that before I make mention of , which are a little beyond Macria

From Gadenaubi, to a Port that is called, Xacara, (which a very red hill doth beguirt) the Coast

before the Port which is called, Xarmeelquman. Gualibo, is beyond Suaquen, one hundred and twentie two leagues. This Port is like in fashion and entry, very much to the Port of Xameelquiman, in this onely they differ, that the other go hath ouer it many Mountaines, that enuiron it, and all the Land round about this, is plaine and vaste. The entry of this Port, is betweene certaine Rockes or Shoalds, whereon the sea breaketh very much, the Channell is deepe and large.

are like, and of the kind of them that grow in the Marishes, by the Borders of the Sea, and of

the Rivers, and likewise those which stand in the Port of Karmeelquiman , and the other that

fland in the Port of I gidid are wilde, and fad to the fight, without boughes or fruit, but having

leaues they feeme naked and dry. Thefe two Mountaines and Graue, stand about two leagues

* The thirteenth of Aprill after Sunne rife, we weighed, and went out of the Port of Gualibo, the wind was North-west very strong, and made the Sea to rise very much, we rowed along the shoare: at ten of the clocke in the morning, wee entred into a Port, which is called Tuna, which is a league and an halfe beyond Gualibo.

Tuna is a small and soule Hauen, at is beyond Suaquen one hundred twentie three leagues and an halfe, the North Pole is elevated in it twentie five deg, and an halfe, the entring of the Hauen is betweene certaine Rockes, and within, the greatest part of it is occupied with a shoald and 60 ftones, in such fort, that within there is a small and ferrie Harbour, the turning which the point of the Land, that is on the North fide of the Port doth make, there is a good Harbour and Road against the North-west wind, the Land round about it is a very barren fand; on the land of this Port on the North-well fide there are three sharpe Mountaines of stone, made to my thinking, for a knowledge and token that there is an Hallen here.

One houre before Sunne set, we fastned our selves to a Shoald, which stands beyond Tiona a league, the Coast from a Point, which is almost one league beyond Guatibo, funnerh with another Point that is beyond this Shoald, a league and a halfe, North Northwest, South South-east. the diftance is foure Leagues.

The fourteenth, we went along the shoare, the Sea rose very bigge, and molested the Rowers Avery faire very much, but resisting both Winde and Sea, after high noone wee entred into a very faire Nooke, one hundred twen. Nooke, and in the hidnest corner of it, where it maketh a good Port, wee came to an anchor. This day and night we went about five leagues, and might be beyond Swaquen one hundred and from Suaquen twentie nine leagues, the Coast in their fixe leagues stretcheth North-west and South-east, the access Port Land ouer the Sea coaft, some of it is low and plaine, and some mountainous.

The fifteenth by day, wee were a league short of Aleocer, and making to it, an houre and a The height of halfe after Sunne rile we came to the place, an cast anchor in the Hauen; we might goe the night alwar. past, and this little of the day about seuen leagues, the Coast in this space runneth North North-

west, and South South-east.

The place of Alescer, noting well Plinie in the fixt Booke of his Naturall Historie, and like- A description wife Ptolemie in the third Table of Africa, was called Philoteras, and all the Land that is con- of Akocer. tayned from it vnto the Citie Arfinee , and the end of this Sea was knowne by the name of Alexer tome-Eneo; this place is so neighbouring to the River Nilms, that the diffance of both may bee betweene fifteene and fixteene dayes journey, fetting your face toward that place where the Sunne fetteth. This is the onely Port in all this Coast, where all the prouisions, which the Land of Egypt yeeldeth at this day, doe arrive, which Land is now called Riffs, and from hence all the Riffs, a fruitfull Townes, fituated within the Coasts of the Streight, doe carrie them and prouide themselves. Part of Eppt. The Towne of Alcocer was built in old time two leagues further upon the Sea coafts, but because of the cuill discommoditie, and iountly because the Port was not sufficient for so great a refort, they past it hither; and yet at this day are the old buildings of the ancient Towne seene, and are standing, and is called the old Alcocor, by the which I meane Philoseras. But returning to the description of the new Alescer, as twife I have verified, it hath of elevation of the Pole, fix New Alescer. and twentie degrees and one quarter, toward the North fide, it is beyond Smaner one hundred twentie fix dethirtie fixe Leagues; the Port is a great Bay, and very open to the Easterne winder, which in grees and a 10 this Coast are of great force and trauerie, right against the place lye some shoulds though small, quarrer, the whereon the Sea breaketh, betweene the which and the shoare the Frigats and Ships harbour, mott barren which come to feeke lading: the Towne is very fmall, and more then any other of the World, and miferable burren and miferable. The buildings differ very little from yards to put Cattell in ; howfoeuer, place in the barren and miferable. The buildings differ very little from years to put Carceai m; nowneuer, pute member wills of the builds are of hone and elay, and other hof folds, the tops of which haue no couse, world, the ring at all, except a few Mats or fuch bafe things, which defend the Enhabitants from the Sunne, maner of the buildings and the sun of the and from the Raines, if peraduenture the Heauens doe fend them now and then, as it is truth, boulds that in this place they fall but feldome, and by a great chance. In all the circuit of the Place, It raines feld Coast, Fields, Mountaines or Hills, there groweth no manner of Herbe, Graffe, Buth, Tree , or domein Ale-40 any other thing appeare, except certaine blacke fcorched Mountaines, which make a great number of bare Hillocks, the which carrying this cuill flew and melancholike fight, doe entiron the place from Sea to Sea, and betweene them and the inhabiting, whereforeuer any waste place chanceth to be, it is a drie and more then barren fand to the fight, mingled with infinite gravell. The Post is the worst of all that I saw in this Coast, in it for his excellencie is not any kinde of Fish to bee found , having through all the Coasts and Strands very great abundance. Neere the Towne are three Wells of water whereof the people drinke, whole water with great diffi- Three We cultie yee can discerne from that of the Sea. Here is no kinde of Cattell,

The most expert Moores told me, that the name of Egyps was not known e neere them, but that all the Land from Aleccer, and a great way behind, vnto Alexandria, was called Riffa. In so which, more then any other Countrey of the World, there was great abundance of victuals and proudions, Cattell, Camels, Horfes, without having one foote of viprofitable ground in all that Prouince. I asked them what language or cuftomes they had: they arriwered mee, that they followed the Arabians in all things. I asked them also for the qualitie of the Land : they told, It never raines that it was altogether very plane, and that it neuer rained in it; and that if at an, time it in Riffa. chanced to raine, it was held for a Wonder, the which God hath prouided for, with ordayning that the River Nitro fhould twice a yeere exceed his bounds and naturall course, and water the fields. I asked them alfo if from as fatre as Alcocer, one might fayle by the River to Alexandria: they told me they might, and from farre behind Alcocer toward the Abext: but that there was along the River many Hands and Rockes, for the which good Pitots were needfull, or

60 to fayle by day. I asked them more, what the cause was, that the men of that Countrey inhabited fo " great a fituation as Alcocer: they answered mee, They being the neerest "Sobarren a Sea-hauten to Nilw, and Province of Roffa, of all the Coaft, from whence the fruits and pro- Seat as Alcour, uitions of the Land were transported. I asked them for what reason the Inhabitants of this place did not couer their houses, and made roofes vnto them : they answered me, that for the Sunne, the defence of Mats was fufficient, and that with raines they were not molefted, but

that against the malignitie and wickednesse of men, they were forced to seeke stronger defences. and therefore ordained to make the wals of ftone and clay, and others of fods. I asked them what men there to fierce enemies of theirs were, against the which they armed themselves with so ftrong Bulwarkes. They told me that they were Badois, a peruerfe people, void of all good neffe, which many times with fudden affaults and robbings, did moleft the place, and did rob the Droues that came from Nilus with victuals and other proussions.

The eighteenth of Aprill, in the morning, we faltned our felues to a Shoald, that is beyond Alcocer, about foure leagues, and prefently past noone we fet faile.

The nineteenth, there tooke vs like a gush of the North North-west wind, faire weather, halfe an houre past eight of the clock, that we tooke Port in an Iland, which is called Suffange-elbahar, to we loft of the way we had gone foure or fine leagues.

The description of the land contribute to the Pole in it is seen and twentie degrees, all the land contribute to the Pole in it is seen and twentie degrees, all the land contribute the land th A good Hauen a quarter in breadth, there is a good Hauen with all weathers, but in the firme Land are fo many for all wea- .. Nookes, Ports, and Harbours, that it is a wonder, the deepest Channell whereby the Sea that is betweene the Iland and the Mayne, is along the firme Land, because on the Ilands fide there bee fome Shoalds, in the mouth and entring of this great Port, that is on the North-fide, there are certaine Shoalds aboue water, of the which comming in by day, yee need not feare, and in the other that lyeth on the South-fide, in the very midft of the entry of it, there is a great flone.

The twentieth of Aprill, 1541. at Sunne-fet, we might be about fixe leagues beyond the Iland Suffange-elbabar, the Coalt in these fixe leagues runneth in this manner, from Suffange-elbabar. to a fandie Point, that is, beyond the Hand a league and an halfe, North North-west, and South South-east, and from this fandie Point forward, the Coasts doe wind inward to the Land, and doe make a great Nooke, within the which doe lye many Hands, Ports, Creekes, Bayes, and

many other notable Harbours.

The one and twentieth, by day, we were fast by the Land of an Iland, which is called . Xedsem, the wind was calme, we rowed along the lland on that fide which is opposite to the Land of the Arabian, this is very high and craggie, all of an hard Rock, it hath in length three leavues. and two in breadth, it is beyond Alcocer , twentie leagues, there is no water in it, nor any kind 10 of Trees. The Land of the Iland lyeth betweene both Coasts, there is from it to the firme Land of enery (side fine leagues, beyond toward the North-west are other three smaller Hands. the Land of them is low, and betweene the one and the other lye fome Shoalds. An houre after Sun rose, we were voon the Cape or Point of the Hand that lyeth toward the North-side, and from thence we croffe to the Coast of the Arabian, the wind at this time was calme, wee went rowing, but within a little while it began to blow from the South-caft faire, and prefently weefet faile, and fayled to the North-west. At eleuen of the clocke in the morning, we were with the Land of the Stonie Arabia, and prefently wee failed along the shoare : two houres before Sunfer, we came to an Anchor at the Towne of Toro, there may bee from the lland of Xeduam , to Tore twelve leagues, the Hand and Tore lye North and by West, and South and by East.

A description of the Towne

be twentie leagues be-youd Tero.

Making good confideration, the Towne of Toro, was called in old time Elana, as we may fee of 1000.

Elma, Towne in the writing of Ptolomie, Strabo, and other Authors, norwithflanding that in the Elevation of the Pole, and fituation, we find at this preferr a great change and diverticie in thefe places: because those that write of the Towne Elans, did shew it to bee seated in the inwardest part of a very great Gulfe, called Elaniticas of the name of this place, and in the height of twentie nine degrees and one quarter. And now we know that Tore, hath eight and twentie degrees. one fixth part of Elevation of the Pole, and is feated along a very firaite and long Coast. The cause of this deceit, if it be true, that these places be both one, might proceed of the euill information that those persons gave which saw it. But that Elana, is the Towne which now is Tore, appeareth, because that from it to Seez, as well by the one Coast as by the other, not onely wee find so no memorie of any Towne; rather the barrennesse of the Countrey, want of waters, and rough and craggie Mountaines, did give vs to vnderstand, that in no time, there could bee any inhabiting, so that having respect to Prolomie, his placing the Towne Elana, in the Coast of Arabia Petrea, in the place most neighbouring vnto Mount Smai, and not to make any mention of a Towns betweene it and the Citie of the Heroes, which lyeth in the vttermost Coasts, where this Sea endeth, and feeing how in this Coast of Arabia, there is not any Citie, Village . or inhabiting that commeth fo neere the height of Elana as Toro, and iointly with this it is neighbouring to Mount Sings, and how from Tore to Seez, there is not any inhabiting, it feemeth a just thing we should believe that Elana and Toro be one selfe-same place. This Towne of Toro also feemeth to be the Port which the holy Scripture calleth Ailan, where Salomon King of Inda, 60 commanded the ships to be made, which went to Tarlis, and to Ophir, to Lide with Gold and Silver for to make the Temple. For taking away the fecond Letter from Ailan, the ancient names are almost one thing. Neither stands it with reason it should bee in any other place for the Timber whereof this Armie was made, was brought from the Mount of Libanon, and AnCHAP. 6. S.4. Famous Mount Sinai, The Fountaine of Moles.

1141

tilibanon, the which was a manifest thing, that because of the great labour and expences, which of necessitie would be in the carriage, they would direct it to the neerest and fittest Port for so or necessate businesse, especially the lewer possess ing the Region of Idumea, and that part of Arabia Petres, which is contayned from Toro to Socz. Strabo a Capadocian, doth hold that Elanz and Asler, are one felfe-fame thing, and treating of this Citie in another place, hee faith. From the Port of Gaza, there is one thousand two hundred and sixtie furlongs to the Citie of Ailan. which is feated in the Gulfe, or inwardest part of the Arabicke Gulfe, and these are two, the one is toward Arabia and Gaza, which they call Elanitam, of the Citie that stands in it; the other toward the Egypties fide toward the Citic of the Herees, and the way from Pelufia to Io Io this Gulfe is very little; This is that which I could take out of ancient Histories. The Citic of Toro is feated upon the Sea-fide, along it a very faire and long itrand, and before wee came at it shout a Canon thot, it hath twelue Palme-trees close together very neere the Sea, and from them inward to the Land. There runneth a plaine field till it commeth to the foot of certaine high inward to the Land. There tunners a plant within the Streight of Ormuz; called in times path, The Streight The Persian Gulfe, the which hitherto came running along the Coast, very high over the Sea, of Orman and as farre as Tore, they leave the Sea-coast, and with a great and sudden violence, they returne from hence to the Mayne toward the North-east, as angry and wearied of so continual and long Neighbour-hood with the waters, by there Mountaines is divided the Stonie Arabia, from Arabia Falix. And on the highest tops of them, doe some Christians at this day leade a holy life, 20 bat a little beyond Too, by the border of the Sea, there beginneth a Mountaine to arise by little

and little, the which thrusting a bigge and high Point into it, it seemeth to them that are in the Towns or Port of it, that it endeth there, and goeth no further, and remayneth, making a flew of three great and mightie Mountaines separate the one from the other. This Towne is small and Christians line very pleasant, and well feated, all the people are Christians and speake Arabicke, it hath a Mo- vpon the top nafterie of Friers of the Order of Monferrat, in the which the Oracle or Image is of the blef- of these Mounfed Virgin Saint Katharine of Mount Sinas. The Nation of the Friers is Grecian, the Sea Port of taines. Tore, is not very great but fure from the winds that may doe it hurt. For it hath opposite on the Sea-fide a very long ftonie banke, which runneth along the Coaft of the Towne, betweene the which and the Land is the Hauen, and here, that is, as farre as the Towne, both the Coaffs to are so neighbouring, that the space of Sea that separateth them is about three leagues journey. I

heing defirous to know fome particularities of the Countrey, tooke notice of the Friers and the information, they gave me was this.

Touching Mount Sing, they told me that it was thirteen smal journies into the Land, in which Mount Singi there might be eighteene leagues; the which Mountaine is very high, the Countrey round about about fome it plaine and open, and that in the borders of it there was a great Towne of Christians, in the leggues from which no Moore came in, but onely one that gathered the Rents and Duties of the Torkes. Tore, And that on the top of this Mountaine, there was a Monafterie of many Friers, where the bodie of the bleffed Virgin Saint Katharine lay buried. This Virgin, as Anthonic Archbifhon of Florence writeth, was carried away from the Citie of Alexandria by the Angels, and brought to 40 this Mountaine, and buried by them; the Friers told me, that about foure monethes past, this

bleffed and most holy body was carried with great pompe in a triumphant Chariot, all gilt to the Citie of Cairo, where the Christians of the Citie, which is a great part of the people, didcome to receive it with great Procession and Solemnitie, and set it in a Monasterie much honoured; they told me that the occasion of this so great and strange remove, was the many discourtesses which The Alarabet. the Alarabes did to the Monasterie, and how far to excuse others, they were inforced to redeeme them for money, of the which the Christians of Caire complaying to the Turke, obtayned of him that they might bring the bodie of this bleffed Virgin to the Citie, which the Friers did withfland, but it availed them nothing. I am in doubt of this fo great a chance : for it may bee the Friers did fame these newes, for feare lest we should goe and take this holy bodie from them; so for they looked for vs with an Armie of ten thousand men; notwithstanding, they affirmed it

very much, shewing great griefe and forrow for the same. The Friers told me also, how that in the Mountaines, right against the Towne, which I have said before, to divide the Stonie Arabia. from Arabia Falix, there were some Heremites which leade a holy life, and that through this Arabia, there were many Townes of Christians I: asked them where they had notice that the Jewes did passe this Red Sea; to the which they answered me, that they knew no certaine place, but that there was no doubt of being betweene Toro and Soez. And that they croffed from the one Coast to the other, and that two or three leagues before yee come to Seex , in the Arabian Coast, there was that Fountaine which Mofer caused to breake in the Rocke, when he strooke it with his Rod, the Iemes being in great dispaire for thirst. The which at this day the Arabian The Fountain 60 Moores doe call, The Fountaine of Mofes, and that the water thereof was more then any c- of Mofes.

ther pleafant and fingular; likewife, I asked them how many leagues there were from Tore to Cairo by Land, they told me that feuen dayes journey going meanly, and that the right way Cairo feuen

But that after the Gallies of the Timber beeing there, they changed the way about two Land,

where Toro

1142

Cairo at this

leagues higher, and that when they were as farre as Soez, they went toward the Sun fet. Hauing had this information of the Friers, I talked with a very honest, learned, and curious Moore, the which I neuer found in any Moore, and I asked of him, through what place he thought the leves pailed this Sea, he answered me, that that which was in memorie of the people, and likewise paffige of the in some Scriptures; was, that the lewes comming away, fleeing from the Egyptians, arrived a. The love feepower of the Egyptian come vpon them for to deftroy them, and being in fo great danger, Moles ing from the Egyptians areitheir Captaine made prayer vnto God, and prefently strooke the Sea with a Rod twelve times. ucd right a- and there were prefently opened twelve pathes, whereby all the people of the lesses entredant gainft Toro, and arrived to the Land of the other fide, where now ftands the Citie of Toro: And the Egyptions to paffed this fea, entring after them, the Sea closed up, and all of them were flaine, whose number was about being the red fixe hundred thousand men. And also that the Ienes, comming to the place of Toro, Moses their so the place Captaine did leade them the way to Mount Sinai, where he many times spake with God. I ap. proued this opinion very much; for if this passage had beene by Seez, as some will say, what now flandeth. need had the Egyptians to enter into the Sea, to the end of perfecuting the lowes, being able to But the Egyptigoe about the Nooke, and take the foreward of them, especially being Horse-men against Foot. them and were men, which shall manifestly be seene in the Picture of Soez hereafter, and although in all these all drowned to things there was a Miracle, we fee alwaies, that in the like chances, there is a flew and manner the number of of reason. Being satisfied with these Histories of the Moore, I asked of him if it was true, that the Christians that were in Cairo, did carrie away from Mount Sinai, the bodie of Saint Kathe- 20 rine, he answered me, that no such thing was come to his notice, neither was it to be beleeved and that it was but foure moneths past fince he was in Cairo, which Citie they cal Mecara where he heard no fuch thing, and that it feemed an inpossible thing to him, that the Christians round about Mount Sings would permit such a thing, because all men held this woman for a Saint, and in great reugrence: Hee told mee alfo, that before wee came to Soez, by two or three leagues. there was a Fountaine, which God gaue to the lewes, by the intercession of Moles, which Prophet they call Magas, whose water surpassed greatly all the rest. I asked him for the Towne of Saez, how it was. He answered me, that he was neuer in it, neither could any person enter, except those that by the Gouernour of Cairo were ordained for the keeping of the Galleys, and that neerer then two leagues none might come to it vnder paine of death.

The two and twentieth of Aprill, a cleere morning, we departed from Tore. The foure and twentieth, we were in nine and twentie degrees feuenteene minutes.

A Description of the Nooke or Bay beyond Toro, and how by it is understood the Gulfe Elaniticus. Of Soez, and of their returne homewards. Of the Badois, and of their customes, and why this Sea is called Red.

Wentie leagues beyond Tore, and fiftie two from Aleson, the Land of Egypt, or Coast that commeth from Aberia, commeth out into the Sea with a very lowe and long Point, from the Coafts winding a great space inward to the Land, running very winding and more then any other crooked, after having made a very great and very faire Nooke, it entreth into the Sea with a mightie and great Point very high , from the which to Soez is three small leagues iourney, these two Points, betweene the which the Nooke is contayned, ilretcheth North-west and by North, and South-east and by South, the distance is fine leagues, the Land by the Sea coast of this Nooke is most high and rough, and therewith it is barren and drie, within the Nooke it is so deepe, that if we come not very neere the shoare, with fiftie fathome we shall take no ground, which ground is a foft fand like Oze. This Nooke vn-50 This Necke doubtedly, I hold to be the Gulfe which the Cosmographers doe call Elaniticus. But Strabo a Ca-Supposed to be padocian, and Ptolomie were deceived in the knowledge and situation of it: for they placed it the Gulfe Elsin the Coast of Ronie Arabia, little more or leffe, where now stands the Towne of Toro; and that this is so, the words of Strabo, which I repeated a little before in the Description of the Towns of Tore, where the Arabicke Gulie endeth, doe plainely fay, to end in two Gulfes, one of them which standeth on the Arabian fide, called Elanitiess, and the other on Egypt fide where standeth the Citie of the Heroes. Ptolomie doth shew vs plainely the Gulfe Elamiticus to be in the Coast of Arabia, where now standeth the Towne of Tore, whereof I cannot but wonder euery time I doe remember how Ptolomie was borne in Alexandria, where he wrote his Historie, and dwelt in it all the dayes of his life, which Citie is very neighbouring to these places.

The fixe and twentieth, weighing prefently our Grapples, wee fet tayle, at eleuen of the clocke of the day we were fall by the shoare, where we found all the Armie, and striking our fayles, wee rowed a little along the shoare, and cast anchor; but two houres before Sunne set we weighed againe, the wind was at North, wee rowed along the Coast, and before Sunne set

we tooke Hauen behind a Point which the Land of Arabia thrusteth out, where there is good being and harbour against the North winds : this day we went directly one league and an halfe. the point is short of Soez, three small leagues, it beareth with the North-west point of the great Nooke, which I said to be the Gulfe Elaniticus, East and West: there may be in the distance one league : from hence about halfe a league within the Land, flandeth the Fountaine of Moles, of Moles Founleague: from hence about haire a league within the Land hance of the control of the which I have fpoken alreadie, when I spake of Toro. And now, as soone as we were at anchor, The end of we went on shoare, and we saw the end of this Sea, which seemed to vs alreadie infinite, and this Sea, callikewise the Masts of the Ships, and all things gaue vs great content, and joyntly with it great led byvs he care. By night the wind was at North very hard, we lay all night at anchor till it was day.

The feuen and twentieth in the morning, the wind blew hard at North North-weft, at ten by the Morres, of the clocke we departed from this Point, and made ahead to Soez, and to the end of this Sea, Soez kept by going along rowing, and being about one league from it, I went before with two Catures to fpie the Tiefe with or view the fituation of Soez, and the place of landing, and wee came thither at three of the Gatrifons. clocke in the afternoone, where wee faw in the field many troopes of Horfe-men, and in the Towns two great bands of Souldiers, they shot at vs many shots out of a Blocke-house. The The Nauie of Armie of the Turke was as followeth; that is, one and fortie great Galleys, and nine great Ships, the Turkes. having scene all these things, we went toward the Land of the Nooke, which is on the West fide, and came to an anchor neere the shoare in five fathome water, the ground was a fost fand.

and very small, a very good harbour for ships: this day at Sunne set we saw the Moone. It is to be held for certaine, Soez to be called in times past, The Citie of the Heroes, for it dif- Soet in times fereth nothing in heighth, fituation and confrontings, as we may lee in Prolome Tab. 3. Africa, pair called the Citie of efoccially, Seez being feated in the vttermoft Coafts of the Nooke where this Sea of Mecca enthe Heres, deth, in the which the Citie of the Heroes was feated, as it is read in Strabo the feuenteenth Booke, faying thefe words. The Citie of the Heroes and Cleopatra, which fome doe call Arlinoe, are in the vttermoil bounds or end of the Arabicke Sine, which is toward Egypt. Plinte in the fixth Booke of the Naturall Historie, seemeth to call the Port of Soez, Danas, by reason of the The Port of Trenches, which they opened from Nilus to this Sea ; Soez hath of elevation of the Pole, nine Danage and twentie degrees three quarters, and it is the neerest Port and Towne of all the Streight to The Citie of the great Citie of Caire, called anciently Babylonia of Egypt, and from it to the Leuan Sea, Herses and 30 where is one of the seuen Mouths of Nilus, called Pelusiums, may bee fortie leagues journey, some call dis-

which place is called Ifthmus, which is to fay, A straight or narrow Land betweene two Seas. me in the end Touching this way, the words of Strabe in his feuenteenth Book, are thefe. The Ifthmus that light of the Arabite betweene Pelulium and the Extreme, where the Citie of the Herees standeth, is of nine hundred Sine Islama. furlongs. This is the Port of the red Sea, whither Cleopatra Queene of Egype commanded the Balylonia ot Ethips to be carried by land from the River Nilus, after the victorie gotten by Cafar against An- gpp, or Cairo thonie, for to flee in them to the Indians; And likewife Sefoffris King of Egypt, and Darius King Pelulis one of of Persia, did take in hand to open a Trench vnto the River Nilus, to make the Indian Ocean na- 7. Mouthes of uigable with the Sea Mediterraneum, and none of them finishing the worke, Ptolomie made a Nilus. Trench of an hundred foot broad, and thirtie foot deepe, which having alreadie almost finished, which the 40 it is faid, he left vnfinished the bringing of it to the Sea, for feare that the water of Nilsu would Kings of Egypt

become falt, the water of the Streight mingling it felfe with it. Others doe fay, that taking a mad levell, the Architects and Mafters of the worke, did find, that the Sea of the Streight was three Ifilms is the cubits higher then the Land of Egype, and feared that all the Land would bee drowned. The pace of 40. Authors, are Diodorus Siculus, Planie, Pomponius Mela, Strabo of Capadocia, and many other tweene See Cosmographers. Although the Towne of Sorz was in old time great in name, at this day it is and Peluso. small enough, and I beleeve it had alreadie beene vtterly lost, if the Turkifb Armie had not lyne there. The fituation of it is in this manner, in the front and face of the Land which is opposite Them mer to the South, where this Sea endeth, is opened a Mouth not very great, by the which a Creeke or of the fituation

Arme of the Sea entring a little space into the land, it windeth presently along the coast, toward or soez. 50 the fetting of the Sunne, till a little Mountaine doth oppose it felse, which alone rifeth in these parts, from the which to the mouth and entring of the Creek, the Creek and firme Lan I remay ning on the North fide, and the nooke and end of this Sea on the South fide, and the little Mountaine to the West, all the space that is contained is a very long and narrow Tongue or Point of fand, where the Gallies and Nauie of the Turke lie aground; and the warlike and ancient Town of Soez is fituated, in which appeareth at this day a little Caftle, and without two high and ancient Towers, as ancient Reliques of the great Citie of the Heroes, which was there in times past. But on the Point of fand where the Creeke entreth, there standeth a great and mightie Bulwarke of moderne worke, which defendeth the entrie and mouth of the River, and likewife. A mighie Bulfoureth the Coast by the sterne of the Galleys, if wee would land in that place : and besides, warke of mo-

60 there runneth betweene the Galleys and the strand, a Trench with a Ditch cast vp, which maketh a flew like a Hill, in fach fort that as well by mens worke, as by the fituation and nature of the ground, the place is very strong and defensible. Now considering this landing of the place for to enter into it, it feemed to me not to be peffible in any place, onely behind the little Mountaine and Well fide, for here we sha'l be free from their Artillerie, and poilesting the Mountaine,

shoaly about a Bow shot, and the ground a foft Clay and sticking Sand, which I perceived feeling the ground from within the Foyft, which is very troublesome and prejudiciall to them that are to Land; touching the Antiquities and things I could know of Soez, they were told mee by some men of the Streight, especially by the Moore that informed mee of the particular lars of Toro, and all of them are as followeth, that is, that three leagues from Soes towards Toro, was the Fountaine of Mofes, and the Moores and Inhabitants doe confesse, that God gave it vnto the Iewes by a Miracle; and also they have in their memorie, that in this place there was a great Citie in old time, of the which they fay, some buildings are yet to bee seene, they could not tell mee the name of it. They told me also that afore-time, the Kings of Egypt would haue made a Trench from Nilse , where the Citie of Cairo Handeth vnto Seez , for to make 10 fireen leagues these Seas Nauigable, and that they are seene at this day, although the length of time had defaced them and stopped them vp, and that those which travelled from Toro to Cairo of necession tie should passe by them; some told mee that the occasion of this opening was not to joyne the Straight with the River Nilas, but to bring the Water to the Citie that was there. I asked them what Countrey was there betweene Soez and Carro, they told mee that a very plaine Field, full of Sand and barren without any Water, and that from the one to the other was three dayes journey going at leifure, which was about fifteene leagues, and that in Seez, and round about it, it rained seldome, and when it chanced, it held on much, and that all the yeare the North wind blew with great force.

A description

From Toro to Soez is eight and twentie leagues Iourney, without any Hand, Banke, or Shoald, 20 of the Sea and that may hinder or doe any harme to the Nauigators, their eight and twentie leagues lye in this Land, that go- manner : departing from Toro, through the midft of the Current , yee run about fixteene leagues North-west and by North, and South-east and by South, and hitherto the Coast commethin an equall distance and separation, having from the one to the other, the space of three leagues, but in the end of these fixteene or seuenteene leagues, the Lands begin to close very much, and to iowne in such fort, that from Coast to Coast there is but one league, and continueth this parrownesse two leagues, and presently the Land that commeth from the Abean withdraweth it selfe, making the great and faire Nooke aboue said; treating of the situation and place of the Gulfe called Elanticus, the Channell in the middle distance, from the end of the sixteene or feuenteene leagues till as farre as the North-west Point which commeth out of this Nooke. 30 lyeth North North-west South South-east, the distance is eight leagues, in this place the Lands doe Neighbour very much againe, for the Land of the Arabian thrufting out a verie long and low Point outward, and the Land that commeth from the Abexy, comming forth with another bigge and high Point, at the end of the Nooke on the North-west side, there remayneth from Land to Land one leagues iourney or little more, and from these Points to See, and the end of this Red Sea, the Coaff on each fide doe wind, and make another Nooke, which hath in length little more then two leagues and a halfe, and in breadth one and an halfe, where this Sea so celebrated in the holy Scripture, and spoken of by Writers, doth finish and make an end; this Nooke is extended through the midit North and South, and taketh somewhat of the North-west and South-east; the distance is two leagues and an halfe; as touching the Land that commeth a long the Coast from Toro to Soez; wee must note, that a Caleeuer-shot beyond Toro on the Arabian shoare, there ariseth a Hill very neere the Sea-side, which is all bespotted with certaine red streakes, which goe from one fide to the other of it; giving it a great grace, this Hill runneth still along the Coast about fifteene or fixteene leagues, but it hath not these workes, and red streakes; more then fixe leagues space beyond Toro, and in the end of these fifteene or fixteene leagues, the Hill maketh a great knob and high, and from thence by little and little, the Hill doth for sake the Coaft, and goeth into the Land till it come within a league short of Soez, where it endeth, and there remayneth from this bigge and high knob vnto Soez, betweene the Hill and the Sea, a very plaine and low ground, which in places hath 50 a league in breadth, and in others neerer to Seez, a league and an halfe : By this Hill towards Toro, I saw great heapes of Sand along to the top of the Hill, reaching the highest of it, hauing no fandie places betweene the Hill and the Sea, and likewife, by the Clifts and Breaches many broken Sands were driven; whence I gathered, how great the force and violence is heere of the crosse winds, seeing they snatch and drine the Sand from out of the Sea, and lift it so high; these crosse windes, as I noted, the Sands did lye and were driven, are Wests and West North-wests.

But as touching the description of the Land, that goeth along the Sea, on the Coast of Abery, from as farre as Toro, wee must note, that there runne certaine great and high Hils or Mountaines very high, and ouer-appearing the Coast of the Sea, the which about feuenteene leagues beyond Toro toward Soez, doe open in the midft, and descend equal with the Field, and prefently they rife againe very high and continually along the Sea, till they come a league short of Soez, where they stay and passe no further.

I confidering with great diligence, the fluxes and refluxes of the Sea that Iveth from Toro Therides from to Soez , found them to bee no greater nor imaller then the other of their Coafts of the Toro to Soez all Streight, but after the fame manner. Whence appeareth the fallhood of fome Writers, which equal with ofaid the pathes were not opened to the lewes through this Sea, but that the Water ebbed for the Sea. much in this place, that it remained all dry, the which the lewes tarrying for, had the paffage free to the other fide.

Confidering also, whereby Sessitre King of Egypt, and afterward Ptolomie could make the Trenches and Channels from Nilm to this Sea, for to make it nauigable with the Eafterne Sea. I faw it was not possible except by two places, which stand from Toro to Soez. The first, by the 10 Breach which the Hils doe make that runne along the Sea, by the Coast that commeth from Ab. bexi, which Breach is feuenteene leagues beyond Toro, and eleuen before yee come to Soez. The fecond by the end of this Sea and Nooke, where the Towne of Sozz standeth. For in this place the Hils on both fides doe end, and remaine all on Land and Field very low, without Hillocks or high Hils, or any other impediment. And in this place it feemeth to me more certaine and convenient for to take fo areat a worke in hand, then by the breach I fpake of, because in this place the Land is very low, and the way shorter, and hath an Hauch heere and befides thefe two places, any where elie I thought it impossible, because as well on the one Coast as on the other, the Mountaines are so great and so high, the which are all, or the greatest part of a Rock and hard stone, that it is not in the judgement of men they may be cut, and bring 20 through them a Channell or Trench that might be Nauigable. Whence it must remaine manifeit, Soez to be the Port where Cleopatra commanded the Ships to bee brought by Land from Nilse, croffing the Istomes, howfoeuer that a thing of fo much labour and importance, in the which the breuitie was the greatest part of the Nauigation. It was manifest that they would

feeke the shortest, neerest, and easiest way they could find of them all. And because this is that which commeth from Nilus, and the Citie of Capro to Soez. Wee must make no doubt that this Namy of Cleopatra was brought hither; and likewife the Trenches from Nilus, whereby cleopatra som they would communicate these Seas, especially considering, how from as farre as Toro, all the manded the Coast of Egyps is waste, and without any Port, except this of Sozz, which stands in the vt- ships to bee most end of this Sea.

Confidering also in the dayes we spent betweene Toro and Soez, I saw that the Heauen was from Nites. very close ouer-cast with very thicke and blacke Clouds, which itemed contrary to the nature croffing the and condition of Egipt: for in it, as all men affirme, it raineth not, neither doe the Heavens or Islamus. the Ayre permit any Clouds, nor Vapours, but it may be that the Sea of his owne nature doth raise here these Vapours, and into the Land the Heauen may be free, and void of them, as we fee in Portugall, that in the Citie of Lifton the daies being cleere and pleasant, and in Simra, which is foure leagues from thence, are great ouer-castings, mists, and shewers. Now this Sea contained from Toro to Sozz, is very tempetitious and fuddame, for whenfoeuer it beginneth to blow from the North, which is the Wind that rameth in this place, though his force be not very great, prelently the Sea is raifed so high, and proud, that it is a wonder, the Waues being 40 every where so coupled and like to breake, that they are much to bee feared. And this hapneth not because of the little depth heere, for all this Sea is very deepe, and onely along the Coast that commeth from the Aberi, close with the shoarest is a little shoally. About this Sea, I saw certaine Sea-foames, which by another name are called, Euill Waters, the greatest that I have seene, for they were of no leffe bigneffe then a Target, their colour a whitish dun. These Sea-foames doe not passe from Tore downe-ward, as not willing to trouble or occupie a

firange Kingdome, but contenting themselves with their ancient habitation, which is from Toro to Soez. And prefently going out of this place or bounds, there are infinite small ones, and like the other, and they are bred and goe about the Sea; in the daies that I was in this Sea, The end of the contained from Toro to Soez, I felt by night the greatest colds I can remember to have past, but voyage 1050cc when the Sunne came, the heate was vnfutferable. The eight and twencieth of April, in the morning we departed from before Soez, toward

Maçua. At Sunne set, we were one league short of a sharpe and red Pike, which stands over the Sea. This day we went about twentie leagues. By night wee tooke in our Sailes, and ran along the shoare with our fore-sailes onely, the Wind blew hard at North North-west: Two houres within night we came to an Anchor neere the shoare, in three to thome water, the Heauen was very darke, and couered with many thicke and blacke clouds. The nine and twentieth in the morning, we let Sayle. At nine of the clocke in the morning, we entred in Tore, and came to an Anchor, but within a little while we weighed againe, and went to an Hauen about a legue from thence, which is called, The Watering of Sulman, where wee tooke in Water, Sulman water

60 digging pits in the Sand, a stones cast from the Sea, in which pits we found much water, though sing.

The thirtieth, in the morning wee departed from the watering of Sulman: halfe an Theheight of houre past ten, we tooke Hauen in the first of the three Ilands which stand two leagues to the an Iland that North-west of the Iland of Xeducan and water in Ilands in Ilands which is the North-west of the Iland of Xeducan and water in Ilands in Ilands which is the North-west of the Ilands of Xeducan and water in Ilands in Ilands which is the North-west of the Ilands in Ilan North-west of the lland of Xednam, and presently I went a shoare with the Polot, and we tooke the Zwa.

the Sunne, and in his greatest height it rose over the Horizon eightit degrees, a little scant. The declination of this day was feuenteene degrees, fixe and thirtie minuts, whence it followeth this Hand to fland in twentie feuen degrees & two third parts. The first of May, the fun being vo we for favle. About Even-fong time we were with a great lland, which hath in length two leavues & thrusteth out a Point very close to the firme Land, where betweene the firme Land and the Hand, is a fingular good Harbor for al weathers, for all the ships of the world. The second of May. at Sun fet, we came to an Anchor in the Port of Goelma, a Port onely for small Veilels, fate from the North, and North-west. Within the Landa little space, is a dry Brook, whereby in Winter the water of the floods, which defcend from the Mountaines doth awoid, where digging a little. ve finde fresh water, and heere is a Well, though not very plentifull of water. This Port was 10 called Goelma, which in Arabique, is to fay, The Port of water, it lyeth to the North Northwest of Alcocer, the distance is soure leagues.

A Defeription A Description of the Port Be-

of Badeis, and

The Badon,

are wilde or

The fourth of May, we rowed along the shoare : almost Sunne set, we came to an Anchor in a Port, which is called Acallaibe, which standeth beyond Xacara toward the South-east two beyond Xuan. leagues. By night the wind was at North North-welt, we lay all night at Anchor. Acallaibe is a small Port, but very good, betweene Xacara and the blacke Hillocke.

Robalel Xame is a great Port, wherein may harbour many Shippes, it is very deepe within. This place was called Bobalel Xame, because within the Land dwelt a Badoil, very rich, which was called Bobalel, the which came or fent to fell Cattell to the Ships, which did take or come into that Hauen, and Xame, is to fay, Land. And theere wee found an honourable Toombe within a house like a Chappell, where was hanging a Guidon or Ancient of Silke, and many Arrowes or Darts round about the Graue, and about the Wals and Cords a great quantitie of Bulls did hang. At the head of the Graue there was a Table standing vpright, with a great Epitaph, and about the house, many Waters and Fragrant szaelling things.

Lenguiring of the Moores and Arabians of fuch a thing, I learned that here lay buried a very honourable Arabian, of the Linage of Mahomet, which crofting thefe Coafts, fell very ficke and in this Port ended his daies : and they made him this Graue as a man of fo hisha Genealogie. Where the Xarifes Inda and great Prelats gave Indulgences, and granted pardons to every one that should visite this house. But the offerings and reverence which the Portugals did vnto it, was to facke the house, and afterward for to burne it, that no 10 figne was left where it had beene. In this Port wee found great footing of Typres, and wilde Goats, and other Beafts which came all to the Sea, as though they came to feeke water for to drinke.

A Description The many times that I bring to the field the name and memorie of the Badois , and likewife the travelling by their Coasts and Countries, doth binde me to speake some thing of them. Badoil, in good Arabique, fignifieth a man that lineth onely by Cattell : these men, called Badois. is properly the people of the Troglodishus, Ophiosofagus, of the which Protomic, Plinie, Prom. pomms Mela, and other Authors doe write: the which Troglodishus or Badoies, doe line in the Mountaines, and coasts of the Sea, which are contayned from the coast of Melinde and Magadoxa, to the Cape of Guardafui, and from thence going inward to the Streight, they doe 40 begirt and occupie all her Coafts, as well on the one fide as on the other, and turning agains outward on the Arabian fide, they runne along the Sea to the Streight of Ormaz, and all

these Lands may rather be affirmed to be occupied by them then inhabited.

The Badoies are wilde men, amongst whom is no civill societie, no truth nor civilitie vsed: which is the generall name They worthip Mahomet, and are very bad Moores, about all other People they are given to for the lithis Scealths and Rapine ; they eate raw fielh , and drinke milke ; their habite is vile and filthy, fagis or sinfagis they are greatly endued with swiftnesse and nimblenesse; they fight on foote and horse-backe, their weapons are Darts, they never have peace with their Neighbours, but continually have They have no warre, and fight with every one.

Those that dwell along the Red Sea, from as farre as Zeila vnto Suaquen, doe fight with the 50 Abexis; and those from Suaquen to Alcocer, have warre with the Nobis; and those which inhabite from Alcocer to Soez , and end of this Sea , doe molest continually the Acrotians. But returning by the Arabian fide, by all the Coast of the Sea, that lyeth from Sozz to the Streight of Ormuz, doe contend with the Arabians. Among the Badois there is no King or great Lord, but line in Troopes or Factions; they permit no Towne in their Fields, neither have they any certaine Habitation, for their cultome is to be Vagabonds, from one place to another, with their Cattell. Not onely doe they abhor Lawes and Ordinances , but also the Sutes and Differences that arise among ft them, they will not have them judged by any Custome, and they are content that their Xeque doe determine them as he lift; their dwelling is in Caues and Holes, and other fuch like habitations, but the greatest part doe helpe themselves with Tents 60 and Boothes; their colour is very blacke, their language the Arabian, the rest of their Custome and Life, I omit.

The tenth of May, by day, we weighed anchor from the Port of Igidid, An houre before Sun fet we failtned on a Shoald, which flood about foure leagues from Farate toward the South. In this Shoald is an excellent Hauen, and it is fo great, that wee could not differne with our fight the end of it, it lyeth almost East South-east, and West North-west, but it is very crooked and winding. The two and twentieth of May, 1541. by breake of day, we were one league short A great Grous of the great Groue, that standeth source leagues from Maczan, the wind was of the Land. About source leagues from Maczan, nine of the clocke it began to blow from the North North-east, a faire gale. We entred at noone from Macque. into the Port of Maczua, where we were received with great toy and realt of our Armie. From the day wee entred in Maszna, which was the two and twentieth of May, to the fitteenth of Iune, the winds blew alwaies at North, North North-east, and North North-west : but from the fifteenth of lune to the feuenth of July, they blew Easterly, that is; East, East

CHAP. 6. S. S. A Thunderbolt. Opinions of the Red Sea.

to South-east, and South-east, many times they brought great stormes. The last day of June at They lavat night, we had a ftorme from the South-east of fo much winde, that it droue the Gallions and Macus thirtie help y affed great danger of firbling a ground. This forms brought much Raine and fearefull "or dairs.

Thunders, and there fell a Thunder-bolt from Heazen your of Gallour, and comming downe by A thunder-bolt the Maft, it read it all: and likewife the fector of fully, were had another from from the Eaft. very great, which vnfattned many thips, and lasted the most part of the day. From thence to the leventh of July, although we had other ftormes, they were but small : From the seventh of July, to the ninth of the same, the Wind came to the Land and brought two stormes from the West, but the wind was not over-much.

The ninth of July, 1541. one houre after Sunnerose, wee fet sayle from Maczas. The ele-20 uenth of July, by breake of day, we were two or three leagues thort of the Point of Dallagna. that lyeth on the North-fide, and betweene certaine flat Hands which have some Woods, and doe lye scattered on this side of the Iland; wherefore wee set all Sayles and went aloose all that wee could to goe betweene two of their llands, the wind was almost North-west verie faire, we fayled North-east and by North, having doubled a Shoald we came to an Anchor and two hours after noone we fet fayle againe, the wind about North North-east faire, wee fayled along the shoare of the Iland of Dallagna. An houre before Summe set, we were with an of Iland Sand very flat, which is called Dorat Melcana, from the which to all parts there came out great Darat Melcana Shoalds: Sunne altogether fet, wer were a league thort of the Hand of Xamon, and from the affailland of Point of Dallagua, which flands on the West fide, and opposite to the firme Land of the Aberi, Sand.
30 between the which and the Hand of Xonna, is the most frequenced Channell of those which

fayle to Maccasa. All the Coast of Dallaque which we saw this day, is coasted North Northwest, and South South-east, and it is all wonderfully low. The eighteenth, by breake of day, we faw the mouth of the Streight, and we might be from it three leagues, and we faw all the Armie lye at Hull, and prefently we fet fayle altogether.

Before we departed from the Arabique Gulie, or Streight of Mocen, which is all one, it will Whether this be suft to speake tomething of my opinion, and of that which I have seene, bouching the scason See of the that mounted the ancient men to call all this Sea, the Red Sea: and likewife, whether her colour red or no, and doth differ from the other of the great Ocean, or not. Plane in the fixt Booke of the Nam- the causes rall Historie, Cap. 23. rehearleth many opinions, whereby the people called this Streight the wherefore they

40 Red Sea . The first is, that it tooke this name of a King that reigned in it, called Erisbra, because called it the Enthros in the Greeke, is to fay, Red. Another opinion was, that of the reflection of the Sunbeames, there grew in this Sea reddiffi colour. Some held, that of the Sand and Ground that the Red Sea. runneth alongit it. Others also belezued, that this water was Red of his owne Nature, whereby all this Sea got this name. Of these opinions the Writers chose them that they liked beft. and feemed most certaine. Now the Portugals that have Wavigared this way in times past, affirmed this Sea to be all spotted with certaine red strakes: the cause they attributed voto it, is this. They faid, the Coast of the Arabian was naturally verie red, and that as in this Countrey there arose many ftormes, and did raise great dufts toward the skies, after they were verie high, driven with the force of the Winds, they fell in the Sea, and this Dult being red, it did 50 Dye the water of it, whereby it was called the Red Sea. When I came to Socatora, till I paft

all the Coasts of this Sea, and set my selfe before Soez, I neuer left by day nor night, to consider of these Waters, and viewing the colour and manner of the Countrey that goeth along the shoare : and certainly, I was not so troubled for any thing, as for the bestowing my labour in obtaining the truth of the things, and to fearch out the occasion of them, and that I got of mine owne Industrie, and most clearely haue I seene many times, is as followeth. First, it is false to fay, that the colour of this Sea is Red, for it hath no difference from the colour that all the other Water of the Sea doth shew vs, and to say that the dusts which the winds doe snatch from the Land and drive into the Sea, doe staine the Water where they fall, till now wee faw no fuch thing, feeing many stormes raife great dusts, and drive them into the Sea, but not to change the colour of the Waves thereof. And to fay that the Land over the Sea Coast is Red, they obserued not well the Coafts and Strands: for generally on the one fide, and on the other, the Land

by the Sea is browne, and verie darke, and feemeth footche : and in some places it shewes blacke, and in others white, and the Sands hath their owne colour, but onely in three places there are certaine pieces of Mountaines which have certaine veines of Red, where Poringals

that is, toward Soce, and the end of this Sea; but the three hils that thew this red colour, are

Red Corall

CHAP. VII.

Abriefe Relation of the Embassage which the Patriarch Don Iohn Ber-MVDE z brought from the Empereur of Ethiopia, vulgarly called PRESEY-TER IOHN, to the most Christan and zealous of the Fath of CHRIST. Don IOHN, the third of this Name, King of Portugall : Dedicated to the most High and Mightie King of Portugall, Don SEBASTIAN of most bleffed hope, the first of this Name. In the which he reciteth also the death of Don CHRISTOPHER of Gama: and the fucceffes which bappened to the Portugals that went in his Companie.

> Printed in Lisbon, in the honfe of FRANCIS CORREA, Printer to the Cardinall the Infant, the recre of 1 565.

A Letter of the Patriarch Don I o HN BERMYDEZ, to the King our Lord.

OIT High and Mighie King, your Highnesse said to me few daies agoe, that you would be glad to know the truth, of what happened to a Captaine and people, which the King your Grand-father which is in Glorie, gave unto me for the succour of the Emperow your Urana-jamer muce as an users, game was one you to justice of the Limperson of Ethiopia Onadinguel, 'estable Prestyver to hosh, for 12 anothe the errouser which So he callether the propose of the write of this, informate that even in the Name they erre, naming stain Tingil from DON Paul, he being DON Christopher his Brother. And abort also write, and 150 foune though before sounds 30 which date not puffe in mrath, neither dat they fee them. Therefore I, that faw it all, will feel you in bright one of the stain of th in this (mall writing all that paffed. The Lard keepe your perfon, multiply your young age, and profiber

your Royall estate, Amen.

Don Io HN BERMY DEZelected Patriarch of the Presbyter, and fent to Rome: His resurne into Ethiopia: Arrivall as Maczua; The death of the Negus, entertainment of him and CHRISTOPHBR of Gama, with the Portugall Forces by the Queene Regent.

Faithfull and good Christian, called Onadinguess, being Emperour in the Kingdome of Ethiopia, (vulgarly called Prosbyter Islan) and the Patriatch of that Country, by name Abuna Marcos, being at the point of death in the yeere of our Redemption, 1535. The faid Emperour faid to the Patriarch, that he requested him, that according to their cuftome, he before his death would institute me for his Successour, and Patriarch of that Countrey. And the faid Patriarch did to, ordering me first with all the facred Orders. The which I accepted with fuch condition, that it should bee confirmed by the chiefe Bishop of 50 Rome, successour of Saint Peter, to whom wee all were to give obedience. The said Emperour aniwered me, that he was well contented ; and moreouer he defired me, that for my felie, and for him, and for all his Kingdomes I should goe to Rome, to give the obedience to the holy Father : and from thence should come to Portugall, to conclude an Embassage , that he had fent his ther by a man of that Countrey, called Tegazano, in whole company came the Father Francis Zara Zabothe Aluarez. After many troubles passed in the lourney, I came to Rome, the Pope Paul the third Friermentiogouerning then in the Apostolike Sea : the which received me with great clemencie and favour, and in Aluere and confirmed all things as I brought them, and at my request he ratified it all againe, and commanded me to fit in the Chaire of Alexandria, and that I should entitle my selfe Patriarch and

60 From Rome I departed towards Portugall, where I came, the King your Grand-father of glorious Memorie, being in the Citie of Enora, who reloyced particularly at my comming, to conclude as he defired, the Embassage which the Tagazano had brought, for hee had beene here twelue yeares, without concluding any thing through meere negligence. For the which the Emperour Onadinguel commanded me, that I should take away his charge of Embassadour, and Zaca Zibahis should apprehend him, and carrie him a Prisoner with me. And therefore I brought him a letter negligence.

of a verie hard Rocke, and then all the Land round about that we can fee, is of the common and accustomed colour. But the truth of these things is, that the Water of this Sea taken substantia ally, hath no difference of his colour; but in many places of it, the waves thereof came by accident to seeme very red, which is caused in this manner. From the Citie of Suaquen vnto Alexcer, which is, one hundred thirtie fixe leagues journey, the Sea is all thicke with Shoalds and Shelues, whose ground is of a stone, called Corall-stone, which groweth in certaine Trees and Clusters, preading one way, and another way certaine braunches, properly as the Corall doth, and this stone is so like vnto it, that it deceiueth any person that is not very skilfull in the Io growth and nature. The colour of this stone is of two forts; the one wonderfully white, and the other very red. In some places this stone lies concred with very greene Ozics; and in other free from this Herbe, which Slime or Ozies in some places, is very Greene; and in others in maketh a colour very like Orange-tawny. Now we must presuppose, that the water of this Sea is clearer, especially from Suaquen vpward, then euer was any, in fort, that in twentie fathome water ye may fee the ground in many places. This prefuppoled, we are to note, that wherefoeuer that these Shoalds and Shelues did appeare, the water over them was of three colours, that is, Red, Greene, or White, the which proceeded of the ground that was under, as many times I faw by experience; for if the ground of these Shoalds was Sand, it caused that the Sea ouerit appeared white; and the ground where the Corall-stone lay couered with Greene Ozies, the 20 water that couered it did give a colour greener then the Weeds; but wherefoeuer the Shoalds were of red Corall, or of Corall-stone conered with red Weeds, it made all the Sea that was over it seeme very red; and because this red colour comprehended greater spaces in this Sea, then the Greene or the White, because the stone of the Shoalds was the greatest part of red Corall. I beleeue it was the reason whereby it received the name of Red Sea, and not of Greene nor White Sea: NotwithHanding, this Sea doth represent these colours most perfectly. The meanes that I had to obtaine this secret, was to fasten many times vpon the Shoalds, where I faw the Sea looke red, and commanded diners to bring me of the stones that lay in the bottome. and the most times it was so shallow, that the Foyst did touch : and other-whiles, that the Mariners went on the Shoalds halfe a league with the water to the breast, where it happened that al 19 or the greatest part of the stones they pulled vp were of Red Corall, and others couered with weeds like Orange-tawny, and the practite I had wherefeouer the Sea feemed Greene, & found beneath White Corall, couered with Greene Weeds : and in the White Sea I found a verie white Sand without any thing elfe whereof it might proceede. For fome Saylers giving relation of the Red colour that they faw in this Sea, as of the greater and most compendious of all being ignorant of the cause, or not being willing to offer it, for to increase admiration to their Nauigations and Trauels: and feeing that men do not only know this Sea by the name of Red Sea, but doe beleeve that the waters are naturally red. I have talked many times with Moorish Pilots, and curious persons of Antiquities, which dwelt in some places of this Streight, about the name of this Sea : euery one did fay to me, they knew no other name then the Sea of Mecca, 40 and they wondred very much at vs, to call it the Red Sea. I asked of the Pilots, if they found fometimes the Sea stained red with the dusts that the winds brought of the Land, they told me, they law no fuch thing. With all this, I reproue not the opinion of the Portugals, but I affame, that going through this Sea more times then they did, and feeing all the length thereof, and they onely one piece, I neuer law in the whole, that which they fay to have kene in the

The ninth of August, we entred in the Port of Angedina, and remained there till the one and twentieth of August, that we embarked in Foysts, and going directly to Goa, wee entred our the Barre thereof under Sayler and our Voyage was ended, and this Booke.

CHAP.

His imprison-Bermudez his to the King of Parturall.

from the Emperour, the which I gaue him in Lifton where he was, and he tooke it and kiffed it. and reknowledged it to be true, and by it he acknowledged me for his Patriarch and Superiour. and kiffed my hand, and gaue me his place, without speaking any more words. I commanded to in prison him with two chaines of Iron, on each arme one, after the manner of his Countrey: the which I tooke from him againe within a few daies, because his Highnesse intreated me. The Embaffage which the faid Emperour demainded, was his perpetual friendthip and brother-Embaisse from the Negas hood : and therefore he defired him they would marrie their children interchangeably the one with the other; and that from Portugall a fonne of his should goe to marrie with a daughter of his, and reigne in his Kingdomes after his death, that this alliance betweene the Perturals and them, and also the obedience of the Pope might be greater and endure. And likewise, he sent to to request him, hee would send him some men for to defend himselfe from the King of Zeila. which vibraed his Kingdomes; and he would fend him great ftore of riches, for he could veri well doe it. And likewise to fend him some Pioners for to cut a hill whereby already Enlate Belale his Predeceffour did bring the River Nilsa, to bring it now also that way to annoy Egge

The King your Grand-father having taken counfell, thought good to grant mee that which I demanded, and commanded to give mee foure hundred and fiftie Caliuer-men and Pioners, and that they should dispatch me that I might returne that yeere in company with Don Garcia of Noranga, which then went for Vice-roy of India. I tell fuddenly ficke, and the Physicians faid of poyfon: as it was fufrected the Tegazana caufed it to bee given mee. The chiefe Phyfician which then was, named lames Lopez, cored me, and he which now is, Leonard Numes, and o- 20 thers, which his Highnesse comman ded : for the which sicknesse, I remained that yeere in this

Anthonie Fer-

Prefently, the next yeers, being recoursed by the goodnesse of God, I went in his Highnes Armie. I carryed also Anthonie Fernandes, and Gafpar Suriano both Armenians borne, which by n.mat.
See Dam à Got commandement of Presbjer Iohn, came to leeke mee, to the which his Highseffe did many faof this fiege, tours. We arrived in India fafely, at fuch time as the Vice-roy Don Garcia, was come from Die, with the Victorie which he had of the Turkes, Anthonie Selueyra, beeing Captame of that Fortreffe, the which Vice-Roy received vs with great ioy, and shewed me great honers, the Bishop of Gos came to receive me with his trayne in Procession, with Crosse on high, and carryed mee from the Sea-lide vnto the Sea in a Chaire, which the Ring your Grand-father gaue vnto mee to for that purpose : going mext vnto me on the one fide; the Vice-Roy Don Garcia, and on the one ther, Don John Deca, Captaine of Goa, and re-knowledging me for Patriarch, gaue mee the honour due vnto my dignitie.

Vice-Roy.

of Gama fucceeded in his flead. The which I presently requested to dispatch me, and fend me to the Presbyter John with the fuccour, as his Highnesse had commanded, and he answered me, that he could not doe it, because one hundred thouland Crownes were not sufficient to dispatch mee or more, in hazard of neuer being recoursed : and I answered him, that all that was nothing for the Presbater John, which without miffing it might ipend's Million of Gold or more for he hath Masua. The death of innumerable riches. It was determined, that he in person should transport mee : and presently 40 he commanded a good Name of Gallies and Gallions, and other thips well furnished, as for fuch a Voyage was necessarie, and many chosen men, of the best that were in India. With the which Armie we came to the Port of Mague in the Red Sea : where we found newes that the Emperour Onadimpuel, was dead of his natural death; of the which we all were very fortie, and I aboue all, as he whom it touched most.

In the meane-while, the Vice-Roy fickned of a Fluxe, whereof hee dyed : and Don Stephen

King David.

I encouraged my felfe, sill there came from Presbyer John two Friers, good religious men.one of them Prior Prouinciall of many Monasteries, and a great manamone them called Aba lefeph, which went to lerufalem, and told we how the Queene, and a Sonne and Heire of hers did maintaine their effate, and relifted their Enemies. This being knowne the Governoor Don Ste-Arias Diz, a phen faid vnto me, that I should fend to wifit them, as in effect, I prefently fent by one Arias Die, co Tawnie man borne in Cormbra.

In the meane-time, the Gouernour like a good Gentleman, and willing to lose no time, and beeing a Captaine of a valiant forrit, went with the Gallies that came in the Fleete, to the Port of Sucz, for to take or burne the Turkes Gallies, which were in that Hauen, which he could not doe because they were on dry Land.

Being there, tarrying the Gouernours comming, there fled from the Fleet fixtie men in a Sixty fugitises Skiffe and a Boat to the firme Land, the which came to a Port of Land very dry and excelling hot, and being willing to trauell into the Land, they found it fo dry that they dyed for thirft, and being thus pinched with necessitie, one Captaine of the King of Zeila, that was in that Countrey fent to tell them, that he would fend them Meate and Water, and would affure them 60 their lines, so that they would sine him their Weapons ; and they feeing they had no other remedie, and beeing pinched with need they gave them : with which prefently they flue

At that instant the chiefe Captaine fent a Galley to Arquico, to seeke water, in the which he

fent also a thousand Cotton Webs, for to change for Kine, or Beenes to eate : and they which carryed them going from Arquico by Land, where the Armie was; a Bernagais . called Noro. Captaine of the King of Zella tooke them from them, & fent word prefently to the chiefe Captaine, that the King of Zeilahis Lord was Lord of all Ethiopia, and had wonne all the Countries of the Presbyter lobs, therefore that he would make peace with him, and traffique with Commodities his Merchandize in his Countries, in the which there is much Gold, Iuorie, Ciuet, Frankincenfe. of zeile. Myrrhe, and many other Drugges, and Slaues, wherein they might make great profit: and hee also would gure him store of prouision, and would restore the Cowes that hee had taken . and would make amends for the fixtie men that were flaine.

I rold the Captaine that hee should not trust the words of Moores, for they were falle. and that they faid, was fained to doe vs fome harme; therefore that wee should also vie some flight with them, and it should be this. That he would fend him a Present, and with it words of thankfulneffe for the good will that hee thewed vs. whereby he may thinke that he hath deceived vs. and may be affored of vs : for by this flight we shall hinder his deceit. The chiefe Captaine did fo. and commanded the Factor of the Armie to carrie to the Bernagaiz a Barrell of Wine, and another thousand of Cotton Webs; the Wine for a Present, and the Webs for to change for Beeues : and that he should tell him from him, that the other Webs, that feeing they were taken in good and lawfull Warre hee should not speake of them, and as touching the men that were flaine, that they deserved not to be revenged, for as much as they were Rebels and Traytors, and 20 deferred the death they had; and as touching Traffique and Peace, that for the prefent hey were in the holy weeke, and could doe no worke, but as soone as the Feast was past, wee would

doe that which he defired, and would bring our Wares ashoare for to traffique with them.

Hauing taken counfell againe, the chiefe Captaine commanded that the Boates should not go stratagems. ashoare, because no Moore or Blacke-moore might have any meanes to goe thither, and give him warning. And commanded the Souldier to be in a readinesse, the secretess that they could a and that in the Boates, and the other light Veffels that were in the Armie : in the which hee commanded they should make no fire, because they might not be perceived: And commanded Mar.—The Kingos is Corres, that at ten of the clocke at night hee should land with fixe hundred men, and posfeffe the passages whereby they might escape, he went and killed some Turkes and Fartaquis, and casses since 30 tooke all the Carriage they had, which was but little, for he had no time to take any store. The Bernagair, of Zesla, when he saw the King set himselfe to slight, hee likewise sled, and lighted upon Mariin Correa, where being knowned Calceuer-man killed him; and men comming to

Our men thought good to cut off his head, and fend it for a Prefent to the Queen, wherewith the reioyced very much; thee fent a great man of her Countrey, called Esmacherobel Tigremacan, to the chiefe Captaine, and to me, to give vs thankes. As soone as the Gouernour Don Stephen came , hee gave order presently to dispatch and send Vice-Roy me to the King and Queene, and because they understood alreadie, that the Enterprize was of from Sere,

refcue him were many of them flaine, Foot and Horse, and the rest saued themselves by flight.

honour and profit, many did couet it more then before : among the which, one was Don (brifte-40 pher Gama, Brother to the Gouemour : who defired mee very earneftly, that I would give him the charge of all the men that he was to carrie, for he would goe with me. Presently there came * This is hee where I was, Don lobn of Castro, Don Manuel of Lima, Don Payo of Noronya, Triftram of which had bin Tayde, and Manuel of Sofs, and I granted their request, and gaue him the command of the men with the Vicefor Don Christopher: of the which they were all contented and fatisfied, and the Gouernour gaue tome of the me thankes for it. And prefently hee commanded to enroll the men that hee gaue mee. So foure Gulfe, and did hundred men, among the which, there went many Gentlemen, and men of account, which write that forbefides the number limited, carryed Seruants, which increased the number and profited very mer Runer.

Beginning to order our departure, there came the Christian Bernagaiz, which had beene there before appoinalreadie, and brought some Camels, Mules, and Asses for to beare the Carriage, and also for fer- ted Capraine. uice and to helpe. I commanded the Bernagaiz, and the Tigremacan, that they should command to bring vs some victuals and refreshing for all the Armie: which commanded to bring many Beeues, Muttons, Goates, Butter, Honey, Millet, Figges and Q inces, and other things in a-The Gouernour with all the Gentlemen of the Armie came to Arquico , where they reque- and the Pat,

fted me to give them my bleffing: the which I gave them on Gods behalie, to whom I recommended them, and they went to Sea, and we remay ned on Land very folitarie. And beginning to trauell, within three dayes we came to Debarna. Within a few dayes they vied Schilmaticall Barne and Hereticall Ceremonies, differing from the Romane. I fatisfied the beit I could, Don Christo-60 pher and his men, and the murmuring ceased, and they concluded how to carrie the Ordnance when they journeyed. They made prefently certaine Carriages like vnto ours : the which, because in the Countrey there was no Iron, they shod them with certaine old Caleeuers, which

brake, because they would serue for no other vie. Hent to the Queene, who came with all speed possible : whom we went to receive out of the

29

1152

Citie a league, with all the men of Portugall in Warlike order, and Ancients displayed with Trumpets, and as well the Kings as of the Captaines. Itay of the King, because wee had Ordnance, whereof the was amazed, being a thing vnaccustomed. The first thing she did, as one that hada respectivato the things of God, she received my blessing; and presently received Don Christopher with great entertainment and honour, giving him many thankes, that hee would youchiafe to take that Enterprize, and charge to defend her from her Enemies. From thence we went to the Citie, and the next day we heard all Maffe, and wee gaue order that Processions should be made, in the which we all went, and the Queene also, with two Infantas her Sifters in-law, and a little Princesse her Daughter, which the brought with her, desiring all of God with great Denotion and many teares, that he would vouchfafe to heare vs, and give vs the victorie of 10 his Enemies and ours.

ð. II.

Don CHRISTOPHER and the Portugals Warre on the King of Zeila, and having in two Battels prevailed, in the third are overthrowne. A new Captaine appointed. Don CHRISTOPHERS relelution and death. Mountaine of the lewes.

Eparting from Debarna, we went eight dayes by rough Countries: at the end of which wee come to plaine grounds, and very well inhabited, and better then they pait. but in them there dwelt Christians, which for feare did follow the Moore : which as soone as they knew our comming , went pretently to Don Christophor , and gaue him obedience. At the end of three dayes, we came to a very pleafant field, and in it a Founcaine

of faire water : in the which we pitcht our Camperound about the Fountaine.

The next day there came a Meffenger to vs from Goronya, King of Zeila; with some of his men in company, and asking for the Captaine of those men, said vnto Don Christopher, that his Some call him King tent to aske him who he was, and from whence hee came, or who gaue him leaue to enter in his Kingdomes with men of warre : for those Realmes were his, and hee had wonne them by angenus cals him his Lance, and of his Gentlemen, with the helpe of his Prophet Mabouses: therefore if wee Grayan, which would become Moores, and serue him, hee would entertaine them well, and give them his waveren hapges: And moreover, Wives and Goods to live vpon ; and if not, that wee should prefently avoid his Countrey, and goe out of it. Don Christopher answered him, that he was a Captaine of the King of Portugall, by whose commandement hee came with those men for to restore the Kingdomes of the Presbyter lobs, which hee tyrannously hath viurped, and to take them out of his hands, and give them to whose they were. And with this message he sent him for a Present, a Looking-glaffe, and a paire of Mullets to pull the haire with, and an Egge of Silver of Pegu, fig. 40 nifying, that those things pertayned to him. And to the Messenger hee gaue two Bracelets of Gold, and a very rich Sute of Cloth of Gold, which things the Queene had given to him; and he gaue him alfo a Cypres of Bengala, and a Tinkifb Cassock with his ypper Garment : this by my counfell in difgrace of the Goranya, rayfed prefently his Campe, and beganne to march toward the place where we were with one thousand Horsemen, and five thousand foot, and fiftie Tarket Calequer-men, and as many Archers.

Don Christopher commande: to place the Queene (who was very fearefull) and the women with all the Carriage in the midtl of the Squadron. The Moore when hee faw vs goe vp a Hill (whereon flands the Church of the Ladie of Picie) wheeled vpon vs to take the height from vs; and he came alreadie fo neere vnto vs, that the shot began to fight on both sides. When I faw the go Battle was begun, I called fixe Portugals, and with the Queene and her Sifters in-law I was going afide, and in this I knew the Moorsh King, which came necre to his Antient on a Bay Horie, and I thewed him to Peter Deca a Gentleman, and a good that : which that at him and the his Horse, and hurt him in the legge. His men came about him, and set him on another Horse, and tooke him from that place. Our Captaine Don (bristopher was also hurt in his legge; and I commanded the Steward to fet up the Queenes Tent in figne of victorie. The Moore had incironed vs on every fide, when they faw vs fetting vp Tents, and their King hurt, they began to retyre, and goe after their King, which withdrew himfelfe with the paine of the wound toward a Mountaine that was neere to that place to be cured.

At this instant there came to vs a Moore that had been a Christian, Cousin German to the Ber- 60 magaiz, and told vs how the King was hurt in his legge : and how great a fauour. God had done to vstherein, for if it had not beene so he had taken vs all, without doubt, but that God miraculoufly had delivered vs from his hands; and that therefore hee with all his men did returne to vs, and would ferue vs and pay the Tributes that vnto that time they payed to that King: and

that he went presently to his Countrey for to send vs Beeues and Prouision for our Campe: for hee was Captaine and Gouernour of all that Countrey where we were : the which belonged Temporamuto the Presbuter, and he also: and when the King of Zeila conquered it, hee yeelded vnto him, tantur & nos and now that he faw him ouer-come, he returned to vsagaine, whereby he feemed to be a man of Line be that over-commeth.

In the meane while, it pleased God that Don Christopher healed of his wound; but we suffered great hunger, for there was very little prouision in the Campe, and the people died with Scarsitie, hunger. Don Christopher went to the Queene, and told her, that the people faffered great hunger, and that they had need to eate all they found, notwithstanding it was Lent, that it would

to be good to kill the Beafts, that they had in the Campe, for to eare : and with this request, they came both to my Tent, praying me that I would give the people leave to eate fielh in Lent, be- Flesh in Lene, cause of the necessitie there was : and besides, the Queene requested me, that I should give her my Oxen that I had for my carri-ge, to give them to the people, and as foone as her Captaine aforefaid came, thee would fatisfie me, which would flay three dayes : and fo it was for he prefently

came with great flore of prouision, viz. Beeues, Sheepe and Goates, Butter, and other prouisions for Lent, and for Eafter, which was alreadie at hand

As soone as Easter was past, the Goranya sent word to Don Christopher, that he would come to fee him, that he should prepare himselfe: which he did as he had said. He came to feeke vs. with more and better men then before he brought : for, he had aboue two thousand Horse , and 20 infinite number of foot, and an hundred Tarks: for the which, the Queene was in fuch a feare with her Sifters in law, that they knew not what to doe, in fuch fort that being at Dinner, as foone as they knew the comming of the Moore, they would have left Dinner. Don Christopher being the next day ordering his men, before day, for to fet vpon the Mores; the Queene lent The Queenes for me, and faid to me, that thee faw the great power that the King Gorange brought, and that feare. it was impossible to scape his hands if we stayed, therefore that shee defired me that we should be gone, for thee had to determined, and that in any fort thee would doe it; therefore that thee requested me very earnestly, that I would not let her goe alone, seeing I was her Father, but I

should accompanie her, and goe with her. And I, to shew her the love that I bare her, and that fiee should not thinke that I esteemed not her life, granted her request, and we both interprised 30 the flight. But Don Christopher, which was alreadie warned for that purpole, fent after vs ten Horse-men, and some Foot-men, crying aloud, and saying, that it was neither service of God, nor the worke of a Father, to goe away and leaue them. Hearing these wordes, Shee by my meanes returned to the Campe weeping and bewayling her selfe. There Don Christopher said vnto me, that as a Father and Prelate, according to the good cofform of the Portugals, he reque-fled me that I should give him my blessing, and should make him a generall absolution before he entred into the battell. I did fo, and granted him a plenarie Indulgence of all his finnes : which Indulgence. I might doe, because the Pope had granted it me, and was the stile of the Patriarchs of Alexandria. From thence we remoued with our Campe, by the breake of day, downe the Hill, and marched till we came to a Plaine; and prefently, with great furie, they atlauted our standings on

40 enery fide. Our men defended themselves with the Ordnance and Fire-works, wherewith they The second annoyed them very much and before they came, they had cast a great quantitie of powder in basell. the wayes, whereby they were to come vp; the which, when they were in the heate of the battell, was fet on fire, and it burned them, proceeding vnder their feet, they not knowing from whence it came, they understood not the stratageme. Our men did cast among them cer- Fierie ficatataine Balls of wilde fire, and Pots full of powder, wherewith they burned the greatest part of gem. them, and the other retyred with feare, and durft come no more neere vs. The Ordnance killed many of the Horse-men, and of other People, that the Field was all full of them, and the Horses ranne mafter-leffe about the fields. The Turks with their Peeces and their Bowes, killed vs twentie men, and the master Gunner. Our men killed fif eene Turks. The Queene was next to

10 me, embracing a Croffe, and weeping, and faid vnto mee; O Father, what have you gayned in bringing me bitber ? Wherefore did you not let me goe my way? I faid vnto her : Lady, doe not afflict your felfe; commit your felfe to God, and open your eyes, and you shall fee the great destruction that is done in your enemies.

At this time the Foot-men began alreadie to flee , and the Horse-men durk not come neere, but skirmished a farre off; and the King said to his men , that the Portugals were no men , but Deuills, for they fought like Deuills. And with this he retyred himselfe towards the Hill, and The victorie, left his Campe.

We gathered our Campe, and went forward as fast as wee could, but they sled as fast as they could, and wee could not ouer-take them. But wee found many Abexins on foote and horfe-60 backe which returned to vs, which afterward were baptized, and loyall to their King, Of whole returne, the Queene and we all were as glad as of the principall victorie. We came to the campe of the Moores, which we found for faken without any people, but wee found in it all the spaile, for the feare which Saint lames put them in, gaue them no leifure to take any thing away. Wee Great spoile. found it with Tents vp, and in them Apparell, House-hold stuffe, Mony, and other riches, and

Goranya King of Zeila. pons by the different pronuntiation of fo different a Language. Prouoking Prefents.

TORRIGHT

Moores discomsited. Turkish aide. Vusortunate battell. LIB.VII

store of prouision, which were very needfull for vs, for it was alreadie very scant. Here wee flayed, and let the people reft two dayes.

Nazaretha Countrey apthe Patriarch.

This Countrey and all the borders, is called the Prouince of Nazareth, and it is of the Partiarchs, their owne proper with all surifdiction, without the King entermeddling in it by any meanes, neither hath he any Rent thereof. It yeeldeth for the Patriarch three thousand ounces of gold every yeers, the which King Thedres appropriated vnto them, for a certaine offence that he committed against a Patriarch.

From the Campe wee drew toward the Mountaines, where the King Goranya with-drew himselfe, and pitched our Campe in a field, at the foot of the Mountaine, inuironed with the carriages of the Ordnance.

licited.

The Moore fent to Zebide to a Baffa of the great Turke which was there, to aske him fuccour. faying, that he should succour him, and not suffer those Kingdomes to be lost, which were all of the great Turke, and he held them for him, and that in token thereof, hee fent him one hundred thousand Oquies of gold, and twentie thousand for his person. An Oqui is a waight of gold, which in that Countrev is worth as much as ten Crownes or Cruzados in this, and weighethas much. We with-drew our felues, while we knew what paffed, to a ftrong Mountaine, the which was compafied on every fide with Rocks and Crags, in such fort, that in it there was scarce a way for foot-men. For to carry the Ordnance and other carriage, was needfull to make a new way. the which the Captaines of the Countrey made with their men, and it was fo ffreight, and fo rough, that the Ordnance could not bee carried upon the carriages, but they carried it on their 20 backs with Leauers. Aboue was a Plaine where wee pitched our Campe. From thence the Oneene fent through her Provinces, and I also through mine, that they should bring vs store of victualls, and other prouisions necessarie, of which we were pretently well prouided. and the wounded were well cured. Being there well lodged, Don Christopher faid vnto mee, that wee should remoue to a higher

Hill which was neere from thence, because the Armse might be more safe; and that in the meane while he would goe to a Mountaine, which was neere from thence, inhabited with I eves, in the which was a Captaine of the Moore with an hundred and fittie Horse, as we were aduertifed. And being gone with the Portugals, and some few of the Country, for to shew him the wayes; heelett with vs two Portugal Captaines with his men. As some as hee came to the 30 Mountaine, he fet vpon the Moore, and killed fixtie Horfe-men, and tooke thirtie Horfes, the The lower pur- reft fled. The lower, inhabiters of the Mountaine, purfued after the Moores, and taking the Incitores pur-fuerthe Mostes. passages of the Mountaine, which they knew very well, they killed them almost all, andamong them the Captaine, and tooke all the spoile they carried, and the women, which they brought all to Don Christopher, and gaue it him for a present, with the head of the Captain, which they brought alfo; and among other Gentle-women which were there, the wife of the Captain Moore was very faire, the which Don Christopher tooke for himselfe. And because two of his Captaines did looke too much vpon her, he was jealous of them, and tooke away their charges, they being as they faid blameleffe.

Den Christopher being in the Mountaine of the lewes, the Moorif King came to freke vs with

Turks feat to fixe hundred Turks, which the Baffa feat vato him, and two hundred Moores on horse-backe,

Beades blef-

nide the Morre. and a great number on foot: and comming to the foot of the Hill where we were, he pitched his Campe. From thence he fent a man of his with a Boxe of pedlarie ware to our Campe, to fell Beades and looking glaffes, and to tell Don Chriftopher that his Mafter was a Merchant, and came behinde, and would not tarrie three dayes, with very good merchandize that hee brought to fell him. This came to light vpon George of Abreve, and lames of Silva, that remayneth with vs, and kept the entrie of the Mountaine, which tooke away his Beades, and brought them vnto me, and I bleffed them, and gaue them to the women and deuout perions, granting many pardons to them that did pray vpon them, because that their mockage might redound to the praise of God, and the profit of his faithfull. We fent in all hafte to call Don Christopher, which was not come from the Mountaines. Meane while, the Twiks in despight of our men entred the Mountaine, and did vs much hurt. Prefently that night after they were entred came Don Christopher, and feat presently for the other Captaines, to take counsell with them what were best to doe; which told him, that it were best to set voon the Moores by night : for when the forces are not equall in strength, the weakest haue need to vie some policie; and this is one of the best we can wie with them, for the manner of the Tarks is not to fight by night, in fo much that come out of their Tents they dare not. And besides, we shall take them on a sudden and unprepared, and we shall ouerthrow them before they can come to themselves : and for the more amazing them, we will affault them on two fides. This counfell feemed not good to Don Christopher, because mutable Fortune was willing to change her courfe; and God, to make an end of fentualities, 60 which at fuch times, men that are Christians, should not remember. Don Christopher faid, that he would give battell to the Enemies by day, because they should not thinke that he was afraid

The vnforta-

of them, wherein he premailed, though none liked his counfell. As foone as it was day they went all downe, and before they fet any thing in order (because

CH AP.7 S.2. Unfermate battell. Don Christopher bure. His delberation. 1155

the misfortune was to have some beginning) by a milchance, a Horle of ours brake loose, and rame towards the Moores Campe, they came out to ketch him, and our men went out to defend him, and in this fort the fight began without any order or government. This skirmish latied a great while; in the which many Moores and Turkes died : and likewife of ours there died tome : among whom. Don Garcia of Noronia was one. The Ancient-bearer of Don Christopher fought with the Ancient Royall, like a valiant Gentleman, and in his defence flue forme of the Enemies, and wounded them to hercely, that they durft not come neere him, vntill that for wearineffe he could fight no longer , then they flue him. Don Christopher was wounded with a flue Don Christopher in the arme, of the which, although he suffered great paine, he left not therefore the battell till hurt,

to very late, that hee found himselfe almost alone, then hee re yred to the top of the Mountaine with some few that he found about him. Before he retyred, I seeing the spoile of our men, said to the Queene that the thould mount, and goe to the Mountaine; and because thee would not leane some women that had not whereon to ride, I made her mount perforce, and one fifter-in-law of bers and fo I fent, them before, and I tooke her daughter behind me.

A Nurse of the Queene, a vertuous woman with two daughters, and other women, tooke a Lamentable

barrell of Powder; taying, God forbid, wee thould bee delivered to the power of Infidels, they and desperate brought it into the Tent; let is on fire and burned themselves. The like did fif eene or fixteene men which came fore wounded from the battell, and could not traueil. I went away with the Girle that I had behind mee where her mother was, which thought thee had loft her alreadie, and when ther law her thee gaue great thankes to God. Wee went a little farther into the Mountaine, and there we made another stand, tarrying for more men, and for Dan Christopher, for whom the Queene was very forrie, and wee all were very fad for his not comming, doubting he was dead or captine. Being in this doubt, we faw him come hurt, as I faid before in an arme. with great paine of the wound; for it feemed he had the Bullet within. The Queene commanded me to cure him with a little Balme that the had, for to mitigate his paine; and thee rooke a Vaile from about her head, and tore it, and bound his atmethers with. But he tooke no reft, for The rememberd more the loffe and dithanops, then the pains of the wound: and landing that he had better been failine, then to have loff the Kings Standard; and that feeing it remayned in the power of his Enemies, that he would not five.

30 himfelfe fo much, for with his life and health hee would recover againe (God willing) that which then hee had loft : for fo wee faw it fall out every day in matters of warre, &c. And as touching the Ancient, in that Countrey they tooke no fuch regard of it; and that prefently they would make fuch another, having men to fight under it; and a Captaine to governe them: for the men are the true Ancient, and not the figne which they carried.

Wee made him mount, and went from thence, and with all speed wee passed two Rivers so great, that the Foot-men waded to the breafts. Wee travelled till we came to the Riper of the Draw-bridge, which they had told vs, which was so deepe, that it could not be pailed but by that Bridge. There Dow Christopher faid to me, that he would not passephe Bridge. Dut would be christopher faid to me, that he would not passephe Bridge. Dut would be christopher and called presently his senants, which mode him downe, and disconsiderate the bin was all the senants.

40 fet him vp a Bed whereon he cast himselfe. He called me, and requested that I would shrive him: having ended his confession, he faid vnto me, that his will was to remaine there. I faid vnto him, that I would not fuffer it, and commanded those that were there to take the Ben, and to carrie him in it as he was , and he faid that he would kill himfelfe if they carried him from thence. When I law his determination, I faid vnto him , that I would remaine with him; he appreced me, that I should not doe it : for I was necessarie for to gourne those men , that they might not altogether be loft, and therewith all that Countrie : but that I should leane him a little Balme for to drefte him with, and that his Chamberlaine, his Secretarie, and other three Portugals, with which he would goe hide himselfe in a Groue that was there. I could never understand to what end he remained.

From thence I went to the Queene, and defired her to mount, and that we should passe on the 50 other fide the Bridge; for it drew towards day, and our enemies would come: fine antwered, that in no wife thee would doe it, nor passe any farther, feeing Don Christopher remayined there defolate. But I defired her to mount, faying to her, that not onely thee , but her forme with all his Kingdomes would be loft if we tarried there. And with this the Queene mounted, weeping, and speaking so many dolorous words, as thee could have vetered for her ownedonne, if he had remayned there. Wee commanded all the men to goe with the carriage, and all the people with the greatest haste possible : and before we had passed we heard a rumour of Men, and noise of Horses, for the which we made great haste to goe over, and drew the Bridge after vs. By this time it was alreadieday, and we beginning to goe up the fide of a Hill on the other fide,

60 We faw many Moore; about the place where Don Christopher remayned the Querne, when the faw them , was greatly afraid , and faid that wee could not escape. Her men told her that shee should not feare; for shee was alreadie in her owne Countries. Notwithstanding, wee went on with all hafte possible for to lose them out of light : and we travelled all that day, passing many Mountaines and Rivers with great trouble, and heat of the day. There was by those Rivers great Or Temerindor, store of Cassia Fistola, and Indian Dates , whereof our men did cate, for they had no other food. Finally, we came to a River fomewhat big, where the people caught some Fish, which they did eate while the Captaine of that Countrie came with victuals, which prefently brought great

thore: And there we began to rest, for we were alreadie in a fure Countrey.

Wee wanted fortie Poringalis: To the rest that remayned, which were few more then three

hundred, I made my speech thus, and said vnto them ; that they saw very well that it was nenuncted, I made my spectations, and also visit of the mand fight before them, a Captaine, that might governe them and fight before them, seeing we knew not what might become of *Dos Christopher*, remaying as hee was willing to bee left. They answered me, that I should doe what I thought best; for they would hold it for very well done, and would obey whom I should command and ordaine. I'declared vnto them, that I elected for their chiefe Captaine, one Alfonso Caldera, borne in Coimbra, a discreet and valiant Gentleman; the which all received with a good will, except some Gentlemen, which because they were of Nobler bloud, thought that charge rather belonging vnto them. These murmured somewhat of that which I did: but did not leave their obedience. I made also a Sergeant, and a ludge, to looke to the Souldiers, that they did no wrong to the people of the Countrey; or betweene themselues, one to another. There came to vs John Gonzales , and Alnaro Deniz, which remay ned with Don Christopher.

of whom the Queene demanded what was become of Don Christopher: they told vs , how they being hid in the Groue where they remayned, there came a woman fleeing from the Moorer. Don chriftopher and came into the same Groue; and the Moore comming after her, found Don Chriftopher: and 20 asked him who he was, and he told them that he was Don Christopher: whereof they were to ioyfull, that they could not believe it: and they called an Eunuch which had beene ours that came there, and asked him if that was Don Christopher, and if he knew him well: and hee Gid, it was he without doubt, for he knew him very well. They presented him to their King, which also was very glad to see him. And after demanding some things of him, he said, that if he would become a Moore, that he would doe him much honour. Don Christopher answered him finding, that he was the fernant of Iefus Christ, whom he would not change for a lying Dog. The King hearing what he faid, commanded to give him a boxe on the eare, and to pull
Mirresolution, him by the beard, He defired him with great Oathes and promifes that he would write to his. companions, that they should leave Presbyter lobm, and returne to their Countries: and he faid, to that he would doe it. And prefently he wrote a Letter, according to the will of the Moore: the

which fent the Eunuch aboue-faid, that he should looke well what Don Christopher did write: and he did so, therefore Don Christopher wrote that which the Moore commanded, and no other thing : but fet two thornes in his name, by the which he fignified, that they should looke what they did. With this Letter of Don Christopher, the Gorania fent two Moores of his to our Campe, and they gave it to me.

The Queene, when thee faw it, remayned almost dead, thinking that Don Christopher had

written that Letter of purpose, and that it would somewhat anaile among the Portugals, by whom, vnder God, fhe trufted to have her Kingdomes reftored : and fhee tooke very itrangely that deed of Don Christopher. But after that we declared vnto her the deuise of the thornes that 40 came in his Firme, thee was glad, and tooke it in good part; and enery one praifed him very much. Finally, the chiefe Captaine Alfanfas Caldera, in his owne name, and in the name of all his companions the Portugals, answered to Don Christopher, that he should give many thanks to the King Gorania for his good will: but that they would not receive of him that favour, neither did they doubt that they should stand in need of it, rather to the contrarie, they hoped with the helpe of lefin Christ their God, to finsh the act, whereunto the King of Portugall their Lord had fent them thither, which was, to take or kill him, and deliuer from his tyrannie, the Kingdomes of Prefbyter Iohn.

This Letter being delivered to Don Christopher, hee carried it to the Morre, and hee shewed him not therefore the worse countenance, for hee thought that Don Christopher had written 10 faithfully, he asked him also wherewith he had cured himselfe, and he said vnto him, that hee could make a certaine Medicine wherewith the wounds were very quickly cured; and the Moore defired him to cure with it his Captaine generall, which was fore wounded: and he cured him with fuch Medicines, that the Dogge lived but three dayes. For the which, the Moore commanded to give him many stripes and blowes, and taid, that hee would command to kill him. Don Chriftopher answered him, that he could doe him no more hurt then to kill the bodie, for the foule God had power ouer it: and that hee was very certaine, that Icfin Chrift would Post Strightphor receive his into everlating life. The Moore commanded that they should carrie him to the place where the other Partners, it is a district that they should carrie him to the place where the other Partners, it is a district that they should carrie him to the place where the other Portugals died , and that there they should cut off his head. The which head of Don Christopher, that King did fend for a Prefent to the Governour of Cairo: and one of his 60 quarters he fent to Inda: another to Aden: and one legge to the Baffa of Zebide, which fent

him the fuccour aboue-faid. So much doe they esteeme in that Countrey, to ouercome a few All the rest of the bodie of Don Christopher remay ned there where they killed him; and from

thence certaine Religious men carried it to their Monasterie which was neere to that place, and sloe hold it in great reverence with estimation of a Saint ; for presently, and many times after, did God shew by manifest Miracles, his labours to bee acceptable and meritorious before Gods Divine Maieffie, his death precious, and his foule glorified. Prefently, as soone as they cut off Miracles . If ahis head, God shewed a great and manitest Miracle by him : which was, that in the place where my be in product they flue him, there forung vp a Fountaine of running water, which had never been teene there, gallot Fai b to they flue him, there foring up a Fountaine or running water, which mad near been refer there, believe them, whose water gives higher to the blind, and cureth ficke persons of other diseases, by the good- I doe them to neffe and power of God. This Miracle is much like to that which God did in Rome, for his A- let men fee the notile Saint Paul, The Reliques of the bodie of Don Christopher doe fmell, yeelding fo sweet a probabilitie of 10 lencof themselves, that it seemeth rather heavenly then of the earth.

From thence the Moorifo King went toward a Kingdome, called Dembia: whereby the racles in India. River Nulus passeth, and maketh a Lake, which hath in length thirtie leagues, and five and an where they adhalfe in breadth. In this Lake are many Ilands: Afmache of Doaro, called Obitocon, which is uantage not to fay, Don George, and Afmache of Guidmis, fubrects of King " Gradeus, came with one hun-their fancies. I dred and fiftie Horse-men, and one thousand Foot-men. The Captaine conducted them vnto believe them the Queene, which received them louingly, and asked whence they came; and they faid, that which looks to they came from the Campe of Gorania, and that they departed from him there where they Rome and fu-Rose and the skilled Don Christopher, the Moore going towards Dembia. The Queene asked them for the perfition, indeath of Don Christopher: and they told her the manner which wee alreadie knew.

Wee comming to the skirt of the Mountaine of the lewes, their Captaine came to vs with A Hoge Late. wictuals and retreflyings, and faid to the Queene, that shee should come up to the Mountaine it is 60 miles for in no place of that Prouince shee could bee surer then in that Mountaine; which had no long and acmore then one entrance, and that might easily be kept, and defended from the Enemies, if they broad. came. This Captaine of the lewes demanded Baptisme : and as soone as we were on the Moun- Supplies from taine, and had pitched our Campe, I baptifed him, his wife, and his children. The Captaine the News. Alfon was his God-father: and they named him Don Christopher. From thence Al- by Godinan is fon fur Caldera went with ninetie Portugals, and some of the Countrie to forage some Townes called Ch. uding. which in that Countrey stood yet for the Moore; and they killed much people, burned the A Mountaine Townes, and brought great flore of Cattell. Two honest old men feeing this, in the name of all of laws.

30 the people, came to aske mercie of the Queene, faying, that they were hers, and were Christian of the Jense base fient, and that perforce they obeyed, and payed their Tributes to the Moore; and likewife for next, because they had none to defend them from the lewes of the Mountaine, that did cuill neighbourhood : therefore that it would pleafe her Maiestie to forgive them , which

ò. III.

40 Comming of G E AD B v S the yong Negus, his resetting the Patriarch and Pope: their reconciliation and battell with the Moores, in which Go KANIA was Slaine, and after him the King of Aden.

T this time came Arias Diz, which Don Christopher had sent to visite the King, the fonne of Onadinguest, and of this Queene, called Oriza america, and the fonne was called Gradess. This did not yet follow the Campe with his mother, because he was Gradess the very young. This meffage brought Arias Diz, that the King would bee with vs young Negative

within two moneths. The two moneths almost past, wee departed from the Mountaine of the 50 lemes, where we were, and went to other Mountaines in another Promince, whither the King

came within eight dayes, accompanied with fiftie Horfe-mer and many on Mules: All the Captaines went to receive him a little way off the Campe, with all their men, Portugals, and of the Countrey, and accompanied him into the Campe. Entring into the Campe he went prefently to my Tent, and there hee alighted to take my bleffing. I came to the doore to receive him, which he efteemed greatly : for in that Countrey they hold the Patriarch in that efteeme that here we doe the Pope. From thence he went to fee the Queene his mother, and withdrew himselfe, and mourned three dayes for Don Christopher. He commanded his Tent to be set your

Some few dayes being past, before we medled in any other thing, I fent to call the Captaine 60 Alfonfus Caldera to my Tent, with the other Captaines and honourable persons of the Partngall Nation in the Armie, and faid vnto them.

My most louing children, and most Christian Portugals, I remember well, that a few dayer agoe, The Patriarch being in Debarua, some of your charities moved with a good reale, did missible some stess and Cera. Speech to momes, which the people of this Countrey doe wse, differing from the Romane customes. A great Na- the Petrajdi, tion cannot be cleanfed of all the Cockle and Tares which the Denill foweth in it; even as a field can-Dddddd 2

The King acknowledged head by this Parriarch: on ly except the Popes cafe and they fay the Come with ve Retrhen on? head may bee cut off to please the o-His intech to

the News.

not be weeded of all the Weeds and Thornes that grow in it: for if wee seeke to weed them cleane, we shall also pull up the Wheate among the Weeds, as Christ faith in the Gospell. It is enough to doe now the principall, which is the ebedience an uniting of the bely Mother Church: this is the Fountaine of all the reft. from bence depend all the other circumstances. This bath ber foundation in the Head, which is the Kine. As soone as the King shall obey, all the rest will follow him.

Comming to the Kings Tent, I found him with his Mother, whereof I was very glad, and faid

Most louing Son in lefus Christ: You know, that the most Christian King your Father which in elarie desired mee that I would goe to Rome, for mee and for himselfe to give the chedience to the church Billop: and if you doe not remember is for your tender age, fee beere a Letter signed by him, which has to game mee that the chiefe Billop should gime me credit, and know that was true which I said to him on his behalfe: which as I say, was to tell him that your Father did acknowlege him to be the Successor of Saint Parter Prince of the Apostles of Christ, and Vicar of his minerfall Church, it is also reason you Should succeed him in knowledge, in vertues, and in the feare of God. Therefore, you conforming your felfe with the will and Ordinance of God, and imitating the vertue and knowledge of your Father, on to give the obedience to the boly Father the Romane Bishop : for therein shall yee doe that which Gad commandeth, and shall basse for your Friends and Brethren, and helpers in your necessities, the King of Portugall, and all other Kings his Brethren and Friends.

To the which hee not regarding what hee faid, like a youth of little age, answered thus Tou are not our Father, nor Prelate, but you are Patriarch of the Frankes, and are an Arrian which 20 have foure Gods: and bence forward we will call you no more Father. I faid unto him againe, that bee lyed , for as much as I was no Arrian , neither bad foure Gods : but feeing he would not obey the bols Father, that I beld him for excommunicate and accur led, and that I would stay no longer nor speake with bim, and with this I refe to goe away: and hee answered me, that I was the excommunicate and

From thence without any more speaking to him, I went to the Portugals, which stood with out the Tent, and told them what passed, and how the King would not obey the Romane Church. They conceine but that hee was an Hereticke like Neitorius and Dioscorus : therefore, I commanded them m vertue of obedience, and under paine of Excommunication of my part; and in bebalfe of the King of Portugall (whose authorisise I had for st) under paine of capitall crime, in no wife they should obey the 39 King, nor follow him, nor dae any thing in his fanour. Alfoutius Caldeyra, and all the rest faid, that their Fathers and Grand fathers were never Rebels to the Church of Rome, nor to their King, neither would they be therfore, that I had no need to ley an Excommunication upon them, but that I bould in frend it, for they without it would doe all that I should command, as obedient children. And from thence they all accompanied me to my Tent, and they went to their Lodgings.

Within a little while the King fent a Captaine of his, to carrie three thousand ounces of Th Pariarcks Gold to the Portugals, to divide among themselnes and a rich Captaine, and defired them not to leave him, but to helpe him against his Enemies, as they had done thitherto. They answered him, that as for that time they would not receive the favour that hee fent them for the difference betweene him and mee, nor to the reft, that hee faid they 40 could answere no other thing, but that in all things they would doe that which I should com-

With this answere they tooke counfell, and agreed that the Queene should come with an

Arch-bishop, which I had made, and all his Captaines to my Tent, to aske me pardon, I would An Archbishop command, and give the obedience to the Pope. The Queenecame and defired me in honour of the Virginitie of our bleffed Ladie Virgin, before, in, and after the Conception, that I would go with her to the Tent of her Sonne, which was very faire, for that which hee had done, and faid to me, that he would aske mer pardon and obey mee in all things. I answered her, that I would not remove from thence, but the way to Portugall with the Portugals my children, and comprnions. At this Answere, she kneeled on her knees before me, weeping, and faid vnto me, that 50 fhee charged me on Gods behalfe, that I should not doe such a thing; but that I should goe with her, for all should be done as I would. I, moved with pitie and compassion, went with her : and comming to the Kings Tent, he came forth to receive vs , and with great humilitie hee tooks my hand and kiffed it, demanding me pardon for that which hee had faid to me. And wee three fitting downe, he faid, that he was contented to obey the chiefe Bishop : and that the obedience which his Father had guen by me was fufficient. But I answered him, that it was not sufficient: but that he particularly should give for himselfe the like obedience, for so was the custome of our Countries, that every King when he newly reigned did tend his Mellengers to give particularly for himfelfe the obedience to the Pope wherefoeuer he was : and that feeing he fent not to Rome, as his Father did, that he should give it to mee in the Popes name, for I had commission from his Holineste, to receive it of him. And befiles, he should give a publike Testimonie signed by him, and fealed in his name, and of all his Kingdomes and Provinces, confelling in it, that the

Truth of the Faith is this : that the Church of God is only one, and his Prelate the Vicar of

Iefus Christ is also one alone, through all the Earth : by whom the Power and Inrisdiction of Ie-

The Kings An-Why the Weferne Christie Frankes. You may cord, noted before in Alusterwer beleeue foure Gods. because wee hold two Natures in Christ which they following the Entichiam and Monothelize bc refice denie. Portuga's. Their reicang Gradeus

Pamarch.

fus Christ extendeth to the other Prelates, and Christian Princes. The which Writing, one of the principallest men of his Kingdome, standing in a high Place or Chaire, should reade with a Pooish fash:

his hand cleere voice, before all the people that were there with him. He did so, and comman or a new Artided it to be done with folemne Pompe and found of Trumpets.

This being done, within a few dayes, the Captaine Alfonfus Caldegra running a Horfe, had a the Creed, to fall; of the which within a few dayes he dyed. Alfonfus Calderra beeing dead, I tooke counfell believe the with fome principall men of the Portugals, and we thought it good, to make Arias Diz chiefe Arias Diz or Captaine, because hewas a discreet and a good Gentleman: which had discharged himselfe well Diaz, made in some important matters, which had beene committed to his charge. Especially, because the Captaine or 10 King Gradeus defired it of me, I lent to call him, and defired him that he would take that charge Generall of

ypon him. Hee tooke it, and promifed to doe in it to the vttermost of his power.

Within a few dayes the King fent me word, that hee would goe through his Countrey with his men, because we could not be there altogether, wherefore hee defired mee to remaine there with his Mother : and I answered him not, because I understood that he would flye away. The The Kings King fent prejently after me the * Azaige of Gallan, that with all reverence and courtefie fight, should fay to me, that the King my Sonne aid fend to r. quest me, that I should fend him thither . A prop the Captaine Arias Diz with all the Portugals, for to it behooved for the fervice of God: I an- name of a Rufwered him, I would doe it with a good will. There remayned with mee fixe Captaines of the Countries, with two hundred Horle, one thouland Targeters, and fine hundred Archers, and fit-

20 tie Harping Irons, with their Hockes all very cunning in Armes. Every Horleman carryed three forts of weapons. With all this people I came to the skirt of the Mountain, where Goranga was, & caused to pitch my Tent very neer to the bil, and neer vinto i , all the Campe with Featis

and flowtings, and founding of Trumpets, as they are won; to do in Can. ps. The horfemen skirmished, and the Footmen reloyced, and faid, We will all dye for the Faith of the Sonne of God. Our men entring into the Mountaine, went prefently to a Towne neere from thence in the which they found no people, but found fome prouision, especially, Wine made of Honey in many pots of Earth, of the which two heedlesse men old drinke and dyed suddenly, for the Poyloned Moores had poy foned and left it, for to kill our men. Our people feeing the two men dead,

would not drinke of the Wine, but broke the Vestels and spilt the Wine : and returned from 30 thence.

With these newes, I sent prefently two Horsemen to the King, that hee should come in all hafte to possesse himselfe of that Country, before the Moore came; for I was alreadie going to hinder the comming of the Moore, and to take the passages whereby he was to come. And I sent to the Captaine Arias Diz, by a Portugall, to tell him that I flood in danger of encountring with the Moore, that he should prefently come to me. The King doubted the lourney, and would not come: but Arias Diz faid vnto him, that it neither was nor feemed good, the Portugals to bee flaine in his defence, and for to reliore him his Kingdomes, and hee to runne away and leane them. Arias Die being departed with the Portugals, the King tooke counfeil to goe after him: and fet forward in such have that he ou r-tooke them before night. And altogether trauelled

40 fo much that night, that they came to our Campe before it was day-breake.

As foone as it was day, I left them which came wearie, and with the people that I had before began to ascend the Mountain before the Moore came, because they having that Mountaine, was a great part of the Victorie. We went by luch narrow wayes, that wee could goe but two and two, and ly Rockes and rough places, that had any bodie fallen from thence, had beene crusht in a thousand pieces. We came to the top, by Gods affirtance, and came to a Monasterie of Friers, which was on the Mountaine, which was of the Innocation of Saint Paul. The Friers Monaflery, came out to receive vs in Procession, with the Crosse on high, and censing with Censers, and leade vs to the Church to make our Prayers, and gue Thankes to God for the fuccour hee had fent them. Prayers being ended, the Captaines pitched their Campe, and refted. When the King knew that we were aboue, her commanded his people to tarrie behind, and hee came with the 50 Portugals, neere to the Ancient of the King of Portugall, Isauing his owne. It might bee an

houre before Sun-ferting when he came vp, and his men came within night, for all the day was fpent in comming up to the Mountaine. So troublefome it is to afcend.

All the Armie prayed, and did fing Letanics, praying to God that hee would gine vs the victorie, and to our Ladie, and to all the Saints that they would pray to God for vs. The Religious men did the fame in their Monasteries , and the people in their Townes. At this time there came innumeral le people to joyne them selves with vs , from the Provinces and Countries round about. We faw from the top of the Mountaine, the Moores of Goranya his Campe goe skirmilling in the fields that were beyond the Mountaine, and heard them fay: Before foure 60 dayes be past, yee Shall all be flaine, and your King Shall be gelt, and shall be Keeper of the King of Zeila

bis Wines: and ti . Patricreb that brought you buther, hall bane a softed stake thrust through bis fundument, that may puffer through his necke, and come out at his head. The Generall of the Abexines The Abortion asked leade of the King to goe with some people to skirmsh with those Moores, and having got Generalishan, ten leaue he was farmen, and went downe with foure hundred Horfemen, with the which af-

Dddddd 2

ter having killed many Moores, he went fo farre from his men that the Enemies compaffed him round, and beeing very wearie, and wounded fore, they tooke him, and before they killed him, they cut off his prince Members, for fo doe that people wie, and afterward they killed

The death of this Captaine griened the King fo much, that hee wept publikely, and rent his haire : to the pulling off his Crowne, and hurling it on the ground. In the meane feafon, they came to tell him, that the King of Zeila was come, and pitched his Campe at the foot of the Mountaine, as one that determined to come vp. King Gradem hearing the great noyfe of the Ordnance, which refounded through the Mountaines, tooke fo great a feare, that hee determi-

The Bernasaiz, understanding what the King determined, came in haste to call me at the Mo. nafterie where I was, and shewed mee on the tops of the Mountaine, much people of the Abexines in armes, faving to me, that all those were doubtfull, and if they faw that wee fuffered any detriment, or knew that the King did leaue vs, that they all would bee against vs, and would overthrow vs. Therefore it behooved me to be prefent, for to flay the King, and encourage the people : and that might not feeme, that I absented my selfe with distrust. I left prefently the Monasterie, and went with him to the Campe; and the people that were on the Mountaines, when they faw me, made a great showt, and faid; Seeing the Abuna goeth, the Victorie is ours. Comming where the King was, I faluted, and faid vnto him. Hope in the merce of God, which redeemed us by his precious bloud, that hee will gine us the Victorie. And staying no 20 longer. I went prefently where the Portugals were, to whom I faid. Sonnes, commend your felues to the Lord, and doe like your felues. And I commanded them to kneele downe there. and Every one to fay the Lords Prayer fine times, and I did the same, in praise of the fine principall wounds of our God and Redeemer Iesus Christ, and I granted them all a plenarie Indulgence, gining the bleffing of God and more.

The King and his people, when they faw vs fet forward, were amazed at our great and determinate resolution, and stood on a high place, where they discovered all the Campe, for to see what we did. The Moores feeing vs come forwards, refolued to come and meete vs : We going downe the Hill . Goranza the King of Zeila came before his men, mounted on a white Horse, all it a complete Armour, and two Turkes with him on each fide one : and comming neere vnto 10 vs, within Caliuer thot, all three stood aside as they came, to give place for his men to fight. In this space, one Peter of Lyon, which had beene Servant to Don Christopher, a very low man of flature, but a very good Marke-man, and defirous to revenge his Mafters death, thot at him. Gorania flaine, and thrucke him dead from off his Horfe. The fame day did others to the other two which came with him, and killed them likewise, shooting at them. The Moores, when they faw their King dead, some turned their faces, and some stayed them, in such fort, that they were troubled, and hindered one another, that they neither fought nor fled; our men feeing their diforder and confusion. fet voon them and flue many.

At this time came in King Gradem his men, and the Moores and Turkes forfooke the Campe and the field: In the which our men found great Riches, Prouision, and Ordnance, and other 40 weapons and furniture. They found the Turkes which then came by the way, with Wallets full of Bread and fodden Hennes, and others dead with the bit in their mouthes, and found their purses full of Money of their pay, which they a little before had received. They tooke here the King of Zeila his Sonne ; the Queene fled to the Prouince of Dagna. They entred a good way into the Countrey of Dembia, whence they brought also many Silkes and Bedens, and Forms of Ormuz, and sich Couerlets. The King Gradens feeing the great and miraculous victorie which God had given him, commanded a Monasterie to bee built very richly, in the place where the battaile was fought, in praise of the secret of our Lord lesus (brift,

And because it is not well that the base Spirit of an Abexine do passe without noting, which would have gloried of that which he did not, and enjoyed the labour of another; I will tell what 50 Vaine glorious he did, A Captaine of King Gradens, which faw the King of Zeila flaine, went ynto him and cut off his head, and went to present it to his King; saying, That he had killed him, because hee should give him the reward that therefore hee deserved, which was very great: for that death, was the principall cause of the victorie vnder God, and of the restoring of those Kingdomes. The King wasvery glad to know who had flame his enemy, and thanked him heartily, and made him besides Captaine Generall of all his Kingdomes. But the Captaine Aria Diz, which knew the truth, and was present when the Abexine brought the head, and knew besides, that Peter of Lyon had kept the left eare of the Moorelb King (which he cut off when he flac him) faid to the King: I befeech your Highnesse, command to fearch the head how many eares it hath : they looked and found but one alone. Aria Dez faid, A better Gentleman then that, 60 hath kept the other which wanteth, which killed him, and cut it off, when ye all looked from the Mountaine what we did, and that other did counfell you to runne away; and fent prefently to call Peter of Lyon, that he should bring the eare of the Moorif King : Hee came and she well the eare, which appeared well to be the fellow of the other. And moreover, Peter of Lyon faid.

That the Abexine should show the weapon wherewith he flue him, and what wounds he cause him, to the which he answered nothing : Then faid Peter of Lyon; Let them goe seeke the dead bodie, and they shall find that he was slaine with a shot, with which the Abexine cannot shoote: they went to fee, and found it to be true, whereof the King and all his men were much alhamed. and that his Captaine in great difgrace.

We refled there neere two moneths: while we were there, the King fent the newes of the A difference victorie to his mother, which was a daies journey from the place where we left her; and he fent among the her word, that the should come where we were, that we might all resoyce and give God thanks Portugals about her word, that the indust come where we because I gave order to that which was done, and was the their Captain, together, and to congratulate mee, because I gave order to that which was done, and was the their Captain, is here omit-To cause of that victorie. The Queene comming within a league where we were, the King knew tod. it, and without telling me any thing, went with his Horiemen to meet her. The way where- The Queenes by the was to come into the Campe, for the space of a Bow shot, was hanged with Curtaines comming and of Silke, and Tefters of the fame, and on the ground rich Couerlets. They gaue meate in abun-entertainment, dance to all that would haue it; and this lasted one whole weeke. The Queene comming by the way, the came to fee me to my Tent, and asked me, What evill was it the had done to mee. that I being her Father, went not to meet her with her Sonne : I answered, That the fault was not mine, but her Sonnes, which would not take me with him, neither told me any thing.

Hauing paft some daies, the King determined to goe and recouer the Prouinces of Mare, Ioa, Countiliare-Guidime and Goiame, which the King of Zeila had in his power, and gaue order to beginne the duced.

20 Warre in the Confines of Ioa, which is a great and rich Kingdome; and faid, that I and his Mother should remaine, taking our rest in his Countries. The King departed with all the Armie, as well of Portugals as of his owne men, to a Countrey called the Monafterie of Sion: where there are very tall men of stature, which seeme Giants. These as they were yet under subjecti. Tall men like on of the Moores of Zeila, would not obey King Gradem, although they were his, neither Giants. would they give him provision for his men. Alfonfus of France feeing their disloyaltie, faid to the Captaine Arias Diz : What doe you Sir : Wherefore do we flay longer on thefe, but enter the Captaine Arms Dis. White the two Faukonets, with the which, and with the small shot they They yeels. affaulted them, and peppered them in such fort, that they faid, the Portuguls were no humane men, for they fought not like men. Finally, they chofe for their best Market to yeeld them-30 felues, and fent to tell the King, that they delinered themselues into his power. And they also requested him, he would command the *Portugals*, not to take from them their Wives, and their Daughters, nor steale their Goods, for they had heard that they yied so to doe.

Datguters, nor reast users through the they had then the time of Gradens, That hee flowled not thinke that This was the the King of Zeila mus dead, for he remained in his stead, and he cause he should not thinke that those king of deal, were worded of a Com-heard, which threatneth and dark nathing, he would presently come to seeke him. Departing from thence, they marched fo long, till they came to a very great River, where they marched to meete the enemy, and to passe the River, they invented a good invention of Leather Boats, which they made in this fort. They killed many Beeues, and with the skinnes li- Leather Boats,

ned the Boats of Wood, in which they paffed the men : the Horfes did swim over, for it was 40 not so deepe to hinder the paffage. This being done, men went ouer to fasten some Cords on the other fide, for to passe our by them : This they did halfe a league distant from the Campe of the enemies, and by night that they might not be seene. Hauing passed ouer the Riuer, they Kingos Add fet vpon the Campe of the enemies, of the which they killed many, and among them the King flaint. of Aden. But there dyed also many Christians, and King Gradens was also hurt, and like to haue beene flaine, with the great diforder that hee and his had, because they knew not how to fight by night: for they disperie themselves through the Campe, and could not keepe together, nor helpe themselues, and therefore many of them were slaine. The Moores seeing that their King was flaine, fet themselves to flight; The Portugals followed the chase of the Moores, till Ang was mane, to themseuse of many the back against the Kings wife of Adm: and the 50 King gaue them great chankes, and praifed God highly, for that h great and affigued victorie;

and faid, that he would have of all, no more but the Sword and the Horfe of the King of Aden, and that all the rest should bee the Portugals, as well that which they tooke in the pursues, as that which they found in the Campe, which was wonderfully rich, that all the Portugals fhould divide it among themselves brother-like, seeing they had got it; and for himselfe and his, he would have no more, then the peace and reflauration of his Kingdomes, which by the vertee and Armes of Portugall he had recovered. But as touching the Queene of Aden, called Dinia Anhara, because it were not decent that she should be capture of any man lesse then a King, that Darse and Bale

he thought good if the would become a Christian, that the should bee the Wife of Aria Diz, guen Aria and that he gaue them for them, both the Kingdomes of Doror and Bale, which had been hers, Dry 6c and tooke for himfelte onely Oyeere.

d. IIII.

Discusts betwirt the Negus and the Portugals: ARIAS DIZ his treacherie. Battell betwixt the Abassines and Portugals. Their exile; ARIAS his death.

Feer the King Gradeus had reconered his Kingdomes, and was in peace, I tarried that he should solemnize and approve more the obedjence which he had promised to the chiefe Bishop, and the conformitie of faithfull Christians, celebrating the Sacraments. 10 and vling the Rites and Ceremonies of the Romane Church. But hee as he promited it with an euill will, so he let it be forgotten, and did the contrarie. I fent him word, that the next day I would come and visite him : but he made no account of me, nor of my mellage, nor of my comming. I fentalio to the Captaine Areas Diz, that I was come thither, that he should come to receive me with his men, as it was fit, and they had for a cultome. Hee came the next

day in the morning with one hundred and fiftie Portugals: which came to take my bleffing. entertaining and making great offers vnto me: and especially Arias Diz.

The King comming neere where I was, neither hee nor his did make any motion, but were looking out at their Tents and Standings at vs, as in mockage of vs. Arias Diz came to mee. and faid: The euil will, Sir, which the King beareth you is well feene. And with this began 20 to put forth his Horse, and to skirmish. Some other of the companie, when they saw him feast. Gradeus his in- did even the same. But Manuel of Accunia, Gaffar of Sofa, and Deniz of Lima, which came neere me, faid vnto me : Sir, dissemble with this tawnie Moore; for know yee, that all this which he doth, and sheweth outwardly, is malice and decest: for his heart is as the Kings heart; and he will not flay long without flowing the figne of it in the Colours of our Lord and King; therefore trust him not, but redouble still upon him; for all that he doth and fayth, is also feigned and falle. The same did Lope of Almansa, lames of Abrem, and other honest men. Whereof I remayned much amazed : for I held him for no such man: but Gentlemen, and good men telling it me, made fome impression in me to beleeue it. At this time, wee drew neere where the King was, and difmounted, and I went to the Courtains where he was, and I heard him fay, speaking to to Arias Diz. Marke my Captaine generall , doe not carrie any more in my Kingdomes that Ancient of the King of Portugall: but carrie mine, and leave that. Arias Diz answered him: I will not leave the Colours of the King of Portugall. Then the King commanded a Page of his to take them, and carrie them away from thence, and Arias Diz consented, and fuffered him to carrie them away. But a Portugall Gentleman, called James of Brito, tooke the Colours from the Pages hand : and because he would not let him goe, strooke him with his sword ouer the head, and made him leave them perforce.

When I law that, I returned to my lodging, and all the Portugals with me, and the Traitor Arias Diz alfo. Sending him away with this answere, Arias Diz remayned telling mee by way of counfell. Sir, I know not how well it is to tpeake hardly, and anger the King Gradeus, 40 for wee are in his Kingdomes, farre from our Countries. At this, many Portugals arole, and faid wnto him, that certainly it appeared, that he was a Traitor to the Crowne of Portugall, and his King; for his words and deeds declared it: therefore that hee was not to bee Captaine of the

Portugals.

Hee answered, that he was Captaine of the Emperour of Ethiopia, and not of the King of Portugall: therefore that they could not call him a Traitor for ipeaking in fauour of the irruice of the faid Emperour, to whom he did owe that and much more, for fauours which he had done to him, and marrying him with Dinia Ambar late wife of King Mahomet, and giving the title of his Countries. Whereunto I answered, taying: Arus Diz, I haue notice, that you have forlaken the Faith of the Baptisme, which you received among the Christians Catholicke, according 50 to the vie of the Romane Church; and were baptifed againe with the Baptifme of the Heretikes and Scismatikes of Alexandria, and have changed the name of Arias into Marke. When he heard me say thus, without any tarrying he rose vp melancholie, and went to his lodging, with some few Portugals that accompanied him.

By this time the King fent me word, that he requested mee that wee would come the next day, because that day it was alreadie late, and there was no time for it. Entring into his Tent, the King did not arife, neither tooke my bleffing, as he was wont, neither gaue mee my feat in my accustomed place, but onely bowed his head a little, and let me stand. I feeing his new and vnaccustomed discourtesie, said vnto him. Not onely, King Grudens, to the King of Portugall art thou vnthankefull; whose Colours thou didft delpife, with the which, thou refto- 60 redit thy effate: but also to lefus Christ art thou vnreuerent in my person , which doe reprefenthim, thou also wilt bee cast away, and bee accorfed and excommunicite, if thou does returne to the Herenes of the Iacobites and Disfeorians of Egypt: the which for their finnes and disobedience which they committed, rebelling against the holy and right Apostol ke

Sea of Rome were loft, and are Captines to the Turkes, and Inhiels : and fo shalt thou bee, if thou wilt not amend. Hee answered me, that they of Egypt, and of the Soft of Dioscorus were not Heretikes, but that we were Heretikes that worthipped foure Gods, as the Arrians; and that if I had not beene his God-father, as I was, he would command me to be quartered. And having passed other talke of this qualitie, I returned to my Lodging, where I found many Portugals that tarried for me, to whom I gaue account of what had passed with the King.

Being in the Campe with the Portugals, the King fent me word , that I should not meddle in commanding in the Campe of the Portugals, nor make any alteration in them, for as much as they were delinered to Marke, his Captaine generall; and that by him hee would they should Io be governed, and by no other. I fent him word , that the Portugals were subject to the King of Portugall, who had delivered them vnto mee; and I, at the request of King Gradens, delivered them to a Portugall, called Arias Dix. But the Portugals faid they would not, neither was it their honour to have for their Captaine an Heretike and a Traitor; neither would they fight under any other Colours but of Portugall: and befides , feeing that King Gradens did not mainraine that which he had promifed, which was the obedience to the chiere Bifhop of Rome. Succeffor of Saint Peter, that they would not ferue him, but would returne with mee to Portne all.

Peter Street went with this answere to the King: and faid moreover, that if hee would not obey the Church of Rome, and publikely so proclaime, that we all would leave him, and returne to Portugal, as we faid. Whereunto he answered, that he was King, and Lord of that Coun-20 trey, and that we should not goe out of it, except he were willing; for he would that Marces

his Captaine generall should have the command and jurisdiction over the Portugals.

The Portugals determined to die, or defend themselves from the tyrannie of the ingratefull man, and of a Traitor: and they asked me, what means we should have for to give the battell to fo great a number of people. When I faw their determination, I faid vnto them ; Sonnes, doe not diffnay, for in the greatest tribulations is God, and fo will lie be with vs in this. And because our Campe had three entries whereby they might affaille'vs, wee tooke order to fortifie them with some Munition, because when it were so necessarie, were would fortifie our selues within, and defend our felues as well as we might. The munition that we laid in those entries The Portugals was pots full of Powder hid, against the enemies did come in to set them on fire and burne them, affault the 30 as in effect it was done with their great hur: , as prefently I will fay : but before they affaulted Kings Campe, vs. between eleuen and twelue at night, our Hori-men went out, and fet vpon the Kings Camp: which fulden feare, and the noise of Trumpets, and Shot , did fuch effect, that all of them fee themselues to flight, and had altogether beene ouercome, if the number of our men had beene

fufficient to have followed them : but because they were but few, they retyred themselves

The King in this hurliburly was feeking for a Horfe to flee with the reft : but feeing that our men were retyred, quieted himfelfe : and when it was day, hee commanded we should bee affaulted. Euery one fet in a readinesse, both his and ours, his Targettiers came, before which were the most and the best men that they had, and affaulted we by the three places which gave 40 entrance where the Powder was, where our men tarried for them; and comming with great Powder plos furie, and cries, our men fayning weakneffe retyred inward, and gaue them leave to come where the Powder was : comming vnto it they gate fire, wherewith many were burnt and flaine, the reft fled away scalded and findged. When the King faw the loffe of his people, and the deceit of the hope which he had, he tare his rich griments that he ware, which among them is a ligne of great forrow, and fent prefently to call Marke. He came, and having taken counsell between both, they agreed that they could not ouercome the Paringals by warre, without comming into ereat danger, and want : therefore, they determined to take them by fleight and deceit , in this manner. They fent to tell vs, that he repented him much of his errour, because God had manifestly shewed him, how much he had erred in not accomplessing that which he had promise so fed and fwome vnto me, but that now he would accomplish it, and doe all that I would : and therefore he defired vs we would doe no more harme to his people : to the which we answered, that the cuill we did was not by our wills; but that they had given a cause thereunen, whereof it grieued vs very much: therefore if hee did vs reason of himfelfe; ind did accomplish that

which he had promifed to God and to vs, that we would doe that which alwaies we had done.

which was to ferue and lone him as a Father and Lord: but if hee would have any other thing,

that we hoped in lefs Christ, that he feeing our justice, would defend va from his tyrannie, and from the malices of Marke the Traitor. This answere the King imparted to Marke, to the Two fleights which he replied, that to come the fooner to an agreement with them, hee should vie two policies : one was, to command all his Subjects, that none should ferue vs, fier proude vs of any thing 60 necessarie, under paine of having his eyes pulled out for a Traitor : theother, to offer and give vs

much money and rewards, not onely promited for hereafter, but prelently, for on the one tide, the necessitie; and on the other, the conetousnesse would ouercome vs. The King did fo, and fent vs preferrly an affurance with much money for the men, and for

mee a great Present of Beeues and Muttons, and other things for prouision, promising mee that

all should bee done at my will, and that against Christ-masse next, which was within four moneths, I should celebrate generall Orders, as before wee had agreed. Besides the assurance of the King. The Bernagaez I face, did promise that he would be on our side, and fauour vs by himfelfe, and with all his power : and more he laid, and fware that he perceived the King to be very recentant for the wrongs he had done vs. We being about to goe where the King was, Marte came with the Portugals that were on his fide, and were with him, to accompanie vs, and so we departed altogether, and going by the way, I defired Marke that there might be no discord betweene him and the Portugals, he promifed to to doe. The King shewed to great contentment of our friendship, that he came out to receive vs out of the Campe, with all the great men of his Court : and all his men both high and low were very joyfull.

Within a few houres, there came to me Baltafar Montera, Antonie Ferrera, Simon of Andrade. Iames of Brito, Antonie Vaz, and faid to mee, that the treason which they had invented for ve was discouered : for they had bidden them make them readie to goe banished every one to his Countrey, farre distant one from another, charging the Lords of those Countries, to keepe them in good fafeguard; all by counfell of the Traitor Marke. I went to the Lords of the Countries which carried them, and defired them to intreate them well, the which faid to mee, Father, know you that Marke commanded vs to carrie these men in Irons, and give them other apparell of Slaues, and vie them like Slaues; but for your fake, which are our Father, we will deale better with them. And I went prefently to the King, and faid vnto him : Now Sir, what shall I doe? I fee you doe not fulfill your word, and you lend my Brethren prisoners. The King answered 20 me with a good countenance. Father, there shall no wrong be done to you; but because it is neceffarie for vs to prepare to the Warres, which the Gallas make vpon mee, as you know, in the meane while you shall remayne in the Countrey of the Gaffates, praying to God for mee, and you shall eate the Rent of that Countrey, which will suffice well for you and yours, for the last dayes I being retyred there is fufficed mee and all mine : and I will command to doe you much honor, and to obey you as mine owne Person : and against Christ-masse, if it please God, I comming with health, as I hope, you shall celebrate your Orders, as we have agreed. And astouching thefe men, which I command to depart from hence, let it not grieup you, for I doe it to haue no mutinic among the reft. In the means while came Marces in, and faul to the King, I befeech your Highnesse to fend to Alexandra for to lorke the Patriarch ; he answered him : Blessed bee 13 thou of God, Marke my friend, That is done alreadie.

The Patriarch fent to the Countrey of the Caffates.

The King commanded a Captaine of his to carrie mee to the Countrey of the Gaffates , and should give me the possession of it, and command the Inhabiters of it that they should acknow. ledge me for their Lord, and refort to me with the Rents which they accomformed to pay to the King, for so his Highnesse commanded it. I carried with me all my servants, free and bond; and Tearried befides a man of that Country exiled Francisco Mathems, which had been a feruant of the Ambaffadour Matthews, which Queene Helena lent to Portugal, in the time of the King Don Manuel, your great Grand-father of glorious memorie, and had beene with the same Ambaffadour in Portugall. I gave him the charge of all my boufe, because he was discreet, and had good knowledge. Taking leave of the King, I travelled eight dayes iourney, for it is fo much 40 whence the King remay ned, to the Countrey of the Coffares, which lyeth betweene many high A rough coun- and rough Hills, and is inhabited with a very barbarous people. After we lad passed the Mountry and bartaines, we dedocated to a great Valley, so deepe, that it seemed we descended into Hell, and the barous people. Hills remayned to high that they feemed to reach to Heauen. The Captaine, which carried me, commanded all the principall men of that Country to meet, and faid before me, that the King commanded that they should take mee for their Lord, and to pay mee his Rents, but that they should keepe me well that I went not away from thence , nor returne to the Kings Court , and they promifed fo to doe. ...

Gallas, as he had faid to me, and came from thence weared, and almost ouer-come without do- so Aris or Make ing any thing to his profit. Within a light while Make dyed, and hee commanded him to bee buried in a Church, where the Kings of that Countrey were buried, with great pompe; he and his shewing to great forrow for his death, as though he had beene their owne Brother, or Father, and so they faid, that in him dyed all their refuge and defence of their Countries. Knowing of the death of Marke, I determined my returne to the Court. And on a day, I commanded to take a Captaine that kept vs, for some fault that I found against him, and commanded to pull him A plot by fea- by the haire and to buffet him , and to binde him hand and foot , and commanded my Caliuerring the peo- men to floot off their Peeces neere vnto him, which was to afraid that hee bepift and berayed ple, to cleape. himfelfe, and defired me for Gods take to loofe him, and he promited me to goe to farre from the

I was in that Countrey feuen moneths, in the which the King went to make warre vpon the

place where I was, that he would never fee me, nor I him. I commanded to loofs him, that hee might give newes to the rest, as in effect he did. And I commanded the shot, which were ten or twelve, to shoot off many shots, which resounded among the Hills that they feemed thunder; and by mischance they killed two men of those with the bullets which they shot at randome. Wherewith we skared them in such manner, that they

fled, and vnhabited the Countrey where we were : and the Captaines sent to defire me, that I would see where I lifted, for they promifed me not to hinder my journey. We made fuch hafte on our journey, that about evening Prayer wee had gone a dayes journey, and made an end of comming out of the Mountaines. Two dayes before we came where the King was, we found a Portugall, called Franciscus Magellanes, who came from seeing certaine Lands which the Kine had given him ; for he gave Lands to all the Portugals. And after I told him how I came, he told me of the death of Marke, and how for his death the King had made one lames of Figuerede Cantaine of the Portugals, which within a few dayes died of a laske; and before his death, hee had made two Captaines together, one for the right hand, another for the left; for hee had or-

10 dayned that the Portugals should guard him, and goe alwaies neere vnto him in two Squadrons: of the which he made Captaines, Gaft ar of Sofa, and Lope of Almanfa. Which Lope of Almanfa, because he was a stranger, and of those that saucured the partie of Marke, the Portugals would not that hee should bee their Captaine, and Gaspar of Sofa remayned; wherewith I was very glad : for this Gafar of Sofa was my Neplew, and my friend. Wee went all in companie till wee came neere where the King was, and there wee separated our selues. Hee went so tell the newes to the Portugals that were with the King.

hands of those that carried me.

The Portugals, as soone as they knew of my comming, came all to fre mee with great iov. The King also fent presently to visit me by his Page, and tent mee word, that hee was very plad with my safe arrivall, for he did greatly miffe me. He commanded to give me apparell, and be-20 fides, fine hundred ounces of gold; and I remayned more, because the Portugals delired me then by mine owne good will, because I perceived that he did separate me from him, by reason of the other Patriarch, which was come from Alexandria, and was every day to come to the Court, and he doubted that we should meete, and that we would make some tumple.

The con ming of another Patriarch. The Calide killed. Of the Gallas and other Provinces, Subject and bordering on the Negus, and rarities there obferned. The escape and returne of the Author.

pter the King departed, the Afmache Robel came one day to mee . and faid vnto mee : Father, I being so much yours, as you know, will discouer vnto you a secret that imports you very much; but it shall be, you pleighting your faith vnto me neuer to be-wray me, for if the King doe know it, he will command to cast me to his Lions. Sir, you are to know, that because you are of the obedience of the Church of Rome, the King will not that you be Patriarch of his Countrey, and fent to Alexandria to feeke another Patriarch of his Another Paobedience, the which is come alreadie, and is in Debarus, on the way toward the Kings Court, triarch, therefore the King will not carrie you with him , because hee will possess the other with your

40 charge; and befides, because hee is much grieued at you, because you made him sweare to obey **Rome,** and publikely to proclaime that enery one should obey him. Now see what you will doe, for if you will be gone, I will absent my telfe from hence, that the King may not say, that I was confenting to your going. I thanked him heartly for the warning, and faid vnto him, that hee faw, feeing it was so, how much it behoued me to goe to the Court; therefore that hee should abfent himselfe as he said, whilest I departed, Coing on my journey, I found a Peringal, called Manuel Almere, Groome of the Chamber of the King your Grand-sather; by whom I sent word to the Capraine Gaifar of \$9/a, that I walgoing to the Court about a matter very impor-tant to them all, whereof I would tell him when I faw him; for he was certaine, that the King would not be pleafed with my comming, I requested him, that hee with all the Portugals should 50 aide me when it were needfull.

The next day comming neere the Campe, I found another Portugall, called Laurence Gonfales, which told me that the King knew my comming alreadie, and commanded they should take me, and carrie me to a Rocke where I might end my life, not being able to come out from thence. The Author And because your Highnesse may know, what Rocke it was where he commanded me to be car- sentenced to a ried; it is thus, That in the Countrey there be certaine high Hills, ouer-pearing the Countrey Rocke. with great advantage, and all about steepe like a broken Rocke, so that in no wife they may bee ascended, but by very narrow wayes made of hand; and on the top are great Plaines, some of a league and more, and some of seuen or eight leagues, with very good Fields, and Fountaines of good waters on the top, and other dispositions for people to line in them, as in effect there doth, 60 But the wayes are fo dangerous, that none can come in or out from those Rocks, without the consent of them that keepe them. These Rocks serue for Fortresses, and therefore in that Countrey there are no walled Cities. To one of these, did King Gradess command mee to bee carried by two of his Captaines, to make an end in it, without any hope of comming out. As foone as the Paring als knew that they carried mee prisoner, they came presently to rescue mee from the

Within a little while, the King came also with his men, and pitched his Campe netre vino vs, and sent word to Gaptar of Sofa, that he had not done well in taking me from his Captaines. And he fent him word againe, that hee knew no error in his action, feeing hee had delivered his Prelate from the hands of Tyrants, the which for doing good to vnchankfull persons suffered troubles and injuries. And that his Highnesse knew very well how much bee did owe the Patriarch, and how much fauour God had shewed him for his fake; and how, while he was in the Armie, and they did obey him, God gaue him alwayes the victorie against his enemies; and after we put him from vs, and dealt vncourteoufly with him, were ouer-come of the Gallas, which entred in his Campe, and came to flaughter his men neere to the Kings Tent, having no body to reint them; and his Highnelle faw himfelfe in fuch a danger, that he fled from them with great to difhonour. And finally, hee let him vinderstand, that hee and all the other Portugals would not for fike the Patriarch, which was their Father and had brought them from Portugall, and praved for them to God. The King seeing the Portugals resolution, he sent to defire mee to see my selfe with him : I faid I would, and the Portugals faid they would goe with me, and so they did. The King received me with fo great curtefie that I milliked it. I gave my hand to the King which asked it of me, and promited him not to goe from the Portugals, nor from his Kingdomes without his licence. Of the which hee was contented; and gaue mee for my maintenance fo much Land, that the Rent of it was well worth twentie thousand Ciuzados euery yeere, and ordayned that the Patriarch Ioleph, which hee had commanded to come from Alexandria, should bee his Patriarch, and I of the Portugals onely; and commanded that Franciscus Matthews, which was my Aduge (as here an Archdeacon) and all the other Officers which I had, should

ferue Ioleph. The King, to bring the Patriarch loseph to peaceable possession in his Countrey, thought it

Order for

both Patris

1366

Custome of inheri ance. it included in

* Aluarez bath an inft moe to the contrarie. The Gallas. Suimbas or neration of or the same

necessare that I should be absent with all the Portugats, and therefore ordayned to place vs in some part of his kingdome out of the Produince, which he most frequented, which is called A. nome parcor nis ainguome one of the Troutines, which he may requerted, which is called A-mars, where then he was tarrying for the Patriatch Iofoph. And to bulle the Partsagds in formathing, he fant them to the Promince of Darry, which neighboureth you the Gallar his enemis, to lye there in Garrison in the frontier. The Proutine of Darry is also neighbour to the Kington the Callar his enemis, to lye there in Garrison in the frontier. The Proutine of Darry is also neighbour to the Kington. dome of Zeila. But the Captaine Calide was not contented that they were placed there, bewhich fiter the fit tell cause he tooke away his luning to give it vinto them. And therefore determined to kill them, or to men it a treat came in too act of the Country. This Captaine was a great Lord, and mightie : for befides this recoved tom drive them out of the Country. the Medicto Prouince of Doars, being great and firong, he had also the Prouince of Bale, and the Captaine of Hadis for his neighbour and friend. From which Countries hee joyned feden hundred Horfemen, fixe hundred Archers, and fixe thousand Targetiers. He leuied these men so secretly, that almost hee came one morning before day to set vpon vs. But howsoener, wee alwayes kept a watch, and his men feared vs, and doubted the fetting vpon vs, they were perceiued of our men, and could not give the affault that they would. And became the Calida was knowne by the deuice he wore, our men ordayned that feuen Caliuer men should haue an eye at him particularly. and shoot at him; for he being dead, his men were quickly ouer-come. So they did : and as The Captaine he came in the fore-frone, knowne among the reft, before the battell began he was flaine. 40 With his death some of his men made signes of peace, these were of those Lands which the

King had given vs : which fent vs word that they were our fubiects , and would obey vs , and bay vs our Rents as the King commanded, for that Rebellion was not mooued by their will. The reit flood full without doing any thing, till we fet vpon them, and made them flye, and we flue fome of them. With the which newes the King was very glad, for he alwaies was doubtfulof the Calide, for he was the neerest Heire to the Kingdome by his Mothers fide. I say by his Mothers fide, for by the Father he could not be according to the custome of that Countrey. The custome Alas ex pli- is, that all the male children of the Kings, except the Heires, affoone as they be brought up, they fend them presently to a very great Rocke, which stands in the Province of * Amara, and there this Prounce, but perhaps in they pafe all their life, and neuer come out from thence, except the King which reigneth de- go alorger fenie, parteth this life without Heires, for then they bring from the Rocke him that is neerest, to come and raigne. The which neither bringeth Wife 'nor Children from thence, if he hathany there, but they remayne vpon the Rocke, and hee marrieth in the Kingdome with another

By the death of the Calide of Doaro, were rested foure monethes quiet, at the end of the which the King fent vs word, that we should stand vpon our guard, for he had intelligence, that the Gallas determined to come vpon vs on a fudden, for they devited to our come vs by what-Zumba, a Ge- focuer meanes they could : because they had not, nor all the Enemies of Presbyter John any other griefe or annoy, but that which we did vnto them. Thefe Gallas inhabit in the Countries borfor lied, like, dering to Magadoxo: they are a fierce Nation, they make warre with their Neighbours, and 60 with all people, no more then onely to destroy them, and disinhabit the Countries:in the Countries where they ouercome, they kill all the men, they geld the young men, the old women they kill, the young they keepe for their vie and feruice. It feemeth, that from hence came the national series Saimbas, which came deftroying all Gainea, for in their craeltie they are like. Hearing the

warning which the King sent vs, we beganne to prepare our selues with things necessarie for the Warre, especially of Powder, for with the principally did we our parts, and supplyed the forces which we wanted. We had great flore of prouision to prouide our felues with Powder, for in the Countrey there is great flore of Salt-peeter, Brimstone, and many Osiers to make Coales wherewith we made it very fine, we commanded also to rid the Countrie of the women, and youngmen, and all the people that could not fight ; and the rich Inhabiters fled also with the fe great and small, with feare of the crueltie of the Gallas.

One day they appeared. They were many without number, and they came not difordered The Galler aplike barbarous people: but close in troupes like Squadrons, and assoone as they had light of yes, proach, to they staved tarrying for the rest, and from thence they came all in one bodie to pitch neere vnto vs. in a distance where our shot could doe them no hurt. We because they were many, and wee few, went not out to receive them : but remayned in our Campe. We were at the most an hundred and liftie (for the rest were alreadie dead, almost all in the Warres, and some of sicknesses which were not io many, as it feemed they might have beene for our men, that Countrie being hot and fituated vinder the Sunne) and fo returned to India with Manuel of Accunia, affoone as the King of Zeila was flaine, for they thought that by his death all the contention was ended. Our Campe flood on a Hill, where we maftred the other grounds, and fubdued those that did affault vs. There we defended our felues ten or twelue dayes tarying for the King. In which time wee flue many of their men with shot and fire-workes: for they came neere vs without 20 any feare, that we milt no affault of theirs, nor any stroke of ours that weeded not bestow it well-

By this time our Powder failed vs, and the King came not; wherefore we were faine to leave the place and goe to feeke him. The Gallas did not follow vs, for peraduenture, they defired alfo to goe from vs, and I doubt not, but that if we had had more forces, that wee had made them retyre in despite of them. By this time the King came, and hearing that the Gullas remayined Lords of the Countrey, he fell in a fwound, without any fence for a great space. And atterward wept like a child, and faid. Great is my finne, feeing it hath done me thus much hurt. Wonder how Hofe not my wits, thinking on the great loffe that I receive. As in effect hee loft three great Kingdome s: two of them, Bale and Doaro, as bigge as Castile and Portugal, and Hadia, great annuaums s. two a times, as we see that a reacheth to the borders of Melinde. Lofte of three

30 And in this Countrie is great store of Myrrhe, Incense, and Gumme Aunime. Some Portugal great kinganswered him. Let not your Highnesse grieue, for God can remedie it all, and will remedie it, domes, Bale if you will reconcile your selfe with the Patriarch Don Iohn Bermudez, which is the true Pa. Donoand He triarch, and not regard the other Schismaticke. Whereunto he gaue no Answere, but set on forward, and faid vnto me that we should follow him. And because he held at that time the waree with the Gallas to be vnfortunate; Hee determined to goe and see some Kingdomes of his Empire, which yet he had not seene, and at his returne to set vpon the Gallas, if yet they were not retyred to their Countries: for they came but to spoile and desiroy, and so returne,

We transiled toward the South-west from Dogre seuen or eight journies, and came to a Kingdome of Christians, called Oggy, in the which raigned a good man named Frier Michael , Bro- Ogg, thefore 40 ther-in-law to King Gradess, and his Tributarie. Who made vs very welcome, and good enter-and armour tainment to the people. This Kingdome hath fine thousand Horsemen, of the which fixe hundred are great Horse and harnassed, and the rest are light Horsemen, and they ride on the bare Horse, It maketh also ten thousand Footmen : the which fight with Darts which they throw, and the Horsemen with long Speares like ours. The armings for their Horses are of Elkes skins and the nortemen with long operate in a control of the control of Hand-mils, which women doe grind with. This Kingdome hath a Prouince of Gentiles, called Great G Gorague, which bordereth with Quiloa, and Mangalo. These Gentiles of Gorague are great Wit- ress. ches, and doe divine in the Inwards, Guts, and Entrailes of the Beafts that they facrifice. They by their Witch-crafts make to appeare that the fire doth not burne in this manner. They kill

an Oxe with certaine Ceremonies, and anounted with the Tallow of that Oxe they command 50 to make a great fire, and cause to seeme that they goe into it, and that they sit downe in a chaire, and so fitting at leifure in that fire they divine, and answere to what is demanded of them with

The Goragues doe pay to their King enery years for Tribute, two Lions of Gold, and three Gold, Whelpes of Gold and one Ounce of Gold, and certaine Hennes with their Chickens alto of Abailt fo cale Gold: which all wayeth as much as eight men can carrie; and this Gold is fine and good. They led. pay him also fixe Buffes laden with bate Silver. They also pay one thouland Beeues aline; and many Lions, Ounces, and Elkes skinnes. In this Countrey is great flore of Ciuet, * Sandalos, * Or Dases,

* Blacke Wood and Amber. The men of this Prouince fay, that there come to traif que in it Of Eben 60 White men: but they know not of what Nation, if Portugals, or Turkes, or any other wood.

Weltward from the Kingdome of Oggy lyeth the Kingdome of the Gaffates Tributaries allo, Gaffates have been have been The Goffates are Gentiles, and vulgarly it is faid that they were lemes. They are a barbarous and lent. Leecee

euil people, rebellious & quarrelfom. There be many of them in other Provinces of the Empire, but in every place they are held for Strangers, & different from other people, and abhorred of them. as the lemes are here. In this Kingdome they are Lords, and have no other Nation among them. Remile Catho. but some Christians which separated themselves from the Abexmes, at the time they denved Romin Catto-likes if they be the obedience to the Apostolike Sea : which Christians even now doe say and protest to beein not as multible the obedience of the fame Sea. The Gaffates doe possesse in these parts a great and rich Country. as their wood.

of much Gold, and of some good Commodities, especially of fine Cotton Clothes. Within the
Countrey they have spacious and plenteous fields. They say that in this Countrey there is an invisible Wood, and it maketh men inuisible. The King when hee came to this Countrey, commanded to make warre vpon the people of the Countrey, and to enter with force of Armes into In their Towne, because they had rebelled since the death of his Father, and would not pay him his Tributes, nor reknowledge him for their Superiour. The G. ffates came at this, and a morning before day affaulted the Campe of the Abexines, and flue many of them. The Portugals were neere the Kings Tent, for they were his Guard: when they heard the cry and flitte . they came being alreadic almost day, and draue the Gaffates out of the Campe killing many of them : and

The Portugals here in their Townes found great riches, wherewith they returned ioviall and rich. They found Bezutos, which are like fine Quilts : and they found Cotton-cloathes very fine like Lawnes : and they found Cypreffes to fine, that a piece of thirtie or fortie yards would be contayned within ones hands. They found also store of Gold in Pots, and Pans, and buried 20 under their hearthes in the houses where they make their fire : for there they vie to keepe it hidden as most secret, and they themselves discovered it to our men, because they should not kill them. The King would make no long tarrying there, for his pretence was not to do them much hurt, but onely to threaten them : and because Winter came on wee left that barbarous people quickly, and went the way to Damute, which lyeth almost to the West from these Gaffates. On the West fide bordereth presently with the Gaffates, whereof I spake before, the King-

Goldand as bigge as Eem not that whichthe Painters prefent with a horne in the Amazons. Another tale of the Queene

Griffons. ftrous fooles & happly the

dome of Damues, which standeth vpon the River of Nilm: that River maketh there many turnings and very great. The entrance to this Kingdome is difficult, in respect of the rough and high Rockes that are by the River of Nilss: in the which belides their beeing rough, there are alto made in them at hand certaine passages, in the Rockes broken with the Pick-axe, and shut 13 with gates and kept with men at Armes, in fort that with a little force they relift and defend the entry from their enemies, if against their will they will come in. These Gates, when the Emperour commeth thither, are broken and open freely to all that will passe through them. Damute is a great Kingdome, and hath many subject Prouinces. The principall is of Christians, but some are of Gentiles. In all of them is found great store of Gold and Crystail stone. The Countries are very plenteous and fruitfull, especially those which are neere the River Nilsus, the which have more Mountaines and Rivers then the others. They breed many wild and tame bealts, and ftrange Wormes and Serpents very venemous. They breed Oxen, Horfes, Buffes, Mules, Affes, Sheepe and other Cattell : the Oxen are greater then ours, fo much that some of them are almost as bigge as Elephants. They have great hornes, that some of them doe 40 hold a Tanker of Wine, and do ferue to carrie in, and to keepe Wine and Water, and as the Tankers Barrels here. I was bold to speake this, because Don Roderick of Lima, brought one of these hornes of this hignesse to this Kingdome, in the time of the King your Grand-father, when the Embassadour Tagazano, and the Father Franciscus Aluarez came with him. There is found in these Countries a kind of Vnicorne, which is wild and fierce, fashioned like a Horse, and of the bignesse of an Asse. There be in them Elephants, Lions, Ounces, and other beasts, vnknowne here with vs.

There is neere to Damute, a Province of women without men: which doe live after the manner of the ancient Amazones of Scythia, which in certaine time of the yeere permitted the huge fowles, or companie of some men that were their Neighbours, and of the shildren which they bare, they so fent the men-children to their Fathers, and the women they kept with themselves, and brought them up in their customes and stile. In the same manner doe these of Athiopia, and they burne also their left paps, as those did for to shoot more readily with their Bow , which they we in their Warres, and in Hunting. The Queene of their Women knoweth no man, and for that act bragging Na; is worshipped among them for a Goddesse. They are permitted and preferred, because they say, times reported and preferred, because they lay that they were infiltrated by the Queene of Saba, which went to see King Salomon, In this Prouince of the Women there be Griffons, which are Fowles to bigge that they kill the Buffe, and faith of Miras carrie them in their clawes as an Eagle carryeth a Rabbet. They lay, that here in certaine Mounchestobeleeve, tames very rough, and defert, there breedeth and liveth the Bird ' Phenix, which is one alone in

God create first and after bring into the Arkeall Creatures Male and Female, if this Phenix bee fole? Qui Bauium non odit, and tua carmina Maui. He which belecueth this Phenix, and thele Griffons, &c., may belecue Camas Miracles. Which I speake not 10 difgrace the whole Rorie (which is viefull) but to make the Reader wirie where things are tole upon report, or are aduantagious to Rome or Portugall. Much of this Chapter feemeth to mee Aporypha , but I leave libertie of Taith to the most hecentious Credulities which shall thinke fatter to beleeue then to goe and fee. And yet may Africa have a Prerogative in Raticles, and some seeming In the World, and it is one of the wonders of nature. So doe the Inhabitors of those Countries affirme, that this Bird is there, and they do fee it and know it, and that it is a great and faire Bird. There be other Fowles to bigge, that they make a shadow like a Cloud.

Vpward by Nilm towards the South there bordereth with Damnte, a great Province, called Couche. This is subject to Damute, and Gentiles doe inhabit it: the Prince of it is called by the name of his Title, Axgagos, that is to fay, Lord of the Riches, as in effect it is fo. The Axgagee maketh when he needeth ten thousand Horsemen, and more then twentie the fand Footmen. He carryeth in his Armie one thouland Hand-mils vfed by Women, which doe grind with them the flowre necessary for the people. At the time that wee came to Damute, this

10 Prince was in Armes with the King of Damute: wherefore, the King Gradeus faid to me, that as a Prelate and Mediator of Peace, I should fend him word, how his Maiestie was very angrie against him, by reason of his Rebellion and Disobedience, and that hee determined to destroy him by means of the inuincible and more then humane force of the Portugals, which he brought with him for that purpose. I did even so, and sent him word, that he should obey his Emperour, and bring him his Tributes, and fee him, for I did aff re him that his Maiestie would vie clemencie with him. So he did, and came prefently with a great jumme of Gold, and great quantitie of Beenes, and other prouision in abundance for all the Armie : and many Slaues, Mules and Affes, for the necessary fernice.

The Axgages provided the Emperours Campe with all things in abundance, without wan-20 ting any thing. And at the lait be himfelte came acompanied with many and proper men on Foot and Horle : and he was verie richly attyred. Affione as hee came to the place where hee might be seene from the Emperours Tent, hee dismounted from his Horse, and put off the rich clothes he had on, and remayning in others of leffe val e, he cane to the Tent, and tarryed till they commanded him to come in. After that he entred into the first receit of the Tent (for it was divided with certaine Curtaines) and there he cast himselfe on the ground untill the Emperour commanded him to arife, and received him with good words, and commanded him to apparell himfelfe, and commanded to give him some meate, and there heespake with him behind the Curtaines, without admitting him to his pefence, till after foure dayes he commanded him to come in where he was.

30 For this honor and courtefie that Gradem shewed to Angagee, he faid vnto him, my Lord, I wil doe you one fernice, that neither I nor my Fore-fathers ever did to your Father, nor to the other Emperours your Predeceffors, which is to shew you the riches and secrets of my Countries : for with this condition we doe obey you, that you shall not see them but with our will. Finally, he led vs through his Countries to a great River of fixtie fathome breadth, or more, in whole borders there be many venemous Snakes, so much, that their biting is mortall : but by the goodneffe of God, Nature hath prouided a remedie against that hurt : and it is an Herbe, that groweth in some places of that Country, which is so contrary to the Snakes I spake of , that they Strangeherbe, flye from it as from an Enemie, and came not neere him that hath it about him, neither hath their Poylon any strength where it is, either stamped and laid in a Playster, or the inyce of it,

40 We saw one of these Snakes that made an end of eating a Buffe that it had killed, and the King We saw one of these snakes that make alrend of eating a Dalle that it had allow a sound for commanded to kill it, which had leaves of greate like a great and fat Hogge, which was good for the cold, and other disales. There be others allo, which they call, Of the 'phadow, be- 'Or Canopic cause it hath a skinne on the head, wherewith it couereth a very precious stone, which they fav it hath in her head. On the other fide this River is a barren ground and vinhabited, the kind of it is browne, red and dry, as that which wee fee in some parts of Ribatio. This Earth hath two parts of Gold, and one of Earth, for so it yeeldeth in the melting whereof there bee as ma- Incredible nv workemen in that Countrey, as here there are Smiths, and more, for in that Countrey there quantitie of is more Gold, then here we have Iron. The Lords doe not permit that any Bridge or Boate bee Gold. in the River, that there may no easie passage bee had, and because every one that lifteth may not

50 goe over to gather the Gold. The meanes to passe that River is this. They have Buffes accustomed to passe ouer, and when they will goe ouer to the other side they put them in before, and they goe iwimming fait by their tailes, and they fill certaine Bellowes which they carrie with that same Earth, and tye them about their neckes, and come againe fast by their tailes as they went. In this manner the paffage is not common to all. And those that doe passe are bound to try the Gold they bring, in the melting houses of the Azgagee, for they all are his, for to pay

The King Gradeus to certifie himfelfe better of the truth, commanded some of his mentogo to the other fide, which went ouer, and brought of the earth, which the others brought, the which being tried yeelded as much as the other, and the men of Gradew faid, that all the ground 60 of that Province was of that qualitie, for they went a great way in it, and found it all to be fo, and they faid that the ground is fo hot, that they could not lay them downe to fleere vpon it, but that they fought Caues and Slates on which they lay, and also that there were in the Countrey certaine red and great Ants that did bite them, and were so many, that they did not let them fleepe. We thinking that we had reason to wonder at the great quantitie of Gold which

Eccece 2

1170

we law, the Angages of the Countrey faid to King Gradem, that hee should not wonder, for he would shew him yet more: and lead vs downe the River towards the South-well, travelling ve. Agolden ghering Moun-ry eafily two dayes, at the end of the which hee shewed vs on the other fide the Rivera Mountaine that in places eliftered like the Sunne : and faid vinto ye that all that was Gold.

With these and other entertainments that hee did vnto vs, King Gradeus was so contented. that he determined to make him a Christian : and he defired him he would be one, and that hee would be ever his very great friend. He answered, that with a good will he would be one. The King commanded prefently to prepare his Baptisme, and a Bishop Prelate of the Monasterie. called Debra Libanus Christned him, which is the head of the Monasteries of Amara, and King Gradens was his God-father; and they named him Andrew. There Andrew told King Grade. 14, how he had in those parts certaine neighbours which did eurll neighbour-hood to him, and did ouer-runne his Countries, robbing and killing his Subjects : and requesting him, that seeing God had brought him thither with that Noble people of Portugall, whose fame did feare the people of that Countrey, that he would reuenge him of his enemies which did him great annov. and they would be warned not to offend his subjects any more. The King granted his request. and commanded his men and the Portugals to enter into the Countrey of the enemies, and ouerrunne it, warring against it with fire and sword, robbing and destroying their goods, taking the people captine, and killing those which refisted. This they did for a great space of the Countrey. in the which they found great spoyle of rich Iewels, and much Gold which they brought. This being done, King Gradess returned to Damste, where we heard the men of the Countrey fay, 20 that there were things to bee feene of great admiration; io much, that being told to them that faw them not, they feeme Fables, therefore they are not all to be put in writing. But believe your Highnesse, that with reason is Africa called the Mother of Monsters ; for so it is without doubt, elpecially in the Countrey within, neere to the River of Nilss, where there are Mountaines, Rivers, and delert places, with great disposition of the Countrey and favour of the ayre, and of the heavens to bring forth and produce what it lifteth. Returning from Damue by the River Nilus, downeward toward the Red Sea, wee came to

the Kingdome of Goiame, which bordereth presently upon Damute. Goiame is also a great Kingdome, plentifull, and fruitfull, and rich. It is inhabited with Christians, subsect to Prelbyter Iohn : It hath Gold, but not so much as Dannate. In this Kingdome of Goianne there be cer- 13 taine Rivers, in the which, vnder the Sand are found certaine spongie stones like our Pumicestone, but that they are heavy and yellow; the which being tryed, are converted in Gold, the the most part of them, fauing some little drosse. In this Kingdome of Gorame is the Caradupa of Nilss, whereof Tully maketh mention in the dreame of Scipio, and I will declare to your Highneffe what it is, for it is a great thing, and worthy to be knowne, and it is not all a dreame, as in effect some things that some large tongued men doe speake of this, and of other things which they neuer law, are but dreames.

This Catadapa is a great fall of the River Nilms, from a high Rocke downe. The Rocke is al-

River Nulsa, altogether in a deepe Lake, and close between great and high hils. The quantitie of water is great, for it commeth gathering from more then three hundred leagues to that fall, and it maketh fo great a noyle, that it feemeth a great Thunder, and amazeth them that

most halfe a league high, steepe downe, without any slant or hillocke, from thence falleth the

are not accustomed to it: it soundeth so, that three or soure Bow-shot round about, it stunneth

the eares, in fuch fort, that in all that space there is no other noyse heard, be it neuer so big, but that : neither can the ayre receive any other but that, which filleth all, so doth that found drown

all others, as the greater light doth darken the other smaller. That place is called in the Coun-

trey language, Catadhi, which is to fay, a noyle, or a great found, whence it feemeth that Latines did make the name Catadupa. Westward from these two Kingdome, Damute and Goiame,

towards Guinea, are barten grounds, and euill inhabited; and in them inhabite the Gaffates,

the people of that Empire, to the which they neither give their oath, nor owe any subjection, for almost all of it lyeth to the East of Nilm. There is Gold in those Westerne Countries

towards Guinea, but that they fay, that the Gold of the Land within hath sparkes of Sand, as

and other Gentiles very fanage. These are not well knowne, neither have they dealings with so

Catadusa, by the Ancients placed neerer

The Fals, or

Gaffates.

fome that commeth from the Antillas. By the streame of Nilus below Goiame, neere neighbouring is another Kingdome of Aberine ancient Christians, great and good, called Dembia. In this Nilus maketh a great Lake, which hath in length thirtie leagues, and twentie in breadth, wherein are many small Ilands, all inhabited with Monasteries of religious men, of whom I made mention before. And this is not

the fpring whence Nilss proceedeth, for it commeth from farre aboue. A little below therelyeth another Kingdome, called Agaoa, inhabited with Moores and 60 Gentiles mingled together. This hath a King by it felfe, which neither obeyeth the Prefbyter John, nor the Turke. It extendeth to the Borders of Egypt : vnto Dembia the River Nilus runneth, from the South-west to the North-east, and commeth within thirtie or fortie leagues of the Red Sea, almost opposite to Suaquen: and from thence windeth to the North-west, till he

commeth into the Mediterranean Sea. In this Nooke determined the King Onading well to make a Trench, and turne the River Nilse to the Red Sea, as his Predecessour Ale Belale began to do, Trench interand therefore tent to demand Pioners of the King your Grand-father.

To the Welf from Despis lyeth a Prounce, called Sabia Nabia (which now is of the Moores; to the Red Sea, and they say, that sometime it was of Christians, and it seemeth to bee so; for in it are some Sabia Nabia. Churches found, yet old and ruinated) and prefently joyning with Subia Nubia. More to the West lyeth a Kingdome of Moores, called Amor, and it is very great, where through the Merchants of Carre doe paffe that go to lalefa, and to Mandigna, and other parts of Guinea to feeke Gold : and from Amar they carrie Salt, which groweth there in Mines, which is very deere 10 in Guinea, for the great scarcitie there is of it. Before we doe depart from the River Nilm, in thole Countries whereby the River Nilse runneth, in Iuly, August and September, is the force of Winter, and therefore doth that River increase then, and not at other times, and bringeth great flore of water, for it commeth very farre aboue Damnte, more then two hundred leagues and to his entring into Egypt eight hundred, with turnings and windings which it maketh, and paffeth by great Hils, where it gathereth great flore of water from many Rivers of great waters. All men doe not know the inward parts of Africa, especially aboue Nilas, the which, neither the Inhabitors of it doe know, nor have any notice of it all, for it is very great and difficult

to fearch out; and therefore I digreffed a little from my Historie, to give an accompt briefely to your Highnesse of their things I saw, because peraduenture there is not another in this Coun-20 trey that knoweth them by fight but I, that dwelt in it thirtie yeares or more. And moreover, if it had not beene that journey that I went with the King Gradem, although I had beene there as much more, I had knowne no part of the Countries which about I had rehearfed. Now I will returne to give an account of my telfe, and of my Companions.

King Gradeus, after he had spent in his visittaion tenne or twelue moneths, determined to returne toward the Provinces of Simem and Amara, where the Kings and Emperours of that Simem and Countrey do make their abode and continuance, because the Countrey is better then the other, Anne. and more secure, and because they are borne and naturall from thence. In Amara and Vedremudro are Mines of Copper, Tinne and Lead. Heere are certaine Churches cut out of the hard Rocke, Of the fee which they fay the Angels did make. And indeede, the worke feemeth more then humane, Albarra,

20 The Traffique of these Provinces to Damue, where the Abexines chiefely doe provide themselues of Gold, is for the most part by Iron, whereof there is great store in them, especially in the Prouince of Tigremacon, which is also a neighbour with these: which Iron is so much worth in Damme, that they give for it Gold by weight, quantitie for quartitie. I touched this matter here, because I thinke, that the Kingdome of Damme, and the Province of Conche doe confine with Sofalla, and if from Sofalla they have the Iron that they have need of, they will give their Gold also for it. These Provinces lye to the East from Goiame and Dembia; and the Prounce of Bethmariam remaineth to the South-east, where the King satisfied vs our Rents, which by the comming of the Gallas we had loft in Doare.

The Province of Bethmariam is great, and well inhabited, and of great Rent, all the which The Province of promotion of provinces and the Lands dissided among viaccording to the qualities of the persons. He that received least for Rent to his part, had more then one thousand crown. a yeare; the Captaine had more then tenne thouland, and I had as much. The King gaue vs this Prouince, because it was a Frontier to the Kingdome of the Gafates that were rilen, becaufe that from hence the Portugals might make in-roades in their Countries, and punish them, Riches of the and bring them to obedience. Finally, our journey being ended, and the King feated in the Pro-Pringle. also only the most of the lad given them in the Protings did also kind leave to go and feethe Lands which he had given them in the Protince of Bethmerium. And I demanded also licence to goe to my Countrey of Portugall, as I meant, and he gaue it mee, understanding that of Bethmariam. I asked him this cloaked licence, because I would not breake the oath that I had made vnto him, and because I knew that if I had asked it plainely, he would not have given it me, but rather would have hin-

50 dred my comming, or taken away my life, as he defired many daies before. I was in the Prouince of Bethmarium as long as Winter lasted, which beganne to come on when we retyred our felues; and for to win their fauours and loue of my fubicess, I cherished them all that I could, and did eafe the rents that they were bound to pay me, to make them beneuolent and affected, that they should not bewray me when I would go away: for the King had commanded them all, that they should looke to me that I went not out of the Country. The fame had the King also commended to Gaspar of Sofa, Captaine of the Portugals, the which Diffimulation: for that respect sent many times to visite me; and I for to assure him, made my selfe sicke of the

Gout in one of my Legges, I tooke my bel, faying; That I could not go on foote. In the meane 60 featon, Gaffar of Sofa went to the Court, and I had opportunitie to doe what I defired. And alio, because I would have no hindrance of them of the Countrey, I sent to call some of the principalleit of them, and faid vinto them, that I was very ficke as they faw, and would goe in P.lgrimage to the Monatterie, called Debra Labanus, to commend my selfe to God, and to re- Debra Librarus. queit the religious men there, to pray to God for me; therefore, that I defired them they would

Eccece 3

refort with my Rents to a Servant of mine, with whom I left the charge of my houseand

people.

And because the way to Debarua, directly was by the Countries where the King was, Idetermined to goe by another Countrey distant from thence, and vnhabited, and therefore I commanded to carrie prouision sufficient for my selfe, and seuen or eight persons which I carried with me, whom I most trusted, which I commanded to say by the way, that I went verie sick and that I went to cure my felte to Debarna, where the Countrey and Ayres are more health.

Groffing Nilm. full. By this way I croffed a Nopke of Nilm, where I passed it twice, with great trouble. he. cause the Coasts of the River were very craggy, and with great danger of not letting me passe through certaine gates that are in them, guarded with armed men. Here I commanded my men that they should say, that a Seruant of the King came behind which was knowne, that carried 10 me to Debarns tobe cured : and with this decent they let vs paffe. At laft, with the helpe of God, by the intercession of our Ladie, to whom I commended my felfe, I came safe to Debarna. where certaine Portugals received me which were there, with great ioy and entertainment: the Bernagaez of that Countrey, as soone as he knew that I was there, came to see me. and afked me, laying; What good comming is this, Father, to this Countrey! I answered, that I went very ficke, and that I went to be cured. He faid againe, that he thought I would paffe to the Countries of Franquia, which are neere the Sea; therefore that hee defired me that I would not doe to, but that I should rest a few daies, and returne vnto the King : I answered, that in no wife would I returne to the King, for he knew very well, and all men did know, how great reafon I had to flye from him : but my intention was to dwell in that Countrey, in an hermitage of our Ladie that was there, and end my life there. Seeing that is your will, faid he, I will write to the King, and request him, that he will let you be here, and that I take you to my charge, for to give account of you, that you shall not goe away from hence, and I will fend him word that you are very ficke, therefore trouble not your felfe, for all shall bee done at your will. And faid moreouer, Father, That which I aske you for Gods fake, is, that you will suspend the excommunications, and cease from the curses which you lay vpon the King, and vpon all this Countrey, because some euill may not come to vs ; and besides, that you incense not the King against you. He fent an honest man of his house to the King, which returned in few daies with the anfwer: And it was, that the King was much mooued against me; especially, because I said that 20 he was an Hereticke and excommunicate. And the King faid, That if it were not for the Portugals fake, that he had commanded me to be flaine. And yet faid more, that I was a Traytor and for fwome, because I had broken my Faith and my Oath that I had sworne to him, not to goe out of his Countries without his licence. To which I answered, that he had given me the same

licence, as it is faid in the former Chapter. Finally, hee commanded that I should abide in De-

barna, and not to go from thence without his speciall commandement; and to the Bernasaez.

I was in Debarna more then two yeeres, commending my felfe to God, and faid Maffe the

most daies in a Church of our Ladie that was there, where about nine or tenne Portugals that

taile in which the Goranga ouercame vs, and tooke Den (briftopher. About this time, there

came a Venetian, called Micer Suncar, which came from Gran Cayrus with a meffage from certaine Venetian Merchants which were there, and had taken in charge fortie odde Portugals,

which were taken captiues in the parts of Ormuz, and the Turker demanded thirtie thouland

crownes : and Micer Sumear came to know of Preflyter lobe if hee would ranfome them, who

ransomed them, giving the said price, and other two or three thousand crownes for their expen-

the Kings Court, and did informe himselfe in that Countrey what I had done and suffered, to 50

reforme that people to the obedience of the Church of Rome, and gaue a publike testimony and

were there accompanied me, which came flying thither with others, from the vnfortunatebat-

that he should have a special care of me.

Renforce of Portugals.

fes. There came also to mee a religious man of the company of Ielus, called Master Gonçalus Confalso a Icwith his companion, which came from India to enquire after me, and the other Portugals, and rick, whole E. of the estate of that people of Prespiter Ishm, which after I informed him how it was, went to piftle felloweth in the next Chapter.

De Barua, called elfewhere relation in the Cathedrall Church of Goa. Being in Debarna, tarrying for paffage to India, there arrived to the Port of Magna, Amonie Peixoto a Portugall, with two Foyits, whereof he was Captaine : Matter Gonzalno and I determined to goe and visite him, and goe with him fer India, and that I might doe this without hinderance of the Abexmes, Ihad a good excuse in this manner. The Church of our Ladie which we had in Debarna, was burnt a few daies before by a dilaster, wherefore I defired the Bernagaez which had the charge of me, that he would let me goe to Magna to aske some almes of the Portugals of the Foyits to re-edine the faid Church, and that he would lend mee a Mule to ride on, and some men to accompany and guard me. He did it willingly, for hee thought I 60 was already feated in the Countrey, and had no defire to returne to Portugal, and fent with me a Prieft of his owne Sect and Nation, and fent besides other, fixe or teuen men to accompanie and guard me, charging vs to returne prefently, and that we should not stay. And for more his affurance, there went in our company an Ambailadour of Prefbyter John to the Gouernour of In-

dia for whole respect he thought also that the Capaine of the Poysts would not carrie mee, if he delired him the contrary. But Anionie Petroto the Captaine was very glad to carrie me, and when the Ambassadour faw me embarked, went backe and would not goe with vs. thinking Hischape to that for my fake he fhould not be well entertained among the Portugals. There went with me, Goa as I faid, Mafter Gongaulus, and those few Portugal's that wer in Debatua. We came to Gog after the palling great Tempest by Sea and want of victuals, Francisca, Barreto being Gouernor of India, who received vs with great ioy, and commanded me to bee lidged in Saint Paul, with the Fathers of the company of Jefus, which shewed me great love and honour while I was there, Namer the Pa-Paners of the company of the monethis, turying for hipping for this kingdome. The Gournor trivich the which was about mine of ten monethis, turying for hipping for this kingdome. The Gournor trivich the model the over feer of worr Highmell enodes, to produde me of all kinnes receiving and for Sony of whem,

which was about nine or ten monetin, tarry me to unique me to surgeouse. The Gournard of Commanded the out-feer of your Highnick goods, to proude me of all unique necessaries, and so and of states I was always well-prouded for of all things needless; in the Country, and to take to deal of the control of the Country, and to take to deal of the country of the Countr The Patriarch Don lohn Nunnex came thither Pheing there, and the Bilhop Don Andrew with weth. their companions.

As foone as the time of shipping came, I went to Cochin, because the ships are wont to depart His tenure from thence, and the Gouernor commanded to give me a good lodging in one of them, and pro- home, uision in abundance. Don Iohn Menesez the some of the Nayler, came for Captaine of that Voyage, and also another Don loon Menesez, of whom I received great courtesse and entertainement vnto the lland of Saint Helen, where I remained against his will , contending much about it: There I continued a yeere fufering some bodily trouble, of hunger and other necessa-

20 ries, because that Hand is so distant from humane communication, that there commeth no people, but some fugitiue Slaues which had runne away from some ships that came thither; and it was faid, that they had killed another Chaplaine, with the which mine beganne to be corrupt, and would not ferue me. Wherefore destitute of all humane helpe in mine old age and facknesse. I came perforce the next yeere to Portugall, in the ship called Saint Pablo, wherein Right Melo came for Captaine. I came to Lifton in the moneth of August, the years 1559. Your Fighness reigning, whom God give long lite, with Peace and Grace in this world, and the along of his Kingdome in the world to come, Amen.

They brought newes of vs hither, as of men cast away and without doubt, that was a great and inhumane carelefinesse, and was the cause that there was no more good done in the Coun-30 trey. For your Highnesse may believe, that the matters of that Empire were in such estates that if that fmall number of Portugals had been emaintained with supplies of men, it might have gotten fuch a postession an au horitie, that King Graden either with his will or without it, would have obeyed the holy Motner Church : and his people with the converfation of ours, and the doctrine of our Preachers, which would have taught freely, had taken the true Christian Religion, and had left the errors of the Alexandrines, which for their finnes are deftroyed, they and their false Doctrine, whereby it hath no vigour for to relist the truth if it were preached and fauoured : for among them there are no proud and stubborne learned men, but there are denout religious men, and very humble, which in good simplicitie desire to serve God, and take very easily the doctrine of truth, and apply their understandings to it.

In Temporall things had fuch profit been gotten, that neither Pers with his Gold, nor In- More profit in In 1 emporar change has used protested for there is more Gold in Damus and her Prottines, this distinction, the with his Trafficke, had furpaft them: for there is more Gold in Damus and her Prottines, this distinction. dis with his Trafficke, nan urpair circuit for circuits more cone in a same, and nes ricuitace, then in Pans, which might have beene gotten without the expences which the India maketh, then in the faith or West for the circuit for the same of the circuit for the same of the circuit for the same of the circuit for the

Of my felfe I gaue also some account in this Treatise, though not much, not to trouble you, as I have faid: for I transited many yeares in those Countries, and passed many troubles for the sernice of God and of your Highneffe, wherewith I should have wearied your eares if I had told the or the leffe part of them : For the first time I went to India, I went in company of Lope Swares, Alfonfus of Alburkerke being Governour of it, and was there to the time of lames Lopes of Sequera, by whose commandement I passe to the Presbyter John of Ethiopia, in company of Don

ocquera, by whose commandeness a possion of spirer soon of actingue, in company of Don 50 Rederited of Lima, and the Father Francisco Albarez, which returned from thence with an Heppfields American Lymn, and the reason transport sometime, which is the reason in the beginning of fether with a factor whose one and hoffsee I remained in the Counters in the which the same and hoffsee I remained in the Counters in the which the same and the s this worke, in whose gage and hostage I remained in that Countrey: in the which they alwaies shewed me great honour and good viage, to the Emperors taking me for God-father of his some and heire Graders, and before the death of his Patriarch, called Abuna Marcus, he elected mee Patriarch of that Countrey and his Empire, according to his cuitome, and defired me on his behalfe and mine to goe to Rome, to give the obedience to the chiefe Bifhop, and to defire him he would confirme to me that dignitie and Patriarch-ship, and from thence to Portugall, to doe that which I faid in the beginning of this Booke. Which itemey I made by Land comming to Capro, and to lerufalem, and was taked by the Turker and millifed, and almost slaine, but by

Copyo, and to tenjaten, and was taken by the Low ext and innerion, and amon maine, but by 66 Gods affifance I came to Rome, in the time of the hely Father Paul the third, who not onely approoued my election, but instituted me besides, and confirmed mee Patriarch of Mexement, and game me perionally the policifion of that Neat. And in tellimony of the trich of all this, the commanded to rolle me his accurbomed Letters and Authorised Hollands. And a selecthing the commanded to rolle me his accurbomed Letters and Authorised Hollands. en gue ma personally one possible me his accultomed Letters and Authentical Instruments, which were of another kene and approved in this kingdome, which I loft with many other things in the battaile where mans,

Don (briftopher was taken, and because I show them not they mocke me : but it is no matter. feeing God knoweth the truth, and knoweth how much I laboured for the restoring of the Faith and Religion of that Countrey. Le forgiue my adversaries, and to me he will give himfelfe in reward of my trauails, and to your Highnesse long life, peace and prosperitie in this life. and in the life to come eternall glose, Amen.

CHAP. VIII.

Late Changes of State and Religion in Ethiopia, with other remarkable Obsernations.

è. I.

P. Far. Thefanrus rer. Ind .1.2. De Aballmorus reb. N. God, lib. * God.l.2.6.14 Relations of IOHN NVNNEZ (or NONIVS) BARETYS fent for Patriarke of Ethiopia , and ANDREA OVIBDO his Successor.

O 109.

Ohn Bermudez * a Spanish Priest had been tent by the Romane Bishop into Abasfig. which Patriarchall dignitie (before this miffion of Nonius) and having beene taken by Turkib Pirats, yet after divers Adventures, perced into Ethiopia, where by Claudius * the Emperour he was well entertained in fliew, to hold the Portugals the faster to his succours in the Warre against the King of Adel: who being flaine, he would acknowledge no other Patriarke to him nor his, but the A.

20

ing lane, ne would an anowing with the Madlines with Bermidez, informuch that it was vulgarly butted that he had floine a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had ftoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had stoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had dead of the veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had dead of the veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had dead of the veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had ftoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had ftoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had ftoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had ftoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had ftoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had ftoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had ftoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had ftoline a Veffell of Gold out of a Church: so that he was forced to a vulgarly butted that he had to be a vulgarly butted that he was forced to a vulgarly butter as the vu returne into Esrope. Him haue I (being then a Boy) seene at Liston, where hee made an end of

Peter an Abaf-

About those times, one Peter an Abassime, a Monke of Saint Antonies Order, with some others of his profession came to Rome, who being of a forward and industrious disposition, learned the Latine and Italian Tongues, and Eafily infinuated himselfe into the fauours of many; dealt alfo with Pope Paul the Third, very earnestly to fend another Patriarke into Ethiopia : as for Bermudez, their wanted not causes of that ha red which he had incurred; but for any other, hee should no sooner set foot in Ethiopia, but all men would adhere to him, for laking the Alexandrian and his Abuna. The Pope by Letters commended the businesse to the King of Portugal, to choose a man fit for this businesse, who named thereunto Peter Faber, and writ to the Pope to 40 confirme him, but death tooke him away. The Abaffine continuing his importunate fute:in the yeare 1 5 5 4. Inlime the Thirdgaue eare hereto, whose Buls were ratified by Paul the Fourth his Succeffor, in whole time Nonime was confecrated at Lisbon, and with him Oniedo, the one Patriarke, the other entitled Bishop of Hierapolis. King John gaue many holy Vestments of Silke and Damakerichly and curroutly wrought; Croffes, Chalices, Pyxes, and other Veflels of Gold and Siluer to commend the Romane Pretie by this facred splendour to the Abaffine

Iefuiticall hu-

Nonius before his journey to leave behind him Monuments of Iesuiticall Humiliation (the heart makes it Humilitie by the difcreet manner and diuine end, which otherwise in most feruile Offices is as meerely titular as was his Patriarkhip) in this his Patriarchicall dignitic made 50 himfelfe a Senuant to the Societie, wayting on them at Table, yea, (iiis Epifopall Ring laid afices Ecclesa- fide) was a continual helper of the Cooke, washed with care and pleasure, the D. shes, Boxes, flicallare cal- Pots, and either Veffels of the Cookerie; besides this, hee was a diligent Hearer of Confessions, not refusing once in the night to goe to a meane Cottage to shrive a Negro Slave. Before he went his Patriarchall Voyage, the King fent to Peter Mascareena, the Vice-Roy, to fend an Ambaldet, Orde, faith fage into Ethiopia, to prepare way to the Patriarch, who lent James Dias With Gonzales Rode-

Saint des, et parties speries plant frage learnisers differir, Saint Paulbids men wilke in their calling, antierials inordinatendle parties supprisses per result frage learnisers. And what inordinate Confusion, how confusind Orders are a Partierle-Scallion, a Billioper playles had name of Confusion. A Billioper and makes have like this billiolet as the suite of Security, and billioper, and makes haveful for kingel or security of Security, and billioper, and makes haveful for the suite of Security. continuant very same of translator. Christ once wished his Disciples feet, yet did not the Aposses ordinarily doe is, but had 60 Kings, see, Depose and Translator. Christ once wished his Disciples feet, yet did not the Aposses ordinarily doe is, but had 60 kings, see, Depose and Translator. Christ once wished his Disciples feet, yet did not the Aposses ordinarily doe is, but had 60 kings, and feet beautiful that the Aposses of the Aposse their Widowes for this feruce. Lee Francia mai practia with their fosfowers or transpires of towner bounding and feedlighted fundamental life. To mee their is humble, which betteelth patiently what God fends and doth not find for phantaffiche croftles; which breaker poor his ranke to feede fenements, buyshandy holds and fights in his owner life and flanding; which defines himidle to obey God, and not negle for God to pleafe himfelfe in men-dazzling will-worfhips, in Muffers and Montlers of neededli, flawers, rumoritied mortifications, and perhaps proud humiliations.

CHAP. S.S.I. Letter of a Lefuite touching Abassines Errors.

ricke a Jefuit Priest. Who in the year 1555 arrived at Ercoco, which then belonged to the Aballine. to whom they went thence by Land; and having declared their message, and delivered the Kings Letters, they find his mind altered (for he had written before to King Iohn in that buineffe.) But the whole Discourse will better appeare in Roderickes Letter in September, 1566. from Ethiopia to the lefuites in Goa: which (to much as concerneth this purpole) I have here tran-

N the fifteenth of May, we came to the Kine of Ethiopia. He was then in his Campe encompassed with many Paulions. Beeing certified of our arrivall, hee commanded a Lodging to bee 10 provided where we might bee entertained. The next day wee had accesse. Hee sate in his Tent spread with a faire Carpet, and adorned with silken Hangings on a Bed, the Curtaine opened. Iames approachino delinered him the Kings Letters, which hee commanded to bee read before all the Portugals in the Campe, with a loud voyce. In them the King fignified amongst other things, that the next yeare bee would send thither one of his Honshold, and some Religious men besides, samous for life and learning. Claudius from ned at the hearing hereof, but answered nothing to the purpose: and thus distributed, wee returned to our Lodgings. Two or three dayes after bee went to fee his Grand mother ten dayes journey thence : and we were left in the open field, not having one man in the Emperours name to provide vs any thing. Tet were me not for faken of God, by whose providence and bountie it came to passe, that a Portugall tooke care of vs, and brought vs to a place whereof he was Lord, three leagues distant, entertai-20 ned vs at bis House, and commending to his the care of vs , followed after the Emperour, Heere wee fent almost a moneth, in which time I writ a Booke of the Errours of the Abasines, and the truth of the Romane Faith, to offer it to Claudius at his returne. For hee openly faid, as I learned of a Portugall, neere about him, that hee neyther needed our Dollrine, nor intended to obey the Romane Church, It was also commonly reported, that some of the Chiefe men did openly affirme, that they would more easily subject their neckes to the yoke of Saracens, then exchange their Customes with ours, Which edges former confirme mee, to deliver my mind rather in writing then by word; foto learne his Answere and vnmaske his opinion fo long closely concealed. So some therefore as hee returned to these parts, wee went to his Campe and were entertained of the Portugall Souldiers. For the Emperour had quite forgotten vs, nor cared to know how or where we lined. Now, because I had made my Booke in Portuguse, 3C and it was necessarie to trane it in Chaldee, I petitioned of him by Letters, to assigne me two of the best learned Monkes to turne some Dollrines of Christian Faith into the Chaldee Tongue: for I would in

writing frew how undescruedly the Aball nes reckoned the followers of the Roman e Faith amonest Heretikes, and affirmed, that they were worse then Maliumetans : for so they openly said and reported.

And because I knew that they had a Rooke which they called the Adulterie of the Frankes, made zeak by the Alexander Confirm Confirmation with the Alexander Council is reproseed, and many fres are A Books cal-found and the Alexander Confirmation of the Function of the Alexander Confirmation of the Alexander Confirmation of the Function of the Function of the Confirmation of the Function of the Func foreign on the difference that Important the most have the vibercef. The Rock, bee deeped, the rich the Monkes be granted, which yet when they had begunne to translate the Rocks, whether secanficity had Franks, that beene lo commanded, or else were afraid of any thing, or for some other unknowne cause, refused to pro- is, of the We-

40 ceed in the Enterprife : untill that by the Portugall Capaines intercession, they were commanded to f. Actin Church. mile st, affifted therein by a Portugali, an honest man, and well skilled in the Chaldee. When againe, I needed another to transcribe in right Characters that which was translated, he was also desired and obtayned of the Emperous. Tet had be scarsly begunne, when the Emperour in a rage sent to renoke him, and in his name to tell me that I bould not flay, but fend him the Booke as it was, or surcease such busnes. That the thing therefore might be no longer deferred, nor the Emperor have any excuse for his sinne, I shought it necessary to show him the Booke ill written and blotted, appointing thereto a certaine day, which was the twentisth of August. When that day was come, with the (apraine and senen or eight other which mad to everenticio of August er consona way and come and one to unique and female a cigar which Portugals, I prefent my felfe before him, and having faluted him, from the cause of my commung. He The discourse forbids me to proceed, and discreting his speech to another matter, warily escheweth all the blowes made between the

50 at him. Then I letting other things paffe offered him the Booke, which beginning to reade, hee conceived Negwandine fo great fury, that he could not but otter his concealed Posson. Thou askedit (faid he) of me that then lesuit. mightest make a Booke wherein to declare the veritte of the Faith, and Mankes to translate it into Chaldec, both which I gramed. And behold, thou hast done quite otherwise. For nember dost thou explaine the vertite of Fasth, but doest ascribe Errours to them which are free from Errors. Thou shouldest also base knowne b.w farre this thine Enterprise disagrees with thy condition, which art but a simple Pries. Knowest thou not that these things belong to Biscops, and pertaine only to great Prelates? Why hast thou thrust they Sickle into anothers Haruest? I confessed my selfe a man of small worth, yet to have dove nothing diferenant with my condition, seeing I had written those things which are plainly contained in the Booke of the Gospelt, and in the Holy Councelt, and which are to be believed of a Christian man, Thou 60 obiestless said to many Evrors to me and mine, wherevel we are not entangled, I determine not of your

Faith, O Emperous, quath I, but I am sure your Abassiuses are erroneous, mer doe I failly ascribe any ibing to them. If it plesses you to make tryall, you may command your Monkes and most learned men in your Empire to come hither, and I will make it appeare, that they are so ensnaved in the Erronrs there mentioned, as none stall be able to denie. He replied, that he hated the Quirke: of Disputations, and that it was the custome of Ethnikes to commit their Superstitions to Questions, which Christians, especially

Anaphisis linou and

the accient aid altogether forbeare. There had now passed abone one thousand yeares since they prothe action Fact : if any part thereof were false, how chanced that in so many yeares none durift doe as I real dire? I an sweed, that God pronoked by bad worker of men often suffered them to full into enill. canti don't that he ought to give great thankes to God that he fent in the time of his life on a Keigne, one to them the way of the fineere Faulh. Then He. The Church of Christ heeth beene dimide is to finee Seas, we are inway of the proceed these from the beginning from it right and Lowes you in ... b. now separated. I algranter one of surjections of the first (quoth I) that there were four e Patriarchall Scia from the beginning that the R. mane by Dunine

* Whote isit . Statute was preferred before the reit, as the Head Mather, and Matris . all. When others have fulled, who focuer obey them again if the Romane, are Ensenies, and more annaea from their Head. Looke in my Booke, there Shall you find the Solutions of all assure south sort propose ded. But take 10 discent heed that the speech of the Propher, Nohnt intel 1900, so bene agence be not applied to you. After many words on both fides, the Por ugall Captaine being the very sadded at last, that I wrote my Booke to that purpofe, that I might know whether his Er one and de be would ober the Romane So , and entertaine those Religious and Learned meaning of Port of I fent him. For thee would not entertaine and heare them, there was no cause way should come to Ethici ta, which fought nothing but the faluation of the Alvassi us. He is a, that hee had Learned and Reisson men in his Kingdomes, and therefore need d not that any the be fent from any other placementher maint ener in b.s mind to Subject hamfelfe or no Country to the to mane belop. For that which Galpar Mag lines had done in his name with the King of P iting li, was done by the mil ating of an Arabian Manke which translated by Letters and and ristood on his minde. O-ce; beld's the Alexan rian 10 Patriarch , whom a way bee hath obeyed faithfully, he would acknowledge no Superiour in holy things at all Whereupon, being out of hope to molific his obstinute mind, hining leave I departed. When I went away, looking opon the Portugali Captaine, be highly commended my Learning. Saying, that hee much markelled bow beeing fo young , I could bee so excelling in knowledge. I learned after that hee reas my Booke thorow, and often had it in his hand, and sheweat to his Mother, often to his Brethren, and a ther Princes of the Empire.

It was also told me that the Abuna knowing what was in it, forbade the reading thereof with a grie-The Abunacan now Curse. Therefore, the second day after a Messenger was sent to him from the Prete, which in his name might aske leane to reade it. which the Abuna denying, the Emperour in a rage gaue him man reproachfull and contumelious words, called him Heretike and Mahumetane, which read the Alcorm 10 of the faile Prophet Mahumet, and forbade to holy a Booke, and made by such an Authors to be read. He added further, that feeing he came into those Abassine parts to performe the Office of an Abuna and Doctor, he should speedsly answere to those things which a simple Priest opposed. The Abuna denjed that hee would enter into any Disputation against me: for he came into Aballia not to dispute but they neuer that to give Oracis. Nothing was more common in mens mouthes, and some Countries fanoured our part, had. For this to give Oracis. Nothing was more common in mens mouthes, and some Countries fanoured our part, nas. rot that
Gonn ell de- others the contrarie: whereupon the Emperour fends for some Monkes in hest reputation of Santinie
cred the Pit- and Learning, and commanded them to transcribe my Booke very surety. I was much afraid, less they would have left out some things which I knew the Emperour was disgusted exther to heare or see, as those conjuntmente, things which I had written of Pope Leo, and Dioscorus the Patriarke of Alexandria. For the Abalwith rem-(exof order) and cannot heare his name without horrour. Also they reself the Chalcedon Councell for Errour in Paith. that (not von and far that it condemned Dioscorus uninsthy. Therefore, ener since the time of that Councell (the

Decrees whereof they wholly reject) they have beene divided from the Romane Church. They follow alfo the Herefie of Sergus Paulus and Pyrthus, condemned by the fixt Smode at Concent at 'tom Peter) b. ceuie stantinople, and many other Errours. When the time was come that the Emperour should answere me, th : " this as he had promifed, I went to the Court, and fent one to fignific to him that I expected an Answere. w re imperial Whereto he faid that his Fathers Ambassadour had beene tenne yeares in Portugall, neither could hee despatch his Affaires in all that space: it is therefore meete that the Ambassadour of the King of Pottuzall flould patiently waite my Answere. I perceined whither these things tended, nor did I thinked fit to flay any longer, but defired leaue to depart into India. He cunningly deferred, as a thing vinnette, so . that I fo great a man should so some be gone , specially having come to treat of Matters so weightie; nor could I (bendmy time better then in hearing there the Portugals Confessions. But if I were fully resolued to depart, I should yet give him one monethes space to answere: that being past, if I had

no Answere, I should dissemble an Answere, and might goe whither I would.

After this, on the fourth day of October , the E perours Mother fent a Seruant to mee, dethe Queene & fring to feate with mee, and to fee the Chalice which I had brought from Goa, a thing much the limite.

I went presently with some Portigals, all which sie was willing should be Winds God magnified amongst them. I went presently with some Portigals, all which sie was willing should this wite their enter with me. After a few words , comming to talke of Religion , flee faid , Seeing your Faith one and only, and ours differ nothing but are one and the same, What needed it I pray, to write any thing thereof, and for ben that make a causelife brosle? Whereto I briefely, Whether your Abassines bold the right Truth you 60 may perceive by m Writings. Thu I affirme to thee, O Empresse, although you had no other Errour, this one, b that you are separated from the Romane Bishop, the Vicar of Christ on Earth, it would bee enough and more, unto cternall destruction. She answered, that she and her people were subject to Peter and Paul, the Apolles, and officially to Christ himfelfe. I denged, that he is subuit to Christ which

is not Subject to his Vicar : when Christ himselfe faith, He which heareth you "heareth me, and he " The Apostles which despiseth you, despiseth me. And if it be true which the Enangelist John from the same were no body Lord relateth, that there shall be One Shepheard, and one Sheeperfold, who made the thinks to be that with this letu-Shepheard? She answered, Saint Peter . If faul I, Peter be that one Shepheard, the same Office must invaling the lines. needs agree to them which in order succeed Peter. She answered, neither I nor mine deny obedience to the Komilli Saint Peter: We are now in the same Faith wherein we have beene from the beginning : if that bee not Whitlepoole; Sain Peter: 180 are non in the same teath wherein me came recover from two regioning, it take event in the same teath wherein me came recover stops, why dishowe adminish to it is so many design. Heree f, the Roman Essleys shock to Palm of the administration whole Church of Christ, could not in the yeares puffed and into Abassin, by reassing the Mahame.

The same recovery the same recover tans flopping up the paffige. But the way by Sea being now open, he is able to doe it. Shee frould take tinc, 00 intelled to the it. Shee frould take tinc, 00 intelled to the unit of the common-wealth of Christ where some it is, is one mysticall body, which in Heame light is next

hath Christ the Head, in Earth the Vicar of Christ, which is the Head of all Christians. It may not bee attogated: hath Christ the Head, in Earth the First of Course, worker to the exercise of an Ourselman, it king not be a still the doubted, but that members must be subject to their Head, and to be directed thereby. From the time that Church had the Church began till the yeare 488, it was well in Aballia, and all the Patriarchs of Alexandria, but no Christian thenceforth they fellto ruine. If they would attaine faluation, they ought agains to consome with their be Pastor, nor lawfull Head, and become one bodie with him: for Christ himselfe had said, That there should be but no Aposses to one Sheepfold in the Church, and one Shepheard : but one body except it were monftrous, could have heare, but the one Sneepfold in the Church, and one onepneare i one one past except in were monitrous, come name. Remon: called but one Head, whereas the ship of Churft is most prefel, and fire from all filthinesses. So great a worke to that she a faid for, as that is, to wit, that the rest of the members be instead with the Romann Head, belong in this phy pheca, thing to me, nor to thee. It is meete, that other Patriarchs congregated with the Romane, should delibe and fince this

thing to me, not to thee. It is more, tous over tailment to my companies over Administry from member.

O rate of five mephite a matter, and decree by their amborities that is to be done. For to furface add (me. dispute, pull former, and thus by prustice counseld, and to undertake now, is a thing full of danger and affirme. O Treed added the other side said, That they were very ancient which the true Faith teacheth, nor have any noueltie to the Trest in them, and therefore it did rather take away then give offence, what soener is done according to the rule Council The

After some other such like things, followeth in the same Ep file of Gonzalus. A few daies le unte haue after, the Emperor removed this Camp to a place a daies iourney diffant, and we followed him. When we truth betwire were in a certaine field, three Monkes came to me; one of which was accounted learned, and was very them in lone were in a crossing and speake with me about Religion. In the beginning of his speech be consessed, that all things, which our things pleased bim, but yet be could not approve that we neither observed the (Saturday) Sabbath, in some other one tongs present one year per and stares field, vomiting out other venome. For he afformed, that the foules Omnia proba

of the inst departing out of this life, although nothing remaine in them to be purged, are not yet present. questioning ly received in Heamen to see God, but are conveyed to earthly Paradice, there to expell the end of the tents. world. That the Holy Ghost proceedeth onely from the Father. That the Sonne is equal to the Father "Christianh, in regard of his humane Nature. That onely Mahumetans and Ethnicks after their death, are cast amthat good m Figure as one common a more a consequence of the consequence of the common and the consequence of t last be laned, and lo be construed [hrists words, He which shall be beleeve and be baptized, shall be acknowledged, fauct. But I fo consinced his errors by reasons and Scriptures, that comming neerer, he acknowledged and other mi-

40 himselfe satisfied. But lest bus Fellower which were unlearned should beare, he whispered thus to mee. The thir g which ib-u teachest are true, and I will keeps them all in my mind, and so went away. The stores to see moneth being pust, I went to the Emperour, and desired an answer and leave to depart. Hee answered, I them, not to

migh: be gone at my pleasure.

As touching the religious men which King John sends me, when they shall come to Mazua, there 1.P. 1. fall be some to receive and condust them to me, I shall millingly heare them descouring of the Faith. Then of the chaffing departed I from him and besooke me to my journey. By the way, I wfited from Townes of the Portu-about the babdeparted Trem sum managerence we to my manage, say one way, a suprea primar owness of net vottu-spals, heard many of bene carefuline, strongle from of them from Concessives to lanful Wedlecke, their bath & mean, Concubines first (being Abastines in Sett and Nation) instructed in the Roman Destrict, and seen. & Discover ked to the Faith. Because the Churches of this Region are consecrated to the bolies of Schismatickes, their most ab-

50 neither have Altars accommedated to our v fes, wee carried an Altar with vs. When I was in one of hominable. these Townes, one came thither to salute me, sent from a principall Abbat, which sixe miles off ruled two great Monatteries; one of Monkes, the other of Nuns. The name is Belivanos, or Plurimanes. Planiment famous in those parts. For from thence proceeds what sour is to bee beleeved in all Abalia, because Monastery tothere is thought to bee the rule of Faith, and for that cause the Abbot himselfe is in great honeur a ry famous. mongst all. I thought it meete to vifue these Monastries, and went together with the Portug 1. my Companions, The Abbet was absent, I brussely viewed the Monasteries. Both they and the Monkes Abssine much differ from ours. Each of them bath bis owne little house separated from others: hee hath bis Monkes. owne part of ground which he tilleth for him felfe. So are they all divided in habitation and occupation,

that you would brinke you saw not a Monasterie, but a small Village. And although the Moutes 60 dwell on one fide, and the Nuns on the other, yet are they not fo separated, but that many Children are The Nuns. Gud to be begotten between them. Their Order or Family is neither Franciscan nor Dominican but se called Tecleay Manot. This was the name of the Founder, which with them fignifiesh, The Pillar of the Earth. He bath great opinion of familiaie among the Abassines, and is faid to have we ought many Miracles. That is the most famous, that bee flue a Scrpent, esteemed by the Etimicks for a God, and converted the Ethnicks : first to the Faith of Christ, and after that, many of them to this forme of life. Thu much Gonzalus.

then di pure. approued. niledges to

Les condemned, B. o/corus The Remanes

in For Suc-Cinese and the Councell of Nice acknowledged Alexandrias Printedges in Africa, cquall to the Romane in Europe. a Diffeourfe of er: our would bee tound the

Letter of Ala Partugall, to

* Therefore

Claud us had

Godsto Bet-

mader.

Alfonius of France a Portugall, which had bene Interpreter betwixt the Emperourand this Letter of Atchine the faid hereke of Diofcorus, which he had faid might bee euinced by hely Scripture, and authoritie of Saints and Councels. If your Scripture, faid the Emperour to deemeth of vs. God knowes what ours deemeth of you. I know, quoth I, That the followers of the Romane Faith are esteemed Heretikes of the Abassines, and accounted Nestorians, as if we admitted two perions in Christ, as well as two Natures; for fo they had often obiected to me with continmely : and after mention of his yearely re-baptizing, contrary to Saint Pauls faying; One Class while the foure Faith, one Baptisme, he grew very angry, and threatned me with his Sword, but feeing my conflancie he departed. He concludes, I thus thinke Gonzales, that this Emperour will more easily endure 10 the youke of Saracens, then of the Romane Bilhop.

robeleeucalehim Faith. where this Ro-Lambres against any which I belowe of their relation

ing this low

owest, and

Phil. I.

terrifying the

done by theirs. Folie Prophets hauc, Deut. 13. December, 1 562. and fallere'i. x, which lobs Baptift, an and true Prophethad not.

On the thirtieth of March, 1556. John Nonius Barret, Patriarch of Ethiopia, Andrew Onic. Exercising the Seas & Winds. do, Bulhop of Hierapolis, and other lesuites fayled from Lifton to the East. In the way a great Tempest happened, which (faith our Author) by the Patriarchs Prayers was appealed. For generallrule taking water in a veffell, and (attired in his holy Veftments) bleffing the same, he sprinkling part of it in the Sea, part on the Sailes, Tackling, and other part of the Ship, with a certaine forme of Prayer brought to paffe, that the Seas and Winds were quiet. Well; if hee could also time left in things neerest haue given found hims to Francis Rodericke, his fellow Ignatian, whose helpe he wied in hearing things nectors the confessions of the Passengers, being a man lame and going on Crouches. So should be haue things to give freed him from that scoffe of the Moores at Mosambike, that his Arguments could not fland 2- 20 gainit Mahomet, himselfe being so lame; nor could they bee right, himselfe being so crooked He answered well, That their Sect was more deformed then he, and wanted both feete and mora brewing, head too. But the Miracle might have cured his bodie and their foules, or done good in Aballia. For I disclaime if their miracles were as readie before Infidels, or those whom they call Heretikes, whose curinot their hu-maniy, house them, Once, miracles are not for Beleuters (which mult walke by Faith, not by falk) but for I tuffanctheir; I. G.d.d. But he when their worldist I rates, and come to the Historial Relation Itruftnottheir Infidels. But let vs leaue their mysticall tales, and come to the Historicall Relation. Hauing points, Yete- stayed a moneth at Mosambike, they proceeded to Goa, where discouraged by Gonzalus his Letuen langer and ters, he admired with others, which thought it meeters that he should stay at Goa till Kine loke might have knowledge, and that Onedan with fome others of the focietie, meane while should to Mojes, did as great miracles be employed in that Ethiopian bulinetie. This was put in execution : and Nonine aboade at Gu fix years space, which he spent in his daily Massings, Contemplations, hearing Confessions: fortimes viliting the Kitchin (as before) alway mending his owne cloaths when they were torner fweeping aliohis Chamber, and the rest of the house, carrying forth the Dust to the place appointed : often washing Pilgrims feete, and on set daies of Nouices; most observant of all the Lawes of the societie, how tree socuer from any Superiour, but the Pope onely. Hee dyed in

Andrew Onied a Castilian, was appointed by Ignatius, according to the Popes Order, an gions, pretend Adjutor to the former Patriarch whill thee lived, and his Succeffour after his death : and was with him confecrated Bishop of Hierapolis, as before is faid. His Kitchin and Chamber labours, 40 and domesticall other feruices, ferching Water in Earthen Vessels on his shoulder, lying on the extraordinary ground among Beggers and famous humilities, I omit (not enuying those new-coyned vertues to that new Societie; I hold it much better, they were all bufied in the Indian Skulleries and drudgeries, then in European State-affaires. I know bodily exercise is easie to them which love there things in not their case, and light to such as delight to be magnified, as hath appeared in Pharisees, Esses, the Story of in B-sals Priests, Molochs Votaries, Turkish and Ethnicks Regulars; I had not mentioned these Islaires, that things, but that the Islaits vie to infult and init ilt fo much hereon) I magnifie more both Outsthe world may do and others, for whatfocuer labours undertaken by the Kings Million (I quarrell not altogether the Popes Commission) to reduce strayed soules, as were these of Abassa, whither we now they attained to that reputa- follow him. I am not angry with vertuous defignes, neither in Pope nor lefuite; yea, in fuch go tion in the Pa. things I honour them : neither will I for their takes thinke worfe of that which is a good deede, pacy dazeling if not altogether well done, materially commendable, if any way fermally defective. When menseyes with they feeke knots in Rufhes, and would deforme reformed Christians, let them have Peters, Get thee behind me Sathan : but in converting the Gentiles from perverie errors, or this Abaffia from ipiengour or humilicie, juch Iewish, Iacobite, Monothelite herefies, I will all it them with my Prayers, and applaud their enas is reiched, devours : and fay, Flelb and blood bath not tought them this, but the heavenly Father; and if Christ col. 2. vit. lay- be truly preached, whether under a pretence or fi cerely, I therein ioy, and will ioy. Let them fill come paffe the world to win Protelites if it be not to compaffe the world, and circumuent their conroundation to their haughcie uerts; yea, as Mofer learned of Iethro to rule Gods people, fo I would fome of ours in Verginia or aspiring, cree- else-where, would follow the Issuites so farre as they follow Christ.

In the yeare 1557. on the Ides of Februarie, Quiedo with fine other lefuites, paffed from God into Ethiopia: Their names were Antonie Fernandes, Andrew Galdanes, Gonzaliu Cardofus, Francis Lopez, Emanuel Fernandes. There were believes some twentie Poringals: they arraied safe at Arcoco. Had they stayed fine daies longer, they had lost their Voyage, if not themschies.

For on the second of Aprill, the Tirkish Admirall with a great Fleete tooke Mazna, (being Mazna and Erthen in the and of the King of Zeila) and Ercoco, also the only Port Towne then left to the Prete, cocorakonby fortifying them in fuch fort, that all passage to Christians was preuented. Let vs here insert the Letter of Emanuel Fernandez.

None Ladie day in March, 1547, we came to Baroa, and the Barnagasso being certified of our Lettet of Ema-comming, came to meet vs. and receined vs. especially the Rishop, with signification of honour and meet transdes. good will. There was great response of the people to fee him, which came with great adactric to stiff his band. In that (title we flaged twentic daies, in which happened the commemoration of our Lords Paffi-10 on ; and the mysteries of that holy weeke, we performed in the most pious manner wee could. On Good.

on ; and soe mysteries of that their secret, we performed in one may prose monotor we could. On Cood-Friday we made a pompous Processim (respecting that place) from one Cource to their, Great was the concounse of people to vs., approusing and applicating the Romanc Rues. We of specia a good deep time in hearing the Poncugals consossimon, and other bolies. Many of their Sermants and Children were announted with Chrisme, and confirmed by the Bishop. The Barnagallo came often to visue him, and be often, but in vaine, exharted them to the obedsence of the Romane Church, The fpring comming on. when those pares were in feare of the Turke, we went from Baroa to the Emperour, in which wee frent fiftie daies, every where meeting some of Portugall race which needed Sacraments. Eight daies before our arrivall at the Emperours Tent, one of his chiefe men was fent to us to falute the Bishop in his name, and

Barea,ot Barna.

many Mules were brought for carriages. At last came one in the Emperors Name, to charge us that we 20 should proceed no further muhout his command, which happened two dates after. When we were a little off from the Camp, the Emperour sent word, and we pitched our Tents, and therein aboade that night. The day following about noone, many of the Royall blood, and others of the chiefe Nobelisse, not a few. preciously attired and well mounted, came to us in our Tents. Two of these were of principall place, to whom was the office com nitted of conneying the Biftop to the Emperour. Meane while the Emperour with his Mother and Breibren escended into a high place, whence he might behold us comming. When we were come, the Prete appointed that we sould passe on Horse-backe into the first Court (an honorable courtese, and differing from the Court custome) and before the entrance of the second Court, wherein was the Tent Royall, we alighted. At the doore of the Tent on both fides were many men, venerable by

Nobilitie or age, ranked in goodly order, and leaning on statues. Heere we stayed a while. Then came 30 forth two (Itaac the Barnagallo was one) which with lowly bowing of the whole body, salated the Bishop, and (we attending) led him in to the Emperour. He also showed no small signet of bonesse and lowe to him at his comming. After that a few words had passed, Outedo produced his Letters from the Viceroy, the Patriarch, and others in India, which were presently read in the presence of all. The Emperour was not a little disturbed therewith, nor was able to conceale his backwardnesse to the Romane Church : but warily, and being well affected to the Portugals, he indenoured as well as he could to hide it, and to seeme well apayed: not so yet, but some enident signes of persidionsnesse appeared. And al-though he never purposed to relinquish he errors, yet at the sirst he well entertained the Bispop, and allowed him and his company large ma nienance. Nor was there any which in word or deed durft wrong vs. inrespect of the Princes favour. Set aside his profide, in the whole Abassine Empire, was not a man.

40 whom the Emperour Claudius did not exceede in prud nece, magnanimitie, and other royall versuss. He Commendati-was very gentle and affable to the Bishop, and alway gane him some bope of reclaiming him. When they on oil claudium began to treat of Religion, Quiedo defired him that he would be prefent at their disputations with them, which amongst the Abastines were esteemed most learned. He consented and often heard the Bishop arguing matters of Faith with a great troupe of men learned : but in regard of Claudius, all the roll of

that faction were muse. He alone both in beat of speaking and eagernesse of victory, surpassed all which be brought into that contention with him, and with such dextensite of wit did often defend his errors, than be wrought vs some trouble. And although Ouiedo alway got the unitorie in dispute, the admersaries yet (such is the custome of obstructe minds) with laughters and immodest clamors, boasted themselves to baue gotten the better. When therefore the Biliop Jaw that he premailed nothing by this course of diffu-50 ting, he gathered in writing the erronious opinions of the Abail nes, and offered the same confuted by reasons and authorities to the Emperors reading. He tooke the same and read it, and as he could, answered in writing to every thing, fifty averring, that he would never yeeld obedience to the Romane Bifton, nor

decline from his Predecesfors steps in things of Religion, but would hold that Faith which they held; and therefore in vaine did any mortall man indeuour to make him in any fort to relinquish it. Herewithall be began also to shew some tokens of indignation against the Bishop, and openly to affirme that his presence was dust astfull to him. Whereupon lest be might prouode against him and his the fury of an impotent man, hee thought best to yeeld to the time, and leaving the Emperor, sought to draw others to the truth. Thus farre Emanuel.

But when Claudeus heard that many of the Nobles and others, both Plebeians and Monks were 6: by the Bishop and his Companions brought out of their darknesse to light, he was much moved, the Abbots especially with complaints incenting him. Whereupon he sent for him, and sharply reproued him, commanding him to treat of the mysteries of Faith with the Poringals, and their Posteritie, but with none of his Abassiner, He answering, that he was therefore sent thirther, and must obey Godrather then Man, what danger focuer he incurred; so prouoked the Emperor, that Ffffff

each whether they were of the Amalekites poft ritie. Modelly of 2 Alamas Empe-

without (uch prickles: or any remotere ligious Storie without fuch vanitie.Orber miracles they I have omirquiring more fine ftare and Church, then Popish mara-Malafernetus Emperour. The Gale.

> Oviedos Letter to the Pope.

Harueft loft for want of labourers.

he resided him, and forbad him to come any more in his fight : telling him further, that his labour was vaine to impose on him or his the Popes yoake. This was in the yeare 1 5 5 9. In lanuarie. In F-bruarie following, the Saracens called Malachales inuaded those parts. On Maunday. Majerhales: the Thursday was a battell betwixe them and the Abassines, in which these were put to flight, and Author doub- the Empercur flaine, his head cut off and fent with ludibrious triumph to the King of Adel The Captaine of the Saracens, in acknowledgement that this victorie came from God, alighted off his Horfe, and triumphed on an Affe. To Claudius having no iffue, his brother Adamas Segnedan fucceeded, a man of euill qualities, and a cruell enemy to the Romane Faith. He had beene before taken in warre by the Saracens, and carried into Arabia, where denying Christ hee turned Ma. buneran, but being redeemed by Claudius, he returned to the Abaffice Faith. The Bishop went to gratulate his succession, and received honourable entertainment. But after that, youn occasion of Converts to the Romane Church, he commanded him to bee brought before him, and fware. that if he proceeded in that kind, it should coft him his life : and then also rent his garment and laid violent hands on him, at last condemning him to exile with Francis Lopez, in a barren high Mountaine, taking away his Chalice also, to hinder him from saying Masse, There they continued eight moneths, in Caues, lying on the ground, liuing on wilde herbs : this place allo being a receptacle of Robbers, whence they fet vpon Paffengers. Hence at length he was deliuered by intercession of a Noble woman, which comming thither, faw (they say) a glorious light shining about his person and Mansion. He persecuted also the Abassine Converts with death and banishment: file of which being cast to the Lions, found the beatts more mild then the Emperour, who 20 so sine fent Andrew and them into exile : where being in danger of starting, at Oxiedos prayer badherb,make (I will not vige your credit) a River (like Iordan) opened her bowels, and yeelded them a hidden the lefuits Sto- treasurie of Filhes. Againe, he was renoked, and againe for like reconcilements to Rome exiled. having before offered with his own hands to take away his life, his fword (by I know not what miracle) falling out of his hand. In this third exile, he adioyned all the Portugals, and that without their wives and children, But a conspiracie being set on foot by Ifaac Barnagaso, and others, which exalted Betane Zarear, illegitimate sonne of the Emperors elder Brother, this made him fend for the Portugals from their exile. In the first battell Adamas was overthrowne : in the next, he tooke and flue his Corrivall. In the third, another legitimate Brother of Zarear was fet vp, and the Turkes called to help with their Ordnance, which put Adamas to flight. This 12 was in the yeare 1,62. in the next yeare he died. The Empire was now rent into divers factions, some creating the some of Adams Emperor.

others that brother of Zarcar, and some looking to other parts. Andrew, which was now Patriarch (Nonine being dead) got him into Tigrai, neere that famous Abbey, called Abba Guarina. and dwelt in Fremona, a small Village, fixteene yeares together, in which he neuer faw Abassine Emperor. For warre had fet all things in such combustion, that although he might reduce some after the Abal. Aballines, vet for reconciling that whole State was no opportunitie. Malalegues the sonne of Adamas raigned but feuenteene yeares (Barnagaffo being dead) the Gale in the meane time, inuading, waiting, cuerthrowing and spoiling all in their way, possessing with victorious armes, about one hundred Regions or Shires, the greatest part of the Empire in a short space. The Tinks an also from the Sea shoare which they held, made often inroads, slaving and captiuing many. Onie-

do meane while, was preferued at Fremona.

Sebastian King of Portugall understanding how things were desperate in Abassia, dealt with the Pope to fend this Bishop to Japan, which by Pins the fifth was granted, in the yeare 1 5 56. The Copie hereof he received the next years from the Islantes of Goa, but excused himselfe in 2 Letter to the Pope, alledging the Impossibilitie of getting thence by Shipping, the Saracens infesting those Seas. But if fine hundred Portugall Souldiers were sent thither from India, which wee long (faith he) expect, and carneftly defire and hope in God to obtaine; there will be no doubt, but not onely the Abaffine Rebels will come to the chedience of the Romane Church, but many Ethnicke perple alfo to the Faith of Christ. For here are in Ethiopia innumerable idolatrous Nations, whom we so may goe to without croffing any Sea, and eafily draw to the Faith. We know for certaine, that many of the Kingdome of Damute (which they fay, extendeth from Molambike to Sofala) baue come to the Emperour, and defired to become Christians, rejetted notwithstanding for private respects, he defiring rather to have them Slaves in condition, then in Religion Brethren. There were also three yeares fince some of the Country called Sinari, which sought to make perce with a certaine Prince, the Emperours Kinsman, with whom they had warres, and offered themselves both to Tribute and Religion, but repelled by harred and anarice, exceeding Charitie. There are almost innumerable of the neighbouring Ethnicks, whom, the Saracen Merchants buy and fell to the Turkes, which all would give their names to Christ, if Conetonfnesse did not perwert their Princes. Those fine hundred Portugall Souldiers, before mentioned, might preuent these enils, both with great commodute to the Portu- 60 gall affaires, and strengthning the Indian power. For if the Turkes (which easily they may) doe first poffeffe Ethiopia, it is bard to fay, bow much they may thence endanger the Indian bufineffe, being furnibed in those places with necessaries for Pipping, Iron for Armes, provision for Armie, Slaves for service, and the like. That Emperons which persecuted the Romane Fenth is dead. His

Some which increeded him is young in indgement weake, and in name rather then in power an Emperour For hee hath the same Aduer faries which confirred against his Father, beeing both Principall on No. bilitie and the most in number. Whereby all things are so confused, and embroyled with (will Dissentions and Forreigne Warres, that nothing were more to bee wished then some refuge of Peace, which the most know to consist in the Romane Fauth. And although the Monkes and many Nobles doe oppose our Faith, and persecute the Catholikes: yet the Communaltie, so much prompter to truth, as it is selfe tred with humane respects, doth appoone the Romane Decrees, as doe also of the chiefe men not a few. We indeasons the Saluation of both by publike and primate Preachings and Diffutations, with Wri-

We indeason the Saluation of both by publice and present reaconness and supplications, with write times also refelling Writings, not altogether in vaine. For some are conserted and more would be, but for hand and band tings up rejeurng re image, an eagre Enemie of the Truth in hase minds. This is the cause that in these plan recurred to es especially, Religion desires ban armed band, that they which will may come without seare to the Ca- surfer the tetholise Tents. and those which have comme may abide constant. I am of opinion, holy Father, that this suits of aching Ethiopian bufinesse is very conducent to the enlarging and filender of the Catholike Religion, although in Abesia. is be, as other times of weight, intantled with many difficulties. Tas, if I been on much deceived, no Expedition can now be offered, which can bring greater or nament to the Romane (burch, or greater accesse to the Catholike Assaires. Here where now I am, about two bundred and thirtie Catholikes dwell distided in two little Townes, which therefore we have lately built, that they which before with loffe of their goods and greater danger of their foules, wandered like Pulgrimes thorow divers parts of Ethic. Dia, might have a fixed Seat, for instruction and (bristian Sacraments. Others not a few else where,

20 maste the oportunitie to come hither, &c. Thus did Osiedo moue the Pope and the King to fuffer him there to abide whiles he lived, fill wrging that band of fine or fixe hundred Portugall Souldiers to be fent thither. In the yeare 1 576. when the Abassine Emperour sent a Messenger into India for that purpose, the Patriarch agains writ to the Pope about it, reckoning many Commodities which thence might redound to flablish there the true Faith. His Miracles, in judgements inflicted on fuch as tooke away his goods in procuring life and death by his Prayers, in chasing a way Grashoppers, &c. I omit. He dved of the Stone in September, 1577. and was buried at Fremona, where the Abellines, as they

vie to Saints, often made recourse to his Graue, and offered Wheate, Frankincenie, and other Odoprs.

30 And there our Author relates many Miracles to be done, which yet in Iefuiticall Relations of remote parts are now no Miracles, nor rarities, they are fo common. His fine Companions Iefuites, are by the Jeiute our Authour also much commended for their Apostolicall life. Anthenie Fernandez was fet ouer the reft, and was the first which passed out of this life : Cardo fas the next, flame by Theenes. Gualdarus was flame by the Turkes. Lopez lived longeft, and dyed in May, 1897, before whose death Melchior Sylains was sent into Abassia, by the Arch-bishoppe of Goa. As for Melchior Carnerus made Bishop at Goa, to succeed Onieds in the Patriarchate of Asbiopia, becaule he came northere, we have also excluded him from hence. Anno, 1560. Fulgenius Froms a lefuite fent out of India to vilit Oniedo, was taken by the Tarkes in the Red Sea, and carried to Carro venient or years after the large happened to Antibonic Monferrate and Islain which
Peter Paes, let ites, which were foun years in Capflurie. Abraham Georges 1,595. Feed the to deter, being taken and martyred for confessing Iesus in Mazaa. But having a Colledge erected at

> d. II.
> Description of the Countries, and the seuerall Regions, Religions, and Abaffine Opinions.

Hat part of Ethiopia, which is vnder or neere to Egypt, is called Abaffia, namely, so P. Jar thef. The part or extemple, which is vouer or never to express extend studies amonly, to 2-forther most six or in more fourthing Educe of the Empire, hath been tabled to the 12-11, Mod. Negar; called Prest lobe, by errour of Coulanns; followed by other Prest at in de definition in the fit discourse, applying by mile-conceit though from like occur rents the Relations in M. Polo and others touching Preshyer I show, in the North-east parts of Afa, (therefore) called a Priest because he had the Crosse, as the Westerne Archbishops vied, carryed before him) unto this King; the Abaffines also in Europe, willing by names of neerer found to confirme that fancie, tending as they supposed, to the credit of their Prin . On the East it is bounded with 60 the Red Sea from ten to twentie degrees of North Latitude, ending in Snachen, anciently called Afrix. On the West with high Monntaines rising along, or neerer the Bankes of Nilus: the North parts extend as farre as Meroe, the South to Ania, thence reaching to Adel, a Kingdome of Moores, whose chiefe Citie is Ara in nine degrees of North Latitude. The whole circuit is fixe hundred, or after others betwixt feuen and eight hundred leagues. The Name Abaffia

Diu. P. Paez, Anno 1603. Anthonie Fernandez two yeares after with Fran. Anthonie de Angelis; Azenedus and Mangonius 1606. Were shipped by Moores at Din, and carried feemes derived from Abases, which Strabo faith is given to inhabited places environed with

18'm Gabrie! 2 Portugall. Tigrai the fust Kingdome.

Danca'i.

John Gabriel, fometimes Generall of the Portugals in Abaffia, a man expert in many Languages, hath written, that the Abaffine Empire contayneth by ancient right, fixe and twentie Kingdomes, diffributed into fourteene Regions : The first eight lye from Suachen Wettward. Tigras containeth seuenteene Tracts or large Shires, each having a Lieutemant : the Turkes now posselfette the Sea Ports hereof, and the Moores the adioyning Continent, the in-land parts are inhabited promifcuoilly by Christians and Heathens, blacke, miserable and deformed within and without, in foule, bodie and flate. The next to Tigrai is Dancali, washed on the East by the Red Sea, thence extended Westward in a short and barren Tract of Land, inhabited by Moores. 10 Angote and the tributarie to the Abassine. Angote followeth, the fourth Boa, the fifth Amara, the fixth Leca. all

Aucagnerle.

Dahali.

inhabited by Christians. The feuenth, is Abaq amedri, very large, contaying feuenteene Tracks. inhabited partly with Christians, partly with Ethnikes, as is also Damboa, having only two Tracts. On the other fide of Dancali, along the Sea Coast runneth Aucaquerle, inhabited by Moores which acknowledge not the Abaffine, abutting on Adel, the chiefe Citie Zeila, fometimes Auslines, Next to it is Dahali, extending towards Mombaza, the Inhabitants wards Christians , partly Mahametans, tributary to the Negus. Occie is within Land , partly Mahamet ane, partly Ethnike, fubiect to the Abaffine : after which follow Arium, Fatigar, (both Chrifians) and Zinger, Ethnike. The fixteenth, is Rozanagum inhabited by Christians, not fubied to the Prete. Hence to the North is Roza an Ethnike Kingdome, Goma inhabited by Christians and Ethnikes obeying the Abaffine: towards Monomotapa is Nerea, both Christian and Ethnike, a large Kingdome : Zethe only Ethnike, but lubit Ct to the Emperour : after which are Conche, Mahaola, only Ethnike, and Goroma which hath twentie Tracts of Christians and Gentiles . almost made an Iland by Nilus encompassing, able by the fertilitie to nourish divers Armies (which almost continually infest it for that cause) the Sowers following the Reapers without other Til-

Goroma,large and iertile.

Rozsnagum.

heart and sometime Chiefe Seat of the Empire: Iasculum extends to Caire, inhabited by Mebumetanes, yearely every Lent travelled by Pilgrims to Ierufalem, going in Companies out of Dambea. The names of the Prouinces are Dubane, Xuncho: Daraita, Bora, Calaoa, Aga; (thefe three are 10 inhabited by Christians in name, otherwise Ethnikes, the first of the former by Ethnikes, the next Saracous; the third Christians) Arima, Arbum, Xancala, Xancora, Suggamo, Bergamo, A. ris (which is on the other fide of Nilus) Enera. Of all these Kingdomes, besides Torrai, Aba-

camedri, Goroma, and Dambea, scarcely any issubject to the Abassine.

lage. The three last Kingdomes lye towards Egypt, to wit, Damote, Sua, Iasculum: Sua, the

But foure Kingdomes the Wegus. Riversand Lakes. Iewes. Oara.

The fame Gabriel recordeth foure principall Rivers in this Abaffine Athiopia, and as many huge Lakes. The first River is Tancea, running from the South to the North, but intrapped and drunke up of the thirstie fands before it can pay Tribute to the Sea. It hath neighbouring Mountaines of admirable height, almost inacceitible passage, and fortified site; ninbired by Issue, fill obleruing the CM-special Gerenouses, decading to the adopting people. The forced Russ is Osse, numain into the Sea of Zeile, rether in waterie resultures then Nilm: but fish is the 49 to 10 to Abaffine Superfittion, that they refuse to drinke of his pleasant waters, because it waterethin the passage the Regions of Mahametans. (And is not some mens fancie of like phrenzie with vs. which refuse our Churches for the lining, Church-yards for their dead; and others not so ficke, our Ceremonies and Rites, for a Popilh paffage, bee their Antiquitie, Innocencie, and keming profitablenesse neuer so plausible, and nothing lesse then Popish?) The third River is Gabea, which runnes towards Mombaza, and the fourth Nilus. The first Lake, is Aicha in Angote: the second is Dambeabahar, that is, the Sea of Dambea, not farre from Gubbai, where now is the Emperours Court, if at any time he leaves his Tents for the Citie: it is about threefcore miles long, and fine and twentie broad, admitting Nilss on one fide. It hath many Fifnes, River-hotfes, which endanger Sailers; and hath many small Hands therein to which Traytors are confi- go ned. The third Lake is Zella, in Oecie, the fourth not farre thence Xacala. Antonia Fernandez 2 Iesuite, in a Letter dated 16to. attributes fortie Prouinces to Abassia, but in substance agreeth with Gabriel, whole Tracts are as huge as the others Prominces.

his Leaver.

He same Fernandez addeth, that the Abassine soile is for the most part hollow and full of A deepe openings. In the midft of the Champaigne Plaines, in many places out of the hard Rocke arise Rockie Hils, which in times of warre serue them for Fortresses. The whole Countrey abounds with veines of Metall and Metall-medicines : but the Inhabitants partly by ignorance, and partly for feare of the : arkes Invation, if fuch things should bee knowne, suffer them the Earth without digging. Of Plants and Trees is great varietie: but fruits not so pleasant as in Europe. One yet there is very viefull for the Wormes which breed in them by eating raw wormes in the belly by rie of flesh, which would gnaw thorow their entrailes, if they did not preuent that early with

to lye hidden in the Earth. Only they make vie of fo much Iron as they find vpon the face of 60 monethly purgations by this Fruit, which both kils the Wormes and emptieth the belly. Pea-

ches, Pomegranates, Indian Figs, Oranges, and Vines are there seene, but rare and sew. Hares. Goats, Harts, Bores, Elephants, Camels, Buffals, Lions, Panthers, Tigres, Rhinocerotes, and other Creatures are there feene, and one fo huge that a man fitting on Horse-backe, may passe This seemeth vpright vnder his belly : his shape is like a Camell, but his nature divers, feeding on leaves which to bethe cahe reacheth from the tops of Trees with his necke stretched forth. There are many Rivers and milogardalis. Lakes, in all which are River-horfes innumerable very hurtfull to their Corne : of great bodies, and a mouth fo wide that they can gape a Cubit and halfe. By night they goe out of the waters Riger-horfes, into the fields to feed; for they live on Herbs : and if the Husbandmen watch not well, in one and their mas night they will destroy their Corne. In the water they are very bold, and assaile men like fierce ture,

10 Dogges, and cruelly teare those which they get. They are so afraid of fire that a little Boy holding a lighted Torch, may fearreaway many thousands of them. There are some which hunt The Torpedo. and kill them for their fleth, which differeth little from Beefe. In these Rivers and Lakes is al- aftrange kind fo found the Torpedo, which if any man hold in his hand, if it flirre not, it doth produce no ef- of fifth. feet : but if it moueit felfe neuer io little, it io tormenteth the bodie of him which holds it, a Palus aborthat his Article, Johns, Sinewe, & all his Members feel exceeding paine with a certaine num-trained in the service of the ser Superfitious Abaffores beleeue that it is good to expell Deuils out of humane bodies, as if it Courte of Nadid torment Spirits no lesse them men. They say, if one of these aliue bee laid amongst dead Fi. (M, which iome these, if it there shirre it selfe, it makes those which it touchesh to shirre as if they were aliue technich. thes, if it thereftire it lelfe, it makes those which it toucheth to flire as if they were aliue. further from 20 There is great flore of this kind in Nilus, in the furthest parts of Gojama, where there is a Meere beyond the or Fenne a without bottome, welling and admirably boyling forth waters continually, whence Line, perhaps, Nilus springeth. It ariseth small and first for a dayes journey and halfe trendeth Eastward. Then not formly, it enters into a Lake as great as any imagined to bee in the World, running thorow the midd. L. Bapifis Sortered with a fwife courfe, flying all mixture of waters, and shapes in the Co. in the little of the course of the cours thereof with a fwift courfe, flying all mixture of waters, and throwes it felfe from very high bath published Rockes, whence having gotten freer scope, it expatiates it selfe a while, and shortly is as it two Bookes of were swallowed up in deepe yauning Gulfes of the Earth, and so firatined, that in some places this one River were fwallowed up in deepe yauning Gulfes of the Earth, and to trraitmed, that in tome places a man may firide ouer it. But after it hath paffed fine dayes to the Easthit bends backe its courfe inchings to the Welf, and fometimes greater, fometimes lefte, according to the Season, paffeth towards one a Lekin one a Lek

to the West, and sometimes greater, sometimes series, according to time bearing, parties over a larger Egypt. The Abasiliar report, that it is no hard thing to turne the Rivers course some other way, twelve egypt. The Abasiliar report, that it is no hard thing to turne the Rivers course some other way, twelve egypt. 30 and to sterue Egypt, which I scarsly believe. The Abaffine Aire is most part warme and temperate, but in low Land is exceeding hote, and tude, fine fue The Assignment of the Winter is from the end of May to the beginning of September; of longitude, formewhat vnwholfome. Their Winter is from the end of May to the beginning of September; whence Garnet was the control of the september of longitude, whence Garnet was the control of the september of longitude, whence Garnet was the control of the september of longitude, whence Garnet was the september of longitude, which is the september fomewast vinviously. The reason to the state of the Moone to the Full, fourteene dayes together flowes in, and as many through the whole 10 Smile, and Wane ebbeth or runneth out. In Winter it raineth almost energy day in these parts, alway after. Course; the owane concern announce and the first than the same and the noone, and not without a number of the north state hath that name. In this Tract of Heauen appeareth a certaine spot like a Cleud : we suppose it unde, being a

40 a part more thinne then others not flarred: let Philosophers examine. About this spot many Lake of 1700 Starres shine lesse then those which adorne the other Pole. The yeare beginneth heere with the wlongs out. Starres finne leite then those winth amount the transport and those which remayne from August to September. Their years he is twickness on the start of them thirtie dayer, and those which remayne from August to September, are recknoed by themselves. The ed. Re. Abel of the start of the star and those which remayire from august to septement, see the burners by the meeties. In each dee, The Abde buffers no way more express their roy and fellites then by eating and drinking; and easily on far opinionly Balling its way more captured. Churches, which visually are compelled with Trees for finde, the Kings Leewhere are many Veffels fet full of their Wine, which after Semice ended, they fucke in fo vowhere are many Venets net numer them we me, wind after section ended, they successing view measurably, that first Drunkenniste and then Brabbles, and lastly Frayes vitally follow. They that have been been also been a make Wine of Honey tempered with Opium, both pleasant and profitable taken moderately.

Wine of Yines is rare, and for their Masse in Vintage time they vie Must, at other times disque, the which values that Page a lefuite writ, that some 1604 hee was with the Empercur Red Seas Wine of Rayms. Year Yaca a Jennice WIE, that grant of Wine, which no where could who defired him to fay Masse, which hee could not for want of Wine, which no where could course. Power of the

gotten. At what time Rodericke Lima entred Monfia, Danid * reigned, and after hee had held the dajine good At what time anomaly amount of the state of haung ruled almost twentie yeares. His Brother Adamas succeeded called also Mena, and haung rulet atmost twentie yeares. The brounds explained interested cance and orders, and Wine, reigned four yeares dying in the yeare 1463. Sanfa Dengel succeeded, who leauning his former Paur Pare. regned roure yeares oying in the yeare 1503. Serja Denges intercence, who reading no retire Peter Peter name, would be called Malee Sequena, and died, Amos 1596. His Sonne Lames Increeded, a Succession of childe, which after feuen yeares was taken by his Subjects, deprined and fint into the King- Emperous. dome of Neres, a certaine Coufin German of his vsurping the Scepter, which he learly held a Berorkin 60 year, being lâneby his Subects, Anne 1604. Lance was reflored, and in the second year after was Anne expelled and slaine in battell by another of his Vncles Sonnes, call | Sacione: Paex calls him Sacione: The control of the Prediction of the P

Numins Fernander, thus writeth of their apparell. The richer fort buy Garments of the Sara-A cens, and clothe them felies in their fullions. The reft both men and women concer their bodes, distinues por pref. Ffffff 3

Foolst bra-

they are renerence wan, so to post off the state of the and Head-tyre. For finer branerie they surle and anome their haire with Butter, which showes in the Sun like Grasse in the morning dem Less their locks and curles frould be disordered, when they goe to bed, each one pitcheth a Forke or (ratch a foote high in the ground, betwire the bornes whereof bee reposeth his necke, and sleepeth with his head hanging. Dullynorance They vie to brand markes in their bodies, especially in the face. And on their little singers they fuffer the and lilinesse. nailes to grow as long as they will, like Cockes sparres, which also they sometimes cut from Cockes, and fittotheir fingers. They colour their hands and feet (which are bare) with the injec of a reddille is to their progres. I be conson their counts and seat, whose are over, more or mayer of a ready bark. They officially are artisss and lates, neglecting housing and slibnes, and whereas Weal, In Hempe and Cotton might easily be lead, yet the outgon are clothed with undressed letter, each wearing tempe and Cotton migest agity oc tond. Jest not vanigue are constant or consequent exists, when the season as a Remmer Signme typed to bio baseds and fest. They from Oxec-bides without Dults or Chalterifles: for Tables to proi fagreat from less to be for the consequent of great or moderate of wood, rudely bollomed, without any Naporis. Veffels they have of for Tables to be for great or the consequence of the

Their Arts.

Townes and Lucle or no writing.

blacke Chalke. Few but Saracens wife Merchanduze and in few places: most exercise Hulbandrie, the Gentry follow Armes and the Court. They have no great Cities, but Villages unwalled and unfortified. Their greatest Towne bath scarsty one thousand sixe bundred Houses. Their Houses are small, without elegance, without storie, almost without arte, round and concred with Earth and Straw. They write no Letters, nor vie Records in Indgements, or other Writings, but in their holy things, and Officers of Ac. They vie no Dirges or Denotions for the dead. They vie Pictures, but not carned nor graven 20

Images. They paint Christ, the Blessed Virgin and other Saints in blacke forme, as Deuils and wick d men in white: fo they paint Christ and his Apossles at the Maundie blacke, and Indu white; Christ in his Passion blacke, Annas, Caiphas, Pslate, Herod, and the lewes white: Michael blacke and the Deuill white. Their failting is rigorous not freeing the Sicke. Some Religious men abstaine wholly from flesh, which is no easie thing farre from the Sea, where they have few fifthes. They fast Wednesdayes and Fridayes, not talting ought till night, then eating Herbs

Fafts, dumer without Oyle (which they have not) or Butter, and Bread with Apples.
Their Tembes are round and encompaffed with a double porch, they a Their Temples are round and encompassed with a double porch, they neither walke nor talk nor fpit, nor fit, nor laugh in the Church : nor admit Dogges or other Domesticke creatures into the Church-yard. Horfemen alight and walke on foot before the Church as they pafe. The great the Altar is in the midft, Curtaines being drawne betwixt the doore and it from one fide of the Church to the other, wherein none not in Orders may enter : without may Lay-men fland, which have Crutches to support them if they be ficke or old. Some Churches are only for men, others only for women : in small Villages they are common to both, but with severall Divisions that they may not fee each other.

Ludonicus Azeusedius in his Letter 1 6 0 7. faith, that they confesse not the number and kinds of their finnes, but only fay in general], I have finned, I have finned. They wie not Confirmation on, nor Extreme Vnotion, nor the Communion-Visticum.

Nionie Fernandez, 1606. writeth, that in Dembes where hee then was in the Citie of an Gorgerts, iome received the Romane Fauth, others refuled: that the Emperous shat years writ to the Pope to fend thither some Parriarch, and to the King of Spaine for Partness Forces, to reduce his Empire to the Faith, to which the Princes and Grandes opposed, and must by Armes be forced; but hee feared notwithstanding the mutable inconftance of the Abastines, which care little to hold promife. God open their eyes : of twentie parts of the Empire, feuenteene are almost gone. The next yeare he writeth ; we are here fue Priefts of the Societie, fome of vsattend the Emperours Campe, to conferue and encrease our Catholike number. Many commend our Dockrine, but are afraid to proteffe it. They observe levilo Circumcilion, Sabbaths, abstinence from the flesh which is to the lenes vncleane, and from Fish without Finnes, and though they confedie them forbidden by Gods word, yet will they not forfike them. For yo lowing the Emperour, I take view of great part of the Ethiopian Continent. Touching their Rebaptifations, and tradition of Soules from humane feed, and equalitie of Christs humane Nature with the Diuine, with other Abasime errors, I have had often conflicts with their learned men, which yeilded to other things easily: but in the two last opinions were obstinate. They call Diofeorus, Bleffed, condemne Lee with the Chalcedon Councell, with many reproches, and Father on him many lies touching the Natures and operations of Christ. They hold alio, that God doth effect nothing besides the Consecration of things and Miracles when they are done, and thence gather that the Soule is produced of Seed. They circumcife not onely Males, but with a peculiar Rite Females also, Yearely on Twelfth day they renew Baptisme : Aposta tes returning from Mahametanifme, are also rehaptized, and likewije they which have committed some erroneous crime, or haue married, or haue entred into any Religious Family. On the otherside, they are so rigorous to Infants, that before their appointed day they die without Baptifine. They come to the Eucharift without Contrition or Confession, even the most wicked amongst them. They distolue Marriages when they list : before the day of Judgement they

CHAP. 8. S. 2. Errors, Warres, miseries: Friers lies: lesnites iournes.

fay, that neither the Soules of the Bleffed are in Heauen, nor of the wicked in Hell : Purgatorie they deny, and the Spirits proceeding from the Sonne. These errors are common to all; some are peculiar to some of them, new Heresies daily springing vp without danger as every man

In his Letters, 1609. In this Erbiopium Empire, every man liveth in manner in Armes, nor is the Emperours life more quiet then of other men. For every yeare, Winter being scarlly path, himselfe in person and his Captaines, renew the Warres, sometimes against Rebels, sometimes against neighbouring enemies. It cannot be vttered what confusions have happened these two against megacounting actions as the prefent Emperour began his reigne, three or four chiefe men viur- Ethiopia civill

to ping the Royall name, rebelled against him, but were vanquithed in battaile. This very yeare, Combustions, the fecond of his reigne, as many as have attempted the fame and comine into the field. Neither of lung time have things bin quieter. We are also constrained to wave up and downe with these formes; sometimes flying to the Mountaines, sometimes hiding our selues in secret Caues, some times we pierce thicke Woods, and vnpaffable places, and fuffer innumerable euils, which wee could more patiently endure, if we could gather any haruselt to offer to God. This very years, when the Emperour was gone against a Rebell, finddaine newes came to the Campe, that the Gala (a Lusage Nation of Cafres, begotten of Deuils, as the vulgar report) were at hand. It is a The Gale, hundred yeares fince these passed from the fields and woods, where they lived by keeping Cattell, and shaking off the Ethopian yoake, have attained such power, that they possesse about the 20 twelfth part of Ethiopia, and are a terrour to all. The Emperour went against them, but was

twenting part or through a matter a terroin to the first a supposed when a gentle terroin, the weak of contributions, to the truin well—acree of the whole Emp re. Hought to comfort him as well as I could, but he gathering his forces, fuddatinely rufhed on the Conquerous; and recoursed.

One luan de Baltasar, a pretended Abassine, and Knight of the Militarie Order of Saint Antonie, hath written a Booke in Spansh of that Order, founded (as he faith) by the Prete lobn, in the daies of Saint Bafil, with rules received from him, above feven hundred yeares before any Militarie Order was in the world. I know not whether his Booke (which I haue by me) hath more lies or lines, a man of a leaden braine and brazen face; seconded, if not exceeded by

the Morall, Naturall, and Politicall Historie of Ethiopia, the worke of his Scholler Lags of Ur-30 reta, a Spanio Frier and lyer; The faid Godgmus every where through his first Booke confutes him, it is more then enough that wee have named such more then Viopien, such Legendarie fore-heads and though we will not bler Paper with mention of their affertions, yet have their ouerflowing commendations of the Ethiopian Faith, and admiration of their State, made thus many Witnesses to be mustered, sometimes repeating the same things, by more abundant allegations to figuifie and prooue the truth. We will further trouble the Reader with some extracts of Pase Pasz, chiefe of the Islantes in those parts. For Malchior Sylvina Priest of Goa, fent into Abassia, consulting with the Abassiae Portugals, which way any lessite might be sent this into Abajus, containing with the Abajine Portugat, which way any tenne migni we sent till there was answered, that the Portof Bajur ouer against Maha, was freet of danger, which Bajur webs Page feeking to doe, by the Monfon was preuented, and the next yeare by a Turke, Servant of leagues within 40 the Captaine of Suachen, trading at Diss, named Recomm. Age, was in Armenius habite this the theighnon the Captains of Snachen, trading at Dis, named Rezoun. Aga, was in Armenius native till the conneyed. His journey himselfe bath written in a Letter to the lefuites at Gas, the four the daspine thouse.

THE two and twentieth of March we fee Saile, Rezoam Age fest mue of his prossifien twice a day, Letters of P. and landing at Mazua, preserved me fasour of the Government, with licence to got whether I would Fare. a mai unanny at mazin, procured me fausuur of the Congrueum, with licence to goe whether I would sino Ethiopia or Cairo. I thoughed hom, and faid, That I would goe to accretaine Towne to fee whether my Kinfinno being dead, I might fucceed in the Inheritance. The Bancan Saranga or Capaine of the

my Kenjama beny dead, i major jucceed m the Inheritance. Like Bancan Baranga or Capainse of the flow has been expected from the Configuration of the convert southing me, and from two Stracens with mee, with whom, and fine Configuration of Aballia, I departed on the fif of May, I went in a value ragged habit of force of 50 Toccus, which there of to not be addful, which for freed our Company, that as we seem by night on the first own of the first own for the first own force of the first own force own force of the first own force own force of the first own force own force of the first own force of the first own force of the first own force own force own force own force of the first own force of the first own force own for free on worses raise, a tree me may need congoing to come jupe, was a light with the pace of me, but with our flowing be departed. The next day we paffed high and cragged Hill, for four of Theeses, and came at night to a Village of Stracens . On Holy-Thursday, we came to certaine Chris Stun Herd men, which supposing mee a Turke, fled, but learning that I was a Priest, kissed my bands mut ing, and refreshed vs with fire of Milke in vessels of Seram, which they fet on burning flores to beate. Bread they had none, and was, they faid, a rare thing to them, and farre brought. Their wines which had his therefore, came the excit diff to intred my blefting, fome kifing my bands, other fal-ling at my feet. We ment thence our rough Mountaines, tradiced affe must raine, the may not about

there force from the both files fo fleepe, these I days not looke downe for feare of established. Elind almost and weak, we came at left to the top, and found a planer path. (for I had not been able to have descended the like) and a Towns of (brillians which brought to their Bookes and Crosses. Herewee mere instited to a poore Cottage, which yet was in good fasfon for us, a violent raine following, which elfe bad oppressed us. On the tenth of May we came to Barua, where all my Company less me, but one San tacen and a Christian. Another Saracen which dwelt here sent mee a Han, but the Christian which

Value lupe. Att mas with me gat him away, because the Abastines (furforth) eate not any thing killed by a Turke : and men with one you among, being with thankes to the fender, eating dry Bisket brought from Din. a jor jears of offenes, too a bound faint. Neither would the Gold I had doe me any fernice heere to be without any other currant Money being stones of Salt. The Bread of my Companions was halfe baked Dough, of round forme, which they bake with putting a bot stone into the Dough, and rolling it, cast it into the fire, so that the out-side is scorebed, the in-side unbaked. This they carried in their Budgets, but me tine jure, justified on the processing the cleueth of May, came Iohn Gabriel, the Captaine of the flowack could not bear eit. Hither on the cleueth of May, came Iohn Gabriel, the Captaine of the Portugals, haume received noy Letters from Mazua, with other Portugals. To give mee better enterturment, they killed a Sheepe, which I tasted not, they eating it a little scorched and halfer am after the Raw fiels. Country custome. Here I bad a Mule, and we travelled twentee together, yet not without feare of 10 Theenes, the raine also towards exening daily molesting us (and we were forced to lye in the open fields) beat also exceeding in the ascent of an exceeding Mountaine, and as exceeding cold on the top. On the

preme Gouernor in causes clesiasticall. * This feemeth falfly written : for

Graffe-hop

ged) in Effex, where the Deinto the Church at the

20 a Medow swo furlongs fuch a Medow is there ftill, called Lopers, in that Parith of my natiui-

fifteenth of May, we came to Fremona, where Ouiedo and others of our Fathers were buried in the chiefe Church of the Portugals. We were received with great denotion of the people. I went to the Patriarchi bouse, which is round as an Apple and coursed with straw, as are all which we have yet seems in Ethiopia, (all of Earth, andround, latte, without diffinit roomes; except those of the King and great men which have several roomes, but yet of Earth and Thatched.) The Patriarchs bousse was twentie palmes or spansouer. Heere were Melchior Syluius bis things, which had carried with him. Secum Berific. the boly Destinents. Sunday following being whit funday. I celebrated a dry Maffe and preached. Many came to Confession. The Portugall Captains was sent for to the Court by the new Emperour, to 20 whom I writ, who by writing welcomed me, and licenfed me to goe to him, which I purpose at the end of September, which is the end of Winter : for of him depend all the Priests, and all will be Catholices if be command, as well Clergie as Laitie. The Emperours name is Malac Sequed, aged fifteene yeares. On the last of June, Sylunus returned from a worse sourney then that of ours, more craggie and rough, of twentic daies, which hee goeth twife in the yeare to Nanina, to the Catholikes there. I fend your Worships the bead of the holy Patriarch, although not whole, having here often digged up: I adde three erorings toe veel of toe best restructed, attomet not wone, naming orce esten agree up: i adde three picces of the skull, and the saw wish eight tenth. On the other fats, lend you me, i pray, some Image of the skull, and the saw wish eight tenth, of the fortice of this Temple wanting an Image. The bias of the Temple wanting an Image. I have placed the head of Father Francis Lopes in my Bolfter, being yet hairy, for my more time mem-Sezundiboth rie of his life, which what it was you shall receive by our informations, as also of Father Abraham, of 19 and Successor. whom you have beard no fame, &c. While Pacz remained at Fremona, hee translated the Catechilme into the Amaran tongut

(which is there counted the most elegant) and made the Children learne it by heart. In this yeere 1603. great milery happened by Graffe-hoppers, from which, Paez freed the Catholikes, by Letanies and fprinkling the Fields with Holy-water; when as the Fields of Heretikes, feuered onely by a Ditch, were spoyled by them. Yea, a Heretike vsing this facred sprinkling, pers seared feuered onely by a Ditch, were tpoyled by them. 124, a fellow with Holy-wapreserved in Some, which to a Catholike neglecting in one Field, was lost, and preserved
with Holy-wapreserved kinner are these Loculis to the Deuill, which is another by that conjured afpersion (so neere of kinne are these Locusts to the Deuill, which is faid * to hate Holy-water, or elfe make a quare for other Locusts, worse then the Etypian rels of Traffed mentioned Apoc. 9.) About the end of September, when hee had thought to have gone to the ap Athinke hee Court, newes came, that the Emperours Silters Husband conspired against him, and impussomeaneth Thar ned him, alleadging that he was no Christian, because one of his Guard was an Ethnick, and that his Father was not the King, but one Batius a vulgar person. He being produced and thus accused, frood mute; because (said hee) his Subiects presumed to judge their Soueraigne; Hee was fent into close keeping to Damijeta.

The Viceroy of Tigras passing by, Pagz went to falute him: who willed him to sit downe on his Carpet, when all the rest stood; and asked why the Portugals did not now as in time past, and leaped in frequent the Red Sea; whether they were afraide of the Turkes. Hee aniwered, that Turkes rather feared the Portugals, and fled into the Countrey when they approached the Coaft : but this was the true reason that all the ships of India came thither out of Portugall Ports, and most of 40 off Sure I am, their goods appertained to the Portugals.

He went to the Monasterie Conegorum, where he saw their Church, the Altar invironed with a threefold Curtaine, reaching to the wall on both fides, fometime coursed with stone, now with straw, the Saracens having spoyled the former, and therefore darke : they shewed him a Crucifixe painted on a Linnen cloth, as a precious thing, yet artlefly wrought. They fet himon a Carpet , themselues and the Portugals litting on the ground. Ouer against the doore , were ten faire stones, in the midst whereof, they say, the Emperour is inaugurated. A little further are thirteene stones in Pyramide fashion, the greatest whereof is twelve spannes broade, and about fixtie high, with much workemanship, the matter admirable whence it could bee brought hither. The Viceroy forbade his ludges to meddle with the Towne of Catholikes, and ap. 60 pointed Paex their ludge. The Galls did much mischiefe at this time, and flew the King of Narce, tributary to the Abaffine, whom also they affailted, but were ouerthrowne. After this, the King sent for Pace, who was brought to the King, sitting on a high Throne, and killed his hand, being bidden allo to be coursed, and to it on the Carpet. After this, followed another

day : a dispute about abolishing the legall Rites, two wills in Christ, and Purgatorie, all which. eay; A dispute acoust anothing was defired to fee their Maffe, but for want of Wine, he could performe Want of Wine onely a dry Office; for which, the King caused a great Tent to bee erected, and in it, another of the Vines onely a dry Oline; for which, the Ring Canton against 19 whom the Emprefeallo defiring that of Hoy leffe for his Throne; the Ieffute presched with great aplaule; whom the Emprefeallo defiring that of Hoy beare, when the Emperour law him flanding, hee arole from his Throne, and inuited him to more commake his Sermon out of it, himselfe litting on the Foot-stoole. Another time, when in conference, Paez called himfelte the Empetour; Subiect; no, faid hee, my Father and King: and saue great hopes of the conversion of that Nation, which were dashed by his death, which Pack thenified in his Letter, the thirtieth of July, 1605. Namely, that Zezelazew, whom the Em-10 perour had delivered from exile, and exalted, had conspired together with Eras Athanatheus, (the next to the Emperor) who yet made faire shew, and bound himselfe after the Alassine man-

ner, in the bond of excommunication, to fidelitie and loyaltie, which yet he kept not; Zezelazem The Emperome ner, in the bond of excommunications, to the Emperous, that he for fooke his Religion, and imbra. Malas Squed, gathered great forces, alleadging against the Emperous, that he for fooke his Religion, and imbra. Called also satisfacted the Portuguel and Campane; and therefore all that were zealous, ought to take armes against emplained do him. This made some sweare to kill all the Portugals, and the Jesuite especially. Before the thanas Sagued. hattell, he wished him present to confesse himselfe to him. In the battell, Anabel which before had for loken him, returned to his Part with his Sonne : but hee suspecting him; False Traito; thou wenteft, faid he, and so thou returnest, withall, killing him, which his sonne seeing ranne the Emperour thorow the necke, and thrust him off his Horse, whom Zezelazew and the Sa-20 racous insparched. Three daies hee lay dead in the field, naked and subject to contumelies . and after that, meanely buried.

Paez, was all this while in Goyame, whence he was fent for by the Empresse, and kindly entertained. Sazmofus by election succeeded in the Empire foure Moneths, then forlaken, and Lames restored out of his Marean imprisonment and exile, passing thorow the Galle's Countrey Lames stains of with great hazard. In the yeese 1607. Sazinofine onercame him in battell, neither was lames a- laft ny more seene. This Sazinosim was a man of singular arts and parts for warre and peace, munificent and faithfull, aged five and thirty yeeres, affected to the Romane faith. A yeere and halfe he had to doe with Rebels, fame affecting Sourraignty, which hee brought to Subjection. Much adoe he had also with the Galle (which came to subdue the Agai, which are white Chri- Agai 20 Stians, to fell them to the faracens) whom in foure battels he ouerthrew. After this, followed another rebellion, with facteffe like to the former. Hee fent Zezelazeus prifoner into the Kingdome of Goroma, whence he escaped and was flaine of the Pelants. He sought to vnite the Aballine Church with the Romane, and writ to the Pope and the King of Spaine. His Letters to the Pope are thefe.

THE Letters of Malalegued the Abassine Emperous, let some to the bust Pather Belliago of Rome. The reason of with the praces of lefus Christ, which bush bened vs. and supplied vs. from. our flumer in bus bland, this name, I and made as Kingdome and Priefts to Golf and the Belliago. This prace beew with your Helmiself, thinke rose and the whole Charrie of flrift, etc. Such is the finite activation of our Empire by morre past, that their cultome of the base Charries of the Rome Roles, for the three their cultom are past, the Ethinek Casles, Charge and though the the Latinet Charles. Annual state of the Charles of the Roles of the Charles of the Roles of the Role which have fubricted in final part of the Aringamia, maching metry or with new investions, mifere-they computed by versing did and young which their registerants in feming by represent missing-should part of the King of Portugall. Wherefore we investigations are final or which the in Ancester did to see Prigonistry. And that my Person may face more regist, Ishonghe goods where to give Heininghe the pelity and I above of all the faithful, to propriet photocomes I without the Contract of the

The Isdures there guestion of June Dets, Glaines, Say, The Abuffler weare Amuless of words of the Golpell, halping about their needs, Ambouffler their Robes which arole in Armes against Sexually, was any and fare from Brooms, Voluntary been gardness of force, or Hermite Belgion against Sactinofies, was that have from tryonomes, we measure necessary and addresses in a Wildernelle twentid pares, the juving off yet this whitehold of a Scaper. He had throose to collect him, of which here are playing, while I have stand the see a bobbed of differentia, and feeme to him robbed any Randers parents to wilders just while him for long in this militable

An Armenian his report of Svissin vs, the Emperour of the Abaxins. by us only alled PRESTER IOHH, who came from the faid Emperours Court twelve daies fince.

Pirft, From Dealeque to the Kings Court, called Dombia, (a very great Citie) is fine and twentie daise journey by Carrauan ; heere goeth from thence yearely ton Carrauans, whereof eight are great. The Commodities they carrie are all kind of Indian cloathing, and likewife of our English Commodities, (Broad-cloath, Kerfeys, Lead, Tinne; likewite, Veluets, Da-

maskes, Sattens, Taffitaes, and all other forts of Silke Stuffes. Their measure is about halfe a vard; Cloath, which is worth in Moba foure Rials of eight, is there worth eight Rials, The price of Kerseyes, is halfe the price of Broad-cloath: The Colours they most defire, are Reds, Greens, Violets, Murreys, and other light Colours: Yellowes in no effeeme, nor Blacks.

Veluets of China of all forts are worth ten Rials of eight the halfe yard. Veluets of Italy are much more worth : but not fo profitable to the Merchants, because they are much detre-Sattens of Florence are worth ten Rials; Damaskes of the better fort, worth eight or ten Rials als. Taffitaes three Rials; all colours well fold, excepting Yellowes and Blackes,

The Commo-

The Kings

Cinet, great quantitie is tobe had, the price is three Wakias, (which is neere vpon four dities of that
Country, with
The Bahar is three hundred and fixtie Rottollies of Moba. Waxe one hundred fortollies. worthone Riall of eight. Gold the Rottolly, worth fixtie Rials, the Rottolly is neere voon fixteene ounces and a halfe. Lead and Tinne in great request. Tinne worth the Rottolly, one Rial, Lead much more worth, because the Tark wil not furter any to be carried into his Country.

B. zar-stones many are to be had, and little worth : here are many Beasts with one home in their fore-head like a Vnicorne; which horne, they fay, is good against poylon. There are of them which weigh eight pound, fome feuen, foure, and three pound: the greatest and fairest, worth some foure Rials the piece, and those of a lesser fort worth lesse: among the Tarker and Moores in Arabia, enery pound is worth one Riall of eight.

From Grancaire there goeth in Augusta great Carrauan, and likewise another in Novem- 20 ber. The Commodities they carrie from thence, are Broad-cloaths, Kerseyes, Veluets, Sattens, Damaskes, and all forts of Silkes, From Carro to Dombus is fiftie daies trauell by Carrauan.

First, he fits on a gilt Bed-fted like those of Chma, and there commeth great troops of men daily to falute him ; fome daies two thousand, some daies more, some daies lesse; but Friday being their day of Fast, there commeth a farre greater quantitie.

HONDIVS bis Map of Asia.





PPEREGRINATIONS.

AND TRAVELS BY LAND IN.

TO PALESTINA, NATOLIA, SYRIA,

ARABIA, PERSIA, AND OTHER PARTS OF ASIA.

THE EIGHTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

The Historie of the first Expedition to Ierusalem, by GODFREY of Bullen , ROBERT of Normandie, and other (briffian Princes; Written 30 by ROBERT, whom fome call the Englishman, a Manke of Saint R & M I G I V S, which mas prefent both at the Councell of Claremont, and in the faid Expedition i tran-

Sated and abbreniated



N the years of our Lord 10 d g. a great Councell win coldera Provide han ted at Cleremons, in Assertes on the Confines of Prance, where visited lends in Pape Vrhow the Second was prefent and Prefident with the low by relation Billiops and Cardinals: where many French and German Bil of the Pariate thops and Princes were aftembled. Eccleficaticall Affires be and pretended reaction me ing there fet in order; the Lord Popewent forth into a broad fever (for no House was shir to constains the multicule) and the Pope to spake thus with persynalise pleasant Rhetoricke show them... this counsale

O yes Marion of the French; O Nation, (as appended by ma. and Councelle my of your marker) beloaded and choice of God, is pursued from all Nations, afwell in fituation of your Region, as in Catholibe Religionand Havour of boly Church; su you is our Spoots directed, and

our Extertation intended, willing to let you know what Jamentable cause hatt brought us to your Borders. our Exhipt at two internationaling years you have meant on the first and prought us to your worder.

50 Fram the Confesc of feet these and Cantilantinople a gricosium report hath firead and virus came to "Terferwhich our area, that the Perfints," aswelfed Nation often our and fine and alware a from Gad, which incompletely be had come out Country of bosic Configurate, and with fineral, finele and fine hath party expained, party fixing themselves in the first and fine that performed your fixing themselves and fine that the consecting Configuration and fleedding that belond of Creamington with a distance on the Configuration for the Whom they please to kill with fixened that they are as the meant, and taking our the anticker, systems the configuration of the to a flate and who them about the form, the leng executarinate by flow to figure an overainst per flows. Office, unspection of the second of the flow a state and two at it of overs to symmet try a motiver with one way sum state of two and that Resistant of full (14 of 16 the which may not, cannet, by flying be a profiled, the vanishment of moment I the Greeke Nations, with Empire for the flace of two monethes narries, they have over-rannee and implaced. It whome there have be the Section of the tenenge and de liner cover belong but to man whom God himb preferred abone on her Nations in honour of I wish that they Armer, courage of hearts, agilitie of bodies, and abilitie to abase enery. Enemy. Let the Exploits of your Predacesfors incite your manh foris, the goodnesse and greatnesse of Casolus Magnus, and Lewis his Sonne, with ather your Kings, which have destroyed the Kingdomerof. Turkes, and in them enlarged the border tof the Church. And abone all, let the holy Sepulchre of our Lord and Saniohe moone you, which is possessed of impure Nations; and those boly places which are shamefully abused ourre-

immarc, gl.veg.

ucrently defiled by their filthinesse. O most valiant Souldiers, and the Progeny of inuincible Progenic tors, doe not you degenerate, but call to mind the vertues of your Ancestors. And if the deare affects. on of wines and Children stay you, remember what our Lord sayth in the Gospell, Hee that loueth Father or Mother more then Mee, is not worthy of Mee. Every one which shall for lake House or Father, or Mother, or Wife, or Children, or Lands for my Name, shall receive a hundred fold and shall possesse cernall life. Take no care for your Lands and Goods, for this your Land is enclaled with Mountaines and Seas, is to Strait for your multitude, and Scarsty yeelds sustenance to ber Inhabitants. Hence it is that you bite and denoure one another, make warres and flay each other. Let he tred cease, brances be silenced, Warres be bushs, and Dissentions be builted asleepe. Enser the way of the holy Sepulchre, take away the Land from that wicked people and subdue it onto you. That Land was it is mente the children of Ifrael, flowing, as faith the Scripture, with Milke and Honey. Itrutalem is the Nauill of the Earth, a Land fertile aboue others, as it were another Paradife. This bath the Reto toe Matthia made elevisons with his comming, adorned with his conserfation, sconferrated mith his Passion, redeemed with his Bloud, sealed with his Sepulchre. This Royall Citie placed in the multi-Arripite intus of the World, is now held captime of her Enemies, and is by them which know not God, enthralled to the window arts cutions of the Gentles, She feeler then and define to be freed to me casting up my for you fee.

missions not consistent of the Gentles, She feeler then and define to be freed to me casting to pay for you fee.

cons and that of you chiefly whom God habbolf fitted for Armes, undertake yee this may thus for catement vette-rum, Securide remission of your sunes, being assured of the immarcessible glory of the Heavenly Kingdome.

Thefe and many like words with much Vrbanitie did Pope Urban pronounce, and fo moned the hearts of all present, that with one voice they cryed, Dens valt, Dens valt; which the Pope 20 hearing with eies lifted to Heauen, he gaue thankes to God, and acknowledged it the worke of God which put it into their minds.

Let therefore this voice (faith he) be your word in your Warres, and when you shall give the on-la a God wils, or on the Enemie, on Gods behalfe this Iball be your univerfall out-crie, Deus a vult, Deus vult, Nee it God's with, on the chemic, or was seven; seen some or four form from the contract the contract the contract to the contract toen hetps. Let the richbels the poors, and carrie with them is the men in for Warre. Prift, or Clerkes of any other may not go are visious them to diploy is leave, without which the my nould be to prift able for them. For mether is it expectant for Lay-men to travell, but with the helpfly of them to them. For mether is it expectant for Lay-men to travell, but with the helpfly of them to the prift, Whofencest therefore held have a purple of this holy Pletrange, and fluid made of You kers, it decision of of the Ocal, that he will offer a liming Sacrifice holy, acceptable to Gad, let him wear the figure of me this time. Our let Crift on his fore-bead or on his breft. And he which hamps performed his Vor fluid yas Kangii they Ledd, Crift on his fore-bead or on his breft. And he which hamps performed his Vor fluid yas wanto Nov. thomas, let him put it belimb deprivate his floudlett. Both mayes shall fach accomplift one Lords Can. mention had the mandement in the Goffell, Hee which doth not beare his Croffe and come after mee, is not wor.

Bithops blate the of mee.

After this, one of the Cardinals named Gregorie, in the name of all that were profirate on the ground, faid his Confession, and so all knocking their brests obtayned Absolution of those things which they had done amiffe, and after their Absolution a Bleffing, and after the Blefing licence to returne home. And that it may appeare that this worke was of God and not of Man (as after wee learned) on that very day in which these things were said and done, Fame pres- 40 ched it thorow the World; infomuch that in the Hands of the Sea it was reported, that the Isrufalem Voyage was concluded in the Councell. All the Laitie returned home; and Pope Vrbane caused the Bulhops to affemble the next day, and confulted with them what course might be taken for such a multitude of Pilgrimes, seeing there was not yet amongst them any Prince of Name. And they all chose the Bishop Podiensis, saying, that hee was a man fit for Affaires Ditime and Humane, well skilled both wayes and prouident in his actions. He therefore like another Mojes, received the charge and conduct of the Lords people, with the Popes bleffing and of the whole Councel O how many of divers age and condition received Croffes in that Councel and vowed the way of the holy Sepulchre! Thence was it divulged abroad, and to the eares of Kings and Princes came this honourable Constitution of the Councell, It pleased all and more so then three hundred thousand conceine it in their purpose, and are now eager to fight with the

There was in those dayes one Peter, which had beene an Heremite, much efteemed among them which are skilled in the World, and preferred before Bishops and Abbots in Religious account, because he neither did eate bread nor flesh ; yet did hee vie Wine and all other food, and fought the chiefest abitimence in Delicacies. He at that time gathered no small multitude of horse and foot, and made his way thorow Hungaria, being affociated to a Dutch Commander, called Godfrey the Sonne of Enflace Earle of Bullen, but in Office of dignitie hee was a Dutch Leader. He was a man of goodly countenance, tall flature, pleafant speech, worthy behaulour, and so milde of disposition, that he seemed more like a Monke s then a Souldier; but when the Bne- 60 mie was at hand hee was a dreadleffe Lion. Hee with his Brethren Euflace and Baldwin, and a great Armie pasted the way of Hungarie, the way which Charles the Great appointed to his Armie to Confimple. First therefore, Peter the Heremite with his , and a great multitude of Almanes came to Constantinople, and found there a copious band of Lumbards, and many others

affembled from places farre diffant. To whom the Emperour denyed entrance into the Citie. inspecting much the Christian valour, especially of the French. He granted them yet to buy and fell, but forbade them to pale ouer the Sea, called Saint Georges Arme, till the dreadfull Armie of the French was comne. For there was an infinite number of Turkes which brutifully thirlled for their approach, by whom they must needs be destroyed, if they passed sooner, as afterward it hapned. But every company wanting a good Gouernour, guided by an ill head, groweth feeble and is farre from fafetie. Thus they wanting a pradent Prince to rule them , deftroved the Churches and Palaces of the Citie, spoyling them of their goods and leaden roofes, felling the same to the Greekes. Whereupon the Emperour Alexius beeing angry, commanded them 10 to paffe Saint Georges Arme, which going further, chose one Rainald for their Leader, not ceating to commit the like out-rages, burning Houses, and robbing Churches. Thus came they to Nicomedia, and thence entred the Land of Romania: and haung walked three dayes went beyond Nice, and found a Cattle called Exerogorgo emptie of men, but plentifully thored with Corne. Wine, Flesh and all kind of Prouisions. The Turkes for feare of the French had gone farre off. but fent their Spies, by whom they were informed, that thefe new Ghefts were Wafters and Spoilers rather then Viers and Possessors, whom therefore they begirt with a strait Siege, the belieged having exchanged their former Riots with such want of drinke; that they were faine to supply that want with letting their beasts bloud, to satisfie the Owners thirst; or effe with their owne Vrine. This was about Michaelmas, when Rainald their Leader to faue his life made 20 close composition with the Turker and fled to them, leaving such as would not turne Turker as he did, for love of the World, to be by them turned out of the World by ludibrious and reprochfull

deathes, or to hold a title of life with reall captivitie and baseft servitude. . Peter the Heremite was in the Castle Civito aboue Nice, against whom they removied, and by the way encountred with Walter his Generall, whom valuantly fighting they copreffed with multitudes and flue : and after that, all the Christians they could meet with, they killed or captiued. Peter himfelte being gone to Conflantinople, they forced his Castle. The Emperour and the Greekes playd the Greekes, and reloyced hereat, buying their Armes of the needle Souldiers.

30 TN the meane-while, God ftirred up two Earles alike in Dignitie, Armes, Courage, Name, The Geord Bloud and Power, Robert and Robert, the Earles of Normandie and Flanders, and with them Booke. Hugo Magnus Brother to Philip the King of France, Stephen Earle Carnotenfis and other inferiour. Instactime W. Earles, many both of France, and of the Greater and Leffe Britaine from the North, and from Conquerous the South the Bishop Podient's and Raimund Earle of Saint Giles (or Tholoufe) which being very and his Soune rich fold all that he had and vndertooke the Enterprize. And now the West prepareth to en- fully filled lighten the East, and with new raised starres to expell that darknesse, the brightnesse of their Earles and selminds excelling that of their Armes, all refoluing to die, or conquer. They parte the Alper at dome Dukes: divers times and came to Rome (the Citie not being able to lodge them all) where having vifited and full the to the holy places, and commended themselues to the Merits and Prayers of the Apostles and other Earldome of Saints, and received the Popes bleffing, they paffed thorow Apulia; a Prince whereof named the Palatine in Boamund was then in the fiege of Malphi, on the Sea-shoare, who hearing of their Leaders, Or- Germany are ders, honestie, their word Dem vult, their Weapons, Courage, Crosses on the fore-head or right superiour to bets, flowline, for two persons of Sarmets and cut them into Crofts, and faid, I fay the ear Leaf, Dukedomer Let him now bee spread on many the same are my Soulder, become God, and enter the way of the Entersillo are him November who me, and yet that now are my Soulder, become God, and enter the way of the Entersillo are him November him. and takes with him or a wear. Are not we said, of Fernal, him all the said of the sai boly Sepulchrewith me, and take my things as yours. Are not me also of French blood, and did not our and other Au-Parent come out of France, and subdue this Landby Armes? Shall our Kinsmen and Brethren goe to thots of this CMarrychone and Paradije without vi? In all Ages to come a back-fliding consardije will be e imputed Age, called to vs. of this disme Wasfare bee performed without vs. Prefently all of them cryed, We will go on more treaser.

50 with thee and wow the way of the Sepulchre; the Crofles not beeing sufficient. The Nobles of A-ding sufficient Calabria and Simila ded also that the information that the Nobles of Edding sufficient pulia, Calabria, and Sicilia, did also the like, insomuch that the Doke of Apulia, Brother to the thenside, faid Boamund (both Sonnes of Robert Wischard) was afraid to abide in his Dukedome, being left alone with children and women.

Whiles Boamund prouided necessaries, Hugo tooke Sea at Bari, to Dyrrachium, others to Brundulium, or Otranto. The Emperour had commanded his Officers to take all these Pilgrimes and bring them to Constantinople to doe him fealtie, that what they tooke should be his. But when Hingo met there Duke Godfrey, he rejoyced of his taking, both renewing their old friendship, and discouring the Emperours fraud: who before had laid ambushes to kill closely Duke Godfreyes men as they went to prouide necessaries, which being perceived by his Brother Baldwine, was 60 with counter-ambush turned on the Imperials, and after another like assault on Godfreyer Tents.

The Emperour frustrated, sought to make peace, and permitted buying of proussion. The rest not long after arrived, and after them Boamund with Taxcred his Nephew, and Richard the Son of Marchis, who passed by Bulgaria, and Andrinople, and beeing encountred by the Emperours Forces, in the way ouerthrew them, and after received faire femblance from him, but with no

e Thefedrone

Nice taken. Solimans Armie of a60000, difcomfited. CHAP.I.

leffe malice. Homage was in conclusion required by the Emperour, that is, securitie of peace. that he should conduct and prouide for them, accompanying them with his presence, and the alfiftance of his people, I wearing to supply their necessitie in Armes and Clothes, and not to hurt or confent to the hurt of any Pilgrime. This they fware vnto, fo long to continue as the Emperour kept his Oath. But the Earle of Saint Giles refuled, and would have him and his Citieden ftroyed. But being periwaded by the reft, he took this Oath, I fweare to Alexius the Emperour the neuer by me nor mine be shall loofe life or bonour or what somer bee now possessibly or uninfly. And the Emperour Sware, I Alexius Emperour (weare to Hugo Magnus, Dake Godfrey, and other the Princes of the French bere prefent, never to burt or suffer to bee burt any Pilgrime of the Holy Sepal. chre, and that I will proceed with them in Warlike Affaires , and according to my power will provide to them fufficient Market. This they did forced by necessitie, but her chose rather to incurre Per. jurie then not to remooue the French from his Frontiers.

HONDIVS bis Map of Asia Minor.



Fter this Confederacie the Emperour commanded thips to be brought for transportation of A Fter this Confederacie the Emperour commanded in 198 to be prought for transportation of the Armie. Godfrey and Tancred were first transported, went to Nicomedia, and staid three dayes : and feeing no paffage the Duke fent before foure thouland men with Axes and Ploughes and other Iron Inflruments to make way, the way being wayleffe, thorow Hils, Dales and Pracipices. These made way with much labour to Nice, and set woodden Crosses at every numing. They came to Nive the first hof May, and before any prouifon was brought a Loafe of bread was fold for twentie or thritte pence. But Bommand brought plentie, and on Holy Thurfday they be for fixed to the Carle and addrefted thereto their Engines, Slings, Rammes and the like. The Twitter made valiant relifance, shooting poyloned Arrowes, which killed whom they but lightly

Ours erect high Engines about the Walls, by which they might ouer-fee the men on the Wall, and opposed Turrets of Wood to those of Stone. The fight was hote, and the befieved ready to yeeld when they faw threefcore thouland comming in their Troupes from the Mountaines, two for fight, whiles the thrd might enter the Citie. No Hunger-bitten flomacke is readier to five to a Feast then the Christians to the fight, where having staine them and returned to the Citie, they with Slings cast their heads into the Citie, and the next day having thing prepared, entred the Lake on the South-fide of the Citie, which fo afrighted the Times, that by the Turcopole they fent to the Emperour, that they would yeeld the Citie to him on composition to depart with their goods. This was done, and the Torker carryed to Configurationale, (with To purpose to have them in better readingse against the Frankes L'after seven weekes and there dayes liege, no Citie being fo defentible in all Romania.

They departed thence & two daies after came to a bridge, and refreshing themselves there two dayes, they parted themselves being to trauell in a barren Gounerty, the greater hand being committed to Hugo Magnus; and with him the Bishop, the Earles of Flanders and Saint Giles and Duke Godfrey: the other to Boamand. After three dayes march, this liter Armie is encountred with three hundred thousand Turker, whereat some Arinking and thinking to flie, Boamand 2 man popular, and Robert of Normandia a front Warriour, commanded to pitch their Tents : hat before this was done, one hundred and fiftie Tunke, with payloned Arrowes, began a skirmish turning their backes (according to their custome in their flight or wound the purtners) and were on taken and flaine. There was now noplace for flight, the Enemie having possessed the Hils, and the Franker hauing broken their Launces in thole wickes hodies, it came to handie frokes, with

Some got to the Christians Tents, and flay the Mother and Childe, whose cry comming to

frectacles.

Boamunds eares, he commits the battell to the Norman Earle and peedily repaires thither, chafed the Turker, and leaving fome to guard them returnes to the baccell. Here hee finds the Chriflians fo tired with labour, thirst and heat, that had not the women brought them water out of the adioyning River many had dyed. Now had burs once turned their backes, but prefently the Norman Earle displaying his Golden Banner, twented his Horse, and redoubled the Military word. Deni valt, Dem valt, otherwise that had proued a definally day. But feeing Boamand and the 20 Norman, they recoursed their spirits, challing to dye rather then to dye. The Turkes had so before ours with their multitude, that no way was open but to their Tenes : many perished by Tarkelb Arrowes; none was idle, the Souldiers fighting; the Prieffe crying and praying; the women Porty these conteying the flame to the Tents, the Aire over-fladowed with a thicke Cloud of fliot; when Gadrich Hugo and Duke Godfrey came flying like prouoked Eagles, to their diffrested Airies with fortie-Souldiers. thousand trehmen. And now the cries of some fighting, and others dying, the rading of Armors and cracking of Launces, filled the Hils and Valleyes with confused noyles of infulting voyces, and refulting ecchoes; and manifold deaths are represented to the life in miserable

The Timbes now looking backe to the Hils, see the Bishoppe Podiens and Earle Raiming AO with the reit of the Armie, descending to the on-fet 2s a terrible storme, showing Souldiers, and powring Weapons, and not able further to hold vp head or heart, betooke them to their heeles: which put life into our wounded, to pursue and reuenge their hurts; infomuch, that the Hill is coloured red, the thirftie earth is drunken, & increaseth the Neighbour River with new streames of Tersian, Median, Sprian, Seracea, and Torkish bloud, leaving their carkastes like Grassic-hoppers without number on the ground; the Night at last delivering the remnant of these children of darknesse, from the Christian Zeale which now connerted it selfe into Hymnes and Prayles of the Great Lord of Hofts.

The next day they buried their dead, diftinguished by Crosses, the wiser foregining them the Veneration of veneration of Marryrs, and the most Honourable Sepulture, The spoyle of the Turker clothed their flaine with Silke, the halfe naked Christians, furnished them with Armes, and of beggers soddenly friends by 50 made them rich. The day after, which was the third of July, they purfued the Turkes which realest super-

Soliman their Leader (Sonne of that Soliman which had taken all Romania from the Emperour) had after his flight from Nice, procured tenne thousand Arabians to come to his aide: which being comme, hee told them that the vertue of the Frankes was either Dinine or Diabolicall, whom wee, fauth bee, had so conquered (in conceit) that wee had provided Withes and Halters Compare this cale, whose neet, janto over, towa jo cooquerea (micromer, tom neet map jo commentance and traiter, with eightic to put about them neeker, when fuddenty a people which fewer not death came downs the Mouse eight prouison taines, and entred our Treupes. Also, wee more three hundred and three-fewer bongland, and are all Tires hunflaine or fied. This is the fourth day fince, and fill we tremble. And therefore if you will be advised, deed and fixite 60 get yee out of Romania. Thus they fled with him, in all Christian Townes as they passed, mathousand king a cheerefull countenance and semblance of Victorie; and spoyling all that opened to them, so to impouerish the pursuing Frankes by preuenting them of prouisions, leaving a Defert Coun-

Great Rams

Tarfia:

Armenia. Cafarea, Cafor. Axtiochia.

Militer . 8 40mm 20 02m Knighes there in this Author giuen com-Horfe men.

the prefent. were created and therefore were many in thefe, terefelymitan and other S ories of

4 Leaue not for the Milterie.1.Thef.\$ -21 The Monke that an Apo-file is not of Mat 18.106.11. The fourth

Thus were they forced to kill most of their Horses, and many to goe on foote; others, to ride on Oxen, Kine, and the great and strong Rams and Dogs of that Country. They passed thence therefore as fast as they could, and entred Lycamia, a plentifull Country, and came to Iconismo a rich Citie. When they went thence, they by countill of the Citizens carried veffele of water with them, which ferued till the fecond day after, that they came to a River: where hauing stayed two daies, they went forward to Heraclea. Heere were a great multitude of Tracks, which seeing the Frankes approach, sled amaine, and left the Citie to ours, which stayed there foure daies. Then did Baldonn Brother of Godfres, and Tancred, separate themselines with their troups, and went so Tar fus. Many Turkes were there which went to meete them, but were diforrfed, and the next day the Citizens received them into the Citie. Here arose a contention to betwixt Baldwin and Tanered, whether should have rule of the Citie, which Tanered at last yeelded to Baldwin, whose Armie was the greater. In short time two Cities, Albens and Mannitra, were yeelded to them, and many Castles. The Turkes were now hidden in their ftrongest holds.

The greatest part of the French, entred into the Land of the Armenians, eagerly thirsting to make the Land drunken with bloud of Tarker; the whole Land was quiet before them, and the Armenians received them into their Cities. They came to a Caftle which feared neither armes nor engines. A Souldier in the Campe, an Armenian, defired to hold that Land of the Princes. in the tealtie of God and the holy Sepulchre; whereto they yeelded, because they knew him Hore men.

After this, they came to (afores of Cappadocia, which voluntarily yed.)

and ded it felfe. Thence they were to a faire City which the Torkes had affreged a little before, three weekes, the Citizens whereof came forth to meete them. Another Knight in the Campe, ramed Peter de Alpibus , defired this, and obrayned it of the Princes. After this , they came to Cofor, a commodious and plentifull City; where they were gently received of the Christian Inhabitants , and flayed thee dayes , furnishing themselves with necessaries , and receiping a bundant refreihing.

Meane while, Raminadus had intelligence that the Turkes were fled from Antiochia, and had left it weakely manued; who denied thereupon, to concey thither fine hundred Knights', w take the Towre before the reft knew of it. But when they were comme into the Valley neer Antiochia, they then perceived that the Turker were not gone , but fortified the City all they \$ could. They went therefore to the Caftle of the Publicans , fubdued it , and turned thencem the Valley of Rugis, where they flew many Turkes and Saracens: whereupon, the Armenian mention: Mi- reloycing, yeelded themselves. They possesses themselves of Rusaand many Castles. The rest feiling, may alfolia marge.

of the Armie with miterable disafter patied mountainous wayer, paffable only for Bedits and
tedment creeping things, yeelding a Fost-parts indeed, a way of no whier fpace, R.cks, Shrubs, Thomes,
Annes, and he proof Hills a fighting to the Stars, and Hells of deepe Valleyes afrighting the very even whose
way water. the od of Horse away, to avoide the carriage, all enforced to goe on foote; yea, often bearing the burthens of their Beafts, which could not paffe laden : neither might any ftand or fit, by reason of the followers, or turne himselfe in those thraits, to helpe him which followed. By this vnpassable passage (the embleme of the true and beauenly Pilgrimage) they came at last to Marasis, where they were received cheerefully with plentifull refection. Having staid one day, they came the next day into the Valley in which Amichia is feated, chiefe City of Spria; whilome famous hithiorgotten by Saint Peter Prince of the Apostles : in it, he placed his Episcopall Chaire, and ordered Barnabas and Paul Apostles. But as first our Lord would conquer it with humilitie and presching, to now with tublimitie of Armes. Ours came to the Iron Bridge, where they encounteman, nor hath red many Turker, which prohibited their passage, and made their way by force, and there found a City but the rich (poyles. They pitched their Tents on the Rivers banke, not farre from the City; and the World for his next day prepare to goe to the City, and lay fiege to it in three place. For on one fide the 50 Mountaines prohibit accesse and all militarie Art. On Wedensday, the twelfth Kal. of December, was this fiege begunne, and because the City was not onely the minion of Nature, but Pa-1.0 2. Lute ragon of Art, the Princes confulted to vie more their Arts then Armes.

> Tirst therefore, they made a Bridge for commodious passage over the River, for they sound a Copious Vintage, Caues fall of Corne and prouisions, Trees laden with varietie of fruits, which the Armenians within the City made knowne to them. Engines were erected, Turrets of wood, Slings, Hookes, Rammes, Moles, and other deuifes. There were within io many defenders, as might hane tryed it in the filld with ours. They builded a Castle, if haply the Tinker premailed, for better securitie. The Garison of Arech having cut off divers of our Victualers, an 60 ambush was laide, and many Turker slaine, their heads cast (by Engines) into the City : and thenceforwards, our men had freer pallage to the Armenians for prouisions, which readily brought also to fell. Christmas Festivitie was celebrated with i youll solemnity : after which, the Winter with Elementary forces, helped the Enemie to affault vs , and made prouison difficult: famine within; without, Haile, Snow, Ice, Windes, Armies without Armes, but not without

harmes, to them which were without shelter, exposed to their fury, every way pinched, but in refolution, and therefore quickned by these spurres : they agreed that Boamand and the Farle of Flanders, with thirtie thousand choice Horseand Foot, should enter into the Saracens Land. From lerusalem, Damasco and Aleppo, and other Countries , Persians , Arabians and Medes. had affembled to come to Antiochia, to raife that fiege; but hearing that some of the Christians were entered their Countrey, they reioyced, securing themselues of victory, and divided their Armie into two, to keepe ours from fleeing any way. The Armies met, thefe trufting in their Famine and multitudes, those in Gods Omnipotence, which gaue them a shamefull ouerthrow, and put Plenie and them to flight; wherein our Foot mounted their Horles to purfue them. Once; they had beene Famine. 10 good Purueyors, to bring thus from farre vnto them fo many Asles, Camels, and other Beafts. laden with Wine, Corne and other prouision, and the hungry be filled with good things: his Name

The meane while the enemie had affaulted ours out of the City in their Tents, and flew many, and but for the River had done more hurt; which disafters together with famine . made fome of ours bethinke themselves of flying. An Affe-loade of Corne was now sold for seven pound, an Egge for twelue pence, a Nut for a peny, and many died of hunger. Yea, the Pillars

were shaken : Peter the Hermite and William. Carpenter, fled away by night. This William was of royall descent, Vicount of a Castle, called Milidane: no shield, breast-plate or helmet, could endure the firong pushes of his Lance. Tancred hearing of their flight, pursued them, tooke them, and cauted them to returne with fhame. For Hugo Magnus his take, (whose Kintman he was) and his former exploits, William, was pardoned, (wearing to doe fo no more, which vet he foone transgreffed, and closely fled. In the whole Armie were not found one thousand Horfes fit for feruice. To adde to their forrowes, one Tetigius, a Romanian, vndertooke to bring plentie of prouision from the Emperour by shipping, and left his Oath and Tents in pawne, which he neuer redeemed. The greatest part of the Armie compelled by famine, fued for leaue to depart, which the Princes with teares granted.

In this miferie, a Messenger brought them word of a great Armie of Turkes, which that night would bee at Arech the Castle aforesaid, purposing to fet upon their Tents unprepared. This made them dance, which before could not goe, as if they had already conquered, chusing 30 rather to dye by the Sword then hunger. They fent Spies the next day, which returned word. that they never before had feen fo many thousands of them together. Their huge multitude made ours beginne to flee, which Boamand feeing, he brake forth with fuch furie, that the enemy fled towards the Iron bridge; the Pranks lay frankly about them, and now the earth is coursed with carkaffes, the Avre is filled with clamors, the River is swollen with precipitated bodies, and more were flaine then escaped, which also returned to their Castle, rifled it, and then for sooke it, leaving it to Ours, which there placed a Garrison, returning to the Tents with great ioy and great spoiles. Their fellowes which that day had fought, and got the better of the Citizens, were now filled with double joy. The Armenians and Syrians also now brought prouision to the Campe, and rejoyced with vs. The Torkes after having ours at advantage, put the horse-40 men to flight, and flue about one thousand foote-men : which they fearfly had done, when the reft of the Armie out of the Campe, revenged the same with exceeding Viurie. Dake Godfrer gloriously behaued him elfe with the death of many, whom a Golias of theirs, a big and mightie man, had wel-nigh flaine, had not God and his valour protected him, whom he repaid with A mithis fuch furie, that lifting up his fword, he claue his breaft in the midft, dividing his backebone and ftreke, entrails passing thorow to his right thigh, his whole head with the right side of his body falling into the River, the left halfe he fent backe to the Citie. This fight bred in them horrer and amazement, for he was one of their Admirals (Amira's.) Euen the Rusers felfe with another amazement, for he was one of their Admirals (Amira s.) Even the Kivers tette with another
Armie of carkaffes, flood still to wonder at fuch a spectacle, nor could the vpper Waters enforce
Lordsor Comthe lower (flayed with a new world of Inhabitants) to give them leave to fee it, till their wel-

so ling indignation by force obtained it. In that conflict was flaine the Sonne of Caffianse, the great King of Antiochia, and twelve Admirals of the King of Babylon, whom he had fent with their bands to ayde the King of Antioche. For that Prouince hath one Metropolitane, twelve Confuls, and one King; and they were gathered out of fo many Proninces as there were Admirals. There were also seuen thousand taken Prisoners: the baggage was without number. And now the Turkes not onely ceafed their clamors and fcornes, but many fled closely out of the Citie. The next day the Turkes buried their dead beyond the bridge, which the Christians digged vp againe with differace, (for their fashion is to burie with Pals, Bowes and Arrowes, Golden B, zantines, and other things good for bootie) leaving another bootie to the Fowles. A Coine,

60 TN these vicificudes and entercouse of divertissed Fortunes, came Messengers from the King The fift of Babilon, vpon fafe conduct granted by the Princes. Against their comming the Campe Booke. was fet torth, in goodlieft shew of brauery, Shields hung vp vpon poles for the youth to runne

at Quintane, (an exercise on horse-backe) Dice, Chesse, Militarie skirmishes of horse and foote, Running at to expresse their carelesse and fearelesse resolutions, whiles the elder and grauer sort assembled Quintan. Gggggg 3

with mature adulfe and grave counfailes, to fecure that fecuritie. The Babylonians approaching, maruelled at this fight, having heard before that they were both familhed and heartlede, and being brought before the Princes, thus spake; The Admirauisfus of Babylon our Lords fends oreeting and friendiftip to you the Princes of the Frankes, if you will obey his will. In the Court of the King of Perlia our Lord, is a great affembly for your sake, and seven daies the Counsell hath beene prolonged They marueli why you come armed to your Lords Sepulchre, dispossessing their people of their ancient pellessions, and (which is unlawfull for Pilgrims) slaying with the Sword. And if you will come here. after with Scrip and Staffe, they will canse you to passe with bonour and plentie, they will make the foot after with Scrip and Mage tool with case you be put and and if you fhall pleaf to first a month of boof comen, and the poor to man nothing going or comming. And if you shall pleaf to first a month of the Sepulchre, you shall want nothing, and walke thorow scrulation, and have leave to performs who so gueneration you will to the Temple and Sepulchre. But if you contemne this includence, and trust in your courage and weapons, we are confident that no humane power is able to force the Baby lonians and Kine of Perlia. Speake now your minds what you like or diffishe berem. The Princes with common aduice answered. It is no maruell if wee come armed to our Lords Sepulchre, and exterminate your people from those Confines, seeing that they which have before comne with Staffe and Scrip, have bene shame. fully both scoffed at and same. The Land is not theirs, though they have long possessed it, because it was anciently ours, who for their malice and in instice by ours were dispossessed. But now it is decreed in Heanen, that it shall be rendred to the children which was taken from the Fathers. And let not your Nation glorie that they have conquered the effeminate Greekes, which by Dinine dispensation, the (word of the Frankes hallrepay you. It is not of man to onerthrow Kingdomes, but of him by whom 20 Kings reigne. They fay they will shew kindnesse, if we come with Scrip and Staffe : let their mercy returne voon themselves ; will they, nill they, our powertie shall bee inriched by their store. Nor can any burnane power affricht vs : for when wee dye, we are borne, and loofing a Temp:rall life, wee recourt an Eternall. Therefore tell those which sent you, that the Armes which we have taken in our Country, we will not lay by when we have conquered lerusalem. For we trust in him which teacheth our bands to fight, and maketh our armes as a bow of fleele, that all offences shall be removed and Ierusalem taken.

The Embassadours herewith displeased, by leave entred the Citie. Ours beganne to builda Cassle at Machinesar, before the gate of the Citie in their buriall place, destroyed their Sepulchres of Stone, which they yied to their structure; being finished, it was committed to East Raimund: This straitned their issues, and strengthned ours, which hereby had libertie to forage, 10 and brought in great booties, from a place where was an old ruined Caftle, which also they fortified and commended to Tancred, who intercepted provisions that were brought to the Citie Truce broken. The Citie therefore defired truce, to treat in that time of conditions of yeelding. The last day of which, a famous Wallon Knight, was by them taken and cruelly murthered, whose Wife, by her teares, cries and complaints, exceeded teares, cryes and complaints, having fpent that flore in prodigalitie of her forrowes, and now by her miferie varnished with bright Julie of her exceeding beautie, and the deepe impression of Noble bloud, which her impotent nailes scratched from that goodly countenance, and her impacience other whiles to feuerely recalled to theattendance on her great heart, that the abode as a Marble statue, spake more to commiseration and indignation with not speaking, then the best speaking Oratorie could have pronounced.

Reuenge slept not long. For one Pyrrhus which had three Turrets in his command, fent iscretly to Boamand, (with whom he had treated in the truce) to deliver them all into his hands. and his Sonne for pledge of his fidelitie. Whereupon by night Boamund and the Princes (as had beene agreed with Pyrrbus) closely conveyed the Armie thither, which by day (to deceive the Turkes) they had fent forth to forage. Thus scaled they the wals, (Fulcherius Carnotensis being the first which entred) and after set open the gates to the whole Armie : a Comer that night appearing, the heauenly Messenger of earthly mutations. The Citie was promised to Boumund, if he could make meanes to obtaine it, vpon occasion of Pyrrhus first sending to him.

rowes, feeing Death'importunate, he went forth to meete him, leaping in the midit of his ad-

uerse squadrons with his Sword and Shield, to take vp company to attend him into the other

On the fift of Iune, the Christians entred Antische, Fulcherius and his fellow Scalers instand 50 the Towers, and killed the sleeping Watches, awaking them to a neuer waking sleep. They which were awaked out of fleepe by this noyle in their houses, ran forth of their doores to see the cause, and presently forth of themselves and seeing together. Death now filleth every street and corner, consoundeth allages, sexes, conditions. Some running out of the gates, were encountred by others comming from the Campe, and Caffian the King elicaping into Tancreds iurifdiction in poore diffuite, was there discovered by the Armenians, and his head brought to the Princes, together with his Girdle, which was valued at one hundred and fixtie Byzantines. Many fled to the Cattle, which feemed impregnable, the Mountaine and the Building confpiring to deride affronts. Heereto from a neere Tower Boamund gaue affault, and (wounded) was forced to retire to another Turret, and the rest followed him. Onely one abode in the top, and 60 feeing himfelfe alone, mustered out of himfelfe an Armie of resolute thoughts, out of the wals an Armorie of stones and mortar against his vinderminers, and laden with one thousand Arworld. The night followed that bloudy day, but forbad sleepe to both sides, feare and wearineffe executing that fummons.

The next day, being Friday, whiles some were carrying out the dead, others assaulting the Cafile, there was espied from the Turrets and Wals a Cloud of dust, which some suspected to be the Conftantinopolitan Emperor, but proued Corbanan the General of the King of Persia, with a long Corbanan and farre gathered Armie of Perfians, Medes, Arabs, Turkes, Azimites, Saracens, Courds, Publicans and diers other Nations. There were three thousand Agulans, which vie none other Armes but Swords, armed to point with Iron. Ours being wearied, gaue them leade to prouoke, infult, & ron vp and downe casting vp their Lances and Swords, and againe catching them. Senladol. Sonne to to King Cassian, had gone to Corbanan, promising (hefore in his Fathers name, now in his owne) to reigne vilder him, to deliuer him the Castle of Antiochia, and to doe him homage. The Castle was now deliuered. Soone after a ruftie Sword and worle Lance, taken from a poore Franke, were prefented to him, with infultation on all hands over that beggerly Nation which thought by fuch Armes to spoile Afia and subdue Persia. And presently sent for his Secretarie to write to the Chalife and to the Soldan, that he now held the French Armie inclosed in the walls of Antiochia, the Castle in his owne possession, and that the cry was more terrible then the Wolfe. And whereas you writ to me viterly to destroy them, be not offended if I fend some of the chiefe bound to you. Their fernice will be viefull, and the French Kings Brother an honourable Captine to Perlia. Ply you your pleasures and get children to resist other Frankes, if need be. As for me, I will not see your face till I have 20 Subjected all Romania, Syria, and Bulgaria to your service. Thus did he fell the skinne of the Beare yet living. His Mother fought to diffwade him by Prophecies, Starre-gazings, and other Wifardly Distinations, which all (flue faid) portended professite and victorie to the Christians. But hee remayned deafe, and refolued to try it out from the Castle, the Turkes still annoyed Ours, and with fuccessions of supplyes shad great advantage; the streets were still covered, and Houses as it were roofed anew with Arrowes. But a worle Enemie, Famine did more harme : the legge of an Affe was fold for fixtic shillings, and the buyer effeemed frugall, the Hides of beat's were creffed for food, the children started at the brefts of their Mothers. Many fled away

 B^{Vta} certaine Priest comforted them with Relation of a Vision of Christ, the Virgine and The Feneral Peter appearing to him and promising reliefe after the dayes, which one Peter seconded with Books. a fecond Vision of Saint Audrew, shewing him in Saint Peters Church in the Citie, the Launce The Stories of which pierced the fide of our Sauiour, with promife of victory to the Bearers; which they thete times are went, digged and found it with great toy, finging a Te Deum, & Gloria in Excelfit. All pre-fulled Visions: fently sware not to flie, nor defift from the lourney of the holy Sepulchre. By night fire from hence neglecthe West fell from Heaven vpon the Tarker Campe, which cheered Ours and terrified them, as ting the Scripan Enfigne of Divine vengeance by the Frankes. Soone after the Turkes having affailed and were fed with 40 flaine three of ours in a Towre, whiles none of our started number could be brought out of their Legends, And Houses to affift them; Boamsend dislayning, caused fire to be set on those Houses to bring them would God out by force, and such a wind arose with the fire that it burned two thousand Houses and Chur-

and raised reports that the Citie was loft, or could not long hold out, Earle Stephanso Carnotenfis

by this newes caused the Emperour comming to their affiffance to turne backe.

Peter the Heremite and Helninus were fent to Corbanan, in Ambaffage, which they perfor- Huskes and med foutly in confidence of the former prefages. The Bishop Podiensis (the Popes Legate) en- returneto his ioyned three dayes fait, and they all confessed themselues, observed Processions, and on the third Fathers house, day receined the Sacrament. After which by common counfell the Armie was divided in fixe reft fernang parts, the first Band committed to Hugo and the Earle of Flanders, the second to Duke Godfrey, hash better parts the third to Rebert the Norman, the fourt to the Padas Billion, which carryed with him the food, to the Padas Billion, which carryed with him the food, to Launce aforefaid, and a great part of Earle Reimunds forces, the fifth to Tenered, the fixth to Oribit Lance, Boamund. The Bishops, Priests, Clerkes and Monkes in their holy Vertments went out with The finder was Bomman. An Offinity, Freely, Assistant Modifies in the hands, signing the people, and crying fooder was the Souldiers without the gate carrying Crofles in their hands, signing the people, and crying, food a decision of food of the people, and buffer time inheritance: Eee thouse them a Tener of Theograph from the face use. of their Enemie, with other Pfalmes. The like was performed by those which were on the Walls and Towers. Corbanan faw them comming forth, and faid, let them all come out that we may the better take them. By him stood an Aquitaine Renegado, which for his belly had denied his Redeemer, and had told difgracefull reports of the Christian forcelede familhed Forces; by whom he now learned to whom enery Band pertayned. And seeing their Armes and Order, hee cut off the head that had brought him those Tales. Hee gaue also a signe to the Amera of 60 his Treasures , that if hee saw a hre kindled in the head of his Armie , hee should flye with all

When Ours were comme into a certaine Valley, the Bishop of Podium armed, and holding the Launce of our Saujour erected in his hand, made a Sermon or Speech vnto them, exhorting to courage and charitie, promiting Victorie to the Surviver, Heaven to the Dier, and bleffed them. Then marched they on moderately, the length of their Armie from the River to the Hill exten-

Booke.

and the Norman under one Rainald. These met and fought, many beeing slaine on both ides.

When the other fixe Bands were come within Arrow thot, the Turkes that and the wind retor-

presently cryed, that their promised helpe was comne. Fire was set to the Graffe when the

to number the Footmen which were flaine. The next day fitteene thousand Camels were found

Horfes, Affes, Mules, Oxen, Sheepe, innumerable, with Gold, Silver, Vestments and other

things of price : with which they returned to the Citie, where they were received by the

Prietts in Procession. The Amera of the Calle feeing his fellowes runne away, asked for one of

our Colours, and the Earle of Saint Giles (left to guard the Citie) gave him his, which hee fee

vp, but hearing that the Citie was granted to Boamund, he fent for his Ancient, and covenanted

with him to fuffer the Castellans to depart with freedome, fo as they which would might be-

1199

Fight and vi-

red their Arrowes on themselues, fo that Ours could not find an Enemie, the Turkes flying from the first Band, which presently went to helpe Boamund, which bare the burthen of the fight. of I followmy and Godfrer followed him. Whiles Ours are in the heat of fight a white Armie appeared from Au hor into the Mountaines, whose Captaines are said to be George, Mauritius, Demetrius, and the Bishen Thickers (nie fraules) yet presently cryed, that their promited helpe was comne. Fire was let to the Gratie when the your discretion. Turkes fled, for a token of flight to the Campe, which yet were set upon by the Surious and Ar. 10 menians. There dyed that day one hundred thousand Horsemen, for they would not take paines may chu'e

The Caffle yeelded.

he wentto France, and after returned.

come Christians, the rest should have a Convoy to the Saracens. Himselfe became a Convert : and after three dayes fast, the Gentiles were baptized. The battell was fought on the eight and 20 twentieth of June, on Saint Peter and Saint Pauls Euen. Hugo Magnus was fent in Ambaffage to the Emperour to come to take his Citie, which having done, " he died. The other guiltieof breaking his Oath would not come.

They now consulted of going to the Sepulchre, but were forced to wait till October, by the drought and heate. One Pilet a Knight of Earle Raimunds, procured many to loyne with him. and went into the Saracens Land. The Saracens received him at Talaman : not farre thence hee wonne a Castle of the Saracens. They went to Marra, where many were gathered from Aleph (Aleppo) and other places : they discomfitted the Turkes, but were not able to lay fiege till October. The Bishop Podiensis dyed on the first of August, to the Armies great griefe, and was buried in Saint Peters Church. The Earle of Saint Giles went to Albaria, and forced the Cite, 30 commanding to kill all such as would not turne Christians, which cost many their lines, because they had taken it from the Christians, and vied the same condition. A Bishop was also elected

Marabelieged *Teftude,was 10 Er gin made nered with Hides to prein which the Affailants

in which also hang with ropes, that I. ron Engine, which if it had beake, was cale

CVmmer being past, the Christian Souldiers returned from their severall abodes to Antioch, and there met together on All-Saints day, beeing now farre more then when they had gone Booke. Jand there met together on All-Saints day, beeing now farre more then when they had gone The Christian from thence. For from all parts of the World many worthy Knights and Footmen had followed Army increa- the steps of the former, the Christian Armie daily increasing. And when they consulted of the way of the Sepulchre. Boamund demanded their couenant touching the Citie. Earle Ramun fail it could not be done by reason of their Oath to Alexim. Hence grew many meetings and ill 04 feription of greetings. At last the Bishops, Abbots, and more moderate Princes consulted how both might be kept : and it was agreed that both Boamund and Raimund should goe the way of the Sepulchre with the rest, the former fortifying the Castle, the other the Palace of Cassian, and the Tower on Saint Simeons gate.

 And because Antioch hath long detayned vs in the narration, and in the siege, we will speake formewhat of it for their fakes which haue not feene it. Threefcore and fine Kings are faid to haue ruled there. It is enuironed with two Walls, the former of great square stones artificially wrought, and therein are diftinguished in order foure hundred and fixtie Towers. It is goodly and i pacious contayning foure Fals great and high, on the highest a Cattle, neither fearing forci- so might approch ble batterie, or furtle engining. There are three hundred and fixtie Churches in her Territorie, to the walls: & and the Patriarch hath under his Iurisdiction, one hundred fiftie three Bishops. Foure Hils fortifie it on the Kaft. Farfar runneth on the West. Ours besieged it eight monet: es and one day, and were in it befieged three weekes of the Parthians, after which they reft. d there in quiet foure monethes and eight dayes, which ended, Raimund went to Rugia, and the next day to Albaria, which two Cities he had subdued : the fourth day to Marra.

The Citizens fcorning the paucitie of his Souldiers, came forth to encounter him, but were foone repelled. The next day Boamund adioyned himfelfe to his helpe. Iron Rammes were led /alx, if two made, which being hanged with Ropes, and by the Souldiers hands drawn back might be forced it was called on the Walls, with often pushes to shake downe the Wall. A Tower of wood was erected 60 Aries or a Ram higher then theirs of ftone, with three lofts furnished with Militarie Engines, having in the walls were that ken, & thores which forced the wheeles on which the Tower was but. Others filled the Dirch, haung applyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white their Market was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white their Market was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white their Market was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white their Market was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white their Market was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white their Market was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white their Market was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white their Market was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white the was a place to the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe to the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe the was a plyed a Torotofe the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe the Wallis to be him white the was a plyed a Torotofe the Wallis the was a plyed a Torotofe the was a plyed a plyed a Torotofe the was a plyed a plyed a Torotofe the was a plyed two higher armed men with Pikes, Arrowes, Stone, Balls, and Fires: in the lowest were those wild-fire, and another Instrument to throw great stones, but in vaine. For William of Mount

Tessid, with his Company in the highest storie, threw downe Mill-stones which brake the roofes of houses, whiles the others digged thorow the Wall. Others set a Ladder to the Wall, which Gulfering dela Twee first alcended, and many other followed him: whom the Citizens no lesse fisriously affaulted, and forced some of them downe with deadly pracipice: whom others vet followed: the Priefts also frood by the wooden Tower, calling on the Lord Icius, to powre bis wrath on the Gentiles which know him not, and the Kingdomes which invoked not his Name: and to bee our beloe in the nedfull time of trouble. The narrownesse of the Wall did not admit assistants to Gulfarie, who laid about like a Lion, and was most laid at, his shield beeing onerated with Arrowes. Darts and Weapons, that a man could not lift it, and hee was now spent and wearie when the to other had digged thorow, and soone chased away the Enemies: which so terrified those on the Wall, that Gulferie now without a shield full of heart and refumed life, made way with his Sword and killed more yet with feare (throwing downe themselves) then with his Weapon. Beamund fignified to the richer Citizens to flye to a Tower, and there they might redeeme their lives, which upon his word they did. Much crueltie was thewed by ours, ranfacking not only their houses but their very entrails for Treasure : neither yet was there any of so great a meltitude which would confesse the name of Christ. Every man had what hee could get. And Bosmond of those in the Tower she the old vnseruiceable, the rest he sent to Antiochia to be fold: but when her could not perfwade Raimand to deliner Anuschia to him, hee left him and retur-

The Armie which stayed all this while there was so pinched with Famine, that (horrible to Famines thron fpeake) they cut and eate vp the bodies of the Gentiles. The discord yet continued betwirt the at Antischia. Earle and Boanund, to the great displeasure of the Armie, Rainund pretending the Oath to the Emperour, and having pure Justice on his part. This being discoursed at Rugia and Capharda in divers meetings, every one wishing, but not shewing how to effect, concord, they returned to Antioch. But the Norman Earle with all his abode with Raimund, knowing that hee was in the right. These two Earles order their Bands for Celana, the King whereof had fent to become Rammade Vaffall. But when he saw the Armie approaching, hee was troubled and forbade to fell them any thing. The next day he sent to show them a Foord, whereby they might passe

thorow Farfer. a Valley, in which were twentie thousand head of beafts which they tooke: 30 and going to beinge a Caffle therein, it prefently yeelded to them, which Example another Caffle followed. Thence they came to Caphalia a plentifull Citie in a specious and spacious Valley, whole Citizens were all fied, leaung their Garners and Gardens, and Houles plentifully prepared for those which at first were filled with wonder and doubt, and after with libilee, prepared for those which at first were miss which where they kept their Candleman.

The like also was done by a Castle adiopning to that Valley, where they kept their Candleman. The King of Camel fent thither to defire conditions of Peace, or rather to buy the fame with camel

goodly Prefents. The King of Tripoli initated his Example. Both their Gifts were received, but no peace given, except they would become Christians.

A fortnight after they went to an old Caffle called Archae, comparable to famous Cities, in Scite, Walls, Towers, Whiles they continued heere a doubtfull firge, fourteene Souldiers of 40 Ours, defiring Exploits went towards Tripoli, where they encountred threefcore Turkes with a great bootie of Captines and Cattell, and returned with the spoile to the Campe. Raimand Pelet. and Ramund Vicount of Tentoria, with their companies hereby infligated went to Tortela, and making great fires by night, as if the whole Armie were there, fo terrified the Inhabitants that they lefe their Citie in hafte, ftored as it was, to feeke a new Habitation, this beeing indeed a good Hauen for ours. Maracles a Neighbor Citie also received them. Duke Godfrey hearing of this glorious fuccesse, fet forth from Anisochia with Boamund and the Earle of Flanders, and came to the Citie Licia, where Boamund parted from them. The Duke and the Earle came to Gibellium. and belieged at : but hearing from Earle Ramund of his difficulties, and of a battell approching, they agreed on conditions before required with the Prince of that Citie, and hafted thither to

so the belieged Castle. Where the Duke seeing their small proficience, went to Tripoli, where followed fo bloudie a battell that the water which runneth into their Citie stained their Ciffernes; and then turning afide to the Valley of Defen (where ours had staid before a fortnight) there got three thousand Gamels and innumeral le Sheepe, Kine and Affes, to their great wonder whence they should come in that space. Thus richly laden they returned to the siege, and there kept their Eafter (then the second day of Aprill.) This siege continued three monethes and one day, and then (prevailing nothing) they arose and went to Tripoli, and there established the peace which the King and Citizens had defred. The King delivered three hundred Pilgrims of ours, and gaue fifteene thousand Bizantines and open Market to buy prouision.

He coun nanted alfo to become Christian if they could winne Ierufalem, and ouercome the Ba-60 bylonian Warre, and be subject to the King of lorusalem. Here they staid three dayes, and seeing that Harnelt was neere they agreed to take the next way to lerufalem. On the fourth of May they fet out, and passing certaine steepe Hils, they came to the Castle Betelon : the next day to the Citie Zabaris, where they could find no water for themselves and their Horses. The next zabaris day they came to the Rouer Braim where they refreshed themselves that night. The next night

1200 S. George, Ierusalem taken, Bloudie execution, King Godfrey, LI B. VIII

was of our Lords Ascension, and they ascended a hill by a narrow way, where they feared, but found no enemy. Then came they to Barnth, a Citie feated on the Sea; thence to Saguta, and after that to Sur, from that to Aora, thence to the Castle called Caiphas, and so to Casarea. In Cefarea is Philips house still shewed, and the Chamber of his Daughters which were Prophe telles. Here they kept their Whitiontide, pitching their Tents neere the Citie. Thence they passed to Ramola. Which the Saracens for feare had for faken, neere which is the Church of Saine George, where hee lieth buried, for veneration of whom they elected a Bilhop, and game him Tithe of all their Riches. It was meete that inuincible George, the Standard-bearer of their was thould receive that honour. Thence they turned to Ierufalem.

The ninth Booke. Irrufalem be-

S. Georges

A S soone as they six lerusalem, they wept for icy, fell downe and worshipped the Sepal-chre. On the North side, the Earles of Normandie and Flanders encamped, neare Saint Stephens Clarch, in the place where he was floned. On the West Duke Godfrey and Toursel On the South (on Mount Sion) the Earle of Saint Giles. Whiles they relted in their Tentsbeing wearie, fome went to foure and fecure the Countrey. On Munday the fourth of hine they beganne the affault, and had that day ended the fiege if they had not wanted Ladders. Another want of Bread succeeded for ten daies space, and then their ships of prouision arrived at loose. The Water of Silve could fearcely fuffice the men. The Beafts were driven fixe miles to water. with a great convoy of fixe thouland Souldiers. Pilet and one hundred others, were fent to lephia or loppe, and some that went before to fearch the way, were let upon by seven hundred Turkes and Arabs, where Achardus a good Souldier fold his life deerely; but when the rest came 20 in, the enemies fled. They were now prouided of victual from the flups, but their thirft was To extreame, that they digged holes in the earth, and put the moift Turffes to their mouthes to moisten them; they licked the dewie Marbles, and sewed beasts skins new killed to fetch Water in : and some rather fasted, so to moderate thirst, then to drinke of that grease Water. To the fiege they addressed woodden Towers and Engines. Duke Godfrey caused his to be applied on the East side, and the Easte of Saint Giles another.

on the South, On Thursday they fasted, and gaue. Almes to the poore; and on Friday the twelfth of July, they ascended those Towers, and applyed scales to the Walls. Duke Godfing with his Brethren Enflace and Baldwine, played the Lions. Procession was made about the wals with Croffes and Relikes, and Alrars, whiles they fought on the wals. When the houre approached, in which the Samour of men dyed for men s. then did one Letolds first from the Guicherius en- Dukes Castle leap forth, and after him Guicherius, (which had sain a Lion by his strength.) The Duke followed his Souldiers, and his other Souldiers him, who challed the enemy from the wals, and purfue them into the Citic with a great flout. Which when Earle Raimand heard, which was labouring to bring his Tower to the Wall, hee called to his men to follow him to the gate neere the Tower of Danid, and spake to them in the Tower to open; which presently the Admiravis which kept the Tower, hearing who hee was, did, and committed himselfe and all his vnto him, together with the Tower.

that the bloud reached vique ad equerum ge-

But Duke Godfrey fought neither Tower nor Gold, nor spoile, but revenge for the bloud and 49 wrongs of Pilerims, whereto he never had more opportunitie, not then when at a Antioche hee claue in funder that Gigantean Gentile. And now he and Guicherius (which cut a Lion in funder) claue humane bodies from the head to the raines, and on the right and left hand thorow both fides : the throng hindred every mans flight. They which remained, fled to the Temple his Appendixe of Salomon, where they defended themselves the most part of the day; but ours before night to Mar. Scottes, breaking in, shed so much bloud, that slaine carkastes were tumbled on the Pauement to and no reciteth out of a letter to Pope in a streame of bloud; armes and hands dismembred floted in bloud, and were joyned to others Pall alwrir en bodies, none being able to discerne; and the slayers themselves were scarsely able to endure those hot mists of bloudie vapours. After this vnspeakable slaughter, they grew more indulgent, and many captiues of both Sexes were spared. Euery corner was searched for spoile, euery man 50 possessing what he tooke; Ierusalem at that time being rich. After this they did goe joyfully to the holy Sepulchre, and gaue thankes to him which had beene there buried : going did I fay: Creeping on their knees and elbowes, watering the Pauement with their teares. This done, they went to their houses, and refreshed themselves with food and sleepe. The next day they went armed to the Temple of Salomon, to make an end of them which had afcended the roofes, where onely Wings were wanting to flye from that which they could no way flee, prefent destruction. Some threw themselves downe headlong; others, offered themselves to servitude. The living Saracens were enjoyeed to carry out the dead and burie them, and to cleanle the Citie.

Godfrey cholen

The enemies destroyed, the Citie secured, victorie and glory atchieucd, question was of 260 King, and Duke Godfrey was chosen by generall consent, the eighth day after the taking, who more adorned that Royall Dignitie, then it him, and was an Honor to his Honor, by Knightly Armshires choo bountie, bodily elegance, and excellent manners. The next care was or a Prelate, and Armshires fen Patriarch. phis was chosen on Lammas-day. This ended, Messengers were fent by the Neapolitans to King

CHAP.2. Heroike Att. Popish Indai/me in abuse of Scripture and the Church. 1201

Godfrey, offering themselves to his subsection. (This Neapolis is a Citie of Caria, an Asian Prouince) to whom the King fent Enstace his Brother, and Tancred, to whom they delivered their Citie, The Deuill bestir'd him, and enuying this rising Sunne of Christianitie after folong a night, railed vp Clement the Admirants of Babylon, and all the East with him against them. He came with pompous preparation to Ascalon. Eustace and Tancred were tent for, and all soe towards Ascalon, a Citie of Palestina, five and twentie miles from Ierusalem. Heere they had all first fortified their Spirits by the Eucharist, and proceeded from the Church towards Alealon. The Patriarch left Peter the Hermite in his place, to ordaine Maffes, Prayers, Processions. Neere Alcalon they tooke a great bootie of beafts. The next day, the Patriarch curied all that 10 should goe about to meddle with spoile before the victorie. This was on Friday, on which our

The King paffed the River, and pitched his Tents neere the Sea. Himselfe had the first Band or Vantguard, Robert of Normandie the second, Earle Raimund the third, the Earle of Flanders the fourth; Euftace, Tancred, and Guafton de Bebert, the fift. The Foot-men had fet themfelues with Arrowes and Darts before the Knights, Men at Armes ., and thus ordered, they marched . Milaibus, towards the Babylonians. The King was in the left Wing, where was most danger, the Earle of Saint Giles in the right, the rest betwitt them. The Babyloman (whom none durit tell of the former bootie) being told that the Frankes were comne forth to fight, much disdained their paucitie, as a diferace to have so meane so confident enemies. The battell was begun by the Earle Heroike A& of 20 of Normandie and his Band, in that quarter where he espyed the Admiravis his Standard, and Robert of Normaking way with his Sword thorow the midth of his enemies, by a bloudie passage arrived at mandie. him that held it, whom hee laid dead at the Admiravis his foote, and tooke the Standard, faith 100000 the Admiravis hardly escaping to Ascalon with his life, whence he might behold the flaughter of were flaine behis people, which by noone were all put to rout and flaine in all places, even to the gates of the fides 2000, in Citie in incredible numbers. The spoile was exceeding rich. The Standard, which in the top the gate, innuof a Silver Staffe had a golden Apple, was offered by Earle Robert of Normandie at the holy merablethen Sepulchre, the whole Armie having returned and entred into the Citie in triumph. This bat- fear the whole tell was fought the eighth of August. And thus Ierafalen, which is faid to have beene built by Armie being Melebisedech, (whom the lewer lay, was the Sonne of Nee) is now open to the Pilgrimes with 100000, horse, 20 praises, which before were received with contumelies. Of these Pilgrimes and Gates, it is faid and 400000. praints, which before we're recurse unit containments, of there is regiment and cates, it is faid his open continually, and might beyond fails to follow. And agains, of Footmen the French Nation, which he brought from the ends of the earth to deliuer it, I will bring thy Children from farer, to bir Silme and their Gold with them, in the mane of the Lord his Gold, and the boly one of Ifrael which hath glorified thee. The Sonnes of thy Pilgrims Shall build thy wals, and their Kings fall minister to them. These and many things else, we find in the Propheticali Books, which agree to this deliuerance made in our Age.

CHAP. II.

The Acts of the Pilgrimes in their Expedition to Ierusalem, before and after the taking thereof, extracted out of FVLCHERIVS CARNO-TENSIS, which went thither with ROBERT. Earle of Normandie.



N the yeare 1095, when manifold euils in all parts of Europe were encreased, action of those the Faith languifhing, *Orban* the lecond was Pope of *Rome*, a man excellent in times to adlife and manners, which alway to the vimon of his wit and strength, endeuousence the red about all things to Exalt higher the State of holy Church. And feeing that Church, not to the Faith of Christendome was decayed in all, both Clergie and Laitie, and the freedome from fin, but to ful-Secular Princes in continuall warres with each other, fpoiling the goods, capting the goods, capting the goods, capting the goods and the goods are the good

uing the persons, (whom miserable prisons enforced to vnreasonable redemptions) violating inexemption holy places, burning of Townes and Monasteries, making a mockerie of things Diuine and hu- from Kings and mane, sparing no man : and hearing that the Prouinces of Romania were possessed by the Trick; source uses he called a Councell at Claremont, Herein he decreed the Churches freedome from all Secular Po- (wherein Fr. wer, that Tithes of all which commeth by bushandrie, should bee proper to God, and neither fold nor de- banus was cald tained; that he which lould take a Billop should be an Out-law, and the takers or spoilers of Cloker, Tuthanus, Thin Monkes and Nuns, Pilgrimes or Merchants, should bee Anashema, as likewife Robbers and in-the stite of the 60 cendiaries. These and other like being ratified by the Councell, he exhorted them, (Not I, but Church that is, the Lord to a recomming the the Timber on a Child in Councell, he exhorted them, (Not I, but is, the Clergic the Lord) to exterminate the Tutkes out of the Christian Confines. I feake to the present, I fend to the and more speablent, and Christ commands it. And all that goe thither, if they shall dge in the going by Land, passage cially the Paouer water, or in fight against the Pagant, Shall have present remission of their sinnes: which I grant to pacy. This the those which undertake the Voyage, having so great a gift from God. Those that have formerly abused Popith Figh.

1202 Two-headed Beaft. Many headed Armie. Innumerable facrifices. LIB. VIII

warres against Christians, let them goe against Insidels, and let them now bee Souldiers which before were Robbers, and let them fight justly against the Barbarians, which they did before against their Brethren, and for an eternall reward, which were before mercenarie for a few shillings, and for a double hanour, which wearied themselues for double detriment of body and soule. Here they are poore, there they shall be wealthy; here the Lords enemies, there his friends. Let them not delay, but make Money of that which they have, and the next firing (et forward.

Many present promised to got, of which was Ademarus, Bishop of Podium, afterward the Popes Legat, which ruled the whole Armie. Thefe things ordered in the Councell, and the bleffing of Absolution being given, they departed home, and divulged what had passed. Trues was every where confirmed by Oath, and many of every profession vowed to goe, the remiss. on of finnes being purchased. O what a goodly fight, and worthy it was to vsall, to see the Croffes of Silke, or wrought in Gold, or of Cloath which they ware on their lackets, Coates. and Garments on their shoulders. Such a worke did Pope Vrban meditate, by which the world after flourished, and restored the Churches Rights. But the Deuill raised up Guibertus, Bishon This Authors of Ranenna, an Adueriarie to him, whom the peruerfenesse of the Emperour, whiles Gregorie of Vrbans facti- (Hildebrand) held the Seate, supported in his viurpation of the Apostleship. But the better fort on against Gui acknowledged Gregorie, and after him Vrban, whom by the Empercurs ayde, Guiberius forced from Rome, till that yeare when the Frankes went to Ierusalemby Rome, Guibertus being in Almaine, Vrban by help of Matildis, obtained the whole Apostolike power, she being then verie

potent in the Romane Countrey.

be tus and the Emperour, igporme of Pa pallfleights. This Stephen,

Anno 1 0 9 6, some in March, others in Aprill, May, June, July, August, September, and Father of King October, fet forth, as they could make their provisions on this holy Voyage. Peter the Hermite Stepnen, is called Compt Car- went by the way of Hungarie. Raymond Earle of Province, with his Gother and Gascoines, and notenfis, and is the Bishop of Podium. by Sclanonia, Hugo Magniu and Buamund by Bulgaria. In September. faid to have as Robert Earle of Normandse, Sonne of William King of the English, with a great Armie of Normany Caffles mans, and English-men and Britans fet forwards, and with him Stephen Earle of Bloife, and Robert Earle of Flanders. The Armies still increased as they passed, and were neuer vnited till they came to Nice. We Westerne Frankes passed thorow Italy, and found Pope Vrban neere to Luca, with whom Robert the Norman had conference, and Earle Stephen, and wee also as many as would; and having his bleffing, we went toyfully to Rome. And when we haden to tred Saint Peters, we found before the Altar Guiberts men, which with their Swords in their hands tooke away the offerings: others ranne along the beames, and threw stones at those which were proftrate at their Prayers, feeking to flay those which were faithfull to Vrban, Vr. bans men held one Tower of the Monasterie, which kept it for him, and with stood the Aduerfaries. Many which went thither with vs, returned home, but we palled thorow Campania and Apulia, and came to Barrum, a good Citie on the Sea. We had thought to have taken thip, but the weather being vnfeasonable, Robert Earle of Normandse was forced to turne afide into Calabria; and winter there. But Robert Earle of Flanders with his troups passed over. Then verie many of the poorer fearing want, fold their Bowes, and taking their Pilgrimes Staues returned home, to their difgrace before God and Men.

Seeing such ned home, to their difgrace before God and Men.
faciledge and In March, 1097. Robert Earleof Normandte, and Stephen of Bloife returned to the Sea, and fmellingsper- on the fifth of Aprill, then Easter-day, fet sayle at the Hauen Brundussum. There wee saw one haps the Popes fhip, (without any cause appearing) finke almost foure hundred persons of both Sexes drowned : on the dead bodies of which were feene Croffes branded on their fieth, a mireculous token that they departed in Gods mercy. The Horfes and Mules, and much Money was loft. This so appalled many, that they for sooke their Pilgrimage and returned. But we foure daies after arrived at Durainm, and passed the difficult passages of the Bulgarians by Hils and Deserts, till we came to the River Damon, where the Diabolicall Torrent drowned many, and many more had done, but for the helpe of the Horse-men. Wee ascended next day the Hill Bagulat, and came to the River Baldarins, thorow which wee waded, and came the next day to Theffa- 50 lonica ; and travelling thorow Macedonia, we came at last to Constantinople : where after much adoe, our men did homage to the Emperour. Then passing Saint Georges Arme, we came to Nice, which the Turkes (who had come out of Persia, about fiftie yeares before) did now polfesse, and all Romania as farre as Nicomedia. The Princes Buamund, Duke Godfrer, and Earle Raimond then in the fiege, came to meete the Earles, Robert and Stephen. Then were many Armies combined in one Armie, wherein were a hundreth thouland armed men, with Corflets and Head-peeces: which they that had skill of the number, effeemed to have fixe hundred thousand men apt for warre, besides those that were vnarmed; to wit, Clergie-men, Monkes, Women and Children. What shall I say more : If all they which had comne out of their Houses and begun this vowed journey, nad beene here together, without doubt there would have beene 60 fixtie hundred thousand Warriors. But some had returned from Rome, others from Apulia, 0thers from Hungaria, or Sclanonia, many thousands were slaine by the way, and many died, the waies, fields, woods, prefenting many buriall places of Pilgrimes.

Nice being rendred, on the nine and twentieth of June, wee departed into the inner Coun-

CHAP.2. Two huge buge Armies defeated. Miferable fiege. Speare tryed by fire. 1202

tries of Romania. On the first of July, we had newes of Turkes approaching, and set downe our baggage by a Fenne or Reedy place, and beheld Soliman which had held Romania with his Amira's of the Countries, aboue thirtie dairs journey, being three hundred and fixtie thousand Archers, on horseback. Duke Godfrer, Earle Raimend and Hugo Magnus were absent, to our irrecouerable loffe, both of ours flaine, and of Turkes escaped. For it was late before our Meffengers could bring them the newes, and therefore it was late ere they could come in to our fuccour. The Turkes gave fuch an on-fet with shouts and shots, that our hearts failed, and we fled, being ignorant of fush kind of fight. Others had on the other fide the Reeds, affailed our Tents, and Bloudy battell flaine many. But the fore-runners of Duke Godfrey, and Hugo, and Raimond on one fide; and we which fied on the other (whom they thought to returne in refreet of them) made them retire. But we were thronged as sheepe closed in a fold, trembling, encompassed of the enemy, and could

go no way. The Conscience of Lecherie, Couetousnesse and Pride, did now trouble many, this seeming to have happed for our sinnes. The cry of Men, Women, Infants, and of the Pagans rufning on vs. filled the Ayre. We confessed our finner, and the Padian Bishop with many other Prietts in white, befought God, crying, finging, praying. Then Robert of Normandie, Earle Stephen Buamund, and the Earle of Flanders, made resistance what they could. God was appeafed, and wee feeing our fellowes which came last, refuned courage, and out the Turkes to Hight. The battell and our ftraits, lafted from the first hours till the fixth. We marched to An- Strangemarch tischia in Psfidia, thence to Iconium, and could not tell whither to laugh or weepe, to fee many to Iconium,

20 of ours wanting Horfes, lading Rams, Goats, Swine, Does, with their carriages, the weight whereof galled their backes. A strange confusion was of so many tongues in one Armie, Frankes, Flemmings, Frislanders, Galls, Britons, Sauoyards, Loraines, Almaines, Baioarians, Normans, Scots, English-men, Aquitans, Italians, Apulians, Spaniards, Danes, Greekes, Armenians. Baldwin Brother of Godfrey possessed himselte of Tarfus, and after of Edesta, the Gouernour whereof had fent to compound with him. In the way neere Samofate we were in danger, but gat fafe to E. Fultherius deffa, and were received of the Governor, whom his Citizens after fifteene daies flue, but Bald- Chaplaine to win kept the Citie, and thence made many roads vpon the Turkes. I Fulcherius Carnotenfis, was Duke Gallon

the Chaplaine of the faid Baldwin. In the moneth of October, the Frankes passed ouer the River Fernus, or Orontes, to Antio- lem 30 chia. Gratian the Amira, of Antiochia fent his Sonne Sanfadoles, to the Soldan of Perfia tor aide. Robert cals him The Turker within the Towne killed many Christian Inhabitants (for feare of conspiring with Coffien & King

the Frankes) Greekes, Syrians, Armenians. The Christians wearied with folong a liege, afcribed it to their Lecherie, Pride and Rapine, and by common confent put out all the Women, married and others, out of the Tents, which lodged in Tents neere. The Famine was great, and many were flaine daily : all were desolate, and many fled. The rest were pinched with cold, parched with heate, washed with raines, (their Tents being old and worne) lying in open

Ayre without any couert but heauen. Earle Stephen returned home. The next day after, was Amiochia taken, deliuered by a Turke, to whom Christ had thrice appeared, and bidden him de-40 liver the Towne. Gratian the Amira was flaine by an Armenian Peafant. It happened, that Visions in those after the Citie was taken, a Lance was found by a certaine man, which being found in the menandyet

ground in Saint Peters Church, he affirmed to bee that wherewith Longinus pierced the fide of for man of with our Sauiour. He faid, this was reuealed to him by Saint Andrew the Apoftle, thrice appearing on the people to him, and shewing the place where he digged and found it. The Podian Bishop would not be- rifted. leeue him, but Earle Raimond (to theie two, he declared his Vision) was credulous: and when it was found, all the people reioyced, and one hundred daies after it was holden in great vene-

ration, and gloriously handled by Earle Raimond, which also kept the Lance. But it hapned that the Bishop of Bare and many others doubted, that it was a counterfeit. Whereupon after Triallby fare three daies supplication and fasting, a great fire of wood was made in the field neere the Cattle Lance before Arches, then by them besieged, eight moneths after that Antiochia had beene taken, a indiciall monioned by

bened ction being made on the fire by the Bishops. The finder of the Lance passed voluntarily Monks Robert and speedily thorow the fire, but was so burned, that in twelve daies after he died, and left the people foriie for the worthip they had done it. But Earle Raimond kept it, till by forne acci-

dent it was loft.

The Soldan of Persia sent Corbagath with a great Armie, which besieged Edessa three daies, The Armicin and not prevailing against Baldwin, they hasted to Antiochia: and lixtic thousand of them en- white, of which tring the Citie by the Castle, much annoyed ours. The Frankes were sad: and a Clergie man flying, our Lordappeared to him, and told him, that At his Mothers request be would bely them.

To another appeared a Brother of his before dead, and told him, that their fellowes which had died 60 in that expedition would take their parts, and fight against the Turkes. The Christians went out of the Citie against Corbagath, which would not leave his Chesse at first, but after was forced to " Malmibate leaue the field, not with standing his huge troups esteemed to be fixe hundred & fixtie thousand taith that Gre-Horse and Foot, and ours famished and few, which were erriched with their spoiles. Many of bagashor cortem wife them and the state of t them were flame, and their Women in the Tents. After Antioch was taken, the Pedian Bi- fline by Robert.

shop died, and the Princes wrote to Pope Vrban: To the boly Lord and venerable Pope Vrban, of Normandie. Hhhhhh

Nice taken

1204

Buamund, and Raimund Earle of Saint Giles, Godfrey Duke Lotharienfis, Robert Earle of Normandie, Robert Earle of Flanders, and Eustace Earle of Bullon, Greeting and faithfull Sernuces; and as (bildren to their frittuall Father, true subjection in (brift, &c. They relate the oc. currents of the Warre, and defire him to come in person, and fit in Peters Chaire, whose View hee is, where the name of Christians beganne, and to open to them the Gates of both Iren falems, &c.

Bara and Mara being taken, Buamund returned to Antioch, and chased thence Earle Remunds men, and possessed the Citie and all the Province. But Earle Raimund and Raters of Nonmandie proceeded towards lerwfalem : and in the yeare 1 0 9 9. befieged Archas at the foote of Libanus. Duke Godfrey and the Earle of Flanders followed. In Iune, (to omit the reft) they to came before lernfalens, which on the fifteenth of July, they tooke, and flue about ten thousand men in the Temple, called Salomons : that also many which were voon the roofe. Our feete in the Temple (Vig, ad bases, force brachas) were steeped in bloud. Our men opened their entrails Behrrihe Wer. to fearch for Byzantines, and after fome daies, made a great heape of carkaffes, which they here man was offe- ned to fearch the Ashes: Fine hundred Timkes which had betaken themselves to the Tower of David, agreed with Earle Raimund, and were fent to Afcalon. And now one piece of the Croffe was found, by reuelation made to a Syrian, which was carried to the Temple of the Sepulchre with Procession. Duke Godfrey was made King : and the King of Babylon, and Lenendaline his fuling it, faith Generall, made haft with great Forces to befrege or fight with the Christians, and came to Af-Mainthury, and calon, where the Christians obtained a glorious victorie. Robert of Normandie, and Robert of so Math. Paris: Flanders returned to Conflantinople by shipping; Earle Raimund to Laodicea, where hee left his Earle Raimund Wife, going thence to Constantinople, with purpose to returne : Duke Godfrey retained Tantred, and many others with him at Ierufalems.

red the Kingdome of lers. falem, & neuer alfo had the

HONDIVS bis Map of Terra Sancta.



Buamund was meane while at Antioch, and Baldoine at Edeffs, where hee had often fights with the Turkes, in the Confines of Melopotamis. These by mutuall treatic agreed to goe together to Ierulalem; which also they did, and met at Valenum, together with three Bishops being fine and twentie thousand Horse and Foote. But passing thorow the Saracens Countrey, where no prouition could be had, our owne being ipent, the Horfes and Men were miferably pinched. both with famine, and allo with cold, and raines continuing foure or fine daies together, by reafon whereof, many which wanted Tents perished, I Fulchering there present, faw many of both Sexes, and very many beafts die with cold. Often alto many were flaine by the Saracens. affinking vs in thrit paffages, as likewife in foraging : Yea Knights of Noble defeent having loft. Miltes men at to their Hortes, were forced to goe on foote. So difficult is every great deligne : and a great matter it was that ever we got to Ierufilem, which was on the day of the Winter Solftice, We went af-

red, putrifying carkailes of the Saracens, which made vs to ftop our noies! Daybers the Arch-

In the yeare I 1 0 0, on the first day of the yeare, we cut Palmes at Ierico, and the next day de-

two Fountaines whence Iordan springeth, and passeth by the S:a of Galilee to the Red Sea. We

came to the Castle Balbas, where three hundred men at Armes of the Tarkes fet upon vs . and

had flaine many, whose Arrowes being spoiled with the raine, they were vnarmed, if Baldwins care had not protected them. So passing by Tortofa and Laedicea, Boamund departed to Antio-

chia, where he was joyfully received, and held his Kingdometixe moneths. Then in July following, one Gabriel, an Armenian, offering to render to him the Citie of Militinia, he went this

held, and with feuen hundred men at Armes, and feuen hundred Foot-men, on the feuenth of

ter to Beibleem, thereto celebrate the Natiuitie where it was accomplished. O how great a stinke was still about the walls of Ierusalem, arising from the fallen, scatte-

bithop of Pife, (which had comne with vs) being made Patriarch, wee went thence to Iordan. (the former Armie had woshed themselves there, and gathered Palmes at Ierico, according to Washing in the cultome, in the Garden of Abraham, before the departure of the Earles of Normandie and lordon,

Flanders) fome of our Armie flaving at Ierusalem, and some of the former going againe with vs.

20 parted. Our Princes passed by Tyberias, neere the Sea of Galilee, which is there eighteene miles Tiberias.

long and five broad, of fresh water : and thence by Cafarea Philippi, called Paneas, where arise Paneas

ther with small company, and in the way Danisman, an Amira, with a multitude of Turker, slue many, runche rest to sight, and tooke Buamund. Baldania made after them; but in vaine, laving Buamund 22. 30 that Gabriel rendred Militinia to him. In the midit of this his prosperitie, newes was brought ken. him of his Brothers death in July, the fecond years after Irrufalem. was taken, and that all Ie. King God/rg rulation expected him to succeede. Grieuing somewhat at his Brothers death, and more reioycing for the Inheritance, hee let out to one Baldwin his Kiniman the Countrey which hee cocedethe

1604, and with leftern human interest runner, and senten minutes to consent, used where the con-October he for first towards femfalten. pulling by Assistant, Ladices, Ghelines, Mara-eles, Tarsefa, Arches and Tipphi. The King of Tripole gause him kind entertainment, and in-telligence of Duber King of Damafes, and Gheshalabit King of Californ, waiting and way-Neure to Berito, about fine miles diftance, is a ftrait paffage neere the Sea, which a few hun-40 dreds may make good against one hundred thousand. Heere they waited for vs, and heere wee were in ill taking, not knowing which way for to escape or get backward or forwards: how focuer we made a flew of courage, I wished my felfe at Carnote or Orleans. Wee resolved after an ill nights reft, to goe backe the next morning, which we did, they pursuing vs in fuch fort, that we had no place left for flight or hope of fafetie. But God mercifully faued vs with a great miracle, they being fuddenly terrified, and their fh ps flying for feare of vs, and we made great flaughter, and got great spoile. The next day we returned againe, and found the ftreight aforelaid elecre, and passed the same with praises to God. The Amiras of Beruto, Sidon, alto Tyrus, & Achon, made shew of friendship to vs. But Tancred which held the Castle Caiphas was maleuolent to Baldwin, wherefore we entred it not. We came at last to Joppe, where the 50 Frankes acknowledged Baldwin for their King, and hafted thence to Ierusalem, where hee was

welcomed with Procession of Clergie and Laitie, with Crosses and Candles, Darbert was not present as one accused, distasted of the people, and held in suspicion.

Sixe daies after, Ba'dwin fet forth to Afcalon, whiles we wasted the Countries, divers Saracens had hidden their goods and themselves in holes of the Earth, which being revealed by the Syrians, they were forced out by fire, made in the entries of their dens and flaine, being vivall Robbers and Murtherers of Christians, we passed that way. When our promisions were spent, we made an in-road into Arabia, and passing by Abrahams Sepulchre foureteene miles from Iernfalem, came into the Valley where Sodom and Gomorrha were destroyed, where is now the great Lake Arfalti, which they call the dead Sea. The length whereof from Zoaras of A. Dead Sea derabia, is fine hundred and eightie furlongs to the places next to Sodom, the breadth one hundred feribed. and fittie, fo falt, that neither Beaft nor Bird can crinke thereof, which I Fulcherius descending from my M .le, tafted, and found more bitter then Eliebore. And because nothing lives therein,

it is called the Dead Sea. Iord in enters on the North; on the South is no passage out, neither River nor Lake. Neere which Lake or Dead Sea, is a high Mountaine falt also, by places, hard

INDUSTRIES.

as a stone, and like Ice; which I consecture, both by the waves washing it, and the showers falling downe, it make the Lake falt; or elle the bottome thereof reacheth vnto the great fale Sea, by some multible passage vinder ground. A man can hardly sinke to the bottom if he would. Hauing compafied the South fide of the Lake, wee found a Village, which they fay, is Secor. of goodly lituation, and abounding with Dates, whereof we fed pleasantly. Of other things we feldome foundany, (for the Arabs hearing of vs, were fled) except some poore ones, blacke as Soore, which we contemned. There I faw Fruits on the Trees, which when I had broken the skin. I found to be duftie within and blacke.

Thence we passed the Mountaines of Arabia, where the Inhabitants were fled from their Villages, and had hidden themselues in Caues. We came to a fertile Valley, watered out of the to Rock of Mofes. Rocke which Mofes stroke with the Rodde, still continuing with such abundance, that Water-Mills are driven therewith, where I Fulcherius watered my Hories. Wee found a Monasterie in the top of the Mountaine, called Saint Aarons , where Mofes and Aaron were wont to freak with the Lord : and we reioyced to see places so holy and strange. And because from thence, till neere to Babylon, the Countrey is defert, we proceeded no further, but returned the fame way

we came to Ierusalem.

Weakneffe of the Frankes at Terufalem.

Militibus.

In the years 1 1 0 1. on Christmas day, in the Church of Saint Marie at Betbleem, by the Patriarch (then reconciled) was Baldwin anointed and crowned King, which Godfrey in reuerence to our Lord, there crowned with Thorne, had refused. Baldwin was feared as a good Souldier, but his people were few. Wee had yet no Port but loppe, neither was the way fafe 20 from thence for Pilgrims; but when we heard of any thips there, we went forth to meete them. which having vifited Iernsalem, tome stayed, others returned. Whereby the holy Land of Ierulalem remained emptie of people : nor were there to defend it from the Saracens, if they had dared to affault vs. For we had not then of men at Armes, about three thousand, and so many Foot-men as kept lerusalem, loppe, Ramula and Capphas. Neither durit we scarfely at any time affemble our forces, for feare of looling our Fortrelles: that it was not without miracle that wee continued among fo many thousand thousands fo strong. Wee durft aduenture no expedition. but neere to Ascalon or Arfach. They which came by Sea brought no Horses, and by Land none came at vs ; neither could the Antiochians helpe vs, or wee them. In March, Tancred the Ancients and Cambas to Baldarin, being sent for to Ansiech to governe that Kingdome, till Buamund to A Fleet of Italians and Genusis, that had wintered at Landices, failed thence to Ioppe, and

came to Ierusalem, where on Easter Eeuen was great adoe, because the light which that day

vieth to bee kindled from Heauen at the Lords Sepulchre, was not feene as in former times. But

Eafter light.

Ba'dmin taketh

Militer. Knights,men ar Armes Horlemen * Milites.

after much Ceremonies and Prayers, on Easter day happened to a Lampe in the Sepulchre, of which the Patriarch had the Key. The Genuss after Easter, forced Assistance by yeeld themselues to King Baldwin, who also with their helpe besieged and tooke Cafarea Palastina. Ifaw there many Saracens burned for the Bizantines, which they had fwallowed, or hidden in their mouthes, that with a blow on the mouth many pieces flew out of their mouthes: women also had hidden them in places not to be named. Wee went to Ramula, and waited if the Enemie 40 would fight with vs. Seuentie dayes after our departure, wee heard that they fet forth to feeke battell, and Baldwin affembled his people from Ierufalem, Tiberias, Cafarea and Cappha. And because we had but few Knights (or men at Armes) the King warned all that could to make their Esquires Knights: so that all together were two hundred and threescore, and of footmen nine hundred. Against vs were eleuen thousand men at Armes *, and twentie one thousand footmen. We carried the wood of the Lords Croffe which comforted vs, & was carried openly by a venerable Abbot. Baldwin comforted them also, telling them of Heauen open to the dying, glory among Christians to the surusuing : but France is farre off if we runne away. The Leader with five thousand of the Enemies were flaine : this battell was rought the feuenth of September. The next day we returned to loppe laden with spoile: encountring fine hundred Saracens, which ha- 50 uing fought and beaten a part of our forces in the battell , with their Armes hafted to loppe, thinking to get the Towne; but not received, they thought vs to be their owne fellowes, suppofing the Christians all slaine, in that errour comming to vs, till they learned the truth to their coil. Two Newes-tellers had also fignified to the loppites, the death of King Baldwin, and defeating of his Armie, whereupon they had fent by Sea to Tancred, yea, the Queene did write a Letter of that import to hasten him to their fuccour, who was also setting forth when the true report by a Messenger purposely sent, stayd him. Wee went safe to Ierusalem, and rested eight In the yeare 11 0 2. the Babylonians were gathered together at Ascalon, to destroy vs vtter-

Raniu's.

ly, being twentie thousand Horsemen and ten thousand Foot, besides victuals. These in May laid 60 fiege to Ramula. At that time many Frankes were at loppe, waiting a fit wind for their returne "He was also to France. These had comme the yeare before by Romania, and had lost their Hories and all they Duke of Aqui- had, For William, Earle of Poicton , and Stephen Earle of Blois, (which fought now to recourt

the credit he had loft in flying from Antiochia) and a Hugo Magnus which had returned from a Reb. Mon. was the credit he had loft in hying from Anticom and from Constantinople, where he had made stay, deceived if
Antiochia to France, and Earle Raimond returned from Constantinople, where he had made stay, this deceived if and Stephen Earle of Burgundie, and many other Noblemen had adio ned to themselues an innumerable number of Horieand Foot, the Armie divided in two. In the Romanian Confines. Soliman the Turke with great forces of Turkes had dispersed them, and almost destroyed them. flaving about one hundred thousand of their Horsemen and Footmen, also some of their women. and some he carryed away. Their Mules, Horses and Beasts of burthen and goods the Turkes Aboue one had gotten. The Earle of Poition faued only himselfe, getting on foot to Antiochia in lamenta- hundred thouble case, whom Tancred entertained. They which escaped (for they were dissided in many sand men

to Troupes) came to Ierufalem, except Hugo Magnus which dyed at Tarfus. Some went by Sea flaine, befides and they which had Horfes by Land, which also in the way affaulted and tooke Tortofa . where women, &c. and they which had Hories by Land, which also in the way analyted and tooke I ortofa, where Trius accuse the Earle Raimond to their great disgust, remayned. Baldwin wayted for them at the Streights neere the Emperour Beruto, eighteene dayes: they came to lerusalem, kept there their Easter, visited the holy places, of const for dined with King Baldmin in the Temple of Salomon, and now waited pallage at Toppe, when this the ouerth ow newes came that King Baldwin had taken horse to goe against the Babylonians. Stepben of Blois I.10, by his newes came that King Baldwin had taken horie to goe against the Babylonians. Stephen of Blots treichery, also and Stephen of Burgundie, Gefferie of Uendon and Hugh Lizziniac (brother to Earle Raimond) got the Christians Horfes and followed. But Baldwin improvidently hafting, was in tight of the Enemies before were arena fine his forces could have fight of him, not attending the foot, and having but few Horfes. So that, calce, and vitwith two hundred men at Armes, he was encompassed of twentie thousand, where he expected distiplined.

20 but a thousand, against whom they were enforced to fight, committed great slaughter, but lost

the field, the King and iome others escaping to Ramula. Where not daring to itay, with fine followers he departed, and three dayes after, with one only, hungrie and thirtie escaped to Ar-(sab. The two Stephens of Blois and Burgundie, were flaine. The King durft not aduenture by Land, and therefore failed to loppe. Thence hee intreated an old poore Syrian, to carrie by bywaves, newes to lerufalem, whither on the third day hee came, and ninetie men at Armes with fome others of the Citie which could get Horses, set out for loppe, whither not without skirmulhes and loffe the most came. Also Hugh of Tiberias had before comne with eightie men at Armes. With fuch forces as he had, he fet forth to meete the Enemie then approaching within three miles. Their huge numbers encompating ours, were yet chafed out of the field, leaving

30 their Tents to the Frankes, with Camels, Affes, Money. For the King had then the wood of our Lords Croffe, which is hee had in the former battell carryed, it is not to bee doubted, but God would have theward mercie to his people, if the King would have gone wifely with his people to the battell, All Winter after they were quiet. Anno 1103, the King belieged Achon, but not able to take it, he waited the Countrey and returned to loppe. Busmund was now restored to libertie and his Antiochian Principalitie, adding also Landicea which Tancred had taken from the Constantinopolitans, giving him recompense for it in his owne Land. King Baldwin in a skirmish was very dangerously wounded neere the heart.

mini was very outgettenly wounded into the control of Polemaida,) affilted by a Fleet of Gennos, b. Raphas, has
of scientic ships beaked, b and after twentie dayes siege tooke it of great import for the Port, is, the beaks, 40 which within the walls harboureth many ships safely. Buamund and Daibert by Sea went to or stems coue. Italy, he to get people, the other to complaine of Baldwin to the Pope, who favoured him, but in red with Iron his returne he dyed .

Anno 1 105. Earle Raimond dyed in his owne Towne before Tripolis, whom fucceeded his Nephew William Iordan. The King of Caliptus received a great overthrow by Tancred, which then ruled in Antiochia, and loft numbers numberleffe. The King of Babylon e railed a great c Thatis, as Armie which he lent to Afcalon, against which Baldwin moued from Ioppe, and fent to Ierufalin in other places of the flothat they should fast, pray, and make Procession barefoot, which was done, my selfe beeing one riesthe Exprise The Patriarke went and carryed the Croffe. Our men at Armes were fine hundred, besides other ChabfarCerro Horsemen which had not that Militarie place, and two thouland foot. The Enemie was fifteene being by some 50 thouland, foure thouland were flame, of which was the Amira of Asalon; the Amira of A. called Babylon.

chon was taken. Their Nauie before Ioppe returning to Babylon, (Cairo) was affailed by Tempett, Such a triple and miferably disperit, whereof fine and twentie thips were taken by vs , beeing full of Sara- Sun and Raincens. On C riftmas Ecuen at lerufalem, we felt a great Earthquake.

Anno 11 0 6.2 Co net appeared fiftie dayes decreasing, beginning in February : also three 1621. in Deson-Sunnes, a smaller on each hand of the true, both in quantitie and light; a great white Circle en- fire urroning and in it a Rain-bow of foure colours, the Bow toward the Sunne, and reaching to the other two Sunnes. In the next moneth, the Starres of Heauen feemed to raine. Hagh of Tibe- had partly polother two Sunnes. In the next moneth, the Starres of Management of Starres of

Anno 1107, seventie of ours chased five hundred of theirs, besides one thousand footmen, chiefe follow-Buamund returned out of France with five thousand men at Armes, and threescore thousand elected by refintmen, without women; provided a Fleet at Brundusjum, failed into Bulgaria, tooke Analon, turned to Acubelieged Duratium a yeare, an forced the Emperour to I weare to protect the Pilgrimes thorow lis, and loome all his Empire, and he alto I ware fealtie to the Emperour & after which, with part of his Ar. after dyed. Hahhaha

how was feene

1208 Tripolis, Berith, Sidon taken. Graffe-hoppers and Earthquakes. LIBVIII

mie hee returned into Apulia, the greater part according to their Vow, repayring to Ierula.

Anno 1109. Bertran fonne of Earle Raimund came out of Promince, and with minetie things of the Genuois belieged Tripolis, but (by diffention betwixt him and Iordan his emulous Kintman) to little effect. Baldwin came to the fiege to intreate the Gennois to his affiffance against A scalon, Bernib and Sidon and began to agree the two Earles; but lordan was slaine as hee rode in the night with an Arrow, no man knew how nor whence. Bertran iware fealtie to King Baldwin for his Fathers Inheritanoc (the cause of their quarrell) and when the Saracens had compounded to furrender the Towne, their lives faued, (which the King had confirmed by Oath) they permitted our chiefe men to enter part of the Towne. Meane-while, I know not how, a fulden Io tumult happened amongst the meaner Genuois, who scaled and entred the Towne without the Princes knowledge, and put all to the fword, no equitie being able to make reflitution of their

heads. But in the Kings circuit they escaped.

Anne 1110. King Baldwin with Bertran tooke Berith after feuentie fine dayes fiege: and after with Tancred paffed over Euphrates, where they found the Tankib forces, which yet refused fight. Berith taken. and with wearifome delayes, caused that they furnished Edessa with victuals (the Turkes having wasted the Countrey and taken the Castles and Husbandmen which served them with food) and departed againe ouer the River, where the Turkes tooke and carryed into Persia, many of our footmen. In the meane-while, a Fleet arrived at Toppe out of Normay, and the Westerne Sea conducted by that Kings Brother, which with their Sea-feruice ayded the King in the fiege of 20

Siden, which yeelded vpon composition in December.

Anno 1111. Tancred fent to Baldwin, who with Bertran affembled all their forces against the Turbes, which in great multitudes had paffed Euphrares out of Perfia. They paffed by Apamia, which Tancred had taken the yeare before : but the Turkes refuling to fight, they departed. Tancred to Antiochia, the King to lerufalem. Preparation made, hee belieged Tirms or Sooraboue foure monethes in vaine, his two Towers of wood which he had raifed higher then the walls.

beeing disappointed by two which the Citizens had erected on their walls by night, whence they being higher, cast fire into the other and confumed them. And ours which in conceit had divided the prey, returned home with shame. Anno 1112. Tancred dyed.

Anno 1113. the Turkes passed Euphrates, and committed great spoile over the whole Coun- 10 Great loffe. trey, and in a battell King Baldmin loft his Colours, Tents and goods, twelve hundred footmen. and thirtie of the best men at Armes. The Saracens before subject, tooke Armes against vs. Sichem, which we call Naples, was taken. The Afcalonises came to the Suburbs of Ierufalem, and

Spoiled their Haruest : nor could a Messenger passe betwaxt the King and them ; nor durst the Husbandmen reape their Haruest in the Countrey, or exercise other businesses. But our Armie being renewed by Christian Pilgrimes from beyond the Seas, the Turkes departed towards Damasco, and King Baldwin to Achon, where he found the Counteste of Sicilia, (Wife of Roser

the Brother of Robert Guifeard) comne to become his Wife.

Anno 1114. an infinite multitude of Graffe-he ppers, from the parts of Arabia, came into the Countrey of Ierusalem, which in Aprill and May much walted our Corne. Two Earthquakes 40 had happened the yeare before: two also this yeare, one so great in the Region of Antiochia, that many Townes were halfe or wholly ruined, throwing downe their walls, and the Houses, and killing the people : ouerturning the Castle Trialeth neere to Euphrates, Marifeum with

the walls, Houses and people was extinct : a great part of Mamistria fell.

Anno Itis, in June the Turkes passed the River into Spria, and Doldeguin King of Damasco, knowing that they hated him for the Murther of their former Generall Manduef, entred league with King Baldwin and Roger Prince of Antiochia, knowing that a three-fold Cord is not eafily broken. When Baldwin was comne into those parts, the Turkes hid themselves, whom thinking to haue beene gone out of the Countrey, he returned. Meane-while, the Ascalonites had befieged Joppe by Sea and Land, but returned frustrate : againe they fought to take it unprouided, and so made a fecond affault ten dayes after with like fucceife. The Turkes spoyling the Countrey of Stria, the Antiochians overthrew them in battell, flue three thousand and tooke many with rich spoyle, and three hundred thousand Byzantines. This yeare Mamistria was the second time Subjected by an Earthquake, wherewith also the like happened elie-where in the Countrey of Antiochia. This yeare the King built the Castle Mount Royall within three dayes journey of

Anno 1116. the King went to the Red Sea, and found the Citie Heli, where the Ifraelites refled after they had passed the Red Sea : the Inhabitants being Fishermen we'e fled into their Boats. In the end of the yeare the King being fickly and fearing death, put from him Atlaids the

Counteffe of Sicilia, whom he had vniuftly marryed, his former Wife still living at Edeffa. Amo 1117. the faid Counteffe returned into Sicilia. Graffe-hoppers denoured the Vineyards, Corne, Trees of all kind, eating all greene things and the barkes; going forth in Bands like an accurate Armie, some on foot, some flying. In the following moneth lune, the Moone on the thirteenth day of her age was all red and after blacke, and two hours together lost the light, CHAP.2. Antiochians fin and punishment. Cresse-superstition. King B. taken. 1200

which happening not in the full we tooke for a figne. In Iuly happened an Earthq take in December, the whole Heaven was first like bloud, in some places shining white. Pope Paschal died in Ianuarie after, and King Baldwin in Aprill, and his Wife in Skill, Alexim the Emperour, and the Patriarke Arnslphus.

In the end of March 1118. Baldwin had spoyled the Citie Pharamia, walking on a day by Pharamia, Nilm, his old griefe renewed, whereof he dyed in the way, being recurned as farre as Laria. He Laria. wasburied neere to his Brother Godfres in Golgotha, having reigned eighteene yeares, three King Baldwin monethes. Baldwin Earle of Edeffa his Kinfman was elected in his flead, and was conferred dyth, and on Easter day, having comne accidentally to Ierufalem to speake with the King. That yeare the ceedeth. Babylonians came with an Armie of fifteene thousand Horsemen, and twentie thousand foct. to Afgalon, and a great Fleet of ships attended on them by Sea. King Baldwin assembled his owne

with the Tripolitan and Antiochian forces, and face three monethes neere to them, neither fide

adventuring the hazard of battell.

Anno 1119. Roger Prince of Amiochia, made an Expedition against the Turkes, and neere to the Towne Arthafum, was flaine with feuen thousand of his people, and of the Turkes not twentie. And no maruell? for they abounding in wealth exceedingly, neither feared God, nor renerenced man: the Prince vied manifold adulteries, dif-herited the Sonne of Boamund, re- Prince Form mayning in Apules with his Mother, hee and his lived luxuriously and prouchly. King Baldwin Game with fefped better in a battell neere Sardanium, twentie foure miles from Amioch. Our men at Armes uenthouland

20 were feuen hundred, the Turkes twentie thousand. Gazs was their Generall. A certaine Turke Antischung. Spake to a Franke which understood the Persian, saying, Your God bath for saken you, feeing yee neither hold his Law as ye were wont, nor faith and truth amongst your felues; This weeknow and have obserued, and to morrow shall our come you. Hereof wee might well indeed bee ashamed when a faithleffe Tirke obiected our want of faith. The battel followed, long doubtfull; at laft the Tirkes fled fome to Alepso, tome into Persa, God delivering the King by vertue of the Croffe carryed by the Bishop of Calarga; who after two dayes keeping the field went to Antiochia, the Patriarke therof came forth to meet the holy Croffe, the King and Bishop; & on the day of the Exaltation of the Croffe they entred with the Croffe into Ierusalem reioyeing, the King staying at Antiochia

to fet things in order, having that Kigdome added to his other of Ierufalem. On Christmas day

30 he and his Wife were crowned at Berbleem. Anno 1120, the King remitted Tolls and Imposts, and hearing that the Turkes were comne into Spia, hee very humbly defired of the Patriarke and the Clergie, the Croffe to bee deliuered him, faying, that his men should be thereby fortified, and not trusting in his owne or his peoples force, he should obtaine it in stead of many thousands. Heere grew some reasoning betwixt those which went and those which staied, whether the Crosse ought for such a necessitie of Chri-Stianitie to be carryed to Antoch, or the Church of lerufalem be deprived of fuch a treature. We Superficion of ffianitie to be carryed to Antoch, or the Church of Ierufalem be deprined or lucin a cicalote. we faid, Alau wretches, what shall we doe, if God permit the Crosse to bee lost in Warre, as once the strae the Crosse to bee lost in Warre, as once the strae the Crosse to be lost in Warre, as once the strae the Crosse to be captured or lucin a cicalote. lites lost the Arke of the Conemant? Nilling and willing we did it, with many teares shed tor it, Nebustica, aland Songs in prayle of it, conveying it out of Towne bare-foote, the King, Patriatch and though made people, with which the King departed weeping. The Turkes were neere Antiochia, but now by divine apretyred to Calipius: some skirmishes happened in which many on both sides were slaine or pointment, & wounded, but without battell ours returned to Antiochia, and most of them into Persia: and by Christian in October we entertained the most glorious Crosle of our Lord into lessfelem with great toy. finite Christ

Anno 1121. the King fet forth against Tuldequine, King of Damafco, who with the Arabians c ucified tob; his Confederates ipoyled the Countrey neere to Tiberias, tooke the Calile larras and razeo it to- Yet bicken in gether with the Towne.

Anno 1122. the King went to Tripolis against Earle Pontine, which refused to be subject to King Belowing him, as his Father Bertran had beene, and the matter betwixt them was praceably ended. Hee aken Pri oner went also against the Turkes which befiged Sardanium, and repelled them. Ble fled therefore bee Venetian Flore the Banner of the most holy Croile of our Lord, a present helpe to true beleeuers, under whose 120 taile. protection and confolation, the faithfull without any losse returned home : they being ten Emath.

thousand, ours but one thousand and two hundred. Meanewhile, Goseline Earle of Edessa, was taken, and his Coulin Galeran, by Amira Balac, and foone after King Raldwin alto.

Anno 1123. Henry King of Almaine, was pacified with Pope Calixtur. A great Fleete of Venetians which wintered at Corfu, being one hundred and twentie Saile, besides smaller Velfels, in which were fifteene thouland armed men , Venetians and other Pilgrims, and three handred Horses. The Kingdome in Baldwins Captinitie was committed to the government of Enflace, which then held Cafarea and Sidon. The Babylonians with a Nauie of nintie Ships, came

60 and befreged loppe; another land Armie was gone to Afcalon. The loppites men and women refifted valuantly : yet, had the fiege continued, so few could not have holden out. But the sumor of the Christian Fleete had scarred away the Enemies, when they had now made a breach in the Wall. Our men were united from all places at the Castle Chaco, and marched with the Croffe to Ramath neere Diospolis. Wee at lerufalem made Prayers bare-foot, and Proceffions thorow all the Churches of the Citie, and gaue almes. Ours having received Benediction and

pers & Earthquikes. Gamerus Cith. that the people w reartheir wits end, euery day new Lathquakes, the houses were forlaken; Letanies, Fafts, lies v ed,ten:s erected in the

Treus

Red Sca.

1210 Sea-fight. Strange stratagem. Tyrus taken. Balacs true dreame, L. 1 B. VIII.

Absolution of the Patriarke; fought neere Azet or Eldet, now called Ibenum, being brought to a small Village. Their Horse-men fled, their Foot were slaine, and their Tents were lett to our men. And of thirtie thousand Babylonians, twelue thousand were slaine by Land and Sea. of ours in this fight but ten : after which, the Patriarke returned to Ierusalem with the Crosse which was recemed without Danids Gate, and with honorable Procession contayed to the Temple of the Sepulchre. The Generall of the Venetian Fleet came to Achon, which hearing of the defeat, divided his Navie, with one part going towards Joppe, fending the other into the Mayne to make the Saracens beleeue that they were Pilgrimes comming from Cyprus. Meeting with the Fleet of Saracens, they made fuch a flaughter that the Sea for foure miles space was died red: for they flue the men and tooke the fhips. After which they fell vpon ten other fhips laden Io with victuall and timbers for Engines, Pepper, Cinamon, and ditters Spices, Munition and Money. Some thips they burned on the fhoare, the most they brought to Achon. Enflace dyed, and William de Buris succeded in the Protectorship. Baldwin escaped out of his hard Imprilonment. where he and Earle lofeline were bound by a strange stratageme. Fiftie Edeffens, making shewas of they were P. dlars or poore Merchants and waiting an occasion got into the inner gate. where the Captaine or chiefe of the Warders was at Cheffe, to whom they made shew of complaint for some wrong offered; and seeing oportunitie, suddenly drew their Swords, and such him, layd hold on the Launces (or Halberds) there standing, and laid suffully about them. The clamour brings many to fee the businesse which they were fuddenly sent to tell in another World, about one hundred Turkes being flaine, they that the Caftle, take out the Captines, creft 20 the Christian Colours. Balae had dreamed that lofeline had pulled out his eyes, whereupon hee fent to put him to death, and before the Meffengers were arrived, this had happened. Balact beft was Cartafeid. beloued Wife was in the Caille. Earle lofeline by night, with three of his Servants, 1gat out of the Castle in a Moone-light night, thorow the midit of the besiegers, and by night travell got to Euphrates, and with two blowne Bladders and helpe of his companions, beeing ignorant of fwimming, gate ouer : where vnder a Tree resting himselfe almost tattered and started, hee was knowneby a Countriman, which having a Wife, and a little Daughter, and a filly Affe was willing to attend him with his Family. The Earle rode on the Affe, and carryed the poore mans childe crying and vnquiet, till they came through the Enemies Countrey to his owne Caffle Terbexell. Thence (hauing repaid the poore Armenian) he hasted to Ierusalem where hee offered 20 his Fetters in Mount Calmere, and with the Croffe & an Armie had returned to Cartageta, but in the way newes came that the King was againe captine, whereupon after much spoile in the See racens Countries, they parted the prey and departed home. Balae had vindermined the Castle, erecting timbers in the Mines, and filling the holes with wood, which he fired, and the Earth by that meanes falling, part of the Cattle tell therewith, so that they within were forced to yeeld to mercie. The King Guldran he spared : the rest were hanged, or slayed, or cut asunder in the middle. The King was lent Prisoner to Carra.

Anno 112 4. the Patriatke agreed with the Venetians to befrege Tyrus. Balac laid frege to Ierapalis, called Mumbeth, which lofelme hearing (beeing then at Antiochia, hee came with his forces and gaue him battell, in which Balac and three thousand of his men were slaine. Balacs head 40 was fent to Antiach: and his Esquire bringing the newes to the Campe at Tyrus, was knighted by the Earle of Tripolis. Tyrus was yielded on the feuenth of July, and the thirds given to the Venetians in the Citie and Port by composition.

CHAP. III.

A supplement of the Holy Land Storie, gleaned out of the large Historic of WILLIAM Archbishop of Tyrus.

The Kiugs li-

He same yeare in the end of August, King Baldwin agreed for his libertie, and returned to Antioch. His ransome was one hundred thousand Michael tes (2 principall Coine in those parts) which not knowing how to pay, hee was perswaded to beliege Halapia, then being in some distresse. The Halapians were assisted by the Saracens beyond Euphrates, whereupon the King returned and went to

fersialem. But hearing of Bur sequences spoiling the Confines of Antioch, assisted by Doldequine of Damasseus, who had taken Caphardan, and besieged Sardan, and thence remoued to Hafard: he with the Earles of Tropolis and Edesfa, came and gaue them battell, and win- 60 ning the field, got enough to redeeme his Daughter, which remayned pledge for his ranfome. Hee inuaded the Territorie of Damafeus: but being told of the Babylomians comming to Afealon, (for it was their custome foure times in the yeare to direct forces thither) hee let forth thither and curbed their infolence.

Anno 1126. he made an expedition by Tyberias and Decapolis, and to the Plaines of Medan,

CHAP.2 Boamund flain. V unatural daughter. Greeks invafion. Spoile by /poiles. 1211

where the River Dan, betwixt Tyberes and Scytbopolis runneth into Ierdan, making up that Isr. Dan, lordan. name; before which, that which descends into the Sea of Galilee, is called lor, as some say, though Beda and others be otherwise minded. He encountered with the Damascenes, in a dreadfull and long doubtfull battell, which inclined at last to the Kings part. Hee restored Antiochia to Boamand the yonger, in marriage with his Daughter; against whom, Earle lofceline conceined fuch hatred, that he called in Turkes to his aide, and entred the Territories of Antioch with Boamund Inni-Fire and Sword, in the ablence of the Prince. At that time Roger Earle of Sicilia, frustrated of or. his hopes in Africa, with his Fleete wanne Syracufe, flaying all, of all Ages and Sexes.

An. 11 27. William an English man, was made Archbishop of Tyrm, being before Prior of the Seto sulchre; who being confecrated by the Patriarch of Ierufalem, would needes against his will. pulchre; who being conferrated by the Fattisted to honored him, and fent Giles his Legat with M. English man leeke his Pall at Rome, where Pope Honorius much honored him, and fent Giles his Legat with Archbishoo of him to make the Patriarke of Antioch to deliuer his Suffragan Bishops to him, under paine of Tire. Suipension. The yeere following, Hugo de Paganis, first Master of the Temple, and some other Religious men, which had beene four by the King into the West, to excite aides of those Prin- First Temces, returned with many Noble-men. Whereupon all the Easterne Christians agreed to besiege plers. Damafeus. Anno 1120. But having loft many in forraging and skirmilhing, the Elements with thunders and raines compelled them to retire home. Boamand was one, which in his returne to his Prouince, found Rodoan the Turke, committing spoiles, and in seeking revenge lost himselfe Dannoscus bea and his life. The King made hafte to fet things there in order, where his Daughter the Prin-fieged in 20 ces Wife, fent to Sangun the Turke for aide, to hold Antiochia to her felfe. The Mellenger by vaine. the way was intercepted, and brought to the King. She prepared to withfland her Father, but in vaine. He returning to Ierufalem, fell ficke, and because the Patriarkes house was neerer the

place of the Refurrection, lay there; and taking the habit of Religion, having commended the King lome to Falke his Sonne-in-law, with his little Sonne Baldwin, he died in August, 1131. King Fake. This Fulke had married the Kings eldest Daughter, Milifend, being Earle of Anion, Turon, Go. Lib. 14. and had beene at Ierusalem in Pilgrimage, and maintained one hundred Horse-men a whole yeere at his charge, winning such loue of the King and people, that the King bestowed his Daughter and fuccession on him. Honorius dying, a contention grew for the Papacie, twixt Innocent and Peter, called Anacletus, the matter was tried on both fides with bloud and flaughter. Innocent 30 obtayning, ordained the Church of Tyre to be subject to Ierusalem, and to have the same place with that Patriarke which before it held with the Antiochian, Great stirre arose about the Earle

of lopps; who, being accused by Galterns Cafariensis of treason, was sentenced to acquit him. The Author felte by combat; but he appeared not, and was therefore condemned: whereupon hee went to he same Afealon, defiring aide of the Enemie, which added fewell to the fire, and inuaded the Christi- Church, and ans on that confidence. Peace was concluded, and the Earle after that in Ierusalem, as he was at the two Patriplay, was murthered, and the King suspected as procurer thereof, whereof hee cleered himselfe arises, which by execution of the Malefactor.

Pontius Earle of Tripolis, with all his power, fighting against the Damafeens, was taken and thongs of other flaine, his Armie dispersed, the Bishop taken, and a great multitude killed. The Anisobians had Guill broits. do deluered their Citie to Raimund, with Boamunds daughter to Wife, which the Constantinopolis Earle of Triples tan miliked, and by great power fought to fubdue all that Principalitie, with Horfes, Cha- flaine. rots, Treatines beyond number, and Forces infinite, pating Sant Gorges arms, and violently Telfaction by forced Telfac, and placed his owne, expelling thence the Antochias Porces. He beliegeth An the Emperour theshes. Sensitive the Torbe rates the advantage of toilude the Courses of Trials. tiochia. Sanguin the Turke takes the advantage to invade the Countrey of Tripolis, and besieged Mount Farand. Both parts sie to the King for aide, who going first against Sanguin, received Earle of Trip. an ouerthrow; the Earle of Tripolis was taken, and almost all the Footmen taken or slaine with all their carriages. The King fled for success to a Castle unpromided out of which which which all their carriages. The King fled for succour to a Castle vnprouided, out of which whiles his fubiects feeke to deliuer him, Neapolis was taken by other Saracens with cruell execution of all forts. Sanguin put the King to fuch straits before succours could come (which on all hands were

prouided) that he was contented to agree on conditions to refigne the Fortresse after much Fa-50 mine and death. Antochia was also grieuously assaulted, but peace was by mediation concluded betwixt the Emperour and the Prince, which did him homage.

The Emperour having wintered in Cilicia, the next Spring layeth fiege to Cofarea, affifted cafarabefiewith the Prince of Antioch, and Earle of Edessa to satisfie them, which yet by their negligent ged, labours and diligent play, gaue him fo little latisfaction, that being offered money, he accepted it, and returned to Antioch, where arose a tunult about his demand of a Garrison, which grew to blowes, wounds, deaths, which caused the Emperour to remit his demand, and to returne home. Meane-while, Theodericke Earle of Flanders, the Kings Sonne-in-law came to lernfalem, with a strong Armie. Thele with the Ierofolymitans besieged a Den of Theenes neere Mount Ga-60 land, being an inaccellible Caue, where a Neft of Adders refided, wayting all opportunities of mischiefe: which while they were doing, the Turkes tooke Teens. The Master of the Temple Tenstaken, came vpon them with his forces, and chaied them, but minding the fpoyles, the conquered returned and regained the victorie with great flaugh; er and spoile.

Sanguin fought now to get the Kingdome of Damaseus, whereupon they defired the King,

Parmarke of

and promifed the Citie Paneas, and twentie thousand pieces of Gold to King Fulke, to affilt them against a common Enemie. But Sanguin feared the encounter and returned. Paneas after Panell Legate a firrorg fiege was taken. The Popes Legate commeth into those parts, and after much flirre deposits the deposits Ralfe, the Patriarke of Antiochia, compels him to deliner his Ring and Croffe, and commits him to the Prince to Bonds and Imprilonment in a high Mountaine, whence escaping to Rome, and obtayning some glance of Papall light, in his returne hee was poysoned. The Leholdeth a Guacell at gate returneth to Ierufalem, and dedicates the Temple ingreat folemnitie, and celebrates a Councell with the Patriarke, the Armenian, Median, Persian, Cappadecian Bishops, and reformation was promifed in the things wherein they diffent from vs. Amerike an vulearned man was chosen the Antiochian Patriarke.

Baldwinche Edeffe taken.

The Emperour makes another Expedition within foure yeares after the former into Cilicia. Death of the and to Edella, with innumerable Treatures and People, where after much labour to little effect. Emperour and the next Spring in hunting a wild Boare, with a Poyfoned Arrow hee hurt his hand as hee was shooting, whereof he dyed, Anno 1137, and King Fulke, by like disaduenture followed, in the following of a Hare falling from his Horfe, his braines with the violence thereof, forced out of his nofe and eares. This happened in Nouember 1142.

Baldwin the third i cceeded, Sangum the Turke Lord of Nimue (now called Muful) came and belieged Edella, the Metropolis of Media called Rages, a Citie better flored with Merchante then Souldiers, and by vindermining tooke it, neither sparing age or fex; among it the rell. Hunh the Archbishop was flaine, who having horded infinite Treature, to spare it hee was prodigall of 20 his life, and fame and it alfo, to a cruell vngratefull Heire. He proceeded to be fiege Calogenbar on the other fide of Exphrates, where one night in his drunkennelle hee was flaine of his feruance: living and dying, Sanguine, one of his Sonnestucceeded at Muful, Novadine, another at Halapia. The Captaine of Bostrum vpon discontent with the Damascens came to lerusalem, and offired to yeeld the Citie to the King, who went with an Armie, but too late, the Enemie having possession before, wherefore after many dangers and loses he returned. Not long after the Edel lans (Noradine being elfe-where builed) fend to Earle Joseeline, who commeth and fuldenly becommeth Mafter of the Citie, which he was not able to hold, Noradine returning with a ffrone power, and recouering it with exceeding flaughter of the Citizens and of the Earles Armie.

After this, Pope Eugenius fent Preachers to excite men to take the Crofle (among ft them 30 Bernard Abbot of Clarenale) which went thorow Kingdomes and Regions, whereby Conrade the Emperour and Lewis King of France with many Princes embraced the word and figne of the Croffe, which yet did in all that Expedition nothing acceptable to God, our finnes deferring it. As they which were prefent, confrantly affring there were in the Emperours Campe feuen-* Laricatorium, tie thouland ' harneffed Horle-men, befiles Foot-men, Children, Women, and Horle-men of lighter Armour. And in the Armie of the French as many armed Horse-men, and a Nauie; able if God had bleffed them to have conquered all the Eafterne Provinces. The Greekes either by command, or corrupted by the Enemie, led ours by vnpaffable paffages, fo that their Enemies made such flaughter, that of all those thousands of Horse-men, and innumerable Footmen, scarfly numbers flaine the tenth part cleaped. The French followed the Imperials in like fates, the glory of the Frankes an and vertue fometimes dreadfull, being made a mockerie to their Enemies, Famine and Diforder these in M.Par. pursuing the residue which escaped the Battell which was in Ianuary 1146.

Incredible

Anno 1148. Novadine inuades the Territories of Antiochia, and in Battell Raimundthe Ramund flaine Prince with the firength of those parts were flaine. Raimunds head and right hand were fent to Earle of Edeffa the Calipha of Baldae : all the Countrey was over-runne by martiall furie. The Soldan of Icanium incides the Countrey of the Earle of Edeffa, takes many Cities and Caftles, and befiegeth the Earle in Turbeffel, and upon conditions departeth. This Earle a voluptyous and diffolute man receycing at the fall of Antiochia, fell foone after into his Enemies hands, which carryed him to Halapia, where tyred with miferie he dyed.

The power of the Frankes confifted in the Kingdome of Ierufalem, the Principalitie of An- co

The foure

tisch, the Earldone of Edella, & the Earledom of Tripolis. After the former mileries in other parts Frances power, happened a differtion twist the King and his Mother, which divided the Kingdome betweene Civil Warres, them in civil combustions. The Queene betakes her to lerufalem, whither the King followes with an Armie, and (notwithanding the Patriarkes admonition) befregeth it, and after that the Citizens had let him in, laid fiege to the Tower where the was, till at last agreement was made on both lides, internal grudges and relikes of faction ftil remayning, whiles without as two Mil-Emperour of frones, Noradine and the Soldan of Iconium, ground the State betwirt them to powder. The Confl. his inua- Soldan of Leonium having inuaded againe the Country of Edeffa, left milerie should want, the Conftantinopolitan fends a great Armie and challengeth the Country which the King yeells to, taking with him the people (which hereupon with their wealth departed) whereof Noradine 60 understanding with great power assailed them, their carriages being sticked with Arrowes like Hedge-hogs, yet they shifted away, the Turkes wanting victuals to follow them. In one yeare did Noradine dispossible the Greekes of their new Possessions, a rich Country beeing quite loft, and three Archbishoprickes cut off from the Church of Antioch, the Edeffan, the Hierapolitan, and Coricen. The Earle of Tripol's was murthered by the Affines.

CHAP.2. Ascalon taken. Foxe made Goose-beard. Hospitalars Originall. 1212

A huge Armie of Turkes called Hiaroguin, whose Progenitors had held Ierufalem, made an A huge Armie of Turkes called Hiaroguin, whose Progenitors and near terujatem, made an Hiaroguin expedition thicher for recoverie of their prifting possession; where, tyred by the difficultic of Turka. the way, they were made an easier conquest to the Sword of the Christians, so that fine thouthe way, they were made an earlie to active. This was Anno 1152. The King befieged Ascalon Passace veerly two Moneths; after which, according to the custome, at Easter was a passage of Pilgrims in of Franker at great frequencie, which came thither with huge banda of Horse and Foote, the Campe daily Fester to Tensmcreafing, the Palgrims which would have returned being forbidden, and their Ships being im- fulen. ployed in this fernice. Ours with Masts of Ships, made a wooden Tower, and of the other maproyect in the Ships, engines and Pent-house-prouisions for securitie of the approachers. After In fine Moneths fiege, and daily killing and wounding on both fides, the Babylonian Fleet came to

their fuccour, Gyrard of Sydon the Admirall of our Fleet, thought to encounter with them. but feeing their multitudes fled; they being feuentie Gallies and other Ships of huge greatneffe and great prouisions, which the Egyption Prince had sent. A peece of the Wall being razed, they which would have entred, were forbidden by the Templers (that being the custome for all men to hold what foeuer spoile they got) in hope of gaine, so that their couetous nesse exposed Afalous raken. them to the flaughter. And our men fainting were incouraged, and the Citie was yeelded . on composition to depart with bag and baggage. Absolon was made Bishop by the Patriarke, against the will of the Bishop of Bethlems, which appealed to the Pope, and by his sentence ex-cluded the former. Nogama a Turke seeing the Assaulted the former. Nogama a Turke seeing the Assaulted the former. 20 (which had vindercooke to guard them into Egypt himselfe) fell upon them, rifled them, and ucralone.

left them wandring in the Delart. This hapned, Anno 1154.

Anno 1155. Was a grieuous famine, and but for the store of Corne which they found in Lib.18. Ascalon, the people had all perished. And the yeere following, the soile about Ascalon, which Famine and hoftilitie had not permitted to be tilled in fiftie yeeres, rendred fixtie-fold increase. Great contention grew betwixt the Patriarke and Hospitalars, about Tithes of their goods, and other their infolencies. The Roman Church not confidering what it granted, gaue caufe hereof, free- Roman Church ing the place from iurildiction of the Patriarke. This place of the Hofpitall was given first by blamed by all ing the place from inridiction of the Patriarke. This place of the Lamphan, was given intro-the Egyptian Calpha's to the Amalfian Merchants of Italia, to build them a house, where they Hospitalure the Egyptian Carppoint to the Mary, of Latin Monkes; and another Numerie of Saint Mabe beginning, 30 ry (Magdalen : and after that an Hospitall, and an Altar in honor of Saint lohn Elemon, or the

Almoner. The maintenance of thefe was yeerly almes: which continued till lerufalem was won by the Christians, Gerald being then Master of the Hospitall, to whom Raymund succeeded, which now by Roman privilege did thus domineere. The Patriarke went a dangerous journey Pope Adriant with others to Rome, where he received bad entertainment, the Cardinals (all but two) followine Balaam sonne of Bosor, and going after gifts. The Emperour of Constantinople at that time by the Popes confent inuaded Apulia.

About this time the Soldan of Egyps flew the Calopha, to make his some Noferedine, Calopha: Egypten but the fact being knowne, the Countrey was too hot for him, who flying the Egyptian Frying-broiles. ron, fell into the fire of the Frankes, which flew him and tooke Noferedine, whom defiring to 40 become a Christian, the Templers fold to the Egyptians for fixtie thouland Egyptian pieces of Cruellbale.

gold, which carried him in an Iron Grate into Egypt, and there cut him in small pieces. The aesse, yeere after, Ranialdus de Castellione Prince of Antiochia invaded Cyprus with hostile Legions, Cyprus inva a Christian neighbour Countrey, alway friendly to vs. He ouerthrew their Armie, wasted Ci- ded ties, Townes, Monasteries, raufhed Nunnes, obtayned infinite spoiles, which he soone spent as rocigally. The King alio brake his league with the Turkes at Paneas, for greediness of spoil Leaguebroken to pay his debts: which was soone reuenged. Noradine belieged the Towne, which the King vanishly, caused him with an Armie to leaue, but io, as waiting better opportunitie, which hee soone found, to doe more hurt to the Kings Armie; taking the most of the great Men therein, the King hardly escaping, and consequently (in that time) the Kingdome. He againe besiegeth Pa-

50 ment, and againe by the King is repelled. After this , the King befieged Cafaren , and with the Cafaren taken. helpe of Theodorick Earle of Flanders , then with his forces present , wanne it : and after that Harenc. He dyed, Anno 1 162. and his brother Amalricus succeeded.

He in his first yeere descended into Fgypt, and fought with Dargan the Soldan, and obtai- Baldwins death ned victorie; who, left he should proceed turther, brake the bankes of Nilus then swolne, to o- Amaticus sucuerflow the Countrey. Dargan was foone after flaine. Normaline invaded the Countrey of Tri- Lib.19. polis, but by helpe of Westerne Pilgrims then comme thither , his Armie was diffipated. himfelfe hardly escaping , with one Legge bare, leaving his Sword behinde. Of these Pilgrims Three Prince Gilbert de Laci, and Robert Mansel were Commanders. To recouer his credit, he besieged Ha- taken. rene, where Boamund the third Prince of Antiochia, Raimund the Earle of Tripolis, and Caliman 6c Prefident of Cilicia and Toros, an Armenian Prince opposing, were discomfitted, and the three

former, with divers other Nobles taken, Anno 1165. Syracon tooke an in expugnable Fort by corruption of the Keepers, called Casea de Tyrum. He An Affe laden

prepared great forces against Sanar the Soldan of Egypt, by authoritie of the Casppha of Baildac, with gold, but earying Water in Bottles thorow the Defart. Amalrican followed him, his whole Armie mee-Fortstater.

Tempest of

ruines remaine ten miles beyond Nilus, ftill called Memphis, and therefore this is not the old Memphis) lohar built Cabere, in the yeare after Mahomet 3 5 8. The King and Soldan agreed to goe meete Syracon, which was passed ouer the River before they came. Some remainders they tooke, which told them, that in the Wildern: He fuch a tempest of Sand in manner of Clouds. and a thicke Mift hapned, that they durst not open their mouthes or eyes, and were forced to alight and lye downe, left the Whirle-wind should lift them vp in the ayre, to receive greater fals on the earth. The Sands there, are moueable with the winds like wayes of the Sea, and no leffe dangerous. Many were loft, together with their Camels and pronisions, and many scattered Tither paid in the Deferts. Sauer, to hold the King with him in that danger, encreated the tribute, and by the Britisass on the King with him to the Calipba allo bound himselfe, Hugo Cafarinfis ass on the King being therefore sent to him. He and Galfridus came to Cabere, and entred the Palace California. passing by darke passages needing lights, (in every of which was a guard) vnto more spacious places open to the Sunne, where they faw Galleries borne vp with Marble Pillars, the Roofes

The Calioba's

The Palace

gilded, with carued workes, the pauements diverlified, presenting a Royall splendor, There were marble fish-ponds, many strange Birds vnknowne in our World, with their prouisions. Then they passed to places as farre exceeding these, as these the vulgar. Heere was admirable varietie of admirable beafts. By many turnings they came to the Palace of this Palace, where were greater Gards, more glorious Courtiers, and supereminent riches. The Soldan which con- 20 ducted them, twice prostrated himielfe with a kind of adoration, and the third time being proftrate, he laid afide his fword from his necke. Prefently the Curtaines embroydered with Gold and Pearle were drawne from about the Throne, where the Calpba fate in more than Royall habite, attended with a few Domestickes and Eunuches. The Soldan approached with reverence, and kiffed his feet, and then acquainted him with the affaires of the prefent flate, to which hee gaue a gentle Answere. And when Ours defired him to confirme it with his hand, his attendants made strange, as a thing whheard off : but at last the Soldan vrging, he stretched forth his hand, but veiled: to whom Hugo, Sir, Faith feekes not corners, and in faith betwint Princes all things ought to bee hare with open finceritie: whereat hee vinwilling, yet fmiling, gaue him his bare hand, (which the Exprisor much grudged at) putting it into the hand of Hu_{30} , g_{θ} , browne, tall, comely, liberall, had innumerable Wives : his name was Elbadech, the Sonne

His person. Mehenetan

Cairasan.

The Authors

ftory of Ma-

The barrell of

The division betwixt the Calipba of Baldae, and this hapned by the Schiffer of Hali, which made himselfe a greater Prophet then Mehemet : those that acknowledge Mehemet the Sami and Sfit. greatest being called Samm, and the followers of Hats, Sfit. In the yeare 286. of Mehemet, See beforein arose one Abdalla, of Hatis Posteritie, which from Selencia a Citie in the East passed into Africa, and called himfelfe Mehedi (that is, making plaine) which built Mehedia, tooke Sicilia, made fpoiles in Italie, and called himfelfe Calipha, first of all the followers of Hali: His great Grandchilles Sonne Ebuthemin, by lobar his Captaine fubduing Egypt, built Cabere, which fignifieth 40 conquering : whereupon leauing Caroea in Africa, where four of his Progenitors had dwelt, he made that the Imperiall Seat, opposing himicife to the Easterne Calipba, as I have more largely shewed in mine Historie of the Eastern Princes & their Acts from Mehemet to this day (1182.) with great diligence, King Amalricus procuring me the Arabian Bookes. But leaving these digreffions, a battell was fought betwixt the King and Syracon, very various both getting the better and the worle, neither partie conquering nor conquered in the whole, but in divers parts of their Armies. Saladine Ner hew of Syracon tooke Hugo Cafariensis. The Bishop of Bethleem, the Kings Chancellor (in which office I incceeded) was wounded and loft his baggage. Stracon paffed thence to Alexandria, and the Citizens received him. The King followed : but Syracon leauing the Citie to Salahadae, escaped by night. The King besieged the Citie and put them to 50 great strates. Hugo (then captiue) was vsed as an Instrument of Treatie, and the Citie yeelded to Amalricus, Anno 1 1 67. But Amalricus by Gerbert Master of the Hospitall his meanes (Pelusium beeing promised to the Hospitalers) brake his league and entred Egypt in hoftile manner, the Templers refusing to follow, either of enuie to the Hospitalers, or of conscience, which the King violated.

Beben, in the Confines of the Deferts Alexandria taken.

> Pelusium was taken, no Age or Sexe spared, and Mahazam Sonne of the Soldan was taken. Sause sends to Novadine for aide which sent Syracon thicher with an Armie. The King proceeded towards Cabere, but went flowly vpon promife of great fummes from the Soldan,

which deceived him. His Navie pailing which River by the arment thereof Carabes, forced Tapcara befieged, nis. The King laid his fiege to Cabere, but vpon promite of money removed a mile further Mile 60 de Planes disturbeth the businesse, but Syracon more, who entring Egypt, the King went to meete him, but mifting returned home. Syracon taking the oportunitie entred Cabere in peace, trea-cheroully flue Sauar, and was by the Calipba made Soldan, soone after dying, and Salahadone

forceeding. The Eafterne Emperour fent in fuccour of the Holy Land, a ftrong Fleet of one hun- Lib to dred and hftie Gallies of Warre, belides other Vellels of feruice, whereupon, Anno 1 1 69, Amalricus againe entred Egypt, and came to Damista, which hee belieged in vaine, if it bee not more then vaine, that themielues forced with fire, famine, raines, returned (fo many as were

The yeare following followed a most terrible Earthquake, vtterly ouerthrowing strong Gi- Const fleet. ties, involving the Inhabitants in the ruines, filling every place in the Land with laments. Thus fared it with the Cities of Syria, and Phanicia throwne to the ground, and Antiochia in Calefria was quite ouerthrowne; the Walls, Towers, Churches, Houles so ruined, that to this day they to cannot be reduced to a meane reftauration. Gabul, Laodicea, Nerea called otherwise Halapia, Terrible Cafara, Hanum, Emilla, and many other Cities in that Prouince, Townes without number: fa. Earthquake,

red likewife. Tripolis was made a heape of stones, and publike Sepulchre: scarsly any escaping. Tyrm loft her Towers. These terrors continued three or foure moneths, thrice or foure times a

day. Paleftma remanned free.

After this Salahadine invadeth the Countrey, taketh Gaza, makes cruell executions and re- Baldwis the turneth into Egypt. Milo the Armenian adioyneth himselfe to Noradine, vexeth the Antio- fourth his Le. chian Territories. Salahadine poyleth all the Countrey beyond Iordan. Anno I'I 7 3. Amalri- Profice. con dyeth, and his Sonne Baldwin succeeded, whom his Father at nine yeares of age had committed to our Erudition (then Arch-deacon of Tyre) his right arme was flupified and feufleffe. 20 the beginning of an incurable Difease, when he was a stripling proouing a Leprosie. Hee had a Sifter named Sybilla. In the first yeare of his Reigne, William King of Sicilia, fent a Nauis of two

hundred thirs against Alexandria, which returned with great loffe and thame, Salahadine the Sa'adine, Sonne of Newmend, Brother of Syracon, was called by the Damafcens, and made Lord of Da-Sanders, the Some of Norsdine being differited. Corobed: Lord of Mufal, came in his Nephewes behalfe against him, but in vaine, Salabadine winning the rest of the Country. After this with behalte against nin, out in vanishment, and the same and ouerthrowne by the King; Salabadine flying with fearle one hundred Horfe, an innumerable company beeing tathe king! Sausoname uping 18 muscled the Enemies Country, and hardly elcaped the Lord Constable and others being slaine. In a bartell also against Salabadine, ours having gotten the 30 field laden with prey, are spoiled and made a prey to the conquered. The Earle Trecenfis and the Brother of King Lewis of France, Peter, and other Nobles with a great power came into Swis

but could now withfland the current of Salabadines victories, which now possessed himselfe of a Castle which the King had lately built neere Iordan, and raced it. Hee makes league with the King and breakes it, and takes divers holds by Sea and Land, annoying the Kingdome. But wea- Lib, 12: rie of bloud I follow this Author no further, who feltorie is left vnperfect, as the King then was in state of bodie, committeing the Gouernment of the Kingdome to Guide of Leziniac, on whom before he had bestowed his Sister in Marriage. I will likewise commit you to an Engilo Author and Acts in these businesses.

If any bee offended, that the date and yeare of each Exploit is not mentioned, it is because the Author

CHAP. IIII.

The Continuation of the Ierusalem Expedition and other Additions, gathered out of MATTHEW PARIS, chiefly relating the Acts of Eng-lish Pilgrimes in that Employment,

Templers beginning and degeneration. Huge slaughters of Christians. SALADINES taking lerufalem and the Holy Land.

Bout the years 1118. the Hospitulers were begunne by Hugo de Paganis, and Godfrey of Saint Omar. These were Knights religious in manner of Canons Regulars, denoting themselves to the service of Christ in Chastitie and Obe- Beginning of dience; to whom King Baldwin gaue a residence in part of his Palace, the Ca- the Templers. nons of the Temple of our Lord gave the freet adioyning to build Offices; the King, Patriarke and Prelates gaue Benefices for their maintenance. Their first

profession was, for remission of their sinnes, to secure the wayes for Pilgrimes against Theeues. Nine yeares after, at the Councell of Treca, a rule and white habit was deligned them by

Their poffes-

Pope Honorins: and nine yeares after that their number (being but nine) beganne to increase together with their Poffessions; after which in the time of Pope Eugenius, they sewed Croffee of red Cloth to their Mantles. In a small time they were so many, that in their Couent they have three hundred Knights, beides other Brethren, whose number is almost infinite : and their Poc. fellions on this and the otherfide of the Sea are faid to bee fo immense, that there is no part of Christendome, which hath not bestowed on them part of their goods, and they are now richer then Kings. And because their abode is neere the Temple, they are called Brethren of the Souldierie of the Temple : and having continued some time in good order, the humilitie of their protelfion now being neglected, they have withdrawne themselves from the Patriarke their formder. withholding Obedience, and the Churches Tithes, and are become very troublesome to all, In

" Toricalarum

This is here

replated for

Anno 11 46. was a Councell held at Rhemes, and Preachers appointed for the Holy Land. which the Saracens did ouer-runne without resistance. Conrade the Emperour at the preaching of Bernard tooke the Croffe, and with him an innumerable multitude. In May following, hee beganne his Pilgrimage, leading with him feuentie thouland Horfe-men armed, befides light Hors-men, * Footmen, Women and Children. Lewis King of France followed him with Equition. no leffe an Armie of armed Horse-men. They went alunder for better prouision for themselves and their Horfes. Palling Bauaria, the Danow, Austria, Hungarie, and both Pannonias, also the Bulgarian Proninces, Melia and Dacia; Conrade came into Thrace and to Constantinople; thence (after speech with Manuell the Emperour) passed into and thorow Asia to Licaonia. The Solthe hugenesse dan of Iconium had hired great forces out of the East. The Guides which the Constaminopolitan 20 o' to le expe- had given him, with Greekish fleight, as is faid, through envie of their Master, brought them into difficult paffages, and fo betrayed them, before familhed, to the Turkes expected opportunitie and furie; that of the feuentie thousand armed Horsemen, and Footmen, in manner innumerable, fearfly the tenth part escaped, the rest shared betwixt Famine, the Sword and Captinitie, Conradus escaped to Nice, and so to Constantinople, where he wintered. The next Spring he passed by Sea to Achon, and was received by the King joyfully at Iernfalem.

Defeat of the

This yeare 1147. King Lewis came to Meander with feuentie thousand armed Horsemen. French Armie. This yeare 1147. Ming Lemn cannot be fides a great Name of thips which followed him. The Enemie attended to hinder their patents. fage over the water, which coft many mens lives. Comming to Laodicea , they afcended a high Mountaine, where they were miferably discomfitted by the Turker. Yet did the King with Elia- 30 nor the Queene hold on their Pilgrimage to Ierufalem, where their case is much condoled. The Emperour and both the Kings agreed to befiege Damafess, which they did : where the Emperour forcing his way at the watering place, strooke off a Turkes head (which fought luftily) together with the Head-piece, the necke and shoulder armed, with his Sword, dividing the left armeand fide winder it from the reft of the bodie. The Citizens terrified, corrupted fome Princes with Bribes, who indecoured to diffolue the fiege, which Treafon of the Eafterne Christians, was odious to those of the West, and caused the Emperour and the French to returne home, abhominaring the fellowship of these Easterne Princes, and cooling others Deuotions to this Pile

Conrades

Eafterne trea-

Prince Raimund flaine, Fire Raimand flame by Affa-

Templers preacheric. Pope Adrian.

T. Becket murthered for maintayning the Clergics Libertics, amurthers,&c.

pa, flue Prince Raimund with other Nobles in battell, tooke the Castle Hareng, and spoyled all the Countrey. Anno 11 50. Raimund Earle of Tripolis was flaine by the Affilines: a man deplored as dreadfull to the Saracens: Thele Affifines inhabit the Mountaines neere to Antaradas, in the Prouince of Phanicia, have ten Castles and fortie thousand men or more. These elect their chiefe whom they call. The old man of the Mountaine, at whose word they will attempt any thing. Their haue beene precifer Saracens then othres four hundred yeares. Their old man at this time began to embrace Christian Religion, and tent for that purpose a Legate to the King of Ierusalem, which by one of the Templers was slaine, to the hinderance of the businesse till this day. Anno 1154. Adrian an Engl forman was made Pope, borne in the Territorie of Saint to Albans. The same yeare Ascalon was wonne by King Baldmin after a long siege.

After their departure, Anno 1148. Noradine entred the Confines of Antiochia, befieged Ne- 40

Pope Adrian dying, 1150, there grew a digition touching the Papacie, betwirt the English Pope Aarian uying, 1159. there grew a diamond cocoming and French, following Alexander, and the Imperials, Octamian: infomuch, that the Archbilhop of Collen comming into England, to receive the Kings Daughter for the Duke of Saxonie to wife, the Altais whereon he faid Masse were subuerted, 1165.

Anno 1171. Thomas Becket was flaine in his Church at Canterburie, on the fifth day of the Natiuitie, by William Tracie, Hugh Marnell, Reginald Fitz Ur fi, and Richard Briton, Courtiers, which had heard fome flomackfull speeches of the King, touching the faid Archbishop, wherevoon King Harry fent to Rome to excuse himselfe. But his Ambassadors could not bee admitted to the Popes presence. Hee sent others, which on Maundie Thursday, hearing that the Pope 60 meant to fentence the King of England by name, and to interdict all his Lands, the Ambasiadors to decline the fame, fware that the King should wholly obey the Pope and his Cardinals. The Authors and Fautors were excommunicated. The Church of Canterburie continued after his Funerall, a yeares Funerall of her Holies, the Pauement plucked up, the Wallsbared, the

The King fwore in the prefence of Albert and Theodiste the Popes Cardinals, that hee was not configure of Thomas his death; but because he had spoken rashly, and had brought vo such bad Souldiers (which fo autenged him) hee defired and obtayned absolution, promiting as he was injoyned. To give so much money as should maint ague two bundred Knights, to the defence Bechets musof the Holy Land for one yeere, and that he should permit appeales thenceforth to be made freely, and theras the of the Holy Land for one years, and that he [hould permit appeares thousequent to one mean presty, and there is that the sufficient which in his times were brought in contrarie to the liberities of the Church, [hould bee feed of her remeded, and that the polificant safem from the Church of Canterbarie [hould bee referred. To this Merry; the the two Kings, both Father and Sonne, [water normalisane normalisane normalisane percatorum. Soone after he unrange of came to Canterburie, 1174. and bare-foot, in manner of a penitent went to the chiefe Church, Remety apand with abundance of teares, to the Martyrs Sepulchre, where he continued long proftrate in peales, liberprayer. He there protested his innocency, but because his words gaue occasion of the Bishops ites, &c. death, hee defired of the Bilhops prefent absolution, and submitting his bare fielh to the discipline of Rods, he received three or foure blowes of every religious man, of which a great multi- Monther of retude had affembled. After which he put on his clothes, gaue precious gifts to the Martyr, affig- gallpenance, ning further fortie pounds a yeere for lights about the Sepulchre, and continued the rest of that day and the night following in bitternesse of minde, continuing his prayers, vigils and fasts till the third day. In the yeere 1176, hee granted the Popes Legat , that no Clergie man (hould bee Clergie-liberbrought before a secular Magistrate for any crime , but for Forest and lay fee : that Bilhoprickes and ties. Abbies (hould not be holden aboue a yeare in the Kings hand: that the killer of a Clergie man should be 20 arraigned before the fecular Iudge, in prefence of the Bishop : that Clergie men should not be compelled

to trialls by combat. Anno 1177, the Kings of England and France did Sweare to goe together in the service of Christ crucified to Ierusalem, and to take the Croffe, and to hold firme league. An. 1179. a Coun- Councell. cell was helden at Rome against Albigenies, that Ecclefiafticall persons should not bee compelled to stand to the judgement of Lay-men, that Archbishops v siting Churches should bee content with fortie or fiftie horses, against pluralities, &c. About the same time Pope Alexander writ to with fortie or fifte hortes, against pluralistes, oc. ADOUT the lane time rope researcher visit to Prietf Idon, King of the Indians, flewing that Philips A Byfician back told him of his differ to be to-This Prietf Idon firstled in the Carbolite and Apostolite adjorptine, and that they differed in nothing from the Dottrine was now that of the Apostolite Sea: and that, as Philip back learned of his fabricit to defired to base a fibered and in Adolisa, nor the Apostolite Sea: and that, as Philip back learned of his fabricit to defired to base a fibered and in Adolisa, nor the Apostolite Sea: and that, as Philip back learned of his fabricit to defired to base a fibered and in Adolisa, nor the Apostolite Sea: and that, as Philip back learned of his fabricit to define the name fully indicate. At a superior to the Apostolite Sea:

30 form Alter in Inculaien, where religious mes of his Kingdome might refule, and he more fully influence in Terre-ical in the Apolitalise displine: He interfare desfring, to remoke time from the Corticles in which they Labed, erred from the Coriflian fatth, few the faid Phillip to his Maiestle, to bee further instructed, circ. Baldwin, then King of terufaten, being leaprous, ordayned Guida de Lésniaco Outr-leve of the Kingdome, whole government being not prosperous, it was committed to Rainund Earle

In these times, Saladine Solden of Damaseo, having subdued the Saracens in the East, passed over Saladines ex-Iordan, spoiled Crach Castle, burned Neapolis, destroyed Arabia, wasted Gerimum. And Baldwin ploits. being dead, Baldwin a child of fine yeers old succeeded, his nephew by his fifter Sybilla: Raimsand was Protector. The Clergie and People feeing the flate of the Kingdome vnlikely to continue,

40 fent Embaladors to Henre King of England, folemnly offering the Kingdome of lerufalem, and Henre the fekeyes of the holy Citie and Sepulchre. Heraelim the Patriarke vnder-tooke the Embaffage with condelected the Master of the Holpital, and others, bringing by the way the Letters of Pope Lucas. He found King of tenthe King at Reading, Anno 1185, whom with his Courtiers they prouoked to teares. They dem. brought vnto him the Keyes of the Nativitie, of the Paffion, of the Refurrection, of the Tower of David, and of the holy Sepulchre, and the Banner of the Kingdome : which all he much honored. The Popes Letter was this. Lucius Episcopus seruns seruns Dei, &c. Whereas all thy The Popes Predecessors, about other Princes of the Earth, haute long since stourished in glorie of Armer, and Nobi-Letter. luis of minde, and the Christian people bath learned to have them Patrons in their adversitie, worthily is the reconstruction of the state of the st

ted thee to attayne the height of so great glorie, and hath ordayned thee a Wall inexpugnable against the wicked enemies of his Name. Your Maiestie may further take notice, that Saladine the cruellest persecutor of the holy Name of the Crucified, bath so prevailed in the spirit of furie against the Christians of the Holy Land, that except the courses of his crueltie bee by some obstacles stayed, her hath confidence that Iordan will flow into his mouth, ore.

Hereupon, a Parliament was affembled at London at Clerken-Well, in which the King adjured all his Subjects, in the audience of the Legats, to flew what might bee most expedient for his foule, promiting to performe whatfoever they should admie. His Parliament adusted that hee 60 should moderately gouerne his Kingdome, and preferre it from barbarous incuffions, rather then in his owne person to prouide for the lafetie of the East. As concerning the Kings Sonnes (one of which the Patriarke defired, if the King refused) it seemed vnstring to determine any thing in their absence. The King with the Patriarke passed the Sea to Roan, and had three dayes conference with the French King, and in their presence many Nobles received the Crosse-

1213 Sybillas futlety. Saladine taketh the King and Ierusalem. LIB.VIII

Both the Kings promifed the speedieft helpe, and the Patriarke returned home,

Baldwin dieth. Sub Ha fuc-

Anno 1186, Baldwin the Child being dead, Sybilla was crowned Queene, as Heire to the former Kings , but was enjoyined to discrete folemnely Guido her Husband , with condition voon Oath, to receive him for King whomsoever the should choose. Guido himselfe also intreated it, that the Kingdome should sustayne no damage for his fake, and returned home. Saladines comming being bruted, thee affembled the Lords Spirituall and Temporall to conful about a King . A womans wit. and when they granted her to name whom shee liked, all beeing in expectation, shee said vnto Guido there prefent, My Lord Guido, I choose you for my Hulband, and delivering my selfe with the Kingdome to you, doe publicely protest that you shall be King. Heereat all were amazed that one woman had deluded fo many wife men.

About this time, Saladines Mother in confidence of the Truce passed with great riches from Agpr, into the parts of Damafeus, by the borders of Iordan, and was robbed by Resmald of Callellion. Whereupon Saladine demanded fatisfaction and reflitution according to couenant: but Reginald returned harth Answere. Saladine glad of the occasion, prepared himselfe for re-uenge. In the end of Ianuary, the Kings of England and France tooke the Ctosse. Anno 118 7. Saladine affembleth Parthans, Bedwines, Turkes, Saracens, Arabians, Medes

Saladine hisre-

and Cordines, with whom and the Agyptians hee inuadeth the Christians. Hee flue the Mafter of the Templars, with threef ore of his Brethren, and befieged Caluaria. The King affembled

all the strength of his Kingdome, the Earle of Tripolis being chiefe Commander. They fought and Saladine prevailed. The Earle of Tripoles is faid to have throwne away the Kines Stan- 20 dard, and procured the flight. The King was taken with the holy Crofle, and the rest either taken or flaine. The Earle of Tripolis and iome Templers escaped. Saladine made vie of his victorie, fent the King and Captines to Damafens, tooke Ptolemaids; and after that Ierufalem, each man redeeming his libertie at ten Bizantines, a woman at five, an infant at one . the rest to bee Ierusalem taken flaues, which had not to pay, of which poorer were fourteene thousand. They entred the Citie and caused in foure corners of the Temple their Superstitions to bee proclamed. Hasting thence he possessed himselfe of all the Cities and Townes, but Ascalon and Tyrus, and Crach or Mount Royall. For the redemption of those fourteene thousand, it is to be noted, that Crosles, Chalices, Guildings, and Church-garments were fold by confent.

The Emperour and two Kings take the Croffe, King RICHARD the First bis Expedition, his Noble Exploits in Sicil, Cyprus, and the Holy Land. His imprisonment : and the great miseries which b soned to England generally by that Expedition.

Nwo 1188, at the preaching of the Popes Legate, the Emperour Fredericke tooke the

" The Auchor

gether with the Earle of Flanders, to take the Croffe, which the King of England did at the hands of William Archbishop of Tyre, " fent by the Pope for that purpose. of the former Whereupon both in the Empire and in both Kingdomes, Archbishops, Bishops, Dukes, Marqueffes, Earles, Barons, Knights, Gentlemen, and the vulgar did the like. It was also ordered, that all of the French Kingdome should weare Red Crosses, of the English White, of Flanders Greene, all things to remayne in the present State thorow all their States, till fortie dayes after their returne. But the French King entring upon the King of Englands Territories, disturbed Both Letters the Affaires of the Croffe, King Henry righting himfelfe by Warre. The Emperour Fredericke 50 are in Mat. P. at fent a Letter of Dehance to Saladine, and challenged to himselfe the old feathers of the Romane Eagle, euen vnto Libiopia and Perfia, which Saladine answered and out-braued, fetting forth large. Eagle, tuen vnto Ethiopia and Perjas, which canadara authorican the companing Holds to bee the puttance and numbers of the saraceus, demanding also the three remaying Holds to bee that is Faith take himielfe to Sea. But the Clergic of the Kingdome deliberated and determined, that Faith is must deep not to be kept in the nevillat Religious and the the clerk of the Kingdome deliberated and determined, that Faith is must depend the property of the the control of the Kingdome deliberated and determined, that Faith is must depend the control of the Kingdome deliberated and determined, that Faith is must depend to the Kingdome, and the control of the Kingdome deliberated and determined, that Faith is must depend the control of the Kingdome deliberated and determined, that Faith is must depend to the kingdome deliberated and determined that Faith is must deliberate deliberated and determined the control of the kingdome deliberated and deliberated not to be kept in the perill of Religion, and therfore the King being absolued from bonds, many Pilthat Faith may grims reforted to him, and with the people of the Countrey made a great band. The King with Zeale of those the Hospitulers and Templers, Venetians, and Genuois came to Achon, and layd siege to it, which times. Vinam continued to the comming of the Kings, Philip and Richard, and then was taken.

& frientia con-

The meaner fort of men are so possessed with demont Zeale , that they stay not the com- 60 mings of their Kings and Lords, but flow from the vetermost parts of the Wold to serue

Saladine came with a great power to raile the fiege, but fruffrated of his hopes, he returned with shame, a Nauic of twelve thouland Danes and Frislanders, comming to the ayde of the

CHAP. 4. S. 2. English monies speat, furi ver exactions Gmiseries, by the H. Land. 1210

Christians, after three daves weary fight. Meane-while the French King with Earle Richard. against his father King Henrie continued the warre, with much spoile and bloudshed on both fides, Saladine callo agreed with the Emperour of Confiantinople, and refigned the Churches of Greekes and Sathe Holy Land vito him, therein to observe the Greeke holies. The Emperour promised to fend vaceus conspi Saladine one hundred Galleyes, and Saladine him the whole Holy Land, on condition to hinder the Westerne Pilgrimes. And if any at Constantinople accepted the Crosse, he was presently imprifoned. About the same time some Northerne Pilgrimes sayling thorow the English Seas aprinciples with English Pilgrimes, and let forth together from Dortefmouth, which paffing by Lisbor. green with Engage in Spirit and to helpe him to fubited the Citie Sylvia, I wearing to Sylvia taken by were requested by the state of the work of the state of fixtie thousand Inhabitants, spared onely thire help of English

permit the spone to the sword; dedicating the Mahometan Temple for a Christian Cathedrall King Richard. our Lauy.

White Pool
King Henrie, wearied with the French and his fonnes actions, died, and left his fonne Richard of treasure

his Heire : of whom the Poet, Mira canam, fel occubuit, nox nulla secuta est; and of his Father, and sinke of Sufficit bic tumulus, cui non suffecerat Orbis. He left aboue nine hundred thousand pounds in gold bloud, the land and filter, befides Plate and lewels, and precious frones. At the fame time died Geffrie Bishop of called Holy, Ely intestate, of whose goods were confiscate three thousand markes of filter, and two hundred markes of gold, besides other treasures in Plate, Iewels, and Gold. King Richard deposed al. A marke was most all the Sheriffes from their Offices and their Dependants , to wring great summes by re- eight ounces 20 deeming them. And for regayning of the Holy Land, hee fet almost all things to sale, Donati- Kings sales.

ons, Cattles, Mannors, Woods, Townes, Sheriffewicks, and the like. Hugo the Pompous Bishop of Durham, bought to him and his Church the Kings Towne, Seggesfield, with the Wapintake or Durnam, pought to him and his South the Earledome of Northumberland, guing ouer and about one thoufand markes to be luftice of England, and to redeeme his voyage to the Holy Land. And for fur. Popes praise ther securitie, hee with infinite money obtayned of the Apottolike Sea (which is wanting to by a Monke, none that giveth money frankly) license to remayne, notwithstanding his voluntarie vow.

The Christians and Saladine had a bloudy battell, with great losse on both sides. The French King fent to treat with the King of England, for their meeting in the Holy Expedition, and fecuritie of their Countries meanwhile. King Richard having fasted and prayed at Thomas Bec- Superflicion 30 bets Tombe, vowing to performe to the Cherch those things, for which he had suffered: passing advanced. to Normandie, in the Sea hee vowed to that Saint to erect in his honor a Chappell in the Holv Land, he being his Protector by Sea and Land; which he performed after at Achon, The Bishops Miseries to of Ely and Durbam, had chiefe charge of the Kingdome in his absence : the one being chiefe Iu. England by of Ely and Durbam, had chiere charge or the surgionne in in solution of the one of the North; king Richard flice (and having the Kings Seale) from the great River to the South, the other to the North; king Richard bubbly Land but this double-headed beaft agreed not. The Archbishop of Canterbusie interdicted the Lands voyage. of Earle John, whose appeale the Popes Legate received, and released the Interdict. A tenth part of moueable goods, was given for the Holy Land affaires thorow the Kingdomé, which in Exactions, flead of almes, vexed the Clergie and Laytie with spoile in the exacting. Likewise the King

40 fayned that he had loft his Seale, and made a new, that all men which would bee fecure, were forced to feeke the new Seale, and many to follow him therefore out of the Land, and to fine with him at his pleafure.

Anno 1190. the Kings of England and France, Sware to each other the Articles of the league (their Earles and Barons did likewife) as also, that if one died in the Expedition, the Surginor should have the money and people of the deceased. William an English-man, vowed in his way to lerusalem, that if he arrived lafely at Achon, he would build a Chappell to Saint Thomas the Bethets Hospi-Martyrs honor, with a Church-yard, which he did, and was made there the first Prior. Saladine tall at Athon. corrupting Commanders with money, burned the Christians Fortifications. King Richard procured his Chancellor, the Bilhop of El, to be the Popes Legat,

50 The two Kings met at Nizeliac, where in the Church of Saint Denis , King Richard tooke Beginning of his Scripand Staffe. They came to Lions, and passing the Bridge, it brake, and many were drow- the Kings exned in the Rhofne. Their people were formany that they could not goe together; and therefore pedition. the French King went to Genua, the English to Messana. Here King Richard found many Pilgrims which had spent at their prouision with long stay, whom he adioyned to his own troups. grims which had open at the a position of the Pope, which he refuted, objecting to the Cardinall the Remarking one. Ring Ricoard was required.

Roman Simonie, which for confectation of a Bilhop, had taken feuen hundred markes, and for The Emperor the Legantine power of the Bishop of E/y, had taken fifteene hundred marks, and infinit summes drowned. of the Archbishop of Burdeaux, accused by his Clergie. Queene Elener followed and ouer-tooke Apparition of

her sonne. The same yeere, the Emperour Frederick, betwixt Iconium and Antiochia, was drow - Th. Becket 60 ned in the River Supher, falling off his Horfe. The English fleet, on holy Thursday, were mightily embroyled in the Spanish Seas with a Tempelt, and Thomas of Canterbure three times apherical and the Computer of the Spanish Seas with a Tempelt, and Thomas of Canterbure three times aphered in the Spanish Seas with a Tempelt, and Thomas of Canterbure three times aphered in the Spanish Seas with a Tempelt, and Thomas of Canterbure three times aphered in the Spanish Seas with a Tempelt, and Thomas of Canterbure three times aphered in the Spanish Seas with a Tempelt, and Thomas of Canterbure three times aphered in the Spanish Seas with a Tempelt of the Spanish Seas with a Te peared visibly, bidding them not to feare, for He and the Martyr Edmund, and Saint Nicholas, rions. were appointed Patrons of the Fleet, and the Tempelt prefently ceased. Many thips were di- Englishmen sperled, one of which came to Sylvia, and eightie well armed men. of the companie, were enter-entertayned tayned by the King of Portugall against the Emperour of Marocco, with good conditions. Ten against Me-

other

other theps came to Lisbon, and divers travelled to Marfiles thence by Land. The Archbifhon of Canterbury, Baldwin, Habert of Salisburie, came to Tyrus. John, Bilhop of Normich, went to the Pope, and emptying his purie, was released of his yow.

Thilip, King of France, arrived at Meffana, and was entertayned in the Palace of King Tonered. King Richard comming a few dayes after, was forbidden entrance by the Freuch, fearing that proution would not be procured fufficient for both. The Citizens, were willing to receive him, which the French forbad, afcending the walls armed and keeping the paffages, Richard called to armes , and by hostile force entred , putting the French to flaughter and flight, which kindled a fire in the French Kings breft, never after till himfelte was extinct, extinguished. King Richard tooke in Calabria the throng Fortrelle, called Lemba Maris, and another betwixt 10 Calabra and Messana, called the Monasterie of the Greffons. The Griffons having flaine many men and horses of the King, he brake in by force and tooke their Citic. The Citizens gave him pledges, and he fortified there a Caftle, called Materiue. A Councell provinciall was holden

K-nedome of

King Richards

afte in the

Sicilia.

at Westminster by the Bishops Legat, little or nothing to the good of the Church. The Church Freedom: ear- of Normandie then obtayned her freedome, King Richard granting that Clergie men should not be attached by Seculars, and matters of Oathes, Marriages, Vluries, &c. should bee tried in the Spirituall Court. Baldwin the Archbishop dying at Achon, bequeathed all which he had to the fuccour of the Holy Land, which Hubert his Executor distributed faithfully. William of E'y meane-while made a ditch about the Tower, and exercifed his bought Dignities with immoderate excesse to re-fill his emptied bags, prouing burthensome to all Churches, both Con- 20 uentuall and Cathedrall, riding thorow England with fifteene hundred horse, with troups of Clergie men and Knights, attended at Table by Noblemens fonnes, whom hee married to his Neeces and Kindred : buying any Land which was to be fold, giving and retayning at pleafure Abbies vacant, by feare or price obtayning enery Castle and Towne, followed with Minstrels and Songs of all forts : none durit murmure against him. His stile was in his Letters . W. Dei gratia, Eliensis Episcopus, D. R. Cuncellarius, totius Anglie Institutions, & Apostolica sedis

ly's pride,

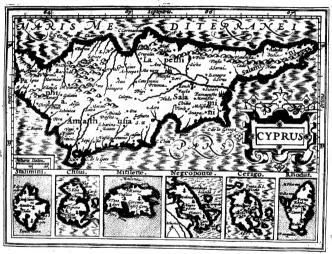
HONDIVS bis Map of Sicilia.



CHAP.4.S.2. K. Richard conquereth Cyprus. Achon taken, French Enay. 1221

Anno 1191. the French King tooke ship at Messana, in the end of March, and in the besinning of Aprill King Richard followed with thirteene Galleons, * one hundred thips of bur- * Bucen triblici then, and fiftie Gallies: and thirtie dayes after came to Cyprus. Curfae the Lord of the Hand, we's unexpenthen, and fittee Gainer: and fitting to develop the state of the state of the which called him field Emperor, tooks and imprisoned many of King Richards men, wherewhich called him field Emperor, tooks and imprisoned many of King Richards men, wherewhich called him field Emperor, tooks and imprisoned many of King in filter the whole Hand
by King in filter Emperor and included by King in filter Emperor and in the first men. with all the firong places to his fubication. He bound the King in filter Fetters, and in prisoned him at Maronto Calle neere Tripolis. The Daughter received Honourable custodie with the two Queenes.

HONDIVS bis Map of Cyprus.



Philip Earle of Flanders going to the Holy Land with the French King, dyed without iffue. 50 The Armie which befriged Achon, was befrieged with Famine, which with a well turnsfled Na-His reliefe of the King Richard relieued, in the way inking a Dromund, a huge thip of Saladines going to aide Achyn, andtathe befreged, frighted with Wild-fire, Veilels ful of vnknown Serpents, & fine handred Souldiers. king a Dro-The Kings divers, whiles it was becalmed, bored many holes therein, to that the goods hee fa- mand. ued, but drowned three hundred of the men. When the two Kings were now at Acton, they Acton taken. came to capitulation; and Saladine couenanted to render the Croffe (before taken) and fifteene Frenchenue; hundred choice Christian Captines, and seven thousand Bizantines to save the lives of the Sara- Calum nonanicons, the rest remayning to the Victors. But when the conditions were not kept, two thouland & mam maters, fix hundred Saracens lost their heads. The French King enuying the glorie of all the Christian 91.30. Exploits a cribed to the English King, pretended for want of money to returne. Hereupon King 60 Richard offered to communicate for the Service of the Holy Land, one halfe of his gold, filter, victuals, armes, flrips : who yet had fworne, and against the wils of his owne . and to the difguilt of the whole Armie, must needs home. Another quarrell arose, the King of France purpoting to deliver Achon, and all whatforver they thould take to Marchifus of Mount Ferrat , and to make him King of the Holy Land, King Richard Standing for Guido. But Mellana had begunne

emerhabe.

of cy. run-

and an ynhappie running at Tile, had made runne on this diffention. Hee left the Duke of Bursundie with one thousand men at Armes in shew to doe service to King Richard, instructed before in Treacherie. Thus fwearing to inuade no mans Land there prefent, he returned; and King Richard repayred the breaches, and ditched and fortified Achon.

The Coast Cities hearing of his approach fled , having no hope of fuccour from Saladine, The Country thus they did in Caiphas, in Cafarea, Toppe, Affis, Gaza, Afcalon, fo that all the Region on the King Richard. Sea from Achon to Joppe was taken, yet not without great loffe to the Christians, whom Saladines Armie still attended, wayting all opportunities of mischiefe.

King Richard in a Letter to the Archbilhop of Roan, tels of a Battell and great ouerthrow sinen Saladine neere Affur, wherein more of the chiefe Saracens were loft, then had beene in one day in fortie In yeares before : after which Saladine durft not attempt by open force, but by secret ambushes. Het ouerturned Ascalon, and made it even with the ground hearing of our comming thither, and wee base hope (horsely to recouser all our Lords Inberisance.

King Richard being returned, gaue the Kingdome of lerufalem to his Nephew Henrie, with King Richard the Wite of Marchifius de Monte Feratio, beeing heire of the Kingdome, now her Sifter the Kingdomes of Queene was dead, Guida confenting, to whom King Richard gave Cyprus, lately gotten by the ierwalem-and Sword, for which he did him homage. The faid Marchifins, was a little before murthered at Tyrus by the Affaines.

When Saladine had taken Jerufalem, the Inhabitants had gathered together the Relikes they Treasure of recould find, and put them in foure great Iuorie Chifts, which he (learning what they were)com- 20 manded to be carried to Baldach, and given to the Calipha, that the Christians should no longer glory God spened . of dead mens bones, and beleene to have them Intercessors in Heaven, whose bones they worthinged as an aneto teach the Pro. Earth. But the Prince of Antioch and the Patriarkeloth to be deprined of such a Treasure, of uenanted by Oath to redeeme them at fiftie two thouland Bizantines, or elfe to returne them. The Prince fealed them vp, and all Christians were deiested, the time being at hand for the pryment, King Richard paid the money that they might intercede for him in Heauen, whose bones he had redeemed on Earth from the hands of Infidels.

Combustions hapned, meane-while, in England, by the Chancellors excesses, the iffue where-Chancellors of was his Deposition, he and his having to exhausted the Kingdomes wealth, that they left not a Girdle striped with Silver, nor a Ring, or lewell, or any thing of worth to any, nor Treasure 30 to a lew. The Chancellor fware to the Articles, and to deliner vpall the Caffles before his departure. He came to Canterburie, and their tooke the Croffe of Pilgrimage, and laid downe that of his Legantie Office : and getting closely to Doner, thought to have Rolne over Sea in a Wo-Pride of a mans Habit. Wayting on the shoare for passage, a Mariner was somewhat homely with him: Prelate and and found him as arrant a man as himfelfe, by the teltimonie of his Breeches. Hee calls in company, and women would needs buy of him his piece of cloth, which hee had taken to cloke his Sexe and businesse: but he vnderstanding no English, could say nothing, whereupon they remoued his Muffler, and found a Shaueling whom they dragged contumelioufly alongst the Strand, with cryes, buffets, fpittings, and haling him thorow the ffreets, imprisoned him in a Cellar;

the Lords, and gate over to Normandie. King Richard besieged the Caltle Darum, the next of Christendome towards Babylon, and wanne it. Soone after hee tooke a rich Carouan of Merchants guided by Saladines Souldiers, Caute of King with leven thousand Camels richly laden. The Duke of Austria came about that time to performehis Vow in the Holy Land service, where a quarrell falling out betwire his Harbengers, and a Normanof King Ruchards, the King incontiderately, taking his mans part, caused the Dukes Colours to be cast into a lakes, which the Duke leeking to right, was further wronged with (coffes; whereupon the Duke feeing himfelfe contemned by the King, turning to the King of Kings invoked him with teares to his revenge, which after fell out accordingly. King Richard with his late gotten spoile would have gone and laid siege to Ierufalem, where the feare 50 of his name and comming had alreadic terrified the Inhabitants. But this was hindred by the Duke of Barg. Duke of Burgunde, (enuying that Triumph to King Richard) countelling the Templers, and French to his part. Saladine also with great gitts corrupted the Dake, fending him by night fiue Camels laden with Gold, Siluer, Silkes, and other Riches. Whereupon the King conumcing him by witnesse, called him Traytour, and heereturned from the King in displeasure to

Who yet escaped by leaning his Oath to the Lord, and his Pledges (and his two Brethren) to an

Newes came that Saladine belieged loppe, and King Richard defired the Duke to affift him in King Richards the Enterprize, which he refused and went the same night toward Tyrus, where he fell madde, alts at Joppe. and dyed miferably. The King hasted to Joppe by Sea, Saladine having already taken the Towne, the Souldiers were vpon deliuery of the Cattle, when King Richard brake in amongst them like 60 a furious Lion, and chafed the Saracens to Ramula. But hearing the next day of the Kings imall " numbers they returned, (for only three ships had arrived) Salaadine sent fixtie two thousand to fet yoon the King, which encompaffed his Tents, and award him with their noise. He gate upon his Horfe attended by eleuen others (they had no more till they had berrowed of the Sa-

racens,) and beyond beliefe to laid about him, making way for the rest, that they in the Towns also made out, and quited the field of them. This hapned on Lammas day. Salaadine in his rage fent for an old Priloner, whilome Prince of Antischia, and asked him, What wouldft thou doe if thou hadft me in thy power as I now have thee? Hee (adjured to tell the truth) faid hee would cut off his head; which was his owne fentence, and Salaadine himselfe the Executioner. An Heremite told the King he should not winne lerufalem, and gaue him a piece of the true Croffe, as he faid. Whiles the King abode at Joppe, feuen weekes, an infectious Difeafe feifed on His Armie him, and the most of his, deadly to all in manner which had it, except the King. Seeing therefore difesfed. the French alienated, and readie to returne, his monies spent, his men diminished by warre and

10 fickneffe, his Enemies increasing daily; he determined to returne home for the reparation of his Purse and force, concluding meane-while a Truce with the Pagans for three yeares. By Sea hee was incountred with a terrible Tempest, some drowned, others wracked, few attayning their His returns defired Port. This hapned in Autumne, whereas Salandine dyed in the Lent following, and had croffed by a they stayed, had facilitated their Designes; both by his death and the differitions which followed this bard pass. among ft his fonnes and followers. Hereunto was added the Conspiracie of the Earle of Saint face. Giles, and all those Princes by whom he was to passe : which made him purpose to returne by Germanie. He came to Gazara in Sclauonia; where fome notice of him being taken, he with his fmall company hafted away at mid-night; but a worfe and darker mid-night hapned. For with one man and a Boy which could speake Dutch, he travelled three dayes without eating or drin- K. Richard ra-

20 king: he came to Gynatia in Anstria, and being suspected by the Boyes change of Byzantines, and ken by the U. after by the Kings Glones which vnawares he had carried under his Girdle, hee was belet and of Autilia, and veelded himselfe to the Duke, who committed him to strait custodie, and in the yeare 1193, fold to the fold him to the Emperour for threefcore thousand pound of Siluer, Collen weight. Heere hee Faperour.

Microswhich was againe imprisoned, and a firong Gard set on him, with whom he made himselfe merrie in came to English sports, making them drunke, trying of Matteries, in a'l feeming Master of himselse and his land, by this ohard fortunes. The Emperour would not admit him his presence or speech, and pretended therwise victor many calumnies against him. At last, by mediation of friends he obtayned a hearing, eloquently cleered himselfe of Imputations, and wonne much respect both of others and the Emperour tion from the Henry, who after vied him more familiarly, and demanded one hundred and fortie thousand fish to the last 30 Markes of Saluer for his ranfome. This was brought by the Kings Letter, and the Emperours thereof. Golden Bull into England by William Bishop of Ely aforesaid: and all Bishoppes, Clergie-men,

Earles, Barons, Abbots, Priors were affelfed at a fourth part of their Rents, to ransome the King. Alfo they fold for that purpose their Chalices of Gold and Silver. John Bishop of Norwich, thorow all his Diocesse tooke halfe the price of their Chalices and Goods. The Ciffercian Order (free before from all Taxations) gave all their Wooll to his Redemption, No Church, no Order, no Degree, or Sexe, was passed by, which was not hereto compelled; manifold Tempests, Inundations, and Winter Thunders having thorow that yeare fore-fignified the fame, causing also great scarsitie of Corne and Fruits.

King Richard being Priloner, his Brother I ohn made compact with the French King, and to fought to be crowned in England, but the vertue of the English was more loyall. Philip the French King inuaded Normandse with a very great Armie, not sparing Order, Age, Sexe, vsing no lesse the Treason of King Richards Subjects corrupted by him. He belieged Roan, but by the Earle French perfidie of Leifters Proweffe and the Inhabitants valour, was repelled with shame,

Anno 1194. King Richard having paid the greatest part of his Ransome, and given Pledges for the rest, arrived at Sandwich on the Sunday after Saint Georges day. Presently he visited Thomax Beckets Tombe, and was with Festivall Solemnitie, received soone after at London. He hafled to Saint Edmunds to performe his Denotions; and thence to Nottingham, against those which had conspired with his Brother lohn; some of whom he suffered to redeeme themselves, foto redeeme his Pledges, and to invade the French which continued spoyling his Land with King Richards

50 fireand fword. The Sunday after Eatter he ware his Crowne at Winebester. His Brother lobm returne. humbled himfelfe and the King received him to favonr. This was done in Normandie, where he purised the warre against the French. He procured the Duke of Anstria to bee excommunicated by the Pope, and his Land to be interdicted : whole Land was further smitten with Famine and Pestilence, and the Inaudation of the Danow, which drowned ten thousand men : himselfeallo falling off his Horse, his legge was incurably hurt, which beeing cut off, yet the Duke of Arpaine continued and killed him, before beeing penitent, abfolued, and abfoluing King Richards firies death. Pledges.

Anno 1 1 9 5. Pope Calestine writ to Hubert, Archbishop of Canterburne, and to the Bishops Indulgences, of England to preach the Croile, Gining Indulgences to those which undertooke it, the Remission of 6 : imposed Penance by the Priest, as bus Predecessors had done; namely, that they which with a contrite bears shall undersake this expedition, and for the Penance of their sinnes; if they depart in the Faith, shall obtaine full Indulgence of their crimes and life eternall. Also their goods and families, after they have taken the Crosse, shall be under the protection of the Romane Church, and of the Bishops and Prelates. And nothing which they then at their crossing did quietly possessed fould be called in question, but

Knights and Croffeb w-

Richard his

captiuitie.

fou e hundred

2224 Epiftle from beauen. Croffes in the aire. English Nobles Pilgrims. LI B. VIII.

dulgence according to the Prelats moderation. Hee exhorted him to be infrant in feafon and out of featon, going about the Prouince, King Richard and the French came to agreement, but the Archabishop of Roan interdicted all Normandie, because of a Castle which King Richard therefortified a ainst his will. Anno 1199. King Richard died, and John his Brother succeeded. The same Kim Richards yeare the Kingdome of France was interdicted by the Popes Legat, for the taking of the Elect of Cambray prisoner, who was freed before the sentence could. Hee came also to the King of England, threatning like interdict, if the Bishop Beluacensis were not delivered, whom yet be-

death. France interdifted. Reuelations.

cause he was taken in Armes, he dismissed not without his ransome. Anno 1200, an Epiftle from Heaten was fent for the keeping of the Sunday or Lords day, 10 from the ninth houre on Saturday, till Munday Sunne riling, which the Pope, approved, and fent Preachers thorow divers parts of the world, Enflace Abbot of Flay comming from him into England for that cause. (But of visions the Stories of these times are full.)

till their returne or death should remaine quiet : Others which minister of their goods, shall obtaine In-

Councellof

In the years 1215, was holden the great Councell of Lateran, in which after other things, the affaires of the holy Land were propounded. We will and command (they are the words of the Pove) that Patriarchs, Arch-bishops, Bishops, Abbots, Priors, and others, which have cure of soules, doe preach studiously the word of the Crosse, befeeching by the Father, Sonne and boly Ghost, one onely true and eternall God, Kings, Dukes, Princes, Marquesses, Earles, and Barons, and other Nobles. and the Communalties of Cities, Villages and Townes, that if they goe not personally, they will send a sufficient number of Warriours with expences for three yeares, for the remission of their finnes, &c. If 20 any refuse, let them protest to them on our behalfe, that they shall answer this at the dreadfull Indgement of the inft Judge, &c. And we define that all which shall have taken the Coffe, Shall be under Saint Peters protection and ours, and under the Arch bishops, Bishops, and Prelats of the Church, and all their goods, &c. as before.

ð. III.

Profesation of the Holy LandWarres: English Nobles croffed: RICHARD Earle of Cornwall his Acts there : WILLIAM DE LONGA SPATA, and other English-men. King or Saint LEVVIS of France his doings and sufferings: Prince

* Euery Eafter was a general pillage,

* Incredible rales of the receiued. The croffe of Christ was fruitfull and bare many others or elle fancie is mad, which beleeued à Syrian before by reuelation, and now another Croffes in the

Ayre,

HE truce being expired in the first generall passage after the Councell of Laterane, the Christian Armie was assembled in Achon, with the three Kings of lerufalene, Hungarie, and Cyprus, the Dukes of Austria and Morania, and great Forces of the King of Germanie, with many Arch-bilhops, Earles, Gentlemen. The Patriarch of Ierufaters. tooke up the Croffe (which had beene hidden till this time, it being before, as some 40

fay, divided, and the one part lost, as you have heard, and now this other part succeeded) and the Christian Armie in the Vigill of Saint Martin, walked themselves in lordan, and bauing visited the holy places, returned to Achon. The King of Hungarie soone after departed to the great detriment of the holy Land, being requested to the contrary by the Patriarch, But away he went excommunicate with his followers, carrying with him Pilgrimes, Gallies, Horses, Armes. Others cowardly abode in Achon, a finfull Citie, and full of all vncleannesse: the King of leraselem and Duke of Auftria, Hospitalars, and others, fortified the Castle of Cafarea. The Templers and Hospitulars of the Dutch house, fortified the Castle of the Pilgrimes. In Bebor of Frifland appeared a white Croffe in the ayre towards the North, another toward the South, a third particoloured, in the midft, with the forme of a Crucified man. Other Croffes after 10 appeared, whereby the Prouince of Collen was prouoked to the holy Land feruice. These with the Fristanders provided three hundred ships, made with great care, which in the way came to Lifton: and their diffention divided them, some staying with William Duke of Holland, in the siege of Alchaeia a Moorish Castle, where they wan a great battell against the Moores, and sue one of their Kings, after that taking the Castle also. Anno 1 2 18. The Christian Nauie passed from Achon to Damiata, and besieged it, where

Daniala belie- after great lose of their owne they tooke a Tower. Saphidine Sonne and Successour of Sagea. Istulaturared ladine (by the murther of his Bretheren) died, and Coradine his Sonne razed Istulatem, making the Walls and Turrets rude heapes, and leaving nothing but the Temple and Tower of Daniel English Noble. in reuenge of the fiege of Damieta. The next passage brought many Pilgrimes from divers parts 60 men in service of the world, with the Popes Legat , Ranulph Earle of Chester, Saer Earle of Winchester , and of the Croffe. William Earle of Arundell, Robert Fitz Walter, John Conftable of Chefter, William de Harecourt, Barons, and Oliver the King of England Sonne, with many others. Many loft their lives on both fides, and by inundation of the Sea and River, brought new provisions of vnwelcome Fishes

CHAP.4.S.3. Damiata and Taphnis, Constantinople taken Rufull Story, 1225

into their Tents, and did much harme, carrying their workes to the other fide, the water betraving them to the fire. Agricuous difeafe, for which the Physicians knew no remedie, infested the Campe, (by the description it seemeth the Scorbute) which killed many. Many conflicts on both fides (wept away many. Damiata was in this long frege affaulted with Sword; Famine, Pethlence. Nalus refuling this yeare to vilite a great part of Egypt, made the Solders to feare a Famine, and in these straits hee offered the true Crosse, which Saladine had taken and all the Kingdome of lerufalem, and to repaire the ruines of the razed Citie, and restauration of Captines, (onely he would hold Crac and Mount Royall, paying twelve thouland Byzantines yeerly tribute, for the Caravans fecuritie which travell to Mecca) if they would leave Damiata. To The Princes liked it, the Clergie refused, and on the feventh of November, the Christian Armie pamietatiken

tooke it, without refillance, it having beene a buriall place of her Inhabitants, and now flinking like a Graue, the streets and houses being strewed with carkasses, eightie thousand had dyed therein during the fiege, befides three thousand which they found yet remaining. The spoyle thereof was very great, and equally shared where theeuery prevented not.

After Damiata taken, the next passage came so many Pilgrimes, that Taphnis Castle was taken, and both tortified. The Soldan tooke the Castle of Casarea, and did much hurt to debon and Tress. Anno 1222, Philip de Albeneio a front Souldier , and the Mafter of King Henrie went to the Holy Land. Anno 1224. Baldwin Earle of Flanders returned, and was knowne and acknowledged of many. But his Daughter denyed him to be her Father, and procured him to bee ac hanged betwixt two old Dogges.

This Baldwin, with the Venetiaus, the Duke of Louaine, the Marqueffe of Mount-Ferrat, Si- Strange flory mon de Montfort, and others, intending the Holy Land, by opportunitie of Greeke combustions of Baldwine at Constantinople, tooke Indera, belieged Constantinople feuentie two daies, and tooke it, (being Greefe broiles, before fire!) on the twelfth of Aprill, 1204. By common confent Baldwin was elected Empericken by the rour: and the Greekes upon that occasion began another Empire at Trebezond, Baldwin by Vene- Letizes, Sec tian helpe conquered Thrace, and after the Greekes betaking themselves to the King of Bulgaria, for this Knolls in a battell against him and the Scythians he was faid to be llaine, Anno 1 206. the Scythians put. Turiff Hillorit. ting all Thrace to spoyle and sword. Henrie, Baldwines Brother, was chosen to succeed, who ayded by the Marq seffe, now King of Theffaly, expelled those Barbarians, and recorded the Coun-

30 trey, and after eleuen yeares troublesome reigne, died. Peter his Sonne-in-Law succeeded, who was treacherously slaine, and Robert his Sonne succeeded; whose Wife a beautifull Ladie in a tumult, was by a Burgundian (to whom she had before beene betrothed) taken in the night, her Rufull report, note and eares cut off, her Mother throwne into the Sea; and her Husband then absent, had his griefe fo prefent, that he lived not long after, leaving a little Sonne Baldwin, the laft Latine Empercur of Constantinople, affanced to Iohn of Brenne, whom Pope Innocent had made King of lernfalem: the Greeks easily recovering in that opportunitie. The first Baldwin thus revived, whether he were a counterfeit or no, is vncertaine. Certaine it is, that our Authour faith, all that were of counfaile to that his hanging, dyed an ill death. The last Baldwin fought by helpe of Frankes and English, (for here he had large gifts) but in vaine to recouer that Empire.

About this time great multitudes tooke the Croffe thorow the world, infomuch that of the Kingdome of England onely, fixtie thouland and more fufficient men, besides women and old Sixty thouland Anigometric Longuest and Marker Hubers tellifying, that he (being a Preacher of the Croffe) had English the the formany in his Catalogue. On Mid-former night, the Lord appeared in the Errmannent, in cruci. Cooks, before fied forme and bloudy, to flew (faith our Author) how acceptable that deuotion was to him. old men and This was feene neere Vxbridge by a Fish-monger. Peter Bilhop of Winchefter, and William Bi- women. shop of Exeter were two of thele, which spent fine yeares in that Pilgrimage. Friderike the Emperour tooke shipping toward the Holy Land to performe his vow, but returned, pretending ficknesse, so that fortie thousand men which waited his comming that passage, returned frustrate to their homes, and many to their long home. Whereupon Pope Gregorie excommunicated

50 him. He by publike writings purged himselfe, and great broyles entitled. The Romans expelled fecond excounthe Pope out of their Citie to Viterbium, and thence to Perufium, hee having no other weapon municated. of reuenge but excommunication. The same time, the Earle of Tholonse had a great victorie against the Crusado Armie, which the Pope had with like Indulgence to that of the Holy Land, excited to warre against him and the Albigenses, (which for denying the Papacy were condemned Hereickes.) Frederike vet made best speed to the Holy Land, where the Ciergie, because the coughds. Pope had excommunicated him, counfelled him to reconciliation, and would not communicate with him. But the Templers and Hospitalars received him with reverence. The Soldan fent him rich prefents. Pope Gregorie in his abilince raifed warres by John de Bremnes, King of Ierufalem, Popes Acts. which out of France and other parts, gathered a great Armie and intraded, helped by the Popes

6c Forces, the Emperours Dominions. The Soldan troubled with civill broiles, reftored to Fredericke all the Holy Land, to that he entred lerufalem, with his Armie, and they purified the Holy Citie, but the Clergie would not communicate with the Emperour. Matter Walter , 2 Frier Walter, an Eng-Preacher, an Englishman, which had done great ferrice for the Croffe, appointed by the Pope lishman. to that Office, faid Masse : and the Clergie was restored to their Quondam possessions. The

1226 Popilh perfidie and tyrannie. Expedition of Earle Richard, &c. Lib. VIII.

A Turke more Emperour intending to goe to Iordan after the custome, the Templars and Hospitalars treacheplirs and Ho-

tai bfull then roully gave intelligence to the Soldan, that he might intrap him : partly enuying his fuccesse. loth any should there have honor but themselves; and partly, because they heard that the Pope had invaded his Territories. The Soldan abhorring such perfidie, fent their Letter to Fredericke. and laid open that hellish mysterie. Hence arose grudges, and the Templars and Hospitalars drew the Parriarke into their conspiracie, which published a Letter diffamatorie against him. Pore Gregorie exacted tenths for the maintenance of those his warres against the Emperour, thorow

England, Scotland, Wales and Ireland, which were rigorously, under paine of Interdiction and Excommunication exacted, not as the twentieth before to the King, but as might best be for the Popes adjuntage, and the people forced to pay it before hand, even for the crops on the ground, The Prelates fold their Ornaments and Church plate for expedition, and Stephen the Popes Procurator, having Vourers attending like Rauens, faue that they preyed on the living. All this notwithstanding, the Emperour returning, soone recoursed that which the Pope and his King that this puil- lobe had taken, and some composition was made between them. Pope Gregorie sent Preachers. fant Emperour and writ to excite men to the holy Warre, and fent others for money to release those vowes. and write to eather ment to the noty Warre, and tent others for money to release those vowes, tayned fix an an analysis and a permit que per Papales Procuratores colline bases est detayned fixe at-mies in feutral mersa. Unde negotium Terra Santta nunquam fælin, &c. He after excommunicated him againe. and chose another Emperour, absoluing his Subiects, perswading them to be faithfull in infidelitie. But the wickednesse of the Roman Church deserved that the Popes authoritie was not receined : he addeth of it, Deposito rubore velut meretrix vulgaris & effrons omnibus venalis & exposi- 20 ta, ofuram pro paruo, simoniam pro nullo, &c. The Truce betwirt the Emperor and the Soldan expiring, the Pope fent and writ agains,

preching the granting Indulgences as before, and freeing from Viuries, employing the Preaching Friars and Croffe. Minors in this Croffe bufineffe, who by the Popes Mandate, were attended by the Archdeacons and Deanes, which in every place caused the Parishioners, men and women to affemble, not one English Nobles vnder paine of excommunication, being absent. Many Noblemen of England tooke the Crosse. take the crofic. Earle Richard the Kings brother, Earle G. Marshill, Earle lobn of Cheffer, the Earle of Salisbnrie and his brother, and many other honorable personages. Earle Riebard made sale of his woods. Sale of yowes and of what focuser he could for that promition. But the Preachers preaching the fame Induleenis se common, ces to them, which gaue so much money as would beare the charges, hindred mens deuotions. an that I forbeate Ror this proued a common and vitall course, to exchange vowes for money. Aboue one hunto tollow the dred Knights Templers were foone after flaine in a battell with the Trakes, besides other multitudes, Anne 1228.

Many croffed Nobles were affembled at Lions, to goe to the Holy Land, when a Meffenger

from the Pope forbad them to proceed; notwith standing, that was the place and time appointed

by his Preachers, and that they had fold and pawned their goods and lands for that Expedition. Many returned home discontent : Many held on their way. Anno 1 240. Earle Richard and the

other English Nobles, tooke leave to fet forth on their Holy voyage. That yeare, the Christians Banellof Gera not agreeing in the Holy Land, fuftayned great loffe, innumerable being flaine and taken. Earle Richard passed on his way into France, and was by the Popes Legat forbidden to proceed, who so answered, that he had provided his Ships, Moneys, Armes, and detetting the double dealing of

the Roman Church, committed himselie to the Sea. The Soldan of Damasco gave the Christians all which they challenged beyond Iordan, to helpe him against the Egyptian. Earle Richard came to Achon a little after Michaelmas, where he was received with all tolemne fignifications Earle Rich, his of joy. The third day after his comming, he caused Proclamation to be made, that no Christian Pilgrime should depart home for want of money, for he would entertayne them in his pay. He writ thence of the great Schisme and mischiefe thereon attending, compleyning of the Pope: the King of Nauarre and Earle of Britaine, were gone fifteene dayes before his comming: Truce was concluded by him with the Soldan, many Places and Prisoners furrendred vnto him, which he there in his Letter particularly nameth. Further, that he and the Christians fortified Afcalon 50 Castle with two Walls and high Towers, to prevent the worst, if the Saracens should violate the Truce. Hauing received on Saint Georges day all the Prisoners, hee returned homewards and landed at Trapes in Sicilia, and hearing of the captimitie of certaine Bishops, he went to Rome. He caused also the dispersed bones, of those which had beene slaine in the dismall battell of Gato be buried. The Emperor received him honorably, having married his fifter Izabel, daughter of king lohn. He was welcommed into England by the King his brother, in Februarie, 1242. The French Nobilitie much honored him as their Patron, for deliuerie of their priloners. The Pilgrimes departing after Earle Richard, the Templars enuying, scoffed and derided his acts, and brake the Truce which he had made, which the Hospitalars observed, whom therefore the Templars besieged in Achon, chasing also the Dutch Knights, turning the great Revenues 2- 60 gainit Christians, which were given against Saracens. This diffention continued betwixt them

with great scandall. It hapned that the Tartarian Deluge, haung then ouer-flowed the Easterne

World, and ouer-whelmed Perfia, the Chorofmines by them expelled and forced to shift, were

entertayned by the Soldan of Babylon , and promifed , if they could drive out the Christians,

Templare

CHAP.4. S.2. H. Land taken by Chorolimines. Kings of Eng. and France. 1227

that they should possesse their Countrey. Whose multitudes so terrified the Christians, that they consulted to remove all the Inhabitants of Ierusalem to loppe, and began in the night to performe it. The Corologines entring, found certayne Banners, which they erecting, fome Christians cal- chaofinness led backe their fellowes, as if some notable triumph had hapned to the Christians, which returned either into the Citie or Suburbs, where the enemie prefently affaulting them flue feuen thoufand. The yong Men and Maydens they made flaues. They entred the Holy Citie, and flue the Isrufalem taold and feeble persons (which had not gone forth, but fled to the Sepulchre for Sanctuarie) and ken. Numes. The Christian Souldierie sought to reuenge it, fighting with them a bloodie battell Bloudie till night, losing innumerable, yet killing many more. On Saint Lutes day, with the generall slughers. 10 power of the Holy Land affembled to the Patriarke, they fought against them, now strengthned with new supplyes from the Soldan, where the best was, that they sold their lines at a deare and bloudie rate, more perifining of the Infidels, but the Christians lofing almost all. The Master

of the Templars, and the Malter of the Hospitalars and Durch knights fell, and but eighteene Templars and fixteene Hospitalars escaped. The number of the slaine was inestimable on both fides. The whole Land put on irrecoverable confusion. And although Pope Innocent, at the Councell of Lions, feemed zealous of this quartell, vet

that other quarrell to the Emperour more possessed him; and the Councell withstood him to his face, taking authoritie to appoint Collectors for that Subfidie, whereof the Roman Court had beene fo often, fo fraudulent a Disburfer. The French King lately ficke, had vowed a Holy King Longs his 20 Land voyage, if he recoursed, whom almost all the Nobilitie followed. But the Pope profecu-vow. ting the Emperor, and causing a new to be chosen, little succour could be sent them, so that many despayring, became Apostata's. The Soldan himselfe detested, and openly protested against the Templars and the Pope. The Bishop of Worceiter, William & Longa Spata, and many No. W. de Longa bles of England, in imitation of the French, tooke the Crosse. This William imitated Earle Ri- Stata, and may chard, who coveranting with the Pope got great treatures, by dispensing with that Holy gums. Land vow, defired the Pope to grant him fauour in that kind, which hee did, cutting a large thong of anothers hide. The Earle gathered infinite fummes by the Popes grant, taking of one Archdeacon fixe hundred pounds, and William got aboue one thouland markes. King Henrie with Relikes, the great denotion carried fome of the bloud, fent him from the Holy Land in a Crystall veffell, beft Holy Land 30 pretended to be that of Christ, from Paules to Westminster.

Anno 1248, the Earle of Leifter tooke the Croffe to expiate his finne, in marriage of her Earle of Leifter which had vowed chaftitie. His wife and many Nobles and Knights, followed the example, crosed, The French King began his journey, first feeking in vaipege reconcile the Pope to the Emperour. Hee tooke ship and left many behind, which returned and were dispensed with by the Pope then at Lions, giving him their provisions, and emptying their puries. William Longipate followed with two hundred Horle-men, whom the French King kindly entertayned, and befought the French to lav afide their wonted enuie to the English.

Anno 1250. King Henrie tooke the Croffe of the Archbishop, and the Archbishop himselfe, Henry the third the Kings brother William de Valentia, and many Courtiers; the Abbot of Burie, and many of takes the the followed: fome being of opinion, that the King did this but for a colour to get money. Fine bundred Knights, and innumerable croffed people met at Bermundfer (hauing fold or morgaged their Lands and Goods, and involved themselves in voluries for the Holy Land businesse) to confult of their vowed voyage, intending to to ferue the King of Heauen, howfocuer their earthly King flood affected. Which to preuent, he procured the Popes Letter by money to sufpend their iourney till himfelfe went. The French belieged, and were belieged at Damiata by the Soldan. and Scarfitie, where many perished by Famine and Sword, and many ran to the Enemie and became Apolitates. The French allo were enuious to the English and William Longists, ha ing ta-English acts. ken fogtunately a rich Carauan with Camels, Mules, Asses, laden with Silkes, Spices, Gold and Silver, and other riches and provisions, flaying and captiving the men; the French quarrelled 50 herear, and tooke his purchase from him , the Earle of Arteis the Kings brother being herein chiefe, which the French King not daring to remedie, hee left him and went to Achien. The

French tooke Damiata, and the Soldan offered all the Holy Land and great treasures for the re- Damias taken flitution. But they chose rather to remove towards Caire, and the Earle of Arreis proudly obiecting to the Templars their pride, and calling W. Long (par (then returned) sayled cowardly Englift, laying, that the Armie would doe well if it were cleanfed of tayles and tayled (this lice spake vpon occasion of wife counfell given him by the former.) William answered, We Shall be this day, where I beleeve, you will not come neere my Horfes tayle : which also happed, the Eatle being drowned in flight, and William brauely dying in fight, standing to it when he had no legs to stand on W. Langflats (they being cut off) to a miracle of refolution, and commending his valiant foule to the Heauens, having first tent many Saraeess to Hell. This was the issue of the others daring temeritie

and pride. Of all the Armie present, two Templars onely, one Hospitalar, and a base person escaped. The King was behind with the rest of the Armie, who made another as vnfortunate a battell, in which himselfe was taken, his Armie almost all slaine or taken. The Soldan laboured that none should carrie this newes to Damata, which yet was done by Alexander Giffard, an Al. Giffard.

English man, having received five wounds in the attempt. But Damiata was delivered in exnaminia given change of the King : the Soldan commanding the Christians to bee beheaded which flaved be hind, and their Nanie to be burned.

Soone after, the King of Caffile, tooke the Croffe, having conquered thirteene dayes journey voon the Saracens, thinking it better to get the Holy Land from them then any other, But the rapines and spoiles which the poorer suffayned from the great men, the Roman Church permitting, yeateaching, as often as they would goe to the Holy Land in pilgrimage, our Authour much lamenteth. And for the extortions of France, the French King faith, heehy permission of the Roman Church , gathered a third yeeres tenth of the Clergie , on condition that the Pope, to maintayne his warres against Fredericke, might gather as much more. The Io King would not after permit this, though his owne were gathered by Papall Ministers, that the Pope might hereby learne to how much his share would arise. The Popes Exactor met by

Mill-Rone

chance on the way a poore Prieft, having a piece of bread given him for sprinkling of holy wa-Base exaction, ter, whom he asked what his Liuing might be worth by the yeere. The Priest (ignorant of Romil fleights) answered, some twentie shillings. Two shillings then, said the other, must thou give the King, holding him, that begged his living from doore to doore by the throat, and forcing him to fell his Bookes to pay him. The King borrowed money of the Templars and Hospirulars, sent two of his brethren into France, one being flaine, another vanquished, himselfe resoluing neuer to returne, and living at Achon inglorious. Those two brethren with the Duke Pope accured, of Burgundie, went to the Pope, laying the blame on him, and if hee would not agree with 20

Guide halfe

Fredericke (which alone could remedie these mischiefes) he should no longer abide at Lions, but all France would arife against him. Fredericke by his death, instantly following, cut off those hopes. The Quarrels dyed not, but continued hereditarie to the Pope and his Sonnes, Guida, King Herries brother, came out of the Holy Land beggerly miferable, borrowing horses of the Abbot of Fenersham, which he neither repayed according to his promise, nor acknowledged so much as with thankes, but scoffed at his messengers sent to demand them.

The French Kings Mother and Brethren fent much money to him by Sea, which with the ship was drowned he bearing this as his other difafters with admirable patience heeing herein effec-Denillion fra. med another lob. At the same time a certain Hungarian Apostara, promised his Mafter the Soldan tagem of a of Babylon, to prefent him infinite fore of Christian flanes, and make the conquest of Christen- 20 suggling knaue dome case. He therefore having the French, Dutch, and Latine Tongues goeth about preaching, occisioned by faying, that he had in charge from the blessed Virgin to call Shepherds and Herdmen, to whole the specificion simplicitie and humilitie it was granted from Heauen to conquer the Holy Land. For the militarie pride of the Frankes was not acceptable. Hee wanne faith by the indiffoluble closeneffeot his hand, in which he faid was Our Ladies Charter. Shepherds and Herdmen without acquainting their Matters and Parents, and without care of provisions followed him, ving his Inchant-A former kna. ment wherewith he had to farre preuailed fortie yeares before (hee was now threefcore yeares old) gathering an infinite number of children together, which followed him finging, whom neither Prayers, Threats, Flatterie, Gifts of Parents or Friends, nor Lockes and Walls could detaine from him. (A certaine luggling Fryer Preacher, Robert Bugre, is faid to have infatuated in 49 like manner innumerable and deliuered them to the fire.) But thefe were now fauoured, by the Queene Mother, hoping that they would doe feruice for her Sonne, infomnch, that aboue one hundred thouland of this Rabble were affembled, and carryed a Lambe for their Colours. After this, Theeues, Exiles, Runna-wayes, Excommunicates, and like raskalitie reforted to them with divers Weapons, and now they did openly things volawfull in Politic and Religion, preaching who re they came, and at Orleance breaking into open hostility, at Burdeaux, Paris, and other places, which occasioned their dispersion and confusion. One of their Preachers came into Eng-

Anno 1251, the Pope caused solemne preaching in Brabant, Flanders, and the Confines of France, that who focuer would warre against Conrade the Sonne of Fredericke the Emperour, hee should have greater Indulgence then for warring in the Holy Land. For if any should be figured (with the Croffe) against Courade, both he so marked, and his Father and Mother should receive guint Christie remission of all their finnes : which, the French King sending for reliefe, caused much murmuansthen Turk, ring of the French, imputing to the Popes vnchriftian Warres against Christians to enlarge his owne Dominions, this neglect of the French King and Holy Land. And the Queene Mother caused the Lands of all which had taken the Croffe to be feiled, and that if they would warre for the Pope, he should maintaine them.

Lord, and was here cut in pieces, his carkaffe being left for the Fowles, having before caused much

diforder. Many of them went over to the Holy Land.

charitie.

Greater In-

Anno 1252, the King caused the Londoners to be affembled to Westminster, to the preaching 60 Croffes croffed of the Croffe, which yet in regard of the Romash extorsions few received. Some Courtiers did, by Popith Ex- whom the King magnified, calling the other base Mercinaries. His reason was; hee had now obtayned of the Pope three yeares tenths of Clergie and Laitie to that purpole, which would amount to about fixe hundred thousand pounds. He was thought to have taken the Crofic only for this mony-purpole, which Vow hee then sware to performe both on his breft like a Priest, &

after on the Gospels kissing the Booke like a Lay-man, none being hereby more certaine of his purpole. Truce was concluded betwirt ti e French King and Soluan. But foone after, Anno Clergie and 1253, came newes of milerable spoiles there made by the Saracens, Achon beeing only left free Lay Oath, from their futie, Anno 1254, the French King returned home. Anno 1255 Conrade being dead; the Croile was preached against Memired King of Apulia, Sonne of the Emperour Fredericke. In which case the Pope intageled the King of England, guing that Kingdome to his Sonne Edmund, to the great trouble of this Realme.

und, to the great trouble of this Realme.

Anno 1259, the Templars and Hospitalars at Achon fell to civill Warres, well neere to the Kingdome by ruine of both Orders, and of the poore remaynders in those parts. Anno 1260, King Henrie ha- Croffes when to using fwome to the prouisions of Oxford, repented of his Oath, and obtayned of the Pope Ab- he wants crois Solution. Anno 1264. Pope Vrban gaue the Kingdome of Sieslia, to Charles the French Kings fer.

Brother, on condition to deprine Memfred thereof, whom Anno 1267, he flue in battell. other, on condition to deprine Membred thereof, whom Anno 1207, he had in Dattell.

Anno 1269. Saint Lewes lent to speake with Prince Edward of England, and invited him to Prince Edward. undertake with him a Pilorimage to the Holy Land, which he did, King Henrie permitting all Pilorims.

Anno 1271. Prince Edward, and his Brother Edmund; foure Earles; as many Barons, and many Gentlemen, went his vowed Pilgrimage. His Wife Elenor accompanied him, who at Achon was delivered of a Daughter, called loan of Acres. The French King came fafe to Tunis, where his Sonne first, and after himselfe dyed. The Armie was much endangered, but by meanes 20 of Charles King of Sicilia, was freed, and Tunia made tributarie to Sicilia. Prince Edward had followed Saint Lowis thither: and when King Charles hafted backe, Prince Edward iware, that Prince Edward if all his company should for fake him, yet he and Famine (his Horse-keeper) would hold on to A- and the Entife chon: and with the English he fet faile thither. But a Tempest overtooke the Sicilian at Sea, and at Tuni, when

drowned almost all his Armie and Treasure.

Anno 1272. Prince Edward at Abcon, was much respected by the Amira of Joppe, who writ often to him by a certaine Affifine. Who faining some secret businesse, the Prince caused all to depart the roome, and whiles he looked out of the Window, with a poyfoned Knife he received two wounds on the arme : The Prince pulled the Knife from him, and killed him with his owne flabbed with a flabbed with a weapon, but A all in the wrefting, wounded his owne hand. This grieued much the Amira, poisoned knife 30 being ignorant of the Affines deligne. With much difficultie the Prince was cured of his vene. King Edward

Thus farre we have followed our Author Matthew Paris to the death of King Hoorie, which returns and hapned, Anno 1272, and the death in manner of the Christian State in the Holy Land. Hee returned (which we adde out of Thomas Walfingham) 1274. having long in vaine expected the aids of Christians and Tartars at Achon, leaving Souldiers in his pay for defence of the Holy Land. He returned by Sicilya, and received kind entertainment of King Charles, and after of the Pope. His Turneament I omit: wherein the Earle Kabilanensis challenging him, laying hold on the Kings necke, and feeking to plucke him off his Horfe, was by the great strength of Edward rayfed from his owne Horle, and after a hot skirmish, forced to yeeld, that the name which had 40 in this Voyage wanne honour in Africa, encreated it in Afra, might receive further accomplish-

Anno 1292. Achon was taken by the Soldan, the Citizens having fent their vnferuiceable perions and relikes with their treasures before to Crorus. Great flaughter was committed. In the beginning of Edward the Second, the Templars were condemned, imprisoned, and some burned. The Hospitalars planted themselves at Rhodes , and continued till Soliman the Tarke disposs fied them : fince which their residence hath beene at Malia. The Dutch Knights conquered Pruffix. The Acts of the Tartars in the Holy Land you may learne in others. It is more then enough that I have fummed the Acts of almost two hundred yeares, with such expense of Christian Floud and treasure abroad and such convulsions and confusions of Religion and civille 50 Affaires at home as I know not to have beene effected by any one particular cause since the

World flood, the pretence being not the Monarchie of the World, but of a little Region, and that under colour of Religion. I honour the zeale and valorous refolution of our Progenitors, but I pittie the illusions and collusions which hapned to those Worthies by the Popes sleights. and the m. lice of the old Serpent, which a little to vnmaske, would to the fludious Reader perhaps be a recreation after thele fields of bloud. Some particulars whereof wee have out of Hificries of that Age delivered : but the full cannot bee delivered , as may appeare by this circumflance, that besides often, folemne, publike, Royall Expeditions , and the private occasionall Pilgrimages to the Holy Land continually; there was every yeare against Easter a generall passage Generale passage both for denous vifitation of the holy places and ferunces in thefe holy Warres : which fummes timmyenthe

60 being added to thefe, amount aboue conceit; especially, if wee adde the Crusadoes which from this Example awed and tamed Emperors, Kings, Princes, States, Peoples, repugnant to the Popes delignes, howfeeuer otherwite Catholike and Christian. All this bloud was of Christians, befides the Rivers and Seas of Ethnike, (yet humane) bloud hereby fied; of Turker, Legitians,

1220 Hurts to Christians by Holy Land War, Pilgrimage in old Rithme, LIB. VIII.

Persians, Chorosmines, Tartars, and so many other Asian and African Nations, not to mention the Chrilians, Armenians, Sprians, and all the subjects of the Easterne Empire in this Warre so much interelled, by it weakned, after it irrecouerable, and now Turkilb. But become to passe from one extreme coanother, and suddenly to direct the minds from such Martiall Actions and Passes. sions to so high studious contemplations, would rather be exchange of toyle then recreation exin the interim betwixt turbulent Acts on the Stage) I have prefented a Musical Pilgrime, whole in the interim het wise tembalent Acts on the Stage) have preferred a Mulcash lightness, whole del English Richman my perhapitally those for temest consession actives, function, would cathy, delolations; and sawbon the Minfired played, the head of the Lindama; gast Killings and bespre-pholish; for meading this, which tells the hely-water to farre, fought; and for deers bought in the labely Warre, who may have four the hand of the Lord not only cognide the from their was tie, but tellist where a hundred part the hand of the Lord not only cognide the from their wast, caled Mythering in the properties, which their myfit we're, one foring childled. The Anchor is ruknowned partitionally are properties, which their myfit we're, one foring childled. The Anchor is ruknowned partitionally and property we is likely to have been about two bundred years fine: Sir Rebers Correstricts Librarie bash youlded the Manuforipe, whence it was copied.

Here beginneth the way that is marked, and made wit Mount Toice from the Land of Engeland vistassens lamez in Galis, and from thennes to Rome, and from themme to ferufalem and fo againe into Engelond, and the namez of all the Citeez be their maie, and the maner of ber governanuce, and name of ber filner that they wfe be alle thefe wate.

And alfo of our Ladie S. Marie:
And alfo of our Ladie S. Marie:
And of all the Seimer of the Court of Henen,
I make this impulgant milde Secuen:
Whe have two wind I feels you telle,
And how the wais I dide dwelle. Ferft to Plummouth to feewent I, And tunder in the Trade of Bretany, There we refted daies too. Andthrugh the Race then did we go To Burdewez, to that faire Citee; And there was I daies thre. And fo from thennez to Bayon, For fothethat is a faire towne. And from thennez, to Petypont St. Ienouhe, The ferst toune of Naueton, sicurly: Vp in a bee bull hit is faire seite, And ther men schall make her tribett, For every pice of Gold trust me well, Thou Schalt Swere open the Enangele: And there lakkez ferft most thou have, And the lust thy Gold to fane. Wymmenez araie upon there bened, Like to Myterez they ben wheed: A raie Mantell they were upon, And foule wymmen mony con. Then to the Dale of Rounceuale hit is the waie, A derk paffage I der well faie: Witelez. there ben full necessary. For in that passage my mouthe was dry. Be youd the bull upon bee, Is a Mynster of our Ladee:

We the Name of the Fader that of Chancome's of the Order of S A Aufffel faces in true,

And of the United and black of Sone,

And of the Holy Coft, the biffer the Care of the Reme of Nameson to A faire Cite and a targe, Thereto comments bothe Bote and Barge. And from thennez, to the towns of Keer, Is xxx miles long, and bongery beer . Then to the Gruon in Spayne, That is the last towne certaine. Of the Realme of Nameron : And then into Spayne feare je fibon, lakkez ben ther of little prife: For there beginneth the Maruedifez. Alle is braffe filner is none In, And the Grote of Spayne is silver fyn. iii. score for a Coron schalthou haue, Of the Maruedise of master and knaue. Then from the Grune to Sent Dominico Thou bast tern long miles for to go. And from themez to Grunneole. Much pyn men ther theole. His ston upon a hall on byy. And lewezben Lordez of all that contray. Ther most thou tribute make or thou passe, For alle thi gud bothe mor and lasse: Of that tribute they be sull sayn; For thei byeer bit of the King of Spayn. From thennez thou most to Pount Roie, That passage ther hit kepeth a boie : A gudcontraie, and enell wyn, And witelez ther ben bothe gud, and fyn. And fo farther to Pount Paradife. As that passage thou most paie threez. And so forthe from thennez to Borkez that cites, A faire toune and a muche sicurly. HonHONDINS his Man of Spaine,



And from thermez to Hospitali de Reyne. Topasse that River thou schalt be farne. And fo forthe to Sent Antony : And ouer ther gothe the Marnedy. From thennezeuen to the cite of Lyones: Betweene hem ben mony praty tonnez. In that cite ther schalt thou paie Passage or thon goe awaie. By younde the Brugge on thi right hand,

To Sent Saluator the wate to liggand, 50 Where y . pottez may thou fe, In the wiche water turnet to vyn at Architriclyne. And mony other reliquez ben there. But the mountez ben wonder be, o fere. Wymmen in that Land vie no vullen, But ale in lether be thei wounden : And her benedez wonderly ben truft. Standing in her forhemed as a crest,

In rowld clouthez lappet alle be forn 60 Like to the prikke of a N'unicorn. And men have doubelettez full (chert, Bare legget and light to fters. A Knight, a boie wit out hofe, Afgager alfo thei feball not lofe.

A Knaue bere by, dartez in his hand; And so thei schull go walkand: Here wyn is theke as any blade. And that wall make men wode. Bedding ther is nothing faire. Mony pilgrimez bit doth apaire : Tabelez vie thei non of to ete, But on the bare flore they make ber fete: And so they sitte alle infere, As in Irlande the fame manere. Then from the citee of Lyonz fo fre, On thi lyft hand the wase schalt thou fee, At that Brugge that I of have fasde, Ouer an heethe to Aftergo is layde. That is a cite and faire is fette, There the gret mountaines togeder be mette: And fo for the to Villa Frank Schalt thon go, A faire contraye, and vinez alfo. The Raspis groeth ther in thi waie. Tf thec lust thou maie afaie. From thennez a deepe dale (chalt thou bane, Vo onto the Monut of Faue : He buller, and of the Spanyle fee a cry: That noyfe is full greuofe pardy. Kkkkkk 3

And to forth even to Sent lamez, Alle wase Pylerimez (uche bauez, And then to Mount noitre Daine, The Prior ther hath muche schame. And then fo forthe to Luaon. Other Villagez ther be mony oon. And then to Sent Tamez that holy place; There maie thou fynde full fatre grace. On this fide the towne milez too, By a Chappell Schalt thou go: Vpon a bull bu ftondez on bee. Wher Sent lamez ferst Chalt thon fee, A Mount, loie mony stonez there ate, And in pilerez of fton of gret aftate: A C.dziez of pardon there may thou have At that Chappell, and thou bit crane. Then at Sent lamez wit in that place, To telle the pardon bit askes space. Hit is a over Mynstor, large, and long, Of the holdbegging hit is strong: Glasen windowez there are but few, Wit in the Mynftor in nowther rew : Vin. Cardinalez chosen there be, For Confessourez, that is verry. Andbuse plaine power fully to bere, And penanuce to yet in alle manerd: And to affoyle the of alle thing, That is the Popys graunting. Now of the pardon telle I shall, In what place thou maie it calle : At the Northe fide of that place. There is pardon and muche faire grace. In the Chappell on the rist hand among the queft, iij. C. daiez of perdon thou hauest. Forthermore at the hec antere A 11, daiez alle time in the vere. Vnder the hee autere lube Sent lame. The table in the Quere telleth the name : At alle the auterez fo by and by, al. daiez to pardon is grantes to the. At the in derrez benethe the Quere, Is plenor remission ones in the yere: And at alle tymes xl. daies, The table written fo hit faies. On the Southe fide behinde the Derre, A grete of flon fyndest thou there : At nine of the Bele the Derre up is fett, And a Bele rongen a gret fet. Ther men maie fe of Sent Jame the leffe, His heed in Gold araica freche: To the wiche Pilgrymez her offering make, For the more Sent Iamez fake. And there by a namer there is, Wher Sent lame, dud Mafe yuis, A iij . daies ther maie thou have, Of remission, and thou but craue. More paraon is nonzt in that place That in that table mande hafe. Then from thennez to Patr vum. Wher Sent Laudet the ferst toun iti. x.v. myles longs from Sent Jamez, Coron ne vin non men there havez. And then to Pont Wederez went I, L. long miles; that waie is dry :

Iewes and Sarafynez ben there mony on. A plentifull contrave as man maie gon. From thennes a vale faire, and clere. ... Where wynez groethe of all manere. Unto the tonn of Corpe Sante, Alle manere fruyte at man maie haunt. The See cometh the ber at alle tide. And fisth, and coron on alle fide. Wrmmen be araied like to men. Men maje nouze well nouther ben : Ia There thei life vn gudely, Namely men of holy Churche pardy, And Bugell flesch isthere full rine; In alle that contrate hit is ther lif : And Corpe Sant is the last toun. In Galise, and stonderb the See voon. Then into Portyngale, and I faire Ouer the Riner wit gret care : For ther the Spaynyolez wall ye scherche, Whether any Goldhe in thiperche. Then thi Maruedile have no takke, The Riol z of Por vngale maken the lakke. When thou comest to Valence toun, The money of that Land thou schalt see son, And then fo forth to Priutia. And frothennez to Ponylyme febalt thou ea. And then forthe to Porta hanen, A faire Cite, and that is the namen : Oline treez ther Schalt thon frade. Alle the Lond full, that is the kind: And figez felle wit out faile. And alle maner plente of vitaile. The arate of symmen is wonder so fee, How thei be renelet about the knee. Of fre sch fifth thei have gret store, At every place more, and more. Then schalt thou passe to Colymbria, And to Towrez a faire Cite also. And in for the to Sent Helena on hee, That is a well faire Citee. And from thennez to Frankeuile, And fo to Lufchebon is xiii.mile. A faire Cite, and a large, Thether cometh schippez, bulkez, and barge: That is a faire Vninersite, And of vitellez gret plente. And in Luichenon verement Lithe the holy Martur Sent Vincent. Vi, mile ouer the water most thou gon, To a toun that hight Kone, 50 And from Kone to Palmele, A whilde waie bit is some dele. And to Sent Owell, that is the waie. To Landauere and Kauerell in the claie. And to Mount Maior a Caftell fre. The chiefe of Portyngale st maie be. A while contraie full of Lyngge. Wit the I rede thou brede brynge. From thennez to R.olez most thou faire, To Effermore, that Land is bare. 60 And fo to Borbe a lite? Vilage, And then to Elnez that gud stage : The last roun of Portyngale to the See, That departet Portyngale, and Castellfree,

The lewez ben Lords of that town,
And few christen were enter ceme.
Nows in Ocales i fichisher fare,
Our the River, the land is hore,
Fall of here had honger all,
And varifying Courrowsee, thereto,
And varifying Courrowsee, thereto,
An Baldelino we fichall begin to refer Call ancz wit in,
And from themes to Talevere.

CHAP.5. Relations and Observations of Spaine in old English Rime.

10 At Luggebon that (see is a faire riner. To Parix z then might bon draw, And for the Merch, that is the law. Tower I thinker for the restrict and more. At Sont Petro her witteller and homes. Martyn Santio a wholde wate is there, Forglez, and whilde he plez in free: Beret, and It sulfer, other hefica mony on, and parelex wate his is a gon. Then to Revne (a most thouse a.)

20 Victo the Cite of Mater Calitea.
And there to Kinamare time faire place,
Of catet there is please, and best to grace:
The berdee lyn in the felde in Tentez of clothe;
Te come to town the is thomat lothe.
From that Cite miles xxxx, and to,
Te Sent Mare & Kadal, you may thom go;
A Pilgrimate bothe faire, and fie,
That Manyllow is of our Ladae;
Of the Cretar of Sout Errome the Dollor,

A marucles fight is in that Tow.
In wildering lie has lee if stee,
In wildering lie has lee if stee,
In wild more one one, vin, ne brede:
By N. Mid. on care y fide,
For N. Mid. of the stee of the steel
I han from that place to Waldepalatia,
And after that even to Adidera:
And after that even to Adidera
And then to Elecampanatio,
From themse. to Chyntana Affe.
And then to the Cite of Salanca,

of To Lethic, l.c., and a Maggaela.

Alle the spicery that I man can mens,
In that lead his maie be spine:

For Saralyine, and Marez be ther duellant,
And aue in how spicery their be workent.

The Morez ben blade, as any pikke,
And so all smess man hand, and the spine spine of the spine spine.

Belliange shat Cite, full bote is hee,
That known or coude in that Gutte.

Walekamle is a town full faire,
In Citifalt the spite is the grant.

50 And from thomacs, to Pectole,
To the (it of Karnelane before the nofe:
Ours a name of the Se mill from tee,
TO Cityle ground, that is fo fre.
A Parad fo his to the bold.
The fruster, vynee, and flycery, the I have tolde,
Fyro the I famen alse marer Marchandife,
And Karlee, and Schopper, at all deadif.
Do be to the freme so main thomagon.

63 The Town of Sent Lucar de Baramedez to,
From a buill but stonderlt full bee,
Frost ne Snow there mute non be:
Europa a but slaved men calle but:
The blesset contract that ener muss set.

About hit Ylez mony oon, I Chall tham reken enerichon : For I have be ther, and farn them alle. I (chall you telle, how thei hem calle, Porta hit is the ferst place, And Rota a nother Hauen, to the See it gafe: And Serethieza Cite full faire, But the Sarafanez hit don apaire. That is the unterest Cite of that Lond Toward the Saralanez, I understand. And Cordua on that other fide. Wit Sarafanez muche foro shei abide. Wit in the Se a Cite of fight, The which in that land Calys hight, From the lond milez fife. There the Karekkez in Hauen do drine. XX. daiez we rested the Yles upon, Wit Karekkez to Jenne to bane oun : And for enemyez be the Se were fo ftrong. Therfore we tornet againe be lond. Vnto the Reme of Arogony: And mony maruelez be the waie faie we. Ferst to Sent Marie de Serrat. Mony a Pilgryme is wery ther ate. A defert place, and full of waaste, And mony man his staf ther hathcast. From thennez thou schalt to Monshow, A faire Cite, and riche I trow. Hullez and vailaiez mom (chelt thou finde) The fight ther of them maketh men blynde. Litell coron, but craggest and flones, And that maketh Pylgrymes, wery boness. Faire wymmen and of febull araie, The Caltelanez ar better I dar well faie : For in Castell thei be araied comely. Wit faire grownez full honestly: And in Aragony thei araied be. In raie cotez full rincomely. A weddyng I faie in Monthow town, Alle the men and the wymmen then daunfyng in isi C. on a davnce I dar well (aie. From morn to even all the daie. Ther is but litell mete and drinke. Be cause men lust not for to swynke. Then to Leide the Vniner lite. There is a pleuntuofe (ontre. Tweez barnest ther thei have. And figez full gret, fo God me faue. Thei be like to a gret Wardon, Blew, and faat, as any Bacon. Ther groeth the Vyn men calle Tribian. Garnadez ar and Oryngez mony an: Unto the come to Sent Pere de Mont. Alle that waie the maie thann baunt. And then to Sent Mari de Mount Serrat, Pylerymez that Mount thei bate. Hu is full hee to clymbe unto. And the wate is straite to and fro. V. Croffes of fton Chalt thou have, The v. loiez of our Lady ther in be grave. A faire Mynftor upon bee.

That Chirche is of our Ladre.

Mony miraclez, ther han ben wroght,

And mony Reliquez theder ben brought.

.

xv.milez vp schalt thou ascende. And as much donward er thou descende. Taward the Cite of Barillon, For foth: that is a faire town : The chef Cite of alle that land, And the gret See is ther even at hond. From thennez thou (chalt to Perpynian, And after to Salio most thon gan. e. And fo forthe then to Narbon. And for themes, to 1 Our sent Derill The last place of Augusty Justs. Mount Pylercz that is a Vinnerfine. A face place bit is sently. And so themes for to Callell Ryte, A schrewed town at my denises.

The Dolphyn is Lord of alle the land. And bath them for get to bis bond. And from themnes to Auinion, Is xy, largez from Loun to town.

And begymneth Protince full fre, At the brugge of Aumion Ftelle the. Then of Prouince that fare Comray, Some what thereof I will the fait. In Dominion in that fonding, In Dominion in that flooding.
The Pape has fave doubling:
A role Palys, and nell fielding:
A role Palys, and nell fielding.
A role Palys, and nell fielding.
A mary Controlling of place.
A mary Controlling of place.
A mary Controlling of place.
The role of the post are:
From the Primer field volution man I.
Towns that Palys of the place of th In the frere Prochamez this is certagn. A faire Contraie bill is, and a clere, A jare Convene we so manere.

And pepull of drum so manere.

At weddyng in shat Contre,

Alle the folke of the town there schull be o

And darmes alle she long date, Tong and olde, and make them gais. In that Centrate when on is dede, The heire weperex for urn and brede: To cryent, and make gret faire, And Trade ber benedez, and make bem bare: And foratt ther facez, and make them blede, And so ther walke thrugh alle the strete. And at the Messe at the sacrynge, Then make thei a foule bowtynee. And gon to the grave, and cryon by, Out barrow why woldest thou dye: Men wolde wene at thei were wode. For thei make so foule a lode, Then from that Contraie to Sent Antonce, Ben xxx. longe laigez full sicurlye. A Mynstor there is, a faire Abbay, And there is his harom I dar well faie; In Gold and Silver arased full well. And there is of his owne mantell. To faire well in that Contraie bit is nede. But the Silver of that Contraie is alle the spede. The grote of Prounce is ther alle mailter. The Kingez armez of Prouince ba doth ber. Silver bit is, boothe gud, and fyne, Like to the armez of Godefrey Boleyne.

xviy, for a coron schalt thou have. That knoweth well bothe maifter, and kname. From thennez thou schalt to Port Dawaton. And after that, then to Sent Lyon. Then Schalt thon passe a feble waie. Into the Mountanez be my faie. Vnto the Cite of Mount Riall. Hit is concret with (new at alle. A longe wate (chalt thou find, To the Mount of Cynerz er thou winde. Ferst to the toun of Sent Johan. A whilde wase ther moft thou gan. Alle is forwall tymes of the yere, Wit ze thi withles I rede the bere. When thou comest te that Mountain Aduise the well forth or thou gan.
For and the world olow, trust me well,
Thou schalt have payne on that buil:
Or thou school to that other side, For the Mount is bee, large, and vide. iii. Mountez ther be, that I know well, 20 And wich thei be I fchall the tell : That be in the waie to Rome. And mony Pulgrymez that watez come. The neft Mount is Mount Bernard, That waie is bothe long and bard. By Sawoie the be maie is right, That is a mery Countrie, and a light: And the Dukez moneh is braffe, Roundez, and mittez, they be laffe. A nother Mount there is, the name Godarde, And that is better then Mount Bernard : For there men paffe the Lake Luterne. Taward Mount Godard, the waie to lerne : And fo to Belion, and to Millavne. And there ben Tuskennez, that money is tann. A nother Mount meste comyn waie, Is thrueb Almayn, as I you fair . The Marchandez waie, men calle hit fo, Out of Engeland to Rome who that wall go. Now then to Cynecz I wall torne agayn, And tell furthe my immer that I bane tayn. To Hespitale Sent Antony. And fo to Pynnerole that Cite fre. Then comen the Q vaterynez on place. For the Duke of Millayn gounernance there base. And fo forthe to Mount Rigall, Then groeth wyr. tribian in that vale. And from thennez to Sauoune. And fo to tenne that reall toun. 50 By the River of Linne Schalt thou paffe, To Mount Ros, and Mount Vernage apafe. There greet the Vernage apon bee, And the El Hard is ther gud money. Then febalt thou go to Gra, And to Salazan that Cite alla. From themnez to Pount Sent Petre, And so to the town of Luke, wit gud chere. And then to Vice that faire Cite, And to to Florence a noubull Vninerfite. Ther go: be O raterevn, and the the grote, And faire wymmen of mery note. From thennez to Sene, that Silver is oud, And there to chaunge hit the be hoved.

And

And themne to Cattell Sont Laurence:
And for Sowerez m I ence.
From themne: To Cattell Swianne,
And for Rome that bleffer town.
The Duke of Troye that Eneas hight
To Rome the come wit oret most.

HONDIVS bis Map of Italy. -



Of bim come Remus, and Romulus, After bem callet is Roile. Hethen his was, and chriften numbés, 50 Tile Peter and Paule bad his brought. In Rome was fower your seven, CCC, Parith's Chirchee, and feuene: Chaplete there ben more affe, 9 C. and fife ther too, now you for, 4 down the walks, multiplet, in you and x1, 2nd I owner a M. and fixer, in you and xx, greet pates, there be, Principale over all eather in that Cite: And in Transicho there ben three, 6 dut there is Loone full feuerly.

And fother forthe to Sent Clerico,

After that next to Aquapedant,

And after to Rede Cofer Chalt thou go.

And right to Bolfen left thon be schent.

From themez even to Mount Flaftkon.

And to to Vitcherbe that faire town.

And Towers a M. and firty,

iii and xx. greit pates ther be,

Francipale own all either mitst Cite:

And in Translesson that Cite:

And in Translesson there be,

Co dad there in Leone, Fall fixed,

These pates I from Rome to Verys seem

After the felt of our Lady Anunciation.

And doubt there for my pajage

To the boly Land I toke my owner.

De ciuitate Romana recessi in comitiua Domini Magistri Walteri Meddeford, viq: Venice, et fic ad Terram Sanctam cum Domino Priore Sancti Iobannis London, &c. Then from Venis I schall you telle, Wiche is the waie be water, and bull. From Rome to Tode is lx. mile, Vpon the Riner of Tibere hit last a while. And from thennez to the Vnmerfite of Perule Is even xl. long mile waiez. And thenne to Ailile, Sent Fraunceis is there, Is x. mile in a value faire, and ciere. And to Remule the Vniner fite of bonor A man maie see mony a faire tour. Thenn to the See passe be schall, Unto Venis men do calle. Ferst to Frannkeleyn be the River fre The most to Venis the Cite.

Offree

A Land that is nex St Sklaueny.

After that a Cite we lase.

That men callen Duicenv.

And from thennez a litell flace,

Is a Castell that bight Durace:

And no mo in alle that Lande.

10 We faie a Cite bight Valona.

Fully vis C. mile maiez.

By Abony coost, as we dad ga,

Test founde we mony Tlez moo,

The next after hight Sastino :

That is from the Cite of Venece,

From that The on our right band.

Is but faxty miles and ten.

The hened of the Golfe men calle bit,

Wher Schippez have meny a foule fitt.

Tothe Reme of Pyele I understand,

20 A Stif Streme there rennez : thenne,

From Venece what so thou come.

Is over more Mare Adriaticum.

That is to face in our Enolife.

And a Minster of our Lady,

From that The of Saifyneo.

On our lift hand as we dad go,

A C. milez thennez full trew,

We founde the Tle of Curfew :

A faire Cite as I you telle, And a Castell that bight Aungelle.

And from the Cite of Curfew,
Vinto the Ile of Paxlew,
xxx. long miles hit is hold,
40 And the Venyceanez have hit in bolde.

Bothe thefe Tlez , and other moo,

VVe failet forthe bothe erly and late.

The Castell ner standesb in that stage,

The Blake Caftell in our langage.

Then failet we forthe a gret tide,

50 And founde a N'yle on our lift fide,

And a Castell of folke full alfa.

That is a Castell of Grekez right.

And founde a nother plensmofe lle,

That hight Stryualle in that Land.

There ben haly Mankez duellande,

And nother woman , foule , ne best,

And thei wull agazn there lest,

And a N'yle that Gavest bight,

Then failet we forthe a while.

In a Mynster of our Lady.

60 And there thei lif full borrestly:

Nis non femenyn gender,

Thes maie not there endure.

Thet men calle Cetolonia :

To faile from Paxiew nut Bot or Baree.

Forthe on our waie we well goo.

A C. mile bit is long and large,

Tille the He of Dawgate:

The grete See of Adrian I wis.

In that The a Castell dothe stounde,

That the Grekes hald in her hande :

Full well ferned, and full bonestly.

The Grikkez See begynnez there,

Then face we a Toun broks Tyuciye,

The wiche the Venyceanez bald in hande.

Offices the finde be the Riner mony oon, Curdula is the ferst of bem ichen. xxv. mile hit u betwene, By that ffreme that runneth Chene. And to to Chalve thou most go, That is xxv. long milez alfo. From Cholve to Paleilyne ha is, v. lone milez no thing leffe. And them to Male moke went 1. The wich xui; . long milez by. And thenn to Venis x. tong mile bit is, Alle thic wate I went I wis. And Venis flondes alle in the See, And Ylez about bit gret plente:
And Lordez thei ben of diverfez placez. To sele her Lordschip I have no frace: But I dar but fo difers. Hit is a riche Toun of ficery : And of alle other marchandise also, And right well vielet ther to. And namely of freshe water fifebe, Pike , Eile , Tenche , Carpe , I wis : And of other vitelez mony oon , And namely of freche Storgon. Gud chepe, and gret plente, And femely Burgez on to See. I schipped me ther in a Galias, That lase fast by Sent Nicolas. A n' Abbay in that Hauen mouthe, . From Venis Easte, and somewhat Southe: By estimation as I conthe see, Too milez from that Cite. How that we went , and on what vifez, We were forward mer then thriez. At the last, as Goddez wille vafe, Thei analet the faile, and toke the rafe. The ferst Land at we come too, Was a N'yle land, thei faid soo. Wicho at men calle litera. And ther in our schippe gon gan: Hem to refresche thet were full fayn, Be cause the wether was us agayn. What Tounez, and Castellez we sailet by. Of alle that Land telle schall I. Pyrane a Castell, Vmago a Cite, Cite Noue a nother is bee. Parenter also a nother Cite hit is, Vithall a Chapell, and a n' Abbay I wis. Ryne a Cite som what full strong, And Pole a nother, large, and long. Mony mo wit in that Land there be. And Venycyanez Lordez of alle ficurle, Ther ben other mony be name, But these we saw, and by them same. Then failet we forthe full sicurit, Be the parties of Sclauony. Ther found we a N'yle that hight Nedo And a nother that hight Kerfo. And a N'ile that Saring bight, There is a n' Abbay of Monkes right. A C. mile from thennez failet we there. And fere the Yle of Geagere : Wiche is a N'yle large, and longe.

And a Castell faire , and stronge.

The Castell of Sent Michell bit is called. A strong place, and well walled. After that , as we duden go, We faie a Town hight Beneto. And on our lift band as we dude faile. Was the Cite Tregora : in a N'vie. And the Cite of Spolita, ther benthre, Alle hard land, and faire to fee. And Lex. milez ener ther fro. On our right band as we dud go, Ayan that for saide faire Cite, We saie a thing like tille a Tre. Iche man hadde wonder what hit was Some faid a Mast ; some faide bit Nale. We askede the Schippemen enerichon, And thei faid , bit was a fton. That zought vs wonder for to be. Suche a fton flande in the See. But we faw hit fowell wit eyez. That we west well but was no lyee. 20 Then we asked what his hight. Micella they faid full right. Then failet we forthe in our waie, By the cost of Sclauony , I yow fair. A N'yle there for fothe we founde, That bight Liffa, on our lift hande.
Too Abbaiez in that The was, Of Sent George, and Sent Nicolas. Then failet we forthe on our lornaie. And on our left hand a N'yle we faie: And of a Chirche the olde walles, The Mount of Sent Andrew men hit calles.

A litell ther fro as we duden ga, We faie a N'yle bight Boica. Then failet we forthe a gud while, On our lift hand we fair a N'yle, That men callen there Letena. Full of pepull, and of vitelez alfa.

And is. Castelles for south there bee, Of frute and of wyne grete plente. 40 Another Tle vettewe came by. And alle in the partiez of Schaueny: Curfula men calle bit in that Land. Wit pepull fele, too Castelez strang. A baren Yle then after we founde, And non frute on alle that Lond : Caffa men calle bit , thei faie sh fe, And x, mile about hit is. On our Lift band as me failet thefe. We faie a N'yle bight Pelagus : 50 There we fe in our Romence. Where Sent George dude his penaunce. On our lift hand after that. We founde a N'yle bothe faire, and faat: That we callen there Augusta, And after a nother, that hight Milida-And after that a Toune well walled, That Cite Drogonie men called. Faire we faie bit . and failet ther by. ρQ The chef Cite of alle Sclaueny. And from thennez lx. milez full long. Is a Cite faire, and strong: The wiche Cattera called bit is. And there beginnez Abonnez, A Land

30 And at the next Lond after, as we can faire.

A wounde miracle there was wrooks. When S. Marke from Alexander was broght: And was translatet in to Venice. The Galiez comen be that waiez. And when the Galiez come zeder thee. The He cleved even in too: And the G. livz token even the fame waie. So thennez the fee in to this daie. After that a N'vle we found. That hight Prodo a magit Londe. Then by a nother failet we, That Morrea hight full ficurly: On our lift hand that Lande flode. Fast ther by our Galuz vode. The Castell of lunke thei face foo. That longeth the King of Nauerre too. Ten mile be wond the Cattell. Upon a wonder hee bull, Standeth a Chirche hee on hight. Of Sent Teodere that noble Knight. After that we came full fone. Unto the Cite of Modome. Taward that Cite as we dud oo. On our lift hand a mile ther fro. There is a N'yle Sapientia men callez, A strong Ile, and no waller. Upon that Ile the fee I wife. Hit betetb ther on faux, my fe. Of that Ile , and of that Cite. The Venvceanez Lordez thes bee. On our life hand as we dud faile, A waast Tle we fate fanz foile, That men calls ther Severigo: A Heremite there dwelleth, and no moo. And so to Candy we go failand, And the Land of Morez on our lift hand. From the Lond of Modyn xviii, milez water Is a Cite worthy for to praise: Corona that place is called, A strong Toun, and well walled. Hit Stondeth in the Land of Morez. And the Venyceanez Lordez thei be. And after that same Lande, We saie a Cite bight Diamande: As a Diamande bit is maked, Conoret wit fnow, and never naked. After in the Same Land of Morrea, We (sie a Castell hight Moirema. After in the same Land a N'yle we see. That hight Cherigo in that Contre. In that Ile be Castelez too. And the Venyceanez be Lordoz of theo. A nother He we founde in bast. Hight Cetherigo, but bit is maaft. And bestez there be great plente, On the same side as failet we. There is a N'yle is mile there fro, That men callen there Ginego : As a negge hit is maked And nonz s m-abitte, but alle naked. Bothe of men, and of bofter. Sauc onely Hawkez make there her neftez, From thennez we failet a certern waie, On our lift band a N'ile we faie :

And was wit she Apostlez like a knaue.

ou vere there schalt thou hane.

And as many lentonez ficurly,

And a nother place is ther by.

Wher Sent Petur fode and fifche,

As much pardon is there I mis.

And after that there is a Cite,

There is a Chirche in that flede,

10 Where Sent George was don to dede.

And also there is a nother place,

Of his Palleffy, and madelere,

As I have tolde of now before.

After that the Cite of Roma;

And the Castell of Emus alfa:

Alfo in that same place,

Is the grane of Cleotas:

Hichewas oon of the too,

In the wiche a Chirche dothe stonde,

20 Where the y. Discipelez were walk and :

And knew him by the brede breaking .

And Sent Lake that other alfo.

And metton wit Thefu after his rylyng,

Then the Cite that a Riamathia hight.

Of Pope Siluefter be graunted there;

vii. vere, and vii lentonez, ther to:

There in is the Mount of Caluery,

VV her for our fake I ehn wolde dy.

There is plenor remission,

40 To alle hem that zeder wull come.

Aljo there fast by is a place,

Or he was laid in his grave :

And at the Sepulcer wit in.

There a place by right nere,

Plenor remission maie thou wonn.

VV here Crist was like a gardenere :

And aperet to Marie Magdaleyne,

After his uprift, as Clerkez farm.

There is viy . lentonez, and viy . yere,

50 Nex st that place a Chapell there is, In the worship of our Ladie, I wis:

VVI ere Crift to bis moder first

And in a wyndow fast by there.

To wuche in the house of Pilate

Crist was bounden to, and kete:

The preson that Crift was in fent,

At ichon of thele placez hir before.

Is vie lentonez, and vis. yere more.

And the place where thei partyet his vestment.

63 An in the Same Chirche is fete,

Aporet after his uprist:

Is a piler of ber flate.

VV bere I be fu Crift anoyntet was,

Plenor remission ther maie thou have.

To alle hem that zeder wall go.

Where Infeph was boron that noble Knight: That toke lbefu don of the rode tree,

30 And Samuel the Prophete there lithe hee:
In alle these places that he ne met here,

Now to the Citee of Ierusalem we wall wind.

Where of the Sepulcer is a Chirche hynde.

As muche pardon thou schalt have there,

Thrugh Sent Peter Praier.

That men callen Leidve:

Wher heled was Eneas

A description of Candy, Rhodes, and the Holy Land, &c. LIB. VIII

That men callen Ancello, And ther mbe Caftellez too. Thet be of the Lordschip of Candy, And the Venyceanez Lorden ficurly. Euen Azan that for faide Ile. Be the flace of lx. mile : The He of Candy there began, Betweene them we failet than. Then failet we for the on our right hand, And come to the Ile of Candy Land. A cite ther was not ferr us fra, That men caller Cananea: And fifty mile that cite fro, Is another that hight Retimo. And from thennez milez fifty. Is the chef cite of alle Candy. And Candy the cite men calles, A faire town, and stron of valles. There procth alle the Maluely, That men have in all Christyanty: Or in any place in heshenefe, And at Modyn alle the Romeney I wis. Another cite is in that Ile. From that cef citte a C. mile. On our lift hand as we did so. Setea men calle it fo. That Ile botthe large and longe, viii. C. mile alle Vmbegange. stip good citeer bit bath full ryne, And castellez xx. and fife: Except Thorpez, and Hamelettez. And howfer that in the wyner ben fetter iii. M. men there may be raifet. Well bor(et and well harnesset Of bouclerez, and of albefterez ij. C. M. ate alle yerez. From thise He now wynde we, And telle we forth, on our lorsy. Fifty mile we failet, and anon, From the cite of Candy to Capa S.Ion, That is to faie in Englese. S. Iohanez bened I wis. Ther is a Chappell, and no moe, The Lordschip of Candy bit longeth too. Spina longa men calle bit. On our lift hand that He was fette. Then failet we forthe (o anon, And feie the Ile of Refrenan : Awast Ile Standing in the See. And after that, anon face we, An yle that men calle Styppea : And there in be Castellez twa. On our lift hand as we failet theo, We fam the Ile of Awgeo: And too Castelez ther in bee, And after an yle bight Nazaree. Ther is a Castoll of lyme and ston, And Knightez of Rodez Lordes bon. The nexst land after that bight Nysterey, And nexst that the land of Turky. And even over ther agame, The Ile of Rodez is certagne: xv. mile the See brode is, From Turky to the Ile of Rodez.

At the begynning of this Ile, Wit in but a latell while Is a thorp that hight Newtoun: And on a hull there alle alonen. Is a Castell stiff, and strong, That some tyme was a cite strong. The Castell hight men saie soo, Sancta Maria de Fulmaro. The ferst place bit was then. That ever thei of Rodez wan. Io Thei myght not well hold hit. But he we fement, and oud witt. Then at Rodez thei made them zere, Here dwellyng for ener more. A strong town Rodez hit is, The Castell is strong and faire I wis. From Rodez then a C. mile. On our lift band we found an vie. Castell Ruge men calle bit, The rede Castell be my witt. The Knighetez of Rodez be Lordez and theder to And feie we Ilez no mo : But too on our lift band. On of the Kyngez of Ciprefe land. The Ile of Ciprete for fo the bit hight, The lie of Ciptele for Jo the but his There of fer ferr we had a sight: I can not fair of town ne of cites, Hit was so ferre I myght not see: That other was the He of Baaf. On our lift band toward last, Of a land we had a fight, Carmeyn de Surry for fothe his hight. The white Frerex were founder ferft there Of our Lady there is a Mynster. Then to Port lasf when we came. There was mony a blythe mane : And thanked God of bis faire fonde. That brought vs fane into that land. And from last we went to Ierufalem. And that waie tornet bome agayne. 48 At lerufalem while I was I went pilgrimagez in mony place:
And had the pardon that longeth thertoo As I (chall zow or I go. Now at Port Latf I wall begynn, To telle the pardon at is ther inn : The wiche is salled loppen, And Port lat wet other men. This pardon ferst when but begane, Was of Pope Siluefter that holy mane: 50 At the prasor of Conftantyn. That was an Emperour gud, and fyn. And of Sent Elene bis moder dere. That fourd be Crose as thei fay there: And after the place be of degre, So that pardon confermet hee. To some plenor remission of syn. And some vis. zerez, and vis. lenton. At Port laff begyan wee. And so frothe from gre to gre, At Port left ther is a place, Wher Petur reifed thrugh Goddes grace, From dede to lef to Tabitane. He was a woman that was her name : And

A Chapell there is of Sent Elene. V Vbere (che the crofe faire, and fine. The crowne, the navlez were founden there. And the bened of Longeez fore. In that place where they founde were. Is plenor remission alle daiez in the yere. In that Chirche a niler is founde. To wiche Crist was bounden, and cronnet. And in the Chirche where Adam hened was fun. Is the middez of the world by refone. Alle thefe ben in that Chirche aboute. And in, Chapelez, ther be wit oute. The ferst of our Lady, and Sent Ion Enangelist, Their of the Aungelez, the sig. of Ion Baptitt: The ing. is of Marie Maydeleyn : Denote place alle for certayn. At alle these placez, to pardon by and by, Is vij. yere, and vij.lentonez sienrly. VVit out the dere of that Winfter, Is a place lene, and dere: Where Crift him rested for wery, Bering his crofe for to die. There is the riche mannez place, That lest the Lazarer, as Clerkez faiez, Dre for defaute of mete. There in Helle is made his fete. And a wate ther after thou fyndest fene, Where a man that hight Symeon, VVit the Iewez constrainet was, For to bere Criftez crofe. Then Crist tornet him agayn, And to the wymmen thuse gan sayne : VV epe on youre (elfe, and not on me. And on your childer wher that thei be: A nother place there is at hounde. VV bere our Lady fell don fownande; Seeyngher fon his crofe bere, Taward bis deetb, that dud ber dere. Alfothere is it flonez white. To the wiche Crift restet alite: VVit his crofe bym felfe to cole, And a non after ther is our Lady Stole. At alle these placez for sade here. Is vy. lensonez, and vy. yere. And falt by is the house of Pilate, Wher Crift was brought to full late: Bounden, buffetet, and crounet wit thoron, Demed to deeth on the moren. Azannez the despite that be had there. Is fully remission, and plenere. And there is the place, thou maie go in. Wher Crist for yaf Madeleyn ber finn. And also there is Herodez place. Hoder Crist was fende as clerkez facez : From Pilate to Herode in Cornyng, And cladde wit white clothyng. Alfo by a water thou moft ga, That men calle Probatica Pifcina : There is the Temple verement. Where in our Lady was present : And weddet to Iofeph afterward, Azan ber wille hit was full bard: And after that Crift be was, Presentet in the same place, L1!111

1243

To that holy man Sent Symeon : A: iche of these places have ve moune vij. yere, and vij. lentonez therto. And Crist was founden in the temple also, Difulyng whifly in his fawez, Wit the Doctorez of her Lawez. A Chirche there is of Sent Anne, Where our I adv was boron of that woman : Plenor remission is in that place. Bleffed be Ichfu of his grace. After that fone thou fyndest a gate. Wher Sent Stenen was ladd out ate. To be floned to bis deeth : And a non after, a nother stede. The oulden zate called bit is. Where Crift entred Ierusalem I wis. To alle these place who so wald gon, Is vis lentonez to pardon. Now to the vale of Iotophat fo fre, A faire place there schalt thou fee: Where Sent Steuen ftonet was, And the tour of Cedron is in that place. Alfo a gres pece of the crofe of Ichfu, In that (ame place is , I trow, And ferned there for a trugge mony a daie, That is the voice in that Contraie. A Chirche of our Lady is there alle, And the grane the Cebe was in do : The pardon of thefe too placez in fere, Is vij. lentonez, and vij. yere. And there our Lady beriet was, Plenor remission is in that place. In Iofaphat the vale befor faide, Is the place where Chift praied, To his fader befor his lideeth : vij. yere, and vij. lentonez ben in that fede. Then at the Mount of Olivete. There is a (birche faire, and swete. At the gardeyn we wall begyn, Where Crift was taken, and bounden in. And falt by a place is there. Where Petur Smot of Malkes ere. Also a place there schalt thou see, Where Crift faid to his Apostlez three: Abide bire to bem thefe be faide, Tille I have ben at my fader, and praide. And a place there schalt thou fynde, Where the Apoltell Thomas of Lynde, Had a gurdell of our Lady. When (che was boron to heuen on hee. A nother place fast by is fette, Where Crist upon the Citee wept. Also the place is nee by there. Where the Aungele did apere To our Lady wit the palme, and saide to fore : That dai to beauen fohe febuld be bore. A nother place is not ferr ther fra. That men callen there Galelia. The xi. Apostelez were gederet there. And Crist to hem dude apere : At alle these placez bere abouen Is vij. yere, and vij . lentonez to pardon. A nother Chirche is ther by to nemen. Where Ibe fu fleed up in to heuen.

What man or woman that cometh there. He bath remission plenere. After that a Chirche of lym, and fton. Of Sent Marie Egiptian : And the Sepvice of Sent Pelage. In a nother Chirche maie you fee. And in the Mount of Oliucte on bight, A place there is that Bet hfage bight. And of Sent Ion a Chirche there is Where the Apostlez made the Crede I wis. Ia There is a nother Chirche right bynde, Where Crist the Apostolez kenned The Pater nofter for to praie: Alfo there is in the fame waie, Where our Ladie reft a stage : For wery going on Pilorimage. There is the Chirche of S. lame the leffe, To whom Crist apperet the daie of Pasch. And after in the same place, The same beriet be was. 20 To alle thefe places to for faid. Is vij. yere of pardon arased: And vy . lensuncz I dar well faie. Paffe we forthe thufe on our waie ; To the vale of Siloee, A fare Well there scholt thou fee : Wher our Lady Criftez clothez dude. When he into the Temple present was. There is the well of Siloce, VV bere Crift made a blynd man to fee. 30 And a place ther (chalt thou fee. Where Maias the Prophete fo free, Of the lewez famez he was. And beried in the same place. Alfo a Chapell thou febalt fee there. Where the Apostlez bud bem for fere. Alfo the felde hit is fall by. That was bought for penyes xxx: For the wiche Crist was (olde. At ichon of these placez that I have tolde. 40 Is to parden vy . yere, And vis. lentonez also in fire. Of the Mount of Sion I will you telle, Where the lewez both false and felle, Weldhane raft of the Apoflez wit force, Of our Lady the vere, and the tref coorce: When thei here bare to her graue. Also fast by ther schalt thou have. Where Petur west, and fore can rowe. That be for soke his Lord lefu. 50 A Chirche of Sent Angel is there beside, That was a Palice faire, and wide: And Anna the Bischope that place hade, To the wiche Crist was ferst lade : Examinent, and wit buffetez bete. A nother Chirche ther by was fette. That is of our Lady, and Sent Saluator, And Caiphas place nit was before : Where lewez him bobbed, and dud dishife, 60 And Petur there for foke bim thyrez. In the same Chirche is there also. A preson that (rist was in do: And in that same place thou schalt have, The fron that Line on Criftez grane.

Where

Tower of Cedron. Mount Olivet. The Well of Silve. LIB. VIII

Where that our Lady abade fo. xiiy, yere in gret whoo: And there fast by sche made a nynde, Out of this word when Sche Schuld mynde. There is plenor remission. And there fast by is a place anon, Wherein lon the Emergelist. Was chosen dere to lesu Crist: And sange a Messe to our Lady. 10 And fast by is where Sent Mathy, Was chofen to the Apostolez: And ther is our Lady Oratory I wis. Alfo there is another place. Where Sent Steuen beried was The secounde tyme, as clerkez saie ichon, Wit Gamaleel and Abibon. Denote places there Chalt thou frede, And ther Crist his Apostolez taught full bynde: And wher our Lady herd full prechyng, 20 Of her Sone Lefu, henen Kyng. And yet thou may fynde more, Dauid, and Salamon beried there : And other Kingez by hem ben cast, And the Pasche Lambe ther was rast. In ichon of thefe placez is vy . yere to pardon, And vis. lentonez there have ve mowne. A!fo there is another place, Where the Pasche Lambe eten was, Wit Ihefu, and his Discolez sufere. 30 And the Sacrament was made there: Plenor remission for sothe ther is. And yet another place I wis, Where Crift to his Apostolez was lowly, We sche here fere, and made theim dry : And where he on the Afcention day, Reprouet bem of ber febull faie. Then Schalt thou find there full Some. The place where the Apostolez ichon, Received there the boly Goft. 40 In the feste of Pentecoit : Plenor remission ther maie then wynn; A nother place is yet wit in, Where Crist to Sent Thomas aperet, And to the Apostolez, when the zates were feret: Where more Sent lame beded was . And yethe is there a nother place, Where Crist aperet to Matiez three, And said to hem, Auete. vis. yere to pardon be at that place.

50 And vy lenionez full of grace. Then wall we thefe to Beethleem, That is v. mile from Ierusalem. In that wate ther is a place, Where the thre Kyngez berbaret was s And where the sterre aperet to bem. And also a Chirche as thei sayn, That stondeth in the same stede, Where was boron Elias the Prophete. And the grane of Rachaell; 60 At ichon of these placez, trust me well, Is vy. yere, and vy. lentonez thertoo, To all tham that theder wall goo. Thenn at Bet leem I willbegyn, And telle the pardon that is therin.

There is a Chirche of our Lady Where Crist was boron full ficurly: And the crache that he late in. Plenor remission there maie thou wyn. · Allo there is a denome place Where Christ circumcifes was : And where the sterr waynaschet awaie From the Kyngez, when ther his faie.

And the Chapell of Sent Icrome, And the grave that he was in don. Alfo ther by febalt shan have. Where the Innocentez were graue. There is a Chirche of Sent Nicolas. Where Paule, and Euftoce beriet was : Theiwere Maydonez full ficurly. Alfo ther is a Chirche of our Lady. Where the Angele cause here, and loseph alfo. Into Egipt for to go.... Of the Angele a Chriche is there, Where the Angele dud apere, To the Schepardez, and to bem (aide, That Crist was boron of a Maide, And the Chirche, or elfe the grane, Of the vy. Prophets there schalt thou have. And the Mynster of Sabaa That was an Abbas, as thei (aa. At iche of the eplace who fo will co, Is vy . yere, and vy . lentonez thertoo. Now here we the parden of Betany, VVhere Lazare dyethet, that is werry: The wiche laie ther in daiez deed; And Crift raifet bym up in the fame fede VV bere be clepet by mout of the grane, Plenor remission there maie thou have. There is the house of Symeon that good man In the wiche Marie Mawdelyn come : On ther Thursdaie wit ognement swete, To anount Cristez fete. And there Martha faid thefe word i For fothe and then baddest be bir Lord. Lazar my brother schuld not dede be: Thi brother Schall rife, shen faid be. Also there is the honse of Maudelyn VV here sche was when Martha can sayn: Our Lord,our Maister, his cometh bee, And Maudelyn (ufter be calleth thee : To iche of thefe places for faide. Is vij. yere, and vij. lentonez laide. Ther ben pilgrimagez mony mo, But I saw non of alle thoo: And therfor I make non mention, But of the places that I have gon. Then at Flem Iordan I wall take Ther of a mention for to make. There is a Mynster of Sont Ioachim . Fader of our Lady that boly Ungyn. Alfo the bull bit is there, Wher Crist fasted the ground is bare; xl. daiez witouten wyn, Therfor it beight Mount Karantyn : Plenor remission there maie thou have, On the top of the bul thou must bit craue. A place is there the denele temptet Ihefu, And fasd if Goddez Sone be thon, Lillil 2

1242 Famous places for Birth, Residence, and Burial of our Foresathers. LIB, VIII.

Thefe flones into brede brance. At thou maie ete after thi fafting; In other thyngez be temptet him also: But we wall tale of Ierico: VV here Crift herbaret was, In the house of Zacceus. Also a place ther by maie be. VV bere Crist made a blynd man to fee. Of Sent Ion Baptift a Myniter ther is: At ichon of these placez I wes, Is viy. yere, and vy. lentonez therto, To alle tham that theder wull go. VV her Ihelu Crist baptizet was, Is tlener remission in that place. Alfo ther is a wilderneffe hone fome, VV bere is a Mynster of Sent Ierome: And the dede See that is there, VV ber the v. Citeez drenches were, For finn that thei dud thanne. And be youd flem Iordan, Is a full defert place, and wan, Of Sest Marie Egiptian. To alle the (e placez who that wall go, Is with vere, and with lentonez thereo. Of the Hullez of Vrie to telle. A while ther for to duelle : Ther is a Mynster faire, and free, In the wiche place groceth a Tree, That went vato Cristez crose: Thuse in that Lond bit bath the voile. Ther is the house of Symcon, That in the Temple was redy bon, On Candelmes daie Crift to bent Unto his armes, he was present. There is a Chirche of Sent Ion Baptist, VV bere our Lady when schewas wit Crist, Salute Elizabet bere Cofin dere, And faid the worder that folo here : Magnificat anima mea Dominum. And Zacarias place is ther alfo, VV bere he wrote bothe faire, and welle, Benedictus Dominus Deus Ifrael. To alle thefe placez who that wall go, Is vy. yere, and vy. lentonez therto. Now telle we of the Vale of Mambre, And of the places that about his be. Ther wall I telle a litell thing, VV nere was Abrahamez dwellene: VVber that he faie Childerenthre. And on for alle worschippet he. Passe not the Servant in this bete. I (chall faich water, and waifch thi fete. And Clerkez Sayn, and don us lere The ferst tokynning of the Trinitie was there, Also there is the Cite of Ebron, VVivere Adem, and Abraham in grane was don. Is ac and thei ben beried there, And alle her wifez wit bem in fere. Alfo fast by there is a place. VV here that Adam formet was And there is the Defert wher Ion Baptist, Dud penaunce for Ibe su Crist. Alfo the Cifterne fee you moune, VVbere that Iofeph Iacob fone,

Wit his brether schuld have be cast in. For dremez that he redde to bem. At ichon of the fe placez what at thou he vis . yere, and vy . lentonez is grannted the. Thus to Nazaret let vs mynde. And telle of that place fo bynde. Some what to fair that is beft, Of that parden that ever Scholl laft. In the beginning thou schalt have a place, Where Sent Stouen ferft beried was : Io After a Castell there schalt thou fee. That brokt Abiera in that Cites: Wher our Lads knew he had left her fonn: A nother Chirche yette fyndest thou fon. Fast ther by thenn schalt thou banne. The Welle of the Samaritane. And the Cite Nebalofa, or Sichar men bit sale In the wiche the grave fynde thon schall Of lofeph, that is to fortolde. That to the limalitez was folde. After that, thou findest thenne, The Cite that hight Sebastiane. There Ion Baptist in preson was don, And after that henedet full fone. There is the Castell of Jehenne. Where the x. Lazarez were Inne. And Crist bem belod of ber schenes, And the Cite of Naym ther by hit is Crist and miraclez in that ftede, Raised a widow sone from deede. Alfo in the Cane of Galelie, Wit in Nazaret ibat faire Citee, There is a Chirche full faire fette. Where Gabriel our Lady grets. Also in a while thou schalt sinds there, Where Crift to his Moder water dud bere: Also a faire place is fast by. Where the lewez full fritnoufly The su bedlyng wold base don caste : And a myddez bem a wase be past. At ichon of these places befor nemet. Is vy. yere, and vy. lentonez assignet. There is a Hull that bight Tabor, Crist was transfigures there, From his Manhod, to bis Godhede : Plenor remssion is in that stede. There is the Cite that bight Cafarnaum, Where Crist mony miraclez bath don. The See of Galelie forzete we nought, Where Crist mony miraclez hath wroght. Alfo the Cite of Tiberiadis, Where Crift calde Mathew Discopull his. Also there is a nother place, VVbere Archifinagog Doughter was VVa Crift raifed from the dede, And Crist etyewit Mathew brede. Tet the Hull maie thou kenne, VV bere Crist feede v. m. mene. VVit the brede of lonez fine. 60 A nother Hull yete fyndest thou rine, VV bere that sig. m. men were, VVit Senen lonez fede there. Alfo the Cite of Sidonne, VVbere the woman, dud forthe gon :

Aná

CHAP.5. Damascus. Paul called. Mount Sinai. Moses receiuing the Law. 1243

And to Crist Sche Saide full yare, Bleffed be the wombe that the bare. At iche of these places lene thou me, Is vig. yere, and vig. lentonez grantet the. Then telle we of a nother place, The wiche is called Damace. Beside Damace ther is awate. Wher lefu to Paule can faie : Saule, Saule, why folonest thou me? 10 Also a wyndow ther maie thou see. Where Paule went out when be bym heed: Alfo in the same bonfe is keede, Where that Paule cristenet was, Of that boly man Ananias. Also a place they schat thou fynde, Where Sent George the Knight bynde, Faught wit the Dragon for the Maide Sake, And delineret her from wrake. At alle these placez that I bane tolde, 20 Is vij. yere, and vij. lentonez, be thou bolde. Now telle we of the Mount of Synai, A full denote place ficurly, The Cite of Gaza is in that place. Where Sampion flagn and berset was. In that Mount upon by, Is a Mynftor of our Lady : The Mynftor of the Busche men calle hit, Wher in the body of Sent Katheryne was put. Alfo bebynde the bee Autere. 30 Is wher lefu dud apere, In that Chirche to Moifie, When he kept Getro Madan Schepe trulce. In middez of that Hull is a place, Where dud his penaunce the Prophet Helias; In the bye of that Hull, by Clerkez famez, God yaf to Moifes boothethe Lawez : Written in Tabelez, wit outen miffe, Plenor remission ther hit is. A Garden ther is wit out diffaunce, 40 Where Onorius dude his penaunce. Another Hull alfo is there, To the wiche Aungelez and bere The bleffed body of Sent Kateryne, Schewas a holy Virgyn. Vnder that Hull trust thon me. There rennet be the Rede See. At schon of thefe placez, that I have tolder Is vij. yere, and vij. lentonez, be thou bolde; Thuse from Synai wall I skippe, And telle of the Prigramagez of Egipt.
50 These saie I nought, but by beid telle, Written in a Tabull in the Hull: Therfor I telle as I bit fais,
VV ho that cometh thether be maie a fais. In Egipt is a Cite faire, That hight Maffar, or eller Kare : In the wiche mony Chirchez be. And con is of our Lady: / De Columpna calleth bie is, 60 And Sent Barbara beriet ther is. There is a water of gret prife, That cometh out of Paradife: The wiche is callet Nilus, Men of that Land the fair thale. Alfo ther is a great Garden,

Where that the Bawm groeth in.

Also a Mynster there is sette. Of Sent Anton, and Poule the ferft Heremet. And of Macary, and other mo. Thele from that Cite let vs 90. Ry the flace of in datez Iornay, There is a Contrain in that wase. That men calle Menfelcula : There is a Chirche hight Elmorana. Where is a Chapell of our Lady. There Sche dwellet vu. vere truly, Wit Iesu her sone so dere, And wit Ioseph her Spouse infere. In that Chapell on Palme Sondais. Of alle Cristen I you faie, That duellen in Egipt Lande, Do there ber seruce I understande. The Cite of Alexander in Egipt is. Where Sent Kateryne was flayn I wis : And Sent Johan Elemofmere. That holy Patriarke is beriet there. And Sent Mark the Apostell of Crist, Also he was Euangelist: There was martired, and to ded don. And after was beriet ther fone : And fo from thennez to Venece translate. At ichon of thez placez and thou go ate, Is vy. yere, and vy, lentonez to pardon, To alle bem that thether wall come. Pilgrimagez ther be no mo. That ever any man dud goe. But now at my yann turning, Hereth of our home comyng. From Icrufalem forbe to fam. Euen to laff we turnet ayan. Here we schippet alle to geder, In the Galias that brought vs theder. sin, hunderet mile then failet we, Unto the Golf of Satelle: Wiche the Schippe four pardy; Thei were the worst of Cristianty The Pilgrymez bereme gud record For, thes tornet vs from bord to bord . And sig. wikker I dar well fair. Wemyght not skape the Golf awais: But up, and don traver for the See, By alle the Coft of Turky. And on our left band the Golf was. As we from Laft toke therafe. On Turky fide we faie there, The bee Hull that bight Mount Clere. And under that Hull bit maie be, The chef bened of Synode: That is a token to schippmen, Whereby theisthe Coffee kenne. And after fully fifty mile wase, Is a Castell, as I you faie, The wiche Mirra callet ic. And Sent Nicolas was boron ther I wis: And Bischop ther was be made, And his last ende there be hade : In his grane be was laid thoo. And after translate to Ballo. That is in the Pole Lander And there be lithe I understande. And xx. mile that Castell fro, Is a Hauen hight Cacabo's LIIIII 3

Alfo

9.10

ATVALL

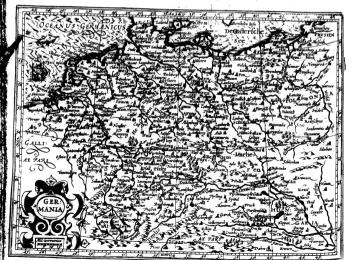
1244 The Authors returne out of the Holy Land. His review of Italy. LIB. VIII

Hit is right depe, and faire of flode. In alle wederez hit is oude: For Schoolez, therein to take her rest. In alle Turky fide hit is the best. That Hauen tofore, as men faid me, Was some tyme a faire Cite: And was cristenet as men telle. Tille gret vengannce vpon hem felle, For finn that thei dud in the Tour. Hem to amende thei were never bon. That (see was drant for the same case, Right as Sodome, and Gomore was. Some windowez, and wallez yet ther be, For I (are bem wit myn ec. From that Hauen of Cacabo, On our right hand as we dud go, xxx.mile by Lond I wis, To the Castell Ruge hat is : We failet therby taward Ierufalem, And come therby hamard again.

And xxx. mile from that Castell, Is a strong Ile trust me well: The wiche in the langage of that Lande, Is callet the vis. benedez, I understande. What is the cause thei calle hit soo, For viy, poyntez go out ther fro: Alle oret Roches, and long ther thei be, And ferre in fonder men maie bem fee. For a token men bold hem there, Excause thei schuld by theim faire.

And fixty long mile, and ten, VVe failet to the Ile of Rodez then: And rested ther a latell frace, To confort us in that place. And even from Rodez to Venece. As I went I come home, I wis. And come to Padua the Cite faire . There I rested, and toke the aire. And from thennez to Castell Limimia. And fo to Baffayn, ther are Castellez taa. From thennez to Bononia full euen, 10 And there we were daiez fenen. And so forthe to Castell Sent Ichan, And then to Mirandula that foule Toun, And even forthe so unto Hostia Muche Marise ther schat thou in ga, Then fo forthe to the Town of Veron, The Venyceanez be Lordez of ichon. Then so forthe to Castell Selucian, And the Blaffard is thi money than. From that place thou schalt to Trent, That stony wase most thou beent, And so forthe to the Cite of Merane,
Vinere wyn is plenty to mony ayne.
And then to Mount Sent N.colas, VV ho is him that waie gas : For Montez, and Snow, and ile chere, Failet not there of alle the yere. So draw the don to Nazaret. And whate thi Pike be well fett.

HONDIVS his Map of Germanie.



And from themez to Kempton, For fothe that is a gud toun. And then so forthe to Memmyng, There is the Emperour money walking: Lake a barre of silver bit is,

And lasteth ferre, that maie not myse. Then to the cite of Vime is thi waie, And at the Brugge ther most thou paice And fo from Vime to Offelyng Ic And after that to Kipping.
And fo thenn den to Brushull, That muketh men her leggez to pull. And from thennez to Duron. And thenn to Spire that riell toun. From Spire to Vormez are milez xiiq, And so to Mence then schalt I wene. And to Bynge a town upon the Ryene, And to Wetell, and Couclence, there is gud wyn. And fo to Andernak that is thi wate, 20 And then to Bun, I dar well sie. From thennez to Coleyn that faire cite, Ther most thou change thi money. And fo from thennez to Acon, There be hote bates in that town. And thenn to Mastrik I therede. And there new money most thou gette. And lo forth even to Difte,

That wate is wilde, and hit be myste.

And so thon schalt to Macheleyn, That is a toun booth gud and fin: There gothe the money of Braban, And that deceinet mony man. And fo from Mechelyn to Gaunt. Into Flaunderez most thou haunt. And fo to Burgez that faire tous And then to Newport most thou gon.

And after that to Donkerke, And foto Gravenyng most thou lirke.
And to Calys a town full free, Thuse at the See-fide we bee. And for bet is the comyn waie, From England to Rome, I will not faie : Ne tales make of her governaunce,
For to all pilgrymez hit us no staunce.
Then praie ne to the Lord of myghtes most, That brought this Pilgryme to Engelond coff, His lif to mayntene to his wille, In his fernice bothe lounds and fille. And when we out of this word (chull wende. The soye of benen be vs fende: That is my praior, and schal be aie, We may be saued at Domesdaie: And so to his blis be vs bringe, less that is besen King: And secur theref, at we maie be, Saie alle Amen for charite.

CHAP. VI.

The Churches Peregrination by this Holy Land way, and warre into mysticall Babylon : or a Mysterie of Papall Iniquity renealed, how the Papall Monarchie in and over Christendome, was advanged in that Age and the following, and principally by this Expedition into the Holy Land.

The Hifferic of the Normans, and their proceedings. Of V. R. B. A. M. and
BOAMYMD spelicie, abuling the zeale of Christendome
in these Warres and of Satams looking after one thousand yeares.

Itherto you have heard the Monke and the Priest Eye-witnesses of this Expedition : the one called Robertus Anglus, the other 2 follower of Robert the Nor-land: and what shall I more say? What are Englymen but in triple respect, Normans or North-Vid.Cand. Brit. men: From the North parts adiopning came the first Angles, or Saxons: from thence also the Daner, which made the next Conquests: and from these North parts, the scourge of the World, Omny malarm ab Aquilone (ex Scarza in sula que erat quasi officina gentum, aut vestiv vagina Natio. W. Genetic. de 60 nem, the parts for most part fill subject to the Crowne of Denmarke) the same Danys people due. Norm. ferling themselves in France, and called Normans, that is, men of the North, after a French civillizing and Christianitie, made their third Conquest under Earle William. This three-fold Cord cannot be eatily broken, nor can any Englishman at this day separate his Norman bloud from the English, and indiffoluble mixture even from the last conquest remayning in the tongue and peo-

1246 The Normans Dominion in Italy, Rob. puissance and Boa. policy, L 1 B. VIII.

ple, the Conquerors vtmost indeuours being herein conquered. A great part of Earle Roberts Armie was English, and as Endmerss and all the Historians of that time testifie, the monie which cetraved his Armie was English, Normandie remayning therefore engaged to King William his Historyof Nor. Brother. Yea, Boamund alio and Tancred were Normans: fortie of which Nation returning from a Ierofolymitar pilgrimage, behaued themselves so valiantly at the siege of Salerne, against the Saracens, that Guaimar the Prince fent Legats with them into Normandie, to draw somead. menturers into his part, where Gifelbert a Nobleman, having flaine William, and fearing the anger Car Sign de of Robert then Earle or Duke of Normandie, embraced the occasion, and with his Brethren Rez.Ital el S. Rainulph, Ai Clitin, Ofmund and Rodulph, and their followers went into Italie to Prince Pardulph at Capua, Anno Dom. 1017.

Normans in Apulia.

Applia and Calabria were then subject to the Greeke Empire, which rather tyrannizing then ruling, by the Catapan or Deputie, Melas a principall man perfwaded the Normans to inuade his Countrey, to to thake of the Greekilh yoke, and fought four times with Bubagan the Catapan, in the three first battels winning much, which in the fourth at that fatall place of Canna hee loft againe: the remayning Normans betaking themselves to Pardulfe and Guaimar. After this Maniacus the Catapan fent to Guamar to fend him his Normans, to fight against the Saracens in Sicilia. Lately before (this was, Anno 1039) the fonnes of Tancred (inuited by their Countrimen) had comne thither with three hundred men at Armes, by whole helpe he recoursed Syracule, and the most part of Sicilia, which after their departure the Saracens next yeare repolfessed. Anno 1041. Ardoinus a Lumbard offended with Maniacus, for taking from hima Horse which he had taken from a Saracen, incited Earle Ranulph a Norman, to affet him in the warreagainst the Catapan, wherein many fights overthrowing the Greekes, matters succeeded so pro-

Sonnes of Tancred. Atula finte I amongst Nor-

iperoufly, that William one of the fonnes of Tancred was made Earle of Afculum, Drogo his Brother observed Venusia, and the rest of Apulia was thered amongst the rest of the Normans. In this Expedition, William, Drogo, Humfrie, Richard, Roger, and Robert the Sonnes of Tancred were renowmed, of whom many Dukes and Kings in lialy after descended. Henry the Emperour confirmed to Drogo Earle of Apulia, and to Ranulph of Auerfa, all which they had gotten. To Dropo fucceeded his Brother Humfrie, 1051, who invading the possessions of the Church, which Pope Lee feeking to recouer by battell, was beaten out of the field with exceeding flaughter on both fides, and befieged in a Castle whither he fled, was taken and forced to receive the Norman 20 into communion.

A wulke

Robert Willhord Baielard the Sonne of Humfrie, by Robert called Wifcard (brother to the faid Humfrie) was Duke of Apalia expelled from his Countrie of Apalia. He added allo Rhegimm in Calabria, and Trois in Apalia to his conquefts, filling himfelfe Duke of Apalia and Calabria. His brother Richard winning Capna, vexed the confines of Campania, and both molefling the Papall Possessions were curied by Pope Nicholas, who yet vpon their Oath of vassalage to the Church, received them and confirmed the one Prince of Capua, the other Duke of Apulia and Calabria, paying twelne pences years on every yoke of Oxen. Anno 1062. Rabers with his brother Roger, warred against the Saracens in Sichia. Richard inuaded a great part of Campania neere to Rome it felfe, and fought to become Patricius; whereupon Henry the Emperout entred Italy, and Richard forfooke 40

Occasion of the Normans entring Greece.

Anno 1078. Nicephorus put downe Michael from the Empire of the East, who came and fought to Robert for ayde, who being compounded with Iordan which had fucceded his Father Richard, went into Greece, and prosperously succeeded. Hence he was called backe by Hildebrand. or Gregorie the Seuenth, which before had excommunicated him, to helpe him against Henrie the Emprour, then having taken Rome by force; who hearing of Roberts comming with a strong Armie (leaving Boamund to pursue his Grecian affaires) went with Clemest or Guibert, his new made Pope into Etruria. Thus was hee dreadfull to the Easterne and Westerne Emperours at once. He dyed, Anno 1084. Roger his Sonne succeeded. This Historie both as of Normans, and as a preamble to the Expedition of the Frankes, is not vnworthy recitall. Roger the younger brother faceeding in the Dukedome of Apulia and Calabria, as also in

ters, he had even to Tibur and Velitre " gotten into his possession) his brother Boamund " be-

gan to thinke of another fuccession, that as Roger had gotten the inheritance of Calabria and A-

pulia, from the Easterne Empire, he might also obtayne the like in Greece. This was not vn-

regitally. Roger the younger brother increeding in the Duncaume of Symposium was the quarrell of Orban fucceffor of Gregory against Gubert (who also confirmed his Dutchieto Bassaum was the quarrell of Orban fucceffor of Gregory against Gubert (who also confirmed his Dutchieto fonnero Robe him as Vasfall of the Church, the possestions whereof such good fishing made he in troubled waby a former wife: Roger by the daughter of Guitsur Prince of Sa-W. Gemetic.

knowne to the wifer in those times, as William Malmefbury " our Countriman tellifieth, whole Anno ab incarnatione 1095. Papa Vrbanus secundus, qui prasidebat Apostolico culmini, enasis Alhow this Dutpibus venit in Gallias. Aduentus caufa ferebatur perspicua, quod violentia Guiberti Roma extru- 60 chie added to Jus, citra montanas ad fui renerentiam follicitaret Ecclesias. Illud repositiva propositum son ita vulga-Sicilia became batur, quod Boamundi confilio pene totam Europam in Afiaticam Expeditionem montret, vi in tanto nere omitted.

G. Malon, L.4. tumultu omnum prosinciarum facile oberatis avviliarubus, & Vrbanus Romam, & Boamundus IIlyricum & Macedoniam peruaderent. Nam eas terras & quicquid praterea à Dyrrhachto v fque in

CHAP.6.S. I. Pope Vrban, Boa, the Norman abuse the zeale of Christendome, 1247

Theffalonicam protenditur, Guitcardus pater super Alexium acquisserat : ideireo illus Boamundus suo inte competere clamitabat, inopi hareditatis Apulie, quam genitor Rogero filio minori deleganerat. Thus Vrbanes intent was to get Rome from the Antipope Guibert or Clement, whom the Imperials and some Italians followed; neither had hee any great partaker in Italie but Roger, who fought his owne aduantage.

Anchor Archbishop of Canterburie was by King Rufus dispossified of his revenues, and lived in Exile for acknowledging him, as E idmerus his companion in his Italian peregrinations to and

with Pope From tellifieth : no Bishop in England then daring to acknowledge either of the Popes without the Kings leave, who also admitted no Papall power, but by his leave in this Eadmerss pub-Topes without the king to the fathers power in cates and ouer persons Ecclesiasticall, See Eaderers Science and the Annotations of that learned and industrious Gentleman, Master Selden thereon, and therewith now published!) And Boamund enjoying fome Cattles by his brothers indulgence, wanne many other, the men of warre following him. Nam adfrairem specie tenus Ducatus per-neuerat (Massesbury addeth toward the end of that Booke) alterum bello meliorem secuti. Iam vero parui mementi fuit quod paterni propositi sequax, Guibertum repellens Vibano validissime astuit. e cuntantem impulit vt Gallias ad Concilium Clari Montis accederet, quo eum Raimundi Prouinrialis Comitis & Episcop: Caturicensis Epistola innitabant. Conciliog, celebrato libens occasionem actepit & in Gricciam copias traiecit, subinaeq, promouens exercitum modeste Raimundum & Godfridum operiebatur. Quibus venientibus sociatus magnum incitamentum cateris erat, disciplina militaria

20 feientia & virtute nulli fecundus. This Mylterie hith beene little observed of most Authors, and was lesse observed in those See how this times by the zealous Princes of Christendome, whose valour, wealth, denotion, glory and lines agreesh with were engaged to deeply in this quarrell, most of all other deutics availed the Papacie, in abasing his cunning dismulation

the power of Princes Christian.

And well might Vrban vie the helpe of Boamund and the Normans in that designe, which not only forted to that expected effect to tettle him in Rome, then held by Clement his Corrivall. but to a further advancement of the Papacie in after times, then either hee or Boamund could then divineor dreame of. For of the Normans disposition, Henry Huntingdon hath long fince giuen testimonie that God had chosen them to extermin the the English, because he saw them eminent a-30 bone all people in the prerogatine of fingular cruelty. For their nature is when they have deietted their enemies to the vitroff, that they then depresse themselves, and bring themselves and their Lands into powertie

and waste: and alwayes the Lords of the Normans, when they have trodden downe their enemies, seeing ther cannot but be doing cruelty, they hostily trample under foot their own Which plainly appeares in Normaudie, England, Apulia, Calabria, Sicilia, and Antiochia, very good Countries which God hath Subietted to them. Thus our Historian, and thus our Mysterians Frbanus (then for this disposition called Turbanus) and Boamundus vncharitably feeking their owne, abused the charitie and denotion of those degenerated times.

So it was necessary that Mysteries should be carryed in mystie cloudes : which make mee not a little minde that Reuelation not fully reuealed, yet in some imperfect glimpses offering it selfe 40 to view, this Hiltorievnmasking that Myllerie; or if it bee not the inft interpretation of the Prophecie (a taske too great for me to determine) yet not whit to be waied in the ballance of the Sanctuary together, and to be propounded to wifer confiderations, at left by way of Allegoricall application, if not of Propheticall exclication. Saint Iohns mysteriall Reuelation is delinered in these words. Apoc.9.1. And the fift Angell founded, and I fam a starre fall from Heanen vnto the Earth, and to him was given the Key of the bottomlesse pit. 2. And hee opened the bottomslesse pit, and there arofe a smore out of the pit, as the smoke of a Farrace, and the Sanne and the arre were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. 3. And their came out of the smoke Locusts upon the Earth, and unto them was given power as the Scorpions of the Earth have power, &c. 7. And the shapes of the Locusts were like unto Horses prepared unto battell, and on their heads were as it were O Crownes like Gold, and their faces were as the faces of men. 8. And they had haire as the haire of

women, and their teeth were as the teeth of a Lion. 9. And they had breft-plates as it were brest-plates of fron, and the found of their wings was as the found of Chariots of many Horfes running to battell. 10. And they had tayles like unto Scorpions, and there were stings in their tayles, and their power was to hurt men fine monethes. 11. And they had a King over them which is the Angell of the bottomlesse pit, whose name is in the Hebrew Tongue, Abadeon, but in the Greeke Tongue, bath his name Apollyon, After the fixt Angel founding, followeth the looking of the force Angels bound in the great River Emphrates, for to flay the third part of men. And the number of the armie of the Horlemenwere two hundred thou fand thou fund. And thus I faw the Horfes in the Vision, and them that fate on them, basing brest-plates of Fire and of lacint, and of Brimstone, and the heads of the Horses owere as the heads of Lions, and out of their mouthes iffued Fire and Smoke, and Brimstone. By these

three was the third part of men killed, by the Fire, and by the Smoke, and by the Brimstone which issued out of their mouthes. For their power is in their mouth, and in their tayles : for their tayles were like onto Serpents, and had heads, and with them they doe hurt. Divers Interpreters will direct in the former of these Visions, to behold the Popish Clergie,

a Col. 3, 1.

Alfredi Epift. published beforc The. 1. Clerici adea literatura care.

Gen, 11.

" Priefts had not power to had Subjected

in the other the Saracenicall Souldiory; both which agree to our prefent bufinefle, where Papall fuperflition, and Saracenicall crueltie begot in frange copulation fuch numerous innumerable deaths. As for the Starre it noteth an Ecclefiasticke Angell, or Bishop, as the Revelation it selfe rewelleth ". This Starre is not fixed, but falleth from heaven, the care of Heavenly affection. beauenty b connertation, and bringing foules by Pattorall vigilancie to the beauenty e lerufalem. b Ephe. 3. 20. and Church of the first borne, whose names are written in heauen; and falleth to the earth, that is to minde earthly pompe, and fecular glorie, Whose God a is their belly, whose glorie is in their shaine, who minde earthly things. That the Pope hath endently done this, their owne Hiffor es make mention; first by Phocas, obtaining a Monarchie over the Church, and fince Hildebrand exalting it ouer Kingdomes, States and Empires, and now at this day exerciting nothing of a Biffice, but 10 e Sanfaute Lis the Title, leaving the Cure to his Vicario di Roma e, whiles his Cardinall Conflittorie are not Saccer.R.E. Vigiles Ecclesie, but Consuduces Orbis terrarum, & Principes mundi, regum fimiles, vers mundi Car. dines, and himfelfe hath turned Pafce ones into Rege, and playes the King, and playes with Kings, making and marring Kings and Emperours, and wearing himfelfe a triple Growne; either detaining (as King Johns) or deposing and disposing (as Henries to Rodulph) or with the foote firiking off, (as Celeftine to Henrie the fixt Emperour) or treading also on the Emperours necke. (as Alexander to Fredericks.) All this power is challenged to the Keyes of the Kingdome of beauen, promifed to Peter, Math, 16 in the name of the rest of the Apostles, of whom the question had beene asked, which he in their name answered; and that to shut out impenitents. and to admit those which beleeve and repent, by Evangelicall ministry into the house of Gods 20 Church and Family. But neither by word nor Sacraments, publikely, nor prinatly, by teaching, improving, exhorting, rebuking, doth he either open or flut, or exercife any proper Epifcopall Key of the bot- Function : fo that the key of power which he hath, must needs bee this Key of the bottomlesse tomhesse pit, whereby Hell is opened, (as here in vision) and Heauen is hidden; both that supercelestiall and kingdome Heauen of glorie, wherein is the Sunne of righteous nesses, and this inserious Eccletial icke keauen of Grace, and of the Church, which as the Aire borroweth her light from that Sunne, or elle must needs abide in night and darknesse. And indeed what are Papall Dispensations and Indulgences, (as we shall anone see) buto-

pening of Hell : What his Crusados to kill and destroy, Interdicting of kingdomes, excommunicating and depoting of Kings, raiting warres, feditions, treafons, prohibiting valear reading to of Scriptures, and the like, but flutting of heauen ! There, there are the Papall keves fo much gloried of, keyes of the bottomleffe pit; yea, the key fingular to open, and not plarally keyes, as having no power to that Hell which once he hath opened. Hence arofe (by this opening of the bottomleffe pit) that Smoake of Ignorance, which bemifted the world (to that in King Alfreds daies not one Prieft in England could vinderstand his Latine Service, or translate an E-Mat. Par. in W. piftle out of Latine into English; and if any in the next Ages had his Grammer, he was a wonder to the reft of the Cleigie) caused by Barbarians, which filled Isaly, France, and other Countries of Christendome before, with a Smoake of Confusion and combustion, whereby the Latine Language was loft in vulgar vie, which continued in their Holies : men in that smoake not able to fee what God faid to them in his Word, or they to him in their Prayers. Hence a Smoake of 40 blind zeale afcending as from a furnace : but as the fire of Hell is fire without light, burning and not thinging, fuch is easer impetuous zeale without difcretion, which crucified Christ, and persecuted Christianizie, & in Papists bath much changed them for Antichrist and Antichristianitie. A smoake from the bottomlesse pit, is all vabrideled Concupifcence, alway suming from and to Hell ; Bottomleffe in the originall, without just cause of beginning ; Bootlesse in fine, without cauling Iustice in the ending. Pride, Couetout neffe, Enuy, and other Hellish passions, are a smoother which alcend, but by ascending vanish; which as in the Builders of Babel, seeke a Name, and make as they would build to Heaven, but get no other name but Babel, and after confused cloudie Chymeras (like pillars of imoake in the Aire) vanish to nothing.

Out of this imoakie ignorance, and ignorant zeale, and zealous perturbations (the travels and throwes of the bottomleffe pit) came Locusts upon the Earth, the carnall and earthy minded Bishops, Priests, Cardinals, Abbots, Monkes, and innumerable religious Orders of inordinate Religion: these being wholly superstititious, degenerating into superstition, and turning their heauenly calling into earthly, ease and pompe, and the spirituall service of God, into beggerly, worldly, carnall rites and bodily exercises. Thus have you the Locusts worse then Egyptian, such to the foule as those in Aluares, and other the former Stories of this Booke mentioned to the bodie, faue that they are limited, and may not (as those) hurt the Graffe and Trees, and greene things, that is, such as haue a lively Faith in Christ. Neither may they kill bodily , but spiritually torment the Conscience with their Canons, Confessions, Penances, Purgatories, the secular po- Miracles, Visions, and (which most concernes our present purpose) Pilgrimages, and the like. (0 Their shape is like to Horses, for their courage and wilfulnesse, Kings and Kingdomes being forced and Nubrigenfis to stoop, both to their old Mumpfimus, and to their new Sumpfimus; even the moil refractorie or couragious, as William Rufus, and the two first Henries, conquered in Clergie immunities by Anselme and Becket, men of great worth in other kinds, but for this accounted Worthies, emi-

nent in the sanctitie of those times, for this honored and Canonized Saints. These the Crownes on their heads, or as Dunstan, Eadmund, and if there were any more Canterburie Canonizations : and fuch Crownes had the heads of Religious Orders, and first Founders and Inventors of Holies, as Dominicke, Francis, and others, (and now at last Ignatius Loyola) and all the Clergie were crowned with dignitie, in their head over-topping Kings, in the meanest Priest exempted from Kings, yea creating his Creator the King of Kings, (that I mention not their shauen crownes. nor the Martyrs crownes which befell Priefts or Laitie, dying in this Ierofolymitan Peregrination, or in fight against Christians, against whom the Pope had published his Crusado.)

But thele Crownes were like Gold, not of it, the Pope herein the best Alchymit, extracting to true Gold out of Leaden Bulls, but diffracting and contracting shewes of Gold, seeming Canonizations, and fanctitie in flew and found of holy Church, rather then true holineffe: vea. the holy name of Church appropriated to their shauen crownes, by Popush Monopoly. Yet were the shewes made faire, and in all their actions they had the faces of men, in resemblance of inst reason and resolution; insomuch, that as when I looke on the Scripture onely, I wonder how there could bee any Papift, so when in Histories and the couries of times. Hooke youn the Church, especially after Hildebrand, I as much wonder that all were not Papifts, the smoake had fo taken away the light of the Sunne, and the Pope fet up fo many Night-lights of humane reasons, and Treasons or Traditions in Canon Law and Schoole Divinitie. Yea they had also the haire of Women, in infinuating impressions, and melting raushments of flattering perswali-20 ons, promifed pleafures of Paradife, dazeling pomps in the prefent, and for the future, Merits,

Supererogations, deliveries from Purgatorie, Relikes of Saints Revelations, Miracles, & a world of the like; which this Historie of the Holy Land sheweth sufficiently, and a Map of which you may fee in Vrbans elegant Oration, and Boamunds cunning diffimulation. Their teeth were as teeth of Lions, in preying upon Temporal Lands, Liberties, Iurifdictions, and Spirituall deucuring of foules. Their Iron Breaft-plates were their defendine immunities and exemptions, whereby they were hardned and heartned against all contrary powers.

The found of their Wings, was their preaching of Indulgences, thundering Interdictments, and Excommunications, Penances in Confessions, and the like. Their Tailes, were the confequences of their Doctrine and Actions, which promifing fatisfactions to God and Man, yea 30 Merit and Supererogation, the honoring of Saints and Angels, in the fore-part : in the end flung like a Scorpion, filled the foule of their most denoted with disconsolation, the body with grieuous bodily exercifes in Fastings, Pilgrimages, (as here) selfe-whippings; Euer learning, neuer comming to the knowledge of the truth; giving reall possessions, and bequeathing true beggerie to their heires, for delinerance from a Poeticall Purgatorie; crucifying themselves indeed before a painted Crucifixe, buying repentance at a deare rate, and making more irkfome way to Hell (if Gods infinite mercy prevented not) then that by which many have attained Heaven. Their King is the Angell of the bottomlesse pit, (you see whose Vicar he is indeed) and is named in Hebrew and Greeke, at hardning the Iewes, and corrupting (bristians; or as reftoring both Iewish rites and Gentile Superfittions, in both a Destroyer. The fine moneths some interpret of this life, some 40 alluding to the Graffe-hoppers Summer feafon; fome to Noahs floud, fo long prenailing over the

Earth; some to one hundred and fiftie yeares, taking a day prophetically for a yeare, and reckoning from Hildebrand, to Gregorie the Decretalist; some for an indefinite time, some for a thort time : as if they thould fay, It is not for you to know the times or the feafons which the Father Acts 1.7. bath put in his owne power. I have rather fought to lay open their qualities then their durance; as for the time, Time will deliver it.

Now for the other Vision of foure Angels, bound in the great River Euphrates; some vnderfland Emphrates mystically, for the meanes of vpholding and advancing the Meichandize of mysticall Babylon, that is of Rome and her Poperie : Indeed foure hath beene a famous number, for the foure Gospels, for those foure first generall Councels, for the Ecclesia sticke Aristocracie

50 by the foure Patriarchs, (the fift was in manner titular) for the foure Doctors of the Latine Church : also foure hath beene notable in this Papall mysterie and Supremacy; first in the ages thereof, the Child-bood from Boniface to Hildebrand, in a spirituall Monarchy, long growing up; the Touth from Hildebrand to Boniface the eight, in addition of power, ouer all powers Royall and Imperiall, with youthfull vigour trampling under tootexhe strongest Adueriaries; the Mans age from thence till Luther, losing somewhat of that King-awing strength, by schilmes amongst themselues, and by Councels. Kings and Kingdomes better opportunitie and vigi- *As those of lance; but holding up to the upmost their spirituall, till Lusber gave beginning to their old de- constance, soft, elining age, and this their almost precarian and obnexious power, which by leave of Kings and &c. io in the

States they hold, howfoeter in freming about them. Four Couries have advanced and vaheld Statute of Prathem, Excommunications, (to which interdictments of Kingdomes, and deprivations of Kings 266. are annexed) Decretall Lawes and Constitutions to gouerne the Church; Warres by Crufados and Treasons, and Inquisitions against contrary opinions. Foure forts of men have beene their Creatures and Creators; degenerated Monkery of later ages, which undermined the ancient fanctitie and discipline, Canonists which wholly corrupted it; Schoole-men which ad-

mitted the Philosophers to bee Masters in Diminitie, and Friers which occupied both Churches and Palaces in new and meerely Papall hypocrifies and priniledges. And fince, the renenues of Poperie, as we shall by and by see, are foure, Temporalties, Collations of Benefices, Indulgences, and Difpentations.

But I rather like their Interpretation, which apply these foure to the Angels of destruction, which literally have beene loosed from Euphrates vpon the Christian world, and indeed defroved the third part of Christian men with bodily death. For prefently after Bonsface the Pone had obtained his Supremacy of Phocas , Mahomet arose with his new Sect in the East: the one with Locusts, (whereof you have heard) to corrupt the soules; the other with Horses in his Succeffors, to deftroy the bodies of men. And these Angels of destruction have beene many to waies foure. First, in the foure Doctors, Authours of the foure Sects of that irreligious Religion. For Mahamet having taken Mecca, created foure Generals, Ebubezer, Omar, Ofmen. and Alt: whom he called, the foure sharpe Swords of God, and commanded them to goe into the source parts of the world, to kill fuch as refisted. After Mahamets death, their foure fucceffinely fuccee-

* See my Pilz, ded. These may be called four Angels, as the four Dollars of the Mahumetan Law, (so they are vivally filled by the Mahumetans) and reckoned Saints in their Kalender; whom they fav Mahamet had prophecied should succeed him, who also fained his Law received from the Angell Gabriel. Thele were Authors of foure Selts also, Ali or Hali, of the Sect Imemia: Ofmen of the Sect Basnesia, Homar of the Anesia, Ebubezer of the Melchia. These foure in their succeeding Generations, haue bin fent out from neere the parts of Euphrates: where before they may be faul to be bound, because that how soeuer Chefrees or some others at some start, or advantage passed ouer, and did hurt to the Romane Empire, (then the most flourishing part of the Church) yet did they not continue any long frace, or much prevaile on this fide Emphrates, that being the boundary, as it were appointed of God, betwixt the Roman and the Parthian, and after, betwixt the Roman and Persian Empires. But after the Mahametans had once appeared from

Arabia, which Euphrates washeth, they in one Age ouer-ranne Egypt, Syria, Palestina. Persa. yea ouerwhelmed Africa, quite thorow to the Streights, and all Spane, with many other Coun-*Scephilo. tries , neuer after recovered to the Empire. And as they began with foure Angels in foure Scots, and conquering to the foure Winds: fo there have beene of them foure principall Deluges, each from Euphrates, onerwhelming the world. That we reckon the first, in that Sarace- 10 nicall Age : the second, that of the Turkes, which vnder Belpheth tooke Diogenes the Greeke Emperor presoner, and conquered in manner all the Countrey to Constantinople, the occasion of this lerofolymitan expedition, and confequently, of killing the third part of men, dwelling in remote Countries which they had not seene, but came to the Holy Land as the publike slaughter place and Shambles of the Christian world: in which it is remarkable, that the two Calibba of Bagdet and Cairo, one on the one fide, the other on the other of Euphrates, otherwise differenting, confented yet like Herod and Pilate, to kill Christagain in his members, and to perpetrate those butcheries, yee have read of in the former Relations. And let the understanding Reader examine the Roman Stories, and see if in aboue fixe hundred yeares from Romalus forward, there was fo much Ethnicke bloud fp:lt on both fides, to purchase the Roman Monarchie, as here in 40 much leffe then the third part of that time, was occasioned to be spilt by the Romifb Hierarchie: on both tides shall I fay ! Or may I make the question, even of that which was meerely Chriflian of the Easterne and Westerne beleeuers ! And the third overflowing, was of the Tartars, at first not Mahumetan, yea destroying Bagdet and the Calpha, and enemies to mankind in generall, 1.4 c.11 and 12. but after prouing, and fill continuing in greatest part Mohumetan. These did almost roote out the Christianitie of the greater Afia, and erected the greatest Empire (not with best bloudshed) that euer was : yea, they not onely ouer-ranne the Christians, as farre as Poland and Ruffia, Hungaria and Germany by themselves, but forced the Chorofmines out of Persia, (which as

in this Work in Haiton, M. Pole, &c.

Turkily Kingdome there, and forced them alto to inuade the Christians, founding in the Christi- 50 Sec7.H. pa.76. an nunes the Aladine Turkifh Kingdome in Natolia, and enforcing over Emphrates the Progenitors of Ottoman, from whom beginneth our fourth Epocha, and that fourth Deluge of the Turkifh Nation, which hath denoured fuch worlds of Christian flesh. The Warres also of these peoples, have beene principally by Horfes, neither doe I thinke the number expr. fled of two hundred Millions is any whit hyperbolicall, if we confider the innumerable Armies of innumerable Horse-men, which they have in divers times burthened the World withall. That of the Tarrars alone, if Authors report truly, easily makes credible that incredible number. The later expedition of the Tartars under Tamerlane, how monstrous doth it feeme :

you have heard gave the fatallest blow to the Christians in the Holy Land) and rooted out the

Alfo, Their Horses having power in their mouthes and tailes, agrees to the manner of Warre vied by those Nations, which vied a conjoyned flight and fight, as before yee haue read, that 60 even then when they feemed to flye, they had Serpent beaded tailer, and did flee but in cunning fleight, to returne to greater mischiefe, shooting also as they fled, and wounding their

And as the number of foure, so fitteth their foure Doctors, foure Sects, foure Deluges; so al-

so have they had foure principall places of residence, neere to Euphrates, Mecca still hallowed in their profane Rites, the feate of Mahomet and his first Successors. After that Damescus (for lerufalem continued not their Imperial refuence) and after that Bagdet, to which by a contrary faction was opposed Caire, succeeding herein to Cairaoan, as that to Tunis.

Likewife, foure great Nations doe fill observe these Enfratean Angels, the Turkish (to whom the huge African tracts have fome reference) the Persian, the Tartars (the chiefe of which is now feated in India, the Mogol fuccesfor of Tamerlan) and the Indian (in many smaller and specially maritime Kingdomes) depending for their Faith and Scepter of the Arabians, which beginning with Trade proceeded to Conquest. But more then enough of these things. Wherein In we fee all plainly agreeing to this warring Religion, as in the former to the Romile Locusts: in both perhaps rather intimating the danger to Christians by both Angels (the one corporal), the other chiefly foirituall) then their time : both which wee fee have continued fo long a time. and spread so farre, that they thereby, the Moore aswell as Papist, plead Catholike from See before

Yet if we will weigh the time, when both were likely to doe Christendome most harme, and nall, like Samfons Foxes looking contrarie, held a fierse consumition in their tailes, to fet the World on fire: this Angell of the bottomleffe pit, puts vs in minde of another Angell which came downe from beauen, hauing the key of the bostomicife pis, and a great chaine in his hand. And hee laid hold on the Dragon that old Serpent, and bosond him one thousfund yeeres. And cast him into the bottomicife pit,

Vninerfalitie:

Historians have recorded.

20 and fint him up and fet a feale upon him , that he foould deceive the Nations no more till the thousand veres should be fulfilled, and after that be must be loofed a tutle stason. This is not a fulling starre, Mal.3. but an Angell which descends; even Christ himselte (which is called the Angell of the (ovenant) Acces. and hath the keyes of Hell and Death, which emreth onto the strong mans house and binds him. (as Primafius, Andreas Cafarientes, and other interpreters doe agree) that hee thould not feduce the Nations or Church of the Gentiles, as before in a generall defection and idolatrie. But after that thousand veeres expired, he should be loosed, not so long as in the Gentile superfittions, nor all fo farre, but exchanging those prophane Idoll names (with greater wrong to Gods holy Angels and Saints) (hould in holier Names and shewes restore those Heathen Rites, Lights, Images, and other will-worthips of Angels and dead men. Now, for a thousand yeeres after Christ, the flate 30 of Christs Church, though it were still after the primitive golden Age somewhat declining, as the Fathers and Eccletiaiticall Histories shew: Yet in substantiall and fundamentall points it continued found, as Bishop lewel in the mayne points of Controuersie hath shewed for sixe hundred yeeres, and Bishop Usher for the foure Ages following, although these were much See D. Place more corrupt then thole former. Nemo repente fuit turpifimus : and it is true of myfficall Rome de C.E.S. & St. also, that it was not built in one day. But I had rather the Reader should examine this point in

Bishop Viber his learned worke, de Chrift. Ecclef. Success. O Statu. I am more then enough bu-

fied in our Holy Land pilgrimage. Cedrensus mentions divers starres fallen, one An. 1032. which made a noise in the fall (cum. fonitu o frago e) and another the next yeere, which in the night made to great a light, that 40 people tought the Sunne had rifen. He mentions also terrible Armies of Locusts, which brought miferable famine ouer those parts: as it God by visible signes would then warne men to observe thefe mysticall predictions, when they were to worke their most complete effects. The like is mentioned in the West by Florincensis and others. An earthquake at lerusalem destroyed many buildings, and men, continuing fortiedayes. The Temple of the Sepulchre had a little before beene razed by Azim, whose sonne permitted the reedifying thereof, and presently there re- Glib. Radulph forted innumerable numbers ; first, of the meanest ; after of the meane fort, after of Kings, Prelates, Earles; and laftly, of women both noble and bale. And when some questioned what this might lignifie, it was answered, the comming of Antichrift. Once; from the thoulandth yeere after Chrift, till Hildebrands time, Anno 1073. hapned more frequent and prodigious 50 fignes in Heauen, Locusts, Famines, &c. on earth, then euer we read of, as Glaber and other

And for those Hurofolymitan Palgrimages in such numbers, what did they else but make way to these bloudie expeditions, after that Poler the Eremite had received a revelation thereof. Neither is it likely, that this revelation was from any but the Deuill (fo many superstitious reuelations, then more plainly arguing this looting of Satan) which is a lyar and murtherer from the beginning, and can turne himselfe into an Angel of light, as appeareth by his fore-mentioned vanitie, by the monstrous impuetie of his followers, in facrileges and all abuses to God and Men, in almost idolatrie to himselfe. Whose attempts at Iernsalem, whatsoever lastre they sparkle forth, yet wanted not some sparke of Hell, in that they were so died in bloud, corrupted with 6c spoiles, corrupting with superstition, and with neglect of their zeonomicall and poli icall cal-

ling. Christ himselte had faid, the true worshippers would shorthing the Father, not at lerusalem, nor in that Mountayne, but in fprit and truth : for God feekes fuch to worlhip him. And although I denie not that a place dignified with holy actions or pations , may bee a Place to the memorie and affiction exciting holinesse, yet for Religion of place to leave or neglect our place and ca ling

Mmmmmm

Gree Noff de yr in Religion, is superstitious; and to ascribe sanctitie to the place, is Iewifb. Gregorie Nossense org. 191, at 19 in itengion, as apoint tous; and advant ties hath written a whole Epistle against such Hierofolymian Pilgrims, alledging, that it is neither commanded, nor is God prefent, or the boly Ghost any more there then in other places of Christendome; realesse, because more iniquitie is there committed, in no place more nor more abominable : that bim-Gife bad beene there, but in the Charches affaires, and made this benefit thereby to know that their sume were more boly; with other like pallages against that superstitious passage. Which might better be fooken of these Worlds of men, which trauelled nothing from themselues and their vices in this Pilgrimage, as the stories testifie : yea Vitriacus Bishop of Achon, tells of the Christians which lived at lernsalem, as if they were the worst in all the world. And what else were the Templers, and other their chiefe Warriours, but fuch as were, The nearer the Temple, the further to from God, verifying that prouerbe, Calum non animum mutant, qui trans mare current? The An-Salp, Sen. 1.2. I rom was, very my God fuffered lerafations before to bee destroyed, for the further propagating of the Catholike Church, which lineth and walketh by Faith and not by fight: id Domino or-

dinante disposium, ve logie servitu à libertate sidei atq, Eccles colleretur. And sure, just one thousand yeeres after this ruine of the Temple lived Hildebrand, who began the Monarchie of the Church, in the depoling of Kings, which nothing ever fo much effected as this dispoling them first to serue the Crosse, and after the Crosse to serue to depose them. It sanours somewhat of the Deuills loofing, that they which are called Gods, hereby were so loofed from their charges, and their charges or subjects by Crusados loosed from them, loosed against them. Merabiles piritus. (faith Dodechmu Abbas in his Appendix to Marianus Scotus) illius temporis bommes impulis ad ullud iter a grediendem. An entanloss firit (the locked Dragon, it kemeth) moute the mend to that time. For women vield mans habit and went armed. And he faith, that Peter the Eremite

carried about a Scroll, which he faid, was fallen from Heauen, commanding men hereto. Men, Women, and Children followed him, fo as Kingdomes were void of Gouernours, Cities of Paftors, Streets of Inhabitants. They began their bloudie and difordered out-rages upon the Ignes, and after that vied like hostilitie against the Christians in Humgares (which had shewed them kindnesse) and other places as they passed, besides their vncleannesse, fornications, and abominations amongst themselves. Albertus Aquensis addeth; Bishops, Abbots, Monkes, Clergie-men, Nobles, Princes, and all the vulgar, aswell chaste as incestuous, Adulterers, Homicides, Theeues, Perjured, Robbers, and all the kind of Christian profession, and the Womankind led with penance (the fruits of which their Expedition declared) runne together at Peters preaching this way. He cells that Christ appeared in video to Peter, bidding him came from the Partakee, Letters of one Embadgae, and thou flust rayle the boarts of the faithfull to pure the body Places of Ierusalem, and to refere the fernices of the Saints (officia Sanchorum.) For numby perils and many tentations, the gates of Paradise shall be opened to the Elect and Called. Leonemen ungue. You may know by his Offices of Saints what Christ this was, and what Paradife was now fetopen, as also by Peters peoples proper success, which the single free much villame, pershed by Christian and Turkib swords before the rest could come, not about three thousand being left. Godscale, Priest, led sifteen thousand with

But aboue all, they were so superflitiously denoted to Peter, that what soener hee said or did,

was held fubdiume, and they plucked off his Mules harres for Relikes (his hypocriticall abfli-nence, Robers the Monke hash before told you.) These are the words of Guiders an eye-witnesse,

which neuer faw man fo frequented with multitudes, fo enriched with gifts (which he beflowed on his followers) so applauded for sanctitie. And which more encreased the wonder (he calls remember in a miracle) victuals being that yeare very deare, yet men fold their goods cheape to buy pro-pared spire uniform deare for that way of God, as it was called. Yea, the men which to day laughed at men percentage. persua, Guib, for this diffracted deutotion, to morrow were fuldenly possessed with like instinct, and imitated those whom they had derided. Children, faith he, old Wives, tender Virgins, trembling old Men, denoted themselves to warres and Martyrdome : poore men carrying their small substance 50 in Carts with their little ones, which asked at enery Towne if it were Ierusalem. These and much more shall you read of the generall confused raptures of that Age. Fulcberius hath told you of fixtie hundred thousand, which vinder-tooke the way, most of which repented, or dyed, or were forced to flay. God is not a God of confusion: & qua à Deo sunt, ordinata sunt. Thele confusions preach Babylon, and these raptures, strange instincts, strong, impetuous, mad zeale, revelations, and all abominations in all places, plainly proclaime that Hell was broken loofe indeed: and the crie of bloud, and exaltation of superstition in Reliques, and the like crie out, that

1. Cer. 14.

keeper of

When I read that Anselme esteemed the Alpha of his times for learning and fanctitie, game fo light credit to receiue two haires, brought by a Souldier of Boamunds companie from those 60 So Eatherms parts with great iny and reservee, and to keep them with great veneration, as two of the barrer which was in which the bieffed Vergen placked from her head at the Crofe in the time of the Pafficia: (two others the Bishop of Ross received with a long Procession of Monkes, Canons, Priests, People, with

the greatest honor.) What may we thinke of the vulearned vulgar ! Yea, his sudgement of Re-

likes Eadmerns describeth, vpon occasion of a Bone, said to be of Prisca the Martyr, given him. whom deliring more, Anselme restrayned, faying, that ber body cannot bee entire fo long as this Bone shall be wanting. Wherefore if thou shalt keepe is worthily, and shalt serve the Lady whose it is with what denotion thou canst, shee will accept the gift of thy service as thankefully as if thou shouldest ferue her whole bodie. Of the Croffe you have aireadie read, vpon what ground it was received (a superflitious Surians report, as the former on a Souldiers) how observed and served, and confequently how multiplyed. Once, Reuelations caufed adoration at Reliques, Croffes, Images, Pilerimages, and the like; that is, the Deuill was loofed a thousand yeeres after Christ, to Jeduce the Nations as before, to Ethnike idolatrie and superstition, all things fitted to Heathenish iplendor, and himselfe with signes and lying wonders, working effectually in the children of disobedience : Ethnicisme in Rites and worships being restored, but Palliated with Christian names

and thowes. A thousand yeeres * had passed after Christ, before the Reall Presence was decreed * Of the ac-(more before Translubstantion, Eleuation, Adoration, Communion in one kind) before the Car- coffe to Papall dinals grew Kings fellowes, the Election of the Pope being devolved to them; before Cano-power in that dinals grew Kings fellowes, the Election of the Pope being devoted to them, before exemptions of the Clergie Age by Hildenitts, and Schoolemen, the issues of Lumbard and Gratian, before exemptions of the Clergie brandiale rece. from Kings, before Kings became Subiects to the Pope, before there were any Friars, before &c. Se. D. religious Orders were to divided, inbdivided, multiplyed; before Indulgences, Iubilees, Cano- Vib. wifup. nizations, legall power of Decretals, Generall Councels of all Christendome called and ordered by the Pope, before marriages wholly prohibited the Clergie, before Saturday made our Ladies and day, before Crusado's, Interdictments, Inquisitions, and other carnall and spiritual Monsters of

crueltie. A thousand yeeres had passed before this present face of Poperie had once seene the World, or the World it; which after that time of the Deuils loofing by degrees crept in even the moderne Councell of Trens adding many things, and many things still added occasionally by Papall Conflitutions to Popilh faith. The Imoke from the bottomleffe pit darkned the light of the Sunne to humane eyes : and this Papall Moone is ever in change, the Scriptures, as Cardi- Card.cuf.Enall Culanus writes, altering their fenfe also with the practice & interpretation of the Church. Fift. ad B.b. Now indeed was the time when Antichrift was afcended his Throne, which had beene closely conceiued in former and better times; for even in Pauls time the mysterie of iniquitie did alreadie worke, when some preached Christ of enuie and strife, when the Pastors did not naturally sare philips 30 for the flate of the Flocke , with a genuine , Fatherly and Pattorly regard; but all fought their

owne and not the things of Christ, and that in Rome: to that whereas charitie feeketh not ber owne, 1.com.13. and God is charitte, and he that dwelleth in charitie dwelleth in God and God in bim, the Deuill had 1.John.4. no fitter meane to vader-mine the Faith, then by diserting charitie, perserting and fubuerting it with felfe-love and ambition. Which feedes lay hidden (onely now and then fome motions and fpringings, as it were, in the wombe of the Roman Church, by some proud and wicked Popes teftried both conception and quickneffe) till by Phocas his Mid-wiferie Antichrift was borne. about fixe hundred yeeres after Christ, and grew up by degrees to further maturitie, till a thoufand yeares were expired, and the Deuill was againe loofed in the Sea of Rome.

Their thousand veeres, after some were expired in the thousandth yeere, when Syluester the Of this loosing fecond was Pope, who had attayned the Seate by compact with the Deuill, according to whole of Satur, fee equinocating Oracle he lost it and his life, laying Maile in Ierufalem, a Chappell to called, which D. Vibersbook, he vaderstood of the Holy Citie. The common expectation of those times was of the Deuils faces for flats. Looting and the Worlds end, but feeing no fuch matter (for this was a mysterie, in which men could not fee Wood for Trees) they fell every where on worke with building of glorious fabrikes of Monasteries and Churches. Of which Hilaries words descrue memorie : Canete An- Hilcont. Aur. tichriftum. Male enim vos parietum amor cepit, male Ecclefiam Dei in tectis adificifá, veneramini: Artim. male sub his, pacis nomen ingeritie. Anne ambiguum est in his Antichristum este sellurum ? Wickliffe. White and Luther, with others of later times, have applyed the looting of Satan to that time. Otho the Emperour gaue eight Cities to this Sylnester in Marca Ancona, for his more Pa-

Others begin thefe thousand yeeres from Christs Passion, at which time another Conjurer Theophylast, called Bonedist the ninth, was Pope, made at ten or twelve yeeres of age : at which time Authors tell strange reports of denouring Locusts in the East and West, and of a portentuous Dragon, appearing of a mile in length, huge bigneffe, dreadfull with horrible scales, histing, coldnesse, colours, without legs and feet, as Arnolphus an eye-witnesse testifieth, ending in terrible thunders all that day (the Friday fewn-night after Whitfontide) and the next.

Others referre this looking of Satan to Hildebrands time, another famous Sorcerer, fo filled (and therefore depoted) not by Benno alone, but by a whole Synode of Bilhons. Anno 1080. He brought in the dollrines of Denills, forbidding the Clergie marriage (which caused great tra-60 godies) and appointing Saturday falls. Once; bee exalted the Papacie and Romillo Church to freedome, wealth, temporall Remenue, to rule over all fecular Rulers, to be Lady of all Christians, from whom the right of this great, ener-dreadfull and venerable, and almost infinite power (they are the * Villa the words of Onuphrine) buth proceeded. He first depoted the Emperour and he tooke order for ex-next Pope lialting this "Trban" the second (the second Turban or Hildebrand) to the Seate. As for the man-while.

Mmmmmm a

ners of those times how degenerate they were, all the Authors which then writ, yea Tiring the most famous Writer of these Holy Land warres, have delivered them beyond all parollel of all Ages for erueltie, oppression, ignorance, treason, and all abhominations of desolation : and like Priests the People. Let the Reader tee these things more fully handled in Doctor Mbers 'earne ! worke As for those which begin the Deuils binding at Constantines time, and lo dieg with Bon fice. one thousand and three hundred yeeres after Christ, they doe not well confider that fro . Gregorie to Boniface there was more effusion of Christian bloud, then had beene all the times of the ten Primitive Perfecutions; not onely by Turkes, Tartars, and civill warres among " the Chris Rians; but also by occasion of the Warres called Holy, both in the millions which pershed in them , and other millions by them through Indulgences against Emperours, Kings, Printe ces, States, Albigenses and all the Opponents whatsoener. And what are seventie to a thoufand, whetherfoeuer of thefe three opinions be followed :

ð. II.

Of the foure meanes which Popes have to get monies : Of the two first, their Temporalties and Collations of Benefices.

4.1. published Latin, and En-

Rancifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Soderinus Cardinall of Volterra, a man verfed in the troublefome affaires of 20

Reneifous Cardinal of manners was not the way to extinguish. Herefies, rayfed against the authoritie of the Church of Rome; but Crusado's, by exciting Princes and People to roote them out; that thus Innecent the third oppressed the Albigenfinand the succeeding Popes the Waldenfes, Picards, Lionists, Arnoldists, Speronifts and Patanines: that likewile many German Princes if they might have leave to feife on the States of Luthers favourers, would greedily embrace the condition; and many might bee caused to follow them by indulgences. Neither could any reformation be made without diminishing the Rents of the Church, which having foure Fountaynes, the one Temporall (the Rents of the Ecclesiastical state) the other three Spirituals, Indulgences, D. fpensations and Collations of Benefices; none of them could be stopped , but that one quarter of the 30 Remenues would be cut off. You fee here the foure Rivers of the Popes Para ile, the toure feete of the Beaft, all which had either their beginning of being, or frength at least to support it about these times. For as for the Temporall Reuenues, their original is derived from the rebellion rayled against Leo Iconom schus, whom for abolishing Images, Pope Gregorie the second excommunicated, ac mex Italie populos Sacramenti (they are the words of Sigmius the Popes Historian) quo le illi obligauerant religione exoluit, & ne et aut tributum darent, aut alia ratione obedirent, in dixit. Thus the People receiled, killed the Emperours Lieutenants and i ware subsection to the Pope, Ita Roma, Romanuía, Ducatus ad Rom. Pontificem peruenit. So did Rome and the Roman Dukedome accrue to the P pe by treaton (or by leafing, for Ounphrius a Papall Antiquarie efleemes it a tale) and having thrived fo well by treason at home, he fared much better by like arts 40 elfewhere; the French by the Popes counfaile enthronizing Pipine , and depoling Chilperite: who with Charles his fonne were not vnthankfull. For to omit Pipmes deuotion, his fonne Charles having tubdued the Lumbards (which still were troublesome to the Popes, not permitting them well concld what they had fo ill gotten) left Apulia and Calabras to the Emperour (which the Normans after turned into ano her Kingdome) to other other parts, to the Pope unuga muna Grez, col. 171, he permitted t e Exarcuate of Ramenna, Pentapolis, the Perufine Duke 'ome, the Roman, Tuf-Greg. 7, co. 171, ... 1 en and Campan, mre principatu & dutione siberetenta; reliqua inse sibi nomine regni retinuit. The tine, and divers Right, Sourcegnie and I relightion referred, made the Pope no absolute Prince: and the ac-Authors, cited knowledging him Patricius Romanus, the making and Inuefliture by Ring and Staffe of Archbishops and Bishops in every Province, yea his choosing the Pope and or ering the Aprilolike 10 * Sigeb, Chros. Sea, made him an aufolute subject. And subjects they were till Hildebrande time, and their aubec famouites, thoritie, faith Onuphrius, extended not further then matters of Faith, Caterum imperator bus medicam berefu suberant, ad eorum nutum omnia siebant, de cui indicare vel quidquam decernere non audebat Papa &c. Othe Fif. Romanus. Primus ominum R. Pont. Greg. 7. armis Nortmannorum fretus, opibus Cominfa Maibillego rings dis mulieris per Ital am Poter tiffime confifus, discording, Germanorum Principum bello ciuti labo-Imp. sella & rantium inflammatus, prater maiorum morem contempta Imperatoris authoritate & potestate, sum nusquam inue- fummum Pontificatum obtinuisset Cesarem insum (à quo si non electus, saltem confirmatus fuerat) nio anietre. non dico excommunicare, sedetians repno imperiod, primare ausus est. Res ante ed sacula inaudita. Othersischem. Nam sebulus que le Arcadio, Anassasso, & Leone semonacho circumseruntur nibil moror. And thus whereas the Popes and the whole Clergie had beene exalted by Princes, they became Princes (0 Vid lib de vita of their Princes; and in this Gregorie first imitated David, which cut off Goliabs head with Hem, written his owne fword, as Otho Frifingenis hath observed. Henrie the fourth King, the third Emperor by one of that of that name, was the fubrect of Gregories furie, a man for humilitie, patience, and many ver-

tues much commended; yea, for bountie to the Church, as at Spire, Mentz, &c. and for valcut

Car. Sicon, de reg.Ital. 1.3.

Sig. l. 4.

tried in fixtie two battels, but fo haunted with the cuill Genius of the Papacie. ot rem religionis trattare sibi videretur quisquis in illum (you read our Malmesburie) arma produceret. The temporall power of the Pope, was much increased by the great Legacie of Countesse Mathildis. (as a hitle before by the gift of Orbo to Syluster) and by taking advantages in the Norman and other occasions; which they held with vneuen fortunes, and not to quiet that Rome it selfe could well brooke it (which caufed divers of them to live at Aumion for about feventie yeeres) and was not fecure to them till the time of Boniface the ninth, a man composed of the worst vices was not fecure to them till the time of Bonsface the minth, a man composed of the worst vices and best fortunes, as Theodorice a Niem, one of his Courtiers observeth; who first, in also & bassarian bassarian best fortunes, as Theodorice a Niem, one of his Courtiers observeth; who first, in also & bassarian bassarian bassarian properties. G (faith he) temporale dominium habuit, quod contigit ex dissensione ciulum Romandrum. So Platina, Plat, devis P.in

10 Primus papuli Romani vim omnem in Pomificem transfulerit, creatis suo nutu Magistratibus omnibus, Ben.o. munitad, Sondi Angeli arce, &c. Once, how ever they got this Papall Duchie or temporall Kingdome, they had neuer kept it but by their Spirituall Empire and Monarchie, and that branch especially which lookes to Ierusalem. For the generation of the Popes Temporalties in Italie. (now valued by some about divers Kingdomes) arose out of the corruption and ruine of the Empire, the Emperours being Kings aswell of Italie as Germany, crowned * not only at Aquif. * Sec Br. and grave or Germanie, but at Milan for Italie, and at Rome for the Empire. But the Empire decaying by the Popes stratagems, by bandying factions against the Emperours, by inciting them to Holy Land Expeditions (to their great weakning) by exciting the World against them for negleft, by taking opportunities in their ablence at home, by feeking to betray them there, by ap-

20 plying and employing the Crusados and Indulgences, (yea, sometimes as before yee haue read of Conrade) greater indulgence against them, or theirs then against Saracens, (most of which Matthem Paris hath delivered of Fredericke the Second) befiles, Monies raifed, by Tenths, Lones, Impositions, and specially by releasing Vowes for Holy Land Expeditions, to maintayne Armies against them; hence the Imperial Rent, Guelph and Gibelline long and bloudie division, and the Emperour quite deprived of Italio, and so little left him of Germanie, in Germanie also. Thus hath the Pope turned his Keyes into Pick-lockes, into Swords, into Scepters, exercifing his Spirituall volumited power, Extra anni folifa visse (faith " one) to all parts of the World 1 yea, and " Bacer a. if there should be found out more Worlds, as Democritus dreamed, this Dreamer addes that they Part d. 4. should all be vnder Papall Iurisdiction. This hath no Hils, Seas, or Rivers for boundaries, but is 30 without Horizon or limitation. And this power hath two Functions to rule; and to pro-

uide against dangers of Wolues, both vicious and hereticall persons, as also Princes either malignant or negligent. For feeing that Princes have original from Elections of the people, and this power is confirmed by mutuall Oathes of Prince and people, and God hath given all power of binding and looling of Oathes to the Pope : therefore Batere concludes all Temporall Princes fubiect to the Popes centure, which Ordine ad Denm, in pretence of defence the Church hath raifed fuch Tragedies in the Christian World. Now for Collations of Benefices, these partly depend of his Temporall Sonereigntie, and

partly are wrung and extorted from Temporall Souereignes and Patrones, vnder pretence of their Simoniacall bestowing them. This the pretended quarrell of Gregorie to Henrie, and of his 40 Succeffors to the next Henrie, and all other Christian Princes. Eadmerus was present at the Roman Councell of Pope Urbane, and heard his words excommunicating all Lay-men giving, and all Eccletiafticals taking Inueftitures at their hands, and all which confecrated fuch to inuefted (a custome which had continued many Ages) and all which for preferments of the Church did homage to Lay-men, Dicens nimis execrabile vidert, manus que in tantam eminentiam excreuerint, Ead Neuron vt quod nulli Angelorum concessum est, Deum cuncta creantem suo ministerio creent, & eundem 19 sum. Eb. 2. provedemptione & salute totisu Mundi Summi Dei Patris obtutibus offerant, in hanc ignominiam de- Vid, Selden An

ab uniners s fiat, fiat, acclamari audinimus. Thus you fee the Reall and Corporeall Prefence (that 50 men may know what benefit accrueth to the Pope by that Doctrine) is made an argument of deuefting Princes of Inueftitures, and making of Prelates: both first confirmed in that Age, the one by Pope Nicholas against Berengarius, the other by Gregorie and Vrban: thus opposing and exalting 2. The [24. bimselfe about all that is called God, or that is worshipped, that is over all powers Civil and Ecclefigfticall (called Gods) and ouer God himfelfe, whom here he professeth to be created by his creature : a three-fold cord of power, all broken by one blait of the Pope.

fanguinum effusioni additta commaculantur. He addes ; His prasentes suimus, hac conspeximus, his Mahnesbu & a

How friffy King Henry stood for his Inuefficures, and how Henry the Emperour warred and captined the next Pope Paschall for them, Eadmerns, Malmelbury, and others then living tefine, the Pope swearing and starting from his Oath in that case. Neither is it likely that the Popes had thus made all Bishops and Abbots depend upon themselves, without acknowledging 6c homage to their Princes, viurping to eaidently al Ecclefia flical Supremacy, had not the civil combuftions on one tide (as here vnder King Stephen the first King which discontinued them) and exhaustions into the Holy Land on the other side, made the Pope dreadfull, whose breath could thus lead the Westerne World into the East. Thus did the Pope vsurpe a Monopoly of the Keyes by Elections, Postulations, Translations, Reservations, Promssions, Vinions, Permutations, Acceffes, Regreffes, Condittories; by Compositions for Palls, Crosier Stanes, Miters, Rings; personal

trudi ut ancille fiant earum manuum que die ac notte obscemis contagns inquinantur repinis er iniuste not ad cund

a The Pope can make his and himfelfe by their crea-

Vilitations by Bishops and Abbots of the Apostles staires; by making bis Cardinals . (which in this Age first grew to be Giants and men of renowme, and as I faid, Kings fellows, being before but Bishops, can make his Driefte, & Deacone,) able to carrie at out in poppo and Maiestee as besits the Apostles of Christs V mare and by inriching his Kindred, Countrymen, Officers, and Fanorites with the best Benefices and Prelacing in enery Countrey, (whereof let the Reader informe himfelfe in Matthew Paris, of that Applian tion, both by Babylonian fernitude in his time, as allo of his impoling fummes of money to bee given our of money over tax and thele, and if they had it not, tobe taken up of the Campines (Out-landish Papall Viturers, at by altheir for abominable rates) Tenths, First-fruits, Thirds, Fifthes, and I know not what Annuities and Pensa. mer Benefices out, yea, the open and shameleffe sale of these at Rome (read Theed. a Name a Courtier to many falling to him. Popes, of Arts beyond what Simon, or Magain, or the Deuil I himselfe had ever heard of, if it could to he Simonie which the Popes did, who fortooth could not finne as their flatterers faid) and lafter by making Lawes in all thefe and other Ecclesiasticall affaires to remayne to all Generations, whereby the Clergie was exempt from Kings, not Kings from their Clergie; yea, forced out of their Theoder N. 1.2. means and Lands, to maintayne the fubiects of another Soueraigne; every Monasterie being a Cafile, every Cathedral a spiritual exempt Citie, every Prelate the Popes Captaine, and to whom also they were particularly fwome. Confider this legge of the beaft, and confider Monitrum borrendum, informe, conceined long before, in receining Appeales from all parts, but borne in that Smole from the bottomiesse pie, when Satan was loosed; nor ever could have growne to full age, if b The words Indulgences had not strengthned the Popes, to tread vader foote all b Ajpes and Basilishes (so of P. Alexander, they effected gaine-faying Kings and Emperours) nor were Indulgences of any force at all in treading on this kinde before this Expedition, when and whence forung their vnexpected pullance, and

the Emperors. necke. Swer Aspidem

thence the Popes, as thall anon appeare. Befales, the Easterne Patriarkes which before these warres, held of long time in many Ages no communion with the Popes of Rome, by this meanes became subject to him. Antiochia first. then lerufalem, and after that Constantinople it felfe (Romes Corruall) being subiected and subdued by these Expeditions from the West; and I know not what Genise, both in the East and West, making the Bishops in seeming most religious, make this a part of their Religion to quarrell with their Kings, (and one with another for superioritie of their Seas) and goe to the Pope for refuge, as is seene in Anselme of Canterburie, Thurstan of Torke, and others; and especially Thomas Becket, whose murder in that quarrell, confirmed to a Martyrdome, and rewarded with an a Canonization, did fuper-exceedingly advance and advantage the Popes power over Kings; furthered by the emulation of the French King against the English, which instigated the Bishop first, after the Poper laftly, his owne sonnes against him, honouring the new Saint also with perfonall Vifitation, Offering and Pilgrimage. Also Daibert the first Westerne Patriarch of lerafalem, taught his Succeffors this Leffon, who went to Rome to complaine of his King; William an Englishman, first Lating Archbishop of Tyre, and William, the Authour of the Holy Land Hillory, See the floures with others must needs fetch their power from Rome: and the Easterne Empire beeing before related. weakened by the Saracons and Turkes, now engirt on both fides by the Westerne Frankes, the heart and bowels being also by civill diffentions embroyled, it must needs follow that by the fall of her Competitor, Rome must arise, fit alone and reigne as a Queene; Whose ambitious neglects, 40 hath fince betrayed that whole Empire to the Turke.

III.

Of Difpensations.

Vt Temporalties and Benefices were but the hinder legges, of this Babyloucal Beaft, for stabilitie; Dispensations and Indulgences were the two fore-legs, more active for new and publishes. And shall also provide the stability of the stability o prey and putiliance. And these also now began to bee of vigour and strength in the 50 Church to Papall Monarchicall intents and purposes. As for Dispensations it is true, that there was some wie of them in the ancient Church : it beeing neeeflary that as in the Temporall, so in the Ecclesiasticall Republique, there should be according to conducent circumstances, a qualification of sigid (which differing times may efteeme rigorous) Canons. Euen the Ceremonies of Diuine Law yeelded to the necessitie of Charitie, as in Danids eating the Shenbread, inflified by Chrift himfelfe, who preferres Mercie to Sacrifice. How much more in the milder times of the Gospell, and in the Canons and Constitutions Ecclesiasticall, not given immediately by ministerie of Angels; nor to a Iswish Pinfold, or one compendious people, and that for a fet time till Shilo came, but to a Sea of peoples, by ministery of men, without limitation of time; may the difference of times, manners, and men require a dispensing by change, or suspen- 60 fion by conniuence, making the best harmonie of Mercie and Indgement. No man puts new wine into old veffels : nor were later, weaker times fitted to the feueritie of the Ancients, which were both more holy, and by necessitie were forced for want of the Temporall Sword, to whet the Spirituall sharper. Neither can men see all circumstances which may arise, nor are all men or

Ground and

CHAP.6.S. 2. Popilhabule of Diffenfacions furthered by Holy Lind Warre. 1257

times of one constant tenor. Summum ins., Summa iniuria: The wringing of the Nofe bringeth forth Progetties bloud the farcing of wrath bringeth forth strifes Charitie concreth a multitude of offentes, is weake 10. with them that are weake, and burneth when others are offended, maketh we all things to all : year casts 1.00.9. forth the wheate into the Sea to grenent shippracte, notwithstanding a promite of deliverance. Hence new Parliaments, Statutes, Edicts; hence later Councels, Synods, Canons.

But what is this to the Popes Non obflame? 2 prenitude of power to dispense with Oathes. Vowes, and whatfocuer Dinine or Humane, standing in the way of his Monarchie? True it is that about four hundred yeares before this time, Gregorie Bishop of Antisth did dispense with the Oath of the Armie, which faid, they had fworne not to admit Philippiens their Commander, Eusel 6.c.12.

the Oath of the Armie, which laid, they had two the day to be this was to present, not to much furnitional furniti Treaton to reduce to, and not feduce from loyaltie & subjection to their Emperor. In these times demin waite first were the Keyes of the kingdom of beauen, pretended by Peters pretended Successor, to exclude one the Kings of the earth, with Petra dedit Petra, Petrus Diadema Rodulpho, setting up one & put-tam. ring down another Emperor at Papall pleature. Little did Dat penfations before auaile the Papa-cie (except in enlarging the Phylacteries of his spirituall power, in admitting Appeales, and making himielfe a Bulie-bodie, and Interloper, Magnus Ecclefia ardelio) but now the Cedars of Libanus quaked with feare of fire from the bramble, when Dripenfations with the Oathes of Ind. s. Subjects, had deposed Henry the victorious Emperour, by the Ministerie of his owne Sonne: In vaine did that Sonne feeke afterwards to flop the current in taking the Pope Prisoner: Sero 20 medicina paratur; his Fathers Example might teach him to feare iome. Abfolom, to imitate

And especially Dispensations were brought into request, by the quest of the Holv Land: when large Merit and larger Indulgences, Priniledges, Prauledges attend the Vow, and taking the Croffe on the one fide; and larger fummes fill the Popes Coffers on the other fide by the Popes dispensing: when some Friars goe before to preach the Crusado and holy Warre; other Friars are fent after with Faculties to dispense for to much money , as the Expedition would coft you, leaving you no leffe merit with a great deale more fafetie, eafe and pleafure at home : when the Pope can thus profficute the zeale of Christians, to let and fet it to Farmers and Vn. Nummus air pro dertakers, as to Richard Barle of Corneals, (whole fumanes this way gotten were incredible, me, mubit cornuis Roma; 20 able to make way to his Imperiall Election) when the like Dispensations are bestowed as Papall fauours to repaire the broken flate of others: when Dalpenfations raife vo new Locults from the bottomleffe pie; not only exempting some principall Monasteries from Episcopali Jurisdiction.

as the Popes peculiars under Saint Peters immediate protection (and hee thus obliged the chiefe Colledges of the chiefe learned men of those times, to maintayne that power which printledged them) but Chapters of Cathedrall Churches, whole Orders of Religion , as the Cluniacenflan and Ciftercian Congregations; and after that the Orders of Friars in their feuerall swarmes, difpenfing to them, not only Exemptions from Bilhops, but power to build Churches, to receive See bift. Conc.
Confeilions, to preach in all places, to be Bilhops in every Diocetle, and Curaces in every Parifit;
Trid., pag. 221. at once Papall Lords by Dilpenfations, and Mendicants by Vow and Profession, Yea, enery per-40 tie Priest might obtayne by his Purse an exemption from Episcopall power. And lastly, new Dispensations, and new Priviledges have hatched a new Ignation Societie of particoloured Leopards, Regular-Secular-Clergie-Lay-Fathers-Friars-all-things-nothing.

Thus Dispensations made way to get monies by Sales; Friends by Gifts, Patrons by patronizing (Forts and Armies of Learned men in Abbies, Couents, Colledges, Congregations, Orders) yea, they robbed the Church of her Officers and Labourers ; it being now a glorious vertue for Bilhops and Priefts to for lake their flockes, and in flead of Spirituall warfare against the Deuill, (by preaching to cast downe, with meaning not carnall, imaginations and every 2.00.10.4) high thing exalted against the knowledge of God) to imbrace this carnall against the Turks, walking in Concil Sur som, and warring after the flesh : yea, they were difpensed with for non residence, mean-while, and to 3. 145.754 and warring after the field: yea, they were differenced with for non relidence, mean-white, and to 3:75.73.

receiue or lay to pawne the fruits of their Benefices for that three yeares, no leffe them if they mail response to the constant of the constant 50 were refident. So Baldwin Archbishop of Canterbury, made a Pilgrimage thorow England and in Comit London.

Wales, to winne Pilgrimes for this warre. Pope Gregorie had excommunicated Fredericke the Oi Baldw ni la Emperour, for not going to the holy warres, as he had vowed : hee went and did glorioufly, as tinerarie, Giyou have read alreadie: but the Hospitulars and Templars pursuing the Popes quarrell sought to raldus hath betray him to the Soldan, (a perfidie odious to that Infidell) and in his ablence the Pope fets John witten a book de Brenes, to conquer and subiect his Sicilian Dominions. For quarrels of those Templars, and others, he is againe excommunicated; and the third time by Innocent in the Councell of Lions : Omnesa, (lath the Pope therein) qui ei incamento fidelitatis aliquo modo astricti vel obligati, à isramento buiusmodo perpetuo absolumus & liberamus, authoritate Apostolica firmiter & frictim inhi-

60 bendo ne quisquam de cetero sibstanquam Imperatori vel Regi pareat, vel quomodo libet parere intendat. Decernendo quoslibet qui deinceps es, velut Imperatori vel Regi , confilium vel auxilium prastiterint (could the Deuill have roared lowder against Charitie!) fen fautorem, ipfo facto excommunicationis vinculo subiacere, &c.

To palliate this Dispensation of Oathes, and electing a new Emperour, the Holy Land busi-

es a claufe. fignifying not withflanding, that is notwith@anding any Canon . Prinil dge,&c he would die

See abundant

ectimanies.

& Lieu.io.

And thus treasonable Dispensations beganne by Hildebrand, grew up to firength and many ritie by this Holy Land buinesse, and both Laitie and Clergie at once were exempt from oaths. * Non obstante vowes, and bonds to God and Men. Hence grew that Non obstante, * fo often mentioned by Mathew Paris, for the grievances whereof the whole Parliament fent Anno 1246, Mellen gers or Legats, to Lions to treate with the Pope, and for which that Lincolne Bilhon Robert Grofted (whom the Westerne Church admired for Learning and Sanctitie) both writ to the Pope, and on his death-bed proued him to be Antichrift. He affirmeth also that the King vindertooke to sweare with most solemne Ceremonics of Candle curse, that which hee observed not. Law, Promile, in confidence of the Popes Difpentation: yea, falified his owne, and frustrated his Progentors Acts and Grants in proteffed imitation of the Popes Non obstante : vowed this Holy Land Fy pedition, and fware where hee had no meaning to doe any thing, but get money of his people : they might do part whereof might procure Papall Dispensation. Yea, hereby the Popes haue obliged Kings, 20 the contrarie. States, and Kingdomes to them, by dispensing with cathes, with Marriages in degrees forbidden, or having other wives living, to that their Posterities stand obnoxious to the Pope for ferre of illegitimation.

In the first of these the Pope by Temporalises became a temporal! Prince by Treason to his Prince; in the second by Collation of Benefices, hee became vinuerfall Bishop, swallowing the power of all Buhops and Church-men, and of Princes over them, into a Papall Whirle-poole, which he confirmed by Lawes, fitting in Ecclesiam (as it was prophetic of the Man of Sume) as representing the whole Church, inacted in her whole power, which under him as ynder court Barnes was no person in Law, but hee answeres all in Law, and is himselfe in his written Decretals, and in his present Confistorie, the speaking Law of the Church : In this third, he is more 20 then Law, cutting afunder the Gordier knot, by Dispensations, if he cannot by Gloffes, and onelifying Interpretations vntye it; aboue Law, aboue the Church, aboue God, aboue himfelfe by his Non Obstante, in fulnesse of power difanulling all their acts hindering his acts and prefent purpoles. And what soeuer hath beene by former Popes , by Councels , by themselues ordained for reformation, una falfa lachymala quam vix vi extor ferit, one goodly pretence forced to some shew of equitie, shall with a Dispensing Non Obstante, turne to serue his turne, and bring money

Thus dealt he with Commended (deutled for the good of the Church, which was commended

#ifi.com. Trid. for a time to fome other fi: Rector, till a proper Rector and worthy might be procured) to a longer time, yea, to terme of life, for the goods, not the good of the Church. Euen after Luthers 40 preaching Pope Clement commended to Hyppolitus all the Benefices of the World, Secular and Regular, Dignities and Partonages, Simple and with Cure, being vacant for fixe monethes, to beginne from the first day of his possession, with power to dispose of, and to concert to his vie Gniciard, bift. all the fruits. Yea, this Cardinall de Medicis (which plucked out the eyes of his brother Julius whom his Mistris loued more then him for his eyes (ake) continued to hold the Archbishopricks of Milan in Lumbardie, Capue in the Kingdome of Naples, Strigonium in Hungarie, belides the Bilhoprickes of Agris in Hungarie, Mutins, and Ferrars in Italie, places fo far diffant. Vinions deuifed for the Churches provision in the infufficience of one liuing, by adding some neere one, were

to his Coffers, though purpolely deuised against it.

firetched to thirtie or fortie wherforuer lying, as if the good not of the Church, but of the perfon 50 See Rain, and

Matthew Paris in his time tels that the Pope fent to the Bilhops of Canterbury, Lincolne, and Salifhary, to prouide three hundred Romanes in the Benefices next vacant, giving none other till these were prouided, which never meant to come at any cure but of the money. Yea, when they dyed other Italians succeeded, so that their receits in this kind, far surmounted the Crowne Lands: and after complaints to the Pope, and the fore-mentioned Councell fo zealous of the Holy Land, the case was worse, as it hapned to the Ifraelites by Pharoes Taxe-masters, swelling from fixtie to fuentie thousand Markes. Clement the fixt referred for two Cardinals, which hee had lately made, the Benefices void and to be next void, befides Bishoprickes, and Abbeyes, to the fumme of two thousand Markes, which in the valuations of those times, might one with 60 another be two hundred, forfooth, for these Princepes mundi, confiliari, nostri (lo faith Pope Pins of his Cardinals) & consudices orbis terrarum, successores Apostolorum circa thronum sedentes, Senatores vrbis & Regum similes, veri mundi Cardines, super quos militantis ostium Ecclesia voluendum ac regendam est. Thus Cardinall . Wolfer is faid to have had more Revenues, then all the Bilhops and Deanes in England now.

CHAP.6. S.3. Courses of the Popes Consistorie, and Panitentiarie.

In the Councell of Trent (which pretended to reforme, intended to palliate, if not further H fleene Tr.L.T. to pollute with abuses, at least in the greater and Papell part) the Pope could not indure the question of Residence due inre dining, which the Spanish Bishops veged, and in the question of Dispensations had Adrian a Dominican Friar, to defend his absolute and volumited power; and though he difpensed without cause, the dispensation was to be held for good, alledging that of Saint Paul, that Ministers are dependers of the mifteries of God, and to them is the defenfation "com- 1.60.4. mitted (his paterne was the Dispenser or Steward, Luc. 16. which is faid to deale wifely, as the "A Sloss conmitted (his paterne was the Dispenser or Steward, Luc. 10. which is laid to mean wheel, a steller trine to the Pope did in the Master piece of their skill, this whole Councell) and though the Popes dispensari. T xt, as if Dion in divine Law be not of force, yet every one ought to captinate his understanding, and believe that he fremmenthe

10 bath granted it for a lawfull cause, and that it is temeritie to call it in question. Laynez, the Gene- Word, were rall of the last Locust-brood (the * lefuites) faid, that to fay the Pope cannot by differ ation difeb. concealing or lige him who is obliged before God, is to teach men to preferre their owne conscience before the authoritie cancilling it. of the Church, that it cannot be denyed that Christ had power to dispense in enery Law, nor that the lib 8. Pope is his Uscar, nor that there is the same Tribunall and Consistors of the Principall and the Uscagerent ; fo it must be confessed that the Pope hath the same authoritie : that this is the printledge of the Church of Rome, which it is herefit to take away, oc. that it belonged not to the Councell to reforme the Court, because the Scholar is not aboue his Master, nor the Sernant aboue his Lord. And thus must all men dispense with Romah D. speniations : and thus it comes to passe that the Poper Ex- Thead. Niem. chequor is like unto the Sea, into which all Rivers runne, and yet it runnes not over jas one observed New. vn. tr. 6.

20 which ferred long, and well observed the reserved courses in the Popes Court.

Neither is it amiffe to heare Sanfouino tell the manner of dispending Dispensations at Rome, in F. Sanfouino del his eleuenth Booke, written wholly del Gouerno della Corte Romana. The authoritie of the gould durfi Pope ((auth he) as the Head, disperseth it selfe into so many members, that the Courtiers vie to regain grow old before they understand that government. There is first, the Colledge of Cardinalls, the Head whereof is the Pope (therefore called Maximus) and the Cardinals members; of which the number is not certayne in our times, how locuer it is found that in former times there were but twelve. These Illustrious Fathers assemble once a weeke, which Assembly is called the Consistorie; in which Senate are appointed Bishops, Archbishops, Metropolitans and Patriarks when the Seas are void, whose election doth not belong to a Chapiter, Citie, Prouince, Euen in 30 King, or other perion: in which case they are chosen by the Pope and this Senate. Here they

treat of all things which belong to Worship, to Faith, to Religion, to the peace of Christentreat of all things which belong to Worling, to Faith, to Religion, to the peace of Christen-dome, to the temporall estate of the Church of Rome. In this facred Senate (as the greatest in his pleasure, the Worl) all Provinces, all Regulars, and all Kings, have their Fathers Defenders, which they as in many call Protettors, who propound the caules of their Prouinces, &c.

For the Penitentiarie, he audes, that all the World feekes to the Pope for many graces in that mat- of Cont. Se. ter, which our Lord Ie fus Christ left unto Peter, to wis , of loofing and binding in earth what soener he will. Now this part being by the Popereserued to himselfe; that other is accustomed to be granted of him, that is that of looling, to one of the Cardinals, who is called the chiefe Penitentiarie, who

for so much as appertuynes to that which is common in the divine Law, and to his Absolution, exerciseth 40 the Iurisalian committed to him by the Pope by many Vicars and Substitutes, called Penitentiaries Note how the turification committed to both by the tope of many that and abustions, taken that water of the Core contentions disuded therewood all the greatest Charlestee of Rome, as Saint Peters in the Vation can, Saint lound at Lateran, Saint Matte Major. But the Dispensations which are made touching how sair to can, Saint lound at Lateran, Saint Matte Major. observation of humane Lawes, he gravieth not but in some cases, and by hunsilfe. And by a general Rome. objectuations) communic Lawres, by the commission from the property of the commission from the Pope he beares Sucors in such affaires, and basing seems their Demands, if there be any cause from the Sucor mersteth to be beared, and that which he requires both beens accuse and fidely flomed to be granted by the Pope; be writes by authoritie Apostolicall and of his Office, and not by the feere wierit Popes month but by that generall commission in his Letters of commission from the Popes mouth, hee nummi. affirmes, and his Affertion is believed as in a thing belonging to his Office, and rescribes alway to the Supplication on that fide directed to the Pope in one of the feformes, fiat in forma, fiat de speciali, hat

50 de et prello, with which varietie of wordes he lets the Taxers understand the importance of the Suit : and as the Rescript of the Pensientsarie differs in forme, so the taxes of the payments are altered by the Officers. A din these times the multisude of humane Lawes is so increased, both by the Pope, and by The fruit of Councells, and by Minasteries, that men being in some fort bound, desiring their ancient libertie, have and Lawes Ecrecourse by may of Supplication to the Penitentiarie, who brining signed the Suppliants Bill with his hand, ciefiafficall, they dispatch the Bulls under his Name and Scale. And for that many times hee doth not write backe public and precisely, requiring some attestation of the Suppliant, bee appoints Sudges by hie writing, which taking private.

This the reaknowledge of the Cause, perfect the Att; and herein he appoints others in his place. And this holy Ofknowledge of the Caufe, perfect the Alt; and herein he appoints others in his place. And this holy Of-fice of the Penitentiarie, for the greater commodite of them which come for Expeditions halb foure and fitted law: as twentie Defenders of Suppliants, which are called the Proctors of the holy Penitenriarie. Thefe as for the Law of

6) Advocates declare the Contents of his Suite, and as it were plead the Caufe before the Penitentiarie, of God as in whom they procure to obtayne their Suite, and to get their Bulls dispatched. He weet also to rescribe Hary the eight whom they procure to obtain their Suite, and to get their Buis dipatched. He of eth alp to refer to 800, the Fe is in many Caules appertaining to luitice, and as it were alway to grant in the one kinde and in the other, too grant or here under noted, Difpensations mairimoniall in degrees forbidden by the Law of Man, legitimations the Penitenof Children; D. fren sations in refrest of them, or for want of members due to such as are to receive Or trans.

in Ed 3. Sac.Cer.Ec.Rom lib.1. [8.4.2. * Heranlosia Anglisa.

ders of Deneglees; all for theore parable of more Deneglees. Disjoint on from homicial in Fora Conference; for Clerkes in both Courts, with retention of Benefices and Difpensations for more. The line for Simonie for Exile, moreouer from an Oath for the effect of the operation, from falle Oather. commutation of Vones, and Licences from observation of any humane Lam, and especially of Reculos from any Chapiter (or Article) of the Lames of their Rules. He gives Indulgences to places and persons: and moreover, infinite Commissions in forme of Law, as namely, the Declaration of the Nullstie or Invaliditie of Marriage, which are called Declaratorie: and in many other things which are knowne to them that practife in the Ecclesiasticke Courts.

They doe enery day demand the Subscriptions from the Pope of such things as come from his volume tarie and proper liberalitie, as the grants of Benefices and other things, which are also generally committed to the Great Penstentiarie, and all matters which pertayne to Justice in things Ecclesiasticall the row all parts of the World, at also in things profane of the temporall patrimonie of the boly Church of Rome, and of any other place of the World which have recomfe to the Court of Rome, by reason of the person being Ecclesiasticall, or by Princes sending it, or by consent of the parties. The Pope for the more easte distatch of Sutors in all these things, hath ordayned two Audiences, in one of which they demand matters of Grace, in the other thofe of Inflice. But for these and the like Officers, the Vice-chancellor, the Audience of the Chamber (as is

power in the Temporall State) Treaturer, Aduocate, Proctor, Commissaries, Marshalls (to one

referre the Reader to the Author. The last he mentions is the Vicar of Rome, who hath the same

authoritie which the Pope hath ouer the Priests in all things, in Rome and in the Diocese, hea-

ring all Clergie cales as Ordinarie; imposeth Penance, conferreth Sacraments, calleth Congre-

gations, vifits Churches and Monasteries, makes Inquisition, correcteth, punisheth, remooueth

and given Benefices : his authoritie extends fortie miles out of Rome, in fome cales. The Pope

hath alfo given him all those Pontificalia, which every Ordinarie exercifeth in his Diocese . as to

confecrate places profane, to reconcile fuch as are profaned, to promote to holy Orders, to pu-

nish Blasphemies, Viuries, Periuries, Incetis: and in cate of corporall punishments to fend them

to the Secular Ludges. He hath fome Notaries or publike Scribes, and two Vicars Subflitute. So

through conetoufnesse with farned words he might make merchandise of men, as surpilucricupidus, a lo-

wer of filtby game (even that of Curtizins hithineffe) yea, of the foules of men, which are recko-

ned among the Babylonian wares of these Merchants of the earth. And what else are these di-

spensations thus abased, but soale-sale, which is made more euident (is any thing more impu-

farre is the Pope degenerated from a Bilhop in any thing but Title, and ving that onely, that 30

of which the Whores of the Citie pay a yeerly Taxation, which they call Tribute) I omit and 20

Officers and Counsellors of were his prime Counsel) the primate dispatches by the Secretarie, the Chamberlan (which hath the Popes flate.

Vicario di Ro-

2.Pet.2.3.

Apoc 18,13.

Soules fold,

whiles their fin dent then a Whore ?) by their Taxa Camera, a Booke published in print, whereby men may remaynes, know the prices of their Abiolutions for Simonie, Sodomie, Incest, Homicide, and other the though their Malter and Monster finnes and degenerations of mankind. In which marke also, that being mony be gone; breaches of the Law of Gou, an inferior Penitentiarie by his Booke of Taxation can absolue, yea is increabut those crimes against humane Lawes require the chiefe Penitentiarie to turne the Law into fed with boldneffe and frea Net, and become a good Sponge-man to exenterate his purse more thorowly. quenty in hope of Dispeniations. finnes being thus made

both veniall and venall. Bud.de A [[e,li.5.

by a Romifo Catholike to his Maiestie, Englished by

M.Cr.

And as Rome by Di penlations is made a Merchants shop, Litium officina capturarumá, impre barum, where are kept perpetuall Marts of Sacriledge, which make finnes not onely Venial but Venall: and Golden Canons become Lesbian Rules by Papall Leaden Bulls, flexible and pliant according to the price and banke of the Romifo money changers : so by Indulgences hath she beene indu gent to all her Chapmen (except they wanted money) and hath made them the foundation of the Tower of Babylon; in this, Induigences and Difpensations agreeing that nothing hath more rayled, nothing more razed her gorgeous and glorious Fabriques ; Henrie the eight, Naus bome, in Nous Home, an voknowne Supplicant of Rome, hath revealed touching the mysteries of the a Supplication Datarie (the Office where matre is of Benefices are dispatched) where the bestowing of Bene-

vpon the one occasion for taking wonted commerce with Rome, and Luiber by the other proudked to open his mouth so wide and loud, that he awakned all Emope to behold her filthy whoredomes. And it any thinke the later times either more Casta, or more Cauta, let him obserue what 10 fices is deferred, that inquirie may be made or the richeft Competitors; each Lluing is charged with a pension of halfe, or a third, or two thirds of the worth, and then by another Ordination by present payment of five yeeres purchase extinguished. As if the Benefice bee worth three hundred crownes a yeere, a pention is imposed of two hundred, leauing one hundred for the Incumbent; who paying one thousand crownes and a hundred more for Seales and Expedition, buyes repentance at a deare rate. The Regressia and Expellating forbidden by the Councell of Trent, are deluded with Coadintor Sups, fold for a yeeres profit in colour of expediting Bulls, with 60 affurance of future fuccession: by which and like meanes (you may not call that Simonie which

the Pope doth; and it is disputable amongst them, whether the Pope can commit that sinne,

although the very name comes from Simon Magus his leeking to contract with Simon Peter)

Paul the fifth is reported to have extracted out of his Lead twentie hundred thouland Scutes, to buy Lands for his Nephew (or fonne) Borgbesius. The truth of which, by the Registers (faith the Author) in the Office of Bettus, a publice cret, appeareth.

ò. IIII.

of Indulgences.



Hus have we feene the Popes Temporalties, arifing from Cos ip

rours, his Collations from the spoile of all Kings and Princ s in pretence of Simonie, to further intentions and extention penfations, Factors and Bawds for Compenfations, by the thus finned and kept a Trade, Shop, Mart, Sale, and game of Sinae: tur shew of reason, and yet was the right fore-legge of the beatt, whereor h

whereby he had securest holding his prey, wherewith he made stronge to uerfaries, was Indulgences. And whereas the River of the Popes Edward this first compasseth the whole Land of Hauila, where there u Gold, and the

good. Of which the Author of the Historic of the Councell of Trees, ch of gaining Money was put in practife, after Pope Vrban the feemed bad gome ? 20 all that Should make war in the Holy Land; imitated by his Successors, fore that maintained a Souldieur, if they went not in person. And after, the lane were einen, for taking Armes againft those that obeyed not the Church of Bos Christians : and for the most part infinite exactions were made under those 9-co oreater part were applied to other vies. Thus Pope Leo the temb, 1917. all Christendome, granting it to any which would give Movey and extending it bis will was , that when the difbur fement was made , they fould be delimered ? torie : giuing also power to cate Egges and Whitmeats on falling danes, to ch al

and other such like abilities. And although the execution of the enterposte of lar neither piose nor honest, notwithstanding many of the Grants made by the 30 causes more uniust, and were exercised with more America and Exterior. H Harnest before it was reaped or well foune, giming to diners perfous the Reven and referuing some also for his owne Exchequer. The ladulgences of Sam a the Sea, be gane to Magdalene his Sister, Wife wate Franceschero Cibo, cent the eight; by reason of which marriage, this Leo was cressed Comme! yeares. She to make the best of it, committed the care of preaching the land Money unto Aremboldus, a Genoa Merchant, (new a Balbay and Merc & a fters like unto himfelfe, who armed at nothing but game : which would not a e bad beene the custome of Saxonie in this cafe) but Dominican; when 's many strange things; and in Tauernes, games, and other things not fit to be

40 the people fored from their necessarie expences, to purchase the lade gon us By this meanes Martin Luther an Hermite Frier, first began to Jame & (es; and after being prouved by the Pardeners, be fet bimfelfe to fate the feethe rootes and foundations of the Doctrine of Indulgences. He put ford herein, to be disputed on m Wittenberg, which were accessed : best lot 1 1 trarie in Frankfort of Brandeberg. Luther proceeded to wrate an defence of oppofe; and thefe Writings being gone to Rome, Sylvefter Prierias. . D min Luther : which contestation inforced both the one and the other partie to pa Te ter importance. For the Dollrine of Indulgences bening not beene well xame effence and causes of them were not well understood. Some thought they were made by Authoritie of the Prelate from Penance, which the Church on a 50 by way of Discipline upon the penitent, (which imposition was affected a Shop onely, after delegated to the Penttentiarie Prieft and in conclusion left wire felfor) and that they delinered us not from paying the deb: due to the Infar. that they freed from both. But thefe were divided : fome thinking that the were given in recompence, others fuid, that by reason of moutual partie pas of bers of holy Church the Penance of one might bee communicated to a whe Compensation. But because it seemed that this was more proper to mem of hos the authoritie of Prelates, there arofe a third opmon. which made them pop ar

authoritie was necessary for them) and in part a Compensation. But because 6) Such fort as they could pare much of their Merits to others, there was week

full of the Merits of all those who had more then would serve the wome : wo

of is committed to the Pope, who when he giveth Indulgences, recommended to

assigning so much in value out of the Treasure. It being opposed that the Aler

this treasure might be diminished; they added the Merus of Circle what a

ders or Benefices ; also for incompatabilitie of more Benefices. Abjolutions from homicide in Foro Conference; for Clerkes in both Courts, with retention of Benefices and Difpensations for more. The live for Simonie for Exile, moreour from an Oath for the effect of the operation, from falle Oathes. commutation of Vones, and Licences from observation of any humane Law, and especially of Regulars from any Chapiter (or Article) of the Lawes of their Rules. He gives Indulgences to places and persons; and moreoner, infinite Commissions in forme of Law, as namely, the Declaration of the Nullitie or Invalidatie of Marriage, which are called Declaratorie: and in many other things which are knowne to them that practife in the Ecclesiasticke Courts.

They doe enery day demand the Subscriptions from the Pope of such things as come from his volune tarie and proper liberalitie, as the grants of Benefices and other things, which are also generally commit- of ted to the Great Penstentiarie, and all matters which pertayne to Justice in things Ecclesiasticall the. row all parts of the World, as also in things profant of the temporall patrimonic of the boly Church of Rome, and of any other place of the World which have reconsist to the Court of Rome, by reason of the per fon being Ecclesiasticall, or by Princes sending it, or by consent of the parties. The Pope for the more easse dispatch of Sutors in all these things, hash ordayned two Audiences, in one of which they demand matters of Grace, in the other those of Iustice.

Vicario di Ro-

2.Pet.2.7.

yea is increa-fed with boldneffe and frequenty in hope of Dispeniations. finnes being thus made both veniall

his Maieftie,

But for these and the like Officers, the Vice-chancellor, the Audience of the Chamber (as in Counfellors of were his prime Counfel) the primate dispatches by the Secretarie, the Chamberlan (which hath power in the Temporall State) Treaturer, Aduocate, Proctor, Commissaries, Marshalls (to one of which the Whores of the Citie pay a yeerly Taxation, which they call Tribute) I omit and 20 referre the Reader to the Author. The last he mentions is the Vicar of Rome, who hath the same authoritie which the Pope hath over the Priests in all things, in Rome and in the Diocese, hearing all Clergie cales as Ordinarie; imposeth Penance, conferreth Sacraments, calleth Congregations, vifits Churches and Monasteries, makes Inquisition, correcteth, punisheth, remooueth and giverh Benefices : his authoritie extends fortie miles out of Rome, in some cases. The Pope hath allo given him all those Pontificalia, which every Ordinarie exercifeth in his Diocefe, as to confecrate places profane, to reconcile fuch as are profaned, to promote to holy Orders, to punish Blasphemies, Vsuries, Persuries, Inceles: and in case of corporall punishments to fend them to the Secular Ludges. He hath foure Notaries or publike Scribes, and two Vicars substitute. So farre is the Pope degenerated from a Bilhop in any thing but Title, and ving that onely, that 30 through coneton fress with sayned words be might make merchandise of men, as trapslucroscopians, a lower of filthy gayne (even than of Cercia uns hithinesse) yea, of the soules of men, which are recknown. ned among the Babrlonian wares of their Merchants of the earth. And what elfe are thefe difpensations thus abused, but soule-fale, which is made more euident (is any thing more impuwhiles their fin dent then a Witore !) by their Taxa Camera, a Booke published in print, whereby men may know the prices of their Abiolutions for Simonie, Sodomie, Incelt, Homicide, and other the Master and Monster sinnes and degenerations of mankind. In which marke also, that being breaches of the Law of God, an inferior Penitentiarie by his Booke of Taxation can abfolue, but those crimes against humane Lawes require the chiefe Penitentiarie to turne the Law into a Net, and become a good Sponge-man to exenterate his purse more thorowly.

And as Rome by Dispensations is made a Merchants shop, Litims officina capturarumg, improbarum, where are kept perpetuall Marts of Sacriledge, which make finnes not onely Veniall but Venall; and Golden Canons become Lesbian Rules by Papall Leaden Bulls, flexible and pliantaccording to the price and banke of the Romijo money changers : so by Indulgences hath the beene indu gent to all her Chapmen (except they wanted money) and hath made them the foundatiand renall.

Budde Affeling. on of the Tower of Babylon; in this, Induigences and Dispensations agreeing that nothing hath more rayfed, nothing more razed her gorgeous and glorious Fabriques; Henrie the eight, wpon the one occasion forfaking wonted commerce with Rome, and Luiber by the other proudked to open his mouth fo wide and loud, that he awakned all Emope to behold her filthy whoredomes. And if any thinke the later times either more Cafta, or more Cana, let him obserue what Nous bone, in Nous Homo, an vnknowne Supplicant of Rome, hath reuealed touching the mysteries of the a Supplication

Datesis (the Office where matters of Benefices are dispatched) where the bestowing of Benefices is deterred, that inquirie may be made of the richest Competitors; each Liuing is charged with a pension of halfe, or a third, or two thirds of the worth, and then by another Ordination by present payment of fine yeeres purchase extinguished. As if the Benefice bee worth three hundred crownes a yeere, a pention is imposed of two hundred, leauing one hundred for the Incumbent; who paying one thousand crownes and a hundred more for Seales and Expedition, buyes repentance at a deare rate. The Regressian and Expellatina forbidden by the Councell of Trent, are delixled with Coadinterships, fold for a yeeres profit in colour of expediting Bulls, with 60 assurance of future succession; by which and like meanes (you may not call that Simonie which the Pope doth; and it is disputable amongst them, whether the Pope can commit that sinne, although the very name comes from Simon Magne his feeking to contract with Simon Peter) Paul the fifth is reported to have extracted out of his Lead twentie hundred thousand Scutes, to buy Lands for his Nephew (or ionne) Borgbefine. The truth of which, by the Registers

(faith the Author) in the Office of Bettus, a publike Notarie, in a particular kept fecret, appeareth.

d. IIII.

Hus have we feene the Popes Temporalties, arifing from Compiracies against Emperours, his Collations from the spoile of all Kines and Demos of the State of the S rours, his Collations from the spoile of all Kings and Princes of their Inuestitures, in pretence of Simonie, to further intentions and extentions of Simonie; his Difpenfations, Factors and Bawds for Compenfations , by this Man of Sinne , which thus finned and kept a Trade, Shop, Mart, Sale, and gaine of Sinne: but that which had leaft they of reason, and yet was the right fore-legge of the beaft, whereon he had fireft ftanding, whereby he had securest holding his prey, wherewith he made strongest fights against his Adwinters, was Indulgences. And whereas the River of the Popes Eden is parted into four e beads, Gen. 2.10. 12. ueritries, was summeret, com whitees the function use types emers is parted any lower could forth to it.

this first compasses the whole Lond of Hailla, where there is sold, and the Gold of the Lond with suffice. It is

good, of which the Author of the Historic of the Councell of Trent, relates that this meanure

good. Of which the Author of the Historic of the Councell of Trent, relates that this meanure of gaining Money was put in practife, after Pope Vrban the second had gimen a plenarie Indulgence to of gaining Oreoney was pain in practice, after eyes tribuil integration to a given a precome is catalogisted of all the flowled make were in the Holy Land; imitated by his Successor; fines of whitch granted it to those that maintained a bouldware, if they went not in perfect. And after, the same Indulgence: or Pardont were given, for taking Armes against those that obeyed not the Church of Rome, although they were were given, for taking Armes against those that obeyed not the Church of Rome, although they were Christians: and for the most part infinite exactions were made under those presences, all which, or the Constitutes: and for not must put simples constitute more more or more or more or not to the constitute of the constitut to me and the state of the stat manors necourse annuses. Annausomous on execution of thu emergrife of Leo bad fome particular newber pious nor bosest, normithflanding many of the Grents made by the preceding Popes, bad 30 calls more winist, and were exercised with more America and Extertion. He diffriented part of the transfer of the standard annular manufacture of the standard manufacture of the standard manufacture. causes more commit, and arresped or well forme, sining to disters persons the Resemble of disters Products.

Hersels before it was reasped or well forme, sining to disters persons the Resemble of disters Products and referring lower also for his some Exchanges. The Indulgences of Saxonic, and from thence to the Sea, be gave to Magdalenc his Sister, Wife wate Franceschero Cibo, Baitard Some of Innocent the sight; by resource of which marriage, thu Leo was created Cardenall at the age of four event years. She to make the help of st, committed the care of practing the Indulgences, and exacting the yeares. She to make the vest of st. committee the care of preacting the inautement, and executing the Mosey time heremoldists, a Genca Merchaust, (now a Bishop and Merchaust too) who from Minister she with binefift, who agained as nothing but game: which would not vige the Hermite Friers (as backberne the cuit time of Saxonie in this case) but Dominicans, which to amplife the value, space many frange things; and in Tauernes, games, and other things not fit to bee named, fpent that which

many prange times; and it asserted, genet, one over tomics not pit to be mance a front into twitten go the people for and from their necessaries expense, to purchose the shadle meet.

De this mence Mattin Luther on Hermite First, first began to fleake this menter, bear and their present for; and after being promoted by the Pardomert, be for himself to be fluster this matter, being defirence ching, for the rootes and foundations of the Dostrine of Indulgences. He published ninesis five Conclusions berein, to be disputed on m Wittenberg, which none accepted : but Iohn Thecel proposed others contrarie in Frankfort of Brandeberg. Luther processed to write in defence of his, and John Ecchius to oppofe; and the se Writing the ing some to Rome, Sylvester Prierias, a Dominican Frier, wrote against Luther: which consessation inforced both the one and the other partie to passe to other things of grea-LARLOCT: Which consignation inforced a via 100 one amin ton uner parties to page to uner similar to general te importance. For the Dollrine of Indulgences basing not been well-examined in former Ages, the efforce and causes of them were not well understood. Some thought to they were nothing but an absolution made by Authoritie of the Prelate from. Penance, which the Church in most accient times imposed Doltrine oil and the Authorities of the Prelate from. Penance, which the Church in most accient times imposed. 50 may of Interior of the resume four temperature of the many of Discipline vom the positions, and the many of Discipline vom the positions, and the many of Discipline vom the positions, and the many of the man normal, after acceptate to the formacettame extension acceptance to move the two way the Coninfilm) and that they delinered us not from paring the dark due to the Mintee of God. Others though I Durate point
but they fried from both. But they were divided; some thinking that they freed us, though nothing
one of them, were given in recompence, others faid, that by reason of mutuall participation in charitie of the mem- Effects of the bers of holy Church the Penance of one might bee communicated to another, and free birns by this opinion of men

Composition. But because it formed that this was more proper to mean of holy and author the hosts it is and unper the authorise of Prelates, there are fa shird opinion, which made them in part an absolution, (because crogation. authoritie was necessary for them) and in part a Compensation. But because the Prelats lined not in 63 Such fort as they could pare much of their Merits to others, there was made a treasurie in the Church, full of the Merits of all those who had more then would serue their owne turne: the dispensation whereof is committed to the Pope, who when he giveth Indulgences, recompenseth the debt of the Sinner, by afficiency formuch in value out of the Treasure. It being opposed that the Merits of Saints being sinite, thu treasure might be diminished; they reasure might be diminished; they added the Merits of Christ which are insinite: which caused

The settings then so uncertaine, and had no other foundation then the Bull of Clement the fixt. made for the lubilee, 1 3 5 0. Wherefore Thecel, Echius, and Prierius, laid for their ground worked the Popes Authoritie, and Confent of the Schoolemen, concluding that the Pope not being able to erre in matters of Faith, and himselfe publishing the Indulgence, it was necessarie to beleeve them. as an Article of Faith. This made Martin to paffe from Indulgences to the Popes Authoritie, Oc.

Pope Adrian

After Leos death, Adrian succeeded, who being a Denine, had written in that matter, and though After Loos deate, Autuan Jucceeach, woo eveng a Leavine, one written in the matter, and wouse to establish by Destrine by Applicated Derect, but is that as Indulgence being granted to one which flatt does not be the state of the a Worke, the Worker obtained by founding to grant a specific proportionable to the Worker, whiching 10 Luthers obietion thus answered, (How a peny could gaine so great Treasure) and yet Indulgences remaining in request, seeing he that hath not all, hath his proportionable part. But Cardinall Caietan told him it was better to keepe this fecret, lest the Popes grant might feeme to profit nothing, that Indulgences are but absolutions from Penance imposed in confession onely: and if he would restore the dissified pententiarie Canons, men would glads feete Indusfernes. This being proposed in the Penten-tiary Court, Cardinall Puccio, Datarie to Pope Leo, a diligent Minisser to sinde out Money, (which had counsailed Leo to those Indulgences, and was now cheese Penitentrarie) related to the Pope with a oda companea secus conse sumangenes, nome um consecut per menu consecut per menu a general algorist est proported for want of the ancient scale, whereas now every one would be a ladge and examine the reasons; and in stead of curing they would kill. At length the Cardinall of Voltetta propo- 20 fed the way to extinguish Herestes, to bee not by Reformations, but by (Insados, (as is said before.) Hift.C.T.1.8. And in the Councell of Trent, when Indulgences came to bee examined, the Bybop of Modena told And in the Connected of Techniques of manageness came to ver examines, the sympol of accounts take them, they would fink it difficult, and to require a line time, it being impossible to make that matter plaine, but by determining first whether they be Absolutions, or compensations and a laffstages, or whether they remit the penalties impossed by the Confession only, or all that are due; whether the treafure be of the Merits of Christ onely, or of the Saints also ; whether they extend to the dead, or though fure be of the CMerius of Christ outly, or of the Saints also; whether they extend to the dead, or though the receives professes nothing; with other difficulties. But to determine that the Charch was great them, and that they are profitable to those whose worthly receive them, needed on great displanting and the complete without estimated to the complete without estimated to the complete without estimated to the control of the control of

Tract.de tub. Jo. Indulgence, it is not amiffe to recite some part, in which every Pilgrime to Rome hath power

Philip on. Indulgence, it is not amulte to recite iome part, in which case, y against to adjudge all Papall Mannay Links granted, to chale his Confessor or Confessor, to whom hee guest full power to adjudge all Papall Mannay Links granted, to chale his Confessor with the date in the was kinn trust, confessor. grantes contine in continuo or continuo y continuo professi and ij be dies in the way being truly configlied, that be be quite free, and absoluced from, all bus sume: and moreouser, we command the Angels of Paradit is the they come projected from a non-parent; som more than the command to Angels of Paradit is that they carrie the some time to glary of Paradit, being fully absiliated from Paragators.

Thoulastic, 63, Thoulastic, a Niew speaking of Baniface the minth his Indulgences, latch that his paradones got in Plat in Ren.

Some one Prosince by fale of them, one hundred chousand Florens, releasing all sames to such Pair him s. Different reasons of the pair T.Gaft. in Dill. ging, a draught of Wine or Beere, a game at Tennis, and sometime a venereal Act. Pope Akaander the fixt gaue thirtie thousand yeares Indulgence, for the saying of a certaine Prayer to Saint Ame. And Inline his warring Succeffor gaue large Indulgences to every man which should kill a French-man, with whom he had Warres. Others to Stations, Rolaries, Croffes, Churches, Images, Graines, Pilgrimages, Prayers, throwing Wood into the Fire to burne Heretickes,

Io. Evift, 144. P.Dam.ev. ad do an Sur.OA.

and other like parts of Faith and Charitie. But let vs come to the Originall of this finke, Some ascribe their beginning to Pope Iohn, about the yeare 880. which yet is but giving his opinion of them that die in Warre against Insidels, not an Indulgence to any. Petrus Damanus penance with a thouland ftripes, and fue thouland ftripes with once finging the whole Pfalter, with other voluntarily imposed taskes. Signius tels of Pope Alexandar, about the same re-Ectoff-1.25 time. Anno 10 71 consecrating the Church of Cassimum, and giving great induspences to all present; which brought thither most Italian Princes and Bishops, and Agnes the Empresse. Some tell of Gregorie the first, in the time of publike Pestilence, enioyning a publike kind of Penance, the Letanies, and Stations or visiting on fet daies certaine Churches, with prayers for deliverance, and remission to be given by the Priests, to such as penitently confessed their finnes. These Stations gaue occasion to Bonface the eight, of proclaiming his lubilee every secular years in imitation of the Secular games, which Clement reduced to fiftie, and Sixtus Quartus to fine and twentie. These Inbilees begunne in Anno 1 3 0 0. have Indulgence generation, 60 Iewish and Ethnicke imitation, which the other haue little Commerce with, as being void of Roff. ett. 18. Commerce. Bilhop Fifter of Rochefter writing against Lather, doth more firly make Indulgence, a Daughter of Purgatorie Family : Quamdiu enim (faith he) nulla fuerat de Purgatorio cura, nemo quasiusi Indulgentias. Nam ex illo pendet omnis Indulgentiam, existimatio. Si tollas Purgatorium, quor sum Indulgentis opus erit ? Caperunt igitur Indulgentia pestquam ad Purgatory

CHAP.6.S.4. Popish Indulgence Daughter of Purgatorie. The We and abuse. 1263

eruciatus aliquandiu trepidatum est. An l'indeed Purgatorie hath beene the gamefuliest sire to the Poor, and as a pamefull-gaine-toole Mother, might well procreate this Daughter: both iffuing from conceit, that temporall punishment remaineth to be satisfied, after the fault of sinne remitted. Therefore have they invented that Treasurie of the Merits of Christ and the Saints to bee this way employed, a name fitting the nature, being the best Treasure, (for external Treasures) which ever the Popehad; in warre to pay Souldiers, warring in his cause, at their owne cofts, in peace to fill his Coffers. But I a vs looke to a purer generation, whereof this is

the corruption and degeneration. When as in the first times of the Church, onely feare of God and Ecolofia ficall Discipline to held men in awe, the Magistrates being Ethnicke; seuere Canons, and sincere Zeale held things in order. And if men transgressed, yet either for intention of their superabundant forrow, or for encouragement and prouocation to Martyrdome, or in danger of death relaxation was made and Indulgence; the Church receiving some satisfaction for the externall scandall, and beleeming that God for the merit of his Sonne, and propente mercy was fatisfied allo in that facrince of a contrite heart and broken spirit; Ged graciously accepting that Care, feare, clea- 2 Cm 70 ring of ones selfe, zeale, indignation, desire, and revenge, (the affects and effects of true repentince) and the Church imitating the mercy of the heatenly Father; as weetee in the incessusous Corinthian. This satisfaction did not by merit redeeme, but in Faith and Penauce appeale him, being reconciled in his Sonne ; for he sheweth Mercy (not Merit) to thousands in them. Adulterous him, being reconciled in his Sonne; for he theweth Merey (not Merit) to thing axis in total committee of that love him and keepe his Commandements: he two ning to them when they turne to him. Includences of Indule, and

that toue our and reepe ous Commandements to be and priper and Dispensations were adulterously commixed to destruction of this both publike and pripers. nate Penance, when men were taught in stead of a Contrite hears, to give a contrite purse; and in flead of fatisfying God, (to viethat word) that is, appealing and meeting him by repentance, doing what he exacts and expects; or fatistying the Church in bir Sanctions, by externall humiliacion, tellifying internall humilitie and conversation; to put over all to a Jubilee and Plenarie Indulgence. Which if they bee good, why doth not the Popes Charitie freely gine what he freely received? What greater Simonie then fale of Merits, the chiefe graces of the holy Ghoft; yea, of Christs owne Merits : And what shall become of this Treasurie after the last day! Let Bellarmine and Valentianus alledge the communion of Saints, and other Scriptures of fee-

30 ming supercrogation, as Col. 1. 24. and the power of the Keyes, yet doth Valentia confesse their Gree de Valent. nourite, whence followes their inualencie and vanitie. Once ; their Money-valencie and Man. de Indulg. vid. valency, was not begun before by Gregorie the fewenth against the Emperor, as is said, and by Vr. Spul. 1.5, 68. ban heere applied to the Holy Land Warre. Yea, thefe of Vrban did but give occasion to the after Popes, to make them so strong pillars of the Babylonicall Tower, the Indulgences being then but Calnes, which after grew to be Bulls, as appeareth by the various reports of this his Speach, and Act in the Councell of Claremont. I have read feuen or eight feuerall Orations, written most of them by men of that time, and some professing themselves present, which yet have made it the triall of their wits, what they could, or elfe have added what Vrban at divers times, did fay or write, or other Popes after him : the later composing themselues to their own

40 times, when Indulgences were common and current. You have heard Robertus and Fulcherius Vid. GeRa Dei already. Baldricus the Arch-bishop being present, delivers that part of his speech, which looks for France. this way in these words: Confessio peccatorum surum ignorantiam, securi de Christo colestem pasciscimini veniam. Guibertus, perorauerat vero excellentiss, omnes qui se ituros vouerant, (in his long Oration I find nothing to this purpole) Beati Petri potestate absoluit, eadem ipsa authoritate Apoffolica firmanis, Gro. Malmefbury had it of those which heard it in this fense, Ituri habentes per G.Malm.La. Des concession & beats Petri prinilegium omnium absolutionem criminum, & hac interim latitia laborem Earmin hath itiners alleutam, babituri post obitum fasticis martyry commercium. Vitriacus Bishop of Acon, Omnibus the fave. in remissionem omnium peccatorum peregrinationem iniungens. William Archbishop of Tyre thus, Nos ac. his.it. autem de miserucordia Domini & Beatorum Petri & Pauli authoritate consist sidelibus Christianu qui W.Ty. hill.l.1. 50 contra cos arma susceperint, & onus sibi buiu peregrinationis assumferint, iniunct as sibi pro sus delettis

panitentias relaxamus. Qui autem ibi in vera panitentia decesserint & peccatorum indulgentiam & fru-Eum aterna mercedis se non dubitent babituros. M. Paris atter them, & more fitted to Indulgences, Nos autemde Omnipotentis Dei maxime & BB. App. eius Petri & Pault autborutate confift, ex si'a quans nobis (licet indignis) Deus legandi atej, folsendi consulti potestatem, omnibus qui luborem situm m propris personis subierint & expensis, plenam suorum peccatorum, si veraciter fuerint corde contrità Gore confess, veniam indus gemus & in retributione instorum salutic aterna poll cemur augmentum. Thus Matth. Para the later, perhaps from some later Pones, * which after Vrban had broken the Ice gaue further his very words Indulgence to the spirit of Indulgences, til (like the Frog in the fable) they cracked themselves in arcin Pope funder with (welling. Some you're mention only the ment of the worke, some adde the power Grigorus laof the Keyes in loofing, or abloluing from finne in the Conscience, others absolution from entry-

ned penances (by the Confesior) the Lift to a plenary Indulgence, yet at most but an absolution granted, dans and that from penall Canons, as it were by commutation of penance, in flead of that imposed by fore that in the Ghoftly Father, or Canonical fentence of the Prelate, undertaking in person, or by purie in calcium and maintenance of another this peregrination. Vpon this timber they foone after built hay and leaders. flubble, which hath by Luthers kindling fet Rome on fire.

In following times, this Expedition and Indulgences thereof, were followed by the See of all opinions of fatisfying God for former finnes or imputations (as in Henry the Second for Beckets there Man Parrie of the expiated by this Warre. Secondly, of freeing of others foules hereby out of Purrit and it. it.listons before gatory. Thirdly, of freedome from Oathes, as is before mentioned out of the Councell of Line. Fourthly, of Immunity of persons and goods, as of Priesls to be absent, and yet taking the profits of their Liuings for three yeares present, and to be free from payments; Laymen freed from Collections. Taxations and other publishe grieuances. Fiftly, against private Sutes, their perfons and goods after the Croffe received, to be vnder Saint Peters and the Popes protection and the defence of the Church, by speciall Protectors appointed, that till their returne or death certainly knowne, none might meddle with them under paine of Excommunication (a good pro-of uilo for Bank-rupts.) Sixtly, the proportion of this Indulgence to the proportion of ayde or countell (concilium vel auxilium) or money that way employed. Seuenthly, the Suffrage and Prayers of the Synod, that this lourney might profit worthily to their faluation. Eightly, power for all whomsoener but Regulars to goe, though vnst; redeeming, changing, or deferring ither the Popes grant. Likewife, they increased finne by this meanes, Murtherers, Theenes, Adulterers, Bank-rupts, and others leaving the Holy Land for refuge against Law, and for safety of them and theirs, yea, for Merit and Indulgence; that becomming hereby the very finke of finne, confluence of all villaine, the heart and centre of abomination : as appeares in Vitriacus And as morally, so also doctrinally, Purgatorie, Merit, Supererogation, Superstitious Pilgri- 20

Hores in Faith and Manners

Pag.485.

Pag 701.

by these Expe- mages, and the like, tooke further rooting by these Holy Land Expeditions; but especially the by thefe Expe-ditions, and Popes power hereby increased in and ouer Kings and Kingdomes, thus intermedling, peruerting Prigram ges to and preuenting courses of Justice by his Indulgence-Buls horned with Excommunication; h the Holy Lands impoling this Expedition on Kings as Penance : by exhaulting their Treasures, Souldiers and Forces, by bulying them farre off, whiles he and his might take and make opertunitie to adulterate all at home : by pathing with these hornes of Indulgences against Kings themselves; withgreatby Holy out other force, employing the forces of one Princeagainst another, and of their owne subjects Land warres, against their Souereignes. So was King John forced to jurrender his Crowne, and take it of the

Pope in farme, the French and his owne being armed against him : fo Conrade, Memfred Ledis

Laws, and other Kings of Sicel; George, King of Bohemia, &c. By this was the Imperial Eagle 19 plucked and stripped, greater Indulgences being given, that more money might bee gathered to M.P.ain, p. 335.

M. Flain, p. 335.

M. Glengers with Logaline power, which by Commanding, Minacing, Excommunicating, P. etching, Praying, besides, his white white Bull, which might mooue stony hearts (melting out their metall) as to succour the Holy Land, indeed, to ruinate the Emperour. For which cause he had procured a Tenth, of Clergy and Laity in many Kingd mes; and that with first Inquisition of the value to the Popes best commodite, even of the fruits before the Haruest, present pay to bee made vader paine of Interditing and Excommunicating: which made the Prelates fell their

Chalices and Church goods, that I mention not the viurers his Chaplen, and Agent Stephen had to byte, flay and denoure the flocke with further exactions. This was Gregore the Compiler 40 of the Decretals. These moneyes the Pope gaue to lobn de Bresnes, to warre against the Emperour then in the Holy Land, and forced thirther by the Popes Excommunication. He extorted also a fifth of beneficed Forreiners for that purpose, & absolued his Subjects from their Allegeance. And when some expostulated with the King of England, for suffering his Kingdome to be made a prey, He answered, I neyther will nor dare contradict the Lord Pope in any thing: so that hee obtayned a fitch in England : and after that, fent Peter Rubeus to new vn-heard of execrable ex-

actions by lyes and canilations. What shall I tell * of Rustander, which was sent to gather new Tenths, and to exchange the Kings Vow for the Holy Land, into a Sicilian Expedition against Memfrede, with equall Indulgences? Yea, greater Indulgences are granted to such as would warre against Christians, if the Popes Enemies, as before you have read, then in the Holy 10 Land against the Turkes.

* Spalat. derey. Contrary to Indulgences are Interdictments, as Samfons Foxes having a fierie conjunction in their tayles ; of which Hildebrand is noted first Author; by which, if a Prince offended, his Subiects and whole Dominions were Interdicted, that is in Papall Interpretation, a publike Excommunication was denounced against him and his, and all external publike Holies suspended. You shall have it in Mat. Paris his words of King John, who being offended that the Pope had rejected from the Archbishopricke of Canterburie, the Bishop of Narwich, whom the greater and founder part of the Monkes in due folemnity, by the Kings confent had chosen, obtruding one of his Cardinals Stephen Langton upon him, whom he refuted : the Pope cauted the Bi- 60 shop of Ely and Worcester, to denounce his Interdict, which was also contrary to Papall Priviledges observed. There coased therefore in England all Ecclesiastical Sacraments (except confession, and housell in danger of death, and Baptisme of children.) The bodies of the dead we carred out of Cities and Villages, and buried likes Dogges in by-wayes, and Disches without Prayers and Ministerse of the Priests: Whereupon divers Bishops for looke his Land and such combustions followed, that

CHAP. 6.S.4. King Iohn Subiected by Papall Indulgences and Interdict.

the Pope excommunicated him (which was denounced by the former Bishops) after which hee absoluted his Subjects from their Alleageance, and prohibited them in paine of Excommunication to apply this table, counfell, conference. All which yet were of no great force till the difmall fentence of deposition, nor that but by Indulgences and Crusados.

For the Pope writ to the French King Philip to vindertake the execution, for the remission of all bis stones; and expelling the King of England, to held the Kingdome of England to him and his Sucthe finances, was a proper and the second of King in this Expedition, labouring to remenge the quarrell of the vinuerfall Church. Hee ordained also Ang mina Lapaines, incoming to energy to expect the state of the whofever flowed heft me his good, or help to expend that the oblinate King, they flowed temante for the beaute of the Church (such as they which out the Sepulchre of om Lord) in their goods and

persons and suffrages of soules, (or delinerance of soules out of Purgatory.)

The iffue whereof was, that great provisions were made on both fides, King John hatting at Barbamdowne, threefcore thousand armed men, besides, a strong Nauy at Sea : the French on the otherfide was come to the Sea with his owne and the English, an innumerable Army, when Pandulfus the Popes Legate craftily fent to him to latisfie the Pope, which he could no way doe but by refigning his Crowne and Kingdome, to receive it againe in fee farme of the Pope, doing him homage, and paying him rent: which when the King had granted, Pandulfus fought to periwade the French party to peace, and the English to returne. The French hereupon stormed, inuaded on the Earle of Flanders, King Johns Confederate, who now with his forces fuccored him with five

hundred thips, which tooke three hundred French thippes richly prouided, and burned one hun- Miferable dred others: the French being croffed in a double fense, not without great effusion of Christian warres and dred others: the French being croffed in a double tenie, not without great entition of Children bloud is the Pope ayming at his owne defigned greatnesse, to vie the French against the English bloudshed of Children by and the Subjects against their Prince; as afterward taking the Kings part against his Subjects, Papali proand excommunicating the French, that as in the Fable, he might play with both, and pray on curement.

both; ipending themselves in mutuall emulations. Yet would not his Subiects obey him, prouiding great forces to inuade France, till the Sentence were releated: whereupon he entertayned Stephen, and the other Bishops falling at their feet with teares, defiring them to have mercy on him , and the Kingdome of England, who King abased to to thereupon absolued him, swearing to the conditions propounded : his Designes against France, his subjects. through that delay prooued frustrate notwithstanding. In the Pope and his Bishops, he sound To little certainty that he fent Embassadors to the King of Morece offering vassallage to him, if he would protect him; which being refused, knowing (faith the Author) that the Pope was about all mortall men ambitions and proud, and an infatiable thurster after money, and waxen, and prone to all Inceedid of fix villantes, for bribes or pramises, he sent him Treasure, and promises of more, and alway to bee his street most the most had been provided to be a solution and a sent the sent three most had been provided to the most had been provided to the sent three most had been provided to the Subject, if hee would confound the Archbishop, and excommunicate the Barons whose parts he had before taken; that he might so imprison, disherit and slay them. Innocent was contented to be thus nocent, and released the Interdict, which had continued fixe yeares, three monethes and fourteene dayes, to the irreparable loffe of the Church in Temporals and Spiritu-

40 als. The Pope taking part now with the King, hee had opportunitie to revenge himfelfe of his Peeres, who hereupon ray fed Civill Warres, and fware themselves to the French Kings Sonne, England remayning thus on fire, till the death of King John, (which hapned amidft these flames)

England remaying this of are, the trace was to the terror of in Successor in 6 daring attempts against the Pope,

And thus you see what Crusadoes and Indulgences could doe in those dayes, in and one this Intendids,

And thus you see what Crusadoes and Indulgences could doe in those dayes, in and one this Intendids,

And thus you see what Crusadoes and Indulgences could doe in those dayes, in and one this Intendids,

And thus you see what Crusadoes and Indulgences could doe in those dayes, in and one this Intendids,

And thus you see what Crusadoes and Indulgences could doe in those dayes, in and one this Intendids. Kingdome: Interdicts can intend and pretend nothing, but rayfing Diffcontents and Rebellions, as if God should impiously be deprised of his worship, and men vncharitably of the meanes of their faluation, for one mans fault, if a fault, if not the Popes only fault as well as tyrannicall punishment. For Gods Law forbids the fathers eating (ower Grapes to for the children teeth on edge, Eq. 18, and the sounce to be reithe suthers fault, but the soule that someth shall doe: which the Venetian lately 50 valerifood, and nobly vindicated against the Pope, as King lobn would have done, if the times

had beene answerable. But Indulgences you see heere, were the Executors and Executioners of the Popes fury, even to the subjection of the most viwilling Kings and Kingdomes , which is the Mafter-piece of Popery in the getting. And for the keeping and mayntayning this Monarchie, Crusadoes and Indulgences stayd not heere, but by the same Innocent (the first Decreer also of Transubstantiation) was extended against the Albigenses, or Waldenses, then reputed Heretikes, (as wee now are by the Papilts) and condemned for those Do-Orines, which they had learned out of the Scriptures against thet Papall Pride and Superflition. Other things are afcribed to them, as now to vs by the lefuits, with like Truth and Charity, as out of their owne Authors which best knew, is euident. As Vrbans intent had beene 6c against the Antipope, which his Successors after followed, so Innocent and other Popes disposed

the Croffe and Indulgence against those which mayntay ned the Truth of the Gospell; and in all Albienstone likelihood had but for this opposition, ruined the Papacie. He fent Preachers (layth Mathew wale Paris in whose steps we still insist) was all the Regions of the West, and entoymed Princes, and other Per, 321.
Conflian people for remission of their sinnes, that they should signe themselves with the Crossic error out A.1213.

Pophist Fran.

Poplinerius faith, the Waldenfis against the will of all Christian Princes (so did the Apostles against the will of Ethnike Princes, (and Princes called Christians, were now made drawke with the Warres cup) fowed their Doctrine, little differing from that which the Protestants now embrace, not only thorow all France, but almost all the Coasts of Europe. For the French, Spaniards, of English Scots Italians, Germanes, Bobemians, Saxons, Polonsans, Lishunians, and other Nations. haue stiffely defended it to this day. One of Innocents Decrees in the Councell of Lateran which also decreed Transubstantion, is, that if a Temporall Lord being required and warned by the Church, shall neglect to purge his Countrey from hereticall filthinesse, the Bishops shall excommunicate him: if he continue so a yeare, let it be signified to the Pope, that he may free his

vasfals from their alleageance, and expose his Land to bee occupyed of Catholikes, which may

posetle it without contradiction, the Heretikes being rooted out, &c.

fince Luber and Calsine the lefuites have laboured.

Indulgences were preached in this fort, the Text, Pfal.94.16.18 bo will rife up for mee against Probert, ferms, Indulgences were preacned in this sort, the Land fee belowed, how great the malice of HeSer. 6a. the entit deers, &c. or the like applyed to the people: Ton fee belowed, how great the malice of Hein the sound of the control of 2.Sr.6., the cutil deer, Ge. or the like approve to the proper to the proper state of sample from a Christian 2. See D.F for de retikes is, Ge. Therefore the bady Mother (Burch, though ownsilling, callet begans it touched with the honour of God. Armie. Whosever therefore bath the zeale of the faith, whosever is touched with the honour of God: who soener will have this great Indulgence, let him come and take the signe of the Crosse, and torne him-Celfe to the Christian Souldierie. Some thinke that the Crouched Order of Crucigers, was then confirmed by this Innocent; many Croffed, and going to or returning from Spria, winning the Popes fauour by their Exploits against the Albigenses, I might adde the Orders of Militarie Knights, as Templars, Holpitulars, and others which hence had their originall, and were forms tent in wealth and numbers, that they could beard Kings, and had their dependance and privi-

Friers. Sec Ofher,

Dominicke Author of the Dominicant, preached to convert with the word, and had helpers with the Sword, to expugnate those which his word could not. These were called, France de X militia B. Dominici, and they and their wives were a certaine guilde, called the Brethren and Softers of Penance of Saint Dominicke. Likewise, the Office of the Inquisition was instituted by this Innocent , charging the Bilhops in remission of their sinnes, to receive his Commissariet , and to aftemetry, Classing use simply in Irection to the Irection of Committee, we receive on Committee are to all filtering and the arming furthete Springer and Sunday against those backs were by the Inquisity four named, and as the Layman confifers their good, and a fit them out of their polyfilms. And who, four found the amount of filter them, we great that Induspence of their finner which we great to those which wife the flaires of Snine Peter, or Same Inner. This he wrote in behalfe of Ramer and Onido. But after this Inquitition was delegated to Dominiche, for the Countries of Pronence, who rayled this Dominican Order, (ordure) whose chiese care should be against Heretikes: he somewhat verified the Popes Dreame, feeming to flay the Church of Laterone, beeing readie to fall, which the 40 Franciscans apply to Saint Francis. And indeed, had not these in this Age vphold the Lateran Babylon, together with the Schoolemen, * the best of which were Friars, and the Canonists; it is chiefe School- likely the Albigenfes, Waldenfes, Pooremen of Lions, Inzabbatati, (other names they give them) men were De had then ruined it, they then with like Arts, Dispensations, and Reputation doing that, which

Franciscane.

Pet de vin.Lt The new Locusts * supplanted the former Clergie, exercised Penances Vnetions, Baptismes, and began two Fraternities, wherein they received men and women so generally, that scarsly any were free: the people being unwilling to begge others preach; that the Priests were defrauded of their Tithes and had me to lisse; the Churches now retaying nothing but a Bell, and ald distite image. The Friers began at Cotta-ges, and now have Kings Houses and Palacts creeked, and having no riches are richer then all rich men; 10 whiles we begge, &c. These became acute Schoolemen, Sencentraries, Questionifts, Summifts, Quodlibetifts, and I know not what irrefragable, fubtle, Angelical Doctors and Disputants, bringing in Oppositions of Science fally called, Languishing about Questions and strifes of words: these made Duninitie a Linley wolsey garment; not as their Master of Sentences, of Fathers and Scriptures; but admitted Arestotle free of the Diminitie Schooles, and ploughed with an Oxe and an

Affe, their Miscelan fields. These Dominicans and Franciscans were appointed also, Inquisitores beretica pranitatio, and made many bloudy Sacrifices, for their vibloudy Sacrifice, and other Popish Herefies in pretence Sabel.En.g.l.6. of Heretical prauitie:growing into fuch numbers, that Sabelliem numbred of Dominicans, one and 60 twenty Prouinces; twentie foure thousand, one hundred forty three Couents, and in them Fryars entred, fifteene hundred Masters or Doctors of Dininitie, in all twenty fixe thousand, foure hundred and fixtie. Of Franciscans, forty Provinces devided into Warden-ships, Couents, and Places; the persons innumerable, consectured threescore thousand. Yea, the Generall promifed to Pope Pine of bodies able to ferue in his intended was against the Turke, thirty thou-

CHAP. 6.8.4. Friers numbers and cumbers, Long and bloudy marres by Crusados, 1267

and Franciscans, thirtie thouland Augustine Friars, the Carmelues more, and other Orders I mention not, nor can I number thele Locaits.

mention not, not east a manner that the infolencie of these Friats and their Papa'l print- Pag 56t. leages, adious to the Monkes and Secular Clergie. They were (latti he) Counfellors and Messenlenges, only some men, Secretaries of our Lord the Pope, getting bereby Secular fauour: quarrelling about P-z. 822. pristing of Order, that in three or foure hundred yeares the Monkes had not fo degenerated, as thefe mitiin foure and twentie yeares after their first Mansions in England, whose buildings now grow Rorall Palaces, They wait on rich men dying, extort Confessions and secret Testaments, commending themselves and their owne Order alone, sollicitous to get Priviledges; in the Courts of Kings and great 10 men, Counfellors, Chamberlans, Treasurers, makers of Marriages, Executors of Papall exactions: in their Preachings bitter or flattering, Resealers of Confessions, Contemners of other Orders, accounting the Ciltercians Semi-laikes and Rustikes, the blacke Monkes proud and Epicures, seeking to be enter- Psc. 922, tajned as Legats or Angels of God in their preaching. And if a man were confessed of his owne Priest,

what fay they, of that I did, ignorant of Theologie, the Decrees, Questions? they are blind Leaders of the blind: come to Vs, we know to disting unto leprie from leprie, know bard, difficult things and the secrets of God: whereupon Noble-men and Ladies entertayned them, contemping their owne Priests and Prelates. And to returne to Indulgences, These were the Popes Publicans, preaching the receiving of the Croste Pag. 1017. (giuing notice of such preaching before hand, and emertagned by the Clergie in Vestments with Banners and Procession) to all Ages, Sexes, Conditions, to the Sicke and Aged, the next day for money ab-20 foliaing them from their wowed Pilgrimage. But I am wearie of this stinking linke of hypocrific.

which for the World denyed the World, the Flesh for the Flesh, and obeyed to such enor-

mous rebellions.

Yet let vs examine the Ind. Igences against the Walderfes, in the yeere 1208, innumerable multitudes received the Croffe in their brefts; the Pope writ to King Philip and all his Princes, to muade Narbone, Tholonfe, and other parts. The next yeere, from all parts of France, Flan- See tille de ders, Normandie, Agustane, Burgundie, the Bishops, Earles, and Barons, with an intimite num- Christ. Ectles. ber , met at Laons and came to Byterra, where they flue fixtie thouland, promiticuously Papists Statione. and Walden fes, by admife of the Popes Legat, who faid, The Lord knoweth who are his : tome fav an hundred thouland, not sparing Sexe or Age , burning the dead bodies. Thence they went to

30 Carcaffon, where they spared onely the mens lives, not leaving them their apparell. Simon Montfort, Earle of Lescefter, was made Generall, who tooke Roger the Lord of the Countrey, and all the Countrey with an hundred Caffles, and many others rendred themselves. In the yeet 1210. was a new Expeditihn of these crossed Votaries out of France, England, and Loraine, which tooke Minerbia, where an hundred and fourescore chose rather to burne then turne : entred Tolonfe, waiting all, taking Cities and Caftles, burning fuch as would not turne. They tooke Raimund and his Castle of Therme, his Wife and Daughter; he dyed in prison, they with other Ladies in the fire. Leopold Duke of Auftria, Adolph Earle de Monte, William Earle of Juliers went thither out of Almaine. An. 1211. a new Armie from many parts, tooke many Cities and Cafiles, burning and hanging many, committing the conquered Countrey to Simon Montfort. La-40 Mallis was taken, and choise given to turne or burne, three hundred and fiftie choosing this. The

Ladie was cast in a Well and stones throwne on her. Rain and * Earle of Toolonfe had aide of the King of Arragon, and was an hundred thou- * R. Earle of fand throng (Armoricanus hath two hundred thousand) but was over-throwne by the Croffes Talent had the and Monifort , and the King of Arragon flane , and the certayne number , faith Paris , of the Country of flaine, could not be certainly numbred : fome fay two and thirtie thousand. Hence new croffed Provence . Des-Knights which ferued for Indulgence and spoile, in the yeeres 1214. and 1215. Simon possessing phine, Venaine. himselfe of the great Countries of Earle Raimsend, by the Popes procurement, and King Philips Ruthen Cadare, grant. The Warres continued 1216, 1217, 1218, in which Simon was flaine. The Warres were profecuted by Amalricus his sonne, and Lewis sonne to King Philip. These tooke Mira-

50 monda and flue Man, Woman and Child. Anno 1219. Toloule was befieged in vaine, Famine and Mortalitie plaguing the Armie. The Warre continued 1220. 1221. In the yeere 1223, the Pope lent his Legat, a Cardinall, with twentie Buhops. King Philip died and appointed twentie thousand pounds to helpe Amalriens against the Albigenses, which grew now strong in Dalmasia, Bulgaria, Croatia. Anno 1225. King Lewis made an Expedition to beliege Aumion, feuen yeeres excommunicate by the Popt, Bestrand, Geff. with an Armie of Crusado's. But Earle Raimund had plowed the grounds and preuented all Total prouition, that Sword, Famine and Peltilence diffnayed that huge Armie, wherein the King himfelfedied, and aboue two and twentie thousand of the Adadants. Loth to wearie you with such bloudie spectacles, effects of Antiphrasticall Indulgences, this Warre is said to continue about

60 feuentic yeeres. The Waldenfes encreased notwithstanding daily, and the Warre, faith Thuanus, Thu. Profit. was of no lefte weight then that against the Saracens (which occasioned this whole discourse) bift. and they were rather in the end spoiled then converted or convicted, some remayning close in An Spl. bift. Prouence, some in the Alpes, some in Calabria to our times, and some in Brisaine.

The Bobemans also were their iffae, against whom the Pope vsed like courses of Indulgences, 24.6 1992. Nannan 2

one hundred and fiftie thouland at one time croffed under Sigifmund to the war, being out of diuers Kingdomes, not to mention the Crusado's by the Cardinals of Winchester and Inlian, with innumerable bloudshed. But I am loth to lothe and wearie you with such cruell Indulgentiall morfells, the Popes feath of mans fieth to the blinded World. Those Bohemian warres had first originall from Hus his preaching, and that also against Indulgences preached against the King of Naples: they were long and bloudie, but more long and bloudie have those of this last and worst Age beene from like original, which I leave to other Authors, to reckon the many many hope dreths of thousands of Christians, which one neighbour Countrey, yea one little piece of her neighbour Countrey (not to mention others still bleeding, crying, dying) haue lost in quarrels. died in the bloud of Religion. Money is the life of merchandife, Sinowes of warre, and vphol- to der of Greatnesse, without which, Peters succession, pasce Oues, I have praced for the Faith Constantines supposed donation, and the keyes of the Kungdams of Heasen, had not prevailed to a Papall earthly Monarchie. And Indulgences and Cruiado's have heen his best both Mine and Mint for Money : first, in sharing with Kings which tooke the Croffe, and by Papall power imposed Tenths that he might have a Twentieth, as he did to Saint Lewis of France, Secondly, in letting out his Indulgences to Kings at a Rent, whereby at this day fome get more then by fome Kingdomes. Thirdly, by redeeming the Vowes by fuch meanes as you have now heard of the Friars, one binding to the Vow, another for money loofing, like a blacke and white Denill witching and vinwitching the fuperstitious vulgar. Fourthly, Kings taking the Croffe to oppresse their Subjects for the charge, with part of the purchase purchasing a Papall Absolution, 20 Fiftly, agreeing with Kings to fleece the Church for the Holy Land, that he might doe as much against the Emperour. Sixtly, letting out these Crusado's to ferme, by which Richard Earle of Cornwall, in Matt. Paris, daily fo enriched himfelfe, how much more the Pope ! the Popes preacher (playing the haruest man, to bring into his Barnes or Treasurie) that the same of his money made him to be chosen Emperour. He of one Archdeaconrie reaped fix hundred pounds. William Longfo at got by the like gift of the Pope, aboue a thousand marks. Seventhly, giving Indulgences, that is, the money which might be made of them in recompense of friendship, labours, expenses. Eightly, felling Indulgences to Churches, Images, Altars, Graines, Prave ers. &c. thorow the Christian world. Minthly, by Iubilees, whereof Crusado's were Forerunners and Apparitors. Tenthly, by difpensations the Jano, fifter and wife of this Indulgent 30 lone, or Pluto rather. Eleuenthly, by instituting Offices; Penitentiaries, Notaries, and I know not what rabble for these purposes and his Exchequer Receits, and then selling those multiply. ed Offices for the greatest summe. But who can summe vp these Accounts ? especially being workes of Darknesse, mystie mysteries; which yet are thus farre revealed, enough to proue the Author the Man of finne, which by his owne verie finne, and supposed pardon of others , hath let the raines of the World loofe to Sinne; and hereby ruled the World holding the raines in his owne hand. Once; his temporall Monarchie, Collations of Benefices, Difpensations had ne-

mayne force bett downe all Opponents abroad, and filled his Coffers at home. But for this of money, Sixtus or Xiffus the fourth, was wont to fay, that hee should never want money fo long as he wanted not a Hand and a Pen. And Xifins the fifth, in fine yeeres and a halfe had gathered five millions of treasure, notwithstanding his magnificent and admirable expenses, in Palaces, Churches, Obeliskes, Conduits, and the like. So much could Friars Minors skill of getting both Papacie and Money. And that you may know of what yfe prohibited marriages to Priefts and religious Orders are, you may consider how the Pope may make Armies of their numbers in extremitie; and of their purfes at pleasure make sponges. Pins the fourth leuied at one time of the Religions foure hundred thousand Ducats; and if he would have admitted Refignations of Benefices with Regreffes, as he was aduited, he might that way have made a million. Paul the third maintayned twelve thouland foot and five hundred horse at his pay, 50 under Charles the fift against the Lutherans, and yet rayled his house as you see : Clement the feuenth hath notwithstanding his captiuitie done more for his House. Pins the fift sent source thousand foot and one thousand horse, to aide Charles the ninth against the Protestants. But I have wearied the Reader in observing the effects of this Pope holy Expedition to Ierusalem., and the Papall advancement thereby, I will adde the vertues of those Holy Land Inhabitants, and then you shall see it the Holy Land indeed, so termed by Antiphrasis . Dienum patella operculum, Lettice sutable to the lips of His Holinesse, who may also have that Title for the selfe

uer vnder-propped this mysticall Monarchie, had not Cresado's and Indulgences awed Kings,

excited and incited furious Armies, armed furies; depopulated and ruined Kingdomes, and by

CHAP.6.S.5. English founders at Acon, Three orders of Regular Knights. 1269

ð. V.

Superstission advanced in and by the Holy Land Expeditions, and the Christians Christianitie in those parts worse then in other. Diners Sects of Christians in the East.

I I I for superstition, this voyage proued a Mart for Reliques, as is before in part oblerued of the multiplyed Croffe, of the Speare, of the Bloud of Christ, folemnely car-Tied by King Hemie to Wellminfter, of our Ladits laires, &c. Of the Crowne of Por. 731Thornes, Math. Parie tells, that Baldwin, Emperour of Constantinople before mentioned, fold it to the French King for money , to pay his Armie. Peter the pilgrime Bishop of Winchester , bequeathed inestimable summes of money to Religious Houses by him founded at Hales, The eford, Seleburne, Port smouth: and whereas two Churches had beene dedicated to Saint By English Th. Beeker at Acon, he remoued one of them to a more convenient place, and changed their Or- men der into a more competent, subject to the Templars, and gaue besides by Will fine hundred marks Pag. 634. toit. But Viriacus, the Bishop of Acon, will best acquaint vs with their conditions, who hauing reckoned the Peeres of that Kingdome, the Earle of Tripolis, Lords of Berith, Sidon, Cas- Peeres of the phas or Perphyria, Cafarea, Mount Royall, of Affar, of Ibelins, with some others; the Prince of Kingdome of pown, cappying, usparen, resource project, or anjury, or secure, with unmeromers; the France or amyone 20 Oddles, Lord of Therias; Earle of lope and Applian, Earle lise of the floatinhing flate of Re. Irrigation. 19 July wheelder of holy and venerable places there, forted and fitting to mens descuter humours; some choosing to live in the Defart called Quarantena, where our Lord was tempted, li- gustantena, uing Heremiticall liues in petie Cells; others, in imitation of Eliss in Mount Carmell neere Caphas, in Hiues of small Cells, foure miles from Acon : others, in the Desarts of Iordan; others living folitarie in the Defart of Galilee, where Christ preached. In Thabor was a Monasterie builded, and in divers other places. Others chofe rather to live in Cities, especially lerusalem, Nazareth, and Betbleem. lerusalem was the Mother of the Faith, as Rome is of the faithfull; it flands on a high Hill, lerusalem de-

is on both fides Mountaynous, abounding with Wheat, Wine, and Oile, and all temperall good 30 things: yet hath but one Fountayne, called Siles, flowing out of Sien, formetimes having little or no Waters. And asit is more holy then any place, fo it hath drawne to it more religious Perfons, Initis a Temple of huge quantitie, whence the Templars haue their name, called Salo- Templars, fo mons Temple. Whatloeuer places (in all that Countrey) our Lord trod on, are esteemed boly and called of a mons 1 comple. What to come places (in an ellas conferrated, and for precious Reliques by the faithfull; whence Religious both Clerks and Laymen, aswell militarie as of other condition, haue beene drawne thither : namely, the Bresbren tam of the Hofpitall of Saint Lohn, the Templars, and the Brethren of the Hofpitall of Saint Marie of the Dutch. The Hoftitalars were from the time of the Surians , having a Latine Church of Saint Hoftitalars. Marie, the Abbot whereof built an Hospitall in honor of Saint John Eleemon. After the Franks Expedition, Gerard the Master, adioyning some others to him tooke a religious habit and white 40 Croffe, whom Agnes the Abbeffe followed. These buried their dead in Acheldama, and whiles Acheldama

they were poore obeyed the Abbot, and payed their Tithes, and called the poore to whom they ministred, their Masters and Lords, but after became as Princes of the Earth. The Templars also Templars. were at first Lions in battell, Lambs at home, Eremites and Monkes in the Church, hauling Banners blacke and white (as mild to Christians, terrible to the Infidels) seuere in their owne societie, obsequious to the Patriarke, beloued for their Religion and humilitie, as the former, infomuch that Dukes and Princes denyed the World and followed them.

And because a threefold Cord is not easily broken, that of the Dutch Knights was added, from a Dutch Knights fmall beginning increasing into a swelling streame. For one Dutch man with his family dwelling original at lers saless, many of his Countrey Pilgrimes, which knew not the language, were glad of his 50 entertainment in a fmall Hospitall by him therefore builded, to which also he added a Chappel in honour of our Lady, and partly procured of his owne goods, partly by almes, to the poore and ficke Pilgrimes. Some Dutchmen liking the intent, gaue all they had thereto, binding themfelues by vow; and when fome of Gentle and Noble bloud had adjoyned themselues, they became both followers of the Holpitulars in their care of the poore, and of the Templars in Mili-

The Holy Land also flourished with Regulars, Religious, Anchorites, Monkes, Canons, Nuns, Holy Land Inclosed per sons, Virgins, Widowes. It was also full of peoples, Gennous, Pifans, Venetians, men fit for the Sea, and lage Couniels: Frankes, Almans, Britons, Englishmen, leffe ordered or circumspect, more impetuous, more superfluous in Dyet, prodigall in Expenses, deuout in the Church, 6. feruent in Charity, more couragious in Battell, and formidable to the Saracens: which yet for the vanitie of some, are by the Pollans, called the Sonnes of Hemandius. They which descended of the Conquerors are called Pollans, eyther because they were Pulli, in respect of the Surians, or Colus Chisbecause their Mothers were most of them Applians, the Army wanting women enough, and pro- kens or young curing from Apulsa, the neerest place of the Westerne Church. There are besides in the H ly things.

4. V.

one hundred and fiftie thouland at one time croffed under Sigifmend to the war, being out of diuers Kingdomes, not to mention the Crusado's by the Cardinals of Winchester and Julian, with innumerable bloudshed. But I am loth to lothe and wearie you with such cruell Indulgentiall morfells, the Popes feaft of mans flesh to the blinded World. Those Bohemian warres had first originall from Hus his preaching, and that alto against Indulgences preached against the King of Naples: they were long and bloudie, but more long and bloudie have those of this last and worst Age beene from like originall, which I leave to other Authors, to reckon the many many hundreths of thoulands of Christians, which one neighbour Countrey, yea one little piece of her neighbour Countrey (not to mention others ftill bleeding, crying, dying) have loft in quarrels. died in the bloud of Religion. Money is the life of merchandife, Sinowes of warre, and vphol- to der of Greatnesse, without which, Peters succession, passe Oues, I have prayed for thy Faith, Constantines supposed donation, and the keyes of the Kingdome of Heaven, had not prevailed to a Papall earthly Monarchie. And Indulgences and Crufado's haue heene his best both Mine and Mint for Money : first, in sharing with Kings which tooke the Crosse, and by Papall power imposed Tenths that he might have a Twentieth, as he did to Saint Lewis of France, Secondly, in letting out his Indulgences to Kings at a Rent, whereby at this day fome get more then by fome Kingdomes. Thirdly, by redeeming the Vowes by fuch meanes as you have now heard of the Friars, one binding to the Vow, another for money loofing, like a blacke and whire Deuill witching and vinwitching the fuperstitious vulgar. Fourthly, Kings taking the Croffe to oppresse their Subjects for the charge, with part of the purchase purchasing a Papall Absolution, 20 Fiftly, agreeing with Kings to fleece the Church for the Holy Land, that he might doe as much against the Emperour. Sixtly, letting out these Crusado's to ferme, by which Richard Earle of Cornwall, in Matt. Paris, daily fo enriched himfelfe, how much more the Pope the Popes preacher (playing the haruest man, to bring into his Barnes or Treasurie) that the same of his m oney made him to be chosen Emperour. He of one Archdeaconrie reaped fix hundred pounds. William Longit at got by the like gift of the Pope, about a thousand marks. Secenthly, giving Indulgences, that is, the money which might be made of them in recompende of friendship, labours, expenses. Eightly, felling Indulgences to Churches, Images, Altars, Graines, Prav. See Ad. and ers, &c. thorow the Christian world. Minthly, by Inbilees, whereof Crusado's were Fore-Mon. of The. runners and Apparitors. Tenthly, by dispensations the Inno, fifter and wife of this Indulgent 30 Ione, or Plato rather. Eleventhly, by instituting Offices; Penitentiaries, Notaries, and I know not what rabble for these purposes and his Exchequer Receits, and then selling those multiply. ed Offices for the greatest summe. But who can summe vp these Accounts ! especially being workes of Darknesse, mystie mysteries, which yet are thus farre renealed, enough to prone the Author the Man of finne, which by his owne verie finne, and supposed pardon of others , hath let the raines of the World loofe to Sinne; and hereby ruled the World holding the raines in his owne hand. Once; his temporall Monarchie, Collations of Benefices, Dispensations had neuer vnder-propped this myfficall Monarchie, had not Crafado's and Indulgences awed Kings.

excited and incited furious Armies, armed furies; depopulated and ruined Kingdomes, and by mayne force bett downe all Opponents abroad, and filled his Coffers at home. But for this of money, Sixtus or Xiftus the fourth, was wont to fay, that hee should never want money folong as he wanted not a Hand and a Pen. And Xiffus the fifth, in fine yeeres and a halfe had gathered fine millions of treasure, notwithstanding his magnificent and admirable expenses, in Palaces, Churches, Obeliskes, Conduits, and the like. So much could Friars Minors skill of getting both Papacie and Money. And that you may know of what vie prohibited marriages to Prieffs and religious Orders are, you may consider how the Pope may make Armies of their numbers in extremitie; and of their puries at pleasure make sponges. Pine the fourth leuied at one time of the Religions soure hundred thousand Ducats; and if he would have admitted Refignations of Benefices with Regreffes, as he was aduited, he might that way have made a million. Paul the third maintayned twelve thouland foot and five hundred horfe at his pay, 50 vinder Charles the fift against the Latherans, and yet rayled his house as you see : Clement the feuenth hath notwithstanding his captinitie done more for his House. Pins the fift sent foure thousand foot and one thousand horse, to aide Charles the ninth against the Protestants. But I have wearied the Reader in observing the effects of this Pope holy Expedition to lerasalem. and the Papall advancement thereby. I will adde the vertues of those Holy Land Inhabitants, and then you shall see it the Holy Land indeed, so termed by Antiphrasis . Disnum patella operculum, Lettice sitable to the lips of His Holinesse, who may also have that Title for the selfe

CHAP.6.S.5. English founders at Acon, Three orders of Regular Knights, 1269

Superflition advanced in and by the Holy Land Expeditions, and the Christians Christianitie in those parts worse then in other. Diners Sects of Christians in the East.

Irst for superstition, this voyage proued a Mart for Reliques, as is before in part obferued of the multiplyed Croffe, of the Speare, of the Bloud of Christ, folemnely carfemed of the multiplyed Credit, of the Speare, of the Bloud of Chrift, Islemmely car-fering free from the Westmington, of our Ladies haires, &c. Of the Crowne of Par. 721-10 First Hornes, Mark Poor tells of the Endedurin, Empereur of Confiaminesh before mentioned, told it to the French King for money , to pay his Armie. Peter the pilgrime Bilhop of Wondester, bequeathed inestimable summes of money to Religious Houses by him founded at Hales, Tik eford, Seleburne, Port fmouth: and whereas two Churches had beene dedicated to Saint By Emilia-Th. Bester at Acon, he remoued one of them to a more consenient place, and changed their Or- men der into a more competent, subiect to the Templars, and gaue besides by Will fine hundred marks Pag. 634. to it. But Viriaens, the Bishop of Acon, will best acquaint vs with their conditions, who hauing reckoned the Peeres of that Kingdome, the Earle of Tripolis, Lords of Berith, Siden, Cas- Peeres of the phas or Porphyria, Cafarea, Mount Royall, of Affar, of Ibelins, with some others; the Prince of Kingdome of 20 Galilee, Lord of Tiberiae; Earle of loppe and Afcalon, &c. tells ve of the flourishing flate of Re- lergation.

ligion by the odor of holy and venerable places there, forted and fitting to mens deucuter humours; some choosing to line in the Desart called Quarantena, where our Lord was tempted, li- guarantena, uing Heremiticall liues in petie Cells; others, in imitation of Elias in Mount Carmell neere Caphas, in Hines of small Cells, foure miles from Acon: others, in the Desarts of Iordan; others living solitarie in the Desart of Gatilee, where Christ preached. In Thabor was a Monasterie builded, and in duers other places. Others chofe rather to liue in Cities , especially Ierusa-

lem, Nazareth, and Betbleem.

Ierusalem was the Mother of the Faith, as Rome is of the faithfull; it flands on a high Hill, Ierusalem deis on both fides Mountaynous, abounding with Wheat, Wine, and Oile, and all temporall good ferned. 30 things: yet hath but one Fountayne, called Silve, flowing out of Sion, fometimes having little or no Waters. And as it is more holy then any place, fo it hath drawne to it more religious Perfons. In it is a Temple of huge quantitie, whence the Templars have their name, called Salo-Templars, to fons. In it is a Temple of huge quantitie, whence the I emplies haue their rame, culted sain-moust Temple. What locure places (in all that Countrey) our Lord troot on, are feinemed buy hand called of sonferrated, and for precious Reliques by the faithfull; whence Religious both Clerks and Lay -by attainment. men, as well militarie as of other condition, have beene drawne thither: namely, the Brethren tass. of the Hofpitall of Saint Iohn, the Templars, and the Brethren of the Hofpitall of Saint Marie of the Dutch. The Hofpitalars were from the time of the Surians , having a Latine Church of Saint Hofpitalars. Marie, the Abbot whereof built an Hospitall in honor of Saint lobu Eleemon. After the Franks Expedition, Gerard the Master, adioyning some others to him tooke a religious habit and white

40 Croffe, whom Agnes the Abbeffe followed. These buried their dead in Acheldama, and whiles Acheldama. they were poore obeyed the Abbot, and payed their Tithes, and called the poore to whom they ministred, their Masters and Lords, but after became as Princes of the Earth. The Templars also Templars. were at first Lions in battell, Lambs at home, Eremites and Monkes in the Church, hauing Banners blacke and white (as mild to Christians, terrible to the Infidels) feuere in their owne focietie, obsequious to the Patriarke, beloued for their Religion and humilitie, as the former, infomuch that Dukes and Princes denyed the World and followed them.

And because a threefold Cord is not easily broken, that of the Dutch Knights was added, from a Dutch Knights fmall beginning increasing into a swelling streame. For one Dutch man with his family dwelling original, at lenfalem, many of his Country Pilgrimes, which knew not the language, were glad of his 50 entertainment in a small Hospitall by him therefore builded, to which also he added a Chappel in honour of our Lady, and partly procured of his owne goods, partly by almes, to the poore and

ficke Pilgimes. Some Date been liking the intent, gaue all they had thereto, binding themseluses by vow; and when some of Gentle and Noble bloud had adjoyned themseluses, they became both followers of the Holpitulars in their care of the poore, and of the Templars in Mili-The Holy Land alfo flourished with Regulars, Religious, Anchorites, Monkes, Canons, Nurs, Holy Land

Inclosed persons, Virgins, Widowes. It was also full of peoples, Genuois, Pifans, Venetians, men fit for the Sea, and lage Counfels: Frankes, Almans, Britons, Englishmen, leffe ordered or circumfpect, more impetuous, more superfluous in Dyet, prodigall in Expenses, deuout in the Church, feruent in Charity, more couragious in Battell, and formidable to the Saracens : which yet for the vanitie of fome, are by the Pollans, called the Sonnes of Hemandsus. They which descended of the Conquerors are called Pollans, eyther because they were Pulli, in respect of the Surians, or Coles Chibecause their Mothers were most of them Applians, the Army wanting women enough, and pro- kens or young curing from Apulus, the necreft place of the Westerne Church. There are besides in the H ly things.

4. V.

Land, Greekes, Iacobites, Maronites, Neftorians, Armenians and Georgians, of much firuice for husbanding the Earth and other commodities.

But when the Deuill (I still follow our Author) had found no rest in the first poore Dilcrims; hee found the house empire, swept and garnified (mentille and dwelling securely, abounding with temporall goods) and taking feuen fronts worfe then himfelfe (the feuen deadly finnes , for their ingraticude worle) hee entred againe , and the last state was worse then the former. They were proud, high-minded, contumelious, seditions, malicious, sorcerers, sacrilegious, conctous, flouibfull, drunkards, gluttons, adulterous, theenes, robbers, homicides traitors, men of bloud, disobedient to Parents and Elders, without affection, truce breakers, mercileffe: Reproach and lying man-flaughter, and theft, and adulterie ouer-flowed, and bloud tou- to ched bloud. So was the imagination of wisked mens intent to enill at all simes, fo farre was all venthe and religious boundite decayed, that there was scarlly any found which made difference betwint the holy and profane, or separated the precious from the vile. All were gone head-long to confusion: from the fole of the foot to the crowne of the head there was no foundnesse and as was the People . Such

more lenten. ces of Serioture to difeo. uer heirabominarions, then here are mentioned to thew them deplorate and doperare a efon-

The Authour

doth heape

For when all the World in manner had made it selfe tributarie in Almes, Gifts, Oblaticilly confide. ons, the Paffors fed themselves, minding the Wooll and Milke, not the Soules of the Florker ring their fins yea, became examples of Treason, rich by Christs pouertie, proud by his humilitie, gloout o measure rious by his ignominie, fattened and groffe by the patrimonie of him Crucified; howsoever Christ had faid, Feede my Sheepe, not, Sheare my Sheepe. They fought their owne, not the 20 things of Christ, became blinde guides of the blinde, dumbe Dogs not able to barke; entring the with manifold Lords House pompoully, wanting the Key of knowledge, polluted with Gebezis leprofie, superfluions, erecting the Chayres of Done-fellers and Money-changers , which our Lord over-threw , in the Churches every-where, faying with Indas, What will you give mee? and I will betray himto you. All of them loued Gifts and followed Rewards, taking the Keyes from Simon Peter. and delivering them to Simon Mague : manifold wayes luxurious, idle; feeding not with crummes from the Lords Table, but with whole Loaues and delicate Meates, their Whelps which of filthy Concubines they themfelues more filthy had procreated.

Regular Orders, Mafters and diorder,

The Regulars also infected with the poylon of Riches, and increased with poffessions beyond measure, contemned their Superiours, and not onely became irkfome to the Ecclefiaflikes, but enuied and detracted each other to the grieuous scandall of Christendome, to contumelies, open hatreds, conflicts, violences, battells. For having begunne to build the Tower of Babel, with divided Tongues, they not onely disagreed amongst themselves, but bandying factions procured differed among flothers. And how focuser many of them as graines of Corne among it Chaffe, and Lillies among it Thornes, as the times gaue leaue, oblerged their rules, and fate not downe in the Chapte of peftulence; yet the impietie of the worse pre-uailed, and their iniquitie superabounded, that in contempt of Ecclesiastical Discipline. they received to their Holies those which by name had beene excommunicated : Abbots. Priors, Monkes, their miferable and mercenarie Chaplens, thrust their Sickles into others Haruefts, made vnlawfull marriages, vifited and houselled the ficke for gayne, not for god- 40 linesse; binding and loofing against God and holy Canons, the Scules which belonged not to their charge, admitted the dead to burialls (their Pastors contradicting, and vsurped Parochiall right. Numes also leaped out of their Cloysters, frequenting publike Baths with fecular perions. And as any were greater among it the Lay-men, fo much more permiciously corrupted they their waves; a corrupt Generation, as Lees of the Wine, Cockle of Wheat, and Ruft of Silver.

given to vincleannesse and leacherie, curiously dressed after womens wont, were contemned of the Saracens, and (if they had none of the Westerne people with them) more vilipended then Women. They made league with the Saracens, and quarrelled with themselves, go for light matters rayfing civill warres, and often borrowing aide of the Infidells, fpending the Treature and Stocke of Christians against Christians. They were deepe Dissemblers, not eafie to bee perceived in their fallacies till they had deceived; icalous mewers up of their wives, that their owne Brethren and neerest Kindred might scarsly have accesse; and keeping them from the Churches, and Sermons, and other things necessarie to their toules, hardly once in the yeare admitting them the Church. The richer fort erected Altars neere their wives beds, Per miferes ca. and by fome * wretched Chaplens and vnlearned Sir lobns, procured Maffes to bee faid, that pell. miperitos they might feeme Christians. And how much closer their wives are kept, so much more they presbyt resculos- whet their wits with a rhousand deuties and infinite plots to finde flarting holes; furnished by the Surians and Suracen women, with forceries, mischiefes, and innumerable abominations. 60 They are ingratefull, and many wayes irksome to those Pilgrims, which come from remote parts to their aide, with great labours and intolerable expenses, liking better their eale and carnall pleafures, then warres with the Saracens. Thefe Pilgrims they entertayne at immoderate charge, defrauding and impouerishing them in buying, and bartering to their owne

These Pullani, delicate, wanton, effeminate, more accustomed to Baths then Battells,

CHAP. 6. S. S. Surians. Iacobites, Nestorians, Maronites, Armenians.

exceeding enriching; afflicting them with reproaches and wrongs, and calling them . Sonnes a Berore files of Hernaud, as it were Fooles and Ideots.

There are others, continuing from ancient times under divers Lords, Romanes, Greekes, Saracens is falle printed and Christians, called Surians, white for Warre, men for the most part Vnfaithfull, Double-dealing, Lvers, Inconstant, Fortune-fawners, Traytors, Gift-takers, esteeming Thest and Robbert for nothing, Spyes to the Saracens, imitating their Language and Condition. These share not, but nourish their beards, as doe the Greekes with great care, attributing thereto much virilitie, eranicie.authoritie and glorie. Whereupon, when Baldwin Earle of Edefa, having marryed the Daughter of a rich Armenian, fuffered his Beard to grow; to extort money from his Father into law, he faid, he had impawned his Beard for a great fimme to certaine Creditors; who gaue him The Westerne law, he faid, he had impawned his Beard for a great diffrie thousand Bizantines, to preuent that diffrace to his Family, and on condition neuer to many Agenengage his Beard againe. These Syrians vie the Tongue and manner of writing of the Saracens fed much sha in contracts, and all fauing their Diuinitie and Holies, for which they have the Greeke Letter; uing as in old so that their Laity vaderstand not their service, as the Greekes doe, whose Rites they wholly picture is sea observe. They obey the Laime Prelates, for seare of the Princes, otherwise not having Greeke Beards of Bishops of their owne, nor would regard their censures, but that our Lay-men in contracts and other businesse, would not have to doe with them being excommunicated. For they say amongst themselues, that the Latiner are all excommunicated, and therefore cannot excommunicate. The Surians and Greekes admit not fourth Marriages. Their Priests marry not after their Orders, on against 20 but vie their wives which before they marryed. They account not Sub-deaconship in ho- contracts.

ly Orders. Their simple Priests confirme with Chrisme, which with the Latines is not lawfull but to Bishops. They keepe Saturday holy, nor esteeme Saturday Fast lawfull but on Eafter Eenen. They have folemne Service on Saturdayes, eate flesh, and feast it brauely like

There are also in the Holy Land and the East parts Iacobites, so called of one Iames a Disciple Iacobites of the Patriarke of Alexandria. These of long time have inhabited the greater part of Asia,

some amongst the Saracens, and some, as in Natia, and great part of Arbopia, possessing whole See of this our Countries. They Baptife and circumcife their children, and observe not Auricular Confession: former Abasime fome make Croffes with fire in their cheekes or temples; and they mayntaine but one nature in Relations. tome make Grones with me in their cheekes of complete, and they make that is, the Suracenicall. Neflorians. There are in the Holy Land, and by themselves in India, Nestorians, especially, in the Country basine, but in of Prebyter & John. Theie, with the Lacobines, are faid to be more then the Latines and Greekes: Afin India. and befides those which dwell by themselues entyre, there are faid to be more of these Christians where the Porand belief those when dwell of the influence of Saracon themselves. They divide the person of Christ'; ma-subject to the Infidels, then are of Saracon themselves. They divide the person of Christ'; ma-lishop stando-king the Virgin Mary Mother of the humane Person, & the Son of God another divine Person. Her Christ-ther Christian Neffering and this his Herefie were condemned in the Ephefine Councell. They vie the Chaldee ans, called S. Letter, and leavened Hofts as the Greekes doe.

About Libertus are some called Maronites, many in number which acknowledged (Maro stians, was their Master) but one nature in Christ. These Monothelites were condemned in the fixth The Tanan generall Councel at Constantinople. They vied Sacraments by themselves five hundred yeares, and alteration in after by Amerike, Patriark of Amiochia, were reduced to the Roman Faith, whose Traditions they these parts follow: infomuch, that when all the Easterne Prelates except the Latines, vieno Rings, Miters, Maronics. nor Pafforall Stanes, nor Bels, (but Boords on which they knocke with a Sticke or Hammer to call the Affembly) the Maronites vie all ; and their Patriarke was prefent at the Councell of Laterane, under Innocens the Third. They wie the Chaldee Letter and Saracen Language.

The Armenians are divided from all other Christians in Rites; having a Primate of their Armenians owne, whom they call Carbelicon, observed by all of them as another Pope. They have Letters and Language proper, and Lyturgies in the vulgar. At Christmasse they fast, and at Twelfday they folemnize our Lords Baptisme, and his Spirituall Nativitie, as they improperly speake.

Lent they falt so strictly, that they not only abstayne from Flesh, Egges, Whit-meates, but alfo from Fish, Oyle, and Wine, yet fast not but eate fruites, and as often as they please. On some Fridayes they eate fielh. They mixe no water with Wine in the Sacrament. The Armemines promifed obedience to the Pope, when their King received of Henry the Emperor his Land, and the Crown of the Archbishop of Mentz: but retayne their old Rites notwithstanding. There is also a wartike people dreadfull to the Saracens, called Georgians, of Saint George; whom they have for their Patrone, and worthip as their Entigne bearer aboue other Saints, ving the Greeke Georgian. Holies. Their Priefts have round crownes, the Lay-men square : and when they come to langadem on Pilgrimage, they enter with Banners displayed and without Tribute : the Saracens torbearing them, leit they should after their returne bee renenged on other Saracens. Their noble 6) women vie Armes in Battels, as Amazons.

The Mofambes are Latine Christians, and observe the Romifo Rites, dwelling amongst the Mofambes, or African and Spanish Saracens. Yet some of them divide the Sacrament into seven parts, others Maxarabes. into nime, whereas the Romane Church doth it into three. There are other miferable Easterne people, as Ellers of Jewilh descent, and Assaines, and Samaritans.

The Holy

1270

They which have best knowne the Holy Land Affaires and Changes, assime, that no greater plague hath hapned then flagitious and pestiferous men, Sacrilegious Theeues, Robbers, Murden rers, Parricides, Periured, Adulterers, Traytors, Pirates, Drunkards, Iesters, Dicers, Players Impiette and Runnagate Monkes, and Nunnes becomne common Whores, and such women as leaving their Imputierion Runnigare atouries, and runnies occumine to common worses, and men women as teating their other parts of Husbanish haue follower Bawdes, or fish as haue for fasten their Witters and marryed other Child ndome. These Monsters haue runne away, and flying to the Holy Land, haue so much more boldly perpetrated there their former euils without flame, as they have beene further from those which knew them; neither tearing God nor respecting men. The easinesse of escaping, and impunitie of finning haue looled the reines to their Impietie; because that after villanies committed, they runne to the Saracens, and deny Christ, or else by ship siye to some llands, or getting to the Io * The Tem. houses of Regulars, * which every where they found, by their pernicious liberite of Prissiledges. defending the wicked, they escaped without punishment. Some Murderers also condemned to mutilation or death in their owne Countries, by praying or paying obtayned often to bee con-demned to perpetuall Exile in the Holy Land; and neuer altering their manners, haue there preyed on Pilgrimes and Strangers, kept Bawdie-houses and Gaming-houses, and Receptacles tor Theeues and Murthers, paying a yeerely Pension to the potent and rich, to patronize them in these exorbitancies; extorting the same with greater summes from Whores and Gamesters.

Many also came to the Holy Land, not for Deuotion, but Curiofitie and Noueltie. Thus you have had a view of the Inhabitants, both Clergie and Laitie, Nature and accessorie : all flesh corrupting their way, and making it the most vnholy Sinke in the World, not the 20 nauill of the Earth, as some call it, but the Knaue-ill, Slaue-uile, and base confluence of villanies not the foundation of Religion, but the fundament of the Deuill and of Irreligion, as formerly in other Ages, fo worle then all worlts in this, that it was inhabited by these Pullans and Pilgrimes. Neither haue I in this Relation augmented or exagerated, but for breuitie haue fallen faire fort of the Authors blacke pitchie colours, wherein hee describeth their Hellish darknesse, And howfocuer he much commends the first Pilgrimes (as comparatively they deserved) yeteand involved it is made to make the many state of the sta tie, the worst was farre farre worse then Heathenish Impietie (Correspus optimi pessima) so little good did Religion & Christianity hereby receive even here. And as for the hurt it received in the West, we have declared and proved at large; Religion comming to the West and worst, and that bright Sunne almost set in a darke misty mysticall Cloud, and darknesse from the bottomlesse

Pit, principally by this meane and occasion. Let none traduce me, as if I held it wholly vnlawfull to vifit holy places, or to warre against Infidels, or that I enuy the Pope himfelfe, his Temporalties: (howfoeuer gotten at first, as you haue heard) or absolutely deny Absolutions, Dispensations, Indulgences: the abuses I taxe, and historically have showed how by corruptions, confusions, combustions, the face and body of the Church hath beene empayred, weakned, and ficke (so neere to death in so many many members and limines) of the Antichristian or Romifh Difeafe. As Christ is the name not of the Head alone, * 1.Con. 12.12. but of the whole myflicall body, which is one Seed, one City, one Temple, one Vine, one New man, one 40 CHRIST: Sois Antichrift both the head & myftical body; the name how soeuer it be most properly due to the Popes in their fuccessions, as the head, yet competible also to the whole body of the Popish Church, which together makes up that mysticall Babylon, which thus by the carnall lerufalem, and lewift Opinions and Rites, hath so impouerished the new, spiritual and heavenly Ternfalem, and her Celestiall Priviledges, whereof we are children by Regeneration , and enfronchised citizens in manifold Priviledges. Neyther perhaps, did any one stratageme so farre reduce Indusme, or induce Poperie, or seduce the Christian world, as this Holy Land vnholy degeneration. Christianty, is to line for pub and not by fight, and to have a commerfacion beauculy, and the exercise of a spirituall warfare against the World, the fields, the Deuill, by the panophy of God, to hope of Saluation for a Helmer, Brest-place of Righteousness, Gride of Sincerity, Greanes of the Gofpell, Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God, and Shield of Faith (the euidence mad clote Ear. the Golpell, Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God, and Shield of Faith (the euroence mixed Chrift).

The Golpell, Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God, and Shield of Faith (the euroence mixed Chrift).

The Golpell, Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God, and Shield of Faith (the euroence mixed Chrift).

The Golpell, Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God, and Shield of Faith (the euroence mixed Chrift).

The Golpell, Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God, and Shield of Faith (the euroence mixed Chrift).

The Golpell, Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God, and Shield of Faith (the euroence mixed Chrift). de Antichrift.L1 temporall respects in the first mooners; in many if not most of the followers apprehended to like purpose of spoyle (all being as you have seene, the Souldiers owne, hee could get) which blanched ouer with Honour, Religion, Merit; Once; being the service of two Mastersat once, God and Mammon, (which in true Religion is incompetible) easily wonne entertaynment. And if men now will aduenture voluntarily to fight any quarrels of any Region or Religion, for fourfhillings a week, (eight dayes to the weeke) in an Age more composed generally to words then 60 workes: is it any maruell, it so many inducements, in such a mist and smoke could whet so many Swords and courages in those Martiall times, where earthly purchases were the guerdon of the

that is impletie or impious pietie, with impuritie and desolation were the end. This whole that is impossed (as the Serpents feducing Eue, and was prophefied of Antichrift) not an open mobuttered enmitte against Christ, but in coloured loue of Christ and his patrimonie, a more subtle deceitfull working, the Deuill transformed into an Angell, that hee might proue the worse Deuill: this Expedition being after the working of Satan with all power, and signes, and lying wonders, and 2. These undral deceinablenesse of unrighteensnesse, as was foretold of that Sonne of perdition (which hereby and herein he hath proued, if ever by any one course, as is shewed, to the perdation of thoufands and thousands of thousands, both bodies and soules) a strange Chymera, beaded like a Lion. and in thew prefenting a Lionlike fortitude, for the honor of that Lion of the Tribe of Inda: yet to after the Goats belly of various lufts, tayled like a Dragon, and enuenoming to manifold deaths with the poylon of the old Serpent: in thew kiffing, indeed betraying, with Indas; in thew lifting Christ higher, indeed crucifying him; the Pope in shew crowning these Pilgrims, but with acrowne of Thornes, with manifold external miferies, void of all internal confolation, his In-

CHAP. 7. Angell-Deuill. Christ crucified twixt two Theenes. Records.

dalgences not with flanding; in flew prefenting the faces of men, and haire of women, indeed the talks of Scorpions, which those Localts had in their tayles. Once; herein was Christ many wayes runified betwirt two theenes, in Vrban and Boamand the first Founders; in superstation and hypocrife, the principall Mouers; in Renelations of Peter the Heremite and others, and Papall Indulgences, the chiefe Confirmers : in the Greekes and Infidels, the one by Treacherie, the other by open Violence, the mayne Confounders, (like two Mill-stones, grinding the Westerne Christians 20 and this whole exploit, to poulder) in exposing Christian bodies to bloudie crueltie, and their foules to crueller impretie; in confusions and manifold disorders in Families and Commonwealths, by ablence of Ouer-feers at home, and buying vanitie, nothing, and leffe then nothing (for that was the end) with Seas of bloud and heapes of carkaffes abroad; in abasing the lawfull power of Kings, and exalting (in manner as yee have heard) the vourped Papall Monarchie; that is, by Excommunications, Interdicts, Treasous, Crulado's, Votifrages, Perjuries, abolifning them which are called Gods; and Him by whom Kings reigne, both in this his Ordinance, and in the whole face

worthinged; fo that now, and principally hereby , He as God fitteth in the Temple of God , thewing himselfe that be is God. This was then a mysterie hidden from the wife and prudent : but now. 30 and hereby, that Wicked is remealed.

CHAP. VIL

of his Religion; that the Man of sinne might exalt himselfe about all that is called God, or that is

Monuments of Antiquitie, taken out of ancient Records, to testifie the quondam commerce betwixt our Kings and their Subjects, and those Easterne Princes.

Ex Coradono Illustri Soldano Danasci, salutem. De transfinistis nobis à Nobilitate Licez Henti-vestra muneribus per Anselmuno de Ienua mallonnon Soldani, arrivem Nobilitate Licez Henti-De vejtra munerioue per Anjeumen de Lenno mananama Somenia, grandami de le Angliz Cora-da pendimus altiones; prompti as parati in hijs qua licet, vestra placere voluntari. Hoc dino Soldano quidem à Screntate vestra pre ampliori petimus munere, vi, si quoi terre nostra Damaici, de Christianos captinates tenetu, ees liberos & expeditos reddere, & intuitu nostri nobis captiuis redimittere velitis: certis datis indicies, quad ad evrum liberationem noster eis profust in- mendis. Derso teruentus. Quo intellecto ad condignam vicissitudinem Serenitati vestra merito teneamur. Teste me- Clous. Anno 120

po apud Westmonasterium, Anno Regni nostri duodecimo. Henricus Rex, &c. Sciatis nos concessisse, dulecto & fidels nostro Philippo de Albiniaco, quod fi de Patentes, anno eo bumanitus contigerit, antequam iter peregrmationis sua arripuerit versus terram lerusalem, 17. Heorici 50 quicquid ante obitum suum assignauerit, vel legauerit de terra de Periton, quam babet de dono nostro, terris & de terris de Clyneton, Bamton, & Wytton, quas habet de Ballino nostro ad debita sua acquie. Pro Philippo de tanda, vel elecmosynas faciendas, vel ad mercedem militibus & seruentibus suis pro servicio suo

retribuendam, nise prius terras illas haredibus corum, per voluntatem nostram, vel per pacem reddiderimus, ratum habemus & flabile vique in tres annos à die obitus sui completos. In cuius &c. Teste Rege april Westmonasterium 14. Iuly, Anno Regni sui decimo septimo. Rex concessa & licenciamit Simonem de Wistlegray, quad peregrini de partibus issia emntes peregre Patenet, ema versus terram terusalem , Santhum Iacolum , & alibi ad portes transfinarinas , in Naue insius Si. 19. Henrici monis , qua vocatur Gladyghyne saluo & secure transfretare possint. Et mandatum est omnibus Bal-tertija

liuis & fidelibus Regis. &c. Quod eidem Simoni & hominibus suis in ducendo Peregrinos in Naue 60 pradicta, sicut pradictum est, nullum faciant, nec fiere permittant damnum vel grauamen. Et durant litera vig, ad festum Santis Michaelis. Teste Rege apud Rading, quinto die Aprilis, Anno

Rexomnibus, ad quos prasentes litera peruenerint, salutem. Sciatis, quod concessimus delecto Pro Olinero de & fideli nostro Olinero de Santto Georgio , quod in auxilium peregrinationis sua , quam fatturus est santto Georgio.

liuing, with Fame, Nouelties, and many many fentuall Holies; and Martyrdome was the Crowne of the dead with God, Heauen and Eternitie. To conclude, Hypocrifie was the beginning, Blond was the proceeding, Superfittious Pietie

nifieth, in the

The Pope is all

deed an emu-

in Terram Sanstam, inuadiare possit terram suam de Broston v sque ad terminum trium annorum. à festo Santte Michaelis, Anno Regni nostri decimo nono. Ita quod spse cui terram illam inuadianerii. illum teneat vique ad terminum pradiction trium amorum, quicquid de ipfo Olivero interim contingat. In cuius rei testimonium &c. Teste Rege apud Windeforam vicesimo octano die Aprilis , Anno Reoni

The Kines Letters to the Prelates, to excite their charitable denotions, for reliefe of the Hofoitall of Saint Samfon in Confiantinople, and the Licence granted to Friar Thomas their Mellenger for one yeere, granted at Windfor, A. Reg. 22. is here omitted.

Rex Saladino, fosio Thath Nuncij * Veterus de Mussa, falutem. Significanimus predicto Thath quod bene placet nobis , quod ad nos in Angliam veniat , expositurus nobis Nuncium suum , pro quo 10 ad nos venifis in Angliam, sicut per literas nostras Patentes, quas es mittimus, plensus es significamus. Et ideo vos scire volumus, quod bene placet nobis, quod fi cum literis nostris pradutis ad ipsim personaliter accedere volueritis, id libenter faciatis: vel eas per quem volueritis pradicto socio veltro transmittatis. Teste Rege apud Kenynton 20. die Iulij, Anno Regni sui 22.

concessis ad Parentes Anno Pro Gerardo de

Rex omnibus ad quos &c. [alutem. Sciatis., quod concessimus Magistro Militum Templs Ierusa-Militum Tem- lem quingentas Marcas ad opus fuum, reddendas in Anglia vel Hibernia Magistro Militia Temoli pli de denarijs Anglicane . ad redemptionem Militum & Fratrum einsdem Templi Ierusalem, qui à Saracenti cavis fuerunt in bello inter Castra de Gastun & Trepejbac in terra Antiochia. Teste Rege and Geldeford nem Fratrum. primo die Ianuary, Anno Regns sui vice simo secundo. Gerardus de Rodes , qui profest urus est ad Terram Ierusalem de licenica Domini Regis , babet li- 20

32. Henrici teras Domini Regis de protectione, cum hac clausula, quod quietus sit de secta Comitatuum & Hundredorum, & de omnibus placuis & querelis, exceptis placitis de dote, unde in his babet, afsifa noua disseisina, & vitima prasentationis Ecclesiarum, duraturas quamdiu idem Gerardus fuerit in peregrinatione pradicta. Teste Rege apud Winton, sexto die lung, Anno Regni sui tricessi-

Robertus de Ver, qui de licentia Regis peregre profecturus est in Terram Ierusalem, babet literas Regis de protectione Patentes sine clausula, dur atur as per truennium. Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium 27. Iunii . Anno Regni fus trice simo tertio.

Rex Ademarode Lezignan, falutem. Sciatis, quod dedimus Gulfredo de Lezignan fratri nosfro, in auxilium ad faciendam peregrinationem in Terram Sanctam , ducentas Marcas , quas nobis debetis 30 pro custodia terra, qua fust Thurstans Dispenser &c. Et ideo vobis mandamus, quatenus pradictas ducentas Murcas prafato Galfredo, vel eius certo Nuncio sine difficultate soluatis. In cuius erc. Testa

The Kings letters to Doleuet the King of

Rege apud Wesimonasterium 10. Ianuary, Anno Regni sus 34. Excellentissimo Principi, Domino Dolgieto, Regi Tartarorum Illustri, Edwardus Dei grasia Rex Anglia, Dominus Hibernia, & Dux Aquitania salutem, & fulices ad vota successus. Celsisudinis vestra Nuncios ad celebris memoria Dominum Edwardum imper Regem Anglia, Patrem nostrum, Rotula Rome, qui antequam ad infum venissent, extremum clauserit fats diem, cum literis vestris missos post dicti Pa-Anno 1. Edw. 2. tris nostri decessim admisimus : & literas vestras pradictas , & ea que indem Nunciy vestri nobis ex parte vestra per commissam à vobis credentiam retulerunt, auditimus & intelleximus diligenter : de beneuoleutia & amore quos vos & progenitores vestri erga dictum progenitorem nostrum & nobis ba- an il enus geffiftis, & adbuc geritis, necnon de missione Nunciorum vestrorum, & dilectione & vnitate, quas inter vos & nos hine inde crescere cupitis, & augers: Et de eo pracipue, quod amicitiam inter nobiles Antecefferes vestros & genitorem nostrum pradiction babitam memoriter retinetis, prout literarum vestrarum series patefecit : ac alus rumoribus contentis in eisdem vestris literis & expressis, orates referentes vestra magnificentia Regia speciales. De pace siguidem ab ortu solis vique ad consinia vitra mare Deo propicio per vos facta gaudemus in Dommo, & efficimur valde lati. Caterum super eo, quod intellige vobis datur, quod inter nos, que discordes fuimus citra mare pax & concordia reformatur : Excellentia vestra Regia volumus effe notum, quod inter nos furniter credunus & feranque, super quibuscung, discordies & controue: sies bine inde suscitatis, in breni, mediante Des prasidio, finalem siere O concordiam atque pacem. Datum apud Northampton decimo sexto die Octobris, Anno Regni so

Serenissimo Principi ac Domino, Tartarorum Imperatori Potentissimo , Edwardus Dei gratia Rex ter to the King Anglia, Dominus Hibernia, & Dux Aquitania, falicem regnandi gloriam cum silute. Reges & Principes terreni tanto magis divoscuntur Regi Calestis gloria complacere, quanto simplices Christi sideles ardentius defendere, & nocinos & perfidos nituntur viribus debellare. Quibus ex collaso fibi dinsnitus incumbit officio aqua suffitia libra rempublicam gubernare, Chrift infideles Christianea, fidei contrarios & rebelles impugnare & defiruere suxta posse. Hinc est quod cum in partibus Asia & Asfrica à longissimis retroactis temporibus multum inualuerit prophana secta & sordida Machometi, circumquag, pullulans & diffundens sua infell a germina nimis late pestem saculo sua contagionis nepharia immittendo: Nos qui, Deo permittente, sumus sceptro Regio insigniti ad tam refande selta eradica- 60 tionem libenter intenderemus, fi loci distantia, & alia ardua negocia nobis incumbentia boc sieri permitterent quonis modo. Nam tempus ad hoc adest acceptabile, ut accepimus his diebus, naxime cism in libris ipsorum contineri dicatur, infra breue tempus terminari & adnullari debere sectum nephariam Machometi. Vos igitur vestrum laudabile proposium in bac parte continuantes inchesta per vos ad

huiulmodi sectam sordidam à seculo pentius abolendain, velitis perducere ad effectum, Ad hee ad vestram accedunt prasentiam Religiosi, bonestt, & literats viri, vt populum vestrum ad sidem Catholicams line qua salum sierinemo potest, dinina operante virtute, reducant, & instruant in eadam : As ad sumendum bellum contra detestabilem Machometi sectambabilitent & informent : venerabilia scilicet frater Willielmus Dei Gratia Lidden Episcopus, ver viique discretus, moribus & scientia vreditus cum sua venerabili comitiua : quem ob bonorem omnipotentis Dei , & fauorem sidei Christiana vobis quanto affectuosius possumue, commendamus. Rogantes ex corde quatenus cundem Episcopum e eius Comitinam. Dei intuitu, Sub cuius imperio cuncta consistunt, gratiose & curialiter admittentes, eisdem in prosecutione negocia pradicti exhibere vos velitis fanorabiles & benionos prafa-10 to Episcopo, in his que vestra magnificentia pro augmentatione fidei Cathelica eduxerit exponenda, sidem credulam exponendo. Datum apud Langley Ulsimo die mensis Nouembris, Anno Recni

nostri primo. Like Letters of commen lation of the faid Bishop William, to the King of Armenia, and one thers to the Prince Gentis Matalorum in partib.orient, are vpon Record, but here for breuitie omitred. Another to the faid King here followeth.

Serenissimo Principi, & amico suo charissimo, Leoni Dei Gratia Armenorum Regi illustri, Ed-Amo s Edwar wardus Rex Anglia, &c. Salutem & falices ad vota successus. Literas vestras de credentia per des-di. 2 eretos viros Theodorum, Cantorem Abbatia de Trefarco, Dominum Baudinium filium Domini de The Kings Leto Negrino, consobrunum vestrum, & Dominum Leonem, Milites, familiares vestros & Nuncios specia-ters to the king

20 les, super nouis periculis vobis & Regno vestro, cuntisque einsdem Regns Christicelis emergentabus nobis millos recepimus. Et ea que idem Nunci vestri vobis ex parte vestra per credentiam eis commisam exponere voluerunt, and uimus & intelleximus deligenter. Super quibus doleman in intimis. er turbamur. Verum quia clara memoria Dommus Edwardus Rex Anglia, pater noster, viam uniuerse earnis est ingressus : quamobrem einfiem Regni regimen susceptimus, & Coronacionu nostra solennia celebrare fectione, non est deu ; deuersaque & ardua ex hijs causes nobis incumbune negocia hus diebus : dictorum negociorum requisitionibus ex parte vestra nobis factis annuere non possumus in prasenti. Sed cum tempora nebu ad boc aduenerint oportuna, libenter adhibebimus cum Dei prasidio super requisitionibus pradictis consilium quod poterimus bono modo. De xenio siquidem quod vestra munisicentia nobis misse, vestra serenitati grates reserimus speciales: parasi semper ad ea fa-30 cienda que vestris vilitatibus nouerimus conuenire. Datum apud Westmonasterium sertio die Mariu. Anno Requinostri primo.

Edwardus Des Gratia Rev Anglia, &c. Religiofo viro, & fibi in Christo chariffimo, frates lohanni de ordine Minorum, Leonis quondam Regis Armenorum illustris filso primogenito, falutem cum delectione sincera. Literas vostras de credentia, Ge. vi supra.

Magnifico Principi ac potenti, Danid Dei gratia Regi Iurgianorum, Edwardus eadem Dei gra-Anno sexto Ed sia Rex Anglia, Dominus Hibernia, & Dux Aquitania prosperorum incrementa successiumo, cum missi secreda, augmento fides Orthodoxa. Creator & Redemptor bumant generis lesus Christus, qui omnes vule Deconductu Salues fieri, & neminem vult perire, bominem ad suam faltum imagenem, proto parentis Ade pro Episcopie lassu à supernis exclusum sed bus, tanto dilexit caruatis affettu, vi pro issius redemptione perpelapju a supernes excinjum sedibus, tamo autexu caruatus assectus, ve pro upina reacmprone perpe-40 ina, de intemerato Virginis nascens viero, nostraque humanitatis induins velamine, tanquam Pa-leatbus, litera

ftor optimus ovo sus ousbus mortem pati, & suam dare armans non horreret, qui post passioneme R gi Dau di fuam, secundum Scripiuras, tertia die resurgens à mortuis, discipules suis se viumm prabuit in mul. Registregiano. tes argumentis, per dies quadragenta apparens ess, & loquens de Regno Dei, & cos fpiritus Sancti tum :erof che virtute perlustrans & sapientia, mist in omnem ludeam, & Samariam, & vique ad vitimum Goorgians, terra, fua refurrettiones gloriam & do Trinam Enangelicam pradicare, ut in omnem terram fonus corum exiret, & in fines orbis terra verba corum credentious panderent. Euntes, inquiens, in mundum universum predicate Euangel:um omni creatura : Qui credit & baptizatus suerit saluus erit : Qui vero non crediderit condemnabitur. Cum igitur vir religi sus & promidus frater Guillermus de Villa Nona, ordenis Minorum Episcopus, prasensum lasor, san la sidei Orthadoxe Prosessor os 30 Zelasor seruidus, de mandato Sancta sedis Apostolica ad partes Turtarorum, & altorum, que sidem

non norunt Carbolicam, una cum nonnullis Co episcopis & fratribus etusdem ordinis, ut vobis, & ipsi Enangelium Christi, ve bumque salutis annucciet, & transferre proponat : vos regamus & bortamur in Domino lesu Christo, per vestra salucem anima requirences, quaienus prafatos Episcopos ca erosque Religiosos & Catholicos, essque adherentes, & adherere volentes per loca vestre ditioni subiecta libere, saluo, & secure transire. Verbumque Dei, & sanctum Domini lesu Christi Enangelium predicare audire volentibus per mittentes, ipsis faciatis ob Dinma Maieflatis renerentiam , nostrorumque contemplatione rogaminum securum prastari conductum, mosque malignantium incursu desendi. Datum apud Douarram vicissimo secundo die May, Anno Regni nostri fexto. Tefte Regi.

Eod-mmodo mandatum est Imperatori Trapezandarium. Teste Rege, ut supra. Rex potenti viro Imperatori Aquilmari, deposito Gentilitatis errore, lumen verum agnoscere quod est Christus Creator & Redemptor humani generis lesus Christus, qui omnas unte saluos peri, & neminem vult perme, &c.vt supra. Teste vt supra.

1274 Letters to the Persian Sultan, and to the Emperour of Cathay. LIB. VIII.

Eodem modo mandatum est subscriptis : videlicet; Carpenta Persarum & Medorum Inso.

Imperatori de Cathav. Duers others of Richard the Second, Henry the Eight, &c. collected to this purpose. I have

TO THE READER.

I ke that Scribe which brings out of his Treasurie new and old: so have I here done, and so our Auther following. To those elder Stories and Records I have added this later Voyage to Ieruialem and Constantinople: and He, besides his Transls, bath added his Studies, the Uojage of his Minds In. dustrie, aswell as of his bodies Peregrination; as a Learned Argus, seeing with the Eyes of many Au. Ol thors, and comparing things old and new. Pardon me, that I have here much pruned his smeet Poetrie. bis farre-fet Antiquitie, and other fruits of his Learning : I would not have his owne Worke out of request. I present men rather as Trauellers, then as Scholers; and in this Historicall Stage produce them. telling what they have feene; not what they can fay, or what other Authors have written : not that I difrouse this (for what ele is my whole Pletrumer's) but that I bold so here another count; a whole ries proue this (for what ele is my whole Pletrumer's) has that I bold so here another count; s where it empty man should say all, no man could have bie part, and where even bresitic it selfe is almost tections (us you (ce) by Multitudes. The other parts of Mafter Sandys are not simply superfluous , yet are thefe to our present purpose sufficient.

CHAP. VIII.

A Relation of a lourney begunne, Anno Dom. 1610. written by Mafter GEORGE SANDYS, and heere contracted.

His iourney from Venice to Conftantinople, and Observations by the way.

PRom Venice wee departed on the twentieth of August, 1610. in the Lane Defence of London. The Penether are Lords of this Sea, put not without continuous with the Papacie. On After ion day, the Duke accompanyed with the Classif, simmer of that Signiory, is rowed thirther in the Bucentons, a triumphalf Galley, 40 of London. The Venetions are Lords of this Sea, but not without concention richly, and exquititely gilded: aboue a roome (beneath which they row) com-prehending the whole length and breadth of the Galley; neere the poopea

throne, the reft accomodated with feates, where he folemnely efpoufeth the Sea : confirmed by a Ring throwne therein, the Nuptiall Ple'ge and Symboli of fabrication. This Ceremonie 18ceined a beginning from that Sea-battell fought and wonne by the Uenstians, which the conduct of Seballians Zani, against the forces of Fredericke Barbarofa in the quarrell of Pope Alexander the Third. Who flying his furie in the habit of a Cooke repayred to Venice, and there long lived difguifed in the Monastery of Charitie. Zani returning in triumph with the Emperours Sonne, was met by the Pope, and faluted in this manner : Here take, O Zani, this Ring of Gold, and by giving it to the Sea, oblige it vnto thee. A ceremonie that shall on this day bee 10 yearely observed, both by thee and thy Successors, that Posteritie may know how you have purchast the Dominion thereof by your valours, and made it subject vinto you, as a Wife to her

We sayled all along in the sight of Dalmaria, at this day Sclaumia, of the Sclaui, a people of Sarmatia. They diffent not from the Greeke Church in their Religion. Throughout the North part of the World their Language is vaderstood and spoken, euen from thence almost to the Confines of Tartarie. The men weare halfe-sleened Gownes of Violet cloth, with Bosiness of the same. They nourish onely a locke of haire on the crowne of their heads : the rest all shauen. The women weare theirs not long; and dye them blacke for the most pare. Their chiefe Citie 60 is Ragusa (heretofore Epideurus) a Common-wealth of it selfe, famous for Merchandize, and plentie of thisping. Many small Hands belong thereunto, but little of the Continent. They pay Tribute to the Twee, fourteene thousand Zecthins yearely: and spend as much more vpon them in gifts and entertainment, sending the Grand Signior every yeare a ship loden with Pitch

CHAP.S.S.I. Venetian Signiories inhabited by Grecians. Fruitfull Valleyes. 1275

for the vse of his Gallies. Whereby they purchase their peace; and a discharge of duries throughout the Ottomen Empire.

roughout the first lland of note that we past by, lyeth in the lonion Sea; stretching East and West in forme of a Bow: foure and fiftie miles long, foure and twentie broad, diffant about twelue from the mayne of Epirm, called formerly Coreyra, adorned with Groues of Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, Fig-trees, Oliues and the like : enriched with excellent Wines and abundance of Honey, Vpon the North fide stands a Citie that takes the name of the Ilaud, with a Castle fronely feated on a high Rocke, which joyneth by an Ishmos to the Land, and impregnably strongly meacount ampliance, which toy meet by an attemos to the Land, and impregnable for their land to the fortune tellified at much in their many repulse. It is the Chaire of an Archeolithop, inhabited for the most by Grecient, as is the whole Hand, and subject to the Venetians.

onnop.

Saint Maural yeth next vinto this, once adioyning to the Continent, and feparated by the
Libour of the Iniabitants: yet no further removed then by a bridge to bee paff into. Called it was formerly Leucadia, of a white Rocke which lyeth before it, toward Cephalonia. On which Rood the Temple of Apollo. In this Iland they have a Citie inhabited for the most pare by Inver: received by Bailinest the Second; at fuch time as they were expulsed Spaine by King

Ferdinand. Val de Compare, a little beyond presenteth her rockie Mountaines, contayning in circuit about fiftie miles, now inhabited by Exiles and Pirates. Once called Itbaca, fo celebrated for the birth of VIffes: Betweene this and the mouth of the Gulph of Lepanto, (once named the 20 Gulph of Corinth) lye certaine little llands, or rather great Rockes, now called Corzolari, here- carrolori. tofore Echinades, made famous by that memorable Sea-battell there obtayned against the Turke by Don lobn et Austria, in the yeare 1571. and fung by a crowned Muse.

We fayled clofe by Cophalenia, triangular in forme, one hundred and fixtie miles in circumference: the Mountaynes intermixed with profitable Valleyes, and the Woods with Champian. Vnwatered with Rivers, and poore in Fountaines, but abounding with Wheate's Honey, Corents, Manna, Cheele, Wooll, Turkeyes, excellent Oyle, incomparable (though not long lafting) funcadines, and Powder for the dying of Scarlet: This growes like a blifter on the leafe of the Mulcadines, and Powder for the dying of Scattet: This growes like a billier on the leafe of the body Oke, a little thinb, yet producing Accomeshing gathered, they mbo use of it a certain red duft, that consurred nature a while into worme; a which they kill with Wine when they begin go to quicken, Among the ramany harbours, Argolds is the principall, capacious enough for a Namie. The Inhabitants of this Iland are Greeises, the Unestines their Sourreignes. Hausing paff through the Streights, that diside this Iland from the next, (vulgarly called [Smalt ball Zms.]) on the fector of September we entred the Hauen of Zacynthus, and faluted the Castle with our

This Hand (nine hundred miles distant from Venice) so called of Zacymbus the Sonne of Dardone, and at this day Zon; contayneth in circuit not past threefcore miles. On the South and South-east fides rockie and mountaynous, but plaine in the midft, and vnfpeakably fruitfull, producing the best Oyle of the World, and excellent strong Wines, both white and red, which they call Ribolls, But the chiefe riches thereof consistent in Corents, which draweth hither much 40 trafficke (especially from England and Holland, for here they know not what to doe with them:) infomuch that wheras before they were fource able to free themfelues from importunate famine, infomuch that wheras before they were fource able to free themfelues from importunate famine, they now (befoles their private gettings, amounting to one hundred and fiftie thousand Zec- Some of Cochins) doe yearely pay vnto Saint Marke fortie eight thouland Dollars for Customes and other reass Daties. It is impossible that so little a portion of Earth, so employed, should be more beneficiall, the mountaymous part being barren, and the rest comprized within two or three not very ample Valleyes, but those all ouer husbanded like an entyre Garden. They sow little Corne , as employing their grounds to better aduantage : for which they fometimes fuffer , beeing ready to flame, when the weather continueth for any feafon tempefluous : and they cannot fetch their prouision, which they have as well of Fleth as of Corne, from Merce, being ten leagues diffant, They have Salt-pits of their owne, and store of fresh water, but little or no wood, though cele-

To brated for the abundance thereof, by Homer and Firgil.

It is here a custome strictly observed (as also essewhere within the Streights belonging to the Christians) not to suffer any to trafficke or come ashoare before they have a Pratticke from the Signiors of Health, which will not be granted untill fortie dayes after their arrivall, especially if the ship come from Tarkis, and bring not a Certificate, that the place from whence they came is free from the infection : if fo, perchance their restraint may be shortned, during which time they have a Guardian fet our them. They will not fuffer a Letter to be delivered, if felled with three, before it be opened and ayred. If fuch as come to speake with them doe but touch one of the ship, or sometimes but a rope, they shall be forced to ascend, and remayne there for the time 60 limited; it being death to him that shall come ashoare without licence. Notwithstanding, they vpon request will carrie you to the Lazaretto (which is the nature of a Pell-house) there to abide vntill the date be expired. But if any fall ficke amongst them in the meane-feafon, their Practicke is accordingly prolonged. A great inconvenience to the Merchants, but at Venice intolerable, where when they have Pratticke, they are enforced to valade at the Lacarette. So

from the mayne of Epirus, called formerly Corcyra, adorned with Groues of Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, Fig-trees, Olives and the like : enriched with excellent Wines and abundance of E READER. Honey, Vpon the North fide stands a Citie that takes the name of the Iland, with a Castle ffrongly feated on a high Rocke, which is yneth by an Ishmos to the Land, and impregnably a surie new and old so have I here done, and so our Aufortified. The Turkes haue testified as much in their many repulles. It is the Chaire of an Arch-Records I base a ided this later Voyage to Ieruialem and To bishop, inhabited for the most by Grecians, as is the whole fland, and subject to the Venetians. bath added his Studies, the Voyage of his Minds In-Saint Maura lyeth next vnto this, once adioyning to the Continent, and separated by the es a Learned Areus, seeing with the Eyes of many Au. Ol labour of the Inhabitants: yet no further remoued then by a bridge to bee past into. Called it on me that I have bere much pruned his sweet Poetrie. was formerly Leucadia, of a white Rocke which lyeth before it, toward Cephalonia. On which s Learning: I would not have his owne Worke out of restood the Temple of Apollo. In this Iland they have a Citie inhabited for the most part by as Scholers; and in this Historicall Stage produce them lewes: received by Baiazes the Second; at such time as they were expulsed Spaine by King ay, or what other Authors have written : not that I dif ?) but that I hold on here another course; where if ene-Val de Compare, a little beyond presenteth her rockie Mountaines, contayning in circuit aert, and where even brevitic it selfe is almost tedious (as bout fiftie miles, now inhabited by Exiles and Pirates. Once called Ishaca, so celebrated for the after Sandys are not simply superfluous, yet are these to birth of Vly Jes: Betweene this and the mouth of the Gulph of Lepante, (once named the 20 Gulph of Corinh) lye certaine little llands, or rather great Rockes, now called Curzolari, here- currelari tofore Echinades, made famons by that memorable Sea-battell there obtayned against the Turke by Don Ichn of Austria, in the yeare 1571. and fung by a crowned Muse. We fayled close by Cephalenia, triangular in forme, one hundred and fixtie miles in circumference: the Mountaynes intermixed with profitable Valleyes, and the Woods with Champian. Vnwatered with Rivers, and poore in Fountaines, but abounding with Wheate', Honey, Counne, Anno Dom. 1610, Written rents, Manna, Cheese, Wooll, Turkeyes, excellent Oyle, incomparable (though not long lasting) Mulcadines, and Powder for the dying of Scarlet: This growes like a blifter on the leafe of the RGE SANDYS, and holy Oke, a little shrub, yet producing Acornes: being gathered, they rub out of it a certaine red the twentieth of August, 1610. in the Little Defence are Lords of this Sea, but not without concention they call Ribolla. But the chiefe riches thereof confilteth in Corents, which draweth hither much 40 trafficke (especially from England and Holland, for here they know not what to doe with them:) en ion day, the Duke accompanyed with the Clafifinsomuch that wheras before they were scarce able to free themselues from importunate famine, rowed thither nthe Bucentoro, a triumphall Galley, 40

eto Constantinople, and Observa-

vinto thee. A ceremonie that shall on this day bee 50

ecessors, that I offeritie may know how you have

lours, and made it lubiect vinto you, as a Wife to her

matia, at this day Sclauonia, of the Sclaus, a people of

ke Church in their Rolig in. Throughout the North

ritood and spoken, even from thence almost to the

fre-fleened Gownes of Violet cloth, with Bonnets of

aire on the crowne of their heads: the rest all shaden.

on-wealth of infelfe, famous for Merchandize, and

clong thereunto, but little of the Continent. They

- 17 archine warraly and from Las much more vpon

re them blacke for the most part. Their chiefe Citie 60

ed : aboue a roome (beneath which they row) comgth and bread th of the Galley; neere the poopea

where he folemnely espouleth the Sea : confirmed by geand Symbol of Libitation. This Ceremonie re-

ought and won ie by the Venetians, vider the con-

of Fredericke Barbaro a in the quarrell of Pope A.

in the habit of a Cooke repayred to Venice, and there havirie. Zani returning in triumph with the Empeated in this manner: Here take, O Zani, this Ring of

ns by the way.

on the second of September we entred the Hauen of Zacynthus, and saluted the Castle with our Ordnance.

50 brated for the abundance thereof, by Homer and Virgil.

dult, that converteth after a while into wormes, which they kill with Wine when they begin 30 to quicken. Among ft her many harbours, Argoftoli is the principall, capacious enough for a Na-

e contracted.

P. VIII.

uie. The Inhabitants of this Iland are Grecians, the Venetians their Souereignes. Hauing past through the Streights, that divide this Iland from the next, (vulgarly called Canale del Zant,) This Iland (nine hundred miles distant from Venice) so called of Zacynthus the Sonne of Dar-

they now (besides their private gettings, amounting to one hundred and sittle thousand Zec- Store of Cochins) doe yearely pay vnto Saint Marke fortie eight thousand Dollars for Customes and other rante.

Duties. It is impossible that so little a portion of Earth, so employed, should be more beneficiall,

the mountaynous part being barren, and the rest comprized within two or three not very ample

Valleyes, but those all ouer husbanded like an entyre Garden. They sow little Corne, as em-

ploying their grounds to better advantage: for which they fometimes fuffer, beeing ready to

starue, when the weather continueth for any season tempestuous : and they cannot fetch their

prouition, which they have as well of Floth as of Corne, from Morea, being ten leagues diftant. They have Salt-pits of their owne, and store of fresh water, but little or no wood, though cele-

It is here a custome strictly observed (as also else-where within the Streights belonging to the

Christians) not to suffer any to trafficke or come ashoare before they have a Pratticke from the Signiors of Health, which will not be granted untill fortie dayes after their arrivall, especially

if the ship come from Turkie, and bring not a Certificate, that the place from whence they came

is free from the infection : if so, perchance their restraint may be shortned, during which time

they have a Guardian fet ouer them. They will not fuffer a Letter to be delivered, if feeled with

thred, before it be opened and ayred. If such as come to speake with them doe but touch one of

the ship, or sometimes but a rope, they shall be forced to ascend, and remayne there for the time

vpon request will carrie you to the Lazaretto (which is the nature of a Pell-house) there to a-

bide untill the date be expired. But if any fall ficke amongst them in the meane-season, their

Practicke is accordingly prolonged. A great inconvenience to the Merchants, but at Venice in-

60 limited; it being death to him that shall come ashoare without licence. Notwithstanding, they

danue, and at this day Zant; contayneth in circuit not past threescore miles. On the South and South-east fides rockie and mountaynous, but plaine in the midst, and vnspeakably fruitfull, producing the best Oyle of the World, and excellent strong Wines, both white and red, which

wnder pretence of a vring their goods are opened; their quantitie, qualitie and condition known; redounding much to their detriments. But for that we came from Venice, wee were freed from this mitchiefe, and prefently fuffered to land.

The Towne, taking or giuing a name to the Iland, if treacheth along betweene the Weft fide of the Hauen and the toote of the Alountayne: perhaps a mile in length, in breach but unarrow. The fittest vnyaued, the building low, by readon of the often Earth-quakes whereunto this, Iland is mifrably fabeled. Two hapard during my fhort abode herer, though of fmall importance. Although the feate of the Towne be excelled hot, yet is it happily qualified by a North.

east gale that bloweth from Sea most constantly about the midst of the day.

The Great Turke hath yearely a present of Falcons from the Gouernor (accompanyed, as some of fay, with twelue hundred Zecchins) which he calleth a Tribute: it beeing in his power todiftreffe them at his pleature, by restrayning the reliefe of victuals which they have from Mores. and his adiovning Dominions. Whileft wee were here, the Captaine Baffa past by with fixtie Gallies: who yearely about this time fayleth in circuit, to receive Tribute, fuppreffe Pirates. and to doe fome exploit upon the Maltefes, Spaniards, and Florentines, with whom they are one. ly in holfilitie, Divers of their Gallies putting into the Hauen, were courteoully entertained for the Venetians endeauour, as much as in them lyes to keepe good quarters with the Tirke nor onely for the reason aforesaid, (which perhaps might extend as farre as their Citie : their Territories though large and fruitfull too narrow to fullayne fo populous a State, if vnrelieued from Turkie, and that their puffage into the mid-land Sea were interrupted) not for the loffe they 20 thould full avne by the ceffation of Trafficke with the Mahometans: but knowing him by deare experience too powerfull an Aduerfary for them by Land, and though they are perhaps from enough by Sea, yet should they lofe a Nauie, their losse were vnrecouerable, whereas the Tarte within the space of a yeare is able to fet forth another. The Inhabitants of this Iland are in generall Grecians (of whom wee will speake no more

then concernes the particular customes of the place, referring the rest to our relation of that peo-

Murtherers.

ple : in habit they imitate the Italians, but transcend them in their reuenges, and infinitely leffe civill. They will threaten to kill a Merchant that will not buy their Commodities, and make more conscience to breake a Fast, then to commit a Murther. One of them at our beeing heere. pursued a poore Sailer (an Englishman) for offering but to carrie a little bagge of Corents about 30 vncustomed, and killed him running vp a paire of staires for succour. He is weary of his life that hath a difference with any of them, and will walke abroad after day-light. But cowardize is joyned with their crueltie, who dare doe nothing but fodainly, vpon aduantages: and are ener prinately armed. Encouraged to Villanies by the remifnesse of their Lawes : for none will law hands upon an offender, untill fourteene dayes after that hee bee called to the Scale, (an eminene place where one doth stand and publikely cite the offenders:) who in the meane-time hathleifure to make his owne peace, or elle to absent himselfe : if then he appeare not, they banish him: and propound a reward according to the greatnesse of the offence, to him that shall either kill or take him alive : and if it be done by one that is banished, his owne banishment (the least reward) is released. The Labourers doe goe into the fields with Swords and Partizans, as if in an Ene- 40 mies Country, bringing home their Wines and Oyles in Hogs-skins, the in-fides turned outward. It is a custome among it them to inuite certaine men vnto their Marriages, whom they call Compeeres. Euery one of these doe bestow a Ring, which the Priest doth put upon the Bride and Bridegroomes fingers, interchangeably shifting them; and so hee doth the Garlands on their heads. Of these they are neuer icalous (an abuse in that kind reputed as detestable a crime, as if committed by a natural Brother;) so that they lightly chuse those for their Compeeres that have beene formerly suspected too familiar. The Bridegroome entring the Church, stickes his Dagger in the doore; held quailable against Inchantments. For heere it is a common practice to bewitch them : made thereby impotent with their Wines, vntill the Charme be burnt, or otherwife confumed : infomuch that fometimes (as they fay) the Mothers of the betrothed, by way 10 of preuention doe bewitch them themselves, and againe vnloof ethem as soone as the Marriage is confummated. The Nuptiall sheets (as in some cases commanded by the Mosaicall Law) are publikely showne : and preserved by their Parents as a Testimonie of their vincorrupted

Three be here two Bifhops, one of the Greekes, and another of the Latimes. The Greekes have diuers Churches, the principall that of S. Nikosias (Which giueth to the Hauena name, and not farremouse) with a Monatlery of Caliberres; for foarethern Monites called. On the other fold of the Harbor, you the texp of the Promontory, they have another far leffe; with a Chappell dedicated to the Yingin Maps, called Madonna del Seeps, reputed effectfulled of Mingales, and much 60 invocated by Sea-faring men. As the Duke of Venice doth matric the Sea, fo yearely Joth this Bifhop ypon the Twelfe day beptize it: although with leffe flate, yet with no laffe Caremonie. The Venetaus here (as in Candy) doe ioyntly celebrate the Greeias Ectivals: either to gratifie, or elle to avoid occasions of tumult. As for the Romans Catholike Bifliop, hee hath his Catholial Church and refidence within the Califle: where there is a 'Count'

of Franciseus. A mile and halfe off, in the light of the Towns, on the fide of a Mountaine, they have another Monasteric, called the a franciseus, where the Latine have their burials, built-in Scient. The reserves 1550, when valer the ground their were found two Vrnes; one follow that, and officers other of water, in an ancient Sepulchic. You a Jouaré flone that courred the Tombe, was, engraven. M. Ty 1. G. S. R. O. S. R. O. S. R. S. T. Y. I. E. F. L. A. R. T. O. I. A. J. A. W. There I sharme Zud. the Yince which contaying the faults, A. Y. B. A. R. T. Y. I. E. F. L. A. R. T. O. I. A. G. S. R. O. S.

Of Orasor; the Prince of Speech the Pride, Tollie, with his twife in the Urue abide: Tallie, that of himfelfe thus writ; O Rame Blett, in that I thy Conful, am become. The orange of the confuse and the confuse of the co

The Lines have here a Synagogue, (of whom there are not many) not fauing married an Engage woman, and converted her to his Religion. They want a blue ripand about their dass for a diffinition. The forraine Merchants here refudent, are for the most part Engage, who, who, by their frequent deaths doe diprove the aire to be 16 alubrious as is reported; who have their purchased interments in gardens: neither fulfired by Greeker for Letture to be buried in Churches. If a 20 Stranger here take a fraught of a Fenetian, and Fenetian thip be in Bott, the Mafter thereof you a protestation, will enforce the Stranger to velode, and terus his owne turne there with, if is

be for his benefit. In this Hand there are fortic Villages.

On the fourteenth of September I embarqued in another English thip, called she Great Exchange, fifth bound for Gibin; and then for Tripolis. With a protectous wind wee compatied a part of Monas: more famous by the name of Pelepamejus: haped like a Plantan leafe, and emabanced almost by the Comissions and Serosius arms of the Challerratemen; on the North, and injuring by a narrow Ithmos to the rest of Greece; where flood that renowmed Citic of Comissions.

On the Contract of Comissions of the Challenge of Challen

in ymng by a narrow intumos to the retit of Univer; where moot that rehowmed Little of Comitals. But I rather thinke, for their whollome addice, and expectice execution, in freeing, the Sagte of those moniters, called the Dogs of Inpiere, that is, internall Funes, and ministes of his ven30 geance. Althoughe King of Nagles, was wont to sign merrily, that the Harpst had keft the
Stropheder to inhabite at Rome; intimating thereby the auxies of that Clerge. Weekeft on, strophedes, the left hand own Rocker, at this day called the Strindy; where onely line a few Greeke Caliverse, that receive their fulleriance of almes from the neighbouring Ilands. There is in one a
Spring of fresh water, supposed to have his originall in Pelapomeplus, and so to palle vader the
Sea, in regard of a certain tree ouer-shadowing a little Lake, the leans thereof (or like vateo
thole) being often found in this Fountaine, there growing none of that kind in the Iland. Wee
thrill between Cape Make and Cerigs, about the miles distant; once "Parphyris," of his excel-

lent Porphyr; but better knowne by the name of Cythers. An Iland conferrated vnto Vonst.

Inter Towner riling two futlongs up from the Hauen, shood her celebrated Temple (the most of ancient that the Greetow had of that Goldefic,) and therein her Statue in complete amour.

Out of this it is lad, that Paris mades rape of Helens, or rather here first enjoyed her in his recurren from Sperts. The runnes are now to be feene, together with that of Urassas. The Iland is fixtle miles in compatic; it hath divers Harbours, but those simal and writes. A delightfull foyle, inhabited by Greeton, and slichest to the Versities.

This is the first of the Econosca: the largest arms of the Madiserronomo, extending to Manisegram, the Helishbors, and disiding Greece from the letter Afric. A Sex dangerous and troubletione to flyc through, in regard of the multirated of Nockes, and Llands, euery where disperied. Infomuch, that a man is proceivally faid to fayle in the Egeon Sex, that is, encumbred with disfinculties. The Illands of this Sex were anciently disided into the Spracker, and Cyclader. The 50 procedure are those that sie scattered before Crose, and along the coast of Afric: The Cyclades, so called in that they lie in a circle.

Among it the reft of the last named wee sayled by Delos, (now Diles) hend with sharpe Delos, Rockes. The ruines of Apollos Temple are here yet to be seen, associating faire Pillars of marble to so that as will set to them, and other stones of price, both in their nature, and for their work-manship; the whole Iland being now vininhabited.

Three dayes after our embarkment (as quicke a pallage as euer was fearal of) we arrived at Sa., cisis. a famous land, called formerly Chies. Sixtore and hum will at nonanyament incircus, reading from South wino North: the North and Weft quarters extraordinarie hilly. In the middleft of the lland is the Mouataine. Arisis (now Amplas) producing the beft Greeke Wines. But 60 the Lentiket tree, which is well-nigh onely proper to Sis, Joth gue it the greatest renowne and endowment. Their grow at the South end of the land, and on the leafurely afcerding hills that neighbour the hours. In heighth no much exceeding a man leased like a Seruice, and

bearing a red berrie, but changing into blacke as it ripeneth.

In the beginning of August lanch they the rine, from whence the Masticke distilleth vntill. Masticke,

the end of September, at which time they gather it. None infered to come among fithem during the interim, it being death to have but a pound of new Masticke found in their houles. The

wood thereof is excellent for tooth-picks. By region of these trees they have the best Home

of the world, which intermingled with water, is not much inferiour rittelish to the coffly Shur-

of the Worth, which interminged with water, and so the indifferent plentie, Somewhat they make, and some Cottons here grow, but their in worth who the following. It him they make, and some Cottons here grow, but their in worth who thole of Somiting. It him to the water and some Cottons here grow, but their in worth who thole of Somiting. It him to

quarries of excellent Marble, and a certaine greene earth, like the rull of Braffe, which the

Turkes call, Terra Chia: but not that fo reputed of by the ancient Physicians. The coast, effeccially towards the South, is fet with small Watch towers, which with smoake by day, and fire

by night, due gine knowledge vnto one another (and fo to the vp-land) of inspected enemies, to The enuironing Sea being free from contented Rockes, and consequently from proll. On the

East fide of the Hand, foure leagues diffant from the Maine of Afia, from that part which was formerly called lonia, frands the Citie of Sto, having a secure Hauen (though daily decaying, yet

with a fomething dangerous entrance, ftreightned on the North fide by the fea-numed wall of the Mould, incrocking neerer the Diamond, which stands on the other fide of the Mouth, fo

Artillerie. After foyled by Morae Buffe the great Pleer, who for that fertice (but chiefly for the our-throw of lamballar the Buffe of Alops, and naturall Lord of the rich Valley of Achil-In) was called by him his Father and Belinerer. They belieged this Citie; and were by certaine Englis femice, Englift fings that lay in the Roade, vafriendly faluted. In the end, burnt a part thereof. and tooke a fansome for sparing the reft. But their principall commoditie is Cotton woodl, which Cotton here growth in great quantitie. With the feeds thereof they doe fow their Fields, as wee ours with Corne. The stalke no bigger than that of Wheate, but tough as a Beanes'; the head ours with corne. In the many and page than that of the many and and bearded, in size and shaped and the perfect of a white for Bombast intermixed with feeds, which they separate with an instru-

so ment. You would thinke it firange, that to fmall a fiell should contayine fuch a quantitie; but

admire if you faw them fline it in their flips : enforcing a Sacke as bigge as a Wooll-packe into

a roome, at the first too narrow for your arme, when extended by their enfirmments : so that oft they make the very decks to firetch therewith.

they make the very decite to introductive vita.

Taking with me a Grody that could peak a hirdly broken Zinghh, for my Interpreter on the twentieth of Nouember, I did put my felfe midd Zinke; "Armado of Some, a little light had byshe Richest (the Zerona of Wiske, at the reft) being laden with Spunges." That might we came to an anchor, under the South-well fide of Mayles. This Iland, not path fetten miles di- Minles or Lesfant from the Continent of Phrygia, contayneth eight foore and eight miles in circuit. The box South and West parts Mountaynous and barren, the rest lenell and truitfull, producing excel-

On the one and twentieth of September, the Winder grew contrarie : and the Seas (though not rough) too rough to be brooked by to fmall a veff-il, no bigger, and like in proportion to a Grauef-end Tilt-boate, yet rowing vnder the shelter of the Land, we entred the Gulfe of Cas long, they hoping to have found fome purchase about a fhip cast there away but a tittle before; divers of them least into the Sea, and draing vinco the bottome, flayed there follong as if it had Cunning Dibeene their habitable element. And without queffion, they exceed all others in that facultie, we trayned thereunto from their child-hood, and hee the excellencest amongst them that can best performe it. Infomuch, that although worth nothing, he shall be proffered in marriage the best endowed, and most beautifull Virgin of their Hand. For they generally get their lining by these

go Spunges, and most occurred the state of t close girt varto them with a Towell; putting on formetimes when they goe afficare, long fleene-leffe Coates of home-from Cotton. Yet their Backs need not enuie their Bellies y Bifcor, Olives, Garlicke and Onions being their principall fufterance.

Voon the two and twentieth of September, the winds continuing contrarie, we but a little

shortned our journey. Deferving a small Saile that made towards ve; and thinking them to bee Pirats, we rowed backe by the shoare with all possible speed. In the evening we returned to the place that we fled from. When going alhoafe, one attyred like a woman, lay grouding on the Charmer 40 Sand, whileft the reft skipt about him in a ring, muttering certayne words, which they would make me beleeue were preualent Charmes to alter the weather to their purpole. On the three and twentieth wee continued weather bound, remouning after it grew darke vinto another anchorage ; a custome they held, lest observed by day from Sea or Shoare, they might by night be furprised. We lay in a little Bay, and under a Cliffe, where not one of vs but had his fleene interrupted by fearfull dreames, he that watched affirming, that he had feene the Deuill, fo that in a great difmay we put from shoare about mid-night. But whether it proceeded from the na-ture of the vaporous place, or that infested by some spirit, I leaue to decide. It is reported of a little Rockie Iland hard by, named formerly Ex, and facred vnto Neptane (whereof we have spoken something alreadie) that none could sleepe upon it for being disturbed with apparitions.

On the foure and twentieth the Sea grew calme, and wee proceeded on our voyage. Towards evening we went alhoure on the firme of Afia for freih water, and came that night vnto Tenedes. With the morning they renewed their labour, rowing along the chalkie shoare of the leffer Phrygia. Now against Cape lanizari (desirous to see those celebrated fields, where once C. lanizari flood limm the glorie of Afia, that hath affoorded to rarelt wits to plentiful an argument) with much importunitie and promise of reward (it being a matter of danger) I got them to set mee ahoare. When accompanied with two or three of them, we afcended the not high Promonto-rie, leuell aboue, and crowned with a mined Citie, whole imperfect walls doe thew to the Sea their antiquitie. Wherein are many spacious Vaults and ample Cisternes for the receit of water. The foundation hereof should feeme to have beene laid by Confiantine the Great, who in-6c tending to remoue the feate of his Empire, began here to build; which vpon a new refolution

he erected at Byzantium. This is that famous Promontorie of Signature, honoured with the Se- Signature pulchre of Achilles, which Alexander (vifiting it in his Asian expediction) coursed with flowers, and ranne naked about it, as then the custome was in Funerals Macrificing to the ghost of his Kinfman, whom he reputed most happy, that had such a Trumpet as Homer, to refound his ver-

called of the shape, rising out of the Sea, and supporting a Lanterne, erected by the Grander. informuch that thips of the greatest fize doe anchor in the channell: but ours thrust in, when English Conful. going afhoare, I was friendly entertayned of the English Confull. The Towne firetcheth along the bottome of the Haueh, backt on the West with a rockie Mountaine, the building meane. the Streets no larger then Allies. Vpon the Gaftle hill there is a Bannia, which little declines 20 from the state of a Temple; paued with faire tables of marble, and supported with Columnes, contaying seuerall roomes, one hotter then another, with Conduits of hot water, and natural Fountaines. On the North fide of the Citie ftands the Caltle , ample , double walled , and enuroned with a deepe ditch : manned and inhabited by Turkes, and well flored with munition. This not many yeeres fince was fodainely scaled in a night by the Florentines, who chooking the Artillerie, and driving the Tarkes into a corner, were now almost masters thereof; when a violent storme of wind, or rather of feare, enforced their companions to Sea, and them to a a violent forms of winn, or rease; or rease; ensured their composition seed, such tiers to a composition; which was, to depart with enlighted elipses diplayed, But the Godernoir hasing gotten them the hip power, caused their heads to be strucke off, said to be plated in morter on the Castle wall; where as they yet remark, but not vincenged, For the Captain, Edgit wyon his com-30 and the castle wall; where as they yet remark, but not vincenged, For the Captain, Edgit wyon his com-30 and the castle wall; where as they yet remark, but not vincenged, For the Captain, Edgit wyon his com-30 and the castle wall is where as they yet remark, but not vincenged, For the Captain, Edgit wyon his com-30 and the castle wall was not considered to the castle was not ming, frangled the perfidious Gouernour, either for dilhonouring the Time in his breach of promife, or for his negligence in being fo furprifed. Since when, a watch-word euery minute of the night goeth about the walls, to teffifie their vigilancie. Their Orchards are here enriched with excellent fruits; amongst the rest, with Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Pomgranats, and Figs. Vpon thele Fig-trees they hang a kind of vnfauoury Figge : out of whole corruption certains Partridges here are an ordinarie food; which dy biting the other (as they fay) procure them to ripen.

Partridges here are an ordinarie food; whereof they have an incredible number; greater then ours, and differing in hue, the beake and feete red, the plume aft-colour. Many of them are kept tame; thefe feeding abroad all day, at night vpon a call returne to their feuerall owners.

Solyman the Magnificent, picking a quarrell with the Gouernour for the Genesis, for a suspe-14 Eved correspondencie with the great Master of Mastes, during those warres, and discours of his delignes; having besides neglected accustomed presents, with the payment of two years tribute, sent Pied the Captaine Bassa to seize on the Iland; who on Easter day in the years 1 ,66. presenting himselfe before Sio, with fourescore Gallies, so terrified the Inhabstants, that before they were summoned, they quietly surrendred both it and themselues to his dispo-fure. The Gouernour, together with the principall families, intending to depart for Italie, hee fent vano ("mflustinaphe; and fiffered the common people to flay or remoue at their liking; So that the whole lland is now gouerned by Turkes, and defiled with their fuperfittions; yet have the Chriftians their Churches, and vnreproued exercise of Religion. Besides impossions you on the land, and vponcommodities arising from thence, the Great Turke receives yeterly for every Christian aboue the age of fixteene, ewo hundred Afpers : but the husbandmen are exempted vntill marriage. The Inhabitants for the most part, are Turkes and Grecians; those living in command, and loofely: the other husbanding the earth, and exceeding them infinitely in number. They are in a manner releast of their thraldome, in that vusensible of it : well meriting the name of Merrie Greekes, when their leafure will tolerate. Never Sunday or holiday

paffes over without some publike meeting or other: where intermixed with women, they dance out the day, and with full crownd Cups enlengthen their iollitie. Frequented by for-

raine Merchants, Natolia affoording great store of Chamolets and Grogerams, made about An-

their loffes, then by preying vpon others; and fo inyned with their undoers, led by Calender Ogly and Zid Arab: and growne to so fearefull a head, that the Great Tirke (some say) had

once a thought to have forfaken the Imperiall Citie, they being fiftie thousand, but destitute of

gra; and a part brought hither, before such time as the Goats (whose haire they pull, white, long, 60

Trakifb Rebels, and (oft) were deflroyed by the late Rebels, confifting for the most part of the expulsed Inhabitants of burned Townes; who having loft all that they had, knew not better how to recourt

tues. In the Playne beyond vs (for wee durft not straggle farther from the shoars) wee beheld where once flood Ilsam by him founded, called Troy promitionally of Tros. Afterward feiened to have beene walled about by Neptune and Phubus, in the dayes of Laomedon. Who both nor heard of this glorious Citie, the former taking, the ten weeres warre; and later, finall fubuers. on! which befell according to Enfebius, in the yeers of the World 2784 and fecond of Abdam gouernment of Ifreel. The ruines at this day not more then coniecturally extant.

These Rivers, though now poore in Streames, are not yet so contemptible, as made by Bell. miss, who perhaps militaketh others for them , (there being fundrie Ruiolets that defeend from the Mountaynes) as by all likelihood he hath done the fite of the ancient Troy. For the mines that are now so perspicuous, and by him related, doe stand source miles South-west from the a to forestaid place; described by the Poets, and determined of by Geographers: feated on a hanging Hill, and too neere the nauall fration to affoord a Field for such dispersed Encourgers, such lone Pursuites, interception of Scouts, (then when the Treism had pitched neerer the Nauie) and executed firatagems, as is declared to have happed betweene the Sea and the Citie. There reliques doe fufficiently declare the greatnesse of the later, and not a little the excellence. The walls (as Bellonius, but more largely, describeth it) contisting of great square stone, hard blacke. and spongie, in duets places yet standing supported on the inside with Pillars, about two wards diffant one from another, and garnished once with many now ruined Turrets, contaying a confulion of throwne-downe buildings, with ample Cufternes for the receir of Raine, it being feated on a fandie foile, and altogether destitute of Fountaynes. Foundations here are of a Christian Temple, and two Towers of Marble, that have better refuted the furie of Time; the one on the top of the Hill, and the other neerer the Sea in the Valley. From the wall of the Citie, another exten.leth (iupported with Buttreffes, partly flanding, and partly throwne downe) well-nigh vnto Ida, and then turning, is faid to reach to the Gulfes of Satelia, about twentie miles diffant. Halfe a mile off, and Weft off thefe Ruines, opposing Tenedat, are the hot water Baths, hereto-fore adorned, and neighboured with magnificent buildings; the way thither inclosed, as it were. with Sepulchres of Marble (many of the like being about the Citie, both of Greeks and Lains, as appeareth by the feuerall Characters. Two Baths there be; the one choked with rubbidge the other yet in vie, though vader a simple couerture. But now the ruines beare not altogether that forme, leftened daily by the Tierkes, who carried the Pillars and stones vnto Confrantinople, to adorne the buildings of the Great Baffas, as they now doe from Cyzicus. This notable remain der of so noble a Citie was once a small Village of the Ilians. For the Ilians, after the destruction on of that famous Hims, often thifting the feate of the new, here fixt it at last, as is faid, by the aduice of an Oracle, contayning one onely contemptible Temple, dedicated to Mourns, at such time as Alexander came thither, who then offered up his shield, and tooke downe another (that which he after vied in his fights) enriching the Temple with gifts, and honouring the Towne with his Name, exempting it from tribute, and determining upon his returne to creet in its fumptuous Temple, to inftitute facred Games, and to make it a great Citie. But Alexander dying, Lyfmachus tooke yoon him that care, who immured it with a wall, contayning fortiefurlongs in circuit, yet fuffered it to retayne the name of Alexandria. After it became a Colonie, 40 and an Vningritte of the Romanes, of no meane reputation. Fimbrie the Queftor, hauing in afedition flaine the Conful Valerius Flacens in Bithynia, and making himfelfe Captaine of the Romen Armie, the Citizens refusing to receive him, as a Robber and a Rebell, befreged this Citie, and in eleven dayes tooke it; who boafted, that he in eleven dayes had done that, which Agamenmon with fine hundred faile of thips and the whole Greeke Nation, could hardly accomplish in ten yeeres. To whom an Ilian answered, That they wanted a Hetter to defend them. Pieces of ruines, throughout these Playnes, lye every where scattered.

Returning agains to our Barke, hard by on the left hand left we Imbrius, now called Lembro, once facred to Mercurie; and not farre beyond Lemmos, famous for the fabulous fall of Vulcan. Whereupon, and no maruell, he ever after halted. The Greciens there now inhabiting, doe re- go late, that he brake his Thigh with a fall from a Horse on the side of a Hill, which at this day beareth his name : the Earth in that place thereupon receiuing those excellent vertues of curing of wounds, stopping of fluxes, expulsing poyfons, &c. now called Terra Sigillata, in that fealed, and there onely gathered. This Hill lyeth South of the ruines of that ancient Hephasia, which gaue a name vnto Unlean, and about three flight-shots removed. Betweene which standeth Sotire, a little Chappell, frequented by the Greeke Coloieres vpon the fixt of August; where they begin their Orifons, and from thence afcend the Mountayne to open the veine from whence they produce it : which they doe with great preparations and folemnities, accompanied with the principall Turkes of the Iland. That which covereth it , being removued by the labour of wellnigh fiftie Pioners, the Priefts take out as much as the Cadee doth thinke for that yeere fufficient 60 (left the price should abate by reason of the abundance) to whom they deliuer it; and then close it up in furth fort, as the place where they digged it, is not to bee discerned; the veine discourred, this precions Earth, as they fay, doth arise like the catting vp of Wormes, and that only during a part of that day : io that it is to be supposed that they gather as much as the same will affoord them. Certayne bags thereof are sent to the Great Turke, the rest they sell (of which I have feene many Cups at Constantinople:) but that which is fold to the Merchants, is made into little Pellets, and fealed with the Turkth Character: the ceremonies in the gathering hereof

were first inducted by the Venetians. And now we entred the Hellespont, so called of Helle, the Daughter of Ashamas King of Thebes, and Sifter of Phrixin; who, flying the stratagems of their step-mother Ino, was drowned therein. Bounded on the left hand with the Thracian Chersonesis (vulgarly called Saint Georges Arme) a Pennfula pointing to the South-west, whereon stood the Sepulchre of Heenba, called Cynosiema, slaine by them, and buried in the aforesaid Promontorie. On the right hand, the Ic Hellefforn is confined with the leffer Phrygia , dividing Europe from Afia, in fundrie places not Hellefton. aboue a mile broad, and in length about fortie, (now called the Channell of Conftantinople) and haung a Current that fetteth into the Lgemm: a trade-wind blowing either vp or downe.

which when contrarie to the streame, doth exceedingly incense it. The Mountaynes on each fide are clothed with Pines, from whence much Pitch is extracted. Three leagues about the entrance, and at the narrowest of this Streight , stand Sestos and Abydos; opposite to each other, Sistos and A formerly famous for the vnfortunate lours of Hero and Leander, drowned in the vncomp. fic- bydes. nate Surges, and fung by Masaw. Here Xerxes, whole populous Armie drunke Rivers drie, and made Mountaynes circumnauigable, is faid to haue past ouer into Greece, vpon a Bridge of Boats; which when broken by Tempests, he caused the Sea to be beaten (as if senible) with three hunand dred ftripes, and Fetters to be throwne therein; forbidding any to farifice visto Neptune.

Abydos flands in Afia, which the Milefians first founded, by the permission of Gyges King of Lidia, vinto whom all the Countrey was subject. Taken by the Turke in the reigne of Orchanes. Sestos stands in Europe, though never great, yet strongly built, and once the principall Citie of Chersonesus: afterward defaced, a Cattle was built in the roome thereof. Abydos is leated voon a low levell; and Sestes on the fide of a Mountayne, yet descending to the Sea : both bordering the same with their Castles; whereof the former is foure square, the other triangular. These at this day are vulgarly called the Caftles. All ships are suffered to enter, that by their multitude and appointment doe threaten no inuafion; but not to returne without fearch and permission. of which we shall speake in the processe of our Journall. A little beyond wee past by the ruines of a Castle, which the Twiff Carmaials and Gallies still sayling by , salute with their Ordnance, it being the first Fort by them taken in Europe, who call it Zembenic. That night wee came to Callipoly, some twentie miles distant, and thrust into a little Hauen North of the Towne, but only capable of small Vesfels.

Callipoly is a Citie of Chersonesis, seated at the bottome of a Bay; so shallow, that ships doe callipoli. there vivally anchor, as throughout the whole Helleftont. Callipolis maketh a faire flew a-faire off; but entred, is nothing leffe then it promiled : a part thereof possessing the shoare, and the rest the rising of the Mountayne : vinwalled, and without either Citadell or Fortreile. Along the shoare, there are divers drie stations for Gallies. On the South fide of the Citie in a little Playne, are fundrie round Hills; the Sepulchres, as they fay, of certayne Thracian Kings: for fuch was the ancient custome of bariall. The Countrey aboue is Champan, and not barren, but rarely inhabited. Here is a Ferrie for transportation into Afia. Greekes and lemes, together with the Turkes, doe inhabit the Towne, and are admitted their Churches and Synagogues. Here also is a Monasterie of Romifb Friars, of the Order of Saint Augustine; one of them being at this time (but not dwelling in the Couent) the Franke Conful; whose office is to dispatch, and discharge the dues of all Christians ships , not subject to the Grand Signior , and admitted free trading below at the Castles. To his house I repayred, with hope of some refreshment after my wearilome voyage : but hee then from home , I was forced to returne to my water-bed; there being no Innes for entertainment throughout inholpitall Turke: yet is this Towne well fur- No Innes. nished with all forts of prouision. What is here fold by the Greeks, you may agree for on a 50 price : but the Turks will receive your money, and give you a quantitie for it, according to their

owne arbitrement; but truly enough, and rather exceeding, then fhort of your expectation. For two or three Afpers (whereof twentie are neere vpon a shilling) a Butcher will cut off as much Mutton (for they divide it not into ioynts) as will well fatisfie three, though hungrie; which they carrie to the Cookes, who make no more adoe, but flicing it into little Gobbets, pricke it on a Prog of Iron, and hang it in a Fornace. Derided and flurted at by divers of the bafer people. at night we returned to our Barke. And departing the next morning, were forthwith met with a contrarie winde, which droue vs to the shelter of a Rocke not farre from the Towne: where we abode all that day, and the night enfuing : they opening and washing part of their Sponges. which laid on the shoare, by the bulke you would have thought to have beene a fraught for a Pin-60 nace; which studd into Sackes, when wet, were bestowed under the side Benches and crosse

Bankes of this little Veffell. On the feuen and twentieth of September, before day wee left the shoare, and after a while entres the Proportice Sea : confined with Thrace on the one fide, and with Bithynia on the other. Having climbed the Mountayne steepe towards the Sea, wee got to the Towne, and

1.1.1000

1282 Merrie Greekes, A drunken frey. The Authors entertagnment, LIB.VIII

bought vs fome victuals, at night we returned to our Boate, which lay in an obfcure Bay, where they frent the next day in washing the residue of their Sponges, whilest I and my Interpreter front our times on the top of the Mountayne in the Vineyards, not well pleafed with this their delay, now more affecting their ease then when without the Helleftont : being rid of that feare (for no Pirat dare venter to come within the Castles) which had quickned their expedition. In the evening we descended, where we found the Patron lying on his backe vpon a Rocke. all Merric Grukes. dropping wet : speechlesse, and strugling with death to our seeming. The Greekes together by the eares, every one with his fellow; fome in the Boate, and fome vpon the Shoare. Amongst the rest there was a blinde man, who had married a yong wife, that would not let him lie with her; and thereupon had wnder-taken this journey to complaine vnto the Patriarch : hee hearing to his brother crie out at the receit of a blow; guided to the place by the noise, and thinking with his staffe to have strucke the striker; laid it on with such a force, that meeting with nothing but Avre, and not able to recouer himselfe, he fell into the Sea : and with much difficultie was presented from drowning. The clamour increased with their contentions, and anon the Patrone starting up, as if of a sodaine restored to life; like a mad man skips into the Boate, and drawing a Turkif Cymiter, beginneth to lay about him (thinking that his Vessell had beene surprized by Pirats,) when they all leapt into the Sea; and during wnder water like fo many Dive-dappers, ascended without the reach of his furie. Leaping ashoare, hee pursues my Greeke, whom feare had made too nimble for him; mounting a fleepe Cliffe, which at another time hee could have had made too nimote for him; mounting a need with stones, as God would have it, hee 20 flumbled by the way, and there laid like a stone for two houres together; that which had made them fo quarrelsome being now the Peace-maker, having cast the fetters of sleepe voon their diffemperatures. For it beeing proclaimed death to bring Wine vnto Constantinople, and they loth to powre fuch good Liquor into the Sea, had made their bellies the ouer-charged Veffels. When the Patron awaked, and was informed by my Greeke how he had vied me, and withall of my resolution (which was rather to retyre unto the Towne, and there expect a passage, than to commit my fafetie vnto fuch people) he came vnto me, and kiffed me, as did the reft of his companions, (a testimonie amongst them of good-will and sidelitie) and so enforced mee aboord. The winds the next day blew fresh and fauourable. That night wee came to anchor a little below the feuen Towers : and betimes in the morning arrived at the Custome-house. Then croffing the Hauen I landed at Galata, and so ascended the Vines of Pena; where by Sir Thomas Gloser, Lord Embassador for the King, I was freely entertayned : abiding in his house almost for the space of foure monethes. Of whom without Ingratitude and Detraction I cannot but make an honourable mention.

ð. II.

Conflantinople described, the Turkes Seraglio, Pera; the Turkish Empire and Gonernment : Some Observations of the Turkish Religion.

His Citie by deftinie appointed and by nature feated for Sourzaigntie, was first the feat of the Romane Emperors, then of the Greeke, as now in the first and the feater of the Romane Emperors. fantine the Sonne of Helena, and loft by Constantine the Sonne of another Helena (2 Gregorie then Bishop, whose first Bishop was a Gregorie) to Mahomes the second, in the yeare 1453. with the slaughter of her people, and destruction of her magnificent structures. The like may bee observed of the Romane Emperours, whose first was Angulan, and whose last was Augustulus.

It flands on a Cape of Land neere the entrance of the Bolfborm. In forme triangular, on the East-fide washed with the same, and on the North-side with the Hauen, adioyning on the West to the Continent. Walled with bricke and stone, intermixed orderly, having four and twentie gates and posternes; whereof fine doe regard the Land, and nineteene the water, being about thirteene miles in circumference. Than this there is hardly in nature a more delicate Oblect, if beheld from the Sea or adiopning Mountaines; the loftie and beautifull Cypreffe Trees fo intermixed with the buildings, that it feemeth to prefent a Citie in a Wood to the pleafed beholders. Whose seven aspiring heads (for on so many hils and no more, they say it is seated) are most of them crowned with magnificent Mosques, all of white Marble, round in forme, and coupled aboue; being finished on the top with gilded Spires, that reflect the beames they re- 60 ceine with a maruellous iplendor; some having two, some foure, some fixe adioyning Turrets, exceeding high, and exceeding flender; Tarrast aloft on the out-fide like the mayne top of a ship, and that in feuerall places equally diffant, from whence the Tafilmanni with elated voices (for they vie no Bels) doe congregate the people, pronouncing this Arabicke Sentence, La Illah Il-

CHAP. 8. \$ 2.S. Sophies Temple. The Turkes Seraglio in Constantinople, 1282

Iella Mubemet re ful Allah: viz. There is but one God, and Mahomet bis Prophet. No Molque can leus l'Aubenner re jui Aussi viz. I sere so pro built by an Emperor. But that of Santta Sophia, once s. Sophia. have more then one of these furrees, it not cause by an Emperor and that of Sameta Spiratone a Christian Temple, (ewife burnt, and happily, in that fo lumpuously re-diffied by the Emperorus Islitans) exceeded not onely the red, by whose patterns they were framed, but all other our Islitans) exceeded not onely the red, by whose patterns they were framed, but all other Fabrickes whatfoeuer throughout the whole Vniuerfe. A long labour it were to describe it exacily, and having done, my eies have feene it, would but condemne my defective Relation. The principall part thereof rifeth in an Quall, furrounded with Pillars, admirable for their proportion, matter and workmanship. Ouer those others, through which ample Galleries, curiously. paued, and arched aboue, haue their profpect into the Temple, dignified with the prefence of to Christian Emperous at the time of Diuine Seruice, ascended by them on Horse-backe. The roofe compact, and adorned with Mofaike Painting : an Antique kind of worke, composed of little square pieces of Marble; gilded and coloured according to the place that they are to af-

fime in the figure or ground, which fer together, as if embofied, prefent an vnexprellable flatelinesse, and are of a maruellous durance: numbred by Pancirollus amongst things that are lost, but diurs in Italie at this day excell in that kind, yet make the particles of Clay, gilt, and coloured before they be neiled by the fire. The relt of the Church, though of another proportion, doth joyne to this with a certaine harmonie. The fides and floore all flagged with excellent Marble, vallted underneath, and contayning large Cifternes, replenished with water from an Aquaduct. Before the entrance, there is a goodly Portico; where the Christians that visit it vpon curiositie, 20 as well as the Turkes, doe lease their shooes before they doe enter. Within on the left hand, as well as the Larger, our same time misures occore may not enter. Frinning in the rate many, there is a Pillar coursed with Copper, enter fleeting, I known not why, wildefin in beeing paft. Sweating Pilthrough by Come Conduit) which the Tarker wipe of with their Handkerchers, through a vaine. In:

Superitition periwaded, that it is of facred and fourraigne vertue. The doores are curiously cut through, and plated; the wood of one of them fained to be of the Arke of Noe, and therefore left bare in some places to be killed by the denouter people. Enagring that lived a thousand yeares fince, affirmeth this Temple to haue beene from East vnto West, two hundred and threescore feet long, and in height one hundred and fourescore: and Antonius Menauinus, that in the dayes Sunia, ince of Baiates, it contayined at once fixe and thirtie thouland Turker. Perhaps the ancient Fabricke Templo (6 fixes of Hainter, it contaying at once me another command in eggs, remispating another rather the significant the Randing entire, whereigh this now remaying, was little more then the Chancell. Better discrete principles of the significant the significant significant the doors thereof are in said as a 30 to be believed then Ballonius amodeme eye-writing, who reports that the doors thereof are in said as a 30 to be believed then Ballonius amodeme eye-writing the thirty with the doors thereof are in said as a 30 to be believed then Ballonius amodeme eye-writing the significant the doors thereof are in said as a 30 to be believed then Ballonius amodeme eye-writing the significant the said of the significant through the significant thr

number equall to the dayes of the yeare: whereas if it hath fine, it hath more by one, then by me was discerned. Mahomes the Great, vpon the taking of the Citie, threw downe the Altars, defaced the Images, (of admirable workemanship, and infinite in number) converting it into a Molque. To every one of these principal Molques belong publike Bagnies, Hospitals, with lodgings for Santons, and Ecclefiafticall perions, beeing endowed with competent Reuenues. The inferiour are built for the most part square, many penthoused with open Galleries where they accufrome to pray attimes extraordinarie: there being in all (comprehending Pera, Scutari, and the Buildings that border the Besphorus) about the number of eight thousand.

But of this Sophia, is almost every other Friday frequented by the Sultan, beeing neere vnto the fore-front of his Serragio, which possesseth the extremest point of the North-east Angle, where formerly flood the ancient Byzantium; divided from the reft of the Citie by a loftie wall, contayning three miles in circuit; and comprehending goodly Groues of Cyprefies intermixed with Plaines, delicate Gardens, artificiall Fountaines, all varietie of fruit-trees, and what not rare! Luxurie being the Steward, and the Treasure vnexhaustable. The proud Palace of the Twent doth open to the South, having a loftie Gate-house without lights on the out-fide, and or Serate. ingrauen with Arabicke Characters, see forth with Gold and Azure all of white Marble. This leadeth into a spacious Court three hundred yards long, and about halfe as wide, on the left fide whereof stands the round of an ancient Chappell, contaying the Armes that were taken from the Grecians, in the fubuerfion of this Citie; and at the far end of this Court a fecond Gate. 50 hung with Shields and Cymiters, doth leade into another full of tall Cyprefie Trees, leffe large yet not by much then the former. The Cloysters about it, leaded aboue, and paued with stone,

the Roofe supported with Columnes of Marble having Copper Chapters, and Bases. On the left hand the Dinano is kept; where the Baffas of the Port doe administer lustice, on that side confined with humble buildings, beyond which Court on the right hand there is a street of Kitchens; and on the left is the Stable, large enough for fine hundred Horle; where there is now to be feene a Mule fo admirably streakt, and dapled with white and blacke, and in such due proportion, as if a Painter had done it, not to imitate Nature, but to please the Eye, and expresse | i | perhaps a Ze-Curiofitie, Out of this fecond Court there is a passage into a third, not by Christians ordinarily feethe former to be entred, furrounded with the Royall Buildings, which though perhaps they come fhort of Booke in As-60 the Italian, for contriuement and finenesse of workmanship; yet not in costly curiousnesse, mat- drew Bauell, ter, and amplitude. Betweene the East wall (which also ferueth for a Wall to the Citie) and the water, a fort of terrible Ordnance are planted, which threat destruction to fuch as by Sea shall attempt a violent entrie or prohibited passage: and without on the North-side stands the

Sultans Cabinet, in forme of a fumptuous Sommer House, hauing a private passage made for the

Ottoman Monuments.

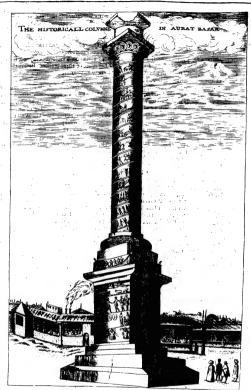
time, of waxed Linnen, from his Serragio: where he often folaceth himselfe, with the various Objects of the Hauen, and from thence takes Barge to passe vinto the delightfull places of the adiovning Afra. This Palace howfoeuer enlarged by the Ottomans, was first erected by Inflorence who named it Sophia of the Emprese.

Now next to these the Ottoman Mausolous doe require their regard, built all of white Mar Now next to title the Oisemen against our stages and a second of the Mar-ble round in forms, and coupled on the top; hauing flately Porches, within each is the Tombe of a seuerall Sultan, with the Tombes of his Children, that either haue dyed before him or haus after beene strangled by their tyrannicall Brethren, according to the Turkijh pietie. The Tombes nor longer, nor larger then fitting the included bodies, each of one stone; higher at the Tombes nor tonger, nor suger than mening the members are then couers of Greene, and Tur- to bants laid vpon the vpper ends, at the foure corners of those of the Sultans, there stand four Tapers of Waxe as bigge as a thigh, but not lighted. The floores of the Monuments are spread with Carpets : and some there are that doe continually live therein, performing such duties of Prayers and Lamentations, as agreeth to their cuftomes; at certaine times beformkled also with the teares of their Off-fpring.

The South-east Angle of this Citie is taken up by the seuen Towers, called anciently Land cula: employed, as the Tower of London, for a Store-house of the Sultans Treasure, and Munition, being also a Prison for capitall Offenders. We omit to speake of the great mens Serraplist. that of the women belonging to the deceassed Emperours; and that of the Virgins: the Albert ges of Ianizaries; the severall Seminaries of Spachies and Giamoglans: the Beseitans (where fire ner forts of Commodities are fold,) Hospitals; Markets of men and women, &c. fince hereafter we are to treate of most of their Orders; the buildings themselves not meriting a particular defcription : converting our Discourse to those few remainders of many Antiquities, whereof the Aquæduct made by the Emperour Valentinian, and retayning his name, doth principally challenge remembrance. This hath his heads neere to the Blacke Sea, not farre from a Village called Domuz-dere, of the abundance of wilde Hogges thereabout, the place being woodie and mountaynous, where many Springs are gathered together, and at fundry places doe joyntly fall into great round Cifternes, from thence conveyed to conjoyne with others (amongst which, as supposed, is the Brooke Cydarius) led sometimes under the Earth, now along the levell, then vpon mightie Arches ouer profound Valleyes, from Hill to Hill, for the space wel-nigh of thir- 20 tie miles, vntill arriving at the Citie, and furmounting the same, it falleth at length as from a head-long Catara& into an ample Cifferne, supported with neere two hundred Pillars of Mar-ble; and is from thence by Conduits conducted vnto their publike vses. This was repayred by Solyman the Great, great-grand-father of this now reigning Achmet : whose wishes and enderuours are faid to have aymed at three things; which were, the re-edifying of Ponte Piccolo, and Ponte Grande, (which croffe two armes of the Sea, and the restoring of this Aquaduct; these he accomplished : but the third, which was the expugnation of Vienna, he could neuer accomplish Not farre from the Temple of Santta Sophia, there is a spacious place surrounded with buildings, Not rare from the 1 empte of South Septembers is a positing press infromation which commings, the co that of Smith-field 2, and anciently called the Hippordom, for that there they exhibited their Horfe-races, as now Armidon by the Timber, a word of like fignification, where the Spatists 40 of the Court play enery Friday at Giocho di Canni; which is no other then Prison Bace vpon Horse-backe, hitting one another with Darts, as the other doe with their hands; which they neuer throw Counter but at the backe of the Flyer. Nor is it the least contentment to the Chriftian to behold the terrible falls that they often get (not rarely coffing them their lines) whilf ABrarenCo- by the wreathing of their bodies, or a too hastie turne, they seeke to avoide the Pursuer; and lamne and an fometimes the Darts not lighting in iest on their naked neckes, and reuersed faces. In this place there standeth a stately Hieroglyphicall Obeliske of Theban Marble.

And in Aurathafar (that is , the Market of Women) there is an Historicall Columne to bee alcended within, farre surpassing both Tartars, and that of Antoninus, which I have seene in 50 Rome, the Workman having so proportioned the Figures, that the highest and lowest appeare of owne bigneffe.

And right against the Mansion of the Germane Emperours Embassador (who onely is suffered to lodge within the Citie) stands the Columne of Constantine, about the top whereof, you may reade this Diffichon, TO OFION EPFON ENGAME OGAPEN XPNOQ NEOI MANOUHA BUXEBHY AUTOKPATOP. Their are all the Remaines that are left (or all that are by the Christians to be seene, besides the Relikes of the Palace of Constantine, now made a Stable for wilde beafts) of so many goodly buildings, and from all parts congested Antiquities, where with this Sourreigne Citie was in times past to adorned : and with them are their memories perifhed, For not a Greeke can fatisfie the Inquirer in the Hiftory of their owne Calamities, 50 60 supine negligent are they, or perhaps so wise as of passed euils to endeauour a forgetfulnesse. But to fay fomething of Conflantinople in generall : I thinke there is not in the World an Obiect that promifeth fo much afarre off to the beholders, and entred, fo decement the expectation. Bifebuildings. The best of their private buildings, inferiour to the more contemptible fort of ours. For the Turkes are nothing curious of their houses, not onely for that their Possessions are not hereditary;



but effeeming it an egregious folly to erect such sumptuous Habitations, as if hee were to line for euer. None being about two stories high, some of rough stone, some of timber, some of Sunne-dryed bricke : their Roofes but riling a little, courred with fuch Tiles as are layd on the Ridges of ours, one contrary to another; yet some part of some of them flat, (those belonging toimen of principall degree) planted with flowers and trees of the rarest colours, and productions. Many vacant places there are in the Citie, and many rowes of buildings, confifting of one, many variety practice retearer in the variety and many rower or outloings, commune of thosp onely, all belonging to the Grand Signing, who lets them our vario Tradefinen; into which their wires come not: prohibited by Chaboner that women should buy or fell (though now not feldome they doe) or shew themselves publikely. The streets for the most part are exceeding

Pppppp

Crueley.

Plague.

narrow Home tands and walls, belonging to great mens Serragins; so negligent are they of ex-bounded with long dead walls, belonging to great mens Serragins; so negligent are they of ex-terior garnishings. All the suburbs that this Citie hath, lie without the gate of Advinople, adiov-The Suburbs ning to the North-west angle thereof, and stretching along the vppermost of the Platen; where within a flately Monument, there flandeth a Tombe of principall repute in the Mahomaan deuotion: the Sepulchre of Inpe Sultan a Santon of theirs, called vulgarly and ridiculoufly, the Se-Holy Sepulpulchre of lob. To which the Captaine Baffa doth repaire before he fet forth, and at his returne.

there performing appointed orations and ceremonies: and vpon a victorie obtayned, is obliged to visite the same every morning and evening for the space of three weekes. Before this, in 2 Cyprefe groue, there flandeth a Scaffold, where the new Sultans are girt with a fword, by the Io hands of the Mufis their principall Prelate, with divers folemnities.

Now fpeake wee of the Hauen, rather denouring then encreased by a little River, called fornerty Burster, now by the Greeker, Chestrations, and Chay by the Tarker: much frequented by fowle, and rigorously preferred for the Grand Signious pleasure, who ordinarily hawkes thereon The Hauen.

infomuch that a fernant of my Lord Embassadors was so beaten, for presuming to shoote there that (hortly after he died (as it is thought) of the blowes. This falleth into the West external the Hauen; throughout the world the faireft, the fafeft, the most profitable. So conumiently profound, that the greatest ships may lay their sides to the sides thereof, for the more easie re-

protound, that the greatest amount of it is land-lockt by the opposite of it, opecet, or disharge of their burthen. The mouth of it is land-lockt by the opposite of it, opecet, or disharge of their burthen. The mouth of it is land-lockt by the opposite of its land-lockt by the and South, ioynes the blacke and white Seas : fo call they the Seas North and South of the Bofthorms. So that no wind bloweth, which brings not in some shipping or other, to the furninonpose. So the an wine covering, many and the second principles of the mind thing of this Cities having (as hath beene fail debetors) on the left hand the Easine Sea, with the Lake of Mesis, initabited about he multitudes of Nations, and entred into by many amigable Rivers; whereby whatfoeuer groweth, or is nourished in those farre distant Countries is gable Rivers; whereby whatloeuer goweth, or is nourinted in those tarre diltant Countries, is easily transported vinto it: on the right hand Propositi, and the Mid-land Sea, bondered with Natiola, Syria, & Egps, Affrica, Sprine, France, Italia, Greece, and Daimatia, with their fruidill llands) and without, the great Occasp: Informuch as it feemeth by the opportunitie of maigation to participate with their feuerall commodities, daily brought hither by forminers; feated

of it felfe in a Countrey, though not altogether barren, yet not lufficient to fuffaine the Inhabitants. Moldania and Valachia doe ferue them with Beeues and Muttons ; and as for Fish , the adioyning Seas yeeld store and variety, as the concaues of the Rockes doe falt , white, pure, and folid, made onely by the labour of the furges. Subject it hath beene to fundrie horrible combufrions : vnto that which befell in the dayes of Lee, and not long after in the reigne of Bafilem,

(when amongst other infinite losses that famous Librarie perished, contayning an hundred and twentie thouland volumes; wherein the inward skin of a Dragon the Odyffes and Iliads of Homer were written:) and to divers others, this last, though lesse, may be added, which hapned on the fourteenth of October, in the yeere 1607. in which three thousand houses were burnt

to their foundations. Nor is it to be maruelled at : the Citizens themselves not daring to quench the fire that burneth their owne houses, or by pulling some downe to preserve the remaynder : 40 Languist info- an office that belongeth to the Aga, and his Lanizaries; who nothing quicke in their adiffance, doe often for spite or pillage, beate downe such buildings as are farthest remound from danger. So that the milchiefe is not onely wished for the bootie, but prolonged; and not seldome they themselves set the lewer houses on fire; who made warie by the example, are now furnished of

nuemunus set une sewer nounes ou mr; woo mane warne by tree example, are now turnined or arched vallts, for the fafeguard of their goods, which are not to be violated by the films. The fall of houles heretofore by terrible and long-latting earthquakes, now by negligence in repay-ring, tempelts, and the matter that they confine of, inherer allo mooft frequent, sany (a) hath beene faid) being built of Sun-dried bricke. And although it eniopes a delicate aire, and ferene Tempelis. skies, even during the Winter, when the East, the West, or South wind bloweth; yet the boyfterous Tramentana, that from the blacke Sea doth fweepe his blacke substance, heere most vio- 50 lently rages, bringing often with it fuch fformes of inow, that in September I have seene the then flourishing trees so ouercharged therewith, that their branches haue broken, accompanied

with bitter froits, which diffoluing, refolue therewith the vnfirme matter that fuftaynes them. Laftly, the plague (either happing through the vice of the Clime, or of those misoelecures, or hither brought by the many irrequenting Nations) for the most part miferably infested this Clime.

tie, encreased by the superstition of the Mahemetans. On the other fide of the Hauen (continually croffed by multitudes of little Boats, called Par-Celass or Pon. magies, and rowed for the most part by & gyptuens) stands the Citie of Galate, so called, as some write of the Gaules, once the mafters thereof, or as others will have it, of Galac, which fignifieth Mile, for that there the Greeke kept their cattell as Theo (another same thereof, which do fignified Beynd, in that on the other fide of the Hauen; but more anciently Corne Byzantium. Infirmely walled, yet great, if you comprehend the fuburbs therewith, extending from along the shoare to the vpper tops of the Mountaines, surpassing Confluentinople in her loftie buildings built by the Genous ; who bought it of the Greeks Emperours (in their declining effact, poffett of

little more then the regall Citie, and title; for the most part fustayned by forraine contributions? and by them furrendred vato Mahomer the Great, the day after the facking of Confiantmoole. At the West end thereof the Grand Signiors Gallies have a drie station: and at the East end right against the point of his Serraglio, called Tophana and Fundacle, hes a number of great Ord-nance vnplanted; most of them the spoyle of Christian Cities and Fortrelles, as may appeare by their inscriptions, and Impreses; and many of them of an incredible greatnesse.

Now, right against the mouth of the Hauen, on the other fide of the Boffbrus, stands Scutari a Towne of Bythinia. Scutari sometimes belonged to Chalcedon, once a tree Citie, and sea- Chalcedon. ted a little below it: fo called of a Brooke, now without a name, that runs into Propontis; calto led alfo. The Citie of the Blind; because of the foolish Megarians that built it. Famous for

the fourth generall Councell there holden; and now onely thewing a part of her ruines. The blacke Sea is distant some fifteene miles from Constantinople, to named of his blacke ef- Rlacke Sea

fects, or for the thicke milts that viually hang ouer it. Here the Turke prohibiteth forrainers to trafficke, there being no other passage there into but

by Rivers : neither this pallage of Boftborns, as some coniecture , hath beene alwayes : but forced by the violence of itreames that fell into the ouer-charged Enzine. Where it rusheth into the Boftborns there are two Rockes, that formerly bare the names of Cranes and Symplicades :which for that fo neere as many times appearing but as one, they were fayned by the Poets vnftable, and at fundry times to juftle each other. Here you the top of a Rocke, fuppoied by

20 some to be one of these, yet too farre removed from a fellow to be so , stands a Pillar of white marble, called vulgarly. The Pillar of Pompey. Vpon the shoare there is an high Lanterne, large enough at the top, to contayne about threefcore persons, which by night directoth the Savier into the entrance of the Boft borus.

The Bolthorns fetteth with a strong current into Propontis, and is in length, about twentie Bolthorns. miles ; where broadeft, a mile ; and in two places, but halfe a mile ouer, So called for that Oxen accustomed to swim from the one side to the other. One of those two fore-mentioned Streights lies before Confantinople; the other, five miles above and a halfe, where on Europe fide there stan-

deth a Castle, called formerly Damalis, and now, The Blacke Tower. The Turkish Empire is the greatest that is, or perhaps that ever was from the beginning. For 30 first, the European part thereof extendeth westward vnto the Archdukes of Austrias Dominions. Aretching to the Adriatick Sea by the confines of Ragufa, bounded on the South with the Mediterraneum; on the East, with Ageum, Propontis, and Pontus, even to Theodofia, a Citie of the Sevthian Cherfone fine; and on the North almost to Ruffia and Polonia; contayning Romania, Bulgaria; Serma, Rascia, the tributarie principalities of Valachia and Moldania; the greater part of Hungary, Bosna, Albania, Macedon, Epirus, all Grecia and Teleponnesus; all the fruitfull Ilands of the Egens Sea: Ragusa payes for her libertie; nor is Cardie, Zant, or Cephalania held without Prefents. But what is this, compared to her Afran Territories: within which, all Natolia is comprifed: on three fides embraced with the Lyean , Euxine, and Cilician Seas ; contayning the

princip on other bases emutated with the education, passess, and contents cases; contaying the Prounces of Portus, Galatia, Sprinina, Projes, Lycia, Rempbila, Citica, Gapadesia, and the lef-40 fee dremenia, beyond which, Colobir thretching Northward to Catais, and bounded on the East with the Country of the Georgians, whereof the Tarkey possible not not be con-trolled to the Catais of the alto contayneth of the greater Armenia: all Syria (in which Calofyria, Phanicia, and Palefine;) Babylonia and Mejopotamia: Arabia felix, which stretchesh out into the South Sea, interpoling the Persian and Arabian Gultes, doe bow to that Soueraigntie: so doe the Inhabitance of Petres, and Deferts; such I meane, as have knowne habitations. In Africa it extendeth all along the coasts of the Mediterraneum, even from the red Sea to Acrath, a Citie of Mauritamis (except some few places possess by the Spaniard) wherein is the Countrey of the Troolodites. the miraculously fertile Kingdome of Agypt, Tripoly in Barbarie, the Kingdome of Tunis, and Citie of the Argers with her Territories , with the tributarie Kingdomes of Feffe and Morocco.

50 To this adde Cyprus, Rhodes, and all the fertile Hands of the mid-land Sea, that he East of Candie. Thus great at this day is the Ottoman Empire : but too great for it are their affumed Titles: as God on earth, Shadow of God, Sole Monarch of the World, King of Kings, Commander of all that can be commanded, Soueraigne of the most noble Families of Persia and Armenia, Posfessor of the holy Cities of Mecha and Ierusalem, Lord of the blacke and white Seas , Sultan of Babylon, and so proceeding with a repetition of their severall Kingdomes. Like swelling attributes gaue this now reigning Sultan to our Soueraigne, in a Letter writ lately, which I will infert for the strangenesse: Vnto the most glorious and most mightie King lames, one of the great Lords of the creation of lesus, and most laudable amongst all the Princes of the Nation of Messia, a Indee of all debates and differences of the people of Nazarets, Possessor of great Maiestie, riches, and of glorie,

at about som unique and the proof England. &c. farcing his Letter with like fulthan, calling his owne Court. Que most bappe and flowing Par . A Part of refuge for the World: and laborating, From our impensal refilence (Confinancing), considering and majority guarded: Yet in his confined to the Confinancing of the Majority and majority guarded: Yet in his confined to the Confinancing of the Majority and majority guarded: Yet in his confined to the Confinancian of the Majority and Majority and Confined to the Confined Confined to the Confined Confi ttile more modeft, contayning no more then Sultan Achmet Chan, Sonne to Mahomet Chan most insincible.



But the barbarous policie whereby this tyrannie is sustayned, doth differ from all other: gui- 40 ded by the heads, and strengthned by the hands of his slaues, who thinke it as great an honou to be fo, as they doe with vs that ferue in the Courts of Princes: the Naturall Turke (tobe fo called a reproach) being rarely employed in command or feruice: amongst whom there is no Nobilitie of bloud, no knowne parentage, kindred, nor hereditary possessions, but are as it were of the Sultant creation, depending vpon him onely for their fuftenance and preferments. Who difposeth, as well of their lines as their fortunes, by no other rule then that of his will; although sometime for forme he vieth the assent of the neuer gain-saying Musin. These are the fonnes of Christians (and those the most compleatly furnished by nature) taken in their childhood from their miserable Parents, by a leuie made every five yeeres (or oftner, or seldomer, as occasion requiresh) throughout the whole Empire, (excepting certain printedged places, 2 50 mongst which are Sio and Confinitiople,) who are bestowed in several Seminaries, instruded mongt which are So and Confiaminopic.), who are beltowed in leueral Seminaries, intructed in the Mabometan Religion (changing their names yoon their circumcifion) raught the vice of their fleueral weapons, and made parient of lunger and labour, with inured abstinence, and continual exercife. Thefe they call Immofians, who have their faces flauen (the token of feminate), wearing long Coats and copped Caps, not valike to our Idiots. The choicelt of them for spirit and feature, are after a while received into the Grand Signiors Serraglio, diffinguished by chambers like to those in Hospitals, according to their seniorities; where all are brought vp in the discipline of warre; and not a few, acquainted with the fecrets of State : such as by the excellency of their gifts doe afture the expeditation of a future eminency. Those of the first chamber, are the first preferred: yet not in order, but according to the worth of the place, and 60 worthinesse of the person. Of these come the Beglerbegs, (the name fignifying, a Lord of Lords) of whom there be onely two, the one of Greece, and the other of Natolia: who command all the horse-men in those Countries under the Generall) the Great Baffas, (whereof some are Generals of Armies, some Vizers of the Port, the rest Vice-royes of Prouinces) the Sanziaks GoverCHAP. 8.S.2. Generals, Viziers, Vice-royes, Governors, and other Officers. 1280

nours of Cities, for so the name signifieth, with their Territories and Forces, and other Offinours of Littles, for no the time against a state of the Court, of principal places and strend ones both of Warre and Peace; with those of the Court, of principal places and attendance. Of the other Immoglacus some come to bee Changirs, who goe of Emissias, execute Communicants, and are Parsiants, and vaders. Sherming attending the imployment of the Emissiant Court of the Court, who mounted on horse-backe, carrie Dablazes (a weapon like a Maior) before him, and percott, who mounted on horse-backe, carrie Dalis, cas (a weapon like a Mace) before him, aggion the Counter of Indies; edicitizing life the causies of their Clients. But the Spicious all arrises, Spachias,
not which are marked their Josephin (the principal contes of their inditionism) are the frience
and Deporters of the Torificial Counter, The Spachiases, Horse ment, weapons, for the spacin
part agence, with Bow, Male, Dance, Harqueboll's, Scolymiter; whicher they have the great
part agence, with Bow, Male, Dance, Harqueboll's, Scolymiter; whicher they have the great
part agence, with Bow, Male, Dance, Harqueboll's, Scolymiter; whicher they have the great
part of the space of the space
and force of Male. The skins orbit risk or the they are spaced within the great
and brongs, that reach to refig articles, and their two loves by their orbits and profits of the space of the

and displying she wanted Spartery with their large another per altrices. Their amount appeted behind to be beforeful factor deep and radic and for Caparinos, Pign et me of particular for Lougards, Lions, Tygers, Paritters, and theblee. In Cities when on the control of Stammell with lang hanging liceuse, and any defininguings of Stammell with lang hanging liceuse, and any defininguings of the control of the c The first as yet vapreferred, vader the command of senerally process, de second pour the immediate imployment of the Emperor: who alloweth surveign the larly pension of the seneral seneral

paid them enery quatter. Of these there be 3 2000, the one halfe of them are called place of the right hand one sail there are a sancas the other on the left, who are called Silibrary abrichearing without & white Pendants. The million. ether dispersed throughout the whole Empire do line upon their particular senements for terms of life affigued them, and thereupon so called to being the policy of this Start, to treat in the core of the alligitum tems, and uncertapout to antecone using one purpose we may succeed countries a number of Timerius, a midwestable to the getarnelic suffect in-whistoph suffice principal part of the fouldiery is provided for (, and the Empire throughthed, both, against formaine innations, and trustless of the fuelbade.) Of these, as they are are proported for feature, abundred rhouland scuery one being to find as many. Horse, as this farmed out double they said of the proposed of the countries o

30 mules of fixtie Saltanies, ready to be commanded by their feuerall Sanziacles, as they by their Ballar : thele beare on their Lances white and red Pendants. But the lanizaries (aname that fightfieth New Souldiery) are those that beare fach great (way in Confrantisple : infomuch, that the Sultiess themselves have beene sometimes subject to their infolencies. They are divided into fenerall Companies under fenerall Captaines, but all commanded by their Aga, a place of high runt; and the third in repute through the Empire: howbeit, their too much love is to him ari afured defination. Thele are the Flower of the Tinkilo Infantry, by whom fisch wonderfull victories have beene archieved. They call the Emperour Father, (for none other is there for them to depend on) to whole valour and faith in the time of warre hee committeeh his perfon. they having their stations about the Royall Pavillion. They ferue with Harquebusses, armed

40 befides with Cymiter, and Hatchets. They weare on their heads a Bonnet of white Felt, with a flap hanging downe behind to their fhoulders; adorned about the browes with a wreathe of Metall gilt, and fet with stones of small value, having a kind of sheathe or socket of the same erected before, wherein such are suffered to sticke Plumes of Feathers as have behaved themfelues extraordinary brauely. They tacke up the skirts of their coats when they fight or march. and carry certaine daies prouision of victuals about with them, nor is it a cumber, it being no more then a small portion of Rice, and a little Sugar and Hony. When the Emperour is not in the field, the most of them reside with him in the Citie : ever at hand vpon any occasion to secure his person, and are as it were the Pretorian cohorts with the Romanes. They are in number about fortie thousand, whereof the greater part (I meane of those that attend on the Court)

50 haue their being in three large Serraglios, where the Iuniors doe reserence their Seniors, and all obey their feuerall Commanders (as they their Aga) with much filence and humilitie. Many of them that are married (a breach of their first institution) have their private dwellings; and those that are bulied in forraine imployments, are for the most part placed in such Garrison Townes as Joe greatly concerne the fafetie of the Empire; some are appointed to attend on Embaffadours; others, to grand fuch perticular Christians as will be at the charge, both about the Citie, and in their Trauels, from incivilities and violences, to whom they are in themfelues most faithfull : warv and cruell, in preventing and revenging their Cangers and injuries, and so patient in bearing abuses, that one of them of late being strucken by an English-man, (whose

humorous iwaggering would permit him neuer to review his Countrey) as they travelled along through Morea, did not onely not revenge it, nor abandon him to the pillage and outrages of others, in io vnknowne and fauage a Countrey; but conducting him vnto Zant in faretie, faying, God forbid that the villary of another stould make him betray the charge that was committed to his trust. They are of one Trade or other : The pay that they have from the Grand Signior, is but fine Aipers a day ; yet their eldeft Sons as foone as borne, are involled, and received into pention,

Pppppp 3

But it is to be considered, that all these before named, are not onely of that tribute of children. For not a few of them are captiues taken in their child-hood, with divers Renegados, that haue most wickedly quitted their Religion and Countrey, to fight against both, who are to the Christians the most terrible Aduersaries. And withall they have of late infringed their ancient customes, by the admitting of those into these orders that are neither the Sonnes nor Grandfonnes of Christians; a naturall Turke borne in Constantinople, before neuer knowne, being now 20 a Baffa of the Port.

Tartars.

Ouer and aboue these, and besides the auxiliary Tarters, whereof there are lightly threescore thousand (who line on spoile, and serue without pay) that are ever affishant; the Grand Signier hath other Forces, whom they call Achongi, who have nothing but what they can get by foraging, being Hindes of the Countrey, and tyed to ferue on Horfe-backe, for certaine primitedes that they hold, in number about thirtie or tortie thousand : but small in value, as are the Azei, who ferue on foote (yet properly belonging to the Gallies) better acquainted with the Snade then Sword : thrust forward with purpose rather to weary, then to vanquish the enemy, whose dead bodies doe ferue the lanizaries to fill vp ditches, and to mount the walls of affaulted Fortreffes; befides many voluntaries, who follow the Army in hope to fucceede the flaine Spabeis to and lanizaries, now nothing curious at such a time to receive those that bee not the Sonnes of Christians into the Order. Such are the Twhis Forces, both in qualitie and proportion, and hee that shall see three hundred thousand of these in an Armie (as he might have done this laft Sommer in Bithymia) so disciplined, so appointed, and so daringly resolute : whose onely reputeconfifts in their valours; and whose deteats are punished in their Commanders as offences, furnished with such abundance of great Ordnance (much whereof they cast according to their occasions. carrying with them the Metall voon the backes of Camels) will not onely not wonder at their victories, but rather how the rest of the yet vnvanquished world hath withstood them. I haut heard a Prince (and he of no finall experience) impute the fundry ouerthrowes given them, by a small number of Christians, to the paucitie of Commanders, and their want of experience, 40 fome one Sauziack having under his conduct five thousand Timariots; and he perhaps but newly crept out of the Sultans Serraglio, exercised onely in speculative conflicts. So that their numbers proue often but cumbers, and the aduantage lofte, encountred by the many expert Directors of tew, who are also farre better defensuely armed. But he that hath bounded the Sea, hath alfolimited their furies. And furely it is to bee hoped, that their greatnesse is not onely at the height, but necre an extreame precipitation : the body being growne too monstrous for the head, the Sultans vnwarlike, and neuer accompanying their Armies in person; the Souldier corrupted with ease and libertie, drowned in prohibited Wine, enfeebled with the continual conuerse of Women, and generally lapsed from their former austeritie of life, and simplicatie of manners. Their valours now meeting on all fides with opposition, having of late given no in- 50 crease to their Dominions, and Empire so got, when it ceasseth to increase, doth begin to diminish. Lastly, in that it lath exceeded the observed period of a Tyrannie, for such is their Empire. Now when they march, the Tartars doe fcoure the Countrey two daies journey before, then follow the Achingi, after them the Timariots, next those few lemoglans that be, next them the Ianizaries, the Chanfes follow on horse-backe, (who carrie Bowes and Arrowes, besides their Mases and Cymiters) then comes the Sultan with the Officers of his Court, and Archers of his Guard, who are foot-men: the stipendarie Spaheis marching on either side of him. An hundred Coaches couered with red, with foure Horses apeece, are drawne after, which carrie the Hichoglans (his Pages) and Eunuchs ; about these the Iemoglans, called Baltagies, are placed. The carriages of the Army enfue, followed by voluntaries, who goe in hope (as before faid) to bee 60 entertained in the roomes of the flaine, with the Servants of the Spabeis of the Court, and certaine lanix aries Ass-aglans Lepzlers and Denigilers. The lanizaries have the models of Elephants, Boots, Swords of Wood, and the like, borne before them for their Enfignes; and the Royall Standard is no other then a Horse taile tied to the end of a staffe.

As for their forces at Sea, they are but small in comparison of what they have beene, and com- Scaforce. pared to those of particular Christian Princes, but contemptible. Approved by the Florentine. who with fixe thips onely hath kept the bottome of the Streights for thele three yeeres past in despite of them : infomuch as they have not dared to hazard the revenue of Egypt by Sea, but haue fent it over Land with a Guard of Souldiers, to their no fmall trouble and expences the whole Armado comming often in view, yet not so hardie as to aduenture the onset. The Admirall having thought it a fafer course to employ the Pirats of Timis and Algers in that service, who have many tall ships (the spoile of Christian Merchants) and warlikely appointed: now growne expert in Nauigation, and all kind of Sea-fights, by the wicked instruction of our fugito time Pirats, and other Renegados. But those Pirats have no heart to such an enterprise, where the victorie would proue so bloudie, and the bootie so worthlesse. The Nauie that is yearly set forth in the beginning of May, to annoy the Enemie, suppresse Pirats, collect Tribute, and reforme disorders in the Maritime Townes that belong to the Admiraltie, consists of not above threefcore Gallies, which are all that can be spared from their other places of imployment. During the Winter the Armado is difperfed, and the Gallies are drawne into their drie flations. In which time the Pirats, both Christian and Mahometan , doe rob on the Agean and Mediterranear Seas vincontrolled, but by the defensue strength of the Assailed. So much the continuance of honors in Families are avoided, that when a Baffa is given (for to I may terme it) to the Sifter or Daughter of a Sultan for an husband, the children begotten on them, doe most rarely rife 20 aboue the degree of a private Captaine. But more feuereare thele Tyrants to their owne, who lop all the Branches from the Bole; the vanaturall Brother folemnizing his Fathers funerals, with the flaughter of his Brothers. So fearfull are they of rivalitie, and so damnably politike; making all things lawfull that may fecure the perpetuitie of their Empire. Yet they mourne for those being dead, whom they murdered; honoring them with all dues of buriall, and customarie lamentations. Now if the Ottoman Line should faile, the Crim Tartar is to succeed (both being of one Familie, and of one Religion) as the Turke the Turtar; who hath at this day the ele-Chon of the Tartarian Emperours : but with this limitation, that hee is to bee one of the fonnes of the deceaffed.

They are commanded feuen times a day to refort wnto publike Prayers : the first affembling 20 is called Timgil-name, which is two houres before day : the second Sabab-name, at day breake; the third Vyle-namas , at noone : the fourth Kyndy-namas , at three of the clocke : the fift Ak-Sham-namas, after Sunne-tet : the fixth Ghogie-namas, two houres within night: and the feuenth Giuma-namas, at ten of the clocke in the morning : the last also on Fridayes observed by all, at other times but by the more religious. Congregated (as aforefaid) by the chanting of the Priefls from the tops of steeples: at which times lightly, though they be in the fields, they will spread their vpper garments on the earth, and fall to their denotions. Moreover, I have feene them conioyntly pray in the corners of the streets, before the opening of their shops in the morning. Friday is their Sabbath; and yet they fpend but a part thereof in denotion, and the reft in recrea- Their Sabbath tions : but for that time they observe it so rigorously, that a Turke here lately had his eares nay-40 led to his shop-boord for opening it too timely. Before they pray, they wash all the Organs of their fenfes; their legs to their knees, and their armes to their elbowes; their privities after the purgings of nature; and sometimes all over from top to toe : for which there are houses of office with conduits belonging to every principall Mosque. Where water is wanting, they doe it with dust. At the doore of the Mosque they put off their shooes; and entring, fit croffe legged your rewes of Mats, one behind another, the poore and the rich promiscuously. The Priett in a Pulpit before them, not otherwise diftinguished in habite but by the folding vp of his Turbant.

When they pray, they turne their faces towards Mecha : first standing vpright, without any Their Prayers. motion of their bodies, holding the palmes of their hands vpward; sometimes they stop their eyes and eares, and oft pull the haire on the fides of their faces : then thrice they bow, as in their falurations; and as often proftrating themselues on the earth, doe kiffe it. Doing this fundrie 50 times, they will looke backe vpon no occasion, vntill they come vnto the salutation of Makemet: at which time they reverse their faces, first over the right shoulder, and then over the left; beleeuing that his comming will be behind them when they are at their denotions. The Priest doth somtimes reade vnto them some part of the Aleman (holding it, in reverence to the booke, as high as his chin) fometimes fome of their fabulous Legend, intermixing Expositions and Infructions, which they hearken vnto with heedie attention, and fuch fleadie politures of body, as if they were intranced. Their Service is mixed with Songs and Responses: and when all is Lyturgie, done, they stroke downe their faces and bear is with lookes of deuout granitie. If they finde a Paper in the streets, they will thrust it in some Creuice of the adjoying wall; imagining that

60 the name of God may be contayned therein, and then propliane to be trod wnder foot, or otherwife defiled. They number their often repetition of the Names of God and his Attributes (with other short ejaculations of Prayer and Praise) upon Beades: some shaking their heads incellantly, vntill they turne giddie : perhaps in imitation of the supposed trances (but naturally infirmitie) of their Prophet. And they have an Order of Monkes, who are called Dervifes, Monkes,

1292

whom I have often feene to dance in their Mofques, on Tuefdayes and Fridayes, many together. whom I have on the found of barbarous musicke; dances that conflit of continuall turnings, with at a certayne firoke they fall vpon the earth, and lying along like beafts, are thought to be rapt in foirie wito celeitall convertations. Now the Women are not permitted to come into their Temples (yet have they fecret places to looke in through Grates) partly for troubling their denotions. but especially for that they are not circumcifed, as are the women of Persia and Athiopia, Nor circumcite they the Males vntill they be able to answere the Priest, and promise for themselves. which is for the most part at the age of eight. They are circumcifed in the houses of their Parents, at a feftivall meeting, and in the midft of the Affembly, the Child holding vp his fore-finger, in token that he is a Mahometan. As foone as cut, the Priest walleth the wound in water 1a and falt, and bindeth it in linnen. Who changeth not his name, but is from thenceforth called a. Muffelman, which is, a true Beleeuer. This done, he is carryed vnto the Bannia, where his haire (before that time worne at full length) is shauen, and so kept euer after, all saving a locke on the top of his crowne; by which they dreame that they shall be assumed by Mahomer into Paradie; then put they on him a white Turbant; and fo returning with Drums and Hoboys, is with great folemnitie conducted to the Mosque, and presented with gifts according to his

The Turkes doe fast one moneth in the yeere, which they call Ramazan: which changeth yeerly (lo that in thirteene yeeres they fast one) wherein, they fay, that the Alcoran was delipered vnto Mahomer by the Angell. Observed by all but the Infirme and Travellers: who are 20 to full for as long a time, when io they recouer, or come to the end of their iourney. But they fall but during the day, in the night they feast, and then are all their steeples stuckeround with Lamps, which burne till the morning, affording an obiect of great folemnitie. Such as in flead of abitayning from meates, doe abitayne at that time from their Mosques, they carrie about in fcorne, and leuerely chaftife; but fuch as then drinke wine, they punish with death. Vpon the discouerie of the new Moone (which they superstitiously gratulate, esteeming him happy that discouereth it first, and by the course thereof doe reckon their yeere) falling out this yeere on the fenenth of December, the feast of the great Byram did begin, which doth continue for three dayes together, observed by them as Eatter is with vs. On the first day the Grand Signior riding to Sanita Sophia, in all the pompe and glorie of Empire (of which we shall speake hereafter) vp. 30 Deforate in- on his returne we faw a fort of Christians, some of them halfe earth alreadie, crooked with age, and trembling with palfies; who by the throwing away of their Bonnets, and lifting up of

their fore-fingers, did proffer themselves to become Mahomerans. A fight full of horror and trouble, to fee those desperate wretches that had professed Christ all their life, and had suffered no doubt for his fake much contumely and oppretion; now almost dying, to for fake their Redeemer, even then when they were to receive the reward of their patience. To these the Tyrant a little inclined his body, who before not fo much as cast his eye aside, but sate like the adored ftatue of an Idoll. For they hold it a great grace, and an act of fingular pietie, to draw many to their Religion, presenting them with money, change of rayments, and freeing them from all Tribute and Taxes. Infomuch, that if a Christian haue deferued death by their Law, if hee will 40 connert, they will many times remit his punishment. But they compell no man. During this feftinall they exercise themselves with various passimes, but none more in vie, and more barbarous, then their swinging vp and downe, as Boyes doe in Bell-ropes : for which there bee Callowses (for they beare that forme) of an exceeding height, erected in fundrie places of the Citie; when by two ioyning Ropes that are fastned aboue, they will swing themselues as high as the transome: perhaps affected in that it supines the senses for a season: the cause that Opium is so much in request, and of their foresaid shaking of their heads, and continued turnings. In regard whereof, they have such as have lost their wits, and natural Idiots, in high veneration, as men rauished in spirit, and taken from themselues, as it were to the fellowship of Angels. These they honour with the Title of Saints, lodge them in their Temples, some of them going almost starke 50 naked; others clothed in shreds of severall colours, whose necessities are supplyed by the peoples denotions, who kiffe their Garments as they paffe through the Areets, and bow to their benedictions; yea, many by counterfeiting the Idiot have avoided punishment for offences which they have vnwittingly fallen into. Whilft the Byram lafteth, you cannot firre abroad but you shall be presented by the Derusses and lanizaries, with tulips and trifles, besprinkling you with

fweet water; nor ceasse so to doe, till they have drawne Rewards from you. The Turkes are incouraged to almes by their Alcoran, as acceptable to God, and meritorious in it felfe, if giuen without vaine-glorie, and of goods well gotten, alledging it to be a temptation of the Deuils, to abstayne from Almes, for feare of impouerishment. Their more publike Amore conflict in factifices (if not fewrongfully termed) upon their feltinals, or performance of vowes : when Sheepe and Oxen are flaine by the Prieft, and divided amongst the Poore, the Owner not so much as retayning a part thereof. They say, they give much in private: and in truth, I have feene but few Beggersamongft them. Yet fometimes shall you meet in the streets with couples chained together by the necke, who beg to fatisfie their Creditors in part, and are

at the yeeres end released of their Bonds, prouided that they make satisfaction if they proue afterward able. At their deaths they vitally give Legacies for the release of Prisoners, the freeing of Bond-flaues, repayring of Bridges, building of Canes for the reliefe of Paffengers : and the great men, to the ered ing of Mosques and Holpitals, which they build not seld me in their life time. But Mahomet the Great, and Solyman the Magnificent, have in that kind exceeded all others : whose flately and sumptuous structures doe give a principall ornament to the Citie; where the ficke and impotent are prouided for, and the ftranger entertayned (for the been lines) the reuenue of that of Matomets, amounting to an hundred and fiftie thousand Sultanies. To these therebelong Physicians, Chyrurgions, Apothecaries, the charge thereof committed go vnto their Priests, who bring vp a certayne number of youths in the Mahometan Law. and frequently pray for the departed foules of the Founders in the Chappels of their Sepulchres. They extend their charitie to Christians and Iemes, as well as to them of their owne Religion: nay, Birds and Beafts haue a tafte thereof. For many onely to let them loofe, will buy Birds in Cages, and bread to give vnto Dogges; for most haue in this Citie no particular owners, being reputed an vncleane Creature, and therefore not fuffered to come into their houses, thinking it neuerthelesse a deed of pietie, to feede and prouide them kennels to litter in, most of them repairing to the Sea fide nightly, where they keep fuch a howling, that if the wind fit South-ward. they may be easily heard to the upper fide of the Citie of Pera.

With the Stoicks they attribute all accidents to destinie, and constellations at birth. Since 20 death can be neither halfned nor avoided, being withall perswaded, that they die brauely that die fighting : and that they shall be rewarded with Paradile that doe spend their bloud vpon the enemies of their Religion, called Shabids, which is Martyrs, by them. For although they repute murder to be an execrable crime, that cries to Heauen for vengeance, and is neuer forgiuen : yet are they commanded by their law, to extend their profession by violence, and without compaffion to flaughter their Oppofers. But they line with themselues in such exemplary concord, that during the time that I remained among it them (it being about three quarters of a yeare) that during the time that I remained among a come (a toring about come quarters or a years). I gener (as Mahometon offer violence to a Mahometon, not breake into ill language; but if they fochance to do, a third will reproue him, with, Fie, Muffel-men, fall out I and all is appealed, may in this be He that gues a blow hath many gathes made in his fieth, and is led about for a terror, but the examples to example to the many time of the sample of t man-flayer is delivered to the kindred or friends of the flaine, to bee by them put to death with Christians. all exquisite torture.

ð. III.

The Mustie, Cadileschiers, Diuans: Manners and attire of the Turkes. The Sultan described, and his Customes and Court. The Customes of the Greekes, Sir THO: GLOVEL.

HE dignitie of the Chalop amongst the Tarkes, with much shatement, doth now re-maine in the Chaffier (which name doth fignific An Oracle, or Ansperse of doubs) a unsuccessor to Etholober, Onese and Oxese; the other being both High-Priests and Princes; these Patriarchs, as it were, and Soueraignes of their Religion. Throughout the whole Tartib Territories, there is but one, who ever resideth in the Royall Citie, or followes the person of the Emperour. He is equall to the ancient Popes, or rather greater both in repute and authoritie. The Grand Signier doth rife at his approach to falute him, and fets him by him, and gives him much reverence. His life is onely free from the Sword, and his fortunes most rarely tubiect to subversion. The Emperour vndertaketh no high designe without his ap-50 prouement. He hath power to reverse both his sentence, and the sentence of the Divan, if they be not adjudged by him conformable to the Alcoran, but his owne is irreuocable. In matters of difficultie they repaire to him, and his exposition standeth for a Law. To conclude, he is the supreme Judge, and rectifier of allactions, as well Civil as Ecclefiafticall, and an approver of the Inflice of the Militarie. The place is given by the Grand Signiors, to men profoundly learned in their Law, and of knowne integritie. He feldome ftirres abroad, and neuer admits of impertie nent conversation. Grave is his looke, grave is his behaviour; Highly affecting filence, and most pare of peech. For when any come to him for judgement, they deliver him in writing the flate of the question, who in writing briefly returnes his oraculous answer. He commonly weareth a vest of greene, and the greatest Turbant in the Empire : I should not speake much out of com-60 palle should I say as large in compasse as a bushell. I oft have beene in this mans Serraglio, which is neither great in receit nor beautie, yet answerable to his small dependancie, and infrequencie of Sutors. He keepeth in his housea Seminarie of Boyes, who are instructed in the mysteries of their Law. He is not restrained, nor restaineth himselfe from pluralitie of Women. His incomes are great, his disburfings little, and confequently his wealth infinite; yet he is a bad pay-

mafter of his debts, though they be but trifles. He much delighteth in Clockes and Watches. whereof, as some say, he hath not so few as a thousand.

1294

Next in place to the Mufise, are the Caddlefebiers, that are Judges of the Armies, (but nor to meddle with the Innifare) and accompany the Beglerbegs when they goe into the field. Of There are also elected by the Grand Signior, as the Cadies by them, (yet to be allowed by the other, and to kille his Veft:) of whom there is one in enery Towne, who befides their foitimal Functions, doe adminster lustice betweene partie and partie, and punish offenders. Of inferior Priefts, there be some particularly appointed to sing at the tops of their steeples, and to coneregate the people; fome to looke to the Ceremonies, and fome to reade and interpret the Alerran, In There are also other religious Orders, which I omit to speak of, being of their owne taking vp. neither commanded nor commended, and rather to be effeemed Vagabonds then religious perfons, confider we either their life or their habits, Among the Turkilb Commandements, one is that drawne originally from our Sauiours, Then

Teftimonic.

The Divar.

thalt not doe what thou wouldit not have done to thee : whereupon for the most part their Civill Inffice is grounded, not difagreeing greatly from the Lawes of Mofes. All euictions there, as elfewhere depend vpon Witnesses yet will not the oath of a Christian or a Isw be received against a Turke, as will a Turkes against them, and theirs one against another. But the kindred of Mabomet have their fingle testimonies in equall value with the testimonies of two others : notwithflanding the oath of a Mahometan will not be taken, if impeached for a drinker of Wine, or eas 20 ter of Swines fielh. E sery Baffa keepes a Divan (fo they call the Court of Justice) within his Prouince : but the highest of all, and to which they may appeale from all other, is that, which is kept foure daies of the weeke in the Grand Signiors Serragio, from whence no appeale is They were for admitted but to the person of the Muftie. Here the Vazier Bassas of the Port, who are nine in number (or as many as then are not otherwise employed) doe fit in Justice (where also they mery out and the state of the state and that publikely, not excepting against Emballadours Drogen confult of matters of State, and that publikely, not excepting against Emballadours Drogen atabamethe men, lightly alwaies present: io presume they of strong hand) affished by the "Admirall, and * Chancellor, (the * Treasurer in the same roome keeping his Court) where all causes whatsee ter that are heard, within the space of three daies are determined, the Great Viziers Balla being Prefident of the reft. But Briberie, not knowne vntill lately amongst them, hath so corrupted \$ their integritie, that whose causes (if they beare but a colour of right) doe seldome miscarrie where gifts are the Aduocates : yet this is the belt of the worlt, that they quickly know their fucceffes. But many times when the oppreffed fubiects can have no Iustice, they will in troupes attend the comming forth of the Emperor, and by burning Straw on their heads, or holding vo Torches, prouoke his regard : who brought vnto him by his Mutes, doth receive their petition, which oftentimes turnes to the ruine of some of those great ones. For assurances of Purchafes, they have no Indentures, no fines and recourries. The omitting of a word cannot frustrate their estates; nor Quirks of Law prevaile against Conscience. All that they have to shew, is a little Scedule, called a Hodget or Sigil, onely manifetting the poffetion of the Seller, as his of

Afformer and writings.

Now the punishments for offenders, be either Pecuniarie or Corporall. To impole the former, they will torge all the flanders that they can, to eate vpon the leffe circumfpect Christians, but the other are seldome vniustly inflicted. Their formes of putting to death, (besides fuch as are common elfe-where) are impaling vpon stakes, ganching (which is to be let fall from on high vpon hookes, and there to hang vntill they die by the anguish of their wounds, or more milerable famine,) and another invented (but now not here vied) to the terror of mankind, by some deuillish Perilles, who deserved to have first tasted of his owne invention, viz: they twitch the offender about the waste with a Towell, enforcing him to draw up his breath 40 by often pricking him in the body, vntill they have drawne him within the compaffe of a spanne; then tying it hard, they cut him off in the middle, and setting the body on a hot place of Copper, which feareth the veines, they fo vp-propping him during their cruell pleafure: who not onely retaineth his fense, but the faculties of Discourse, vntill hee be taken downe, and then departeth in an inflant. But little faults are chaftifed by blowes, received on the foles of the feet with a bastinado, by hundred at a time, according to the qualitie of the misdemeanor. A terrible paine that extendeth to all the part of the body, yet haue I frene them taken for money. The Master also in this fort doth correct his Slaue ; but Parents their Children with ftripes on the belly. The Subafbie is as the Conftable of a Citie, both to fearch out, and pu-

whom he bought it, or from whom it descended vnto him, which vnder-written by the Cadie 49

of the place, doth frustrate all after-claimes whatsoever.

It remayneth now that we speake of the persons of the Turkes, their dispositions, manners and fashions. They be generally well complexioned, of good statures, and full bodies, proportionably compacted. They nourish no haire about them, but a Locke on the crowne, and on their faces onely; esteeming it more cleanly, and to bee the better prepared for their superstitious walkings. But their Beards they weare at full length, the marke of their affected granitie,

and token of freedome, (for flages have theirs flagen) infomuch that they will fcoffe at fuch Christians as cut, or naturally want them, as if suffering themselves to be abused against nature. All of them weare on their heads white Shalhes and Turbants, the badge of their Religion, as is Their Turthe folding of the one, and fize of the other, of their vocations and qualitie. Shaftes are long bans, Towels of Callico woond about their heads : Turbants are made like great Globes of Callico Shaffies, too, and thwarted with Rols of the fame; having little copped Caps on the top, of Greene or Red Veluet, being onely worne by persons of ranke, and he the greatest that weareth the greatest, the Musties excepted, which ouer-fizes the Emperours. And though many Orders have particular Ornaments appointed for their heads, yet weare they these promiscoodly. It is an no especiall sugar in the Twig to suffer the Christian Tributarie Princes and their chiefest Nobles to weare white heads in the Citie : but in them, what better then an Apostatical Infinuation ? But to beginne from the skinne, the next that they weare is a Smock of Callico, with ample Callico fleenes, much longer then their Armes : vnJer this a paire of Calfouns of the fame , which reach fonoches. to their ancies, the rest naked, and going in Yellow or Red Slip-shooes, picked at the toe, and plated on the fole : over all they weare a halfe-fleeued Coate girt voto them with a Towell : their necke all bare, and this within doores is their Sommer accourrement. Quer all when they goe abroad they weare Gownes, some with wide halfe fleeties, (which more particularly belong Gownes, to the Gregiani, Jothers with long hanging fleeues, and the Gownes buttened before, and a third fort worne by the meaner fort, reaching but a little below the knee, with hanging fleettes not n much longer then the arme, and open before; but all of them vngathered in the flightlers. In the Winter they adde to the former, Calfouns of Cloth, which about the small of the leave are fewed to fhort smooth Buskins of Leather without foles, fit for the foote as a Glove for the hand, lining their Gownes with Furre, as they doe their Coats; having then the fleenes for goodted Waist-coats vnder them) reaching close to their wrists. They weare no Glones, At their Girdles they weare long Handkerchers, some of them admirable for value and workmanship. They neuer alter their fashions, not greatly differing in the great and vulgar, more then in the richnesse. Cloth of Tissue; of Gold and Silver, Veluet, Starlet, Sattin, Damaske, Chamolets. lined with Sables, and other coffly Forres, and with Martins, Squerrils, Foxes and Convections worne according to their feuerall qualities. But the common weare is Violet Cloth, They re-30 tayne the old Worlds custome in giving change of Garments, which they may aptly doe when one Vest fitteth all men, and is of every mans fashion.

CHAP. 8.5.3. Turkish attyre, Their cutting of baire, Offices of Nature.

The Clergie goe much in Greene, it being Mahomets colour; and his Kinfmen in greene Sha. Clergie anite. thes, who are called Emers, which is Lords: the women also weare fomething of Greene on their heads, to be knowne. There lives not a Race of ill-favoureder people; branded perhaps by God for the finne of their feducing Ancestor, and their owne wicked assuming of hereditary holinesse. But if a Christian out of ignorance weare Greene, hee shall have his clothes torne off from his backe, and perhaps be well beaten. They carrie no Weapons about them in the Citie: Their Knitten onely they thrust under their Girdles great crooked Kniues of a Dagger-like fize, in sheathes of Metall; the Hafts and Sheathes of many beeing fet with stones, and some of them Gate. 40 worth fine hundred Sultanies. They beare their bodies vpright, of a stately gate, and elated countenance. In their familiar salutations they lay their hands on their bosomes, and a little decline their bodies: but when they falute a person of great ranke, they bow almost to the ground, and kiffe the hemme of his Garment. The ornaments of their heads they never put off vpon any occasion. Some of them perfume their Beards with Amber, and the in-fides of their Turbants : and all of them affect cleanlineffe fo religiously, that besides their customarie Lotions. and daily frequenting of the Bannias, they never fo much as make water, but they wash both Cleansesses their hands and primities : at which businesse they sequester themselves, and couch to the Earths reuiling the Christian whom they see pissing against a wall, and sometimes striking him. This they doe to prevent that any part of either excrement should touch their Garments, esteeming Offices of nait a pollution, and hindering the acceptation of Prayer, who then are to bee most pure in heart ture,

50 and habite.

So flouthfull they be, that they never walke vp and downe for recreation, nor vie any other Sloth. exercise but shooting, wherein they take as little paines as may bee, fitting on Carpets in the hadow, and fending their Slaues for their Arrowes. They also shoote against Earthen walsteuer Shootings kept moyst in shops and private houses for that purpose, standing not about sixe paces from the marke, and that with fuch violence, that the Airow paffes not feldome through : nay, I have feene their Arrowes shot by our Embassadour through Targets of Steele, pieces of Brasse two inches thicke; and through wood, with an Arrow headed with wood, of eight inches. Their Bowes are for forme and length, not vnlike the Lath of a large Crosse bow, made of the hornes Bowes. 60 of Buffoloes, intermixed with finewes, of admirable workmanthip, and some of them exquisitely gilded. Although there bee Wrastlers amongst them, yet they bee such as doe it to delight the

people, and do make it their profession; as do those that walke vpon Ropes, wherein the Turkes Wrastlers. are most expert; going about when they have done, to every particular Spectator for his voluntary beneuolence. Of Cards and Dice they are happily ignorant; but at Cheffe they will play all Games.

the day long :a sport that agreeth well with their sedentarie vacancie; wherein notwithsding they auoyde the dishonest hazard of money.

The better fort take great delight in their Horses, which are beautifull to the eye, and well ridden for feruice, but quickly iaded if held to a good round trot (for amble they doe not) in an indifferent lourney. But the Turkes doe not lightly ride fo fast as to put them vnto eyther. inditierent Journey. But the Integration to influence to the most part which independent integration and deepe, though not great, placed behind and before; and some of them with Silver, as are their maille Stirrops, and the Remes of their Bridles, suted vnto their collip. Caparisons. When they stand in the Stable they feed them for the most part, if not alrogather, with Barley; being heere of small value, and onely seruing for that purpose. They litter them in their owne dung, first dryed in the Sunne and pulperated, which keepes their skinnes cleane. In The Turker doe greatly reverence their Parents, (so commanded to doe by their Law) as the

Reverence ro Letchand be-

Hospitalitie.

Inferiour his Superiour, and the young aged, readily gining the prioritie to whom it belongeth. (the left hand as they goe in the itreets preferd before the right, in that made Mafters thereby of the Sword of the other, and the chiefest place the farthest from the wall) living together as if all of a Brother-hood. Yet give they no entertaynment vnto one another, nor come there any into their houles but vpon speciall occasion, and those but into the publike parts thereof; their women being neuer feene but by the Nurses and Eunuches which attend on them, Yea, so italous they are, that their Sonnes when they come to growth are separated from them. As their houses are meane, so are their furnitures: hauing nothing on the in-side but bare white walls, vales to be some especial roome, in the house of some of high qualitie. But the Roofes of many of them are curiously feeled with in-laid wood, adorned with Gold and Azure of an excessive costlineffer the greater part of the floore, and that a little advanced, beeing covered with Turbin Carpets, whereon when they tread they doe put of their flip-shooes. Many of their roomes haue great out windowes, where they fit on Culhions in the heate of the day. They be vpon Mattreffes, fome of Silke, fome of ftayned Linnen, with Bolfters of the fame, and Quiles that are futable, but much in their clothes, the cause perhaps that they are so louse. Nor shame they thereat, many shall you see sit publikely a lousing themselnes in the Sunne; and those no meane perions.

They have neither Tables nor stooles in their houses, but sit crosse-leg'd on the stoore at their 30

Sir croffe-

victuals, all in a Ring. In stead of a cloth, they have a Skinne spread before them; but the better fort fit about a round boord, flanding on a foot not past halfe a foot high, and brimd like a Charger. Their Dishes haue feet like standing Bolls, and are so fet one voon another, that you may est of each without the remouing of any. Their most ordinarie food is Pillaw, that is, Rice which lath beene fod with the fat of Mutton. Pottage they vie of fundry kinds, Egges fryed in Honey, Tanfies, (or fomething like them) Pasties of fundry Ingredients : the little fielh which they eate is cut into gobbets, and either fod, or tofted in a Furnace. But I thinke there is more in London spent in one day then is in this Citie in twentie. Fish they have in indifferent quantitie. But the Commons doe commonly feed on Herbes, Fruits, Rootes, Onions, Garlicke, beaftly kind of vnpreffed Cheefe that lyeth in a lumpe; hodge-podges made of Flower, Milke, 40 and Honey, &c. fo that they live for little or nothing, confidering their fare, and the plentie of all things. They are wayted vpon by their flaues given them, or purchased with their Swords, or Money : of these to have many it is accounted for great Riches. When one hath fed suffici-Meales and ently he rifeth, and another taketh his roome, and so continue to doe vntill all be satisfied. They eate three times a day, but when they feast they sit all the day long, wnlesse they rise to exonerate Nature, and forth-with returne againe. They abitaine from Hogs-flesh, from bloud, and from what hath dyed of it felfe, vnleffe in cases of necessitie. Their vsuall drinke is pure water, yet have they fundry Sherbets, (fo call they the Contections which they infuse into it) some made of Sugar and Limons, some of Violets, and the like, (whereof some are mixed with Amber) which the Richer fort diffolue thereinto. The Honey of Sie is excellent for that purpole, 50 and they make another of the juyce of Raifins, of little coft, and most vivally drunke of. Wine is prohibited them by their Alcoran, they plant none, they buy none : but now to that libertie they are growne (the naturall Time to excepted) that they will quaffe freely when they come to the houle of a Christian : infomuch, as I have seene but few goe away vuled from the Embassadors Table. Yet the feared disorders that might ensue thereof, have beene an occasion that diuers times all the Wine in the Citie hath beene staued (except in Embassadors houses) and death hath beene made the penaltie vnto fuch as prefumed to bring any in. They preferre our Beere about all other drinkes. And confidering that Wine is forbidden, that water is with the rawelt (especially in this Clime) the dearenesse of Sherbets, and plentie of Barley (being here fold not for aboue nine pence a bushell) no doubt but it would proue infinitely profitable to such as should so

bring in the vie thereof amongst them. Although they be destitute of Tauernes, yet have they their Coffa-houses, which something relemble them. There fit they chatting most of the day, and sippe of a drinke called Coffa (of the Berrie that it is made of) in little China diffies, as hot as they can fuffer it : blacke as foote,

demoniant?) which helpeth, as they say, digestion, and procureth alsoritie: many of the Coffamen keeping beautifull boyes, who ferue as stales to procure them customers. The Turkes are ramen accounts ones, whereof the lefter Afra affoordeth them plentie: carrying it a- Onium. bour them both in peace and in warre; which they fay expelleth all feare, and makes them couragious: but I rather thinke giddy headed, and turbulent dreamers; by them, as should freme by what hath beene faid, religiously affected. And perhaps for the selfe-same cause they Tobacco raalso delight in Tobacco; they take it through reeds that have joyned vinto them great heads of king punished, wood to contayne it, I doubt not but lately taught them, as brought them by the English : and To were it not sometimes lookt into (for Morat Bassa not long since commanded a Pipe to bee

through the nose of a Turke, and so to be led in derision through the Citie,) no question but it would proue a principall commoditie. Neuerthelesse, they will take it in corners, and are fo ignorant therein, that that which in England is not faleable, doth passe here amongst them for most excellent.

They are by their law in generall exhorted to marrie, for the propagation of their Religion: Marriage. and hee ill reputed of, that forbeareth io to doe vntill the age of fine and twentie. Enery man is allowed foure wines, who are to be of his owne Religion, and as many Concubine flaues as hee is able to keepe, of what Religion focuer. For God (fayth the Alcoran) that is good and gracious, exacteth not of vs what is harfh and burdenfome; but permits vs the nightly com-

20 panie of women, well knowing that abitinency in that kind is both grieuous, and impossible. Yet are they to meddle with none but their owne peculiars: the offending woman they Punishment of drowne, and the man they gansh. They buy their wives of their parents, and record the con- Adultorie. tract before the Cadi, which they after folemnize in this manner. Many women are insuted by the mother of the Bride, to accompanie her the night before the marriage day, whereof they found a great part in feathing; then leade they her into a Bath, where they amoint and bathe her: to breaking companie they depart vnto their feuerall refts, and in the morning returne to her chamber, where they tricke her in her richest ornaments, tying on her silken Buskins with knots easily not ynknit. The Bridegroom having feasted a number in like manner, in the morning they also repaire to his house, in their best apparell, and gallantly mounted, from whence they

30 fet forward by two and by two, to fetch home the Bride, accompanied with Musike, and conducted by Sagdieb, who is the neerest of his kindred; vnto whom the Bride is delivered, with her face close couered. Who fet aftride on horse-backe, hath a Canopie carried ouer her, in such fort as no part of her is to bee discerned. So the troope returning in order as they came, after them are carried in Serpets (a kind of baskets) their presents and apparell; then followeth she, and lastly her slaves, if any have beene given her. The Bride-groome standeth at his doore to receive her, who is honoured by his guests (yet goe they not in) with fundrie prefents before their departure. If shee be of qualitie, shee is led to the Bride chamber by an Eunuch, where women Rand prepared to vndreffe her. But the Bride-groome himselfe must vntve her Bufkins (as amongst the Romanes they did their Girdles) to which hee is fayne to applie his 40 teeth. Now, he is to entertaine his wives with an equall respect, alike is their diet, alike is

their apparell, alike his beneuolence (for fuch sweet stuffe is contayned in the precepts of their Dockors) viselife they consent to gue or change turnes; or elfe they may complaine to the Cadi, After the first, and procure a discordenent. But the husband may put away his wife at his pleasure: who may soyth Lamie, marrie vnto another within foure moneths after, prouided thee proue not with child, and then Chalcoonids. not vntill so long after her delivery. But if he will have her againe, hee must buy her : and if Pag. 237; after the third disorce, another is first to lie with her, as a punishment inflicted for his legitie: They give him the reverence of a mafter; they are at no time to denie him their embracements. whom he toucheth not againe vntill they have beene at the Bannias. They receive chaftifement from him, and that they hold to be an argument of his affection. They feed apart, and inter-50 meddle not with houshold affaires. All that is required at their hands, is, to content their huf-

bands, to nurse their owne children, and to liue peaceably together: which they doe (and which lealouse. is strange) with no great icalousie, or enuie. No male accompanies them aboue twelve yeeres old. except they be Eunuchs: and so strictly are they guarded, as seldome seene to looke out at their doores. They be women of elegant beauties, for the most part ruddie, cleere, and smooth as the polished luorie; being neuer ruffled by the weather, and daily frequenting the Bannias. but withall by the selfe-same meanes they solainly wither. Great eyes they have in principall repute: affected both by the Turks and the Grecians, as it should seeme, from the beginning. For Mahomet doth promise women with such, (nay as big as Egges) in his imaginarie Paradite. And of those the blacker they be, the more amiable : insomuch that they put betweene the eve-lids

60 and the eye a certaine blacke powder with a fine long penfill, made of a minerall brought from the Kingdome of Fez, and called Alcohole; which by the not diffracefully stayning of the lids doth better let forth the whitenesse of the eye; and though it trouble for a time, yet it comforteth the fight, and repelleth ill humours. Into the same hue (but likely they naturally are fo) doe they die their eye-breies, and eye-browes (the later by Arte made high, halfe circular, and

Qqqqqq

romest, if naturally they doe not) so doe they the haire of their heads, as a foyle that maketh the white seeme whiter, and more becomming their other perfections. They part it before the midft, and plaite it behind, yet sometimes wearing it disheueled. They paint their nayles with mint, and plante it beamin, yet ionietines wearing to distribute a ricy paint their layles with a yellowish red. They weare on the top of their heads a Cap not whike a Sugar-loafe, yet a little flat, of paift-boord, and couered with Cloth of filuer or Tiffue. Their vinder-garments (which within doores are their vppermost) doe little differ from those that bee worne by the men, which wee will prefent to the eye to avoide repetition.



of violet cloth, or fearlet, tyed close before, the large sleeues hanging ouer their handse haning Buskins on their legs, and their heads and faces fo mabbled in fine linnen , that no more is to be seene of them then their eyes: nor that of some, who looke as through the fight of a Beuer. For they are forbidden by the Alcoran to disclose their beauties vnto any, but vnto their fathers and husbands. They neuer stirre forth, but (and then alwayes in troupes) to pray at the graues, 10 and to the publike Bannias: which for excellency of buildings are next to their Molques. But having in part alreadie described some of their formes, I will a little treate of their vie; which have beene in times past, and are at this present, in such request with these Nations (as once with the Romanes, as may appeare by their regardable ruines) that few but frequent them twice in the weeke, as well for their health, as for delight and cleanlinesse. For the Romackes crudities, proceeding from their viual eating of fruits, and drinking of water, is thereby concocted: which also after exercise and travell reftoreth to the wearied bodie a wonderfull alacritie, The men take them up in the morning, and in the afternoone the women. But both amongst the Romanes did ordinarily frequent them together: a custome, as they say, continued in Switferland at this day, and that amongst the most modest. The men are attended upon by men, and the 60 women by women; in the outermost roome they put off their clothes, and having Aporns of

flayned lunnen tyed about their waites, then entring the Baths to what degree of heate that

they please, (for severall roomes, and severall parts of them are of severall temperatures, as is

the water let in by cocks to wash the sweat and filth of the bodie) the seruitors wash them, rub

The better fort about the upper part of their armes, and smalls of their legs weare bracelets,

and are elsewhere adorned with Iewels. When they goe abroad they weare ouer all long Gowns

Baths and

them, firetch out their ioynts, and cleanfe their skins with a piece of rough Grogeram; which done, they shaue the heads and bodies of men, or take away the haire with a composition of Rusma (a minerall of Cyprus) and vnsleakt Lime; who returning to the place where they left their clothes, are dryed with fresh linnen; and for all this they pay not about three or foure Afpers: fo little, in that endued with renemes by their Founders. But the women, doe anoint their bodies with an oyntment made of the earth of Chios, which maketh the skin foft, white, their bodies with an oynement many of the act and freeing it from wrinkles. Much vinaturall and Vinatural luft, and thuning, a extensing time on the race, any treeting to from writings, much winsturall and Vinnaural, filthis full to the comprised slay, in the remote collects of the darkefrom Bassia; year young with women; a thing vincetable, if former times had not given thereunto both determined to the contract of the property of the contract of the contract of the property of the contract of the contrac

ceening rroup, are in caucht actuage, and the following the state of t

betweene them : who are Christians taken in the Warres, or purchased with their Money. Of betweene them; who are Christians rates, in the Warres, or purched with their Money. Of these there is everely Market in the Crist, where they are to be fold as Horse is nature; the sale of them inch being rated according to their facultation, to prefer the littles, as the Women for their in Market, youths and beauties, who are set out in best incoming a tribes, and with their aspects of pitte and affection, endeuour to allure the Christians solary them; as expecting from them a more easile femittude, and continuance of Religion; in the highest point that the Tarket, they are often inforced to renounce it for their better gardersuppose. Of them there bee many or excellent outward perfection; and when the buyer hash agreed of the price (but yet conditionally) they are carried adde into a roome, cuen too the garding the month, and allurance (if so the be stade to be) of her virginitie. Their Masters may by with them, chaffle them, exchange, and sell Their conditions to the conditional to the conditional to the stade to be of the conditional to the stade of the conditional to the conditional to the stade of the conditional to the co them at their pleasure. But a Christian will not lightly fell her whom he hath layne with then give her her libertie. If any of their Slaves will become chambened ass, they are discharged of their bondage : but if a Slaue to a Turke, he onely is the better intreated. The Turkes do vie their Bond-women with little leffe respect then their Wines, and make no difference betweene the Children begotten both of the one and the other who like together who their interface between the children begotten both of the one and the other who like together without islouds, it being allowed by their irretigious Religion. Notwithstanding, their Wines doe onely receiving 30 as proper vato them, their Sabbaths benevolence. The old and most deformed, are put to most

The Men-slaves may compell their Masters before the Cadie, to limit the time of their bon-dage, or fet a price of their redemption, or else to fell them vnto another: but whether of the two, they lightly referre to the Slaueselection. If they bee onely fit for labour, they will actwo, they include the share statement of the share statement of the price of the time but if shalls in any card, of the price; which expired or payed, they may return into their Countries. But Gally-flaves are feldome released, in regard of their final number, and much employment which they have for them; nor those that are Slaves write on the share of t great ones, to whom the Cadies authoritie extends not, Many of the Children that the Tarkes Gelded Eudoe buy (for these Markets doe affoord of all Ages) they castrate, making all smooth as the nuch 40 backe of the hand, (whereof diners doe dye in the cutting) who supply the vies of Nature with a Siluer Quill, which they weare in their Turbants. In times past, they did but onely geld them.

then befittingly delighted in their focieties. But others fay, that Selymon the second, having seene a Gelding cover a Mare, brought in an monest them that inhumane custome. The first that ever made Eunuch, was Semiranic. They are heere in great repute with their Mafters, trufted with their States, the Gouernment of their Women and Houses in their absence; having for the most part beene appropried faithfull, wife, and couragious; infomuch as not a few of them have come to fit at the steme of State, (the second Vizer of the Port being now an Eunuch,) and others to the Gouern-

but being admitted to the free converse of their women, it was observed by some, that they more

But now speake we of their Funerals. After their death, the Men by the Men, and the Wo. Funerals: men by the Women, are laid out in the midit of the roome. When divers of their Priefts do affemble, and having performed certaine idle ceremonies, as in wrapping their beades about it, and in the often turning it, inuoking God to have mercy on the departed; which done, they wash it. shaueit, and shroud it in Linnen, which they leave votied both at the head and feet. Then lay they the Corfe on a Beere, placing a Turbant at the upper end, and carrying it to the Grane with the head forward : some of the Deruises going before with Tapers, the Priests after finging, and Laftly, his friends and acquaintance. But perfons of principall qualitie have their Horfes led before them, with Enfignes trailed on the earth, and other rites of that nature; divers of the San-60 tons going before, naming of God, and shaking of their heads, and turning about vntill they fall downe giddy. The fides and bottome of the grave are boorded, and a boord laid over the Corfe,

to keepe the earth from it, leaving a fufficient compaffe to kneele in. For they are of opinion, that two terrible Angels, called Mongir and Gnanequir, doe prefently repaire vnto the grave, and

our the foule againe into the body, as if (faith the Alerian) a manifould put on a fhire mis partiting him on his knees, with his head viccourred, (the winding fliete heing let white for that purpose) demand of him in particular, how he hath behaved mintele in this life; which if not well, the one firsks him on the head with a frameter time fathions into the learning him with an Iron booke; and so continue to compare him with an Iron booke; and so continue to compare him with an Iron booke; and so continue to compare him with an Iron booke; A Purgatory to feared, that in their Mattins they retilion God to delider their the that mations of the blacke Angels, the tortures of the Othic; and their delider can'l daining?" Datif Welsam nations of the blacke angels, the tortures of the Strate; and the main nature; "Butth He hage statisfied them in his reply, they vanill away, and with White Angels; come mether place; till one laying his arme vader his head; the other fitting at 1th feet, and they do the first had the main and the state of the great Bagher (white the white the both full fitting the first had been a factor of the great Bagher (white the white the both full fitting the first had been a factor of the great Bagher (white the white the both full fitting the first had been a factor of the great Bagher (white the bagher) and the state of the great Bagher (white the white the bagher) and the state of the great Bagher (white the white the bagher) and the state of the great Bagher (white the state of the

pulchers without couers , filled within with earth, and fet with varione of Flowers Bur ha common fort are buried by the high-way fides, and fields of most frequency, addyting in the Citie, having a ftone of white Marble more then a footh broad, and foure footh fight, this and Crite, nating a roote of write marine more than a roote of control rings, ingrand with Tint to Characters, erected at the head, and another at the feet, the giant between thing low like a trough. To thefe the women flocke enery Thursday in muhatitutes, weeping confident Children, Husbands, Kinsfolkes, and dead Progenitors, often killing the flows, and on high the flows. their delinery from the aforefaid blacke Tortucers : many times lesting bread and merical their graues, (a custome also of the Pagans) for Dogges and Birds to denoure, as well as to relieue the poore, being held an available almes for the deceased. The better fore doe mourne to in white (as for blacke, I never faw it worne by a Turke) and but for a little feafon. And the Women are not to marry by their law, vntill foure moneths and ten daies after the death

Blacke.

Phylicke.

Potury.

Molicke.

Paper,

Painters.

1200

To speake a word or two of their Sciences and Trades : some of them have some limbs knowledge in Philosophie. Necessitie hath taught them Physicke, rather had from experis ence then the grounds of Art. In Aftronomy they have fome in-fight; and many there are that vadertake to tell fortunes. These frequently sit in the streetes of the Citie, resorted vators fuch as are to take a journey, or goe about any bufineffe of importance. They have good gift in Poetry, wherein they chant their Armours in the Perfian tongue to vile Muncke; yet are they Poetry, wherein they chank the ar Citternes, Harpes and Recorders, being their pinnigal list as fruments. But their lowd Infruments doe rather affright, the full gift the hearing. On a time the Grand Signier was perfixed do to high fome to hold full gifting the hearing of the control full gifting the significant was perfixed to high form the form of the full full gifting the control full gifting the significant was perfixed to the great former holds full gifting the significant was perfixed to the footh full gifting the significant signific

(whose wit lay onely in the ends of their fingers) spent for much time in vineasonable tuning, that he commanded them to avoid, belike efteeming the the rest to be answerable. They studie not Rhetorick, as fufficiently therein inftructed by Nature; nor Logick, fince it ferues as well to delude as informe, and that wifedome (according to the opinion of the Epicures) may be com-

prehended in plaine and direct expressions. Some there be amongst them that write Histories, but few reade them, thinking that none can write of times past cruly, fince none date write the Printing reie. truth of the present. Printing they reiect, perhaps for feare lest the virtuersalitie of learning. should subuert their false grounded religion and policie, which is better preserved by an ignorant to obedience: Moreover, a number that live by writing would be vindone, who are for the most

part of the Priest-hood. The Tarkish tongue is loftie in found, but poore of it selle in substance. Language. For being originally the Tartarian, who were needle ignorant Pattors, they were confirmate ned to borrow their Termes of State and Office from the Perfiant; (vpon whole rumes they erected their Greatnesse) of Religion (being formerly Pagens) from the Arabians; as they did of Maritime Names (together with the skill) from the Greekes and Italians. In Natolia it is most generally spoken. They vie (as the Persians) the Arabique Character. In writing they leave out the vowels, vnleffe it be in the end of a word, fo that much is contribed in a little roome. They carioufly fleeke their Paper, which is thicke, much of it being coloured

and dapled like Chamolets, done by a tricke they have in dipping it in the water. They have 50 Painters amongst them, exquisite in their kind, (for they are not to draw by their Law, nor to have the figure of any thing living) yet now many privatly begin to infringe that precept, and the Grand Signior himselfe hath a fanne, whereon the battels of Hungarie are painted. Colours also they have, nor lesse faire then durable.

Euery one hath some Trade or other, not so much as the Grand Signior excepted. Their Trades are lightly fuch as ferue for their owne vies, neither much supplying forraine Marts, nor frequenting them. A lazy people, that worke but by fits, and more effecme of their ease then their profit, yet are they excelline conetous. And although they have not the wit to deceive (for they be groffe-headed) yet have they the will, breaking all compacts with the Christians that they find discommodious, so that they feldome will deale with them. But with one another they buy and fell onely for ready Money, wherein the most of their substance confisteth; the occasion that few suites doe happen amongst them. I have spoken sufficiently, at least what I can of this Nation in generall, now connert we to the Person and Court of this Sultan.

He is, in this yeare 1610, about the age of three and twentie, strongly limined, and of a just Sultan deferiflature, yet greatly inclining to be fat : infomuch as fometimes he is ready to choake as he feeds. bed and some doe purposely attend to free him from that danger. His face is full and duly proportioned, onely his eyes are extraordinary great, by them efteemed (as is faid before) an excellence in beauty. Fleame hath the predominancy in his complexion. He hath a little haire on his yp-perlip, but leffe on his chin, of a darkfome colours His afpect is as haughty as his Empire is large. he beginneth already to abstaine from exercise, yet are there pillars with inscriptions in his Sarras Bo, betweene which he threw a great Iron Mace, that memorize both his firength and acsincie. Being on a time rebuked by his Father Mahomes, that he neglected fo much his exer- Cruell policy,

CHAP. 8. S. 2. The Sultans ernell policie. His Atts, Attire, Court, & c.

on cifes and studies, he made his reply: That now he was too old to beginne to learne, intimating shereby, that his life was to determine with his Fathers, whereat the Sahan wept bitterly. For he then had two elder Brothers, of whom the eldeft was ftrangled in the prefence of his Father vpon a falle suspition of treason, and the other by a naturall death did open his way to the Empire. Perhaps the confideration thereof hath made him keeps his younger Brother aliue, contrary to their cruell suftome; yet strongly guarded, and kept within his Serragio. For hee is of no bloudy disposition, nor otherwise notoriously vicious, considering the authoritie of that onuernment, and immunities of their Religion. Yet is he an varelenting punisher of offences, even His Acts. in his owne Houshold : having caused eight of his Pages, at my being there, to be throwne into the Sea for Sodomy (an ordinary crime, if efteemed a crime in that Nation) in the night time.

20 being let to know by the report of a Canon, that his will was fulfilled. Amongst whom, it was given out that the Vice-royes naturall Sonne of Sicilia wasone, (a youth lately taken Prifoner. and preferred voto him) yet but fo faid to be, to dishearten such as should practife his escape. His valour refts yet votried, having made no war but by difpuration, nor is it thought that he greatly affects it, despairing of long life in regard of his corpulency. Whereupon he is now building a magnificent Mosque, for the health of his soule, all of white Marble; at the East end, and Southfide of the Hippodrom, where he first broke the Earth, and wrought three houres in person. The like did the Baffat, bringing with them prefents of Money, and Slaues to further the building, His occupation (for they are all tyed to haue one) is the making of Auory Rings, which they His occupation

weare on their Thumbs when they shoote, whereupon he workes daily. His Turbant is like in We reconstituted the state of t

hath not fo few as foure thouland persons that feede and line within his Serrogie, besides Capa. His Cours. gier, of whom there are fine hundred attired like Instrument, but onely that they want the soket in the front of their Bonnets, who waite by fifties at every gate. The chiefe Officers of his Cent rue the Mallor (as we may retrue him) of the Lought, the Trefurer, and Seward of his Hospital, his Cupbearer, the Agas f his Wimm, the Controlled the Homoglans: who also feed of his retth ha Barg, and is the principal Gardiner. Divers of these feedings are marking before the Grand Signier at folemne thewes, in a vaine oftentation of what they would vadergoe for their Lord, gathering vp the skinne of their Temples to thruft Quils through, and flicke therein Fes-40 thers for a greater brauery, fo wearing them to their no small trouble, vntill the place putrifie;

fome when the old breakes out, cutting new holes close to the broken. Yea the Standard-beaters of this Crue, thrust the states sometimes of their Sandards through the skinne and fat of their bellies, resting the lower end on a stirrop of Leather, and so beare them through the Citie. Fiftly. Mutes he hath borne deafe and dumbe, whereof fome few be his daily companions; the rest are his Pages. It is a wonderfull thing to fee how readily they can apprehend, and relate by fignes, even matters of great difficultie. Not to speake of the multitude of Ennebs, the Foot-men of his Guard, Cookes, Sherbet-men, (who make the foresaid beurage) Gardiners and Horse- His Women keepers. Relate we now of his Women, wherein we will include those as well without as and Virgins,

And first begun we with his Vergins, of whom there seldome are so few as fine hundred, kept

in a Serragiie by themselues, and attended on onely by Women, and Eunuches. They all of them are his Slaues, either taken in the warres, or from their Christian Parents, and are indeed the choisest beauties of the Empire. They are not to be presented to the Emperour, vntill certains moneths be expired after their entrance, in which time they are purged and dieted, according to the custome of the ancient Perfians. When it is his pleasure to have one, they stand ranckt in a Gallery, and the prepareth for his bed to whom he giveth his Handkerchiefe, who is delivered to the aforesaid Aga of the Women, (a Negro Eunuch) and conducted by him into the Sultans Serraglio. She that beareth him the first Sonne, is honoured with the Title of Sultana, Sultana But for all his multitude of Women, he hath yet begotten but two Sonnes and three Daughters.

60 though he be that way vnfatiably given, (perhaps the cause that he hath so few) and vieth all forts of foods that may inable performance. He cannot make a free Woman his Concubine, nor have to doe with her whom he hath freed, waleffe hee doe marry her, it being well knowne to the wickedly witty Roxolana: who pretending denotion, and defirous for the health, forfooth, Roxalana Rory.

of her foule to erest a Temple, with an Hospitall, imparting her mind to the Mofii, was told

by him that it would not be acceptable to God, if built by a Bond-woman. Whereupon the not on a habite of a counterfeit forrow, which possesses the doting Selyman with such a compassion. that he forth-with gaue her her freedome, that the might purfue her intention. But hauing after a while fent for her by an Eunuch, Thee cunning by excuted her not comming, as touched in Conscience with the vnlawfulnesse of the fact; now being free, and therefore not to consent vnto his pleafure. So he whose foule did abide in her, and not able to line without her, was confirmined to marrie her. The onely marke that thee aymed at, and whereon the grounded her fucceeding Tragedies. This also hath married his Concubine, the mother of his younger Sonne, (the being dead by whom hee had the eldeft) who with all the practices of a politicise Stendame, endeuours to lettle the succession on her owne, adding, as it is thought, the power of 10 Wirch-craft to that of her beautie, she being passionately beloued of the Sultan. Yet is the called Cafek Cadonn, which is, the Lady without haire : by Nature her felfe, both graced and finmed. Now when one Sultan dieth, all his women are carried into another Serraglia, where those remaine that were his predeceffors, being there both firiftly lookt vnto, and liberally provided for. The Grand Signior not ieldome bestowing some of them (as of his Virgins, and the women of his owne Serraglio) vpon his great Baffas and others, which is accounted a princ, will honour. But for his Daughters, Sifters, and Aunts, they have the Baffae given them for their Husbands: the Sult an laying thus, Here Sifter, I give thee this man to thy Slave, together with this dagger, that it be please thee not, thou maist kill him. Their husbands come not vnto them vntill they be called : if

Husbandsor bis Sifters and but for speech onely, their shooes which they put off at the doore, are there suffered to remaine: 20 but if to lye with them, they are laid ouer the bed by an Eunuch, a figne for them to approach, our it to type with them, they are that out the beat by an Educat, a right for them to approach, who creep in what them at the beds feet. Mylappia and Hadri, (two of the Viers of the Port) have married this Sultans Sulter, and Necce; and Mahomer Baffa of Caro, his daughter, a child of fixe yeares old, and he about fiftie, having had prefents fent according to the Turkifb folemnities. who giveth two hundred thouland Sultanies in dowry. Not much in habite doe the Women of the Serraglio differ from other, but that the Fauourite weares the ornament of her head more high, and of a particular falhion, of beaten Gold, and inchaced with Gems; from the top whereof there hangeth a veile that reacheth to her anchles, the rest have their Bonets more depressed. Entertainment yet rich ; with their haire disheueled.

When the Sultan entertayneth Embassadours, hee seteth in a roome of white Marble, gli- 30 firing with Gold and Stones, vpon a low Throne, fpred with curious Carpets, and accommo ted with Cushions of admirable workmanship; the Baffas of the Bench being by, who stand like fo many Statues without speech or motion. It is now a customethat none doe come into his prefence without prefents, first failned upon his Buffer, as they fav, by a Perfene Embifia-dour; who thereupon fent word to the Sophy his master that her had conquered Tartie. The ftranger that approacheth him is led betweene two : a custome obsenied ever fince the first Amurath was flaine by the Servian Cobelitz, a common Souldier, who in the overthrow of Coffee, riling from among the dead bodies, and reeling with his wounds, made towards the Sultan then taking a view of the flaine, as if hee had fomething 10 fay; by whom admitted to speech, hee forthwith stabl him with a Dagger, hid vnder his Castocke for that purpose. They goe back 40 ward from him, and neuer put off their Hats; the shewing of the head being held by the Tarke to bee an opprobrious indecency. Now, when he egoeth abroad, which is lightly enery other Friday (belides at other times vpon other occasions) vnto the Mosque: and when in state, there is not in the world to be seene a greater spectacle of humane glorie, and (if so I may speake) of fublimated manhood. For although (as hath beene fait) the Temple of Santia Sophia, which he most viually frenquenteth, is not about a stones cast from the out-most gate of the Serragia, yet hath he not to few as a thouland Horse (besides the Archers of his Guard, and other Footmen) in that short procession; the way on each side inclosed, as well within as without, Capagies and lanie aries, in their scarlet Gownes, and particular head-ornaments. The Changes ride formoft with their gilded Maces; then the Captaines of the lanizaries with their ofga, next 10 the Chieftaines of the Spachies, after them their Sanziaks; those of the foulderie wearing in the fronts of their Bonnets the Feathers of the Birds of Paradife , brought out of Arabia, and by fome effeemed the Phoenix. Then follow the Baffas and Beglerbegs: after them the Pretorian foot-men, called the Solacchi, whereof there be in number three hundred; these are attired in Callouns and Smockes of Callico, wearing no more over them then halfe-fleeued Coates of Crimfon Damaske, the skirts tuckt under their girdles : having Plumes of Feathers in the top of their copped Bonnets ; bearing Q iners at their backes, with Bowes ready bent in their left hands, and Arrowes in their right, gliding along with a maruellous celeritie. After them feuen or ninegoodly Hories are led, having Caparinos and Trappings of methinable value, followed by the alglized Sulma gallantly mounted. About whom there runne fortic Psichi (so called in 60 that they are naturally Persians) in high-crowned brimlesse Caps of beaten Gold, with Coats of Cloath of Gold girt to them, with a girdle called Chochiach: the Pages following in the reare, and other Officers of the Houshold. But what most deserueth admiration amongst so great a concourse of people, is their generall filence : infomuch, as had you but onely eares, you might

suppose (except when they salute him with a fost and short murmur) that men were then folded in fleepe, and the World in mid-night. He that brings him good newes (as vnto others of inferiour condition) receiveth his reward, which they call Muitolooke. But this Sultan to avoid abules in that kind, doth forth-with commit them to Prison, vntill their reports bee found true or false; and then rewards or punisheth accordingly. Although he spends most of his time with his women, yet fometimes he recreates himselfe in hawking, who for that purpose hath(I Himking and dare not name) how many thousand Faulkners in pension, dispersed throughout his Dominions: Hawkes and many of them euer attendant. Their long-winged Hawkes they whittle not off as wee does

but putting a bridle about their neckes, they make them couch to their fifts, and fo galloping to the Brooke, fling them off at the fowle, being reared fodainly by the noyfe of a Drumme that hangs at their Pummels, by vie made cunning in that kind of preying. They carrie them on the right hand. A hardie Hawke is highly eftermed; and they have a kind of them called Shahans, much leffe then a Falcon: yet so strangely couragious, that nothing syeth in the Ayre that they will not bind with. They also hawke at the field, for I have seene them carrie Spaniels with them : yet those in beautie not like vnto ours, but of a bastard Generation. They feed their Hawkes with hard Egges when fielh is wanting, and feldome bestow of them the mewing. Although he affects not hunting, yet entertaynes he a number of Huntimen. Their Dogs they Huntimen. let goe out of flips in pursuit of the Wolfe, the Stagge, the Bore, the Leopard, &c. Those that

ferue for that purpole are itickle haired, and not vnlike to the Irifb Grey-hounds.

Now the yearely Reuenne which he hath to defray his excessive disbursements, such a World of people depending upon him, amounts not aboue fifteene Millions of Sultanies, (besides the entertaynment for his Timariots) which is no great matter, confidering the amplitude of his Dominions : being possessed of two Empires, aboue twentie Kingdomes, beside diners rich and populous Cities; together with the Red, molt of the Mid-land, the Egean Euxine, and Proponticke Seas. But it may be imputed to the barbarous wastes of the Tarkilb Conquetts, who depopulate whole Countries, and neuer re-edifie what they ruine. So that a great part of his Empire is but thinly inhabited, (I except the Cities) and that for the most part by Christians, whose pouertie is their onely fafetie and protectreffe. But his cafuall in-comes doe giue a mayne accellion to his Treasurie : as Taxes, Customes, Spoiles, and Extortions. For as in the Sea the greater filhes doe feed on the leffe, fo doe the Great ones here on their Inferiours, and hee on them all ; being, as afore-faid, the Commander of their lives, and generall Heire of their fubflances. He hath diners Mines of Gold and Silver within his Dominion, that of Sederocapfain Macedon, having beene as beneficiall vnto him as the largest Citie of his Empire, called anciently Christies: and not voknowne to Philip the Father of Alexanders who had the Gold from thence wherewith he covned his Philips, as also from those of Cranider, from whence he yearely extracted a thousand Talents. He hath onely two forts of Coine, the Sultanie and the Afper. The Sultanie is equall in value to the Venice Zecceene, and fixe fcore Afpers amount to a Sultanie, called rather Aftro, of the whitenesse thereof, in that confishing of filuer.

Constantinople is faid to contay ne feuen hundred thousand persons : halfe of them Turkes, and

the other halfe lewes and Christians, and those for the generall Grecians. But Pera hath three Greeks Christians for one Mahometan : for no lew dwels in Pera, though they have their shops there. We omit to speake of the Jemes vntill we come into lewrie; and now will bend our discourse to the Grecians: a Nation no leffe feattered then they, but infinitely more populous. For not onely three parts of the Inhabitants of all Greece and Romania are Grecians, but almost all that dwell in the Hands of the Mid-land Sea, Propontis and Ageum. Infinite numbers there are of them both in the Leffe, and the Greater Afia, and in Africa not a few. For (befides divers Colonies by them formerly planted) when Antipater, Perdiccas, Seleucus, Lysmacus, Antigonus, Ptolomie, and the reft of the Successors of Alexander had shared his Empire among them they endeuoured as much as they could to plant their new-got Kingdomes with their Countrey men: whose O Posteritie in part remay neth to this day, though vasialled to the often changes of forraine Gouernours : supplyed by the extension of the latter Greeke Empire, who yet retayne wheresoener they liue, their Name, their Religion, and particular Language. A Nation once fo excellent, that their Precepts and Examples doe still remayne as appround Canons to direct the mind that endeaupureth vertue. Admirable in Arts, and glorious in Armes; famous for government, affectors of freedome, every way noble : and to whom the rest of the World were reputed Barbarians. But now their knowledge is converted, as I may fay, into affected ignorance, (for they have no Schooles of Learning amongst them) their liber is into contented slavery, having lost their minds with their Empire. Now they delight in eale, in shades, in dancing and drinking and

no further for the most part endeauour their profit, then their bellies compell them. They are 60 generally axed by the ftranger Christians of perfidiousnesse, intomuch, as it is growne into a Prouerbe, Chi fide in Grego, fara intrigo, in them more anciently noted. There be divers rich men of them in Pera, but thote I thinke were descended of the Genoes; who were as hath beene faid, the owners of that Citie. Many of them exercise Merchandize in Veffels called Carmafals, and have of late gotten the vie of the Compalle, yet dare they not adventure into the Ocean. They

are of divers Trades in Cities, and in the Countrey doe till the Earth (for the European Tartes doe little meddle with Husbandry) and dreffe their Vines, by them onely planted. They have Ceremonie of baptizing of their Wines, which is the reason that the lower will not drinke thereof; performed in the memorie, and on that day wherein Christ converted water into winer the Priest in the midst of his Oraisons powring thereinto a small quantitie of water.

And although the Greekes doe now for the most part imitate the Turkes, (I means beere in Tankie in fitting at their meate, yet retaine they still that vice of immoderate drinking. They pledge one another in order; and he that cals for wine out of his turne, is reputed vocinal. Their Glaffes are little, but at every draught emptied; and when they have once drunke hand they observe no Rule, but prouoke one another to excesse. Neuer filent; and ever and anon kife In fing those that fit next them on the cheeke and fore-head; and so likewise they doe in their fa-Ing truction after a long ablemee, and to those to whom they would give an affairance of their good will. Vide of long, as appeared by the Scriptures, amongst their Eatherns Nations. But to kiffs their women is an valuid cention: ving also this greeting, that, Our Samour is rifen. The women for the most partare browne of complexion, but exceedingly wel-favoured, and excessively amorous. Their Great ments differ little from theirs amongst whom they line. They couer not their faces (the Virgins excepted) valeffe it bee with Painting; vfing all the suppliment of a sophisticate beautie. And not without cause, for when they grow old, they most grow contemptible, beeing put to doe the drudgeries of the house, and many times to waite on their children. They are costly in 20 their atter, and will complaine to the Patriarke, if their Husbands maintayne them not according to their substances. The Greekes, as the Turkes doe vie little houshold stuffe; and lve vpon Mattreiles.

Their lan-

Now the Grecians themselves. (except some few) are ignorant in the ancient Greeke, it being called the Latine Greeke, and is a Language peculiar to the Learned. Yet the vulgar Greeke doth not differ so farre from the same, as the Italian from the Latine, corrupted not so much by the mixture of other Tongues, as through a supine wretchlesnesse. In some places they speake it more purely than in others. For the Boyes of Pera will laugh, when they heare the more barbarous Dialect of other maritime Greciens. And there be yet of the Laconians that fpeake for good Greeke, (though not Grammatically) that they understand the Learned; and understand 30

good tower, (training how Gramman and your law only vaccinate the Learner; and vaccinate and the man of the value. Their Litting is read in the ancient Greek, with not much more profit per haps to the mide people, then the Letter Service of Remello Church to the illiterate Papits. They have four Patriarch. One of Comfantingst, another of Assandies, the third of the registers, and the fourth of Assandies. He of Comfantingste hath vacies his larifolding all Telegomentia, Greek, Threek, Dadie, Majish, Mickella, Delman, Rheira, Dates, Illingst, greek. part of Polonia, Ruffia, the Hands of the Adriatiche Sea, and of the Archipelagus, with Cardie, Rhades, Cass, almost all the leffer Afia, Colchis, not a few that inhabit about the Fennes of Matis. and Northerne shoare of Euxians: as Sicilia and Calabria were, vntill they returned vnto the Sea of Rome. Vnder the Patriarch of Alexandria, are those of Egypt and Arabia. The Greekes of Palestine, and of the Countries thereabout, doe obey the Patriarch of Ierusalem. 40 And he of Antioch, who hath his feate in Damafen, (for Antiochia is now defolate) hath fubicat vnto him the Greciens of the leffer Armenia, Celicia, Beriton, Tripoly, Aloppo, and other places of the greater Afia. In all these parts they have the free exercise of their Religion : with publike Temples, and numbers of strong Monasteries. If a Patriarch dye , another is elected by a Synod of Bishops. But the Patriarch of Configurinople hath the Supremacie of the reft affrened him by the Councell of Chalcedon, as Metropolitan of the Imperiall Citie : whose Diocesse exceedeth the other to much, in that most of those Northerne Nations were wonne to Christianitie by the Industry of his Predecessors, and reduced to their Government. So if we doe consider it, the Grecian Religion both in extent and number exceedeth the Romane. And as the Papifts at- 50 tribute an extraordinarie holinesse to Rome, so doe the Greekes vnto Athes, a Mountaine of Maordona; so named of Athen the Sonne of Neptone, deckt with still-flourishing Trees, and abounding with Fountaines : called also the Holy Mountayne by the Christians. A place from the beginning dedicated to Religion; lying directly West from Lemma : and so high, that though it be feuen hundred furlongs diffant; yet is it faid a little before the fetting of the Sunne, to cast a shadow on that Iland.

This firetcheth out into the Sea, and ioynes vnto the Continent by an Isthmos, about a mile and halfe broad : which was cut through by Xorxes, (as hath beene intimated before) and made circumnatigable. But time hath left now no impressions of his barbarous labour. It is well nigh three dayes journey in length, confidering the difficultie of the way; and halte a dayes oner. The 60 top thereof resembleth the forme of a man , stretched on his backe from West vnto East; and formed (according to Strabe) to the similitude of Alexander. This Mountayne is onely inhabited by Greeian Monkes, whom they call Calvieres, vn-intermixed with the Laitie; of whom there are there refiding not fo few as fixe thousand, that live in Monasteries strongly munited against the Incursious of Robbers and Pirats. Of these there be in number twentic foure. The

Calabrat weare Gownes of blacke, of a homely fluffe, with Hoods of the fame; and their harre at full length. They never marrie, abstaine from fleth, and often (efpecially during their Lents) from fifth that hath bloud in it. They line hardly, feeding on Bricot, Onions, Olines, Herbs, and host fifth as the Yelke in the adjoyning Seas. For they all of them labour for their full rance, leading their Monatteries betimes in the mornings; and imploying the day, some in tillage, some in the Vineyards, forme in making of Boats, forme in fishing, others at home spinne, weave, few. and doesal the Offices that belong vinto women : To that none but are buffed about one thing or another, to the behoofe of their particular Couents : and men they bee that are onely meete for such Drudgeries. For among ft fo many, not pall three or foure can write or reade, throughout a 10 whole Monalterie i informed, that at their Lyturgies, that is read to them first, which they are to they after. In these Monasteries many excellent Manu-Cripes have been presented, but those that now are, be onely of Distinitie, all other Learning (as among ft the Turkes) at this day dethat nick are, be onely or Distinct, an other Learning to among true I wary at the say de-trieff by the Religious. The Colorary of this place have a repute about all others; and for their findistinct life, and obtenance of Ceremonies, are in their interall Mounteries relieved from their life Unions. The Partiarch of Confinenting in tails, to pay yearely for the Priefts and Colorary, that are vaided his lamid chion within the Tartifu Dominions, tweether thousand

The Patriarchs of Conftantmople were heretofore men of fingular gravitie and learning ; but now not hing leffe: rather chosen for temporall respects, then either for their knowledge or de-notion; admitted not follower to the place at the age of forme, though prohibited, if vinder threefcore, by an ancient Canon. Although elected by their owne Bilhops; yet often appointed, and ener to be allowed by the Grand Signior: frequently displanted, and banished vnto the Rhodes. by the briberie of their Successors. Some few of their Priests are learned. For them it is lawful to marrie, but Bigamie is forbidden them, and Trigamie deteffed in the Laitie. There are no other Orders amongst them besides the foresaid Celoieros, and certaine Nunnes whom they call ther Orsers among it instructions as no local arms of the most part operated when they can be Collisions. Yes of the high ten sew, who are for the most part operated when they can the most part operated when the carried themselves in weeping of the Churches art ending of the fixet, and actions of like nature. Their Churches are many of their will fee for the and painted with the representation Saints, but they have no carved nor imboffed Images. Lampes they have continually burning. Their ordinarie 36 Lyunge is Saint Christophere, but on Feftuall Dayes they doe reade Saint Agilt, and then atti-red in their Fontificals. Their behaviour therein experient there, to my widerthanding, my great either decked or denotion. They administer the Exchaint in both kinds: if the birth best and leanened, they thinke it not availeable; and they drinke of the cup very liberally. On Article they hold against the Catholicke Creed; which is that the Holy Ghost proceedeth onely from

Foure Lents they have in the yeare, and then a damnable some it is to eare fielh, or fish that hath bloud in it (except in the Lent before Eafter, when all fores of fift may bee eaten by the Larrie:) but fhel-fish they care, and the Cuttle : whose bloud, if I may so tearme it, is like Inke: a delicate food, and in great request. They fast on Wednesdayes, Fridayes, and on holy Eenes: but on Saturdayes they feaft, in regard that it was the old Sabbath. They compute the yeare as we doe. They yeeld no Supremacie to the Romane Papacie, but hold that Church for Schifmaticall. And although many times out of the necessitie of their Affaires, and to purchase reliefe. they have treated of a Conciliation; and lometimes it hath beene by their Agents concluded yet what they have done hath beene generally rejected upon their returne, both by the Greekes and those other Nations that professe their Religion. Of their Marriages I have else-where fooken, and now conclude wee will with their Funerals : wherein they retayne not a few of their ancient and Heathen Ceremonies. Their lamentaions are the same that they were, and beyond all ciuilitié.

The women betimes in the morning doe meete at appointed places, and then cry out maine-10 ly; beating of their breafts, tearing their haire, their faces and garments. And that the clamour may be the greater, they have certaine Iswift women, that have lowdest voyces, joyning therewith the prayles of the dead, from the houre of his Natiunte vnto the houre of his diffoliution: and keeping time with the melancholicke Musicke. Nor want they store of Spectators, partly drawne thither to delight their eyes, and partly by lealousse. For then the choice, and prime women of the Citie (if the deceased were of note) doe all if their Obsequies; with bosomes displaid, and their haire dif-sheucled : glad that they have the occasion to manifest their beauties, which at other times is secluded from Admirers.

The reason why the Grecians did burne their dead, was, because that part which was divine in them, should as it were in a fierie Chariot againe re-ascend to the Celestials Habitations, as 60 vnto Earth the Earthly returned. They vied to quench the fire with Red Wine, and gathering the bones together to include them in Vrnes as the Vrnes in Sepulchtes, (which had no title, vnleffe they were flaine in fighting for their Countrey) exhibiting games, and prizes for the Victors in honour of the deceasted. Notwithstanding all were not burnt, but some buried in their apparell, as now being Christians they are : who vie Extreme-vnction, as inducted by S. Iames;

THE CHICAGO

1206

yet not onely denie the Romane opinion of Purgatorie, but furthermore erromously maintayne, generall Judgement. But enough of the Grecians.

The Germane Emperour, the Kings of England and of France , have heere their Liedeer Em haffadours : as the Venetions their Baily, and divers tributarie Princes their Agents. Some meers ly employed about State Affaires; others together therewith, about the trafficke of their Natio ons. But the English onely negotiates for the Merchants, having two in the hundred woon eneons. But the English of the man of a great proportion of proution from the Grand Symer. The English Confulling of Uses is in its dipoling and accompable to him; and out of that of Alexandra he has he only like the truth of the English Confulling of Uses is in his dipoling and accompable to him; and out of that of Alexandra he has ho small thate, though leaved by a French man. Thirt hath 10 hin fome contention between him and the French, about the protection of the Dateb Merchants: but now they doe divide the profits. The English Conful of Aleppo is absolute of himselfe, yet harh from hence his redreffes of injuries: whole chiefe employment is to protect the perions and goods of our Nation, to labour a revenge of wrongs, and a restitution of losses. And to sine goods or our various, of BOOM a Floring to whose page 3, and 5, when the his to more thinking to the his to do not then his due, for this place none can be more infinitent; expect in their Linguage, and by a long experience in their natures and practiles: being moreover of luch a frifin, as not be danted, And furely, his chieft fault hath been his misfortune; in the too violent, chiege. able, and successelesses follieiting of the restitution of the Prince of Moldania, (whom adventite hath rather made crafty then honest :) whose house doth harbour both him and his dependents: beeing open alfo to all of our Nation: a Sanctuary for poore Christian slaues that ferrely size hither, whom hee causeth to bee conveyed into their Countries, and redeemeth not a few with 20

d. IIII.

The Holy Land described, the Countrie, Cities, Inhabitants, holy Places, and memorable Rarities of Terufalem.

His Iourney

his money.

Ow are we in the Holy * Land, confined on the North with the Mountaynes of Ly. banus, and a part of Phanicia: on the East it hath Calofria and Arabia Petrea: on the South the same together with Idumea, the West is bounded, a part with Phanicia, and the rest with the Mid-land Sea. Distant from the Line one and thirtie degrees, exreflective three and foresting provided in the first and foresting operard. So that in length from Day (the time with California plane), and the first provided in the control of the first provided in the control of the first provided in the f don he failed deft as it were of the habitable World, and under a temperate Clime. Adorned with beautiful by Sames, Pat- Mountaynes, and luxurious Valleyes; the Rockes producing excellent Waters; and no part emp-mes, Conglibedes tie of delight or profit.

It is for the most part now inhabited by Moores and Arabians : those possessing the Valleyes,

and thefe the Mountaynes. Turkes there be few, but many Greekes, with other Christians, of

Of the Low fi

all Sects and Nations, fuch as impute to the place an adherent holineffe. Here be also some leves, yet inherit they no part of the Land, but in their owne Countrey doe line as Aliens; a people scattered throughout the whole World, and hated by those among it whom they live; yet suffered as a necessary mischiefe : subject to all wrongs and contumelies, which they support with an inuincible patience. Many of them haue I feene abufed; fome of them beaten : vet neuer faw Their patience I Iew with an angry countenance. They can subject themselves vnto times, and to whatsomes may aduance their profit. In generall they are worldly wife, and thrine wherefoeuer they fet footing. The Twee employes them in Receit of Cultomes, which they by their policies have go inhaunced, and in buying and felling with the Christian: beeing himfelfe in that kind a Foole and eafily coozened. They are men of indifferent statures, and the best complexions. Throughout the Tiertes Dominions they are allowed their Synagogues : fo are they at Rome, and elicwhere in Italie; whose Receit they inflifie as a retayned testimonie of the verity of Scriptures; and as being a meanes of their more speedie conucrions : whereas the offence that they receive from Images, and the loffe of goods vpon their conversions, oppugne ali periwasions whatsoeyou may reade uer. Their Synagogues (for as many as I haue seene) are neither faire without, nor adorned this Author, & writing more than the second on a second on a second of the seco this almost, & within more then with a Curtayne at the ypperend, and certaine Lampes (66 fare as I codd more fully my perceive) not lightned by day-light, in the middl flands a Scaffold, like thote belonging to Qippinage, La their Lyturgie : an Office not belonging vnto any in particular, but vnto him (to hee bee free from deformities) that that time purchase it with most money; which redounds to their publike Treasurie. They reade in faunge Tones, and fing in Tunes that have no affinitie with Musicke : ioyning voyces at the seuerall closes. But their fantasticall gestures exceed all Barba-

rifme, continually weating with their bodies, and often iumping vp-right (as is the manner in Dances) by them esteemed an action of zeale, and figure of spiritual eleuation. They pray filently, with ridiculous and continuall neddings of their heads, not to bee feene and not laught ar, During the time of Seruice their heads are veyled in linnen, fringed with knots: in number answerable to the number of their Lawes: which they carrie about with them in proceffion; and rather boast of then observe. They have it stucke in the lambs of their doores. and conered with glasse: written by their Cacams, and signed with the names of God, which their Law. they kiffe next their hearts in their goings forth, and in their returnes. They may not print it. but it is to bee written on Parchment , pr-pared of purpose (the Inke of a prescribed compofition) not with a Quill, but a Cane. They doe great reuerence to all the names of God, but especially to lebona; insomuch that they never vie it in their speech. And whereas they handle with great respect the other Bookes of the old Testament , the Booke of Hester (that part that is Canonicall, for the other they allow not of) writ in a long Scroll they let fall on the ground as they reade it , because the name of God is not once mentioned therein ; which they attribute to the wildome of the Writer, in that to be perused by the Heathen. Their other books are in the Spanish Tongue and Hebrew Character. Although they agree with the Tinke in Circumcifion, detellation of Images, abstinency from Swines-fiesh, and divers other Ceremonies: neuertheleffe, the Tiekes will not fuffer a lew to turne Mabonetan, vnleffe hee first turne a kind Their atite of Christian. As in Religion they differ from others, so doe they in Habite, in Christendome 20 enforcedly, here in Turkie voluntarily. Their vnder-garments differing little from the Turkes in fashion, are of purple cloth; ouer that they weare Gownes of the same colour, with large wide fleeues, and claiped beneath the chin, without band or collar: on their heads high brimleffe Caps of purple, which they move at no time in their falutations. They shave their heads all ouer; not in imitation of the Turke: it being their ancient fashion. Their familiar Speech is Spanish; yet few of them are ignorant in the Hebrew, Turkish, Morisco, vulgar Greeke, and Italian Languages. Their onely studies are Divinitie and Phylicke: their occupations Brocage and Vfurie : yet take they no interest of one another, nor lend but you pawnes; which once

forfeited, are vnrcdeemable. They marrie their daughters at the age of twelve, not affecting the fingle life, as repugnant to focietie, and the law of creation. The Sabbath (their denotions ended) they chiefly employ in nuptiall beneuplencies, as an act of charitie, befitting well the fanctitie of that day. Although no Citie is without them throughout the Grand Signiors Dominions, yet live they with the greatest libertie in Salonica, which is almost altogether inhabited by them. Euery Salonica; male about a certaine age, doth pay for his head an annuall tribute. Although they be governed by the Tinkift Iustice; neuerthelesse, if a Iew deserne to die by their law, they will either pri- The Iewe nately make away or falfly accuse him of a crime that is answerable to the other in qualitie, and deferring like punishment. It is no ill turne for the Franks that they will not feed at their Tables. For they eare no fieth, but of their owne killing; in regard of the intrals, which being Dier, diflocated or corrupted, is an abomination vnto them. When fo it falls out, though exceeding good (for they kill of the best) they will sell it for a trifle. And as for their Wines, being for the most part planted and gathered by Grecians, they dare not drinke of them, for feare they be baptized : a ceremonie whereof we have spoken alreadie. They fit at their meate, as the Tarks doe. They busie in the fields by themselves, having onely a stone set vpright on their Graues, Burials,

which once a yeere they frequent, burning of incenie, and tearing of their garments. For certaine dayes they fast and mourne for the dead, yea even for such as have beene executed for offences. As did the whole Nation at our being at Conflantinople for two of good account that Were impaled upon stakes; being taken with a Tankillo woman, and that on their Sabbath. It was credibly reported, that a lew, not long before, did poyfon his fonne, whom he knew to be vnrestrainably lascinious, to prevent the ignominie of a publike punishment, or toffe by a chargeso able redemption. The fielh confumed, they dig up the bones of those that are of their families; whereof whole bark-fuls not feldome doearrine at Iappa, to be conneyed, and againe interred at Ierufalem: imagining that it doth adde delight vnto the foules that did owe them, and that they shall have a quicker dispatch in the generall indgement. To speake a word or two of their Women women. The elder mabble their heads in linnen, with the knots hanging downe behind. Others doe weare high Caps of plate, whereof fome I have feene of beaten Gold. They weare long quilted Waltcoats, with Breeches vnderneath; in Winter of cloth, in Summer of linnen; and ouer all when they ftirre abroad, loofe Gownes of purple flowing from the shoulders. They are generally fat, and ranke of the fauours which attend upon fluttish corpulency. For the most part, they are goggle-eyed. They neither shan conversation, nor are too watchfully guar-60 ded by their husbands. They are good work-women, and can and will doe any thing for profit, that is to be done by the Art of a woman, and which futes with the fallion of these Coun-

tries. Upon injuries received, or violence done to any of their Nation, they will crie out main-

ly at their windowes, heating their cheekes, and tearing of their garments. Of late they have

beene bleft with another Helter, who by her fauour with the Sultan, prevented their intended

maffacre, and turned his furie vpon their accusers. They are so well skilled in lamentations, the the Greekes doe hire them to crie at their funerals.

But now returne we vnto Gaza. It stands upon a hill surrounded with valleyes; and those againe wel-nigh enuironed with hills, most of them planted with all forts of delicate fruits; The building meane, both for forme and matter: the best but low, of rough stone, arched within. and flat on the top including a quadrangle: the walls furmounting their roofes, wrought through with not-sheards to catch and strike downe the refreshing winds, having spouts of the fame, in colour, shape and fight, resembling great Ordnance. Others couered with mats and hurdles: fome built of mud; amongft all, not any comely or conuenient. Yet there are fome religious left, and some impressions, that testifie a better condition: for divers simple roofes are supported to with goodly Pillars of Parian marble, fome plaine, fome curroufly carried. A number broken in pieces doe ferue for thresholds, iambs of doores, and sides of windowes, almost vnto enery beggarly Cottage. On the North-east corner, and summitie of the hill, are the ruines of hure arches funke low in the earth, and other foundations of a stately building. From whence the last Sanziach conveyed marble Pillars of an incredible bignesse; enforced to faw them afunder ere they could be remoued : which hee employed in adorning a certaine Molque below in the valley. The Caftle now being not worthie that name, is of no importance : wherein light the Sanziatek (by some termed, a Bassa) a sickly young man, and of no experience, who governes his Province by the aduce of a Moore, His Territories begin at Arissa. On the West fide of the Citie, out of fight, and yet within hearing, is the Sea, feuen furlongs off; where they 20 have a decayed and vnfafe Port, of small availe at this day to the inhabitants. In the valley on the East side of the Citie, are many stragling buildings; beyond which, a hill more eminent then the reft, on the North fide of the way that leadeth to Babylon ; faid to be that fand no one. ftion the same described in Scriptures) to which Samfon carried the gates of the Citie; voon whose top there standeth a Mosque, environed with the Graves and Sepulchres of Mahometaus. In the Plaine betweene that and the Towne, there stand two high Pillars of marble, their tops much worne by the weather : the cause of their erecting viknowne, but of great antiquitie. South of this, and by the way of Agyps, there is a mightie Cifterne, filled onely by the fall of raine, and descended into by large staires of stone : where they wash their clothes, and water their Cattell. The same day that wee came, wee left the Carauan , and lodged in the Citie, under an Arch

Reason of low

vnto Christians , to withstand the sodaine entrance of the insolent Turker. For they here doe live in a fubication to be pitied; not so much as daring to have handsome houses, or to employ Slauery of the their grounds to the most benefit : fo dangerous is it to be esteemed wealthy. During our abode here, there came a Captaine with two hundred Spabeis, fent by Morat Baffa to raife thirtie thoufand Dollars of the poore and few Inhabitants of this Citie. The Grecians have certaine small Vineyards: but that they have Wine, they dare not be acknowne, which they fecretly prefe in their houses. They burie their Corne vnder ground, and keepe what they are to spend in long veffels of clay; in that it is subject to bee eaten with wormes (as throughout Leggs) and 40 will not last if not fo preserved. In the principall part of the Citie they have an ancient Church, frequented also by the Copties. The Greekish women (a thing elsewhere vnseene) here court their faces, dying their hands blacke; and are apparelled like the Moores of Cairo. Euery Saturday in this Church-yard vpon the Graues of the dead, they keepe a miferable howling; crying of custome, without teares or forrow. The Subaffee would have extorted from vs wel-nigh as much money as wee were mafters of: which wee had hardly auoyded, had not the ficke Sanziack (in that administred vnto by our Physician) quitted vs of all payments. So that there is no tra-

uelling this way for a Franke, without speciall fauour.

in a little Court, together with our Affes. The doore exceeding low, as are all that belong

Saturday

Thrust out of our lodging (as we were about to leave it) by the vncivill Spaheis, who seized on divers of our necessaries : on the eighteenth of March wee returned to the Caravan. Wee 50 payed halfe a Dollar apiece to the place for our Camels: and for their hire from Caire, for those of burthen, fixe Sultanies; for fuch as carried paffengers, eight. Wee gave them more, two Sultanies apiece to proceed vnto lerufalem. Here the Caranan divided : not a small part thereof taking the way that leadeth vnto Babylon. The next day wee also dislodged : leaning the leves behind vs, who were there to celebrate their feltimall. The Captaine of the Carauan departed the night before, taking his way through the mountainous Countrey by Hebron: out of his denotion to visite the granes of the Patriarchs; a place of high effeeme amongst them, and much frequented in their pilgrimages. The ancient Citie (the feat of Danid before he tooke Sim from the lebufates) is veterly ruinated. Hard by there is a little Village, feated in the field of Mechpelah, where flandeth a goodly Temple, erected oner the Caue of their buriall, by Helena the 60 mother of Conflantine : converted now into a Mosque. Wee past this day through the most pregnant and pleafant valley that ever eye beheld. On the right hand a ridge of high Mountaines, (whereon stands Hebron:) on the left hand the Mediterranean Sea, bordered with continued

hills, befet with varietie of fruits: as they are for the most part of this dayes iourney. The

Champaine betweene about twentie miles ouer full of flowry hils ascending leafurely, and not much turmounting their ranker valleys, with groues of Oliues, and other fruits disperfedly adorned. Yet is this wealthy bottome (as are all the rest) for the most part vninhabited, but only tor 2 few small and contemptible Villages, possessed by barbarous Moores; who till no more then will ferue to feed them : the Graffe waite-high, vnmowed, vneaten, and vielefly withering. Perhaps so desolate in that infested by the often recourse of Armies, or masterfull Spabeis: who before they goe into the field (which is feldome vntill the latter end of haruest, left they thould flarue themselves by destroying of the Corne) are billited in these rich pastures, for the

benefit of their Horses, lying in Tents besides them; committing many outrages on the adiovato ning Townes and diffressed passengers.

Fen miles from Gaza, and neere vnto the Sea, stands Ascalon, now a place of no note; more Ascalon. then that the Tarke doth keepe there a Garrison. Ten miles North of Ascalon along the shoare stands Azotus: and eight miles beyond that Acharon, now places of no reckoning. About two of the Clocke wee pitched by Cane Sedoe; a ruinous thing, hard by a small Village, and not a Cone Sedoe. quarter of a mile from the Sea: the Carauan lying in deepe pattures without controlment of the Villagers. The next day we departed two houres before Sun-rife : descending into an ample valley, and from that into another; having divers Orchards towards the Sea. The Country such (but that without trees) as wee past through before. No part so barren, but would proue most profitable, if planted with Vines, and fruits; made more then probable, by those that grow 20 about Gaza. Paffing through a spacious field of Oliues, about noone wee pitched on a little hill-

Iving East, and within a turlong of Rama, called Ramula by the Moores; which fignifieth Ramula, fandy. It is feated in a plaine, on a little riling of the earth, stretching North and South, built of free-itone, the streets narrow, the houses contemptible. Yet are there many goodly ruines, which testifie farre better building, especially those of the Christian Churches, Here is a Monasterie, much of it standing; founded by Philip the good Duke of Burgundie, in that place where sometimes flood the house of Nicodem: u; built for the reliefe and fafety of Pilgrims in their passage to lerufalem : and although quitted by the Friers, yet at this day ferting to that purpose, called

Sion-boufe, and belonging to the Monatterie of Mount Sion. Joppe was called the Port of Lary; the only one that it had. Then more convenient then now: 1000e. much of it choked with fand, and much of it worne with the continual affaults of the waters. Of the City there is no part standing, more then two litle Towers, wherein are certain harquebutes acrosse, for the safe-guard of the harbour. Vnder the cliffe, and opening to the Hauen are certaine foacious Caues, hewen into the rock: some vied for Ware-houses and others for shelter. The merchandizes here emba qued for Christendome are only Cortens, gathered by certaine Frenchmen, who refide at Rama in the house of Soon. The Westerne Pilgrims doe for the most part arrive Charges of at this place, and are from hence conducted to lerufalem by Attala, a Greeke of Rama ; and Dru- Pilerims. gaman to the Pater-guardian, paying feuen Sultanies a piece for his Mules, his labour, and difcharge of Caphar. The like rate he hath for bringing them backe againe: a great expence to to poore P. Igrims for lo fm. Il a journey; which must be payed although they accept not of his 40 conduct. Yet by this meanes they doe passe securely : hee being in fee with the Arabian; that poffesse the Mountames. Now the Carauan did againe divide, the Moores keeping on the way that leadeth to Damajous. Here wee should have payed two Dollars a piece for our heads to a Sheek of the Arabi. But the Santiack of Gaza had sent vato him that it should be remitted.

tall stature, clothed he was in a Gambalocke of scarlet, buttoned under the chin with a boffe of their Leaders gold. He had not the patience to expect a prefent, but demanded one ; wee gaue him a piece of for the most gold. He had not the pattence to expect a prevent, our unnamed one; we game into a process. On the part Samen. Sugar, and a paire of Shooes, which he earnedly enquired for, and cheerfully accepted. On the A kind of itwentieth of March with the rifing Sunne wee departed, A fmall remainder of that great A kind of remainder of that great A kind of remainder of the great A kind of re and Asses, being gone before. Amongst whom were two Armenian Bishops: who footed it most cause most of 30 of the way, but when (alighting themselves) they were mounted by some of their Nation, Be. them are No. fore wee had gone farre we were stayed by the Arabs, vntill they had taken Caphar of the rost. Started The Subaffee of Rama befides had two Med nes voon every Camell. The day thus wasted did

make vs mildoubt that we should not get that night vnto lerufalem: but the milling of our way (for the Arabs had left vs contrarie to their custome) turned our feare to despaire. Some fixe miles beyond Rama the hills grew bigger and bigger, mixed with fruitfull valleyes. About two miles further wee ascended the higher Mountaines : paying by the way two Medines a head; but at feuerall places. The passage exceeding difficult; streightned with wood, and as it were paued with broken rockes: which by reason of the raine then falling became no leffe dangerous to our Camels. At length wee came to a small Village, where we first discovered our

erring. Some counfelled to flay, others to proceed; both dangerous alike, the way viknowne, vnfafe, the inhabitants theeues, as are all the Arabians. Whilest we thus debated, the night stole vpon vs, and bereft vs of the election. The much raine enforced vs to flee for shelter vnto a runnous Chappell, where diffrust set the watch, which we carefully kept till the morning. Betimes

He came vnto our Tent, and greedily fed on such viands as we had set before him. A man of a So call ther

wee for looke the Village, descending the way wee had ascended, guided by the chiefe of the

Towne, who for a fumme of money had vindertaken our conduct to the top of the Mountaines. having hired Affes for our more expedition : yet others croffing vs as wee returned along the Valley, with shewes of violence, would have extorted more money. Our passage for such ourse valies, with newes of violences, together lay through a narrow freight of the Mountaines; much of our way no other then fuch as feemed to have beene worne by the winters torrent. We past by a ruinous Fort, fested neere a Fountaine, fufficient when it flood, to have made good that passage. In the way wee forang a number of Partridges; others on each fide running on the Rocks; like in colour vnto those of Chies. Ascending by little and little, at length wee attained to the top, which our topt and furueyed all the Mountaynes that wee had left behinde vs. From hence to lerufalem 10 topt and furneyed an ene mountaying the way is indifferent even. On each fide round Hils, with ruines on their tops, and Valleyes, fach as are figured in the most beautifull Land-skips. The soyle, though stonie, not altogether nachas are ngureu in the moit ocautinus Lainte-sapes. An expression names, not altogether barren, producing both Corne and Olives about inhabited places. Approaching the North Gare of the Citie, called in times paft the Gate of Ephraim, and now of Damesfest; we only of all of the Little, catted in times part the Late of Epperature, and there is a consequent, we onety of all the reflewere not permitted to enter. When compating the wall wnto that of the West, commanded by the Castle, we were met by two Franciscan Friers, who falleted and consequent to their Count. Wee entred, as afore-laid, at the west Gate, called the Gate of Iops. On the right hand, and adjoyning to the Wall, there standerh a small ill-fortified Castle : yet the opely Fort that belongeth to the Citie; weakely guarded, and not ouer-well flored with Munitions built by the Pifans at such time as the Christians inhabited this Citie. Turning on the left hand. 20 Monafterie of and afcending a part of Mount Gibon, we came to the Monafterie of the Franciscans (being now in number betweene thirtie and fortie) who in the yeare 156r. thrust out of that which they had on Mount Sion, had this place affigued them. But of the Founders name I am ignorant: nor is hee much wronged by being forgotten : fince fo meane a building can give no tame to the builder.

The Pater-guardian with due complement entertained vs.: a reuerent old man, of a voluble tongue, and winning behanour. His name Gaudenius: his Nation, Italy. Eutry third yeare they are remound; and a Succeffor elected by the Pope, from whom they have a part of their exhibition : the rest from the Spaniard and Florentine. Nor is it a little that they get by the refort of the Pilgrims of Christendome. For all that come must repaire to their Couent; other. wife they shall be accused for Spies, and suffer much trouble : the Romane Catholikes rewarding them out of denotion, and the rest out of curtesie : which, if short of their expectations, they will repine at as losers. Wee foure, for eight dayes entertainment bestowed little lesse among them then an hundred Dollers; and yet they told vs wee had hardly payed for what wee had eaten. A coftly rate for a monasticall diet. But the Tarte is much more fierce vpon them :awavting all aduantages that may give a colour to extortion. A little before our comming, a Timbe being denyed by a Friar of some trifle that hee requested, gaue himselfe such a blow youthe Knights of the Nofe that the bloud gushed forth : and presently exclayming as if beaten by the other complayned to the Sanziacke; for which Anania they were compelled to part with eight hundred Dollers. Brought much behind hand, as they alledge, with fuch loffes, they vie oft to rehearle so them as motiues vnto charitie.

Incurrer Catavi. cas Doctor of both Lawes. was made one know not any more exact A. 1619. Our Authors pi-ctures also haue illuftrared thefe Reremit the more curious to his owne Booke, too long for our

The Couent hath also another in-come by the Knights of the Sepulchre; who pay thirtie of those Knigh. Sultanies apiece to the Pater-guardian: who by vertue of his Patent doth give them that dignitie. The Kings of France were Soueraignes of that Order, by whom it was inflituted in the yeere 1099, who granted them divers Immunities. They bare five Croffes Gules, in forme more ease and copious of that which is at this day called the *lerufalem* Croffe; reprefenting thereby the fine wounds indefcription that violated the Bodie of our Saniour. None were to be admitted if of a defamed hie, or of these parts, not of the Catholike Religion. They are to bee Gentlemen of Bloud, and of sufficient both in difboth in dif-coure and pi-chures; his Sciences. But now they will except against none that bring money, infomuch that at our 10 Booke printed being there they admitted of a Romane, by Trade an Apothecarie, late dwelling in Alexpo. They take the Sacrament to heare every day a Maffe, if they may conveniently. If warre bee commenced against the Infidels, to serue here in person, or to send other in their steads no lesse seruiceable : To oppugne the Persecutors of the Church, to shunne vnius Warres, dishonest Gaine, and private Duells : Lastly, to bee Reconcilers of diffentions, to advance the common good, to defend the Widdow and Orphane, to refrayne from Sweating, Periurie, Blasphemie, Rapine, Vsurie, Sacriledge, Murder, and Drunkennelle: to auoide suspected Places, the companie of infamous Persons; to line chastly, irreproneably, and in Word and Deed to shew themselues worthy of such a Dignitie. This Oath taken, the Pater-guardian layeth his hand vpon his head, as hee kneeleth before the entrance of the Tombe : bidding him to bee Loyall, Valiant, Vertuous, and an vindaunted Sculdier of Christ and that holy Sepulchre. Then gives hee him the Spurs, which hee puts on his heeles; and after that a Sword (the same, as they say, which was Godfroges of Bullein) and bids him viert in defence of the Church , and himfelfe ; and to the confusion of Infidels : sheathing it

againe, he girts himselfe therewith. Who then arising, and forth-with kneeling close to the Sepulcher, enclining his head upon the same; he is created by receiving three strokes on the shouloer, and by faying thrice, I ordaine thee a Knight of the holy Sepulcher of our Lord lefin Christ. in the Name of the Father, the Sonne, and the Hoty Ghost; then killes he him, and puts about his necke a chaine of Gold, whereat hangeth a lerufalem Croffe : who arifing, kiffes the Sepulcher, and refloring the aforefaid Ornaments, departeth.

From the top of this Monasterie, survey you may the most part of this Citie: whereof much lies waste; the old buildings (except some few) all ruined, the new contemptible. None exceed two ftories : the vnder no better then Vaults ; the vpper arched aboue, and ftanding vpon Ar-In ches, being well confirmed against fire, as having through out no combustible matter : the Roofes flar, and couered with Plaister. Inhabited it is by Christians out of their deuction; and by Tirks, for the benefite received by Christians, otherwise perhaps it would be generally abindoned.

After a little refreshment, the same day we came (which was vpon Maundie-Thursday) we went vnto the Temple of the Sepulcher, every one carrying with him his Pillow and Carpet. The way from the Monasterie continues in a long descent, (the East side of Gibon) and then a little alcendeth to Mount Caluary. Mount Caluarie a rocky hill, neither high nor ample, was once a place of publicke execution : then without, but now well-nigh within the heart of the Citie, whereupon the Emperour Adrian erected a Fane vnto Venus; but the vertuous Helena (of whom our Countrey may justly glorie) overthrew that receptacle of Paganisme, and built in the Mount Calamy. roome thereof this magnificent Temple, which not onely possesseth the Mount, but the Garden below, together with a part of the Valley of Carcaffes, (so called, in that they threw thereinto the bodies of the executed) which lay betweene Mount Calvary, and the Wall of the old Citie. The Frontifpice opposing the South, of an excellent structure ; having two joyning doores; the one now walled up, supported with Columnes of Marble, ouer which a transforme ingrauen with Historicall figures; the Walls and Arches crefted, and garnifled with Floritry. On the left hand there standeth a Tower, now something ruined, (once, as some say, a Steeple, and deprined by Saladine, of Bels visusferable to the Mahomeraus:) on the right hand, by cera-

taine (teps a little Chappell is afcended, coupled aboue, and fulfained at the corners with pillars of Marble: below through a Wall, which bounds the East ide of the Court, a paire of staires doe nount to the top of the Rocke, (yet no Rocke enident) where is a little Chappell built(as they fay) in the place where Abraham, would have facrificed Iface; of much devotion, and kept by the Priest of the Abissines. This ionneth to the top of the Temple, levell, and (if I forgot not) floored with plaifter. Out of the Temple there arise two ample coupulos : that next the East (covering the East end and Iles of the Chancell) to bee ascended by steps on the out-side : the other, ouer the Church of the Sepulcher, being open in the middle. O " who can without forrow, without indignation behold the enemies of Christ to be the Lords of his Sepulcher! Who Let his friends row, without indignation behold the enemies or currect core are across an appearant; who accommends are feathfull times it mounted wider a Canopie, to gather Money of finds a doc enter rich per empylins, and fiss arising thereof, being farmed at eight thoutand Sultanes. Each Franke payes fourceene, Etdanwhere the Comment of the Commen t except he be of some religious Order, who then of what Sect society, is exempted from pay-

40 ments) wherein is included the Impost due at the gate of the Citie; but the Christians that be cher, Heurisubject to the Turke, doe pay but a trifle in respect thereof. At other times the doore is sealed fen, be unse with the Seale of the Sanziacke, and not opened without his direction : whereat there hangs there. And with the Stale of the Sansassee, and not opened without his direction: whereat there hangs over- had fearn Cords, which by the Best that they ring, give notice to the feure fluerall Sechs of Christopher Stales (who live within the Temple continually) of fach as would speake with them, which miss, Surwhar they doe through a little Wicket, and thereat receive the proution that is brought them. Now himfelfewould they doe through a little Wicket, and increas revenue cure promotions as a bought some axion and the make the foundation even in a place for vener, much of the Rocke hash been he were away, nothold, and and parts too low, supplyed with mightie Arches; so that those naturall formes are veterly do which could formed, which would have better fatisfied the beholder, and too much regard hath made them Which is:

The roofe of the Temple is of a high pitch, curiously arched, and supported with great pill- him to permit lars of Marble: the out lies gallered about; the vniuerial Fabrickestately and sumptions. After to them, that we had disposed of our luggage in a part of the North-gallery, belonging to the Latines, the his followers Contessor of the West State of the Temple : which wee gladly himso heaven accepted of; he demaunding first if denotion or curiolitie had possest vs with that defire, So that in their affectifor omitting Pater Nosters, and Aue Maries, weeloft many yeeres Indulgances, which every ons and conplace doth plentifully affoord to such as affect them, and contented our selues with an Histori- versation, col. call Relation. Which I will not declare in order as flowne, but take them as they lye from the fetter terrance of the Temple. Right as infit the doors in the midd of the South II. first entrance of the Temple. Right against the doore, in the midst of the South sle, and level both the place

ous immitation of those whose holinesse had made the places effected holy,

6c cher, where by vertue of his death, our Old Man marified & of his Refurredion, whereby we line no, but he line in or. Yets this com-plantum, because in unities and superstruons of Christianshaue made Infields, Lords of that holy place. Pigramages are good, when we are thereby made Pilgrimes from the world and our felues. Thy relie is the holy eft place thou canft vine, if with taith and repentance made the Lords Temple, which the temissingnified, and to which the Fathers did, and wil men still doe visite their places, by folly peruerred to superflition (as in the forme: Dicourse is observed) when Place hath more place then Grace, or religi-

Place of anoin- with the pauement, there lyeth a white Marble in forme of a Graues-stone, enuironed with a raile of Brasse, about a foote high : the place (as they say) where lofeph of Aramathia, and Nicedemus, anointed the body of our Sauiour with fweete ointments. This they kiffe, and kneele to. rubbing thereupon their Crucifixes, Beades, and Handkerchiefes; yea, whole webs of Linnen. which they carrie into farre Countries, and preserue the same for their shrouding sheetes. One this there have feuen Lamps, which burne continually. Against the East end of the stone, there is a little Chappell. Neere the entrance on the right hand, flands the Sepulcher of Godfres of Bullein: with a Latine Epitaph, thus Englished.

Hic iacet inclitus Godefridus de Buglion qui totam istam terram acquisuit culmi Christiano, cuus anima requiescat in pace, Amen.

Here lieth the renormed Godfrey of Bullein, who won all this Land to 16 the worthin of Christ, Rest may be foule m peace, Amen.

On the left hand stands his Brother Baldwins, with this inscription.

Rex Balwinus, Iudas altar Machabeus, Spes Patriz, vigor Ecclefiz, virus vtriufque : Quein formidabant, cui dona tributa ferebant, Cedar, Ægypti Dan, achomicida Damascus: Proh dolort in modico clauditur hoc tumulo.

Baldwine the King, another Macabie, The (burches, Countries, Irength, hope, but their glor); Whom (char, e.Egpts Dan, Danascou fraught With Homicides, both fear d, and tribute brought; O griefe ! Within this little Tombe doth lie.

The first and second Kings of Ierusalems. The farre end of this Chappell, called the Chappell of Saint loom, (and of the Anointing, by reason of the stone which it neighboureth) is confined with the foote of Calvarie, where on the left fide of the Altar there is a cleft in the Legend of A- Rocke : in which, they fay, that the head of Adam. was found, as they will have it, there buried, (others fay in Hebron) that his bones might bee sprinkled with the reall and precious bloud of our Sauiour Iesus Christ; which he knew should bee shed in that holy place, by a propheticall fore-knowledge. Ouer this are the Chappels of Mount Catharre: A fended on the North fide thereof by twentie steppes; the highest hewne out of the Rocke, as is

a part of the passage, obscure, and extraordinarily narrow. The stoore of the first Chappell, is checkered with divers coloured Marbles, not to bee trod vpon by feete that are shod, At the 30 East end vnder a large arched concaue of the Wall, is the place whereon our Sauiour did fuffer. and may affuredly be thought the fame : and if one place bee more holy then another reputed of in the world the most venerable. Hee is void of sence that sees, beleeues, and is not then confounded with his Passions. The Rocke there ariseth halfe a yard higher then the panement, level aboue in forme of an Altar, ten foote long, and fixe foote broad, flagged with white Marble, as is the Archand Wall that adioyneth. In the midst is the place wherein the Crosse did stand, lined with Silver, Gile, and Imboffed. This they creepe to, proftrate themselves thereon, kille, &lute, and fuch as vie them, fanctifie therein their Beades and Crucifixes. On either fide there fandeth a Crosse; that on the right side, in the place where the good Theese was crucified; and that

on the leit, where the bad, divided from Christ by the rent of the Rocke, (a figure of his spiri- 40 tuall separation) which cloue asunder in the houre of the Passion. The in-sides doe testifie that Art had no hand therein : each fide to other being answerably rugged , and there where vnaccessable to the Worke-man. That before spoken of, in the Chappell below is a part of this, which reacheth (as they fay) to the Centre. This place belongeth to the Georgians, whose Priests are poore, and accept of Almes. No other Nation fay Maffe on that Altar ; ouer which there hang fortiefixe Lamps, which burne continually. On the selfe-same floore, of the selfe-same forme is that other Chappell , belonging to the Latines, divided onely by a Curtaine, and entred through the former. In the midft of the pauement is a square, inchaced with stones of different colours, where Christ, as they say, was nailed upon the Crosse. This place is too holy to be trod vpon. They weare the hard stones with their foft knees, and heate them with their 50 feruent kisses; prostrating themselves, and tumbling up and downe with such an over-active zeale, that a faire Greeke Virgine, ere aware, one morning shewed more then intended, whom the Frier that helps the Prieft to fay Maffe io tooke at the bound, that it ecchoed againe, and diflurbed the mournefull facrifice with a mirthfull clamor; the poore Maid departed with great indignation. Over the Altar which is finely fet forth, three and thirtie Lampes are maintined, These two Chappels looking into the Temple, are all that possesse the summit of the Rocke, excepting that of the Immolation of Isaac without, and spoken of before, and where they keepe the Altar of Melchifedech. Opposite to the doore of the Temple, adiopning to the side of the Channell, are certaine Marble Sepulchers, without Titles or Epitaphs. Some twentie paces of directly Well from Mount Calumie, and on that fide that adjounce to the Tower, a round white Marble, levell with the pauement, retaineth the memorie (as they fay) of that place, where the bleffed Virgine flood, and the Disciple whom Christ loued, when from the Crosse hee commended each to other, ouer which there burneth a Lampe. A little on the right hand of this, and towards the West, you passe betweene certaine pillars into that part of the Church, which is called,

CHAP. 8. S.4. Temple of the Sepulcher. Chappels of Severall Setts.

the Temple of the Refurtection, and of the holy Sepulcher. A flately round, cloyflered below. Temple of the and aboue : and supported with great square pillars, slagged heretofore with white Marble; but Sepulcher. now in many places deprined thereof by the facrilegious Infidels. Much of the neather Cloviller is divided into fundry Chappels belonging vnto feuerall Nations and Sects, where they exercise the rites of their feuerall Raigions. The first, on the left hand to the Abiffines; the next to the Chappels of Lacobites: the third, to the Copies, (close to which, on the left fide of another , there is a Caue feuerall Setts. hewne out of the Rocke, with a narrow entrance, the Sepulcher of Tofeph of Aramathia:) the fourth, to the Georgians; and the fifth, to the Maronites. The Chappell of the Armenians poffeffech a great part of the Gallery aboue, and the restlying towards the North, belongeth to the

To Latines, though not employed to religious vies. Now betweene the top of the vpper Gallerie, and extreme of the vpright Wall, in feuerall concaues, are Pictures of divers of the Saints in Mofaigne work, full faced, and vnheightned with shaddows according to the Grecian painting, but much defaced by malice, or continuance. In the midit on the South fide, is the Emperour Conflantines, opposite to his Mothers, the memorable Foundresse. This Round is couered with a Cupolo, fuffained with Rafters of Cedar, all of one piece, open in the midft like the Pantheon at Rome, whereat it receiveth the light that it hath, and that as much as sufficeth. Iust in the midit, and in the view of heaven, stands the glorified Sepulcher, a hundred and eight feet distant from Mount Calvarie; the naturall Rocke furmounting the fole of the Temple, abated by Art. and hew ne into the forme of a Chappell, more long then broad, and ending in a Semi-circle, all

20 flagged ouer with white Marble. The hinder part being fomething more eminent then the other, is furrounded with ten small pillars adjoyning to the Wall, and sustaining the Cornish. On the top (which is flat) and in the middt thereof a little Cupolo couered with Lead, is erected vpon fixe double, but small Corimbian Columnes of polished Porphyre. The other part being lower then this by the height of the Cornish, smooth aboue, and not so garnished on the sides, ferging as a Lobby or Portico to the former, is entred at the East end, (having before the doore a long pauement, erected fomething about the floore of the Church included betweene two white Marble walls, not past two foot high) consisting of the selfe-same Rocke, doth contains within a Concaue about three yards square, the roofe hewne compasse, all stagged throughout with white Marble. In the midit of the floore there is a flone about a foot high, and a foot and a halfe 30 fquare; whereon, they fay, that the Angell fate, who told the two Maries that our Sanior was ri-

fen. But Saint Matthew faith, he fate vpon the great stone, which he had rolled from the mouth of the Sepulcher; and which, it is faid, the Empresse caused to bee conveyed to the Church of Saint Saniour, standing where once stood the Palace of Caiphas. Out of this a passage through the midft of the Rocke, exceeding not three feet in height, and two in breadth, having a doore of gray stone, with hinges of the same, vndiuided from the naturall, affoordeth a way to creepe through into a fecond Concaue, about eight foote fquare, and as much in height, with a comma ff roofe of the folid Rocke, but lined for the most part with white Marble. On the North-side a Tombe of the same, which possesset one halfe of the roome, a yard in height, and made in the forme of an Altar: infomuch, as not about three can abide there at once; the place no larger then

40 affoordeth a libertie for kneeling. It is faid, that long after the Refurrection, the Tombe remained in that forme, wherein it was when our Saujour lay there; when at length, by reason of the denouter Pilgrimes, who continually bore away little peeces thereof, (Relikes whereunto they attributed miraculous effects) it was inclosed within a Grate of Iron. But a second inconveniency The Alex. which proceeded from the tapers, haire, & other offerings throwne in byi Votaties, which defiled the Monument, procured the pious Helena to inclose the same within this Marble Altar, which now belongeth to the Latmes : whereon they onely fay Maffe, yet free for other Christians to exercise their private devotions; being well set forth, and having on the farre side an Anticke and excellent Picture, demonstrating the Resurrection. Ouer it, perpetually burneth a number of Lamps, which have fulled the roofe like the in-fide of a Chimney, and yeelds vnto the roome an immoderate feruour. Thousands of Christians performe their vowes, and offer their teares here

yearly, with all the expressions of forrow, humilitie, affection, and penitence. It is afrozen zeale that will not bee warmed with the fight thereof. And, o that I could recaine the effects that it wrought with an vnfainting perfeuerance! who then did dictate this Hymne to my Redeemer :

Saniour of Mankind, Man, Emmanuel: Who sin-lesse dyed for sinne, who vanquish Hell. The first fruits of the grave. Whose life did give Light to our darknesse: in whose death we line. Offrengthen thrumy Faith; correct my will, That min: may thine obey : protett me ft ill.

So that the latter Death may not demoure My Soule feal d with thy Seale. So in the houre When thou whose Bodie santtifide this Tombe, Uniustly iudg'd, a gloriom ludge shalt come To madge the World with Inflice; by that figne I may be knowne, and entertaind for thine.

Witnout, and to the West end of this Chappell, another very small one adioyneth, vied in common by the Agyptians and Albiopians. Now on the left hand as you paffe vnto the Chappell of Chappell of the Apparition, there are two round stones of white Marble in the floore : that next the Sepulcher courning the place where our Sautour, and the other where Mary Magdalen food (as they Referr 2

fay) when he appeared vnto her. On the North-fide , and without the limits of the Templa flands the Chappell of the Apparition : fo called (as they fay) for that Christin that place did thew himselfe to his forrowfull Mother, and comforted her, pierced with anguish for his condeath, and ignominious sufferings. This belongeth to the Laimes, which serveth them also for a Vesterie; from whence they proceed vnto their pompous Processions. On the East-side there flands three Altars, that in the midft in a Closet by it felfe, dedicated to God and our Lady. That on the right hand is called the Altar of the holy Croffe, whereof a great part was there as they (av) referred.

Bit when Sultan Solyman imprisoned the Friers of Mount Sion, (whom hee kept in durance

Pillar whereto Christ was

for the space of source yeares) the Armenians stole it from thence, and carryed it to Sabastia, 10 their principall Citie. That on the left hand in the corner, and neere vnto the entrance, is called the Altar of the Scourging; behind which there is a piece of a Pillar, of that (as they fay) whereinto our Saujour was bound when they fourged him. This stood on Mount Sien and there supported the Portico to a Church in the dayes of Saint lerome; when broken by the San racens, the pieces were recollected, and this part here placed by the Christians. The rest was difiributed by Paul the Fourth, vnto the Emperour Ferdinand, Philip King of Spaine, and the Sig. norie of Venues; in honour whereof they celebrate the fixt of Aprill. It is (as I remember) about three foot high, of a duskie black-veind Marble, spotted here and there with Red; which they affirme to be the markes of his bloud wherewith it was befprinkled. Before it there is a grate of Iron, infomuch as not to be toucht but by the mediation of a fticke prepared for the purpole:be. 20 ing buttened at the end with Leather, in manner of a Foyle, by which they consey their kiffer. and bleffe their lips with the touch of that which hath touched the Relike. Through the aforesaid Vestery, a passage leades into certaine Roomes, heretofore a part of the Colledee of the Knight-Templers : by a generall Councell held in Vienna , in the yeare 1312. this Order was extinguisht, and their Lands for the most part conterred vpon the Knight-Hofpitallers of Saint lobus of lerusalems, of whom wee shall speake when wee come vnto Chaita.
The Temples in London belonged vnto them, wherein the Church (built round in imitation of this) divers of their Statues are to be feene, and the positure vied in their Burials. Here the Francifcans entertayned vs during our abode in the Temple. Returning againe through the Chappel of the Apparition, a little on the left hand there is a concaue in the wall, no bigger then to contayne two persons besides the Altar; which is called the Chappell of the Angels: belonging also to the Latines, but lent by them to the despited Nestorians, during the celebration of Easter. Winding with the wall along the outward North-alley of the Chancell, at the farre end thereof there is a Grot hewne out of the Rocke, where they fay , that the lower imprisoned our Samour, during the time that they were a prouiding things necessary for his crucifying. This is kept by the Georgians; without other ornament then an vngarnished Altar : ouer which hangeth one onely Lampe, which rendreth a dimme light to the Prifon. Vntreading a good part of the fore-faid Alley, we entred the Ile (there but diftinguished by Pillars) which bordes on the North of the Chancell : and turning on the left hand, where it beginnes to compaffe with the East end thereof, wee passed by a Chappell contaying an Altar, but of no regard : wherein they 40 fay, the Title was preferred, which was himg over the head of our Saviour : now shewne at Rome in the Church of the holy Croffe of Ierusalem. Next to this in the same wall, and midft of the Semi-circle, there is another, the place where they fay, the Souldiers cast lots for his garments, of which the Armenians have the custodie. A little beyond you are to descend a paire of large

staires of thirtie steps, part of the passage hewne out of the Rocke of Calnary, which leadeth into a Lobby, the roofe supported with foure massie pillars of white Marble, which are ever moist through the darkneffe of the place (being under ground) and fometimes dropping are faid to Chappellot S. weepe for the forrowfull pation and death of Christ. At the farre end, containing more then halfe of the roome, is the Chappell of Saint Helena: having two great Altars erected by Christian Princes in her honour. On the South thereof standeth a seate of stone, ouer-looking a 10 paire of staires which descend into the place of the Invention of the Crosse: where, they say, that the face whilft the Souldiers removed the rubbidge that had covered it. These staires (eleuen in number) conduct into an obscure vault, a part of the Valley of Carcasses. There threw they our Saujours Croffe, and couered it with the filth of the Citie, when after three hundred yeares, the Empresse Helena trauelling vnto lerusalem, in the extremitie of her age, to behold those places which Christ had fanctified with his corporall presence, threatned torture and death to certaine of the principall Iewes, if they would not reueale where their Aucestours had hid it. At last, for footh, they wrested the truth from an old old Iem, one Indas, first almost famished, who brought them to this place. Where after he had petitioned Heaven for the discouery; the earth trembled, and breathed from her Cranies Aromaticke odours. By which miracle confirmed, the Empresse caused the rubbidge to be removed, where they found three crosses, and hard by, the superscription. But when not able to distinguish the right from the other, they say that Macarius, then Bishop of Ierusalem, repairing together with the Empresse vnto the house of a noble woman of this Citie, vncurably difeased, did with the touch of the true

Crosle restore her to health. At fight whereof the lew became a Christian, and was called therevpon Quiriacus. Being after Bulhop of Ierusalem, in the Reigne of Iulian the Apollata, hee was crowned with Martyrdome. At which times it was decreed, that no Malefactor should thenceforth suffer on the Crosse; and that the third of May, should be for euer celebrated in memoriali of that Innention. In this Vault are two Altars, the one where the Croffe of Christ was found. Invention of and the other where the other. Afcending againe by the aforelaid staire into the Temple, on the Crosse. the left hand betweene the entrance, and Mount Calurie, there is a little Roome which is called the Chappell of the Derisson. Where under the Altar is referred a part (as they fay) of that Pillar to which Christ was bound, when Pilates Servants crowned him with Thornes. clothed n an old Purple Robe, placing a Reed in his hand, in flead of a Scepter, and crying, Haile King of the Iewes: with other opprobrious Taunts, and Reuilings. This is kept by Abifens. Now nothing remayneth to fpeak of but the Quite, nor differing from those in our Cathedrall Churches. The remayneth to fpeak of but the Sepulcher: the East ending in a semicircle, together with the Iles, is covered with a high Cupolo; on each fide stand opposite doores which open into the North & South Alleyes: all ioyntly called the Temple of Golgotha. A partition at the vpper end excludeth the halfe round (behind which their high Altar) which rifeth in the manner of a loftie Screene, all richly gilded (as most of the sides of the Chancel) and adorned with the Pictures of the Saints in Antike habits: flat and full faced, according to the manner of the Greciens, to whom this place is affigned. Towards the West end from each side equally distant there is a little Pit in the Paue-20 ment, which (they fay) is the Nanell of the World, and endeauour to confirme it with that faying Nauell of the of the Scripture, God wrought his Saluation in the midft of the Earth: which they fill with holy Wa- lift to believe. ter. The vniuerfall Fabricke, maintayned by the Greeke Emperors during their Soueraigntie, and

then by the Christian Kings of lerufalem, hath fince beene repayred in the feuerall pares by their particular Owners. The whole of fo ftrong a constitution, as rather decayed in beautie

Hauing visited these places (which bestow their severall Indulgences, and are honoured with particular Oraisons) after Eeuen-song, and Procession, the Pater-guardian putting off his Pontificall Habit, clothed in a long Vest of Linnen girt close vnto him, first washed the feet of his Washing of fellow Friers, and then of the Pilgrimes: which dryed by others hee kiffed, with all outward feet, flew of humilitie. The next day, being Good-friday, amongst other Solemnities, they carried the Image of Christ on a sheete supported by the foure corners, in Procession, with Banners of Ceremon the Passion : first, to the place where he was imprisoned, then in order to the other, performing with an Image: at each, their appointed Deuotions. Laying it where they fay he was fixed on the Croffe. the Frier Preacher made ouer it a short and passionate Oration: who acted his part so well, that hee begot teares in others with his owne; and taught them how to be forrowfull. At length they brought it to the to place where they fay, he was imbalmed: where the Pater-guardian anointed the Image with Iweet Oyles, and ftrewed it with Aromaticke Powders , and from thence conveyed it to the Sepulcher. At night the Lights put out, and company removed, they whipped themselves in their Chappell of Mount Calnarie. On Saturday their other Solemnities performed, they carryed the Croffe in Procession, with the Banners of the Buriall, to the afore-faid Chappell: creeping to it, kiffing, and lying groueling ouer it. On Eafter day they faid folemne feruice before the doore of the Sepulcher. The whole Chappel couered on the outside with cloth of Tiffice, the gift (as appeareth by the Armes embreydered thereon) of the Florentine. In this they shewed the varietie of their Wardrobe, and concluded with a Triumphant Procession. bearing about the Banners of the Refurrection. Those Ceremonies that are not locall, I willingly omit. At noone wee departed to the Monasterie, having laine on the hard stones for three nights together, and fared as hardly.

The other Christians (excepting such as inhahit within, of each fort a few, and that of the Of these reade Clergie) entred not untill Good-friday. Viz. Grecians, Armenians, Copties, Abissines, Iaco-betore Vitra-

50 bites, Georgians, Maronites, and Nestorians.

The Abillens on the Palfion Weeke forbeare to lay Masse, putting on mournfull Garments. and countenances futable. They vie no Extreme vnction, but carrie the dead to the Graue. with the Croffe, the Cenier, and holy Water, and fay Seruice ouer them. To conclude, they isyne with the Copies for the most part in Substance of Religion, and in Ceremony; one Priest here ferning both: an Athiopian, poore, and accompanyed with few of his Nation; who fantaffically clad, doth dance in their Proceffions with a skipping motion, and diffortion of his bodie, not vnlike to our Antickes. To which their Muficke is answerable; the Inffruments no other then Snappers, Gingles, and round-bottomd Drummes, borne vpon the backe of one. and beaten upon by the followers.

The lacobites had two Patriarkes; one refident in the Mountaine Tar, the other in the Monafterie of Gifran, neere vinto the Citie of Mordin, leated (they fay) on fo high a Mountayne that no Bird flyeth ouer it. But now they have but one Patriarke, and that hee of Gifran; alwayes a Monke of the Order of Saint Anthonie, and named Ignatius; Ailing himselfe the Patriarke of Antioch: who for the more conumiencie is removued to Carmit. They have a Beshop

full reliding in Ierufalem, of which the Patriarke is also a Iacobite.

The Georgians differ not much from the Grecians in their opinions : not called (as some write) of Saint George their selected Patrone, but of their Countrey, so named long before the time wherein hee is supposed to have lived; lying betweene Colchos, Cancasus, the Caspian Sea. and Armedia; heretofore Iberia, and Albania. A warlike people, infelted on both lides with the Turkilh and Persian Insolencies. They have a Metropolitan of their owne; some say, the same that is relident in Mount Sma. They fay, that they marrie within prohibited degrees, they are divided into eighteene Bishoprickes; and are not here to be distinguished from the Sociatis, nor they from them, being almost of one Religion : and called Melchues, heretofore of their Adthey from them, being amounted to the stream Tongue; for that they would not embrace the Herefies of Eutyche and Dieferrus, but obeyed the Edict of the Emperour, and Councell of 10. Chalcedon. Their Patriarke is the true Patriarke of Antioch, who abides in Damasco, for that Antioch lyes now wel-nigh desolate. Their Bishop is here poore, so are his ornaments; in their Proceffions, for State, or in regard of his age, supported on both fides. Their Musicklesse Infroments are Faunes of Braffe, hung about with Rings, which they gingle in Hops according to their marchings.

The Maronites are Christians inhabiting Mount Lybanas, fo called of Marona, a Villege ad. ioyning, or of Maro their Abbot. They vie the Chaldean Tongue, and Syrian Character in holy matters. A limme they weare of the lacobites, and once subject to the Patriarke of Antioch. See of them, but worine to the Papacie . by lob. Baptiffa a lefuite, in the dayes of Gregorie the Thirteenth. who sent them a Catechisme printed at Rome in the Arabies Linguage: lo that now they doe ione with the Latines. An ignorant people, easily drawne to any Religion, that could not size 20 a reason for their owne : poore in substance, and few in number.

wonne by Aimetike.

But the Greekes doe here furpaffe all the reft in multitude; and the Armenians in brauerie. who in flead of Malicall Inftruments, have Sawcers of Braffe (which they firike against one another) fet about with gingles. All differ in habit, and most in Rites; yet all coniovne (the Latines ex-Fire from Hease cepted) in celebration of that Impoltury of fetching fire from the Sepulcher vpon Eafter Eeue. wen Seebefore The Tinker deride, yet throng to behold it : the Galleries of the round Temple beeing peffered in Fulcherius, with Spectators. All the Lampes within the Church are at that time extinguished; when they often compaffing the Sepulcher in a joynt Proceifion, are fore-runne and followed by the people with Sauage clamours (the women whiftling) and franticke behauiours, befitting better the ioglemnities of Bacebus; extending their bare arms with vnlighted Tapers. At length the chiefe Bishops approach the doore of the Sepulcher; but the Libiopian Priest first enters (without whom, they fay, the Miracle will not fadge) who after a long stay (meane-while the people hurrying about like mad-men) returnes with the facred flame, supposed at his Prayers to bufft out of the Sepulcher; whereat confusedly they fire their Lights; and fnatching them one from another, firine who should first conuey it to their particular Chappels; thrusting the flame amongst their clothes, and into their bosomes, (but swiftly with-drawing it) perswading frangers that it will not burne them : kindling therewith all their Lampes, vnlighted with other fire untill that day twelue-moneth.

But I had almost forgot the Nesterians, so called of Nesterius, by birth a Germane, who lived 40 in the dayes of Theodofiss, and by him made Bishop of Constantuople. These hated of the rest, in an obscure corner, without Ceremonies or Pontificall habit, full of seeming Zeale and Humility, doe reade the Scriptures, and in both kinds administer the Sacrament, denying the Reall Presence: the Priest (not distinguished from the rest in habit) breaking the bread, and laying it in the palme of the Communicants hand; they fipping of the Cup, which is held betweene his. They kiffe the Croffe, but pray not before it, nor reuerence they Images. They will not have Marie to be called the Mother of God. Their chiefest Heresie is, that they divide the Diminitie of Christ from his Humanitie. Their Doctrine dispersed throughout all the East, by meanes of Cofro the Perfier King, who enforced all the Christians within his Dominion (out of a mortali haired that he bare to the Emperour Heraclim) eyther to forfake his Empire, or to become Ner go forious; as through a great part of Cataia. It is now embraced, but by few; most of that Section inhabiting about Babylon. Their Patriarkall feate is Muzal in Mesopotamia, seated on the bankes of Tygin: their Patriarke not elected, but the dignitie descending from the Father to the Sonne. For Marriage is generally allowed in their Clergie; and when Widdowers, tomarry againe at their pleasure. They have the Scriptures, and execute the Ministerie in the Chaldean Tongue. They allow not of the Councell of Epbefus, nor any that succeeded it. All this while there were no leffe then a thousand Christians, men, women and children, who fed and lodged Eafler Solem- wpon the pauement of the Temple. On Eafler day about one of the clocke in the morning, the Nations and Sects about mentioned, with joyfull clamours, according to their feuerall customes, circled the Church, and visited the holy places in a folemne Procession; and so for that time con- 60 cluding their Ceremonies, departed.

ò. V.

Visiting of Emaus and Bethlehem, and other places: Also other observations of the Ierofolymitan Holies.

Pon Easter Munday wee hired certaine Asses to ride to Emass, accompanied with a Guard, and certaine of the Friers. About the mid-way, at the foot of a hill, there are the ruines of a Monasterie , built by Saint Helena : they fay, in that place where Iesu appeared to the two Disciples. Here the Latines performed certaine deuotions.

and tooke of the itones (as generally they did from all such like places) preserved as precious. Emans stands seven miles off, and West of Ierusalem. The way thicher mountainous, and in many places as if paued with a continual rocke; yet where there is earth, sufficiently fruitfull. It was feated (for now it is not) vpon the South fide of a hill, ouer-looking a little valley, fruitfull in Fountaines. Honoured with the prefence of our Saujour, who there was knowne by the hreaking of bread in the house of Cleophas his Coolin-german, and afterward the second Bishop of Ierusalem. In the selfe-same place a Temple was erected by Paula (a Roman Ladie, of whom we shall (peake hereafter) whole ruines are yet extant, neere the top of the Mountaine; vnto which the Arabians would not suffer vs to ascend, who inhabite below in a few poore Cotta-20 ges, vntill we had payed Caphar they demanded. This Citie was burnt in the lewift warres, by the commandement of Varus ; and vpon the destruction of Ierusalem, re-edified by the Romanes; who in regard of their victors, called it Nicepolis. In the yeere 131, throwne downe Nicepolis by an earth-quike, it was four-clore and twelue yeeres after reflored by the Emperour Marcus Aureius; and afterward dignified during the gouernment of the Christians with an Episcopall Sea, being under the Metropolitan of Ceferea. Nicephorus, and the Triparite historic report of a miraculous Fountaine by the high-way fide, where Christ would have departed from the two Disciples: who when he was connersant vpon earth, and wearied with a longer journey, there washed his feet; from thenceforth retayning a curable vertue against all diseases. But relations of that kind, have credite onely in places farre distant. In our returne, wee inclined a little 30 to the left hand, and after a while ascended the top of a Mountaine, (whose Westerne valley was the field, they say, of that battell, when the Sunne and Moone stood still at the commandement of Iosua.) Out of the ruines of an ancient building, a small Mosque is advanced ; where they hold that the Prophet Samuel was buried, who had his Sepulchre in Rama on Mount E. phraim; though divers other Townes fo feated, are fo called, which fignifieth High in their Language. But our guides were well practifed in that precept :

Of Streames, Kings, Fashions, Kingdomes asks, thereshowne; Answer to all: th'unknowne relate as knowne.

Atque alique ex illis dum regum nomina quarunt Quæ loca, qui mores, quæue feruntur aquæ:
Omnia responde , nec tantum si qua rogabis,
Et quæ nesciris, yt bene nota refer. Onid:

40 who endeauour to bring all remarkable places within the compasse of their processions. The Mahometans either deceived with this tradition, or maintayning the report of their profite. would not fuffer vs to enter but at an excelline rate; which wee refused to part with. The next Mountaine vnto this, doth weare on his Crowne, the ruines of a Castle that belonged to the Machabees. Another more humble, and neerer the Citie, presenteth a pile of stones, square, flat, and folid: the Sepulchre, they fay, of the feuen brethren who were tortured to death by Antiochia, whom I rather judge to have beene buried at Moden, the ancient feat of that Fami- Sepulchres, lie; which flands on the vetermost confines of the Mountaines of Indea, where were to be seene feuen Sepulchres of white marble, each bearing a Pyramis on his fquare; faid by Iof phus to haue ferued in his time for Sea-markes. From hence we approached the North-weft fide of the 50 Citie, where in the Vineyards are fundry places of buriall hewen out of the mainerocke: amongfithe reft, one called the Sepulchre of the Prophets. The first entrance large, and like the mantle-tree of a chimney, cut curiously on the out-fide : through which we crept into a little square roome, (euery one carrying a light in his hand) the fides cut full of holes (in manner of a Doue-house:) two yards deepe, and three quarters square. Out of that roome wee descended by two fireight paffages into two other roomes, likewife under ground: yet more spacious, and of better workmanship, but so rounded with the Sepulchres as the former; neighboured with a Vault, which ferries for a Cifterne, and filled with a living Fountaine. A little beyond, voon the West side of a large square Court, he wen into the rocke some three fathoms deepe, and entred vnder an arch of the same, there is another mansion for the dead, having a porch like to 6: that of the Prophets: and garnisht without (amongst other figures) with two great clusters of Grapes, in memoriall of those, as they fay, which were brought by the spies into the host of the Hebrewes. On the left hand you creepe through a difficult descent, which leadeth into faire

roomes under the ground, and one within another, benched about with coffins of stone bereaft

of their couers, there being some bones yet remayning in some of them. This is famed to bee

è. V.

Danids Gi-

Retblehem.

the houshold Monument of certains of the Kings of Inda. In which there is nothing more admirable, then is the artificiall contribing of the doores, the hinges and all, of the felfe-fime flone, vnfeperated from the rocke without other suppliment. Hitherto (if not further) by all likelihood the old Citie extended. From hence we returned to the Couent.

The day following wee rode towards Bethlehem, which stands about fixe miles South from Irrafalem. Going out from the gate of loppa, and turning on the left hand by the foot of Mount Sim. Aloft on whose vetermost angle stood the Tower of Danid, (whose ruines are yet extant) of a wonderfull firength, and admirable beautie, adorned with fhields, and the armes of the mightie. Below on the right hand of the way in our paffage, they shewed vs a Fountaine at the Southfide of a square Serragio; deliuered to be that wherein Bersheba bathed. North of 10 which, the valley is crossed with a ruinous Aquaduct, which conneyed water vito the Temple which, the valley is crossed with a funious requisiter, which contreves water who the 1 emple of Salamon. Alcanding the opposite Mountaine, we passed through a Country londforpy, yet not veterly forlaken of the Vine, though onely planted by Chnistians, in many places producing Corne, here shadowed with the fig-tree, and there with the Oline. Sundry shall Trarets disperfed about, which serve for solace as well as for safe-guard. Some two miles from the

Citie, on the left hand, and by the high-way fide, there groweth a Turpentine-tree yet flouriflaing, which is faid to have affoorded a shelter to the Virgin Marie, as shee passed betweene Rethlebem and Ierusalem. This tradition how ever absurd, is generally believed by those Christians a place of high repute in their denotions. Towards the West about two miles off, on a little Simeon house. hill stands an ancient Tower: which is faid, to have beene the habitation of Simeon. A mile 20 beyond the forefaid Tree, in the midit of the way there is a Cifterne, vaft within, and fourest

the mouth; which is called the Cifterne of the Starre. For that (as they fay) the wife-men of the East, there first againe did see that conducting Starre, which went before them to the place Starre of the of our Saujours nativatie. A little on the right hand there are the small remaynes of an ancient Monasterie, built, they affirme, in that place where the Angell tooke vp Abacuck, by the haire of the head, and conueyed him to Babylon. Halfe a mile further, on the left side of the way, there is another Religious house, but in good repaire, in forme of a Fortresse, and enuironed with high walls, to withfland the infolencies of the Infidels; poffeffed by the Greeke Coloieres, and dedicated to Elsas. Hard by there is a flat rocke, whereon they told we that the Prophet accu-Romed to fleepe; and that it beares as yet the impression of his bodie. Indeed there are certaine hollowes in the same, but not by my eyes apprehended to retayne any manly proportion. As farre beyond are the decayes of a Church, which ftood (as they fay) in the place where the Patriarch Iacob inhabited. About a mile further West of the way, and a little off, stands the

Sepulchre of Rachel, (by the Scripture affirmed to have beene buried here about) if the entire-Ra:bels Sepulnelle thereof doe not confute the imputed antiquitie : yet kept perhaps in repaire by her offfpring, as a Monumene of venerable memorie. The Tombe it selfe resembleth a great Trunke, couered with a Cupolo mounted on a square, which hath on each side an ample arch sustained onely by the corners. This is enuironed with a foure-square wall; within which stand two other, little, but of the same proportion; kept, and vied for a place of prayer by the Mabometans. Below it on the fide of a Mountaine flands the ruines of that Rama, whereof the 48 Prophet: A voyce was beard in Rama, Rachel weeping for her children, &c. From this ridge of the hills, the Dead Sea doth appeare as if neere at hand: but not fo found by the traueller, for that those high declining Mountaines are not to be directly descended. Within halfe a mile

of Bethlehem, leparated from the same by a valley, and a little on the left hand of the way, are the Cilternes of Danid, whereof he to much defired to drinke, and when they brought him of the water, refused it : a large deepe Vault, now out of vse, having onely two small tunnels at the top, by which they draw up the water. And now wee are come to Betblebens, where in a Grot at the East fide of the Citie, employed

for a Stable (the Inne being peftred with ftrangers) the Virgin fell in trauell, and produced vnto the world a Saujour. In this Caue from the time of Adrian, vinto the raigne of Conflantine, 50 they celebrated the impious lamentation of Adonis (much honoured by the Syrians) who about had his Statue shadowed with a groue of Myrtles: which the vertuous Helena subuerted, and erected thereupon this goodly Temple yet entire, and possess by the Franciscans of Ierusalem,

of whomtome few are here continually refident; called Saint Maries of Betblebem: in forme reprefenting a Croffe the stalke whereof compriseth the bodie; entred at the lower end through a Portico fullayned with fixteene Pillars. The roofe, in the midt, is lofty, flat, and (if I forget not) of Cedar: the Sides, of the fame fabricke, but much more humble, are vpheld with foure rankes of Pillars (ten in a row) each of one entire marble, white, and in many places beautifully speckled; the largest, and fairest that euer I saw, whose vpper ends doe declare that they have in part beene exquifitely gilded. The walls are flagged with large tables of white 60 marble, wel-nigh to the top; the rest adorned with Mosaique painting, although now greatly defaced. It is both here reported, and recorded by historie, that a Sulian of Egypt allured with their beautie, fet certaine Masons aworke, to take downe those Tables, with intent to haue transported them vnto his Castle of Cairo; when a dreadfull serpent issued out of the wall, and

brake in pieces fuch as were removed : so that terried therewith, he defisted from his enterprise. The three vpper ends of the Croffe, doe end in three Semi-circles, having in each an Altar. In the midt he Chancell, roofed with a stately Cupolo, couered without with Lead, and garnished within with Mofaique figures.

remn with Moral per ignics. This Church is left for the most part defolate, the Altars naked, no Lamps maintained, no Monasterie of Service celebrated, except at times extraordinary : yet are there a tew poore Greeker and Arme- Franciscans. mians, who inhabite within on the right hand of the entrance, and in the opposite corners. Adiovning on the left hand, stands the Monastery of the Franciscans, entred through the Church. sufficiently spacious, but of no commendable building; accommodated with divers Gardens. and enuironed with defencible walls; at whose North-west corner a tottered Tower doth challenge regard for the waste received in that places protection. They brought vs into their Chappell, not flightly set forth, and dedicated to Saint Katherine, having Indulgences conferred thereupon from Mount Sina. From which wee descended with Lights in our hands, and then were led by a narrow long entry into a little fquare Caue, supported in the midft with a Pillar of the Rocke. On the left hand, an Altar, and under that a passage into a Vault : wherein, they fav. that the Infants flaine, by the bloudy Edict of Herod, were buried. Out of this Cauc or Innecents Se-Chappell, there are two other entries : in that on the right hand, stands the Sepulcher of Eufe- pulcher,

bius the Confessor, and Disciple vnto Saint Ierome: this directeth into another Grot, wherein are two Tombes, in forme not vnlike vnto Altars; the farther contained the body of Paula a Paula Sepul-20 Romane Ladie, descended of the ancient families of the Gracchi and Cornely. She built foure cher. Monalteries neare adiopning to this Temple, (whole ruines do yet give testimony of her pietie.) Much diffeone the planted with men; the three other with Virgins, who never past the bounds of their rence was be-Couents but on Sundayes onely, (and then attending on their feuerall Gouerneffes) to performe entand larger the Orafons in the Church, and Caue of the Natiuntie : her selfe the Abbesse of one of them, Monastaries and fo for the foace of twentie yeares did continue. She likewife built an adioyning Hospitall and Monkes. for Pilerims, whose ruines declare it to haue beene no meane Pabricke. The other Tombe did Thoseliker cut courthe body of Saint Ierome, who lived in her time, and in the Monasterie which shee had free from you founded : his bones, together with the bones of Eufebius, were translated to Rome, and shrined and fitted with in the Church of Santa Maria Maggiore; ouer which, Pope Sixtus Quintus hath erected a fump- arts and fanctituous Chappell. Out of this we pait into another Grot, which they call his Cell t wherein hee tie, as Seminalay (as they fay) full fiftie yeares and fixe moneths, and there twice translated the Bible. Re- ries of the lay (as they lay) full office years and the indicents, and there twice trainized the Block of the Church: The turning into the afforciated Chappell of the Innocents, by the other entry we paffed into a Vault Nuns and Pill or Chappell, tweltue foote wide, fortie long, and fifteene in height: the fides and floore all lined grimes also with faire white Marble; the compaffed roofe adomed with Mosse-worke, and Mosaigue Gil-much differed ding, though now much perished, At the vpper end, in an arched Concaue, stands an Altar gar- from the later nifhed with a Table of the Nativitie. Vinder this a Semi-circle; the fole fet forth with stones meredegeneof severall colours, in the forme of a Starre : and in the midst a Serpentine, there set to vp- himselfe, this hold the memory of that place where our Saniour was borne : the credite whereof I will nei- Noble Paula

fteps into a leffer Grot: feparated onely from the former, by three fine Columnes of discoloured Marble, which feeme to support the over-hanging Rocke. On the West fide there is a Manger hewne out in a Concaue, about two foote high from the floore, and a little way hallowed within : wherein, they fay, that our New-borne Saujour was laid by the Virgine; now flagged about with white Marble, as the Rocke that roofes it; at the left end fuffained with a fhort Serpentine. In the bottome of this Manger, and inft in the middle, a round Serpentine is fet, to denote the place where he lay, which retaineth, as they would make vs beleeve, the effigies of Saint Ierome, miraculous framed by the naturall veines of the stone, in reward of his often and Saint Ierometer affectionate kiffes. But furely, they bee the eyes of Faith that must apprehend it : yet present natural Image they it in Picture. On the opposite side of this Grot, there is a Bench in the Rocke, not valike Magi.

cession. Now on the South side, and neere vnto the foote of the staires, you descend by three

to an Altar : where the Magi of the East, that were conducted hither by the Starre, disposed, (as they fay) of their Prefents. These places be in the keeping of the Franciscans, and not leffe reuerenced then Caluarie, or

60 the Sepulcher, vifited also by the Mahometan Pilgrimes. Where Lamps still burning do expell the naturall darknesse; and give a greater State thereunto, then the light of the day could affoord it, Baldwine the second did honor this place with an Episcopall Sea (being before but a Priorie) adioyning thereunto, together with the Church of Afealon, many Townes and Villages. In the place where this Citie flood, there are now but a few poore Cottages standing. Most

ther impeach, nor inforce. In this Citie it was, and in a stable; nor is the report by the fite re- and her daughe futed, though vnder ground, hewne out of the lining Rocke, as is the reft before spoken of. For ter Eustachium he that trauels through these Countries, will not wonder to see such Caues imployed to like v- are winnesses fes. Neither is it likely, that they that fucceeded those times so neerely should erre in the place Place of the fo celebrated in their denotions, and beautified with fuch coft. On either fide of this Altar in Nativitie. the Corners, there are two equal afcents, which Land on the opposite out-sides of the Chancell. closed with doores of Braffe cut through, through which they paffe in their solemne Pro-

gers the Models of the Sepulcher, and of the Grot of the Natinitie; cut in wood, or caffin

After dinner we descended a foote into the Valley which lyeth East of the Citie, fruitfull in

rafturage, where Iacob fed his flocke (at this day called his field) neere the Tower of Adar:

but more famous for the Apparition of the Angels, who there brought to the Shepheards the

itone, with Croffes, and fuch like Merchandizes, and in being feruiceable vnto Pilgrims.

Tacobs fi 1de.

Angels apparition to the Shepheards.

glad-tidings of our Saluation. In the midft of the field, on the felfe-same place, as is supposed. and two miles diffant from Bethlebem, Saint Helena erected a Church, and dedicated it to the Angels: now nothing but suines. Returning from thence, and turning a little on the left hand, we came to the Village where those Shepheards dwelt, as yet socalled : in the midsts whereof there to standeth a Well; the same, as the rumor goeth, that the blessed Virgine desired to drinke of when the churlish Villagers refusing to draw her vp water, it forth-with miraculously flowed to the brim; greedy to passe through her blessed lips, and latisfie her longing. Of this the Arabs would not fuffer vs to drinke before we had given them Money. Neerer to Bethlebem, and at the foote of the hill, are the ruines of a Chappell, where lofept (as they fay) had his dwelling, at fuch time as the Angell commanded him to the into Lgipt. Neere the top, and not farre from the backe of the Monasterie, there is a Caue containing two roomes, one within, another defrended into by a narrow entrance, and in fome places supported by Pillars. In this it is faid. that lofeph hid our Saujour and his Mother, whilft he prepared things necessarie for his journey. The flone thereof puluerated, and often washed, of much a little will remaine, and not valike to refined Chalke; which taken in drinke, is faid to have a Soueraigne vertue, in restoring Milke both to Women and Cattell, much vied by the Moores themielues for that purpole. Over which frood one of the Nunneries built by Paula, now onely shewing the foundation, and where-

in the dyed. These places seene, we re-entred the Monasterie, and there reposed our felues the night following. Each of vs bestowing a piece of Gold on the Vicar, betimes in the morning we departed, bending our course to the Mountaines of Indea, lying West from Betblebens : neere to which, on the fide of the opposite hill, we past by a little Village, called (as I take it) Bener a inhabited onely by Christians; mortall (as they fay) to the Mahometans, that attempted to dwell therein, About two miles further we passed by Bethfur, seated in a bottome betweene two rocky Mountaines, once a firong Fort : first built by Rhoboam, and after repaired by the Machabies : famous for fundry fieges; being in the upper way betweene Jerafalem and Gaza, where wee faw the ruines of an ample Church; below that, a Fountaine not vnbeholding by Art, whose pleasant Waters are forth-with drunke up by the earth that produced them. Heere, they fay, that Philip baptized the Eunuch; whereupon it retaineth the name of the Athiopian Fountaine. And no question, but the adjoyning Temple was erected out of denotion to the honour of the place, and memorie of the fact. Yet feemeth it strange vnto me, that a Chariot should be able to passe those rosky and declining Mountaines, where almost a Horse can hardly keepe footing. Hauing trauelled about a mile and a halfe further, we came to the Caue where John the Baptist is faid to have lived from the age of feuen, vntill fuch time as hee went vnto the Wilderneffe by Jordan, fequented 40 from the abode of men, and feeding on such wilde nourishment as these vninhabited places affoorded. This Caue is feated on the Northerne fide of a defart Mountaine (onely beholding to the Locust tree) hewere out of the precipitating Rocke, so as difficultie to be ascended or descended to : entred at the East corner, and receiving light from a window in the fide. At the vpper end there is a Bench of the felfe-fame Rocke, whereon (as they fay) he accustomed to sleepe; of which, who fo breakes a piece off, stands forth-with excommunicate. Ouer this, on a little flat, flands the ruines of a Monaiterie, on the South fide naturally walled with the fleepe of the Mountaine: from whence there gufheth a liming Spring, which entreth the Rocke, and against burfleth forth beneath the mouth of the Caue; A place that would make iolitarineffe delightfull, and stand in comparison with the turbulent pompe of Cities. This ouer-looketh a profound go Valley, on the far fide hem'd with afpiring Mountaines; whereof fome are cut (or naturally fo) in degrees like Allies, which would bee elfe vnacceffably fruitfuleste, whose levels yet beare the thumps of decayed Vines, shadowed not rarely with Olives and Locusts. And surely I thinke, that all, or most of those Mountaines have beene so husbanded, else could this little Countrey have never fulfained fuch a multitude of people. After wee had fed of fuch provision as was brought vs from the Citie, by other of the Fraternitie that there met vs. wee returned towards Lerufalem, leaving the way of Bethlebem on the right hand, and that of Emans on the left. The feated on the fide of a fruitfull hill, well stored with Olives and Vineyards. Hither came the of a Vault or Chappell, lies buried : ouer which a goodly Church was erected, together with a Monasterie; whereof now little standeth but a part of the Wals, which offer to the view some fragments of painting, which shew that the rest have beene exquisite. Beyond, and lower is our

Zacherieshouse first place of note that wee met with , was there where once stood the dwelling of Zacharie, bleffed Virgine to visite her Cousin Elizabeth. Here died Elizabeth, and here in a Grot on the fide 60 Ladies Fountaine, (to called of the Inhabitants) which maintaineth a little current through

the neighbouring valley. Neere this, in the bottome, and vttermoft extent thereof, there frandeth a Temple, once sumptuous, now desolate; built by Helens, and dedicated to Saint Jobs Baptist, in the place where Zacharie had another house where the Propher was borne, in a roome hewen out of the rocke; of principall denotion with those Christians : possest, as the reft, by the beaftly Arabians, who defile it with their Cattell, and employ it to the bafet of vies. Transcending the leffe steepe hills, and passing through valleys of their Roses voluntarily pienti. Rose ralleys, full: after a while wee came to a Monafterie feated in a streight betweene two rockie Monntaines, enuironed with high walls, and entred by a doore of Iron; where a Bishop of the Georgians hath his refidence, who curteously entertayned vs. Within they have a handlome Chan-Io pell, at the vpper end an Altar, and vnder that a pit, in which they fay that the Palme did grow (but nather, if any, the Oline, whereof that place hath flore) of which a part of the Croffe) was made: for it was framed (as they report) of foure funerall woods; the foot of Cedar, the bole of Cypreffe, the transome of Palme, and the title of Oliue. This is called there. Monafferie of ypon the Monasterie of the holy Crosse. Where in stead of Bells they strike on a hollow beame the holy (as the Grecians doe in the Temple of Golgosba) to fummon their affemblies. Betweene this Croffe,

and lerafalem, we faw nothing worth noting, that hath not beene fpoken of already. The day following, wee went to review the remarkable places about the Citie. Baffing by

the Castle of the Pilans, on the left hand entring at a little iquare pallage, were were shewed a small Chappell, the doore and windowes rammed up; for that (as they fay) the Muhametans Chappell vaac became mortally ficke, that, though but by chance did come into it, standing where stooghthe lucky to Main Temple of Saint Thomas. From hence were were brought to the Palace of Annas destroyed by the Seditions in the time of the fiege, where now flandeth a Church dedicated to the bleffel

Angels, and belonging to the Armenians, who have their dwellings about it. Within the Court there is an old Olive tree, environed with a low wall; vnto which, it is faid, that they bound our Saujour: Turning on the right hand, wee went out at a Port of Sion. South and not farre from thence, on the midst of the mount is the place, as they say, where Christ and eate his last Last Supper. Supper : where also after his refurrection, the doores being thut, hee appeared to his Apostlee; where they received the holy Ghoft; where Peter converted three thousand; and where as they fay also, they held the first Councel, in which the Apostles Creed was decreed. Here Helena 30 built a most sumptuous Temple including therein a Canaculum , where that marble Pillar was preferred that flood before in the Palace of Pilate, to which they eved our Saujour when they whipped him. This Church subuerted by the Saracotte, in the selfe-same place the Franciscans had a Monasteric erected, who in the yeers 1561, were removed by the Turkes : they building here a Mosque of their owne, into which no Christian is permitted to enter. Yet not in the respects aforesaid, so reverenced by the Infidels, but in that it is delivered by tradition (and not

unlikely) that Danid had there his Sepulchre. Betweene this, and the walls of the Citie, the Danids Se-Franches have their buriall, where lie fixe English-men, fent (as may bee suspected) vnto their pulchre. long-homes not many yeeres fince , though coloured by the Franciscans , in whose Monasterie murchered they lay, with pretence of Dinine vengeance for the supposed murder of their Drogaman. Se-40 uen they were in all, all aline and well in one day, sixe dead in the other; the out-liner becomming a convert to their Religion. Turning a little on the left hand, we came to a small Church, inclosed within a square wall , arched within , with a walke on the top in manner of a Caue; the habitation of the Armenians, who have of this Church the cuftodie. Heere flourished the

proud Palace of Caiphas, in which our Sauiour was bufferted, spir vpon, and so spitefully reuiled. Palace of Here Helena built a faire Church to Saint Peter; but that deffroyed; in the roome thereof this Caiphas. leffe was erected, and dedicated to Saint Sanionr. On the right hand in the Court, they vndertake to shew where the fire was made , by which Peter stood when he denied his Master; Peters Deniall. and at the fide of the Church doore, the chapter of a Pillar, whereon the Cocke crowing did moue him to contrition. At the vpper end of the Church, vpon a large Altar lieth a Stone, that Graue-flone, 50 (as they fay) which was rolled against the mouth of the Sepulchre.

From hence we descended into the valley of Gehinnon, which divideth Mount Sion from the Gehinnen, Mountaine of Offence, so called for that Salomon by the perswassion of his wives there sacrificed to Chamoch and Molech; but now by these Christians called the Mountaine of Ill counsell, where they say, the Pharifes tooke counsell against lesus; whole heighth yet shewes the reliques of no meane buildings. This valley is but streight, now serving for little vie; heretofore most delightfull, planted with Groues and watered with Fountaines; wherein the Hebrews facrificed their children to Molech. On the South fide of this valley, neere where it meeteth with the valley of Iebolaphat, mounted a good heighth, on the fide of the Mountaine is Aceldama, or the field of Aceldama, bloud; purchased with the restored reward of Treason, for a buriall place for strangers. In the 60 midft whereof a large fquare roome was made by the mother of Confiamine : the South tide wailed with the naturall rocke; flat at the top, and equall with the vpper levell. Out of which ari-

feth certaine small Cupolos open in the midst to let downe the dead bodies. Through which we might see the bottome all couered with bones; and certaine Corles but newly let downe : it being now the Sepulchre of the Armenians. A greedy Graue; and great enough to denoure

ring Earth.

1322

the dead of a whole Nation. For they fay, (and I believe it) that the Earth thereof within the space of eight and fortie houres, will consume the fielh that is laid thereon. The like is said of Saint Impocents Church-vard in Paris : and he that fees the multitude of bones, that are there piled about it, the daily burials (it being a generall Receptacle for strangers) and smalnesse of the circuit, may be easily induced to credit. And why might not the Earth be transported from

thence, as well as that at Rome in Campo Santto, brought thither in two hundred and feuentie thins by the commandement of the aforesaid Empresse which though changing soyles retayneth ber vertue : it being also a place of buriall for Forreiners. In the Rocke about there are divers Sepulchers, and some in vie at this day : having great stones rolled against their mouther according to the ancient custome. Beyond on the point of the Hill, a Caue hewne out of the ter Rocke, confishing of feuerall Roomes, is faid to have hidden fixe of the Apostles in the time of Christs Passion : first made without doubt for a Sepulcher; and after feruing for an Hermitage : the Roofe of the larger Roome retayning some shew of gilding. Below, where the Vallev of Gehinnon and Iehosaphat, like two conjoyning ftreames doe trent to the South, there is a dry Pit; where the Priests are faid to have hid the facred fire when the leves were carried captine into Rabylon ; and feeking it after their returne did find it converted into water. But Nebemiah canfed it to be fprinkled on the Altar: when forth-with with the beames of the Sunne it miraculously

flamed. This Valley of lebosaphat (so called of that good King) from hence extendeth full North, and then enclineth a little to the West, first presenting (though naturall) no other then a large dry Ditch to the East of the Citie contracted betweene it, and the ouer-pearing Hils of 20 the opposite Olimet. It is faid to be about two miles long, and if it be so, but short ones: Where broadelt fruitfull; watered by the Torrent Cedron, which runneth no longer then fedde with showres: losing his intermitted streames in the Lake of Affibaltis. It was also called the Valley of Cedow, and of the King: where the generall Judgement shall be, if the Jewes or Latines may be beleeued; who ground their opinions vpon the Prophene of leel: which I will not gain-fave fince fome of our Dinines have of late follaboured to approve it. Of the fame opinion are the Mahometans, In the wall aboue it, there is a window not farre from the Golden Gate : where they fav, that Mahomes that fit whilft Christ doth execute Iuftice. Paffing to the Citie fide of the Valley, at the foot of the Hill, and East of the South-east corner, is the place where the Pro-

phet Efer was fawne in funder by the Commandement of Manaffer his Grand-father by the 30 Mother : and there buried, where there is a little Pauement vied for a place of Prayer by the Mahometans. Close below this stood the Oke Roguel, where now a white Mulbery is cherished. North of it, in agut of the Hill (aboue which in the wall stood the Tower) was the fish-poole of Silve: contayning not about halfe an Acre of ground, now dry in the bottome : and beyond the Fountayne that fed it : now no other then a little Trench walled in on the fides, full of filthy water: whose vpper pare is obscured by a Building (as I take it a Mosque) where once flourished a Christian Church built by Saint Helena. Deprived of those hersalubrious streams; yet held in honour for their former vertues. Paffing along wee came to our Ladies Fountayne (vpon what occasion they so call it, is not worth the relating) in a deepe Caue of the Rocke, delcended into by a large paire of staires, and replenishe with pleasant waters. Here the Valley at ftreightning, and a little beyond no broader then ferues for a Channell to the Torrent, on the other fide stands the Sepulcher of Zacharie, who was slaine betweene the Temple and the Altar Zacharies Sc-

all of the natural Rocke, eighteene foot high, foure square, and beautified with Doricke Co-lumnes of the same vnseparated stone, sustaying the Cornish, and top thice a pointed Diamond. Close to this there is another in the vpright Rocke; the Front like the fide of an open Gallerie, supported with Marble Pillars, now betweene rammed vp with stones. Within a Grot, whither lames retyred (as they fay) after the Pattion of our Sauiour, with purpole neuer to haue receiued fustenance vntill he had seene him : who in that place appeared vnto him after his Resurrection. In memoriall whereof the Christians erected a Church hard by; whose Ruines are now ruined. A little farther there is a stone Bridge of one Arch, which passes the Torrent. In a Rocke 50 at the foot thereof, there are certayne Impreilions : made(as they fay) by our Samours feet when AGlan Pillar, they led him through the water. At the East end of this Bridge, and a little on the Northy flands the Pillar of Absolon; which he here erected in his life time, to retayne the memorie of his name, in that his Issue Male fayled, (but he was not buried therein) being yet entyre and of a goodly Fabricke : rifing in a loftie square; below adorned with halfe Columnes, wrought out

of the sides and corners of the Doricke forme: and then changing into a round, a good height higher doth grow to a point in fashon of a Bell : all framed of the growing stone. Against this there lyeth a great heape of stones which increaseth daily. For both lewes and Mahometans passing by, doe throw stones against it : yet execrating Absolon for his Rebellion against Daniel. Adioyning there is a large square, but lower by far, which hath an entrance like the Frontispice 60 of a Porch cut curioully without; the earth almost reaching to the top of the entrance : having 2 Grot within hewne out of the Rocke : fome fay, a Kingly Sepulcher; perhaps appertayning to the former. A little more North and wp the Torrent, at the foot of Olimet, once food the Village Gethfemani; the place yet frutfuil in Oliues : and hard by the delightfull Garden wherein our Saujour was betrayed.

They point out the place where he left two of his Disciples, and a little higher the third when he went to pray, and with all the place where he was taken. In this Garden there is also a stone. whereon they fay that our Lady fate, and beheld the Marcyrdome of Saint Stemen, who fuffered on the fide of the opposite Hill. Without the faid Garden, in the loyning of two wayes. they shewed vs the place, as they will have it, where Saint Thomas stood, when incredulous forfooth of our Ladies Affumption, the let fall her Girdle to informe his beliefe.

And now we are come to the Sepulcher of the bleffed Virgin, made thus, as it is, by the Mother of Constantine. Before it a Court; the building about ground, a square pile onely, flat at the Sepulchers of ther of Contraints. Delote it a County of the largest Portico to a Temple. You enter at the South-side, and the blessed top, and neatly wrought, like the largest Portico to a Temple. You enter at the South-side, and the Virgin and het no forth-with defend by a goodly paire of flaires of fiftie fleps: about the midft of the defent, Virgh an are two small opposite Chappels; in that on the right hand are the Sepulchers of Ioachim and Anna; in that on the left of lefah : the Parents and Spoule of the Mother of Iefus. Thefe

staires doe leade you into a spacious Church, stretching East and West, walled on each side, and arched about with the natural Rocke. Vpon the right hand in the midft there is a little fquare Chappell, framed of the eminent Rocke, but flagged both within and without with white Marble, entred at two doores. At the far fide her Tombe, which taketh up more then the third part of the Room, now in forme of an Altariander which, they fay, that the was decently buryed by the Apostles; and the third day after assumed into Heanen by the Angels. In this there burneth eighteen Lamps continually; partly maintained by the Christians, & partly by the Mahometans, who have this place in an especiall veneration. Neere the East Semicircle of the Church, there flandeth a great Altar (ouer which the little light that this darke place hath, doth descend by a Cupolo.) neere the West another, but both vnturnished; and by the former a Well of excellent

Water, Ina Canton of the Wall, right against the North end of the Sepulcher, there is a Clift in the Rock, where the Turkes do affirme, that our Lady did hide her felfe, when perfecuted by the Iewes; into which I have feene their women to creepe, and give the cold Rocke affectionate kisses. The opposite Canton is also vsed for an Oratory by the Mahometans, who have the keepine of the whole, and will not fuffer vs to enter of freecoft. Remounting the fame fraires, not farre off on the left hand, towards the East, and not aboue a stone cast from the Garden of Geth famani, a straite passage descendeth into a vast round Caue, all of the natural Rocke, the Turbilla wo 30 Roofe confirmed with Arches of the same, receiving a dimme light from a little hole in the top, mens den

in times paft all ouer curiously painted. The place, they say, where Christ did pray, when in onto the blef-that bloudie agonie he was comforted by the Angels. From hence were bent our courfe to the fed Virgin. Citie. High on the Hill, where three wayes meete, and vpon the flat of a Rocke, is the place where Saint Stenen (who bore the first Palme of Martindome) was stoned to death. The stones thereabout haue a red ruft on them; which, they fay, give testimonie of his bloud-fied. A little aboue, we entred the Citie at the gate of Saint Steam, (where on each fide a Lion Retrograde doth fland) called in times past the Port of the Valley, and of the flocke; for that the Cattell came in at this gate, which were to be facrificed in the Temple, and were fold in the Market place adjoyning. On the left hand there is a stone bridge, which passeth at the East end of the AO North wall into the Court of the Temple of Salomon: the head to the Poole Berbefde, wnder Berbefde neath which it hath a conneyance, called also Probations, for that the Sacrifices were therein

washed ere delinered to the Priests. It had fine Portsbuilt thereto by Salomon; in which contiqually lay number of diseased persons. For an Angell at certaine seasons troubled the water : and he that could next descend thereinto was perfectly cured. Now a great square profunditie. Greene, and vneuen at the bottome, into which a barren Spring doth drill from betweene the stones of the North-ward Wall, and stealeth away almost vidiscerned. The place is for a good depth hewne our of the Rocke, confined aboue on the North-fide with a fteepe Wall, on the West with high Buildings (perhaps a part of the Castle of Antonia) where are two doores to descend by, now all that are, halfe choked with Rubbidge; and on the South with the Wall of the Court of the Temple : whereof it is fit that fomething bee spoken; although not suffered to 50 enter without the forfeiture of our lives, or renouncing of our Religion.

I will not speake of the former forme, and magnificencie thereof, by facred Pens so exactly salumms Tem-described. First built by Salumon, destroyed by Nebuchadnezear, re-edified by Zerubabel, (yet ple. fo far short of the first in glory, that those wept to behold it, who had beheld the former) new built or rather sumptuously repayred by Herod the Great; and lastly, otterly subuerted by Titus. The lewes affayed to re-edific it in the Reigne of Adrian, of whom he flue an infinite number, levelled it with the floore, and threw the Rubbidge into the Valley of lebofaphat, to make it leffe steepe, and the place lesse defenceable, planting in the Roome thereof a Groue, which hee confetrated vnto Impiter. Afterward Inlian the Apoflata, to disprooue the Prophetie of our Saujour.

60 did licence the lewes to re-build it, furnishing them with mony out of his Treasurie: when loe, a terrible Earth-quake shooke downe what they had begun; and a stame bursting forth, deuoured the Workmen, reported by Amianus Marcellinus a Pagan, and liuing in those times. But who built this that now standeth, is doubtfull. Some doe attribute it to the Christians; others to a Prince of the Arabians, (which is confirmed by the Christians of these Countries) and hee

the Saracen Omer, next Succession vino Mahomet. Seated it is upon Mount Moria, in the South-Mount Moria, east corner of the Citie; without doubt in the very place where Salomons food: the more eminent building confifting of an eight for agreeound of a blewish stone, 'astorned with adjoining Pillars, and Tarraft aboue. In the findle of the fielding Roofe, another voright aspireth, though Lefte by far, yet the same in forme and substance with the former being couered oner with a C. polo of Lead. To the West of this along building adjoyneth, like the bodie of a Church, comnail about, and no higher then the vnder Tarras of the other, but like it in colour. Now the Court (the same with that of the old Temple) is suft four of quare every way, about a flights shoot Golden Gate. Ouer. In the East Wall, which is also a Wall to the Citie, stands the Golden Gate, to called in that it was gilded) which belonged onely to the Temple, through which Christ paffed twice; To first in tritimph, and after a Captine. It is faid that the Emperour Armine retarming from his Perfan Victory, attempted to have entred thereat in all his glory; but was miraculously prohibi-

ted, vntill he had put off all his Princely Ornaments; in a simple habite bearing that part of the Croffe of Christ on his shoulders, which he had recovered from the Persians. This Gate is now rammed up by the Tarker, to preuent as some say, a Prophesie: which is; that the Crite should there be entred by the Christians. A part of the South-side, is also melosed with the wall of the Citie. The rest not inferiour in strength, surrounded with a deepe Trench hewne into the Rocke though now much chooked, heretofore inhabited in the bottome like a freet. In the midf of this out-court, there is another; wherein the aforefaid Mosque doth fland, raised some two wards about it and garnished on the fides with little Turrets, through which ascended; all paned an with white Marble (the spoile of Christian Churches) where the Mahometans, as well as within, doe performe their particular Oraylons. Sundry low buildings there are adioping to the wall : as I suppose, the Habitation of their Santons. In the midt of that, on the South-fide, there is a handsome Temple covered with Lead, by the Christians called the Church of the Paris fication of the Vergine : now also a Mosque. Godfrey of Bullem , with the rest of the Citie tooke this place by affault, and flue within the circuit thereof tenne thousand Saracens. By him then made a Cathedrall Church : erecting Lodgings about it for the Patriarch and his Canons. Into which there are now but two entrances : that on the West ; and this Gate ouer the head of the Poole Betbefds (called of old the Horle-gate, for that here they left their Horles, it beeing not lawfull to ride any further) refembling the Gate of a Citie. One thing by the way may be no. 30 ted ; that whereas our Churches turneto the East. The Temple of Salomon regarded the West, perhaps in respect of Mount Caluarie! 1 Repaffing the aforelaid Bridge, (feeing we might proceed no farther) on the North-fide of the

goodly Church was built to the honour of Saint Anna, with a Monafterie adjoyning of which fome part yet remayneth, but polluted with the Mahometan Superfittion. Turning backe, we tooke vp the faid ffreet to the Weft : not far onward, at the left hand flood the Palace of Piles, without all question the Castle of Antonia, neere adjoying to the wall of the Temple, where now the Sanziacke hath his Residence; deprined of those lotty Towers, and scarce appearing boue the wals that confine it. On the right hand, at the far end of a ffreet that pointerh to the 40 North, itood the stately Mantion of Hered: of which some figne there are left, that witnesse a perished excellency. Now at the West corner of that of Pilates, where the wall for a space doth turne to the East, there are a paire of high staires which leade to the place of lustice, and Throne of the Romane Prefident, where the Saujour of the World, was by the World condemned. The Raires that they fay then, were called Scala Santia, I have feene at Rome neere Saint lobns in the Lateran translated thither by Conflantine. Three paire there are in one Front, divided but by wals : the middlemost those : being of white Marble, and eighteene in number ; ascended and worne by the knees of the Suppliants, who descend by the other. At the top there is a little Chappell called Sanctum Sanctorum, where they never fay Maffe : and vpon this occasion. A holy Father in the Roome adioyning, having confumed most part of the night in his Deuotions, 50 is faid, an houre before the dawning, to have feene a procession of Angels passe by him, some finging, and others perhaps that had worse voyces, bearing Torches : amongst whom Saint Pe-

freet that ftretcheth to the Welt, now in a remote corner, ftood the House of laschim, where a

Iudgemeut

ter with the Eucharift; who executed there his Pontificall Function : and that done returned. This rumored the day following about the Citie, numbers of people flockt thither; who found the Roome all to bedropt with Torches in confirmation of this Relation. Whereupon decreed it was, that not any (as not worthy) should say Masse on that Altar. Now the way betweene Dolorous way. the place of those staires and Mount Caluarie, is called the Dolorous way: along it which our Sauiour was led to his Passion : in which they fay, (and shew where) that hee thrice fell under the weight of his Croffe. And a little beyond there is an ancient Arch that croffeth the ftreet, and supporterharuined Gallerie; in the East-side a two arched window, where Pilate presented 60 Christ to the people. An hundred paces farther, and on the left hand there are the Relikes of a Church, where they fay that the bleffed Virgin flood when her Sonne passed by, and tell into a trance at the fight of that killing Spectacle, Sixtie fixe paces beyond (where this freet doth meete with that other which leadeth to Port Ephraim, now called the Gate of Damafcus) they

fay, that they met with Simon of Cyrene, and compelled him to affift our Saujour in the bearing Simon of Cyrene of his burthen. Turning a little on the left hand, they shewed vs where the women wept . and he replyed; Weepe not for me you Daughters of Ierufalem, &c. Then turning againe on the right, we paffed vinder a little arch, neete which a house ascended by certain steps; the place where Veronica patied vinder a little arch, neere which a noute architectory of the doore, to cleanfe his face Versaice. from the bloud which trickled from his Thorne-pierft browes; and spittle wherewith they had despitefully defiled him : who returned it agains enriched with his lively counterfeit, now to be feene at Rome vpon Festivall dayes, in Saint Peters Church in the Vatican. Fronting the far end of this freet, an ancient Gate which freed in the West wall of the old Citie, yet relifts the fish-

To versions of time, called by Nebemia, the old Gate; by the lebusites the Port of Iebus, and the Gate of Judgement; for that the Elders there fate in Juffice : through which the condemned were led to execution vnto Mount Calvarie: then two hundred twentie paces without, and a little on the left hand; though now almost in the heart of the Citie. From hence we ascended the East-fide of Mount Calsarie (eight hundred paces from the Palace of Pilate) and so descended into the Court of the Temple of the Sepulcher. Right against it are the ruines of lofcie buildings, heretofore the Alberges of the Knight Holpitallers of Saint Iohus. Turning to the South we were shewed, where once stood the dwelling of Zebedens, in which Iames and Iohn 7 thedesthor to were borne heretofore a Collegiat Church, but now a Mosque. A little higher wee came to the

Iron Gate, a passage in times past betweene the upper Citie, and the neather (which gaue way 20 vnto Peter conducted by the Angell) built by Alexander the Great : who having taken Tyrne,

and the Sea-bordering Cities of Phanicia and Palestine, begirt lerufalem with his Armie: when on a fudden the Gates were fet open, Inddus the High Priest isluing forth, clothed in his Pontificall Habit, and followed with a long trayne in white Rayments : whom Alexander espying. advanced before the rest of the company; and when he drew neere fell prostrate before him. For it came vnto his remembrance, how once in Dio a Citie of Macedon, confulting with him-Selie about his Afian Enterprize, he had feene in a Vision one so apparelled, who bid him boldly proceed, and told him that the God whom he ferued would protect his Armie, and make him Lord of the Persian Monarchie. Then hand in hand they entred the Citie, the High Priest conducting him vnto the Temple, where hee facrificed vnto God according to the manner of the 30 Hebrewes: ladder expounding vnto him the Prophelies of Daniel, which foretold of his victo-

ries. From thence we proceeded voto the House of Saint Marke, of which an obscure Church in the custodie of the Sorians doth retayne the memory. And beyond, we came to the Church of Saint lames. Standing in the place where he was beheaded; erected by the Spaniards, together Saint James. with an Hospitall, and now possess by the Armenians. This seems, we returned to the Couent.

The day following, wee went out (as before) at the Port of Sion. Turning on the left hand Sion Port. along the wall, wee were shewed the place where Peter wept, when hee had denyed our Saui- Peterspenance, our; dignified once with a Church, and whereof there now remayneth some part of the foundation. Right against it there is a Posterne in the wall, formerly called Port Esquelone; at which

they bore forth the filth of the Citie. The foundation of this part of the wall is much more 40 ancient, and much more frong then the reft, confifting of blacke frones of a mightie fize. Not farre beyond, we crossed the Valley of Ishofaphat, and mounted the South end of Mount Olimer, by the way of Bethania. Hauing ascended a good height, on the right hand they shewed vs where Indas hanged himselfe (the stumpe of the Sycamore, as they say, not long since extant) Indas; being buried in a Grot that adjoyneth. Neerer the top where Christ cursed the figetree; many there growing at this present. Descending the East-lide of the Mountaine, alittle on the left hand, we came to a defolate Chappell, about which divers ruines; the Houses heretofore of Simon the Leper, From thence we descended vnto the Castle of Lazarm, (whereof yet there is something extant) the Brother to Marie and Martha: close under which lyes Belbania, (WO Belhanie,

miles from lerufalem) now a tottered Village, inhabited by Arabians. In it the Vault where 50 Christ rayled Lazarras from death; square and deepe, descended into by certaine steps. About Loring. are two little Chappels, which have in either of them an Altat : where flood a flately Church erected by Saint Helena: and after that an Abbey, Queene Milifend the Foundreffe, A lierle North of Bethania, we came to the ruines of a Monasterie, now levell with the floore, feated in the place vato which the penitent Marie retyred from the corrupting vanities of the Citie. South-ward of this, and not far off, flood the House of Martha, honoured likewise with a Martha house Temple, and ruinated alike. Equally distant from both, there is a stone, whereon, they say, that our Saniour fate, when the two Sifiers increated him to reftore life to their Brother now folire dayes buryed : the Pilgrime that breakes of a piece thereof, stands excommunicated. A little aboue, there is a Fountayne of excellent water, deepe funke into the Rocke, (by which we're-

63 freshed our selues with prouision brought with vs) called the Fountagne of the Apostles. Now we ascended Mount Olmer againe, by another way more inclining to the North Vpon the right hand, and not far from the top, flood Bethfage, whose very foundations are now confounded; Bethfage. from whence Christ patt vinto lerufalem in triumph vpon an Asses Colt : euery Palme-funday by the Pater-quardian superstitionsly imitated.

Ierdan.

Balme.

Here looke we backe, and for a while furney the high mountaine Quarantania, the low Plaine of Iericho, Iordan, and the Dead Sea; which we could not goe to, by reason of our tardy arrivall the Pilgrims returning on the felfe-fame day that wee came vnto Ierufalem. Vndertaken bur once a veere in regard of the charges, then guarded by a Sheck of the Arabians, to relift the wild Arabs, who almost famished on those barren Mountaines (which they dare not husband for feare of furpritall) rob all that palle, if inferiour in strength : yet payed wee towards that conduct two Dollars apiece to the Sanziack. Iordan runneth wel-nigh thirtie miles from Ierufalem; the way thither by Bethavia; made long and troublesome by the steepe descents and labyrinthian windings; being to the judgement of the eye, not the fourth of that distance. In this the Pilgrims wash themselues, and bring from thence of the water, soueraigne (as they say) for sun- Io dry difeases. A great way on this side the River, there stands a ruined Temple, vpon the winding of a crooked channell, for laken by the ftreame, (or then not filled but by inundations) where Christ (as they fay) was baptized by lohn. On the right hand stood Jerico, a Citie of fame (and in the time of the Christians an Episcopall Sea) beautifull in her Palmes , but chiefly proud of her Ballamum, a Plant then onely thought particular vnto larie, which grew most plentifully in this valley, and on the fides of the Westerne Mountaines which confine it, being about two subjets high, growing veright, and yearely pruned of her fuperfluous branches. In the Summer they lanced the rine with a flone, (not to be touched with fteele) but not deeper then the inward filme; for otherwise it forthwith perished; from whence those fragrant and precions teares did diffill, which now are onely brought vs from India; but they farre worfe, and gene- 20 rally sophisticated. The bole of this shrub is of least esteeme, the rine of greater, the seed exceeding that, but the liquor of greatest, knowne to be right in the curdling of Milke, and not flayning of garments. Here remayned two Orchards thereof in the dayes of Veftafian; indefence of which, a battell was fought with the lewer that endeauoured to deftroy them. Of fuch repute with the Romanes, that Pompey first, and afterwards Tisses did present it in their triumphs as an especiall glorie: now veterly lost through the barbarous waste and neglect of the Mahometans. Where Ierico flood, there standeth a few poore Cottages inhabited by the Arabians. The valley about ten miles over, now producing but a spiny graffe; bordered on the East with the high Arabian Mountaines, on the West with those of Jurie; amongst which, Quarantania the most eminent in that wildernesse where Christ for fortie dayes was tempted by the 30 Deuill, so high, that few dare attempt to ascend to the top; from whence the Tempter shewed him the Kingdomes of the earth; now crowned with a Chappell, which is yet vnruined. There is befides in the fide an Hermitage, with a Cifferne to receive raine-water; and another

yeeres penance.

Mountaines, whose West fide doth give you a full surney of each particular part of the Citie, bedect with Olives, Almonds, and Fig-trees; heretofore with Palmes: pleafantly rich when husbanded, and now upbraiding the barbarous with his neglected pregnancy. So famous infacred histories, and so often bleft with the presence of Christ, and apparition of Angels. It is 40 not much leffe then a mile in heighth, ftretching from North to South, and having three heads, Chappell of On the middlemost (and that the highest) there standeth a little Chappell, of an eight square round, at every corner a Pillar, mounted on three degrees, being all of white marble, and of an elegant firecture; within it is not aboue twelve foot over, paved with the naturall rocke, which beareth the impression of a foot-step, they say, of our Sausours; the last that he set upon earth, when from thence he ascended into Heauen: A place in honour inferiour vnto none, frequented by Christians, possest by Mahometans, yet free to both their denotions. Built it was by the mother of Constantine, and couered like the Sepulchre, with a sumptuous Temple (whose ruines yet looke aloft) together with a Monasterie. On the South-fide of which, they shewed Cellof Pelatia, vs the Cell of Palagia; a famous, rich, and beautifull Curtizan of Antioch, who converted by 50 the Bishop of Dimiata, retired hither vnknowne, and here long lived in the habite and penurie of an Hermite, being not till dead, discourred for a woman. Descending, wee were shewed by the way, where our Sauiour taught them the Poter nofter, where hee fore-told of the definiction of larwsalem, where the Apostles made the Creede, where hee wept ouer the Citie, (2 paued square, now a Mahometan Oratorie) and such like traditions, not much worthy the mentioning. So croffing the valley by the Sepulchre of the bleffed Virgin, we entred the Citie at the gate of Saint Stemen; returning the same way (as the day before) to the Monasterie.

Grot, wherein the Hermites-were buried. Here Saint lerome (as they fav) fulfilled his foure

But now returns wee to the fummit of Mount Olinet, which ouer-toppeth the neighbouring

Much of the day, and all the night following we spent in the Church of the Sepulchre: they then concluding the ceremonies and folemnities of that Feshuall. The next day wee prepared for our departure. Wee agreed with certaine Muccermen (fo call they their Muliters) of Alep- 69 po (who had brought a Paringall hither with his Innivarie, and interpreter then newly come from India) to carrie vs vnto Tripoly, and to defray all charges (our diet excepted) for fixe and twentis Dollars a man, and for halfe so much as if we went but to Acro, greatly to the displeafure of Atala the Drogaman; that would not vndertake our conuey vnder a greater fumme:

CHAP. 8. S. 6. Pilgrims marked. Terebynth famous for the death of Golias. 1227

who found a time to effect his malice; yet his little paines weerewarded with foure Dollars. Caphar and Affe hire about the Countrey had coft vs fixe Sultanies. We gaue money to the Frierfemants, and that not niggardly, confidering our light purfes and long iourney; whereof the Pater-guardian particularly enquired, left their vow of pouertie they should conetously infringe (or rather perhaps defraud his defire) by retayning what was given, to their private vies: A crime with excommunication punished: yet that lesse feared, I suppose, then detection. They vie to marke the armes of Pilgrims with the names of Iefus, Maria, Ierufalem, Beiblebem, the Ierusalem Croffe, and fundry other Characters, done in such manner as hath beene declared before. The Pater-guardian would needs thrust vpon vs seuerall Certificates, which returned him In as many Zecchines: he defired that we would make their pouertie knowne, with the dignitie of those sanctified places: as a motive to reliefe, and more frequent Pilgrimages.

His returne. Observations of memorable places by the way. Of Mount Carmel, Acon, Sidon, Tyrus of Facardin, Emer of Sidon

20 Eauing behind those friendly Italians that accompanied vs from Cairo (being now also vpon their returne) on the first of Aprill we departed from Ierusalem, in the companie of that Apothecarie (now Knight of the Sepulchre) and the Portugall before mentioned; together with an Alman and a French-man; all bound for Tripoly. Wee returned by the way which we strayed from in our comming; lesse difficult to passe; the Mountaines more pleasant and fruitfull, neere the Citie there are many Sepulchres and places of ruines. here and there dispersed. On the right hand, and in sight, is Silo, of a long time a station for the Shilo. Arke of the Couenant, the highest Mountaine of Isry, bearing on the top some fragments of a Citie. North of it on another, the remaynes of that Rama Sophim; (with more likelihood of the truth then the other) which was the habitation of Samuel; whose bones are said to have

30 beene translated vnto Constantinople, by the Emperour Areadiss. After four emiles riding wee descended into the valley of Terebinib, famous, though little, for the slaughter of Golias. A Vale of Tere-Bridge here croffeth the Torrent, neere which the ruines of an ancient Monasterie, more wor- buth. this the observing for the greatnesse of the stones, then finenesse of the workmanship. Having rid foure miles further, they shewed vs Moden, the ancient seate of the Macchabes, toward Meden. the North, and feated on the top of an afpiring hill, which yet supporteth the reliques of a Citie: whereof there fomething hath beene spoken already. Beyond, by the high-way side there is another Monasterie, not altogether subverted : of late inhabited by some of the Franciscans. who befor one night by the Arabs, and not able to mafter their terrour, quitted it the day following. About a stones cast off, there standeth a Church, now desolate, yet retayning the name

40 of the Prophet Ieremie. But whether here flood that Anatheth or no that challengeth his birth, Ieremie, I am ignorant. About three miles further, wee passed by a place, called Sereth , where by certaine ruines there standeth a pile like a broken Tower, engrauen with Turkifb Characters, voon that fide which regardeth the way; erected as they fay, by an Ottoman Emperour. Now having for a while descended those Mountaines that neighbour the Champaine, we came to the ruines of an ancient building, over-looking the levell: yet no leffe excelling in commodious fituation. then delicacie of prospect. They call it, The house of the Good Thiefe. Perhaps some Abbey Good thiefes erected in that place; or Castle here built to defend this passage. V pon the right hand there house flandeth a handsome Mosque, every way open, and supported with Pillars, the roofe flat, and charged on the East end with a Cupolo, heretofore a Christian Chappell. This is ten miles from

So Rama, whither we came that night; and wet as we were, tooke vp our lodgings on the ground in the House of Sion: nothing that day befalling, saue the violence done vs by certaine Spaheis, who tooke our Wine from vs; and payments of head-money in fundry places, vnto which we were neither chargeable nor troublefome.

Not vntill noone next day departed we from Rama: travelling through a most fruitfull Val- Rama. ley. The first place we passed by was Lydda, made tamous by Saint Peter, called after Diespolis, Lydda. that is, the Citie of Impiter, destroyed by Cestius; here yet standeth a Christian Temple, built, as they fay, by a King of England to the honour of Saint George, a Cappadocian by birth, aduan- Saint Georges ced in the Warres to the dignitie of a Tribune, who after became a Souldier of Christ; and here Templebule is faid to have fuffered Martyrdome under Diocletian. Others fay, that there never was fuch a by a King of 60 man, and that the storie is no other then an allegorie. The Greeks have the custodie of this Church,

who shew a Scull, which they affirme to be Saint Georges. In the time of the Christians it was the feate of a Suffragan, now hardly a Village. Eight miles from Rama stands the Calile of Angia, built like a Caine, and kept by a small Garrison. A little beyond, the Muccermen would have flaid (which wee would not fuffer, being then the best time of the day for travell) that

CHAP. 8. \$ 6. Glaffe Sand, Memnons Sepulcher. Bleffed Virgins bonfe.

they might by night have avoided the next Village, with the payments there due; where wee were hardly intreated by the procurement of Attala, who holds correspondencie with the Moores of those quarters. They would not take leffe then foure Dollars aman (when perhaps Turkiß knarie, flaueria.

as many Medeins were but due) and that with much langling. They fought occasion how to trouble vs, beating vs off our Mules, because forfooth, wee did not light to doe homage to a fort of halte-clad Rascals; pulling the white Shash from the head of the Portugal (whereby he wel hoped to have past for a Turke) his Ianizarie looking on. Here detayned they vs vntill twoof the clocke the next morning, without meate, without fleepe, couched on the wet earth, and washed with raine; yet expecting worse, and then suffered vs to depart. After a while wee entred a goodly Forrest, full of tall and delightfull Trees, intermixed with fruitfull and flowrie to Launes, Perhaps the earth affoordeth not the like; it cannot a more pleafant. Hauing paged

this part of the Wood (the rest inclining to the West, and then againe extending to the North) we might discouer a number of stragling Tents, some just in our way, and neere to the skirts of the Forrest. These were Spaties belonging to the Host of Morat Bassa, then in the Confines of Persia. They will take (especially from a Christian) whatsoeuer they like; and kindly they vie him if he passe without blowes : nor are their Commanders at all times free from their infolencies. To avoid them, we strucke out of the way, and crossed the pregnant champaine to the foote of the Mountaynes, where for that day we repoled our felues : when it grew darke, wee arose, inclining on the left hand, mingling after a while with a small Carauan of Moores; en-Silent riding, joyned to filence, and to ride without our Hats, left discouered for Christians. The clouds fell 20 downe in freames, and the pitchie night had bereft vs of the conduct of our eyes . had not the

Lightning affoorded a terrible light. And when the raine intermitted, the Aire appeared as if full of sparkles of fire, borne too and fro with the wind, by reason of the infinite swarmes of Shining Flies, Flies that doe shine like Glow-wormes, to a stranger a strange spectacle. In the next Wood we out-fript that Caranan, where the theeuish Arabs had made fundrie fires; to which our footmen drew neere to liften, that we might passe more securely. An house after mid-night the skie began to cleere, when on the other fide of the Wood we fell among it certaine Tents of Southeir:

by whom we past with as little noise as we could, secured by their founder sleepings. Not fare beyond, through a large Glade betweene two Hils, we leifurely descended for the space of two houres (a Torrent rufhing downe on the left hand of vs) when not able longer to keepethe 30 backs of our Mules, we laid vs downe in the bottome vnder a plump of Trees on the farrefide of a Torrent. With the Summe we arose, and found our selves at the East end, and North side of

Mount Carmel.

Mount Cornel freecheth from East to West, and hath his vetermost Basis washe with the Sea, fleepeft towards the North, and of an indifferent altitude : rich in Olives and Vines when husbanded: and abounding with feuerall forts of Fruits and Herbs, both medicinable and fragrant : now much ouer-growne with Woods and Shrubs of Iweet fauour : celebrated for the Elias his house, habitation of Elias, whose house was after his death converted into a Synagogue; where O. racles, it is faid, were given by God; called by Suetonius the God Carmelus, whose words are

thele, intreating of Vepasian: In Indea consulting with the Oracle of the God Carmelus, the Oracle 45 as fured him, that what seven he under-tooks should be successfull. Where then was nothing more to be seene then an Altar. From hence proceeded the Order of the Friar Carmelites, as succes-

fors to the children of the Prophets there left by Elias; who had their beginning in the Defarts of Syria, in the yeere 1180. instituted by Almericus Bishop of Antioch, and faid to have received their white habite from our Ladie, whom Albertus the Patriarke of Ierufalem transported fint into Europe. There is yet to be feene the remaynes of their Monasterie, with a Temple dedicated to the bleffed Virgin; under which a little Chappell or Caue, the ancient dwelling of Ehas. This is inherited by an Emer of the Arabians, who after the ancient custome of that Nation doth live in Tents, even during the Winter, although possess of undrie convenient houses; whose Signiorie stretcheth to the South, and along the Shoare. Within his Precinc stands the 50 Cafile of the Perigrmes, vpon a cape, almost furrounded with the Sea, now called Tortora, built by Raimond Earle of Tolosa for their better securitie, and after fortified by the Templers. Ten miles South of this, stood that famous Cafarea (more anciently called the Tower of Strato, of 2

King of Arades the Builder fo named, who lived in the dayes of Alexander) in fuch fort re-edified by Hered, that it little declined in magnificencie from the principall Cities of Afia; now

levell with the Floore, the Haven loft, and fituation abandoned.

We passed the Torrent Chison, which floweth from the Mountaynes of Tabor and Hermon; and gliding by the North skirts of Carmel, dischargeth it selfe into the Sea. Carmel is the South bound to the ample valley of Acre; bounded on the North by those of Saron, on the West it hath the Sea, and it is inclosed on the East with the Mountaines of Galile. In length about 60 fourteene miles, in bredth about halfe as much; the neerer the Sea the more barren. In it there arife two rinolets of living, but peftilent waters, drilling from feueral! marifhes; the first is the River of Belus, called by Plinie Pagida and Palus, and Badas by Simonides; whole fand affoordeth matter for Glasse, becomming tulable with the heate of the Fornace. Strabo reports the

like of divers places thereabout. And lofe obus speaking of this, declareth, that adjoining thereinto, there is a pit an hundred cubits in circuite, couered with Sand like Graffe; and when borne Glaffe fand, away (for there-with they acculiomed to Ballace their flips) it forth-with filled againe, borne thirtherby winds from places adjacent : And moreouer, whatfoeuer Minerall was contained therein, converted into Claffe; and Glaffe there laid, againe into Sand. Neere to this pit flood the Sepulcher of Memnen, the Sorine of Tythenen.

re occurrence of the same of the skirts of the hils, we crofted the Valley, and anon pulcher. that other Revolet a little aboue, where it falleth into the Road of Acre; where to our comfort. we efred the Ship that brought vs to Alexandria, with another of London, called the Eliza- Ship of Landon

to both Confere: when entring the Towne, we were kindly entertained by our Country-men, Here flaved we, the reft of our company proceeded vato Tripaly; this being the mid-way betweene nayou we, the ren or our company processes who a rywy; thus seeing the mind-way betweene it and terufates. But our Muccernan would not reft fixished with halfe of his hire, according Turiff Mafalto our compact, whom we were glad to burid of for twentie Dollers a man; our Oaths being man, bootleft against a True Beleener, for so do they tearme themselves.

This Citie was called Ace at the first, a refuge for the Persians in their Leppinan warres : Then Ptolomais of Ptolomy King of Leppt: Colonia Claudy, of Claudine Cafar, who heere planted a Colony: Afterward Acon, and now Acre. Seated on a levell, in forme of a Triangular Shield : County: Arctivator Asson, and now Asset, obsected in least, in to me of a transpass onlice; on two fides washe with the Sea; the third regarding the Champagie. The carksaft shewet third Asson Secosi it the body hat beene throng; double immured, fortified with Bulwarkes and Towers; to each king Richard the body hat dirth, lined with flone, and winder those diuers secret Posteries. You would thinke by the and his Ne-

wall a ditch, lined with itone, and under those divers recent rowerness. For the Citie rather confided wholly of divers conjuying Caftles, then any way mixed thanks floor with private dwellings; which witnesse a notable defence, and an vnequal affailt; or that the rase of the Conquerors extended beyond Conquest: the huge Wals and Arches turned topfieturuey, and lying like Rockes vpon the foundation. On the South fide lyes the Hauen, no better then a Bay; open to the West, North-west, and South-west winds, the bottome stony, and ill for their Cables. There are the nunes of a Palace, which yet doth acknowledge King Richard for the founder, confirmed likewise by the Passant Lion. An hundred yeares after, is remained with the Christians, and was the last receptacle in the Holy Land, for the Knights Hosbitalers

of Saint Isbut of Ierufalem, called thereupon Saint Isbu de Aere; to whom a good I Temple and the Cities was conferenced, which now ouer-toppeth the reft of the mines. In a Vault thereof a great maffe of Treasure was hid by the Knights of the Order, which made knowne from time to time vnto their Successors, was fetcht from hence about forty yeares fince by the Gallies of Malta, the Inhabitants abandoning the Towne vpon their landing. In the years 1201, befreged by an hundred and fiftie thouland Mahometans, Acre received an vitet fubuerfion, which the Mamalacks after in some fort repaired, and loft it at last with their name and Empire, vnto the Timbif Selman. It is now under the Santand of Saphe, and viarped with the reft of that Prounce, by the Emer of Siden. In the Townse there are not about two or three hundred Inhabitants, who dwell heere and there in the patche vp ruines; onely a new Mosque they have, and a strong iquare Cane (built, where once was the Arsenall for Gallies) in which the Francke Merchants fecurely dispose of themselves and their Commodities : who for

the most part bring hither ready Monies, (Dutch Dollers being, as generally throughout Tiery the more part oring intent.

And Phasisis, equiumlent with Royals of eight, elfe-where leffe by ten Afpers) fraughting their thips with Cottons that grow abundantly in the Coentrey adioyning. Here have they a Cades, Respects of the principall Officer. The English are much respected by the principall Moores: infomuch, as I English have feene the firjker fricken by his fellow, a rare example among ft the Mahometans, which I rather attribut to their policie then humanitie, left by their quitting of the place they should be deprined of their profit, they being the onely men that doe maintaine that trading, Here wra. Wrofiling. file they in Breeches of oyled Leather, close to their thighs, their bodies naked and anointed

according to the ancient vie, who rather fall by confent, then by flight or violence. The Inha-50 bitants doe nightly house their Goats and Sheepe for feare of Jaccals (in my opinion no other Jaccals. then Foxes) whereof an infinite number doe lurke in the obscure Vaults, and reedy Marishes adiorning to the Brooke; the Brooke it felfe abounding with Torteffes.

Foure daies we flaved at Acre; in which time we vainely expected the leifure of the Mera chants to have accompanied vs to Nazareth, distant from hence about fifteene miles : who goe by one way and returne by another, for feare of the Arabs. Now a small Village of Galily, fea. ted in a little Vale betweene two hils, where are the remaines of a goodly Temple (once the Chaire of an Arch-bishop) erected ouer the house of the blessed Virgine : whereof there is yet Blessed Virgine one roome to be seene, partly hewne out of the living Rocke; amongst those Christians of great gins house, veneration. But the Romanifes relate, that the roome wherein the was borne, was borne by the

60 Angels (at fuch time as the Countrey was univerfally possessed by the Insidels) over Seas and thores to a Citie of Illeria. But when those people grew niggardly in their Offerings, it was rapt from thence, and fet in the Woods of Picenum; within the polleffions of a Noble Lady, named Lady of Law-Lauretta, frequented by infinite numbers of Pilgrimes. When many miscarrying by the am- retta bushment of Theeues, who lurking in the Woods adjoyning, the bleffed Virgine commanded

icture Christ

got much riches, and sumptious apparell, by the beneuolence of her Votaries, and her charges ble miracles. By which meanes the two Brethren grew alto rich, and withall, diffentions as bout the deuision of their purchases. Whereupon it was once more transported by those winged Porters, and fet in the place where as now it standeth, neere to the Adriaticke Sea, and not farre from Ancona, yet retaining the name of Lawretta. In which is her Image (made as there "Itislike,made fay, by Saint Luke) of the hue (though a lew) of a Blackemore". This Conclave hath a coper by some Abif- of Marble, yet not touched by the same, included within a magnificent Temple, adorned with Armors and Trophies; and befet with Statues and Tables, reprefenting her miraculous cures and protections : And well hath the beene paid for her labour : her Territories large, her Iewels inc. to Stimable; her apparell much more then Princely, both in cost and varietie; her Cossers full : of whom, though the Pope be a yearely borrower, yet are they doubly replenished by the first and latter Spring-tides of denotion. Now at Nazareth, no Christian is suffered to dwell by the Morres that inhabit it. Most of the old Citie seemeth to have stood voon the hill that adjoyneth, which beares the decayes of divers other Churches. Nexareth gave the name of Nexareth sans vnto Christians, called here corruptly Noftranes at this prefent.

fanourable, and the Seas composed; but anon they began to wrangle, and wee to suffer, Spouts of water were seene to fall against the Promontorie of Carmel, the tempest increased with the night; and did what it could to make a night of the day that enfued. But the diffemperature and horror is more then the danger, where Mariners be English, who are the absolutest water hea- 20 pen in their profession, and are by forreiners compared vnto Fishes. About soure of the clocke we came before Sidon, the Ship not able to attaine to the Harborage of the Rocke, which is enuironed by the Sea, and the onely protection of that rode for ships of good burthen : but fome of vs were so sicke, that we desired to be set a shoare in the Skiffe, (a long mile distant) which was performed, but not without perill.

Voon the eight of Aprill we went abourd the Trinitie, and hoifed Sailes for Sidon : the winds

Phonicia is a Province of Syria, interpoling the Sea and Galdy, stretching North and South

from the River of Valance, to the Caftle of the Peregrines , which is on the farre side of Mount Carmel, The chiefe Sea-bordering Cities of Phanicia, are Tripolis, Biblis, Beritus, Sidon, Tyrus, and Prolomais, now called Acre. Tripolis is so called, because it was in onthy built by Tyras, Sides and Aradms. It is seated under Libanus, and commanded by a well-furnished Cittadell, manned with two hundred lanituries. Before it, there is an ill-neighbouring banke of Sand, which groweth daily both in greatnesse and necrenesse; by which they have a Prophesie, that it shall in processe of time be denoured. The Towns and Territories are governed by a Bassa. Two miles off, and West from it, is the heaven, made by a round piece of Land adioyning to the maineby an Ifthmos; the mouth thereof regarding the North, On each fide a Bulwarke kept by an hundred I anizaries, and planted with Ordnance to defend the entrance. Hither of late the Grand tlenandretts, or Signior hath removed the Scale, which was before at Alexandretta, a Towns in the furtheftextents of the Streights, beyond the River Oromes, most contagiously seated by reason of the Marifies and loftic bordering Mountaines (towards the North, being part of Taurm) whichde- 40 prige it of the rarifying Sunne, for no small part of the day; infomuch, that not many forciners escape that there linger any season, who goe not a shoare before the Summe bee high mounted, and returne againe ere too low declining: Notwithstanding, the Merchants doe offer great fummes of Money to have it reftored vnto that place, as more convenient for their Traffick with Aleppo, (the principall Mart of that part of Afa for Silkes, and fundry other Commodities) from thence but three daies iourney, being eight from Tripoly: which the Tarke will not as yet aftent to, for that divers ships have beene taken out of that Rode by Pirats, there being no Forts for protection, nor no fit place to erect them on. A thing vivall it is betweene Tripoly and Aleppo, as betweene Aleppo and Babylon, to make tame Doues the speedy transporters of their Letters; which they wrap about their Legges like leffes, trained thereunto at fuch time as they go haue young ones, by bearing them from them in open Cages. A Fowle of a notable memory. Sides is at this day contracted within narrow limits, and onely shewes the foundations of her greatnesse; lying Eastward of this that standeth, and ouer-shadowed with Oliues. There is "Sepul- nothing left of Antiquitie, but the supposed Sepulcher of the Patriarke Zebulon, included within a little Chappellamongst these ruines, and held (especially by the Iewes) in great veneration. The Towns now being, is not worth our Description; the Walls neither faire nor of force; the Haven decayed, when at best but serving for Gallies. At the end of the Peir, stands a paltry Blocke-house, furnished with surable Artillery. The Mosque, the Bannia, and Cane for Mer-

chants, the onely buildings of note. The Inhabitants are of fundry Nations and Religions, governed by a fuccifion of Princes, 60 Emers of Sides, whom they call Emers : descended, as they say, from the Drufes, the remainder of those French men which were brought into these parts by Godfrey of Bullen, who driven into the Mountaines aboue, and defending themselves by the advantage of the place, could never be veterly destroyed by the Saracens. At length they affoorded them peace, and libertie of Religion; conditio-

nally that they wrote the white Turbant, and paid fuch duties as the naturall fubicet. But in tract of time they fell from the knowledge of Christ : nor throughly embracing the other, are indeede of neither. As for this Emer, he was neuer knowne to pray, nor euer feene in a Mosoue. His name is Faccardine, small of stature, but great in courage and atchieuements: about the age of forty, subtile as a Foxe, and not a little inclining to the Tyrant. He neuer commenceth battell, nor executeth any notable deligne, without the confent of his * mother. To his Towne hee hath nor executeth any notable deligne, without the content of his induction and a lower had lead a kingly Segnioury, what by his fword, and what by his Stratagems. When Morat Baffa blacke Arrs, (now principall Vizier) came first to his government of Damases, he made him his, by his free entertainment and bounty: which hath converted to his no small advantage, of whom he made to vie in his contention with Precke the Emer of Balbee; by his authority flrangled. After that he

pick: a quarrel with lefesh Emer of Tripoly, and disposses him of Barnt, with the territories belonging thereunto, together with Gazer, about twelve miles beyond it; a place by fituation inuincible: This Is for hated of his people for his excessive tyranny, got to bee made Seidar of Damafee (which is General of the Souldiery) and by that power intended a revenge. But in the meane scalon Faccardme lackt Tripoly it selfe, and forced the Emer to flie in a Venecian shippe vnto Cyprus: where againe he imbarqued in a French-man, and landed at the Castle of the Paregrines; and there by Achmes the Arabian (formerly mentioned) entertained, hee repayred to Damafeo, entred on his charge, converting his whole strength vpon the Sidonian, now in the field. and joyned with Al. Baffa his confederate. In a plaine some eight miles short of Damasco. the 20 armies met; the Damascens are foiled, and pursued to the gates of the City: The Conquerors lodge in the luburbs, who are removed by the force of an hundred and fifty thousand Sultanie. This battel was fought about the midft of November in the yere of our Lord 1606. Three months after a Peace is concluded among ft them. But the fommer following, Morat the Great Vezier having overthrowne Als Baffa of Alepse, that valiant rebell (who in three maine battels with

traytor; which they viged with gifts, received and loft : for the old Baffa mindfull of the friendly offices done him by the Emer (corrupted also, as is thought, with great summes of money) not only not molesteth , but declareth him a good subject. Having till of late held good 30 correspondency with the City and Garrison of Damasco, they had made him Sanziacke of Saphet. Now, when according to the gouernment of Turkie, which once in 3 or 2 yeeres doth vie to remove the Governours of Cities and Provinces; and that another was fent by the Danafcene to succeede him, he refused to resigne it; notwinhstanding tendring to the Testador or Treafurer the revenue of that Sanziacky; this was the first occasion of their quarrell. Hee got from the improvident Pealants the Caltle of Elliffe, which he hath ftrongly fortified, and made the receptacle of Treasure : And the Castle of Banies from the Shecke that ought it, by a wile (which standeth on a hill by it selfe, and is indeede by pature inuincible.) For the Emer in peaceable manner, pitching his tents not farre from the wall, was kindely visited and entertained by the Sheek : when delirous to fee it, he conducted him vp, having not about twenty or thirty in 40 his company, but those privately armed; leaving order that the reft should ascend by twoes and

flood his whole forces; having fet vp an order of Sedemen in opposition of the lanizaries) they

fought by manifold complaints to incense him against the Emer of Sidon, as confederate with the

by threes, and fo furprited it without bloud-thed, planting the inhabitants in other places within his Dominions, and firengthning this with a Garrison. Out of the Rock whereon it is mounted atifeth one of the two heads of lorden. His Signiory stretcheth from the River of Canis (which they call Celp) to the foote of mount Carmel. In which the places of principall note, are Gazir, Barnt, Sidon, Tyrus, Acre, Saffet (which was Tyberias) Diar, Camer, Elliffe, Banias, the two heads of lorden, the lake Semochonibis (now called Houle) and fea of Tyberias, with the hot bath adiovning : Nazareth, Cana, and mount Tabor. Saffet is his principall City, in which there abide a number of lewer, who affect the place, in that laceb had his being thereabout before his going downe into Egypt.

50 The Grand Signior doth often threaten his subuersion, which he puts off with a iest, that hee knowes he will not this yeare trouble him, whose displeasure is not so much prouoked by his incroching, as by the reuealed intelligence which he holds with the Florentine; whom he fuffers Florentize. to harbour within his Hauen of Tyrus, (yet excusing it as a placelying waste, and not to be defended)to come ashoare for fresh-water, buyes of him underhand his prizes, and furnisheth him With necessaries. But designes of a higher nature have been treated of betweene them, as is well knowne to certaine Merchants imployed in that buineffe. And I am verily perfwaded, that if the occasion were laid hold of, and freely pursued by the Christians, it would terribly shake, if not veterly confound the Ottoman Empire. It is faid for a certainty that the Turke will turne his whole forces upon him the next Sommer : And therefore more willingly condescends to a

60 Peace with the Persian. But the Emer is not much terrified with the rumor (although he seekes to divert the tempest by continuance of gifts, the favour of his friends, and professed integritie:) His strength. for he not a little prefumeth of inuincible forts, well stored for a long warre; and advantage of the mountaines: having belides forty thousand expert souldiers in continuall pay; part of them Morres, and part of them Christians : and if the worlt should fall out, hath the sea to friend, and

Inflice.

Injuffice.

the Florentine. And in fuels arrexigent intendeth, as is thought, to make for Christendome and there to purchase some Signotie; for the opinion is that he hath a masse of Freature, gathered by wiles and extortions, as well from the Sobiect, as from the Forreiner. Hee hath county of late a number of counterfeit Dutch Dollers, which he thrusteth away in payments, and offers in exchange to the Merchant : fo that no new Dutch Dollers, though neuer fo good i, will how goe current in Siden. He hath the fift part of the increase of all things. The Christians and lower doe pay for their heads two Dollers apiece yearely, and head money he hath for all the Catrell within his Dominions. A seuere Iusticer, re-edifies ruinous, and replants depopulated places too firong for his Neighbours, and able to maintaynea defensive warre with the Turke but that it is to be sufpected that his people would fall from him in regard of his tyrannie. Now as for the the Merchants, (who are for the most part English) they are entertay ned with all courtefie and freedome: they may trauell without danger with their Purfes in their hands, paying for cufform by three in the hundred. Yet these are but Traines to allure them, and drignise his voragities for if a Factor dye, as if the Owner, and hee his Heire, hee will feize on the goods belonging to his Principals, and feeme to doe them a fasour in admitting of a Redempositin vinder the value for that they doe but labour for his Haruest, and respector his Garners. For such, and such-like eatings they generally intend to forfake his Countrey. The Merchandizes appropriate to this place are Cortons, and Silkes, which here are made in the Mulbery Groves, in midifferent quantitie. O. ther Commodities (which are many, and not course) they fetch from Damasco : two dayes journev from hence; interpoled with the Snow-topt Mountaynes of Antilibanu, fo exceeding 20 cold, that a Moore at our being here, returning from thence in the company of an Entlin Mer.

chant, perished by the way : the heate then excessive great in the Valleyes on both fide Damaseus is seated in a Plaine environed with Hils, and watered with the River Christian

descending with agreat murmure from the Mountaynes; but after awhile having entred the plaine becommeth more gentle; feruing the Citie fo abundantly, that few houses are without their Fountaines, and by little Rivolets let into their Orchards : then which the habitable earth affoordeth not more delicate for excellencie of fruits, and their varieties; vet fubied to both the extreames of weather; rich in Trades, and celebrated for excellent Artizans. We were defirous to have feene it, but were adulfed not adventure, because of the lawlesse Spates, there then residing in great numbers. The people about Sidon are greatly given to the nourishing of Cattel, 30 Thaning notwithstanding not many) infomuch as Beefe and Veale are feldome here to bee had but when by chance they doe breake their legges or otherwise miscarrie. They fother themin the Winter (for they cut no graffe) with flow, and the leaves of Trees, whereof many doe flow rith continually.

Our thip returning to Alexandria, and chrying with her two of our fellow Pilgrimess on the fine and twentieth of Aprill we returned also towards Acre by Land in the company of diners English Merchants: the Champaine betweene the Sea and the Mountaynes fruitfull though marrow: and crossed with many little Rivolets. After fine miles riding weecame to a small folitain Mosque not far from the Sea; grected, as they say, over the Widdowes house that entertayned Elias; close by it are the foundations of Sarepea. It was the Seate of a Bishop, and Subject ynto 46 Tyrus. Right against it, and high mounted on the Mountayne, there is a handsome new Towns now called Saranana. Beyond on the left hand of the way are a number of Caues cut out of the Rocke, the Habitations, as I suppose, of men in the Golden Age, and before the foundation of Cities. These are mentioned in the Booke of Iosus, and called Mearab, (which is the Caucs of the Sidonians, and afterward called the Caues of Tyrus, a place then mexpugnable, and maintayned by the Christians, vntill in the yeare 1167, it was by the corrupted Souldiers delivered to the Saracens.

Wee croffed a little Valley denided by the River Eluberus (now called Casmeir) which deriues his originall from Lybanus, and glideth along with a speedie course through a strangely intricate Channell : guiltie of the death of the Emperour Fredericke Barbaroffa, who falling from 50 his Horse as hee purfued the Infidels, and oppressed with the weight of his Armour was drowned therein, and buried at Tyrse. On the other-fide of the Valley stands an ancient Cane, whole Port doth beare the pourtrayture of a Chalice, Fine miles beyond wee came to a Village feated on a little Hill in the midft of a Plaine, the same by all likelihood that was formerly called Palatyrus, or old Tyrus. Forget I must not the custome observed by the Inhabitants hereabout, who retayne the old Worlds Hospitalitie. Be the Passenger Christian or whatsoeuer, they will house him, prepare him extraordinary fare, and looke to his Mule, without taking of one Alper. But the precile Mahometans will neither eate nor drinke with a Christian : onely minister to his wants; and when he hath done, breake the earthen Dishes wherein he hath fed, as defiled. Now through this Towne there paffes a ruinous Aquadult, extending a great way towards the South, 60 and through the Champaine, feeming often to climbe about his beginning, and from hence pro-

ceedeth directly West vnto Tyrm, which standeth about two miles and a halfe below it. Tyrus was faid to be built by Tyrus, the feuenth Sonne of Imphet: re-edified by Phanix, made a Colony of the Sidonians, and after the Metropolis of Phanicia. The Citie was confecrated to Hercules, whose Priest was Sicheus. The Citizens famous for fundry excellencies, and forreine Plantations.

But in the yeare 1289, it was subdued by the Agyptian Mabometans, and from them by the Ottoman Selymus. But this once famous Tyrus, is now no other then an heape of Ruines; yet haue they a reuerent respect, and doe instruct the pensiue beholder with their exemplarie fruities It bath two Harbours, that on the North-tide the faireft, and best throughout all the Lenant. (which the Curfours enter at their pleafure) the other choaked with the decayes of the Citie. The Emer of Sidon hath given it with the adiacent Territories, to his Brother for a possession. comprehending fixe miles of the Continent in length; two in breadth, and in fome places three. 10 A leuell naturally fertill, but now neglected : watered with pleasant Springs; heretofore aboun-

ding with Sugar-canes, and all varietie of fruit Trees. We passed by certaine Cisternes, some mile and better distant from the Citie : which are called Salomons by the Christians of this Countrey. I know not why, whefle thefe were they Salomons CL which he mentions in the Canticles. Square they are and large; replenished with living waters, sternes, in times past conveyed by the Aquaduct into the aforesaid Orchards ; but now vieleffe and ruined , they shed their waters into the Valley below , making it plashie in sundry places : where the Aire doth fuffer with the continual croking of Frogs. Within night, wee came vnto certayne Tents that were pitched in those Marishes, belonging to the Emers Brothers Seruants. who there pastured their Horses. Where by a Moletto the Master of his Horse (whose whiter 20 he had marryed) we were courteoully entertayned. The next morning after two or three houres

riding, we afcended the Mountaynes of Saron, high and woodie; which firetch with intermitted Saron, Vallies, vnto the Sea of Galilie, and here have their white Cliffes washt with the furges: called Cano Bianco by the Mariner: frequented (though for faken by men) with Leopards, Bores, Jaccals, and fuch like (auage Inhabitants. This paffage is both dangerous and difficult neighboured by the precipitating Cl. ffe, and made by the labour of man : yet recompensing the trouble with fragrant Sauours, Bayes, Rolemary, Marioram, Hylope, and the like there growing in abundance. They fay, that of late a Thiefe purfued on all fides, and desperate of his safetie, (for rarely are offences here pardoned) leapt from the top into the Sea, and swum vnto Tyrus, which is seuen miles diffant ; who for the strangenesse of the fact was forginen by the Emer. A little beyond we passed by a ruinous Fort, called Scandarone, of Alexander the builder; heere built to defend Scandarone this paffage : much of the foundation ouer-growne with Oziers and Weeds, being nourished by

a Spring that falleth from thence into the Sea. A Moore not long fince was heere affailed by a A Legoard. a sping life.

Leopard, that sculkt in the aforesaid Thicket; and iumping vpon him, ouerthrew him from his

Asse; but the beast hauing wet his feet, and mist of his hold, retyred as ashamed without further violence: within a day or two after he drew company together to have hunted him, but found him dead of a wound received of a Bore. The higher Mountaynes now comming short of the Sea, doe leave a narrow levell betweene. Vpon the left hand on a high round Hill, wee faw two solitarie Pillars, to which some of vsrid, in hope to haue seene something of Antiquities where we found divers others laid along, with the halfe buried foundation of an ample building. A mile beyond we came to a Fort maintayned by a small Garrison of Moores, to prohibit that passage if need should require, and to secure the Traueller from Theeues;a place heretofore vnpasfable by reason of their out-rages. The Souldiers acquainted with our Merchants, freely enter-

tayned vs. and made vs good cheere according to their manner of Diet: requited with a Prefent of a little Tobacco, by them greedily affected. They also remitted our Caphar, ving to take Tobacco foure Dollers apiece of the stranger Christians. From hence ascending the more eminent part of the Rockie and naked Mountaynes, which heere agains thrust into the Sea, (called in times past, the Tyrian Ladder) by a long and steepe descent we descended into the Valley of Acre. Diners little hils being here and there dispersed, crowned with Ruines (the Couerts for Theenes) and many Villages on the skirts of the bordering Mountaynes. Ere yet night, wereso entred Acre.

Now is our Author shaping his course for England; and we have a further Asian Discoverie to make. Thankfull to him for his paines (which have eased vs of further learch in the many many Holy Land Pilgrimes, which I have in divers Languages) wee will feeke a new Pilgrime to be our Guide, both in Syrus, and in the parts adjoyning. And loe, lerufalem to pleafeth vs, that once againe we will travell thither with Mafter Biddulph, following him from Conflaminople to Aleppo, and thence by Land to Ierufalem, the Nauill and Centre of many our Pilgrimes and Pil-

Titttt

CHAP.

Palatyrus. Rare Hospi-

Tyras.

* The former part of this I erter is omitted : the later alio pruned in fome things tions of those things which you have had in others. Fame of Q.

Rhede.

Сургия.

Garden.

He * dolefull and lamentable beginning of your last Letter made mee exceeding forrowfull; for therein you acquainted me with the death of bleffed Queene E. lizabeth, of late and famous memory; at the hearing whereof, not onely I and our English Nation mourned, but many other Christians who were never to in Christendome, but borne and brought vp in Heathen Countries, wept to heare of her death, and faid, the was the most famous Queene that euer they heard or to present tedious repeti- read of fince the World beganne. But the ending of your Letter comforted vs againe, and miti-

gated our mourning. And (as my dutie was) I appointed one day to bee kept holy, which wee fpent in Prayer, and Preaching, and Thanksgiuing vnto God for the happie aduancement of so Noble, Wife, Learned, and Religious a King ouer vs. And in figne of 10y, we feafted and triumphed in fuch fort, that the very Heathen people were partakers with vs of our iov. After my departure from Constantinople, the first place wee touched at, was the two Castles at the Hellef. pont, about two hundred and twentie miles distant from Constantinople, where the order is for all hips to stay three dayes, to the end that it any slaues be run away from their Masters, or Theeues haue foline away any thing, they may thither be purfued in three dayes, before the fhips paffe: 20 That is, goods And then at three dayes end, the thip must be searched for goods, contra bando, and the Grand Signiors Paffe shewed for all the Paffengers in the ships and then (their vsuall duties payed) they may fee faile and away. Yet if the Mafter of the ship pay extraordinarily, they may more speedily bee dispatched : and many give very liberally (when they have a good winde) rather than they will be stayed many houres. From thence we came to (bios, where we stayed a few dayes. From Chies wee let layle with a very good wind, which brought vs amongst the fiftie three lles in the Arches, called Celades, or Sperades: And then, by a contrary wind, wee were driven to Samos, which is an Ile before Ionia, ouer against Ephosas, where we anchored vntill wee had a good wind, and then fayled by estators, and le, one of the Cyclader, and had a very good wind writil we came to Rhodor, commonly called Rhoder, which is an lie in the Carpathian Scancer 30 Caria, where we were becalmed, it is called the Carpathian Sea of Carpathia, an Ile in the middest betwixt Rhodes and Crees. From Rhodes we came to Cyprus, a famous and fruitfull Ilandin the Sea Carpathium, betweene Cilicia and Spria, which was once conquered by Richard the First. King of England. In this Ile, Venus was greatly honoured. There is still a Citie therein called Paphia, built by Paphin, who dedicated it to Venne. But the chiefest Cities in Cyprus are Famegufta and Nicofia. There is great flore of Cotton-wooll growing in this Iland, and exceeding good Wine made here, and the best Dimetey, with other good Commodities. From hence French Gentleman (who came in our thip from Constantinople,) imbarked himfelfe for lope, with a purpole to goe to Ierusalem. Ioppa is not two dayes fayling from Coprus with a good 40 wind : and lopps is but thirtie miles from lerufalem by Land. Cyprus was vnder the government of the Signiorie of Venice; but now it is inhabited by Greekes, and gouerned by Turkes.

But our ship from Cypras went to Tripoly in Syria, a Citie on the mayne Land of Syria, neere vnto Mount Lybanus, which is a Mountayne of three dayes iourney in length, reaching from Tripoly neers to Damafess. Whileft our fhip flayed in the Roade at Tripoly, I and some others road up to Mount Lybanus, to fee the Cedar Trees there, and lodged the first night at the Bishops house of Eden, who vied vs very kindly. It is but a little Village, and called by the Turkes, An-Eden not the chora, but most vivally by the Christians there dwelling, it is called Eden, not the Garden of Eden, (which place is vnknowne vnto this day) but because it is a pleasant place, resembling in fome fort the Garden of Eden, (as the simple Inhabitants thereof suppose) therefore it is called go Eden. This Bishop was borne in the same Parish, but brought vp at Rome : his name was Francifcus Amyra, by whom I vnderifood, that the Pope of Rome many yeeres fince, fent unto the Christians inhabiting Mount Lybanss, to perswade them to embrace the Romifb Religion , and yeld themselues to the Church of Rome, making large promises vnto them if they would to doe: whereof they deliberated long, but in the end yeelded, vpon condition they might have home. bertie to vie their owne Lyturgie, and Ceremonies, and Lents (for they strictly observe source Lents in the yeere) and other Customes. Euer fince which time, the Pope hath and doth maintayne some of their Children at Rome. Thete Christians which dwell upon Mount Lybanus, are called Maronites, they are very simple and ignorant people, yet civill, kinde, and courteous to Strangers. There are also many Turkes dwelling on the same Mountayne, and an Emeer or great 60 Lord, called Emeer V[epb, who governeth all the reft, both Christians and Turkes, beeing himfelfe a Mahometan, yet one who holdeth the government of Mount Lybanus, in delpight of the Great Turke, and hath done a long time.

From Eden we rode ten miles further vp the Mountayne, to fee certayne Cedar Trees, where Cedars were we law foure and twentie tall Cedar Trees growing together, as bigge as the grearest Oakes, plentifull in with divers rowes of branches one over another, firetching straight out, as though they were but now year kept by Art. Although we read of great store of Cedars which have growne on Mount Lyba-rare. mur, yet now there are very few, for we law none but these foure and twentie, neither heard of any other but in one place more. At these Cedars many Nostranes met vs, and led vs to their Villages. From these Cedars wee returned toward Tripoly, another way, descending by the fide of the Mount towards a Village of the Maronnical Christians , called Hatcheeth, where (as we were descending downe the side of the Mountaine) all the men, women * The We Io and children, came out of their Houles to behold vs : And when we were yet farre off riding to- fleme Chri-

wards them, they gaue a joyfull shout altogether joyntly, to expresse their joy for our comming. Stians are so wards them, they gave a toy the with Chaffing diffus of coles burnt incente in our way, all the rand their Cafforfer, that is, their Church-men (with blue Shafter about their heads) made croffes with their fingers towards vs (as their manner is in figne of welcome) and bliffed vs, giving Hierofelmites God thankes that he had brought Christian Frankes, " of fuch far Countries as they understood Expeditionsby we were of, to come to vifit them,

So foone as we were difmounted from our Horfes, the chiefe Sheh, with all the reft of their ancientest men, came and brought vs to the chiese house of the Parish, called the Towns-house or man. Church-house, and there spread Carpets and Table-clothes on the ground (as their manner is)

20 and made vs all fit downe; and every one that was able, brought Flaskets of fuch good cheere as they had, to welcome vs, which was many Bottles or Ingesters of exceeding good Wine, with Oliues, Sallets, Egges, and such like things, as on the sudden they had readie, and fet them before vs; and both by the cheerefulneffe or their countenances, gettures of their bodies, and prefents of fuch prefent things as they had, expressed their gladnesse for our comming; and would also have prepared Hens, Kids, and other good cheere, but we would not suffer them. This was about eleuen or twelue of the clocke. They would have had vs continue with them all night, and with great importunitie craued it; but we understanding that the Patriarch was but three miles off, at a Village called Sharry, we went to falute him, who hearing of our comming (albeit he were at a Featt amongst all his Neighbours) came to meete vs, and faluted vs, and brought

30 vs all in amongit his Neighbours into a Roome foure square, and round about beset with Carpets and Table-clothes on the ground, and fuch cheere as the feafon of the yeere did affoord, fet thereon and made vs all fit down, and conferred with vs of our Country, and many other matters, fanine matters of Religion, for the poore man had no Latine, and little Learning in any other Langnage; only he had the Sprace, (which was his natural Language) with the Turkif and Arebeen Tongue. After wee had spent one houre with him, we left him with his Neighbours at Sharry, where we found him, for he could not conveniently come from them : for their manner is, when they feaft, to fit from mid-day vntill mid-night, and sometimes all night, neuer altogether rifing from their good cheere, but now and then one by Inter-courses, as occasion requireth, returning againe speedily. Yet hee sent with vs three men to bring vs to his owne house, neere 40 vnto a Village (foure miles diffant from Sharry) called Boloza, but vulgarly Blouza, from whence

we descended downe the fide of another part of the Mountayne, and in the middle of the des. cending of this Mountayne was the Patriarkes house, called Kanobeen Kadischa Mir-iam, in the Syriacke Tongue, but in Latine, Conobium Santta Maria; that 15, The Monasterie of Saint Marie. Ouer against the Patriarkes house is an high steepie Mountayne, from whence the water runneth downe into a deepe Valley betwixt the Patriarkes House and the Hill, and in the fall. the water maketh an exceeding great noyfe, like vnto that Catadapa in Libiopia, where the fall of Nilss maketh such a noy se, that the people are made dease therewith that dwell neere it. This place is some what like vnto it in fall, but not in essent to this water being not so great as Nilas, maketh not the like noyle, neither worketh the like effect. There is also an extraor-50 dinarie Eccho thereabout.

One side of the Patriarkes house is a naturall Rocke, the other of hewen stones and squared Timber : a very firong House, but not very large, nor specious to behold. So are also many of their Houses, in most of their Villages, built against a Rocke, as a Wall wnto one side of it, especially Emeer Uferh his House, the greatest part thereof being hewed out of the linely Rocke, and Thatis, Lord the passage or descending vinto it so narrow and dangerous, that it is counted intincible, which together maketh him to hold out against the Turke, and to domineere in this Mountayne, will be, nill be. It is a most intricate Mountayne with Hils and Valleyes, Woods and Rivers, and fruitfull Pastures, Oliues, Vines, and Fig-trees, Goates, Sheepe, and other Cattle. It is also exceeding

having Snow on the top all the yeere long. 60 At this Monastery of Saint Marie (which is the Patriarkes House) weelodged all night, and both on Saturday at Evening Prayer, and on Sunday at Morning Prayer, we both heard and faw the manner of their Seruice in the Syriacke Tongue, both read and lung very reuerently, with Confessions, Prayers, Thankesgiuings, the Plalmes of David sung, and Chapters both out of the Old Testament, and the new distinctly read. It rejoyced me greatly to see their Order: and I

Set formes of Modelan there ancient Clorifians called Necurino, the Antiquicie of wing forms Prayers in Churches, and also the necessitie thereof, that the people might have something to say Amen vnto, beeing read in their Mother Tongue, that they may learne to pray prinately, by Pravers. those Prayers which they daily heare read publikely. This is too much neglected in England God grant reformation thereof.

But foure Pari-

There is no place in all the World, but foure Parishes or Villages on this Mountaine, where mess in all the they speake the Sprincke Tongue naturally at this day, And these are these sources world which which I named before; at all which places wee had kind entertainment, vie. First, Edon, called speake Spriate by the Turkes, Anchora. Secondly, Hatcheeth. Thirdly, Sharry. Fourthly, Boloza, called vulgarly Blouza. And these people are called Nostranes, quasi Nazaritans, as it were Nazarites. In and none but they. But more generally they are called Maronites, but this name is common to them with others. There are dwelling on one fide of Mount Lybanus, towards the foot of the Mountavne (and

Mount Lybe

Druftes.

in some other places in that Countrey) a kind of Christians, called Drusses, who came into the Country with King Baldwine, and Godfrey of Bullen, when they conquered that Country. (whose Predecessors or Ancestors are thought to have beene Frenchmen) and afterwards when the Saracens recoured it againe, these men (whom they now call Drusses) fled into the Monntaynes to faue themselues; and there dwelling long, in the end their Posteritie forgat all Christianitie, yet wied still Baptisme, & retained still the names of Christians, whom the Turcomen call Raffies, that is, Infidels, because they eate Swines fielh, which is forbidden by the Times Law. 20

Титевления.

These Turcomanny are kind, and simple people, dwelling alwayes in the fields, following their flockes, borne and brought vp, liuing and dying in Tents, and when their flockes and heards remooue, then all their men, women and children remoue with their houshold-fluffe, and houses too, which are but Tents made to remooue, after the manner of the ancient I fraelites : & where they find good pasture, there they pitch their Tents; the men following their flocks of sheepe and heards of Cattle, the women keepe their Tents, and spend their time in spinning, or carding, or knitting, or fome houshold huswiferie, not spending their time in gossipping and gadding abroad from place to place, and from house to house, from Ale-house to Wine-tauerne, as many idle Huswives in England doe. Yet fometimes are these simple soules abused by Ianizarus, who in travelling by them, take from them perforce victuals for themselves and for their horses, and give them 30 nothing but forestripes, if they but murmure against them. But when Christian Merchants passe by them, they will (of their owne accord) kindly present them.

We returned from Mount Lybonus to Tripoly, by such an intricate way, that if we had not had a Guide with vs. wee should have lost our selves. Neere vnto Tripoly there is a Plaine at least one A Mountayne mile in length, full of Oliue-trees and Fig-trees. At the foot of this Mountayne, neere water Tripoly, there is a fandie Mount which hath arisen (in the memorie of some olde men there vet living) where there was none before; and it groweth still bigger and bigger, and there is a Prophefie of it, that in time it shall ouer-whelme the Towne. Tripaly hath the Etimologie (as some fay) of two Greeks words, viz. 2914 and words, because the Citie hath bin thrice built. First, on a Rockie Iland, where it was ouer-whelmed with water. Secondly, on the Marine neere vnto the 40 Sea, where it was often facked by Carfares. And now thirdly, a mile from the Sea, where it is annoved with fand. Our ship being not readie to fet faile at our returne from the Mount, but flaying partly to dispatch their businesse, and partly for a good wind; we trauelled by Land two

dayes journey, to fee Tyrus and Sidon, hard by the Sea. And at Sidon we faw the Tombe of Zabulen, the Sonne of Iacob, held in great estimation and reverent account at this present day.

Tyrus is now called (by the Turkes) Sur, because there beginneth the Land of Syria, which they call Sur; Tyrus is destroyed, and no such Citie now standing, onely the name of the place remayneth, and the place is still knowne where it flood. Eight miles from Tyrus towards the East, is the Citie Sarepta, of the Sidonians, where the Prophet Elias raised the Widdowes Sonne from death to life. We faw also Barnia, where sometimes was a great Trade for Merchants, but 50 from thence they removed it to Damascus, and from Damascus to Tripoly, and of late, from Tripoly to Sidon. Ioppa is not far from these parts, oftentimes Barkes come from the one to the other. At our returne we went abroad, and prefently fet faile for Scanderone, (as it is now called Bottome and by Turkes:) otherwise called Alexandretta by the Christians, which is the very bottome and border of all vtmoft border of all the Streights. The Aire is very corrupt, and infecteth the bodies , and corrupteth the bloud of such as continue there many dayes, partly by reason of the dregs of the Sea, which are driven thither: and partly by reason of two high Mountaynes which keepe away the Sunne from it a great part of the day. And it is very dangerous for strangers to come on shoare, before the Sunne be two houres high, and have dryed vp the vapours of the ground, or to flay on sheare after Sun-setting. The water also neere vnto the Towne are very vnholsome, comming 60 from a Moorish ground; but at the Fountayne, a mile off, there is exceeding good water to drink.

It is far more healthfull to sleepe aboard then on the shoare. Scanderone is in Cilicia, and Cilicia is

the Countrey Caramonia, (as it is now called) in the leffer Asia, and is divided into two parts, viz. Torcher and Campestrie. It hath on the East, the Hill Amanus: on the North, Taurus: on the

West, Pamphilia : on the South, the Cicilian Sea.

Scanderone is the Port for Aleppo, where all our Merchants land their goods, and fend them vp to Aleppo vpon Camels. The Carauans vivally make three dayes journey betwirt Scarderone and Aleppo. Whiles our Camels were preparing, wee tooke boat and went to an ancient Towne by the Sea fide, called at this day Byas, but of old, Tarfis, a Citie in Cilicia, where Saint Terfis in Cilicia Paul was borne, mentioned Aft. 22-3. which Towne is arched about (as many of their Cities are) to keepe away the heat of the Sunne, which Arches they call Bazars. At the Gardens neere Tarfus (and likewife at other Gardens within three miles of Scanderone) wee faw great flore of Silke-wormes, which at the first bee but little graines like vnto Mustard seed : but by the bearing of them in womens bosomes, they doe gather an heat, whereby they come voto Silkeworms to life, and so prone wormes; they keepe them in Tents made of reeds with one loft ouer another full of them, and feed them with leaves of Mulberie trees; these wormes (by naturall inftinct) doe fast often, (as some report) every third day.

Here we stayed certaine dayes to anoyd the infection of Scanderone. The Mountaines which obscure Scanderone, and make it more vnhealthfull, I take to be a part of Taurus, which is a great and famous Mountaine, beginning at the Indian Sea, and rising into the North, passeth by Asia vnto Maotis, bordering vpon many Countries, and is called by many names. Sometimes it is called Caucasin, which is the highest Hill in all Asia, which parteth India from Scribia, and is part of the Hill Tauru. Sometimes it is called Amanu, which Hill perteth Syria from Cilicia.

And cometimes it is called by other names, according vinto the Sea coafts along which it extendeth. About Scanderone there are many rauenous beafts, about the bignesse of a Foxe. commonly called there lackalles, engendred (as they fay) of a Fox and a Wolfe, which in the night make a great crying, and come to the graues, and if there have beene any Corfe buried the day before, (if the graue be not well filled, with many great stones upon it) many of them together, with their feet, doe scrape up the earth, and pull up the corps and eate it.

At our returne from Tharfus, Edward Rofe our Factor marine, provided vs horfes to ride to Edward Rofe. Aleppe, and a lanizarie, called Paranan Bafban with two limmoglans to guard vs, with neceffarie victuals for our felues to spend by the way, for there are no Innes nor Victualing-houses in that Countrey, but trauellers take victuals for themselves, and provender for their Horses with them. Our Merchants and Passengers making haste to be gone from this contagious and pestife-30 rous place Seanderone (which one very well called , The bane of France) left their goods with the Factor marine to be fent after them , because the Malines and Muckremen (as they call the Malim are Carriers) were not yet come downe with their Carriers to carrie them vp: but we met them at riers. the Fountaine of files neere vnto Scanderone. About eight miles from Scanderone, we came to a Muchremen fee Towns called Bylan, where there lieth buried an English Gentleman named Henrie Morifon, who Hories to hire.

who left his Armes in that Country with thefe Verses under written. To thee deere Henry Morison Thy Brother Phines here left alone:

Hath left this fading memorie, For Monuments, and all must die.

From Bylan wee came to the Plaine of Antioch, and went ouer the River Orontes by Boate, felues, where which River parteth Antiochia and Syria. Antioch Plaine is very long and large, at least ten miles in length. We lodged the first night at Amiochia in Pissia, an ancient Towne about fine selfe with the and twentie miles from Seanderone, mentioned Att. 11.26. where the Disciples were first cal- rarities and led Christians. Here we lodged in an house, but on the bare ground, having nothing to sleepe on, varieties of or to couer vs. but what wee brought with vs. viz. a Pillow, and a Quilt at the most, and that many Kingwas lodging for a Lord.

This Antioch hath beene, as a famous, so an exceeding strong Towne, situated by the Sea, Antiochia in and almost compassed (at the least on both sides) with exceeding high and strong Rockes. The Pistala Inhabitants at this day are Greekes, but vinder the government of the Turke, but for matters of Religion, ordered and ruled by their Patriarchs, for the Greekes have foure Patriarchs to this 50 present day, viz. The Patriarch of Antioch, the Patriarch of lerufalem, the Patriarch of Alexandria, the Patriarch of Conftantinople, who ruleth all the reft . Yet as the lewes, fo also the Greeks to this day are without a King, and both they, and their Patriarchs are but flaues to the great Tirke.

And although their Patriarch of Constantinople be counted their chiefe Patriarch : yet I have knowen one Milesins (a learned man indeed) who was first Patriarch of Constantinople, preferred to the place by Mafter Edward Barton, an English Gentleman , and Lord Ambaffadour for Mafter Barton, Queene Elizabeth of famous memorie, who for his wiscdome, good government, policie, and Before him Christian carriage, hath left an immortall fame behind him in those Countries, to this prefent Master Hareday, and lieth buried at an Iland of the Greekes, within twelve miles of Confiantinople, called baffador. 60 Bartons Hand to this day. After whose death, this good man Milefins was by the Greekes dif- Bartons Hand, placed from being Patriarch of Constantinople: (which they durft not doe whiles Master Barton

was lining) becaule, being a man of knowledge, he laboured to reforme the Greekes from many of their superstitious customes. Whereupon (presently after the death of Master Barton) they faid, their Patriarch was an English-man, and no Greeke, and therefore manzulled him, that is,

died there comming downe from Aleppo, in companie with his brother Mafter Phines Merifon, Blan: fous travels are in a large volume by them

difelaced him. Yet bearing fome reverence towards him for his learning, they made him Patri arch of Alexandria. And being there Patriarch, hee excommunicated the Patriarch of Anie chia, because he accepted of reliefe at the Popes hand, and made him come to Alexandria. to humble himfelfe vnto him, and acknowledge his fault before he would fuffer him to execute his

The English Ambaffadors with the Great 2. Mafter Bar-

6 Sir Joh Aires 7. Sir Thomas Rec. now Lieger there for his Mainflie.

Achilles.

Icronic his Sc

little Patties. diff made o Egges and

Master Henry Lelle (a learned, wife, and religious English Gentleman, sometime Student in Oxford and afterwards at the Innes of the Court) fucceeded Mafter Barton in his place, and in many things exceeded him, especially in he religious carriage and unspotted life: and had not the times beene more troublefome in his Regiment, then in the time of his Predeceffor Mafter Barton; he would every way have gone beyond him. Hee first of all reformed his familie, and In Turke haue
beene, 1. Ma. afterwards to ordered himselfe in his whole carriage, that he credited our Countrey; and after Acr Hareborn. ten yeeres gouernement of the English Nation there, hee returned into his Countrey with the teares of many, and with generall good report of all Nations there dwelling or foining ning and is worthily by his excellent Maiestie rewarded with Knighthood for his good fer-Lelle. 4.Sir uice. If Milefine had lived, this good Gentleman would have reftored him to Confiantinople, 25 he placed many other Arch-bishops both at Salonica, (of old called The falonica) and elsewhere.

In the Mountaines betwixt Scanderone and Aleppo, there are dwelling a certaine kind of peo. ple, called at this day Coords, comming of the race of the ancient Parthians, who worthin the Deuill, and alledge for their reason in so doing, that God is a good man, and will doe no man harme, but that the Deuill is bad, and must bee pleased, lest hee hurt them. There was one of an our Carriers a Muccreman and Malim, named Abdel Phat, who was faid to be of that Race and Religion. There is also, although not in the direct way, (yet for fafety and pleasantnesse of the way, it is sometimes taken in the way to Aleppo) an ancient Citie called Achilles, where one Afan Balbam ruleth like a King (paying duties to the Turker) successively from his Predecessors. comming of the house of Sanballar, who hindred the building of the Temple of Jerusalem, who is called to this day, Eben Sumbolac, that is, The sonne of Sanballis : and all his kinred call one another, Ammiocli, that is, Brother Ammonite; for they account themselves of the race of the Ammonites. This Alban Balban is now old, and (for the most part) referreth all matters of gouernement to his Kiniman V feph Bege, that is, Lord lofeph The second night, in our travell from Scanderone, we lodged at a place called, The Gardens, in 20

the open fields, having the ground to our Bed, a flone to our Pillow (as Jacob in his travell had) and the Skie to our courring. And many poore Trauellers in these parts (who come ynprousded) have nothing but the aire for their supper, except they can meet with the fruits of Trees, or Herbs of the fields. Wee met in some places with Villages of Tents, where our lanizarie Parauan Balbam (being partly feared and partly loued amongst them) brought vnto vs from them, Bread and Water often times. Their Bread is made all in Cakes, after the ancient manner, as Abraham entertayned Angels with hearth Cakes. At one place we had also prefented to vs very good (weet Goats milke, and also good sowre milke, turned by Art, which is the most common dish in those hot Countries.

The day following, we came about noone to a Village, called Handan, eight miles on this 40 fide Alepso, over against which Village, on the right hand, on the top of the hill, there is (as the Iemes report) the Sepulchre of the Prophet Ieremie. At this Village Hanadan there are many Pigeon houses, whereof the poore people make much profit, bringing them to Alepso to sell. At this Village we dined with Musinelons, Sambouses, and a Mucclebite. And after dinner, we flept an houre or two (as the custome of the Countrey is) and then rode forwards towards Aleppo, whither we came by fine of the Clocke, and were kindly entertayned at Came Burgol by the worshipfull Richard Colthurst Esquire, Consult for the English Nation there.

Aram Sobab, some thinke to have beene that Citie which is now called Alepso. And of this Aram Sobab I find mention made, 2. Sam. 8. 3, 4, 5. And also in the title of the fixtie Pfalme, where mention is made of the falt Valley which is but halfe a dayes journey from Alepso, which 50 is a very great Plaine, without graffe growing on it, the very fand whereof is good Salt naturally: after raine, being dried againe by the Sunne, they gather it. There is also a little lland or Mountaine in the midit thereof, plaine on the top, which yeeldeth the best Salt. Some leme: there dwelling, doe also fay, that Alego was the Citie Sephermain; but I thinke it to be a better Citie, which some say, was called Apollonius : but I know no reason for it except it were built by one of that name. How focuer, it should feeme this Citie Aleppo hath often changed her name, and that, if it were not Aram Sobab, yet to be built not farre from the place where Aram Sohab flood. But the Timbes (changing the names of all places where they come) call Aleppo at this day, Halep, which fignifieth Milke, because it yeeldeth great flore of Milke.

Aleppo is inhabited by Turkes, Moores, Arabians, lewes, Greekes, Armenians, Chelfalines, No. 60 frames, and people of fundry other Nations. The Turkes come of Magog the sonne of lapheth. The Moores are more ancient dwellers in Aleppo then Turkes, and more forward and zealous in Mahometisme then Turkes: yea all the Church-men among it the Turkes are Moores (whom the Turkes count a base people in regard of themselves, and call them Toti.) Yet their Church-

men they have in great reverence; and not onely theirs, but they reverence Church-men of all Turkes rem Nations, and call them holy Men, Saints, and men of God. I my felfe haue had great experimen of all in other places. In Alopso, as I have walked in the threetes, both Turkes and Moores, and other focus. Nations, would very reuerently salute me after the manner of their Countrey : yea, their very Souldiers, as I have walked in the Fields, with many other of our Nation, without a Innefarie to mard vs. though they have beene many hundreds together, yet have they not offered either me or any of my companie wrong, for my fake , but have faid one to another , Hadab Caffier; that is. This is a Church-man, and therefore take beede what you doe unto him, for he is a good man. to de. At lernfalem many firangers of fundry Nations understanding that I was an English Prea-

cher, came and kiffed my hand, and called me the English Patriarke. Yea, in all my ten yeeres Trauels. I neuer received, neither was offered wrong by any Nation but mine owne Countreymen, and by them chiefly whom it chiefly concerned to procedt me from wrongs : yet haue I found them most forward to offer me wrong, onely for doing my dutie, and following the order of our Church of England : knowing that I had none of the Reverend Fathers of our Church to defend me. So would it be in England, if we had not the Reverend Fathers in God the Lord Bishops of our Church to protect vs. All other Nations, both Heathen and Christian. goe before vs herein, in reverencing and providing for their Church-men. The Turker honour Mad and for their Muftie (which is their chiefe Ruler in Eccletiafticall matters, next under the Grand Signi- lift fandirie

20 or) as an Angelli : The Nostranes, Greekes, Armenians, Chelfalines, and Christians of all other Sheb Baubar. Nations, performe double honour vnto them : onely in England, where there is a more learned Sheb Mahan Minifterie (I speake by experience) then in any Nation in the world, they are least of all regarmet a niked

Lat. Which makes how Adverfaries, the Ponits fav. (or I have beard for a fall of all regarSantone. ded : Which maketh our Aduerfaries, the Papilts, fay, (as I have heard some of them speake in . Cotonicm per my hearing, many thousand miles from England) that it wee our selves were perswaded of the 455. Huros eruth of our Religion, wee would reuerence our Church-men as they doe, and not fcorne them & Sy. mentio-

and contemne them as we doe. They also account fooles, dumbe men, and mad men, Santones, that is, Saints. And what faith that each focuer fuch mad men fay or doe, though they take any thing out of their houle, or ftrike them, other day he and wound them, yet they take it in good part, and fay, that they shall have good bucke after washerh his 30 it. And when fuch mad men die, they Canonize them for Saints, and erect flately Monuments nakedbody at ouer their graues, as wee haue here many examples, especially of one (who being mad) went the Fournaine ouer their graues, as we take the state of the great alwayes naked, whole name was Steb Bonbac, at whole death they bestowed great cost on his Can and prefunerall and erected an house over his grave, where (to this day) there are Lampes burning sendy the wamight and day, and many idle fellowes (whom they call Darnifes) there maintained to looke terristeputed with his Sepulchre, and to receive the offerings of fuch as come to offer to Sheb Bonbac, which holy; drunke they take to themselves, and there is no weeke but many come out of the Citie of Aleppo and ficke solves by other places, to offer. For this Sepulchre is built on an Hill, three miles from Aleppo, betweene the Moore, His the Kings Garden and the Fountaine of Fishes. If any beficke, or in danger, they vow that if Cell is like they recouer or escape, they will offer so much money, or this or that good thing to Sheh Row. Vukansthop, 40 bec. There is allo fach another Ballam Saint in Aleppo yet liuing, whom they call Sheb Ma. where bely-hammer a Sontone, who goeth havies naked, with a Spit on his floulders; and as her goeth thou he thorow the streetes, the Shop-keepers will offer him their Rings; and if hee thrust his Spit tended with thorow their Rings, they take it for a fanour and figne of good successe: The like account they Darmer, which

who them. In regard whereof, the Balbawes themselves oftentimes, and chiefe Captaines will times they who them. In regard whereas, and while fome part of his naked body, and ask him when finging, one wate him with fome prefent, and kills fome part of his naked body, and ask him when finging, one 50 thereby finding to battell or not, and what futcefit they fhall have in warre; And looke women defiwhatfoeuer he faith, they hold it for an Oracle. Not long fince, the Turkes had a victorie against his generall the Christians; and at their returne, they reported that this naked Santone, Sheh Mahammet member of Aleppo, was feene naked in the field, fighting against their enemies, and that by his helpe they (which is alouer-came them, although hee were not neere them by many thouland miles. Whereby you wayniked may see how the Deuill doth delude them still, as hee did their Fore-fathers at the first by Ma-joytull. H. e. homets Machiaueilian deuices.

Their Darnifes also they have in such reputation, that oftentimes great Baframes, when they eyes raw, and Their Darwifes also they nate in uco reputation, that discussions goals any man, when they are in disfauour with the King, and feare either lofte of life, or goods, or both, to a noide danger, with his spit will turne Darmfer, and then they account themselutes pruntedged persons from the rigid of any Darbe (6 then Law. The wintesses of a Darmfer of a Church-man, will passe better tien any mans saw, of the wintesses of the control of Mahamet kindred, and they payofe, for

are knowne from others by their greene Shafhes, which no man elle may weare: for greene they A first flow to share the greene shaftest flow to share the greene account Mahomers colour, and if they see any Christian wearing a garment of that colour, they society pon specificion. will cut it from his backe, and beate him, and aske him how he dare prefume to weare Maho-

make, if hee take any thing from their Shop-boards, or box them or any of their house; yea, begalmes, and they are yet more mad upon this mad man then so, for both men and women will come water where Beaths him, and kiffe his hand, or any other part, sometimes his thighs, and aske him counsell, for fire, some they hold that mad mens foules are in Heauen talking with God, and that hee reuealeth fecrets times he fomemets colour, and whether hee bee Kin to God or not ! This I have knowne put in practife vnom Christians (not acquainted with the customes of the Countrey) since my comming : one for hauing but greene Shooe-strings, had his Shooes taken away. Another wearing greene Breeches ynder his Gowne (being elpied) had his Breeches cut off, and he reuiled and beaten.

The Turker have no Printing amongst them, but all their Law and their Religion is written in the Morifo tongue, that is, the Arabicke tongue. And he is accounted a learned man amone if them that can write and reade. And as for the Latine tongue, hee is a rare man amongst them that can freake it. Some few amongst them have the Italian tongue; and many (especially in and about (onflantinople) speake the vulgar Greeke, that is, Romeica tongue. For in Conflanti. monle there are as many Grecians and Hebrues as Turkes. The poore, amongst the Morres and to Turker at Aleppo, beg oftentimes in the streetes, in the name and for the sake of Systana Fills who was (as they fay) a Whore of Charitie, and would profittute her felfe to any man Bar-Theefe (as they fay in the Arabicke tongue) that is grain freely.

Diet of the

The Diet of the Tarkes is not impruous, for the most common dish is Pilan, which is good fauory meate made of Rice, and small morsels of Mutton boyled therein, and sometimes rotted Buckones, (that is, small bits or morfels of flesh.) Their more costly fare is Samboufes and Ma. clebites. Sambonles are made of Paste, like a great round Pastie, with varietie of Herbes and meates therein, not minced, but in Buckones. A Muclebite is a dish made of Egs and Herbes. Their smaller Sambouses are more common, not so big as a mans hand, like a square Pastie. with minced meate therein. They have also varietie of Helloway, that is, sweet meates compounded in fuch fort, as are not to be feene elsewhere. The poorer fort feede on Herbes and Fruits of the 20 Trees. Their most common drinke is Coffa, which is a blacke kinde of drinke, made of a kind of Pulse like Pease, called Coassa; which being grownd in the Mill, and boiled in water, they drinke it as hot as they can fuffer it; which they finde to agree very well with them against their crudities, and feeding on Herbes and raw meates. Other compounded drinkes they have called Sherbet, made of Water and Sugar, or Hony, with Snow therein to make it coole; for although the Countrey bee hot, yet they keepe Snow all the yeere long to coole their drinke. It is accounted a great curtefie amongst them to give vnto their friends when they come to vise them . 2 Fin. ion or Sculella of Coffa, which is more holesome then toothsome, for it causeth good concoction, and driueth away drowfineffe. Some of them will also drinke Berfb or Opiwhich maketh them forget themselves, and talke idlely of Castles in the Ayre, as though they faw Visions, and heard Reuelations. Their Coffa houses are more common then Ale-house fes in England; but they vie not fo much to fit in the houses , as on Benches on both fides the ftreets, neere vnto a Coffa house, every man with his Fin-ion full; which being smoaking hot, they vie to put it to their Noses and Eares, and then sup it off by leasure, being full of idleand Ale-house talke, whiles they are amongst themselves drinking of it; if there be any newes, it is talked off there. They have also excellent good fountaine waters in most places of that Countrey, which is a common drinke among it them, especially in Summer time, and in their trauels at all times of the yeere.

home, and have found their water lighter then ours by foure ounces in the pound; and the lighter the water is, the more pleasant it is to drinke, and goe h downe more delectably, asif it were Milke rather then water. In great Cities where the Fountaines are either farte off, or not so plentifull, there are certaine poore men, which goe about the streetes from morning to night, with a Beares skinne full of water, fewed vp and fastned about his shoulders like a Tinkers Budget, with a Bole of Braffe in his hand, and offereth water freely to them that paffe by, Salurations except they give them any thing in curtefie, (some feldone times.) The greatest part of them are very curteous people amongst themselves, saluting one another at their meetings, with their hand on their breft (for they neuer vncouer their head) with these words : Salam Alike Sultanum : that is, Peace bee vnto you Sir. Whereunto the other replyeth , Alekem Salam : that is, 50 Peace be to you also. And sometimes thus: Elph Marhabba sanum. Or in Turkish, thus: Hofb Geldanos, Sophi Geldanos : that is, Welcome my deare friend. And in the Morning, Subalkier Sultanum, that is, Good morrow Sir : and in the Euening , thus , Mifalker Sultanum , that is, Good euen Sir. And when friends and acquaintance meete, who have not feene one another many dayes before, they falute one another in Turkish, thus : Neder halen? that is, how doe you! In Arabicke, thus, Ish balac Seedi? that is, How doe you Sir! And Ish babtae? that is, how doth thy Gate? (meaning all within his Gate) and so proceed by particulars, to aske how doth thy Childe, Slaue, Horfe, Cat, Dog, Affe, &c. and every thing in the house, except his Wife; for that is held a very vinkinde queltion, and not fouall amongst them, And if a man come to their houses, and at the doore enquire of the Children for their Father, they will answer him : but if 60 he enquire for the Mother, they will throw stones at him and reuile him.

Some of our Merchants have weighed their water and ours in England, when they have come 40

Their women (as hath beene (hewed before) haue little libertie to come abroade, except it be on the Eeue before their Sabbath (which is Thursday) to weepe at the graues of the dead, or to the Bannies or hot Baths to wash themselues (as the vie of the Countrey is.) And when they come abroad, they are alwayes masked; for it is accounted a shame for a Woman to bee feene bare-taced : yea, they are fo icalous and furpicious ouer them, that Fathers will not fuffer their owne Sonnes, after they come to fourteene yeeres of age, to fee their Mothers.

These bee their common falutations one to another. Their more special falutations to great Personages are these. When a man commeth to salute the great Turke, or Grand Signior himselfa (into whose presence few are admitted except Ambassadours and great Personages) they are led betweene two by the armes, for feare-of a flab, by which meanes one of their Grand Signiors was once killed, and when they returne; they goe backwards; for it is accounted a difference to turne their backe parts to a great Man. In lake manner they falute their Balbames, and other 10 great Men (but not led by the armes) but with their hands on the broft, bowing downer their heads to kiffe the skirt of his Garment, pronouncing thefe words, Ollah towal omrac Seedi, that is, God prolong your dayes Sir. And io long as they talke with a Ballan, they fland with their hands on their breit Maiden-like, and bow low at their departure, and goe backward. They neuer vincouer their heads vinto any man, no not to the King humfelfe; yea, it is a word of reproach

among it them, to fay, when they millike a matter; I bed as lieue thou beweds me the bare beads. They call one another diperity, and not alwayes by their names, but fornetimes by their fathers Calling, Trade, or Degree : as Eben Sultan, that is, The fonne of a King : Eben Torza, The Names. some of a Taylor. And sometimes by their fathers qualities; as Eben Sacran, that is, The some

of a Drunkard. And sometimes by their Marks, as Colac cis, chat is, A man without cares : Comfi 20 Sepber, that is, Sepber with the thin beard. And fometimes by their Stature, as Tow-ill, that is, A tall man : Seire rugiall, that is, A little man, And fometimes by their Offices, as I-afees, that is. A Secretarie: Nibe, that is, A Clerke, &c. And fometimes by their humours, as Chiplar, that is, A naked man : or , One who was of a humour to weare no cloathes but breeches. But their common word of curtefie either to ftrangers, or such whose names they know not, or whom they purpose to reverence, is Chillabee, that is, Gentleman, And there is no man amongst them of any degree, will refuse to answere to any of these names. But if Nature have marked them either with goggle eyes, bunch backs, lame legs, or any other infirmitie or deformitie, as they are knowne by it, fo they are content to bee called by it. But they have gone on pilgrimage to their holy Citie Meths, where their Prophet Mahomes was buried, at their returns are called 30 Hoges, that is, Pilgrims, as Hogis Taber, Hogis Mahamant, Sr. which is counted a word of great grace and credit amongst them. And the wantesteof an Hogie, will bee taken before any other. There are also many Arabians in Aleppo, called vulgarly, Arabs or Bedweens. They have two

Kings at this day, vet. Dandan and Aborifos; the one their lawfull King, the other an Viurper; and some follow the one, and some the other, and are bitter enemies one to another; yet have I feldome heard of any great warres betwint them, for they feldome meet. They never come into any walled Townes or Cities, for feare of treason : but line in Tents, and are here to day and many hundred miles off within few dayes after. They are a base, beggarly, and roguish people. wandering yo and downe, and living by fpoile, which they account no finne, because they are Mahomets countrimen, and hee allowed them libertie to line by theft. Yet their Kings doe no 40 great harme, but take Toll or Tribute of the Caravans as they paffe by , which if they pay willingly, they passe quietly, and are not robbed, but a little exacted vpon. One of their Kings hath often times pitched his Tents neere vito the Citie of Aleppo, and many Merchants being defirous to fee them and their order, tooke occasion to present him with some small Present or other, which he tooke very kindly, and admitted them to his Table, and gaue them a Tent to lodge in all night : on the morrow for breake-fast one of them made him a minsed Pie, and set is before him hot as it came out of the Open: And when he faw it cut vo and opened, and perceiued imoke to come out of it, he fhrunke backe, fearing it had beene some engine to defiroy him, and that the fire would follow after the smoake. But when hee perceived no fire followed the fmoake, he was content to taste of it, and highly commended it, as the daintiest dish that ever he

50 tafted of in his life. These Arabian Kings never keepe any money in their purses, but spend it as fast as they finde it, and when they want, with their Sword they feeke a new purchase. Some are Souldiers. fighting faithfully on any fide that will give them pay. Some of this reguish Arabian Race follow neither of their Kings, but wander from place to place in Caues and Rocks, and line by their Sword, not onely robbing, but killing fuch as they can our -come. Others of them (of a better minde) to journe in Cities of Trade and Traffique, and make themfelues feruants to any Nation that will fet them on worke, and well reward them. Some of them are Horfe-keepers, fome Bastages, that is, Porters, and some vnder-Cookes in Kitchins, and are very serusceable. But for the most part their Lodgings are on some Dunghill or other, or odde corner of the Citie, with 60 some filly Tent ouer their heads. Their wives weare Rings in their Noses, either of silver or

braffe, faitned to the middle griftle of their Nofe, and colour their Lips blue with Indico, and goe alwayes bare-legged and bare-footed, with Plates or Rings of braffe about their ankles, and bracelets of braffe about their hands. They are people which can and doe endure great hardnesse and miferie, both for Diet and Lodging. Their Women are skilfull in mourning and crying by

Art, and therefore they are hired to crie at the Funerals of Turks and Moores oftentimes, tearing their haire, and making all their face blue with Indico. There are here spoken so many fetherall Languages as there are leveral Nations here dwelling or fojourning, every Nation (amonoff themselves) speaking their owne language. And here are of most Nations in the World some. who either come with their Merchandife to fell or buy commodities, or fojourne here as firm gers, or elle haue accesse and recesse to this Citie as Trauellers. But of all Christian languages. the Italian tongue is most vied, and therewithall a man may travell furthest. But of all the O. rientall Tongues, these foure are most spoken in these parts , Arabicke, Turkish, Armenian , and Persian , or Agimesco. Besides all these Mabometans (which I have alreadie named) there are many Jewes in Confrantmople, Aleppo, Damascus, Babylon, Grand Cairo, and enery great Citie and In Place of Merchandise, throughout all the Turkes Dominions, who are knowne by their Hats: fre they were accustomed toweare red Hats without brimmes at my first comming: But lately (the head Vizier being their enemie) they are conftrayned to weare Hats of blue cloth, because red was accounted too flately, and Princehse a colour for them to weare. They are of more vile account in the fight of Turkes then Christians; infomuch that if a low would turne Turke, he must first turne Christian before they will admit him to bee a Tarke. Yea, it is a word of reproach amongh the Tarker, and a visual protestation amongh them, when they are failly accused of any crime, to cleare themselves they vie to protest in this manner, If this bee true , then God grant mmy die a lew. And the lewer in like cases vie to say, if this benor a falfe accupation; then God grant I may die a Christian, praying better for themselves then they beleeve, and as all of them must be 20 that shall bee faued. And the poore Christians sojourning and dwelling in these parts, doe hate them very vncharitably and irreligiously: (in that we reade Rom. 1 t. many Arguments prouing that they shall be concerted againe) for on Good Friday in many places (especially at Zante) they throw flones at them, infomuch that they dare not come out of their houses all that day and yet are scarse in fafetie in their houses, for they wie to throw stones at their windowes and doores, and on the roofe of their houses. On Thuriday about noone, the lewes begin to keepe within doores, and continue there with their doores that vntill Saturday about noone, for if they come fortii before that time they are fire to be stoned, but after noone on Easter Eeue if they come abroad, they may passe as quietly as euer they did. And some ignorant Christians refuse to eate of their meat or bread : their reason is, because the lower refuse to eate or drinke with Christians to this day, or to eate any meate that Christians kill. But it is not vnufuall amonest Christians of better knowledge, to cate of the Imer meat, which ordinarily they buy of them: for the lewer to this day cate not of the hinder part of any beaft, but onely of the former parts, and fell the hinder quarters of their Beefe, Mutton, Mids, Goats, &c. to Christians.

They observe still all their old Ceremonies and Feasts, Sacrifices onely excepted, Yet some of

them have confessed, that their Physicians kill some Christian Patient or other, whom they have under their hands at that time, in stead of a Sacrifice. If a man die without Children, thenext Brother taketh his Wife, and raifeth vp feed vnto his Brother: and they still marrie in their owne Kindred. Many of them are rich Merchants: some of them Drogomen, and some Brokers, Most of them are very craftic and deceitfull people. They have no Beggers among them, but many 40 Theeties, and some who steale for necessitie, because they dare not begge. All matters of controuersie betwixt themselves, are brought before their Caken to decide, who is their chiefe Churchman. Most of the lewes can reade Hebrew, but few of them speake it, except it be in two places in Turkie, and that is at Salonica, formerly called Theffalonica, a Citie in Macedonia, by the Gulfe Thermaicse; and at Safetta in the Holy Land, neere vnto the Sea of Galile: Which two places

are as it were Vniuerfities, or Schooles of learning amongst them.

Amongst all the forts of Christians, there is amongst the Maronites an ancient companie of Christians, called vulgarly Nostranes, quali Nazaritans, of the Sect of the Nazarites, more civill and harmeleffe people then any of the reft. Their Countrey is Mount Lybanus (as I wrote vnto you heretofore) but many of them dwell at Aleppo, whereof some of them are Cassis, that is, 50 Church-men; some of them are Cookes, and servants vnto English Merchants and others; some Artificers: All of them live somewhat poorely, but they are more honest and true in their conuerfation then any of the rest, especially at their first comming from Mount Lybanus to dwell in Aleppo; and many, during their continuance there, if they bee not corrupted by other wicked Nations there dwelling : in whom I observed more by experience then I heard of them, or noted in them when I was among ft them at Mount Lybanus. And especially for the manner of their marriage, and how they honour the fame.

They buy their wives of their Fathers (as others there dwelling, doe) but never fee them vntill they come to be married, nor then neither vntill the marriage be folemnized betwixt them: for there is a partition in the place where they meet to be married, and the Man and his Friends 60 ftand on the one fide, and the yong Woman and her Friends on the other fide, where they may heare, but not see one another, vntill the Cassies bid the yong Man put his hand thorow an hole in the wall, and take his Wife by the hand. And whiles they have hand in hand, the Mother of the Maid commeth with some sharpe instrument made for the purpose, and all to be pricketh the

new married mans hand, and maketh it bleed. And if hee let her hand goe when hee feeleth his hand fmart, they hold it for a ligne that hee will not loue her: But it hee hold fast (notwithhand mare, they have retained by the hand untill thee crie, rather then hee will once fhrinke, then he is counted a louing man, and her friends are glad that they have bestowed her on him. And how they honour Marriage aboue others, I oblerued by the naming of their first man-child. For as amongst yes the women, when they are married, lose their Surnames, and are furnamed by the husbands furname, and children likewife; fo amongst them the father lofeth his name, and is called by the name of his eldeft fonne, in this manner. I have knowne a No. frane, whole name was (Mon-se, that is, Moses, who having a man-child, named him Useph, To that is, lofeph, and then was the father no more called Monfe, Mofes, but Abon Ufeph, that is, The father of Ioseph. Another whose name was Useph, named his eldest sonne Pher-iolla, after

which he was no more called U/oph, but Abon Pher-iolls, The father of Pher-iolls. Another man called Interest, that is , Gabriel, his some at the time of Baptisme being named Monfe, hee alwaies after was called Abon Mone, that is, The father of Mofes: fuch an honour doe they ac-

count it to be the father of a man-child.

Their Nostranes reverence their Cassies greatly, and kisse their hand wheresoever they meet Lyturgic read. them : yet are most of them altogether vulcarned, having onely the knowledge of the Swine Tongue, wherein their Lyturgie is read. They keepe their Feat's at the fame time as wee doe. viz. Christmasse, Easter, and Whitsuntide: and at Christmasse on the Twelfth day in the mor-20 ning, called Epiphanie, their young men haue a custome (betimes in the morning) to leape naked into the water : I could never heare any reason of their so doing, but Uzansa de prease, The custome of their Countrey. And though it bee then very cold, yet they perswade themselnes, and others, that then it is hotter then at any other time, and that the water then hath an extraordinarie vertue to wash away their finnes. On Munday in Easter weeke and Whitsun weeke, thele Nostranes goe with their Cassifes to the graves of the dead, and there kneele downe . and burne incente, and pray at every grave.

The Chelfalines are Christians, dwelling upon the borders of Persia, betweene Mesopotamia and Perlia, at a place called Chelfa. These bring Silke to Aleppo to fell. They are plaine dealing people: If a man pay them money, and (by ouer-reckoning himfelfe) give them more then 20 their due, though there be but one piece over, to foone as they perceive it, though it bee many dayes after, they will bring it backe againe, and restore it, and thinke they shall never returns dafely into their Countrey, if they should not make restitution thereos. These people persuade themselves and report vinto others, that they dwell in that place which was called Eden, where-

into Adam was put to keepe it and dreffe it. The Greekes in Aleppo are very poore, for they are there (for the most part) but Brokers or Eden. Baffages, that is, Porters; and many of their women as light as water, maintayning their hufbands, themselves, and their families, by prostituting their bodies to others. And their owne husbands are oftentimes their Pandars or procurers to bring them Customers. But the Greekes that line at Configuratinople, are many of them great Merchants, and very rich; but exceeding 40 proud, and sumptuous in apparell, euen the basest of them, and especially their women, who

though they be but Coblers wines, or poore Artificers wines, yet they goe in Gownes of Sattin, Coblers wines and Taffata, yea, of Cloth of filter and gold, adorned with Precious ftones, and many Gemmes, in Sattin and lewels about their neckes and hands. They care not how they pinch their bellies, so that Gownes. they may have fine apparell on their backes. And at the time of their Marriage, the women condition with their husbands to find them decent apparell, and convenient diet, and bring them before their Patriarch of Confiaminople to confirme it; which, if it be not performed ac-cordingly, if they complaine to their Patriarch, they are discoved prefently, and thee taketh an other man to her husband, better able to maintayne her: and hee may marrie another woman which for bre-

And both at Confiaminople, Aleppo, and other places of Turkey, where there is trafficking, and ted-50 trading of Merchants, it is no rare matter for Popilh Christians of fundry other Countries, to Cut Cabine, (as they call it) that is, to take any woman of that Countrey where they following. (Turkib women onely excepted, for it is death for a Christian to meddle with them) and when they have bought them, and enrolled them in the Cadies Booke, to vie them as wives follong as they foiourne in that Countrey, and maintayne them gallantly, to the confaming of their wealth, diminishing of their health, and endangering of their owne fooles, And when they depart out of that Countrey, they shake off these their sweet-hearts, and leave them to shift for themselves and their children. And this they account no finne, or at leastwife such a finne as may

be washed away, with a little holy water. And these are the vertues which many Christians 60 learne by foiourning long in Heathen Countries. Euery Balban who hath gouernement over others in a Citie or Countrey, tyrannifeth over those which are under their regiment; and sometimes strangleth, sometimes beheadeth, and fometimes puts vnto terrible tortures those who offend. Yea, oftentimes without offence; onely because they are rich and have faire houses, the Balban will lay to their charge, such things as

Imes fronted

on good Fri-

he himselfe knoweth to be vntrue, and put them to death that hee may seize vpon his goods There was a Sheriffe or a Green-head in Aleppo, whom they account Mahomets kindred, who offending the Balham, and brauing him in termes, as though he durft not punish him, hee caufed one of his Officers to goe with him home, and when he came before his owne doore, openly in the street to breake both his legs and armes, and therelet him lie, and no man durst find fault, or giue him food; or Physician, or Chirurgion come to him; or wife or servants take him into house, but there he lay all day, and should so have continued vntill hee had died for hunger, or Doss earen him, had not his friends given money to the Balham to have his throatcut, to rid him out of his paine. And this is a common punishment amongst them. And sometimes for small offences, they will lay a man downe on his backe, and hoyfe vp his feet, and with a cudgell give to them three hundred or foure hundred blowes on the foles of their feet, whereby many are lamed And some they set on a sturpe stake naked, which commeth from his fundament up to his mouth, if he find not fauour to have his throat cut fooner. And fome are ganched in this manner : they are drawne vp by a rope faitned about their armes, to the top of a Gazouke or Gibber full of hookes, and let downwards againe, and on what part soeuer any hooke taketh hold, by that they hang, vntill they die for hunger. And some in like fort aredrawne ouer a Gibbet and they heing compaffed about the naked warte with a small cord, the cord is drawne by two men to make them draw up their breath, and still pulled straighter and straighter, vntill they be fo parrow in the walte, that they may eafily be cut off by the middle at one blow, and then the wpper part is let downe on a hot grid-iron, and there feared vp, to keepe them in fenfe and fee- 20 ling of paine fo long as is possible, and the neather part is throwne to the Dogs, &c.

They, whom they call Frances or Free-men, live in greater fecuritie amongst them then their owne People, by reason that they are governed by Consuls, of their owne Nation, and those Confuls also are backed by Ambastadours, for the same Nations which are alwaies Liegers at Conftantinople: and when their Confuls abroad are offered wrong, they write vnto the Ambassadours, how, and by whom they are wronged: and then the Ambas. fadour procureth from the Great Time, commandements to the Balow of Alepse to re-drefle their wrongs, and punish such as offend them. Otherwise there were no dwelling for Frances amongst them, but they should be vied like slaves by every slave. And notwithstan. ding, their Confuls and Amhaifadours to, yet they are oftentimes abused by Timbes, both in 10 words and deeds. In words they remie them, as the Lyptions did the Ifractices, and call them Gowrs, that is, Infidels; and Copec, that is, Dog; and Corzier, that is, Hog; and by many other odious and reproachfull names. And though they firike them, yet dare they not firike againeleft they lofe their hand, or be worle vied. They also oftentimes make Auenias of them, that is, falle accusations, and suborne falle witnesses to confirme it to be true; and no Christians word will be taken against a Turke, for they account vs Infidels, and call themselves Musselmen, that is, True beleeuers.

This miserie abroad will make vs loue our owne Countrie the better when we come thither. And that is the best lesson which I have learned in my travels, Mundi contemptum, that is, The contempt of the world. And Saint Pauls leffon, Phil. 4.1 Is In whatfoever flate I am, there so with to be content. Oh how happie are you in England, if you knew your owne happinefie! But as the prodigall fonne, vntill he was pinched with penurie abroad, never considered the plentie of his fathers house: So many in England know not their owne felicitie, because they doe not know the miseries of others. But if they were here in this Heathen Countrie, they would know what it is to liue in a Christian Common-wealth, vnder the government of a godly King, who ruleth by Law and not by luit; where there is plentie and peace, and preaching of the Goipel, and many other godly bleffings, which others want. And Go D long continue his mercies to our noble King lames, and his whole Realmes, and give vs grace as farre to excell other Nations in thankfulnesse as we doe in happinesse. And thus for present I commend you to the most gracious protection of the Almightie IE H O V A H, befeeching him, (if it be his will) to fend vs 50 a joyfull meeting, both in this world, and in the world to come. Amen.

Part of another Letter of Master WILLIAM BIDDVLPH, from Jerusalem.

Orshipfull and my singular good friend, I being now (by the prouidence of Go D) at Ierusalem, Captus amore sui, raptus bonore loci, for the loue I beare to you, and delight I conceiue in this famous place, where our fweet Saujour Christ vouchfated once his blessed bodily prefence; I could not but remember you with fome falutation from hence, having fuch choice 60 of Mellengers (by reason of the great concourse of people vnto this place at this present, from fundry places of Christendome) to transport my Letters vnto you: Nothing doubting but that as my former Letters (which I have heretofore written vnto you both from Aleppo, and other places) concerning my former voyages, and fuch things as (by diligent observation) I noted in

my trauels, were acceptable vnto you; so that this shall be much more acceptable, both in segard of the Place from whence it came, as also of the matter subject herein contayned; beeing my Voyage from Aleppo in Syria Comagena, to Ierusalem, vndertaken this prefent veere 1600. not moued as Pilgrims with any superstitious deuotion to see Relikes, or worship such places as they account holy but as Trauellers and Merchants, occasioned by Dearth and Sicknes, Pettilence and Famine in the Citie where we followrne : which two are fuch fellow-like companions, that the Grecions diffinguish them but by one Letter, calling the Peftilence asses, and the Famine Audie: By reason whereof all Trafficke was hindred, and those Merchants whom they call Frankes, or Fremen, either removed to other places; or fuch as flayed in the Citie, caused their gates to bee

to flut yp, and came not abroad vntill Selentred into Lee, which is vivally the twelth or thir- The Plagu teenth day of July, at which time the Plague still ceafeth in this place, though it bee neuer fo ceafeth by ingreat, and all that are then ficke, amend; and such as then come abroad, need not feare any dan. Heavens ger. The Turkes, Moores, Arabians, and other Mahometans, neuer remouse for feare of any ficknesse, nor refuse any mans company infected therewith; for they say, every mans fortune is written in his fore-head, and that they shall not dye before their time; not knowing what it is to tempt God, and to refuse ordinary meanes. But in this interim, from the beginning of this ficknesse (which was in March) vntill the expected and vndoubted end, when the Sunne entreth into Lee, we whose names are subscribed (for causes aboue mentioned) tooke our Vovage from Aleppo towards Ierusalem, having Letters of commendation, from Clarissimo Imo the Tenice Conful, and fundry others of the chiefe Italian Merchants, to their Padres at I or wildem.

for our kind viage there, with libertie of confcience.

Anno Dom. 1600. The ninth of March, after Dinner we fet forth, garded with Imizaries. and accompanied with fundry English, Italian, and French Merchants, who in kindnesse rode with vs feuen or eight miles, to bring vs on the way, and then returned to Aleppo. But most of our Enolifb Merchants brought vs to Cane Toman, ten miles from Aleppo, where we made merry Cane Toman with fuch good cheere as we brought with vs. For there was nothing to be had for money but Groates Milke, whereof we had as much as we would. Here we purpoied to have flept all night, but having no other Beds but the hard ground, with Lacobs Pillow (a good hard frone) under our heads, vnaccustomed to such Downe Beds, we could not sleepe, but spent the time in honest 30 mirth vntill it was part mid-night, and then our friends tooke their leane of vs, and returned towards Alepse, and we proceeded in our sourney towards Iers (alem. The night beeing darke. and the way dangerous and theeuifh, our lowizarie, Byram Balhow, willed vs euery one to take a match lighted in our hands, and to whirle it about, that the fire might be seene the further, to terrife the Theenes, left they should surprize vs on the sudden. And when wee came to suspicious places (as Caues, Rockes, Barnes, or odde Cottages in the way) our Ianizarie vied to ride before; and as Fowlers beate upon Bushes for Birds, so bee (with his Launce) would strike and beate vpon fuch places, left wild Arabs (which lye lurking in fuch places) should steale vpon vs on the fudden. When the day appeared, our way was pleafant and comfortable vnto vs. vntill we came to a Village called Saracoope, whither we came about noone, the tenth of March, And Saracopes
40 because our Seifenars or Sumptor Horses (which carryed prouision for Man and Horse, as the cuflome of the Countrey is) were tyred, and we our felues also (for want of fleepe the night paft) wearied and hungry, wee were conftrayned to lodge there all night on the hard ground by our

Horse heeles, in an old Cane diffant from Cane Toman eight and twentie miles. The eleventh of March, betimes in the morning wee departed from Saracoope, and came Interesting the action of the William and the months were separation on Sorgeope; and came bettines in the after-anone to a fine Village called Marrab, where there is a very faire new Marab, Cane builded by Amab (commonly called Marab) (billabee, fometimes Definator, that is, Treaturer of Mejop, and afterwards of Damagoue, who for the refuge of Trauellers, and their protection against Thoeues; built a stately strong Cane like vnto Manet of their Leaden Hall in London, or rather the Exchange in London, where there are faure vpper Roomes Canes, for great men in their Trauels, and the neather Roomes are for ordinary Trauellers and their To Horfes, but in hot weather the best make choise to sleepe on the ground in low Roomes, rather

then in their Chambers. The Founder hereofalfo ordayned, that all Trauellers that way should haue their entertaynment there of his cost. Hee alloweth them Bread, Pillaw, and Mutton, which our Innivaries accepted off; but we forming reliefe from the Turkes without money fent vnto the Village, where (besides our owne pronision which wee brought with vs) wee had also other good things for money. Marrab is distant from Saracoope, foure and twentie miles.

The twelith of March was a very raynie day, yet we trauelled all the forenoone, vntill wee Lacring. came to a Village, called Laemine, which affarre off made thew of a very faire Village; but when we came thither, wee found it so ruinous, that there was not one house able to throude vs from The the extremitie of the showre: the Isthabitants thereof having forfaken it, and fled into the Mountaynes to dwell, for feare of the Januaries of Damafeus, who travelling that way vied to take from them, not onely victuals for themselves, & Prouender for their Horses without mony, but whatfoeuer things elfe they found in their houses, Onely there was a little Church or Chap- Wretel el pel in good preparation, wherinto (for a little mony) we obtay ned leave to enter, our felues with flauence. our horfes & carriage, & there we brought out our victuals, & refreshed our fekies and baired our Vuuuuu

horses, and rested vntill it left rayning. After the showre, while our Horses were preparing, we Miferable Po- walked into the fields neere vnto the Church, & faw many poore people gathering Mallows and three leafed graffe, and asked them what they did with it and they answered, that it was all their food; and that they boyled it, and did eate it then wee tooke pitie on them, and gauethem bread, which they received very joyfully, and bleffed God that there was bread in the World. and faid, they had not seene any bread the space of many moneths. The showre ceasing, wee and iaid, they had not recheatly becaute I face money (I should have faid Lacmin, but might fav. lacke men and money too) and rode forward vntill wee came vntoa Village or Towne called Trabs, where (because it was neere night) we defired to lodge, but could not bee admitted into any house for any money, whereupon our chiefe Ianizarie, Byram Basham went into an house, to and offered to pull man, woman, and child out of the house, that weemight bring in our Horses, and lodge there our felues. But when we faw what pittiful lamentation they made, we intreated out I with arie either to pelwade them for money, or to let them alone. And vader flanding that there was a faire Citie in our way, ten miles off, wee fine, with our laria are, beeing well horsed, rode thither, and left our carriage with the rest of our company at Tyaba, to come to vs betimes in the morning. This Citie is now commonly called Aman, but of olde it was called Hamath, 2. Kmes 17.

Here we lodged in a faire Cane, but on the cold ground, and vpon the hard flones, and thought

our felues well prouided for, that wee had an house ouer our heads to keepe vs dry. Hamaib is

Hamath, upleafant way, & a short dayes journey, to a fine Towne called vulgarly Hemsebut for-

merly Hus, diftant from Hamath, but twentie miles. This is faid to have beene the City where

lob dwelt, and is to this day called by the Christians inhabiting in those borders, lob; Citie. And

there is a fruitfull Valley neere vnto it, called the Valley of Hus, and a Castle not farreoff. in

the way to Tripoly, called Has Castle to this day. But I make some doubt whether Isb weree-

uer at place, for lob is faid to have dwelt amongst the Edomites, or wicked Idamans; and Ida-

from Marah, about five and thirtie miles. On the fourteenth of March wee travelled from 20

Hemfe.

mes bordered voon Arabia Falix, and not neere Syria, where this Citie called Hus flandeth. On the fifteenth day of March, we went from Has towards Damajens, which is foure dayes Journey off, and all the way (vntill we came within ten miles of Dassafess) is a Defart, vn-inhabited, and a Theeuish way ; onely there are erected in the way certayne Canes to lodge in, \$0 But if they bring not promition with them both for man and horfe, and fome Quik or Pillow to fleepe on, the hard flowes must be their Bed, and the Aire their Suppers for some of their Cans are nothing but stone wals to keepe out Thereues. In Cities they have very flately Canes, but not for Travellers, but for themselves to dwell in ; for every rich man calleth his house a Case. But the Canes that fland in high wayes, are in Charitie erected by great men, for the protestion of Trauellers; but most of them are very badly kept, and are worse than Stables. Our first dayes Journey from Has was a very vncomfortable and dangerous Delact : wee faw no Hosfe all the way vntil we came wnto a Village called Haffin, where we lodged in an old Calife diffant from Has two and twentie miles.

Haliia.

The fixteenth of March, from Haffia, we rode to an ancient Christian Towne called Cha- to rab. where our prouition being fpent, we made supply thereof, and bought Bread and Wine of the Christians there dwelling. It is inhabited by Greeke and Torket, but governed by Torket only, There is but one Church in the Towne, which is dedicated to Saint Niebolie, by the Christians who first builded it. But both Christians and Turkes pray therein : the Christians on the one fide or He of the Church, and the Tarker on the other. But the Christians are over-ruled by the Tarker, and constrained to find them Oyle to their Lampes in the Church For the Tarker not only burne Lampes in their Churches every night, but during the whole time of their Lent they befor the battlements of their Steeples round about with Lampes. But when their Lent is ended, they burne Lampes in their Steeples onely once a week, and that is on Thursday at night, which is the Eene before their Sabbath. After wee had refreshed our selues heere, halfe the day 10 being not yet spent, we roade from hence to a poore Village called Nebecke, or (as they pronounce it Nebbeb, where we lodged in an old Cane, dittant from Haffin fenen and twenter miles. And understanding at this place, that the way that wee were to passe on the morrow. was full of Arabs, and that two dayes before, many men were found in the way killed by them, we feared to goe any further. Yet metring with company contrarie to expectation, March the feuenteenth we went forwards, and law no house nor company all the day long besides our felues, vntill we came to a Village called forifer, where wee lodged in a very flately new Cane, built by Synan Balbaw; and not altogether finished. This Canedoth farre exceed that at Marab, (before mentioned) for hereunto is adioyned a fairenew Church and a Bazar, that is a Market place where Traullers may buy many good things. Here is all formet for Traullers and 6 Protender for their Houses to be had of the Foundwestors, and in the middle of this Cane, there is a faire large Fountayne of water, of hewed stones four square owherein there is exceeding good water for Travellers to danke, and Chambers for their Lodging : but if they will have any Beds, they must bring them with them, or sleepe on the hard ground, as most men that travel that way are wont to doc-النشال

The eighteenth of March, from Carifey, wee had not much more then twentie miles to Da- Dangerous mascus. The first ten miles was a Defart, and dangerous way, and we hardly escaped dangers or way. an Araban Horseman seeing vs come; stood as a Spie in our way, to view our strength, and marked enery one of vs very narrowly, and what weapons we had; and then rode vp an high Mountayne, as fast as if it had beene plaine ground, to acquaint his companions what a prey hee had found for them. Whereupon our laniarie cast aside his vpper garment, being a Gamberlooke. and had ye all make readie our Wespons, and hee himfelfe rode before vs with his Launce on his shoulders, expecting their comming upon us suddenly: but they having espeed (from the top of the Mountayne) Settie lanizaries of Damascan at the least, with their limmoglans comming after To vs. came not, and so by the prouidence of God wee escaped their hands. The other part of our way to Damafeus, was a pleasant Plaine of tenne miles in length, having many fruitfull Villages, fine Rivers, and pleafant Gardens thereon. At our entrance into this Plaine or Valley, riding downe an Hill, we beheld the prospect of Damafeus ten miles off, whither we came about two of the clocke in the afternoone, and tooke vp our Lodging in the middle of the Citie, at a Cane called in Morisco, Cane Nebbe, that is, The Cane of the Prophet; but by the Turkes; Cane Haramin, where we hired three Chambers for our money, and our Seruants bought our meare, and dressed it themselves, as they did also all the rest of the way where wee could get any thing. To this end we tooke a Cooke with vs, and other Servants from Aleppo, to dreffe our meate, and to looke to our Horses. Heere we met with Frenchmen, and other Christians, staying for company

At Damascus many Iewish Merchants, and Greekes, and others, knew some of vs, and came to falute vs, and present vs with fuch good things as they had, both Wine, and Bread, and Kiddes. and Fruit, &c. and lent vs very good Beds with sheets and other furniture, which refreshed well our wearied bodies.

The nineteenth and twentieth of March, wee stayed at Damaseus to rest our selves, and fee the Citie.

Damaleus is a most ancient Citie, and as Esay spake of it in his time, The bead of Aram is Da- Damaseus. majons, Ifa.7.8. so Damajons is the chiefest Citie of Syria to this day. The situation thereof is most pleasant, being built on a plaine ground, strongly walled about, and a strong Castle there-

30 in, with many fine Rivers running on enery fide of it, elpecially Abanab, and Pharper, mention ned, 2. Kings 5. which now are divided into many heads. The Twkes fay, that their Prophet The pleasant Mahomet was once at Damascon, and that when he saw the pleasant situation of it, and beheld signation the flately prospect of it, excelling all others that ever hee faw before; refused to enter into the Citie, left the pleasantnesse thereof should raush him, and moue him there to settle an Earthly Paradife, and hinder his defire of the heavenly Paradife. It hath also many pleasant Orchards. and Gardens round about the Citie, and some wayes for the space of a mile, and more about the Citie there are many Orchards, and great varietie of fruits : some called Adams Apples, and Adams Figs, and fundrie other ftrange Fruits. Damafew is called by the Turkes, Sham, and they call it, the Garden of Turkie, because there is no place in all the Turkes Dominions, especially 40 in Syria, that yeeldeth fuch abundance of Fruit. Here we stayed two dayes and three nights to

rest our selues, and see the Citie. And having a Greeke to our Guide, he shewed vs first a stately Store of smits. Mushia, or Turkilh Church erected in the place where the Temple of Rymmon stood, mentioned. 2. Kings 5. And two other memorable matters, mentioned, Alts 9.25.viz. the place where the Disciples let downe Paul in the night through the wall in a Basket, whereof the Christians there dwelling keepe an exact memoriall; taking vpon them to demonstrate the very place of the wall; which we not beleeuing, they confirmed it with this reason, that Damascus was * nes * Damascus was uer ouercome; and that there have beene Christians dwelling there ever fince the time of Paul, wonne from and therefore might keepe a memoriall of the very place: But to let the place passe, the thing it the Christians felfe we know to be true. He shewed vs also the house of Ananias , which is vnder the ground by the Saraters

so whereinto we were led, downe a paire of staires from the street, as it were into a Celler; and the doore being villocked, we entred with Candels into the place, where we faw two darke Chambers, where a man cannot fee to reade in the day time without Candels, here they fay, he lived in secret for feare of the lewes. Many Christians comming thither to see that place, with a coale write their names on the wall, and there are fo many names there alreadie, that there is fearce roome for any other to fet his name. Some of them report Damafeus to bee built in the place where Kain killed his Brother Abel. And some say it is neere it, and offered to bring visto the place; but we refused.

They take vion them also at Damascus, to demonstrate the place where Saint George was hu- Saint George ried, to they doe likewife at Aleppo, but I thinke the one to bee as true as the other. There is a 60 fine Towne neere vnto Damafeus, about two or three miles distant on the fide of an hill, called Salbia, from whence a man may behold the prospect of the Citie of Damaseus most pleasantly, Salbia,

with the Gardens and pleafant places about it. At Damasem we met many thousand Turkes , going on Pilgrimage towards Mecha in Ara- Pilgrimage to bia, to vitt Mahomets Sepulchre, as they vivally doe every yeere about their Byram time; for Meiba, V auauu 2

Catifey. Excellent

Nebecke.

they hold, that whofoever once in his life time shall not goe on Pilgrimage to Mecha, to see the Sepulchre of their Prophet, shall neuer enter into Paradife. And thesetore some of them see thicher often in their life time, partly for denotion, and partly to buy Merchandile. For there are brought thither at that time of the yeere, great flore of Commadities from India, Perfia. and other places; and none may buy or fell there but Mahometans. And it is forbidden to all Christians vpon paine of death, to come neere Mecha within fine miles : partly, lest they should marre their Markets; but chiefly, left they thould fee their folly or rather madneffe in worfhipping an Iron Sepulchre; after the fight whereof, many of their old men (which thinke neuer to come thither againe) vie to pull out both their eyes, after they have feene fo holy a fight. And who focuter (fav they) dyeth in his Pilgrimage thither, or returning from thence, is tire to got In to Heaven presently. And they that have beene there but once, are alwaiss after called Hoges, that is, Pilgrims : and are called by that name in this manner. If his name before were Mahomet, he is at his returne called Hogie Mahomet. If before Mustapha, hee is alwaies after called Hogie Mustapha, Go. And they that have beene often at Mecha and returne againe, are called Great Hogies. And enery yeere when the Carauan of Pilgrims returne from Mache, hee that hath beene there oftnell, is called, The great Hogie: and is greatly honored of them all, for hee rideth before them all in more stately apparell then they, with Flowers and Garlands about his Horse, and when they come neere any great Citie, the chiefest men in the Citie ride forth to meet him, and bring him into the Citie with great folemnitie: They falfly affirme, that this An Angell-de- their Temple at Mecha in Arabia, was built by Abraham, and they prepare themselves with 20

greater care to goe to worthip there , then many Christians doe when they come to the Lords Supper, for they disburden their hearts of all hatred and malice, and reconcile themselues one to another, &c. Otherwise they hold that all their labour is lost, and that they shall bee neuer awhit the better for their Pilgrimage. But if they forgiue one another, and repent them for their former finnes, they thinke there to obtaine full remission of all their sinnes, and that at

their returne they are pure and without fpor. March swentie one, we departed from the Citie of Damafons, and about five or fix miles from

the Citie, passed by a Village called Daria; neere vnto which, we saw a great multi; ude of men, women, and children on their knees, in the high way; and by that time they had ended their denotion, we drew to neere as to talute them; and asking what they were, it was told vs, that 30 they were all Christians of fundry Nations , viz. Armemans, Greekes , Chelfalines , Nestranes, and fundry others, who went to lerufalem, to vitit and worthip the holy places there. We asked further, what they meant to fall on their knees in that place : they answered vs , that it was Place of Pauls the place where " Paul was connerted, and that it was their custome when they travelled that way, to fall on their knees, and pray wnto God to conuert them. They were in number at the Mucco furor least foure or fine hundred people, there was a Greeke Patriarke, and an Armenian Bishopin Saun, worrest companie. Many of them knew vs, (having seene vs in Aleppo) and saluted vs by our names. Weerode a while in companie together, and lodged all together that night at a Cane, called Saff , diftant from Damafens fix and twentie miles.

Ill way.

A abia Petrea, this day, was exceeding bad, rockie, waterith, and barren, called Arabia Petrea, where our Hories oftentimes stucke fast in the puddles and myrie places, and somtimes ready to breake their owne legs, and their Riders necks, among Rocks and Stones, it was neither pleafant going on foot, nor riding this way, for there was no path nor even ground, but huge stones and Rocks so neere together, that our Horses could goe but a foot-pace, and oftentimes met with such Marsshes and Quagmires, that wee were constrained to goe farre about before wee could find better waies to passe ouer. It is also exceeding cold in this place alwaies (in respect of other places in that Countrey) for there are neither Trees nor Houses, nor high Hils to keep away the violence and force of the Windes. The Caravans that travell vivally that way betwirt Damafeus and Egypt, fay, that this dayes iourney troubleth them more then all the reft, and that they never palleby 50

March twentie two, we rode before the rest of the companie. Our way that we translied all 40

that way, but they leave two or three of their Camels behind them, fome misfortune or other befalling vnto them. Wee faw also in fundry places this way, the carkaffes of many dead Camels, which have miscarried amongst the Rocks. It is also a very thesuish way, full of wilde Arabs: yet (by the prouidence of God) we came fafely that day to Conetra, where we lodged in a good Cane, diftant from Saffa eight and twentie miles.

In a Bazar (like vnto a Cloitter) adioyning to the Cane, wee tooke pleasure to walke vp and downe fome few turnes, which the Times beholding, wondred at vs : (for it is not their cufrome in those hot Countries, to walke vp and downe as wee doe in cold Countries, but to sit still on the ground like bruite Beasts) and one of them came vnto vs, and asked vs what wee meant to walke vp and downe in fuch fort, and whether wee were out of our way, or out of 60 our wits. If your way (faid hee) lyeth toward the vpper end of the Cloifter, why come you downewards ! And if at the nether end, why goe you backe againe ! It feemed no leffe strange vnto them, to fee a Christian with a cut Doublet: and they called him foole, and asked him what he meant to make holes in his Coate : for they neither cut nor pinke any of their Garments,

but wearing them all plaine, sparing for no cost, to guard them with lace of filter and gold, if they be able. And such as weare long have on their heads, the Turkes call Slouens, and ac- Lone have. count them fauage Beafts; for they themselves weare no haire on their heads at all, but shaue them every weeke once, and keepe them warme with a Turbant of white Shath, made of cotton Wooll, which they never vncouer in their falutations to any man, but bow their heads. with their hands on their breafts. But if a man haue a faire long beard, they reverence him, and Long beards; fay hee is a wife man, and an honorable perfonage. But if they have no beards at all, they call them (if they be yong) Bardaffer, that is, Sodominical Boyes. But it they be men growne, and have no beards, they call them fooles, and men of no credit; and fome of them refute to buy

to or fell with fuch, and fay, they have no wit, and that they will not believe them, &c. The three and twentieth of March, we had a more pleasant way; for the first ten miles wee rode thorow the fields, and a very pleasant Parke. But when we came out of this Parke or For- Pleasant Park. reft, we were somewhat troubled, partly by reason of the bad way, and partly by bad people in the way. The people did more trouble vs then the way; for there fate among it the Rocks. in our way, many Turkes and Arabs, with Maces of Iron, and other weapons, who stayed vs. and demanded Caphar or toll money; we were glad to give them content, that we might paffe Caphar. cuftofafely by them. But the Carauan of Christians, who came after vs, though they were many mers. hundreds, yet some of them being not able, some not willing to pay so much money as they demanded, were shrewdly beaten with their Iron Maces. There was a lefuit in their company,

20 who escaped not without firipes, whereat (as I have heard) he rejoyced, and counted it merito. Much good do rious, in that he fuffered fuch mifery in to holy a voyage. And in my hearing at Iernfalem, one him with such of his companions told him, that he merited much to luftaine such trauell and labour, and be at Merits. to great cost and charges, and fuffer so many stripes for Christ sake : but I know, had it not beene more for loue of his purse then for loue of Christ, he might have escaped without stripes. yea, with these kind speeches, Marhabbah Ianum, that is, Welcome my friend or sweet-beart. At another place in my Trauels, I heard a Frier bragging of his good workes, and faying, that hee Friar Merit-had done so many good workes, that if he should kill three men, his good workes would make manger. fatisfaction, and merit remission for them all. Here I may fitly take occasion to teach those that purpose to travell into Twiker, how to behave themselves. If they bee set you by Theeves. An admonistration 30 they may defend themselves in their travels, if they be strong enough; but if they be polling on for Travelofficers (as these were) they must not bee contradicted. But neither in their Cities, nor in their lers.

trauels may they firike againe, though they be abused and beaten by any man (except they bee Therees and Robbers) for if they doe, they shall either bee put to death, or have their hand cut off. Neither if a man receive a box on the eare at any of their hands, must be give one bad words or looke frowningly voon him that fmote him : for then hee will strike him againe, and fay, Base thral-What, Gosre? Doft thou curse me, and wish that the Deuil had me ? but hee must kiffe his beard, dome. or the skirt of his Garment, and fmile vpon him, and then he will let him paffe.

At the foot of this Mountayne there is an old Cane, where viually Trauellers lodge : but it being not yet noone, we refolued to trauell eighteene miles further, to the Sea of Galile. At the 40 foot of this frony Hill, hard by this Cane, there runneth a pleasant River, which divideth Strie from Galile. And over this River there is a faire Bridge, the one end whereof is out of the Holy Land, the other init. This River is called Iordan , the head whereof commeth from Mount Lybanus, and maketh three Seas. The first, is the waters of Maron, which we left on our right hand, about ten miles off. The other, on the left hand, which lay in our way as wee should trauell. The second, is the Sea of Galile or Tiberias, or Lake of Genezereth. The third, is the Sea of Sodome , called Mare mortum, where the River Iordan endeth. The Bridge that croffeth this River Jordan at the entrance into the Holy Land, is called Jacobs Bridge; for two causes. Jacobs Bridge; First, it is said, that there lacob met his brother Efan. Secondly, that there lacob wrestled with an Argell.

The first part of Canaan called Galile, beginneth at this Bridge, and to this day it is a very pleafant and fruitfull Countrey. After wee were entred into Galde, about two miles from the Bridge , our lanifarie asked vs whither wee would goe vp to a Mountayne , and fo to Sapbetta neere vnto Mount Carmel, which is a place of leaning for Iewes; or keepe the lower way, and goe by the Sea of Galile, which is the pleasanter way and thereof we made choises and tooke Saphetea in our way afterwards.

About seven miles from Iacobs Bridge, our Guide brought vs to a Well, adorned with marble Pillars, and covered with stone, which hee faid to have beene the Pit whereinto lofeph was put, lofe in Pic. when his Brethren fold him to the Islamalites. But it feemed to vs incredible : first, because that was a drie Pit, and this is full of fweet water. Againe, Iacob dwelt at Hebron twelve miles be-6c youd lerufalem, and his Sonnes kept Sheepe in Sheehem. And that drie Pit whereinto they put

I food was at Dothan (which we faw afterwards) and this Pit which they shewed ys with marble Pillars, was in Galile; not neere Dothan nor Shechem where Ioseph: Brethren kept their Fathers Sheepe. But by others of better judgement, we understood that this also was called logephs Pir, or Well, because it was built by one Tofeph, not Tofeph the some of Iacob, but some other. But the

ignorant people which trauell that way, are apt to beleeue any thing that is told them. About ten miles from this Well, we came to a Cane, called by the Moores Minium, but by the Turker Millia, hard by the Sea of Galile, where we lodged all night, having travelled that day by computation fixe and thirtie miles.

The foure and twentieth of March we rode along by the Sea of Galile, which lob.6.1. is cal-Sezof Gelile. led by two names, viz. the Sea of Galile or Tiberias. Galile, because it is in Galile: and Tiberias. because the Citie Tiberias was built by it, and Bethsaids an other ancient Citie; of both which we faw fome ruinous walls. And it is faid in that Chapter (lob.6.1.) that Iefus went oper the Sea of Galde: and in an other place, that he went beyond the Lake. And, Luke 9. 10. it is faid. that he went into a folitarie place, neere vnto a Citie, called Bethfaida, which place of lobn. I to learned to ynderstand better by seeing it, then euer I could before by reading of it. For, seeing that Tiberias and Bethfaids were both Cities on the fame fide of the Sea, and Christ went from

Bethfaids.

Tiberias to, or neere vnto Bethfaida ; I gather thereby, that our Saulour Christ went not ouer the length or breadth of that Sea ; but ouer fome Arme, Bosome, or Reach thereof, viz. fo farre as Tiberies was diftant from Bethfiida; which is also confirmed in that it is said elsewhere, A great multitude followed him on foot thinber; which they could not have done, if hee had gone quite outr the Sea, to the other fide among the Gergefens, which is out of the Holy Land, And therefore this Sea of Gable, is also called the Lake of Genefereth, because the Country of the Gereelem is on the other fide the Lake, from whence the Swine ran head-long into the Sea and were choaked therein : and as that place was out of the Holy Land; fo the people which then inhabited 20 it, were as farre from holineffe, when they requelted our Sautour Christ to depart out of their Coafts, And such like holy people inhabit there still, viz. wild Arabs and Turks, &c. Wee faw

also (neere vnto this Sea) the place where that Towne (mentioned, Ich. 2.1.) called Cana of Gable flood, where our Saujour Christ at a marriage turned Water into Wine; in place whereof there standeth now a poore Village, inhabited by Turks. This Sea of Galile is (by computation) in length eight leagues, and in breadth fine leagues , and every league is three miles , and then it encome to Sodome, where it endeth, which is called Mare Mortum, that is, The dead Sea. After we had rode about feuen miles by the Sea of Galile, we left it on our left hand, and afcended yp a Mountayne on the right hand. This Mountayne was not very fleepie, but excee. 30

ding pleafant and fertile, for (being the Spring-time) it was so befer with such varietie of flowers among the greene graffe, that they feemed to fleere in our faces, and to langh and fine (as the Pfalmiff ipeaketh) as wee went, Pfal. 65. 13. This is faid to bee that Mountayne, mentioned Job, 6, 9, where our Saujour Christ wrought a miracle, in feeding five thouland men with five Barley loaues, and two Fishes.

When we came to the top of the Mountayne, we faw Saphetta on the right hand, a Vnints Dapperson a temphetra is fituated on a very high Hill with three tops, and so the Citie hath three parts; one part is inhabited by leves, the other two by Turks. We asked forme leves, whom we knew formerly to have beene Merchants of Aleppo, what they meant to leave their Trade and to live there: They 40 answered, they were now old and came thither to die, that they might be neerer to Heauen. The Ismes have here more libertie then in any part of the Holy Land. They dare not come to lernfalem, for feare left the Christians there dwelling, stone them. Whiles we were at Saphetta, many Tarker departed from thence towards Mecha in Arabia. And the same morning they went, we faw many women playing with Timbrels, as they went along the freet, and made a yelling or fhriking noiseas though they cryed. We asked what they meant in so doing It was answered vs, that they mourned for the departure of their Husbands, who were gone that morning on Pilgrimage to Mecha, and they feared that they should never fee them againe, because it was a long way and dangerous, and many died there every yeere.

All the way which we trauelled this day, was very pleafant; and all the Ground both Hils 50 and Dales very fruitfull, according as it is described by Moses, Dent. 8.7, 8. and Dent. 11. 10, 11. And we came that day, about two of the clocke in the afternoone to a Village, called in the Arabick tongue I-nel Tyger, that is (by interpretation) The Merchants Eye, wherein there are two very faire Castles for Trauellers to lodge in from danger of wild Arabs, which abound in those parts : we tooke vp our lodging in the neerest Castle, which is the fairest.

After we had refreshed our sclues, and slept a while : being hard by Mount Tubor , wee defired to ascend to the top of it, and tooke Ally (one of our lanifaries) and rode towards the Mountaine. But understanding that it was very dangerous, by reason of wild Arabs, which lodged in Caues, and Rocks, and Bushes, about the Mountaine, wee hired some of the principal drabs to goe with vs, and guard vs from the rest. And as wee went, weebcheld the prospect of the 60 Mountaine to be very pleasant, somewhat steepie, but not very high (in respect of some other Mountaines thereabout) nor very large, but a comely round Mountaine, belet with Trees and thicke Bushes; which at that time of the yeere flourished greene : wee rode so farre as wee could for steepinesse, and then left some of our Servants at the foot of the Mountaine to keepe our

Horfes, and tooke vpon vs to clamber vp on foot, which wee should never have beene able to have done, had there not beene very high Graffe, Sprigs, and Bulhes to hold by. One or our Arabi went vp before vs, as fast as if it had beene even ground, but we came very slowly after. which he perceiuing, would looke backe, and often vie their words to cheere vs, Gel gel, gel, thatis, Come, come, and fometimes thele, Ish balac Secade, How doe you Matters. Wee were almost all out of breath, and one of our companie cried, For the lone of God let vi returne, for I can goeno further; Ob, I shall die, I shall die. Whereupon , one of vs being neerer the top then he himselfe supposed (to cheere the rest) faid, Come cheerefully, I am on the sop; which fomewhat heartned the rest : otherwise they had all gone downe againe. Being on the top, we Topof Tabor.

Io refted a while to take breath; and then we walked up and downe the top of the Mount, and faw onely one house, or rather low Cottage vninhabited, having onely two darke roomes in it. meete for Foxes or laccals to lodge in, and faw no figne of any other Tauerne or Tabernack. Onely we understood, that (many yeeres since) there was a Monasterie there inhabited by Po-Only we vince many that to many years interface was a monator that many early plain friers, but being moletted by the Arabi, tooke away the holimeffe with them, and let the Mountaine behind them; yet full they call this Mount Tabor, in Italian, Monte Santo, that is, the Holy Mountaine : as if there were some inherent holinesse in the Mountaine. And two dayes after we had beene there , came a lefuit and two Friers with a yong Gentleman of Paris

in France, who was a Protestant, and some other companie with them, who had a defire to as Conference in France, who was a Protestant, and some other companie with them, who had a write to all best at a cend to the top of this holy Mountaine, and went all together vntill they were wearie, which full the and a 20 was at the foot of the Mountaine, and in the heate of the day : wherefore the French Gentleman Proteffint. faid, he would flay for them there until they returned, but was himfelfe already wearie, and

would goe no higher; the Iesuit and Friers reproued him, and called him foole, and told him he Merit monthe Gentleman) what he emight merit by going to the top of that holy Monatrine. Merit (fair gen, the Gentleman) what may I merit ? Thou maieft merit (fair they) fiftie yeeres pardon. The Gentleman, to breake a ieit withthem, asked them whether hee might merit fiftie yeeres pardon for the time past, or for the time to come : If (faid he) for the time past, I am not so old (for he was but twentie two y, eres of age) if for the time to come, he did not thinke hee should line fo long. They answered him, if he did not live folong, he might give the yeares which remain ned, to his friends. Yet could they not perswade him to goe vp any higher. When we had seene 30 enough this Mount, returned against to the Caftle, with good stomacks to our Supper, and wea-

ried bodies, defiring reft. Tabor is diftant from Galile not much aboue twentie miles. The fine and twentieth of March, being the feaft of the Annunciation of the Virgin Mars. and (according to the computation of our Church of England) the first day of the yeere 1601.

we trauelled our very pleasant fields all the way, the fields of Basson, not farre from the Mount Mount Bassan. Basan, where there was exceeding good Pasture, and fat Cattell : onely wee wanted good water to drinke, and our Wine was fpent, and the day exceeding hot. Wee faw in our way fome General Tower. remnants of tha. old Tower or Fortreffe, mentioned 2. Kings 5, 24, where Gebass the Seruane of Elifa, ouer-tooke Nauman, and tooke of him two Talents of filter, and two change of Gar-

ments. We saw also many other places worthy observation, but (for want of a good Guide) we 40 knew not the names thereof, for the Turker inhabiting those Countries, have given new names to most places. This was the pleasantest daies journey we had in our whole trauell. I never faw more fertill ground and pleasant fields, and so much together, all the whole day, from Mount Tabor, to a Village called vulgarly *Ienine*, but of old *En-gamina*, whereof wee reade, *Iofo.* 15:34. Enganger.

Nerre vnto this Village is the place where *Iabel* beheaded *Sifera*, mentioned *Indg.* 4.21. Engamins is dittant from Mount Tabor twentie two miles. It is a very pleafant plate, having fine Gardens, and Orchards, and Waters about it. We flayed here all the day (the fix and twentieth of March) because (the Twees Romadan, which is their Lent, being ended) on this day beganne Total Bran their Feast called Byram; and our Ianifarie was loth to travell on that day, being their Feast day, and so much the rather, because his name also was Byram.

50 The feuen and twentieth of March , riding from En-gamins , wee were endangered twice : First, by certaine Theenes dwelling neere vnto En-gamim, who made vs pay Caphar, or pole money twice, once at En-gannins. And when we departed from thence, they purfued vs with Bowes and Arrowes, and other weapons : we withflood them long in parley; at length enery man prepared his instruments of death ready for battell. Our lamfaries Kinsman, Fatolla, had Double Kna, his Musket ready, and being about to give fire, was stayed by our lanifarie, who faw not onely werte, these Arabs present very desperate, with their Bowes and Arrowes ready drawne, but messengers also sent to raise vp all the whole rabblement thereabout vpon vs; hee told vs, wee were best give them content, or elie we were all but dead men: wherefore, to avoide further danger,

we gave them their owne defire, vpon condition, they would purfue vs no further nor fuffer any 6 of their companie to moleft vs : the chiefest of them answered, Stopherlo, Stopherlo, that is, God forbid, God forbid, we flould doe you any harme, if you pay vs what we demand; which we did with all speede, and rode away from them, being glad we were rid of them.

About ten miles from them, wee rode through a Wood (a very fit place to harbour Theenes, Dangerous who had killed certaine men trauelling that way the day before, and tooke away both a man Wood,

1453

and Horie from the Carauan which followed after; and a woman also riding on an Affe with their carriage) and (as our Guide told vs) he neuer trauelled that way but he taw fome men kil. Ind : and therefore bade vs all charge our Peeces, and shoot off when he bade vs, though we faw no bodie, lest the wilde Arabs should fet vpon vs on the fodaine, lying in ambush, which wee alfo did in a place most dangerous, to daunt the enemies before wee saw each other. But before wee came varo the most dangerous place, there ouertooke vs many Turkes well armed, who dwelt in Ierusalem, and were glad of our companie thither. And shortly after wee haddischer. ged enery man his piece, we law a great companie of Arabs on an high Mountaine neere vino our way, yet out of the reach of our shot, who perceiuing vs to bee too strong for them, durft not fet vpon vs. And to (by the pronidence of God) wee came that night to an ancient and famous Citie, (lituated in a fruitfull valley betwixt two Mountaines) called Sycher, a Citie in Samaria, mentioned, John 4. Neere whereunto wee faw Jacobs Well, where our Saujour Christ Pleasant water asked water of the woman of Samaria. Wee came thither in good time, for wee were excepding thirftic, and dranke thereof liberally and freely. The water thereof goeth downeyers pleafantly, like vnto Milke. From Jacobs Well we went into the Citie, and lodged in a very ancient and stately Cane, but very badly kept. It had beene better for vs to haue slept by lacobs Well, as others did; for here we slept on the hard stones neere vnto a Chappell in the middle of the Cane, under two or three great Fig-trees and Mulberrie-trees, where we were force fafe from theeues, for we had some things tollen from vs in the night, whiles wee slept under the Trees on faire broad stones, whereunto we ascended by a faire stone paire of staires, fixe or 20 feuen ftens from the ground. Sychar is diftant from En-gannim, feuen and twentie miles. The nine and twentieth of March, wee departed from Samaria to Ierusalem, and met many

Souldiers in feuerall companies by the way, who knowing our lanitarie, and other Turkes in our companie, let vs passe by them quietly, and gaue vs the salam aliek, that is, peace be onto you. The first part of this dayes iourney was somewhat pleasant; but the neerer we came to Ierusalem, the more barren and tedious our way was. About ten of the Clocke we came to a great Forrest. or Wildernesse full of Trees and Mountaines. When wee were on the top of this Mountaine, we faw the maine Sea on our right hand, and small Ships fayling towards Ioppa. About three or foure of the clocke, we came to a ruinous Village called Beere, but of old (as it is reported) Beersheba, which in former times was a great Citie: And it is faid to be the place where logos to and Mary comming from lerufalem (the feast being ended) missed the Child less, and sought him forrowing; and returning to lernfalens, found him in the Temple amidft the Doctors, herring them and poling them. Our purpole was to lodge here all night, being all of vs wearie and hungrie, and all our prouision spent. But finding nothing here to behad for money, either for Man or Horse; and vinderstanding that lerusalem was but ten miles off, wee went on in our way somewhat faintly, fine or sixe miles, and then beholding the prospect of the Citie, wee were somewhat cheered and remued, and solaced our felues with singing of Pialmes, vntill wee came neere vnto the Citie. Many Greekes dwelling in Iernsalem, seeing vsafarre off, came to meet vs, supposing their Patriarch had beene in our companie, who came two or three daves after vs.

We difmounted from our Horses at the West gate of the Citie, called Ioppa gate, or the Castle gate; which is a very strong gate of Iron, with thirteene Peeces of Braffe-ordnance planted on the wall about the gate. Wee flayed in the porch of the gate, and might not be admitted into the Citie, vntill wee were fearched by an Officer (as the manner is.) In the meane time there came to vs two Italian Friers , viz. Padre Angele, and Padre Amelio, and kiffed our hands , and Master Timber- bade vs welcome, and told vs, that two other Englishmen were at their house, viz. Master Tim-

ley bath publi- berley, and Maiter Borell. When we were fearched without the gate by a Turkith Officer, and deliuered up our weapons of his Voyage. to the Porter to keepe for vs in the gate-house vntill our returne (because no Christian may enter into Ierufalem with weapons) these two Padres led vs to their Monasterie; at the gate 50 whereof wee were fearched againe by another Tarkifb Officer before wee might enter into the house. For the office of the former Searcher at the gate of the Citie was onely to receive the weapons of all Christians, and deliuer them fafe to them againe at their departure. But this Searcher went further and fearched all our carriage, which he caused to be opened, to see whether we had any Gun-powder, or any other engins there. For they are very suspicious of all Christians, searing, lest for denotion to the place, they should worke treason; therefore they furfer not Christians to enter into the Citie weaponed, lest they make insurrection against them when they are many together, and conquer the Citie, as heretofore they have done. To this end also is the Citie walled about with strong walls, and fortified with foure strong gates, and a Caitle, (but by Sultan Solyman) and every gate well planted with Ordnance for feare of Chri- 60 ftians. And partly for hope have they environed this Citie with fuch firong walls, that Chriftians for denotion to the place, might come and build within the walls, and bee subject to the Turke. For though their walls be large and firong, yet there is great roome within the walls to build more houses then are there, for there are fields of Come within the walls of the Citie;

CHAP. Q. Letters of commendations, Good entertaymnens, Adminision.

and the houses stand very thin, scattered, and dispersed, here one, and there two or three together ; there is not one faire ffreet in all lerufalem as te now is.

After they had thus narrowly fearched all our carriage, even to our cases of Bottles, we were Entenavaadmitted into the Monastery ; at the entrance wherinto, met vs Master Timberles, and Mafter mentwith the Boreel, and then Signior Franciscus Mannarbn, the Padre Guardian of the Monasterie, and all the Friers. reft in order, and bade vs welcome, and led vs into a faire Parlour, and fet good cheere before vs. and ferued vs themfelues. After Supper we deliuered them our Letters which wee had brought from the Venice Confull of Aleppo, and other Italian Merchants there, in our behalfe. Which when they had read, the Guardian faid, our custome is, when strangers come to vs. to call them

To the first night to Masse, and to Confession, and to give every man a Candle to hold in his hand at Maffe time; and at night to wash their feet and to bring them tobed, and to many other ceremonies, during the whole time of their continuance there. But as for ws , they vinderstood by Letters what we were; and told vs that we were fo highly commended by their Patrons and Benefactors, the Verice Confull, and Merchants of Aleppo, that if they should shew vs halfe the fauour which was required at their hands , they should themselves lie without dogres, and fuffer vs to rule and dominiere at our pleatures. And that therefore they would not wree vs to any thing against our consciences, but give free libertie both of persons and consciences; asit wee were in England, or in our owne houses elfewhere; and fo much the rather, because they vnderflood our Merchants were rich, and hoped to gaine by vs. In regard whereof, although it were 20 Lent, wherein they eate no flesh, yet offered vs Hens, Egges, Milke: any thing that was there to be had for money, they requested vs to command it. And during the time of our continu-

ance there, he commanded one Padre Awelio to attend vpon vs, and see that wee wanted nothing ; and another of his brethren, one Padre Angelo, to be our guide abroad, and to flew vs all ancient Monuments and places worth feeing, either in the Citie, or out of the Citie. Thefe kind speeches being vsed, they brought vs to our chambers where wee should lodge all night, and prounted for enery man fenerally a good neat Bed with faire sheets, and all things ve-

ry wholfome and handsome, where wee slept sweetly, and refreshed our wearied bodies all that night very comfortably.

But although they deale thus kindly with vs (at the inflance of their Benefactors) in giving 30 vs libertie of conscience, yet they deale not so with others. For some I doe know who have beene there, and made no confcience to doe as they have done. Wherefore, I admonish those An admonish who haue a defire to trauell to lerufalem hereafter, to take heed to themselues, that they make ston to such not shipwracke of conscience; for if they come not well commended, or well moneyed, or both, there is no being for them, except they partake with them in their idolatrous services. True it is, that the Turker give libertie of conscience vnto all that come thither : but they give not entertay ment vato any Christians in their houses. And the Greeke Patriarchs are poore, and not able to protect fuch as come vnto them for refuge. These Padres, though they bee Papiffs, yet have they rich Benefactors; and want nothing, and (for the most part) very kind and curreous to ftrangers in all things, libertie of conscience onely excepted, wherein they seeke to 40 make others like vnto themselves, and to seduce them from their Faith, and to winne them to

the Church of Rome : and offer vnto them who have money in their puries, to make them Knights of the Sepulcher; but no good English Subject will accept of that order of Knighthood; for at the receiving thereof, they I weare to bee true to the Pope, and to the King of Spaine, and to other things, which no man can doe with a good conscience. And this kindneffe and libertie of confcience, which wee found among it them, wee imputed not fo much to the men. as to our owne money: for it cost vs chare, viz. one hundred Duckets for our entertaynment.

After wee had rested one night in lerufalem, the first day wee walked about the Citie our felues without our guide, onely to view the Citie, wee found it exceeding hot, and hotter then 50 it is viually at Midfummer in England: It feemed ftrange vinto mee, how it should once bee so cold, that Peter should creepe to the fire, and now (at the same season) so hot that wee could not indure the heate of the Sunne. But after I had beene there a few dayes, the very place refolued that doubt : for there fall great deawes, and before the Sunne haue dried it vp, it is cold, and in the night feafon (about that time of the yeere) fomewhat cold, as I felt by experience when I flept in the fields all night. And Peter having watched with Christ in the night, might well be cold in the morning, before the heat of the Sunne had expelled cold.

But here wee will breake off, basing with Mafter Sandys his eyes curiously viewed Ierusalems Holies in the former Chapter.

CHAP.

*If any think it

ill that a Chri-

ftian Ambaffa-

dor fo suld ac-

company the

Turke in this w tre against

they may

please to vr-

his intents

were to doe

Christians, if occationswere

offered for

peace: as alio

he did in deli-

mentioned &c

uerie of the

CHAP. X.

The lourney of EDW AND BARTON Efquire, ber Maiefties Ambaffador with the Grand Signior, otherwise called the Great Turke, in Conftantinople, S V ET A H * MAHYMET CHAN. Written by Sir THOMAS GLOVER then Secretarie to the Ambaffador, and fince employed in that Honoura.

ble Function by his Marellie, to SVLTAN ACHMET. Two Letters are also inserted, written from Agria, by the faid Ambaffador BALTON.

Christendom: derft ind, that feruice to the

Irft, the Ambaffador well mounted, and his two spare Horses, with a Coach with foure Horses : next before him his Chanses, and an Enterpreter, with three Isnizaries: and before the Chaufes, and Imizaries, his men, (beeing twelse in number) in Liueries rode before him, and foure Gentlemen next after him: and foure Coaches with the Christian Captines (being three and twentie in number) the Family of Signier Crotsky, the Emperour his late Ambassador in Carlie, nople, which hee redeemed from the Great Turke, and had licence to carrie them a long with

him, and to fend them into their owne Countrey, allowing and giving him the foure Coaches, with two Horfes in each Coach, and a man to tend on every Coach. Laftly, thirtie fixe Camele for carriage of promision, and to every fixe Camels, two men to attend on them, to lade and unlade as occasion ferued (which in Turkilb, are called Deuedzilers) of them there were twelvein . all wayting on the Camels: More the Chanfer man and another Tirke, called Mahomet, who was recommended to the Ambaffadour to be his Lackey, to runne by his Horfe vntill wee cameto-

Now on Friday being the second day of July, 1596. the faid Ambassador parted his house (which is in the Vines of Pera,) and tooke his lourney, having to accompany him that first day, Mafter I ohn Sander fon Merchant (who was by him left an Agent or Logotenent vntil his returne) Ionas Alarich Merchant, and Iohn Field a Phylician; who brought him that day vato a place. ensuing. On Sunday morning at Sunne rifing, we departed from Aquadulce, and came to Posts Piccolo, about mid-day, which is some fifteene miles diffant from Aquadulce , and there we pitched our Tents. On Munday, before the breake of the day, parted thence about ten of the clocke in the morning, and arrived at Ponte Grande, which is about twelve miles diffant; where having pitched our Pauillions the Amballadour fent his Chans, and the Drogue-men, with the Grand Signior, his Commission to the Cady of the faid Towne, for his allowance of prose who fent him five Sheepe, two hundred Loaues of Bread, five Meatres of Wine, one leaded Hay, with twentie Kylowes of Barley.

On Tuesday, before day, we parted Ponte Grande, and by Sun-rising wee came to a small Vil- 40 lage, called Combergafi, where the Ambassador his people broke their fast, and after an hours stay parted thence, and came to a Towne, called Celebria, about eleuen a clocke, which is some ten miles distant from our last Lodging. There also the Ambassadour sent his Commission to the Cady of the faid Towne, who fent him three Sheepe, two hundred Loanes of Bread, ten Meaters of Wine, one loade of Hay, and twentie Kyllowes of Barley, wee pitched our Tents a quarter of a mile dutant from the Towne; and an houre within the night, the Moone being vp, parted thence.

The twentieth, wee were to passe through a great Wood, betwirt two Mountaynes that day, and in the night to keepe watch. These men are Bulghars, beeing appointed by the Grand Signior, to guard all Trauellers (I meane of the Campe) that come that way, for which so Ieruice the faid Bulgharion, pay no Tribute to the Tarke. Then wee came to a Village, called Sernia, which is at the entrance betweene those two Mountaynes, and no other passage but one that goeth to Wallachia, all the Countrey elfe within thefe Mountaynes, beeing as it were enuironed with mightiesteepe, woodie hils, as though they were wals of strong Cities; this was the passage that Inline Cafar passing out of Sernia, lost so many thousand men before he could game it; for this passage is as though it were hewen or cut out betwixt these two Mountaynes. At the mouth or rather the entrance on the North-fide, it is fortified with a mightie great wall from Mountayne to Mountayne, and a firong Castle in the misse, with a great Gate to passe thorow, there is yet to be seene part of the wals, or rather fragments: the wals adjoyning to the Gate are maruellous loofe, and shake, readie to fall: some two houres before night, we came to the foot of the M untayne, and therepitched our Tents a mile from a Towne, called Erchpnia; being from Tartarb fardgi eight and twentie miles, this day and nights travell was all betwixt thele

The five and twentieth, we came to the mouth or entrance of a firong passage beeing tenne miles long betwixttwo Mountaynes, the way winding in and out, as it were, hewen, or cut

out of the Mountaynes, on both fides verie loftie; this place is of a wonderfull strength for resifing of the Enemies: Now little after mid-day, we came to pitch our Tents towards the end of the laid passage, by a faire River side.

The fixe and twentieth, passing along the River side, on the high way, wee found two men most miserably put to death, having each of them a stake thrust in at his Fundament, through his bodie, and so out by his necke; the stake being set vp right on end : the cause was for killing ns poone, and no one of an interest and the first property of a lamitarie, they being Christians. The Grand Signing paling by, cauled them for to fifter.

The eight and twentieth, we came to a Towne, called Neefa, and a little before our com- Neefa.

ming to the fame, we faw two men staked as afore-faid, who were Transilamina, came purpose-To ly to spie and view the Campe: also at this Townes end, there were of Christians heads flead. ty to the full of Hay hanged on posts by strings, so the number of three hundred which soure moneths before were slaine by Turkes, while Mahomes Bassas Bassas. From the entrance of the fraight passage to this place are ten miles, and from Sofpa to this place all high Mountaynes, rhehie and troublefone to trauell: thefe Mountaynes part Servis and Schemeis, this Citie is fi-turated in a verie delectable Valley, having towards the West-side a faire Plaine, that stretcheth is selfe towards Albania and Macadonia, here we rested all that day and night.

The third of August, wee came to spread our Tents close by the mayne Campe , halfe 4 mile diffant from Belgrade, which is a maruellous great Plaine adioyning to the Citie, and about the midft of the Campe, the Grand Signier his Paullion is alwayes placed; and now hard by his 20 Paullion by force of hands was raifed a small Hill, woon which was growne a Helw-thorne, cut artificially spreading, which made a maruellous good shadow: enery Euening the Great Zimbe would afcend into it to view his Campe, and to be feene of his people, being a custome amone if the Tarker, his Souldiers in the Wars to fee their King, once in four and twentie houres.

HONDIVE bis Map of Hungarie.



Or Selimbria.

Abraham Baffa Chiefe Vizier.

The ferenth, the Ambassador went to the chiefe Vixier, Abraham Bassa, about the Captines he had in his charge, and inconference with him prefently, the faid flaues were fent for, and beeing brought before the Baffa, in the prefence of the Ambaffador and other Viziers, and great perfonages, their deliuerance being pronounced, to be fent by the Ambassador into their Countrey, it was granted by them all; whereupon the faid flaues kiffing the Baffa his feet, as the manner of Christians de. the Turker is for such a grace; and the Ambassador also giving them thankes, tooke his leave and fo departed, carrying his Captines along with him to his Pauillion.

The thirteenth, about Quandi, the Ambassador with his company departed from Belgrade, riding by the South-west end of the Castle, came to the River Land, neere where it entreth inm the Daumbinne, to passe the bridge purposely made for the Grand Signior, his Armie to passe the In fame, which bridge is artificially builded vpon fortie five great Boats made for that purpole like Lighters, but much broader, deeper and flat bottomed, the length of the same bridge is some one hundred paces, the breadth betwint the Rayles fortie foot: for space of eight dayes the Armie was going ouer, in such fort; as a man could not passe for the continual press of the people.

Bridge of Armie eight daves in

Next morning, the Grand Signier parted thence, and fome two houres after, the Ambaffador followed : now the ordinarie riding of the Great Turke, was in this manner (not fpeaking of the whole Armie, which went before and followed him, but only of those that attended on his owne person) before him rides one thousand of the brauest and best armed Horsemen, every one with his Lance Next them fome three hundred Chanfer; then one hundred Foot-men next before him, with Bowes & Arrowes; then followes his Youths, all for the most part at mans state (called Ichoelans) about some three hundred clothed in Gownes of Brocade, of Gold and Silver, all of 20 one fashion, and a Cap on their heads, made in manner of a French-hood, of course red cleath: in the midth among it them, are fortie or fiftie men riching on Camels, Horles and Mules, who play on Drummes, Fifes, and many other forts of Instruments, continually all the way along after these follow some fortie Coaches; then his ordinary Seruants, as Stable-men, Kitcheners and fuch like: this day trauelling till about eleuen of the clock, we came and spread our Tents, as neere the Grand Signiors Panithon as we could and close by the Danabiam : whence we came to this place, is about some nine miles.

The next morning, the Grand Signior departed from Slanconie, and about ten of the clocke came to spread his Paullion under the side of an hill, close on the other side of the Danubium. fome seven miles from the Towne aforesaid; all alongst this Hill full of Vineyards, where the Souldiers gathering and ipilling Grapes, were complayned of; whereupon, fixe of them being taken, were hanged on Trees in the Vineyards, and after, a first commandement given not to take any thing perforce from any man, vpon paine of death; here the Ambafadow was feather to the \$3.66, and readie to depart, the \$3.66 willed the Ambafador, that the next morning, as the Grand Signier should passe along on his way, hee should be ready to salure him, for hee said, that he asked for him, and maruelled her could not fee him, V pon this, taking his leave, departed; and so went to the Great Hadgis his Tent, and after while to his owne Tents. The next morning, perceiving the Great Tweet departure, the Amballador with his men about him all on Horse-backe falute his Highmelie according to their matner, bowing, as fewerall times, and the 40 from Signier beholding the Ambassador with his retingerable did bow himselfe vnto them very kindly, and so past on his way, for that the Grand Signier, ypon the newes aforesaid, was defirous to fee the Ambaffadour, which was cause that the Bassa willed the Ambaffadour to doe as The five and twentieth, the Grand Signier parted this place (in the morning early) the rather to haften towards Harnen, not that hee himfelie in person would goe, but being neere the way

th Agris, whereto he went to lay his fiedge, amight whon any occasion fend more fuccour; the Ambassador also followed him with his retirate, finding (as Before) all plaine Champion grounds, full of Graffe, and Hay i The Grand Signifer willing to be the whole Armie, gas order that they inhould all friedge together that day, that he might have full view of them, which was go the gas a done accordingly, and a ight almost waterdide, overforeading a Plaine, further then any man could discerne. The Ambassador, to have stull view of them, mounted a small Hill, about the, midst of that Plaine, somewhat higher then the rest strom whence beholding them with great wonder, round about fo farreas could not be difcerned, the Plaine was ouer-spread (as aforeindistribute. This with people and carriages, And about Quind, we came to pread our Paulions neigh that people a comment of the comment of th of Cafties and Townes, which by these warres, aforestime, and now, have beene, and are de-

store in mass throyed and pulled downe, at which are the common of the c Belgrade, hetherto newes were bruited, that Maximillian was visder Vatia, where hee kept long Countell, yet hitherto (though he had full power of the Emperor) makes no show nor signe to

meete the great Turke, or succour Agria. The same night the Imifaries built and entred their Trenches, placing good flore of Artillarie therein; having Abraham Bassa the Usfere, and Asfan Baffa the Beglerbie of Grecia, to their guard, and began to beate the East part of the Castle; Jun Dayla the Bagla and Mahomet Baffa, the North part, the Baffa of Natolia and Caramania, the West part. The thirteenth, the Hungarians fet their Suburbs on fire, which were very well fenced with a high Wall, yet diffructing their forces, fearing that the Turker once entring the fame, should make a Fortresse of offence, fired the same, and fled vnto the Castle : Now the Tracker perceiuing them to be gone vp into the Cattle, scaled the out wals of this Towne, and tooke fuch pilledges as the fire had left there: The chiefelt of the Inhabitants of this Citie, fled 10 into the Countries thereabouts, before the Grand Signior his approaching to the faid fiege, and the rest retyred themselves into the Castle, as aforesaid, with as much goods as they could. The foureteenth, the Tweker entred, and burned and fpoyled the reft of the Suburbs; with a great Church, but were foone repelled, and the Church, with the reft, for that time was well defended. The fame day Cigalla was appointed out Skire, with a troope of light Horle-men, to fee that no fuccour should come to the Castle.

The twentieth, Turker giving fire to a Mine, it proved contrarie to their mindes, the force comming forth, and not into the Cattle: After which, the defendants perceiuing it tooke courage, and affaulted the Trenches of the venturers, whom they found vnprouided of defence; flew many, and taking fome of them and their Banners, retired into the Cafile with their prey, and 20 there fet the Banners upon the wals, to terrifie the Twker. The two and twentieth at night, the Turkes filled the Cattle Ditches with Wood and Hay, but because they were not ready, or deutied to couer the fame with earth, as it ought to be; the defendants feeing it, prefently with Wild-fire confumed it; fo for that time fruitrated their defire, yet continuing their batterie. made foure feuerall places of the Caftle wals affaultable. The three and twentieth, by night had they prouided fufficient wood, and other matter to fill the Ditches; in the meane time, the Berlerbe of land being tent hither to the fiege, without order from the Grand Signior or the chiefett Balla, and word being brought, the Emperour was strong in those parts, if pardon had not beene gotten for him, he had lott his head; yet prefently was fent backe against from whence he came. yoon his owne proper coft and charges, and that was his penaltie for the offence.

The foure and twentieth, the Turks giving fire to a Mine, had made a great breach, and thereup. on gaue a generall affault, which indured most fearefully on both sides, for the space of an houres yet at laft the Turkes were beaten backe. After a little reft made, began a new affanlt, which continued two hours; in the which, the Turker got the better, gayning the wals and the Artillery on the fame, which prefently they turned vpon the Caffle. The twentie fine, the Tarks gaue an affault vpon the inner part of the Castle, but repulled with a great flaughter. The twentie lixe, the Turks attempting to vindermine the Galile, and prefently thereupon, to give a generall affault : but the Christians having by some meanes knowledge thereof, to hinder the Tunkes they should not give fire thereunto, and to have more time themselves to countermine theirs, went and cast great quantitie of vnbeaten corne on that fide the wall, to that the Tarks could not wel fland to come night to dig or bring powder, so for that day the affault was deferred. The eight & twertieth, in the morning, first hired a Mine which cast up the Castle wall, the breadth of two Carts. and preferrly ypon the same, gaue a new assault; but because the Longaries was not backed, the affault tookeno effect, but about two houres after, refreshing themselves, and gathering more ftrength, about mid-day began the affault afresh, which indused tall night ; but because of the great raine that at the instant fell, they premailed not, though on both tides many flaine, and the Cattle put in great icopardie. On Wednessay the nine and twentieth, and Thursday the thirtieth, still skirmishing for all it rained.

The first of October, as before said, continually skirmishing, it chanced that an English-man a Trumpeter, fled out of the Caftle, and being taken by the Turkes, was brought to the Grand 50 Signior, and being examined, aduited him of the weake estate thereof : according to whose report, in the morning being Saturday the second of October, it was rendred vpon condition thew might depart with Bag and Baggage : which was granted. The third, being licenced to depart according to the Grand Signior his promise, voider the charge of the Beglerbie of Natolia. Ar their departure forth of the Castle, they were spoyled of their goods carried with them, and most of them flaine by the Spabies, lans faries of Hatnan, and other Turks, not wathout suspicion of the Grand Signior his knowledge, because he vied no feuere punishment for the breaking of his commandement, and his owne promife. There were in number about one thousand Souldiers , and as many more men, women, and children Inhabitants, which were faued and kent to remaine Subics there: the chiefe Captaines were kept and promifed their libertie. The chiefe was Hornger, 6c Signior Paulo: The Coronell Gulielmo Trocks, lohannes Incohm Comes Atarne Bohemo, lohannes

Kinskye de Tetan; and Count Rugero Italiano.

Xxxxxx

A Letter

A Letter written by Master Edward Barton Ambassador, to Master Sander fon: inscribed Al Molto May. Sty. Gio. Sander fon, erc.

Thefe two let- T ters written by the Ambaffadorhis owne hands, I baue for his fake and theirs inferted, giuen me by Mafter

Oning friend, I have written twice unto you, as well from Bellograd as also Solnok, of what in my voyage bitherto had passed, but my Letters were intercepted and torne, brought unio my bands agame, and being of no great importance, I will no more reply them, but admife you of the Grand Signiagame, and oring of no free temperature, and the twelfth of September, and the left same night be made bus trenches and batteries in fix severall places; the Vice-Roy in one place, the Beglerbite of Grecia in another, the Beglerbie of Natolia in the third, the lanifaries in the fourth, leffer Baffa En. to nuch in the fifth , Mahemed Baffa Gera in the fixt ; Cigal Ogli was Captame oner the light Horse men, to Coure the coasts on all fides, that no succour should come, and to learne admice of the Emperours

The thirteenth, the Inhabitants fet all their Suburbs on fire, which might be little leffe then Gallato. which though they were well defenced with a frong wall, yet the defendants being few in number, and distrusting to their owne strength , left the defence of them , and retired them selues within the Calile. The fixteenth, the landaries offered a generall skirmoft, even under the Gate of the Caftle, where on both fides many were laime, but the Hungars keeping themselines close within the wals, and the lancia-ries treed, some retired. The sementeenth, eighteenth, and mineteenth, they intended to indermine the Cafile, and the twentieth, put fire thereto, but not succeeding to their mindes (though they valiantly at- 20 tempted to enter the breach) they cane comrage to the defendants to make if ue to mutual damage. The foure and twentieth, the affailants having made another breach, valiantly ent ed the same, but not being seconded with fresh forces, were repelled, yet two boures after, in the same day, taking on them better convage, and more valiantly seconded, game a new assault, when by chance, a woman in the Catife temp, by chance, five on a Barrell of Powder, and the Souldiers of the Castle thinking it was a Mine wel in the Castle, for feare thereof retiring themsselmes, game the Turkes courage to enter a small but strong Ballion builded for defence of a weake part of the Castle, which they valiantly even to the last defended; and ener after, with supring and counter-supring, continual affaults and skirmifors on both parts fighting, to the extreame left of the defendants. The first of October, an English Trampetter of caped out and fled to the Vice-Roy , requiring life and libertie, and declaring the weakenesse of the Castle, " mas brongle before the Grand Signior, to whom likewife he made like relation; according to whose remet ir megit seigar ine Grand Signot, in whom tikemij be made iki relation; according to whole re-port,, the next day being Saturday the Second of Othober, the California was rendered, with compalit has the Saalikers found fait; retire whither bost they list, and the Inhabit ants to remains continued lika-bitants, and awares of their former polifisms; the latter of public promises we suffered, but list fish was bright, showing the Inhabitions of Hatuns, of Allel belonging to the Grand Signion; we dayse immy thence, together with the Tartars; affaulted the faul Sandhers a mile from Agria in their deposits, and can them all more controlled Maximilla must the Emperons from the suffered moments for the gen Hatun, did miss cruelly, without compassion at all the Inhabitiants to the survey. Hence the Grand (briftan Turke, Signior doth within fine daies determine to gue towards Buda uncertaine upon what defigne. From Solof all, and nok I fent my Drogueman to Buda with the Emperatre Ambassador his familie, and in Buda I re- th Religion now leafed fine other, with all which companie, confifting of fenen and twentie, I received Letters from my Drogueman, and the Gentleman in Buda releafed; that they departed from Peft the thirteenth of December rouge the Emprese of court, God fend mee a good affiner fleedily. And 1 pray we fitted by advance for England; Commonding me to la. Field, and Deler Sette Cotte, and Mailer Peter Gallant, with Sign. Ant. Peron, and the French Secretarn: this fift of Oliober, 1596. Gallant a rich

Your affured, E. BARTON.

Part of another Letter written likewise by the said Ambassadour from Agria, to Malter Sandy the English Confull at Aleppo.

Thinke that at your residence with me you remember how that the Grand Signior had made me grant of the libertie of all the Emperours Ambassadors his family, which now he hath performed and I base feut them bymy Drogueman unto the Emperour, enen twentie eight persons of which number dinert were Gentlemen of account, fo that I hope my fermice therein fall be gracefull to bis highneffe, and deespeable to his Maiestie, and of delight to you and the rest my good friends, whom I could not leave unadmifed thereof, at alike of the Manfalling of the Batta, and fucceffe of Abraham Batta, late high Treafuper , now Baffa of that place, to whom, as to my very good friends , I will earneftly commend you, and the reft of my Countriemen and friends of c.

The Polifb Ambassadour departed from Agria, having with him three Innifaries, and two Girles, which the lanifaries tooke at Agria the fame day, the Ambassadonr having occasion to goe to the Baffa, at his returne his Chaufes carried him through the Citie of Agria, which was

burned and spoyled to the ground, and lying a mile beyond the Towne, vpon a great Plaine. the poore Christians that were licenced to depart out of the Cafile, lay all flaine there scattered. Returning back, we faw under the Castle wals of Christians that were slaine at the siege a great number heaped up together close to the wall, about two fathome high, all naked frying in the Sonne belides in divers other places many more. Comming along to our Pauillion, wee faw with certaine lanifories fine women and children, the one of time yeeres, and the other fucking the mothers breft; thole women and children the lanifaries made purchase of, at rendring vp of the Citie, and the Castle of Agria. The Girle of fine yeeres of age, the Ambassadour bought for ten Chekines; Here the Grand Signior stayed till the Castle was againe repaired.

CHAP. 10. Dangerous battell to the Turke, difmall to the Christians.

The tenth, came newes that Christians were within three daies journey of the Campe, whervpon Gieffer Baffa, and the Beglerbie of Grecia, were fent to view the Christians Campe : who more ventrous then wife, entring the clawes of the Christians, were wholly discomfitted, & most of their retinue flaine, and parfued to the Turk campe; for which cause they were both deposed. Yet Affan Baffa was preferred to the Beglerbie of Grecia, which fine daies before was taken from him. Now Cigalla was made General together with Affan Baffa, and appointed to go on the Chriflians: but Agria wals being already repaired, the Grand Signior refolued himselfe to go in person. and departed from Agria on the fourteenth, travelling all that day, till about Quindie, then came to spread his Tents or Paullions. Next morning proceeding on his journey, about ten of the clocke hee came in fight of the Christians, and within halfe an houre after, began to skirmish with them, they being intrenched neere to their Campe, by two old Churches or Chappels vpon a great Plaine, neere to a long puddle or Mare ground, of fome foure miles long, all alongst a fmall banke or hill, in breadth some senen or eight Rods; and beyond this, vpon this hill or banke aforefaid, had the Christians incamped themselves. About mid-day, at the approaching of the Grand Signier, they skirmished freshly, and some Turkes intrenched themselves neere vnto one of these Churches aforesaid, these continuing all day skirmishing, as aforesaid, where both fides flewed great valour, but small bloud fhed, in respect of such infinite forces as were there.especially of Turkes. The lanifaries in particular, brauely entred the Christians Trenches, but not being seconded, were most of them put to the Sword; and the Christians perceiping no feconds, valiantly marched forwards, and gained the Tarkes Trenches, put them to flight with 30 fome flaughter. Now the night approaching, and raine withall, the Grand Signior retired with his Pauilions, fome mile off : the Ambaffadour also with his companie, feeking to plant themfelues for that night, not finding his carriages, was conftrained to rest in the open field without any Tent, or ought elfe ouer his head, and neither meat nor drinke. The Ambaffador was faine to fend two of his lanifaries to feeke for somewhat for him and his Companie as also for their Hora fes: at length they brought fome twelve Okes of Bisket, whereof fome part wee eate, and the reft gaue our Hories: also Beniamin Bufbop having formerly vnder Agria bought a Duichman. Slave to the Turks, who riding all day with vs, and being ill at eafe, the same night he dyed with

The fixteenth, when after a troublesome night, approached the day, that bloudy day, that 40 dreadfull day to the Turkes, but most vnfortunate to the Christians : In the morning newes being brought, that the Christians had forfaken the Torkes Trenches, and retired to their owne: the Turkib Horse-men that seeing, assaulted them valiantly, and though they found good incounter, yet repulsed the Christians. Now againe, when the Christians had fee their forces in good order, they brought their maine campe forth, and foone repelled the Twiks, where the poore lanifaries, being Foot-men, were all put to the Sword, fome two thousand persons, the Christians feeing the Tierker flie, followed in braue Martiall manner : The Foot-men Harquebufes, before them the light Artillerie, and after them the Horse-men in warlike manner, whose approaching fo terrified the Turkes, that without respectof their Emperour, and their livings depending on him, they fled in most shamefull wife, so that the Christians without resistance, approached even nigh the Pavilions of the Grand Signiar. At which time I leave to the world, to confi-50 der what fright the Grand Signior was in, leeing all his Armie flie; yet incouraged by some about him of his chiefe Officers, caused his Banners Imperiall, to march forwards vpon the Christians; and he with his Bow and Arrowes shot thrice, and as some say, slue three Christians. Now the Tartars, for feare of the Harquebuses, gathered themselves about the Grand Signior his Pavillion, and houering a little off, and Hafan Baffa who had the charge of the reward (left the Christians Horse should affault the Grand Signior on the backe fide) approaching with all the Grecian light

den fo frighted, that the Horle-men forfaking the Artillerie and guard of the Foot-men, fled 60 without order, and being parfued, many of them were flaine; but the poore footmen foone incompassed by the troopes of Turkes Horie-men, were all most cruelly without blow offering or shew of refillance, put to the Sword; many of the Horse-men by benefit of the night, escaped to the Mountaynes of Agria

The feuenteenth in the morning, there came to the Ambaffadors Pauillion , two great Chanfes

horsemen, who taking the right side of the Christians, were al ready on the face encountred with

those who inturoned the Grand Signior , and on the other side, by the Tartars, were on the fud-

CHAP. XI.

The Transls and Adventures of Captaine IOHN SMITH divers parts of the world, begun about the

His Travels thorow France. Italie . and on the Sea coults of Europe, Africa, and Alia: His entertainment and exploits in the Emperours warres against the Luckes his fubrile Stratagems , walorens Combatt, Applanfe, Adnancement, Honour.

N his youth, when France and Netherlands had saught him trained to the first ball. France class which fich radiments of Warren III sender resers in this had referred to the first ball the first ball the first ball the working and trains the first ball the first fortune against the Twite. Opportunitie casting him into the companie of the Lord Defortune against the Twite. foure French Gallants well attended , fayning to him they were denoted that company coo

way; our-privated him in the Low Countries, to goe with them into France; can him of his with fach ill weather a winter affordeth, in the darke night they arried in the black flash of inlet of S. Valerers in Piccardie. A worse winter, and darker night accompanied him, namely his and Money. French Gallants; which, liking well his apparell, and thinking him better furnished with mos ney then themselves, plotted with the Master of the ship, who conneyed them and his Trunks ashoare; and left him aboord till the Boat could returne, which was not till next day towards evening. The reason he alleaged was, the Sea was so high he could come no sooner: And that his pretended French Lord was gone to Amient, where they would flay his comming. Which treacherous villanie, when divers other Souldiers Patengers had understood, they had like to have flaine the Mafter: and had they knowne how, would have runne away with the ship.

One of the Souldiers, called Currismer, compatitionating his laturie, affured him this great currismer, Lord Depress, was onely the fonne of a poore Lawyer of Mariaine in Bas Bristagine, and his at-d kind Free tendants Curfel, La Nelie, and Monferat, three younger Broehers, as arrant cheaters as himfelfe; men. and if he would accompanie him, he would bring him to their friends, and in the interim supplie his wants. Thus tranelling by Diep, Codobock, Honflen, Pount Rodemer in Normandie, they Die came to Caen in Bai Normande. Where both the Noble Emrianner, and many of his friends & kindly welcommed him, and brought them to Mortaine, where hee found their friends, as bee Carn. had promifed him, but to small purpose. Yet the bruit occasioned the Ladie Columber, the Baron Lariban, the Lord Shafee, and divers other honourable perions to supplie his wants , and to give him kind entertainment with them, to recreate himfelfe as long as he would. But fuch pleafures little futed with his poore effate : and his reftleffe fpirit could never find content to receive fuch Heemen carnoble faucurs as he could neither deserve, nor requite. Whereupon, wandring from Port to Port, fell, & wounds to find some Man of Warre, he spent that he had, and in a Forrest, neere dead with griefe, a rich him in fight. Farmer found him by a faire fountaine vnder a tree. This kind Pefant relieued him againe to his Theeues fall content, to follow his intent. Not long after, as he passed through a great Groue of trees betwixt Pounter for and Dinan in Brittaigne, it was his chance to mest Curfell, more milerable then the true man. himselfe. Without any word they both drew, and in a short time Carfell fell to the ground : Earle of Player, where from an old ruinated Towne the Inhabitants feeing them, were farisfied, when they Saint Male 50 heard Carfell confesse what formerly had passed; and that in the dividing what they had stoline Saint Middle, from him they full by the area among them fallows, have for the dividing what they had foline Saint Middle, Lamber Saint from him they fell by the cares among themselves: but for his part hee excused himselfe to be Prices, Landon

innocent, as well of the one as of the other. In regard of his hurt, Smith was glad to bee for places of more rid, directing his course to an histogram. in France) with his two brethren had beene brought vp in England; by whom he was better reRome,
furnished then euer. When they had shewed him Saint Mato, Mount Saint Michael, Lambal,
Robell, Saint Brienx, Lanion, and their owne faire Castle of Tunkadeck Guigan, and divers other places gordeaux, in Brittaigne, and their Corewall; taking his leaue he tooke his way to Rener, the Brettons chiefe Bainst.
Citie; and so to Nantes, Poptiers, Rochell, and Bordeaux. The rumour of the strength of Bayon Lister in Boarn. in Biskay caused him to see it : And from thence tooke his way from Leskar in Bearn , and Pom Carcassen. 60 in the Kingdome of Namarre to Tolonfe , Vizers , and Carcaffon in Gafcoigne; Narbonne, Mont - Nyfmes. pellier, Ny fines, and Poundegale, in Langedock, and through the Countrey of Aumion by Arles, Marcille in to Merfelles in Prouence.

words also.

1360

from the Balla, who willed him to goe with them to view the place where the Christians had encamped themselues: which he did, taking foure lanizaries, his owne two Chauses, two Spaheis, and his owne men. Now miffing one of his lanizaries, his fellow not having feene him all that day, riding along at the entrance of the Christians Campe, found the faid Innizarie flaine, whom the Ambastador shewed the Chanses, & so past along; the foresaid Chanses shewed the Ambaliadour what place they had chosen for their Armie; which, if they had kept theme Schoes within that compasse, and let the Turkes affault them still as they began, and they but to defend themselues, in small time would have wearied the Turkes, and done them great damage. and little burt to themselves: for onely but at two muddy watery places (by the foresaid old Chappels) could the Tarkes come neere them to doe any great harme : for hardly could a Horse to valle, for being layed in, to that no possibilitie was for the Christians to have any great repulse But passing those places, assaulting and skirmishing with the Turkes was their overthrow. Three thele Changes led the Ambassador from the one end to the other, which is about two miles long, and a very great Plaine, and Woods at the end thereof. There was all their Ordnance left behind them, and much Armour which the Christians that fled cast away to goe with more speed when the Turkes purfued them fo neere. When they came to the end thereof, fome which fled, being ouertaken lav flayne, both Horie-men and Foot-men. There was left great flore of wheat Meale, Bread, Butter, Cheefe, Bacon, Saulages, Brefe, and other prouision. Now, the Amhaffador returned to his Pauillion, bringing thefe two Chanfes with him to dinner; which done they tooke their leave and departed. After this conquest, the Grand Signior rested in his Paul. 20 lions there three dayes. The nineteenth, the Grand Signior rayled his whole Armie, bending his course homewards.

arriving at Conftantinople on Sunday, being the twelfth of Decemb. 1596. at which time he was recented with great pompe, and before his entrance, the An balladour, being placed by the chiefe Vizere, that when the Grand Signior came, hee went and faluted him, as the manner amongst them is, and kiffed his hand; which done he returned to his Horfe. The Agent aforefaid with a fresh Horse, and a troope of more then twelve met; having met him foure miles off from Constant timople, and about midday came to his owne house in the Vines of Pera, God be thanked, and his holy and bleffed Name, for this, and our preferuation in fo dangerous a Voyage, and for all other his infinite goodnesse rowards vs be praised for euermore. Amen.

The Ambassador reported to Master Iohn Sanderson, that the Hodice or Schoole-master of the

Great Turke, encouraged him in this extremitie to get upon his Horfe, wrapping himselfe in Mahomets Flag, and to take these three * Arrowes, and shoot them toward the Christians Campe vine their This body flag, may to large toogs to real forms of the most of the country of th

The Reader may informe himfelfe more fully of this Battel, and the Christians spoile through greedineffe of spoile, in Knolles, or other Writers of the Turkif Sorie. This our Author hath a to written his Voyage, from thence fent by the Ambaffador into Poland, also from Conflantinople 40 to Tringlis in Swis. 1601, from Conftantinople to Aleppo, 1602, into England, 1602, and agains from Confrantinople to England, 1604. But I feare my Reader will bee wearie of Turkie: from whence yet yee may not, hall not depart, till yee have beene made spectators of a Tragicall Comedie, and a Comicall Tragedie (Comicall, I hope to vs, if the finnes of Christendome preuent not, to the Turkes a Tragedie) the most dismall that ever yet befell the Ottomans. In the first, the same man is both Author and Actor; in the next, you have a Chorsons, to whom wee owe much for this, for former his learned and honourable seruices, both full of Raritie and Varietie, the parents of Wonder and Delight.

CHAP.

Xxxxxx a

Hon-

CHAP. 11. S.I.

There embarking himfelfe for Italie, the thip was inforced to Toulon; and putting against Sea, ill weather to grew vpon them , they anchored close abourd the shoare, under the little He 40 of Saint Marie against Ries in Sauor. Here the inhumane Provincials with grabble of Pigins of churs Nations going to Rome, hourely corfed him not onely for a Hagonot, but fild, his Nation were all Pirats; rayling on his dread Sourraigne Queene Elizabeth, and that they neuer should have faire weather so long as he was abourd them. There disputations grew to that Enterrayed were no Inhabitants. The next morning hee sipied two fining more nicely them, put in by by a bindings the florme; which fetched him abord, well refreshed him, and fo kindly vied him, that hee Chaptanes was well contented to trie the reflore him continued in the florme. this former discourse: what for pitie and for lone of the Honourable Earle of Ployer, this Noble Britton his neighbour, Captaine La Rolhe of Saint Malo, regarded and entertayned him. With 50 the next faire wind they layled along by the coast of Lufter, and Sardinis, and crofting the Guilfe of Tune, pailed by Cape Buna, to the lit of Lumpaide, a leating the coast of Barbare till they came at Cape Rofate, and to along by the African shoare for Alexandria in Egypt. Thee having delivered their fraught, they went to Scanderone; and after keeping their course by ()prus, and the coast of Asia; tayling by Rhodes, the Archipelague, Candia, and the coast of Gratia, and the Ile Cephalonia; they lay to and againe a few dayes, betwixt the Ile of Corfu, and the Cape of Otranto in the Kingdome of Naples, in the entrance of the Adrianche Sea, till they mette with an Argofie of Venice, which it feemes, the Captaine defired to fpeake with : whole vntoward answer was such as slue them a man. Whereupon presently the Britton gave them his broad fide, then his flearne, and his other broad fide allo; and continued his chafe Peeces till hee game to many broad fides one after another, that the Argofier Sayles and tackling were to tome that thee flood to her defence, and made that fine for thot. Twice in one houre and halte the Brittons boorded her, yet they cleered them selves. But clapping her aboord againe, the Argosies fired him, with much danger to them both , but was prefently quenched. This rather augmen-

ted the Brettons rage, then abated his courage; and having re-accommodated himselfe againe. ten the pressons rage, then abated in scoulage, and many to finke; then they yeelded. The Brettons loft fifteene men, fhee twentie, besides diners hurt: the rest went to worke on all Brettons loft htteene men, line rwente, nemues nurses nurs, one ret went to worke on all hands some to they the leaker or others to guard the prifoners, which were chaymed; the relit to draphe isken rifie her. The Silkes, Veluets, Cloth of gold, and Tiffue; Peafters, Chickines, and sultranies, and rified by a rified they ynloaded in foure and twentie houres in wonderfull fore; whereof having fufficient; and they ynloaded in foure and twentie houres in wonderfull fore; whereof having fufficient; and they ynloaded in foure and twentie houres in wonderfull fore; whereof having fufficient; and tyred with toyle, they care her off with all her companie, with as much good Merchandize as would have fraughted such another Britton. To repaire his defects he flood for the coaft of Calabria; but hearing there were fixe or leven

Galleys at Melina, he departed thence for Malta : but the winde comming faire, hee kept his course along the coast of the Kingdome of Sicilia, by Sardinia and Corfice, till hee came to the course atong the coart of the England on thouse, with five hundred Chickenes, and a Smith fer on little Box which he had, worth neere as much more. Here he embarqued himselfe for Legione, thouse at Antibeing glad to have such an oportunitie and meanes to better his experience, by the view of I. be, in Pienose. talie : and haung paffed Tufcatte, Ucterbo and many other Cities, as Rome, and Saint Peters Pa Legate, or Li trimonic, he went downe the River Tyber, to Cinita Vecha: where hee embarqued himselfe to trimonie, he went cowine the nine: 1907, to this is even tritte for entangled infinite to fished his eye with the faire Citie of Nople; and her Kingdomes Noblitity extruming by Capua, Rome, and Sand, he palled by that admired Citie of Florence, the Cities and Countries of Bala. Rome;

Kome, and Siena, ne paned by that admired Citie of Funence, the Cities and Countries of Date. Asset. nia, Ferrara, Mantaa, Padua, and Venice: whose Gulfe he passed from Malamace, and the A. Siena. 20 dristiche Sea for Ragoue, I pending sometime to see the barren broken Coaft of Albania and Flattice, &c.

dristices ver to a square, personing to the Mayne of poore Selatonia, by Tublismo, till lice came
Dalmatia, to Cape de Ifria, trau-lling the Mayne of poore Selatonia, by Tublismo, till lice came
Selatonia, to Grate. In Stiria, the Seat of Ferdinando an Arch-duke of Anifria, (now Emperour of Al-Grate in Stiria) maine) where hee met an English and an Irish Iesuite: who acquainted him with many brane Proposed Gentlemen of good qualitie: especially with the Lord Ebers baught, to whom hee gaue experiments of such conclusions, as he protected to undertake thee preferred him to Baron Kizell, Ge-

ing to riessa in raistra, ner mate init appaint to two insistra ana itrie southers, ynder whole Regiments how he spent his time, this infune Discourie will declare, as it is written in Booke intitude, The Warres of Translatant, Willachi, and Modania, written by Francisco Feringra 2 Learned Italian, Secretarie to Sigismundus Bather the Prince. HONDIVS his Map of Transiluania.

nerall of the Artillery : and he to a worthy Colonell, the Earle of Meldritch , with whom going to Vienna in Auftria, hee made him Captaine of two hundred and fiftie Souldiers, vnder



Extracts of Captaine Smiths Transylvanian Acts, out of Fr. Fer. his Storie.

Fter the leffe of Camiza, the Turkes with twentie thousand besieged the strong Towns of Olim-A Feer the loffe of Caniza, the 1 Wikes more and intelligence and hope of succour, till Iohn Smith an Englith Gentleman, acquainted Baron Kizell, Generall of the Archo Dukes Artillerie, that he had taught the Generall his worthy Friend, such a Rule, that hee would undertake to make him know any taugos the General ne wattey truma, suc a n.me; son, ever ween watersact to make om those we thin he intended, and have bis Answer; would they bring him but to some place, where he might make the stame of a Tarch scene to the Towne. Kizell inflamed with this strange insention; Smith made to it so plaine, that forth-with he gave him Guides, who in the darks night brought him to a Munitaine, where he hemed three Torches equi-distant from each other, which plainly appearing to the Towne. the Gouernour presently apprehended: and answered agains with three other fires in like manner, each thus commence preferring approximates. some adjusted against missistence was just in any manner, each that knowing the others being and intent. Smith, though diffast fear misse, fignificate burnted burnted words.

On Thurdey at night! will charge on the Eath, at the Alarme fally you: Eberlfanghe aniwered he would.

And thus it was done, First, be writ his Message, as brieft you fee, as could be; then Speech by dissided the Alphabet in two parts thus: A B C D E F G H I K L with one Light, the other Agood firm Letters following with two, M N O P Q R S T V W X Y Z, The first part from A to L is fignified by howing and histing one Linke fo oft as there is Letters from A to that Letter, you meane: the other part from M to L, is mentioned by two Light: in like mauner; the end of a word is figui. 20

field by henving of three Lights, ever flaying your Light at that Letter, you meane, till the others write it in a Paper, and asswere by his signall, which is one Light. It is done, beginning to account the Letters, by the Lights enery time from A or M : by this meanes , also the other returned his An-(were , thereby each understanding other. The Guides all this time, having well viewed the Campe, returned to Kizell, who doubting of his power, being but twentie thou and, was animated by the Guide: which related that the Turkes were so divided by the River in two parts, that they could not easily second Another fire each other. To which Smith added this conclusion, that two or three thousand pieces of Match, fusiened to divers small Lines of two bundred fathome in length, beeing armed with Powder, might allbee fired and firetebed at one initant, before the Alarme, wom the Plaine of Eyfmburge, supported betweene two stances, at each Lines end: in that manner, would seeme as if they were so many Musketiers : which 30

was fo put in practice, as being discoursed by the Turkes, they prepared to encounter these false fires, thinking there had bin some great Armie whilf Kizell with his Forces entred the Turkes quarter. They now ranne up and downe as men amazed , and it was not long ere Eberspaught was pill mell with them in their Trenches : in which distracted confusion , a third part of the Turkes that beseem in sour crows a source were laine, many of the rest drawned, and field the fieed that fide cowards Konbrucke were laine, many of the rest drawned, and field the other part of the Armie was to buffed to refit the falle fire; that Kizell before the morning had put in two thou fand good Souldiers into the Towne, and with finall lefte was retyred; the Garrifon was allowell relieved with that which they found in the Turkes Quarter: Which canfed the Turkes to rayse their Siege, and returne to Ganiza, and Kizell with much bonour was received at Kerment : and occasioned the Author a good reward and preferment, to bee Captaine of two bundred and fiftie Soul- an

diers, under the conduct of Colonell Meldrich. A generall Rumour of a generall Peace, now spread it selfe all ouer the face of those tormented 250. Souldiers. Countries: but the Turke intended no fuch matter, but levied Souldiers from all parts he could, and the Emperour also by the assistance of the Christian Princes, provided three Armies : the one led by the Arch-duke Matthias, the Emperours Brother, and his Lieftenant Duke Mercurie to defend tow Hungariesthe second by Ferdinando the Arch-duke of Stiria and the Duke of Mantua his Leistenant to re-

gaine Caniza: the third by Don Gonfago Gonernour of high Hungaric to toyne with Balta to make an absolute Conquest of Transiluania. Duke Mercurie with an Armie of thirtie thousand (whereof neere ten thousand were French) be-

The fiege of

fieged Stolewiserburg, otherwise called Alba Regalis, a place so strong by art and nature that it was so thought impregnable. There hapened many a bloudie fally, strange stratagems and valiant Exploits on bothsides by severall Nations; but in briefe, Earle Meldritch by the information of three or foure Christians escaped out of the Towne. Captaine Smith tooke occasion upon the great Assemblies, thronging together at enery Alarme, to put in practice the sierie Dragons, which hee had demonstrated him and the Earle Von Sults at Comora, which he thus performed. After hee had prepared fortie or fiftie Earthen round bellied Pots prepared, with mixtures, Powder and Bullets, as experiences had taught him, (though with exceeding danger) he fo fitly placed them in (lings, graduated so neere as they could to these Affemblies, and other places of advantage, that at mid-night upon the Alarme, it was a fearefull fight to fee the short flaming course of their flight in the Ayre : but presently after the fall, the lamentable may fe of the miserable flaughtered Turkes was most terrible; besides, they fired that strong Sub- 60 webe, at the Port of Buda, in two or three places, which so troubled the Turkes to guench, that had there beene any meanes to have assauled them, they could hardly have resisted fire and their Enemies.

This Citie being taken by the incredible Adventures of the Duke, the Earle Roleworme with the other Cotonelland Captaines, which had beene in possession of the Turkes, more then fiftie yeares: the Turke sent presently Asan Basta with theescore thousand, if it were possible to re-gaine it : the Duke Tutke sem presents and the Line Line and met bim: where five or fixe thousand were staine, with the A Battell, and under flanding this, with twentie thousand met bim: where five or fixe thousand were staine, with the A Battell, and Baffa of Buda, and foure or fine Zanzackes.

Duke Mercurie duniding his Armie, Sent the Earle Meldrich (of whose Company was Captaine Smith in this encounter) to affit the Lord Basta, Generall for the Emperor Roduiph, against Speifmundus Bathur, the Prince of Transil lania: who was beyond all mens beliefe, newly returned from Polonia : and established in his Estate: the Earle neither finding pay, nor such regard as he expected, per-Goaded bis Troupes rather to ferne the Prince squinft the Turkes, then Balta against the Prince. The Smildiers worns out with these paylesse Tranels, upon hope to make Bootie of what they could get from the la Turke, were easily persmaded to follow him whereformer : especially to beloe to re-gaine or ransacke his Lurke, were easis personate to journ num warryones: especially conject or equive or ranged the Euther Country then psss significably the Turkes, which (they hard) nonthiblanding these sweet extended to specially the prince glad of so ab must a Communiter, and so many expert and ancient twith and top-special the prince glad of so ab must a Communiter, and so many expert and ancient Smilders, made him Campe, master of his Armie, gave him all necessaries est be could, and what

freedome they de fired to ranfacke the Turkes. The Earle basing made many incursions into the Land of Zarkain, among it the rockie Mountaines,

where the people were some Turkes, some Tartars, some Iewes, but most Banditos, Renegadoes, and such like which somether the forced into the Plaines of Regall; where is a Citie, not only of men and Regalbefleged. process, more synchronic to the state of the

be pitched his Camre before it. The lubabitants scorning so small a number, sallied in such abundance, that about one bunds 1 and fiftie were slaine on both sides, and the Turkes chased so necre the Ports, that

the Towers (mall fost and Ordnasce canfed the Earle to retyre.

The next day Zachell Movzes, Linetenant Generall to the Prince, came with foure thousand Foote and Horse, and foure and twente Peeces of Ordnance, but in regard of the situation of the place . they did more feare then hurt them : till they had Bent neere a moneth in raising their Mounts and Batteriess which flow proceeding the Furkes datiy derided, and as fearing least they bould depart ere they assaulted the Citie fent this challenge to any Captaine in their Armie: That to delight the Ladies who did long Three fingle to fee some Courtlike aftime, the Lord Turbashaw did defie any Captaine that had the command of a combant 30 Companie, which durst cumbet with him for his head. The matter being discussed, was accepted. But The first onely Companie, would care to the undertaking, that it was desided by lots, and the lot fell upon Captaine with Lances. Smith, before floken of, Trucc being taken for that time, the Rampiers all befet with faire Dames, Mannerof and men in Armes, the Christians in Batalia; Turbashaw, with a voice of Hoboyes entred the field, well Turbashas enmounted and armed : on his kon'ders were fixed two pairs of great wings, richly garnifed with gold, trance, filmer, and precious stones, a lamitarie before bim, bearing bis Launce; on each side, another leading bis Horsewiere long he stayed not before Smith with anoise of Trumpets (onely a Page bearing his Lance). C.Smitheners. passing his more passing his Lance). charge be paffed the Turke thorow the fight of his beaner, face, head, and all, that hee fell dead to the Turbella Baine

accepted it, and with ioy to the whole Armie, he was generally welcome. The death of this Captaine, fo swelled in the heart of one Grualgo his vowed friend, as rather inra. The second the dearn of tone captains;) promote the dearn of the Conquerous to regaine his friends combat twist ged with madnesse then choller he directed a particular Challenge to the Conquerous to regaine his friends. ged with madnesses to outer, or according to this desire, was also with Pi-bead, or lose his owne, with his Horse and Armour for advantage; which, according to his desire, was also with Pithe next day undertaken, as before. Vpon the found of the Trumpets their Launces flew in pieces, apon fool acleere piffage, but that the Turke was neere unborfed : their Pistols were the next, which marked Smith upon the Placket; but the next shot, the Turke was so wounded in the left arme, that not able to Grudde flaine. rule his Horse, and defend himselfe, he was throwne to the ground, and so bruised with the fall that he lost

ground; where all ghting, unbracing his Helmet, he took off his head, leasing the Turkes his body, and

10 foreturned without any hurt at all. The head he presented to the Lord Moyzes the Generall, who handle

his bead, as his friend before him, with his Horse and Armour; but his bodie and his rich apparell was en fent backe to the Towne.

Every day the Turkes made some sallies, but few shirmishes would they indure to any purpose, our workes and approaches being not yet advanced to that beight, and effect as necessive required. To delude time, Smith with many incontradictable personading reasons, obtained leave, that the Ladies might know he was not to much enamored with their Servants heads, but if any Turke of their ranke would come to the place of Combat to redeeme them, hee should have his a so upon the like conditions, if they could winne it. The Challenge presently was accepted by Buny Mulgro. The next day both the Champions en- Third combas tring the field, as before, each discharging their Pistols, having no Launces, but such martiall weapons with Battle as the Defendant had appointed, no burt was done. Their Rattle-axes were the next, whole piercing bils Axes. made sometimes the one, sometimes the other, to have scarce sence to keepe their Saddles: especially the

60 Christian received such a wound, that he lost his Battle-axe, and failed not much to have fallen after c. Smith enis whereat the supposing conquering Turke had a great show from the Rampiers. The Turke profecu-dangered. ted his advantage to the ottermoss of his power: yet the other, what by the readinesse bis Horse, and Dr.w.s his his independent and dexternite in such a hissingle beyond all mens expectation, by Gods assistance, not only his Every anoyded the Turkes violent blowes, but having drawne bis Faulchion , pierced the Turke so under the Molyro.

Smith made

His honorable

Cullets through backe and body, that although be alighted from his Horfe, hee flood not long ere beeloft his bead, as the rest had done. This good successe game such incouragement to the Armie, that with a guard of sixe thousand three

pare Horses, before each, a Turkes bead upon Launces, bee was conduited to the Generals Panilions with his presents. Moyles received both him and them with as much respect as the occasion deserved. imbracing him in his armes, gaue him a faire Horse richly furnished, a Cymiter and Belt worth three most using tim in the armes, gane time a jant time j interpretation of bit Regiment. The Towne with an incredible trouble and danger was affaulted, and at last taken perforce, where the Earle remembring his Fathers death, canfed all be could find beare Armes to be put to the Sword, and their heads to bee fet work

there again, canjed an occomia from ware as mer as they had ferned the Christians when they tooke it. In Then be facked Varatzo, Solmos, and Kuprouka, whereto hadretired the remnant of this Den of west Caproules. Theenes, leaning fine thou fand dead (though be lost neere as many, yet) with all the sport and two thou. fund prifeners (most women and children) be returned to Esenberge , not farre from the Princes Pallace, where bee meamped. The Primes comming to view the Armie, presented with the Prisoners, and fixe and librite Ensignes (after his accustomed manner, basing given thankes to God) be was acquainted what fernice Smith had done at Olimpach, Stolewisenberge, and Regall; for which, with great bonor and feleminite, he gane him three Turkes heads in a Shield for Armes, with an oath ener to weare

Prince of Tran-

filmin bonoreth Caponia them in his Colura, his piliure in gold, and three handred Ducksty sereth for a possible.

Smith.

During all this time, Batha and the Prime being capitulating of a peace, the Emperonr badausfed

new forces for Batha to immade Transiliannia; which caused the Prince to condescend to the Articles. propounded bim : which when Moyles understood, then in field with the whole Armie (that hard the 20 Rloudie battell Germans as all as Turkes) be game battell to Balta. Betwixt them in fixe or fenen boures , more then of Christians. fixe or fener thousand on both sides were staine. Moyies thus onerthrowne fled to the Turkes, and his Gatterea Troopes, some one way, some another. The Prince excused himselfe of this unexpelled accident, made composition for his dispersed Troopes, yeelded himselfe to Bassa; and all his Countres and Subsects to the Emperours obedsence.

Substitute to the Emperoure, obcaience.

Built about policified of Transitianis, drew all the Christians, of those old Regiments of Sigifmundus, of those of mole greatmiss and true affections, be not most significant, under the conduct of Rodoll Voyaud of of mole greatmiss and true affections, be not much significant to the Walachia, forced out by Ictramy, put in by the Turke. In this Armic of therite thousand, Capation Smith was one, who Ornade his molec Canoull beliant to the same factors be dud before) and many fewerall 30 meets under implements in energy dangerous incensors; which would be too volumnmous particularly to relate, before they could draw Prince letemy to battaile; where (as it is recorded) two thousand on both sides, lay Wildely dead in the fields; but I cremy fied, and Rodol bad the wiltorie, and thereby againe his Somerannie.

the Vayued of twixt the two Thirtie thoufand Tarters.

Meldrich not long after with thirteene thouland, was fent against the try aging to gard Tropte of Ieremy, which soming with some Tartars, forraged the frontiers towards Moldania; but when they heard is was the Crimme Tartar and his two former, with thirtie thou fand, and that Leremy which had of caped, Lay with fifteens thou fand in Ambufcado for him, about Langanow, bee retired towards Rocenton, a frong Garison for Rodoll : But they were so insuranced with these bellish numbers, that they could make no great baile for hormshing with their Security and Forragers: Tet by getting through a wood in a their Fog, meeting two thoughout leaden with pillage, and two or three bundred Horfe and Cattell, the mift 40 them were flaine or taken prisoners, who told Meldrich where leremy lay, expelling the Crimme Terear. Meldrich estending semile by bin bit passes of the commendated two or three bundled principles. Captaine Smith, which presently seacommodated two or three hundred Trankes, with wild-fire opon the boast of Launces, where my the enemie in the might, game from the Tunings, which blattle on the boast of Launces, where my the enemie in the might, game from the Tunings, which blattle prior high figures and flarely, amazing use ones; the Horfe but also the Fost, that by the meants of this flaming incumer, their owne Horfes turned tailes with fusch finne, as by their wislence enerthrew Icremy and his Armie, without any loffe at all to Meldrich. But of this victorie they not long triumphed ; for, being within three leagues of Rotenton , in the Valley of Verest Horne ; the Tartar with fortie thousand had so beset him, that they were forced to sight with this matchlesse number where neere fortse thousand had so beset him, that they were sorten boundred escaped, but the rest were all slaine 50 thirtie thousand were slaine. The Earle, with some sifteene hundred escaped, but the rest were all slaine 50 or taken prisoner: a sthe Historica at large will plainly shew, the times, place, chiefe Commanders, with the manuner and order of their battels, and fights, to which I referre you.

A memorable

ð. II.

Diners valiant English-men in this battell. Captaine Smith taken, fold, fent into Turkie, and ouer the Black Sea to Tartaria. His admirable escape and other trauels in divers parts of Christendome.



N this dismall battell, Nederspol, Veltus, Zarnana, Manazo, Banell, and many other Earles, Barois, Colonels, Captaines, braue Gentlemen and Souldiers were flaine. Giue me leaue to remember the names, and honor the memories of our owne Country-men in those exploits, which as resolutely as the best, in the defence of Christ

and his Gospell ended their daies, Batchelor, Hardwicke, Thomas Milemay, Robert Mullynax. Englishmen and its Groupen enter their dates, Danylon, Nicholas Williams, and one lobe the Scot. Thefe flaine, all did what men could doe, and when they could doe no more, left there their martyred bodies. in teltimonie of their Martiall minds, onely Enfigne Carlton, and Sergeant Robinson escaped. Ensigne Carlton in teitimonie of their Martiali minds, onely imnigne Lariton, and Sergeant Robinjan elcaped. Badgac cetton
But Smith amongit the flaughtered dead bodies, with toyle and wounds lay groung, till being and Sergean
and Sergean
Ground by the Pillagers that he was able to line, and perceiving by his Armour and habit, that his found by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine, and percenting by the Pillagers that he was able to fine able to fine and the Pillagers that he was able to fine able they yied him till his wounds were cured, and at Axopolis they were all brought into the Market place and stripped, that the Merchants might see their limbs and wounds, (who had Ser-

to many youn purpose to try their strengths) and there fold like beasts. Smith fell to the share of Captaine units your purpose to try their iterigens, and there a took made beauty control to the litare of Balha Bogal, who fent him forth-with to Andronophis, and lo for Confisionisphe to his fire Mi-firi for a Slane. By twentie and twentie chained by the necke, they marched in Fyle to this great Citie, where they were delinered to their feuerall Masters, and he to his young Charatan Trigobig z ands.
This Noble Gentlewoman tooke fometimes occasion to shew him to some friends, or rather

to speake with him, and because she could speake Italian, would fame her felfe sicke when shee should goe to the Benies, or weepe ouer the graves, to know how Bogall tooke him Prisoner. and if he were, as Bogall writ to her, a Bobennen Lord conquered by his hand, with many more which he had with him, whom hee would prefent her ere long, whose ransomes should adorne 20 her with the glory of his Conquests. But when thee heard him protest he knew no such matter, nor had euer seene Bogall till hee bought him at Axopolis, and that hee was an Enelift man, onely by his adventures made a Captaine in those Countries : to try the truth. shee found meanes to find out many which could speak English, French, Datch, and Italian; to whom he relating the most part of those former passages, (which they honestly reported to her) shee tooke as it feemed, much compation on him. But having no vie for him, leaft her mother should fell him, the fent him to her Brother the Tymer Balbam of Nalbris, in the Country of Cambra

But let vs remember his passing notes in the speculative course from Configurationple, by Sander, How he was Pelus, Pannafamufa, Lastida, to Varna, an ancient Citie voon the blacke Sea, where having little fenting Tat-10 more libertie then his eies judgement, he might fee the Townes with their short Towers, in a teria. most excellent plaine, pleasant, and fertile Countrey, full of Villages, and difperfed fairs buildines, as well in Sagonia as Romania. But from Varna, nothing but the blacke Sea, till he came Varna. to the two Capes of Taur and Pergillo, which are two muddy Promontories, at the entrance of the Straight Niger, which hath a very deepe Channell, and as he connectured, ten leagues long, and three broad. At the entrance of the Difabachi Sea, are a great many of high blacke Rocks A deferipe on each fide the Channell to ones thinking, which they faid were onely Trees, Weedes, and of the Difete. Muds, throwne from the in-land Countries by the invindations, and by the violence of the Currant cast there by the Eldy : of which as they sayled, they saw many without fight of Land. feeming like high Rockes on low llands, which are onely great flats of Ofie Quagtures, where

40 infinite heapes of Trees doe flicke; and by their waight, time, and multitudes, though the boughes for, the bodies they fay, have made many of those Ofic Elats firme Land in many places: Thus sayling this Diffabachi Sea, till hee came betwixt Sufact and Carachy, onely two visible Townes appeared at the entrance of the River Bruego. In fixe or feuen daies fayle, hee faw foure or fine, feeming flrong Caffles of flone, with flat tops and Battlements about them: but arriving at Cambria, he was according to their custome, well vied. The Caftle was of a large cambrial circomference, ten or twelve foote thicke in the foundation. Some fixe foote from it a Palizado. and then a ditch round about, fortie foot broad, full of water: on the one fide of it a Towne all of low flat houses, but no great matter as it seemed ; yet it keeps all that Country in admirable ID Timore habitation, a place not of much leffe ftrength then Cambria, where fometimes refideth

awe and subjection. Three daies he rested there, then it was two daies journey to Nathris, the this Tymor Nalbrits, Brother to the Ladie Tragabigzando. To her vnkind Brother this kind Ladie writ fo much for his good vlage, that hee halte sufpected as much as she intended. For thee told him, he should there but solourne to learne the language: and what it was to be a Torke, till time made her Master of her selfe. But the Tymor her Brother diuerted, and percerted all this to the worft of crueltie : for within an houre after his arrivall, bee caused his Drugman to ftrip Shaning of him naked, and shaue his head and beard as bare as his hand, a great Ring of Iron with a long Slues, and shalke bowing like a Sickle about his neck, and a coate made of Vigrayes harre, much like Haire-hard viage. cloath, guarded about with a piece of an undreffed skinne. There were many other Christian Slaues, but more then two hundred Forsados, and he being the last, was Slaue of Slaues to them

all. Among those slauish fortunes, there was no great choile, for the best was so bad, a Dog could hardly have lived to indure: and yet for all their paines and labour, no more regarded then a Beaft. The Tymor and his friends fed vpou P. How, which is boyled Rice and Garnancis, with little bits of Mutton or Buckones, which sandy ieces of Horfe, Vlgry, or any Beaft. Sambofer and Musethirs are great dainties, and yet but round mes full of all forts of flesh chopped, with

varietie of Hearbs. Their best drinke is Coffa, made of a Graine, called Coana, boyled with water and Sherberke, which is onely Hony and Water. Mares Milke, or the Milke of any Bead they hold restorative; but all the Comminaltie drinke pure Water. Their Bread is made of this Coand, which is a kind of blacke Wheate, and Cufem a small white Seed like Millet in Birkarr. Our common victuall, was the Intrals and Offall of Horses and Vigryes; of this cut in small pieces, they will fill a great Cauldron; which being boyled, and with Cufeus put in great bowles in the manner of Chafing-diffies, they fit about it on the ground; after they have raked it through as oft as they pleafe with their fowle fifts, the remainder was for the Christian Slaues. Some of this broth they would temper with Cufem, like Butter for Fritters, and putting the fire off from the hearth, powre there a bowle full, then couer it with coales till it be baked, which fined to with the remainder of the broath, and small pieces of flesh, was an extraordinary daintie. The

better fort are attired like Turkes, but the plaine Tartar weareth lialfe a blacke Sheepes ekinne ouer his backe, two of the legges tyed about his necke, the other two about his middle; with another ouer his belly, and his legges tyed in like manner behind him: then two skinnes more made like a paire of Bases, serue him for Breeches, with a little Cap close to his skull of course blacke Felt, and they vic exceeding much of this Felt for Carpets, for Bedding, for Coates, and Idols. Their houles are much worse then your Irish: but the In-land Country hath none but Carts and Tents, which they ever remove from Countrey to Countrey, as they fee occasion, dri-No housesbut ning with them infinite troups of blacke Sheepe, Cattle, and Vigryes, eating vp all beforethem mourable

The Terrers of

For the Terror of Nage, they have neither Towne nor House, Corne nor Drinke, but Fled and Milke and line all in Hordias, three or foure thousand of them in a company, all lining in great Carts, fifteene or fixteene foot broad, which is couered ouer with small Rods, wratled together in the forme of a Birds-neft turned vowards, and with the Afhes of bones, tempered with Oyle, and a Clay they have, & Camels haire, they loome them so wel, that no weather wil piece them, and yet they are very light. Each Hordia hath a Murfe, which they obey as King. Their gods are infinite, but the Crimme Tartar and the Tauricks, obey Murifalla Mahomets chiefe Prophet, One thousand or two shousand of those glittering white Carts drawne with Camela. Deere, Bulls, and Vigryes, they bring round in a Ring, where they pitch their Campe and the Lecre, hums, and varyes, tray or no round me a may, where they precitated vampe, and the Murie with his chiefe Alliances are placed in the midd! They doe much hur when they gee say. By Strees, which are great four, when you have held to be a River we call. Calles, to them their dwell in the Country of Persolog; and would doe much more; were seen for the Challeson: Garriens that there inhabite.

All the hope he had ever to be delivered from this shouldome, was onely the lone of Tageexercia, who furely was ignorant of his bad y fage of or although he had of odebated the matter his could, who furely was generated, his had viges the although he had effected the matter with from Christine, which had been there long Mann; they could not find how to make any cleape, by any reason or possibilities, Bushford beyond Manne expediation or imagination, help the his Segunts when they least thinks of helps, as kingsnet to him. In this materials clitar, be became, I jurisher as a Sruge in an exact felled, more chen a legul from the Tymen houte. The Ball as the off yield to writer his grounds, whited hims, that so the continuous the transfer and the result him, the Kanta Sugressian all reasons, became out, his prince which his that and lesing his ethat could up the work them it was, her long the dame in the school was characteristic and the school was considered in the school when the school was considered in the school was consider Straw, filled his Knapfacke with Corne, thus the doores, mounted his Horfe, and sanne into the Defart at all aducatures: Two or three dajes thus fearefully wandring be knew not whither, and well it was her me not any to aske the way. Thus heing cisen, as one taking lease of this miterable would, God did direct him to their great way or Cultagan, as they call it, which doth croffe thele large Territories, and is generally knowne among them by thele markes.

In enery croffing of this great way, is planted a Poste, and in it formany bolts with broad in the strong or the great way, a planted a strong and the strong of the demonstrates to good, as there are water, and query bolt hath the figure painted our it, that demonstrates the good which which way leaded, a state which pointes towards the Crimmes Country, is marked 19 with a halfe Maone; if towards the China, the picture of the Sunne; if towards the Gorgians and Paffia, a blacke man full of white spots ; it towards Mufcour, the signe of a Crosse; if towards the habitation of any other Prince, the figure whereby his Standard is knowne. To his dying spirits thus God added some comfort in this melancholy journey, wherein if hee had met any of that vild beneration, they had made him their Slaue, or fent him backe againe to his Mafter. Sixteene daies he translled in this feare and torment after that croffe, till hee arrived at Axopolis, vpon the River Don, a Garrison of the Muscouits. The Governor after due examination of those hard events, tooke off his Irons, and so kindly vied him, that he thought himselfe

newly rifen from death.

The most he could learne of these wild Countries was this, that the Countries of Cambris is 60 on of Combrie, two dayes lourney from the head of the great River Briege, which springeth from many plaand his possige ces of the Mountaynes of Inagachi, that toyne themselves together in the Poole Kerkar, which they account for the head, and falleth into the Sea Diffabach : which receiveth also the River Don, and all the Rivers that fall from the great Countrey of the Circaffi, the Canaches, the Tau-

CHAP. II. Smiths flight, and state of the places twixt Tartaria and Transiluania, 1260

ricaces, Pricapes, Cumania, Coffunka, and the Crymme, through which Sea hee layled. and vo the River Bruapo to Nalbrits, and thence through the Deferts of Circaffi to Exopolis, as is related, where he stayed with the Gouernour, till the Conuoy went to Coragnam, then with his Certificate how he found him, and had examined him, with his friendly Letters he fent him by Znmalacke to Coraenam, whose Gouernor in like manner so kindly vied him, that by this means, he went with the lafe conduct to Letch & Donka, in Cologosk, and thence to Birniske, & Newerads. in Seberya, by Kezachica vpon the River Niger, in the Confines of Littuania. From whence with as much kindnesse he was conveyed in like manner by Coroskie, Duberosko, Duzibell, Dro. A faire shund hobus, and Offroge in Volonia. Shaflow and Laxes in Podolia, Halico and Colloma in Polonia, and to fine after a to to Hermonitat in Transilannia. In all his life he seldome met with more respect, mirth. content and entertaynment, and not any Gouernour where he came, but gaue him fomewhat as a Prefent besides his charges, seeing themselues subicet to the like calamitie. And because our Authour hath fo thorowly trauelled Europe, I have here presented Honding his Map of Europe.

HONDIVS bis Map of Europe.



Through those poore continually forraged Countries there is no passage, but with the Cara- His Observation mans or Convoyes; for they are Countries rather to bee pittied then enuyed, and it is a wonder tions in his any should make Warres for them. The Villages are here and there a few Houses of streight Journey to Firre-trees, laid heads and points about one another made fast by notches at the ends, more then and throug a mans height, and with broad split boards pinned together with woodden pinnes thatched for the midst of to coverture: in ten Villages you shall scarce find ten Iron Nayles, except it bee in some extraordi- Europe. narie mans House. For their Townes, Exopolis, Leb, and Donke have Rampiers made of that woodden walled-fashion, double, and betwirk them Earth and Stones, but so latched with croffe Timber, they are very strong against any thing but fire, and about them a deepe Ditch, and a Pallizado of young Firre-trees, but most of the rest have only a great Ditch cast about Yyyyyy

1370

them, and the Ditches Earth is all their Rampier, and the toppe on it round, well engironed with Palizadoes; Some haue fome few small Peeces of small Ordnance and Slings, Curriours and Muskets; but their generallest Weapons are the Ruffe Bow and Arrowes. In their waves you shall find pruements ouer Bogges, only of young Firre-trees laid crosse ouer one another for two or three hours lourney, or as the passage requires, and yet in two dayes trauell. you shall scarce see fixe Habitations. Notwithstanding, to see how their Lords, Gournours, and Captaines are civilized, well attyred and accoultred with lewels, Sables, Horses, and after their manner with curious Furniture, it is wonderfull; but they are all Lords or Slaues, which makes them fo fubicet to every Invasion.

In Transiluania he found so many good friends, that but to see and reioyce himselfe after all so those Encounters to see his Native Country, he would ever hardly have left them, though the Miracle of Vertue, their Prince was absent. Being thus glutted with content, and neere drowminate of the palled high Hungaria, By-filecke, Tocka, Caffouis, and Vinderawa, by Vimitch and With ioy; he palled high Hungaria, By-filecke, Tocka, Caffouis, and Vinderawa, by Vimitch in Morama, to Prague in Bohemia, at lat he found the most generous Prince Sigismundus with his Colonell at Lipswicke in Misenland, who gave him his passe, intimating the service hee had done. and the honours he had received with fifteene hundred Duckets of Gold to repaire his loffes. With this he spent sometime, to visit the faire Cities and Countries of Drefden in Saxone, Mandabourge, and Brunswicke Castle in Hessen, Wittenberge, Vime and Minikm in Banaria, Austrage and her Votuerfitte, Hanna, Franch ford, Mets, the Palatinate, Wormes, Spire, and Strawburge Patting the Cardinalthip to Nancey in Lorains, and the Kingdome of France, by Paris to Orle- 20 ance, he went downe the River of Leper, to Angers, and imbarked himselfe at Nans in Britania for Bilbon in Biskame, to see Burgas, Valiodolid, Squeriall, Madrill, Toledo, Cordua, Cuede Ryall. Simil, Cherges, Cules, and Saint Lucars in Spaine.

Then vindentlanding that the Warres of Mully Shalb and Mully Sedan, the two Brothers in Barbarie of Fez and Moroco (to which hee was animated by fome friends) were concluded in peace, he in barked himselfe for England with one thousand Duckets in his Purse, which after with a great deale more hee employed; in fearching more dangers in the Weft Indies, and the withnowne parts of vinciualized America, where how he discourred and inhabited Virginia, how hee was taken Prifoner by Powhatan, their Emperor 1607. and deliuered, how hee tooke the King of Pashabegb, Priloner in single Combate, and the King of Pamaruke Prisoner in the 30 middest of his Armie, and brought thirtie of their pettie Kings, and all their people in subsection to the English: How fince hee bath fearched, and caused a new England, and was taken Prisoner by French Pirats, and escaped : You shall after heare in fitter place.

CHAP. XII.

The death of SVETAN OSMAN, and the setting up of M v-S T A B A his Vncle, according to the Relation presented to His Maistie.

He Grand Signier Sultan Ofman discontented since his disgrace in Poland, as soone as he came to Constantinople, pretended a lourney vpon the Emir de Saida, who was reported to be in Rebellion, having taken Armes to other ends. But being diuerted from this purpose by the great instance of the Usziers, and that it would not so well serve his secret Defignes, because hee must then keepe an Armie on soote; hee gaue out that hee would vinte Mache, the Tombe of

To make this Voyage the more secure, in appearance, hee seemed content to accept of any Treatie with the Polacks, even to conditions both of diladuantage and dishonour; for his estates in Hongaria, he re-enforced the Frontiers with divers troupes, and though hee were much trou-bled at the league betweene the Emperour of Germanie and Bethlem Gaber, yet he diffembled it fo, as that he would not displease the Transiluanian, but rather offered new succours, and for-Bearance of his Tribute. From the Incursions of the Coffacts, hee hoped to affure himselfe, by the treatie of the Poles, and in occasion of breach, he had the Tartars readie to require them (it being both their trades to live vpon spoile and robberie) and for more securitie heeappointee twentie Gallies to keepe the Blacke Sea. The common people and Viziers that loued reit, and knew not the Defigne, were much troubled and discontent at this lourney, who made many Re- 60 monstrances to him of the inconvenience and danger to leave the feat of his Empire to the trust of a Deputic, in a time when Bethlem Gabor was newly reconciled to the Germane Emperour, and therefore not to be trufted; and the Polaces newly reconciled to him, and therefore to hee mistrutted. Diners other reasons were made to him, many Petitions deliuered from the Church-

men, Lawyers, and from all Estates. But meiancholike Reuenge had wholly possessed him, to that by no meanes he could be perfuaded to delift. The Souldierie passed so farre, as to threatten publikely, and to protest, they would not follow, but rather set vp another King in his abfence that should stay among them. In conclusion, carried by his owne fate to destruction; the feuenth of May, having first commanded away all his Gallies to the Lenant, and thereby difpofed away many of his Souldiers, he began to passe over his Tents and Pavilions to Asia side, with languages mas great quantities of Treasure: The lanisaries and Spabees, who had also fecret Intelligence voon time. the King, his owne words and actions betraying some further Deligne then a Pilgrimage (for he made preparations to carrie away all his lewels and Treasure, even defacing his Palace, and to taking from Churches, and his Wardrobes, whatfoeuer could be converted to Bullion) fudden-

ly met at the Hippodrome in the Citie vpon a word given; and from thence ranne to the Sergolia in tumult, but without Armes, and there according to their barbarous mutinies cryed out for the King (hauing first taken order to stop the passage of any thing woon she water) who appearing to them, asked what this inolencie meant, and what they pretended. They then by the mouth of a multitude (for they had no head but that of the Moniter) demanded first that hee should not proceed in his purpose to goe to Mecha, nor into Alia, but that he must abide in the Citie. Secondry, they would have delivered to their furie the Great Vizier Do-lawir Baffa, the Hois, or Confesior of the King, the Calhariaga Gouernour of the women, the Tefferdar, or Treasurer, the Cadde Leskar, or Chiefe luttice, and fome others, as Enemies to the State, and confenting to this Voyage, which they pretended would be the ruine of the Empire. The first, after a little

dispute, the King granted vnto them; promising to give over his lourney, but they not content. exacted it in writing. To the fecond, he replyed, that it was dishonour to him to have his Seruants fo vied without order of luftice : but perswaded them to have patience to flay untill Saturday, the next Dinan, or publike Councell, where they should all appeare, and if they were found culpable, they should receive punishment; not meaning to performe any of this. but to get time and allay their pefent furie. These fellowes not content with this moderate anfwere, undertooke to know that they were guiltie, and therefore that they needed no other witnesse, tryals, nor Judge, but themselves, and with extreme clamour, called to have them delinered. But the King returing to give them any other fatisfaction , and they voprepared for To force, returned into the Citie, which now was all its feare, every house and shop thut vp. expeet ng a generall facke. But they followed the way of their owne hatred, and first went vnto the house of the Hoia, which they brake and pillaged : but not finding him, they proceeded to the

separated being now Eaening, but yet kept a Guard'in some parts of the Towne. This night the King made an attempt to fend ouer to Afia fide , but was preuented; and to fortifie and defend his Seraglio, which is walled strongly about, and hath alway in it of househell Seruants about three thousand, but it seemes no man would arme in his cause. For the next morning, the Mutiners affembled againe, and taking their Armes, went first to the Mufri, or Arch-prieft among them, and forced him and divers others to accompany them to the Court. 40 where they anew demanded these men, but with more instance and furie. In the meane time

Great Vizziers, who made some desence, and (they being vnarmed) beate him off; and so they

the Hoia, Caddee Leskar, and Tefterdar fled, and were yet neuer heard off. The Vister returned to the King, and perswaded him earnestly to goe ouer in person in his owne Boates (which from his Garden he might easily doe) to Asia, and there to take Horse, and he would secure him from all perill; but the King would not mooue, bidding him flay confident and affured that hee would punish these Rebels.

The wife old man feeing this constancie or obstinacie, desired leave to shift for himsefe, which he either tooke or obtayned, and so got away to the Hermitage of a Saint renowmed amongst them, who (like himfelfe) betrayed him to a Captaine of the lanizaries; yet did him the fauour Saint Knaue. as not to deliuer him to the multitude, but carried him backe to the Kings House. At this time

50 it was disputed in the Seraglio, about the deliverie of these Oricers, the Emperour refusing, the Rebels clamouring and threatning; infomuch, as he began to feare they would breake in, and in their rage doe worle then was yet pretended. Whereupen, whether by the Kings order, or by his owne confent (willing to bee the Peace-offering) the Vicier went out to them, and with a good affurednesse demanded what they tought of him, and wherein he had offended; But they answered him with their Swords, and fuddenly cut him in pieces.

The Emperour feeing their rurie fo out-ragious, had now more cause to doubt, and retyred himselfe then too late, when hee had lost his brave Counsellor; would have fled into Asia, and could not, but conneyed himselfe into a prinate place, prepared by his Buffengi Baffa, or chiefe Grand Signiar Gardiner. The Rebels continue without in their madnefie, asking for the King, and for more flight. 6c Sacrinces. But the Servants protefting they knew not where he was, they faid, they mult have

a King, and if he would not appeare, they would make another; and having awhile attended, they resolved to enter the Palace (but first tooke a generall Oath not to facke the Imperiall Throne, which they call d their house and their honour) and there seeking for the King, not able to find him, they extorted by confession the Castariaga, and Sue him, and then they demanded

Muftsfamade

for Muftafa, Vncle to Ofman, by him formerly deposed, a man esteemed rather holy (that is franticke) then wife, and indeed firter for a Cell, then a Scepter. The King the first day of this transicke) then write, and indeed neces for a very stress expects in a many are that turnult had put Multiplainto a Vaule with two Negro women, without bread or draitike, in turnult had put Multiplainto a Vaule with two Negro women, without bread or draitike, in turnil had put the defense we lectors found him almost naked, and halfe pined. At first light, her thought they had beene the Messengers of death : but that feare passed ouer, he begged of them thought they had beene the misenegarhou death. But that there price out in evergence them a Cup of water. Whom they tooke, and inflantly proclaimed their Emperour, which hee was a Cup of water. Whom they tooke, and inflantly proclaimed their Emperour, which hee was a Cup of water. With patched and in momints; How vinfable are the Estates of the greatest Princes! lost to accept, vii patched and in momints; How vinfable are the Estates of the greatest Princes! not to accept, vis puress and remains a low restance are the estate of the great Finness.

Quem det vides contains incentent, bases vides for fingings regardness. He that was now in the lawes of death, naked, itanued, and dying for thirft, is become the Emperour, and may drinke Gold, or of death, naked, itanued, and dying for thirft, is become the Emperour, and may drinke Gold, or

They as yet not knowing what was become of Ofman, and loth to trust Maitapha in the I ney as yet not knowing wink washecome of Cymme, and not to true orkataphe in the Palace, carried him in triumph to the old Strangin, and there left him, departing to the facke of the Vizaira hoofe, and fo in the Eneming to their Rendenous, where they kept both good guard, and good order in the Citie, from fires and other Infolencies. Sultan Ofman amazed with these newes, fo foone as they had left the Court, came out and called to Councell in the night, Hazeis newes, to toome as they mad are the court, same one and named or connecta in the right, fractor in Table, late Frizer in the Folid's Warre, and the Aga of the lanixaries, both distribul to him, and demanded their addice; inti, busing fent to the old Sengles, to practice the women there, to strangle Mastafe; but some taking his part, a new vprore beganne in the house betweene that Sexe : and the Souldiers that kept watch, taking the Alarum, entred in, and refcued him, and from thence remound him to the Chambers of the languaries, where they guarded him for that 20 night, in an ill Lodging. All this while Ofmer confults what course to take. These two his friends, and some others, tell him, that the case was desperate, and could not bee cured but by a desperate remedie. And they agreed that the Aga should goe and perswade with the Mosti, and that the King in the morning (hould fuddenly present himselfe to the Souldiers at their owns doore, and make experience, what his Presence, his submission, and his beneuolence promised could worke, to moue them to Loyalcie, or compatition; which counfell early in the morning they put in practice. The King accompanied with the Chofit, (who never conferred to his deposing, though he fanoured the Souldiers against the Victor) with Historia Bassa and about twelse Horie-men, went directly to the lante aries Colledge where Muflafa was kept, and there in erone-men, went untors to the season and continue to the season made them an Orstion, offering great recompense, treening of his error; and finally, in- 10 soled them by the merits of his Father and all his Ancestors to have fome pitte vpon their true Master. The multitude (tam prona in mifer icor diam, quane immedica fenitia fuerat) now knew not what to doe; a filent murmure rame among them, and they were halfe converted : But the Aga of the lanicaries, thinking to merit of the King, and beginning to plead vnfeafonably for him, with some harsh words of vpbraidure, Ve nature Marie owni state venti turbida, anew moued their furie, so that they cryed out Treason, and fell upon him and Hazein Basa, and cut

them into pieces, euery man taking a part of their fielh to fatisfie their reuenge. The Moftis would speake, but is withdrawne by some, for respect to his place, and with difficulties conueved away. Now the poore Ofmer fees his friends slaine, and knowes not which way to conuert himselfe, but binding up his eyes with a Napkin, expects death as the last of their furie; 40 But they carrie him first before Mastafa, and accuse him as the disturber of the Peace of the Empire, and demand fentence against him, sees using force suignet fagitime distributes. The fortiken Prince pleades for hite, and the new King knowes not how to condemne, but nods and agrees to all that is propounded. At last, they consult with themselues, and put him vpon an Horse (an infolent Spaces changing Turbants with him) and fent him away Prifore to the see reglie and Imperial Throne, where he hath need to have good Broths and nourithment to restore The Souldiers thinke all is done, and (onely facking the houses of Huzein Bassa, and some ohis decayed bodie.

Mustafa en-

thers their conceived Enemies) returns in quiet to their feuerall Lodgings, and have no further 50 malice. But the new Vizier Dann Baffe, made by Muffafe, knew well, if Ofman lived, that this storme might passe ouer, and hee would as easily and by the same meanes returne to his Eflate, as hee fell from it, Vulgus or mos eff. ching in noise compleme. Therefore hee conflicted with flow few interested in Mustages preference, and thereby chooxious to Ofman, to fearth how many of the Royall bloud were left aline, and refolued if there remay ned two, to make an end of Ofmen. Two of his Brothers were found, the one about twelue, the other about feuen yeares of age : and thereupon the Vicier went himselfe to the Prison with a packe of Hangmen, and gaue order to strangle the vnfortunate Prince : who now having had no rest in two nights, and thinking himfelfe fecure for a featon, was newly falne affeepe : but awaked by the comming of their Meliengers, asked what newes, faying, hee did not like their fudden 60 intrusion. They at first stood amazed, and the King made hew to defend himselfe; but a ftrong Knaue ftrooke him on the head with a Battle-axe, and the reft leaping vpon him, ftrangled him with much adoe. Thus one of the greatest Monarkes in the World is first affronted by mutined troupes, his owne flaues, almost wnarmed, and few in number, no man taking up a

CHAP. 12. Turks loffe in Poland, Infeafonable remedy. Degenerate lanizaries. 1272

Sword to defend him: and they who began this madnesse, not meaning to hurt him, by the increase of their owne furie, which hath no bounds, depose him against their owne purpose, and arialt expose his life again fi their will, to the counfels of other men, whom they equally hate. And now they mourne for their dead King, as freshly as they raged vnreasonably, knowing they have flayned their honour, being the first of their Emperours they ever betrayed, and that they have fet up another that in all likelihood they must change for disabilitie : Nonnunquam talit documenta fors maiora, quam fragili loco starent superbi.

This is the last act of the lite of Sultan Ofman : but his intents and great defignes, which drew vpon him this fatall blow , I suppose will not be vieworthy the communication, the Practices. To Reasons, Secrets, and Counfels of all Actions being the Soule of Historie, and res gesta but the hare carkafe; and Lam perswaded, as many Ages have not produced to strange an Example of the incertaintie of humane greatnesse; so in the disposition thereof, and in the wayes leading thereunto, there is feene endently the wonderfull providence of God, in confounding of the counsels of the worldly wife, who had laid a foundation of new greatnesse, whereby he aspired the universall Monarchie, ambitious of the honour of Trainn, in whole time the decayed Empire was faid, Primum mourre lacertot, & Jeneitutem Impery, quafi reddita inuentute reninifere. And laftly, the world may see vpon how weake foundations this Monarchie was at first builded, but it is now shaken and corrupted; how their Kings are subject to the rage of a few Slaues, how Anarchie hath prepared it an easie prey to any able hand, that would attempt it. From the Inua-

20 fron of Poland, all these changes took their beginning, Sultan Ofman advanced to the Throne in his youth, full of heate and bloud, being of a great and haughtie fpirit, very couragious, ftrong of bodie, and a mortall hater of Christians, enuions of the glory of his Ancestors, and ambitious to rayse his name about any of theirs, had projected in himselfe the Conquest of the Remaynes of Osmans arabia the bordering Europe. But to fo great delignes he had one vice that relifted all hope of profperi- tion. tie, which was extreme Auarice, and he fell into the latter times and decrepit age, Vbs vires luxu His angrice & corrumpebantur, contraveterem disciplinam & mstituta maiorum. apud quos virtute quam pecunia res vuscaionable militaris meline stein. His first enterprize was that of Poland, mooued by the Incursions of the attempts a-Coffacts, which yet he vadertooke of his owne head, without the counfell of any his Viziers gainst Poland. (who in a Monarchie growne to the height by ease and wealth, and perhaps, longa dominatione

30 inertes, are ener corrupt and lazie) and against the liking of all the Souldiers, who now contra-tic to their Institution being marryed, and Fathers of a Family, entred into Trades, receiving nothing in Warre more then in Peace, praser pericula & labores, are not eafily drawne from their owne Chimneies. This action he thought so easie, as he had disposed of his Conquest, and deuided the line Lions skinge. But being met your the Borders with a poore Armie in comparison. he was first arrested at Choten a little Fortresse, which he was faine to leave behind him vintaken. And then feeking to advance into the plaine Countrey, by forcing the Trenches of the Chancellor of Poland, opposed against him, he could never procure his larizaries to fight, though en- Initiative vergaging his person once or twice beyond the regard of his qualitie, and his owne Troupes readie uerse to mutinie against him, or to forfake him, he was at last enforced to rayse shamefully his Campe.

40 and to accept of any Treatie to faue his outward honour. In this attempt he loft aboue one hundred thousand Hories for want of Fodder, and fourescore thousand men for want of fighting : for they would rather dye, running, or pillaging, or eating, then in the face of the Enemie. For this diffrace he conceived io inward and rooted an indignation against the Ianizaries, and so instally, that he often lamented himselfe, and complayed hee was no King, that was subject to his owne flaues, vpon whom he spent great Treatures, and yet they would neither fight in Warre nor obey in Peace, without exacting new bounties and Priviledges. Delanir Baffa a man of Delanit Baffa great wit and courage, lately called from the Easterne parts, where hee had long gouerned with honour, who came in, though late, yet in a very braue and Warlike Equipage, aboue all other his Captaines, was fuddenly made Great Vizier, the former Huzein Baffa being in the fame dif-

50 grace, common with the Souldier, though not in the fame fault. This man was never bred at Court, but had lived many yeares in Action, and so had neither Faction nor Dependance heere, but flood upon himfelfe and his owne merit : And beeing now unlooked for, and advanced to this high dignitie, he wrought upon the Kings discontent, and nourished it and in conclusion. brake with him, that it was true, he was no Emperour, nor could be fafely aliue, while the Iamixaries had the power which they lately vierped. Informing him, that they were corrupted from their ancient Institution, and were lazie Cowards, given over to Éase and Lust, Es arimo per libidines corrupto, nibil hones summe per libidines corrupto, nibil hones summe per libidines corrupto, nibil hones summe inerat. But it his Mai-stie would pull up his spirits, and follow his aduice, hee would prouide him a new Souldicury about Damascm, and from the Coords, of men euer bred in the Frontier, Hardnesse, and Warre, of The Coords,

great Courage and Experience, and that of them hee thould erect a new Militia , that should wholy depend of him, entertayning onely fortie thousand in pay, which should alway be his Guard, and that in the distribution of enery Prouince, he should constitute that the Begbler-begh in his Gouernment should trayne some of the Inhabitants , who in all occasions of making a great Armie, should be in readinesse, and hereby hee should spare infinite Treasures spent Yyyyyy 3

vpon these Drones that eate vp his Estate; And with men of new spirits and hopes, hee should whon there with the case spans and of his Ancestors: but withall he defired the King to communicate this counsell to no man, nor to trust his life vpon anothers secrecie. Delanir Bassa neuer reuealing himfelfe to any but the King, who extremely pleafed with this aduice; that flattered his owne humour, conferred, and remitted all to the Viziers direction, who was a true Souldier, and a very wife man, able by his credit in Afa, to performe all hee had vadertaken: for he was exceedingly beloued in those parts, very rich, and had kept Damasem, whereof he was Gauernour, for himselse in the last Rebellion. Vpon this conclusion betweene them, it was first agreed, that the King should pretend to goe in person against the Emir de Zaide; who was moued to take Armes really to affift in the defigne : but they yield it , to colour the departure of the the Emperor; which when it was well weighed, it was found, that then the Army of the Intitate ries must be kept together, which could not agree with their ends. Hereupon the journey of Me. the was disulged, that the King might, vnder the shadow of an holy pilgrimage, goe out with a shadow of an holy pilgrimage, goe out with a small rayne, and disperse those who were suspected to him. And for this preparation was made, but formwhat too grofly by melting of all the Plate, Saddles, furniture of house, Lamps of Churches, and what foeuer could more easily be conveyed away in metal, with all the lewels and treafurie. This gaue the first furbicion, which was confirmed by divers vnaduifed words let fall from the King of distayne against the cowardize of the lanzaries, and that he would shortly find himfelfe foldiers that should whip them; & lastly, dismissing all his houshold, except some few cless. the discontented observed and betrayed him. Delauir Bassa kept his owne secret, and in the meane time prepared by his triends in Afia 10000. about Damafens, 10000. from the Coords, befides those 20 in readinesse of the Emir de Zaida, and all vpon pretence of defending the borders of Persa, who having intelligence of some change in those parts; And gave order that all these should meet the King at Damascu, where he would presently cutoff his Guard, and stay there, vntill he had resulated his new Armie, and discipline, and then to returne triumphant to Constantinople, and vtterly root out the order of Ianizaries, Spaheis, and Timariots, and to exauctorate all their Captaines and Officers to fettle a new gouernment, and to change the name of the Citie. And thefe things fucceeding, he then resolved with his new Souldiers to attempt the recourrie of his honour in Christendome: in the meane time to hold a dissembled frienship there in all parts. Certainely, this was a braue and well-grounded deligne, and of great confequence for renewing of this decaved Empire, languishing winder the iniolencies of lazie slaues, it God had not destroyed it : It being very true, that the Turkib Emperous flands at the deuotion of his owne troops for peace or warre, life or death, and is in effect nothing but the Steward or Treasurer of his lantaries. If this proiect had taken effect, what events it might have produced by a Civill Warre, is not easie to judge. For doubtlesse, the Souldiourie here would have set up another King, and maintayned him as well as they could, and this Emopean part had beene in danger to have beene torne away by the diuision. Besides, Delanir Bassa having the King and the Treasurie in his posfession, and his owne credit so great, and his inclination, velle imperare, once discourred, it may well be thought that he had some ends of his owne to share a part of this might ie estate : If on Discipline of Warre, and the encrease of Treasure consequent to the dismission of the old Militia, would have beene fearefull to all Christendome : But, Ubi eft fapiene? Ubi difquifiter faruis lmisus? Nonne infatuauit Dens sapientiam mundi bnisus? Perdam sapientiam sapientum, & vanam.

the other fide, the Vizier had proved true and faithfull, the reformation and new erection of the 40 reddam intelligentiam intelligentium. It is a great question whether is the wifer with, that these Counfels had succeeded or not : for either duisson and subuersion, or a new prosperitie and enlargement of their Dominion had necessarily followed. Some observations upon this occasion, will not be very impertinent to those that desire to know as well the disposition and vie, as the things themselves. First, in the purpose of the Souldier, not at all to molate or hart the King, much leffe to depofe and murther him; but onely to take away those about him, whom they thought affifients in this prosect; yet the farie once on foot, they proceeded by milliofible [hips, 50] to the votermost of outrage, against many innocents in that businesse, though otherwise observates, and against the Throne and life of their owne Emperour, whi furor ingruat innocentes ac noxios iuxta cadere. Secondly, in the degrees, that yet the King had not faine thus low, if first bee had not lost that awe and reservence which alway attendesh upon Maieslie, by unseemely offices, done by him in the streets and Tanernes, apprehending many Souldiers for pettie faults, like a Constable, making his person common, cheape, and despised among them which were wont onely to be seene and feared, as somewhat supra humanitatem. And this he did also in hatred and disdayne of those that had in the Warre for laten him. And now in this last act, if his owne obstinacie had no: plunged him into destruction, but that he bad softned them by a seasonable yeelding to time, be bad pressayled onely by time. Thirdly, in the order, That shefe Mutmers having no bead, or direction, kept that reglement, that they tooke outh in their fu- 60 rie, in hot bloud, in the Kings yard, not to dishonour, spoyle, nor jacke the Imperial Throne, neither committed nor suffered any insolence nor violence in the Citie to the Neutrali, but rather proclaymed peace and inflice. Fourthly, in the confequents, that at the third dayes end, all was at quiet, and all men in their trade, as if no such thing had happed; Onely the languaries suffered no Dinan nor Councell,

CHAP. 12. Ofmans dreame. Multafa's interpretation. Ottomans extinguished. 1275

entill they had received a Donatine, as Guerdon of their iniquitie, in which also the insinite walle of Treasure is worthise of consideration, which must of necessitie be exceedingly exhausted by three channes in four e peres, and by the late Warres in Persia and Poland : For enery lanizarie in the Citie, absent in joure jeeses, among the time forthe thousand, receive fine and twentin Chequins gold, besides Spaheis, or present, and other orders at every alteration, which amounts in all neere to two millions. And now lamoglans, anaeuer oraeri sit enery siteratura, went o moromus on an over to tree missions. And now they fellowes all trong, thus have taffed the fewer of projectors unstatutes; hand grant furman feelers interpretum periculo, peragi cum praemio, they have taken fuch a bead as counts fafety be fuffered on, incept cum periculo, peragi cum praemio, they have taken fuch a bead as counts fafety be fuffered on, incept cum periculo, peragi cum praemio, they have taken fuch a bead as counts fafety be fuffered on, incept cum periculos. incipicum pericuio, presen cum pratimo, tos panes enem no a ocas as summet perepos lujiredon, ner [cores] be taken off. Effit, of certaine prefess that fore-ran, it being related to mee from the month of a Calce, moved with the King a moneth before the tumude: That Ofman dreamed to the Ofmon deam.

momo of a comment a who we came a memora e-give we seemed a time of the to to the to might, that he thought to ride a Cancell, and being mounted, be could not force bim to goe by faire meanes mife, that he thought to rake a famou, and every measures, or water not you regard to goe of jarre measts as friends and that the design and the state of the backs of the bests and the state had the the back and the the back to get the Kingf, back Who next day treathed as that fancy, four to a learned Mars, familiar with him; for the Kingf, back Who next day treathed as that fancy, four to a learned Mars, familiar with him; for the interpretation. Hee excused himselfe as unfit to give opinion in a moster of that consequence, but per founded O man to fend to the Multi. Hee also craned parden, but withall faid, there was none so fit to interpreteit, as Mustafa the Kings Uncle, and now Emperour, who is esteemed a holy man. that pe to mier preten, an maistan noch Ange, o man, nom anne ampereur, prete a ejecemen a etry Man, this hash Vilsons, and Angel-like speculations, a playme to man, boweverse a man dan at Sock. The King repayres to Multata, who briefly tell him, The Camell fignifies his Empre: his riching, abuse in gregation: bis descension, his disposition: the vanishing of the bodie, the renolt of his Subjects: the headremanning in his hand, onely a bare Title; and that hee should shortly die within few moneths. 20 and lose his Kingdome, but the emptse name of Emperour should accompanie him to his Graue.

A (econd of leffe confequence in the Vizier Delauir Basta, from whom the Lord Ambastador ba- betwint the A second of less confessions in the Vizer Deliun Estita, from whom the Lora ambulgador has been the confession of the second process of the confession of th the many reasons in the present estate of their ownse assays, estably the Treaty of Poland yet depen-tions many reasons in the present estate of their ownse assays and the treaty of Poland yet depen-ding. To which the Balla replied very grauss. Then the Ambassador veging the seare of same turnuit, collected from the licentious peeches rumonred in the Towne, and he was hold to deale plainely, fincerely, and friendly, That if any such thing should happen, the fault would bee imputed to the Bassa, as being and premary, 1 out; any put runs, comma cappen, not passe woust over impact to the Balls, as being of authoritie to perjudic the King, whom his qualities and you how bould except, but all the faire would be diches god you to premarile Manufer; defiring hom to confider the cumt, at least, to take his affection on the best part. The old Renard stayed a while from rule: at last, miling to himself at the Ambalfadour, who per waded him against that which was his owne counfell, he gave him a finall answere, that there was no remedie, he durst not hazard himselfe to oppose the Kings resolution: but assured him hee

would fo order the matter, as this iourney bould not proceed fo farre as was expected. The Ambassadar concluded for himselfe, desiring then that he would leave him a particular recommendation to the Chimacham or Deputie as his friend. To which hee fodamly replied, Trouble not your felfe, nor feare: 1 will never remove fo farre, but that I will leave one of my legs in this Citie to ferve you: which the poore will never remove 19 Jarre, out time a semicante one of my lags in the last whole and entire, who have of the last whole and entire, was have of the this portrome, the most public place of the Citie. Lalls, on those yet to come, and so probably to be supplied, that the Souldower in Alia, who have now loss their bopes, will not sit downe by this af-

or impercea, 1 tons was commonted to the control of fee the littlenesse of their owne uncivill quarrels , while this mighte Monarchie inviteth them to concord, and to divide it as a profituted forle.

On Saturday euening, the first of Iune following, the Capiaga or Maior Domo of the Ser- The confinua-ragio, having received a secret order to remove the brethren of Ofman from their lodgings, and tion of the in the night to strangle them: as he was performing his command, ayded with a few of his storie, pre-Conifices to carrie away the Princes, they cried out: the Pages running to the noise, and en- Kings Maiestie couraged by the Calliaraga, who had some suspicion, without further examination kill the Ca- from the same 50 pides, now almost every order having rifen against their owne head. That night they fent se- per

cretly to the lanizaries and Spaneis, to informe them what they had done, and in the morning The capitage. early hanged his bodie in the Hippotrome for a publike spectacle. The Souldiers returned in furie to Court, in fauour of the Pages, and demanded instice against those that had consented to this wicked order; which had made an end of all the Ottoman race, onely this Mullafa being left alive, who is fo holy a Saint, that he will not people the world with finners, nor indure any women about him. The innocent King protests he knowes nothing of this purpose: and if his command were procured, it was gotten by subreption, and he is easily believed. But his mother another Linis, and the new Vizier, Daont Baffa, who had her daughter to wife, were 60 Vehemently suspected. It was a day of Diuan or Councell: But these Souldiers would suffer none, untill they had an account of this Treason. The Vizier denies all; the mother is a woman,

and hidden in the house: yet it is very likely, they both were guilty to vphold and secure their owne authoritie. It being rumoured, that the Visier determined to place subdititionsly, in the roome of the elder Prince, his owne Sonne, and very like him, and so to gouerne Mastafa for 2

CHAP.12.

1276

time, and by his remoue, to establish himselfe and his Race for euer. But now somewhat must Dewit Baffa de- be done to appeale the people; Therefore Daont Baffa is degraded from his Office, and one Huzen Balla newly arrived from the Government of Cairo, advanced to his place, with promise of further examination. Since, the furie once over, there hath beene no great fearch nor difen-New Unite fe very made. I thinke the Sultans Chequines have quieted the matter. This new Vizier, a man here without friends, yet very rich, of a stubborne and obstinate nature, reported inst in his wayes, but peremptorie and inflexible; Audax, ferox, & prout animum intendit prantu aut indufries eadem vi: one from whom all men may expect much good, or much ill; Begins his gouernment roughly, vndertakes to punish insolencies early, and protesteth a reformation, or to bee a Sacrifice. A man fit for thefe times that are desperate : For the world will be, that hee must at 10 laft endure their furie. In the meane time he procures a little awe, and hath reftored the face of Inflice : yet I am perswaded it cannot last long, the Ghost of Ofman will not bee at rest, vntill there are some Parentalin made vnto him. The nature of this Vicier is vnsupportable; But if he prepaile, and once fettle, he will anew change the King, and lay an Obligation vpon the Brethren of Ofman; For he will never thinke himfelfe secure vnder a man gouerned by an insolene woman, Dominandi asuda: And what affurance can he have in that Prince, Cui non indicium, non edium est nisindita & insia? And though I cannot fore-see the particulars, and where the Sore will breake out, yet I am fure the whole body is ficke; and Princes of Christendome shall have breath three yeares, before they shall have cause to feare this State, whose present King is Mentit inopt, and the next in expectation, a Child, whit for action, and all the great men and Soul. 20 diers decayed, mutined and corrupted.

And now tyred with this Tragicall fight and contemplation, we will commend you to other Pilgrims. who shall quide you thorow the Defatts, to the tops of the holy Mountains, Oreb and Sinai, and after those Holies, recreate your eyes with an admirable Spectacle of the Mamalukes, fine feates of Activitie, the profit and pleasure may conclude this Booke.

CHAP. XIII.

Mount Sinai, Oreb, and the adiopning parts of Arabia, described out of the foure lournals of BREIDENBACH, BAVMGARTEN, BELLONIVS, and CHRISTOPHER FURER of Haimendorf.

Chr for Futor. Patriarch of the Greekes.

HE nine and twentieth of October, 1 , 6 , we ioyned our felues to the Carauan, having before obtained Letters commendatorie from the Patriarch of the Greekes, which dwelleth at Care to the Friers of Mount Sinas. They tell of this Patriarch, that he for proofe of his Religion in contention with a Icm, be- 40 fore the Baffa fine and thirtie yeares before, drunke a draught of poylon without harme, which the Iew doing, dyed. At this time, he was one hundred and three

Darius Dike. Red Ses.

E/sz, whole Ses Sea. Curall.

yeares old. I had with me three Pilgrims. Nouember the third, we departed from Cairo, and on the fift, came to the shoare of the Red Sea, two miles from which in times past Sues flourifhed. The next day, we saw at the right hand of the Red Sea, that ditch which lyeth betwixt it and Nilm, which Darim, and after Ptolomem made thirtie foote deepe, one hundred foote broad, seuen and thirtie miles in length, and there coased, finding the Red Sea higher three cubits, then the Land of Agypt. The Region is desart, and not inhabited, wherein they vie Camels dung for want of Wood. The Water of the Red Sea, is of the colour that other Seas are of. But the Land adiopning, is Red and Mountainous, whence it is called the Red Sea, or from the Sun- 50 This red king beames reflected on that Sea from those Mountaines. Curtius laith, from a King called Erythrus, (which fignifieth Red.) Here first we saw the place where the Ifraelises had passed thorow that Sea on dry Land. After that, we saw Mara, where Meses by catting in a piece of wood, made wash in (and the water sweete, which thill so continueth, fauing that from the neighbour Sea, it is somewhat toon which sale brackish: and here our Camels dranke, which in fine daies they here first did, which is the more to be admired for their great burthens, some bearing fixe hundred pounds; others, foure hundred 25c) Heiss most or flue hundred pounds weight. Here washing in the Red Sea, I have my foot on a sharp Corall, whereof here is great flore, both Red and White. On the feauenth of November, after midor that name of night, was an Eclipse of the Sunne, and our Ethiopian Companions continued (as long as it continued) beating Basons. The next day, we went tortie Italian miles : and the day after for looke 60 the Red Sea, declining on the left hand towards the Mountaines. The tenth, we left the Carauan, which went the right-hand way toward There. Wee went towards the left hand, and ina Valley faw that Tree which is called Spina Christi, or Gum Arabike, whereof they fay Christs Crowne of Thornes was made. The eleuenth, we taw the tops of Mount Sinas, and admired the

height thereof. The twelfth, we faw a Viper or Aspe, whitish and skaly on the belly, on the backe white and spotted, with two little hornes on the fore-head. The thirteenth, we came to the Monasterie of Saint Katharine in a narrow Valley, at the foot of Mount Sinai, built of square S. Katharine thones, founded (as they fay) by the Emperour Infinian, strong, high, and compasted with pleaant Gardens. The length of it, is one hundred twentie fine paces. In it we faw, the Sepulchre of Saint Kaberius; after that wee faw a Chappell built on that place, where they fay was the Buth in which first God appeared to Mojes. It hach fifteene Temples, twenty fine Chappels, and duers little Cels, in which Greeke Calogeri doe keepe. In the adioyning Valley is a Hill of maruellous aspect, as if it were all burnt and couered with Ashes, where (they say) Moles kept leto three fleepe. Neere the Monastery, before Mount Sinas, is the place in Mount Horeb, in which God commanded Mofes to goe into Egypt to deliner the Ifraelites.

The foureteenth of November, by a wayleffe and broken way, (which the Monkes by fteps Mount Sind or flaires, such as they are, haue indeuoured to make better) wee ascended Mount Sinus. And Bellmina callich or flaires, fuch as they are, naue incended to make occurry, we came to three Temples or this Mount when we had paffed the two gates, which in old times were flue, we came to three Temples or Herrb So B.:um-When we man paned the try garage from the fecond of Saint Marina, the third of Elias the Prophet. enter, and in-Round about are some houles, whilome the Monkes dwellings. In Elias his Temple, behind the deed all these Altar, is a Caue, in which (they fay) the Prophet lay hid, when hee fled from Iefabel. On the hils are part of left hand, beneath the top of the Mountaine, is the place where Mofes defired to fee God. On Sines, which yet the top of Mount Sinai, towards the East is a little Temple; and on the left hand a Chappell. Maritoriu is the top or Mount simes, cowards the Data and the standard of the Decalogue, Le rds Prays before top, er and Creed in German Rithmes. And this is the place where God gaue to Mofes the Tables which tome for of the Law, written with the finger of God. There is a Chappell in which the Mabanetane denotion to doe their deutitions. Eight paces thence is a Cane, in which Moferafter his fecorid foreie daies that Saint Ka Fast, received the Tables of the Law. After these fights, wee descended the Hill, where comming to a certaine Cifterne, we refreshed our selues with meat. And going a little lower, we law abroken and hollow Rocke on the left hand, wherein Iohn the Legitar Hermite lived with a broken and nonow Notate out the tet hand, which are a paradiff. It cannot bee entred but creepings the Herester. within on the right hand, is a stone as it were a bed, and another against it like a seat; aboue, a hole whereby light descendeth, sufficient to reade by. Descending hence on the left hand, in a an certaine Valley is the Temple of Saint Iohn Baptift, with a Garden, Vineyard, and little house. Against it is another Temple of Saint Ane; and on the left hand, on the top of the Rocke, is a Caue couered with stone, in which two Brethren of a King comming to fee the place, fetled

After this weakended another Hill, whence besides many Regions the Red Sea may be seene. Sinai. In the Valley thereof is Pantaleons Temple, & an Hermitage. Hence with great labour we descended into a Valley, by a broken and dangerous way, ouer against Saint Katharines Mount, wherein is the Monasterie of fortie Fathers and divers houses, fornetimes the habitations of Hermits. There is a Church of Saint Onophrius, and a pleasant Garden, with various and excellent fruits. Having lien all night in this Monasterie, the next morning, with farre greater labour and dan- Monastery of ger then before, we climbed the high and inaccessible hill of Saint Katherine: on the top where - Saint Katherine is a sharpe Rocke, whereon toward the East is built a low Chappell, fifteene foote long, and bigher then Siten broad, in the midft whereof is a Monument, in which fometime the body of Saint Kaiba- nai and Horeb: ten broad, in the midit whereor is a Monument, in which come time the body of Saint Kalon-by Sinei was kept. Heere our Monke faid his prayers, and we fung Venis Santii Spiritum in our wulgar fand somes-tongue, This Mountaineof Saint Kathorine is farre higher then the other two, Horeband Sined, which both feeme hillocks, not hils to this. In the top we looked to the Red Sea, and Thora. Dr. that hill, befrending neere the Nets of Horeb, we law the Rocke which being fricken with Mofes his Rod, powred forth water like a Fountaine. In the former part are yet feene twelve rifts or clerts, and as many behind, but lefte perspicuous: but the former part doth fill fo lively represent the tokens of the miracle, as if water had but lately gushed thence. That former part is twelve cu- Authors from ! bits, the whole thicknesse fiftie two foot. On the left hand of the Valley, is the Temple of the and this of S. Holy Apottle, with a notable Garden, and against it another of Saint George, with a flourishing highest good Garden. Betwist this Temple and the Monastery of Saint Katharines, is a round Caue cut in-the the Rocke, fine and thirtie foote large, in which they say Aaron made the golden Calfe. The last night we abode in Saint Katharines Monasterie : and the fixteenth of November departing, paffed by Raphidim, the elementh Manfion of the Ifraelites, and thence by divers places of their

two yeares Peregrination, where the Tabernacle and Arke were made. The eighteenth we came to Thora, which Citie is on the shoare of the Red Sea of no lustre; Tore the Hauen small, in which ships laden with Spices out of Arabia, Abassia, and India, resort. In this Citie wee faw a Mermaids skinne taken there many yeares before, which in the lower Mermaid, 60 part ends Fish-fashion: of the upper part, onely the Nauill and Breasts remaine, the armes and head being loft. The Inhabitants are most Christians, frue like the Greeker, and performe their Holies in the Arabicke tongue. No Iew may enter this Citie, nor goe to Mount Sinai, the Chriftians having printledge (as we were told) to kill them. I faw there one lew which farmed the Castomes of the Christians. The twentieth of November, having the wonted testimonie of

For the better understanding of these Relations, and for addition of things heere omitted I have thought good to give you Bellonins, which almost twentie yeares before had made the firm to Voyage, and Breidenbachise, then Chamberlaine, and after Deane of Mentz, which Anno 1482. had travelled out of the Holy Land to Sinai, and thence to Egypt; and laitly, Marin Bannearten a German Knight, whose percernation hapned Anno 1 507. I have also here added for five ther Illustration, the Map of the I fraelites percerination in the Defait, here after mentioned

HONDIVS his Map of the Ifraelites peregrination in the Defart,



Bellomin in company of the Lord of Finnes, attended with twentie Lanizaries for his Guards went from Caire 1,547. Their prouisions were water of Nilus, a Camels load of Bisket, and many Muttons killed, and the flesh shred (the bones being taken out) into small gol bits, and boyled with Onions and Suet till all the liquor was confumed, then feafoned with Salt and Spices, and put vp in Veffels: which continued so fresh, that fifteene daies after being heated with Onions, they feemed as fresh as if they had beene first drested. It was in September when

CHAP.13. Plants and habitations of Sinai Defart. Sinai prospett and holies. 1279

the nights were very cold, and the day exceeding hot, for which cause they trauelled much by night, and in three journeys came to the Well of Suez, in a Cattle a mile and halte from the Towne, the water of which is brackish. They have there a huge Cisterne for rayne-water. which feldome happeneth, but then with great vehemence, so that once or twice a veere it is which remove in appearant of the water is drawne by a wheele turned with Oxen; vpon the Deep W.I. of filled, The Well is deep, and the water is drawne by a wheele turned with Oxen; vpon the wheele are two ropes with many Pitchers fastned, which emptie themselues into a Citterne vnderneath; a thing visuall in Egyptian Gardens: By the way as we transled grew Ambrelia, Sena. Rofe of Ieries, Colocynthis, Acacia *, a peculiar kind of Genifta, and many other vnknowne * Spina Christi. plants. Beyond Suez. we entred a wide Plaine all greene with Sena, growing of it felfe. Wee or Gummi plants. Devoid one we entred a wide raine anguent water one is governing at a terre, we also also found vipers, and Cameleons differing from the Egiptien, white and red: Caparas ships as Adab. dwarfe Fig-trees, the Caparas ship as Egges and the feed biting like Pepper; the leaues continue green perpetually, the Wooll is then then Silke, and whiter then Cotton. The first Vilting green perpetually, the Wooll is then then Silke, and whiter then Cotton. The first Vilting green perpetually. lage which after Suez we encountred in our way toward Sinai was called Pharagon, not having Pharagon, about three or foure houtes builded, the people dwelling yoder Palm-trees, (for it fellomeralneth) or vnder Rockes in Caues. Here were Pomgranars, Oliues, Figs, Peares, and other Trees dwellers. profitable by fruit and shade, The Cattell and Fowles are there much lesse then in Egypt.

The ascent of the Mountaine is by hand-made steps for Camels; for Horles can very hardly Sina; roffe: which when we had afcended, we had two miles to passe betwixt round hills, here and there dispersed, of differing quantitie, before wee came at the Monasterie of Saint Katharme: 20 and although we began to alcend the Hill at breake of day, it was after-noone before wee came thither. The Monkes are Christian Maronites, which observe the Greeke Rites, of ditters Monkes or Nations, Strians, Greekes, and Arabians. Pilgrims haue no place of entertaynment but the Mo- Calinti, naterie, which is fit ateat the foot of Mount Horeb, watered by a Spring thence flowing cleere, fweet, coole, and excellent. It is walled with high walls against enemies, and hath also a Mofqued for Arabs and Turkes. In the vallies are pleasant Gardens, where Vines, Pulie, Herbs, and fruitfull Trees grow, especially Almends. Mount Sinai when the Sunne rifeth, ouer-shadoweth Heightof Horeb, which is from it a mile and halfe; and on the top of Sinai yee may view ouer Horeb the Sinai, Region beyond full of Rockes and Hills, vnto the Easterne Plaine where Ierufalem standeth & to the West, nothing but Arabia Deferta; and North-west, the Region washed by the Meditothe West, nothing 10 terranean Sea (bu: not the Sea it felte) fine dayes journey thence. Southward are eafily difeerned both the shoares of the Red Sea extended like an English Bow, and the Athonian Defarts.

and Mountaines, where stands the Monasterie of Saint Macarins, and Saint Anionie, When wee came to the top wee found it hardstone of Iron colour, yet not without plants : for Ab. Phin finthisms (cripbiness, which beareth the Worme-feed, Panax afclepiness, Conyza, and Empatorium. Arabam groweth about the Mountaine. In height it expells Octa and Ida, but feemes lower then Ohmpus. The Plaine on the top is not much greater then that of the greatest Pyramis. that is, foure paces, but a little lower much larger, and is ascended with great difficultie. It is not fo cold as the Alpes, nor fo hot as the low Plaines of Europe. We lay all night in S. Katharines Monaferre, and the next day were flewed the penfle receptace of S. Kathariner hore, Jan. dolleted ging in the Church, which is adorned with goodly Pictures and Relicks. The Rock which Mafet trucke with his Red is a foliation of the vipor foloar and q alittle like Tobasek, Stone, or which oblishes and Pompt : Pillar in Alexandria were made, then which no Stone more refitta Iron,

But the Legend of Saint Katharine is better knowne by Deane Breidenbach, a man fee. Breidenbach ming more denout then Bellomms, who with the Earle of Solms, and Philip de Bichen a Ger-lourney. man Knight, full vilited lernfalem, and the holy places of Palefima; and thence passed toge- Anno 1483. ther to Sinai, aboue fixtie yeeres before. Their journey was by Gazera, where they faw a Gaze. huge Fig-tree which bare figs feuentimes in the yeere. Thence wee departed (fayth he) on the ning of September. On the cleuenth, wee passed a fandy Plaine, so large that we could see no end, but the Sea on the West. At last, wee came into Cawath or Cades, where wee had raine, Which there is feldome. Now were wee come into a true Defart, veterly without all figne of habitation. We faw linokes fometimes, but they arose of fands moved with the wind. On the twelith, we came to Gayon: on the thirteenth to the Brook Wadalar, where was flore of Coloquintida. On the fourteenth, to Magare and Gebelbelel, where we faw nor man, nor heaft, nor bird, but Oftriches. The fifteenth, into a very cold Defart, the earth white like Chalke, and the fand likeburnt Lime, called Mynfebene. The fixteenth, wee could fee no end toward the East, and Dreames of a it is faid to reach without habitation two moneths journey, yea as some thinke, to the terrid burning Zone, Zone which continueth to the terrestrial Paradile: that day we came to Alberch. The feuen- and earthly teenth to Mefmar , to the foot of the Hill Caleb which feemeth made by hand. The eigh. Peradic. teenth, we trauelled the Salt Land, where the deaw, hills, vellies, flones, and fand, are like

Salt. The nineteenth, we came to mountaynous places, and law Mount Sinai and Horeb on the left hand, and the Red Sea on the right, foure dayes journey diffant. The way was rockie and pracipitious. The twentieth, the Spina Christs with their fent refreshed vs, but the Mountaines were rockie and barren, of colour betwixt blacke and red, and the stones in the Sun shine feemed as if anounted with Oyle. There we faw a great bealt bigger then a Camell , and our

Noie.

Guide faid it was an Vnicorne: and there we faw a Shepheard with his flocke, which fremed to vs a maruellous fight. At euen, wee stayed at a place called Scholie. This comfort wee had from our Ladie and S. Katharine, that after mid-night we faw a Star brighter then the reft, to a. rife from the South, which we called S. Katharines Star, and directed vs before day flanding ouer Mount Sinai. On the one and twentieth, we faw Mount Sinai, higher then the other Mountayns. and came to Abalharoch, a Plain every way environed with hils, where Mofes kept lethroes theen, The two and twentieth, wee came to another Plaine of the Red Sand, and the Hils were red reaching to the Roots of Sinat. Wee had a very bad way, and entred the Monasterie of Saint Katherine, at the Root of Mount Sinai The foure and twentieth of September, taking victuals with vs for two dayes, wee ascended to

Indulgences.

Hereb, and there faw the Fountayne, which when the Monkes were once leaving the place for Miracle of our Todes, Serpents and noyfome Creatures molefting them, they were by the bleffed Virgin com-Ladie, or ramanded to flay, and doubting whether it might be an illusion, as they were praying this Founther a Monk's tayne sprang up amongst them, and still continueth : and here is our Ladies Chappell. We pasfed higher to an Arch of stone, which they fay, no lew can passe. Then comming to the toppe of that Hill wee came to the Plaine whence Horeb rifeth without conjunction of any other Hill. where are three Chappels within one wall, of Marina, Elizens and Elias : in each of which is feuen yeares Indulgence, and as many Lents. On the top of Horeb is a little faire Chappell thut with an Iron doore, where the Decalogue in two Tables was given; wee put off our shoes to The specialties enter, and profitating our selates, kiffed the place where Mose received the Law. Fifteen paof state. ces off is the Caue where he salted fortie dayes. Ouer it a Moschee, where the Mosm daily re_20 fort in honour of Moles. There is a great Cifterne, called Moles Well. This Mountayne rifeth round, and is not coherent to other Mountaynes, and from the Monasterie to the top thereof are about feuen thousand steps ascending, besides those which are gone on plaine ground. In the for-

Having refreshed our selucs with food we descended towards the West, a dangerous way, and

came to the Monastery of fortie Saints, and after a little rest ascended Sinai by a harder way, by

leagues diftant, being two dayes Journey. We might thence fee the Deferts of Thebaida, where

of Elim and Sin. Alfo a place in which they faid was a Monastery, the Bels whereof might be

heard at all Canonicall houres, but the house no man could find. In the descent we came to Saint

was, good for the falling fickneffe: After much labour wee came to the Monasterie of fortie

Saints which the Pagans had marryred, and now there are but two Monkes of Saint Katharines

which keepe there. The Edifices are of Mudde and Reeds, except the Church and the Wall en-

compassing. In their Garden is a Chappell in the Caue where Onophrius lived an Anchorite. Here we did eate, and then compassed Oreb, to returne to Saint Katharines Monasterie. Wee found at

the foot of the Mount, the Rocke of Oreb, where Mofes smote twice and water flowed. On

the fixteenth of September, we confessed our selves, and prepared to see the Relikes of Saint

Katharine, and the Tombe being opened, kiffed the fame, and rubbed our Iewels. The Tombe

was in the right fide of the Quire, and therein the head, two hands and fome other members,

the reil disperfed thorow the World. Neare to it is the Chappell where the burning Bush 50 grew. In both these places is plenary parlon, as also many Chappels thereabout base great in dugence. In the twelve Pallars of the Church are many Reikeke, and their Pictures hanging by

The Monkes of Saint Katharines, are of Saint Bafils Order : they vie Brazen Rings in stead of

Bels: they are Proprietaries, buy, fell, worke with their hands, contentions continually, abili-

mer Chappell is plenarie Remission of all sinnes.

Breaches, Rockes, Ouer-hanging Stones, Precipices, Steepes and exceeding heate of the Suns refreshed in the way by two Springs. After much sweat wee came to the toppe on the fine and twentieth of September, euen to the holy place where the Angels had brought from Alexan-dris, the bodie of the glorious Virgin and Martyr Katharine, in which place it lay three hundred yeares guarded by Angels, till it was reuealed to a certaine Abbot, that it should be thence transhereof in J. de lated to the Monasterie where now it is. We with much ioy kissed the place, and measured our Caffre [4p. 145] bodies in the place, which is a ftonie Plaine, fill having the Imprefion of a humane bodie, not made by Arte, but formed by the touch of that facred bodie. The Red Sea seemed but three

netop of 51- Anthonie and the old Heremites lived, and divers barren Hands in the Red Sea, and the Deferts Monastery im. Katharines Well, and cut twies of that kind (they faid) whereof Moses burning-not-burned-Bulh 40

Plenary par-

There is also a Moskee.

nent in dyet, vie rough Garments : in their Garden is the place where the Golden Calfe was made, the Stone against which Moses brake the Tables, the Water of Curling which Moses made the people drinke, and we faw a Calfe of Stone standing on the toppe of a Hill therein, which they faid (and what can bee faid which some Fooles will not beleeue?) that if any went up, hee could not find it, whereapon some say, that the Deuill carryed the Molten Calfe thither. In this 60 Valley and the others adjoyning to Smai, is found Manna only in August and September, which

the Monkes gather and fell to Strangers. It fals toward day like Dew or Frost on the grasse and leaues, and beeing gathered runnes together like Pitch, and at the heate of the Sunne or Fire is melted, tafteth like Honey, and cleanes to the Teeth. The Abbot of that Monasterie is constrained to give food to one hundred Arabs daily. All Nations may be received into their Order, but leabites and Armenians; but beeing received must observe the Greeke Rites. The seven and twentieth of September wee departed. The first of October, wee came to the common way which leades from Gazeia to Cairo, and by another way to Thor, where the Indian thips arrive which tron-workes, because they passe by Mountaynes and Rockes of Load-stone which Tale of Load would attract them. Wee came to the place in the Red Sea, where the I fraelites passed on dry stones. Land. Next day going along by the shoare, we came to the imperfect workes, whereby the Red Sea should have beene conveyed to Nilus.

Marinus à Baumgarten, the fift of October, 1507. departed from Carro, and came on the to tenth to the Ditch, and the other passage. There are seene still to this day; * as Orosius also te- "Nolste Wridifferth the foot-prints of Chariots and Horlemen on the shoare, which howsoeuer by any con- ter hath menflifieth the foot-prints of Chariots and Floriemen on the moate, which how located by any come tioned this, and filled, foone recourt the like forme. On the feuenteenth, we came to Saint Katharmer. Thence identically any come to saint Katharmer. mich, content by Moone light, we ascended Horeb by almost seven thousand staires of stone, be-Orosias, it hash inthe angue by Modern to the Church where Mofes received the Tables (the Moungrowne into rayne and others adioyning still shine like to molten Copper) is a Moschee of Saracens ouer the the Authors place where he fasted fortie dayes in a Caue, which Caue the Saracens still vieto get Prophets, Prophene hoand account the issue there generated, holy. Descending from Horeb, by the West we came to a

Valley twixt it and Sinai, in which was the Monastery of the forty Saints, where having fed we Secresarinas ascend Sinai with great danger, with wounded hands , fliding feete by the loofeneffe of the on flones, creeping knees, breathlesse brests; the Monkes our Guides scarsly able to discerne the true Mountayne amongst fo many Hill-tops, of like femblance. The way beeing marked out by This stewed certaine stones set by Pilgrimes, brought vs at last to the top, where a fresh Spring refreshed vs. thereason of certaine stones set by Pilgrimes, brought vs at last to the top, where a riem Spring refrence vs.

Furrers, affirThence returned to the Monasterie of the fortie Monkes, and compassing Horeb we came to the Rocke in the Root of Horeb, which Mofes imote twice : a square stone, with one sharpe point Katherinis to fall to the earth, with twelve marks according to the number of the twelve Tribes. A little off is bee a higher the place where Dathan and Abiron were swallowed: by night we got to S. Katharines, so wea- hill then Sinis, the place where Datom and Datom Welt-when the conditions on our feet. In our returne, we were often let on by which is but the highest top the Assis, which the in induced on man, we receive with the cames have pace, and more with of small where Famine (which made vs formetime halfe alleepe, and dreaming of victuals; reaching to receive of are many to them, full off our bealth; we got at last to Cairo. There we faw a Zingb, speckled white and top, higher then any beast I had euer feene, the neck fo long, that it exceeds a many ammes twice Cambipardia. Stretched out, the head of a Culvit, the brest high, the back low, eyes pleasing, eating any thing which was giuen it. We faw also an Indian Oxe of a shorter bodie and greater head then ours. with great blunt knottie Hornes: The Mamalakes are of fuch authoritie, that they doe what they lift to any Saracen, turne him out of his house, and dwell in it as long as they please. No Manalukes wthey litt to any Sanatam, the Citie, but are flaues to these flaues, gine way, rise, kisse sanance.

Sanatam may ride or beare Armes in the Citie, but are flaues to these flaues, gine way, rise, kisse sanance.

Experiment

Their mad Men and Penitents are efteemed Saints, and may goe into any house and eate, drinke, yea, Iye with the woman freely, and that Iffue forgotten is efteemed holy : they are honoured whiles they line, and when they togre dead haue Monuments and Temples, and to touch or bury them is a matter of effeeme. One wee faw fitting as naked as hee was borne on the Sands, and heard him commended for that Beaffly Saint. hemedled not carnally with Women or Boyes, but Female Affes or Mules.

Of the Manualukes hee reporteth, that Tongobardinus the Soldan entertayned him in his Pa-Tongobardinus lace, shewed him his house of women, whereof thirtie flug were there present, dallying and tal-his Wines. king, exceeding fragrant. The next day shewed him a great fight, where almost fixtie thousand Manualukes were affembled, ftanding with great reverence and filence all in white and like habit. The Soldan also with a large blacke beard horned or mitred Diademe in a Summer open Roome and white Raiment : not farre from him his Pope (whom they call Calipha) Socienus late, Socienus the abrowne man, and beneath him the Tirte h Embaffador. Beneath the Caffle was a large Plaine Calipha. to prepared before to that purpose, in the middelt whereof were three heapes of Sand, fittie paces diffant, and in each a Speare erected with a marke to shoote at, and the like ouer against them, with space betweene for fixe Horses to runne abrest. Heere did the yonger Manualukes gallantly adorned voon their Horfes running will careere, yeeld ftrange experiments of their skill, attiuties not one miffing the marke, first, with casting Darts, and after with their Arrowes, as they ran: and laftly, trying their flaues. Others after this, in the like Race of their running Hories, flot with like dexteritie divers Arrowes backwards and forward. Others in the midt of their Race alighted three times, and (their Horles still running) mounted againe, and hit the Marke nevertheleffe. Others did but the fame, flanding on their Horles thus swiftly running. Others three times vnbent their Bowes, and thrice againe bent them whiles their Horfes ran, and miffed not the Marke : neither did others, which amidft their Race, lighted downe on either fide, and againe mounted themfelues : no, nor they which in their fwifteft course leaped and turned themfelues backwards on their Horfes, and then (their Horfes still running) turned themselves forwards. There were, which whiles their Horle ranne, vingit their Saddles thrice, at each time shooting, and then againe gerding their Saddles, and never missing the Marke. Some fitting in

Manns.

their Saddles, leaped backwards out of them, and turning ouer their heads, fetled themfelues againe in their Saddles and flot, as the former, three times. Others laid themselues backwards on their running Horses, and taking their tayles, put them into their mouthes, and yet forgot not their ayme in shooting. Some after every shot drew out their Swords, and flourished themabout their heads, and againe sheathed them. Others sitting betwirt three Swordson the right tide, and as many on the left, thinly clothed, that without great care every motion would make way for death, yet before and behind them touched the Marke. One flood vpon two Horfes running very (wifely, his feet loofe, and shot also at once three Arrowes before, and against three behind him. Another fitting on a Horse neither bridled nor sadled, as hee came at every Marke arose and stood vpon his feete, and on both hands hitting the Marke, sate downe againe 10 three times. A third fitting on the bare Horfe, when hee came to the Marke lay vpon his backe and lifted vp his legges, and yet miffed not his shoot. After all this they rame with like swiftneffe (for all these things, which, where is the Vaulter that can doe on his Imaginarie Horse standing ftill? these did running) and with their staues carryed away those Markes, as triumphing ouer their innocent Enemie. One of them was killed with a fall, and two forewounded in these their Feats of Activitie. They had an old grave man which was their Teacher. If I have long detayned thee in this Spectacle, remember that the Race of Mamalutes should not

bee forgotten, the rather, because their name is now razed out of the World; and this may feeme an Epitaph on their Sepulchre, after whom none perhaps are left able to doe the like, nor in all Franciscus Modius his Triumphall Pandects tobe

naralelled.

The end of the eighth Booke.



EREGRINATIONS. AND DISCOVERIES BY LAND OF

ASSYRIA, ARMENIA, PERSIA, INDIA,

ARABIA, AND OTHER INLAND COVNTRIES OF ASIA, BY

Englishmen and Others; Moderne and Ancient.

THE NINTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

Abriefe Compendium of the Historic of Sir ANTHONY SHER-LEYS Travels into Perfia: And employed thence Ambaffadour to the Christian Princes; * penned by bim/elfe, and recommended to his Brother Sir ROBERT SHERLEY. fince that fent on like Ambaffage by the King of Persia.

The Causes of his going to Persia, and strange Accidents in the way.

Nmy first yeares, my friends bestowed on me those Learnings way, he stuwhich were fit for a Gentlemans ornament, without directing dious may them to an Occupation, and when they were fit for agible reade the Authings, they bestowed them and me on my Princes Service, in ther himfelie, which I ran many courses, of divers Fortunes, according to have extracted the condition of the Warres, in which, as I was most exercifed, fo was I most subject to accidents : With what opinion I carryed my felfe (fince the causes of good or ill must be in my felte, and that a thing without my felfe) I leave it to them to fpeake; my places yet in authoritie, in those occasions were cuer of the best; in which, if I committed errour it was contrarie to my will, and a weaknesse in my judgement; which, not-

withflanding, I euer industriated my felfe to make perfect, correcting my owne ouer-fights by the most vertuous Examples I could make choice of: Amongst which, as there was not a Subject of more worthinesse and vertue, for such Examples to grow from, then the ever-lining in honour and condigne estimation, the Earle of Effex: as my reverence and regard to instare Earle of Effex. 60 Qualities was exceeding; to I defired (as much as my humilitie might answere, with fu. haneminencie) to make him the patterne of my civill life, and from him to draw a worthy modell of all my actions. And as my true loue to him, did transforme mee from my many imperfections, to be, as it were, an imitator of his vertues; so his affection was such to mee, that hee was not onely contented, I should doe so; but in the true Noblenesse of his minde gaue mee liberally Zzzzzz 3

his own words, but miny things which pertayne rather to his minde the bodies trauels in discourtes of caules, &c. are left out not for want of worth, but of roome: